

**CIHM
Microfiche
Series
(Monographs)**

**ICMH
Collection de
microfiches
(monographies)**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1994

Technical and Bibliographic Notes / Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

☐ Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur

☐ Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur:

☐ Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée

☐ Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées

☐ Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée

☐ Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées

☐ Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque

☒ Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées

☐ Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur

☐ Pages detached/
Pages détachées

☐ Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)

☒ Showthrough/
Transparence

☐ Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur

☐ Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression

☒ Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents

☐ Continuous pagination/
Pagination continue

☒ Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion
along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la
distorsion le long de la marge intérieure

☐ Includes index(es)/
Comprend un (des) index

Title on header taken from: /
Le titre de l'en-tête provient:

☐ Blank leaves added during restoration may appear
within the text. Whenever possible, these have
been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées
lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,
mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont
pas été filmées.

☐ Title page of issue/
Page de titre de la livraison

☐ Caption of issue/
Titre de départ de la livraison

☐ Masthead/
Générique (périodiques) de la livraison

☒ Additional comments: / Pages 49, 73, 194, 196, 198, 205-206, 278, 493, 559, 605, 608 are incorrectly
Commentaires supplémentaires: numbered pages 46, 87, 294, 169, 168, 203-204, 276, 593, 459, 608, 605.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☒	☐	☐	☐

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

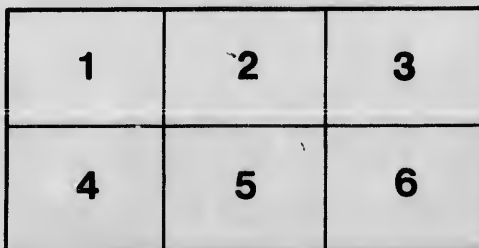
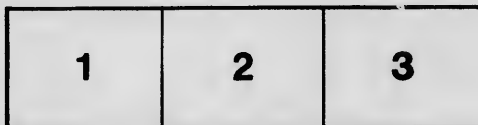
National Library of Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol ➡ (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ▼ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

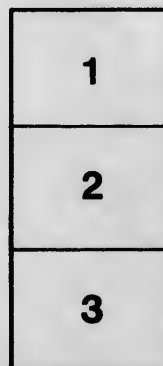
Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole ➡ signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ▼ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.





THE
**PRINCIPAL NAVI-
GATIONS, VOYAGES,
TRAFFIQUES AND DISCOVE-**
ries of the *English Nation*, made by Sea or over-
land, to the remote and farthest distant quarters of the
Earth, at any time within the compasse of these 1600 yeres:
Diuided into three seuerall Volumes, according to the
positions of the Regions, whereunto they
were directed.

The first Volume containeth the worthy Discoveries,
&c. of the *English* toward the North and Northeast by Sea, as of
Lapland, Scythia, Corelia, the Baie of S. Nicolas, the Isles of Colgoicue, Vaigatz,
and *Nona Zembla*, toward the great Riuer *Ob*, with the mighty Empire of *Russia*,
the *Caspian Sea, Georgia, Armenia, Media, Persia, Boghar in Baetria,*
and diuers kingdomes of *Tartaria*:

Together with many notable monuments and testimonies
of the ancient forren trades, and of the warrelike and other
shipping of this Realme of *England* in former ages,
Whereunto is annexed a briefe Commentary of the true state of Island,
and of the Northren Seas and lands situate that way: As also the
memorable defeat of the *Spanish* huge *Armada*, Anno 1588.

¶ The second Volume comprehendeth the principall
Navigations, Voyages, Traffiques, and discoveries of the *English*
Nation made by Sea or over-land, to the South and South-east
parts of the World, as well within as without the Streight of
Gibraltar, at any time within the compasse of these 1600.
yeres: Diuided into two seuerall parts, &c.

¶ By **RICHARD HAKLVYT** Preacher, and sometime Stu-
dent of *Christ-Church* in *Oxford*.



¶ Imprinted at London by *George Bishop,*
Ralph Newberie, and Robert Barker.
ANNO 1599.

PRINCIPLES OF
GEOGRAPHY
AND
COSMOGRAPHY

By
WILLIAM STRICKLAND
F.R.S.E. &c.

Second Edition
Revised and Enlarged
By
WILLIAM STRICKLAND
F.R.S.E. &c.

London
Printed by
J. JOHNSON, Strand

1810

ge
tr
th
ro
lo
tic
th
ca
bo
tio
tre
thi
me
of
nu
less
han
thu
Spr
leaf
to
tion
tron
lyin
four
of the

TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE MY SINGV- LAR GOOD LORD, THE LORD

CHARLES HOWARD, Erle of Nottingham,
Baron of Effingham, Knight of the noble Order
of the Garter, Lord high Admirall of England,
Ireland, and Wales, &c. one of her Maiesties
most honourable priuie Counsell.



Ight Honourable and my very good
Lord, after I had long since published in Print
many Naugations and Discoueries of Stran-
gers in diuers languages, as well here at Lon-
don, as in the citie of Paris, during my fūe
yeeres abode in France, with the woorthie
Knight Sir Edward Stafford your brother in
lawe, her Maiesties most prudent and carefull
Ambassador ligier with the French King: and
had waded on still farther and farther in the
sweet studie of the historie of Cosmographie,
I began at length to conceiue, that with dili-
gent obseruation, some thing might be gathered which might commend our na-
tion for their high courage and singular actiuitie in the Search and Discouerie of
the most vnknown quarters of the world. Howbeit, seeing no man to step forth
to vndertake the recording of so many memorable actions, but every man to fo-
low his priuate affaires: the ardent loue of my countrey deuoured all difficul-
ties, and as it were with a sharpe goad prouoked me and thrust me forward into
this most troublesome and painfull action. And after great charges and infinite
cares, after many watchings, toiles, and trauels, and wearying out of my weake
body; at length I haue collected three seuerall Volumes of the English Nauiga-
tions, Traffiques, and Discoueries, so strange, remote, and farre distant coun-
treys. Which worke of mine I haue not included within the compasse of
things onely done in these latter dayes, as though litle or nothing woorthie of
memorie had bene performed in former ages; but mounting aloft by the space
of many hundred yeeres, haue brought to light many very rare and worthy mo-
numents; which long haue lien miserably scattered in mustie corners, & retch-
lessly hidden in mistie darkenesse, and were very like for the greatest part to
haue bene buried in perpetuall obliuion. The first Volume of this worke I haue
thus for the present brought to light, reseruing the other two vntill the next
Spring, when by Gods grace they shall come to the Presse. In the meane
season bethinking my selfe of some munificent and bountifull Patrone, I called
to mind your honorable Lordship, who both in regard of my particular obliga-
tion, and also in respect of the subiect and matter, might iustly challenge the Pa-
tronage thereof. For first I remembred how much I was bound, and how deep-
ly indebted for my yongest brother *Edmund Howards*, to whom for the space of
foure whole yeeres your Lordship committed the government and instruction
of that honorable yong noble man, your sonne & heire apparant, the lord Wil-

The Epistle Dedicatorie.

liam Howard, of whose high spirit and wonderfull towardlinesse full many a time hath he boasted vnto me. Secondly, the bounden duetie which I owe to your most deare sister the lady *Sheffield*, my singular good lady & honorable mistresse, admonished me to be mindfull of the renoumed familie of the *Howards*. Thirdly, when I found in the first Patent graunted by Queene *Marie* to the *Moscovie* companie, that my lord your father being then lord high Admirall of England, was one of the first fauourers and furtherers, with his purse and countenance, of the strange and wonderfull Discouerie of *Russia*, the chiefe contents of this present Volume, then I remembred the sagesaying of sweet *Isocrates*, *That sonnes ought not onely to be inheritors of their fathers substance, but also of their commendable vertues and honours*. But what speake I of your ancestors honors (which to say the trueth, are very great, and such as our *Chronicles* haue notably blazoned) when as your owne Heroicall actions from time to time haue shewed themselves so admirable, as no antiquitie hath afforded greater, and the future times will not in haste (I thinke) performe the like. To come to some particulars, when the Emperors sister, the spouse of *Spaine*, with a Fleete of an 130. sailes, stoutly and proudly passed the narrow Seas, your Lordship accompanied with ten ships onely of her Maiesties Nauie Roiall, enuironed their Fleet in most strange and warrelike sort, enforced them to scoope gallant, and to vaile their bonets for the Queene of England, and made them perfectly to vnderstand that olde speech of the prince of Poets;

*Non illi imperium pelagi sanumq, tridentem,
sed tibi forte datum.*

Yet after they had acknowledged their dutie, your lordship on her Maiesties behalfe conducted her safely through our English chanell, and performed all good offices of honor and humanitie to that forren Princeesse. At that time all England beholding your most honorable cariage of your selfe in that so weightie seruice, began to cast an extraordinarie eie vpon your lordship, and deeply to conceiue that singular hope which since by your most worthie & wonderfull seruice, your L. hath more then fully satisfied. I meane (among others) that glorious, triumphant, and thrife-happy victory atchieued against that huge and haultie *Spanish Armada* (which is notably described in the ende of this volume) wherein being chiefe and sole Commander vnder her sacred and roiall Maiestie, your noble gouernment and worthy behaiour, your high wisdom, discretion and happinesse, accompanied with the heauenly blessing of the Almighty, are shewed most euidently to haue bene such, as all posteritie and succeeding ages shall neuer cease to sing and refound your infinite prayse and eternall commendations. As for the late renoumed expedition and honorable voyage vnto *Cadiz*, the vanquishing of part of the king of Spaines *Armada*, the destruction of the rich *West Indian* Fleete, the chasing of so many braue and gallant Gallies, the miraculous winning, sacking, and burning of that almost impregnable citie of *Cadiz*, the surprising of the towne of *Faraon* vpon the coast of *Portugal*, and other rare appendances of that enterprise, because they be hereafter so iudicially set downe, by a very graue and learned Gentleman, which was an eye witnesse in all that action, I referre your good L. to his faithfull report, wherein I trust (as much as in him lay) he hath wittingly deprived no man of his right. Vpon these and other the like considerations, I thought it fit and very conuenient to commend with all humilitie and reuerence this first part of our English Voiages & Discoueries vnto your Honors fauourable censure and patronage.

And here by the way most humbly craving pardon, and alwayes submitting my poore opinion to your Lordships most deep and percing insight, especially
in

The Epistle Dedicatorie.

in this matter, as being the father and principall fauourer of the English Navigation, I trust it shall not be impertinent in passing by, to point at the meanes of breeding vp of skilfull Sea-men and Mariners in this Realme. Sithence your Lordship is not ignorant, that ships are to litle purpose without skilfull Sea-men; and since Sea-men are not bred vp to perfection of skill in much lesse time (as it is said) then in the time of two prentisships; and since no kinde of men of any profession in the continon wealth passe their yeres in so great and continuall hazard of life; and since of so many, so few grow to gray heires: how needfull it is, that by way of Lectures and such like instructions, these ought to haue a better education, then hitherto they haue had; all wise men may easily iudge. When I call to minde, how many noble ships haue bene lost, how many worthy persons haue bene drenched in the sea, and how greatly this Realme hath bene impouerished by losse of great Ordinance and other rich commodities through the ignorance of our Sea-men, I haue greatly wished there were a Lecture of Navigation read in this Citie, for the banishing of our former grosse ignorance in Marine causes, and for the increafe and generall multiplying of the sea-knowledge in this age, wherein God hath raised so generall a desire in the youth of this Realme to discouer all parts of the face of the earth, to this Realme in former ages not knownen. And, that it may appeare that this is no vaine fancie nor deuise of mine, it may please your Lordship to vnderstand, that the late Emperour *Charles* the fift, considering the rawnesse of his Sea-men, and the manifolde shipwracks which they susteyned in passing and repassing betweene *Spaine* and the *West Indies*, with an high reach and great foresight, established not onely a Pilote Maior, for the examination of such as sought to take charge of ships in that voyage, but also founded a notable Lecture of the Art of Navigation, which is read to this day in the Contractation house at *Simila*. The readers of which Lecture haue not only carefully taught and instructed the *Spanish* Mariners by word of mouth, but also haue published sundry exact and worthy treatises concerning Marine causes, for the direction and incouragement of posteritie. The learned works of three of which readers, namely of *Alonso de Chanez*, of *Hieronymo de Chanez*, and of *Roderigo Zamorano* came long ago very happily to my hands, together with the straight and seuer examining of all such Masters as desire to take charge for the *West Indies*. Which when I first read and duely considered, it seemed to mee so excellent and so exact a course, as I greatly wished, that I might be so happy as to see the like order established here with vs. This matter, as it seemeth, tooke no light impression in the royall brest of that most renowned and victorious prince King *Henry* the eight of famous memory; who for the increafe of knowledge in his Sea-men, with princely liberalitie erected three seuerall Guilds or brotherhoods, the one at *Deptford* here vpon the *Thames*, the other at *Kingston* vpon *Hull*, and the third at *Newcastle* vpon *Tine*: which last was established in the 28. yeere of his reigne. The chiefe motiues which induced his princely wisedome hereunto, himselfe expresseth in maner following. *Ut magistri, marinarij, gubernatores, & alij officarij nauium, inuentutem suam in exercitatione gubernationis nauium transigentes, mutuari, aut aliquo alio casu in paupertatem collapsi, aliquod releuamen ad eorum sustentationem habeant, quo non solum illi resciantur, verumetiam alij iuuenes moueantur & instigentur ad eandem artem exercendam, ratione cuius, doctores & aptiores fiant nauibus & alijs vasis nostris & aliorum quorumcunque in Mare gubernandis & manutenendis, tam pacis, quam belli tempore, cum opus postulet, &c.* To descend a litle lower, King *Edward* the sixt that prince of peerelesse hope, with the aduise of his sage and prudent Counsaile, before he entred into the Northeasterne discouery, aduanced the worthy and excellent *Sebastian Cabota* to be grand Pilot of *England*, allowing

The Epistle Dedicatorie.

him a most bountifull pension of 166.li.vj.s.vij.d. by the yeere during his life, as appeareth in his Letters Patents which are to be seene in the third part of my worke. And if God had granted him longer life, I doubt not but as he delt most royally in establishing that office of Pilote Maior (which not long after to the great hinderance of this Common wealth was miserably turned to other priuate vses) so his princely Maiestie would haue shewed himselfe no nigard in erecting, in imitation of *Spaine*, the like profitable Lecture of the Art of Navigation. And surely when I considered of late the memorable bountie of sir *Thomas Gresham*, who being but a Merchant hath sounded so many chargeable Lectures, and some of them also which are Mathematicall, tending to the aduancement of Marine causes; I nothing doubted of your Lordships forwardnes in settling and establishing of this Lecture; but rather when your Lordship shall see the noble and rare effects thereof, you will be heartily sory that all this while it hath not bene erected. As therefore our skill in Navigation hath hitherto bene very much bettered and increased vnder the Admiraltie of your Lordship, so if this one thing be added thereunto, together with seuer and straight discipline, I doubt not but with Gods good blessing it will shortly grow to the hiest pitch and top of all perfection: which whensoever it shall come to passe, I assure my selfe it will turne to the infinite wealth and honour of our Countrey, to the prosperous and speedy discouery of many rich lands and territories of heathens and gentiles as yet unknown, to the honest employment of many thousands of our idle people, to the great comfort and reioicing of our friends, to the terror, daunting and confusion of our foes. To ende this matter, let mee now I beseech you speake vnto your Lordship, as in times past the elder *Scipio* spake to *Cornelius Scipio Africanus*: *Quod sis, Africane, alacrior ad salutandam Rempublicam, sic habeto: Omnibus, qui patriam conseruauerint, adiuuerint, auxerint, certum esse in caelo, ac definitum locum, ubi beati a uo sempiterno fruuntur.* It remaineth therefore, that as your Lordship from time to time vnder her most gracious and excellent Maiestie, haue shewed your selfe a valiant protectour, a carefull conseruer, and an happy enlarger of the honour and reputation of your Countrey; so at length you may enioy those celestial blessings, which are prepared to such as tread your steps, and seeke to aspire to such diuine and heroical vertues. And euen here I surcease, wishing all temporal and spirituall blessings of the life present and that which is to come to be powred out in most ample measure, not onely vpon your honourable Lordship, the noble and vertuous Lady your bedfellow, and those two rare iewels, your generous off-springs, but also vpon all the rest wheresoeuer of that your noble and renowned family. From London the 7. day of this present October 1598.

Your honours most humble alwayes
to be commanded:

Richard Hakluyt Preacher.



¶ A Preface

of n
ber
gra
left
sim
spen
cour
seest
man
ched
old r
into
wha
selfe
frien
of the
paine
E
midst
nation
know
Nico
Cape o
for the
league
cules
maine
forme
spirite
Did no
Steph
goicue
not win
conque
our att
of searc
and ind

A preface to the Reader as touching the principall Voyages and discourfes in this first part.



Having for the benefit and honour of my Country zealously bestowed so many yeeres, so much traueile and cost, to bring Antiquities smothered and buried in darke silence, to light, and to reserve certaine memorable exploits of late yeeres by our English nation atchieued, from the greedy and deuouring iawes of obliuion: to gather likewise, and as it were to incorporate into one body the torne and scattered limmes of our ancient and late Navigations by Sea, our voyages by land, and traffiques of merchandise by both: and having (so much as in me lieth) restored each particular member, being before displaced, to their true ioynts and ligaments; I meane, by the helpe of Geographie and Chronologie (which I may call the Sunne and the Moone, the right eye and the left of history) referred each particular relation to the due time and place: I do this second time (friendly Reader, if not to satisfie, yet at least for the present to allay and hold in suspense thine expectation) presume to offer vnto thy view this first part of my threefold discourse. For the bringing of which into this homely and rough-hewen shape, which bere thou seest, what restlesse nights, what painefull dayes, what heat, what cold I haue indured; how many long & chargeable iourneys I haue traueiled; how many famous libraries I haue searched into; what varietie of ancient and moderne writers I haue perused; what a number of old records, patents, priuileges, letters, &c. I haue redeemed from obscuritie and perishing; into how manifold acquaintance I haue entred; what expenses I haue not spared; and yet selfe canst hardly imagine, yet I by daily experience do finde & feele, and some of my entier friends can sufficiently testifie. Howbeit (as I told thee at the first) the honour and benefit of this Common weale wherein I liue and breathe, hath made all difficulties seeme easie, all paines and industrie pleasant, and all expenses of light value and moment vnto me.

For (to containe my selfe onely within the bounds of this present discourse, and in the midst thereof to begin) wil it not in all posteritie be as great a renoume vnto our English nation, to haue bene the first discoverers of a Sea beyond the North cape (neuer certainly knowne before) and of a conuenient passage into the huge Empire of Russia by the bay of S. Nicolas and the riuer of Duina; as for the Portugales to haue found a Sea beyond the Cape of Buona Esperanza, and so consequently a passage by Sea into the East Indies; or for the Italians and Spaniards to haue discovered vnkknowne landes so many hundred leagues Westward and Southwestward of the streits of Gibraltar, & of the pillars of Hercules? Be it granted that the renowned Portugale Vaquez de Gama trauesed the maine Ocean Southward of Africke: Did not Richard Chanceler and his mates performe the like Northward of Europe? Suppose that Columbus that noble and high-spirited Genuois espyed vnkknowne landes to the Westward of Europe and Africke: Did not the valiant English knight sir Hugh Willoughby; did not the famous Pilots Stephen Burrough, Arthur Pet, and Charles Iackman accoast Noua Zembla, Colgoieue, and Vaigatz to the North of Europe and Asia? Howbeit you will (perhaps, not with the like golden succeffe, nor with such deductions of Colonies, nor attaining of conquests. True it is, that our succeffe hath not bene correspondent vnto theirs: yet in this our attempt the vncertainie of finding was farre greater, and the difficultie and danger of searching was no whit lesse. For hath not Herodotus (a man for his time, most skilfull and iudicial in Cosmographie, who writ about 2000. yeeres ago) in his 4. booke called Mel-

pomene,

To the Reader.

f Lib a. nat. hist.
cap. 67.

¶ In Timæo.

¶ *noti Strabo* (1571)
mauepgraw.

pomene, signified vnto the Portugales in plaine termes; that Africa, except the small Isthmus between the Arabian gulf and the Meditterran sea, was on all sides enuironed with the Ocean? And for the further confirmation thereof, doth he not make mention of one Neco an Egyptian King, who (for trials sake) sent a Fleet of Phoenicians downe the Red sea; who setting forth in Autumne and sailing Southward till they had the Sunne at nooneside vpon their sterbourd (that is to say, hauing crossed the Equinoctial and the Southerne tropique) after a long Navigation, directed their course to the North, and in the space of 3.yeeres enuironed all Africk, passing home through the Gaditan streites, and arriuing in Egypt: And doth not ¶ Plinie tell them, that noble Hanno, in the flourishing time and estate of Carthage, sailed from Gades in Spaine to the coast of Arabia foelix, and put downe his whole iournall in writing? Doth he not make mention, that in the time of Augustus Cesar, the wracke of certaine Spanish ships was found floating in the Arabian gulf? And, not to be ouer-tedious in alleaging of testimonies, doth not Strabo in the 2.booke of his Geography, together with Cornelius Nepos and Plinie in the place before named, agree all in one, that one Eudoxus fleeing from king Lathyrus, and valing downe the Arabian bay, sailed along, doubled the Southern point of Africk, and at length arriued at Gades? And what should I speake of the Spaniards? Was not diuine ¶ Plato (who liued so many ages ago, and plainly described their West Indies vnder the name of Atlantis) was not he (I say) in stead of a Cosmographer vnto them? Were not those Carthaginians mentioned by Aristotle lib. ¶ de admirabil. auscult. their forerunners? And had they not Columbus to stirre them vp; and pricke them forward vnto their Westerne discoveries; yea, to be their chiefe loads-man and Pilot? Si then therefore these two worthy Nations had those bright lampes of learning (I meane the most ancient and best Philosophers, Historiographers and Geographers) to shewe them light; and the load-starre of experience (to wit those great exploits and voyages layed vp in store and recorded) whereby to shape their course: what great attempt might they not presume to vndertake? But alas our English nation, at the first setting forth for their Northeasterne discovery, were either altogether destitute of such cleare lights and inducements, or if they had any wrangling at all, it was as misty as they found the Northren seas, and so obscure and ambiguous, that it was meet rather to deterre them, then to giue them encouragement.

But besides the foresaid vncertaintie, into what dangers and difficulties they plunged themselves, Animus meminisse horret, I tremble to recount. For first they were to expose themselves vnto the rigour of the sterne and uncouth Northren seas, and to make triall of the swelling waues and boistrous winds which there commonly do surge and blow: then were they to saile by the ragged and perillous coast of Norway, to frequent the vnhauunted shoares of Finmark, to double the dreadfull and misty North cape, to beare with Willoughbies land, to run along within kenning of the Countreys of Lapland and Corelia, and as it were to open and vlocke the seven-fold mouth of Duina. Moreover, in their Northeasterly Navigations, vpon the seas and by the coasts of Condora, Colgoieue, Petzora, Ioughoria, Samoedia, Noua Zembla, &c. and their passing and retorne through the streits of Vaigatz, vnto what drifts of snow and mountaines of yce euen in Iune, Iuly, and August, vnto what hidcous overfals, vncertaine currents, darke mists and fogs, and diuers other fearefull inconueniences they were subiect and in danger of, I wish you rather to learne one of the voyages of sir Hugh Willoughbie, Stephen Burrough, Arthur Pet and the rest, then to expect in this place an endlesse catalogue thereof. And here by the way I cannot but highly commend the great industry and magnanimity of the Hollanders, who within these few yeeres haue discovered to 78.yea (as themselves affirme) to 81.degrees of Northerly latitude: yet with this prouiso; that our English nation led them the dance, brake the yce before them, and gaue them good leaue to light their candle at our torch. But now it is high time for vs to weigh our ancre, to hoist up our sailes, to get cleare of these boistrous, frosty, and misty seas, and with all speede to direct our course

To the Reader.

course for the milde, lightsome, temperate, and warme Atlantick Ocean, over which the Spaniards and Portugales haue made so many pleasant prosperous and golden voyages. And albeit I cannot deny, that both of them in their East and West Indian Navigations haue indured many tempests, dangers and shipwracks: yet this dare I boldly affirme; first that a great number of them haue satisfied their fame-thirsty and gold-thirsty mindes with that reputation and wealth, which made all perils and misaduentures seeme tolerable vnto them; and secondly, that their first attempts (which in this comparison I doe onely stand vpon) were no whit more difficult and dangerous, then ours to the Northeast. For admit that the way was much longer, yet was it neuer barred with yce, mist, or darkness, but was at all seasons of the yeere open and Nauigable; yea and that for the most part with fortunate and fit gales of winde. Moreouer they had no forren prince to intercept or molest them, but their owne Townes, Islands, and maine lands to succour them. The Spaniards had the Canary Isles: and so had the Portugales the Isles of the Açores, of Porto santo, of Madera, of Cape verd, the castle of Mina, the fruitfull and profitable Isle of S. Thomas, being all of them conueniently situated, and well fraught with commodities. And had they not continuall and yerely trade in some one part or other of Africa, for getting of slaues, for sugar, for Elephants teeth, graines, silver, gold, and other precious wares, which serued as allurements to draw them on by little and little, and as proppes to stay them from giuing ouer their attempts? But now let vs leaue them and returne home vnto our selues.

In this first Volume (friendly Reader) besides our Northeasterne Discoveries by sea, and the memorable voyage of M. Christopher Hodson, and M. William Burrough, Anno 1570. to the Narue, wherein with merchants ships onely, they tooke fine strong and warrelike ships of the Freebooters, which lay within the sound of Denmark of purpose to intercept our English Fleete: besides all these (I say) thou maicst find here recorded, to the lasting honor of our nation, all their long and dangerous voyages for the aduancing of traffique by riuer and by land to all parts of the huge and wide Empire of Russia: as namely Richard Chanceler his first fortunate arriual at Newnox, his passing vp the riuer of Dwina to the citie of Vologda for the space of 1100. versts and from thence to Yaruslaue, Rostoue, Peraulaue, and so to the famous citie of Moscow, being 1500. versts trauell in all. Moreouer, here thou hast his voiage penned by himselfe (which I hold to be very authentical, & for the which I do acknowledge my selfe beholding vnto the excellent Librarie of the right honorable my lord Lumley) wherein he describeth in part the state of Russia, the maners of the people and their religion, the magnificence of the Court, the maieestic power, and riches of the Emperour, and the gracious entertainment of himselfe. But if he being the first man, and not hauing so perfect intelligence as they that came after him, doeth not fullie satisfie your expectation in describing the foresayd countrey and people; I then referre you to Clement Adams his relation next following, to M. Ienkinson his discourse as touching that argument, to the smooth verses of M. George Turberuile, and to a learned and excellent discourse set downe, pag. 475. of this volume, and the pages following. Vnto all which (if you please) you may adde Richard Iohnsons strange report of the Samoeds, pag. 283. But to returne to our voyages performed within the bounds of Russia, I suppose (among the rest) that difficult journey of Southam and Sparke from Colnogro and S. Nicholas Baie, vp the great riuer of Onega, and so by other riuers and lakes to the citie of Nouogrod velica vpon the West frontier of Russia, to be right woorthy of obseruation; as likewise that of Thomas Alcock from Mosco to Smolensko, and thence to Tirwill in Polonia, pag. 304. & that also of M. Hierome Horsey from Mosco to Vobsko, and so through Liefland to Riga, thence by the chiefe townes of Prussia and Pomerland to Rostok, and so to Hamburg, Brema, Emden, &c. Neither hath our nation bene contented onely throughly to search into all parts of the Inland, and to view the Northren, Southerne, and Westerne frontiers, but also by the riuers

To the Reader.

of Moscu, Occa and Volga, to visite Cazan and Astracan, the farthest Easterne and Southeasterne bounds of that huge Empire. And yet not containing themselves within all that maine circumference, they have aduenced their persons, shippes, and goods, homewards and outwards, foureteen times ouer the unknownen and dangerous Caspian sea; that valiant, wise, and personable gentleman M. Anthonie Ienkinson being their first ring-leader: who in Anno 1558, sailing from Astracan towards the East shore of the Caspian sea, and there arriuing at the port of Mangusla, trauelled thence by Vigence and Shelisur, and by the riuers of Oxus and Ardok, 40. dayes iourney ouer desert and wast countreys, to Boghar a principall citie of Baetria, being there & by the way friendly entertained, dismissed, and safely conducted by certaine Tartarian kings and Murfes. Then haue you a second Navigation of his performance to the South shore of the foresayd Caspian sea, together with his landing at Derbent, his arriual at Shabran, his proceeding vnto Shamaky, the great curtesie vouchsafed on him by Obdolowcan king of Hircan, his iourney after of 30. dayes Southward, by Yauate, Ardouil, and other townes and cities to Casben, being as then the seate imperiall of Shaugh Thomas the great Sophy of Persia, with diuers other notable accidents in his going forth, in his abode there, and in his returne home. Immediately after you haue set downe in five seuerall voiajes the successesse of M. Ienkinsons laudable and well-begun enterprise, vnder the foresayd Shaugh Thomas, vnder Shally Murzey the new king of Hircan, and lastly our traffique with Osman Basha the great Turkes lieutenant at Derbent. Moreouer, as in M. Ienkinsons trauel to Boghar the Tartars, with their territories, habitations, maner of liuing, apparell, food, armour, &c. are most liuely represented vnto you: so likewise in the sixe Perlian Iournals you may here and there obserue the state of that countrey, of the great Shaugh and of his subiects, together with their religion, lawes, customes, & maner of gouernment, their coines, weights and measures, the distances of places, the temperature of the climate and region, and the natural commodities and discommodities of the same.

Furthermore in this first Volume, all the Ambassages and Negotiations from her Maiestie to the Russian Emperour, or from him vnto her Maiestie, seemed by good right to challenge their due places of Record. As namely, first that of M. Randolph, 1568. then the employment of M. Ienkinson 1571. thirdly, Sir Ierome Bowes his honorable commission and ambassage 1582. and last of all the Ambassage of M. Doct. Fletcher 1588. Neither do we forget the Emperours first Ambassador Osep Napea, his arriual in Scotland, his most honourable entertainments and abode in England, and his dismissal into Russeland. In the second place we doe make mention of Stephen Tuerdico, and Pheodata Pogorella; thirdly, of Andrea Sauin; and lastly, of Pheodor Andrewich Philemski. And to be briefe, I haue not omitted the Commissions, Letters, Priuileges, Instructions, Obseruations, or any other Particulars which might serue both in this age, and with all posteritie, either for presidents in such like princely and weightie actions to bee imitated, or as woorthy monuments in no wise to bee buried in silence. Finally, that nothing should be wanting which might adde any grace or shew of perfection vnto this discourse of Russia; I haue prefixed before the beginning thereof, the pedigree and genealogie of the Russian Emperours and Dukes, gathered out of their owne Chronicles by a Polonian, containing in briefe many notable antiquities and much knowledge of those partes: as likewise about the conclusion, I haue signified in the branch of a letter, the last Emperour Pheodor Iuanowich his death, and the inauguration of Boris Pheodorowich vnto the Empire.

But that no man should imagine that our forren trades of merchandise haue bene comprised within some few yeeres, or at least wise haue not bene of any long continuance; let vs now withdraw our selues from our affaires in Russia, and ascending somewhat higher, let vs take a sleight survey of our traffiques and negotiations in former ages. First therefore the Reader may haue recourse vnto the 124 page of this Volume, & there with great delight

To the Reader.

delight and admiration, consider out of the iudicial Historiographer Cornelius Tacitus, that the Citie of London fiftene hundred yeeres agoe in the time of Nero the Emperour, was most famous for multitude of merchants and concourse of people. In the pages following he may learne out of Venerable Beda, that almost 900. yeeres past, in the time of the Saxons, the said citie of London was multorum emporium populorum, a Martowntone for many nations. There he may behold, out of William of Malmesburie, a league concluded betweene the most renowned and victorious Germane Emperour Carolus Magnus, and the Saxon king Offa, together with the sayd Charles his patronage and protection granted vnto all English merchants which in those dayes frequented his dominions. There may hee plainly see in an auncient testimonie translated out of the Saxon tongue, how our merchants were often wooed for traffiques sake, so many hundred yeeres since, to crosse the wide Seas, and how their industry in so doing was recompensed. Yea, there mayest thou obserue (friendly Reader) what priuileges the Danish king Canutus obtained at Rome of Pope Iohn, of Conradus the Emperour, and of king Rudolphus for our English merchants Aduenturers of those times. Then if you shall thinke good to descend vnto the times and ages succeeding the conquest, there may you partly see what our state of merchandise was in the time of king Stephen and of his predecessor, and how the Citie of Bristol (which may seeme somewhat strange) was then greatly resorted vnto with ships from Norway and from Ireland. There may you see the friendly league betweene king Henry the second, and the famous Germane Emperour Friderick Barbarossa, and the gracious authorizing of both their merchants to traffique in either of their dominions. And what need I to put you in mind of king Iohn his fauourable safe-conduct, whereby all forren merchants were to haue the same priuileges here in England, which our English merchants enioied abroad in their seuerall countreys. Or what should I signifie vnto you the entercourse of league and of other curtesies betweene king Henry the third, and Haquinus king of Norway; and likewise of the free trade of merchandise between their subiects: or tell you what fauours the citizens of Colen, of Lubek, and of all the Hanse-townes obtained of king Edward the first; or to what high endes and purposes the generall, large, and stately Charter concerning all outlandish merchants whatsoever was by the same prince most graciously published? You are of your owne industry sufficiently able to conceiue of the letters & negotiations which passed between K. Edward the 2. & Haquinus the Noruagian king; of our English merchants and their goods detained vpon arrest at Bergen in Norway; and also of the first ordination of a Staple, or of one onely sited Martowntone for the uttering of English woolls & woollen fells, instituted by the sayd K. Edward last before named. All which (Reader) being thoroughly considered, I referre you then to the Ambassages, Letters, Traffiques, and prohibition of Traffiques, concluding and repealing of leagues, damages, reprisals, arrests, complaints, supplications, compositions and restitutiones which happened in the time of king Richard the 2. and king Henry the 4. between the said kings and their subiects on the one partie; and Conradus de Zolner, Conradus de Iungingen, and Vlricus de Iungingen, three of the great masters of Prussia, and their subiects, with the common societie of the Hanse-townes on the other partie. In all which discourse you may note very many memorable things; as namely first the wise, discreet, and cautelous dealing of the Ambassadors and Commissioners of both parts, then the wealth of the foresaid nations, and their manifold and most vsuall kinds of wares uttered in those dayes, as likewise the qualitie, burthen, and strength of their shipping, the number of their Mariners, the maner of their combates at sea, the number and names of the English townes which traded that way, with the particular places as well vpon the coast of Norway, as euery where within the sound of Denmark which they frequented; together with the inneterate malice and craftie cruelty of the Hanse. And because the name, office, and dignitie of the masters generall, or great Masters of Prussia would otherwise haue bene utterly darke and unknowne to the

greater

To the Reader.

greater part of Readers, I haue set downe immediatly before the first Prussian ambassage, pagina 144 a briefe and orderly Catalogue of them all, contayning the first originall and institution of themselves and of their whole knightly order and brotherhood, with the increase of reuenues and wealth which befell them afterwarde in Italy and Germany and the great conquests which they atchieued vpon the infidels of Prussia, Samogitia, Curland, Liefland, Lituania, &c. also their decay and finall ouerthrow, partly by the reuolt of diuers Townes and Castles vnder their iurisdiction, and partly by the meane of their next mightie neighbour the King of Poland.

After all these, out of 2. branches of 2. ancient statutes, is partly shewed our trade and the successe thereof with diuers forren Nations in the time of K. Henry the sixth.

Then followeth the true proceesse of English policie, I meane that excellent and pishy treatise de politia conseruatiua maris: which I cannot to any thing more sily compare, then to the Emperour of Russia his palace called the golden Castle, and described by Richard Chancellor pag. 238. of this volume: whereof albeit the outward apparence was but homely and no whit correspondent to the name, yet was it within so beautified and adorned with the Emperour his maiestickall presence, with the honourable and great assembly of his rich-attired Peers and Senatours, with an inualluable and huge masse of gold and silver plate, & with other princely magnificence; that well might the eyes of the beholders be dazeled, and their cogitations astonished thereat. For indeed the exteriour habit of this our English politician, to wit, the harsh and vnaffecte stile of his substantiall verses and the olde dialect of his wordes is such; as the first may seeme to haue bene whistled of Pans oaten pipe, and the second to haue proceeded from the mother of Euander: but take you off his vtmost weed, and behold the comelinesse, beantie, and riches which lie hid within his inward sense and sentence; and you shall finde (I wisse) so much true and sound policy, so much delightfull and pertinent history, so many lively descriptions of the shipping and wares in his time of all the nations almost in Christendome, and such a subtile discovery of outlandish merchants fraud, and of the sophistication of their wares; that needes you must acknowledge, that more matter and substance could in no wise be comprised in so little a room. And notwithstanding (as I said) his stile be vnpolished, and his phrases somewhat out of use; yet, so neere as the written copies would giue me leaue, I haue most religiously without alteration obserued the same: thinking it farre more convenient that himselfe should speake, then that I should bee his spokesman; and that the Readers should enioy his true verses, then mine or any other mans fained prose.

Next after the conclusion of the last mentioned discourse, the Reader may in some sort take a view of our state of merchandise vnder K. Edward the fourth, as likewise of the establishing of an English company in the Netherlands, and of all the discreet prouisoies, iust ordinations, & gracious priuileges contained in the large Charter which was granted for the same purpose.

Now besides our voyages and trades of late yeeres to the North and Northeast regions of the world, and our ancient traffique also to those parts; I haue not bene vnmindefull (so farre as the histories of England and of other Countreys would giue me direction) to place in the fore-front of this booke those forren conquests, exploits, and trauels of our English nation, which haue bene atchieued of old. Where in the first place (as I am credibly informed out of Galfridus Monumetensis, and out of M. Lambert his *Reynolds*) I haue published vnto the world the noble actes of Arthur and Malgo two British Kings. Then followeth in the Saxons time K. Edwin his conquest of Man and Anglesey, and the expedition of Pertus into Ireland. Next succeedeth Oother making relation of his doings, and describing the North Countreys, vnto his soweraigne Lord K. Ecfred. After whom Wolfstans Nauigation within the Sound of Denmark is mentioned, the voyage of the yong Princes Edmund and Edward into Sweden and Hungarie is recorded, as likewise the mariage of Harald his daughter vnto the Russian duke Ierusalem. Neither is that

To the Reader.

that Englishman forgotten, who was forced to traueile with the cruel Tartars into their Countrey; and from thence to beare them company into Hungary and Poland. And because those Northeasterne Regions beyond Volga, by reason of the huge deserts, the colde climate, and the barbarous inciuillitie of the people there inhabiting, were neuer yet thoroughly traueiled by any of our Nation, nor sufficiently known vnto vs; I haue here annexed vnto the said Englishmans traueile, the rare & memorable iournals of 2. Friers, who were some of the first Christians that traueiled farthest that way, and brought home most particular intelligence & knowledge of all things which they had seene. These Friers were sent as Ambassadors vnto the sauege Tartars (who had as then wasted and ouerrunne a great part of Asia, and had pierced farre into Europe with fire and sword) to mitigate their fury, and to offer the glad tidings of the Gospel vnto them. The former, namely Iohannes de Plano Carpini (whose iourney, because he roade sixe moneths poste directly beyond Boristhenes, did, I thinke, both for length and difficultie farre surpass that of Alexander the great, vnto the riuer of Indus) was in the yeere 1240 sent with the authoritie and commission of a Legate from Pope Innocentius the fourth: who passed through more garisons of the Tartars, and wandered ouer more vast, barren, and cold deserts, then (I suppose) an army of an hundred thousand good souldiers could haue done. The other, to wit, William de Rubricis, was 1253. by the way of Constantinople, of the Euxin sea, and of Taurica Cheronesus employed in an ambassage from Lewis the French King (waging warre as then against the Saracens in the Holy land) vnto one Sartach a great duke of the Tartars, which Sartach sent him forth with vnto his father Baatu, and from Baatu he was conducted ouer many large territories vnto the Court of Mangu-Can their Emperour. Both of them haue so well played their parts, in declaring what befell them before they came at the Tartars, what a terrible and vnmanerly welcoming they had at their first arriual, what cold intertainment they felt in traueiling towards the great Can, and what slender cheere they found at his Court; that they seeme no lesse worthy of praise then of pitie. But in describing of the Tartars Countrey, and of the Regions adiacent, in setting downe the base and sillie beginninges of that huge and ouerspreading Empire, in registering their manifolde warres and bloody conquests, in making relation of their hords and moouable Townes, as likewise of their food, apparell and armour, and in setting downe their vnnmercifull lawes, their fond superstitions, their bestiall liues, their vicious manners, their slavish subiection to their owne superiours, and their disdainfull and brutish inhumanitie vnto strangers; they deserue most exceeding and high commendation. Howbeit if any man shall obiect that they haue certaine incredible relations: I answer, first, that many true things may to the ignorant seeme incredible. But suppose there be some particulars which hardly will be credited; yet thus much I will boldly say for the Friers, that those particulars are but few, and that they doe not aouoch them vnder their owne names, but from the report of others. Yet farther imagine that they did aouoch them, were they not to be pardoned as well as Herodotus, Strabo, Plutarch, Plinie, Solinus, yea & a great many of our new principall writers, whose names you may see about the end of this Preface; euery one of which hath reported more strange things then the Friers between the both? Nay, there is not any history in the world (the most Holy writ excepted) whereof we are precisely bound to beleue ech word and syllable. Moreover sithens these two iournals are so rare, that Mercator and Ortelius (as their letters vnto me do testifie) were many yeeres very inquisitiue, and could not for all that attaine vnto them; and sithens they haue bene of so great accompt with those two famous Cosmographers, that according to some fragments of them they haue described in their Mapes a great part of those Northeasterne Regions; sith also that these two relations containe in some respect more exact history of those vnkownen parts, then all the ancient and newe writers that euer I could see mine eyes on: I thought it good; if the translation should chance to swerue in ought from the originals (both for the preseruation of the originals themselves,

To the Reader.

themselves, and the satisfying of the Reader) to put them downe word for word in that homely stile wherein they were first penned. And for these two rare iewels, as likewise for many other extraordinary courtesies, I must here acknowledge my selfe most deeply bounden unto the right reverend, graue, and learned Prelate, my very good lord the Bishop of Chichester, and L. high Almoner unto her Maestie, by whose friendship and meanes I had free acceſſe unto the right honor. my L. Lumley his stately library, and was permitted to copy out of ancient manuscripts, these two iournals and some others also.

After these Friers (though not in the next place), foloweth a testimonie of Gerardus Mercator, and another of M. Dec, concerning one Nicholas de Linna an English Franciscan Frier.

Then succeedeth the long iourney of Henry Earle of Derby, and afterward king of England into Prussia & Lithuania, with a brieſe remembrance of his valiant exploits againſt the Infidels there; as namely, that with the help of certaine his Associates, he vanquished the king of Letto his armie, put the ſayd king to flight, tooke and ſlew diuers of his captains, aduanced his English colour's vpon the wall of Vilna, & made the citie it ſelfe to yeeld. Then mention is made alſo of Tho. of Woodſtock his travel into Pruis, and of his returne home. And laſtly, our old English father Ennius, I meane, the learned, wiſſie, and profound Geoffrey Chaucer, vnder the perſon of his knight, doeth full iudicially and like a cunning Coſmographer, make report of the long voiajes and woorthie exploits of our English Nobles, Knights, & Gentlemen, to the Northren, and to other partes of the world in his dayes.

Neither haue we comprehended in this Volume, onely our Trades and Voiajes both new and old; but alſo haue ſcattered here and there (as the circumſtance of times would giue vs leaue) certaine fragments concerning the beginning, antiquities, and growth of the claſſical and warlike ſhipping of this Iſland: as namely, firſt of the great naue of that victorious Saxon prince king Edgar, mentioned by Florentius Wigornienſis, Roger Houeden, Rainulph of Cheſter, Matthew of Weſtmiſter, Flores hiſtoriarum, & in the libel of English policie, pag. 202. and 203. of this preſent volume. Of which Author ſome affirme the ſayd Fleet to haue conſiſted of 4800. others of 4000. ſome others of 3600. ſhips: howbeit (if I may preſume to gloze vpon the text) I verily thinke that they were not comparable, either for burthen, ſtrength, building, or nimble ſtirrage vnto the ſhips of later times, and ſpecially of this age. But howſoeuer it be, they all agree in this, that by meanes of the ſayd huge Fleet he was a moſt puiſſant prince; yea, and ſome of them affirm together with William of Malmesbury, that he was not onely ſoueraigne lord of all the Britiſh ſeas, and of the whole Iſle of Britaine it ſelfe, but alſo that he brought vnder his yoke of ſubiectiō, moſt of the Iſles and ſome of the maine lands adiacent. And for that moſt of our Nauigators at this time bee (for want of trade and praetiſe that way) either utterly ignorant, or but meanely full, in the true ſtate of the Seas, Shoalds, and Iſlands, lying between the North part of Ireland and of Scotland; I haue for their better encouragement (if any weightie action ſhall hereafter chance to drawe them into thoſe quarters) tranſlated into English a brieſe treatiſe called, A Chronicle of the Kings of Man. Wherein they may behold as well the tragical and dolefull hiſtorie of thoſe parts, for the ſpace almoſt of 300. yeeres, as alſo the moſt ordinarie and accuſtomed nauigations, through thoſe very ſeas, and amidſt thoſe Northweſterne Iſles called the Hebrides, ſo many hundred yeeres agoe. For they ſhall there read, that euen them (when men were but rude in ſea-cauſes in regard of the great knowledge which we now haue) firſt Godredus Crovan with a whole Fleet of ſhips, thoroughly haunted ſome places in that ſea: ſecondly, that one Ingemundus ſetting ſaile out of Norway, arrived vpon the Iſle of Lewis: the, that Magnus the king of Norway came into the ſame ſeas with 160. ſailes, and hauing ſubdued the Orkney Iſles in his way, paſſed on in like conquering maner, directing his courſe (as it ſhould ſeeme) euen through the very midſt, and on all ſides of the Hebrides, who

To the Reader.

who sailing thence to Man, conquered it also, proceeding afterward as farre as Anglesey; and lastly crossing over from the Isle of Man to the East part of Ireland. Yea, there they shall read of Godredus the sonne of Olauus his voyage to the king of Norway, of his expedition with 80 ships against Sumerledus, of Sumerled his expedition with 53 ships against him; of Godred his slight and second journey into Norway; of Sumerled his second arrival with 160. shippes at Rhinfrin upon the coast of Man, and of many other such combates, assaults, & voyages which were performed onely upon those seas & Islands. And for the bringing of this woorthy monument to light, we doe owe great thanks unto the iudiciall and famous Antiquarie M. Camden. But sithens we are entred into a discourse of the ancient warrelike shipping of this land, the Reader shall giue me leaue to borrow one principall note out of this little historie, before I quite take my leaue thereof: and that is in few words, that K. Iohn passed into Ireland with a Fleet of 500. sailes; so great were our sea-forces euen in his time. Neither did our shipping for the warres first begin to flourish with king Iohn, but long before his dayes in the reign of K. Edward the Confessor, of William the Conqueror, of William Rufus and the rest, there were diuers men of warre which did valiant seruice at sea, and for their paines were royally rewarded. All this and more then this you may see recorded, pag. 17. out of the learned Gentleman M. Lambert his Perambulation of Kent; namely, the antiquitie of the Kentish Cinque ports, which of the sea-townes they were, how they were infranchised, what gracious priuileges and high prerogatiues were by diuers kings vouchsafed vpon them, and what seruices they were tied vnto in regard thereof; to wit, how many ships, how many souldiers, mariners, Garsons, and for how many dayes each of them, and all of them were to furnish for the kings vse; and lastly, what great exploits they performed vnder the conduct of Hubert of Burrough, as likewise against the Well men, vpon 200. French ships, and vnder the commaund of captain Henry Pay. Then haue you, pag. 117. the franke and bountifull Charter granted by king Edward the first, vpon the foresayd Cinque portes: & next thereunto a Roll of the mightie fleet of seuen hundred ships which K. Edward the third had with him vnto the siege of Calcis: out of which Roll (before I proceed any further) let me giue you a double obseruation. First, that these ships, according to the number of the mariners which were in all 14151. persons, seeme to haue bene of great burthen; and secondly, that Yarmouth an hauentowne in Northfolke (which I much wonder at) set forth almost twise as many ships and mariners, as either the king did at his owne costs and charges, or as any one citie or towne in England besides. Howbeit Tho. Wallingham maketh plaine and euident mention of a farre greater Fleet of the same king; namely, of 1100. shippes lying before Sandwich, being all of them sufficiently well furnished. Moreouer, the Reader may behold, pag. 186. a notable testimonie of the mightie ships of that valiant prince king Henry the 5. who (when after his great victory at Agincourt the Frenchmen to recouer Harflew had hired certaine Spanishe and Italian ships and forces, & had vntied their owne strength vnto them) sent his brother Iohn duke of Bedford to encounter them, who bidding them battell, got the victory, taking some of their ships, and sinking others; and putting the residue to dishonorable flight. Likewise comming the next yeere with stronger powers, and being then also overcome, they were glad to conclude a perpetuall league with K. Henry; & propter eorum naues (saith mine Author) that is, for the resistance of their ships, the sayd king caused such huge ships to be built, quales non erant in mundo, as the like were not to be found in the whole world besides.

But to leaue our ancient shipping, and descend vnto later times; I thinke that neuer was any nation blessed of I E H O V A H, with a more glorious and wonderfull victory vpon the Seas, then our vanquishing of the dreadfull Spanishe Armada, 1588. But why should I presume to call it our vanquishing; when as the greatest part of them escaped vs, and were onely by Gods out-stretched arme overwhelmed in the Seas, dashed in pieces against the Rockes, and made fearefull spectacles and examples of his iudgements vnto all

Christendome. An excellent discourse whereof, as like wise of the honourable expedition under two of the most noble and valiant peeres of this Realme, I meane, the renowned Erle of Essex, and the right honorable the lord Charles Howard, lord high Admirall of England, made 1596. vnto the strong citie of Cadiz, I haue set downe as a double epiphonema to conclude this my first volume withall. Both of which, albeit they ought of right to haue bene placed among the Southerne voyages of our nation: yet partly to satisfie the importunitie of some of my special friends, and partly, not longer to deprive the diligent Reader of two such woorthy and long-expecte'd discourses; I haue made bold to straine a litle curtisie with that methode which I first propounded vnto my selfe.

And here had I almost forgotten to put the Reader in mind of that learned and Philosophical treatise of the true state of Ireland, and so consequently of the Northren Seas & regions lying that way: wherein a great number of none of the meaneest Historiographers and Cosmographers of later times, as namely, Munster, Gemma Frisius, Zieglerus, Krantzius, Saxo Grammaticus, Olaus Magnus, Peucerus and others, are by euident arguments conuinc'd of manifold errors: that is to say, as touching the true situation and Northerly latitude of that Island, and of the distance thereof from other places; touching the length of dayes in Sommer and of nights in Winter, of the temperature of the land and sea, of the time and maner of the congealing, continuance, and thawing of the Ice in those Seas, of the first Discouerie and inhabiting of that Island, of the first planting of Christianitie there, as likewise of the continuall flaming of mountains, strange qualities of fountains, of hel-mouth, and of purgatorie which those authors haue fondly written and imagined to be there. All which treatise ought to bee the more acceptable; first in that it hath brought sound trueth with it; and secondly, in that it commeth from that farre Northren climate which most men would suppose could not afford any one so learned a Patrone for it selfe.

And thus (friendly Reader) thou seest the brieft summe and scope of all my labours for the common-wealths sake, and thy sake, bestowed vpon this first Volume: which if thou shalt as thankfully accept, as I haue willingly and freely imparted with thee, I shall bee the better encouraged speedily to acquaint thee with those rare, delightfull and profitable histories, which I purpose (God willing) to publish concerning the Southerne and Western partes of the World.

* *

¶ Postscriptum.

Not knowing any other place so conuenient, I am here to aduertise the friendly Reader of certaine fautes escaped in the printing of this booke, and to request him that in the Page 54. and in the last line saue two, hee would in stead of Kine, read Swine, and he shall thereby auoid a great contradiction: likewise pag. 187. that hee would vnto the ende of the second verse of the Prologue to the English Policy, make supply of the word Rest, which is there wanting: also pag. 221. line 29. for woorthinesse read woorthies, &c. Other faults (if there bee any) are (I doubt not) easily corrigible.



ΠΟΝΗΜΑ ΡΙΧΑΡΔΟΥ ΤΟΥ ΑΚΑΤΙΤΟΥ,
T'was o' Berysards.

Ὁ Ἰσχυρὸς ἔχει βρωτὸν ἐν τῇ καρδίᾳ αὐτοῦ
 αἰς θύλακας ἐν ἡμέρᾳ χάριτος φθοῖς.
 Ὁ δὲ ὁπλίσθη ἀπὸ ματιᾶς ἐπὶ πλῆξιν,
 ἡμὲς μὲν οὐκ ἀνέχασται ἐπὶ.
 Ἐξ ἡμέρας βρωτὸς αὐτοῦ, ἀλλὰ χορδίστη ἰσχυρὸς.
 Ἰδὲ μὲν ἀνέβη εἰς τὰ πόλιν αὐτοῦ.
 Ἦν δὲ ἰσχυρὸς ἐν ἡμέρᾳ, ἀνδρῶν τε,
 καὶ Μάρκων, οἱ πάντες ἰσχυροὶ αὐτοῦ.
 Τότε δ' ἦν καὶ οἱ καὶ οἱ κληροῖ, κληροῖ Ἀλφειῶν
 ῥοῆς ἀνέβησαν, καὶ αὐτὸν ἐπὶ ἰσχυρὸν.

Anglia magnarum fecunda puerpera rerum,
sine solum species nobile, sine salus;
Quæ quantum sumptu se nobiliter armis,
sive domi gesserit prælia, sine foris;
Mulatorum celebrans matura volumina: tanta
Insula materiem parvula laudis alit.

At se in quos, qualisq; & quando effunderis oras,
qua fides, ignotum peruia clasu iter,
Soliis Hakluyti decus est, praeiuncte penna
ostendisse suis ciuibus ausa mari.
Quaecunque idcirco celeri gens Anglica nauis,
Oceanis tristis spernere doctamina,
A prima generisq; & gentis origine gessit,
qua via per fluctus illa patere potest,
Sine decus, laudemq; secuta, ut & hostibus alas
demergit, atque suis lata pararet opes.
Hoc opus Hakluyti, cui debet patria multum,
cui multum, patrie & quicquid amicus erit,
Quare namque magis se nostra Britannia iactat,
quam quod sit prae cetera classe potens?
Quam prius obseffam tenebris sit libera, ut nunc
quique sciat, quam sit nobilis clasfis opus.
Quam si Dediticē utemur, surgemus in altum,
sin autem te raris, quod vides, equor habes.

RICH. MVLCASTER.

Ejusdem in eundem.

*Q*ui gravi primus cecinit camæna
Aureum vellus procerèque Græcos,
quos sibi adiunxit comites lafor

Vectus in Argo

*Naue, quam primum secuisse fluctus
prædicant falsos, sibi comparatis*

Inde non unquam morisura magna
pramia fama.

Tanta si merces calamum secuta
Vnica manu referentis acta,
Quanta Richardum manes Hakluytum
gloria? cuius

Penna descripsit freta mille, mille
Insula nostra celeres carinas,
Qua per immensi loca pervolarunt
omnia mundi.

Senties gratam patriam, suamque
Laudis aeternam memorem, & laboris:
Qua tua cura, calamoque totum
ibis in orbem:

Quam doces omni studio fovere
Nauticum robur, validamque classem.
Hac luct quisque violentus Anglos
vsseris hostis.

¶ In eximium opus R. HAKLUYTI de Anglorum
ad disiunctissimas regiones navigationibus GVLIELMI
CAMDENI Hexastichon.

Anglia quæ penitus toto discluditur orbe,
Angulus orbis erat, parvus & orbis erat.
Nunc cum sepositos alios detexerit orbes,
Maximus orbis honos, Orbis & orbis erit.
At quid Haklute tibi monstranti hæc debeat orbis?
Laus tua, crede mihi, non erit orbe minor.

¶ DI MARC' ANTONIO PIGA-
feta Gentilhuomo Vicentino.

I Gnota mi starei, con poco honore
Sepolta nell' oscure, antiche carte,
S' alcun de' figli miei con spesa & arte
Non hauesse hior scoperto il mio splendore.
Ramusio pria pieno d' ardente amore
Manifesto le mie piu ricche parte,
Che son la doue il Mar agnion di parte,
E doue il Negro allaga, e'l Gange scorre.
Hakluyto poi senza verun risguardo
Di fatica o di danno accolto ha insieme,
Cio che ha potuto hauer da typhi Inglesti.
Onde vedrassi e doue bella sguardo,
E la Divina agghiaccia, e l' Obi fremo,
Et altri membri miei non ben palesti.



A Catalogue of the Voyages of this first volume, made to the North and Northeast quarters.

- 1  He voyage of *Arthur K. of Britaine* to *Island* and the most Northeastern parts of Europe, Anno 517. pag. 1.
- 2 The voyage of *Malgo* king of *Britaine* to *Island, Gotland, Orkney, Denmark* and *Norway*, Anno 580. pag. 3.
- 3 The conquest of the *Isles of Anglesey* and *Man* by *Edwin* the *Saxon* king of *Northumberland*, Anno 624. 6.
- 4 The voyage of *Bertus* into *Ireland*, Anno 684. 3.
- 5 The voyage of *Olber* to the North parts beyond *Norway* about the yeere 890. 4.
- 6 The second voyage of *Olber* into the Sound of *Denmarke*. 4.
- 7 *Wolstans* Navigation into the East sea, or the Sound of *Denmarke*. 5.
- 8 The voyage of *King Edgar* with 4000. shippes round about his large Monarchie, Anno 973. 6.
- 9 The voyage of *Edmund* and *Edward* the sonnes of *King Edmund Ironside*, into *Hungary*, Anno 1017. 6.
- 10 The marriage of the daughter of *Harald* vnto *Iernslans* duke of *Russia* in his owne Countrey, Anno 1067. 9.
- 11 The voyage of a certaine *Englishtman* into *Tartaria*, and from thence into *Poland* and *Hungary*, Anno 1243. 16.
- 12 The long and wonderfull voyage of *Frier Iohn de Plano Carpini*, Anno 1246. 21, 37, 53.
- 13 The iournall of *Frier William de Rubricis*, Anno 1253. 71, 93.
- 14 The voyage of *Nicolans de Linna* a *Franciscan* Frier, and an excellent Mathematician of *Oxford* to all the Regions situate vnder the North-pole, Anno 1360. 121.
- 15 The voyage of *Henry Earle of Derby*, afterward King of *England*, into *Prussia* and *Letto*, Anno 1390. 122.
- 16 The voyage of *Thomas* of *Woodstock* duke of *Glocester* into *Prussia*, Anno 1391. 123.
- 17 The voyage of *sir Hugh Wloughby* knight, wherein he vnfortunatly perished at *Arzina Roca* in *Lapland*, Anno 1553. 232.
- 18 The voyage of *Richard Chancellor* *Pilote maior*, the first discoverer by sea of the kingdome of *Moscouia*, Anno 1553. 237, 243.
- 19 The voyage of *Stephen Burrough* toward the *Riuer of Ob*, intending the discovery of the Northeast passage, Anno 1556. 274.
- 20 The landing of *Richard Iohnson* among the *Samoeds*, Anno 1556. 283.
- 21 The voyage of the aforesaide *Stephen Burrough* from *Colmogro* in *Russia* to *Wardbouse*, in search of certaine *Englisb* ships not heard-of the yeere before, Anno 1557. 290.
- 22 The voyage of *M. Anthony Ienkinson* into *Russia*, wherein *Osep Napea*, first Ambassadour from the Emperour of *Moscouia* to *Queene Mary*, was transported into his Countrey, Anno 1557. 310, 314.
- 23 The voyage of *M. Anthony Ienkinson* from the Citie of *Mosco* in *Russia* to *Baghar* in *Barbaria*, Anno 1558. 324.
- 24 The voyage of *M. Anthony Ienkinson* through *Russia*, and ouer the *Caspian* sea into *Persia*, Anno 1561. 343.
- 25 The voyage of *Thomas Alcock*, *George Wrenne*, and *Richard Cheynes*, seruants vnto the Company of *Moscow* Merchants in *London*, into *Persia*, Anno 1563. 353.
- 26 The voyage of *Richard Iohnson*, *Alexander Kuchin*, and *Arthur Edwards* seruants to the foresaid company into *Persia*, Anno 1565. 354.
- 27 The voyage of *Thomas Southam* and *Iohn Sparke* by land and riuer from *Colmogro* to *Nongrod* in *Russia*, Anno 1566. 365.
- 28 The voyage of *M. Anthony Ienkinson* into *Russia* the third time, Anno 1566. 372.

The

A Catalogue of the Ambassages,

- 29 The voyage of *Arthur Edwards* Agent for the *Moscow* company, *John Sparke, Lawrence Chipman, Christopher Fances*, and *Richard Pingle*, servants, into *Persia*, Anno 1568. 389.
- 30 The voyage of *Thomas Banister* and *Geffrey Ducker*, Agents for the *Moscow* Company, into *Persia* the sixt time, Anno 1569. 394.
- 31 The voyage of *William Burrough* Captaine of 13. *English* ships to the *Narrein* *Island*, Anno 1570. 401.
- 32 The voyage of *M. Anthony Jenkinson* into *Russia* the fourth time, Anno 1571. 403.
- 33 The voyage of *Christopher Burrough* into *Persia* the sixt time, Anno 1579. 419.
- 34 The voyage of *Arthur Pet* and *Charles Lackman*, sent to discover the North-east seas beyond the *Iland of Vaigatz*, Anno 1580. 445.
- 35 The voyage of *Master Jerome Florsey* over land from *Mosco* in *Russia* to *England*, Anno 1584. 469, 470.
- 36 A voyage to the North-east, performed by certaine *Russers*, and translated out of *Sigismundus ab Herberstein*. 492.
- 37 A voyage to *Siberia* and the *River of Ob*, by land, declared in a letter written to *Gerardus Mercator*. 510, 511, & 512.
- 38 The vanquishing of the *Spanish Armada*, Anno 1588. 591.
- 39 The honourable voyage to *Cadiz*, Anno 1596. 607.



The Ambassages, Treatises, Priviledges, Letters, and other obseruations, depending vpon the Voyages of this first Volume.

- 1  *W*estimonies of *Galtridus Monumetensis* in his history of the *Kings* of *Brittaine*, concerning the conquests of *King Arthur*. pagina. 1.
- 2 A testimony of *M. Lambard* in his *Aggones*, touching the right and appendances of the *Crowne* of the *kingdome* of *Brittaine*. pag. 2.
- 3 A *Chronicle* of the *Kings* of *Man*, taken out of *M. Camdens Chorographie*. 10.
- 4 The ancient state of the shipping of the *Cinque Ports*. 17.
- 5 *Libellus* historicus *Iohannis de Plano Carpinii*. 21.
- 6 Part of the great *Charter* graunted by *King Edward the first*, to the *Barons* of the *Cinque Ports*. 117.
- 7 The rolle of the huge *Fleete* of *Edward the thirde* before *Caleis*. 118.
- 8 The summe of expences layde out in the sieg e of *Caleis*. 121.
- 9 A note of *Thomas Walsingham* touching *King Edward the thirde* his huge *Fleete* of 1100. *ships*, where he passed over unto *Caleis*, Anno 1359. 121.
- 10 Certaine verses of *Geffrey Chaucer*, concerning the long Voyages, and valiant exploits of the *English knights* in his dayes. 124.
- 11 A testimonie out of *Cornelius Tacitus*, proving *London* to haue bene a famous *Mart. towne* in the raigne of *Nero* the *Emperour*. 124.
- 12 A testimony out of *venerable Beda*, proving *London* to haue bene a *Citie* of great traffique in his time. 125.
- 13 The league betwene *Carolus Magnus* and *Offa King* of *Mercia*, concerning the safe trade of *English Merchants*. 125.
- 14 An ancient testimony translated out of the olde *Saxon Lawes*, coneyning the aduancement of *Merchants*, for their thrice crossing the wide seas. 126.
- 15 A testimony of certaine *Priviledges* obtained for the *English* and *Danish Merchants* by *Canutus* the *King* of *England*. 126.
- 16 The flourishing state of *Merchandise* in the *City* of *London* in the dayes of *Wilhelmus Magnus*. 127.
- 17 A testimony of the said *Wil. of Malmesbury* concerning traffique to *Bristow* in his time. 127.
- 18 The league betwene *Henry the second*, and *Frederick Barbarossa Emperour* of *Germany*, partly touching trade of *Merchandise*. 128.
- 19 A generall safe conduct granted by *King Iohn* to all *forreine Merchants*. 129.
- 20 The letters of *King Henry the third*, unto *Haquinus king* of *Norwey*. 129, 130.
- 21 A mandate for the king of *Norwey*, his ship called, *The Cog*. 130.
- 22 A *Char.*

Treatises, Privileges, Letters, &c.

- 22 *A Charter granted for the behalfe of the Merchants of Colen, in the 20. yeere of Henry the third.* 131.
- 23 *The Charter of Lubeck granted for seven yeeres in the time of Henry the third.* 131.
- 24 *A Charter of the Merchants of Almaine, or the Steylard-merchants.* 131, 132.
- 25 *A mandate of King Edward the first concerning outlandish Merchants.* 132.
- 26 *King Edw. the first his great Charter, granted to forreine Merchants, Anno Dom. 1303.* 133.
- 27 *The letters of Edward the second unto Haquinus King of Norway, concerning certain English Merchants arrested in Norway.* 133.
- 28 *Another letter of Edw. the second unto the said Haquinus for the merchants aforesaid.* 138.
- 29 *A third letter of King Edward the second to the said Haquinus in the behalfe of some English merchants.* 139.
- 30 *An Ordinance for the Staple to be holden at one certaine place.* 140.
- 31 *A Catalogue of the great Masters of Prussia.* 142, 143.
- 32 *The Oration or speech of the Ambassadors sent from Conradus de Zolner, Master generall of the land of Prussia, unto Richard the second, king of England.* 144.
- 33 *An agreement made by the Ambassadors of England and Prussia, confirmed by king Richard the second.* 148.
- 34 *The letters of Conradus de Iungingen, Master generall of Prussia, unto Rich. the second.* 150.
- 35 *A briefe relation of William Erturmy and Iohn Kington, concerning their Ambassages unto Prussia and to the Hans-towner.* 153.
- 36 *Certaine Articles of complaint exhibited by the Liouonians.* 154.
- 37 *Other complaints exhibited by the Cities of the Hans.* 156.
- 38 *Compositions and Ordinances concluded betweene the Ambassadors of Prussia, and the Chancellor and Treasurer of England, Anno 1403.* 156.
- 39 *The letters of the Chancellor and Treasurer of England unto Conradus de Iungingen, master generall of Prussia.* 157.
- 40 *The letters of king Henry the fourth unto Conradus de Iungingen, the master generall of Prussia for intercourse of traffique.* 158.
- 41 *The letters of Conradus de Iungingen unto king Henry the fourth.* 159.
- 42 *An agreement made betweene king Henry the fourth, and Conradus de Iungingen.* 160.
- 43 *An agreement betweene king Henry the fourth, and the Hans-towner.* 161.
- 44 *A testimonie out of Albertus Krantzius concerning the surprise of Bergen in Norway, wherein 21. houses of the English merchants were burnt.* 164.
- 45 *The grievances and offences whereat the merchants of the Hans found themselves agrieved.* 169.
- 46 *A letter of Henry the fourth king of England unto Conradus de Iungingen, Master generall of Prussia.* 171.
- 47 *A letter of Werneherus de Tettingen commander in Elbing unto sir William Sturmy Ambassador unto king Henry the fourth: Together with an other letter of king Henry the fourth, unto Vlricus de Iungingen, master of Prussia.* 175.
- 48 *The letters of Vlricus de Iungingen master generall of Prussia, signifying unto king Henry the fourth, that he was contented with certeine agreements concluded by his messengers at Hage.* 176.
- 49 *The letters of king Henry the fourth unto Vlricus de Iungingen, wherein he doth absolutely approve the foresaid conference holden at Hage.* 178.
- 50 *A new concord betweene king Henry the fourth, and Vlricus de Iungingen.* 179.
- 51 *A Charter of king Henry the fourth, granted in the fifth yeere of his raigne unto the English merchants resident in the parts of Prussia.* 180.
- 52 *A note touching the mighty ships of king Henry the fifth, taken out of a Chronicle in the Trinitie Church of Winchester.* 185.
- 53 *A branch of a Statute made in the eight yeere of Henry the 6. for the trade to Norway, Sweeland, Denmarke and Finmarke.* 185.
- 54 *Another branch of a Statute made in the 10. yeere of king Henry the sixth concerning the state of English merchants in the dominions of the king of Denmarke.* 186.
- 55 *Libellus de poliria conservatiua Maris. Or, The pollicy of keeping the Sea.* 186.
- 56 *A large Charter granted by king Edward the fourth, in the second yeere of his raigne, to the English merchants residing in the Netherland.* 187.
- 57 *A perswasion of Robert Thorne merchant of Bristol, and dwelling long in Siuill in Spaine, to king Henry the eighth of noble memory, to set out and further Discoveries toward the North.* 208.
- 58 *The discourse of the foresaid Robert Thorne, written to Doctor Leigh the Kings Ambassador in Spaine touching that matter.* 212.

A Catalogue of the Ambassages,

- 59 *A briefe treatise of the Emperour of Moscouia his genealogie.* 221.
- 60 *The excellent orders and instructions of Sebastian Cabot given to sir Hugh Willoughby and his Fleete in their voyage intended for Cathay.* 226.
- 61 *The names of the twelve Counsellors appointed in sir Hugh Willoughbys voyage.* 230.
- 62 *The letters of king Edward the sixth, written at that time to all the Kings, Princes, and other Potentates of the Northeast.* 230.
- 63 *The names of the Ships, Captains, Mariners, and other officers of that first worthy enterprise.* 232.
- 64 *The othe ministred to the Captaine of the Fleete.* 233.
- 65 *The othe ministred to the Masters of the ships.* 234.
- 66 *A testimonie of Richard Eden, concerning Clement Adams his discourse of Richard Chancellers voyage.* 242.
- 67 *The letters of the Emperour of Russia sent to king Edward the sixth, by Richard Chancellor.* 255.
- 68 *The coynes, weights, and measures used in Russia.* 256.
- 69 *The letters of King Philip and Queene Mary to Iuan Vasiliuich the Emperour of Russia.* 258.
- 70 *The Commission given to the merchants Agents resident in Russia.* 259.
- 71 *The othe ministred to the servants of the Moscouie company.* 262.
- 72 *The letter of George Killingworth the first Agent in Russia, written to the Company.* 263.
- 73 *The first Privileges granted by the Emperour of Russia, to the English merchants.* 265.
- 74 *The Charter of the merchants of the Moscouie company granted by Queene Mary.* 267.
- 75 *Instructions given to the Purfers of the Moscouie voyage.* 273.
- 76 *The strange discourse of Richard Iohnson concerning the Samoeds.* 283.
- 77 *A discourse of the honourable receiving into England of the first Ambassadeur from the Emperour of Russia.* 285.
- 78 *Instructions given to the Masters and Mariners of the ships of the Moscouie Company, sayling towards the Bay of S. Nicolas, Anno 1557.* 295.
- 79 *A letter of the Company of the Moscouie merchants unto their Agents, George Killingworth, Richard Gray, and Henry Lane in Russia.* 297.
- 80 *A letter of M. Thomas Hawtree to the Moscouie Companies Agent M. Henry Lane at Colmogro.* 302.
- 81 *A letter of M. Richard Gray, one of the first Agents of the Moscouie Company, to M. Henry Lane at Mosco.* 303.
- 82 *A letter of Thomas Alcock to M. Richard Gray and Henry Lane, Agents in Moscouia from Tirwill in Poland.* 303.
- 83 *A letter of M. Anthony Ienkinson upon his returne from Boghar to M. Henry Lane resident in Vologda.* 305.
- 84 *A letter of the Moscouie Company to their Agents in Russia, M. Henry Lane, Christopher Hudson, and Thomas Glouer, sent in their seventh voyage to S. Nicolas.* 305.
- 85 *Another letter to the aforesaid parties.* 308.
- 86 *The manner of Justice by lots in Russia, written by M. Henry Lane.* 309.
- 87 *The description of Russia, with the customes and manners of the inhabitants.* 315.
- 88 *Notes and observations gathered by Richard Iohnson of the severall wayes from Russia to Cathay over-land.* 335.
- 89 *A letter of Sigismund king of Polonia 1559. unto the Queenes most excellent Maiestie.* 337.
- 90 *The letters of the Queenes Maiestie written to the Emperour of Russia, requesting licence and safe-conduits for Anthonie Ienkinson, to passe through his dominions into Persia.* 338.
- 91 *The Queenes Maiesties letters to the great Sophie of Persia, sent by M. Anth. Ienkinson.* 340.
- 92 *Instructions given by the Governours and Assistants of the Moscouie Company, unto M. Anthonie Ienkinson.* 341.
- 93 *The privileges given by Obdoloucan K. of Hircania to the Company of English merchants trading in Russia, obtained by M. Anthony Ienkinson.* 352.
- 94 *Certaine letters of Arthur Edwards written out of Russia, Media, and Persia, to the Company of the Moscouie merchants in London.* 354, 355, 358, 361.
- 95 *The distance of divers places in Russia.* 363.
- 96 *The way and distances from S. Nicolas in Russia to the Caspian sea.* 364.
- 97 *An Acte for the corporation of merchants Adventurers for the discovering of newe trades, made in the eighth yeere of the Queenes Maiestie.* 369.
- 98 *The privileges granted by the Emperour of Russia to the English merchants, obtained by M. Anthonie Ienkinson.* 373.
- 99 *A letter of M. Henry Lane to M. Richard Hakluyt concerning the first Ambassage from the Russian*

Treatises, Privileges, Letters, &c.

100. A letter of her Maiestie, sent by Stephen Twerdico and Pheodara Pogorella, Messengers of the Emperour of Russia, unto their master. 374.
101. The Ambassage of M. Thomas Randolfe Esquier. from the Queenes Maiestie to the Emperour of Russia. 375.
102. The privileges granted to the English merchants, at M. Randolfe his sute. 376.
103. A Commission granted by M. Randolfe for a discovery to the Noribeast by sea. 378.
104. Instructions given to the discoverers for that action. 382.
105. Certaine letters in verse, written out of Moscouie, by M. George Turberuile, Secretary to M. Randolfe, touching the state of the Countrey, and manners of the people. 383.
106. Notes concerning the fourth English voyage into Persia. 384.
107. Observations of the Sophy of Persia, and of the Religion of the Persians. 392.
108. A letter of Richard Viscombe to M. Henry Lane touching the burning of the Citie of Mosco by the Crimme Tartar. 397.
109. The Ambassage of M. Anthony Ienkinson from the Queenes Maiestie to the Emperour of Russia, Anno 1571. 402.
110. A briefe rehearfall of all the tranaises of M. Anthony Ienkinson, touching a trade to be established in Lappia. 402.
111. A letter of Iamies Alday to M. Michael Locke Agent in London for the Moscouie Company. 411.
112. A note of all the necessary instruments and appurtenances belonging to the killing of the Whale. 412.
113. The deposition of William Burrough to certaine Interrogatories mooued unto him concerning the Narue and Kegor. 413.
114. The reasons of M. William Burrough to dissuade the use of a trade to the Narue by the way through Sweden. 414.
115. A remembrance of aduise given to the Moscouie merchants, touching a voyage for Colaba bone said. 416.
116. An Epistle dedicatorie unto the Queenes most excellent Maiestie, written by M. William Burrough. 416.
117. The Queenes Maiesties letters to Shaugh Thamas the great Sophy of Persia. 417.
118. The Latitudes and Meridian Altitudes of diuers places in Russia, from the North to the South. 418.
119. Directions given by M. Richard Hakluyt Esquire, to Morgan Hubblethorne Dier, sent into Persia. 431.
120. A Commission given by sir Rowland Heyward knight, and George Barne Aldermen, and governours of the Moscouie Company, to Arthur Pet and Charles Jackman, for the discovery by Sea towards Cathay. 432.
121. Rules and orders given to be observed by them in that Discovery. 433.
122. Briefe aduises given by M. Iohn Dee to that purpose. 435.
123. Instructions given them by Richard Hakluyt Esquire to that purpose also. 437.
124. The letter of Gerard Mercator to Richard Hakluyt of Oxford touching that discovery. 437, 438.
125. Instructions given by the Moscouie Company unto Richard Gibbs, William Biggat, Iohn Backhouse, &c. Masters of their ships. 443.
126. The opinion of M. William Burrough, sent to a friend requiring his iudgement for the fittest time of the departure of four ships toward S. Nicolas in Russia. 453.
127. The Queenes Maiesties Commission given to sir Ierome Bowes, authorizing him her highnesse Ambassadour with the Emperour of Moscouie. 455.
128. The Queenes Maiesties letters written to the Emperour by sir Ierome Bowes in his commendation. 455.
129. The discourse of the Ambassage of sir Ierome Bowes to the aforesaid Emperour. 457.
130. The manner of preferring suites in Russia. 458.
131. A letter of M. Henry Lane to M. William Sanderson merchant of London, conteyning a briefe discourse of all things passed in our Northren discoveries for the space of 33. yeeres. 463.
132. The most solemne and magnificent Coronation of Pheodor Iuanowich Emperour of Russia, set downe by M. Ierome Horley. 464.
133. The Privileges granted by the newe Emperour, to the English merchants, and obtained by the aforesaid Ierom Horley. 466.
134. The Ambassage of M. Giles Fletcher, Doctor of the Civil lawe, from her Maiestie, to the Emperour of Russia. 470.

A Catalogue of the Ambassages, &c.

- | | | |
|-----|--|-------------|
| 135 | A notable description of Kussia. | 475, &c. |
| 136 | A speciall note gathered by the excellent Venetian Cosmographer M. Iohn Baptista Ramusius, concerning the Northeast passage. | 475. |
| 137 | The Lord Boris Pheodorowich his letter to the right honourable William Burghley Lord high Treasurer of England. | 498. |
| 138 | The Queenes Maiesties letter to Pheodor Iuanowich, Emperour of Russia. | 499. |
| 139 | The Queenes Maiesties letters to the Lord Boris Pheodorowich. | 501. |
| 140 | The L. Treasurer sir William Cecil his letter to the Lord Boris Pheodorowich. | 502. |
| 141 | A letter of Pheodor Iuanowich to the Queenes Maiestie. | 502. |
| 142 | An other letter to the Queenes most excellent Maiestie from the Lord Boris Pheodorowich. | 503. |
| 143 | A second letter from the Lord Boris Pheodorowich to the L. William Burghley. | 504. |
| 144 | A most gracious letter of Privileges given to the English merchants by Pheodor Iuanowich. | 505. |
| 145 | The contents of M. Garlands Commission unto Thomas Simkinton for the bringing of M. Iohn Dee to the Emperour of Russia his Court. | 508. |
| 146 | A letter to the right worsh. M. Iohn Dee Esquier, conteyning the summe and effect of M. Garland his message. | 508. |
| 147 | A branch of a letter from Iohn Merick touching the death of Pheodor Iuanowich. | 509. |
| 148 | A learned Epistle written unto the famous Cosmographer M. Gerardus Mercator, concerning the Countreys, Rivers and Seas, towards the Northeast. | 510. |
| 149 | The honorable testimonies of diuers strangers touching the notable discoveries of the English, made in the North-east parts. | 513. |
| 150 | A brieve Commentarie of the true state of Island. | 515. & 550. |
| 151 | A letter written by the graue and learned Gudbrandus Thorlacius, Bishop of Hølen in Island, concerning the ancient state of Island and Gronland. | 590. |



THE

his flee
terwar
him, D
him, an
returne
space of

M
tem In
Gunnal

A
we
and a vic
king of I
way, and

A
tes q
Gotland



THE FIRST VOLUME OF THE
principall Nauigations, Voyages, Traffiques,
and Discoueries of the English nation, made to
the North and Northeast quarters of the World,
with the directions, letters, priuiledges, discourses,
and obseruations incident to the same.

Certaine testimonies concerning K. Arthur and his conquests
of the North regions, taken out of the historie of the Kings of
Britaine, written by *Galfridus Monumetensis*, and newly
printed at Heidelberge, Anno 1587.

Lib. 9. cap. 10.



Anno Christi, 517. Arthurus, secundo regni sui anno, subiugatis totius Hyberniz partibus, classem suam direxit in Islandiam, eamque debellato populo subiugauit, Exin diuulgato per ceteras insulas rumore, quod ei nulla Prouincia resistere poterat, Doldauus rex Gotlandiz, & Gunfacius rex Orcadum vltro venerunt, promissioque veltigali subiectionem fecerunt. Emenſa deinde hyeme, reuerſus est in Britanniam, statumque regni in firmam pacem renouans, quoram duodecim annis ibidem fecit.

The same in English.

In the yere of Christ, 517. king Arthur in the second yere of his reigne, hauing subdued all parts of Ireland, sailed with his fleet into Island, and brought it and the people thereof vnder his subiection. The rumour afterwards being spread thorowout all the other Islands, that no countrey was able to withstand him, Doldauus the king of Gotland, and Gunfacius the king of Orkney, came voluntarily vnto him, and yielded him their obedience, promising to pay him tribute. The Winter being spent, he returned into Britaine, and establishing his kingdome in perfect peace, he continued there for the space of twelue yeres.

Lib. 9 cap. 12.

Miſſis deinde in diuersa regna Legatis, inuitantur tam ex Gallijs, quam ex collateralibus Insulis Oceani, qui ad curiam venire deberent, &c. Et paulo post: Ex collateralibus autem Insulis, Guillaumurius rex Hyberniz, Maluasius rex Islandiz, Doldauus rex Gotlandiz, Gunnasius rex Orchardum, Lot rex Noruegiæ, Achilius rex Danorum.

The same in English.

After that king Arthur sending his messengers into diuers kingdomes, he summoned such as were to come to his Court, as well out of France, as out of the adiacent Islands of the sea, &c. and a litle after: From those adiacent Islands came Guillaumurius king of Ireland, Maluasius king of Island, Doldauus king of Gotland, Gunnasius king of Orkney, Lot the king of Norway, and Achilius the king of Denmarke.

Lib. 9 cap. 19.

At reges cæterarum Insularum, quoniam non duxerant in morem equites habere, pedites quot quisque debebat, promittunt, ita ut ex sex Insulis, videlicet, Hyberniz, Islandiz, Gotlandiz, Orchardum, Noruegiæ, atque Daciæ, sexies viginti millia essent annumerata.

The

The same in English.

But the kings of the other Islands, because it was not their custome to heere by horses, promised the king as many foot men, as every man was bound to send: so that out of the six Islands, namely, of Ireland, Island, Gotland, Orkney, Norway, and Denmarke, the king had fixe thousand souldiers to use him.

A testimonie of the right and appendances of the crowne of the kingdome of *Britaine*, taken out of *M. Lambard*his *A. perperula*, fol. 137. pag. 2.

Arthurus qui fuit quondam inclitissimus Rex Britonum, vir magnus fuit & animosus, & miles illustis. Parum fuit ei regnum istud, non fuit animus eius contentus regno Britannia. Subiugavit igitur sibi strenue Scantiam totam, quæ modo Norweia vocatur, & omnes insulas ultra Scantiam, scz. Islandiam, & Grenlandiam, quæ sunt de appendicijs Norweia, & Suechordam, & Hyberniam, & Gutlandiam, & Daciam, Semelandiam, Winlandiam, Curlandiam, Roc, Femelandiam, Wirelandiam, Flandriam, Cherelam, Lappam, & omnes alias terras & insulas Orientalis Oceani vsque Russiam (in Lappa scilicet posuit Orientalem metam regni Britannia) & multas insulas ultra Scantiam, vsque dum sub Septentrione, quæ sunt de appendicibus Scantia, quæ modo Norweia vocatur. Fuerunt autem ibi Christiani occultè. Arthurus autem Christianus optimus fuit, & fecit eos baptizari, & vnum Deum per totam Norweiam venerari, & vnam fidem Christi semper inuiolatam custodire, & suscipere. Ceperunt vniuersi proceres Norweia vxores suas de nobili gente Britonum tempore illo, vnde Norwegenses dicunt se exisse de gente & sanguine regni huius. Impetravit enim temporibus illis Arthurus rex à domino Papa, & à Curia Romana, quod confirmata sit Norweia, in perpetuum coronæ Britannia in augmentum regni huius, vocauitque illam dictus Arthurus Cameram Britannia. Hac verò de causa dicunt Norwegenses, se debere in regno isto cohabitare & dicunt se esse de corpore regni huius, scilicet de corona Britannia. Maluerunt enim manere in regno isto, quam in terra eorum propria. Terra enim eorum arida est, & montuosa, & sterilis, & non sunt ibi segetes nisi per loca. Ista verò opulenta est, & fertilis, & crescunt hic segetes, & cætera vniuersa. Quæ ex causa sæpius per vices gesta sunt bella atrocissima inter Anglos & Norwegenses, & interfecti sunt innumerabiles. Occupauerunt verò Norwegenses terras multas & insulas regni huius, quas adhuc detinent occupatas, nec potuerunt vnquam postea penitus euelli. Tandem modò confederati sunt nobis fide, & sacramento, & per vxores suas, quas postea ceperunt de sanguine nostro, & per affinitates, & coniugia. Ita demum constituit, & eis concessit bonus rex Edouardus propinquus noster (qui fuit optimus filius pacis) per commune consilium totius regni. Quæ de causa possent, & debent prædicti de cætero nobiscum cohabitare, & remanere in regno, sicut coniurati fratres nostri.

The same in English.

Arthur which was sometimes the most renowned king of the Britains, was a mightie, and a valiant man, and a famous warriour. This kingdome was too little for him, & his minde was not contented with it. He therefore valiantly subdued all Scantia, which is now called Norway, and all the Islands beyond Norway, to wit, Island and Greenland, which are appertaining unto Norway, Sweeland, Ireland, Gotland, Denmarke, Semeland, Windland, Curland, Roc, Femeland, Wireland, Flanders, Cherilland, Lapland, and all the other lands & Islands of the East sea, euen unto Russia (in which Lapland he placed the Easterly boundes of his Brittain Empire) and many other Islands beyond Norway, euen vnder the North pole, which are appendances of Scantia, now called Norway. These people were wild and sauage, and had not in them the loue of God nor of their neighbors, because all euill cometh from the North, yet there were among them certaine Christians liuing in secret. But king Arthur was an exceeding good Christian, and caused them to be baptized, and chozout all Norway to worship one God, and to receiue and keepe inuiolably for euer, faith in Christ onely. At that time all the noble men of Norway tooke viues of the noble nation of the Britaines, whereupon the Norfes say, that they are descended of the rare and blood of this kingdome. The aforesayd king Arthur obtained also in those dayes of the Pope & court of Rome, that Norway should be for euer annexed to the crowne of Britaine for the inlargement of this kingdome, and he called it the chamber of Britaine. For this cause the Norfes say, that they ought to dwell with vs in this kingdome, to wit, that they belong to the crowne of Britaine: for they had rather dwell here then in their owne native countrey, which is drie and full of mountains,

by hostes, promi-
f the six Islands,
ing had fixe store

owne of

& animosus, &
s regno Britan-
ur, & omnes in-
is Norweix, &
landiam, Cur-
& omnes alias
ntalem metam
quæ sunt de ap-
oi occultè. Ar-
per totam Nor-
re. Ceperunt
vnde Norwe-
temporibus illis
in perpetuum
Cameram Bri-
are & dicunt se
in regno isto,
lis, & non sunt
cetera vniuer-
Norwegienfes,
ulcas & insulas
euellit. Tan-
postea cepe-
& eis concessit
mune consili-
ohabitare, &

m mighte, and
is minde was
led Norway,
rtaining unto
nd, Roe, Fe-
os of the East
tish Empire)
ependances of
m the loue of
among them
an, and cau-
ue and keepe
ooke wines
ed of the rare
of the hope &
the inlarge-
Norfes say,
tune of Wy-
te and full of
mountaines,

Malgo and Edwin. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

3

mountaines, and barren, and no graine growing there, but in certeine places. But this countrey of Britaine is fruitfull, wherein coyne and all other good things do grow and increase: for which cause many cruell battels haue bene oftentimes fought betwixt the Englishmen and the people of Norway, and infinite numbers of people haue bene slaine, & the Norfes haue possessed many lands and Islands of this Empire, which vnto this day they doe possesse, neither could they euer after religion and sacraments, and by taking wiues of our nation, and by affinitye, and mariages. For so the good king Edward (who was a notable maintainer of peace) ordeined and granted vnto them by the generall consens of the whole kingdome, so that the people map, and ought from hencefoorth dwell and remaine in this kingdome with vs as our louting Cwyne byethzen.

A testimonie out of the foresayd *Galfridus Monumetensis*, concerning the conquests of *Malgo*, king of England. *Lib. 11. cap. 7.*

VOrtiporto successit Malgo, omnium ferè Britanniarum pulcherrimus, multorum tyrannorum depulsor, robustus armis, largior cæteris, & ultra modum probitate præclarus. Hic etiam totam Insulam obtinuit, & sex conprovinciales Oceani lufulas: Hyberniam videlicet, atque Islandiam, Gotlandiam, Orcades, Noru. giam, Daciam, adiecit dirissimis præliis potestati suæ.

The same in English.

MAlgo succeeded Vortiporius which was the goodliest man in person of all Britaine, a prince that expelled many tyrants. He was strong and vallant in warre, taller then most men that then liued, and exceeding famous for his vertues. This king also obtained the gouernment of the whole Island of Britaine, and by most sharpe battailes he recovered to his Empire the fixe Islands of the Ocean sea, which before had bene made tributaries by king Arthur, namely Ireland, Island, Gotland, Orkney, Norway, and Denmark.

The conquest of the Isles of *Anglesey* and *Man* by *Edwin* the Saxon king of *Northumberland* written in the second Booke and fift Chapter of *Beda* his Ecclesiasticall historie of the English nation.

EDuinus Nordanhumbrorum gentis, id est, eius quæ ad borealem Humbri fluminis plagam inhabitat, maiore potentia cunctis qui Britanniam incolunt, Anglorum pariter & Britonum populis præfuit, præter Cantuarios tantum, necnon & Menauias Britonum insulas, quæ inter Hiberniam & Britanniam sitæ sunt, Anglorum subiecit potestati.

The same in English.

EDwin king of the people of Northumberland, that is to say, of them which inhabit to the North of the riuer Humber, being of greater authoritie then any other potentate in the whole Isle of Britaine, bare rule as well ouer the English as the Britith nation, except onely the people of Kent: who also brought in subiection vnder the English, the Isles of Man and Anglesey, and the other Northwesterne Isles of the Britons, which are situate betwene Britaine and Ireland.

Another testimonie alledged by *Beda* to the same purpose. *Lib. 2. cap. 9.*

ANno ab incarnatione Domini sexcentesimo vicesimo quarto, gens Nordanhumbrorum, hoc est, ea natio Anglorum quæ ad aquilonarem Humbri fluminis plagam habitat, cum rege suo Eduino, verbum fidei (prædicante Paulino, cuius supra meminimus) suscepit: cui videlicet regi in auspiciis suscipiendæ fidei, & regni cœlestis potestas, & terreni creuerat imperij: ita ut (quod nemo Anglorum ante eum fecit) omnes Britanniarum fines, quæ vel ipsorum vel Britonum Prouinciæ habitabantur, sub ditione acceperit. Quin & Menauias insulas (sicut & supra docuimus) imperio subiugauit Anglorum. Quarum prior quæ ad austrum est, & situ amplior, & frugum prouentu atque vberrate felicitior, nongentiarum sexaginta familiarum mensuram, iuxta æstimationem Anglorum, secunda trecentarum & ultra spatium tenet.

The same in English.

In the yeere from the incarnation of our Lord, five hundred twenty and foure, the people of Northumberland, to wit, those English people which inhabit on the North side of the river of Humber, together with their king Edwin, at the Christian preaching and perswasion of Paulinus about mentioned, embraced the Gospel. Under which king, after he had once accepted of the Christian faith, the power both of the heavenly & of his earthly kingdome was enlarged; in so much, that he (which no English king had done before him) brought under his subiection all the provinces of Britaine, which were inhabited either by the English men themselves, or by the Britons. Moreover, he subdued unto the crowne of England (as we haue above signified) the Hebrides, commonly called the Westerne Islands. The principall whereof being more commodiously and pleasantly seated towards the South, and more abounding with joye then the rest, continueth according to the estimation of the English, roome enough for 960. families, and the second for 300. and about.

The voyage of Bertus, generall of an armie sent into Ireland by

Esfridus king of Northumberland, in the yeere of our Lord 684,

out of the 4. Booke and 26. Chapter of Bedas his
Ecclesiasticall Historie.



Anno Dominice incarnationis sexcentesimo octogesimo quarto, Esfridus rex Nordanhumbroꝝ, misso Hiberniam cum exercitu duce Bertu, vastauit miserè gentem innoxiam, & nationi Anglorum semper amicissimam, ita ut nec ecclesijs quidem aut monasterijs manus parceret hostilis. At intulani & quantum valere armis arma repellere, & inuocantes diuinæ auxilium pietatis cœlitus se vindicari continuis diu imprecationibus postulabant. Et quamuis maledici regnum Dei possidere non possint, creditum tamen est, quod hi qui merito impietatis suæ maledicebantur, oculis Domino vindice, pœnas sui reatus lucent.

The same in English.

In the yeere of our Lord 684, Esfrid the king of Northumberland sent capitaine Bert into Ireland with an armie, which Bert miserably wasted that innocent nation being alwayes most friendly vnto the people of England, in so much that the fury of the enemy spared neither churches nor monasteries. Howbeit the Islanders to their power repelled armes with armes, and craving Gods aid from heauen with continuall imprecations and curses, they pleaded for reuenge. And albeit cursed speakers can by no meanes inherit the kingdome of God, it was thought notwithstanding, that they which were accursed for their impiety did not long escape the vengeance of God imminent for their offences.

The voyage of Othier made to the Northeast parts beyond

*Normay, reported by himselfe vnto Alfred the famous
king of England, about the yeere 890.*



From time
by hunting &
fishing.

Othier said, that the countrey wherein he dwelt was called Helgoland. Othier tolde his lord king Alfred that he dwelt furthest North of any other Norman. He said that he dwelt towards the North part of the land toward the West coast: and affirmed that the land, notwithstanding it stretcheth marvellous farre towards the North, yet it is all desert and not inhabited, vnlesse it be very few places, here and there, where certeine Finnes dwell vpon the coast, who liue by hunting all the Winter, and by fishing in Summer. He said that vpon a certeine time he fell into a fantastie and desire to proue and know how farre that land stretcheth Northward, and whether there were any habitation of men North beyond the desert. Whereupon he tooke his voyage directly North along the coast, hauing vpon his strechboord alwayes the desert land, and vpon the leereboord the maine Ocean: and continued his course for the space of 3. dayes. In which space he was come as far towards the North, as commonly the whale hunters vse to trauell. Whence he proceeded in his course still towards the North so farre as he was able to saile in other 3. dayes. At the end whereof he perceived that the coast turned towards the East, or els the sea opened with a maine gulf into the land, he knew not how farre. Well he wist and remembered, that he was faine to stay till he had a Westerne winde, and somewhat Northerly: and thence he sailed plaine East along the coast still so far as he was able in the space of 4. dayes. At the end of which time he

The place whither
the whale
hunters tra-
uail.

was

the people of
of the river of
on of Paulinus
ed of the Cyri-
inasmuch, that
provinces of
ons. *Thyrsos*
des, common-
and pleasantly
according to
o, and about.

land by

4.

Ecfridus rex
vastruic min-
ani & quan-
ium pietatis
Et quamuis
ito impetra-

ere into Ire-
wapes most
er churches
and crawling
ge. And al-
with stan-
nce of God

ond

d. Other
Norman,
the West
lous farre
e very few
who live by
he fell into
whether
voyage di-
upon the
high space
thence
3. dapes.
ened with
at he was
ed plaine
time he
was

was compello againe to stay till he had a full northerly winde, so much as the coast bowed thence directly towards the South, or at least wile the sea opened into the land he could not tell how farre: so that he sailed thence along the coast continually full South, so farre as he could tra- uelle in 5. dapes: and at the fifth dapes end he discovered a mightie river which opened very farre into the land. At the entrie of which river he stayed his course, and in conclusion turned backe a- gaine, for he durst not enter therinto for feare of the inhabitants of the land: perceiving that on the other side of the river the countrey was thowowly inhabited: which was the first peopled land that he had found since his departure from his owne dwellings: whereas continually thowowt all his voyage, he had euermore on his leere boord, a wildernesse and desert countrey, except that in- vpon his leere boord was the maine ocean. The Viarmes had inhabited and tilled their countrey indifferently well, notwithstanding he was afrayed to go vpon those. But the countrey of the Ter- synnes lay all waste, and not inhabited, except it were, as we haue sayd, whereas dwelled certeine hunters, fowlers, and fishers. The Viarmes tolde him a number of stories both of their owne countrey, and of the countreyes adioyning. To witte, he knew not, nor could asseigne any thing for certeine truely: so much as he was not vpon land, nor saw any himselfe. This onely he iudged, that the synnes and Viarmes speake but one language. The principall purpose of his traueile this way, was to encrease the knowlege and discouerie of these coasts and countreyes, for the more commoditie of fishing of hysse whales, which haue in their teeth bones of great price and excellencie: whereof he brought some at his returne vnto the king. Their skinnes are also very good to make cables for shippes, and so used. This kinde of whale is much lesse in quantitie then other kindes, hauing not in length aboute seven elles. And as for the common kind of whales, the place of most and best hunting of them is in his owne countrey: whereof some be 48. elles of length, and some 50. of which sort he affirmed that he himselfe was one of the fire, which in the wealth of that countrey doeth consist. At the same time that he came to the king, he had of his owne byed 600. tame Deere, of that kinde which they call Rane Deere: of the which number 6. were still Rane Deere, a beast of great value, and marvellously esteemed among the synnes, for that with them they catch the wilde Rane Deere. He was among the chiefe men of his countrey one: and yet he had but 10. kine, and 10. swine, and that litle which he tilled, he tilled it all with boy- ses. Their principall wealth consisteth in the tribute which the synnes paye them, which is all in skinnes of wilde beasts, feathers of birds, whale bones, and cables, and tacklings for shippes made of whales or Seales skinnes. Euerie man payeth according to his abilitie. The richest pay 01. dinarily 15. calves of *Harterns*, 5. Rane Deere skinnes, and one Beare, ten bushels of feathers, a coat of a Beares skinne, two cables theescope elles long a piece, the one made of whales skin, the other of Seales.

He sayd, that the countrey of Norway was very long and small. So much of it as either bea- reth any good pasture, or may be tilled, lieth vpon the Sea coast, which notwithstanding in some places is very rockie and stonie: and all Eastward, all along against the inhabited land, lie wilde and huge hilles and mountaines, which are in some places inhabited by the synnes. The inhabi- ted land is broadest toward the South, & the further it stretcheth towards the North, it groweth euermore smaller and smaller. Towards the South it is peraduenture theescope miles in breadth or broader in some places: about the middell, 30. miles or above, and towards the North where it is smallest, he affirmeth that it pouteth not three miles from the Sea to the mountaines. The mountaines be in breadth of such quantitie, as a man is able to traueile ouer in a foynight, and in some places no more then may be traueiled in five dapes. Right ouer against this land, in the other side of the mountaines, somewhat towards the South, lieth Swethland, and against the same to- wards the North, lieth Queeneland. The Queenes sometimes passing the mountaines, invade and spoile the Normans: and on the contrary part, the Normans like wise sometimes spoile their countrey. Among the mountaines be many and great lakes in sundry places of fresh water, into the which the Queenes vse to carrie their boats vpon their backs ouer land, and thereby invade and spoile the countrey of the Normans. These boats of theirs be very litle and very light.

The voyage of Other out of his countrey of Halgoland into the
sound of Denmarke vnto a port called Hertha, which
seemeth to be Wismer or Roserke.

Other sayd that the countrey wherein he dwelled, was called Halgoland: and affirmed that
there was no man dwelling towards the North from him, from this countrey towards the
South

The river of
Dana of like
hlood.

A Desert coun-
treyp.
synnes.
Viarmes.
Tethyans.

The synnes
and Viarmes
speake one lan-
guage.
01. whales,
their teeth co-
mended.
Wile of 48. ells
of cables.

Size hundred
tame Deere.

The synnes
tribute.

Note.

Cables of
Whales and
Seales skinnes.

A description
of Norway.

The breadth of
the mountaines
of Norway.

Swethland.
Queeneland.

Boats caried
on mens backs.

*It is thought
it seemeth to
be about Eilen-
borg.*

*The description
of the found
of Denmarke,
Gotland,*

Vandals.

*Heha but two
dayes sailing
from Seland.
It seemeth to
be Wilmer of
Rokloke.*

*Within the
found of Den-
marke.*

South, there is a certaine port called Scirings hall, wherby, he sayth, that a man was not able to saile in a moneths space, if he lay still by night, although he had every day a full wind. And he shall saile all the way along the coast, hauing on his leereboord, first Iuland, and the Islands which lie betwixt this countrey & Iuland, till along the coast of this countrey, till he come to Scirings hall, hauing it on his larboord. At Scirings hall there entereth into the land a maine gulf of the Sea, which is so broad, that a man cannot see ouer it: and on the other side against the same, is Gotland, and then Silland. This sea stretcheth many hundred miles by into the land. From Scirings hall he sayd that he sailed in 5. dayes to the port which is called Heha, which lieth betwixt the countreies of Wendels, Saxons, and Angles, whereunto it is subiect. And as he sailed thitherward from Scirings hall, he had upon his leereboord Denmarke, and on his leereboord the maine sea, for the space of 3. dayes: and 2. dayes before, he arrived in Heha, he had Gotland on leereboord, and Silland, with diuers other Islands. In that countrey dwelt English men, before they came into this land. And these 2. dayes he had upon his leereboord the Islands that are subiect to Denmarke,

*Wolstans nauigation in the East sea, from Heha to Trusco,
which is about Danzig.*



Olstan sayd, that he departed from Heha, and arrived at Trusco, in the space of 7. dayes, and 7. nightes: during which time, his shippe kept her course continually vnder saile. All this voyage Wenedland was still upon his leereboord, and on his leereboord was Langland, Falser, and Sconie: all which countreies are subiect to Denmarke. Upon his leereboord also, was Bargaenland, which hath a priuate king, vnto whom it is subiect, hauing left Bargaenland, he passed by Blekingie, Meere, Eland and Gotland, hauing them on his leereboord: all which countreies are subiect to Sweden: and Wenedland was all the way upon his leereboord, until he came to Wixelmouth. Wixel is a very great riuer which runneth along betwixt Witland and Wenedland. Witland is appertaining to the Easterlings: and the riuer of Wixel runneth out of Wenedland into Eastmeere, which Eastmeere is at the least 25. miles in breadth. There runneth also another riuer called Iling from the East, and falleth into Eastmeere, out of another lake upon the banke, whereupon is situated Fruso. So that Iling comming out of Eastland, and Wixel out of Wenedland, fall both together into Eastmeere, and there Wixel becometh Iling of his name, and runneth thence West & North into the sea; wherof the place is called Wixelmouth.

*Wixel is the ri-
uer that falleth
into the sea by
Danzig.
It is, Prusia.*

*Fruso,
It is, Lithuania.*

*The description
of Eastland.*

*Shares milke a
cheefe byinke.*

Eastland is a very large land, and there be many cities and townes within it, and in every one of them is a king: wherby there is continually among them great strife and contention. There is great plenty of honey and fish.

The wealthiest men drinke commonly Shares milke, and the poore people and slaues meade. There is no ale byetwed among the Easterlings, but of mead there is plenty.

*The nauigation of King Edgar, taken out of Florentius
Wigorniensis, Houeden, and M. Dee his discourse of
the British Monarchie, pag. 54, 55, &c.*



Have often times (sayd he) and many wayes looked into the state of earthly kingdomes, generally the whole world ouer (as farre as it may be yet knowen to Christian men commonly) being a tangle of no great difficultie, but rather a purpose somewhat answerable to a perfect Cosinographer, to finde himselfe Cosmopolites, a citizen and member of the whole and onely one mysticall citie vniuersall, and so consequently to meditate of the Cosinopoliticall government thereof, vnder the King almighty, passing on very swiftly toward the most dreadfull and most comfortable terme preferred.

And I finde (sayd he) that if this Britissh Monarchie would heretofore haue followed the advantages which they haue had onward, they might very well, per this, haue surpassed by iustice, and goodly sort, any particular Monarchie els, that euer was on earth since mans creation: and that to all such purposes as to God are most acceptable, and to all perfect common wealths, most honorable, profitable, and comfortable.

But yet (sayd he) there is a little Locke of Lady Occasion slikering in the aire, by our hands to catch hold on, wherby we may yet once moze (before all be utterly past, and for euer) discretely and valiantly recover and enioy, if not all our ancient & due appurtenances to this Imperiall Britissh monarchie, yet at the least some such notable portion thereof, as (al circumstances duly and iustly appertaining

was not able to
not. And he shall
lands which lie
to Sciring's hall,
ulf of the Sea,
me, is Gotland,
in Sciring's hall
rewire the coun-
ed thitherward
the maine sea, for
a leetboord, and
they came into
to Denmarke,

Trufco,

in the space of
course continu-
erboord, and
all which coun-
Bargenland,
Bargenland, be
all which coun-
land, and we-
runneth out of
There run-
of another lake
land, and Wi-
fling of his
Vixelmouth.
in euery one
tion, There
maeade.

tius

actly king-
tween to Chri-
ter a purpose
Cosmopoli-
tinerfall, and
king almight-
red.

ted the ap-
by iustice,
on: and that
most hono-
ur hands to
creetly and
all Britiſh
y and iustly
appertaining

King Edgar. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

7

appertaining to peace & amitie with torem princes being offered & vied) this may become the most peaceable, most rich, most puſſant, & most flourishing monarchie of al els (this day) in childeſdomme. Peaceable, I ſay, euen with the moſt part of the ſelfe ſame reſpects that good king Edgar had (being but a Saxon) and by ſundry ſuch meanes, as he chiefly in this Empire did put in ppoſe and bye triumphantly, whereupon his ſurname was Pacificus, moſt aply and iuſtly. This peaceable king Edgar had in his minde about ſix hundred yeeres paſt, the repreſentation of a gre at part of the ſelfe ſame Idea, which ſcom aboue onely, & by no mans deſire hath ſtreamed downe into my imaginati- on, being as it becommeth a ſubieect carefull for the goodly proſperitie of this Britiſh Empire vnder our moſt peaceable Queene Elizabeth.

¶ 01, Edgarus pacificus, Regni ſui proſpiciens vtilitati, pariter & quieti, quatuor millia oſtin- gentas ſibi robuſtas cōgregauit naues ē quibus mille ducentas, in plaga Angliæ Orientali, mille ducentas in Occidentali, mille ducentas in Australi, mille ducentas in Septentrionali pelago cōſtituit, vt ad deſenſionem regni ſui, contra exterās nationes, bellorū diſcrimina ſuſtinerent.

Flores Histo-
rum.

¶ 02, Edgarus imperialis, moſt diligently to be imitated, videlicet, proſpicere, to foſeſe, & chari- table kingly parent, that was touched with ardent zeale, for procuring the publike proſite of his kingdome, yea and alſo the peaceable enioying thereof. ¶ 03, of an incredible maſſe of treaſure, a king- ly portion, yet, in his coffers remanynge: if then he had, (or late beſore) any warres, ſeeing no nota- ble care, or contribution publike is hiſtorically mentioned to haue bene for the charges leuied: if in peace he himſelfe flouriſhed ſo wealthily: ¶ 04, marvellous politicall, & princely pyudencie, in time of peace to foſeſe, and pꝛeuent, (and that moſt puſſantly, and inuincibly) all poſſible malice, fraude, force, and miſchiefe ſortain. ¶ 05, moſt diſcreet liberalitie to ſuch excellent vſes, potynge out his trea- ſure ſo abundantly. ¶ 06, faithfull Engliſh people (then,) and worthy ſubiects, of ſuch an Imperiall and goodly Gouernour. ¶ 07, your true, and willing beares, and bleſſed ready hands (then,) ſo to im- part ſuch abundance of victuals for thoſe huge Nauies maintenance: ſo (I ſay) as neither dearth of famine, ſeemed (ſoudly) to be feared of you, for any intolerable want likely to enſue thereby, nor prices of victuals complained of to be vneareſonable enhaunſed by you, ſubiding for their great ſales ſo good, and rare opportunitie.

This peaceable king Edgar, was one of the perfect Imperiall Monarches of this Britiſh Em- pire, and therefore thus his ſame remaineth (for euer) receyued.

Anglici orbis Baſileus, ſos, & Decus Edgarus, non minus memorabilis Angliſ, quā Cy- rus Perſis, Romulus Romanis, Alexander Macedonibus, Ariaces Parthis, Carolus Francis, Anno vitæ 37. Regni ſui cum ſacre, & poſt a. 1. Idibus Iulij obiit, & apud Glaſcon ſepeliur.

Charta Regie,
Henrici ſecundi.

¶ 08, Glaſtonbury, Glaſtonbury, the treaſurie of the carcaſes of ſo famous, and ſo many perſons (Quæ olim mater ſanctorum dicta eſt, & ab alijs, tumulus ſanctorum, quam ab ipſis diſci- pulis Domini, & diſcitatam fuiſſe venerabilis habet Antiquorum auctoritas) how lamentable is thy caſe now: howe hath hypocriſie and pride wrought thy deſolation: though I omit here the names of very many other, both excellent holy men, and mightie princes, whoſe carcaſes are com- mitted to thy cuſtody, yet that Apoſtolike Joſeph, that triumphante Britiſh Arthur, and vowe this peaceable and pyouidient Saxon king Edgar, doe force me with a certaine ſoywful reuerence, here to celebrate thy memoire.

This peaceable king Edgar (as by ancient Records may appeare) his Sommer progresſes, and perely chiefe paſſtimes were, the ſailing round about this whole Iſle of Albion, guarded with his grand nauie of 4000. ſaile at the leaſt, parted into 4. equall parts of petite Nauies, eche one be- ing of 1000. ſhips, for ſo it is anciently receyued.

Idem quoque Edgarus, 4000. naues congregauit, ex quibus omni anno, poſt feſtum Paſ- chale, 1000. naues ad quamlibet Angliæ partem ſtauit, ſic, æſtate Inſulam circum- nauigauit: hyeme verd, iudicia in Prouincia exercuit: & hæc omnia ad ſui exercitium, & ad hoſtium fecit terrorem.

Ranulphus Ce-
ſtreſia.

¶ 09, and would that peaceable & wiſe king Edgar, beſore need, as being in peace and quiet with all nations about him, and notwithstanding miſtruſting his poſſible enemies, make his paſſtimes ſo roſally, politicall, and triumphantly, with ſo many thouſand ſhips, and at the leaſt with ten times ſo many men as ſhips, and that perely: and ſhall we being not aſſured of ſuch neighbor's friendſhip, as may become to vs as cruel and tyrannicall enemies as neuer king Edgar needed to dread the like, and they as many and mightie princes, as neuer king Edgar coped with the like, ſhall we (ſaid he) not iudge it ſome part of wiſdome, to imitate carefully in ſome like proportion (though not with ſo many thouſands) the proſperous paſſtimes of peaceable king Edgar, that Saxonickall Alexander? yea, proſperous paſſtimes theſe may bee fully counted, by which he alſo made euident to the whole world, that as he wiſely knew the ancient bounds and limits of this Britiſh Empire,

ſo

so that he could and would royally, lustily, and triumphantly enjoy the same, since of the which, and manage the force of any foreign potentate. And at that, so highly and faithfully to the glory of God finally intended and brought to passe, as the wisest and goodliest persons and counsellors of those dayes (so counsed of and recorde) could best advise and direct him, or perchance, but sincerely commend and duefully encourage him in, he being of himselfe so bent, as purposing first inviolably to forsake the chiefe and uttermost walles of his Islandish Monarchie, against all foreigne enterprises and judgement, in perely viewing the same in every quarter thereof, and that as it were for his pastime Imperiall, also in Sommer time, to the ende that afterward in all securitie, hee might in Winter time (vacare) be at convenient leisure on land, chiefly to see forth Gods due honour, and secondly to understand, and diligently to listen to the causes and complaints of his commons. For as Mathias Westmonasteriensis of him to his Imperiall commendation hath left us a remembrance.

Habebat autem præterea consuetudinem, per omnes Regni provincias transire, ut intelligeret quomodo legum iura, & suorum statuta decretorum, à principibus observarentur, & ne pauperes à potentibus præiudicium passi, opprimerentur, diligenter investigare solebat: in vno fortitudini, in altero iustitiæ studens, & Reipub. regni que vilitati consulens in utroque. Hinc hostibus circumquaque timor, & amor omnium erga eum exercebat subditorum.

Thus we see how in oppositenesse, this peaceable Edgar procured to this Empire such prosperous securitie, that his true and faithfull subjects, all manner of wayes (that is at home and also at sea, both outward and inward) might peaceably, safely and securely employ their wits and travels for the marvellous enriching of this kingdome, and pleasuring very many other, carrying forth the naturall commodities of this land, abounding here about our necessary uses (and due store) reserved) and likewise againe furnishing the same with all necessary and not superfluous foreigne commodities, set from farre off foreign countreys. This was in deed (as before is recorde) a kingly providence, Reipub. Regniq; vilitati consulens, &c. besides with great vilitie and profite publique to seeke, and by his meanes enjoyed, he himselfe used most gladly the advantage of that securitie, in ministering of iustice, or causing the same to be executed all his kingdome over, not slemishly, frowningly or skynesfully spinning the ragged and tattered sleave of any suppliant, holding by to him a simple soiled bill of complaint or petition, and that homely contrived, or as they say, and timeously halting from the sickly pale face of feeble limbed suter, extremely constrained to to speake for himselfe, nor partially smothering his owne conscience, to favour or mainteine the soule saule and trespass unlaifull of any his subjects, how mightie or necessary soever, they (els) were, but diligently made search, least Pauperes à potentibus præiudicium passi, opprimerentur.

Thus did publique securitie frõ forein foe abroad, and true love of his owne subjects, garding him at home, and the heavenly spirit directing all his good purposes, cause iustice and equite in all quarters of this Albion to flourish. For which his peaceable and prosperous benesites at the eternal king his hand obtained, hee became not insolent or declined to tyrannicall regiment (as some princes in other countreys have made their lues Comico-tragical) but with all his force (aid innumerable sea force, abundant wealth, triumphant peace, with securitie and iustice over all his Monarchie prevailing, his heart was continually, and most zealously bent to see forth the glory, laude and honour of the Almighty Creator, the heavenly and everlasting king, by such principall and princely meanes, as (then) were deemed to God most acceptable, as many monuments yet to our eyes remaining, do of him undoubtedly testifie: As this, for one.

Alitonañtis Dei largisua clementia, qui est rex Regum, Ego Edgarus Anglorum Basileus omniumq; Regum, Insularum, Oceaniq; Britanniam circumiacentis, cunctarumq; nationum que infra eam includuntur, Imperator, & Dominus, gratias ago ipsi Deo omnipotenti, Regi meo, qui meum Imperium sic ampliavit, & exaltavit super regnum patrum meorum: quicquid Monarchiam totius Angliæ adepti sunt à tempore Athelstani (qui primus regnum Anglorum, & omnes Nationes, que Britanniam incolunt, sibi Armis subegit) nullus tamen eorum ultra eius fines imperium suum dilatare aggressus est. Mihi autem concessit propicia Diuinitas, cum Anglorum Imperio, omnia regna Insularum Oceani, cum suis ferocissimis Regibus, usq; Noruegiani, maximamq; partem Hyberniz, cum sua nobilissima Ciuitate Dublinia, Anglorum regno subiugare: Quos etiam omnes, meis Imperijs colare, & eius seruitum amplificare deuotus disposui, & per meos fideles Fautores, Dunstanum viz. Archiepiscopum, Athelwoldum, & Osvaldum episcopos (quos mihi patres spirituales, & Consultatores elegi) magna ex parte, secundum quod disposui, effeci, &c.

And

Ex charta foundationis Ecclesiæ Cathedralis Wigorniz.



cessu temp
Henrici in
Simonialer

the vntil, auu
gloze of God
elloso of those
but sincerely
flect inuinct.
the foreine eu-
s owne ouer-
as it were for
ie, hee might
due honour,
is common.
left vs a re-

vt intelli-
seruarentur,
destigare to-
licati consu-
eum excre-

such prospe-
and also ac
and trauels
fog; refer-
reine com-
kingly pro-
te publike
is securitie,
quemiſhly,
ſoing vp to
and time-
to ſpeake
ſoule fault
ere, but vi-

garding
curie in all
the eter-
(as ſome
ide inuun-
l his ſpo-
oy, laude
pall and
pet to our

Baſileus
q; natio-
omnipo-
rū meo-
primus
igit) nul-
concef-
ſum ſua
obilissi-
rijs col-
un exal-
dunſta-
res ſpi-

And

And againe this in another Monument.

Omnipotens Dei, &c. Ipſius nutu & gratia ſuffultus, Ego Edgarus Baſileus diſceſſu Inſularum Regionum, quicquid pace petruens, ſtudioſus tollit de laudibus creatoris omnium occupor addendis: Ne nunc inertia, noſtriſq; diebus (plus equo) ſeruitus eius tepeſcere videatur, &c. 18. mei terreni Imperij anno, &c. Anno Incarnationis Dominicæ, 973.

Ego Edgarus totius Albionis Baſileus hoc priuilegium (tanta roboratum autoritate) crucis Thaumate confirmaui.

Founda-
ſie Cathedra-
Eliensis.

So that by all theſe rehearſed Records, it is moſt euident that the peaceable king Edgar, was one of thoſe Monarchs, in whole hands (if life had ſufficed) the incredible value and priuledge granted by God and nature vnto this Britiſh monarchy, might haue bene peaceably purchaſed in ſuch ſort, as the very bleſſing and ſauour of the diuine Trinitie hath laide meanes for our induſtrie to attaine to, and enioye the ſame by.

And though ſundry other valiant princes and kings of this land I could recite, which in times paſt haue either by intenc gone about, or by wiſe and valiant exploit, haue meereſt well proſpered towards this Iſlandiſh appropriate ſupremacie attaining, yet neuer any other reaſonable meane was vſed, or by humane wit, or induſtrie can be contriued, to el purpoſes ſufficient, but only by our ſea forces preuailing, and ſo by our inuincible enioying al within the ſea limites of our Britiſh roy- altie contained.

To which incredible political myſterie attaining, no eaſier, readier, or perfecter plan and intro- duction, is (as yet) come to my imagination, then is the preſent and continuall ſeruiſe of theſe ſcore good and tall warlike ſhips, with twentie ſmaller barks, and thoſe 80. ſhips (great and ſmal) with 6660. apt men furniſhed, and all ſingularly well appointed for ſeruiſe both on ſea and land, ſaith- fully and diligently to be done in ſuch circumſpect and diſcreet order, as partly I haue in other pla- ces declared, and further (upon good occaſion offered) may declare.

This grand nauiſe of peaceable king Edgar, of ſo many thouſand ſhips, and they furniſhed with an hundred thouſand men at the leaſt, with all the ſmall intents of thoſe ſea forces, ſo inuincible, continually maintained, the order of the execution of their ſeruiſe, the good and Imperial ſucceſſe thereof, are in a manner kingly leſſons and propheticall encouragements to vs left, euen now to bee as pious for publike ſecuritie as he was, to be as ſkilful of our ſea right and royal limits, and wiſely to finde our ſelues as able to recouer and enioy the ſame as he was, who could not chuſe, but with the paſſing and peerleſſe ſaying about this Britiſh Albion, with all the leſſer Iſles next adiacent round about it, he could not chuſe I ſay, but by ſuch ſul and peaceable poſſeſſion, find him- ſelfe (according to right, and his hearts deſire) the true and ſoueraigne Monarch of all the Britiſh Ocean, enuiſoning any way his empyre of Albion and Ireland, with the leſſer Iſlands next adia- cent: with memoiall whereof, as with one very precious iewel Imperiall, hee adorne the title and crowne of his regalitie, as with the teſtimonie annexed of the ſtates and nobles of his Empyre, to com- mitte to perpetuall memoire, the ſtile of his chiefe worldly dignitie, in this very cenoz of worldes before allo remembred.

Ego Edgarus Anglorum Baſileus, omniumque Regum, Inſularum, Oceanique Britan- nium circumiacentis, cunctarumque nationum, quæ infra eam includuntur, Imperator, & Dominus.

And the
ſeruiſe royaltie
ouer the Briti-
ſh Ocean ſea,
round about
the Britiſh
Empire.

The voyage of Edmund and Edward the ſonnes of King Ed-
mund Ironſide into Hungarie, Anno D. 1017. Recorded
by Florentius Wigornienſis pag. 391.



Edict ſcilicet Eadricus Canuto regi, vt cliticulos Eadwardum & Eadmun- dum regia Eadmundi filios necaret. Sed quia magnum dedecus ſibi videba- tur, vt in Anglia perirentur, paruo elapſo tempore, ad regem Suauorum occidendos miſit. Qui, licet ſœdus eſſet inter eos, precibus illius nullatenus voluit acquieſcere, ſed illos ad regem Hungarorum Salomonem nomine mi- ſit nutriendos vitæque referuandos. Quorum vnus ſcilicet Eadmundus pro- ceſſu temporis ibidem vitam finiuit. Eadwardus verò Agatham filiam Germani Imperatoris ſimoniacalem, & Clitonem Eadgarum ſuſcepit.

An. Dom. 1017.

The

The same in English.

Edre counsellor king Kanutus to murder the yong princes Edward and Edmund the sonnes of King Edmund. But because it seemed a thing very dishonourable unto him to haue them put to death in England, hee sent them, after a short space, vnto the king of Sweden to be slaine. Who, albeit there was a league betwene them, would in no case condescend vnto Kanutus his bloody request, but sent them vnto Salomon the king of Hungarie to be nourished and persecuted aliuie. The one whereof namely Edmund in pcesse of time there deceased. But Edward receiued to wife Agatha daughter vnto the Germane Emperour Henry, of whom he begot Margaree the Queene of the Scots, and Christina a sūne, and Chlo Edgar.

A Chronicle of the Kings of Man, taken out of
M. Camdens Chorographie.

In the yeere of our Lord 1066, Edward King of England, of famous memory deceased, whom Harald sonne of Godwin succeeded in his kingdome; against which Harald the king of Norwaie called Harald Harfager fought a battell at Stainford bridge, where the English winning the feld put all the Norwegians to flight: out of which flight one Godredus firnamed Crouan (the sonne of Harald the blacke, who had before time fled out of Island) repaired vnto Godred sonne of Syrie, who then reigned in Man, and was right friendly and honourably entertained by him.

Fingal.

In the very same yeere William the Conquerour subdued England, and Godred the sonne of Syrie, king of Man, deceased, after whom succeeded his sonne Fingal.

In the yeere 1066, Godredus Crouan gathered a flecte of ships, and sailed vnto Man, and getting battell vnto the people of the countrey, was vanquished and put to flight. The second time also hauing gathered his armie and ships together, hee came vnto Man, fought with the inhabitants, lost the victorie, and was chased away. Yea, the third time hee assembled a great multitude, and comming by night vnto the port which is called Ramsa, his 300. of his men in a wood standing vpon the side of the hill called Scacafel. The Sunne was no sooner by, but the Mannians arranged themselves and with great furie set vpon Godred. And in the midst of the skirmish, the foresaid 300. men rising out of their ambush, and comming vpon the backs of the Mannians, molested them so sore, that they were enforced to flie. But when they saw they were overcome and had no place of refuge to retire vnto (for the tide of the sea had filled the channel of the river of Ramsa) and seeing the enemy so fiercely pursuing them on the other side, they which remained, with lamentable outcries beseeched Godred to spare their liues. Then hee being moued with compassion, and pitying their extreme calamitie, because hee had bene of late sustained with compassion among them, sounded a retreat and forbade his souldiers to make any longer pursuit. The day following Godred put his souldiers to their choice, whether they would diuide Man among themselves and inhabit it, or whether they would take the wealth of the countrey, and so returne vnto their owne home. Howbeit, it pleased them better to waite the whole Island and to enrich themselves with the commodities thereof, and so to returne from whence they came. Nowe Godred himselfe with a fewe Islanders which had remained with him, tooke possession of the South part of the Island, and vnto the remnant of the Mannians he granted the North part thereof, vpon condition, that none of them should at any time after ward dare once to challenge any parcell of the said ground by title of inheritance. Whereupon it cometh to passe, that vnto this day the whole Island is the kings owne fee-simple, and that all the reuenues thereof pertaine vnto him. Also Godredus subdued Dublin vnto himselfe a great part of Laineir. And he so tamed the Scots, that none of them durst build a ship or a boate, with aboue thre yron nails in it. Hee reigned 16. yeeres and died in the Island called Yle. He left behinde him thre sones, Lagman, Harald, and Olauus, Lagman being the eldest challenged the kingdome and reigned seuen yeeres. Howbeit Harald his brother rebelled against him a long time, but being at length taken by Lagman, hee was greiv and had his eyes put out. Afterward Lagman repenting him that he had put out the eyes of his brother, did of his owne accord relinquish his kingdome, and taking vpon him the badge of the crosse, he went on pilgrimage to Jerusalem, in which iourney also he died.

In the yeere 1075. all the principall men of the Islands hauing intelligence of the death of Lagman, sent messengers vnto Murecardus O'Brien King of Ireland, requesting him that he would send some well-disposed person of his owne kinred and blood royall, untill Olauus sonne of Godred

Boats hauing
not past thre
yron nails in
them.

und the sonnes
him to haue them
den to be slaine.
into Canuus his
ed and preferred
Edward recei-
begot Margaret

of famous me-
his kingdom;
flager fought a
eloe put all the
ained Crouan
f Island) repai-
and was right

d the sonne of

o Man, and gr-
e second time
th the inhabi-
at multitude,
a wood slau-
the Mannians
skinnish, the
annians, mo-
uer come and
iter of Ram-
ined, with la-
with compas-
nourished a
The day fol-
mong them-
ecurue vnto
enrich them-
the Godred
South part
of, vpon con-
ll of the said
y the whole
him. Also
the Scots,
reigned 16.
Harald, and
Howbeit
gman, hee
ut the eyes
e badge of

he death of
ill that hee
s sonne of
Godred

Godred were come to full age. The king most willingly condescended vnto their request, and sent vnto them one Dopnald the sonne of Tade, charging and commaunding him that with all meekenesse and modestie, hee should gouerne that kingdome, which of right belonged not vnto him. Howbeit he, after he had once attained vnto the kingdome, neglecting the commaundement of his lord, vsurped the gouernment with great tyrannie, committing many heinous crimes, and so he reigned very disorderly for the space of thre yeeres. Then all the princes of the Islands making a generall conspiracie, banded themselves against him, and expelled him out of their dominions. And he flying into Ireland returned no more vnto them.

In the yeere 1077. one Ingemundus was sent from the king of Norway, to take possession of the kingdome of the Islands. And being come vnto the Island of Leodus, hee sent messengers vnto all the princes of the Islands to come vnto him, commaunding them to assemble themselves, and to appoint him to be their King. In the meane season he and his companions spent their time in robbing and rioting, rauished women and virgines, and addicted themselves to filthy pleasures and to the lusts of the flesh. And when these things were reported vnto the princes of the Islands, who had assembled themselves to chuse him king, being mightily incensed thereat, they made haste towards him, and coming vpon him in the night, they burnt the house wherein hee was, and slue both him and the rest of his company, partly with sword, and partly with fire.

In the yeere 1098. the abbepe of S. Maries at Cisterium was founded. In the same yeere also Antiochia was taken by the Christians, and a Comet appeared.

Howeouer, the same yeere there was a battell fought betweene the inhabitants of Man, at Sanct-was, and they of the North obtained the victorie. In which battell were slaine Earle Othor and Mac-Maras, chieftaines of both parts.

The same yeere Magnus king of Norway, sonne of Olauus, sonne of Harald Harfagre, being desirous to view the coasts of S. Olauus king and Party, gaue commaundement that his monument should be opened. But the Bishop and the Clergie withstanding this his attempt, the king went very boldly and by his kingly authoritie, caused the cophin to be opened. And when hee had seene with his eyes, and handled with his hands the incorrupt body of the foresaid King and Party, a sudden feare came vpon him, and he departed with great haste. The night following Olauus king and Party appeared vnto him in a vision, saying: Chuse (I say) vnto your selfe one of these two, either within 30. dayes to lose your life with your kingdome, or else to depart from Norway and neuer to see it againe. The King so soone as he was awaked out of sleepe, called his Princes and Senatours, and expounded the foresaide vision vnto them. And they also being astonished thereat gaue him this counsell, that with all speed he should depart out of Norway. Then hee without any further delay caused a Raale of 160. ships to be prouided, and so sailed vnto the Islands of Orkney, which hee presently subdued, and passing along through all the Islands and conquering them, at length he came vnto the Isle of Man, where he was no sooner arriued, but hee went vnto the Isle of S. Patric to see the place of battell, where the inhabitants of Man had of late fought, because many of the dead bodies were as yet vnburi'd. And seeing that it was a most beautifull Island, it pleased him exceeding well, and therefore hee made choise to inhabite therein his owne selfe, as vnto built fortes there which are at this day called by his owne name. He had the people of Galway in such awe, that he constrained them to cut downe their owne timber, and to bring it vnto his shore for the building of his fortes. Hee sailed on further vnto the Isle of Anglesey neere vnto Wales, and finding two Carles therein (either of them being called by the name of Hugo) he slue the one, and the other hee put to flight, and so subdued the Islands. But the Welshmen presented many gifts vnto him, and so bidding them farewell he returned vnto Man. Vnto Murecard king of Ireland he sent his shooes, commaunding him that he should carry them on his shoulders, vpon the birth-day of our Lord through the midst of his Palace, in the sight of his Embassadors, that thereby it might appeare vnto them, that he was subiect vnto king Magnus. Which when the Irishmen heard, they tooke it grievously and disdained much thereat. But the King being better aduised, he had rather (said he) not only beare his shooes, but eate his shooes, then that king Magnus should destroy any one prouince in Ireland. Wherefore hee fulfilled his commaundement, and honourably entertained his Embassadors. Many gifts also he sent vnto king Magnus by them, and concluded a league. But the messengers returning vnto their lord, tolde him of the situation of Ireland, of the beautie thereof, of the fruitfulness of the soile, and of the holsonnesse of the aire. Magnus hearing these things was fully resolu'd to conquer all Ireland vnto himselfe. And for the same purpose hee commaunded that a flect should be made ready. But he taking his boyage with sixteene ships, & being desirous to view the land, when he had vndercreptly departed from his Raale, he was suddenly inuironed by the Irish, and was himselfe slaine, together with all that were with him almost. Hee was interred neere vnto the Church of S. Patric in Armagh. Hee reigned sixe

live yeeres. After his death the Princes of the Iſlands ſent for Olauus the ſonne of Godredus Crouan, who liued in the Court of Henry King of England ſon vnto William the Conquerour.

In the yeere 1102, Olauus ſonne of Godredus Crouan beganne his reigne and reigned fourtie yeeres: he was a peaceable man being in league with all the Kings of Scotland and Ireland in his time. He tooke to wife Affrica the daughter of Fergusius of Galway, of whom he begat Godredus. Of his concubines he begat Regnaldus, Lagmannus, and Haraldus, and many daughters, whereof one married vnto Sumerledus king of I Herer gaidel, which afterward cecallied the ouerthrow of the whole kingdome of the Iſlands. He begat foure ſonnes by her, namely Dulgallus, Raigaldus, Engus, and Olauus.

|| Argile.

In the yeere 1134, Olauus gaue vnto Yuo the Abbat of Furnes a portion of his owne ground in Man to build an Abbey in the place which is called Ruſſin. Also hee enriched with reuenues and indued with priuiledges of places of religion within his Iſlands.

In the yeere 1142, Godredus ſon of Olauus ſailed vnto the K. of Norway called Hinge, and doing his homage vnto him he remained with him, & was by him honorably entertained. The ſame yeere the 3. ſonnes of Harald brother vnto Olauus, who were brought vp at the citie of Dublin, gathering together a great multitude of people, and all the fugitiues and vagabonds of the kingdome reſorted vnto Man, and demaunded of the ſaid king the one halfe of al the kingdome of the Iſlands. Which thing when the king heard, being deſirous to pacifie them, he answered that he would conſult about that matter. And a day and place being appointed, where the conſultation ſhould be kept, in the meane time thoſe miſcreants conſpired together, about the murdering of the King. And when the day appointed was come, both companies aſſembled themſelues vnto the haven towne called Rania, and they ſate in order, the king with his nobilitie on the one ſide, and they with their confederates on the other ſide. Howbeit Regnaldus who had an intention to ſlay the king, ſtoode a ſide in the miſt of the houſe talking with one of the Princes of the lande. And being called to come vnto the king he turned himſelfe about as if hee would haue ſaluted him, and liſting vp his glittering aze, he chopt the kings head quite off at a blow. Nowe hauing committed this outrageous vilanie, within a ſhort ſpace they diuided the Iſland betweene themſelues, and gathering an armie together ſailed vnto Galway, intending to ſubdue that alſo; howbeit the people of Galway aſſembled themſelues, and with great furie encountered with them. Then they immediately turning their backs with great conſuſion fled vnto Man. And as touching all the Galwedians which inhabited in the ſaid Iſland, ſome of them they ſlue, and the reſidue they baniſhed.

1143.

In the yeere 1143, Godredus ſonne of Olauus returning out of Norway was created king of Man; who in reuenge of his fathers death, put out the eyes of two of Haralds ſonnes and ſlue the thirde.

In the yeere 1144, Godredus began his reigne, and hee reigned thirtie yeeres. In the thirde yeere of his reigne the citizens of Dublin ſent for him and created him King of Dublin, againſt whom Murcardus king of Ireland made warre, and encamping himſelfe at the citie called Coridellis, he ſent his brother Oſibel with 3000. hoſemen vnto Dublin, who was ſlaine by Godred and the Dubliners, the reſt of his company being put to flight. Theſe things being thus finiſhed, Godredus returned vnto Man, and began to exerciſe tyrannie, diſſinheriting certaine of his nobles, of whom one called Thorſinus the ſonne of Oter, being mightier then the reſt, went vnto Sumerledus, and named Dubgal the ſonne of Sumerledus, king of the Iſlands, and ſubdued many of the ſaid Iſlands on his behalf. Whereof when Godred had intelligence by one Paulus, providing a ſhauie, hee went to meete Sumerledus conning againſt him with 80. ſhips: and in the yeere 1156, vpon the night of the feaſt of Epiphanie, there was a ſea-battell fought, and many beſing ſlaine on both parts, the day folowing they were pacified, and diuided the kingdome of the Iſlands among themſelues, and it continued two kingdomes from that day vnto this preſent time. And this was the cauſe of the ruine of the monarchie of the Iſlands, from which time the ſonnes of Sumerledus inioyed the one halfe thereof.

1156.

In the yeere 1158, Sumerledus came vnto Man with 53. ſhips, putting Godred to flight and waſting the Iſlands: and Godred ſailed vnto Norway to ſeek for aide againſt Sumerledus. In the yeere 1164, Sumerledus gathered a fleet of 160. ſhips together; and arrived at Rhinſrin, intending to ſubdue all Scotland vnto himſelfe: howbeit, by Gods iuſt iudgement being overcome by a few, together with his ſonne, and an innumerable multitude of people, he was ſlaine. The very ſame yeere there was a battell fought at Rania, betweene Reginald the brother of Godred, and the inhabitants of Man, but by the ſtratageme of a certaine Earle the Mannians were put to flight. Then began Reginald to ſurpe the kingly authoritie. Howbeit his brother Godred within foure dayes after, coming out of Norway with a great power of armed men, apprehended his brother Reginald, ſlue him, and put out his eyes. The ſame yeere deceased Malcolme the king of Scots, and his

R Egi
bele
mountain
line for the
Iſland, and
for the ſub
then rema
king, you
becauſe the
boeth it an
I beſecty

me of Godredus
the Conquerour.
nd reigned four-
nd and Irland in
he begat God-
any daughters,
erallised the o-
nnely Dugal-

s owne ground
revenues and

ed Hinge, and
ned. The same
of Dublin, ga-
the kingdome
f the Islands,
he would con-
on should bee
he King. And
haue to lve
ey with their
king, soode
ing called to
ifting by his
his outragi-
hering an ac-
of Galway
diately tur-
dians which

ated king of
es and flue

the thirde
in, against
alled Cori-
y Godred
is finished,
his nobles,
to Sum-
any of the
pounding
the peere
any betw
e Islands
me. And
es of Su-

and wa-
the peere
mbing to
few, to-
me pre-
inhabi-
Then
e dayes
Regi-
ts, and
his

his brother William succeeded in the kingdome.

In the peere 1166. two Comets appeared in the moneth of August, before the rising of the Sunne, one to the South and another to the North.

In the peere 1171. Richard earle of Penbrooke sailed into Irland, and subdued Dublin with a great part of Irland.

In the peere 1176. John Curcy conquered Vlfster unto himselfe. And at the same time also Viuianus legate fro the sea of Rome came into Man, & caused king Godred to bee lawfully wedded unto his wife Phingola, daughter of Macloften son of Murkartac king of Irland, mother of Olauus, who was then 3. yeeres old. Siluanus the abbat married them, unto whom the very same day, king Godred gaue a portion of ground in Mirceloge, where he built a Monastery: howbeit, in procelle of time, the said land with the monkes, was granted unto the abbe of Ruffin.

In the peere 1172. Reginaldus the son of Eacmarcat (a man descended of the blood royal) coming into Man with a great multitude of people, in the absence of the king, at the first conflict hee put to flight certaine watchmen which kept the shoare, & slue about 30. persons. Whereupon the very same day the Mannians arranging themselves put him, & almost all his followers to the sword.

In the peere 1183. O. Fogolt was vicount of Man.

In the peere 1185. the Sunne was eclipsed upon the feast of S. Philip and Iacob.

In the peere 1187. deceased Godred king of the Islands, vpon the 4. of the Ides of Nouember, and the next summer his body was translated unto the island of Hy. He left 3. sonnes behiude him, Reginaldus, Olauus, and Yuarus, In his life time he ordeined his sonne Olauus to be his heire apparent, because he onely was borne legitimate. But the Mannians, when Olauus was scarce ten yeeres old, sent unto the islands for Reginald and created him king.

In the peere 1187. began Reginald the sonne of Godred to reigne ouer the islands: and Murcharthus a man of great power throughout all the kingdome of the islands was put to death.

In the peere 1192. there was a battel fought betweene Reginald and Engus the two sonnes of Sumered: but Engus obtained the victorie. The same peere was the abbe of Ruffin remooued vnto Dufglas, howbeit within foure yeeres after the monkes returned vnto Ruffin.

In the peere 1203. Michael bishop of the islands deceased at Fontanas, and Nicholas succeeded in his roome.

In the peere 1204. Hugo de Lacy inuaded Vlfster with an armie and encountered with John de Curcy, tooke him prisoner & subdued Vlfster unto himselfe. Afterward he permitted the said John to goe at libertie, who coming vnto king Reginald was honourably entertained by him, because he was his sonne in lawe, for John de Curcy had taken to wife Affrica the daughter of Godredus, which founded the abbe of S. Mary de iugo domini, and was there buried.

In the peere 1205. John de Curcy & Reginald king of the islands inuaded Vlfster with a hundred ships at the port which is called Stranfeord did negligently besiege the castle of Rath: but Walter de Lacy coming vnto them with his armie, put them to flight, & from that time Curcy neuer recovered his land. In the peere 1210. Engus the son of Sumered & his 3. sonnes were slaine.

At the same time John king of England conducted a fleet of 500. ships into Irland, and subdued it vnto himselfe: and sending a certaine earle named Fulco, vnto the isle of Man, his souldiers almost utterly wasted it in the space of 15. dayes, and hauing taken pledges they returned home into their owne countrey. King Reginald and his nobles were at this time absent from Man.

In the peere 1217. deceased Nicolas bishop of the islands, and was buried in Vlfster, in the house of Benchor, whom Reginald succeeded.

King John
passed into Ir-
land with 500.
sailes.

I thinke it not amisse to report somewhat more concerning
the two foresaid brethren *Reginaldus* and *Olauus*.

Reginald gaue vnto his brother Olauus, the island called *Lodhus* or *Lewes*, which is saide to be larger then the rest of the islands, but almost destitute of inhabitants, because it is so full of mountaines & quarrels, being almost no where fit for tillage. Howbeit the inhabitants thereof do liue for the most part vpon hunting and fishing. Olauus therefore went to take possession of this island, and dwelt therein leauing a pooze life: and when he saw that it would by no means suffice for the sustentation of himselfe & his followers, hee went boldly vnto his brother Reginald, who as then remained in the islands, & spake on this wise vnto him. My brother (said he) and my lord and king, you know that the kingdom of the islands pertained vnto me by right of inheritance, howbeit because the Lord had chosen you to beare the scepter, I doe not enuie that honour vnto you, neither doeth it any whit grieue mee that you are exalted vnto this royall dignitie. Nowe therefore I beseech you to prouide mee some portion of land in the islands, whereby I may honestly liue.

For the Island of Lewis which you gave me is not sufficient for my maintenance. Which his brother Reginald hearing said that he would consult about the premises. And on the morrow, when Olauus was sent for to part, Reginald commanded him to be attached, and to be carried unto William king of Scotland, and with him to remaine prisoner: and Olauus remained in prison almost for the space of 7. yeeres. But at the 7. yeeres end William king of Scots deceased, and Alexander his sonne reigned in his stead. The foresaid William, before his death, commanded that all prisoners should be set at libertie. Olauus therefore being at libertie came unto Man, and immediately with a great company of nobles tooke his journey unto S. James: and his brother Reginald caused the said Olauus to take unto wife, the daughter of a certaine noble man of Kentyre, cousin german unto his owne wife, & by name being called Lauon, and he granted unto him the possession of Lewis. After a few dayes Reginald the bishop of the Islands having gathered a Synod, separated Olauus and Godred his sonne, and Lauon his wife, namely because there was cousin german unto his former wife. Afterward Olauus married Scritina daughter unto Ferkarus earle of Rosse.

Whereupon the wife of Reginald Queene of the Islands being incensed, sent letters unto the Island of Sky in K. Reginald his name to her sonne Godred willing him to take Olauus. Which commandment Godred putting in practise, & entering the isle of Lewis for the same purpose, Olauus fled in a little skiffe unto his father in law the earle of Rosse, & in the meane time Godred wasted the isle of Lewis. At the very same time Pol the son of Boke vicount of Sky, being a man of power in all the Islands, because he would not consent unto Godred, fled, & dwelt together with Olauus in the dominions of the earle of Rosse, & making a league with Olauus, they went forth in a ship unto Sky. To be short, sending certaine spies, they were informed that Godred remained secure with a small company in a certaine Isle called the isle of S. Columba. And uniting unto themselves their friends and acquaintance, & others that would goe voluntarily with them, in the dead of the night, having lanchd 5. ships from the next sea-shore, which was distant about the space of 2. furlongs from the foresaid Island, they environed the said Island on all sides. Now Godred and his company rising early in the morning, and seeing themselves beset with their enemies on all sides, they were utterly astonied. Wherebeit arming themselves they began stoutly to make resistance, but altogether in vaine. For about 9. of the clocke in the morning, Olauus and the foresaid vicount Pol, with all their souldiers, entred the Island, and having slaine all whom they found without the precincts of the Church, they apprehended Godred, gelding him, and putting out his eyes. Unto which action Olauus gave not his consent, neither could he withstand it, by reason of the forenamed vicount the son of Boke. This was done in the yere of Christ 1223. The next sommer following Olauus having received pledges from all the chiefe men of the Islands, with a fleet of 32. ships sailed unto Man, and arrived at Rognolfwahl. At the same time Reginald and Olauus divided the kingdome of the Islands betwene themselves, Man being granted unto Reginald, & besides his portion the name of a king also, Olauus having received certaine vicuals of the people of Man, returned, together with his company, unto his owne portion of Islands. The yere following Reginald taking unto him Alanus lord of Galway, together with his subiects of Man, sailed unto the Islands, that hee might take away that portion of ground from his brother Olauus, which he had granted unto him, and subdue it unto himselfe. Wherebeit, by reason that the people of Man had no list to fight against Olauus of the Islanders, because they bare good will towards them, Reginald and Alanus lord of Galway being defeated of their purpose, returned home unto their owne. Within a short space after Reginald, under pretence of going unto the Court of his lord the king of England, received an 100. markes of the people of Man, and tooke his journey unto Alanus lord of Galway. Which the people of Man hearing tooke great indignation thereat, inso much that they sent for Olauus, and appointed him to be their king.

In the yere 1226. Olauus recovered his inheritance, that is to say the kingdome of Man and of the Islands, which Reginald his brother had governed for the space of 38. yeeres, and he reigned two yeeres in safetie.

In the yere 1228. Olauus with all his nobles of Man, and the stronger part of his people, sailed unto the Islands. A short space after Alanus lord of Galway, Thomas earle of Arhol, & king Reginald came unto Man with a mightie army, and wasted all the South part of Man, spoiled the Churches, and slew all the men whom they coude take, inso much, that the South part of the same Island was brought almost into desolation. And then Alanus returned with his army into his owne land, leaving behind him bailiffes and substitutes in Man, which should gather up and render unto him the tribute of the countrey. Wherebeit king Olauus came suddenly upon them, chased them away and recovered his kingdome. And the Mannians which of late were dispersed and scattered abroad, began to unite themselves, and to inhabit without feare. The same yere, in the time of Winter, upon the sudden, and in the very dead of the night came king Reginald out of Galway with

The Isle of
Man Abduan-
ced to a King-
dome.

Which his brother
William
on almost for the
and his sonne
prisoners should
with a great
the said O-
erman unto his
Lewis. After
Olaus and
unto his forner

letters unto the
Olaus. Which
purpose, Olaus
red wasted the
of power in al
Olaus in the
ship unto Sky.
re with a final
their friends
night, having
ongs from the
company rising
were better
altogether in
with all their
cincts of the
ich action O-
count the son-
laus having
unto Man,
gdom of the
ion the name
ned, together
eaking unto
nds, that hee
ed unto him,
ight against
laus lord of
oyt space af-
received an
ay. Which
for Olaus,

Man and of
he reigned

people, sat-
thol, & king
spoiled the
of the saide
mp into his
and render
haced them
scattered
in the time
of Galway
with

with five ships, and burnt all the ships of his brother Olaus, and of the nobles of Man, at the Isle of S. Patric, & concluding a peace with his brother, remained at the port of Ragnolwath 40. yer: in the meane while hee assured unto himselfe all the Islanders upon the South part of Man, who swore, that they would adventure their liues, vntill hee had gotten the one halfe of his kingdome: contrariwise Olaus ioynd vnto himselfe them of the North part, & upon the 14. of February in the place called Tingualia, a fielde was fought betwene the two brothers, wherein Olaus got the victory, and Reginald the king was by certaine souldiers slaine without the knowledge of his brother. Also certaine pirates comming to the south part of Man, wasted & spoiled it. The monkes of Russin conueyed the body of K. Reginald, vnto the abbey of S. Mary of Fournes, & there he was interred in the place, which his owne selfe had chosen for the purpose. After these things Olaus traueiled vnto the king of Norway, but before he was arriued there, Haco king of Norway appointed a certaine noble man named Husbac the son of Owmund, to be king of the Islands of the Hebrides & called his name Haco. Then came the said Haco with Olaus & Godred Don the son of Reginald, and a multitude of Norwegians, vnto the islands: and while they were giuing an assault vnto a castle in the island of Both, Haco being hit with a stone died, and was buried in Iona.

In the yere 1230. came Olaus, with Godredus Don, & certaine Norwegians vnto Man, and they parted the kingdome among themselves, Olaus stil retaining Man, Godred as he was going vnto the islands, was slaine in the isle of Lewis, & Olaus inioyed the kingdome of the islands also.

In the yere 1237. vpon the 12. of the Kalends of June, Olaus sonne of Godred king of Man deceased in the isle of S. Patric, and was interred in the abbey of Russin. He reigned 11. yeres, two while his brother was alive, and nine after his death.

Haraldus his sonne being of the age of 14. yerres, succeeded, and he reigned 12. yerres. The first yere of his reigne taking his tourney vnto the islands, he appointed one Loglen his kinsman to be his deputie in Man. The Autumne following Haraldus sent the three sonnes of Nel, namely Dugaldis, Torquellus, & Molmore, and his friend Ioseph vnto Man, that they might enter into consultation together. Afterfore the 25. day they assembled themselves at Tingualia: and malice growing betwene the sonnes of Nel, and Loglen, they fel to blowes and skirmished soe on both parts, Molmore, Dufgald, and the foresaid Ioseph being all slaine in the fray. The Spring following, king Harald came into the isle of Man, and Loglen fleeing into Wales, was himselfe, together with Godred the sonne of Olaus his pupil, and 40. others, drowned by shipwacke.

In the yere 1238. Gospatricius and Gillescrift sonne of Mac-Kerthac came from the king of Norway vnto Man, expelling Harald out of the said island, and taking tribute on the behalfe of the Norwegian king, because the said Harald refused to come vnto his Court.

In the yere 1240. Gospatricius deceased and was buried in the abbey of Russin.

In the yere 1239. Haraldus went vnto the king of Norway, who within two yerres confirmed vnto him his heires and successors, vnder scale, all the islands which his predecessors enioyed.

In the yere 1242. Haraldus returned out of Norway vnto Man, and being honourably received by the inhabitants, he liued in peace with the kings of England and Scotland.

In the yere 1247. Haraldus (like as his father also before him) was knighted by the king of England, and so being rewarded with many gifts, he returned home. The same yere he was sent for by the king of Norway, and he married his daughter. And in the yere 1249. as he was returning home with his wife, with Laurence the elect of Man, and with many other nobles, nere vnto the confines of Radland, he was drowned in a tempest.

In the yere 1249. Reginald the sonne of Olaus, and brother vnto Harald began to reigne the day next before the Idones of May: and vpon the 30. day of the same moneth he was slaine by Yuarus a souldier, and other of his complices, in the South part of a certaine meadow, nere vnto the Church of the holy Trinitie, and he was buried at the Church of S. Marie at Russin.

The same yere Alexander king of Scots prouided a great nauie of ships, that he might conuere the islands vnto himselfe: howbeit falling into an ague at the isle of Kerway, he deceased.

Then Haraldus the sonne of Godred Don usurped the name of a king euer the islands, hee banished also all the princes of Harald the sonne of Olaus, and opened his fugitiues to bee princes and nobles in their stead.

In the yere 1250. Haraldus the son of Godred Don being summoned by letters went vnto the king of Norway, who detained him in prison because he had vniufully possessed the kingdome. The same yere Magnus the sonne of Olaus, and Iohn the sonne of Dugal arrived at Roghalwahr, which Iohn named himselfe king, but the Mannians taking it grievously, that Magnus was not nominated, drave them from their shoare, and many of the company perished by shipwacke.

In the yere 1252. came Magnus the sonne of Olaus vnto Man, and was ordeined king. The yere following he tooke his tourney vnto the king of Norway, & there he remained one whole yere.

In the peere 1254. Haco king of Norway ordeined Magnus the sonne of Olauus king of the Islands, confirming them to him and to his heires, and by name vnto Harald his brother.

In the peere 1256, Magnus tooke his iourney into England, and was by the king of England created knight.

In the peere 1257. the Church of S. Maries of Russin was dedicated by Richard bishop of Soder.

In the peere 1260, Haco king of Norway came into the parts of Scotland, and without achieving ought, turning his course towards the Orcades he there deceased at Kirwas, and was buried at Bergen.

In the peere 1265, Magnus the sonne of Olauus king of Man and of the Islands died at the castle of Russin, and was buried at the Church of S. Mary at Russin.

In the peere 1266. the kingdome of the Islands was translated vnto Alexander king of Scots.

That which followeth was written in a new character or letter, and of a diuers kinde from the former.

In the peere 1270. vpon the seuenth day of October the Fleet of Alexander king of Scots arrived at Roghalwath, and the next day before the Sunne rising there was a battell fought betweene the Mannians and the Scots, in the which conflict there were slaine 535. Mannians: whereupon a certaine versifier wryteth to this effect:

Five hundred fourtie men are slaine:

against ill haps,

Yee Mannians arme your selues, for feare
of ascerclaps.

In the peere 1313, Robert king of Scots besieged the castle of Russin, which Dingaway Dowil held against him, howbeit at the last the king tooke the castle.

In the peere 1316, vpon the feast of Ascension, Richard le Mandeule and his brethren, with diuers great personages of Ireland arrived at Rinaldwath, demanding to haue victuals and money ministered vnto them, because they had bene spoiled by their enemies, which made continuall warre vpon them. But when the whole company of the Mannians answered that they would giue nothing, they proceeded against them in warlike manner with two bands, till they were come vnder the side of the hill called Warthel, in the field where Iohn Mandeule remained, and there having fought a battell, the Irish ouercame the people of Man, and spoiled the Island and the Abbey of Russin also: and when they had reueled a whole month in the Island, lading their ships they returned home.

The mariage of the daughter of *Harald*, slaine by *William*
the Conquerour, vnto *Iernslaw* duke of *Russia*, taken out of
the 9. Booke of the *Danish* historie written by *Saxo*
Grammaticus. An.D. 1067.

1067.



Haroldo et filijs eius duo confestim in Daniam cum sorore migrarunt. Quos Sweno, paterni illorum meriti oblitus consanguineae pietatis more accepit, puellamque Ruthenorum regi Waldemaro, (qui & ipse Iarislaws a suis est appellatus) nuptum dedit. Eidem postmodum nostri temporis dux, vt sanguinis, ita & nominis haeres, ex filia nepos obuenerit. Itaque hinc Britannicus, inde Eous sanguis in salutarem nostri principis ortum confluens communem stirpem duarum gentium ornamentum effecit.

The same in English.

Harald being slaine his two sonnes with their sister sped themselves immediately into Denmark. Whom Sweno forgetting their fathers deserts receiued in most kinde and friendly manner, and bestowed the yong damosell in marriage vpon Waldemarus king of Russia who was also called by his subiects Iarislaws. Afterward the said Waldemarus had by his daughter a nephew being duke at this present, who succeeded his predecessor both in lineal descent and in name also. Wherefore the English blood on the one side and the Russian on the other side concurring to the happy birth of our prince, caused that mutual kinred to be an ornament vnto both nations.

The



as in the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

The Cinque Ports. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

17

The state of the shipping of the Cinque ports from Edward the
Confessour and William the Conquerour, and so downe to Ed-
ward the first, faithfully gathered by the learned Gentleman M.
William Lambert in his Perambulation of Kent, out of
the most ancient Records of England.



Find in the booke of the generall suruy of the Realme, which William the Conquerour caused to bee made in the fourth yere of his reigne, and to be called Domesday, because (as Matthew Parise saith) it spared no man but iudged all men indifferently, as the Lord in that great day wil do, that Dover, Sandwich, and Rumney, were in the time of K. Edward the Confessour, discharged almost of all manner of impositions and burdens (which other townes did beare) in consideration of such service to bee done by them vpon the Sea, as in their special titles shall hereafter appeare.

Whereupon, although I might ground reasonable coniecture, that the immunitie of the hausen Townes (which we nowe call by a certaine number, the Cinque Ports) might take their beginning from the same Edward: yet for as much as I read in the Charte of K. Edward the first after the conquest (which is reported in our booke of Entries) A recitall of the graunts of sundry kings to the Fiue Ports, the same reaching no higher then to William the Conquerour, I will leaue my coniecture, and leane to his Charte: contenting my selfe to peeble to the Conquerour, the thanks of other mens benefits, seeing those which were benefited, were wisely contented (as the case then stood) to like better of his confirmation (or second gift) then of K. Edwards first graunt, and en-
dowment.

And to the ende that I may proceed in some maner of array, I will first shew, which Townes were at the beginning taken for the Fiue Ports, and what others be now reputed in the same number: secondly, what service they ought, and did in times passed: and lastly, what priuiledges they haue therefore, and by what persons they haue bene governed.

If I should iudge by the common, and rude verse,

Douer, Sandwich, Ry, Rym, Frigmarc ventus,

I must say, that Dover, Sandwich, Ry, Rumney, and Winchelsey, (for that is, Frigmarc ventus) be the Fiue Ports: Again, if I should be ruled by the Rolle which reciteth the Ports that send Barons to the Parliament, I must then adde to these, Hastings and Hyde, for they also haue their Barons as well as the other: and so should I not onely, not shew which were the first Fiue, but also (by addition of two others) increase both the number, and doubtfulnesse. I causing the verse therefore, for ignorance of the authour and suspicion of his authoritie, and forsaking the Rolle (as not assured of the antiquitie) I will flee to Henry Bracton, a man both ancient, learned, and credible, which liued vnder K. Henry the thirde, and wrote (about three hundred yeres since) learnedly of the lawes of this Realme.

He (I say) in the third booke of his worke, and treatise of the Crowne, taking in hand to shewe the articles inquirable before the Iustice in Eire, (or Itinerant, as we called them, because they used to ride from place to place throughout the Realme, for administration of iustice) setteth forth a special Iourne of writs, to be directed generally to the Bailifes of Hastings, Hiche, Rumney, Dover, and Sandwich, commanding them, that they should cause twentie & foure of their Barons (for so their Burgeses, or townsmen, and the citizens of London like wise, were wont to be termed) to appeare before the Kings Iustices at Shipwey in Kent (as they accustomed to do) there to enquire of such points, as should be giuen in charge. Which done, hee addeth moreouer, that forsomuch as there was oftentimes contention betwene them of the Fiue Ports, & the inhabitants of Yarmouth in Norfolk, and Donwiche in Suffolke, there should be severall writs directed to them also, returning before the same Iustices at the same day and place, reciting, that where the King had by his former writs commanded the Pleas of the Fiue Ports to be holden at Shipwey, if any of the same townes had cause to complaine of any (being within the liberties of the said Ports) he should be at Shipwey to propound against him, and there to receive according to law and Justice.

Thus much I recite out of Bracton partly to shew that Shipwey was before K. Edward the first time, the place of assembly for the Pleas of the Fiue Ports: partly to nottifie the difference, and controuersie that long time since was betwene these Ports, and those other townes: But purposely, and chiefly, to proue, that Hastings, and Hiche, Dover, Rumney, and Sandwich, were in Bractons time accompted the Fiue principall hauens or Ports, which were endowed with priuiledge, and had the same ratified by the great Charte of England.

Neither yet will I deny, but that soone after, Winchelsey and Ry might be added to the number.

The antiquitie
of the Ports.

1070.

Which be the
Fiue Ports.

1250.

Citizens were
called Barons
in old time.

Controuersie
betwene Yarmouth, and the
Fiue Ports.
1250.
Antiquitie of
Yarmouth shewing.

Winchelsey
first builded,
1277.

ver. 402 I find in an old recorde, that king Henry the third tooke into his owne hands (for the better defence of the Realme) the townes of Winchelsey, and Ric, which belonged before to the Hospitallerie of Fescampe in Normandie, and gaue thereto in exchange, the Maner of Chiltham in Gloucestershire, & diuers other lands in Lincolneshire. This he did, partly to conueale from the Priors Aliens the intelligence of the secret affaires of his Realme, and partly because of a great disobedience & exccesse, that was committed by the inhabitants of Winchelsey, against Prince Edward his eldest sonne. And therefore, although I can easily be led to thinke, that he submitted them for their correction to the order, and gouernance of the Five ports, yet I stand doubtfull whether hee made them partners of their priuiledges, or no, for that had bene a preferment, and no punishment vnto them: but I suspect rather, that his sonne king Edward the first, (by whose encouragement and aide, olde Winchelsey was afterward abandoned, and the newe towne builded) was the first that appailelled them with that preeminence.

By this therefore let it appeare, that Hastings, Douer, Hith, Rumney, and Sandwich, were the first Ports of priuiledge: which (because they were 5. in number) both at the first gaue, and yet continue, to all the residue, the name of Cinque Ports, although not onely Winchelsey and Ric, be (since that time) incorporated with them as principals, but diuers other places also (for the ease of their charge) be crept in, as partes, limbs, and members of the same.

Now therefore, somewhat shall be said, as touching the seruices that these Ports of diuerse owe, and in debt haue done, to the Princes: whereof the one (I meane with what number of vessels, in what maner of furniture, and for how long season, they ought to wait on the king at the Sea, vpon their owne charges) shall partly appeare by that which we shall presently say, and partly by that which shall followe in Sandwich, and Rumney: The other shall be made manifest by examples, vnto one out of good histories: and they both shall be testified by the wordes of king Edward the first in his owne Charter.

The booke of Domesday before remembred, chargeth Douer with twentie vessels at the sea, whereof eche to be furnished with one and twentie men for fiftene dayes together: and saith further, that Rumney and Sandwich answered the like seruice. But now whether this (like) ought to be vnderstoode of the like altogether, both in respect of the number and seruice, or of the (like) in respect of seruice, according to the proportion of their abilitie onely, I may not hereby take vpon me to determine. For on the one side, if Rumney, Sandwich, and the residue, should likewise sende twentie vessels a piece, then (as you shall anon see) the five Ports were subiect to a greater charge at that time, then King Edward the first layd vpon them: And on the other side, if they were onely chargeable after their proportion, then know I not how farre to burthen them, seeing the Recorde of Domesday it selfe, bindeth them to no certaintie. And therefore leauing this as I find it, I must else where make inquisition for moze lightesome prooffe. And first I will haue recourse to king Edward the first his Charter in which I read, that At ech time that the King passeth ouer the sea, the Ports ought to rigge vp fiftie and seuen ships, (whereof euery one to haue twentie armed souldiers) and to mainteine them at their owne cosles, by the space of fiftene dayes together.

And thus it stood with the Ports for their generall charge, in the first yee of his reigne, for then was this Charter sealed. But as touching the particular burthen of ech one, I haue scene two diuers testimonies, of which the first is a note in French (bearing the countenance of a Recorde) and is intituled, to haue bene renewed in the two and twentie yee of the Reigne of the same king, by Stephan Peuchester, then Constable of Douer Castle, in which the particular charge is set downe in this maner.

The Port of Hastings ought to sende three ships.

The towne of Peuenley, one

Bulwerhithe and Petir Iahn, one,

Bekesborne in Kent, seuen.

Grenche at Gillingham in Kent, two men and armour, with the ships of Hastings.

The towne of Ric, fise.

To it was Tenderdence annexed, in the time of King Henrie the first.

The towne of Winchelsey, tenne.

The Port of Rumney, foure.

Lydde, seuen.

The Port of Hythe, fise.

The Port of Douer, nineteene.

The towne of Folkestone, seuen.

The towne of Feuersham, seuen.

The Port of Sandwich, with Stonor, Fordwich, Dale, &c. fise.

These

lands (for the bet-
before to the Po-
of Childeham in
conceale from the
cause of a great dis-
Prince Edward
mitted them for
full together hee
no punishment
encouragement
was the first

Sandwich, were
and pre-
elfe and Ricke
o (for the ease of
of buccie owe,
er of vessels, in
the Sea, upon
parely by that
by examples,
ward the first

els at the sea,
and faith fur-
(like) oughte
of the (like) in
by take upon
likewise finde
reater charge
p were onely
g the Recoyd
nd it, I must
to king Ed-
ouer the sea,
entie armed
together.
reigne, for
haue seene
a Recoyd)
same king,
charge is set

ngs.

These

The Cinque Ports. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

19

These ships they ought to finde upon foote dayes summons, armed and arrayed at their owne charge, and in ech of them twentie men, besides the Master of the Mariners: all which they shall likewise mainteine five dayes together at their owne costs, giuing to the Master five pence by the day, to the Constable five pence, and to ech other Mariner three pence. And after those five dayes ended, the King shall defray the charges.

The other is a Latine Customall of the towne of Hyde, the which although it pretend not so great a antiquity as the first, yet seemeth it to me to impute as much or more likelihood and credit: It standeth thus,

These be the Five Ports of our soueraigne Lord the King hauing liberties, which other Ports haue not: Hastings, Romenal, Heth, Dover, Sandwich, the chiefe Townes,

The seruices due by the same.

Hastings shall finde 21. ships, in every ship 21. men, and a Garcion, or Hop, which is called a Gromet. To it pertaine (as the members of one towne) the Seaboze in Seford, Peuenstey, Hodeuey, Winchelley, Ris, Ihame, Bekesbourne, Greng, Northie, Bulwerheth, Romenal 5. ships, in every ship 21. men, and a Garcion: To it pertaine, as members there- of, Promhell, Ledde, Eastwellstone, Dengemareys, clde Rumney.

Hethe 5. ships, as Romenal before. To it pertaineth the Westheth.
Dover 21. ships, as Hastings before. To it pertaine, Folkestone, Feuertham, and S. Marga- rets, not concerning the land, but for the goods and cattels,
Sandwich 5. ships, as Romenal, and Hethe. To it pertaine Fordwich, Reculuer, Serre, and Dele, not for the soile, but for the goods.

Summe of ships 57.

Summe of the men 1187. and 57. Garcions,

This seruice, the Barons of the Five Ports doe acknowledge to owe to the King, upon sum- mons yerely (if it happen) by the space of 15. dayes together, at their owne costs and charges, ac- counting that for the first day of the 15. in which they shall spread their sailes to goe towards those parts that the King intendeth: and to serue so long after 15. dayes, as the King will, at his owne pay and wages.

Thus much out of these ancient notes, whereby your selfe may easily discern the difference: but whether the one or the other, or (by reason of some latter dispensation) neither of these, haue place at this day, I must referre it to them that be prouide, and of counsell with the Ports: and so leauing this also vnderiden, holde on the way, wherein I am entred.

This dutie of attendance therfore (being deuised for the honourable transportation, and safe conduct of the Kings owne person or his armie ouer the narrow Seas) the Ports haue not onely most diligently ever since that time performed, but furthermore also valiantly behaue themselves against the enemye from time to time, in sundrie exploits by water, as occasion hath bene profered, or the necessitie of the Realme required.

And amongst other feats not vnwoorthy perpetuall remembrance, after such time as Lewes (the eldest sonne of the French King) had entred the Realme to aide Stephan Langton the Arch- bishop, and the Nobilitie, in the life of King Iohn, and had sent into France for new supply of soul- diers after his death, Hubert of Borough (then capitaine of Dover) following the opinion of The- mistocles in the exposition of the oracle of the wooden walles, by the aide of the Port townes, armed foote tall ships, and meeting with eightie saile of French men upon the bigg seas, gaue them a most couragious encounter, in which he tooke some, sunke others, and discomfited the rest.

King Henrie the third also, after that he came to riper age, had great benefit by the seruice of the Cinque Ports: And king Edward the first in his Charrre, maketh their continuall faithfull ser- uice (and especially their good endeavour, then lately they made against the Welshmen) the principall cause, and moeue of that his liberrall grant.

If furthermore, about the midst of the reigne of the same king, an hundred sail of the Maule of the Ports fought at the Sea with a fleet of 200. French men, all which (notwithstanding the great odds of the number) they tooke, and slew, and sunke so many of the Mariners, that France was thereby (for a long season after) in manner destitute, both of Seamen, and Shipping.

If finally, and to conclude this part, in the dayes of king Henrie the fourth, the nauie of the Five Ports, vnder the conduct of one Henrie Paye, surprised one hundred and twentie French ships, all laden with Salt, Iron, Oile, and no twosome merchandize.

The priuileges of these Ports, being first granted by Edward the Confessor, and William the Conquerour, and then confirmed and increased by William Rufus, Henrie the second, Richard the

The good ser- uice of the five Ports.

1217.

1278.

1293.

1406.

The priuile- ges of the five Ports.

the first, Henrie the thirto, and king Edward the first, be very great, considering either the honour and ease, of the freedom and exemption, that the inhabitants haue by reason of the same.

Part of an Epistle written by one *Yuo of Narbo*: vnto the Archbishop of *Burdeaux*, conteyning the confession of an Englishman as touching the barbarous demeanour of the *Tartars*, which had liued long among them, and was drawn along perforce with them in their expedition against *Hungarie*: Recorded by *Matthew Paris* in the yere of our Lord 1243.

Reuiler.

The Lord therefore being prouoked to indignation, by reason of this and other sinnes committed among vs Chyistians, is become, as it were, a destroying enemy, and a deadly anenger. This I may iustly affirme to be true, because an huge nation, and a barbarous and inhumane people, whose law is lawlesse, whose wrath is furious, euen the reb of Gods anger, ouertrunne, and vterly wasteth infinite countreys, cruelly abolishing all things where they come, with fire and wynd. And this present Summer, the foresayd nation, being called *Tartars*, departing out of *Hungarie*, which they had surprised by treason, layd siege vnto the very same towne, wherein I myself abode, with many thousands of souldiers: neither were there in the sayd towne on our part about 50. men of warre, whom, together with 20. crossbowes, the capitaine had left in garrison. All these, out of certayne high places, beholding the enemies vasse armie, and abhorring the heauy crueltie of Antichrist his complices, signified forthwith vnto their gouernour, the hideous lamentations of his Chyistian subiects, who suddenly being surprised in all the prouince adioyning, without any difference of respect of condition, fortune, here, or age, were by manifolde cruelties, all of them destroyed: with whole carkeises, the Tartarian chieftains, and their byerns and savage followers, glutting themselves, as with delicious eates, left nothing for vultures but the bare bones. And a strange thing it is to consider, that the greedie and ravenous vultures disdeined to praye vpon any of the reliques, which remained. Olde, and defoyned women they gaue, as it were, for dayly sustenance, vnto their Canibals: the beautifull deuoured they not, but smothered them lamenting and scritchng, with forced and unnaturall rauishments: Like barbarous miserieance, they quelled virgins vnto death, and cutting off their tender payes to present for deinties vnto their magistrates, they engorged themselves with their bodies.

Howbeit, their spies in the meane time discriing from the top of an high mountaine the Duke of Austria, the King of Bohemia, the Patriarch of Aquileia, the Duke of Carinthia, and (as some report) the Earle of Baden, with a mightie power, and in battell aray, appoyning towardes them, that accursed crew immediately banished, and all those Tartarian vagabonds reised themselves into the distressed and vanquished land of *Hungarie*; who as they came suddenly, so they departed also on the sudden: which their celeritie caused all men to stand in joyrour and astonishment of them. But of the sayd fugitiues, the prince of Dalmatia tooke eight: one of which number the Duke of Austria knew to be an English man, who was perpetually banished out of the Realme of England, in regard of certayne notorious crimes by him committed. This fellow, on the behalfe of the most tyrannicall king of the Tartars, had bene twice, as a messenger and interpreter, with the king of *Hungarie*, menacing and plamely foretelling those mischiefes which afterward happened, vnlesse he would submit himselfe and his kingdome vnto the Tartars yoke. Well, being allured by our Princes to confesse the crueltie, he made such oathes and protestations, as (I thinke) the deuill himselfe would haue bene trusted for. First therefore he reported of himselfe, that presently after the time of his banishment, namely about the 30. yere of his age, hauing lost all that he had in the citie of *Acon* at dice, euen in the midst of Winter, being compelled by ignominious hunger, wearing nothing about him but a shirt of sacke, a paire of shooes, and a haire cappe onely, being shauen like a foole, and vtering an vncouth noyse as if he had bene dumbe, he tooke his iourney, and so traueiling many countreys, and finding in diuers places friendly entertainment, he prolonged his life in this manner for a season, albeit euery day by rashnesse of speech, and inconstancie of heart, he endangered himselfe to the deuill. At length, by reason of extreame trauaile, and continuall change of aire and of inears in *Caldea*, he fell into a grievous sickenesse, inso much that he was wearie of his life. Not being able therefore to go forward or backward, and staying there a while to refresh himselfe, he began (being somewhat learned) to commend to writing those wordes which hee heard spoken, and within a short space, so aptly to pronounce, and to vter them himselfe, that he was reputed for a native member of that countrey: and by the same dexteritie he attained to manie languages. This man the *Tartars* hauing intelligence of by their spies, drew him perforce into their societie: and being admonished by an oracle or vision, to challenge dominion ouer the



taros profic
quanius a T

the whole earth, they allured him by many rewards to their faithfull seruice, by reason that they wanted Interpreters. But concerning their maners and superstitions, of the disposition and stature of their bodies, of their countrey and maner of fighting &c, he protested the particulars following to be true: namely, that they were about all men, couetous, hasty, deceitfull, and mercilesse: notwithstanding, by reason of the rigour and extremitie of punishments to be inflicted vpon them by their superiours, they are restrained from brawlings, and from mutual strife and contention. The ancient founders and fathers of their tribes, they call by the name of gods, and at certaine set times they doe celebrate solemne feasts vnto them, many of them being particular, & but foure onely generall. They thinke that all things are created for themselves alone. They esteeme it none offence to exercise cruelty against rebels. They be hardie and strong in the breast, leane and pale-faced, rough and huff-shouldred, hauing flatte and short noses, long and sharpe chinnes, the vpper iawes are low and declining, their teeth long and thinne, their eye-browes extending from their fore-heads downe to their noses, their eies inconsistent and blacke, their countenances writhen and terrible, their extreame ioynts strong with bones and sinewes, hauing thicke and great thighes, and short leues, and yet being equall vnto vs in stature: for that length which is wanting in their legs, is supplied in the vpper parts of their bodies. Their countrey in olde time was a land vtterly desert and waste, situated far beyond *Chaldea*, from whence they haue expelled Lions, Beares, & such like vntamed beasts, with their bowes, and other engines. Of the hides of beasts being tanned, they vse to shape for themselves light, but yet impenetrable armour. They ride fast bound vnto their horses, which are not very great in stature, but exceedingly strong, and mainteined with little pro- uender. They vse to fight constantly and valiantly with iavelins, maces, battle-axes, and swords. But specially they are excellent archers, and cunning warriors with their bowes. Their backs are slightly armed, that they may not flee. They withdraw not themselves from the combate, till they see the chiefe Standard of their Generall giue backe. Vanquished, they aske no fauour, and vanquishing, they shew no compassion. They all persist in their purpose of subduing the whole world vnder their owne subiection, as if they were but one man, and yet they are moe then millions in number. They haue 60000. Courriers, who being sent before vpon light horses to prepare a place for the armie to incampe in, will in the space of one night gallop three dayes iourney. And suddenly diffusing themselves ouer an whole prouince, and surprising all the people thereof vnarmed, vnprouided, disperfed, they make such horrible slaughters, that the king or prince of the land inuaded, cannot finde people sufficient to wage battell against them, and to withstand them. They delude all people and princes of regions in time of peace, pretending that for a cause, which indeed is no cause. Sometimes they say, that they will make a voyage to *Colen*, to fetch home the three wise kings into their owne countrey; sometimes to punish the auarice and pride of the Romans, who oppressed them in times past; sometimes to conquire barbarous and Northren nations; sometimes to moderate the furie of the Germans with their owne meeke mildnesse; sometimes to learne warlike feats and stratagems of the French; sometimes for the finding out of fertile ground to suffice their huge multitudes; sometimes againe in derision they say, that they intend to goe on pilgrimage to *S. Iames of Galicia*. In regard of which sleights and collusions certaine vndiscreet gouernors concluding a league with them, haue granted them free passage thorow their territories, which leagues notwithstanding being violated, were an occasion of ruine and destruction vnto the foresayd gouernours &c.

Libellus historicus Ioannis de Plano Carpini, qui missus est
Legatus ad Tartaros anno Domini 1246. ab Innocentio
quarto Pontifice maximo.

Incipit Prologus in librum Tartarorum.



Mnibus Christi fidelibus ad quos praesens scriptum peruenerit, frater Ioannes de Plano Carpini ordinis fratrum minorum, Apostolicæ sedis Legatus, nuncius ad Tartaros & nationes alias Orientis, Dei gratiam in praesenti, & gloriam in futuro, & de inimicis suis gloriam triumphalem. Cum ex mandato sedis Apostolicæ iremus ad Tartaros & nationes alias Orientis, & sciremus Domini Papæ & venerabilium Cardinalium voluntatem, elegimus prius ad Tartaros proficisci. Timebamus enim ne per eos in proximo ecclesiæ Dei periculum immineret. Et quamuis a Tartaris & alijs nationibus timeremus occidi, vel perpetuo captiui, vel fame, siti, algore,

algore, æilu, contumelia, & laboribus nunijs, & quasi ultra vires affligi (quæ omnia multo plura quam prius credidimus, excepta morte vel captiuitate perpetua nobis multipliciter euenerunt) non tamen pepercimus nobis ipsis, vt voluntatem Dei secundum Domini papæ mandatum adimplere possemus, & vt proficeremus in aliquo Christianis, vt saltem scita veraciter voluntate & intentione ipsorum, possemus illam patefacere Christianis, ne forte subito inuenirent eos imparatos, sicut peccatis hominum exigentibus alia vice contigit: & fecerunt magnam stragem in populo Christiano. Vnde quæcunque pro vestra vultate vobis scribimus ad cautelam, tanto securius credere debetis, quanto nos cuncta vel ipsi vidimus oculis nostris, qui per annum & quatuor menses & amplius ambulauimus per ipsos & cum ipsis, ac fuimus inter eos, vel audiuiamus a Christianis qui sunt inter eos captiui, & vt credimus fide dignis. Mandatum etiam a supremo pontifice habebamus, vt cuncta perscrutaremur & videremus omnia diligenter. Quod tam nos quam frater Benedictus eiusdem ordinis qui nostræ tribulationis fuit socius & interpretis fecimus studiose.

Annus & 4. menses
& amplius.

Frater Benedictus
Polonus comes
Joannis de Plano
Carpini.

De terra *Tartarorum*, situ, qualitate & dispositione

aeris in eadem. Cap. 1.

Volentes igitur facta scribere *Tartarorum*, vt lectores facilius valeant inuenire, hoc modo per capitula describemus. Primo quidem dicemus de terra, Secundo de hominibus. Tercio de ritu. Quarto de moribus. Quinto de ipsorum imperio. Sexto de bellis. Septimo de terris quas eorum dominio subiugauerunt. Octauo quomodo Bello occurratur eisdem. De terra possumus hoc modo tractare. In principio quidem dicemus de situius: secundo de qualitate: tertio de dispositione aeris in eadem. Terra vero prædicta est in ea posita parte Orientis in qua oriens sicut credimus coniungitur Aquiloni. Ab Oriente autem est terra posita Myriorum & etiam Solangorū: a meridie sunt terræ Saracenorum: inter Occidentem & Meridicm Huyrorum. Ab Occidente prouincia Naymanorum; ab Aquilone mari oceano circumdatur. Hæc vero in parte aliqua est nimum montuosa, & in aliqua est campestris, sed fere tota admixta glareæ, raro argilloia plurimum est arenosa. In aliqua parte terræ sunt aliquæ modicæ syluæ: alia vero est sine lignis omnino. Cibaria autem sua decoquunt & sedent tam imperator quam principes & alij ad ignem factum de boum stercorebus & equorum. Terra autem prædicta non est in parte cenesina fructuosa: nec etiam potest fructum portare nisi aquis fluuiatibus irrigetur. Sed aqua & riuus ibidem sunt pauci: flumina vero rarissima vnde ibidem villæ sunt paucæ; nec aliquæ ciuitates excepta vna, quæ esse dicitur satis bona; nos autem non vidimus illam, sed finimus prope ad dimidium dieni, cum apud Syram ordam essemus, quæ curia est maior imperatoris eorum. Et licet aliàs infructuosa sit, quamuis non multum, tamen competenter est alendis pecoribus apta. Aer in ipsa est mirabiliter inordinatus. In media etiam est: quando in alijs paribus solet calor maximus abundare; ibi sunt tonitrua magna & fulgura, ex quibus homines quam plurimi occiduntur. Cadunt etiam ibi eodem tempore maximæ nives. Ibi sunt etiam frigidissimorum ventorum tam maximæ tempestates, quod cum labore vix possunt homines aliquando equitare. Vnde cum essemus apud ordam (sic enim stationes imperatoris apud eos & principum appellantur) iacebamus in terra præ magnitudine venti prostrati, & propter pulueris multitudinem videre minime poteramus. In ea etiam in hyeme nusquam pluit, sed in estate: & tam modicum, quod vix potest aliquando puluerem & radices graminum madidare. Grando etiam ibi sæpe maxima cadit. Vnde eo tempore quando fuit electus, & in sede regni poni debuit imperator, nobis in curia existentibus, tanta cecidit grando, quod ex subita resolutione, sicut plerius intelleximus, plusquam centum & quadraginta homines in eadem curia fuerunt submersi. Res autem & habitacula plura deducta fuerunt. Ibi est etiam in estate subito magnus calor, & repente maximum frigus. In hyeme vero in aliqua parte cadunt inaximæ nives, in alia autem paruæ. Et vt breuiter de terra concludam, magna est, sed aliter, sicut vidimus oculis nostris, (quia per ipsam circueundam quinque mensibus & dimidium ambulauimus) multo vilior est, quam dicere valeamus.

Al. Sciangorum,
Oceanus ab Aquilone,

Syria ordo, curia
maior imperatoris,

Maximæ nives in
estate in Tartaria.

Grando maxima.

Maxima inundatio
ex subita grandinis resolutione.

Iter quinque mensium
& dimidij.

De formis *Tartarorum*, de coniugio, vestibus

& habitaculis eorum. Cap. 2.

Disto de terra, de hominibus est dicendum. Primo quidem formas describemus personarum. Secundo de ipsorum coniugio supponemus. Tercio de vestibus. Quarto de habitaculis. Quinto de rebus eorum. Forma personarum ab hominibus alijs est remota. Inter oc-

los

Th

los ei
Grac
statu
cos h
coron
Quæ
ruin
ram c
medic
faciun
res ver
quis d
cepta
post m
parent
ores, &
cunda
tam vir
bus nor
dum for
vero fin
chiale si
tamen p
lam vna
plam &
bus vel c
in quad
bet virg
& est affi
dictum e
hominib
iuuenes
untur ut
bere non
culis sub
& vt possi
sunt coop
uæ, secun
tur, & sup
Minoribus
res, vel qu
as, semper
capris, & e
totum mun

De ci

Disto de
de cul
onibus pecc
rem omniur
penarum el
Nihilominu
traque parte
& illa credu
faciunt de pa
ante ostium

a multo plu-
liciter eue-
paz manda-
veraciter vo-
dito inuentes
: & fecerunt
vobis scribi-
bus oculis no-
ipfis, ac sui-
is fide dignis.
& videremus
stratibula-

nuenire, hoc
do de homi-
o. Sexto de
o quomodo
quidem dic-
ra vero pri-
oni. Ab O-
Saraceno-
anorum; ab
sa, & in ali-
a. In aliqua
tem sua de-
m stercori-
e etiam po-
pauci; flu-
a, quæ ef-
diem, cum
infructuosa
psa est mi-
nus abun-
tur. Ca-
orum tam
Vnde cum
tur) iace-
videre mi-
cum, quod
epe maxi-
rator, no-
ius intel-
i. Res au-
or, & re-
lia autem
is nostris,
vilior est,

persona-
de habi-
inter ocu-
los

los enim & genas plusquam alij homines sunt lati. Genæ etiam satis prominent a maxillis. Graciles sunt generaliter in cingulo exceptis quibusdam paucis. Pene omnes sunt mediocriter staturæ. Barba tere omnibus minime crescit. Aliqui tamen in inferiori labio & in barba modicos habent crines, quos minime tondent. Super verticem capitis in modum clericorum habent coronas, & ab aure vna vsque ad aliam, ad latitudinem trium digitorum similiter omnes radunt. Quæ rursus coronæ prædictæ iunguntur. Super frontem etiam ad latitudinem duorum digitorum similiter omnes radunt. Illos autem capillos qui sunt inter coronam & prætaxatam raturam crescere vsque ad supercilia sinunt. Et ex utraque parte frontis tondendo plusquam in medio crines faciunt longos: reliquos vero crines permittunt: crescere vt mulieres. De quibus res vero habet vnusquisque quot potest tenere. Aliquis centum, aliquis quinquaginta, aliquis decem, aliquis plures vel pauciores: & omnibus parentibus generaliter iunguntur, excepta matre, filia, vel sorore ex eadem matre, sororibus etiam ex patre: tamen & vxores patris post mortem ducere possunt. Vxorem etiam fratris alter frater iunior post mortem vel alius de parentela iunior ducere tenetur. Reliquas mulieres omnes sine vlla differentia ducunt in vxores, & emunt eas valde pretiosè a parentibus suis. Post mortem maritorum de facili ad secundam coniugia non inigrant, nisi quis velit suam noueram ducere in vxorem. Vestes autem vestes virorum quàm mulierum sunt vno modo formatæ. Pallijs, cappis vel capputijs vel pelli- bus non vtuntur. Tunicas vero portant de Bukeramo, purpura, vel Baldaqino in hunc modum formatas. A supremo vsque deorsum sunt scissæ, quia ante pectus duplicantur. A latere vero sinistro vna, & in dextris tribus ligaturis necuntur, & in latere & in sinistro vsque ad brachiale sunt scissæ. Pellicia cuiuscunque sunt generis in eundem modum formantur: superius tamen pellicium exterius habet pilum, sed a posterioribus est apertum. Habet autem caudulam vnâ vsque ad genua retro. Mulieres vero quæ sunt maritatæ habent tunicam valde amplam & vsq; ad tetram ante scissam. Super caput vero habent vnum quid rotundum de vimini- bus vel de cortice factum, quod in longum protenditur ad vnâ vnam, & in summitate definit in quadrum: & ab imo vsque ad summum in amplitudine semper crescit, & in summitate habet virgulam vnâ longam & gracilem de auro vel de argento seu de ligno, vel etiam pennam: & est assutum super vnum pileolum, quod protenditur vsque ad humeros. Instrumentum prædictum est tectum de buccaramo, siue purpura vel baldaqino: sine quo instrumento coram hominibus nunquam vadunt, & per hoc ab alijs mulieribus cognoscuntur. Virgines autem & iuvenes mulieres cum magna difficultate a viris suis possunt discerni: quum per omnia vesti- bere non valeamus. Stationes rotundas habent in modum tentorii præparatas, de virgis & bac- culis subtiliter factas. Supra vero in medio rotundam habent fenestrâ vnde lumen ingreditur, & vt possit funius exire: quia semper in medio ignem faciunt. Parietes autem & tecta filtro sunt cooperta. Ostia etiam de filtro sunt facta. Quædam stationes sunt magnæ, quædam par- uæ, secundum dignitatem & hominum paruitatem. Quædam soluntur subito & reparan- tur, & super somarios deferuntur. Quædam dissolui non possunt, sed in curtibus deferuntur. Minoribus autem in curru ad deferendum vnus bos: maioribus tres vel quatuor, vel etiam plu- res, vel quod est magis, sufficiunt ad portandum. Quocunque vadunt siue ad bellum, siue ali- as, semper illas deferunt secum. In animalibus sunt diuites valde: in camelis, bobus, ouibus, capris, & equis. Iumentorum tantam multitudinem, quantam non credimus habere totum mundum. Porcos & alias bestias minime habent.

Vestes.

Tabernacula.

Opes in pecora.

De cultu & de hijs quæ credunt esse peccata, & de diuinationibus & ritu funeris eorum, & de purgationibus suorum peccatorum. Cap. 3.

Disto de hominibus, dicendum est de ritu: de quo tractabimus in hunc modum. Primo de cultu: secundo de hijs quæ credunt esse peccata: tertio de diuinationibus, & purgationibus peccatorum: quarto de ritu funeris. Vnum Deum credunt, quem credunt esse factorem omnium visibilium & inuisibilium. Et credunt eum tam bonorum in hoc mundo quàm poenarum esse factorem: non tamen orationibus vel laudibus, aut ritu aliquo ipsum colunt. Nihilominus habent idola quædam de filtro ad imaginem hominis facta; & illa ponunt ex vtraque parte ostij stationis, & subtus illa ponunt quiddam de filtro in modum vberis factum, & illa credunt esse pecorum custodes, & eis beneficium laetis & pullorum præstare. Alia vero faciunt de pannis sericis, & illa multum honorant. Quidam ponunt illa in pulchro curru tecto ante ostium stationis: & quicunque aliquid de illo curru furatur, sine vlla inquisitione occiditur.

Duces,

Duces, militem, & centenarij vnum semper habent in medio stationis. Prædictis idolis offerunt primum lac omnis pecoris & iumentis. Et cum primo comedere & bibere incipiunt, primo offerunt eis de cibarijs & potu. Et cum bestiam aliquam occidunt, offerunt cor idolo quod est in curru in aliquo cypho, & dimittunt vsque mane, & tunc auferunt de præsentia eius, & decoquunt & manducant. Primo etiam imperatori faciunt idolum, quod ponunt in curru, ante quam stationem honorifice, sicut vidimus ante ordam imperatoris illius, offerunt munera multa. Equos etiam offerunt ei, quos nullus audeat ascendere vsque ad mortem. Alia etiam animalia eidem offerunt. Quæ vero occidunt ad manducandum, nullum os ex eis confingunt, sed igni comburunt. Et etiam ad meridiem tanquam Deo inclinant, & inclinare faciunt alios nobiles, qui se reddunt eisdem. Vnde nuper contigit quod Michael, qui fuit vnus de magnis ducibus Russiæ, cum iussisset ad sereddendum Bati, fecerunt eum prius inter duos ignes transire: Post hoc dixerunt, quod ad meridiem Cyngis eam inclinare. Qui respondit, quod Bati & seruis suis inclinare libenter, sed imagini hominis mortui non inclinare, quia non licet hoc facere Christianis. Et cum sæpe diceretur, quod inclinare, & noller, mandauit ei prædictus per filium Ierolam, quod occideretur si non inclinare. Qui respondit, quod potius vellet mori, quam hoc faceret, quia non liceret. At ille satellitem vnum misit, qui iam diu contra eum in ventre calce percussit, quousque deficeret. Tunc quidam de suis militibus qui astabat confortans eum dixit: Esto robustus quia hæc pœna non diutibi durabit, & statim sequetur gaudium sempiternum: post hoc fuit caput eius cultello præcisum. Militi vero prædicto fuit caput etiam cultello amputatum. Solem igitur lumina & ignem venerantur & adorant, & aquam & terram, eis ciborum & potus primitias offerentes, & mane potissime antequam comedant & bibant: quia de cultu Dei nullam legem obseruant. Neminem cogunt suam fidem vel legem negare. Accidit tamen dum adhuc nuper essemus in terra quod Andreas dux de Sarruogle quæ est in Russia fuit apud Bati accusatus, quod educeret equos Tartarorum de terra & venderet alios, & cum tamen non esset probatur fuit occisus: quod audiens iunior frater eius, venit cum vxore occisi ad ducem prædictum Bati, volens supplicare, ne terra tolleretur eisdem. Qui dixit par esse, quod vxorem fratris carnalis prædicti duceret in vxorē: & mulieri præcepit ducere illum in virum secundum consuetudinem Tartarorum. Qui respondit, quod prius vellet occidi, quam faceret contra legem. At ille nihilominus tradidit eam illi, quamuis tenuerat quantum posset: & duxerunt ambo in lecto, & posuerunt puerum super illam plorantem & clamantem, & cogerunt eos committere coactione non conditionali, sed absoluta. Quamuis de iustitia facienda, vel peccato cauendo nullam habeant legem, nihilominus tamen habent aliquas traditiones, quas dicunt esse peccata: quas confinxerunt ipsi & patres eorum. Vnum est, cultellum figere in igne, vel etiam quocunque modo tangere cum cultello: vel cum cultello extrahere carnes de caldario: iuxta ignem etiam incidere cum securi. Credunt etiam quod sic auferri caput debeat igni. Item appodiare se ad flagellum, cum quo percutitur equus: Ipsi enim calcaribus non vniuntur. Item tangere flagellis sagittas. Item iuuenes aues occidere, vel accipere: cum siceno equum percutere. Item oscum osse alio frangere. Item lac vel aliquem potum vel cibum super terram effundere. In statione mingere, sed si voluntarie facit occiditur: si autem aliter, oportet quod pecunia solvatur incantatori, qui purificet eos: faciat etiam stationem & ea quæ in ipsa sunt inter duos ignes transire. Sed antequam sic purificetur nullus audeat intrare vel aliquid de ipsa portare. Item si alicui morsus imponitur, & deglutire non potest, & de ore suo eiecit eum, fit foramen sub statione, & extrahunt per illud foramen, & sine ulla misericordia occiditur. Item si aliquis caleat limen stationis alicuius ducis interficitur eodem modo. Et multa habent similia, de quibus longum est narrare. Sed homines occidere, aliorum terras inuadere, res aliorum accipere, quocunque iniusto modo fornicari, alijs hominibus iniuriari, facere contra Dei prohibitiones & Dei præcepta, nullum est peccatum apud eos. De vita æterna & damnatione perpetua, nihil sciunt. Credunt tamen quod post mortem in alio seculo viuant, greges multiplicent, comedant, bibant, & alia faciant, quæ in hoc seculo a viuentibus hominibus fiunt. Diuinationibus, augurijs, aruspicijs, veneficijs, incantationibus multum intendunt. Et cum a dæmonibus ipsis respondetur, credunt quod Deus ipsis loquatur, quem Deum vocant Itoga: sed Comani Cham, id est, imperatorem ipsum appellant, quem mirabiliter timent & reuerentur: ac oblationes offerunt multas, & primitias cibi & potus. Secundum autem responsa ipsius faciunt vniuersa. In principio etiam lunationis vel plenilunio incipiunt quicquid noui agere volunt. Vnde illam magnam imperatorem appellant, eique genua flectunt & deprecantur. Solem dicunt esse matrem lunæ, eo quod lumen a sole recipiat. Et vt breuiter dicam per ignem credunt omnia purificari. Vnde cum nuncij veniunt ad eos, vel principes, vel qualescunque persone, oportet ipsos & munera quæ portant per duos ignes transire, vt purificentur. Item si cadit ignis de celo super pecora, vel super homines, quod ibidem sæpe

Martyrium Michaeli duci
Russiæ.

¶ Vel, Sarruogle,
Andreas dux
Russiæ.

De superstitionis
traditionibus e-
orum.
Ezra 10. 3. 1. 2.

dæmones.

Cultus lunæ.

Dico
de b
scilicet Ta
religionis
uicem rati
ter eos nol
stationes t
quæ bestia
illos, qui p
& absque
miliaries: E
necant illa
edentes om
runt bene,
mines deli
spernit, sed i

hæc idolis offe-
re incipiunt, pri-
or laelo quod
sentia eius, & de-
ne in curru, ante
in munera mul-
Aha etiam ani-
eis confingunt,
are faciunt alios
vnius de magnis
ignes tranſire:
uod Bati & ſer-
on licet hoc ſa-
ei prædictus per
lus vellet mori,
contra cor eum
ui affabar con-
ſequetur gau-
dicto ſuit ea-
raix, & aqua
n comedant &
dem vel legem
ſi Saruogle
era & vende-
ter eius, venit
eiſdem. Qui
æcepit ducere
us vellet occi-
nuar quani-
& clamant
muis de iuſti-
abent aliquas
um eſt, cul-
ultello extra-
quod ſic au-
us: Ipſenim
ere, vel acci-
aliquem po-
it occiditur:
etiam ſtatio-
nullus aude-
on poteſt, &
ne villa miſe-
eodem mo-
re, aliorum
inibus iniu-
os. De vita
n alio ſeculo
viuentibus
multum in-
tur, quem
n mirabili-
Secundum
o incipiunt
genus ſte-
piat. Et ut
de eos, vel
gnes tranſ-
od ibidem
ſæpe

ſæpe contingit, ſive aliquid tantum eueniet eis, per quod illi inuoluntate ſe repu-
tant, oportet ſimiliter per incantatores mundari. Et quæſiſſimum ſpecus iuſum in ſibi poſi-
erunt. Quando aliquis eorum infirmatur, ponit ſtationem eius vna haſta, & contra il-
lam ſiterum circumuoluitur nigrum: & ex tunc nullus audeat alioquin poſſe ſtationem ſerare,
Et quando incipit agonizare, omnes recedunt ab eo: quoniam nullus de iſis qui ipſi eius aſſi-
ſtunt, poteſt ordam alieius ducis vel imperatoris vſque ad nonnullam ſtationem intrare. Cum au-
tem mortuus eſt, ſi eſt de maioribus, ſepelitur occulte in campo ſibi placito: ſepelitur autem
cum ſtatione ſedendo in medio eius, & ponunt in ſtatione ante eum, & alium carum ſple-
num, & cyphum lactis iumentini: ſepelitur autem cum eo vnum iumentum cum pullo ſibi
quod cum ſtrano & telar & alium equum comedunt & ſtramine coram inſipientia & ſuper du-
vel quatuor ligna alti: ponunt, ut habeat in alio mundo ſtationem ſibi moeretur, & iumen-
tum de quo lac habet, & poſſit ſibi equos multiplicare, & equos etiam in quibus valeat equi-
tare, Aurum & argentum ſepelitur eodem modo cum ipſo. Curruſque in quo ducitur franſitur,
& ſtatio ſua deſtruitur: nec nomen proprium eius: vſque ad ſtationem perorationem audeat ali-
quis nominare. Alius etiam eſt modus ſepeliendi quidam maiores, Vnde in campo oſcul-
te, & ibi gramina remouent cum radicibus, & faciunt foueam magnam & in latere ſua ſo-
ueam faciunt vnam ſub terra, & illum ſeruum quem habet dilectum ponunt ſub eo, qui tace-
re ter. Et ſi euadet, poſtea eſt liber, & facit quicquid ei placeat: & eſt inagnus in ſtati-
one, ac inter parentes illius. Mortuum autem ponunt in foueam, quæ eſt in latere ſua ſo-
ueam ſuper gramina ponunt, ut fuerant prius, ad hoc, ne locus vterius valeat inueniri. Alii ſadunt
ut dictum eſt, in terra eorum ſunt cometeria duo. Vnum in quo ſepelitur imperatores, duces
& nobiles omnes: & vbiſcunque moriuntur, ſi congruè fieri poteſt, illud deferuntur. Sepeli-
tur autem cum eis aurum & argentum multum. Aliud eſt in quo ſepelitur illi qui in Hunga-
ria interfecti fuerunt: multi enim ibidem occiſi fuerunt. Ad illa cometeria nullus audeat accede-
re præter euſtodes, qui ad cuſtodendum poſiti ſunt ibidem. Et ſi aliquis acceſſerit, capitur,
ſpoliatur & verberatur, & valde malè tractatur. Vnde nos ipſi neſcientes præuimus terminos
cometerij eorum qui in Hungaria occiſi fuerunt, & venerunt ſuper nos ſigillatim volantibus ſed
quia eramus nunciij conſuetudinum terre neſcientes, nos liberos dimiſimus abire. Patentes
autem & omnes alij qui morantur in ſtationibus ſuis oportet purificari per ignem: quæ purifi-
catio ſit hoc modo. Faciunt duos ignes, & duas haſtas ponunt intra ignes, & vnam accendunt
in ſummitate haſtarum: & ligant ſuper eorum illam quaſdam ſciſſuras de lino charum ſub
qua corda & ligaturis inter illos duos ignes tranſeunt homines, beſtiæ & ſtationes. Et ſine du-
mulieres, vna hinc, & alia inde a quâ proſcipientes, & quædam carmines recitant, ſi ſiſtiſſi
curruſque ibi franſguntur, vel etiam res ibi cadunt aliquæ, incantatores accipiunt. Et ſi ſiſtiſſi
ciditur à tonitruo: omnes illos homines qui morantur in ſtationibus illis, oportet prædictam
do ignes tranſire. Statio, lectus, ſitra, curruſque, veſtes, & quicquid talium habuerint, non ſolam
guntur, ſed tanquam imminda ab omnibus reſpiciuntur, ſed non magis morantur, ſed

De conſuetudinibus bonis & malis. Scilicet

De ritu, dicendum eſt de moribus & de quibus ſcribamus hoc modo. Primo dicemus
de bonis, ſecundo de malis: tertio de conſuetudinibus quarto de cibis. Prædicti homines,
ſcilicet Tartari ſunt magis obediētes Dominis ſuis, quam aliqui homines in hoc mundo ſint
religioſi ſive ſeculares: & magis reuerentur eoſdem neque de facili mentiuntur eis, Verbi gratia
uicem raro aut nunquam edicunt, ſi alii verò nunquam, Bella, rixæ, vulnera, homines
ter eos non contingunt. Prædones & furēs magnarum rerum non inueniuntur inter eos. Vnde
ſtationes & curruſque eorum, ubi habent hæſitatum ſuum ſeruo aut veſtigibus non firmantur. Si
quæ beſtiæ perduntur, quicunque inuenit eas vel dimittit ſic eſſe, vel ducit eas ad homines
illos, qui poſſit ſunt ad hoc. Homines autem quorum ſunt beſtiæ apud eoſdem illas, requirunt
& abſque vlla difficultate recipiunt illas. Vnus alium ſatis honorat: & ducit eum ſatis ſa-
miliariter: Et cibaria quantuſque inter illos ſint pauca, tamen inter ſe ſibi competerent cōmuni-
nicant illa: & ſatis ſine ſufficientes. Vnde quicquid vno die vel duobus diebus nihil com-
edentes omnino de facili non videntur impatientes, ſed cantant & ludunt quaſi ce mede-
runt bene. In equitando multum ſuſtinent frigus, & calorem nimium patiuntur. Non ſunt ho-
mines delicati. Inuidi ad inſicem non videntur. Inter eos quaſi nulla placra ſunt: multos abſum-
pernit, ſed iuuat & promouet quantum congruè poteſt. Mulieres eorum ſunt caſte: mores de iun-

Inferenda a-
utis extor,Iracundia,
Mendacian.Fraus, Iulienis,
Sordis.

Temulentia.

Exortio,
Crudeles.

Cibi.

Pecunia adulterij.

Furi,
Arcum ad pugnam.

Cibum.

pudicitia earum inter eas aliquid auditur. Verba tamen quædam ex eis in loco satis habent tur-
pitudinis & impudiciæ. Seditiones verò inter eas raro vel nunquam audiuntur. Et quamvis multum in-
ebriantur, in ebrietate sua tamen verbis vel facto nunquam contendunt. Nunc de malis mori-
bus eorum est supponendum. Superbissimi alij hominibus sunt, & despicunt omnes: idèd qua-
si pro nihilo reputant, sue nobiles sint, sue ignobiles. Vidimus enim in curia Imperatoris no-
bilem virum Ierosolimam, magnum Ducem Russiæ, filium etiam Regis & Reginæ Georgiæ, &
Solkanoos multos; duces etiam Soldanorum nullum honorem debitum recipere inter eos, Sed
Tartari qui erant etiam signati, quantumcumque erant viles, antecesserunt eos, & semper primum
locum & summum tenebant: immò sæpè oportebat eos post eorum postiora sedere. Iracun-
di multum & indigentes naturæ sunt: & etiam alij hominibus plus sunt mendaces, & ferè nul-
la veritas invenitur in eis. In principio quidem sunt blandi, sed in fine pungunt vt scorpio. Sub-
doli sunt & fraudulentij, & si possunt astutia circumveniunt omnes. Homines sunt immundi, su-
mendo cibum & potum, & alij factis suis. Qui cum volunt aliquid mali facere alij hominibus,
miro modo occultant, vt prauideri non possint, vel contra eorum astutias remedium inuenire.
Ebrietas honorabilis est apud eos: & quoniam multum quis bibi, ibidem rejicit, nec propter hoc
dimittit quod iterum bibat. Valde sunt cupidi & avari, exactores maximi ad petendum: tenaci-
simi retores, & parcissimi donatores. Aliorum hominum occisio pro nihilo est apud illos. Et,
vt breuiter dicam, omnes mali mores eorum propter prolixitatem in scripto redigi non possunt.
Cibi eorum sunt omnia quæ mandari possunt. Comedunt canes, lupos, vulpes, & equos; & in ne-
cessitate carnes humana. Vnde quando pugnaverunt contra quandam ciuitatem Kytaorum, vi-
bi morabatur imperator ipsorum; eam obfederunt tam diu, quod fecerunt ipsi Tartaris omni-
nind expensas; Et quia non habebant quod manducarent omnind, tunc accipiebant de decem
hominibus vnus ad manducandum. Abluiones etiam quæ egrediuntur de iumentis cum pullis
manducant. Imò vidimus etiam eos pediculos manducare: vidimus etiam eos comedere mures.
Mensilibus & manutergijs non vtiuntur: panem non habent, nec olera, nec legumina, nec aliquid
aliud nisi carnes: & etiam paucas habent, quod alie nationes vix inde vitare possent. Cum pin-
guedine carnium multum polluant manus: quando verò comederunt, tunc manus ad ocreas
suas, vel ad gramina; vel ad aliquid talium terunt. Solent etiam honestiores habere aliquos pan-
niculos paruos, cum quibus vlumo terunt manus, quando carnes manducant. Cibum vnus
eorum incidit, & alius accipit cum puncto cultelli morfellos, & vnicuique præbet, quibusdā plus,
quibusdā minus, secundum quod plus vel minus voluit eos honorare. Scutellas non lauant, &
si aliquando cum brodio lauant carnum, iterum cum carnibus in olla reponunt. Ollas etiam vel
caldaria, vel alia vasa ad hoc deputata si abluunt, simili modo lauant. Apud eos est magnum pec-
catum, si de cibo vel potu petire permittatur aliquid. Vnde ossa, nisi prius extrahatur medulla,
dari canibus non permittunt. Velles etiam non lauant, nec lauari permittunt, & maxime quo to-
nitru aqua illa hori incipiunt donec desinant. Lac iumentinum bibunt in maxima quantitate si
habent: bibunt etiam ouinum, caprinum, vaccinum, & camelorum. Vinum, ceruisiam, & me-
donem non habent, nisi ab alijs nationibus mittatur, vel donetur eisdem. In hyeme, nisi diuites
sint, lac iumentinum non habent. Milliū cum aqua decoquunt, quod tā senu faciant, quod non
comedere sed bibere possunt. Et vnusquisque ex eis bibit cyphum vnum vel duos in mane, & nil
plus in die maducant. In sero vnicuique parum de casibus datur, & brodium de casibus bibunt.
In æstate autem, quia tunc habent satis de lacte iumentino carnes raro maducant, nisi forte do-
nentur eis, aut venatione aliquam bestiam ceperint, siue auem. Legem etiam siue consuetudinē
habent occidendi virum & mulierem quos in adulterio inuenerint manifeste. Similiter & virgi-
nem si fornicata fuerit, mulierē occidunt, & virum. Si aliquis inuenitur in præda vel in furto ma-
nife qui in terra potestatis eorum sine vlla miseratione occiditur. Item si aliquis eorum, dandus est ob-
siliū maxime quando volunt ire ad bellum, centum pæge dantur super postiora, quanto ma-
iores dantur cum baculo magno vnus rusticus potest. Item quando aliqui de minoribus offendunt
in aliquo à suis maioribus non parciunt eis, sed verberibus grauiter affliguntur. Item inter filium
concupiscit & vixoris nulla est differentia, sed dat pater, vnicuique eorum quod vult, est est de ge-
nere ducum, ita est dux filius concubinae, sicut filius legitimus. Et cum vnus Tartarus habet mul-
tas vxores, vna quæque per se suam rationem, & familiam habet: & cum vna comedit, & bibit,
& dormit vna die, & altera die cum alia. Vna tamen ex ipsis maior est inter alias, & frequentius
cum illa quam cum alijs commoratur. Et cum tam multe sint inter se tamen de facili non
contendunt. Vix nihil operantur omnind exceptis sagittis: & etiam de gregibus aliquan-
tulum habent curam; sed venantur, & exercent se ad sagittandum: Omnes enim à paruo vi-
tæ ad magnum sagittarij sunt & boni. Et statim pueri eorum, cum sunt duorum annorum
vel trium, incipiunt equitare. Equos eorum regunt & currunt in eis: & dantur eis arcus se-
cundum suam ætatem, & instruunt ad sagittandum. Agiles enim sunt & audaces valde. Vir-
gines

gines
phare
bent st
res cor
unt. Ci
nibus o

D
pr
puin.
minatur
magni
ipso Ta
minatur
sonarum
uifi. In
ram Dor
cunque
bat, qui
te cum S
rum, & n
cum om
am bello
ge. Aque
impero
debitum
& populu
erat taliter
mulieres,
subiectos
dam valler
mus, simil
Mongallis
tutem reda
can, postqu
Propè quar
certo habie
quando cad
bent diferet
præparauer
hoc audiens
lio Mongali
fuerunt occi
Et quorum al
Huyronum p
etiam bello c
bant. Nunc
ram Sariuon
Comana, qu
quieuiſſet, cor
diu contra co
zum conclus
cerunt expen
de decem hor
viriſſet con
proiecerunt a
plena. Et cu
magnam vian

habentur
multum in
malis mori-
s: idèd qua-
ratoris no-
georgiz, &
er eos, Sed
er primum
ere, Iracun-
& ferè nul-
p. Sub-
mundi, su-
ominibus,
inuenire,
propter hoc
omnitenacif-
ud illos. Et,
in possunt,
os; & in ne-
torum, v-
artaris om-
de decem
cum pullis
ere mures,
nec aliquid
Cum pin-
ad ocreas
iquos pan-
ibum vnus
usdâ plus,
inlaunt, &
las etiâ vel
gnum pec-
medulla,
ne quo to-
amitate si-
am, & me-
nisi diuites
quod non
ane, & nil
sibi bibunt
si fortè do-
suetudinè
tr. & virgi-
suo ma-
undacô-
anto ma-
enduna
ter filiam
est de ge-
abet mul-
ur, & bibie,
equentius
sagili non
aliquan-
paruo vs-
anorum
arcus se-
vidè. Vir-
gines

gines & mulieres equeant, & agiler in equis currunt vt viri. Vidimus enim eas arcus & pharetras portare, Et tam viri quam mulieres diu in equitando possunt durare. Breuissimas habent strepas: equos valdè custodiunt: inio rerum omnium sunt magni conseruatores, Mulieres eorum omnia operantur. Pellicia, vestes, calceos, ocreas, & omnia opera quæ de corio fiunt. Currus etiam ducunt & reparant, camelos onerant, & velocissimæ sunt & strenuæ in omnibus operibus suis: semoralibus omnes vtuntur: aliquæ, sicut viri, sagittant.

Femine Metæ
hæcognitæ eodem
modo vestuntur

De ipsorum Imperio. Cap. 5.

Dictò de eorum consuetudinibus, dicendum est de eorum imperio. Et primò de ipsius principio. Secundò de principibus eius. Tertio de dominio Imperatoris & principum. Terra quædam est in partibus Orientis, de qua dictum est suprà, quæ Mongol nominatur. Hæc terra quondam quatuor populos habuit. Et vnus Yeka-Mongol, id est, ipsos Tartaros appellabant, à quodam fluuio, qui currit per terram eorum, qui Tartar nominatur. Alius appellatur Merkat, quartus Metrit. Hii populi omnes vnâ formam perueniunt. In terra Yeka-Mongol fuit qui vocabatur Cyngis, iste incepit esse robustus venator coram Domino. Didicit enim homines furari, rapere, prædare. Ibat autem ad alias terras, & quocunque potuit capere, & sibi associare non demittebat: homines verò suæ gentis ad se inclinabant, qui tanquam ducem ipsum sequebantur ad omnia malefacta. Hic autem incepit pugnare cum Sumongal, siue Tartaris, postquam homines aggregauerat sibi, & interfecit ducem eorum, & multo bello omnes Tartaros sibi subiugauit & in suam seruitutem redegit. Post hæc cum omnibus his pugnavit, cum Merkat, qui erant positi iuxta terram Tartarorum, quos etiam bello sibi subiecit: Inde procedens pugnavit contra Metritas, & etiam illos deuicit. Audientiaque Naymani, quod Cyngis erat taliter eleuatus, indignati fuerunt, Ipsi enim habuerunt debitum vniuerse carnis exsoluens, filij eius successerunt loco eius; sed iuuenes erant & stulti, & populum nesciebant tenere: sed inuicem diuisi erant & scissi: vnde medio tempore Cyngis erat taliter exaltatus, nihilominus insultum faciebant in terras superius annotatas, viros & mulieres, & pueros occidebant, & capiebant prædâ eorum. Cyngis hoc audiens, omnes sibi subiectos homines aggregauit, Naymani & Kara Kitai, id est, nigri Kitai, ex aduerso in quandam vallem strictam inter montes duos, per quam noseunt ad imperatorem eorum transiimus, similiter conueniunt: & commissum est prælium, in quo Naymani & Kara Kitai a Mongallis sunt deuicti, & maior pars eorum occisa: & alij qui euadere non potuerunt in seruitutem redacti sunt. In terra autem prædictorum Kara Kytaorum Occaday can filius Cyngis, postquam posuit fuit imperator, quandam ciuitatem ædificauit, quam Omyl appellauit. Propè quam ad meridiem est quoddam desertum magnum, in quo syluestres homines pro certo habitare dicuntur, qui nullo modo loquuntur, nec in cruribus habent iuncturas: & sibi quando cadunt, per se surgere sine adiutorio aliorum minimè possunt, aliquantam tamen habent discretionem. Mongali autem in terram eorum reuerentes se contra Kytaos in prælium præparauerunt, qui castra mouentes terram eorum intrauerunt, Imperator autem Kytaorum hoc audiens venit contra eos cum exercitu suo: & commissum est prælium durum; in quo præliò Mongali fuerunt deuicti: & omnes nobiles Mongallorum qui erant in prædicto exercitu fuerunt occisi vsque ad septem. Cyngis verò & alij qui remanserunt in terram suam fugerunt. Et quum aliquantulum quietisset Cyngis, præparauit se rursus ad prælium & contra terram Huyrorum processit ad bellum. Isti homines Christiani de secta Nestorianorum erant, quos bant. Nunc autem eandem literam Mongallorum appellant. Nam prius scripturam aliquam non habebant Saruiorum, & contra terram Karaitarum, & contra terram Voyrat, & contra terram Comana, quas terras omnes deuicit. Inde est in terram suam reuersus. Et cum aliquantulum diu contra eos pugnasset magnam partem terræ Kytaorum ad bellum processit, & cum eum concluderent in sua ciuitate maiori: quam cum tam diu obsiderunt, quod exercitui defecerunt expensæ, & cum non haberent quod manducarent, præcepit illis Cyngis can, quod de decem hominibus vnum darent ad manducandum. Illi autem de ciuitate pugnantibus proiecerunt argentum, & maximè liquefactum. Ciuitas enim hæc multis diuitijs erat plena. Et cum diu pugnasset, & eam bello vincere minimè possent, fecerunt vnâ magnam viam sub terra ab exercitu vsque ad mediam ciuitatem, & aperientes subito ter-

Tartarie populi;
Tartar fluuius.

Cyngis ortus &
res gestæ.

Naymani.

Frater discor-
dantes oppressi.

Kara Kitai.

Occoday can.
Vel Chamyl.
Homines syluestres.

De mutua victo-
ria Mongallorum
& Kytaorum.
Tartarorum Ky-
tains clades.

Nova victoria
licet.
Vel Sarui.
Vel Karaitarum
Vel Huyrat.

Argentum lique-
factum in ho-
stium proiectionem.

Kyai vidit.

Cyngis saluatur
Imperator.
Kythai pars in
mari posita.
Kyaorum litera,
& religio.

Opficionum
laus.

Thosuch eum
Cyngis filius Co-
mano deus est.

India minor de-
bellata.

Presbyter Ioni-
nes: eiection
stragema.

Victoria de Tar-
taria.

De monstro
mulieribus &
canibus mon-
stro marisio.

Glacies.

Burutabeth re-
gio.Incolarum mo-
res.Terra Kergis
Orientalis.

Nota iter duo-
rum mensium
versus Orientem.

Trogiodytia.

ram, eis nescientibus profuerunt in medio ciuitatis, & pugnabant cum hominibus ciuita-
tis, & illi qui erant extra simili modo pugnabant, & concidentes portas intrauerunt ciuita-
tem: & occidentes Imperatorem & homines plures, ciuitatem possidebant: & aurum & ar-
gentum, & omnes diuitias abstulerunt. Et cum terræ prædictæ Kyaorum suos homines
præficerent, in terram propriam sunt reuersi. Et tunc Imperatore Kyaorum deuictio factus
est Imperator. Quandam autem partem terræ Kyaorum, quæ posita est in mari, vsque in
hodiernum diem nullatenus deuicerunt. Kyrai autem, de quibus superius diximus, homi-
nes sunt Pagani, qui habent litteram specialem: & habent nouum & vetus Testamentum;
& habent vitas patrum, & Eremitas & domos quasi Ecclesias factas, in quibus orant tempo-
ribus suis: Et dicunt se quosdam sanctos habere. Vnum Deum colunt: Dominum nostrum
Iesum Christum honorant, & credunt vitam æternam, sed minimè baptizantur. Scripturam
nostram honorant & reuerentur: Christianos diligunt, & Ecclesias faciunt plures. Homines
benigni & humani facis videntur: barbam non habent, & in dispositione faciei satis concor-
dant cum Mongalis, non tamen sunt in facie ita lati. Linguam propriam habent: meliores
artifices non inueniuntur in toto mundo in omnibus operibus, in quibus solent homines ex-
ercitari. Terra eorum est opulenta valdè in frumento, vino, auro, argento, & serico, & omni-
bus rebus in quibus solet sustentari humana natura. Et cum aliquantulum quieuisent, suos
exercitus diuiserunt. Vnum de filiis Tossuch nomine, quem etiam Can appellabant, id est
Imperatorem, misit cum exercitu contra Comanos, quos multo bello deuicit: & postquam
vicerat eos in terram suam reuertebatur. Alium etiam filium misit cum exercitu contra In-
dos; qui minorem Indiam deuicerunt. Hij autem nigri sunt Saraceni, qui Ethiopes nuncu-
pantur. Hic autem exercitus contra Christianos, qui sunt in India maiori in pugnam proce-
ssit, Quod audiens rex terræ illius, qui vulgò Præbyter Iohannes appellatur, venit contra e-
os exercitu congregato. Et faciens imagines cupreas hominum in sella posuit super equos,
ponens ignem interius, & posuit hominem cum solle post imaginem cupream super equum.
& cum multis imaginibus, & equis taliter præparatis venerunt contra prædictos ad pugnan-
dum. Et cum ad locum prælii peruenissent, istos equos vnum iuxta vnum premiserunt. Viri
autem, qui erant retro, posuerunt nescio quid super ignem qui erat in prædicta imagine, &
cum foliis fortiter sufflauerunt. Vnde factum est, quod de fumo illo aer est denigratus. Et
tunc super Tartaros iecerunt sagittas, ex quibus multi interfecti & vulnerati fuerunt. Et sic
cum confusione eos de sinibus suis eiecerunt: Et nunquam audiuius, quod ultra ad eos re-
dierunt. Cum autem per deserta redirent, in quandam terram venerunt in qua quadam mon-
stra fœmineas imagines habentia reperiunt. Et cum interrogassent eas per multos interpre-
tes ubi essent viri terræ illius, responderunt quod in illa terra quæcunque fœminæ nascen-
tur, habebant formam humanam: Masculi verò formam caninam. Et dum moram protra-
herent in terra prædicta, Canes in alia parte conuenerunt in vnum: Et dum esset byems aspe-
rima, se omnes proiecerunt in aquam: & post hæc in continentem in puluerem mouebantur, &
ita puluis admixtus aquæ super eos congelauit: & dum sapè hoc fecissent, glacies densa facta
est super eos: Vnde cum magno impetu cum Tartaris conuenerunt ad pugnam. At illi quum
sagittas super eos iactabant, ac si super lapides sagittassent, retro sagittæ redibant: Alia etiam
arma eorum in nullo eos laedere potuerunt. Canes verò insultum facientes in eos mortibus
vulnerauerunt, multos etiam occiderunt, & ita eiecerunt eos de sinibus suis. Et dum reuert-
retur exercitus ille, venit ad terram Burutabeth, quos bello vicerunt: qui sunt Pagani. Qui
consuetudinem mirabilem imo potius miserabilem habent, & comedunt eum. Isti
pilos in barba non habent: immo quoddam ferrum in manibus portant, cum quo barbani
semper depilant, si fortè aliquis crinis crescit in ipsa: & multum etiam deformes sunt. Inde ex-
ercitus ille reuertebatur in terram suam, Cyngis can etiam eo tempore quo diuisit exercitus
illos, misit in expeditione contra Orientem per terram Kergis, quos bello non vici: & vsque
ad Caspios montes peruenit, montes autem illi sunt de lapide adamantino. Vnde eorum sa-
gittas & arma ferrea ad se traxerunt. Homines inter Caspios montes concludos viderunt, qui
tam montem fregerunt: sed nubes quædam erat posita ante ipsos, ad quam accedere non po-
terant villo modo, quia statim moriebantur, cum perueniebant ad illam. Sed antequam per-
uenirent ad prædictum montem plusquam per mensem vastam solitudinem transferunt. Inde
procedentes adhuc contra Orientem plusquam per mensem vastam desertum iuerunt.
Et peruenierunt ad quandam terram, ubi viderunt vias trias, sed nullum hominem poterant
inuenire. Sed tantum quæsiuerunt per terram, quod inueniunt hominem cum vxore sua;
quos ante Cyngis can adduxerunt. Et cum interrogasset, ubi essent homines terræ illius, re-
sponderunt quod in terra sub montibus habitarent. At Cyngis can retenta vxore misit virum
illum

omnibus ciuita-
trauerunt ciuita-
& aurum & ar-
m suos homines
n deuidio factus
mari, vsque in
diximus, homi-
Testamentum;
sue orant tempo-
nium nostrum
ur. Scripturam
lures. Homines
ei satis concor-
bent: meliores
nt homines ex-
trico, & omni-
nieuissent, suos
nellabant, id est
& postquam
ctu contra In-
hiopes nuncu-
nam procef-
venna contra e-
super equos,
super equum
os ad pugnā-
emiserunt. Viri
ta imagine, &
denigratus, &
uerunt. Et sic
tra ad eos re-
quendam mon-
ultos interpre-
inā nascebant-
moram protra-
hyems asper-
oueabantur, &
es densa facta
. At illi quum
: Alia etiam
eos moribus
dum reuer-
Pagani. Qui
trum suorum
tunt eum, isti
quo barbari
sunt. Inde ex-
uist exercitus
cit: & vsque
inde eorum sa-
iderunt, qui
dere non po-
tequam per-
ficerunt. Inde
tum iuerunt,
em poterant
m vxore sua;
e illius, re-
misse virum
illum

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

29

illum cum nuncijs suis mandans hominibus illis vt venirent ad mandatum ipsius. Illi verò eun-
tes ad eos, narrauerunt omnia quæ Cyngis can mandauerat. Qui responderunt quod tali die
venirent ad mandatum suum faciendum. Medio vero tempore congregauerunt se per vias
occultas sub terra, & venerunt contra istos ad pugnandum: & irruentes subito super eos plu-
rimos occiderunt. At illi, Cyngis can videlicet & sui fugam ineuntes, terram exierunt prædi-
ctam, illos tamen homines, virum scilicet & mulierem secum duxerunt, qui vsque ad mortem
in terra Tartarorum fuerunt. Interrogati verò quare sub terra habitarent, dixerunt quod vno
tempore anni quum sol oritur, tantus sonitus est, quod homines nulla ratione possunt sustine-
re. Inmo etiam tunc percutiebant in organis & tympanis, & alijs instrumentis, vt illum sonitum
non audirent. Et dum Cyngis de terra illa reuerteretur, defecerunt ei victualia, & habebant
maximam famem. Et tunc recentia interiora vnius bestię eos contigit inuenire: quæ accipien-
tes, depositis tamen stercorebus decoxerunt: & coram Cyngis can peccantes cum suis illa co-
mandicari potest, exceptis stercorebus, projiciatur. Et deinde in terram propriam est
reuersus: & ibidem leges & statuta multiplicia fecit, quæ Tartari non violabiliter obser-
uant. Ex quibus tantum duo dicemus. Vnum est, quod quicumque in superbia erectus, propria
autoritate sine electione principum esse voluerit imperator, sine vlla miseratione debet occi-
di. Vnde ante electionem ipsius Cuynech propter hoc vnus de principibus, nepos ipsius Cyngis
can fuit occisus. Volebat enim sine electione regnare. Aliud statutum est, quod sibi debent
subiugare omnem terram: nec cum aliqua gente debent pacem habere, nisi prius eis subdatur,
quo vsque veniat tempus occisionis eorum. Debent enim occidi, vt prophetarum est eis: Et il-
li qui euadere poterunt, vt dicunt, debent istam legem tenere quam tenent alij, qui eos bello de-
vincti. Statuit etiam quod per millenarios, & centenarios & Decanos debeat eorum exerci-
tus ordinari. Post hoc ab istis conitui est occisus, peractis suis ordinationibus & statutis. Hic
autem habuit quatuor filios: Vnus vocabatur Occoday, secundus Tossuch can, tertius Thaa-
day: & nomen quarti ignoramus. Isti quatuor filij cum alijs maioribus qui tunc erant, primum
filium videlicet Occoday elegerunt imperatorem, filij autem istius Occoday Cuyne, qui nunc
est imperator, Cothen & Cyrenen. Et si plures habuerit filios ignoramus, filij autem Tos-
such can Bati: iste est ditior & potentior post imperatorem: Ordu, iste est senior omnium du-
cum: Syban, Bora, Bereuthanth: aliorum filiorum Tossuch can nomina ignoramus, filij Thaa-
day sunt Burin & Chadan, nomina aliorum filiorum Tossuch can nomina ignoramus, filij Thaa-
day nomen nescimus, filiorum nomina sunt hæc. Vnus vocatur Mengu, cuius mater est Se-
roctan. Ista domina inter omnes Tartaros, excepta matre imperatoris, est magis nominata &
potentior est omnibus excepto Bati. Alius vocatur Becas. Alios filios habuit plures, sed eorum
nomina ignoramus. Hæc sunt ducum nomina. Ordu: iste fuit in Polonia & in Hungaria: Bati,
Cathan, Syban, Bureth. Omnes isti fuerunt in Hungaria, Cyropdan, iste est adhuc vltra mare
contra Soldanum Damasce. Isti remanserunt in terra: Mangu, Cuthen, Syrennen, Hybilay, Se-
remum, Synocur, Thuaramur, Cyragay, Sybedey, senex quidam miles inter eos, Bora, Berca,
Mauci, Choranca: sed iste inter alios est minimus. Alij verò duces sunt plures, sed eorum no-
mina ignoramus.

Imperator autē Tartarorum habet mirabile dominium super omnes. Nullus audet in aliqua
parte morari, nisi ipse assignet ei. Ipse autem assignat vbi maneant duces: millenarij centenarij,
Centenarij decanis. Insuper quicquid præcipitur in quocunq; tempore, quocunq; loco, siue ad
bellum, siue ad mortem, siue ad vitam, sine vlla contradictione obediunt. Etiam si petat filiam
virginem vel sororem, sine contradictione dant ei. Aut singulis annis, aut internisiis aliquibus
annis virgines colligit ex omnibus finibus Tartarorum. Si ipse vult sibi retinere aliquas retinet;
alias dat suis hominibus, sicut videtur ei expedire. Nuncios quoscunq; quocunq; & vbicunq;
transmittit, oportet quod dent ei sine mora equos subditicios & expensas. Vnde cumq; venerint
ei tributa vel nuncij, oportet quod equi, currus, & expensę similiter dentur eis. Nuncij qui veni-
unt aliunde in magna miseria sunt in victu pariter & vestitu: quia expensę viles sunt & pauca:
maximè cum veniunt ad principes, & ibi debent morā contrahere. Tunc ita parum datur decem
comedere, nisi semel in die, & satis parum. Insuper si aliquæ iniurię sibi sunt, conqueri de facili
ab alijs nationibus & minoribus ab eis exiguntur: & si non daretur, vili pendunt eos, immò qua-
si pro nihilo habent eos. Et si à magnis viris mittuntur, nolunt ab eis modicum munus ha-
bere: sed dicunt: A magno homine venistis, & cur modicum datis? & accipere dedignan-
tur. Et si nuncij bene volunt facere facta sua, oportet eos dare maiora. Idcirco magnam par-
tem rerum, quæ nobis à fidelibus erant datæ, oportuit nos de necessitate muneribus dare. Et
sciendum

Videtur hic fontus fieri, & frigore glaciæ, & nulum de montibus.

Cyngis len.

Interitum. Liberi.

Nepotes.

Duces.

Imperatoris Tartarorum scilicet in omnes imperium.

In hominibus et ga Legatos.

Occoday secundus Imperator Tartarorum.

Barthra ciuitas vel Barchin.

Vel Sergaie.

Orna super Don fluium.

Kioua ciuitas.

Morduanorum terra.

Bulgaria magna. Hungaria magna.

Parositas.

Samogedi.

Oceanus Septentrionalis. Similes Probiheri hominibus.

Expediio Cyropodania.

Armeni.

Hij videntur singulae balistas.

sciendum, quod ita omnia sunt in manu Imperatoris prædicti, quod nemo audeat dicere, hoc est meum vel illius; sed omnia sunt Imperatoris, res, iumenta, & homines. Et super hoc etiam nuper emanauit Imperatoris statutum. Idem dominum per omnia habent duces super homines suos. Diuisi enim sunt homines Tartari, videlicet etiam alij inter duces. Nuncij etiam ducum, quocunque eos transmittunt, & homines tam Imperatoris quam alij omnes equos subdititios & expensas, & qui equos custodiant, & etiam nuncij seruiant sine contradictione dare tenentur. Imperatori autem iumenta vt habeat ex eis lac ad annum vel ad duos, vel ad tres, sicut placuerit ei, tam duces quam alij pro redditu dare tenentur. Et homines dum cum idem facere tenentur dominis suis, Inter eos enim nullus est liber. Et vt breuiter dicam, Quicquid Imperator & Duces volunt, & quantum volunt de rebus suis accipiunt. De personis etiam eorum disponunt per omnia, sicut volunt. Mortuo Imperatore, sicut superius dictum est, conuenerunt Duces & elegerunt Occoday filium Cyngis can prædicti Imperatorem. Qui habito consilio principum diuisit exercitus. Bati, qui in secundo gradu attinebat ei, misit contra Altisoldanum, & contra terram Biserminorum. Hij erant Saraceni, & Comanici loquebantur. Et cum intrasset terram illorum pugnauit contra eos, & bello eos sibi subiecit. Quædam autem ciuitas quæ Barthra dicitur, diuersit ei, fecerant enim foueas multas in circuitu ciuitatis & operuerant illas; & quando illi veniebant cadebant in foueas. Vnde non potuerunt capere ciuitatem, donec illas foueas repleissent. Homines autem de quadam ciuitate quæ vocatur Iakint hæc audientes exierunt obuiam eis, se sponte in manus eorum tradentes: vnde ciuitas eorum non erat destructa, sed plures eorum occiderunt, & alios transfulerunt. Et accepto spolio ciuitatis, ipsam alijs hominibus repleuerunt. Et venerunt contra ciuitatem quæ vocatur Orna. Illa ciuitas erat nimium populosa Christiani ibi erant plures; Gazari videlicet, Rutheni, & Alani, & alij: nec non & Saraceni. Saracenorum enim erat dominium ciuitatis. Hæc autem ciuitas erat diuitijs multum plena. Est enim posita super fluium qui vocatur Don, qui intrat in mare. Vnde est quasi portus: & totum maximum habebant de illa ciuitate alij Saraceni. Et cum non possent aliter deuincere, præciderunt fluium, qui currebat per ciuitatem, & illam cum rebus omnibus submerserunt. Quo facto: postea intrauerunt terram Tortorum, qui similiter sunt Pagani: quam deuincientes, iuerunt contra Russiam, & fecerunt magnam stragem in terra Russiarum, ciuitates & castra destruxerunt, & homines occiderunt: etiam Kiouam quæ erat Metropolis Russiarum obsederunt: & cum diu obsedissent, illam ceperunt, & occiderunt homines ciuitatis. Inde procedentes pugnando destruxerunt totam Russiam. De Russiâ autem & Comania processerunt duces prædicti, & pugnauerunt contra Hungaros & Polonos, Ex quibus Tartaris in Polonia & in Hungaria plures interfecti fuerunt. Et si non fugissent, sed viriliter resistissent Hungari exiissent Tartari de finibus suis: quia tunc habuerunt timorem, quod omnes fugere attentabant. Sed Bati vaginato gladio in faciem eis restitit, dicens: Nolite fugere: quia si fugitis nullus euadet: si debemus mori, moriamur omnes: quia futurum est, vt Cyngis caui prædixit, quod interfici debeamus: Et si nunc est tempus, sustineamus. Et sic animati sunt & remanserunt, & Hungariam destruxerunt. Inde reuertentes iuerunt in terram Morduanorum, qui sunt Pagani, & bello deuicerunt. Inde procedentes contra Bileros, id est, Bulgariam magnam, & ipsam destruxerunt omnino. Inde procedentes ad Aquilonem adhuc contra Bascari, id est, Hungariam magnam, & eos etiam deuicerunt. Inde egredientes iuerunt ad Aquilonem, & venerunt ad Parositas qui habent paruos stomachos & os paruulum, nec manducant, sed decoquunt carnes: quibus decoctis ponunt se inter fumum & olam, & recipiunt fumum, & de hoc solo reficiuntur: Sed etiam si aliquid manducant, hoc valde modicum est. Inde procedentes venerunt ad Samogedos. Hij autem homines tantum de venationibus viuunt: tabernacula & vestes habent tantummodo de bestiarum pellibus. Inde vltra procedentes venerunt ad quandam terram super Oceanum, vbi inuenerunt quædam monstra quæ per omnia formam humanam habebant, sed pedes desinebant in pedes bouinos, & faciem per omnia habebant vt canis: duo verba loquebantur more humanum & tertio latrabant vt canis: & sic per interualla temporum latratum interponebant: tunc ad naturam suam redibant: & sic intelligi poterat quod dicebant: Inde redierunt in Comaniam, & vsque nunc quidam ex eis morantur ibidem. Cyropodani vero eodem tempore misit Occoday can cum exercitu ad meridiem contra Kergis, quos etiam bello deuicit. Hij autem homines sunt pagani, qui pilos in barba non habent. Quorum consuetudo est talis. Cum pater moritur alicuius, præ dolore quasi vnam corrigiam in signum lamenti ab aure vsque ad aurem de facie sua leuant. Quibus deuictis, ad meridiem iuit contra Armenos. Sed cum per deferte transiret, etiam quædam monstra effigiem humanam habentia inuenerunt: sed non nisi vnum brachium cum manu in medio pedoris, & vnum pedem habebant: & duo sagittarunt

taru
Cur
per n
dum
meni
quad
dente
& deu
lapie
fueru
Et qu
omnia
rogan
pro eo

D
Jo
captiuo
cum hij
dinauit,
Decem
narijs pr
ille num
tres, ita
cem hom
ter dicam
plures a
tur. Iter
occidunt
plenas de
quisque,
aliquant
dam habet
dinem vni
In corrigia
ad finem,
tur super
faciunt vna
gantur ad
nunt, vbi du
das exponu
rium iunctu
bus prædicti
re vsque ad
stricta: in ro
renes habent
tur circa corp
laminas ferre
nam habent
apte. Ecce in v
lea autem sup
Et omnes ista
autem omnia
nam tenuem
hunc modum
& interius tres
cendendo per

dicere, hoc
er hoc etiam
super ho-
luncij etiam
nines equos
ontradictio-
d duos, vel
omines du-
miter dicam,
De perionis
rius dictum
peratore em-
ebat ei, mi-
& Coma-
ello eos sibi
enim foue-
nt in foue-
ines autem
onte in ma-
um occide-
us repleue-
populosas
Saraceni-
tum plena.
asi portus:
lter deuin-
us submer-
quam de-
ciuitates
opolis Rus-
nitatis. In-
mania pro-
Tartaris in
restitissent
nes fugere
e: quia si
vt Cyngis
sic anima-
tram Mor-
os, id est,
onem ad-
redientes
os partu-
num & ol-
cant, hoc
es tantum
pellibus,
uenerunt
inebant in
more hu-
onebant:
redierunt
tempo-
uicuit, Hij
est talis.
aure vsq;
Sed cum
runt: sed
duo sagit-
tarunt

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

31

tarunt cum vno arcu, & isti ita fortiter currebant, quod equi eos inuelligare non poterant. Currebant enim saltando super illum vnum pedem; & cum essent fessi taliter eundo, ibant super manum & pedem, remouendo se quasi rota; & sic cum essent fessierunt currebant secundum modum priorem; aliquos tamen occidebant ex eis. Inde procedentes venerunt in Ar-quadraginta millia ypperperorum singulis annis dederunt, & adhuc faciunt idem. Inde proce- & deuicerunt. Inde procedentes ultra debellando & vincendo vsq; ad terram Soldani Ha- lapie & nunc terram illam impugnant: nec postea vsque in hodiernum diem in terram suam fuerunt reuersi. Alius exercitus iuste contra terram Calif de Baldach, quam sibi etiam subdiderunt: Et quadraginta bisantia exceptis Baldachinis & alijs muneribus omni die dant pro tributo: Et omni anno pro Calif, vt ad eos veniat, nuncios mittunt: qui cum tributo munera magna mittit, rogans vt eum supportent. Ipse vero imperator munera accipit, & nihilominus vt veniat mittit pro eo.

Georgia.

Terra Soldani
Deurum.
Terra Soldani
Halapia.

Qualiter Tartari se habent in prelijs. Cap. 6.

Disto de imperio, dicendum est hoc modo de bello. Primo de ordinatione acierum. Secundo de armis. Terrio de astutijs in congressione, quarto de crudelitate quam faciunt in captiuis. Quinto de oppugnatione castrorum & ciuitatum. Sexto de perfidia quam exercent cum hijs qui se reddunt eisdem. De ordinatione acierum dicemus hoc modo. Cyngis can ordinauit, vt decem hominibus praeponeretur vnus: & ille secundum nos appellatur Decanus. Decem autem Decanis praeponeretur vnus, qui centenarius nuncupatur: Decem vero Centenarijs praeponeretur vnus qui millenarius nuncupatur: decem millenarijs praeponeretur vnus, & ille numerus vocatur tenebre apud eos. Cuncto vero exercitui praeponuntur duo duces vel tres, ita tamen quod habeant respectum ad vnum. Cum autem omnes sunt in bello si de decem hominibus fugit vnus vel duo, vel tres, vel etiam plures, omnes occiduntur. Et vt breuiter dicam, nisi communiter cedant, omnes qui fugiunt occiduntur. Item si vnus vel duo aut plures audacter ad pugnam accedunt, & decem alij non sequuntur, etiam occiduntur. Item si vnus de decem vel plures capiuntur, & alij socij sui non liberant eos, etiam occiduntur. Duo arcus vel tres, vel vnum bonum ad minus, & tres pharetras magnas plenas de sagittis & vnam securim, & funes ad machinas trahendas habere debet vnusquisque. Diuites autem habent gladios acutos in fine, ex vna tantum parte incidentes, & aliquid tantulum curuos: & habent equum armatum, crura etiam tecta. Galcas & loricas quidam habent de corio in hunc modum formatas. Habent quosdam corrigias de boue ad latitudinem vnus manus, & bituminant tres vel quatuor simul, & ligant illas corrigiis vel cordis. In corrigia superiori ponunt cordulas in fine; in inferiori ponunt in medio, & sic faciunt vsque ad finem. Vnde quum se inclinant in inferiores, corrigia superiores ascendunt & sic duplicantur super corpus, vel triplicantur. De coopertura equi faciunt quinque partes: ex vna parte faciunt vnam, ex alia parte faciunt aliam, quam partem ducunt a cauda vsq; ad caput: quae ligantur ad sellam, & post sellam in dorso & etiam in collo, super renes etiam partem aliam ponunt, vbi duae partium ligaturae iunguntur: in qua pecia faciunt vnum foramen, per quod caudas exponunt: & ante pectus ponunt etiam vnam: quae omnes protenduntur vsque ad crurium iuncturas. Et ante frontem laminam ferream ponunt, quae ex vtraque parte colli partibus praedictis ligatur. Lorica vero etiam quatuor partes habet, vna pars protenditur a sterno vsque ad collum; sed est facta secundum dispositionem humani corporis: quia ante pectus est stricta: in rotundum obuoluitur circa corpus a brachijs inferius: Super humeros autem retro ad renes habent aliam peciam, quae protenditur a collo vsque ad aliam peciam, quae reuoluitur circa corpus: Super humeros autem istae duae peciae anterior videlicet & posterior, ad duas laminas ferreas quae sunt in vtroque humero fibulis connectuntur. Et in vtroque brachio vnam habent peciam, quae ab humero protenduntur vsque ad manus, quae etiam inferius sunt aptae. Et in vtroque crure vnam habent peciam: quae peciae omnes fibulis coniunguntur. Galea autem superius est ferrea. Sed illud quod protegit in circuitu collum & gulam de corio fit. Et omnes istae peciae de corio sunt formatae secundum modum superius annotatum. Quidam autem omnia quae superius diximus habent de ferro in hunc modum formata. Vnam laminam tenuem ad latitudinem vnus digiti faciunt, & ad longitudinem palme vnus. Et in hunc modum faciunt laminas multas: & in vnaquaque lamina octo foramina parua faciunt, & interius tres corrigias strictas & fortes ponunt, & laminas vnam super aliam ponunt, quasi ascendendo per gradus: & ligant laminas praedictas ad corrigias tenuibus corrigiis, quas mit-
tunt

tunt per foramina superius annotata: Et in superiori parte consunt corrigiolam vnam, ut laminæ prædictæ bene & firmiter cohereant sibi. Et faciunt ex laminis quali corrigiam vnam, & postea ligant per pecias per omnia, sicut superius dictum est. Et ista faciunt tam ad equorum quam ad hominum armaturas. Et faciunt illa ita lucere, quod potest homo in eis faciem suam videre. Aliqui eorū lanceas habent: & in fine ferri lanceæ vnum habent vnclis, cum quo trahunt hominem de sella si possunt. Longitudo sagittarum est duorum pedum & vnus palma, & duorum digitorum. Et quia diuersi sunt pedes, mensurâ pedum geometricâ ponimus. Duodecem grana hordei pollicis transversio est. Sexdecim pollices transversi faciunt vnum geometricum pedem. Ferramenta sagittarum sunt acutissima, & ex vtraque parte incidentia quasi gladius biceps, & semper portant limas iuxta pharetram ad acuendum sagittas. Ferramenta prædicta caudam habent acutam ad longitudinem vnus digiti, quam imponunt in lignum. Scutum habent de viminibus vel de virgulis factum. Sagittas habent alias ad sagittandum aues bestias & homines inermes ad trium digitorum latitudinem. Sagittas alias habent diuersimodos ad aues & bestias sagittandas. Quam ad bellum procedere volunt præcursores præmittunt, qui nihil secum portant præter filtra sua, equos & arma. Isti nihil rapiunt, domos non comburunt, bestias non occidunt: Sed tamen homines vulnerant & mortificant, & si non possunt aliud, mittunt in fugam; multo libentius tamen occidunt, quam fugant, post illos sequitur exercitus, qui cuncta quæ inuenit accipit, & homines etiam, si inueniri possunt, accipiunt & occidunt. Quam autem ad flumina perueniunt, hoc modo transiunt illa etiam si sunt magna. Maiores vnum rotundum & leue corium habent, in quo in summitate per circulum crebras faciunt anasas, in quibus funem imponunt, & stringunt ita quod in circuitu faciunt quendam ventrem, quem replent vestibus, & alijs rebus, & fortissime comprimunt ad inuicem: post hoc in medio ponunt sellas & alias res duriores: homines autem in medio sedent: & ligant ad caudam equi nauem hanc taliter præparatam, & vnum hominum qui equum regat faciunt pariter cum equo ante natare: vel habent aliquando duos remos, & cum illis remigant vltra aquam, & sic transiunt fluium. Equos vero pellunt in aqua, & vnus homo iuxta vnum equum, quære gressat: & alij equi illum sequuntur. Et sic transiunt aquas & flumina magna. Alij vero pauperiores vnam burfam de corio bene confutam vnusquisque; tenetur habere: in qua burfâ vel in quo sacco vestes & omnes res suas imponunt, & in summitate sacculi fortissime ligant, & suspendunt ad caudam equi, & transiunt, ut super dictum est. Sciendum est, quod cum vident hostes tunc vadunt ad eos, & vnusquisque; iacit tres sagittas vel quatuor contra aduersarios: Et si vident quod eos superare non possunt, retro graduntur ad suos: Et hoc faciunt in fraudem, ut aduersarij eos sequantur ad loca ubi insidias parauerunt: Et si inimici eorum sequuntur ad prædictas insidias, circumdant eos & sic vulnerant & occidunt. Item si vident quod magnus exercitus est contra eos, aliquando iuerunt ab eo per vnam dietam vel duas, & alij partem terræ inuadunt & spoliant: & interficiunt homines, & terrâ destruant & denascent. Et si vident quod hoc etiâ facere non possunt, cedunt retro ad decem vel duodecem dietas: aliquando etiâ morantur in loco ruoto, quousque; aduersariorum exercitus separetur, & tunc furim veniunt, & depopulantur totâ terram. In bellis etiam astutissimi sunt: quia iam per quadraginta annos & amplius cum alijs gentibus dimicauerunt. Cum autem volunt ad pugnam accedere, omnes acies ordinant sicut debet pugnare. Duces siue principes exercitus bellum non intrant, sed stant à longe contra inimicorum exercitum, & iuxta se habent pueros in equis & mulieres & equos. Et faciunt aliquando imagines hominum, & ponunt super equos. Hoc ideo faciunt, ut multitudo magna bellantium esse credantur. Contra faciem equorum vnam aciem captiuorum & aliarum gentium quæ sunt inter eos transmittunt: & forsitan aliqui Tartari vadunt cum eis. Alias acies fortiorum hominum longe mittunt à dextris & à sinistris, ut non videantur ab aduersarij suis: & sic circumdant aduersarios & colligunt in medium, & pugnare incipiunt ex omni parte. Et cum sunt aliquando pauci, putantur ab aduersarijs qui circumdati sunt, esse multi. Et maxime cum videant illos, qui sunt cum duce vel principe exercitus pueros & mulieres & equos, & homines fictos, ut dictum est supra: quos credunt esse pugnaturos: & per hoc terrentur & confunduntur. Et si forte aduersarij bene pugnant, faciunt eis viam ut fugiant: & statim cum fugere incipiunt, ab inuicem separati inlequantur eos, & plures tunc occidunt fuga, quam mortificare possent in bello. Sciendum tamen est, quod si aliud possunt, non libenter cōgrediuntur, sed homines & equos sagittis vulnerant & occidunt. Munitiones in hunc modum expugnant. Si est talis municio ipsam circumdant, immo aliquando ita sepeliunt, ut nullus ingredi vel exire possit. Expugnant fortissime machinis & sagittis: & nec die nec nocte cessant a prælio, ut illi qui sunt in munitionibus non quiescant. Ipsi Tartari quiescunt: quia acies dimidunt & vna succedit alteri in pugna ut non nimium fatigentur. Et si eam taliter habere non possunt græcū proijciunt ignem. Imo solent aliquando accipere aruinâ hominum quos occidunt, & liquefactum proijciunt super

Non transiunt
flumina.

Qualiter munitiones obliant.

sup
der
faci
suff
par
aut
lini
adiu
ante
dant
Et cu
excep
ut did
serua
tem q
Occid
post h
pauc

SCri
Sque
cundo
eis. Q
ciunt p
enactas
in exerc
hominib
ciunt ill
merant
quid pre
contra ec
batur &
& quicu
Iud ider
quæba
rauit, p
diues esse
& vaum
cuius nor
ni appella
ter Tartar
ut ad eos
tur vt alia
ribus coru
ui ab eis cu
eius eorum
Michael
potionibus
eo quærun
petunt eor
Ieroslâ, &
res, filium v
Sicut de quo
quos redire
si homines a
quod sunt T
in ea occidit
ra illa veniunt

nam, vi iam
iani vnam, &
ad equorum
faciem suam
in quo trahunt
palmas, & du-
s. Duodecim
geometricum
gladius bi-
prædicta cau-
Scutum ha-
ues bestias &
eximodas ad
præmittunt,
non combu-
n possunt ali-
equitur exer-
it & occidunt.
na. Maiores
as faciunt an-
tam ventrem,
hoc in medio
caudam equi
ter cum equo
, & sic trans-
egit, notat: &
eriores vnam
quo sacco ve-
dunt ad cau-
tunc vadunt
ent quod eos
erfarij eos se-
ctas insidias,
us est contra
adunt & spo-
oc etiã facere
ur in loco tu-
neur totã ter-
um alijs gen-
ficat debet
micorũ exo-
imagines
um esse cre-
m quæ sunt
rtiorum ho-
& sic circun-
cum sunt a-
ime cum vi-
& homines
r & confun-
im cum su-
quã mortu-
duntur, sed
gnant. Si est
exire possit,
illi qui sunt
necedit alte-
roiciunt ig-
m proiciunt
super

super domos: Et vbiunque venit ignis super pinguedinem illam, quali inextinguibiliter ar-
det. Et si ita non prævalent, & si ciuitas illa vel castrum habeat flumen, obstruunt illud, vel
faciunt alium alueum & submergunt illam munitionem si possunt. Si autem non possunt
suffodiunt illam, & sub terra armati in ipsam ingrediuntur. Et cum iam intrauerunt, vna
pars ignem imponit vt comburatur: & alia pars cum illius munitionis hominibus pugnat. Si
autem nec sic illam vincere possunt, castrum vel munitionem suam faciunt contra illam, vt ab
inimicorum iaculis non grauentur, & contra illam multo tempore iacent: nisi forte exterius
adiutorum exercitus qui pugnat cum eis adhibeat, & vi remoueat ipsos. Sed cum iacent
ante munitionem blande eis loquuntur, & multa promittunt, ad hoc vt se in eorum manus tra-
dant: Et si illi se eis tradiderint, dicunt: Exite, vt secundum morem nostrum vos muneremus.
Et cum illi ad eos exeunt, querunt qui sunt artifices inter eos, & illos reseruant: alios autem,
exceptis illis quos volunt habere pro seruis cum securi occidunt. Et si aliquibus alijs parcunt,
vt dictum est, nobilibus & honestis nunquam parcunt. Et si forte aliquo casu contingente re-
seruant aliquos nobiles: nec prece nec precio vltra de captiuitate possunt exire. In bellis au-
tem quoscuque capiunt occidunt, nisi forte velint aliquos reseruare vt habeant eos pro seruis,
Occidendo autem diuidunt per centenarios, vt cum bipenni interficiantur ab eis. Ipsi vero
post hoc diuidunt captiuos, & vnicuique seruo ad interficiendum dant decem aut plures vel
pauciores, secundum quod maioribus placet,

Pannica fides;

De terris quas eorum dominio subiugarunt. Cap. 7.

Scripto quomodo pugnant, dicendum est de terris, quas eorum dominio subiugarunt. De
quo isto modo scribemus. Primo dicemus quomodo faciunt cum hominibus pacem. Se-
cundo de terrarum nominibus quas sibi subdiderunt. Tertio de tyrannide quam exercent in
eis. Quarto de terris quæ viriliter resisterunt. Sciendum est quod cum nullis hominibus fa-
ciunt pacem, nisi subduntur eis: quia, vt dictum est supra, Cyngis can habent mandatum, vt
enctas si possunt sibi subijciant nationes. Et hæc sunt illa quæ petunt ab eis, vt vadant cum eis
in exercitu contra omnem hominem quando placet, & vt dent decimam de omnibus tam de
hominibus, quàm de rebus. Computant enim decem, & vnum accipiunt. De puellis fa-
merant & ordinant secundum morem. Sed quando plene habent dominium super eos, si ali-
quid promiserunt eis nihil obseruant: sed quascunque possunt congrue occasiones inueniunt
contra eos. Nam cum essemus in Russia, missus fuit Saracenorum ex parte Cuyntican vt dice-
batur & Bati: & præfectus ille a quolibet homine qui habebat tres pueros vnum accipiebat:
& quicumque viri non habebant vxores, illos deducebant, & faciebant de mulieribus etiam
quod idem quæ viros legitimos non habebant. Pauperes etiam qui mendicando suum victum
rauit, præcipiens vt vnusquisque tam paruus quam magnus, & infans vnus diei, siue pauper siue
diues esset, e le tributũ præberet: vt scilicet daret vnũ pellem albi vrsi, & vnum nigrum castorei,
& vnum Zabulum, & vnam nigram pellem cuiusdam animalis quod in terra latibulum habet,
cuius nomen nescio in latinum transferre, sed Tenronice dicitur illi: Poloni autem & Ruthe-
ni appellant illam Dochon: & vnam nigram pellem vulpinam. Et quicumque ista non dat, in-
ter Tartaros debet duci, & in eorum redigi seruitutem. Mittunt etiam pro principibus terrarum,
vt ad eos veniant sine mora: & cum venerint, debitum honorem nullum recipiunt, sed habentur
vt alie viles personæ: & oportet vt eis munera magna præsentent, tam ducibus quàm vxoribus
eorum, & officialibus, millenarijs & centenarijs. Vno omnes generaliter, & ipsi etiam ser-
ui ab eis cum magna importunitate munera querunt: Et non solum ab ipsis, sed etiam à nun-
cijs eorum cum mittuntur. Aliquibus etiam inueniunt occasiones vt eos occidant. Sicut de
potionibus perimunt vel veneno. Eorum enim intentio est, vt ipsi soli dominentur in terra. Idcirco
querunt occasiones contra nobiles, vt eos occidant. Ab illis vero quos redire permittunt
petunt eorum filios aut fratres, quos vltius nunquam dimittunt. Sicut factum est de filo
Ierosai, & de quodam duce Alanorum, & alijs plurimis. Et si moritur pater vel frater siue hæ-
res, filium vel fratrem nunquam dimittunt: immo illius principatum totaliter accipiunt sibi.
Sicut de quodam Solangorum vidimus esse factum. Baschathos suos ponunt in terris eorum
quos redire permittunt, quibus oportet vt ad nutum tam duces quàm alij debeant obedire. Et
si homines alicuius ciuitatis vel terræ non faciunt quod volunt, isti Baschathi imponunt eis,
quod sunt Tartaris infideles: & sic ciuitatem illam vel terram destrunt, & homines qui sunt
in ea occidunt, per manum validam Tartarorum, qui ex mandato principis illius cui obedit ter-
ra illa veniunt eis nescientibus, & subito irruunt super eos: sicut nuper contigit cum in terra
Tartarorum

Vrsi albi.

Vrsi alii.

Dochon.

Solangi.
Baschathos, vix Tar-
tarica, quæ vni-
tur Turci.

Tartarorum ellemus de quadam ciuitate. Quod ipsi muret de Ruthenis fecerunt in terra Comanorum. Et non solum princeps Tartarorum qui terram vsurpauit, sed præfectus ipsius, & quicumque Tartarus per ciuitatem illam suæ terram transit quasi dominatur eidem, & maxime qui maior est apud eos. Insuper aurum & argenti, & alia quæ volunt & quando libet ad imperatorem vadant Tartarorum ad placandum. Sicut nuper contigit de duobus filiis regis Georgiæ. Vnus enim erat legitimus, & alter de adulterio natus, qui vocabatur Dauid: legitimus autem Melic vocabatur. Filio adulteræ terræ partem relinquebat pater. Alius vero, qui iunior erat, veniebat cum matre ad Tartarorum imperatorem, pro eo quod Dauid prædictus ad ipsum iter arripuerat veniendi. Mater alterius scilicet Melic regina Georgiæ, per quam maritus tenebat regnum, quia per feminas illud regnum tenebatur, mortua fuit in via. Illi autem cum venerunt dederunt maxima munera: & maxime legitimus filius, qui repetebat terram quam reliquerat pater filio suo Dauid, cum non deberet habere, quia adulteræ filius erat. Ille vero respondit: Licet sin filius concubina, peto tamen vt fiat mihi iustitia secundum legem Tartarorum, qui nullam differentiam faciunt inter filios legitimæ & ancillæ: vnde fuit data sententia contra filium legitimum, vt ille Dauidi qui maior erat subesset, & terram haberet quiete & pacifice, quam dederat ei pater: & sic donaria quæ dederat, & causam quam contra fratrem suum Dauid habuerat, amittit. Ab illis etiam nationibus quæ longe sunt ab eis, & coniunctæ sunt alijs nationibus quas aliquo modo timent, quæ non sunt eis subiectæ, tributum accipiunt & quasi misericorditer agunt cum eis, vt non adducant exercitum super eos, vel etiam vt alij non terreantur, se tradere eis. Sicut factum est de Obesius siue Georgianis, a quibus quinquaginta vel quadraginta millia, vt dictum est, ypperperorum siue Byssionum accipiunt pro tributo: alijs ad hoc in pace esse permittunt. Tamen, secundum quod intelleximus ab eis, rebellare proponunt.

Terrarum nonnulla quas vicerunt sunt hæc. Kyrat, Naymani, Solangi, Kara Kyrat, siue nigri Kyrat, Comania, Tumar, Voyrat, Caraniti, Huyur, Sobool, Merkiti, Meniti, Baryhyrur, Gofmir, Saraceni, Bisermini, Turcomani, Byleri, magna Bulgaria, Baschare, magna Hungaria, Kergis, Colna, Thorati, Buritabeth, Parofiti, Saffi, Iacobiti, Alani, siue Afli, Obesius siue Georgiani, Nestoriani, Armeni, Cangiti, Comani Brutachi, qui sunt Iudzi, Mordui, Torci, Gazari, Samogedi, Perses, Thoas, India minor siue Æthiopia, Yrchasi, Rutheni, Baldach, Sarthi: Aliæ terræ sunt plures, sed earum nomina ignoramus. Vidimus etiam viros & mulieres fere de omnibus terris supra nominatis. Hæc autem sunt nomina Terrarum quæ eis viriliter resisterunt, nec sunt adhuc subditæ eis, India magna, Mangia: Quædam pars Alanorum: Quædam pars Kyratorum, Sayi. Quædam enim ciuitatem Sayorum prædictorum obsederunt & debellare tentauerunt. At ipsi fecerunt machinas contra machinas eorum, & Tartarorum machinas omnes frugerunt, nec ciuitati appropinquare poterant ad pugnam contra machinas & balistas. Tandem vñā viam sub terra fecerunt, & profuerunt in ciuitate, & alij tentabant incendere ciuitatem, alij pugnant. Homines autem ciuitatis vnam partem populi ad extinguendum ignem posuerunt, & alia pars fortiter pugnat cum hijs qui intrauerunt ciuitatem & multos occiderunt ex eis, & alios vulnerauerunt, compellentes eos ad suos redire. At ipsi viuentes quod nihil possent facere, & multi homines morerentur, recesserunt ab eis. In terra Saracenorum & aliorum ubi sunt quasi inter eos domini, accipiunt omnes artifices meliores, & in omnibus operibus suis ponunt. Alij autem artifices dant eis de opere suo tributum. Segetes omnes condunt in hortis dominorum: & unicuique vnum pondus satis modicum dant in die: nihil aliud nisi ter in septimana modicum quid de carnibus eis prebent. Et illi hoc tantum artificibus faciunt qui in ciuitatibus commorantur. Item quando dominis placet iuvenes omnes accipiunt, & post se cum omnibus famulis suis ire cogunt: qui de cætero certo sunt numero Tartarorum: immo potius de numero captiuorum: quia etsi inter ipsos sunt numerati, non tamen habentur in reuerentia sicut Tartari: sed habentur pro seruis, & ad omnia pericula vt alij captiui mittuntur. Ipsi enim in bello sunt primi: Etiam si debet palus vel aqua periculosa transiri, eos oportet primo vadum tentare. Ipsos est etiam necesse operari omnia quæ sunt facienda. Ipsi etiam si in aliquo offendunt, vel si non obediunt ad nutum, vt asini verberantur. Et vt breuiter dicam, modicum quid manducant, & etiam modicum bibunt, & pessime induuntur: nisi forte aliquid possunt lucrari, nisi sunt aurifabri & alij artifices boni. Sed aliqui tam malos dominos habent, quod nihil eis dimittunt, nec habent tempus præ multitudine operum dominorum, vt sibi aliquid oporetur, nisi furentur sibi tempus, quando forsitan debent quiescere vel dormire. Et hoc si viros vel propriam stationem permittuntur habere. Alij autem qui tenentur in domo pro seruis omni miseria sunt repleti. Vidi enim eos ire in brachis æpissime, & toto corpore nudos in maximo solis ardore. Et in hyeme patiuntur maximum frigus. Vidimus etiam aliquos pedicas & digitos manuum de magno frigore perdidisse. Audiuimus etiam alios esse mortuos, vel etiam de magno algore quasi in omnibus membris inuitiles esse factos.

Quomodo

Samogedi a qui
lonares.

Mangia.

D
de a
Qua
tent:
man
titud
D
rator
rum
circo
in terr
Cuy
Chan
imper
quæ n
nulla r
nus ina
proprie
quicqu
nibus f
milites
Tum et
rum, &
multitu
gunt. T
eta aut
sur res
gariam:
est etiam
tribus vel
perius an
gratia fac
tunc pro
quieuerunt
uo ad pug
vellet m
vel in seru
Occurren
delebitur
am terram
cum prom
ent eos dom
unt eos info
tiji faciunt
est aliqua p
sum est, h
nitatem vol
rum re & e
pian in terr
runt, & null
runt homine
minum cont
etras homin
Arcus bonos
de bono ferra

unt in terra Co-
electus ipsius, &
dem, & maxime
libet ad impe-
lijs regis Geor-
uid: legitimus
vero, qui iunior
prædictus ad ip-
quam maritus
illi autem cum
et terram quam
erat. Ille vero
geim Tartaro-
da sententia
quiere & paci-
fratrem suum
oniuntur sunt
ipiunt & quasi
alij non terre-
ginta vel qua-
: alijs ad hoc
ponunt.

Kytai, siue ni-
Baryhyrur,
agna Hengas-
si, Obesi siue
ordui, Torci,
eni, Baldach,
iros & mulie-
quæ eis virili-
Alanorum:
rum obfede-
um, & Tartar-
nam contra
E, & alij tenta-
puli ad extin-
tuitatem &
ipsum venientes
caracenorum
mnibus ope-
s conduunt in
aliud nisi ter-
s faciunt qui
nt, & post se
mmo potius
euerentia si-
Ipsi enim in
rimo vadum
in aliquo of-
a, modicum
quid possunt
bent, quod
ai aliquid o-
Et hoc si vx-
pro seruis
los in maxi-
spedicas &
uos, vel cri-

Quomodo

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

35

Quomodo bello occurratur Tartaris. Cap. 8.

Dicito de teris, quæ obediunt eis, supponendum est quomodo bello occurratur eisdem. Quod videtur nobis hoc modo dicendum. Primo sciendum est quid intendunt. Secundo de armis & ordinatione acierum. Tertio quomodo occurratur astutijs eorum in congressione. Quarto de munitione castrorum & ciuitatû. Quinto quid faciendum sit de captiuis eorum. In Tartarorum est subicere sibi totum mundum si possunt. Et de hoc Cyngiskhan habent mandatum, sicut superius dictum est. Idcirco eorum imperator sic in literis suis scribit. Dei fortitudo, Omnium Imperator. Et in superscriptione sigilli sui hoc habet.

Dominus in cælo, & Cuyoch Chan super terram. Dei fortitudo, omnium hominum imperatoris sigillum. Et ideo cum nullis hominibus faciunt pacem, vt dictum est, nisi forte se in eorum manibus tradunt. Et quia excepta Christianitate nulla est terra in orbe quam timent, idcirco se ad pugnam præparant contra nos. Vnde nouerint vniuersi quod nobis existentibus in terra eorum in solenni curia, quæ iam ex pluribus annis indicta erat, fuimus, vbi elegerunt Cuyoch imperatorem in præsentia nostra, qui in lingua eorum dicitur Chan. Qui Cuyoch Chan prædictus erexit cum omnibus principibus vexillum contra ecclesiam dei & Romanum imperium, & contra omnia regna Christianorum & populos occidentis, nisi forsitan facerent ea, quæ mandat Domino Papæ, & potentibus ac omnibus Christianorum populis Occidentis: quod nulla ratione faciendum est: tum propter nimiam seruitutem & intolerabilem, quæ est hæc: nus inaudita, quam vidimus oculis nostris, in quam redigunt omnes gentes sibi subiectas: tum propterea quod nulla in eis est fides: nec potest aliqua gens confidere in verbis eorum: tum quicquid promittunt non obseruant, quando vident sibi tempora fauere: & subdoli sunt in omnibus factis & promissis eorum. Intendunt etiam delere omnes principes, omnes nobiles, omnes milites de terra, vt superius dictum est: sed hoc faciunt subdole & artificiose in subditos suos: Tum etiam quia indignum est quod Christiani subdantur eisdem, propter abominaciones eorum, & quia in nihilum redigitur cultus dei, & animæ pereunt, & corpora vltra quæ credi possunt multitudine affliguntur. In primo quidem sunt blandi, sed postea vt scorpio cruciant & affligunt. Tum quia pauciores sunt numero, & corpore debiliores quæ populi Christiani. In prædicta autem curia sunt bellatores & principes & exercitus assignati. De decem hominibus mittuntur tres cum familijs eorum, de omni terra potestatis eorum. Vnus exercitus debet intrare per Hungariam: secundus per Poloniam. Veniunt autem pugnatûri continue octodecem annis. Tercius est etiam eis assignatum, in Martio An. Dom. 1247. si de terra sua mouebunt. Veniente autem in tribus vel in quatuor annis vsq; ad Comaniâ. De Comania autem insultum faciunt in terras suas perius annotatas. Hæc omnia firma sunt & vera, nisi Dominus aliquod impedimentum pro sua gratia faciat eis. Sicut fecit quando venerunt in Hungariâ & Poloniâ. Debebant enim procedere tunc pro certo triginta annis. Sed interfectus fuit tunc imperator eorum veneno: & propter hoc quieuerunt à prælijs vsq; nunc. Sed modo, quia positus est imperator de nouo, iterum se de nouo ad pugnam incipiunt præparare. Ad hoc sciendum est, quod imperator dixit ore suo, quod vellet mittere exercitum in Liuoniam & Prussiam. Et quoniam omnem terram volunt delere vel in seruitutem redigere, quæ seruitus est intolerabilis nostræ genti, vt superius dictum est: Occurrendum est igitur eis in bello. Sed si vna provincia non vult alteri opem ferre, terra illa delebitur contra quam pugnant, & cum illis hominibus quos capiunt pugnant contra aliam terram: & in acie erunt primi. Si male pugnant occiduntur ab eis: Si autem bene, ipsos cum promissis adulationibus tenent: & etiam vt ab ipsis non fugiant promittunt eis quod faciunt eos in facillimos seruos. Ac de mulieribus quas volunt in concubinas tenere pro seruitijs faciunt illud idem. Et ita cum hominibus deuictæ prouincie destruunt aliam terram. Nec est aliqua provincia quæ per se possit resistere eis: quia de omni terra potestatis eorum, vt dictum est, homines congregant ad bellum. Vnde si Christiani seipsos & suam terram, & Christianorum rectores, & militantes de cõmuni consilio homines contra eos ad pugnam, antequam ipsi incipiant in terras diffundi. Quoniam postquam incipiunt spargi per terras, vndiq; homines quarunt homines & occidunt. Et si claudunt se in castris, ponunt tria millia vel quatuor millia hominum contra castrum vel ciuitatem, qui obsideant eam; & ipsi nihilominus diffunduntur per terras homines occidentes. Quicunq; autem volunt pugnare cum eis, hæc arma debent habere. Arcus bonos & fortes, & balistæ, quas multum timent, & sagittas sufficientes: & bonum dolabrû de bono ferro, & securû cum longo manubrio, Ferramenta sagittarû de arcu vel de balista debent,

Ille forte mentis

Tartar propo-
nunt inuadere
Liuroniam &
Prussiam.

vt

Temperamentum
terra,

vt Tartari, quando sunt calida, temperati in aqua cum sale mixta, vt totta hnt ad penetrandum arma eorum. Gladios & etiam lanceas cum vinco, qui valeant ad trahendum eos de sellis: quia de eis facillime cadunt: ac cultellos ac loricas duplicatas; quia illos eorum sagittæ non penetrant: & galeæ & arma alia ad protegendum corpus & equum ab armis & sagittis eorum. Et si aliqui non sunt ita bene armati, vt dixi; debent ire post alios vt faciunt Tartari: & trahere contra eos de armis & sagittis. Nec debent parere pecuniæ, quoniam comparent arma, vt possint animas & corpora, libertatem & res alias conseruare. Acies debent ordinari, vt ipsi, per millenarios, centenarios, & decanos & duces exercitus: qui duces nequaquam debent prælium intrare, sicut nec duces eorum, sed debent exercitus videre & ordinare: legemque debent ponere vt simul incedant ad bellum, siue aliàs, sicut sunt ordinati. Et quicunque relinquit alium siue ad bellum procedentem, siue pugnantem, vel quicunque fugerit, nisi omnia cõmuniter cedant, grauissime puniatur quia tunc pars bellantium sequitur fugientes & sagittis eorum occidunt, & pars cum hijs qui remanent pugnant, & sic confunditur & occiduntur remanentes & fugientes. Similiter quicunque conuersus fuerit ad prædam tollendam, antequam omnino sit exercitus contrariorũ deuictus, maxima poena mulctetur. Talis enim apud Tartaros sine ulla miseratione occiditur. Locus ad præliandum est eligendus, si fieri potest vt campus sit planus, & possint vndique videre: & si possunt habeant sylvam magnam a tergo vel a latere. ita tamen quod non possunt intrare inter ipsos & sylvam: nec debent simul omnes conuenire in vnum, sed facere acies multas, & diuersas ab inuicem, nec tamen multum distantes. Et contra illos qui post veniunt debent vnã aciem mittere qui eis occurrat. Et si Tartari simulant fugam, non multum vadant post eos, nisi forte quantum possunt videre, ne forte ipsos ad paratas insidias trahant, sicut facere solent: Et alia sit parata ad iuuandum aciem illam, si fuerit opportunum. Insuper habeant speculatores ex omni parte, vt videant quando veniant aliæ acies Tartarorum retro, à dextris & à sinistris: & semper debent mittere aciem contra aciem quæ eis occurrat. Ipsi enim semper nituntur concludere aduersarios eorum in medio, vnde magnam cautelã debent habere ne hoc facere possint, quia sic exercitus facillime debellatur. Omnes acies hoc debent cauere, ne diu currant post eos, propter insidias quas solent præparare: plus enim fraudulentiã quàm fortitudinem pugnant. Duces exercitus semper debent esse parati ad mitemdum adiutorium, si necesse est, illis qui sunt in pugna, & propter hoc etiam debent vitare nimium cursum post eos, ne forte faciantur equi eorum; quoniam nostri multitudine eorum non habent. Sed Tartari illum quem equitant vna die, illum non ascendunt in tribus vel in quatuor diebus post hoc. Vnde non curant si fatigentur equi eorum propter multitudinem quam habent. Et si Tartari cedunt, non tamen nostri debent recedere, vel ab inuicem separari: quia simulando hoc faciunt, vt exercitus diuidatur, & post hoc terram libere ingrediuntur, & eam destruant. Debent etiam cauere vt non faciant nimias expensas, vt solent ne propter penuriam redire compellantur, & dent Tartaris viam, vt ipsos & alios occidant, & destruant omnem terram; & propter eorum superfluitatem nomen Domini blasphemetur. Et hoc debent facere diligenter: vt si contingat aliquos pugnatore recedere, quod alij loco eorum succedant. Duces etiam nostri debent die nocteque facere exercitum custodiri, ne repente & subito irrumpant super ipsos: quia Tartari vt dæmones, multas excogitant iniquitates & artes nocendi: Immo tam de die quam de nocte semper debent esse parati: sed ne spoliati debent facere nec delictose ad mensam sedere, ne imparati inueniantur, quia Tartari semper vigiliant, vt possint nocere. Homines vero terræ qui Tartaros expectant, vel super se timent venire, occultas foueas debent habere, in quibus sagittas, & alia debent reponere, propter dõs: vt videlicet Tartari non possint ea habere; & si propitius fuerit eis Deus, valeant ea postea inuenire: Eis fugientibus de terra, debent sexum & stramina comburere, vt equi Tartarorum ad comedendum minus inueniant. Ciuitates autem & castra si volunt munire, videant prius qualia sint in situ. Situs enim talis debet esse in castris, quod machinis & sagittis expugnari nõ possit; & aqua habeant sufficientem & lignũ, & si fieri potest, quod introitus & exitus eis tolli nõ possit: & quod habeant homines sufficientes qui possint vicissim pugnare. Et debent vigilare diligenter ne aliqua astuta possint castrum furari. Expensas ad multos annos debent habere sufficientes: custodiant tamen diligenter illas, & in mensura manducent, quia nesciunt quanto tempore eos in castris oportet esse inclusos. Quum enim incipiunt, tunc multis annis obsident vnum castrum. Sic fit hodierna die in terra Alanorum de quodam in monte, quem, vt credo, iam obsederunt per duodecim annos; qui viriliter resisterunt, & multos Tartaros & nobiles occiderunt. Alia autem castra & ciuitates, quæ talem situm non habent debent fortiter vallari foueas profundis munitis, & muris bene præparatis; & arcus & sagittas sufficientes: & lapides ac fundas debent habere. Et debent diligenter cauere, quod non permittant Tartaros ponere machinas suas; & suis machinis debent eos repellere. Et si forte aliquo ingenio vel arte erigunt

Tartari

Speculatores.

Obsidio 13. annorum,



duntaxat,
& eo tempore
busdam al
amplius ci
quæ apud
iisdem ore
apud Tart
audiuit, lib
hic quasi p
prædicta Fi

Est in par
Orients
am Solango
norum, & ab
parte aliqua
num arenos
fluuialibus ut

ad pene trahendum
eos de sellis:
rum sagitta non
sagittis eorum,
Tartari: & tra-
in comparent ar-
debent ordinari,
nequaquam de-
dinare: legem-
quecunque re-
erit, nisi omnia
entes, & sagittis
ciduntur rema-
antequam omi-
id Tartaros sine
campus sit pla-
vela latere. ita
res conuenire in
antes. Et con-
Tartari simulat
te ipsos ad pa-
illam, si fuerit
viciant alia a-
contra aciem
medio, unde
ne debellatur.
sunt præpa-
per debent esse
hoc etiam de-
ostri multitu-
non ascendunt
i propter mul-
rel ab inuicem
libere ingredi-
olent ne prop-
re, & destruant
Et hoc debent
um succedant,
subito irru-
necendi: Im-
acere nec de-
ant, vt pos-
ent, oculi
vt videli-
inuenire: Eis
ad comedend-
qualia sint in
ossis, & quã
on possit: &
lare diligen-
bere suffici-
quanto rem-
obfident v-
credo, iam
iles occide-
illari foues
& lapides ac
ros ponere
arte erigunt
Tartari

Tartari machinas suas, debent eas destruire machinis suis si possunt. Balistis etiam, furidis & machinis debent siltere ne ciuitati appropinquent. Alias etiam debent esse parati, vt superius dictum est. De castris & ciuitatibus, quæ sunt in fluminibus posite, diligenter debent videre ne possint submergi. Sed ad hoc sciendū est, quod Tartari plus diligunt, quod homines elaudant se in ciuitatibus, quam quod pugnent cū eis in campo. Dicunt enim eos esse suos porcellos in hara conclusos. Vnde ponunt eis custodes, vt supradictū est. Si autē aliqui Tartari de equis suis in bello proiciuntur, statim sunt capiendi: quia cum sunt in terra fortiter sagittant, & equos & homines vulnerant & occidunt. Et si seruantur tales, potest esse, quod habeatur pro modo Tartari cognoscantur, superius dictum est vbi forma eorum fuit expressa. Tamen quando capiuntur, si debent seruari, ne fugiant diligens est custodia adhibenda. Sunt etiam alie multe gentes cū eis, quæ per formā superius annotatā possunt ab ipsis cognosci. Est etiam hoc sciendum, quod multi in exercitu eorum sunt, qui si viderent tempus, & haberet fiduciam, quod hostri non occiderent eos, ex omni parte exercitus, sicut ipsi met nobis dixerunt, pugnant cū eis, & plura mala facerent ipsis, quam alij, qui sunt eorum aduersarij manifesti.

The long and wonderful voyage of *Frater Iohn de Plano Carpini*, sent ambassador by *Pope Innocentius the third*. An. Do. 1246. to the great CAN of Tartaria; wherin he passed through Bohemia, Polonia, Russia, and so to the cite of Kiow upon Boristhenes, and from thence rode continually post for the space of six moneths through Comania, ouer the mighty and famous riuers of Tanais, Volga, and laic, & through the countries of the people called Kan-gitzæ, Bisermi, Kara-Kitay, Naimani, & so to the natue countrie of the Mongals or Tartars, situate in the extreme North-easterne partes of all Asia: and thence barke againe the same way to Russia, and Polonia, and so to Rome; spending in the whole voyage among the sayd Tartars one whole yeere & aboue foure moneths: Taken out of the 32. booke of *Vincencius Beluacensis* his Speculum historiale.

L I B R I XXXII.

De prima missione Fratrum Prædicatorum & Minorum ad Tartaros. Cap. 2.

Poc etiam tēpore misit *Innocentius III.* Papa Fr. *Ascelinū* de ordine Prædicatorū cū tribus alijs Fratribus, auctoritate, quaungebantur, de diuersis ordinis sui conuentibus sibi associatis, cum literis Apostolicis ad exercitū Tartarū, in quibus hortabatur eos, vt ab hominū strage desisterent, & fidei veritatē reciperent. Et ego quidē ab vno Fratrum Prædicatorū, videlicet a Fr. *Simone* de S. Quintino, iam ab illo itinere regresso, gesta Tartarorū accepi, illa duntaxat, quæ superius per diuersa loca iuxta congruentiā temporū huic operi inserui. Siquidē & eo tempore quidā Frater ordinis Minorū, videlicet Fr. *Iohannes de Plano Carpini*, cum quibusdam alijs missus fuit ad Tartaros, qui etiam, vt ipse testatur, per annum & quatuor menses & amplius cum eis mansit, & inter eos ambulauit. A summo namq; Pontifice mandatū, vt omnia, quæ apud eos erant, diligenter scrutaretur, acceperat, tam ipse, quam Fr. *Benedictus Polonus* eiusdem ordinis, qui suæ tribulationis particeps & socius erat. Et hic ergo Fr. *Iohannes* de his, quæ apud Tartaros vel oculis proprijs vidit, vel à Christianis fide dignis, qui inter illos captiui erant, audiuit, libellum historicalem conscripsit, qui & ipse ad manus nostras peruenit. De quo etiam hic quasi per epilogum inferere libet aliqua, videlicet ad supplementum eorum, quæ desunt in prædicta Fr. *Simonis* historia.

Ascelinus.
Vide Mech-
uū lib. 1. cap. 3.

Simon Sanguin-
tinianus.

Iohannes de Plano
Carpini.

Benedictus Po-
lonus.

Libel us historis
alis Iohannis de
Plano Carpini.

De situ & qualitate terræ Tartarorum. Cap. 3.

Iohannes de Plano Carpini.

Est in partibus Orientis terra, quæ Mongal siue Tartaria dicitur, in ea scilicet parte sita, in qua Oriens Aquiloni coniungi creditur. Ab Oriente quidem habet terram Kythaorum & etiam Solangorum, à meridie verò terrā Saracenorum. Inter Orientē & meridiem terram Huy-norum, & ab Occidente prouinciam Nayanorum, ab Aquilone verò circumdatur Oceano. In parte aliqua nimium est montuosa, & in aliqua campestris, sed tota ferè admixta glareæ plurimum arena, nec est in centesima parte fructuosa. Nec enim potest fructum portare, nisi aquis fluuiatibus irrigetur, quæ ibi sunt rarissimæ. Vnde nec villæ nec aliquæ ciuitates ibidē reperiuntur,

Tartaræ de-
scriptio.

Vel Occidentem

Syracusa. excepta una, quæ Cracurum appellatur, & satis bona esse dicitur. Nos quidem illam non vidimus, sed ad dimidiam dietam prope fuimus, cum apud Syram ordam, quæ curia maior Imperatoris eorum esset, essemus. Licet autem aliàs infructifera sit illa terra, tamen alendis pecoribus est apta. In aliqua eius parte sunt aliquæ sylvæ modicæ, aliæ verò sine lignis est omnino. Itaque tam Imperator quam Principes, & omnes alij sedent, & cibaria sua decoquunt ad focum, de boum & equorum stercorebus factum. Ipse quoque acriter inordinatus est ibidem mirabiliter. In media siquidem æstate ibi tonitrua magna & fulgura sunt, ex quibus plurimi occiduntur homines, & eodem quoque tempore cadunt ibidem maximè niues. Sunt & ibi ventorum frigidissimorum tam maxime tempestates, quod aliquando vix possunt equitare homines. Unde cum ante ordam essemus (sic enim apud eos stationes Imperatoris & Principum appellantur) præ ventu magnitudine in terra prostrati iacebamus, & videre propter pulveris magnitudinem minime poteramus; Nunquam ibi pluit in hyeme, sed si equiter in æstate, & tam modicum, ut vix posset aliquando puluerem & radicem graminum in defacere. Ibi quoque maxima grando cadit sæpè. Unde cum Imperator electus in sede regni debuit poni, nobis in curia tunc existentibus, tanta cecidit grando, quod ex subita resolutione plusquam CLX. homines in eadem curia fuerunt submersi. Res etiam & habitacula plura fuerunt deducta. Ibi etiam est in æstate subito calor magnus, & repente maximum frigus.

De forma & habitu & victu eorum. Cap. 4.

Tartarorum species. Mongalorum autem siue Tartarorum forma ab omnibus alijs hominibus est remota. Inter oculos enim, & inter genas, lati sunt plus cæteris, genæ quoque satis prominent: à maxillis. Nasum habent planum & modicum, oculos etiam paruos, & palpebris vix; ad supercilia eleuatas, & super verticem in modum Clericorum coronas. Ex utraque parte frontis tendendo, plusquam in medio crines longos faciunt, reliquos autem sicut mulieres crescere permittunt. De quibus duas cordas faciunt, & vnam quamque post aurem ligant. Pedes quoque modicos habent. Vestes tam virorum quam mulierum vno modo formatæ sunt. Pallia vel cappis vel capitijs non vtuntur. Tunicas verò miro modo formatas portant de buccaramo, vel purpurato, vel baldachino. Pellicium habet pilos exterius, sed apertum est à posterioribus. Habet tamen caudulam vnam vsque ad genas retrò. Vestes suas non lauant, nec lauari permittunt, & maxime à tempore, quo tonitrua incipiunt, vsquequo desinat illud tempus. Stationes habent rotundas in modum tentonij de virgulis & baculis subtilibus præparatas. Supra verò in medio rotundam habent fenestram, unde ingreditur lumen, & fumus exire possit: quia semper in medio faciunt ignem: parietes autem & tecta filtro sunt operata. Ostia quoque de filtro sunt facta. Harum quædam subito soluiunt, & reparantur, & super summarios deferantur: quædam verò dissolui non possunt sed in curribus portantur. Et quocunque siue ad bellum siue aliàs vadunt, semper illas secum deferunt. In animalibus valde diuites sunt, vt in Camelis & bobus, capris & ouibus. Iumenta & equos habent: in tanta multitudine, quantam non credimus totum mundi residuum habere. Porcos autem & aliàs bestias non habent. Imperator ac Duces atque alij magnates in auro & argento ac serico & gemis abundantes. Cibi eorum sunt omnia, quæ mandari possunt. Vidimus eos etiam manducare pediculos. Lac bibunt animalium, & in maxima quantitate, si habent, iumentum. Porro in hyeme, quia nisi diuites sint, lac iumentum non habent, millium cum aqua decoquunt, quod tam tenue faciunt, ut illud bibere valeant. Unde quilibet eorum scyphum bibit vnum vel duos in mane, & quandoque nihil amplius manducant in die. In sero autem vnicuique datur de carnibus modicum, & bibunt ex eis brodium. Porro in æstate quando satis habent de lacte iumentino, carnes comedunt rarò, nisi forte donetur eis idem, aut venatione bestiam aliquam ceperint vel auem.

De moribus eorum bonis & malis. Cap. 5.

Mores. Habent autem mores quosdam quidem commendabiles, & quosdam detestabiles. Magis quippe sunt obediens Dominis suis, quam aliqui qui in mundo sint homines, siue religiosi siue seculares. Nam eos maxime reuerentur, nec illis de facili mentiuntur vel bis factisue: rarò vel nunquam ad iniuriam contendunt, bellamque vel rixam, vulnera vel homicidia nunquam inter eos contingunt. Predones etiam ac fures rerum magnarum ibi nequaquam inueniuntur, ideoque stationes & cursus eorum, vbi thesauros habent, seris auribus non firmantur. Si aliqua bestia perditæ fuerit, quicunque inuenit eam vel dimitit, vel ad illos, qui ad hoc positi sunt, eam ducit. Apud quos ille, cuius est bestia, illam requirit, & ab eis villa difficultate recipit. Vnus alium satis honorat, & familiaritate ac cibaria, quamuis apud eos sint pauca, liberaliter satis communicat. Satis etiam sunt sufferentes, nec cum ieiunauerint vno die, vel duobus, omnino sine cibo, videntur impa-

Th. impa-
gus, &
inebr
prom
de ip
erga
nihil
lium
apud
sempe
sterior
vltra
pione
ueniunt
vel com
& in ca
demq;
simi re

H. Huer
quo, occ
la misera
proceder
baculo pe
suis parci
tur omnib
sororem t
am fratris
adhuc esse
rum de ter
est. Hoc au
volentes, n
mulieri qui
die, se potius
quamuis ar
rum & plor
tem marico
quis velit so
vxoris & co
sit Dux filiu
per, vnum se
morienq; te
venerat, qui
iter arripuer
petebat adul
contra Melic
pacifice possi
suam habet f
tera die cum
comoratur.

Q. Vibuda
recessore
ignem cultello

illam non vidi-
maior Impera-
tendis per ori-
gnis est omni-
ua decoquunt
est ibidem ni-
plurimi occi-
ibi ventorum
homines. Vn-
um appellan-
magnitudinē
modicum, vt
maxima grando
tunc existen-
in eadem curia
a latere subitō

emora. Inter
ut à maxillis.
apercilia ele-
ulendo, pluf-
mittunt. De
licos habent.
vel capitijs
ato, vel bal-
unen caudu-
ximē à tem-
rotundas in
o rotundam
edio faciunt
Harum que-
viret diffolu-
unt, ſemper
is & ouibus.
di refidunt
nates in auro
r. Vidimus
uent, iumen-
aqua deco-
m bibit vñ
icuiq; datur
de lacte in-
um ceperint

iles. Magis
s, ſive reli-
is factiſſime
inquam in-
tur, ideoq;
qua beſtia
eam ducit
alium ſatis
mmunicat.
o, videntur
impa.

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

39

impatientes, ſed cantant & ludunt, ac li bene comedissent. In equitando multum ſuſtinent tri-
gus, calorem quoq; nimium patiuntur. Inter eos quaſi nulla placita ſunt, & quamvis multum
inebriantur, tamen in ebrietate ſua nunquam contemunt. Nullus alium ſpernit, ſed iunat &
promouet, quantum congruè poſſeſt. Caſtæ ſunt eorum mulieres, nec aliquid inter eos auditur
de ipſarum impudicitia. Quædam tamen ex ijs verba turpia ſatis habent & impudica. Porò
erga cæteros homines ipſem Tartari ſuperbiſſimi ſunt, omneſq; nobiles & ignobiles quaſi pro
nihil reputantes deſpiciunt. Vnde vidimus in curia Imperatoris magnam Ruſſiæ ducem, & ſi-
milis regis Georgianorum, ac Soldanos multos & magnos nullum honorem debitu recipere
apud eos. Quinetiam Tartari eiſdem assignati, quantum eunq; viles eſſent illos antecede-
bant, ſemperq; primum locum & ſummum tenebant, imò etiam ſæpè oportebat illos poſt eoſi po-
ſtiora ſedere. Præterea iracundi ſunt, & indignantis naturæ multum erga cæteros homines, &
vixit modum erga eoſdem mendacer. In principio quidē blandi ſunt, ſed poſtmodum vt Scor-
piones pungunt. Subdoli enim & fraudulenti ſunt, & omnes homines ſi poſſunt aſtutia circū-
uolunt. Quicquid mali volunt eis facere, miro modo occultant, vt ſibi non poſſint providere,
vel contra eorum aſtutias remedium inuenire. Immundi quoq; ſunt in cibo & potu ſumendis,
& in cæteris factis ſuis. Ebrietas apud illos eſt honorabilis: cumq; multum aliquis biberit, ibi-
demq; reiſcit, non ideo ceſſat, quin iterum bibat. Ad petendum maximi ſunt exactores, & enaci-
ſſimi retentores, pauciſſimi donatores. Aliorum hominum occiſio apud illos eſt pro nihilo.

Caſtiti.

Inſolentia aduer-
ſus exiſtus.

Iracundia.

Fraudulentia.

Sordes.
Temulentia.

d. poſtea.

De legibus & conſuetudinibus eorum. Cap. 6.

Hoc autem habent in lege ſue conſuetudine, vt occidant viros & mulieres, ſi quando in-
ueniantur in adulterio manifeſtē. Similiter etiam virginem, ſi fornicata fuerit cum ali-
quo, occidunt eam cum eo. Præterea ſi aliquis in præda vel furto manifeſto inuenitur, ſine vi-
la miſeratione occiditur. Item ſi quis denudauit conſilia, maxime quando volunt ad bellum
procedere, dantur ei ſuper poſteriora centum plagæ, quanto maiores vnus ruſſicus cum magno
baculo poſſeſt dare. Similiter cum aliqui de minoribus offendunt in aliquo, non eis à maioribus
ſuis parcitur, ſed verberibus grauiter affliguntur. Matrimonio autem genere aliter coniungun-
tur omnibus, etiam propinquis carne, excepta matre & filia & ſorore & eadem matre. Nam
ſororem tantum ex patre, & vxorem quoq; patris, poſt eius mortem ſolent ducere. Vxorē eti-
am fratris alius frater iunior, poſt eius mortem, vel alius de parentela, te ſeſe ducere. Vnde dum
ad huc eſſemus in terra, Dux quidam Ruſſiæ, Andreas nomine, apud Baſſas, quod æque Tartaro-
rum de terra educeret, & alij vendideret, accuſatus eſt: quod licet non eſſet probatum, oculus
eſt. Hoc audiens iunior frater, & vxor occiſi, pariter venerunt ad præſatum Ducem, ſupplicare
volentes, ne terra auferretur eiſdem. At ille paruo præcepit, vt fratris deſuncti duceret vxorem,
mulieri quoq; vt illum in virum duceret, ſecundum Tartarorum conſuetudinē. Quæ respon-
dit, ſe potius occidi velle, quam ſic contra legem facere. At ille nihilominus eam illi tradidit
quamvis anibo renuerent, quantum poſſent. Itaq; ducentes eos in lectum, clamantem pue-
rum & plorantē ſuper illam poſuerunt, ipſoſq; committere pariter coegerunt. Deniq; poſt mor-
tem maritorum, vxores Tartarorum non de facili ſolent ad ſecunda coniugia tranſire, niſi forte
quis velit ſororiam aut nouercam ſuam ducere. Nulla verò differentia eſt apud eos inter filiū
vxoris & concubinae, ſed dat pater quod vult vniciq; . Itaq; ſi ſunt etiam ex Ducum genere, ita
ſit Dux filius concubinae, ſicut filius vxoris legitime. Vnde cum rex Georgianus duos filios nu-
per, vnum ſcilicet nomine Melich legitimum, alterum verò David ex adulterio natum haberet,
morienſq; terræ partem adulteræ filio reliquiſſet, Melich, cui etiam ex parte matris regnum ob-
tulerat, quia per ſceminam tenebatur, petrexit ad Imperatorem Tartarorum, eo quod & David
petebat adulteræ filius, vt fieret ei iuſtitia ſecundum morem Tartarorum. Dataq; eſt ſententia
contra Melich, vt David, qui maior erat natu, ſubſeſſet, ac terrā a patre ſibi conceſſam quietē ac
pacificē poſſideret. Cumq; Tartarorum vnus habet vxorum multitudinem, vnaquæq; per ſe
ſuam habet familiam & ſtationem. Et vna die Tartarus comedit & bibit cum vna, al-
tera die cum alia. Vna tamen inter cæteras maior habetur, cum qua frequentius quā cum alijs
commoratur. Et licet, vt dictum eſt, ſint multæ, nunquam tamen de facili contendunt inter ſe.

Pecunia adulterijs.

Furſi.

Aræani euulgati.

Leges matrimo-
niorum.Andreas Dux
Ruſſiæ.
Vnde Herber-
ſteinum de rebus
Molchou.
pag. 8. b.M. l. h. S. David
habet Georgianus

p. l. h. p. l. h.

De ſuperſtitioſis traditionibus ipſorum. Cap. 7.

Quibusdam verò traditionibus indiſſerentia quædā eſſe peccata dicunt, quas vel ipſi vel an-
teceſſores eorum conſinxerunt. Vnum eſt, cultellum in ignem figere, vel quocunq; modo
ignem cultello tangere, vel etiam de caldaria cum cultello carnes extrahere, vel cum ſecuri
D 2 iuxta

iuxta ignem incidere. Credunt enim, quòd sic auterri debeat caput igni. Aliud est appodiare se ad flagellum, quo percutitur equus: ipsi enim non videntur calcari. Item flagello sagittas tangere, iuvenes aues capere vel occidere, cum signo equum percutere, or cum osse alio frangere. Itemq; lac, vel aliquem potum aut cibum super terram effundere, in statione mingere. Quod si voluntarie facit, occiditur, si autem aliter, oportet quòd pecuniam multà in eantatori soluat, à quo purificetur. Qui etiam faciat, vt statio cum omnibus, quæ in ipsa sunt, inter duos ignes transeat. Antequam sic purificetur, nullus audeat intrare, nec aliquid de illa exportare. Præterea si alicui mortellus imponitur, quem deglutire non possit, & illum de ore suo eijcit, foramen sub statione fit, per quod extrahitur, ac sine ulla miseratione occiditur. Iterum si quis calcet super lumen stationis Ducis alicuius, interficitur. Multa etiam habent his similia, quæ reputantur peccata. At homines occidere, aliorum terras inuadere, acres illorum diripere, & contra Dei præcepta vel prohibitiones facere, nullum apud eos est peccatum. De vita æterna & damnatione perpetua nihil sciunt. Credunt tamen, quòd post mortem in alio seculo viuant, gregesque multiplicent, comedant & bibant, & cætera faciant, quæ hic à viuentibus fiunt. In principio lunationis vel in plenilunio incipiunt, quicquid noui agere volunt, ipsamq; Lunam Imperatorem magnum appellant, eamq; deprecantes genua flectunt. Omnes, qui morantur in stationibus suis, oportet per ignem purificari. Quæ scilicet purificatio fit hoc modo. Duos quidem ignes faciunt, & duas hastas iuxta eos, vnamq; eorum in summitate hastarum ponunt. Ligantq; super eorum illam qualsdam de Bucaramo scissiones, sub qua scilicet corda & ligaturis inter illos ignes transiunt homines, ac bestias ac stationes. Sunt etiam duæ mulieres, vna hinc, & alia inde aquam projicientes, ac quædam carmina recitantes. Cæterum si aliquis à fulgure occiditur, oportet præ dicto modo per ignes transire omnes illos, qui in illis stationibus morantur. Statio siquidem ac lectus & curus, filia & vestes, & quicquid talium habent, à nullo tanguntur, sed ab hominibus tanquam immunda respuuntur. Et vt breuiter dicam, omnia purificari credunt per ignem. Vnde quando veniunt ad eos nuntij, vel Principes, aut qualescunq; personæ, oportet ipsos & munera sua per duos ignes, vt purificentur, transire, ne forte veneficia fecerint, aut venenum seu aliquid mali attulerint.

De initio imperij sue Principatus eorum. Cap. 8.

Tartari populi.

Terra quidem illa Orientalis, de qua dictum est supra, quæ Mongal nominatur, quatuor quondam habuisse populos memoratur. Vnus eorum Yeka Mongal, id est, magni Mongali vocabantur. Secundus Sumongal, id est, aquatici Mongali, qui scipso appellabantur Tartaros, à quodam fluuio per eorum terram corrente, qui Tartar nominatur. Tertius appellabatur Merkat. Quartus verò Metrit. Omnes vnam personarum formam & vnam linguam habebant hipopuli, quamuis inter se per Principes ac provincias essent diuisi. In terra Yeka Mongal quidam fuit, qui vocabatur Chingis. Iste cepit robustus venator esse: didicere enim homines furari, & prædam capere. Ad alias terras ibat, & quoscunque poterat, captiuabat, sibiq; associabat. Homines quoque suæ gentis inclinavit ad se, qui tanquam Ducem sequebantur ipsam ad malè agendum. Coepit autem pugnare cum Sumongal, siue cum Tartaris, & Ducem eorum interfecit, multoq; bello sibi Tartaros omnes subiecit, & in seruitutem redegit. Post hæc cum istis omnibus contra Merkatas, iuxta terram positos Tartarorum pugnavit, quos etiam bello sibi subiecit. Inde procedens contra Metritas pugna exercevit, & illos etiam obtinuit. Audientes Naymani, quòd Chingis taliter eleuatus esset, indignati sunt. Ipsi enim habuerant Imperatorem strenuum valde, cui dabant tributum cunctæ nationes prædictæ. Qui cum esset mortuus, filij eius successerunt loco ipsius. Sed quia iuvenes ac stulti erant, populum tenere nesciebant, sed ad inuicem diuisi ac scissis erant. Vnde Chingis prædicto modo iam exaltato, nihilominus in terras prædictas faciebat insultum, & habitatores occidebant, ac dissipabant prædam eorum. Quod audiens Chingis, omnes sibi subiectos congregauit Naymani & Karakytay ex aduerso similiter in quandam vallem strictam conuenerunt, & commissum est prælium, in quo Naymani & Karakytay à Mongalis deuicti sunt. Qui etiam pro maiori parte occisi fuerunt, & alij, qui eisdere non potuerunt, in seruitutem redacti sunt. In terra prædictorū Karakytayorum Occoday Cham, filius Chingischam, postquā imperator fuit positus, quandā ciuitatem ædificauit, quā Chanyl appellauit. Prope quam ad Meridiem est quoddā desertum magnū, in quo pro certo syluestres homines habitare dicuntur, qui nullatenus loquuntur, nec luncturas in cruribus habent, & si quando cadunt, per se surgere non valent. Sed tamen discretionē tantam habent, quòd filtra de lana Camelorum, quibus vestiuntur, faciunt & contra ventum ponunt. Et si quando Tartari per gentes ad eos vulnerant eos sagittis, gramina in vulneribus ponunt, & fortiter ante ipsos fugiunt.

Chingis ortus & res gestæ.

Naymani, & cetera cap. 3.

Frates discordes oppressi.

Occoday Cham.

Homines syluestres.

M
exer
nobi
quam
nisi f
mur
uisset
sunt h
litera
litera
Hudi
uit. I
contra
uitate
tus ex
pit Ch
machin
mè liqu
gali pu
ad med
qui ext
taris in
gentum
propria
imperat
vsiq; hoc
veteris
bus oran
dicunt, &
nam, sed
& cleem
& in disp
inueniunt
nimis in f

C
Vma
Crulm
mine Tho
miste, quos
exercitu ce
pes sunt vo
processit.
illos venite
sella super
nem. Itaq;
seu Tartaro
premisserunt
suerunt, & c
equi combu
runt Indi, ex
fusione de su

De mutua victoria ipsorum & Kythaorum. Cap. 9.

Mongali autem in terram suam reuertentes, se contra * Kythas ad prælum parauerunt, & castra mouentes, eorum terram intrauerunt. Quod audiens eorum Imperator, venit cum exercitu suo contra illos, & commissum est prælum durū, in quo Mongali sunt deuicti, omnesq; nobiles eorum, qui erant in exercitu, præter septem occisi sunt. Vnde cum illis volentibus aliquam impugnare regionē, minatur aliquis fragem adhuc respondere: Olim etiam occisi non nisi septem remansimus, & tamen in modo creuimus in multitudinem magnam, ideoq; non terremur de talibus. Chingis autem & alij, qui remanserunt, in terram suam fugerunt. Cumq; quiescent homines Christiani de secta Nestorianorum, Ethos etiam Mongali deuicerunt, eorumq; litteram acceperunt: prius enim scripturam non habebant, nunc autem eandem Mongalorum litteram appellant. Inde contra terram Saruyur, & contra terram Karanitarum, & contra terram Hudirat processit, quos omnes bello deuicit. Inde in terram suam rediit, & aliquantulum quiescent contra illos pugnantes, magnam partem terræ illorum vicerunt, eorumq; Imperatorem in ciuitatem suam maiorem concluderunt. Quam & tam longo tempore obsederunt, quod exercitus expensæ omnino defecerunt. Cumq; iam quod manducarent penitus non haberent, precipit Chingis eam suis, vt de decē hominibus vnū ad manducandum darent. Illi verò de ciuitate meli liquet factum proieiebant. Ciuitas siquidē illa multis erat lapides, argentū & maxime Chingis pugnasset, & eam bello vincere non possent, vnam magnā sub terra viam ab exercitu vsq; ad mediū ciuitatis fecerunt, & profluentes in mediū eius, contra ciues pugnaverunt. Illi quoque, qui extra remanserant, eodem modo contra illos pugnant. Deniq; concidentes portas ciuitatis intrauerunt, & imperatorem cum pluribus occidentes vrbes possederunt, aurumq; & argentum, & omnes eius diuitias abstulerunt. Et cum illi terræ suos homines præficerent, in terram propriam reuersi sunt. Tunc primum Imperator Kythaorum deuictus, factus est Chingis Cham vsq; hodie. Sunt autem Kytai homines pagani, habentes litteram specialem, & etiam, vt dicitur, veteris & noui Testamenti scripturam. Habent etiam vitas patrū & eremitas & domos, in quibus orant temporibus suis, ad inodum Ecclesiarum factas. Quosdam etiam sanctos habere sciamus, sed non baptizantur. Scripturam nostram honorant ac reuerentur. Christianos diligunt, & eleemosynas plures faciunt, homines benigni facis & humani videntur. Barbam non habent, & in dispositione faciei cum Mongalis in parte concordant. Meliores artifices in mundo non inueniuntur in omnibus operibus, in quibus homines exercentur. Terra eorum est opulenta nimis in frumento & vino, auro & serico ac rebus cæteris.

* Haythas & Taula Venete sunt Cathay. Tartarum Cathayna clades.

Noua victoria. Littera.

Argentum inco lapidum in hostem prociuitur.

Chingis saluatus Imperator.

Cathaynum littera & religio.

Opificiorum exercitus.

De pugna ipsorum contra Indiam minorem & maiorem. Cap. 10.

Cum autem Mongali cum Imperatore suo Chingis Cham post præfatam victoriā aliquantulum quiescent, exercitus suos diuiserunt. Imperator siquidem vnum de filiis suis nominē Thofut, quem etiam Can, id est, Imperatorē appellabant, cum exercitu contra Comanos exercitu contra Indos misit, qui & minorem Indiam subiecit. Hi sunt nigri Sarraeni, qui Ethiopes sunt vocati. Hic autem exercitus ad pugnam contra Christianos, qui sunt in India maiori, processit. Quod audiens Rex illius terræ, qui vulgō * Presbyter Iohannes appellatur, contra illos venit exercitus congregato. Et faciens imagines cupreas hominum, vnamquāq; posuit in sella super equum. Posuit & interius ignem, & hominem cum folle super equum post imaginem. Itaq; cum multis equis & imaginibus, taliter præparatis, ad pugnam contra Mongalos præmiserunt. Viri autem, qui erant retrō, nescio quid super ignem, qui erat intra imagines, posuerunt, & cum folliibus fortiter sufflauerunt. Vnde factum est, vt ex Græco igne homines & equi comburerentur, & etiam aer ex fumo denigraretur. Tūque super Tartaros sagittas iecerunt Indi, ex quibus multi vulnerati fuerunt & interfecti. Sicq; elecerunt illos cum magna confusione de suis finibus, nec vnquam, quod ad ipsos ultra redierint audiuimus.

Thofut Can, Chinga F.

India minor debellata.

Rex maioris Indiae Saragema. * Vnde Iulianus lib. 4. cap. 51. de Pauli Veneta.

Via Indiae

Qualiter ab hominibus caninis repulsi, Buri-
thabethinos vicerunt. Cap. 11.

De monstruosa
militibus & can-
inibus monstruosa
narratio.

¶ Foras autem
virescentia
alluvia collit
Canibiles de qui-
bus Petrus Mar-
tyr Melchioran-
de rebus Oceanicis.

Burithabeth
regio.
Incolatum morem

Cum autem per desertum redirent, in quamdam terram venerunt, in qua, sicut nobis apud Imperatoris curiam per clericos Ruthenos, & alios, qui diu fuerant inter ipsos, firmiter al-
serendo referebatur, non ita quamdam, imaginem formicam habentia, repperunt. Quas cum
per multos interpretes interrogassent, ubi viri terræ illius essent, responderunt, quod in illa terra
quæcunque; formigæ nascibatur, habebant formam humanam, masculi vero speciem caninam. Dum-
que morantur in terra illa protraherent, Canes in alia fluvij parte conuenerunt. Et cum esset hyems
alperissima omnes se in aquam proiecerunt. Post hæc incontinenti sponte in pulverem volueban-
tur, sicque pulvis admixtus aquæ super eos congelabatur, & vitæ pluries fecerunt, glaciæ super
eos depressata, cum impetu magno contra Tartaros ad pugnam conuenerunt. At verò cum illi
sagittas super eos iaciebant, ac si super lapides sagittassent, retrò sagittæ redibant. Alia quoque
arma eorum in nullo eos lædere poterant. Ipsi verò Canes insultum in Tartaros facientes, mor-
sibus vulnerauerunt multos, & occiderunt, sicque illos de suis sinibus eiecerunt. Vnde adhuc in-
ter illos est proverbiū de hoc facto, quod dicunt ad inuicem ridendo: Pater meus vel frater
meus à Canibus fuit occisus. Mulieres autem illorum, quas ceperant, ad terram suam duxerunt, & usque
ad diem mortis eorum ibidem fuerunt. Cum autem exercitus ille Mongalorum rediret, venit ad terram
Burithabeth, cuius habitatores pagani sunt, & hos Tartari bello vicerunt. Hic consuetudinem
habent mirabilem, imò potius miserabilem. Cum enim alicuius pater humanæ naturæ soluit
debitum, congregant omnem parentelam, & comedunt eum. Hi pilos in barba non habent, imò
serrum quoddam in manibus, sicut vidimus, portant, cum quo semper barbam, si forte crinis ali-
quis in ea crescit, depilant. Multum etiam deformes sunt. Inde verò ille Tartarorum exercitus
in terram suam est reuersus.

Qualiter à montibus Caspijs, & ab hominibus sub-
terraneis repulsi sunt. Cap. 12.

Alia Chingis ex-
peditio.

¶ Vide an Ham-
sem regionem
dicat id de qua
Haythons
cap. 10.

Trogodyra.

Fabulosus Solis
orbis iunctus.

Cum expeditione periret, quos tamen tunc bello non vicit, & ut nobis dicebatur, ibidem usque
ad montes Caspijs peruenit. At illi montes in ea parte, ad quam applicauerunt, de lapide Ada-
mantino sunt: ideoque sagittæ & arma ferrea illorum ad se traxerunt. Homines autem inter Caspijs
montes conclusi clamorem exercitus, ut creditur, audientes, montem frangere ceperunt, &
cum alio tempore post decem annos redirent Tartari, montem fractum inueniunt. Cum-
que ad illos accedere attentassent, inuicem potuerunt: quia nubes quædam erat posita ante ipsos,
ultra quam ire nullatenus poterant. Omnia quippe visum ardebant, statim ut ad illam per-
ueniebant. Illi autem ex aduerso credentes, quod Tartari ad illos accedere formidarent, insul-
tum contra eos fecerunt, sed statim ut perueniunt ad nubem propter causam prædictam,
procedere non potuerunt. Ac verò antequam ad montes prædictos peruenirent Tartari, plu-
quam per mensem per magnum desertum perrexerunt. Itaque perueniunt ad quan-
dam terram, in qua vias quidem tritas videbant, sed neminem inuenire poterant. Tandem que-
rentes, vnu hominem cum vxore sua reperiunt, quos in præsentiam Chingis cham adduxerunt.
Qui cum interrogasset illos, ubi homines illius terræ essent, responderunt, quod in terra sub
montibus habitarent. Tunc Chingis cham retenta vxore, misit ad eos virum illum, mandans
illis, ut venirent ad ipsius mandatum. Qui pergens ad illos, omnia narrauit, quæ Chingis
cham eis mandauit. Illi verò respondentes dixerunt, quod die tali venirent ad ipsum, ut face-
rent eius mandatum. Ac ipsi medio tempore per vias occultas sub terra se congregantes, ad
pugnam contra illos venerunt, & subito super eos irruentes, plurimos occiderunt, Solis quo-
que sonitus in ortu suo sustinere non poterant, imò tempore, quo oriebatur, oportebat eos
viam autem ad terram ponere, & superiorem fortiter obdurare, ne sonum illum terribilem au-
dierent. Nec sic tamen cauere poterant, quin hac de causa plurimi ex eis interirent. Videns
ergo Chingis cham & sui, quod nihil proficerent, sed potius homines suos perderent, fuge-
runt, ac terra illa exierunt. Illum tamen virum cum vxore sua secum deduxerunt, qui etiam
visque ad mortem in terra eorum fuerunt. Interrogati verò, cur in regione sua sub terra so-
leant habitare, dixerunt, quod ibi quodam tempore anni, cum oritur Sol, tantus fit sonitus, ut
homines nulla ratione valeant sustinere. Quin etiam tunc in organa & tympanis ceterisque
musicis instrumentis percutere solent, ut sonitum illum non audiant.

De

ficut nobis apud
pfos, firmiter al-
runt. Quas cum
quod in illa terra
caninam. Dum-
cum effer hyems
lucere volebant-
t, glacie super
Ac verò cum illi
nt. Alia quoq;
facientes, mor-
Vnde adhuc in-
meus vel frater
luserunt, & vsq;
venit ad terram
consuetudinem
e naturæ soluit
on habent, imò
forte crinis ali-
orum exercitus

terram Kergis
atur, ibidē viq;
delapide Ada-
tint: r Caspios
e ceperunt, &
nerunt. Cum-
stia ante ipsos,
rad illam per-
fidarent, insul-
m prædictam,
Tartari, plus-
uc contra Ori-
runt ad quan-
Tandem que-
n adduxerunt.
d in terra sub
um, mandans
quæ Chingif-
sum, vt face-
regantes, ad
t, Solis quo-
portebat eos
terribilem au-
rent. Videns
erent, fuge-
t, qui etiam
sub terra so-
fit sonitus, vt
is exterisque

De

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Dilcoueries.

De statutis Chingischam, et morte ipsius, et filijs
ac Ducibus. Cap. 13.

43

Cum autem de terra illa reuerteretur Chingischam, descenderunt eis victualia, famemq; pa-
pientes, depositis tantum stercoribus, decoxerunt, & coram Chingischam deportata pariter
comederunt. Ideoq; statuit Chingischam, vt nec sanguis, nec interiora, nec aliquid de bestia,
quæ manducari potest, projiciatur, exceptis stercoribus. Inde ergo in terram propriam reuer-
sus est, ibiq; leges & statuta edidit, quæ Tartari inuiolabiliter obseruant, de quibus scilicet iam
alijs superius dictum est. Post hoc abiecti conitui occisus est. Habuit autem quatuor filios:
Occoday vocabatur primus, Thoslut Can secundus, Thiaday tertius, quarti nomen ignora-
mus. Ab his iij. descenderunt omnes Duces Mongalorum. Primus filiorum Occoday est
Cuyne, qui nunc est Imperator. Huius fratres Cocten & Chyrenen. Ex filijs autem Thoslut
Can sunt Bathy, Ordu, Siba, Bora. Bathy post Imperatorem omnibus ditor est ac potentior,
Ordu verò omnium Ducum senior. Filij Thiaday, sunt Hurin & Cadan. Filij autem alterius fi-
lij Chingischam, cuius ignoramus nomen, sunt, Mengu & Bithat & alij plures. Huius Mengu
mater Seroctan est, Domina magna inter Tartaros, excepta Imperatoris matre plus nomina-
ra, omnibusq; potentior, excepto Bathy. Hæc autem sunt nomina Ducum: Ordu, qui fuit in
Polonia, & Hungaria, Bathy quoq; & Huryn & Cadan & Syban & Ouygar, qui omnes fue-
runt in Hungaria. Sed & Cypodan, qui adhuc est vltra mare contra quosdam Soldanos Sar-
racenorum, & alios habitatores terræ transmarinæ, Alij verò remanserunt in terra, scilicet Men-
gu, Chyrenen, Hubilai, Sinocur, Cara, Gay, Sybedey, Bora, Berea, Correns. Alij quoq; Du-
ces eorum plures sunt, quorum nomina nobis ignota sunt.

Chingh lei.

Interius.
Libert.
Nequos.

Duces.

De potestate Imperatoris & Ducum eius. Cap. 14.

Potest Imperator eorum, scilicet Tartarorum, super omnes habet mirabile dominium, Nul-
lus enim audet in aliqua morari parte, nisi vbi assignauerit ipse. Eripse quidem assignat
Ducibus vbi maneant. Duces autem loca Millenarij assignant, Millenarij verò Centenarij, &
Centenarij Decanis. Quicquid autem eis præcipitur, quocumq; tempore, quocumq; loco, si-
ue ad bellum, siue ad mortem, vel vbiunque, sine vlla obediunt contradictione. Nam etsi pe-
tunt alicuius filiam virginem, vel sororem, mox ei sine contradictione exponunt eam, imò fre-
quenter colligit virgines ex omnibus Tartarorum finibus, & si vult aliquas retinere, sibi reti-
net, alias verò dat suis hominibus. Nuncios etiam quoscumq; & vbiunque transmittat, oportet
quod dent ei sine mora equos & expensas. Similiter vndeunque veniant ei tributa vel nun-
cij, oportet equos & cumus & expensas tribui. Ac verò nuncios, qui aliunde veniunt, in magna
miseria, & victus & vestitus penuria sunt. Maximeq; quando veniunt ad Principes, & ibi de-
bent moram contrahere. Tunc adeo parum datur decem hominibus, quod vix inde possent duo
vivere. Insuper & si aliquæ illis iniuriæ fiunt, minimè conueniunt facile possunt. Multa quoque
munera eam à principibus quàm à cæteris ab illis petuntur: quæ si non dederint, vllipendun-
tur, & quasi pro nihilo reputantur. Hinc & nos magnam partem rerum, quæ nobis pro expen-
sis à fidelibus erant data, de necessitate oportuit in muneribus dare, Denique sic omnia sunt in
manu Imperatoris, quod nemo audet dicere, Hoc meum est vel illius, sed omnia, scilicet res
& iura, entia ac homines, sunt ipsius. Super hoc etiam nuper emanauit statutum eiusdem. Idem
quoq; per omnia dominium habent Duces super sibi subditos homines.

Imperatoris Tar-
tarorum ser uile in
omnes imperant.Inhumana est
ga Legator.De electione Imperatoris Occoday, & legatione
Ducis Bathy. Cap. 15.

Mortuo, vt supra dictum est, Cynghscham, conuenerunt Duces, & elegerunt Occoday, fi-
lium eius Imperatorem, Qui habito consilio Principum, diuise exercitus. Misitq; Bathy,
qui in secundo gradu attingebat eum, contra terram Altissodan & contra terram Bisminorum,
qui Saraceni erant, sed loquebantur Comanicum. Qui terram illorum ingressus, cum eis pug-
nauit, eosq; sibi bello subiecit. Quædam autem ciuitas, nomine Barchin, diu resistit eis. Ciues
enim in circuitu ciuitatis foueas multas fecerant, propter quas non poterant à Tartaris capi,
donec illas repleuissent. Ciues autem vrbis Sarguit hoc audientes, exierunt obviam eis, sponte
derunt, & alios transtulerunt, acceptiq; spolijs, urbem alijs hominibus repleuerunt, & contra
ciuitatem Orna petreuerunt. Hæc erat nimium populosa & diuitijs copiosa. Erant enim ibi
plures

Occoday furaga-
tur pœt.
Bathy chijs; ex-
pedio.

Barchin ciuitas.

Sarguit ciuitas.

Orna ciuitas.

plures Christiani, videlicet Cafari & Rutheni, & Alani, & alij nec non & Sarraceni. Erantque Sarracenorum ciuitatis coniunium. Est etiam posita super quendam magnum fluuium, & est quasi portus, habens forum maximum. Cumque Tartari non possent eos aliter vincere, fluuium, qui per urbem currebat, præciderunt, & illam cum rebus & hominibus submerserunt. Quo facto, contra Russiam petrexferunt, & magnam stragem in ea tecerunt, ciuitates & castra destruxerunt, & homines occiderunt. Kiouiam, Russiæ metropolin, diu obsederunt, & tandem cepērunt, ac ciues interfecerunt. Vnde quando per illam terram ibamus, innumerabilia capta & ossa hominum mortuorum, iacentia super campum, inueniebamus. Fuerat enim vix valde magna & populosa, nunc quasi ad nihilum est redacta: vix enim domus ibi remanserunt ducentæ, quarum etiam habitatores tenentur in maxima seruitute. Porro de Russia & de Comania Tartari contra Hungaros & Polonos processerunt, ibique plures ex ipsis interfecisti fuerunt, & viam superius dictum est, si Hungari viriliter resisterent, Tartari ab eis confusi recessissent. Inde reuertentes in terram Morduanorum, qui sunt Pagani, venerunt, eosque bello vicerunt. Inde contra Byleros, id est, contra Bulgariam magnam profecti sunt, & ipsam omnino destruxerunt. Hinc ad Aquilonem adhuc contra Baltarcos, id est Hungariam magnam processerunt, & viam etiam deuicerunt. Hinc amplius ad Aquilonem pergentes, ad Parossitas venerunt, qui paruos habentes stomachos & os paruū, non manducant, sed carnes decoquunt, quibus decoctis, se super ollam ponunt, & fumum recipiunt, & de hoc solo reficiuntur, vel si aliquid manducant, hoc valde modicum est. Hinc & ad Samogetas venerunt, qui tantum de venationibus viuunt, & tabernacula vestesque tantum habent de pellibus bestiarum. Inde ad quandam terram super Oceanum peruenerunt, vbi monstra quædam inuenerunt, quæ per omnia formam humanam habebant, sed pedes bouinis, & caput quidem humanum, sed faciem vt canis. Diu verba loquebantur vt homines, tertio latrabant vt canes. Hinc redierunt in Comaniam, & vsque nunc ibi morantur ex eis quidam.

† De his regionibus Herbersteinus pag. 8 b & 91. b. Pares enim hodie utraq; Moschorum Principi. Item de Bulgaria Guaguinus pag. 106. b.

De legatione Cyropdan Ducis. Cap. 16.

Ex editio Cyr-
podani.

EO tempore misit Occidat Can Cyropdan Ducem cum exercitu ad meridiem contra Kergis, qui & illos bello superauit. Hi homines sunt Pagani, qui pilos in barba non habent. Quorum consuetudo talis est, vt cum alicuius pater moritur, præ dolore quasi vnam corrigiam in signum lamenti ab aure vsque; aurem de facie sua leuet. His autem deuictis, Dux Cyropdan contra Armenios iuit ad meridiem cum suis. Qui cum transirent per desertam quædam, monstra inuenerunt, effigiem humanam habentia, quæ non nisi vnum brachium cum manu in medio pectoris, & vnum pedem habebant, & duo cum vno arcu sagittabant, adeoque fortiter currebant, quod equi eos inuestigare non poterant. Currebant autem super vnum pedem illam saltando, & cum essent fatigati, taliter eunt ibant super manum & pedem, se tanquam in circulo reuoluendo. Cumque sic etiam fessi essent, iterum secundum priorem modum currebant. Hos Isidorus Cyclopedes appellat. Et ex eis Tartari nonnullos occiderunt. Et sicut nobis à Ruthenis Clericis in curia dicebatur, qui morantur cum Imperatore prædicto, plures ex eis nuncij venerunt in legatione ad curiam Imperatoris, superius annotati, vt possent habere pacem cum illo. Inde procedentes venerunt in Armeniam, quam bello deuicerunt, & etiam Georgiæ partem. Alia verò pars venit ad mandatum eorum, & singulis annis dederunt, & adhuc dant ei pro tributo xx. millia Ypperperarum. Hinc ad terram Soldani Deurum, potentis & iragni, processerunt, cum quo etiam pugnantes, ipsum deuicerunt. Denique processerunt vltius debellando ac vincendo vsque ad terram Soldani Halapix, & nunc etiam terram obtinent, alias quoque terras ultra illas proponentes impugnare: nec postea reuersi sunt in terram suam vsque hodie. Idemque exercitus contra terram Caliphi Baldach perrexit, quam etiam sibi subdidit, & vt CCCC. Byzantios, exceptis Baldekinis cæterisque muneribus, ei quotidie pro tributo daret, obtinuit. Sed & quolibet anno mittunt nuncios ad Caliphum, vt ad eos veniat. Qui cum tributo munera magna trasmitiens, vt eum supportent, rogat. Ipse autem Imperator Tartarorum munera quidem accipit, & nihilominus vt veniat, pro eo mittit.

Qualiter Tartari se habent in praelijs. Cap. 17.

Tartarorum mili-
tari disciplina.

ORDINAVIT Chingischam Tartaros per Decanos & centenarios & millenarios. Decem quoque millenarijs præponunt vnum, cunctoque nihilominus exercitui duos aut tres Duces, ita tamen vt ad vnum habeant respectum. Cumque in bello contra aliquos congregiuntur, nisi communi-

com-
auda-
Sed
cidu-
retra-
gladi-
quos
dam l-
rius el-
rio. C-
multa-
ramini-
alij qu-
lis per
parte c-
Hæc fa-
lucere,
habent
acupissi-
limas ac-
credimur
hoc tan-
cârunt.
cuius fun-
in circuitu
nicem oc-
mines, E-
re faciunt
impulso,
vnam bu-
summat

N Vill-
stazim
eis opem f-
allam pug-
Christiani
niant, ac de
multum tim-
nubrio long-
debent in a-
& lanceas c-
Habeant e-
tum, & si qu-
vel balistis
pugnanti-
bet ponam-
ri potest, eli-
sed acies mu-
mò veniunt,
pote. Habe-
ideò semper
aduersarios in-
diu post illos
fraudentia
titudinis non
ebus, vel quat

eni, Eratq; Sarmatium, & est quacere, fluvium, erunt, Quo facta castra destruant, & tandem mirabilia capitum in vrbis valodi remanserunt. Interfecti sunt confusi recessusq; bello vi ipsam omnino nam processitrositas venes decoquunt, untur, vel si aqua tantum detur. Inde ad primum, quod per num, sed facie redierunt in

Moschorum

contra Kerum non habent. Corrigiam x Cypodan ad dam, mon manu in me fortiter cur pedem illam quam in circumbat, sicut nobis à ex eis nuntiare pacem am Georgiz adhuc dant. Magni, vltius decinent, alias suam vsq; subdidit, & ubi daret, qui cum trios Tartarorum

decem quores Duces, liuntur, nisi communi

communitercedant, omnes qui fugiunt, occiduntur, & si vnus aut duo, vel plures ex decem audacter accedunt ad pugnam, alij verò ex illo Denario non sequuntur, similiter occiduntur. Sed etiam si vnus ex decem vel plures capiuntur, socij eorum non eos liberant, ipsi etiam occiduntur. Porro arma debent habere talia. Duos arcus vel vnum bonum ad minus. Tresq; pharetras sagittis plenas, & vnam securim & funes ad machinas trahendas. Diuites autem habent gladios in fine acutos, ex vna parte tantum incidentes, & aliquantulum curuor. Habent & equos armatos, crura etiam tecta, galeas & loricas. Verum loricas & equorum cooperaturas quidam habent de corio, super corpus artificiosè duplicato vel etiam triplicato. Galea verò superior est de chalybe, vel de ferro: sed illud, quod in circuitu protegit collum & gulam, est de corio. Quidam autem de ferro habent omnia supradicta, in hunc modum formata. Laminas multas tenues ad vnus digiti latitudinem & palmæ longitudinē faciunt, & in qualibet octo foramina parua facientes, interius tres corrigias strictas & fortes ponunt. Sicq; laminas, vnā alij quasi per gradus ascendendo, supponunt. Itaq; laminas ad corrigias, tenuibus corrigiolis perforamina prædicta immittunt, ligant, & in superiori parte corrigiolam vnā ex vtraque parte duplicatam cum alia corrigiola consuunt, vt laminæ simul benè firmiterq; cohæreant. Hæc faciunt tam ad cooperaturas equorum, quam ad armaturas hominum. Adeoq; faciunt illas lucere, quod in eis potest homo faciem suam videre. Aliqui verò in collo ferri lanceæ vnū habent, cum quo de sella, si possunt, hominem detrahant. Sagittarum eorum ferramenta sunt acutissima, ex vtraque parte quasi gladius biceps incidentia, semperq; iuxta pharetram portant limas ad acuendum sagittas. Habent verò scuta de viminibus, aut de virgulis facta. Sed non credimus, quod ea soleant portare, nisi ad castra & ad custodiam Imperatoris ac principum, & hoc tantum de nocte. In bellis astutissimi sunt: quia per annos xlij. cum cæteris gentibus dimicant. Cum autem ad flumina perueniunt, maiores habent rotundum ac leue corium, in cuius summitate per circuitum anas crebras facientes, funem imponunt ac stringunt, ita quod in circuitu quasi ventrem efficiunt, quem vestibus ac rebus cæteris replent, fortissimèq; ad inimices comprimunt. In medio autem ponunt fellas & alias res duriores: ibi quoque sedent homines. Huiusmodi nauim ad equi caudam ligant, & hominem, qui equum regat, pariter natare faciunt, vel habent aliquando duos renos, cum quibus remigant. Equo igitur in aquam impulsos, omnes alij equi sequuntur illum, & sic transeunt fluvium. Pauperior autem quilibet vnā burfam vel saccum de corio benè consutum habet, in quo res suas omnes imponit, & in summitate fortiter ligatum, ad equi caudam suspendit, sicq; modo prædicto transit.

Armatura,

Vnus bellorum. Mos transandi flumina.

Tartari de bello contra Tartaros gerendo.

Ferri temperamentum.

Qualiter resistendum sit eis. Cap. 18.

Nvllam æstimō provinciam esse, quæ per se possit eis resistere: quia de omni terra potestatis suæ solent homines ad bellum congregare. Et siquidem vicina provincia non vult eis opem ferre, quam impugnant, delentes illam, cum hominibus, quos ex illa capiunt, contra aliam pugnant. Et illos quidem in acie primos ponunt, & si malè pugnant, ipsos occidunt. Itaq; si Christiani eis resistere volunt, oportet quod Principes ac rectores terrarum in vnum conueniant, ac de communi consilio eis resistan. Habeantq; pugnatōres arcus fortes & balistas, quas multum timent, sagittasq; sufficientes, dolabrum quoq; de bono ferro, vel securim cum manubrio longo. Ferramenta verò sagittarum more Tartarorum, quando sunt calida, temperare debent in aqua, cum sale mixta, vt fortia sint ad penetrandum illorum arma. Gladios etiam & lanceas cum vncis habeant, qui volunt, ad detrahendū illos de sella, de qua facillimè cadunt. Habeant & galeas & arma cætera, ad protegendum corpus & equum ab armis & sagittis eorum, & si qui non ita sunt armati, debent more illorum post alios ire, & contra ipsos arcubus vel balistis traicere. Et sicut dictum est suprà de Tartaris, debent acies suas ordinare, ac legem pugnantibus imponere. Quicumq; conuersus fuerit ad prædam ante victoriam, maximam debet periculi subire: talis enim apud illos occiditur absq; miseratione. Locus ad prælium, si fieri potest, eligendus est planus, vt vndiq; possint videre, nec omnes debent in vnum conuenire, sed acies multas & diuisas, nec tamen nimis distantes ab inuicem, facere. Contra illos, qui primo veniunt, debent vnā aciem mittere, & alia parata sit ad iuuandum illam: opportuno tempore. Habeant & speculatores ex omni parte, qui videant, quando veniunt acies cæteræ. Nam ideo semper debent aciem contra aciem, vt ei occurrant, mittere, quoniam illi semper nituntur aduersarios in medio concludere. Hoc autem acies cauant, ne si etiam illi fugere videantur, diu post illos currant, ne fortè, sicut facere solent, ipsos ad paratas insidias trahant: quia plus fraudulentiam quam fortitudinem pugnant. Et iterum ne sagientur equi eorum: quia nostri multitudine non habent equorum. Tartari verò quos equitant die vna, non ascendent tribus diebus, vel quatuor postea. Præterea si cedunt Tartari, non ideo debent nostri recedere, vel ab inuicem

uicem separari: quoniam hoc simulando faciunt, ut exercitus diuidatur, & sic ad terræ destructionem libere ingrediantur. Ceterum Duces nostri die noctique sacere debent exercitum custodiri: nec iacere spoliati, sed semper ad pugnam parati: quia Tartari quasi Demones semper vigilant, excogitantes artem nocendi. Porro si aliqui Tartarorum in bello de suis equis proijciuntur, statim capiendi sunt, quia quando sunt in terra fortiter sagittant, & equos hominesque vulnerant.

De itinere Fratris Iohannis de Plano carpinii vsque ad
primam custodiam Tartarorum. Cap. 19.

Nos igitur ex mandato sedis Apostolicæ cum iremus ad Orientis nationes, elegimus prius ad Tartaros proficisci: quia timebamus, ne per illos in proximo Ecclesiæ Dei periculum immineret. Itaque pergentes, ad regem Boemorum peruenimus: qui cum esset nobis familiaris, consuluit, ut per Poloniam & Russiam iter ageremus. Habebat enim consanguineos in Polonia, quorum auxilio Russiam intrare possemus. Datusque literis & bono conductu, fecit & expensas nobis dari per curias & ciuitates eius, quo vsque ad Ducem Slesie Boleslaum, nepotem eius, veniremus, qui etiam erat nobis familiaris & notus. Hinc & ipse nobis similiter fecit, donec veniremus ad Conradum, Ducem * Larviciæ, ad quem tunc, Dei gratia nobis fauente, venerat Dominus Wasilico, Dux Russiæ, à quo etiam plenius de facto audiuimus Tartarorum: quia nuncios illic miserat, qui iam redierant ad ipsum. Audito autem, quod oportere nos illis munera dare, quasdam pelles castorum & aliorum animalium fecimus emi, de hoc, quod datum nobis fuerat in elemosynam ad subsidium viæ. Quod agnoscetes Dux Conradus & * Ducissa Cracouiæ, & Episcopus & quidam milites, priores etiam nobis dederunt huiusmodi pelles. Deoique Dux Wasilico à Duce Cracouiæ, & Episcopo utque Baronibus pro nobis atrendi rogatus, secum nos in terram suam duxit, & ut aliquantulum quiesceremus, aliquot diebus nos in expensis suis detinuit, & cum rogatus à nobis, fecisset Episcopos suos venire, legimus eis literas Domini Papæ, monentis eos, ad sanctæ matris Ecclesiæ unitatem redire. Ad idem quoque nos ipsi monuimus eos, & induximus, quantum potuimus, tam Ducem quam Episcopos & alios. Sed quia Dux Daniel, frater Wasiliconis prædicti, præfens non erat, quoniam ad Baty profectus erat, non potuerunt eo tempore finaliter respondere. Post hæc Dux Wasilico transiit nos vsque in Kiouiam metropolin Russiæ, cum sentiente vno, ibamus tamen in periculo capitis semper propter Lituanos, qui sæpe faciebant insultum super terram Russiæ, & in illis maxime locis, per quos debebamus transire. At per prædictam feruentem eramus securi à Ruthenis, quorum etiam maxima pars occisa vel captiua erat à Tartaris. Porro in Danilone vsque ad mortem tunc infirmati fuimus. Nihilominus tamen in vehiculo per niuem & frigus magnum trahi nos fecimus. Cum ergo Kiouiam peruenimus, habuimus de via nostra consilium cum millenario ac cæteris ibidem nobilibus. Qui responderunt nobis, quod si duceremus equos illos, quos tunc habebamus, ad Tamaros, cum essent magnæ niues, morerentur omnes: quia nesciunt herbam fodere sub niue, sicut equi faciunt Tartarorum, nec inueniri posset aliquod pro eis ad manducandum, cum Tartari nec stramina nec fenum habeant, nec pabulum. Itaque decreuimus eos illic dimittere cum duobus pueris, deputatis eorum custodiz. Ideoque nos oportuit millenario dare munera, ut ipsum haberemus propitium, ad dandum nobis equos subductitios & conductum. Secundo igitur die post festum Purificationis cepto itinere, venimus ad villam Canouæ, que sub Tartaris erat immediatè. Cuius præfectus nobis dedit equos & conductum vsque ad aliam, in qua reperimus præfectum Micheam, omni malicia plenum. Qui tamen acceptis à nobis muneribus secundum velle suum, duxit nos vsque ad primam custodiam Tartarorum.

Qualiter primò cum socijs suis receptus est à Tartarijs. Cap. 20.

Cum ergo in prima sexta feria post diem cinerum, Sole ad occasum tendente, hospitaremur, Tartari super nos armati horribiliter irruerunt, quærentes cuiusmodi homines essemus: cumque respondissemus, quod Domini Papæ nuncios essemus, quibusdam cibarijs à nobis acceptis, continuo discesserunt. Porro mane facto, cum surgentes aliquantulum processissemus, maiores illorum, qui erant in custodia, nobis occurrerunt, interrogantes, cur ad eos veniremus? & quid negotij haberemus? Quibus respondimus, Domini Papæ nuncios sumus, qui Christianorum pater est ac Dominus. Hinc nos idcirco tam ad Regem quam ad Principes, omnesque Tartaros, mittit, quia placet ei, quod omnes Christiani Tartarorum sint amici, & pacem habeant cum

Itinerarium Iohannis & locorum legatorum.

Boleslaus Dux Silesiæ.

* Mazovia.

* Grimissa, ut dicitur in libro, cap. 9.

Littere Papæ ad Russos.

Daniel, frater Wasilij.

Litani.

Pabulum equorum Tartaric.

Micheas præfectus.

Papa Christianorum pater & Dominus.

ad terræ destruent exercitum
demones semis suis equis pro-
quos homines.

ad

elegimus pri-
Dei pericu-
obis familiaris,
ineos in Polo-
a, fecit & ex-
zalam, nepo-
similiter fecit,
nobis fauente,
mus Tartaro-
ad oportere
emi, de hoc,
Dux Conradus
runt huiusmo-
bus pro nobis
us, aliquot di-
venire, legi-
dire. Ad idem
quàm Episco-
quoniam ad
Dux Wasilico
tamen in pe-
Ruffia, & in
ramus securi
in Danilone
m & frigus
nostra consili-
si duceremus
mur omnes:
iri posset ali-
ec pabulum.
diz. Ideoq;
nobis equos
cinere, veni-
dedit equos
itia plenum,
mam custo-

hospitare-
omnes esse
a nobis ac-
cessissemus,
veniremus?
ui Christi-
a, omnesq;
im habeant
cum

Legationis man-
data.

cum ipsis, Desiderat insuper, ut apud Deum in celo sint magni, & idcirco monet eos tam per
nos quàm per literas suas, ut efficiantur Christiani, sicut enim recipiant Domini nostri Iesu Chri-
sti, quia non possunt aliter saluari. Mandat præterea, quod miratur de tanta occisione hominum,
& maxime Christianorum, ac potissime Hungarorum, Montanorum, & Polonorum, qui sunt
ei subiecti, facta per Tartaros, cum in nullo lesissent, aut lædere attentarent eos. Et quia Domi-
nus Deus grauitè est super hoc offensus, monet eos, ut à talibus de cætero caveant, & de com-
muni penitentiam agant. Super his etiam rogat, ut ei rescribant, quid facere velint de cate-
gore, & quæ sit eorum intentio, Quibus auxiliis, & intellectibus, dixerunt Tartari, se velle equos
nobis subducituros usque ad Corrensam & ducatum præbere, Spatiūq; munera petierunt, & à
Corrensam arripuimus iter eundi. Ipsitamen velociter equitantes, cum eorum ducatu ad
runt ad præfatum Ducem cum his verbis, quæ dixeramus ei idem. Est autem Dux iste Dominus
optimus, qui positi sunt in custodia contra omnes Occidentis populos, ne forte subitò & im-
provisò irruant aliqui super illos. Et iste dicitur habere sexaginta millia hominum amato-
rum sub se.

Corrensam.

Dux limitis occi-
dentalis.

Qualiter recepti sunt apud Corrensam. Cap. 21.

Cum ergo peruenissemus ad eius curiam, fecit nobis longè à se poni stationem, & misit ad
nos procuratores suos, ut quærentur à nobis, cum quo ei vellemus inclinare, id est, quæ ei
aliqua munera; quia non erat certum, quod ad illos peruenire possemus, & insuper veneramus
per loca valde periculosa. Veruntamen in quantum de his, quæ habebamus ex gratia Dei &
Domini Papæ ad victum nostrum, sicut poterimus, honorabimus ipsam, Accepitq; si munitibus
duxerunt nos ad ordam suæ tentorium ipsius, & instructi fuimus, ut ante ostium stationis ter-
cum sinistro genu inclinemus, & caueremus attentè, ne pedem super limē ostij poneremus, Et
postquam iocundamur, oportuit nos coram Duce omnibusq; maioribus, qui ad hoc erant voca-
ti, sicere flexis genibus ea, quæ dixeramus superius, Literas etiam Dom. Papæ obulimus sed in-
terpres, quem de Syouia, dato pretio, duxeramus, non erat sufficiens ad interpretandum, nec ali-
qua alius habebatur idoneus. Hinc equi nobis dati sunt, & tres Tartari, qui nos ducerent. Selli-
ctis principibus obedire. Itaq; iter arripuimus secunda feria post primā dominicam || xl. & equi-
tando, quantum equi trotare poterant, quoniam habebamus equos recentes serè ter aut qua-
ante quartam feriam maioris hebdomadæ potuimus ad ipsum peruenire, ibamus autem per
terram Comanorum, quæ tota est plana, & flumina quatuor habet magna. Primum appellatur
* Neper, iuxta quod ex parte Ruffiæ ambulabat Correnza & Montij, qui maior est illo ex alte-
ra parte per campestria, Secundum appellatur * Don, super quod ambulat quidam Princeps,
habens in coniugio sororem Baty, qui vocatur Tirbon. Tertium dicitur * Volga, quod est mag-
num valde, super quod incedit Bathy. Quartum nominatur * Iacæ, super quod duo millenarij
& in estate super ripam eorundem fluminum ad montes ascendunt, Hoc est mare magnum, de
quo brachium sancti Georgij exiit, quod in Constantinopolin vadit. Hæc autem flumina sunt
piscibus valde plena, maxime Volga, intrantq; mare Græciæ, quod dicitur Magnum mare. Su-
per Neper autem multis diebus iuimus per glaciem. Super littora quoq; maris Græciæ satis pe-
riculose per glaciem iuimus in pluribus locis multis diebus. Congelantur enim circa littora vn-
de ad tres leucas inferius. Prius autem quàm ad Bathy perueniremus, duo ex nostris Tartaris
præcesserunt, ad indicandum ei omnia verba, quæ apud Corrensam dixeramus.

Mrs salutandi
Tartaricos pro-
cetes,

Bathy estque
potentia.
¶ Quadagesima,

Comania.

* Veteribus Do-
rythænes.
* Tanaus,
* Rhs,
* Rymanus.

Potius Euxinus

Volga non in-
trat.

Qualiter recepti sunt apud Bathy magnum.

Principem. Cap. 22.

Porro cum in finibus terræ Comanorum ad Bathy perueniremus, benè positi fuimus per v-
nam leucam à stationibus eius. Cumq; duci debuimus ad curiam ipsius, dictum fuit nobis,
quod inter duos ignes transire deberemus. Nos autem hoc nulla ratione facere voleba-
mus. At illi dixerunt nobis: Ite securè, quia pro nulla causa volumus hoc facere, nisi
tantum, ut si vos aliquid malum cogitatis Domino nostro, vel portatis venenum, ignis auferat
omne malum. Quibus respondimus: quod propter hoc, ne de tali re suspectos redderemus nos,
transiremus. Cum igitur ad Ordam peruenissemus, interrogati à procuratore ipsius Eldegay, cum
quo inclinare vellemus? idem quod prius apud Corrensam respondimus, datiq; muneribus &
acceptis,

Ceremonia
per duos ignes
transcundi,

Eldegay.

Bathy audit legatos.

Genit se regicid.

Enflem bibendi ad Symphoniz cantum mos.

Authoritas.

acceptis, auditis etiam itineris caulis, introduxerunt nos in stationem Principis, prius facta inclinatione, & audita de limine non calcando, sicut prius, admonitione. Ingressi autem flexis genibus, verba nostra proposuimus, deinde literas obtulimus, & vi nobis darentur interpretes ad transferendum eas, rogauimus. Qui etiam in die Parasceue dati fuerunt nobis, & eas in littera Ruthenica, Sarracénica & in Tartarica diligenter cum ipsis translatulimus. Hæc interpretatio Bathy præsentata fuit: quam & legit, & attentè notauit. Tandem ad nostram stationem reducti fuimus, sed nulla cibaria nobis dederunt, nisi semel aliquantulum nullij in vna scutella, scilicet in prima nocte quando venimus. Iste Bathy magnificè se gerit, habens ostiarios & omnes officiales ad modum Imperatoris, & sedet in eminenti loco velut in throno cum vna de vxoribus suis. Alij verò tam fratres sui & filij, quam alij maiores inferius sedent in medio super bancum, & homines ceteri post eos in terra deortum, sed viri à dextris, & feminae à sinistris. Tentoria quoque de panno lineo habet pulchra & magna satis, quæ fuerunt Hungariz regis. Nec aliquid ad eius tentorium audeat accedere præter familiam, nisi vocatus, quantumcunque sit potens & magnus, nisi fortè sciatur, quod sit voluntas ipsius. Nos etiam dicta causa sedimus à sinistris: Sic etenim & omnes nuncij faciunt in eundo: sed in redeundo ab Imperatore, semper ponebantur à dextris. In medio ponitur mensa eius prope ostium stationis, super quam apponitur potus in aureis & argenteis vasis. Nec vnquam bibit Bathy, vel aliquis Tartarorum Princeps, maximè quando in publico sunt, nisi canietur ei vel cytharizetur. Et cum equitat, semper portatit solinum, vel tentorium super caput eius in halia. Sicq; faciunt cuncti maiores Principes Tartarorum, & etiam vxores eorum. Idem verò Bathy satis est hominibus suis benignus, valde eamen ab eis timetur, & in pugna est crudelissimus, sagax est mulum & astutissimus in bello: quia iam pugnavit tempore longo.

Qualiter recedentes à Bathy per terram Comanorum & Kangittarum transferunt. Cap. 23.

Legati iubent ad Cuyne Inyerrat pergere.

Comania descriptio.

Oceanus septentrionalis.

Terra Kangittarum.

Ieroslaus, Dux Russiz.

IN die porro Sabbathi sancti ad stationem fuimus vocati, & exiit ad nos procurator Bathy prædictus, diens ex parte ipsius, quod ad Imperatorem Cuyne in terram ipsorum iremus, retentis quibudam ex nostris sub hac specie, quod vellent eos remittere ad Dominum Papam, quibus & literas dedimus de omnibus factis nostris, quas deferrent eidem. Sed cum redissent vsq; ad Montij Ducem supradictum, ibi retenti fuerunt vsque ad reditum nostrum. Nos autem in die Pasche officio dicto, & facta comestione qualicunq; cum duobus Tartaris, qui nobis apud Corrensam fuerant assignati, cum multis lacrymis recessimus, nescientes vtrum ad mortem vel vitam pergeremus. Eramus tamen ita infirmi corpore, quod vix poteramus equitare. In tota siquidem illa quadragesima fuerat cibus noster nullum cum aqua & sale tantum, & in alijs similiter diebus ieiuniorum. Nec habebamus aliquid ad bibendum præter niuem in caldario liquefactam. Ibanus autem per Comaniam equitando fortissimè, quoniam habebamus equos recentes quinquies aut pluries in die, nisi quando per deserta ibamus, & tunc equos meliores atque fortiores, qui possent continuum sustinere laborem, accipiebamus. Et hoc ab incunte quadragesima vsque ad octo dies post Pascha. Hæc terra Comania ab Aquilone immediate post Russiam habet Morduynos, Byleros, id est, magnam Bulgariam, Bastarcos, id est, magnam Græciam & Constantinopolin, ac terram Iberorum, Cathos, Brutachios, qui dicuntur esse Iudæi, caput radentes per totam terram quoq; Cithorum atque Georgianorum & Armeniorum & Turcorum. Ab occidente autem Hungariam habet atque Russiam. Et est Comania terra maxima & longa. Cuius populos, scilicet Comanos, Tartari occiderunt, quidam tamen à facie eorum fugerunt, & quidam in eorum seruitutem redacti sunt. Plurimi autem ex eis, qui fugerunt, ad ipsos redierunt. Post hæc intrauimus terram Kangittarum, quæ magnam habet in plurimis locis penuriam aquarum, in qua etiam homines pauci morantur propter aquæ defectum. Vnde homines Ieroslai, Ducis Russiz, cum ad ipsum in terram Tartarorum perrexerunt, plures eorum in illo deserto præ sui mortui sunt. In hac etiam terra & in Comania multa inuenimus capita & ossa mortuorum hominum, super terram iacentia tanquam sterquilinum. Per hanc itaq; terram iuimus ab octo diebus post Pascha ferè vsque ad Ascensionem Dominicam. Huiusq; habitatores Pagani erant, & tam ipsi quam Comani non laborabant, sed tantum de animalibus vivebant, nec domos ædificabant, sed in tabernaculis habitabant. Istos etiam Tartari deleuerunt, & habitabant in terris eorum, illiq; qui remanserunt, redacti sunt in seruitutem ipsorum.

Qualiter

incipis, prius facta
relli autem flexis
arentur interpre-
nobis, & eas in
Hæc interpre-
stram stationem
illij in vna scutel-
iens ostiarios &
throno cum vna
sedent in medio
& feminæ & si-
erunt Hungaria
arum, quantum
tiam dicta causa
do ab Impera-
stationis, super
vel aliquis Tar-
etur. Et cum e-
faciunt cuncti
est hominibus
et multum & a-

rum

curator Bathy
orum iremus,
inum Papam,
eum redissent
m. Nos autem
ui nobis apud
d mortem vel
are. In tota fi-
& in alijs simi-
aldario lique-
us equos res
meliores at-
ineunte qua-
mediate post
st, magnam
euntur habe-
es, Gazaros,
untur esse Lu-
Armeniorum
omania terra
tamen à fa-
xeis, qui su-
am habet in
a quæ defe-
perrexerunt,
multa inue-
linum. Per
Dominicam.
tantum de
Istos etiam
sunt in ser-

Qualiter

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

Qualiter ad primam Imperatoris futuri curiam deueniunt. Cap.24.

46

Porro de terra Kangittarum intrauimus terram Biserminorum, qui loquuntur lingua Co-
manica, sed legem tenent Sarracenorum. In hac etiam terra inuenimus vrbes innumeras
cum castris dirutas, villasq; multas desertas. Huius Dominus dicebatur Alrifoldanus, qui cum
tota sua progenie à Tartars est destructus. Habet autem hæc terra montes maximos. Et à me-
ridie quidem habet Hierusalem & Baldach, totamq; Sarracenorum terram. Atque in finibus
illis propinquis morantur duo fratres carnales, Tartarorum Duces, scilicet Burin & Cadan, filij
Thiaday, qui fuit filius Chngischam. Ab Aquilone verò terram habet nigrorum Ky-
thaorum & Oceanum. In illa verò moratur Syban, frater Bathy. Per hanc iuimus à festo
Ascensionis dominicæ ferè vique ad viij. dies ante festum sancti Iohan. Baptiste, Deinde ingressi
sumus terram nigrorum Kythaorum, in qua Imperator ædificauit domum, vbi etiam vocati
suimus ad bibendum. Et ille, qui erat ibidem ex parte imperatoris, fecit maiores ciuitatis, & eti-
am duos filios eius, plaudere coram nobis. Hinc exeuntes, quoddam mare paruum inuenimus,
in cuius litore quidam exstitit mons paruus. In quo scilicet monte quoddam foramen esse dici-
tur, vnde in hyeme tam maxime tempestates ventorum exeunt, quod homines inde vix & cum
magno periculo transire possunt. In æstate verò semper quidem ibi ventorum sonitus auditur,
sed de foramine tenuiter egreditur. Per huius maris littora plurimis diebus perreximus,
quod quidem licet non multum sit magnum, plures insulas habet, & illud in sinistris dimisi-
mus. In terra verò illa habitat Ordu, quem omnium Ducum Tartarorum antiquiorem dixi-
mus, & est orda, siue curia patris ipsius, quam inhabitat, & regis vna de vxoribus eius. Con-
suetudo enim est apud Tartaros, quod principum & maiorum curiæ non delectur, sed semper
ordinantur aliquæ mulieres, quæ illas regant, eisq; donatorum partes, sicut Dominis ea-
rum dari solebant, dantur. Sic tandem ad primam Imperatoris curiam venimus, in qua erat y-

Terra Bisermino-
rum.

Alrifoldanus.

Montes maximi,

Burin,

Cadan,

Ocerus ab

Aquilone.

Syban, frater

Bathy.

Nigri Cethayni

Mare paruum.

Plurimis diebus,

Plures insulæ.

Ordu, cap. 25.

Prima curia Im-
peratoris.

Qualiter ad ipsum Cuyne, Imperatorem futurum perueniunt. Cap.25.

At verò quia nondum Imperatorem videramus, noluerunt vocare nos, nec intromittere
ad Ordam ipsius, sed nobis in tentorio nostro secundum morem Tartarorum valde bene
serui fecerunt, & vt quiesceremus, nos ibidem per vnam diem tenuerunt. Inde procedentes in
vigilia sanctorum Petri & Pauli, terram Naymanorum intrauimus, qui sunt Pagani. In ipsa ve-
rò die Apostolorum ibidem cecidit magna nix, & habuimus magnum frigus. Hæc quidem ter-
ra montuosa & frigida est supra modum, ibiq; de planicie reperitur modicum. Illæ quoque
duz nationes prædictæ non laborabant, sed sicut & Tartari in tentorijs habitabant, quas &
ipsi deleuerant. per hanc etiam multis diebus perreximus, quæ & Tartari in tentorijs habitabant, quas &
ulimus, quos Tartaros appellamus. Per has itaque terras, vt credimus, tribus septimanis equi-
tando fortiter iuimus, & in die Beate Mariæ Magdalene ad Cuyne Imperatorem electum per-
uenimus. Idè autem per omnem viam istam valde festinauimus, quia præceptum erat Tar-
taris nostris, vt citò nos deducerent ad curiam solennem, iam ex annis pluribus indictam, prop-
ter ipsius Imperatoris electionem. Idcirco de mane surgentes, ibamus vsque ad noctem sine
comettione, & sapius tam tardè veniebamus, quod non comedebamus in sero, sed quod
manducare debebamus in vespere, dabatur nobis in mane. Mutatisq; frequentius equis,
nullatenus præcebat eis, sed equitabamus velociter ac sine intermissione, quantum pote-
ratur equi trahere.

Terra Nayma-
norum,

Tartaria.

Iulij 22.

Accederent id-
eorum loc.

Cuyne in legatos
beaguias,

Tentorium
regium.

Qualiter Cuyne Fratres Miores suscepit. Cap.26.

Cum autem peruenimus ad Cuyne, fecit nobis dari tentorium & expensas, quales Tarta-
ris dare solent, nobis tamen melius quam alijs nuncijs faciebant. Ad ipsum autem vocati
non fuimus, eo quod nondum electus erat, nec adhuc de imperio se intromittebat. Interpre-
tatio tamen literarum Domini Papæ, ac verba etiam à nobis dicta, à prædicto Baty erant ei
mandata. Cum ergo stetitsemus ibi per quinque vel sex dies, ad matrem suam nostram transiit, y-
bi adunabatur curia solennis. Et cum venissemus illuc, tam extensum erat tentorium magnum,
de aib; purpura præparatum, eratq; tam grande nostro iudicio, quod pluskam duo millia ho-
minum poterant esse sub illo. Et in circuitu factum erat ligneum tabulatum varijs imaginibus
depictum, illuc ergo perreximus cum Tartaris, nobis ad custodiam assignatis, ibiq; conuenerant
omnes

Comitia.

omnes duces, & vniuersi quique cum hominibus suis equitabat in circueu per planiciem & colles. In prima die vestiti sunt omnes purpura albis, in secunda vero rubeis. Et tunc venit Cuyne ad tentorium illud. Porro tertia die fuerunt omnes in blauis purpura, & quarta in optimis Baldakinis. In illo autem tabulato iuxta tentorium erant duae maiores portae, per quarum vnā solus Imperator debebat intrare, & ad illam nulla erat custodia, quamvis esset aperta, quia per illam nullus audebat ingredi vel exire: per aliam omnes, qui adintraebant, intrabant, & ad illam custodes cum gladijs & arcibus & sagittis erant. Itaque si quis tentorio propinquabat ultra terminos, qui positi erant, si capiebat, verberabatur, si fugiebat, sagitta siue ferro sagittabatur. Multiq; ibi erant, qui in frons, pectoralis, sellis & humis modis iudicio nostro, auti circiter viginti marcas habebant. Sic Duces infra tentorium colloquebantur, & de Imperatoris electione tractabant, ut à nobis creditur. Alius autem vniuersus populus longè extra tabulatum collocabatur, & ita ferè vsque ad meridiem morabantur. Tunc incipiebant lac iumentinum bibere, & vsque ad vespas tantum bibebant, quod erat visu mirabile. Nos autem vocauerunt interius, & dederunt nobis cereuisiam: quia iumentinum lac non bibebamus. Et hoc quidem nobis pro magno fecerunt honore: sed tamen nos compellebant ad bibendum, quod nullatenus poteramus propter consuetudinem sustinere. Vnde ostendimus eis, hoc esse nobis graue, idcirco nos cellauerunt compellere. Foris autem erat Dux Ieroslaus de Susdal Russiæ, pluresq; Duces Kytharum & Solangorum. Duo quoq; filij regis Georgij, vnus etiam Caliphi de Baldach, qui erat Soldanus, & plus quam decem alij Soldani harraccorum, ut credimus. Et sicut nobis à procuratoribus dicebatur, erant ibi nuntiorum plus quam quatuor millia, inter illos, qui tributa portabant, & illos, qui deferabant munera, & Soldanos ac Duces alios, qui ad tradendum seipsos veniebant, & illos, pro quibus ipsi miserant, illosq; qui terrarum praefecti erant. Hi omnes simul extra tabularum ponebantur, eisq; simul bibere praebatur. Nobis autem & Duci Ieroslao terè semper ab eis dabatur superior locus, quando cum eis eramus exterius.

Symposium proceum.

Ieroslaus Dux Russiæ. Legati diuersarum nationum.

Qualiter in imperium sublimatus fuit. Cap. 27.

Imperij Cuyne psumit.

ET quidem, si benè meminimus, ibidem per septimanas circiter quatuor fuimus. Credi-
musq; quod ibi fuit electio celebrata, non tamen ibidem fuit publicata. Propter hoc autem
id maxime credebatur, quia semper, quando Cuyne tentorio exibat, eadem cantabatur, & cum
virgis speciosis, in summitate lanam coccineam habentibus, inclinabatur, quod alteri Ducum
nulli fiebat, quousq; exterius morabatur. Hec autem statio siue Curia nominatur ab eis Syra
orda. Hinc exeuntes, vniuersim omnes equitauimus per tres aut quatuor leucas ad alium lo-
cum, vbi erat in quadā pulchra planicie iuxta inter montes aliud tentorium, quod apud
ipsum appellatur Orda aurea, præparatū. Ibi enim Cuyne debebat poni in sede in die Assumpti-
onis Domine nostræ. Sed propter grandinem omniam, quæ tunc, ut supra dictum est, cecidit,
res dilata fuit. Eratq; tentorium in columnis positum, quæ laminis aureis erant tectæ, & clauis
aureis cum alijs lignis fixæ. Porro de Baldakino erat tectum superius, sed alij erant panni exte-
rius. Fuimus autem ibi vsq; ad festum Beati Bartholomæi, in quo maxima multitudo conue-
nit, & contra meridiem versis vultibus stetit. Et quidam adiacentium lapidis longè à cæteris erant,
semperq; orationes faciendo, ac genua flectendo, contra meridiem longius, & longius proce-
debant. Nos autem vtrum incantationes facerent, aut genua Deo vel alteri flecterent, nesci-
entes, nolebamus facere genu flexiones. Cumq; diu ita fecissent, ad tentorium reuersi sunt, &
Cuyne in sede imperiali posuerunt, Ducelq; coram eo genua flexerunt. Post hoc idem fecit v-
niuersus populus, exceptis nobis, quæ eis subditi non eramus.

Syra orda.

Aurea orda.

Augulli 15.

Preces solennes.

De etate ac moribus ac sigillo ipsius. Cap. 28.

Cuyne etas & mores.

Hic autem Imperator quando sublimatus est in regnum, videbatur esse circiter xl. vel. xlv.
annorum. Mediocris erat statura, prudens valde, nimis astutus multumq; seriolus, & gra-
uis in moribus. Nec vnquam videbat eum homo de facili ridere, vel aliquam leuitatem facere,
sicut dicebant Christiani, qui cum ipso morabantur conuulsi. Dicebant etiam nobis asse-
rendo finitè Christiani, qui erant de familia eius, quod deberet fieri Christianus. Cuius
signum erat, quod ipse Clericos Christianos tenebat, & expensas eis dabat. Habebat etiam sem-
per capellam Christianorum ante maius tentorium suum, vbi cantant Clerici publice & aper-
te, ac pulsant ad horas, ut ceteri Christiani secundum mores Gregorum, quantū anq; sit ibi multi-
tudo Tartarorum, vel etiam aliorum hominum. Hoc tamen non faciunt a. Duo ipsorum.
Est autem mos Imperatoris ipsius, ut nunquam ore proprio loquatur cum extraneo, quan-
tumcumq;

Studium Christi-
anum.

Maestas.

Th

tume
gotiu
q; lin
luper
Imper
gotijs
secun
ad illo
solemn
oranib
contra
ea, qu
licet vt
& idcir
coday,
eorum,
mandat
Impera
per terra
† Con
stans
is ci
optu

IN loco
gay pro
langorum
rate, Qu
mus limen
uenissent,
audet intra
rem non in
tionem, vi
cepti sunt,
erunt ei pe
kims ac cin
Quoddam
praesentatur
uincit addi
mentis quib
mulos addu
ferro. Nos e
niam omnia
positi currus
Cunctiq; int
res suas, vti

De

Idcirco
Aquit Kitay
nibus nobis d
edendum. E
n erat positu
benè memini

ficiem & colles,
venit Cuyne
in optinis Bal-
narum vnam so-
perata, quia per-
rabant, & ad il-
inquabat vltra
ferro sagittaba-
ostro, auri circi-
imperatoris ele-
extra tabularum
umentinum bi-
em vocauerunt
hoc quidem no-
quod nullatenus
is graue, ideo-
, pluresq; Du-
Caliphi de Bal-
dimus. Et sicut
, inter illos, qui
qui ad traden-
um praefecti e-
batur, Nobis
um eis eramus

imus, Credi-
ter hoc autem
abatur, & cum
alteri Ducum
tur ab eis Syra-
as ad alium lo-
on, quod apud
die Assumpti-
onem, cecidit,
& clausi
panni exte-
ritudo conue-
ceteris erant,
ongius proce-
derent, nesci-
eueri sunt, &
idem fecit v-

er xl, vel. xlv.
riolus, & gra-
uitatem fac-
nobis affe-
Cuius
ae etiam sem-
lic & aperte,
sibi multi-
iporum.
am, quan-
tumcunq;

The Tartars: Traffiques, and Discoueries.

51

tuncunq; magnus sit, sed audit & respondet per interpositam personam, & quandocunq; ne-
gotium proponunt, vel Imperatoris responsione audiunt illi, qui sub eo sunt; quantumcun-
q; sine magni, flexis genibus vtiq; ad finem verborum persistunt. Nec alicui de consuetudine
Imperatoris praedictis procuratorem & protonotarios, atq; scriptores, omnesq; officiales in ne-
gocijs tam publicis quam priuatis, exceptis Aduocatis, Nani sine litium vel iudiciorum strepitu
super aliquo negotio loquilitum est, postquam ab Imperatore definitum est. Habet autem
ad illos pertinent, idem faciunt. Hoc autem nouerunt vniuersi, quia nobis tunc existentibus in
solenni curia, iam ex pluribus annis indicta, idem Cuyne Imperator, de nouo electus, cum
omnibus suis Principibus erexit vexillum contra Ecclesiam Dei, ac Romanum Imperium, &
contra omnia regna Christianorum & populos Occidentis, nisi fortasse, quod absit, facerent
ea, quae mandabat Domino Papae, atque potentibus, & omnibus Christianorum populis, vide-
licet ut ipsi subdantur eis. Nam excepta Christianitate, nulla est terra in orbe, quam timeant,
& idcirco contra nos ad pugnam se praeparant. Huius siquidem Imperatoris pater, scilicet Oc-
coday, necatus fuerat veneno, & ob hoc à bellis quieuerant tempore pauco, Intentio autem
eorum, ut dictum est supra, est, sibi totum subijcere mundum, sicut à Chingischam habent
mandatum. Vnde & ipse Imperator in literis suis ita scribit: Dei fortitudo, omnium hominum
Imperator. In superscriptione quoque sigilli eius est hoc: Deus in caelo, & Cuyne Cham su-
per terram, Dei fortitudo omnium hominum Imperatoris sigillum.

Potestas cales.

Bellum in Chri-
stianos cogita-
tum.

† Contra Xenophon: dignum ieronymum. Et praclare Aristoteles Politicib. 3. cap. 12. in hanc senten-
tiam: Qui legem praesse vult, is velle videtur Deum ac leges imperare: qui autem vult hominem,
is etiam bellum adiungit, cum praesertim tale quid sit cupiditas & iracundia: & magistratus &
optimus quisq; à recta via detorqueantur &c. Adde quae à Chrysippro adducuntur ff. li. 1. tit. 3. l. 2.

De admissione Fratrum & nunciorum ad Impera- torem. Cap. 29.

In loco illo, vbi positus est Imperator in throno, vocati fuimus coram ipso. Cumq; Chin-
langorum & aliorum, clamauit alta voce, recitans illa coram Imperatore & Ducum vniuersi-
tate, Quo facto, flexit vniuersiq; nostrum quater genu sinistrum, & monuerunt, ne tangere-
mus limen deorum. Cumq; pro cellulis nos diligentissime scrutati fuissent, & nullatenus in-
uenissent, intrauimus ostium ab Orientali parte: quia nullus ab Occidente, nisi solus imperator,
audet intrare. Similiter & Dux ab illa parte ingreditur solus, si est tentorium eius, Minores au-
tem non multum curant de talibus. Tunc ergo primum in eius praetentia suam intrauimus sta-
tionem, videlicet postquam factus est Imperator ibidem, Omnes quoque nuncij tunc ab eo re-
ceperunt ei praesentata, quod quasi videbantur infinita, videlicet in samitis ac purpureis & baldaki-
nis ac cingulis sericis cum auro praeparatis, pellibus etiam nobilibus, ceterisq; muneribus.
Quoddam etiam Solinum, siue tentoriolum, quod super caput Imperatoris portatur, fuit eidem
praesentatum, quod totum erat cum gemmis praeparatum. Quidam verò praefectus vnius pro-
uinciae adduxit ei Camelos multos cum Baldakinis testos. Similiter sella postea cum instru-
mentis quibusdam erant, in quibus homines interius sedere valebant. Equos etiam multos &
mulos adducebant eidem phaleratos & armatos quosdam quidem de corio, & quosdam de
ferro. Nos etiam requisiti fuimus, an ei munera vellemus: sed iam facultas non erat, quo-
positi curtus plusquam quingenti, qui omnes auro & argento ac sericis vestibus erant pleni.
Cumq; inter imperatorem & Duces diuisi fuerunt, singuliq; Duces inter homines suos par-
tes suas, vti eis placuit, diuiserunt.

Cuyne audit le-
gatos.

Munera eidem
oblata.

Curus & nauis.
quasi.

De loco diuisionis Imperatoris & matris suae, & morte Ierosolai, Ducis Russiae.

Idcirco recedentes, venimus ad alium locum, vbi tentorium mirabile, totum de purpura rufa,
Iquod Kitay dederant, erat positum. Illic interius introducti fuimus, & semper cum intraba-
mus nobis dabatur ad bibendum cereuisia vel vinum, & etiam carnes coctae, si volebamus, ad-
edendum. Eratque solariolum vnum, de tabulis altè praeparatum, vbi thronus Imperato-
ris erat positus, ex ebo re mirabiliter sculptus, in quo etiam erat aurum, & lapides preciosi, si-
benè meminimus, & illuc ascendebatur per gradus. Eratque rotundum superius, Banci
verò

Tentorium post
pureum.

Solium ebor-
nem.

vero erant positi in circulo sedis, ubi dominæ sedebant à parte sinistra in scamnis, à dexteris autem nemo sedebat superius, sed Duces sedebant in Bancis inferioribus, & hoc in medio. Alij verò sedebant post eos, & quolibet die veniebat dominorum maxima multitudo. Ista verò tria tentoria, de quibus suprà diximus, erant valde magna, aliq; habebant vxores eius de filtro albo satis magna & pulchra. Ibidem Imperator diuisus est à matre sua, quæ iuit in vnam terræ partem, & Imperator in aliam ad iudicia faciendā. Capta siquidem erat amica Imperatoris istius, quæ veneno interfecerat patrem eius, eo tempore, quo exercitus eorum in Hungaria fuit, Propter quod etiam exercitus eorum, qui erat in partibus illis, recessit. De qua cum alijs pluribus factum fuit iudicium, & occisi fuerunt. Eodem tempore mortuus fuit Ieroslaus, Dux magnus Soldai, quæ est quidam Russiæ pars. Vocatus enim ad matrem Imperatoris quasi pro honore, vt manducaret ac biberet de manu ipsius, in continenti ad hospitium est reuersus, infirmatusq; mortuus est post septem dies, totumque corpus eius miro modo glaucum effectum est, dicebaturq; ab omnibus, quod ibidem, vt terram eius liberè ac plenariè possiderent, fuisset iupotionarius.

Nex Otcoday,
vinificata,
Ieroslaus Dux
Russiæ.

Qualiter tandem Fratres ad Imperatorem accedentes, litteras dederunt & acceperunt. Cap. 31.

Cuvne cum lega-
tis dissimulante
agit.

Cosmas Russiæ.

Chingay inter-
nuncius.

Prudenti delibe-
ratione.

DENIQ; Tartari nostri nos ad Imperatorem duxerunt: qui cum audisset per illos, nos ad eum venisse, iussit nos ad matrem redire. Volebat enim secundo die, sicut superius dictum est, contra totam Occidentis terram vexillum erigere, quod nos volebat ignorare. Itaque reuersi stetimus paucis diebus, & iterum ad ipsum reuersi sumus. Cum quo benè per mensem fuimus in tanta fame ac siti, quòd via viuere poteramus. Nam expensæ, quæ nobis pro diebus quatuor dabantur, vix vni sufficiebant. Nec inuenire poteramus aliquid ad emendum, quia forum erat nimis remotum. Sed Dominus nobis quendam Ruthenum, nomine Cosmam, aurifabrum præparauit, qui satis dilectus Imperatori, nos in aliquo sustentauit. Et hic nobis ostendit thronum Imperatoris, quem ipse fecerat, antequam poneretur in sede, & sigillum eiusdem, quod etiam fabricauerat ipse. Post hoc Imperator pro nobis misit, nobisq; per Chingay protonotarium suum dici fecit, vt verba nostra & negotia scriberemus, eiq; porrigeremus. Quod & fecimus. Post plures dies nos iterum vocari fecit, & visum esse apud Dominum Papam, qui Ruthenorum vel Sarracenorum, aut etiam Tartarorum litteram intelligerent, interrogauit. Cui respondimus, quòd nullam istarum litterarum habebamus. Sarraceni tamen erant in terra, sed remoti erant à Domino Papa. Diximus tamen, quia nobis expedire videbatur, quòd in Tartarico scriberent, & nobis interpretarentur, nos autem in littera nostra diligenter scriberemus, & tam litteram quàm interpretationem ad Dominum Papam deferremus. Tunc à nobis recesserunt, & ad Imperatorem iuerunt. Porro à die Beati Martini fuimus vocati. Tunc Kadac, totius imperij procurator, & Chingay & Bala, pluresq; scriptores ad nos venerunt, nobisq; litteram de verbo ad verbum interpretati fuerunt. Et cum in Latina littera scripsissemus, faciebant sibi per singulas orationes interpretari, volentes scire, si nos in aliquo verbo erraremus. Cum igitur ambæ litteræ fuissent scriptæ, fecerunt nos semel ac secundo legere, ne forte minus aliquid haberemus. Dixerunt enim nobis, videte, quòd omnia benè intelligatis, quia non expediret, quòd non omnia benè intelligeris. Litteras etiam in Sarracenicis scripserunt, vt aliquis in partibus nostris inueniri posset, qui eas, si opus esset, legeret.

Qualiter licentiati fuerunt. Cap. 32.

Legati abhorrent
à Tartarorum ad
Christianos lega-
tione.

VT autem nobis Tartari nostri dixerunt, proposuit Imperator nuncios suos nobiscum mittere. Volebat tamen, vt credimus, quòd nos id ab eo peteremus. Sed cum vnus de Tartaris nostris, qui senior erat, nos ad hoc petendum hortaretur, nobis quidem, vt venirent, nequaquam bonum videbatur. Ideoq; respondimus ei, quòd non erat nostrum petere, sed si sponte ipse Imperator mitteret eos, libenter eos securè conduceremus. Domino adiuvante, Nobis autem ob plures causas vt venirent, non videbatur expedire. Prima quidem fuit, quia timuimus, ne visis disentionibus aut guerris, quæ sunt inter nos, magis animarentur ad veniendum contra nos. Secunda fuit, timebamus eos exploratores terræ fieri. Tertia verò, quia timebamus eos interfici. Gentes enim nostræ arrogantes sunt & superbæ. Vnde quando seruiantes, qui stant nobiscum, ex rogatu Cardinalis, legati scilicet Alemanniæ, in habitu Tartarico ibant ad ipsum, in via ferè lapidati sunt à Teutonice, & coacti sunt deponere habitum illum. Consuetudo autem est Tartarorum, vt cum illis, qui nuncios eorum occiderint, nunquam faciant pacem, nisi sumant de ipsis vitionem. Quarta etiā causa fuit, quia timebamus ne nobis auferrentur vi.

Quinta

accompanying to
er Minorite,
And at that
Plano Carpi
scrib) abode an
Benedicta Pa
ectures straight
out all things
tem a little pish

nis, à dextris au-
medio. Alij verò
sta verò tria ten-
de de filtro albo
vnam tetrapar-
uperatoris istius,
garia fuit. Prop-
n alijs pluribus
Dux magnus
asipro honore,
us, infirmatusq;
fectum est, di-
derent, fuisse

ntes,

illos, nos ad e-
uperids dictum
Itaque reuer-
r menssem fui-
ro diebus qua-
dum, quia so-
Cosmam, auri-
Et hic nobis o-
figillum eius-
per Chingay
porrigeremus,
Dominum Pa-
rigerent, inter-
tamen erant
ire videbatur,
stra diligenter
remus, Tunc à
voati, Tunc
enerunt, no-
scripsissimus,
verbo errare-
gere, ne forte
ligatis, quia
scriperunt, vt

obificum mit-
nus de Tarta-
rent, nequa-
sed si sponte
re, Nobis au-
a timuimus,
endum con-
mebamus e-
res, qui stant
ibant ad ip-
Consequen-
tiam pacem,
ferentur vi.
Quinta

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

53

Quinta verò causa erat, quia de aduentu eorum nulla foret veftigia, cum nullum haberent aliud mandatum vel potestatem, nisi quod literas Imperatoris ad Dominum Papam & ad Principes deferrent, quas videlicet literas ipsi nos habebamus, & malum ex eorum aduentu posse con-tingere credebamus. Itaq; tertia die post hoc, scilicet in festo beati Briceij nobis dederunt li- centiam & licentiam, Imperatoris sigillo munitam, mittentes nos ad ipsum Imperatoris matrem, quæ vnicuiq; nostrum dedit pellicum vnum de pelibus vulpinis, quod habebat pilos de so- ris, & purpuram vnâ, De quibus Tartari nostri furati sunt ex vnaquaq; vnum passum. De illa rauimus, sed inde verba mouere nolimus.

Novemb. 11.
Honoratus ed-
mentu & lauti,

Qualiter ab illo itinere redierunt. Cap. 33.

Tunc iter ad reuertendum arripuimus, ac per totam hyemem venimus, iscentes in deser- tis lapidis in niue, nisi quantum poteramus nobis cum pede locum facere. Ibi quippe non erant arbores, sed planus campus. Et sæpe mand nos inueniebamus totos niue, quam ventus pellebat, coopertos. Sic venientes vsq; ad Ascensionem Domini peruenimus ad Barhy. A quo eum inquireremus, quid responderet Domino Papæ, dixit se nolle aliud, nisi quod Imperator diligenter scripserat, demandare. Datq; nobis de conductu literis, ab eo recessimus, & sabba- tho infra octauas Pentecostes vsq; ad Montij peruenimus, vbi erant socij nostri, ac seruientes, qui fuerant retenti, quos ad nos fecimus reduci. Hinc vsq; Corrensam peruenimus, cui iterum à nobis donaria petenti non dedimus, quia non habebamus. Deditq; nobis duos Comanos, qui erant ex Tartarorum plebe, vsque ad Kiouiam Russiæ. Tartarus tamen noster non dimisit nos, donec exiremus vltimam Tartarorum custodiam. Isti verò alij, qui nobis à Corrensa dati sunt, in sex diebus ab vltima custodia vsq; ad Kiouiam nos duxerunt. Venimus autem illic an- te festum Beati Iohannis Baptistæ xv. diebus. Porro Kiouienfes aduentum nostrum percipien- tes, occurrerunt nobis omnes lætantes. Congratulabantur enim nobis, tanquam à morte sus- citati. Sic fecerunt nobis per totam Russiam, Poloniam & Bohemiam, Daniel & Vasilko fra- ter eius festum nobis magnum fecerunt, & nos contra voluntatem nostram beue per octo dies tenuerunt. Medioq; tempore inter se & cum Episcopis, cæterisq; probis viris, super his, quæ lo- cuti fueramus eisdem, in processu nostro ad Tartaros consilium habentes, responderunt nobis communiter, dicentes: quod Dominum Papam habere vellent in speciale Dominum, & in patrem, sanctam quoq; Romanam Ecclesiam in dominam & magistram, confirmantes etiam omnia, quæ prius de hac materia per Abbatem suum transmiserant. Et super hoc etiam nobis- cum ad Dominum Papam nuncios suos & literas transmiserunt.

Difficilis legat-
rum reditus.

Barhy.

Correns.

Iunij 8.
Gratulationes re-
duci bus facta.
Basilius & Daniel
Principes.

Russii agnoscunt
primatum Papæ.

The voyage of Iohannes de Plano Carpini vnto the Northeast parts of the world, in the yeere of our Lord, 1246.

Of the first sending of certaine Friers Prædicants and Minorites vnto the Tartars, taken out of the 32. Booke of Vincentius Beluacensis by Speculum Historiale: beginning at the second Chapter.



Thus this time also, Pope Innocentius the fourth sent a Friar Ascelline be- ing one of the order of the Prædicants, together with thre other Friers (of the same anthopole whereunto they were called) consorted with him out of diuers Couens of their order, with letters Apostolicall vnto the Tartar campe: wherein hee exhorted them to giue ouer their bloudie slaughter of mankind, and to receiue the Christian faith. And so, in verie deede, re- ceived the relations concerning the deedes of the Tartars anelle, (which, according to the congruence of times, I haue aboue inserted into this my woork) from a Fri- er Minorite, called Simon de Sauct. Quincin, who lately returned from the same voyage. And at that verie time also, there was a certaine other Friar Minorite, namely Friar Iohn de Plano Carpini, sente with certaine associates vnto the Tartars, who likewise (as himselfe witness- eth) aboue and conuersed with them a peere and thre moneths at the last. As both he & Ier- benedict a Polonian being of the same order, and a partaker of all his miserie and tribulation, re- ceived straighe commaundement from the Pope, that both of them shoulde diligently searche out all things that concerned the state of the Tartars. And therefore this Friar Iohn hath writ- ten a litle Historye (which is come to our hands) of such things, as with his owne eyes hee sawe among

Ascellinum.

Simon Quin-
tinus,
Iohn de plano
Carpini.

Benedictus
Polonus.

among the Tartars, of which he heard from diuers Christians worthy of credit, remaining there in captiuitie. Out of which historie I thought good by way of conclusion, to insert some what to the supply of those things which are wanting in the said *Frise Simon*.

Of the situation and qualitie of the Tartars land, By

Iohannes de Plano Carpini. Chap. 3.

A description
of Tartaria.

The North
Ocean.

Syria Orda.

The intempe-
rate nature of the
aire.

What Orda sig-
nifieth.

There is towards the East a land which is called Mongal of Tartaria, lying in that part of the world which is thought to be most North Easterly. On the East part it hath the countrey of Kythay and of the people called Solangi: on the South part the countrey of the Saracens: on the South east the land of the Huini: and on the West the prouince of Narmani: but on the North side it is immaneth with the Ocean Sea. In some part thereof it is full of mountaines, and in other places plaine and smooth ground, but euery where scarce and barren, neither is the hundredth part thereof fruitefull, for it cannot beare fruite vntill it be moistened with river waters, which bee verie rare in that countrey. Whereby on they haue neither villages, nor cities among them, except one which is called Cracurin, and is said to be a proper towne. For our selues sawe not this towne, but were almost within halfe a dayes iourney thereof, when we remained at Syria Orda, which is the great court of their Emperour. And albeit the foresaid land is otherwise vnfertile, yet is it very commodious for the bringing up of cattell. In certaine places thereof are some small stope of trees growing, but otherwise it is altogether destitute of woods. Therefore the Emperour, and his noble men and all other warlike themselves, and bestle their meate with fires made of the dung of oxen, and horses. The ayre also in that countrey is verie intemperate. For in the midst of Sommer there be great thunders and lightnings, by the which many men are slaine, and at the same time there falleth great abundance of snowe. There bee also such mightie tempestes of colde winde, that sometimes men are not able to stee on horsebacke. Whereupon, being neere vnto the Orda (for by this name they call the habitations of their Emperours and noble men) in regarde of the great winde we were constrained to lye groueling on the earth, and could not see by reason of the dust. There is neuer any raine in Winter, but onely in Sommer, albeit in so little quantitie, that sometimes it scarcely sufficeth to allay the dust, or to moisten the roots of the grasse. There is often times great stope of haile also. Insomuch that when the Emperour elect was to be placed in his Emperiall choyse (my selfe being then present) there fell such abundance of haile, that vpon the sudden melting thereof, more then 160. persons were dyed in the same place: there were manie tentes and other things also caried away. Likewise, in the Sommer season there is on the sudden extreame heate, and suddenly againe intollerable colde.

Of their forme, habite, and maner of liuing. Chap. 4.

The shape of
the Tartars.

Their habite.

Like vnto
Prothians men.

Their taber-
nacles.

Their cattell.

Their victuals.

The Mongals or Tartars, in outward shape, are vnlke to all other people. For they are broader betwene the eyes, and the ballen of their cheekes, then men of other nations bee. They haue flat and small noses, lile eyes, and eye liddes standing straight vpright, they are shaven on the crownes like plects. They weare their haire some what longer about their eares, then vpon their foreheades: but behinde they let it growe long like womans haire, whereof they braid two lockes binding eche of them behind either eare. They haue short feet also. The garments, as well of their men, as of their women are all of one fashion. They vse neither cloakes, hattes, nor cappes. But they weare Jackets framed after a strange manner, of buckram, shartel, or Balahines. Their shoules or gownes are happle on the outside, and open behinde, with cables hanging downe to their hammes. They vse not to washe their garments, neither will in any wise suffer them to bee washed, especially in the time of summer. Their habitations bee rounde and cunningly made with withers and staves in manner of a tent. But in the gooddest of the copenn thereof, they haue a window open to conuey the light in and the smoke out. For their fire is alwayes in the midst. Their wallen bee covered with felt. Their doores are made of felte also. Some of these Tabernacles may quickly be taken in hand, and set together againe, and are caried vpon beastes backs. Other some cannot be taken in hand, but are stowed vpon carts. And whithersoever they goe, be it either to warre, or to any other place, they reaspoie their tabernacles with them. They are very rich in cattell, in camels, oxen, sheep, and goats. And I thinke they haue more horses and mares then all the world besides. But they haue no hie nor other beastes. Their Emperors, Dukes, or other of their nobles doe abound with silk, gold, silver, and precious stones. Their victuals are all things that may be eaten: for we sawe some of them eat fere. They

namming there in
ome what to the

By

that part of the
with the countrey
Saracens: on
out on the 120th
rines, and in o-
neither is the
with river wa-
es, nor cities a-
Our felues
we remained at
is otherwise
aces thereof are
ps. Therefore
ie meate with
erie in tempe-
e which many
here bee also
ste on hope-
habitacions of
to the groue-
in Winter, but
to allay the heat.
o. In summe
eing then pre-
ape then 160.
ps also caried
and suddenly

b.4.

they are by 300-
nations ber.
they are the-
their eares, then
of they by side
garments, as
oakes, hattes,
ram, charler,
behinde, with
neither wall in
habitacions bee
in the goldst
the out. For
their woyses are
to see together
out are showed
they transpore
no good. And
no king nor o-
old, finer, and
them rather.
They

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

55

They drinke milke in great quantitie, but especially mares milke, if they haue it: They leech Mill
also in water, making it to chinne, that they may drinke thereof. Euery one of them drincks
out a cupfull, or two in a morning, and sometime they eate noughe else all the day long. But in the
euening each man hath a little flesh giuen him to eate, and they drinke the broth thereof. Howbeit
in summer time, when they haue mares milke enough, they seloome eate flesh, vnles perhaps it be
giuen them, or they take some beast or bird in hunting.

Of their manners both good and bad. Chap. 5.

Their manners are partly praple-worthy, and partly detestable: For they are moze obedient
vnto their lordes and masters, then any other either clergie or laye-people in the whole world.
For they doe highly reuerence them, and will dectue them, neither in wordes nor deedes. They
seloome neuer fall out among themselves, and, as for fightings or brawlings, wounds or murther-
slaughters, they neuer happen among them. There are neither theues nor robbers of great ri-
ches to be found, and therefore the tabernacles and cartes of them that haue any treasures are not
strengthened with lockes or barres. If any beast goe astray, the finder thereof either lets it goe,
or giueth it to them that are put in office for the same purpose, at whose handes the owner of the
beast demandeth it, and without any difficultie receiueth it againe. One of them honoureth
another exceedingly, and bestoweth banquetes very familiarly and liberally, notwithstanding that
good victuals are daintie and scarce among them. They are also very hardie, and when they haue
fallen a day or two without any manner of sustenance, they sing and are merry as if they had eaten
their bellies full. In riding, they endure much cold and extreme heat. There be, in a manner,
no contentions among them, and although they vse commonly to be drunken, yet doe they not quar-
rell in their drunkennes. Noe one of them despiseth another but helpeth and sustenteth him, as
much as conveniently he can. Their women are chaste, neither is there so much as a word uttered
concerning their dishonestie. Some of them will notwithstanding speake fleshy and immodest
words. But towards other people, the said Tartars be most insolent, and they scoyne and set noughe
by all other noble and ignoble persons whatsoeuer. For we saw in the Emperours court the
great duke of Russia, the kings sonne of Georgia, and many great Soldanes receiving no due ho-
mour and estimation among them. So that euen the very Tartars assigned to giue attendance vnto
them, were they neuer so base, would alwaies goe before them, and take the vpper hand of them,
yea, and sometimes would constrain them to sit behinde their backs. Whereouer they are angry
and of a disdainefull nature vnto other people, and beyond all measure detestfull, and treacherous
towards them. They speake scoyne in the beginning, but in conclusion, they sing like scorpions.
For craftie they are, and full of falshood, circumuening all men whom they are able, by their
fligthes. Whatsoeuer mischiefe they intend to practise against a man, they keepe it wonderfully
secrete, so that he may by no means prouide for himselfe, nor find a remedie against their conspira-
cies. They are vnnaturally also and vncleanly in taking their meate and their drinke, and in other
actions. Drunkennes is honourable among them, and when any of them hath taken moze drinke
then his stomacke can well beare, hee casteth it vp and faller to drincking againe. They are most
intollerable exacters, most covetous possessours, and most nigardly giuers. The slaughter of other
people is accounted a matter of nothing with them.

Their obedient

Their abill
stances.

Their courtes
de.

Their chastity.

Their insolent
tie against
strangers.

Of their lawes and customes. Chap. 6.

Moreouer, they haue this law of custome, that whatsoeuer man or woman be manifestly ca-
cation, they slay together with her maier. A virgin like wife that hath committed forni-
cation, shee slay together with her maier. Whatsoeuer be taken in robberie or theft, is put to death
without all pittie. Also, if any man disclose their secrets, especially in time of warre, he receiueth
an hundred blows on the backe with a bastinado, layd on by a call fellow. In like sort when any
inferiours offend in ought, they finde no fauour at their superiours handes, but are punished with
inferiours stripes. They are loyned in matrimony to all in generall, yea, euen to their neare kin-
sfolen excepte their mother, daughter and sister by the mothers side. For they vse to marrie their
sister by the fathers side onely, and also the wife of their father after his decease. The yonger bro-
ther also, or some other of his kinneyes, is bound to marrie the wife of his elder brother deceased.
For, at the time of our abode in the countrey, a certaine duke of Russia named Andreas, was accu-
sed before duke Basy for conuerying the Tartars hostes out of the land, and for selling them to o-
thers: and although it could not be proued, yet was he put to death. The yonger brother and the
wife of the party deceased hearing this, came & made their supplication vnto the soynamed duke,
that

Punishment
of adultery.

Of theft.

Of secrets
disclosed.

Lawes of ma-
trimony.

Andreas duke
of Russia.

that the dukedome of Russia might not be taken from them. But he commanded the youth to mar-
rie his deceased brothers wife, and the woman also to take him unto her husband, according to the
custome of the Tartars. She answered, that she had rather die, then so haynously transgress the
law. Howbeit, hee delivered her unto him, although they both refused as much as they could.
Wherefore carrying them to bed, they constrained the youth, lamenting and weeping, so lie downe
and commit incest with his brothers wife. To be shor, after the death of their husbands, the Tar-
tars wives use very seldom to marrie the second time, unless perhaps some man takes his bro-
thers wife of his stepmother in marriage. They make no difference betwene the sonne of their
wife and of their concubine, but the father gives what he pleaseth unto each one: For of late the
king of Georgia having two sonnes, one lawfully begotten called Melich; but the other David,
boyne in adulterie, at his death left part of his lande unto his base sonne. Whereupon Melich (un-
to whom the kingdome fell by right of his mother, because it was governed before time by wo-
men) went unto the Emperour of the Tartars, David also having taken his journey unto him.
Nowe both of them comming to the court and profferring large giftes, the sonne of the barke made
suite, that he might have iustice, & crying to the custome of the Tartars. Well, sentence passed a-
gainst Melich, that David being his elder brother, should have superiourtie over him, and should
quietly and peaceably possesse the portion of land granted unto him by his father. Whensoeuer a
Tartar hath many wives, each one of them hath her family and dwelling place by her selfe. And
sometime the Tartars eateth, drinketh and lieth with one, and sometime with another. One is
accompanied these among the rest, with whom hee is oftener conversant, then with the other. And
notwithstanding (as it hath bin said) they are many, yet do they seldom fall out among themselves.

Michich & David
two brothers.

Of their superstitious traditions. Chap. 7.

Michich & David
two brothers.

But by reason of certain traditions, which either they of their predecessors have devised, they ac-
count some things indifferent to be sailed. One is to thrust a knife into the fire, or any way to
touch the fire with a knife, or with their knife to take flesh out of the cauldron, or to brew with an har-
chet neare unto the fire. For they think by this means to take away the heat of the fire from the fire.
Another is to lean upon the whip, where with they beate their horses: for they ride not with spurs.
Also, to touch arrows with a whip, to take of kill young birds, to strike an horse with yaine of their
hivle, and to beate one home against another. Also, to put out milke, meate, or any kinde of
drinke upon the ground, or to make water within their tabernacles: which whosoever doth willing-
ly, he is slaine, but otherwise he must pay a great summe of money to the inhabitant to be purified.
Also likewise must cause the tabernacle with all things therein, to passe betwene two fires. Be-
fore it be on this wise purified, no man dare once enter into it, nor conueigh any thing therout. Be-
sides, if any man hath a myssell given him, which he is not able to swallow, and for that cause ca-
steth it out of his mouth, there is an hole made under his tabernacle, by which hee is drawn forth
and slaine without all compassion. Likewise, whosoever tread upon the thresholds of any of their
dukes tabernacles, he is put to death. Many other things there be, like unto these, which they take
for heinous offences. But to slay men, to invade the dominions of other people, and to rille their
goods, to transgress the commendements and prohibitions of God, are with them no offences at
all. They know nothing concerning eternall life, and everlasting damnation, and yet they thinke,
that after death they shall live in another world, that they shall multiply their cattell, that they shall
eat and drinke and doe other things which living men perforce here byen earth. At a new moone,
or a full moone, they begin all enterprises that they take in hand, and they call the moone the Great
Emperour, and worship it upon their knees. All men that abide in their tabernacles must be pu-
rified with fire: Which purification is on this wise, They kindle two fires, and pitch two foun-
tains into the ground neere unto the said fires, binding a rope to the tops of the fountains. And a-
bout the sides they tie certaine iaggas of buckram, under which rope, and betwene which fires,
men, beastes, and tabernacles do passe. There stand two women also, one on the right side, and an-
other on the left casting water, and repeating certaine charmes. If any man be slaine by lightning,
all that dwell in the same tabernacle with him must passe by fire in manner aforesaid. For the ta-
bernacles, beds, and carres, their feltes and garments, and whosoever such things they have, are
touched by no man, yet, and are abandoned by all men as things uncleane. And to bee shor, they
thinke that all things are to be purged by fire. Therefore, when any ambassadors, princes, or o-
ther personages whosoever come unto them, they and their giftes must passe betwene two fires
as he purified. And whosoever shall be purged by fire, hee must passe betwene two fires
or other mischiefe with them.

The Tartars
way they the
moone.

Their custome
of purifying.

Of

Against
armie, and
in the ar-
region, a
time also
withstand
such brags
beating by
les Huyri
overcame,
of writing
shed again
which he b
Afterward
and waging
their Empe
to want ne
gis Cham

Of the beginning of their empire or government. Chap. 7.

the pouch to make
according to the
ly transgress the
as they could.
ing to lie down
flames, the Tar-
an takes his horse
sonne of their
For of late the
the other David,
pon Melich (who
time by two
journey unto him,
the harlot made
sentence passed a-
him, and should
Whensoever a
per himself. And
mother. One is
the other. And
ung themselves.

The East countrie, whereof wee haue entreated, which is called Mongal, is reported to haue
that is the great Mongals. The second company was called Sumongal, that is, the Water-Mon-
gals, who called themselves Tatars of a certaine river running through their countrey named
Tartar. The third was called Merkat, and the fourth Merit. All these people had one and the
same person, active of body and language, albeit they were diuided by princes and prouinces. In
the prouince of Yeka Mongal, there was a certaine man called Chingis. This man became a
mighty hunter. For he learned to shale men, & to take them for a pray. He ranged into other coun-
tries taking as many captiues as he could, and ioining them unto himselfe. Also hee assured the
men of his owne countrey unto him, who followed him as their capitaine and ringleader to doe
mischief. Then began he to make warre vpon the Sumongals of Tatars, and slew their capi-
taine, and after many conflicts, subdued them unto himselfe, and brought them all into bondage.
Afterward he vied their helpe to fight against the Merkats, dwelling by the Tatars, whom also hee
vanquished in battell. Proceeding from thence, he sought against the Merites, and conquered
them also. The Naimani hearing that Chingis was thus exalted, greatly disdained theecar. For
they had a mighty & puissant Emperour, vnto whom all the foresaid nations payed tribute. Whose
sonnes, when he was dead, succeeded him in his Empire. Howbeit, being young and foolish, they
knew not how to gouerne the people, but were diuided, and fell at variance among themselves.
Now Chingis being exalted, as is aforesaid, they neuertheless inuaded the foynamed countreies,
put the inhabitants to the sword, and carried away their goods for a pray. Which Chingis ha-
uing intelligence of, gathered all his subjects together. The Naimani also, and the people called
Karakitay assembled and banded themselves at a certaine straight valley, where, after a battell
foughten they were vanquished by the Mongals. And being thus vanquished, they were, the grea-
ter part of them, slaine; and others, which could not escape, were carried into captiuitie. In the
land of the foresaid Karakitays, Occoday Cham, the sonne of Chingis Cham, after he was
created Emperour, built a certaine citie, which he called Chanyl. Neare vnto which citie, on the
South side, there is an huge desert, wherein wilde men are certainly reported to inhabit, which
cannot speake at all, and are destitute of ioynts in their legges, so that if they fall, they cannot rise
alone by themselves. Howbeit, they are of discretion to make seltes of Camels haire, where with
they clothe themselves, and which they vse against the wind. And if at any time, the Tatars
pursuing them, chance to wound them with their arrowes, they put herbes into their wounds, and
slee strongly before them.

The people of
Tartaria.The original
of the exploits
of Chingis.

The Naimani.

The discourse of
byethren.

Occoday Cham,

Of the mutuall victories betweene them, and the
people of Kythay. Chap. 9.

Against the * Kythayans: Which their Emperour hearing, set forth against them with his
armie, and they fought a cruell battell, wherein the Mongals were overcome, and all their nobles
in the armie, except seuen, were slaine. And for this cause, when they, purposing to invade one
region, are threatened by the inhabitants thereof to be slaine, they doe, to this day, and were: in old
time also our whole number besides being slaine, we remayned but seuen of vs aliv, and yet not
withstanding we are now grown vnto a great multitude, thinke not therefore to daunt vs with
such braggs. But Chingis and the rest that remained aliv, fled home into their countrey: And
having breathed him a litle, he prepared himselfe to warre, and went forth against the people cal-
led Huyris: These men were Christians of the sect of Nestorius. And these also the Mongals
overcame, and receiued letters of leasing from them: for before that time they had not the arte
of writing, and now they call it the hand of letters of the Mongals. Immediately after, hee mar-
ched against the countrey of Saruyur, and of the Karanites, and against the land of Hudirai; all
which hee vanquished. Then returned he home into his owne countrey, and breathed himselfe.
Afterward, assembling his warlike troupes, they marched with one accord against the Kythayans,
and waging warre with them a long time, they conquered a great part of their land, and shut up
their Emperour into his greatest citie: which citie they had so long time besieged, that they began
to want necessary prouision for their armie. And when they had no victuals to feede vpon, Chin-
gis Cham commaunded his souldiers, that they should eate euery tenth man of the companie.
But

Huyris & Pa-
lus Venetus call
them * Cathay-
ans.New victories
betweene.

Shiluer cast at
the emperour in
stead of stones.

Chingis Cham
proclaimed
Emperour.

Part of Cas
thap in the sea.

The letters, &
the religion of
the Cathayans.

Their excellent
workmanship.

But they of the cite fought manfully against them, with engines, darts, and arrows, and when stones wanted they threw sluer, and especially melted sluer: for the same cite abounded with great riches. Also, when the Mongals had fought a long time and could not preuaile by warre, they made a great trench vnderneath the ground from the armie vnto the middell of the cite, and there issuing forth they fought against the citizens, and the remnant also without the walles fought in like manner. At last, breaking open the gates of the cite, they entered, and putting the Emperour, with many other to the swoyde, they tooke possession thereof and conuerged away the golde, sluer, and all the riches therein. And hauing appointed certaine deputies ouer the countrey, they returned home into their owne lande. This is the first time, when the Emperour of the Kychayans being vanquished, Chingis Cham obtained the Empire. But some parte of the countrey, because it lyeth within the sea, they could by no means conqueere vnto this day. The men of Kyray are Pagans, hauing a speciall kinde of writing by themselves, and (as it is reported) the Scriptures of the olde and newe Testament. They haue also recorde in hydropies the liues of their forefathers: and they haue Ceremones, and certaine houses made after the manner of our Churches, which in those dayes they greatly reioyced vnto. They say that they haue diuers Saines also, and they worship one God. They adoe and reuerence CHRIST IESVS our Loyde, and beleue the article of eternall life, but are not baptized. They doe also honourably extreme and reuerence our Scriptures. They loue Christians, and beflowe much almes, and are a very courteous and gentle people. They haue no beards, and they agree partly with the Mongals in the disposition of their countenance. In all occupations which men practise, there are not better artificers in the whole worlde. Their countrey is exceeding rich, in corne, wine, golde, silke, and other commodities.

Of their warre against India maior and minor. Chap. 10.

Thosius Can son
of Chingis.

India minor sub-
dued.

The stratagem
of the king of
India.

And when the Mongals with their emperour Chingis Cham had a while rested themselves, sonnes named Thosius (whom also they called Can, that is to say, Emperour) with an armie against the people of Comania, whom he vanquished with much warre, and afterward returned into his owne countrey. But he sent his other sonne with an armie against the Indians, who also subdued India minor. These Indians are the blacke Saracens, which are also called Ethiopians. But here the armie marched forward to fight against Christians dwelling in India maior. Which the King of that countrey bearing (who is commonly called Presbiter John) gathered his souldiers together, and came forth against them. And making mens images of copper, he set each of them vpon a saddle on horse backe, and put fire within them, and placed a man with a paire of bellows on the horse backe behind euerie image. And so with many horses and images in such sort furnished, they marched on to fight against the Mongals or Tartars. And coming neare vnto the place of the battell, they first of all sent those horses in order one after another. But the men that late behind saide I wore not what vpon the fire within the images, and blew strongly with their bellows. Whereupon it came to passe, that the men and the horses were burnt with wilde fire, and the ayre was darkened with smoake. Then the Indians cast darts vpon the Tartars, of whom many were wounded and slain. And so they expelled them out of their dominions with great confusion, neither did we heare, that euer they returned thither againe.

How being repelled by monstrous men shapen like dogs, they ouercame the people of Burithabeth. Chap. 11.

A strange rep-
port of certain
monstrous wo-
men and dogs.

But returning through the desert, they came into a certaine countrey, wherein (as it was reported vnto vs in the Emperours court, by certaine clergie men of Russia, and others, who were long time among them, and that by strong and steadfast affirmation) they found certaine monsters resembling women: who being asked by many interpreters, where the men of that land were, they answered, that whatsoeuer women were bozne there, were indued with the shapen of mankinde, but the males were like vnto dogges. And delaying the time, in that countrey they met with the said dogges on the other side of the riuier. And in the midd of sharpe winter, they cast themselves into the water: Afterward they wallowed in the dust vpon the maine land, and so the dust being mingled with water, was frozen to their backes, and hauing often times so done, the ice being strongly frozen vpon them, with great fury they came to fight against the Tartars. And when the Tartars spied their darts, or shot their arrows among them, they rebounded backe againe.

But as Chi-
became fam-
away the dung
hereupon Chin

lives, and when
abounded with
by warre,
of the citie,
without the
y entered, and
and con-
certaine depu-
all time, when
the Empire.
means con-
of wylking by
ment. They
remitted, and
they greatly re-
nov. They a-
eternall life,
cures. They
people. They
countenance.
whole wylke,
ies.

themselves
one of his
an armie a-
returned into
also subdued
pians. But
Which the
is soldiers
each of them
of bellows
of horse fur-
into the
he men that
y with their
wilde fire,
of whom
a great con-

ogs,

was rejoy-
who were
monsters
were, they
monstrous,
met with
cast them
so the dust
the sea be-
And when
he againe,

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

59

as if they had lighted upon stones. And the risk of their weapons coulde by no means hurt them. Howbeit, the Dogges made an assault upon the Tartars, and wounding some of them with their teeth, and slaying others, at length they dyaue them out of their countreies. And thereupon they haue a Prouerbe of the same matter, as yett rise among them, which they speake in telling soye one to another; My father or my brother was slaine of Dogges. The women which they tooke, they brought into their owne countrey, who remained there till their dying day. And in traueling homewards, the sayd armie of the Mongals came vnto the lande of Burichabeth (the inhabitants whereof are Pagans) and conquered the people in battell. These people haue a strange or rather a miserable kinde of custome. For when anie mans father deceaseth, he assemblith all his kindred, and they eat him. These men haue no beards at all, for we saw them carie a certaine iron instrument in their hands, wherewith, if any haire growe vpon their chinne, they perfectly plucke them out. They are also very despoined. From thence the Tartars armie returned to their owne home.

The region of Burichabeth.

The manners of the people.

How they had the repulse at the Caspian moun-
taynes, and were driuen backe by men
dwelling in caues. Chap. 12.

Mongouer Chingis Cham, at the same time when he sent other armies against the East, hee himselfe marched with a power into the lande of Kergis, which notwithstanding, he conquered not in that expedition, and as it was reported vnto vs, he went on forward euen to the Caspian mountaynes. But the mountaynes on that part where they encamped themselves, were of adamant, and therefore they dyed vnto them their arrows, and weapons of iron. And certaine men contained within those Caspian mountaynes, hearing, as it was thought, the noise of the armie, made a breach through, so that when the Tartars returned vnto the same place tenne peeres after, they found the mountaine broken. And attempting to goe vnto them, they could not: for there stood a cloud before them, beyond which they were not able to passe, being deuiued of their sight so soone as they approached thereunto. But they on the contrary side thinking that the Tartars durd not come nigh them, gaue the assault, & when they came at the cloud, they could not proceed for the cause aforesaid. Also the Tartars, before they came vnto the said mountaynes, passed for the space of a moneth and more, through a vast wilderness, & departing thence towards the East, they were about a moneth traueling through another huge desert. At length, they came vnto a land wherein they saw beauen waies, but could not find any people. Howbeit, at the last, diligently seeking, they found a man & his wife, whom they presented before Chingis Cham: and demanding of them where the people of that countrey were, they answered, that the people inhabited vnder the ground in mountaynes. Then Chingis Cham keeping still the woman, sent her husband vnto the, giuing the charge to come at his command. And going vnto them, he declared all things that Chingis Cham had commanded them. But they answered, that they would vpon such a day visit him, to satisfie his desire. And in the meane season, by blinde & hidden passages vnder the earth, assembling themselves, they came against the Tartars in warlike manner, and suddenly issuing forth, they slew a great number of them. This people were not able to endure the terrible noise, which in that place the Sunne made at his uprising: for at the time of the Sunne rising, they were enforced to lay one ease vpon the ground, and to stoppe the other close, lest they should heare that dreadfull sound. Neither coulde they so escape, for by this means many of them were destroyed. Chingis Cham therefore and his company, seeing that they prevailed not, but continually lost some of their number, fled and departed out of that land. But the man and his wife aforesaid they caried along with them, who all their life time continued in the Tartars countrey. Being demanded why the men of their countrey doe inhabit vnder the ground, they sayd, that at a certaine time of the yeare, when the sunne riseth, there is such an huge noise, that the people cannot endure it. Wherefore, they use to play vpon spinnales, drums, and other muscally instruments, to the ende they may not heare that sound.

A fabulous narration of the sun rising.

Of the statutes of Chingis Cham, of his death,
of his sonnes, and of his dukes. Chap. 13.

But as Chingis Cham returned out of that countrey, his people wanted victuals, & suffered ex-
tremely. Then by chance they found a fresh tract of a beast which they tooke, & casting
away the dung thereof, caused it to be fobden, brought it before Chingis Cham, & did eat thereof. And
hereupon Chingis Cham enacted, that neither the blood, nor the entrails, nor any other part of a
beast

The lawe of Chingis.

The death of
Chingis
his sonnes.

His grand-
child, &c.

The Tartarian
dukes.

beast which might be eaten, should be cast away, save onely the dunge. Wherefoze he returned thence into his owne land, and there he ordeyned lawes and statutes, which the Tartars doe most strictly and inviolably observe, of the which we have before spoken. He was afterward slaine by a thunderclap. He had foure sonnes: the first was called Occoday, the second Thosut Can, the third Thiaday: the name of the fourth is unknown. From these foure descended all the dukes of the Mongals. The first sonne of Occoday is Cuyne, who is now Emperour: his brothers be Cuden and Chyrinen. The sonnes of Thosut Can are Bathy, Ordu, Siba, and Bora. Bathy, next unto the Emperour, is richer and mightier then all the rest. But Ordu is the seignior of all the dukes. The sonnes of Thiaday be Hurin and Cadan. The sonnes of Chingis Cham his other sonne, whose name is unknown, are Mengu, Bithar, and certaine others. The mother of Mengu was named Serocan, and of all others most honoured among the Tartars, excepte the Emperours mother, and mightier then any subject excepte Bathy. These be the names of the dukes: Ordu, who was in Poland and in Hungarie; Bathy also & Hurin & Cadan, and Siban, and Ouygar, all which were in Hungarie. In like maner Cyrpodan, who is as yet beyond the sea, making war against certaine Soldans of the Saracens, and other inhabitants of farre countries. Others remained in the land, as namely Mengu, Chyrinen, Hubilni, Sinocur, Cara, Gay, Sybedey, Bora, Berca, Corrensa. There be many other of their dukes, whose names are unknown unto vs.

Of the authoritie of the Emperour, and of his dukes. Chap. 14.

The absolute
and sole do-
minion of the
Tartarian Em-
perour over
his subjects.

Moreouer, the Emperour of the Tartars hath a wonderfull dominion over all his subjects, for no man dare abide in any place, unless he hath assigned him to be there. Also he himselfe appointeth to his dukes where they should inhabit. Likewise the dukes assigne places unto euery millenarie, or conductor of a thousand souldiers, the millenaries unto each capitaine of an 100. the capitaine unto euery company of ten. Whatsoever is giuen them in charge, whensoever, or wheresoever, be it to fight, or to lose their liues, or howsoever it be, they obey without any gainsaying. For if he demandeth any mans daughter, or sister being a virgin, they presently deliver her unto him without all contradiction: yea, often times he makes a collection of virgines throughout all the Tartars dominions, and those whom he meanes to keepe, he retaineth unto himselfe, others he bestoweth vpon his men. Also, whatsoever messenger he sendeth, or whithersoever his subjects must without delay sitde them horses and other necessities. In like sorte, from what countrey soeuer tribute payers, or ambassadours come unto him, they must haue horses, carriages, and expences allowed them. Notwithstanding ambassadours coming from other places do suffer great misery, and are in much wante both of victuals, and of apparel: especially when they come to any of the dukes, and there they are contrayned to make some lingering abode. Ten men are allowed to little sustenance, that scarcely two could liue thereof. Likewise, if any iniuries be offered them, they cannot without danger make complaint. Many gifts also are demanded of them, both by dukes and others, which if they doe not bestow, they are basely esteemed, and set at nought. And hereupon, wee were of necessity enforced to bestowe in gifts a great part of those things which were giuen vs by well disposed people, to defray our charges. To be short, all things are so in the power and possession of the Emperour, that no man dare say, This is mine, or, this is my neighbour; but all, both goods, cattell and men are his owne. Concerning this matter also he published a statute of late. The very same authoritie and iurisdiction, doe the dukes in like sorte exercise vpon their subjects.

Their barba-
rons inhabi-
tants towards
ambassadours

Of the election of Emperour Occoday, and of the expedition of duke Bathy. Chap. 15.

Occoday succe-
deth his father.

The expedition
of Bathy.

The citie of
Barchin.

After the death of Chingis Cham aforesayd, the dukes assembled themselves and chose Occoday his sonne to be their Emperour. And he, entering into consultation with his nobles, the people called Bismirini, who were Saracens, but spake the language of Comania. The Tartars invading their countrey, fought with them and subdued them in battell. But a certaine citie called Barchin resisted them a long time. For the citizens had cast by many ditches and trenches about their citie, in regard whereof the Tartars could not take it, till they had filled the said ditches. But the citizens of Sarguit hearing this, came forth to meete them, perswading themselves unto them of their owne accord. Whereupon their citie was not destroyed, but they flue manie of them and others they carried away captiue, and taking spoiles, they filled

After
a custome
a leather
duke Cyrp
thorogh
one arme
to shooe in
vpon that
their hand
so doing,
And as it w
perour, m
from the
Georgia.
tribute, 100
of the puill
be short, the
nions, and no
neither reue
marched for
at his hand
uery yeare the
back great
Tartarian Em

after he returned
the Tartars doe most
afterward slaine
all the dukes
his brothers be
and Bora. Bathy,
the leignior of all
Cham his other
mother of Mengu
the Emperours
dukes: Ordu, who
Duygar, all which
making war against
others remained in
Bora, Berca, Cor-
s.

f

all his subjects,
Also he himselfe
places unto ene-
meines of an 100.
whensover, or
out any gainfay-
nfully delivier her
rines throughout
himselfe, others
ruler, his subjects
what countrey
stranges, and ex-
so suffer great
they come to any
ten men are al-
iniuries he offe-
rained of them,
id set at naught,
of those things
all things are so
of, this is my
matter also he
hes in like foyle

the

and chose Oc-
with his nobles,
an, and against
mania. The
steel. But a
many marches
they had Al-
the them, peo-
not destroyed,
les, they Allen
the

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

61

the citie with other inhabitants, and so marched forth against the citie of Ona. This towne
was very populous and exceeding rich. For there were many Christians therein, as namely Ca-
sarians, Russians, and Alanians, with others, and Saracens also. The government of the citie
was in the Saracens hands. It standeth upon a mighty river, and is a kinde of poire towne, ha-
ving a great marre exercised therein. And when the Tartars could not otherwise overcome it,
they turned the said river, running through the citie, out of his channel, and so drowned the ci-
tie with the inhabitants and their goods. Which being done, they set forward against Russia,
and made soule harocke there, destroying cities and castles and murdering the people. They
laid siege a long while unto Kiow the chiefe citie of Russia, and at length they tooke it and slue
the citizens. Whereupon, travelling through that countrey, wee found an innumerable multi-
tude of dead mens skulls and bones lying upon the earth. For it was a very large and a popu-
lous citie, but it is now in a manner brought to nothing: for there doe scarce remaine 200. hou-
sman, they proceeded forward against the Hungarians, and the Polonians, and there manie of
them were slaine, as is also said: and had the Hungarians manfully withstood them, the Tartars
had bene confounded and driven backe. Returning from thence, they invaded the countrey of
the Mordians being pagans, and conquered them in battell. Then they marched against the pro-
ple called Bylet, of Bulgaria magna, & betwixt walked the countrey. From hence they proceeded
towards the North against the people called Baltari of Hungaria magna, and conquered them
also. And so going on further North, they came unto the Parossia, who having little homarks
and small incomes, care not any thing at all, but seeking flesh they stand of little over the poire,
and reciting the steame of smoke thereof, are therewith onely nourished, and if they care anie
thing it is very little. From hence they came to the Samoget, who live onely upon hunting, and
live to dwell in tabernacles onely, and to weare garments made of beastes skinnes. From thence
they proceeded unto a countrey lying upon the Deane sea, where they found certaine monsters,
who in all things resembled the shape of men, saving that their feete were like the feete of an ore,
and they had in their mens heads but dogges faces. They spake, as it were, two wordes like men,
but at the third they barked like dogges. From hence they retired into Comania, and there some
of them remaine unto this day.

Ona.

The Mordians,

Bulgaria magna,
Hungaria magna.

Parossia.

Samoget.

The North
man.

Neuternis
monsters.

Of the expedition of duke Cypodan. Chap. 16.

At the same time Occoday Can sent duke Cypodan with an armie against Kergis, who at
so subdued them in battell. These men are pagans, having no beards at all. They have
a custome when any of their fathers die, for griefe and in token of lamentation to drave as it were,
a leather thong over their faces, from one eare to the other. This nation being conquered,
duke Cypodan marched with his forces Southward against the Armenians. And travelling
through certain desert places, they found monsters in the shape of men, which had each of them but
one arme & one hand growing out of the midst of their breast, and but one foote. Two of them used
to shooote in one bowe, and they ran so swiftly, that hoxses could not overtake them. They ran also
upon that one foote by hopping and leaping, and being weary of such walking, they were upon
their hand and their foote, turning themselves round, as it were in a circle. And being wearie of
so doing, they ran againe according to their wonted manner. Iddore calleth them Cyclopedes.
And as it was told us in court, by the clergie men of Russia, who remaine with the foyleapo Em-
perour, many ambassadours were sent from them unto the Emperours court, to obtaine peace.
From thence they proceeded forth into Armenia, which they conquered in battell, and part also of
Georgia. And the other part is under their iurisdiction, paying as yet every yeare unto them for
tribute, 10000. pieces of coyne called Yperera. From thence they marched into the dominions
of the puissant and mighty Solan called Deurum, whom also they vanquished in fight. And to-
nions, and now they have subdued that land also, determining to invade other countries beyond it:
neither returned they after ward into their owne land unto this day. Likewise the same armie
marched forward against the Caliph of Baldach his countrey, which they subdued also, & extracted
at his handes the daylie tribute of 400. Byzantines, besides Baldakines and other gifts. And e-
very yeare they send messengers unto the Caliph inioining him to come unto them. Altho sending
back great gifts together with his tribute beforeseth the to be favourable unto him. Howbeit the
Tartarian Emperour receiveth at his gifts, & yet still neuertheless sends for him, to have him con-
Kergis.
Armenia & Gerg.
Solan conquered.
The Solan of
Aleppo his land
The Caliph of
Baldach.

F

How

How the *Tartars* behaue themselves in warre. Chap. 17.

The military
discipline of the
Tartars.

Their weapons

Their experi-
ence & cunning
in warres.

Their manner
of passing ouer
rivers.

Counsel how
to wage warre
against the
Tartars.

It is not better
to wage warre
against the
Tartars.

CHingis Cham diuided his Tartars by capitaines of ten, capitaines of an 100. and capitaines of a 1000. And ouer ten Pillenaries of captains of a 1000. he placed, as it were, one Colonel, and yet not withstanding ouer one whole armie he authorized two of three dukes, but yet so that all should haue especial regard vnto one of the said dukes. And when they ioine battell against any other nation, vnles they do all with one consent giue backe, euery man that flies is put to death. And if one of two, or moze of ten proceed manfully to the battell, but the residue of those ten draw backe & follow not the company, they are in like manner slaine. Also, if one among ten or moze bee taken, their fellows, if they rescue the not, are punished with death. Whoeuer they are inclined to haue these weapons following. Two long bowes of one good one at the least, three quiuers full of arrows, one axe, and ropes to draw engines withal. But the richer sort haue single edged twojs, with sharpe pointes, and somewhat crooked. They haue also armed horses with their shoulders and breasts defended, they haue helmets and bygandines. Some of them haue iackets, and capariffons for their horses made of leather artificially doubled or trebled vpon their bodies. The vpper part of their helmet is of iron or Steele, but that part which compasseth about the necke and the thpoate is of leather. Howbeit some of them haue all their horse's furniture of iron framed in manner following. They beate out many thimble plates a finger broad, and a handfull long, and making in euery one of them eight little holes, they put there vnto three strong and straight leather thongs. So they iaine the plates one to another, as it were, ascending by degrees. Then they tie the plates vnto the said thongs, with other small and slender thongs, drawn through the holes as afore said, and in the vpper part, on each side thereof, they fasten one small doubled thong vnto another, that the plates may firmly be knite together. These they make, as well for their horses capariffons, as for the armour of their men: And they shewe them so bright that a man may behold his face in them. Some of them vpon the necke of their lance haue an hooke, where withall they attempt to pull men oue of their saddles. The heads of their arrowes are exceedingly sharpe cutting both wayes like a two edged sworde, and they alwaies carie a file in their quiuers to whet their arrowheads. They haue targets made of wickers, or of small rodde. Howbeit they doe not (as we suppose) accustom to carrie them, but onely about the tents, or in the Emperours or dukes guardes, & that only in the night season. They are most politique in warres, hauing bene exercised therein with other nations for the space of these 42. yeres. When they come at any riuer, the chiefe men of the company haue a round and light peece of leather, about the borders whereof making many loopes, they put a rope into them to drawe it together like a purse, and so bring it into the rounde forme of a ball, which leather they fill with their garments and other necessaries, trussing it vp most strongly. But vpon the midd of the vpper parte thereof, they lay their saddles and other hard things, where also doe the men themselves lie. This their boate they rye vnto an horse taylor, causing a man to swimme before, & to guide ouer the horse, or sometime they haue two oares to rowe themselves ouer. The first horse therefore being dyuen into the water, all the other horses of the company followe him, and so they passe through the riuer. But the poorer sort of common soldiers haue euery man his leather bag of sackell well lowne together, wherein he packs vp all his trinkets, and strongly trussing it vp hangs it at his horses eyle, and so passeth ouer, in manner as afore said.

Howe they may be resisted. Chap 18.

It seeme not any one kingdome or prouince able to resist them: because they vse to take by soldiers out of euery countrey of their dominions. And if so be the neighbour prouince which they invade, wil not aide them, utterly wasting it, with the inhabitants thereof, whom they take from thence with them, they proceed on to fight against another countrey. And placing their captiues in the forefront of the battell, if they fight not courageously, they put them to the sworde. Wherefore, if Christians would withstande them, it is expedient, that the prouinces and gouernours of countreies should agree in one, and so by common counsell, should giue them resistance. Their soldiers also must be furnished with strong hand-bowes & crof-bowes, which they greatly dread, & with sufficient arrowes, with maces also of good iron, or an axe with a long handle of Rasse. When they make their arrow heads, they must (according to the Tartars custome) dip the red-hot into water mingled with salte, that they may be strong to pierce the enemies armour. They that will may haue twojs and iackets with hooks at the ends, to pull the from their saddles, out of which they are easily remoued. They must haue helmets like wise & other armour to defend themselves & their horses from the Tartars weapons & arrowes, & they that are unarmed, must (according to the Tartars custome) march

Whe great
ding on the
uised vnto
whose affi
also to be
of Slesia, v
were came
wards vnto
cerning the
vnto him.
caused cer
was giuen
of Cracow
same flims
by the bish
certaine dai
while. And
foze them th
same purpo
the bishops
(hauing aske
answers. A
Kiow the ch
Lituanians,
to passe. Bu
part of whom
mee were fe
in a waaggon
ted with the

and capitaines of
re, one Colonel,
but yet so that all
el against any o-
nt to death. And
ten draw backe
moze bee taken,
inloined to haue
uers full of ar-
edged swordes,
e shoulders and
and capariffons
The upper part
nd the throte is
ed in maner fol-
making in eue-
r thongs. So
e the plates vn-
oylapp, and in
e that the plates
s, as for the ar-
in them. Some
to pull men oue
h wayes like a
heads. They
suppose) accu-
e, that only
ein with other
men of the com-
ny loopes, they
nd some of a
p most strong-
r hard things,
aple, causing a
to row them-
es of the com-
mon souldiers,
ll his trinkets,
oylapp.

ose to take vp
pouince with
they take from
eir capities in
pde. Where-
of, encourours of
ance. Their
greatly dyad,
affe. When
et into water
mil may haue
they are ea-
e their hoxes
ars custom)

march

march behinde their fellows, and discharge at the enemie with long bowes and crof-bowes. And
(as it is aboue said of the Tartars) they must orderly dispose their bandes and troupes, and ordeine
lawes for their souldiers. Whosoever runneth to the pray of spoyle, before the victorie be achie-
ued, must vndergoe a most seuer punishment. For such a fellow is put to death among the Tartars
without all piete or mercie. The place of battell must be chosen, if it be possible, in a plaine field,
where the map see round about, neither must all be in one company, but in manie and seuerall
bandes, nor very farre distant one from another. They which giue the first encounter must sende
one hand before, and must haue another in a readynesse to relieue and second the former in time
conuenient. They must haue spies also on euery side to giue them notice when the rest of the ene-
mies bandes approach. For therefoze ought they alwayes to send forth hand against hand & troupe
against troupe, because the Tartar euer practiseth to gette his enemie in the midst and so to emultron
him. Let our bandes take this cauent also, if the enemie retire, not to make any long pursuit after
him, lest peraduenture (according to his custome) he might draw them into some secreet ambush:
for the Tartar fights moze by policie then by maine force. And againe, lest our hoxes bee tired: for
we are not so well stoyd with hoxes as they. Those hoxes which the Tartars vse one day, they
ride not vpon three or foure dayes after. Wherefore, if the Tartars draw homeward, our men must
not therefore depart and casseir their bandes, or separate themselves vnder: because they doe
this vpon policie, namely to haue our armie diuided, that they may moze securely invade and waste
the countrey. And in very deede, our capitaines ought both day and night to keepe their armie in a
readines: and not to lie out of their armour, but at all times, to be prepared for battell. For
the Tartars like ducks are alwaies watching and deuiling howe to practise mischiefe. Further-
moze, if in battell any of the Tartars be call off their hoxe backs, they must presently bee layd
holde on and taken, for being on foote they shoote strongly, wounding and killing both hoxes
and men.

Of the journey of frier * Iohn vnto the first guard
of the Tartars. Chap. 19.

* Iohannes de pla-
no Carpai.

W^herefoze by the commaundement of the sea apostolique setting forth towards the na-
tions of the East, those first to trauel vnto the Tartars, because we feared that there might
be great danger imminent vpon the Church of God next vnto them, by their inuasions. Proce-
ded on therfore, we came to the king of Bohemia, who being of our familiar acquaintance, ad-
vised vs to take our journey through Polonia and Russia. For we had kinfolk in Polonia, by
whose assistance, we might enter into Russia. Having giuen vs his letters, hee caused our charges
of Silesia, who also was familiar and well known vnto vs. The like fauour he shewed vs also, till
wee came vnto Conradus duke of * Lauticia, vnto whome then (by Gods especiall fauour to
wards vs) Ioyd Wasilico duke of Russia was come, from whose mouth we heard moze at large co-
cerning the deedes of the Tartars: for he had sent ambassadours thither, who were returned backe
vnto him. Wherefoze, it being giuen vs to vnderstand, that we must bestow giftes vpon them, we
caused certaine skinnes of beuers and other beastes to be bought with part of that monney, which
was giuen vpon almes to succour vs by the way. Which thing duke Conradus and the * dukes
of Cracow, and a bishop, and certaine souldiers being aduertised of, gaue vs likewise moze of the
same skinnes. And to be short, duke Wasilico being earnestly requested by the duke of Cracow, and
by the bishop and barons, on our behalfe, conducted vs with him, vnto his owne land, and there for
certaine daies, entertained vs at his owne charges, to the ende that we might refresh our selues a
while. And when, being requested by vs, he had caused his bishops to refresh vnto him, we reade be-
foze them the popes letters, admonishing them to returne vnto the vnitie of the Church. To the
bishops and others thereunto. Howbeit because duke Daniel the brother of Wasilico also felath
(having as then taken his journey vnto Bary) was absent, they could not at that time, make a final
answer. After these things duke Wasilico sent vs forward with one of his seruants as farre as
Kiow the chiefe citie of Russia. Howbeit we were al wayes in danger of our liues by reason of the
Lituaniens, who did often invade the borders of Russia, euen in those very places by which we were
to passe. But in regard of the popes seruants, wee were out of the Russians danger, the greatest
part of whome were either slaine, or caried into captiuitie by the Tartars. Wherefore, at Danilon
mee were feeble euen vnto the death. (Notwithstanding wee caused our selues to bee carried
in a waggon through the snowe and extreme colde.) And being come vnto Kiow, wee consu-
lited with the Pillenary, & other noble men there concerning our journey. They told vs, that if wee
carried

The journey
of frier Iohn &
his fellowes
gates.

Boleslaus duke
of Silesia,
* Maxom,

* Grismaus.

Daniel brother
vnto Wasilico,

The Lituaniens

The fodder of
the Tartarian
horses.

Michas the
ambassador.

carried those horses, which wee then had, unto the Tartars, great store of snowe lying upon the ground, they would all dye: he cause they knew not howe to digge up the grasse under the snowe, as the Tartarian horses doe, neither could there bee found for them to eate, the Tartars hauing neither hay nor strawe, nor any other fodder. We determined therefore to leaue them behind at Kiow with two seruantes appointed to keepe them. And wee were constrained to bestow gifts vpon the Pillenary, that we might obtaine his fauour to allowe vs posse horses and a guide. Therefore beginning our iourney the second daye after the feast of the Purification, wee arrived at the towne of Canow, which was immediately vnder the dominion of the Tartars. The gouernour whereof allowed vs horses and a guide vnto another towne, wherein wee found one Michas to be gouernour, a man full of all malice and despight. Who notwithstanding, hauing receiued gifts at our handes, according to his maner conducted vs to the first guard of the Tartars.

How he and his company were at the first receiued of the Tartars. Chap. 20.

Wherefore, the first saturday next after Thursday, hauing about the Sunnes going downe, taken vp our place of rest, the armed Tartars came rushing vpon vs in vnciuill and horrible maner, being very inquisitiue of vs what maner of persons, or of what condition we were: & when we had answered them that we were the Popes Legates, receiuing some victuals at our handes, they immediately departed. Whereafter in the morning rising and proceeding on our iourney, the chiefe of them which were in the guard met with vs, demanding why, or for what intent and purpose we came thither: and what business we had with them: vnto whom we answered, We are the legates of our lord the Pope, who is the father & lord of the Christians. We haue sent vs as well vnto your Emperour, as to your princes, and all other Tartars for this purpose, because it is his pleasure, that all Christians should be in league with the Tartars, and should haue peace with them. It is his desire also that they should become great, or in fauour with God in heauen, therefore he admonisheth them as wel by vs, as by his own letters, to become Christians, and to embrace the faith of our Lord Iesu Christ, because they could not otherwisse be saved. Whereupon, he giues the vnderstand, that he much maruelleth at their monstrous slaughters & massacres of mankind, & especially of Christians, but most of all of Hungarians, Mountaineirs, & Polonians, being all his subjects, hauing not injured them in ought, nor attempted to doe them iniurie. And because the Lord God is grievously offended therat, he admonisheth them from henceforth to beware of such dealing, & to repent them of that which they had done. We requesteth also, that they would write an answer vnto him, what they purpose to doe hereafter, and what their intention is. All which things being heard and vnderstood, the Tartars sayd that they would appoint vs posse horses and a guide vnto Corrensa. And immediately demanding gifts at our handes, they obtained them. Then receiuing the same horses, from which they dismounted, together with a guide wee tooke our iourney vnto Corrensa. But they riding a swift pace, sent a messenger before vnto the sayd duke Corrensa, to signifie the message, which we had deliuered vnto them. This duke is gouernour of all them, which lie in guard against the nations of the West, least some enemy might on the sudden and at vnawares breake in vpon them. And hee is said to haue 60000 men vnder him.

The contents
of the legacie.

Corrensa.

The duke of
the Western
marches.

How they were receiued at the court of Corrensa. Chap. 21.

The manner of
saluting the
Tartarian prince.

Being come therefore vnto his court, hee caused our tent to be placed farre from him, and sent his agents to demand of vs with what we would incline vnto him, that is to say, what gifts we would offer, in doing our obediencie vnto him. vnto whom we answered, that our lord the Pope had not sent any gifts at all, because he was not certaine that wee should euer be able to come at them: for we passed through most dangerous places. Notwithstanding, to our abilitie, we will honour him with some part of those things, which haue bene, by the goodness of God, & the fauour of the Pope, bestowed vpon vs for our sustenance. Hauing receiued our gifts, they conducted vs vnto the Orda of the duke, & we were instructed to bowe thysse with our left knee before the doore of the tente, and in any case to beware, lest wee set our foote vpon the threshold of the sayd doore. And that after we were entred, wee should reheartse before the duke and all his nobles, the same wordes, which wee had before sayd, kneeling vpon our knees. Then presented wee the letters of our lord the Pope: but our interpreter whome we had hired and brought with vs from Kiow was not sufficiently able to interpret them, neither was there any other esteemed to bee meete for the same purpose. Where certaine posse horses and three Tartars were appointed for

us

Th

ba
amor
gan o
gran
pea b
All th
might
duke C
is gra
hauing
exceed
vpon u
descend
tains. C
rimme
they ere
knap d
the ice
three lea
him inte

MO
dist
vs that w
beie, the p
for none o
with you,
ourselues
foe we w
we would
The gifts
to the cab
not to treat
deliuered h
dingly on g
letters into
to Bathy, w
owne lodg
the first nig
poyters and
together w
personages
binde him, b
tentes of him
into his rem
except perha
hand; for so
placed on the
which there
any other of
mindtrille be
his head vpon
also. The sayd
them: he is m
now continu

lying upon the
under the snow,
the Tartars ha-
ue them behind
to bestow gifts
and a guide.
ion, were arri-
Tartars. The
wee found one
standing, hauing
guard of the

-i-

Sunne's going
in vnciuil and
tion we were:
vicinals at our
our journey,
that intent and
answered, The
hath sent vs as
, because it is
ue peace with
anen, therfore
to embrace the
degiues the to
skind, & espe-
at his subjects,
the Lord God
rating, & to re-
an answer un-
things being
a guide vnto
hen receiuing
journey vnto
Corrensa, to
all them, which
at vnwares

p. 21.

him, and sene
what gifts
our lord the
er bee able to
our abilitie,
of God, & the
ey conducted
knee before
d of the layd
s nobles, the
men wee the
twich vs from
ermed to bee
ppoynted for
vs

bars conduct vs from hence with all speed vnto Duke Bathy. This Bathy is the mightiest prince among them except the Emperour, & they are bound to obey him before all other princes. He began our journey towards his court the first Tuesday in Lent, and riding as fast as our horses could (for we had fresh horses almost chaife of four times a day) we passed from morning till night, & a very often in the night season also, and yet could we not come at him before Thursday thirday. All this journey we went through the land of Comania, which is all plain ground, and hath there mighty rivers running through it: The first is called Neper, on the side whereof towards Russia, duke Corrensa & Monty marched by and downe, which Monty on the other side upon the plaines is greater then he. The second is called Don, upon the banks whereof marcheth a certain prince hauing in marriage the sister of Bary, his name is Turbon. The third is called Volga, which is an exceeding great river, upon the banks whereof duke Bathy marcheth. The fourth is called Iace, upon which two Pillenaries doe march, on each side of the river one. All these, in the winter time, descend down to the sea, & in summer ascend backe by the banks of the said rivers vnto the mount- eains. The sea last named is the Great sea, out of which the arme of St. George proceedeth, which they conuerate the selues into the Grecian sea, which is called Mare maior. Our Neper we went many daies upon the ice. Along the shore also of the Grecian sea we went very dangerously upon the ice in sundry places, & that for many daies together. For about the shore the waters are frozen three leagues into the sea. But before we came vnto Bathy, two of our Tartars tooke also, to giue him intelligence of all the sayings which we had uttered in the presence of Corrensa.

Duke Bathy & his power.

Boudshener.

Tanaia.

Jkha.

JRhymu.

Pontus minor. He is decreed, for Albert Neper a Don into Mare maior: per Volga & Iace flouie into the Caspian sea.

How we were received at the court of the great prince Bathy. Chap. 22.

Moreover, when we came vnto Bathy in the land of Comania, we were seated a good league distant from his cabernacles. And when we should be conducted vnto his court, it was told vs that we must passe between two fires. But we would by no means be induced therunto. Howbeit, they said vnto vs: you may passe through without al danger: for we would haue you to doe us for none other cause, but only that if you intend any mischief against our lord, or bring any payson with you, fire may take away all euil. Vnto whom we answered, that to the end we might clear ourselves from all suspicion of any such matter, we were contented to passe through. When therefore we were come vnto the Ords, being demanded by his agent Eldegay with what present or gift we would do our obediencie. We gaue the same answer which we did at the court of Corrensa. The gifts being giuen and receiued, the causes of our journey also being heard, the pay brought vnto the cabernacle of the prince, first bowing our selues at the doore, & being admonished, as before, not to tread upon the threshold. And being entered, we spake vnto him kneeling vpon our knees, & deliuered him our letters, and requested him to haue interpreters to translate them. Also accom- dingly on good Friday were sent vnto vs, and we together with them, diligently translated our sayd letters into the Russian, Tartarian, and Saracen languages. This interpretation was presented vnto Bathy, which he read, & attentively noted. At length wee were conducted home againe vnto our owne lodging, howbeit no victuals were giuen vnto vs, except it were once a little Miller in a dish, poyzers and all officers after the manner of the Emperour, and sittes in a lofty seate of thorne together with one of his wiues. The rest, namely, as well his hertzen and sonnes, as other great personages sit vnderneath him in the midst vpon a bench, and others sit downe vpon the ground, be- hinde him, but the men on the right hand and the women on the left. He hath very faire and large tentes of thunen cloth also, which were once the kings of Hungaria. Neither dare any man come into his tent (besides them of his owne family) vntil he be called, he he neuer so mighty and great, except perhaps it be knownen that it is his pleasure. Wee also, for the same cause, sate on the left hand; so for doe all ambassadoers in going: but in returning from the Emperour, we were alwaies placed on the right hand. In the midst stands his table, neare vnto the doore of the tent, vpon the which there is vyntike filled in golden and silver vessels. Neither doeth Bathy at any time vyntike, nor any other of the Tartarian princes, especially being in a publique place, but they haue singing and minstrells before them. And alwaies, when hee rides, there is a canopy of small tene carried ouer his head vpon the point of a latetine. And so doe all the great princes of the Tartars, & their wiues also. The sayd Bathy is courteous enough vnto his owne men, and yet is hee had in great awe by them: he is most true in fight, he is exceedingly prudent and politique in warre, because he hath now continued a long time in martiall affaires.

emperor sitting be- fore the two fires.

Eldegay.

Bathy heareth the Legatio.

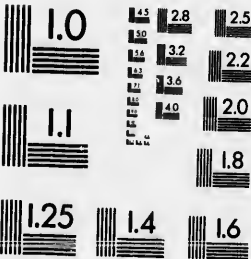
He becomen himselfe like a king.

Their custome of banking at the sound of muske.



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

How departing from *Bathy*, they passed through the land of *Comania*, and of the *Kangissa*. Chap. 23.

Moreouer, vpon Easter euen we were called vnto the tent, and there came forth to meete vs the foresaid agent of *Bathy*, saying on his masters behalfe, that we should go into their land, vnto the Emperour *Cuyne*, deteyning certaine of our company with this pretence, that they would send them backe vnto the Pope, to whom we gaue letters of al our affaires to deliuer vnto him. But being come as farre as duke *Montij* foresaid, there they were kepte breuill our returne. Vpon Easter day, hauing said our prayers, and taken a slender breakfast, in the company of two Tartars, which were assigned vnto vs by *Corensa* we departed with many teares, not knowing whether we went to death or to life. And we were so feeble in bodie, that we were scarce able to ride. For all that Lent throught, our meat was Miller onely with a little water and salte. And so likewise vpon other fasting dayes. Neither had we ought to drinke, but suete melted in a skillet. And passing throught *Comania* we rode most earnestly, hauing change of horses fure times or oftener in a day, except when we went throught deserts, for then we were allowed better and stronger horses, which coult vndergoe the whole labour. And thus farre had we traualled from the beginning of Lent untill eight dayes after Easter. The land of *Comania* on the North side immediately after *Russia* hath the people called *Morduyni* Byleri, that is, *Bulgaria magna*, the *Bastarci*, that is, *Hungaria magna*, next vnto the *Bastarci*, the *Parositz* and the *Samogetz*. Next vnto the *Samogetz* are those people which are sayd to haue dogges faces, inhabiting vpon the desert shores of the Ocean. On the South side it hath the *Alani*, the *Circassi*, the *Gazari*, *Greece* and *Constantinople*; also the land of *Iberia*, the *Caches*, the *Brutaches* who are sayd to be *Jewes* shauing their heads all ouer, the landes also of *Scythia*, of *Georgia*, of *Armenia*, of *Turkie*. On the West side it hath *Hungaria*, and *Russia*. Also *Comania* is a most large and long countrey. The inhabitants wherof called *Comani* the Tartars steele, some notwithstanding fled from them, and the rest were subdued vnder their bondage. But most of them that fled are returned againe. Afterward we entered the lande of the *Kangitza*, which in many places hath great scarcetie of waters, wher-in there are but few inhabitants by reason of the foresaid defect of water. For this cause diuers of the seruants of *Ierolous* duke of *Russia*, as they were traueiling towards him into the land of *Tartaria*, died for thirst, in that desert. As before in *Comania*, so likewise in this countrey, wee found many skulles and bones of dead men lying vpon the earth like a dunghill. Throught this countrey we were traueiling from the eight day after Easter untill Ascension day. The inhabitants therof were Pagans, and neither they nor the *Comanians* used to till the ground, but liued onely vpon cattell, neither built they any houses but dwelled in tents. These men also haue the Tartars rooted out, and doe possesse and inhabite their countrey, howbeit, those that remained are reduced into their bondage.

How they came vnto the first court of the new Emperour. Chap. 24.

Moreouer, out of the land of the *Kangitza*, we entered into the countrey of *Biſermini*, who speake the language of *Comania*, but obserue the lawe of the *Saracens*. In this countrey we found innumerable cities with castles ruined, & many towne left desolate. The top of this countrey was called *Soldan Alti*, who with al his progenie, was destroyed by the Tartars. This countrey hath most huge mountains. On the South side it hath *Ierusalem* and *Baldach*, and all the whole countrey of the *Saracens*. In the next territories adioyning doe inhabite two carnall brothers dukes of the Tartars, namely, *Burin* and *Cadan*, the sonnes of *Thyaday*, who was the sonne of *Chingis* Can. On the North side thereof it hath the land of the blacke *Kythayans*, and the Ocean. In the same countrey *Syban* the brother of *Bathy* remaineth. Throught this countrey we were traueiling from the feast of Ascension, untill eight daies before the feast of *S. Iohn Baptist*. And then we entered into the land of the blacke *Kythayans*, in which the Emperour built an house, where we were called in to drinke. Also the Emperours deputy in that place caused the chiefe men of the citie and his two sonnes to daunce before vs. Departing from hence, wee founde a certaine small sea, vpon the shore whereof standes a little mountaine. In which mountaine is reposed to be a hole, from whence, in winter time such vehement tempests of winds doe issue, that traueilers can scarcely, and with great danger passe by the same way. In summer time, the noise in deere of the winde is heard there, but it proceedeth gently out of the hole. Along the shores of the foresaid sea we traualled for the space of many dayes, which although it be not very great, yet hath it many islandes, and wee passed by leauing it on our left hande. In this lande dwelleth *Ordu*, whome wee saye to bee auncient vnto all the *Tartarian* dukes. And it is the *Orda* of court of his father which hee inhabitech, and one of his wiues heareth rule there,

They traueiled
vnto the
22. of Iuly
Eastward of
Volga.

A description
of Comania,

The North
Ocean.

The land of the
Kangitza.

Ierolous duke of
Russia.

The land of
the Biſermini.

Alti Soldanus.
Huge moun-
taines.

Burin and Cadan

The North
Ocean.
Syban brother
vnto Bathy.
The blacke
Kythayans.

A small sea.

Many dayes.

Ordu cap. 13.

For it is
used, but
are best
court of

BAt this
his C
uen into
one day.
land of the
a night
mountain
two nation
cents, wh
nie dayes.
Throught
three week
arrived at
way, beca
perill wit
the Emper
and officie
that which
our horses,
our horses c

H

BAt wher
tent an
more regard
led before his
withstanding
sent vnto him
his mother, v
come thither,
great quantie
was a wall of
ned to attende
one of them rit
all clad in whi
ouer, the third
In the wall of
the Emperour
though it stood
admitted, entre
And whosoever
beaten, but if he
had vpon their b
gold. The foresa
the election of th
wall of board,
& so continued by
called vs in vnto
ches they did vnto
of our custumary

For it is a custome among the Tartars, that the Courtes or Princes of noble men are not out-
ued, but alwayes some women are appointed to keepe and gouerne them, vpon whom certain gifts
are bestowed, in like sort as they are giuen vnto their Lordes. And so at length we arrived at the first
court of the Emperour, wherein one of his wiues dwelt.

The first court
of the Empe-
rour.

Howe they came vnto *Cuyne* himselfe, who was forth-
with to be chosen Emperour. Chap. 25.

But because we had not as yet seene the Emperour, they would not inuite vs nor admit vs in-
uen vnto vs in our owne tent, and they caused vs to stay there, and to refresh our selues with them
one day. Departing thence vpon the euen of Saint Peter and Saint Paul, wee entered into the
land of the Naymani, who are Pagans, But vpon the very feast day of the saide Apostles, there fel
a nightie snowe in that place, and wee had extreame colde weather. This lande is full of
mountaines, and colde beyonde measure, and there is little plaine ground to bee seene. These
two nations last mentioned vied not to till their grounde, but, like vnto the Tartars, dwelt in
the tents, which the sayde Tartars had destroyed. Through this countrey wee were trauailing ma-
nie dayes. Then entered wee into the lande of the Mongals, whome wee call Tartars.
Through the Tartars lande wee continued our trauaile (as wee suppose) for the space of some
three weekes, riding alwayes hastily and with speede, and vpon the day of Marie Magdalene we
arrived at the court of *Cuyne* the Emperour elect. But therfore did we make great haste all this
way, because our Tartarian guides were straightly commaunded to bring vs vnto the court Im-
periall with all speede, which court hath bene these many yeeres, ordained for the election of
the Emperour. Wherefore rising early, wee trauailed vntill night without eating of any thing,
and oftentimes wee came so late vnto our lodging, that we had no time to eate the same night, but
that which we should haue eaten ouer night, was giuen vs in the morning. And often changing
our horses, wee spared no horse-fleshe, but rode swiftly and without intermission, as fast as
our horses could trot.

The land of
Naymani.

The 22. of
Iulie.

How *Cuyne* entertained the Minorite Friers. Chap. 26.

But when wee were come vnto the court of *Cuyne*, hee caused (after the Tartars manner) a
more regarde and courtesie, then they did anie other Ambassadors. Whombeeit wee were not cal-
led before his presence, because hee was not as yet elected, nor admitted vnto his empire. Not
withstanding, the interpretation of the Popes letters, and the message which we deliuered, were
sent vnto him by the foresaid Bachy. And hauing stayed there five or sixe dayes, hee sent vs vnto
his mother, vnder whome there was mainteyned a verie solemne and royall court. And being
come thither, we saw an huge tent of fine white cloth pitched, which was, to our iudgement, of so
great quantitie, that more then two thousand men might stand within it, and round about it there
was a wall of planks set vp, painted with diuers images. Wee therfore with our Tartars assig-
ned to attende vpon vs, tooke our journey thither, and there were all the Dukes assembled, eache
one of them riding vp and downe with his traine ouer the hilles and dales. The first day they were
all clad in white, but the second in sharlet robes. Then came *Cuyne* vnto the saide tent. Pape-
ouer, the third day they were all in blew robes, and the fourth in most rich robes of Baldakin cloth.
In the wall of boordes, about the tent aforesaid, were two great gates, by one of the which gates,
the Emperour only was to enter, and at that gate there was no gard of men appointed to stand, al-
though it stood continually open, because none durst go in or come out the same way: all other were
admitted, entred by another gate, at which there stood watchmen, with bowes, swords, & arrowes.
And whosoever approached vnto the tent beyond the bounds and limite assigned, being caught, was
beaten, but if he fled, he was shot at with arrowes or iron. There were many that to our iudgement,
had vpon their hables, trappers, saddles, and such like furniture, to the value of 20. markes in pure
gold. The foresaid Dukes (as we thinke) communed together within the tent, and consulted about
the election of their Emperour. But all the residue of the people were placed farre away without the
walles of boarde, & in this manner they staid almost till noone. Then began they to drinke mares milke,
& so continued drinking til euen tide, and that in so great quantitie, as it was wonderful. And they
called vs in vnto them, and gaue vs of their ale, because we could not drinke their mares milke. And
that they did vnto vs in token of great hono. But they compelled vs to drinke so much, that in regard
of our customary diet, wee coulde by no means endure it. Wherevpon, giuing them to vnderstand,
that

The curtesie of
Cuyne towards
Ambassadors.

The tent royal.

A general
assembly.

The sampler
of the mares
milke.

Ierolmus Duke
of Sufdal.

Seuerall Souldans
of sundry na-
tions.

that it was hurtful unto vs, they called to compel vs any more. Without the nooze Souldan Ierolmus of Sufdal, in Russia, and a great many Dukes of the Kythayans, and of the Soiangi. The two Souldans also of the King of Georgia, the Siger of the Caliph of Baldach, who was a Soldan, and (as we thinke) about ten Soldans of the Saracens beside. And, as it was tolde vs by the agents, there were more then 4000. ambassadoys, partly of such as payde tributes, and such as presented gifts, and other Soldans, and Dukes, which came to seele themselves, and such as the Tartars had sent for, and such as were gouernours of lands. All these were placed without the lists, and had drinke giuen unto them. But almost continually they all of them gaue vs and Duke Ierolmus the upper hand, when we were abroad in their companie.

How he was exalted to his Empire. Chap. 27.

The begin-
nings of Cuyne
his empire.

Syra Orda.

The golden
Orda.
The 15. of
August.
Wollen cloth.

As to our remembrance, we remained there, about the space of foure weekes. The election was to our thinking there celebrated, but it was not published and proclaimed there. And it was greatly suspected so to be, because alwayes when Cuyne came forth out of the tent, he had a noyse of musicke, and was bowed vnto, or honoured with faire wandes, hauing purple wooll vpon the tops of them, and that, so long as he remained abroad: which seruise was performed to none of the other Dukes. The foresaid tent or court is called by them Syra Orda. Departing thence, wee all with one accord rode 3. or 4. leagues vnto another place, where, in a goodly plaine, by a riuer side, betwene certaine mountaines, there was another tent erected, which was called the golden Orda. For there was Cuyne to be placed in the throne Imperiall, vpon the day of the Assumption of our Ladie. But, for the abundance of haile which fell at the same time, as is aboue said, the matter was deferred. There was also a tent erected vpon pillars, which were couered with plates of golde, and were topped vnto other timber with golden nailes. It was couered aboue with Baldakin cloth, but there was other cloth spread ouer that; next vnto the apse. Wee abode there vnto the feast of Saint Bartholomew, what time there was assembled an huge multitude standing with their faces towards the South. And a certaine number of them being a stones cast distant from the residue, making continuall prayers, and kneeling npon their knees, proceeded farther and farther towards the South. Howbeit wee, not knowing whether they used incantations, or whether they bowed their knees to God or to some other, would not kneele vpon the ground with them. And hauing done so a long time, they returned to the tent, and placed Cuyne in his throne imperiall, and his Dukes bowed their knees before him. Afterwarde the whole multitude kneeled downe in like maner, except our selues, for wee were none of his subjects.

Of his age and demeanour, and of his seale. Chap. 28.

His inclinatio-
on to Christians
religion.

His maiestie.

30 labours and
woolles.

This Emperour, when hee was exalted vnto his gouernment, seemed to bee about the age of fourey or fourey fife yeeres. He was of a meane stature, very wise and politike, and passing serious and grave in all his demeanour. A rare thing it was, for a man to see him laugh or behaue himselfe lightly, as those Christians report, which abode continually with him. Certaine Christians of his familie earnestly and strongly affirmed vnto vs, that he himselfe was about to become a Christian. A token and argument whereof was, that hee retained diuers Cleargie men of the Christians. Hee had likewise at all times a Chappell of Christians, neere vnto his great Tent; where the Clearkes (like vnto other Christians, and according to the custome of the Grecians) doe sing publicly and openly, and ring belles at certaine houres, hee there neuer so great a multitude of Tartars, or of other people in presence. And y^e off their Dukes doe the like. It is the manner of the Emperour neuer to talke his owne. It is a stranger, though he be neuer so great; but heareth and answereth by a speaker. And when any of his subiects (howe great soeuer they bee) are in propounding any matter of importance vnto him, or in bearing his answer, they continue kneeling vpon their knees vnto the end of their conference. Neither is it lawfull for any man to speake of any affaires, after they haue bene determined of by the Emperour. The layde Emperour, hath in his affaires both publike and priuate, an Agent, and Secretary of estate, with Scribes and all other Officials, except advocates. For, without the noyse of pleading, or sentence giuing, all things are done according to the Emperours will and pleasure. Other Tartarian princes do the like in those things which belong vnto the. But, he it known vnto al men, that whilst we remained at the said Emperours court, which hath bin ordained and kept for these many yeeres, the saide Cuyne being Emperour new elect, together with al his princes, erected a flag of defiance against the Church of God, & the Romane empire, and against al Christian

Chy-
conde
peopl
there
to bat
cause
haue a
gis Ca
& Em
Chyne

I the
foze h
them th
rehear
done, el
hold. A
entered in
but the C
tent. W
the first
perour. A
ted into h
labours,
cloth, silk
was a cer
presented
vnto him a
with certa
brought in
leather, an
no? But h
also vpon a
silver and o
Dukes, and

Of th
I

D Eparti
ple, gi
when we ent
to eate. The
ing very curie
we remember
top. There w
hand of the C
vpon benches
and euery day
before, were
white felt.
went into one
taken a certain
time when the
ouer, vpon the
pronounced, and

the Duke
of the Solangi.
who was a Sol-
tolde vs by the
and such as pre-
uch as the Tar-
out the ligs, and
Duke Ierosla-

The election
there. And it
tens, he had a
ple wooll upon
ed to none of
g thence, wee
e, by a riuers
ed the golden
the Assumption
said, the inat-
d with plates
d about with
Wee abode
age multitude
eing a stones
ness, procee-
they used in-
ot kneele by
the tent, and
him. After-
ee were none

28.

out the age of
and passing se-
ugh of bebaue
taine Christi-
to become a
argie men of
to his great
dome of the
here neuer so
dukes doe the
ger, though
his subiers
to him, of in
conference.
rmined of by
ate, an A-
s. For, with-
perours will
he. But, be it
bin ordained
er with al his
and against al
Christians

Christian kingdome and nations of the West, vntlesse peraduenture (which God forbid) they will condescend vnto those things, which he hath inioined vnto our lord the Pope, & to all potentates and people of the Christians, namely, that they will become obedient vnto him. For, excepte Christendom, there is no land vnder the sunne, which they stand in feare of, and for that cause they prepare themselves to battell against vs. This Emperours father, namely Occoday was poisoned to death, which is the cause why they haue for a short space abstained from warre. But their intent and purpose is (as I haue aboue said) to subdue the whole world vnto themselves, as they were commanded by Christus Can. Hence it is that the Emperour in his letters wrieth after this manner: The power of God, & Emperour of all men. Also, vpon his seale, there is this posse ingrauen: God in heaven, and Christus Can vpon earth, the power of God: the seale of the Emperour of all men.

Warre intent-
ed against all
Christians.

Of the admission of the Friers and Ambassadors vnto the Emperour. Chap. 29.

In the same place where the Emperour was established into his throne, we were summoned before him. And Chingay his chiefe secretary hauing written downe our names, and the names of them that sent vs, with the name of the Duke of Solangi, & of others, cried out with a loud voice, rehearsing the said names before the Emperour, and the assembly of his Dukes. Which being done, each one of vs bowed his left knee foure times, & they gaue vs warning not to touch the throne. And after they had bowed his left knee foure times, & they gaue vs warning not to touch the throne, entered in at the doore vpon the East side: because no man dare presume to enter at the West doore, but the Emperour onely. In like manner, euery Tartarian Duke entred on the West side into his tent. Howbeit the inferior sort doe not greatly regard such ceremonies. This therefore was the first time, when we entered into the Emperours tent in his presence, after he was created Emperour. Likewise all other ambassadours were there receiued by him, but very few were admitted into his tent. And there were presented vnto him such abundance of gifts by the saide Ambassadors, that they seemed to be infinite, namely in Samites, robes of purple, and of Baldakin cloth. Silke girdles wrought with golde, and costly skinnies, with other gifts also. Likewise there was a certaine Sun Canopie, or small tent (which was to bee carried ouer the Emperours head) presented vnto him, being set full of precious stones. And a gouernour of one Province brought vnto him a companie of camels couered with Baldakins. They had saddles also vpon their backs, with certaine other instruments, within the which were places for men to sitte vpon. Also they brought many horses & mules vnto him furnished wth trappers and caparisons, some being made of leather, and some of iron. And we were demanded whether we would bestow any gifts vnto him or no? But wee were not of abilitie so to doe, hauing in a manner spent all our pouison. There were also vpon an hill standing a good distance from the tents, more then 500. carts, which were all full of siluer and of golde, and like garments. And they were all diuided betwene the Emperour and his Dukes, and euery Duke bestowed vpon his owne followers what pleased him.

Cuyne heareth
the legates.

Gifts pre-
sented vnto him.

500. Carts full
of treasure.

Of the place where the Emperor and his mother tooke their leaves one of another, and of Ieroslaus Duke of Russia. Chap. 30.

Departing thence, we came vnto another place, where a wonderfull haue tent, all of red purple, given by the Kithayans, was pitched. Wee were admitted into that also, and alwaies when we entred, there was giuen vnto vs ale and wine to drinke, & sodden flesh (when we would) to eate. There was also a lofty stage built of boordes, where the Emperours throne was placed, being very curiously wrought out of iuorie, wherein also there was golde and precious stones, and (as we remember) there were certain degrees or staires to ascend vnto it. And it was round vpon the top. There were benches placed about the saide throne, whereon the ladies satte towarde the left hand of the Emperour vpon stools, (but none satte aloft on the right hand) and the Dukes satte vpon benches below, the saide throne being in the midst. Certaine others satte behind the Dukes, and euery day there resorted great companie of Ladies thither. The three tents whereof we spake before, were very large, but the Emperour his wiues had othe. great and faire tentes made of white felt. This was the place where the Emperour parted companie with his mother: for she went into one part of the land, and the Emperour into another to execute iustice. For there was taken a certaine Concubine of this Emperour, which had poisoned his father to death, at the same time when the Tartars armie was in Hungarie, which, for the same cause returned home. Poisoned ouer, vpon the foresaide Concubine, and many other of her confederates sentence of iudgement was pronounced, and they were put to death. At the same time Ieroslaus the great Duke of Soldai, which

at tent of purple.

at throne of
Iuorie.

The death
of Occoday was
revenge,
of I. Soldai,
which

which is a part of Russia, deceased. For being (as it were) for honours sake, invited to eate and drinke with the Emperours mother, and immediately after the banquet, returning vnto his lodging, he fell sicke, and within tenen dayes, died. And after his death, his body was of a strange blew colour, and it was commonly reported, that the said Duke was poisoned, to the ende that the Tartars might freely and totally possesse his Dukedome.

How the Friars comming at length vnto the Emperour, gaue, and receiued letters. Chap. 31.

Cuyne dissent-
bieth with the
Regates.

Cosmas a Rus-
sian.

The message
of Chingay.

The short, the Tartars brought vs vnto their Emperour, who when he had heard of them, that we were come vnto him, commaunded that we should return, vnto his mother. For he was deter- mined the next day, (as it is abovesaid) to set by a flag of defiance against all pcountreys of the West, which he would haue vs in no case to know. Wherefore returning, we staid some few dayes with his mother, and so returned backe again vnto him. With whom we continued for the space of one whole moneth in such extreme hunger and thirst, that we could scarce hold life and soule together. For the pprovision allowed vs for foure dayes, was scanty sufficient for one day. Neither could we buy vs any sustenance, because the market was too farre off. Howbeit the Lord poulded for vs a Russian goldsmith, named Cosmas, who being greatly in the Emperours fauour, procured vs some sustenance. This man shewed vnto vs the chryone of the Emperour, which hee had made, be- fore it was set in the proper place, and his seale, which he also had franco. Afterward the Emperour sent for vs, giuing vs to vnderstand by Chingay his chief Secretary, that we should write downe our messages & affaires, and should deliuer them vnto him. Which thing we performed accordingly. After many daies he called for vs againe, demanding whether there were any with our Lord the Pope, which vnderstood the Russian, the Saracen, or the Tartarian language? To whom we an- swered, that we had none of those letters or languages. Howbeit, that there were certaine Sara- cens in the land, but inhabiting a great distance from our Lord the Pope. And wee saide, that we thought it most expedient, that when they had written their mindes in the Tartarian language, and had interpreted the meaning thereof vnto vs, we should diligently translate it into our own tongue, and so deliuer both the letter and the translation thereof vnto our Lord the Pope. Then departed they from vs, and went vnto the Emperour. And after the day of S. Martine, we were called for a- gaine. Then Kadac principal agent for the whole empire, and Chingay, and Bala, with diuers o- ther Scribes, came vnto vs, and interpreted the letter word for word. And hauing written it in Latine, they caused vs to interpret vnto them the sentence, to wit if we had erred in any word. And when both letters were written, they made vs to reade them ouer thrise moie, least we should haue mistaken ought. For they said vnto vs: Take heed that ye vnderstand all things thoroughly, for if you should not vnderstand the whole matter aright, it might be some inconuenience. They wrote the said letters also in the Saracen tongue, that there might be some found in our dominions which could reade and interpret them, if need should require.

How they were licensed to depart. Chap. 32.

The Regates
are loath to
gaue any Amb-
assadors
sent from the
Tartars to the
Christians.

And (as our Tartars said vs) the Emperour was purposed to send his ambassadors with vs. Howbeit, he was desirous (as we thought) that we our selues should craue that fauour at his hands. And when one of our Tartars being an ancient man, exhorted vs to make the said petition, we thought it not good for vs, that the Emperour should send his ambassadors. Wherefore we gaue him answer, that it was not for vs to make any such petition, but if it pleased the Emperour of his owne accord to send them, we would diligently (by Gods assistance) see them conducted in safe- tie. Howbeit, we thought it expedient for vs, that they should not goe, and that for diuers cau- ses. First, because we feared, least they, seeing the dissensions and warres which are among vs, should be the moie encouraged to make warre against vs. Secondly, we feared, that they would be instead of spies and intelligencers in our dominions. Thirdly, we misdoubted that they would be slaine by the way. For our nations be arrogant and proud. For when as those seruants (which at the request of the Cardinall, attended vpon vs, namely the legates of Almaine) returned vnto him in the Tartars attire, they were almost stoned in the way, by the Dutch, and were compelled to put off those garments. And it is the Tartars custome, neuer to bee reconciled vnto such as haue slaine their Ambassadors, till they haue reuenged themselves. Fourthly, least they should bee taken from vs by mayne force. Fifthly, because there could come no good by their ambassade, for they were to haue none other commission, or authoritie, but onely to deliuer their Emperours letter vnto the Pope, and to the Princes of Christendome, which very same letters wee our selues

Th

selues
day of
sealed
vnto e
ple. A
our se
would

Th

For the
our sel
Loydes
and we
one the
ued lette
proceede
were wit
vnto Cor
had not
people of
Tartars
namely
the citie
of Saint
foorth
bene rife
Bohemia.
against
ther men
vnto them
they would
Ladys
our commin
ters by vs al

Itiner



magis stultē:
dixitis mihi q
Tartaros, & e
xistis: Cum t
am tanta scrib
simo ducentess
garici vocant,
& distinguitur c
ad Aquilonem,
& portus Soldan

Tartars.
to eat and drink
is dying, he fel
ple colour, and
Tartars might

erour,

rd of them, that
he was deter-
s of the Tartars
ew dapes with
he space of one
tole together.
eicher could we
ounded for vs
; procured vs
e had made, be-
the Emperour
o write downe
ed according-
our Lord the
whom we an-
certaine Sara-
fide, that we
language, and
own tongue,
hen departed
e called for a-
with diuers o-
written it in
in any word.
all we should
ys thronghly
nience. They
ur dominions

ys with vs.
fauour at his
aid petition.
foze we gaue
Emperour of
ucted in safe-
diuers cau-
e among vs,
e they would
e they would
anes (which
returned vnto
e compelled
uch as haue
p should bee
mbassade, for
Emperours
ere were our
selues

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

71

selues had, and we knew right well, that much harme might ensue thereof. Wherefore, the third day after this, namely, upon the feast of Saint Brice, they gaue vs our passe-port and a Letter sealed with the Emperours owne seale, sending vs vnto the Emperours mother, who gaue vnto eche of vs a gowne made of furre-skinnes, with the furre on the outside, and a piece of purple. And our Tartars stole a pache out of euery one of them. And out of that which was giuen vnto our seruant, they stole the better halfe. Which false dealing of theirs, we knew well enough, but would make no words thereof.

November 13.
They are re-
warded with
gifts.

How they returned homewards. Chap. 33.

Then taking our journey to retuene, we traualled all Winter long, lying in the deserts of tentimes upon the snow, except with our feete wee made a piece of ground bare to lye vpon. For there were no trees, but the plaine champaign field. And oftentimes in the morning, we found our selues all covered with snow driuen ouer vs by the winde. And so traualling till the feast of our Lordes Ascension, we arrived at the court of Bathy. Of whom when wee had enquired, what onely that we should diligently deliuer that which the Emperour had written. And, hauing receiued letters for our safe conduct, the thirteenth day after Pentecost, being Saturday, wee were proceeded as farre as Montij, with whome our foresaide associates and seruants remained, which were withheld from vs, and we caused them to be deliuered vnto vs. From hence wee traualled vnto Corrensa, to whom, requiring gifts the second time at our hands, we gaue none, because we had not wherewithall. And hee appointed vs two Comanians, which liued among the common people of the Tartars, to be our guides vnto the citie of Kiow in Russia. Whobest one of our Tartars parted not from vs, till we were past the vtmost gard of the Tartars. But the other guides, namely the Comanians, which were giuen vs by Corrensa, brought vs from the last garde vnto the citie of Kiow, in the space of fixe dapes. And there we arrived fifteene dapes befoze the feast of Saint Iohn Baptist, whereouer, the Citizens of Kiow hauing intelligence of our approach, came forth all of them to meete vs, with great ioy. For they reioiced ouer vs, as ouer men that had bene risen from death to life. So like wise they did vnto vs throughout all Russia, Polonia, and Bohemia. Daniel and his brother Wasilico made vs a ropall feast, and interteined vs with them against our willes for the space of eight dapes. In the meane time, they with their Bishops, and other men of account, being in consultation together about those matters which we had propounded vnto them in our journey towards the Tartars, answered vs with common consent, saying: that they would holde the Pope for their speciall Lord and Father, and the Church of Rome for their Lady & mistresse, confirming like wise al things which they had sent concerning this matter, befoze our coming, by their Abbate. And for the same purpose, they sent their Ambassadors and letters by vs also, vnto our Lord the Pope.

The said jour-
neys of the Le-
gates in return-
ing.

Bathy.

Corrensa,

June 8.
How they
were welcome
ed at their re-
turne.
Balthus and Da-
niel Princes.

Itinerarium fratris Willielmi de Rubruquis de ordine fratrum Minorum, Galli, Anno gratie 1253. ad partes Orientales.



Excellentissimo Domino & Christianissimo, Lodouico Dei gratia Regi Francorum illustri, frater Willielmus de Rubruquis in ordine fratrum Minorum minimus salutem, & semper triumphare in Christo. Scriptum est in Ecclesiastico de sapientie, In terram alienarum gentium transibis, bona & mala in omnibus tentabis. Hoc opus, Domine mi Rex, feci: sed vtinam vt sapiens & non stultus. Multi enim faciunt quod facit sapiens, sed non sapienter, sed magis stulte: de quorum numero timeo me esse. Tamen quocunque modo fecerim; quia dixisti mihi quando recessi a vobis, vt omnia scriberem vobis, quacunque viderem inter Tartaros, & etiam monuisti vt non timerem vobis scribere longas literas, facio quod iniungam tantae scribere maiestati. Nouerit ergo vestra sancta maiestas, quod anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo, quinqueagesimo tertio, nonas Maij ingressi sumus mare Ponti, quod Bulgariici vocant, Maius Mare: & habet mille octo miliaria in longum, vt didici a mercatoribus, & distinguitur quasi in duas partes. Circa medium enim eius sunt duae provinciae terrae, vna ad Aquilonem, & alia ad meridiem. Illa quae est ad meridiem dicitur Synopolis; & est castrum & portus Soldani Turchiae. Quae vero ad Aquilonem est, est Prouincia quaedam, quae nunc dicitur

Ecclesi. 39. ver. 6

dicitur à Latinis *Gafaria*, à Græcis verò qui inhabitant eam *ſper* littus maris dicitur *Caſſaria*, hoc eſt *Caſaria*. Et ſunt promontoria quædam extendentia ſe in mare, & contra meridiem verſus *Synopolim*. Et ſunt trecenta miliaria inter *Synopolim* & *Caſſariam*. Ita quod ſint ſeptingenta miliaria ab iſtis punctis verſus *Conſtantinopolim* in longum & latum: & ſeptingenta verſus Orientem: hoc eſt, *Hiberiam*, quæ eſt provincia *Georgiz*. Ad provinciam *Gafariæ* ſive *Caſariæ* applicuimus, quæ eſt quaſi triangularis, ad Occidentem habens ciuitatem, quæ dicitur *Kerſoua*, in qua fuit Sanctus *Clemens* marterizatus. Et nauigantes corâ ea vidimus inſulam, in qua eſt templum illud quod dicitur *Angelicis* manibus præparatum. In medio verò quaſi in cuspide ad meridiem habet ciuitatem quæ dicitur *Soldaia*, quæ ex tranſuerſo reſpicit *Synopolim*: Et illuc applicant omnes Mercatores venientes de *Turchia* volentes ire ad terras *Aquilonares*, & è contrario venientes de *Roſſia* & terris *Aquilonaribus*, volentes tranſire in *Turchiam*. Illi portant varium & grifiam, & alias pelles pretioſas. Alij portant telas de cotone ſue bombafio, & pannos ſericos & ſpecies aromaticas. Ad Orientem verò illius provincie eſt ciuitas quæ dicitur *Matriga*, vbi cadit fluuius *Tanaïs* in mare *Pontiper* oriſcium habens latitudinem duodecem milliarum. Ille enim fluuius antequam ingrediat in mare *Ponti*, facit quoddam mare verſus *Aquilonem*, habens in latitudine & longitudine ſeptingenta miliaria, nuſquam habens profunditatem vltra ſex paſſus, vnde magna vaſa non ingrediuntur illud. Sed mercatores de *Conſtantinopoli* applicantes ad prædictam ciuitatem *Matertam*, mittunt barcas ſuas vſque ad flumen *Tanaim*, vt emant piſces ſiccatos, ſtiones, thoſas, borbatas, & alios piſces inſinitæ multitudinis. Prædicta verò provincia *Caſſaria* cingitur mari in tribus lateribus: ad Occidentem ſcilicet, vbi eſt *Kerſoua* ciuitas *Clementis*, ad meridiem vbi eſt ciuitas *Soldaia*, ad quam applicuimus, quæ eſt cuſpis provincie, & ad Orientem *Maricandis*, vbi eſt ciuitas *Materta*, & oriſcium *Tanaïs*. Vltra illud oriſcium eſt *Zikia*, quæ non obedit *Tartaris*: Et *Sucui* & *Hiberi* ad Orientem, qui non obediunt *Tartaris*. Poſtea verſus meridiem eſt *Trapeſunda* quæ habet proprium Dominum nomine *Guidonem*, qui eſt de genere imperatorum *Conſtantinopolitanorum*, qui obedit *Tartaris*: poſtea *Synopolis* quæ eſt *Soldani* *Turchiæ* qui ſimiliter obedit: poſtea à terra *Vaſtacij* cuius filius dicitur *Aſtar* ab ſuo materno, qui non obedit, Ab oriſcio *Tanaïs* verſus Occidentem vſque ad *Danubium* totum eſt ſubditum. Etiam vltra *Danubium* verſus *Conſtantinopolim*, *Valakia*, quæ eſt terra *Aſſani*, & minor *Bulgaria* vſque in *Soloniam* omnes ſoluunt eiſtributum. Et etiam vltra tributum conditum ſumperunt annis nuper, tranſactus de qualibet domo ſecurim vnam, & totum frumentum quod inuenerunt in maſſa. Applicuimus ergo *Soldaia* in 12. Kalendas Iunij; & præuenerant nos quidam mercatores de *Conſtantinopoli*, qui dixerunt venturos illos nuncios de terra ſancta volentes ire ad *Sartach*. Ego tamen prædicaueram publicè in *Ramis* *Palmarum* apud Sanctam *Sophiam*, quod non eſſem nuncius, nec veſter, nec alicuius, ſed ibam apud illos incredulos ſecundum regulam noſtram. Tunc cum applicuiſſem, monebant me dicti mercatores vt cautè loquerer, quia dixerunt me eſſe nuncium, & ſi non dicerem me eſſe nuncium, quod non præberetur mihi tranſitus, Tunc loquutus ſum hoc modo ad capitaneos ciuitatis, imò ad vicarios capitaneorum, quia capitanei iuerant ad *Baatu* portantes tributum, & non fuerant adhuc reuerſi. Nos audiuiſſimus, dixi de Domino veſtro *Sartach* in Terra Sancta quod eſſet Chriſtianus: & gauiſi ſunt inde vehementer Chriſtiani, & præcipuè Dominus Rex Francorum Chriſtianiffimus, qui ibi peregrinatur, & pugnat contra *Saracenos*, vt eripiat loca ſancta de manibus eorum: vnde volo ire ad *Sartach*, & portare ei literas Domini Regis, in quibus monet eum de vtilitate totius Chriſtianitatis. Et ipſi receperunt nos gratanter, & dederunt nobis hoſpitiū in eccleſia Episcopali. Et Episcopus ipſius eccleſiæ fuerat ad *Sartach*, qui multa bona dixit mihi de *Sartach*, quæ ego poſtea non inueni. Tunc dederunt nobis optionem vtrum vellemus habere bigas cum bobus ad portandum res noſtras vel equos pro ſummarijs. Et mercatores *Conſtantinopolitani* conſuluerunt mihi quod non acciperem bigas, imò quod emerem proprias bigas coopertas, in quibus apportant *Ruteni* pelles ſuas, & in illis includerem res noſtras quas vellem quotidie deponere, quia ſi acciperem equos, oporteret me in qualibet *Herbergia* deponere & reponere ſuper alios, & præterea equitarem lentiori greſſu iuxta boues. Et tunc acquieui conſilio eorum malo, tum quia fui in itinere vſq; *Sarthach* duobus menſibus, quod potuiſſem vno menſe feciſſe, ſi uiſſem equis. Attuleram mecum de *Conſtantinopoli* fructus & vinum muſcatum, & biſcoctum delicatum de conſilio mercatorum ad præſentandū capitaneis primis, vt facilius pateret mihi tranſitus: quia nullus apud eos reſpicitur rectis oculis, qui venit vacua manu. Quæ omnia poſui in vna biga, quando nō inueni ibi capitaneos ciuitatis, quia dicebāt mihi, quod gratiſſima foret *Sarthach*, ſi poſſim deſerre ea vſq; ad eū. Arripuimus ergo iter tunc circa Kalend. Iunij cum bigis noſtris quatuor coopertis & cū alijs duabus quas accepimus ab eis. In quibus portabantur lectiſternia ad dormiendū de nocte, & quinque equos dabant nobis ad equitandum. Eramus enim quinque perſonæ.

NVſq;
 Nthian
 quod habet
 bet paſcere
 regiones v
 ſine aquis
 qua dormi
 veniunt in
 gatorum,
 alba & pul
 ſuperius dec
 polimitorio
 & beſtias. E
 Ego enim n
 & quando de
 dibus ad mi
 mum: Vnde
 Axis bigæ er
 ſuper bigam
 quantitatē v
 dinem de ſimi
 riunt illam ciſſi
 penetrari pluui
 ponunt totam
 quas trahunt c
 bigis. Quand
 ridiem; & conſ
 iactum lapidis:

is dicitur Castaria,
contra meridiem
ita quod sint sep-
tem: & septingen-
tariam Gasa-
abens ciuitatem,
in corā ea vidimus
in medio verò
uerso respicit Sy-
sire ad terras A-
entes transire in
ante telas de cor-
dillius provincie
ficiū habens la-
mare Ponti, facit
inginta miliaria,
egrediuntur illud.
ertam, mittunt
borbatas, & a-
in tribus lateri-
est ciuitas Sol-
is, vbi est ciuitas
tratis: Et Suci
trapefunda que
Constantino-
qui similiter o-
edit, Ab orifi-
vltiā Danubi-
vsque in Solo-
nperunt annis
inuenerunt in
uidam merra-
volentes ire ad
phiam, quod
dum regulam
er, quia dixe-
mihi transi-
neorum, quia
s audiuius,
sunt inde ve-
i ibi peregre-
de volo ire ad
prius Christi-
Episcopali
h, quæ ego
um bobus ad
uniconsulue-
s, in quibus
deponere,
super alios,
malo, tum
se, si iussim
um delicat-
bitransiunt;
ui in vna bi-
et Sathach,
gis nostris
lectiterna
nim quinq;
personæ.

personæ. Ego & socius meus frater Bartholomeus de Cremona, & Goset lator presentium, & homo dei Turgemannus, & puer Nicolaus, quem emeram Constantinopoli de nostra elec-
mosyna. Dederunt etiam duos homines qui ducebant bigas & custodiebant boues & equos.
Sunt autem alta promontoria super Mare à Kersoua vsque ad orificium Tanais; & sunt qua-
draginta castella inter Kersouam & Soldaiam, quorum quodlibet fere habet proprium idioma:
inter quos erant multi Gotti, quorum idioma est Teutonicum. Post illa montana versus A-
quilonem est pulcherrima sylua in planicie, plena fontibus & riuiis: Et post illam syluam
est planicies maxima, quæ durat per quinque dietas vsque ad extremitatem illius provincie
ad aquilonem, quæ coarctatur habens Mare ad Orientem & Occidentem: Ita quod est vnum
fossatum magnum ab vno Mari vsque ad aliud. In illa planicie solebant esse Comani ante-
quam venirent Tartari, & cogeant ciuitates prædictas & castra vt darent eis tributum, Et
venerunt Tartari, tanta multitudo Comanorum intrauit provinciam illam, qui omnes fu-
gerunt vsque ad ripam Maris, quod comedebant se mutuo viuui morientes: secundum quod
narravit mihi quidam mercator, qui hoc vidit: Quod viuui deuorabant & lacerabant denti-
bus carnes crudas mortuorum, sicut canes cadauera. Versus extremitatem illius provincie
inurat lacum, efficit salem durum ad modum glaciei. Et de illis salinis habent Baacu & Sar-
tach magnos redditus: quia de tota Russia veniunt illuc pro sale: & de qualibet biga orusta
daunt duas telas de cortone valentes dimidiam Ipperperam. Veniunt & per Mare multæ naues
pro sale, quæ omnes dant tributum secundum sui quantitatem. Postquam ergo rec. simus
de Soldaia, tertia die inuenimus Tartaros: inter quos cum intraueram, visum fuit mihi
recte quod ingrederer quoddam aliud seculum, Quorum vitam & mores vobis describam
prout possum.

De Tartaris & domibus eorum.

Nvsquam habent manentem ciuitatem, sed futuram ignorant, Inter se diuiserunt Scy-
thiam, quæ durat à Danubio vsque ad ortum solis. Et quilibet Capitaneus, secundum
quod habet plures vel pauciores homines sub se, scit terminos pascuorum suorum, & vbi de-
bet pascere hyeme & æstate, vere & autumno. In hyeme enim descendunt ad calidiores
regiones versus meridiem. In æstate ascendunt ad frigidiore versus aquilonem. Loca pascuosa
sine aquis pascunt in hyeme quando est ibi nix, quia niuem habent pro aqua. Domm in
qua dormiunt fundant super rotam de virgis cancellatis, cuius tigna sunt de virgis, & con-
veniunt in vnam paruulam rotam superius, de qua ascendit collum sursum tanquam sumi-
gatorium, quam cooperiunt filtro albo: & frequentius imbuunt etiam filtrum calce vel terra
alba & puluere ossium, vt albens splendeat, & aliquando nigro. Et filtrum illud circa collum
superius decorant pulchra varietate picturæ. Ante ostium similiter suspendunt filtrum opere
polimitario variatum. Consumunt enim filtrum coloratum in faciendo vites & arbores, aues
& bestias. Et faciunt tales domos ita magnas, quod habent triginta pedes in latitudine.
Ego enim mensuraui semel latitudinem inter vestigia rotarum vnus bigæ viginti pedum
& quando domus erat super bigam excedebat extra rotas in vtroque latere quinque pe-
dibus ad minus. Ego numeravi in vna biga viginti duos boues trahentes vnam do-
mum: Vnde decem in vno ordine secundum latitudinem bigæ, & alios vnde decem ante illos:
Axis bigæ erat magnus ad modum arboris naui: Et vnus homo stabat in ostio domus
super bigam minans boues. Insuper faciunt quadrangulos de virgulis fissis attenuatis ad
quantitatem vnus arcæ magnæ: & postea de vna extremitate ad aliam eleuant testu-
dinem de similibus virgis, & ostiolum faciunt in anteriori extremitate: & postea coope-
riunt illam cistam suæ domuncule filtro nigro imburo seuo siue lacte ouino, ne possit
penetrari pluuia: quod similiter decorant opere polimitario vel plumario. Et in talibus arcibus
ponunt totam suppellectilem suam & thesaurum: quas ligant fortiter super bigas alteras
quas trahunt caneli, vt possint transuadare flumina. Tales arcas nunquam deponunt de
bigis. Quando deponunt domus suas mansionarias, semper vertunt portam ad me-
ridiem; & consequenter collocant bigas cum arcibus hinc & inde prope domum ad dimidium
iactum lapidis: ita quod domus stat inter duos ordines bigarum quasi inter duos muros.

[Nota.

Matronæ faciunt sibi pulcherrimas bigas, quas nescire vobis describere nisi per picturam. Imo omnia depinxissem vobis si scivissem pingere. Vnus diues Moal siue Tartar habet bene tales bigas cum arcis ducentas vel centum, Baatu habet sexdecem vxores: qualibet habet vnam magnam domum, exceptis alijs paruis, quas collocant post magnam, quæ sunt quasi camera; in quibus habitant puellæ. Ad quamlibet istarum domorum appendunt ducentæ bigæ. Et quando deponunt domus, prima vxor deponit suam curiam in capite occidentali, & postea alix secundum ordinem suum: ita quod vltima vxor erit in capite Orientali; & erit spaciū inter curiam vnus domina & alterius, iactus vnus lapidis. Vnde curia vnus diu uis Moal apparebit quasi vna magna Villa: tunc paucissimi viri erunt in ea. Vna muliercula ducent 20. bigas vel 30. Terra enim plana est. Et ligant bigas cum bobus vel camelis vnam post aliam: & sedebit muliercula in anteriori minans bouem, & omnes alæ pari gressu sequentur. Si contingat venire ad aliquem malum passum, solunt eas & transducunt sigillatim: Vadunt enim lento gressu, sicut agnus vel bos potest ambulare.

De lectis eorum & poculis.

Postquam deposuerint domus versa porta ad meridiem, collocant lectum domini ad partem aquilonarem, Locus mulierum est semper ad latus Orientale hoc est ad sinistram domini domus cum sedet in lecto suo versa facie ad meridiem: locus verò virorum ad latus occidentale, hoc est ad dextrum. Viri ingredienti domum nullo modo suspenderent pharetram ad partem mulierum, Et super caput Domini est semper vna imago quasi puppa & statuuncula de filtro, quam vocant fratrem domini: alia similis super caput domine, quam vocant fratrem dominæ, affixis pariet: & superius inter vtramque illarum est vna paruula, mæscienta, quæ est quasi cussus totius domus. Domina domus ponit ad latus suum dextrum ad pedes lecti in eminenti loco pelliculam heedinam impletam lana vel alia materia, & iuxta illam statuunculam paruulam respicientem famulas & mulieres. Iuxta osium ad partem mulieris est iterum alia imago cum vberc vaccino, pro mulieribus quæ mungunt vaccas. De officio famularum est mungere vaccas. Ad aliud latus ostij versus viros est alia statua cum vberc equæ pro viris qui mungunt equas. Et cum conuenerint ad potandum primo spargunt de potu illi imagini, quæ est super caput domini: postea alijs imaginibus per ordinem: postea exit minister domum cum ciphis & potu, & spargit ter ad meridiem, qualibet vice stendendo genus: & hoc ad reuerentiam ignis: postea ad Orientem ad reuerentiam aeris: postea ad Occidentem ad reuerentiam aquæ: ad aquilonem proijciunt pro mortuis. Quando tenet dominus ciphum in manu & debet bibere, tunc primo antequam bibat, infundit terræ partem suam. Si bibit sedens super equum, infundit antequam bibat, super collum vel crinem equi. Postquam vero cum duobus ciphis & totidem patenis ut deferant potum domino & vxori sedenti iuxta eum sursum in lecto. Et cum habet plures vxores, illa cum qua dormit in nocte sedet iuxta eum in die: & oportet quod omnes alæ veniant ad domum illam illa die ad bibendum: & ibi tenetur curia illa die: & xenia quæ deferuntur, illa deponuntur in thesauris illius dominæ. Bancus ibi est cum vtre lactis vel cum alio potu & cum ciphis.

De potibus eorum & qualiter prouocant alios ad bibendum.

Faciunt in hyeme optimum potum, de risio, de millio, de melle: claret sicut vinum, Et deferunt eis vinum à remotis partibus. In æstate non curant nisi de Cosinos. Stac semper infra domum ad introitum portæ, & iuxta illud stat citharista cum citherula sua, Citheras & vielas nostras non vidi ibi, sed multa alia instrumenta, quæ apud nos non habentur. Et cum incipit bibere tunc vnus ministrorum exclamat alta voce, H A: & citharista percutit citharam. Et quando faciunt festum magnum, tunc omnes plaudunt manibus & saltant ad vocem citharæ, viri coram Domino, & mulieres coram domina. Et postquam dominus biberit, tunc exclamat minister sicut prius, & tacet citharista: tunc bibunt omnes in circitu viri & mulieres: & aliquando bibunt ceratim valde turpiter & gulse, Et quando volunt aliquem prouocare ad potum arripiunt eum per aures & trahunt fortiter ut dilatent ei guttur, & plaudunt & saltant coram eo. Item cum aliqui volunt facere magnum festum & gaudium, vnus accipit ciphum plenum, & alij duo sunt ei à dextris & sinistris: & sic illi tres veniunt cantantes vsque ad illum cui debent porrigere ciphum, & cantant & saltant coram eo: & cum porrigit manum ad recipiendum ciphum, ipsi subito

Similiter in
Florentia.

T
sub
ciph
cant

D
Tame
Vnde
& susp
intesti
reliqu
biliter
carne v
nutatim
relli vel
cocta in
titudine
quod pla
cam solu
garcionl
bursa qua
quando n

Ipsum Ce
Iram ad
sum quas
mungi. Et
tens parum
tudine lactis
vrem siue b
inferius sicut
sicut vinum n
gustant illud
vinum raspei
guam lactis ar
bilis capita:
cosmos ad vsum
enim est: quod
pulli equi non
quod omnino
est remanet sup
dantur ferus, &
suavis potus & t
quorum vnusq
lac trium milliur
dant tertiam part
quartu tertie dici
decoctione, & po
sal in butiro: tam
mem. Re siduū lac
& bulliunt illud,
durum sicut scoria

per pieturam.
ar habet bene
qualibet habet
quæ sunt quasi
dent ducentæ
te occidentali,
ientali: & erit
curia vnus di
na muliercula
amelis vnam
ari gressu fe
ducunt sigil-

omini ad pat-
finistrum do-
ad latus oc-
nt pharetram
& statuuncula
ocant fratrem
cens, quæ est
s lecti in emi-
statuuncula: in
it iterum alia
minarum est
pro viris qui
magini, quæ
uister domum
hoc ad reue-
ad reueren-
ciphum in
Si bibit se-
stquam vero
ci duo famuli
i iuxta cum
iuxta cum in
& ibi tene-
minæ, Ban-

m, Et defer-
emper infra
ras & vielas
n incipit bi-
. Et quando
vi, viri coram
miniister si-
ndo bibunt
ripiunt cum
em cum ali-
lij duo sunt
it porrigere
ciphum, ipsi
subito

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

75

subito resiliunt, & iterum sicut prius reuertuntur, & sic illudunt ei ter vel quater retrahendo ciphum, donec fuerit bene exhilaratus & bonum habeat appetitum, & tunc dant ei ciphum, & cantant & plaudunt manibus & terunt pedibus donec biberit,

De cibarijs eorum.

DE cibis & victualibus eorum noueritis, quod indifferenter comedunt omnia morticina sua. Et inter tor pecora & armenta non potest esse quin multa animalia moriantur. Tamen in ætate quamdiu durat eis cosmos, hoc est lac equinum, non curant de alio cibo. Vade tunc si contingat eis mori bouem vel equum, sicant carnes scindendo per tenues pecias & suspendendo ad solem & veniunt, quæ statim sine sale sicantur absque aliquo fxtore. De intestinis equorum faciunt andulges meliores quàm de porcis: quas comedunt recentes: biliter sicant ad fumum. De pellibus boui faciunt vtres magnos, quos miracarne vnus arietis dant comedere quinquaginta hominibus vel centum. Scindunt enim mitellum vel fureinula, quas proprijs faciunt ad hoc, cum qua solent comedere pira & poma cocta in vino, porrigunt cuilibet circumstantium buccellam vnã vel duas, secundum multitudinem comedentium. Dominus antequam proponitur caro arietis in primo ipse accipie quod placet ei: & etiam si dat alicui partem specialem, oportet quod accipiens comedat eam solus, & nemini licet dare ei. Si non potest totum comedere, asportat secum, vel dat garcioni suo, si est presens, qui custodiat ei: sin aliter, recondit in saptargat suo, hoc est in bursa quadrata, quam portant ad recondendum omnia talia, in qua & ossa recondunt, quando non habent spaciũ bene rodendi ea, vt postea rodant, ne pereat aliquid de cibo.

Quomodo faciunt Cosmos.

Ipsũ Cosmos, hoc est lac iumentinum fit hoc modo. Extendunt cordam longam super terram quas volunt mungere. Tunc stant matres iuxta pullos suos & permittunt se pacifice mungi. Et si aliqua est nimis indomita, tunc accipit vnus homo pullum & supponit ei permittit tũdine lactis, quod est ita dulce sicut vaccinum, dum est recens, fundunt illud in magnum vtrem siue buccellam, & incipiunt illud concutere cum ligno ad hoc aptato, quod grossum est inferius sicut caput hominis & cauatũ subtus: & quam cito concutiunt illud, incipit bullire sicut vinum nouũ, & acescere siue fermentari, & excutiunt illud donec extrahant butirum. Tunc gustant illud; & quando est temperate pingitium bibunt: pungit enim super linguam sicut vinum raspei dum bibitur. Et postquam homo cessat bibere, relinquit saporem super lin-bilia capita: multum etiam prouocat vrinam. Faciunt etiam Cara-cosmos, hoc est nigrum cosmos ad vsum magnorum dominorum, hoc modo. Lac equinum non coagulatur. Ratio enim est: quod nullius animalis lactis si cuius feter venter non inuenitur coagulũ. In ventre pulli equi non inuenitur: vnde lac equæ non coagulatur. Concutiunt ergo lac in tantum, quod omnino quod spissum est in eo vadat ad fundum recta, sicut fæces vini, & quod purum est remanet superius, & est sicut serum, & sicut multum album. Fæces sunt albæ multum, & dantur feruis, & faciunt multum dormire. Illud clarum bibunt domini: & est pro certo valde suavis potus & bonæ efficaciz. Baatu habet & o. casalia circa herbergiam suam ad vnam dietam, quorum vnumquodq; qualibet die feruit ei de tali lacte centum equarum, hoc est, qualibet die lac trium millium equarũ, excepto alio lacte albo, quod deferunt alij. Sicut enim in Syria rustici dant tertiam partem fructuum, quam ipsi afferunt ad curias dominorum suorum, ita & isti lac equarũ tertie dici. De lacte vaccino primò extrahunt butyrũ & bulliunt illud vsque ad perfectũ decoctionẽ, & postea recondunt illud in vtribus arietinis quos ad hoc reseruant, Et non ponunt sal in butiro: tamen propter magnam decoctionẽ non putrescit: & reseruant illud contra hyemem. Re siduũ lac quod remanet post butirum permittunt acescere quantum acius fieri potest & bulliunt illud, & coagulatur bulliendo, & coagulũ illud desiccant ad solem, & efficiunt durum sicut scoria ferri. Quod recondunt in saccis contra hyemem: tempore hyemali quando deficit

deficit eis lac, ponunt illud acre coagulatum, quod ipsi vocant gri-ve, in vtre, & super infundunt aquam calidam, & concurunt fortiter donec illud resoluitur in aqua; quæ ex illo efficitur tota acetosa, & illam aquam bibunt loco lactis. Summè cauent ne bibant aquam puram:

De bestiis quas comedunt, & de vestibus, ac de venatione eorum.

Magni domini habent casalia versus meridiem, de quibus afferunt eis milium & farinam contra hyemem, pauperes procurant sibi pro arietibus & pellibus commutando. Sclauī etiam implent ventrem suum aqua crassa, & hæc contenti sunt. Mures cum longis caudis non comedunt & omne genus murium habens cutram caudam. Sunt etiam ibi multæ marmotes, quas ipsi vocant Sogur: quæ conueniunt in vna fouea in hyeme 20. vel 30. pariter, & dormiunt sex mensibus: quas capiunt in magna multitudine. Sunt etiam ibi, cuniculi habentes longam caudam sicut canis; & in summitate caudæ habent pilos nigros & albos. Habent & multas alias bestiolas bonas ad comedendum: quas ipsi valde bene discernunt. Cervos non vidi ibi, lepores paucos vidi, gasefos multos. Asinos syluestres vidi in magna multitudine, qui sunt quasi multi. Vidi & aliud genus animalis quod dicitur Attrak, quod habet recte corpus arietis & cornua torta, sed tantæ quantitatis, quod vix poteram vna manu leuare duo conuina: & faciunt de cornibus illis cipsios magnos. Habent falcones, gisfalcones, & herodios in magna multitudine: quos omnes portant super manum dexteram: & ponunt semper falcor: vnam corrigiam paruulam circa collum, quæ pendet ei vsque ad medietatem pectoris: per quam etiam proijciunt cum ad prædam, inclinant cum sinistra manu caput & pectus falconis, ne veberetur à vento, vel ne feratur sursum. Magnum ergo partem victus sui acquirunt venatione. De vestibus & habitu eorum nouerimus, quod de Cataya & alijs regionibus Orientis, & etiam de Perside & alijs regionibus austri veniunt eis panni serici & aurei, & telæ de bambasio, quibus induuntur in ætate. De Russia, de Moxel, & Maiore Bulgaria & Pascatir, quæ est maior Hungaria, & Kersis: (quæ omnes sunt regiones ad Aquilonem & plenæ syluis) & alijs multis regionibus ad latus aquilonare, quæ eis obediunt, adducuntur eis pelles preciosæ multi generis: quas nunquā vidi in partibus nostris: Quibus induuntur in hyeme. Et faciunt semper in hyeme duas pellicæ: ad minus: vnam, cuius pilus est ad carnem: aliam cuius pilus est extra contra ventum & niues, quæ multoties sunt de pellibus lupinis vel vulpibus vel papionibus. Et dum sedent in domo habent aliam delicatorem. Pauperes faciunt illas exteriores de canibus & capris. Quum volunt venari feras, conueniunt magna multitudo & circundant regionem in qua sciunt feras esse, & paulatim appropinquant sibi, donec concludant feras inter se quasi infra circulum, & tunc sagitant ad eas, faciunt etiam braccas de pellibus. Diuites etiam surrant vestes suas de stupra fetæ, quæ est supra modum mollis, & leuis & calida. Pauperes surrant vestes de tela de bambasio, de delicatiori lana quam possunt extrahere: de grossiori faciunt sitrum ad cooperiendum domos suas & ciuitas, & ad lectisternia. De lana etiam & tertia parte pilorum equi admixta, faciunt cordas suas. De sitro etiam faciunt paucellas sub tellis, & capas contra pluuiam, Vnde multum expendant de lana. Habitu virorum vidistis.

Maiores
Hungaria.

Nota.

De rasura virorum & ornatu mulierum.

Viri radunt in summitate capitis quadrangulum, & ab anterioribus angulis ducunt rasuram cillis capitis vsque ad tempora. Radunt etiam tempora & collum vsque ad summum concauitatis ceruicis: & frontem anteriorem vsque ad frontinellam, super quam relinquunt manipulum pilorum descendentium vsque ad supercilia: In angulis occipitis relinquunt crines, quibus faciunt tricas, quas succingunt nodando vsque ad aures. Et habitus puellarum non differt ab habitu virorum, nisi quod aliquantulum est longior. Sed in crastino postquam est nupta radit caluariam suam à medietate capitis versus frontem, & habet tunicam latam sicut cucullam monialis, & per omnia latiore & longiore, fissam ante, quam ligat sub dextro latere. In hoc enim differunt Tartari à Turcis: quod Turci ligant tunicas suas ad sinistram, Tartari semper ad dextram. Postea habent ornamentum capitis, quod vocant botra, quod fit de cortice arboris vel alia materia, quam possunt inuenire, leuiore: & est grossum & rotundum, quantum potest duabus manibus complecti; longum vero vnus cubiti & plus, quadratum superius, sicut capitellum vnus columæ. Istud botra cooperiunt panno serico precioso; & est concauum interius: & super capitellum in medio

DE iustici
mittere,
ad curiam dom
statim absque
nem puniunt e
matus est à plu
& etiam coitur

uper infundunt
lo efficitur tota
puram.

C

lum & forisam
urando. Sclau
gis caudis non
ultra marmotes,
pariter, & dor-
muli habentes
bos. Habent &
t. Cercos non
ultitudine, qui
de corpus arie-
duo coquina: &
adios in magna
falcor vnam
per quam etim
ne veberetur à
ne. De vestibus
m de Perside &
us induuntur in
garia, & Kersis:
ibus ad latus a-
nunquã vidi in
as pelliceas ad
entum & niues,
edent in domo
espis. Quum
qua sciunt feras
a circuli, &
vestes suas de
de rela de
ilum ad coo-
pilotum equi
ontra pluuiam,

ngulis ducunt
illum vsque ad
, super quam
ngulis occipitis
ad aures. Et
longior. Sed
frontem, &
giorem, sissam
is: quod Turci
ornamentum
am possunt in-
pus completi
olumina. Istud
capitellum in
medio

medio vel super quadraturâ illam ponunt virgulam de calamis pennarum vel cannis gracilibus longitudinis scilicet vnius cubiti & plus: & illam sibi virgulam ornant superius de pennis pa-
dominâ istud ornamentum ponunt in summitate capitis quasi in nodo vno & reponunt in illo botta, quod
que foramen habet in summitate capitis quasi in nodo vno & reponunt in illo botta, quod
a parte posteriori ad summitatem capitis quasi in nodo vno & reponunt in illo botta, quod
stea foriter ligant sub gutture. Vnde quum equitant plures dominâ simul & videntur à longe,
apparent milites, habentes galeas in capitibus cum lanceis eleuatir. Illud enim botta apparet
galea de super leucea. Et sedent omnes mulieres super equos sicut viti diuificantes coxas:
& ligant cucullas suas panno serico aerij coloris super renes, & alia fascia stringunt ad manillas:
& ligant vnam peciam albam sub oculis, quæ descendit vsque ad pectus. Et sunt mulieres
mixæ pingui- dinis, & quæ minus habet de naso pulchrior reputatur. Deturpant etiam turpiter
pinguedin: facies suas: nunquam cubant in lecto pro puerperio,

De officio mulierum, & operibus earum, ac de nuptijs earum.

Officium feminarum est ducere bigas, ponere domus super eas & deponere, mungere
ovaceas, facere butiurum & griur, parare pelles, & consuere eas, quas consuunt filo de-
neruis. diuidunt enim neruos in minuta fila, & postea illa contorqueunt in vnum longum fi-
lum. Consuunt etiam soculares & soccos & alias vestes. Vestes vero nunquam lauant, quia
dicunt quod Deus tunc irascitur, & quod fiant tonitrua si suspendantur ad sicandum: Imo
lauantes verberant & eis auferunt. Tonitrua supra modum timent: tunc omnes extraneos e-
mittunt de domibus suis; & inuoluunt se in filtris nigris, in quibus latitant, donec transferit.
Nunquã etiã lauant scutellos, imo carne cocta aluẽ in quo debent ponere eam lauant brodio
bulliente de caldaria, & postea refundunt in caldariam. faciunt & filtrum & cooperiunt domos.
Viri faciunt solum arcus & sagittas, fabricant strepas & strana, & faciunt cellas, carpentant
domos & bigas: custodiunt equos & mungunt equas, concutiunt ipsum colmos & lac equi-
num, faciunt vtres in quibus reconditur: custodiunt etiam camelos, & onerant eos. Oues Pellium parat
outum inspissato & lasso parant pelles. Cum volunt manus vel caput lauare implent os
suum aqua & paulatim fundunt de ore suo super manus, & eadem humectant crines
suos, & lauant caput suum. De nuptijs eorum noueritis, quod nemo habet ibi vxorem nisi
suos, & lauant caput suum. Denuptijs eorum noueritis, quod nemo habet ibi vxorem nisi
emat eam: vnde aliquando sunt puellæ multum aduultæ ante quam nubant: semper e-
nim tenent eas parentes, donec vendant eas. Seruant etiam gradus consanguinitatis pri-
mum & secundum: nullum autem seruant affinitatis. Habent enim simul vel successiue
duas sorores. Nulla vidua nubit inter eos, hac ratione; quia credunt quod omnes qui seruiunt
eis in hac vita seruiunt in futura. Vnde de vidua credunt, quod semper reuertitur post mortem ad
primum maritum. Vnde accidit turpis consuetudo inter eos: quod filius scilicet ducit aliquando
omnes vxores patris sui, excepta matre. Curia enim patris & matris semper accidit iuniori filio.
Vnde oportet quod ipse provideat omnibus vxoribus patris sui, quia adueniunt eæ cum curia
paterna. Et tunc si vult vitare se pro vxoribus, quia non reputat sibi iniuriam, si reuertatur
ad patrem post mortem. Cum ergo aliquis fecerit pactum cum aliquo de filia accipienda,
facit pater puellæ conniuium, & illa fugit ad consanguineos, vt ibi lateat: Tunc pater
dicit, Ecce filia mea tua est, accipe eam vbicunque inueneris: Tunc ille quærit eam cum
amicis suis, donec inueniat eam, & oportet, quod vi capiat eam, & ducat eam quasi violenter
ad domum.

De iusticijs eorum & iudicijs, et de morte ac sepultura eorum.

De iusticijs eorum noueritis, quod quando duo homines pugnant, nemo audet se inter-
mittere. Etiam pater non audet inuare filium. Sed qui peiorem partem habet, appellat
ad curiam domini. Et si alius post appellationem tangat eum, interficitur. Sed oportet quod
statim absque dilatione vadat: Et ille qui passus est iniuriam ducit eum quæsi captiuum. Nemi-
nem puniunt capitali sententia, nisi deprehensus fuerit in facto, vel confessus. Sed quum dis-
matus est à pluribus, tunc torquent eum, vt confiteatur. Homicidiũ puniunt capitali sententia,
& etiam coitum cum non sua. Non suam dico vel vxorem vel famulam: Sua enim sclaua licet vi
prouit

prout liber. Item enorme furtum puniunt morte. Pro leui furto, sicut pro vno ariete, dummodo non fuerit sæpe deprehensus in hoc, verberant crudeliter. Et si dant centum ictus oportet quod habeant centum baculos, de illis dico, qui verberantur sententia curiæ. Item falsos nuncios, quia faciunt se nuncios & non sunt, interficiunt. Item sacrilegas, de quibus dicam vobis postea plenius, quia tales reputant veneficas. Quando aliquis moritur plangunt vehementer ululando: & tunc sunt liberi quod non dant vectigal vsque ad annum. Et si quis interest morti alicujus adulti, non ingreditur domum ipsius Mangucham vsque ad annum. Si paruulus est qui moritur, non ingreditur vsque post lunationem. Iuxta sepulcrum defuncti semper relinquunt domum vnani. Si est de nobilibus, hoc est de genere Chingis, qui fuit primus pater & dominus eorum, illius qui moritur ignoratur sepultura: & semper circa loca illa vbi sepeliunt nobiles suos est vna herbergia hominum custodientium sepulturas. Non intellexi quod ipsi reco-
dunt thesaurum cum mortuis. Comani faciunt magnum tumulum super defunctum & erigunt ei statum versafacie ad orientem, tenentem ciphum in manu sua ante vinbelicum, fabricant & diuitibus pyramides, id est domunculas acutas: & alicubi vidi magnas turres de tegulis coctis: alicubi lapideas domos, quamuis lapides non inueniantur ibi. Vidi quandam nouiter defunctum, cui suspendebant pelles sexdecem equorum, ad quolibet latus mundi quatuor inter peticas altas: & apposuerunt ei cosmos vt biberet, & carnes vt comederet: & tamen dicebant de illo quod fuerat baptizatus. Alias vidi sepulturas versus orientem. Areas scilicet magnas structas lapidibus, aliquas rotundas, aliquas quadratas, & postea quatuor lapides longos erectos ad quatuor regiones mundi circa aream. Et vbi aliquis infirmatur cubat in lecto & ponit signum super domum suam, quod ibi est infirmus, & quod nullus ingreditur: vnde nullus visitat infirmum nisi seruicus eius. Quando etiam aliquis de magnis curijs infirmatur, ponunt custodes longe circa curiam, qui infra illos terminos ueminem permittunt transire: timent enim ne mali spiritus vel ventus veniant cum ingredientibus. Ipsos diuinitores vocant tanquam sacerdotes suos.

Qualiter ingressi sunt inter Tartaros, & de *ingratitude eorum.*

Quando ergo ingressi sumus inter illos barbaros, visum fuit mihi, vt dixi superius, quod ingrederetur aliud sæculum. Circumdederunt enim nos in equis postquam diu fecerant nos expectare sedentes in ymbra sub bigis nigris. Prima quæstio fuit, vtrum vnquam fuisset inter eos. habito quod non: incepterunt impudenter petere de cibarijs nostris, & dedimus de pane biscocto & vino quod attuleramus nobiscum de villa: & potata vna lagena vini, petierunt aliam, dicentes, quod homo non ingreditur domum vno pede, non dedimus eis, exculantes nos quod parum haberemus. Tunc quæsiuerunt vnde veniremus, & quo vellemus ire. dixi eis superiora verba, quod audieramus de Sartach, quod esset Christianus, & quod vellem ire ad eum, quia habebam deferre ei literas vestras. Ipsi diligenter quæsiuerunt, vtrum irem de mea voluntate, vel vtrum mitterer. Ego respondi quod nemo coegit me ad eundem, nec iussit nisi voluissim: vnde de mea voluntate ibam, & etiam de voluntate superioris mei. Bene caui, quod nunquam dixi, me esse nuncium vestrum, Tunc quæsiuerunt quid esset in bigis, vtrum esset aurum vel argentum, vel vestes preciosæ, quas deferrem Sartach. Ego respondi, quod Sartach videret quid deferremus ei, quando perueniremus ad eum; & quod non intererat eorum ista quærere: sed facerent me deduci vsque ad capitaneum suum, & ipse si vellet mihi præbere ducatum vsque ad Sartach faceret: sin minus, reuerterer. Erat enim in illa provincia vnus consanguineus Baatur, nomine Scacatai, cui dominus imperator Constantinopolitanus mittebat literas deprecatorias, quod me permitteret transire, Tunc ipsi acquieuerunt, præbentes nobis equos & boues & duos homines, qui deducerent nos. Et alij qui adduxerant nos sunt reuersi. Prius tamen antequam prædicta darent, fecerunt nos diu expectare petentes de pane nostro pro parvulis suis: Et omnia quæ videbant super famulos nostros, cultellos, chirothecas, burfas, corrigias, omnia admirantes & volentes habere. Excusabam me, quia longa nobis restabat via, nec debebamus ira cito spoliare nos rebus necessarijs ad tantam viam perficiendam. Tunc dicebant quod essem barrator. Verum est quod nihil abstulerint vi: Sed valde importune & impudenter perunt quæ vident. Et si dat homo eis perdit, quia sunt ingrati. Reputant te dominos mundi, & videtur eis, quod nihil debeat eis negari ab aliquo. Sin non dat, & postea indiget seruitio eorum, male ministrant ei. Dederunt nobis bibere de lacte suo vaccino, a quo contractum erat butyrum, acetoso valde, quod ipsi vocant Apram: & sic recessimus ab eis. Et visum fuit mihi recte, quod euassim de manibus demonum. In crastino peruenimus ad capitaneum, Ex quo recessimus a Soldaia vsque ad Sartach in duobus mensibus nunquam iacui-

mus

IN vigilia Pentecostæ cum daretur schismatice sic ut detulerunt nobis quodam defuncti comederemus ea omnia ignorabant uerunt & ipsi & alios bibere cosm-

T
mus
villan
studiu
suda
videb

M
& greg
mines h
tem tian
quid op
lam erat
nos inter
nostris, &
ante dom
vnum fla
mis & alij
Sic tamen
lam in mar
ter oculos
guento nig
supradicta
moniri ab
eum vt dig
nec eratore
bam aliqui
Tunc fecit r
etiam et liter
eas Soldaia
literas Græc
Christiani er
suam, non b
eorum recon
mus adhuc su
illud, quod d
Sartach. Dixi
cabilia. Quæ
quæ? Quia lib
lius erat inge
Tunc assignau
gare secum, do
ratoris; & iui

re, dum modo
oportet quod
illos nuncios
vobis poslea
er viulando:
morti alicujus
est qui mori-
elinquit do-
& dominus
liunt nobiles
id ipsi recou-
um & erigunt
m. fabricant
de regulis
endam noui-
mundi qua-
ret: & tamen
Areas scilicet
quatuor lapi-
s infirmatur
od nullus in-
s de magna
eminem per-
ipfos di-

erius, quod
diu fecerant
m fuissimus
dedimus de
ni, petierunt
ulantes nos
ixi eis supe-
ire ad eum,
mea volun-
tem nisi vo-
caui, quod
um esset au-
quod Sartach
eorum ista
rabere du-
mos consan-
tebat lite-
es nobis e-
unt reuerfi,
bane nostro
cas, burfas,
bis restabat
am. Tunc
ortune &
it te domi-
ea indigeat
o, a quo
sab eis. Et
mus ad ca-
uam iacui-
mus

mus in domo nec in tentorio, sed semper sub dio, vel sub bigis nostris, nec vidimus aliquam villam, vel vestigium alicujus ædificij vbi fuisset villa, nisi tumbas Conjanorū in maxima inul- tudine. Illo sero dedit nobis garcio qui ducebat nos bibere cosmos; ad cuius haustum totus sudauit propter horrorem & nouitatem, quia nunquam biberam de eo, valde tamen sapidum videbatur mihi, sicut vere est.

De curia Scacatay, & quod Christiani non bibunt cosmos.

MANE ergo obvlauimus bigis Scacatay onustis domibus. Et videbatur mihi quod obuiaret mihi ciuitas magna. Mirabar etiam super multitudine amentorum boum & equorum & gregum ouium: paucos videbam homines qui ista gubernarent. vnde inquisiui quot homines transueramus in alla herbergia. Tunc incepit mihi dicere garcio qui ducebat nos, quod ali- quid oporteret Scacatay dare: & ipse fecit nos stare, & præcessit nuncios aduentum nostrum. nos interpretes ipsius, qui statim cognito, quod nunquam fueramus inter illos, poposcit de cibis nostris, & dedimus ei, poscebat etiam vestimentum aliquod, quia dicturus erat verbū nostrum ante dominum suum. Excusauimus nos. Quæsiuit quid portarem domino suo? Accepimus vnum fiascoem de vino, & impleuimus vnum veringal de biscocto & platellum vnum de po- mis & aliis fructibus. Sed non placebat ei, quia non ferebamus aliquem pannum pretiosum. Sic tamen ingressi sumus cum timore & verecundia. Sedebat ipse in lecto suo tenens citharu- ter oculos vt simior esset: nihil enim habebat ibi de naso, & vnixerat locum illum quodam vn- supradicta. Vbiue enim oportebat nos dicere idem verbum. Super hoc enim eram bene præ- moniti ab illis qui fuerant inter illos, quod nunquam mutaremus verba nostra, Rogauī etiam eum vt dignaretur accipere munusculum de manu nostra, excusans me, quia monachus eram, nec erat ordinis nostri possidere aurum, vel argentum, vel vestes preciosas. Vnde non habebam aliquid talium, quod possem ei dare: sed de cibis nostris acciperet pro benedictione. Tunc fecit recipi, & distribuit statim hominibus suis qui conuenerant ad potandum. Dedi- etiam ei literas Imperatoris Constantinopolitani: (Hoc fuit in octauis ascensionis) Qui statim eas Soldaiam misit vt ibi interpretarentur: quia erant in Græco, nec habebat secum qui sciret literas Græcas. Quæsiuit etiam à nobis, scilicet Alani, bibere cosmos, hoc est, lac iumentinum. Christiani enim Ruteni, Græci, & Alani, qui sunt inter eos, qui volunt strictè custodire legem suam, non bibunt illud: Imo non reputant se Christianos postquam biberunt. Et sacerdotes eorum reconciliant eos, tanquam negassent fidem Christianam. Ego respondi, quod habeba- illud, quod daretur nobis. Quæsiuit etiam quid contineretur in literis nostris, quas mittebatis Sartach. Dixi quod clausæ erant bullæ nostræ: & quod non erant in eis nisi bona verba & ami- cabilia. Quæsiuit & quæ verba diceremus Sartach? Respondi, Verba fidei Christianæ. Quæsiuit quæ? Quia libenter vellet audire. Tunc exposui ei prout potui per interpretem meum, qui nul- lius erat ingenij, nec alicuius eloquentiæ, symbolū fidei. Quo audito, ipse tacuit & mouit caput. Tunc assignauit nobis duos homines, qui nos custodirent, & equos & boues: & fecit nos bi- gare secum, donec reuertetur nuncius, quem ipse miserat pro interpretatione literarum impe- ratoris: & iuimus cum eo vsque in crastinum Pentecostes.

Nota diligenter.

Qualiter Alani venerunt ad eos in vigilia Pentecostes.

IN vigilia Pentecostes venerunt ad nos quidam Alani, qui ibi dicuntur ¶ Acias, Christiani se- cundum ritum Græcorum; habentes literas Græcas & sacerdotes Græcos: tamen non sunt schismatici sicut Græci; sed sine acceptione personarum venerunt omnem Christianum: & deculerunt nobis carnes coctas, rogantes vt comederemus de cibo eorum, & orarem pro quodam defuncto eorum. Tunc dixi quod vigilia erat tantæ solennitatis, quod illa die non comederemus carnes. Et exposui eis de solennitate, super quo fuerunt multum gauisi; quia omnia ignorabant quæ spectant ad ritum Christianum, solo nomine Christi excepto. Quæsi- uerunt & ipsi & alij multi Christiani, Ruteni & Hungari, vtrum possent saluari, quia oportebat eos bibere cosmos, & comedere morticina & interfecta à Saracenis & alijs infidelibus: quæ

quæ etiam ipsi Græci & Rueni sacerdotes reputant quasi morticina vel idolis immolata: quia ignorabant tempora ieiunij: nec poterant custodire etiam si cognouissent. Tunc rectificabar eos prout porui, docens & confortans in fide. Carnes quas detulerant referuauimus vsque ad diem festum: nihil enim inueniebamus venale pro auro & argento, nisi pro telis & alijs pannis: & illos non habebamus, Quum famuli nostri offerebant eis ipseperperam, ipsi fricabant digitis, & ponebant ad nares, vt odore sentirent, vtrum essent cuprum. Nec dabant nobis cibum nisi lac vacinum acre valde & fetidum. Vinumiam deficiebat nobis, Aqua ita turbabatur ab equis, quod non erat potabilis. Nisi fuisset biscoctum quod habebamus, & gratia dei, fortè fuisset mortui.

[Nota diligenti-
tissime.

De Saraceno qui dixit se velle baptizari, et de hominibus qui apparent leprosi.

IN die pentecostes venit ad nos quidam Saracenus, qui cum loqueretur nobiscum, incepimus exponere fidem. Qui audiens beneficia dei exhibita humano generi in incarnatione Christi, & resurrectionem mortuorum, & iudicium futurum, & quod ablutio peccatorum esset in baptismo: dixit se velle baptizari. Et cum pararemus nos ad baptizandum eum, ipse subito ascendit equum suum, dicens se iturum domum & habitum consilium cum vxore sua. Qui in crastino loquens nobiscum, dixit quod nullo modo auderet accipere baptismum, quia tunc non biberet cosmos. Christiani enim illius loci hoc dicebant, quod nullus verus Christianus deberet bibere: & sine potu illo non posset viuere in solitudine illa. A qua opinione nullo modo potui diuertere illum. Vndenouitis pro certo quod multum elongantur à fide propter illam opinionem quæ iam viguit inter illos per Rutenos, quorum maxima multitudo est inter eos. Illa die dedit nobis ille capitaneus vnum hominem, qui nos deduceret vsque ad Sartach: & duos qui ducerent nos vsque ad proximam herbergiam; quæ inde distabat quinque dietas prout boues poterant ire. Dederunt etiam nobis vnam capram pro cibo & plures vires lactis vaccini, & de cosinos parum: quia illud preciosum est inter illos. Et sic arripientes iter rectè in aquilonem, visum fuit mihi quod vnam portam inferni transissemus. Garciones qui ducebant nos, incipiebant nobis audacter furari, quia videbant nos parum cautos. Tandem amissis pluribus vexatio dabat nobis intellectum. Peruenimus tandem ad extremitatem illius prouinciæ, quæ clauditur vno fossato ab vno mari vsque ad aliud: extra quam erat herbergia eorum apud quos intrassemus: videbantur nobis leprosi omnes: quia erant viles homines ibi collocati, vt reciperent tributum ab accipientibus sal a salinis superius dictis. Ab illo loco, vt dicebant, oportebat nos ambulare quindecim diebus, quibus non inueniremus populum. Cum illis bibimus cosmos: & dedimus illis vnum veringal plenum fructibus & panem biscoctum. Qui dederunt nobis octo boues, vnam capram pro tanto itinere & nescio quot vires plenos lacte vaccino. Sic mutatis bobus arripimus iter, quod perfecimus decem diebus vsque ad aliam herbergiam: nec inuenimus aquam in illa via nisi in fossis in conuallibus factis, exceptis duobus paruis fluminibus. Et tendebamus rectè in orientem ex quo exiuimus prædictam prouinciæ Gafariæ, habentes mare ad meridiem & vastam solitudinem ad aquilonem: quæ durat per viginti dietas alicubi in latitudine: In qua nulla est sylua, nullus mons, nullus lapis. Herba est optima. In hac solebant pascere Comani, qui dicuntur Capchat. A Tentonicis verò dicuntur Valani, & prouincia Valania. Ab Isidoro vero dicitur à flumine Tanai vsque ad paludes Meotidis & Danubium Alaniam. Et durat ista terra in longitudine a Danubio vsque Tanaim; qui est terminus Asiæ & Europæ, itinere duorum mensium velociter equitando prout equitant Tartari. Quæ tota inhabitabatur à Comanis Capchat, & etiam vltra à Tanai vsque à Etiliam: Inter quæ flumina sunt decem dietæ magnæ. Ad aquilonem verò istius prouinciæ iacet Russia, quæ vbique syluas habet, & protenditur à Polonia & Hungaria vsque Tanaim: quæ tota vastata est à Tartaris, & adhuc quotidie vastatur. Præponunt enim Rutenis, quia sunt Christiani, Saracenos: & cum non possint amplius dare aurum vel argentum, ducunt eos & paruulos eorum tantquam greges ad solitudinem vt custodiant animalia eorum. Vltra Russiam ad aquilonem est Prussia, quam nuper subiugauerunt totam fratres Teutonici. Et certe de facili acquirerent Russiam, si apponerent manum, Si enim Tartari audirent, quod magnus sacerdos, hoc est, Papa faceret cruce signari contra eos, omnes fugerent ad solitudines suas.

Salinæ

Decem dietæ.

Comani-
gitudi-
[E]stia quæ &
Volga flumen
Russia.

Prussia.

De tedijs quæ patiebantur, & de sepultura Comanorum.

IBbanus ergo versus orientem, nihil videntes nisi cælum & terram, & aliquando mare ad dextram, quod dicitur Mare Tanais, & etiam sepulturas Comanorum, quæ apparebant nobis à duabus

tuabus le-
solitudine
non posset
deret cum
comedere
Nos enim
nobiscum
vehale pre-
illo tempo-
nostra videret
posset taba-
alia faciebatur
dicere eis à
nescio talia
tulam intel-
quod ei occu-
uinus ergo
beatæ Mariæ
Nilus fluuius
fieri quoddam
nauculis. In
aliam in aliam
stulte. Ipse e-
lia quæ adducit
animalia, ipse
nisi transferret
Sectimus er-
recentem: In
villæ ostiati-
dine. Fluuius
missimus ad
nesciunt eos
sicut carnes
quæ pertingit
magnum Ma-
quas transiit
ripa Occiden-
poris || circa
vbi transeunt
nec boues in-
muni vilitar-
oportebat ir-
Milium habet
sua exterius
Teutonici: s-
lauimus ergo
similiter, no-
quos recep-
rentur quos-
sumus tanquam
mansione ad
Augusti.

R Egio ista
sylva m-
lege; pluri pa-

ita: quia
rectifi-
eserui-
pro telis
ipsi fri-
ant nobis
ira turba-
ratia dei,

ncepimus
Christi,
et in bap-
tismo ascen-
Qui in cra-
non bibe-
beret bi-
potui di-
opinione
die dedit
nos qui du-
rout boues
ecini, & de
quilone,
nes, incip-
ous vexatio
clauditur
nos intrasse
reciperent
ortebar nos
cosmos: &
nobis octo
Sic mutatis
nec inueni-
minibus. Et
habentes
eras alicubi
In hac so-
ani, & pro-
is & Danu-
est terminus
Tartari: Quæ
Inter quæ
que vbiq;
passata est à
Saracenos:
eorum tan-
quilone est
acquierent
oc est, Papa

tuabus leuatis secundum quod solebant patetere eorum tepelri simul. Quam diu eramus in
solitudine bene erat nobis: quod tedium quod patiebar quum veniebanus ad mansiones eorum
non possem exprimeret verbis. Volebat enim dux noster, quod ad quoslibet capitaneos ingre-
deret cum xenio: & ad hoc non sufficiebant expensæ. Quotidie enim eramus octo personæ
comedentes viaticum nostrum exceptis seruientibus, qui omnes volebant comedere nobiscum.
Nos enim eramus quinque, & ipsi tres qui ducebant nos: duo ducentes bigas, & vnus iturus
nobiscum vsque ad Sartach. Carnes quas dabant non sufficiebant; nec inueniebamus aliquid
vehale pro moneta. Et cum sedebamus sub bigis nostris pro umbra, quia calor erat ibi maximus
illo tempore, ipsi ita importune ingerebant se nobis, quod conculcabant nos, volentes omnia
nostra videre. Si attripiebat eos appetitus purgandi ventrem, non elongabant se a nobis, quam
possit ita iactari. Inno iuxta nos colloquentes mutuo faciebant immunditias suas: & multa
alia faciebant quæ erant supra modum tediosa. Super omnia grauabat me, quod cum volebam
dicere eis aliquid verbum ædificationis, interpres meus dicebat, non facietis me prædicare; quia
nescio talia verba dicere. Et verum dicebat, Ego enim perpendi postea, quum incepi aliquan-
tulum intelligere id, quod quum dicebam vnum, ipse totum aliud dicebat, secundum
quod ei occurrebat. Tunc videns periculum loquendi per ipsum, elegi magis tacere. Ambula-
uimus ergo cum magna labore de mansionem in mansionem: ita quod paucis diebus ante festum
beatæ Mariæ Magdalene veni ad fluium magnum Tanais: qui diuidit Asiam ab Europa, sicut
Nilus fluius Ægypti, Asiam ab Africa. In illo loco quo applicuimus fecerunt Baatu & Sartach
fieri quoddam castrale de Rutenis in ripa orientali, qui transferunt nuncios & mercatores cum
nauculis. Ipsi transulerunt nos primo & postea bigas ponentes vnam rotam in vna barca &
aliam in alia, ligantes barcas ad inuicem; & sic remigantes transibant. Ibi egit dux noster valde
stulte. Ipse enim credebat, quod illi de casali deberent nobis ministrare equos, & dimisit anima-
lia quæ adduxeramus in alia biga, vt redirent ad dominos suos. Et quum postulauimus ab eis
animalia, ipsi respondebant quod habebant priuilegiū à Baatu, quod non teneretur ad aliud,
nisi transferre euntes & redeuntes: etiam à mercatoribus accipiebant magnum tributum.
Stetimus ergo ibi in ripa fluminis tribus diebus. Prima die dederunt nobis magnam borbatam
recentem: secunda die panem de filigine & parum de carnibus, quas acceperat procurator
villæ ostiatum per diuersas domos. Tertia die pisces secos, quos habent ibi in magna multitu-
dine. Fluius ille erat ibi tantæ latitudinis, quantæ est Sequana Parisijs. Et antequam perue-
nissemus ad locum illum, transuiimus multas aquas pulcherrimas & piscosissimas: Sed Tartari
nesciunt eos capere: nec curant de pisce nisi sit ita magnus, quod possunt comedere carnes eius,
sicut carnes arietinas. Ille fluius est terminus Orientalis Russiæ; & oritur de paludibus
quæ pertingunt ad Oceanum ad aquilonem. Fluius vero currit ad meridem in quoddam
magnum Mare septingentorum millium, antequam pertingat ad Mare Ponti: Et omnes aquæ
quas transuiimus vadunt ad illas partes. Habet etiam prædictum flumen magnam syluam in
ripa Occidentali. Ultra locum illum non ascendunt Tartari versus Aquilonem: quia tunc tem-
poris // circa introitum Augusti incipiunt redire versus meridiem. Vnde aliud est casale inferius
vbi transeunt nuncij tempore hyemali. Eramus igitur ibi in magna angustia, quia nec equos
nec boues inueniebamus pro pecunia. Tandem postquam ostendi eis, quod laborauimus pro com-
muni vtilitate omnium Christianorum, accommodauerunt nobis boues & homines: nos autem
oportebat ire pedibus. Tunc temporis metebant filiginem: triticum non proficiebat ibi bene.
Milium habent in magna copia. Mulieres Rutenæ ornant capita sicut nostræ. Supertunica
sua exterius ornant vario vel griso a pedibus vsque ad genua. Homines portant capas sicut
Teutonici: sed in capite portant pileos de filtro acutos in summitate longo acumine. Ambu-
lauimus ergo tribus diebus non inuenientes populum. Et cum essemus valde fatigati & boues
similiter, nec sciremus quorsum possemus Tartaros inuenire, accurrerunt subito duo equi,
quos recepiimus cum gaudio magno, & ascenderunt eos dux noster & interpres, vt specula-
rentur quorsum possemus populum inuenire. Tandem quarta die inuentis hominibus gauisi
sumus tanquam naufragi venientes ad portum. Tunc acceptis equis & bobus iuimus de
mansionem ad mansionem donec peruenimus vsque ad herbergiam Sartach secundo Calendas
Augusti.

Calor maximus
ibi in æstate.

Tanais fluius.

Casale Rutenor-
um.

Latitudo Tanais.

Oceanus.

Ad introitum
Augusti redeunt
ad meridiem.

De regione Sartach, & de gentibus illius.

Regio ista ultra Tanaim est pulcherrima, habens flumina & syluas ad aquilonem. Sunt
sylvarum maximæ, quas inhabitant duo genera hominum: Moxel scilicet, qui sunt sine
lege; pluripagani. Ciuitatem non habent sed casulas in syluis. Dominus eorum & magna
pars

paraeorum fuerunt interfecti in Alemania, Tartari enim duxerant eos ad introitum Alemaniz. Vnde ipsi multum comendant Alemanos, sperantes quod adhuc liberabuntur per eos à seruitute Tartarorum. Si mercator veniat ad eos, oportet quod ille apud quem primo descendit provideat ei quamdiu vult esse inter eos. Si quis dormiat cum vxore alterius, ille non curat nisi videat proprijs oculis: vnde non sunt Zelotypi. Abundant apud eos porci, mel, & cera, pelles preciosæ, & falcones. Post illos sunt alij qui dicuntur Meidas, quos latini vocant Merduos, & sunt Saraceni. Post illos est ¶ Etilia, quæ est maior fluvius, quam vnquam viderim: & venit ab Aquilone de maiori Bulgaria tendens ad meridiem: & cadit in quendam lacum habentem spaciū quatuor mensium in circuitu, de quo postea dicam vobis. Ista ergo duo flumina Tanais & Etilia versus regiones Aquilonis per quas transiimus non distant ab inuicem nisi decem dietis, sed ad meridiem multum diuiduntur ab inuicem. Tanais enim descendit in Mare Ponti: Etilia facit prædictum Mare siue lacum, cum alijs multis fluminibus, quæ cadunt in illum de Perside. Habebamus autem ad meridiem montes maximos in quibus habitant in lateribus versus solitudinem illam Cergis & Alani siue ¶ Acas, qui sunt Christiani & adhuc pugnant contra Tartaros. Post istos prope Mare siue lacum Etiliz sunt quidam Saraceni qui dicuntur Lesgi, qui similiter obediunt. Post hos est Porta fereæ, quam fecit Alexander ad excludendas Barbaras gentes de Perside: de cuius situ dicam vobis postea, ¶ quia transui per eam in reditu. Et inter ista duo flumina in illis terris per quas transiimus habitabant Comati antequam Tartari occuparent eas.

Meridui Saraceni.
¶ vel Volga
fluvius.

¶ Kerkia,
vel Aas.

Lesgi Saraceni.
¶ Reditus eius per
Deibent.

De Curia Sartach & de gloria eius.

INuenimus ergo Sartach prope Etiliam per tres dietas: cuius curia valde magna videbatur nobis: quia habet sex vxores, & filius eius primogenitus iuxta eum duas vel tres: & quælibet habet domum magnam & bigas forte ducentas. Accessit autem ductor noster ad quendam Nestorinum Coiat nomine, qui est vnus de maioribus Curiz suæ. Ille fecit nos ire valde longe ad domini Iannam, Ita vocant illum qui habet officium recipiendi nuncios. In sero præcepit nobis dictus Coiat, vt veniremus ad eum. Tunc incepit quærere ductor noster quid portaremus ei, & cepit multum scandalizari, quum vidit quod nihil parabamus ad portandum. Sterimus coram eo, & ipse sedebat in gloria sua & faciebat sonare citharam & saltare coram se. Tunc dixi ei verbis prædictis qualiter veniremus ad dominum eius, rogans eum vt iuaret nos vt Dominus eius videret literas nostras. Excusauit etiam me quia monachus eram, non habens, nec recipiens, nec tractans aurum vel argentum vel aliquid preciosum, solis libris & capella in qua seruiebamus deo exceptis: vnde nullum xenium afferrebamus ei nec domino suo. Qui enim propria dimiseram, non poteram portator esse alienorum. Tunc respondit satis mansuete, quod bene faciebam ex quo eram monachus: si seruarem votum meum, & non indigebat rebus nostris; sed magis daret nobis de suis, si indigeremus: & fecit nos sedere & bibere de lacte suo. Et post pauca rogauit vt diceremus benedictionem pro eo, quod & fecimus. Quæ fuit & quis esset maior dominus inter Francos. Dixi, Imperator, si haberet terram suam in pace. Non, inquit, sed Rex Franciæ. Audiuerat enim de vobis à domino Baldewyno de Hannonia. Inueni etiam ibi vnum de Socijs domus Dominicæ, qui fuerat in Cypro, qui narrauerat omnia quæ viderat. Tunc reuersi sumus ad hospitium nostrum. In crastino misi ei vnum fiascoem de vino Muscato, quod optime se custodierat in tam longa via; & cophinum plenum biscocto quod fuit ei gratissimum, & retinuit illo sero famulos nostros secum. In crastino mandauit mihi quod venirem ad curiam; afferens literas regis & capellam & libros mecum, quia dominus suus vellet videre ea: quod & fecimus, onerantes vnam bigam libris & capella, & aliam pane & vino & fructibus. Tunc fecit omnes libros & vestes explicari, & circumstant nos in equis multi Tartari & Christiani & Saraceni: quibus inspectis, quæ fuit, si vellem ista omnia dare domino suo, quo audito, expaui, & displicuit mihi verbum, dissimulans tamen respondi, domine rogamus, quatenus dominus noster dignetur recipere panem istum, vinum & fructus non pro xenio quia exiguum quid est, sed pro benedictione, ne vacua manu venimus coram eo. Ipse autem videbit literas domini regis, & per eas sciet, quæ de causa venimus ad eum: & tunc stabimus mandato eius nos & omnes res nostras. Vestes enim sanctæ sunt, & non licet eas contingere nisi sacerdotibus. Tunc præcepit quod indueremus nos ituri coram domino suo: quod & fecimus. Ego autem indurus preciosioribus vestibus accepi in pectore puluinem, quod erat valde pulchrum, & bibulum quod dederatis mihi, pasterium pulcherrimum, quod dederat mihi domina regina, in quo erant picturæ pulchræ. Socius meus accepit missale & crucem, clericus indurus supercilicio accepit thuribulum: sic accessimus ante dominum eius: & leuauerunt

Coiat Nestorinus.

filtrum qu
rico & inte
remus ing
nedictione
bat bancu
gredientes
iple respex
eius sedens
etiam cota
esset imago
ces suas fig
fecit circum
litteras vestr
in vtraque l
bicum, & Il
exiitinus &
litteras interp
libros fecit n

IN crastino n
mate, qui
cauit nos Coia
eis difficilia,
ad patrem suum
quia Dominus
tate eius, & dis
mus sub cultod
quod hoc nullo
rari in terra? Eg
dixit, quod opo
crastino mane n
Tunc occurrens
ramus pridie ad
præceperat, qui
illis induceremur
tulisti eas ad Sart
mihi, Ne loquar
tach, non pateba
bam etiam de int
voluisset, quod d
sensi cupiditatem
magis diligebam.
nis notatum prop
quis bigis ad hosp
cum festinatione a
ad Coiac. Tunc
quod & fecimus.
tiliam: cuius aqua
quam recederemus
ria, Nolite dicere q
tis videret eis nomen
quid forte credant d

lemaniz.
eos à ser-
descendit
curat nisi
era, pel-
Merduos,
& venit
abentem
mina Ta-
u nisi de-
in Mare
cadunt in
in late-
huc pug-
ni qui di-
er ad ex-
ansui per
Comati

videbatur
& quz-
ad quen-
ire valde
. In sero
fter quid
portan-
& saltare
cum vt
us eram,
olis libra
domino
ondit sa-
, & non
edere &
fecimus.
um suam
vyno de
ui narra-
ei vnum
um ple-
craftino
necum,
pella, &
stabant
stem ista
men re-
rinum &
eniamus
imus ad
, & non
ram do-
pectore
rimum,
um mis-
um eius
auerunt

filtrum quod pendebat ante ostium vt nos posset videre. Tunc fecerunt flectere genua ter cle-
rico & interpreti : à nobis non requisiuerunt. Tunc monuerunt nos valde diligenter, vt caue-
remus ingrediendo & egrediendo ne tangeremus linen domus, & vt cantaremus aliquam be-
nedictionem pro eo. Tunc ingressi sumus cantando, Salue regina. In introitu autem ostij sta-
bat bancus cum cosmos & cum ciphis. Et conuenerant omnes vxores eius : & ipsi Moal. In-
ipie respexit, tenens in manu diligenter : postea tulit ei thuribulum cum incenso, quod
eius sedens iuxta eum. Postea tulit bibulum, & ipse quæsiuit, si euangelium esset ibi. Dixi,
etiam tota Scriptura Sacra. Accepit etiam crucem in manu sua, & quæsiuit de imagine, vt um-
eslet imago Christi? Respondi quod sic. Ipsi Nestoriani & Armeni nunquam faciunt super cru-
ces suas figuram Christi. Vnde videntur male sentire de passione, vel erubescunt eam. Postea
fecit circumstantes nos retrahere se, vt plenius posset videre ornamenta nostra. Tunc obtuli ei
litteras vestras cum transcriptis in Arabico & Syriano. Feceram enim eas transferri in Acon-
bicum, & Ille Socius domus Domini qui sciebat Syriam, & Turcicum & Arabicum. Tunc
exiuius & deposuius vestimenta nostra : & venerunt scriptores & ille Coiac, & fecerunt
litteras interpretari. Quibus auditis, fecit recipi panem & vinum & fructus : vestimenta &
libros fecit nos reportare ad hospitium. Hoc actum est in festo Sancti Petri ad vincula.

Qualiter habuerunt in mandatis adire Baatu *patrem Sartach,*

IN crastino mane venit quidam sacerdos frater ipsius Coiac postulans vasculum cum chris-
ma, quia Sartach volebat illud videre, vt dicebat, & dedimus ei. Hora vespertina vo-
cauit nos Coiac, dicens nobis : Dominus rex scripsit bona verba Domino meo : Sed sunt in
eis difficilia, de quibus nihil auferet facere, sine consilio patris sui. Vnde oportet vos ire
ad patrem suum, & duas bigas quas adduxistis heri cum vestimentis & libris dimittetis mihi,
quia Dominus meus vult res diligentius videre. Ego statim suspicatus sum malum de cupidita-
te eius, & dixi ei, Domine, non solum illas sed etiam duas quas adhuc habemus relinque-
mus sub custodia vestra. Non inquit, illas relinquetis, de alijs facietis velle vestrum. Dixi
quod hoc nullo modo posset fieri. Sed coram dimitteremus ei. Tunc quæsiuit si vellemus mo-
rari in vtraque? Ego dixi, Si bene intellexistis litteras domini regis, potestis scire, quod sic. Tunc
dixi, quod oporteret nos esse patientes multum, & humiles. Sic discessimus ab eo illo sero. In
crastino mane misit vnum sacerdotem Nestorinum pro bigis, & nos duximus omnes quatuor.
Tunc occurrens nobis frater ipsius Coiacis, sepe rauit omnia nostra ab ipsis rebus quas tule-
ramus pridie ad curiam, & illa accepit tanquam sua, scilicet libros & vestimenta : & Coiac
præceperat, quod ferremus nobiscum vestimenta quibus induti fueramus coram Sartach vt
illis indueremur coram Baatu si expediret : quas ille sacerdos abstulit nobis vi, dicens : Tu at-
tulisti eas ad Sartach, modo vis ferre Baatu? Et cum vellem ei reddere rationem, respondit
mihi, Ne loquaris nimis, & vade viam tuam. Tunc necessaria fuit patientia, quia apud Sar-
tach, non patebat nobis ingressus; nec aliquis erat, qui nobis exhiberet iusticiam. Time-
bam etiam de interprete, ne ipse aliquid aliter dixisset, quam ego dixissem ei : quia ipse bene
voluisset, quod de omnibus fecissemus xenium. Vnum erat mihi solacium, quia quum per-
magis diligebam. Psalterium domine regine non fui ausus subtrahere, quia illud fuerat ni-
mis notatum propter aureas picturas quæ erant in eo. Sic ergo reuersi sumus cum duobus resi-
duis bigis ad hospitium nostrum. Tunc venit ille, qui debebat ducere nos ad Baatu, volens
cum festinatione arripere iter : cui dixi quod nulla ratione ducere nos ad Baatu, volens
ad Coiac. Tunc præcepit Coiac quod relinqueremus eas apud ipsum cum garcione nostro:
quod & fecimus. Sic ergo euntes versus Baatu recta in Orientem, tertia die peruenimus ad E-
tiliam : cuius aquas cum vidi, mirabar vnde ab Aquilone descenderunt tantæ aquæ. Ante-
riam, Noli dicere quod dominus noster sit Christianus, sed Moal. Quia nomen Christianita-
tis videtur eis nomen cuiusdam gentis. In tantam superbiam sunt erecti, quod quamuis ali-
quid forte credant de Christo, tamen nolunt dici Christiani volentes nomen suum, hoc est,
Moal

Perueniunt ad
Etiliam vel
Volgam.

Tartari volunt
vocari Moal.

Moal exaltare super omne nomen. Nec volunt vocari Tartari : Tartari enim faciunt alia gens de quibus sic didici,

**Qualiter Sartach, & Mangucham & Kencham
faciunt reuerentiam Christianis.**

Con can.

Vnde venerant
Turci.
Caracatay.
Oceanus,

Vel Nayman,
Presbyter Io-
hannes,

Kencham vbi
habitaui
Frater Andreas
in Curia Ken-
cham.
Vut can, vel Vnc.
Caracatum
Villula.
Crit, & Merkit.
Moal pauperissimi
homines.

Tartarorum
sedes.

Cyngis,

Mangu-can.

Mancherule.

TEmpore quo Franci ceperunt Antiochiam tenebat monarchiam in illis lateribus A-
quilonis quidam qui vocabatur Concan, Con est proprium nomen : Can nomen dig-
nitatis quod idem est qui diuinator. Omnes diuinatores vocant Can, Vnde principes di-
cuntur Can, quia penes eos spectat reginae populi per diuinationem. Vnde legitur in hi-
storia Antiochiæ, quod Turci miserunt propter fucursum contra Francos ad regnum Con-
can. De illis enim partibus venerunt omnes Turci, Iste Con erat Cara-Catay. Cara idem
est quod nigrum. Catai nomen gentis. Vnde Cara-Catay idem est quod nigri Catay. Et hoc
dicitur ad differentiam ipsorum Catay qui erant in Oriente super Oceanum de quibus
postea dicam vobis. Isti Caray erant in quibusdam alpihus per quas transiui, Et in qua-
dam planicie inter illas Alpes erat quidam Nestorinus pastor potens & dominus super
populum, qui dicebatur Yayman, qui erant Christiani Nestorini. Mortuo Con can ele-
uauit se ille Nestorius in regem, & vocabant eum Nestoriani Regem Iohannem : &
plus dicebant de ipso in decuplo quam veritas esset. Ita enim faciunt Nestoriani venientes
de partibus illis. De nihilo enim faciunt magnos rumores. Vnde dissimulauerunt de Sar-
tach quod esset Christianus, & de Mangu Can & Ken can : quia faciunt maiorem reuere-
ntiam Christianis, quam alijs populis, & tamen in veritate Christiani non sunt. Sic ergo
exiuit magna fama de illo Rege Iohanne. Et quando ego transiui per pascua eius, nullus a-
liquid sciebat de eo nisi Nestoriani pauci. In pascuis eius habitat Kencam, apud cuius curiam
fuit frater Andreas : & ego etiam transiui per eam in reditu. Huic Iohanni erat frater quidam
potens, pastor similiter, nomine Vut : & ipse erat ultra Alpes ipsorum Caracatay, distans à
fratre suo spaciū trium hebdomadarum & erat dominus eiusdem Villulæ quæ dicitur Ca-
racatum, populum habens sub se, qui dicebantur Crit, Merkit, qui erant Christiani Ne-
storini. Sed ipse dominus eorum dimisso cultu Christi, sectabatur idola ; habens sacerdotes
idolorum, qui omnes sunt inuocatores dæmonum & sortilegi. Ultra pascua istius ad decem
vel quindecim dietas erant pascua Moal : qui erant pauperissimi homines sine capiteo &
sine lege, exceptis sortilegijs & diuinationibus, quibus omnes in paribus illis intendunt. Et
iuxta Moal erant alij pauperes, qui dicebantur Tartari. Rex Iohannes mortuus fuit sine
herede, & ditatus est frater eius Vnc ; & faciebat se vocari Can : & mittebantur amenta
greges eius vsque ad terminos Moal. Tunc temporis Chingis faber quidam erat in populo
Moal : & furabatur de animalibus Vnc can quod poterat : In tantum quod conqueisti sunt
pastores Vut domino suo. Tunc congregauit exercitum & equitauit in terram Moal, quærens
ipsum Cyngis. Et ille fugit inter Tartaros & latuit ibi. Tunc ipse Vut accepta prædā Moal
& à Tartaris reuersus est. Tunc ipse Cyngis allocutus est Tartaros & ipsos Moal dicens,
Quia sine duce sumus opprimunt nos vicini nostri. Et fecerunt ipsum ducem & capitaneum
Tartari & Moal. Tunc latenter congregato exercitu irruit super ipsum Vut, & viciit ipsum,
& ipse fugit in Cathaiam. Ibi capta fuit filia eius, quam Cyngis dedit vni ex filiis in vx-
orem, ex quo ipsa suscepit istum qui nunc regnat Mangu. Tunc ipse Cyngis premittebat v-
trique ipsos Tartaros : & inde exiuit nomen eorum, quia vbique clamabatur, Ecce Tartari
veniunt. Sed per crebra bella modo omnes fere deleti sunt. Vnde isti Moal modo volunt ex-
tinguere illud nomen, & suum eleuare. Terra illa in qua primo fuerunt, & vbi est adhuc
curia Cyngiscan, vocatur Mancherule. Sed quia Tartari est regio circa quam fuit acquisitio
eorum, illam ciuitatem hærent pro regali, & ibi prope eligunt suum Can.

De Rutenis

De Rutenis & Hungaris, & Alanis, & de mari Caspio.

DE Sartach autem vtrum credit in Christum vel non nescio. Hoc scio quod Christianus non vult dici, Immo magis videtur mihi deridere Christianos. Ipse enim est in itinere Christianorum, scilicet Rutenorum, Blacorum, Bulgarorum minoris Bulgariae, Soldainorum, Kerisforum, Alanorum: qui omnes transeunt per eum quum vadunt ad curiam patris sui deferre ei munera, vnde magis amplectitur eos. Tamen si Saraceni veniant, & maius afferant, citius facium suum.

Est alius qui dicitur Berta super Baatu, qui pascit versus Portam ferream, vbi est iter Saracenorum omnium qui veniunt de Perside & de Turchia, qui euntes ad Baatu, & trans-euntes per eum, deferunt ei munera. Et ille facit se Saracenum, & non permittit in terra sua comedere carnes porcinas. Baatu in reditu nostro preceperat ei, quod transferret se de illo loco ultra Etiliam ad Orientem, nolens nuncios Saracenorum transire per eum, quia videbatur sibi damnosum.

Berta vel Berca,

Quatuor autem diebus quibus fuimus in curia Sartach, nunquam prouisum fuit nobis de cibo, nisi semel de modico cosmos. In via vero inter ipsum & patrem suum habuimus magnum timorem. Ruteni enim & Hungari, & Alani serui eorum, quorum est magna multitudo inter eos, associant se viginti vel triginta simul, & fugiunt de nocte, habentes pharetras & arcus, & quemcumque inueniunt de nocte interficiunt, de die latitantes. Et quando sunt equi eorum fatigati veniunt de nocte ad multitudinem equorum in pascuis, & mutant equos, & vnum vel duos ducunt secum, ut comedant quum indiguerint. Occursum ergo talium timebat cum de biscocto.

Veniunt tandem ad Etiliam maximum flumen. Est enim in quadruplo maius quam Sequana, & profundissimum: Veniens de maiori Bulgaria, quae est ad Aquilonem, tendens in quendam lacum, siue quoddam mare, quod modò vocant mare Sircan, à quadam ciuitate, quae est iuxta ripam eius in Perside. Sed Isidorus vocat illud mare Caspium. Habet enim montes Caspios, & Persidem à meridie: montes vero Musihet, hoc est, Assassinatorum ad Orientem, qui contiguntur cum montibus Caspijs: Ad Aquilonem vero habet illam solitudinem, in qua modò sunt Tartari. Prius vero erant ibi quidam qui dicebantur Canagiz: Et ex illo latere recipit Etiliam, qui crescit in aestate sicut Nilus Aegypti. Ad Occidentem vero habet montes Alanorum & Lefgi; & Portam ferream, & montes Georgianorum. Habet igitur illud mare tria latera inter montes, Aquilonare vero habet ad planiciem, Frater Andreas ipse circumdegit duo latera eius, meridionale scilicet & Orientale. Ego vertendo de Baatu in Syriam. Quatuor mensibus potest circumdari. Et non est verum quod dicit Isidorus, quoddam sit sinus exiens ab Oceano: nusquam enim tangit Oceanum, sed vndique circumdatur terra.

Ex Oza maris.
Caspij descriptio.

Cangiz populi,
vel Cangizae.

Frater Andreas.

Reprehenditur
Isidori error de
mari Caspio.

H

De

De curia Baatu, & qualiter recepti fuerunt ab eo.

Oceanus Aquilonaris.
Isidorus.
Oceanus Aquilonaris.

Descendit navi
per flumen Volga.
Nota.
30 diebus a Porta
ferrea.
Astracan.
Descriptio curiz
Baatu.

Hoc sonat medium.

Missa rex Francie
ad Kencham
nuncios.

Iohannes de Plano
carpini.

Littere Regis
Francorum.

Tota illa regio à latere Occidentali istius maris, vbi sunt Porta ferrea Alexandri, & montes Alanorum, vsq; ad Oceanum Aquilonarem & paludes Mæotidis vbi mergitur Tanais, solebat dici Albania: de qua dicit Isidorus, quòd habet canes ita magnos, tantaque feritatis, vt tauros premant, leones perimant, Quod verù est, prout intellexi à narrancibus, quod ibi versus Oceanum Aquilonarem faciunt canes trahere in bigis sicut boues propter magnitudinem & fortitudinem eorum. In illo ergo loco vbi nos applicuimus super Etiliam est casale nouum, quod fecerunt Tartari de Rutenis mixtim, qui transponunt nuncios cuntes, & redeuntes ad curiam Baatu: quia Baatu est in vltiori ripa versus Orientem: nec transit illud locum vbi nos applicuimus ascendendo in æstate, sed iam incipiebat descendere. De Ianuario enim vsque ad Augustum ascendit ipse, & omnes alij versus frigidis regiones, & in Augusto incipiunt redire. Descendimus ergo in navi ab illo casali vsque ad curiam eius. Et ab illo loco vsque ad villas maioris Bulgariæ versus Aquilonem, sunt quinque dietæ. Et miror quis Diabolus portauit illuc legem Machometi. A Porta enim ferrea, quæ est exitus Perfidis, sunt plusquam triginta dietæ per transuersum, solitudinem ascendendo iuxta Etiliam vsque in illam Bulgariam, vbi nulla est ciuitas, nisi quædam casalia propè vbi cadit Etilia in mare. Et illi Bulgari sunt pessimi Saraceni, fortius teuentes legem Machometi, quam aliqui alij. Quum ergo vidi curiam Baatu, expaui: quia videbantur propè domus eius, quasi quædam magna ciuitas protensa in longum, & populus vndiq; circumfusus, vsq; ad tres vel quatuor leucas. Et sicut populus Israel sciēbat vniūsq; ad quam regionem tabernaculi deberet figere tentoria: ita ipsi sciunt ad quod latas curiz debeant se collocare, quando ipsi deponunt domus, vnde dicitur curia Orda lingua eorum, quod sonat medium, quia semper est in medio hominum suorum: hoc excepto, quod rectè ad meridiem nullus se collocat, quia ad partem illam aperiuntur portæ Curiz: Sed à dextris & à sinistris extendunt se quantum volunt secundum exigentiam locorum: dummodo rectè ante curiam, vel ex opposito curiz non descendunt. Fuimus ergo ducti ad quendam Saracenum, qui non prouidebat nobis de aliquo cibo: sequenti die fuimus ad curiam, & fecerat extendi magnum tentorium, quia domus non potuisset capere tot homines & mulieres, quot conuenerant. Monuit nos ductor noster vt non loqueremur, donec Baatu præciperet: & tunc loqueremur breuiter. Quæsiuit etiam vtrum misissetis nuncios ad eos. Dixi qualiter miseratis ad Kencham, & quod nec ad ipsum misissetis nuncios, nec ad Sartach literas, nisi credidissetis eos fuisse Christianos, misistis. Tunc duxit nos ad papilionem: & monebamur, ne tangeremus cordas tentorij, quas ipsi reputant loco liminis domus. Stetimus ibi nudis pedibus in habitu nostro discoperitis capitis, & eramus spectaculum magnum in oculis eorum. Fuerat enim ibi frater Iohannes de Plano carpini, sed ipse mutauerat habitum ne concuteretur: quia erat nuncius Domini Papæ. Tunc inducti fuimus vsque ad medium tentorij, nec requisierunt vt faceremus aliquam reuerentiam genua flectendo, sicut solent facere nuncij. Stetimus ergo coram eo quantum possit dici. Miserere mei Deus: & omnes erant in summo silentio. Ipse verò super solium longum sedebat & latum sicut lectus, totum deauratum, ad quod ascendebatur tribus gradibus, & vna domina iuxta eum. Viri vero diffusi sedebant à dextris domine & à sinistris: quod non implebant mulieres ex parte vna, quia erant ibi solæ vxores Baatu, implebant viri. Bancus verò cum cosmos & ciphis maximis aureis & argenteis, ornatis lapidibus prætiosis erat in introitu tentorij. Respexit ergo nos diligentius, & nos cum: & videbatur mihi similis in statura Domino Iohanni de Bello monte cuius anima requiescit in pace. Erat etiam vultus eius tunc persusus gutta rosea. Tandem præcepit vt loquerer. Tunc ductor noster præcepit vt flecteremus genua, & loqueremur. Flexi vnum genuum tanquam homini: tunc innuit quod ambo flecterem, quod & feci, nolens contendere super hoc. Tunc præcepit quod loquerer. Et ego cogitans quod orarem Dominum, quia flexeram ambo genua, incipi verba oratione, dicens: Domine, nos oramus Dominum, à quo bona cuncta procedunt, qui dedit vobis ista terrena, vt det vobis post hæc cælestia: quia hæc sine illis vana sunt. Et ipse diligenter auscultauit, & subiunxit: Noueritis pro certo quòd cælestia non habebitis, nisi fueritis Christianus. Dicit enim Deus, Qui crediderit & baptizatus fuerit, saluus erit: qui vero non crediderit, condemnabitur. Ad illud verbum ipse modestè submisit, & alij Moal inceperunt plaudere manus deridendo nos. Et obstupuit interpres meus, quem oportuit me confortare ne timerem. Tunc factò silentio, dixi: Ego veni ad filium vestrum, quia audiui quòd esset Christianus, & attuli ei literas ex parte Domini Regis Francorum: ipse misit me huc ad vos. Vos debetis scire

The

scire quæ
mei, &
tis terrarum
lantes de
um, Ad
quod ipsi
Et dum
plius resp
pro mala
mè
ca, vnde
rogat, qu
gu cham
tuus & al
incepit hor
stari, quod
sine locio
tingeret vni
it verba Ba
tur ad Sart
co, quod in
plius non au
pera, & non
bis, Et sic diu
ibi remanent

D

IN Vigilia A
runt Sacerd
mus ad alium
quia non hab
descendendo i
tam famem,
comederim.
quod non pote
dem inuenerunt
huc cantare mu
exequias suorum
qui intelligebat
nobis magnam
comendendum:
sem dare; nullo
eis, afferte nobis
Et scripsi vtraque
nobis quidam C
rans, ipse refalu
quod in Hungari
quod Baatu quæ
nostri. Ego vidi E
eo, secundum æst
tationis sanctæ cru
magnum est inter
mensum: & tantum
vtrum poteritis sust
lij homines possunt
Cui respondi, hoc r
Vade ex quo vobis

sine qua de causa. Tunc fecit me surgere. Et quæsiuit nomen vestrum, & meum, & socij mei, & interpretis, & fecit omnia scribi. Quæsiuit etiam, quia intellexerat quod exierant domum Dei Hierusalem. Respondi, Contra Saracenos volumus. Ad vos dixi nunquam. Tunc fecit nos sedere, & dari de lacte suo ad bibendum, quod ipsi valde magnum reputant, quando aliquis bibit cosmos cum eo in domo sua. Et dum sedens respicerem terram, præcepit vt eleuarem vultum, volens adhuc nos amplius respicere, vel fortè pro sortilegio: quia habeat pro malo omine vel signo, vel pro mala Prognostica, quando aliquis sedet coram eis inclinata facie quasi tristis, vel mædo. Vnde appodiat maxillam, vel mentum super manum. Tunc exiimus, & post pauca, vnde Ductor noster ad nos, & ducens nos ad hospitium, dixit mihi, Dominus Rex rogat, quod retinearis in terra ista: & hoc non potest Baatu facere sine conscientia Mantus & alius homo reuertentur ad curiam Sartach ibi expectantes donec reuertatis. Tunc incepit homo D E I Interpres lugere reputans se perditum: Socius etiam meus concitatus, quod citius amputaret ei caput, quam quod diuideretur à me. Et ego dixi, quod tingeret vnum infirmari, non possem solus remanere. Tunc ipse reuersus ad curiam dixit verba Baatu. Tunc præcepit: vadant duo sacerdotes & interpretes: & Clericus reuertatur ad Sartach. Ille reuersus dixit nobis summam. Et quando volebam loqui pro Clerico, quod iret nobiscum, dixi, Non loquamini amplius, quia Baatu desinuit, & eo amplius non audeo redire ad curiam. De elemosyna habebat Gofet clericus viginti sex ipperebis, & non plus: quorum decem retinuit sibi & puero: & sexdecem dedit homini Dei pro nobis, Et sic diuisi sumus cum lachrimis ab inuicem: Illo redeunte ad curiam Sartach, & nobis ibi remanentibus.

De itinere fratrum versus curiam Mangu cham.

IN Vigilia Assumptionis peruenit ipse clericus ad Curiam Sartach: & in crastino fuerunt Sacerdotes Nestorini induiti vestimentis nostris coram Sartach. Tunc ducti sumus ad alium hospitem, qui debebat nobis providere de domo & cibo & equis. Sed quia non habuimus quod daremus ei, omnia malè faciebat. Et bigauius cum Baatu descendendo iuxta Euilam quinque septimanas. Aliquando habuit socius meus tantam famem, quod dicebat mihi quasi lachrymando: videbatur mihi quod nunquam comederim. Forum sequitur semper Curiam Baatu. Sed illud erat tam longè à nobis, quod non poteramus ire. Oportebat enim nos ire pedibus pro defectu equorum. Tandem inuenerunt nos quidam Hungari, qui fuerant Clericuli, quorum vnus sciebat ad hæc cantare multa corde, & habebatur ab alijs Hungaris quasi Sacerdos, & vocabatur ad exequias suorum defunctorum: Et alius fuerat competenter instructus in Grammatica: qui intelligebat quicquid dicebamus ei literaliter, sed nesciebat respondere: qui fecerunt nobis magnam consolationem, afferentes cosmos ad bibendum, & carnes aliquando ad comedendum: qui quum postulassent à nobis aliquos libros, & non haberem quos possem dare, nullos enim habebam, nisi Biblium & breuiarium, dolui multum. Tunc dixi eis, afferte nobis chartas, & ego scribam vobis, quamdiu erimus hic: quod & fecerunt. Et scripsi vtrasque horas Beatæ Virginis & officium defunctorum. Quodam die iunxit se nobis quidam Comanus, salutans nos verbis latinis, dicens, Saluete Domini. Ego mirans, ipso resalutato, quæsiui ab eo, quis eum docuerat illam salutationem. Et ipse dixit quod in Hungaria fuit baptizatus à fratribus nostris qui docuerant illum eam. Dixit etiam quod Baatu quæsiuerat ab eo multa de nobis, & quod ipse dixerat ei conditiones ordinis nostri. Ego vidi Baatu equitantes cum turba sua, & omnes patres familias equitantes cum tationis sanctæ crucis venit ad nos quidam diues Moal, cuius pater erat millenarius, quod magnum est inter eos, dicens, Ego vos debeo ducere ad Mangu cham, & est iter quatuor mensium: & tantum frigus est ibi, quod finduntur ibi lapides & arbores pro frigore: Videatis vtrum poteritis sustinere. Cui respondi: Spero in virtute Dei, quod nos sustinebimus, quod alij homines possunt sustinere. Tunc dixit: Si non poteritis sustinere, ego relinquam vos in via. Cui respondi, hoc non effectusum: quia non iuimus pro nobis, nisi missi à Domino vestro: Vnde ex quo vobis committimur, non debetis nos dimittere, Tunc dixit, benè erit. Post hoc

Quinque septimanas iuxta Euilam descendebant.

Quidam Hungari.

Comanus,

Iter quatuor mensium à Volga, ingens frigus.

16. Septemb.

Cangle populi.
Maior Bulgaria.

hoc fecit nos ostendere sibi omnes vestes nostras, & quod sibi videbatur minus necessarium fecit deponere sub custodia hospitis nostri. In crastino attulerunt cuilibet nostrum vnam pelliceam villosam arietinam & braccas de eadem, & botas siue bucellos secundum morem eorum cum foccis de filtro; & almucias de pellibus secundum modum eorum. Et secunda die post exaltationem Sanctæ crucis incepimus equitare nos tres habentes signarios: & equitauimus continuè versus Orientem vsque ad festum Omnium Sanctorum, per totam illam terram, & adhuc amplius habitabant Cangle, quædam parentela Romanorum, Ad Aquilonem habebamus maiorem Bulgariam, & ad meridiem prædictum mare Caspium,

De flumine Iagag, & de diuersis regionibus siue nationibus.

Iagag flumen 13.
dictus à Volga.Pascatir terra,
vel Baskirdorum
terra vel Zibier.Hungari à Pascatir
origini.

Nota.

Deut. 32. 11.

¶ Qui fuerunt isti
fratres?Cangle planities
ingens.

Postquam iueramus duodecim diebus ab Estila inuenimus magnum flumen, quod vocant Iagag: & venit ab Aquilone de terra Pascatir descendens in prædictum mare. Idioma Pascatir & Hungarorum idem est: & sunt pastores sine ciuitate aliqua. Et contiguatur maiori Bulgariæ ab Occidente. Ab illa terra versus Orientem in latere illo Aquilonari non est amplius aliqua ciuitas. Vnde Bulgaria maior est vltima terra habens ciuitatem. De illa regione Pascatir exierunt Huni, qui postea dicti sunt Hungari. Vnde ipsa est maior Bulgaria. Et dicit Isidorus, quod perniciosus equis claustra Alexandri rupibus Caucaſi feras gentes cohibentia transferunt: ita quod vsque in Ægyptum soluebatur eis tributum. Destruerunt etiam omnes terras vsque in Franciam, Vnde fuerunt maioris potentie, quam sunt adhuc Tartari. Cum illis occurrerunt Blaci & Bulgari & Vandali. De illa enim maiori Bulgaria venerunt illi Bulgari: Et qui sunt vltra Danubium prope Constantinopolin, & iuxta Pascatir sunt Ilac, quod idem est quod Blac: sed B. nesciunt Tartari sonare: à quibus venerunt illi qui sunt in terra Assani. Vtrosque enim vocant Ilac, & hos & illos lingua Rutenorum & Polonorum, & Boemorum. Sclauorum est idem idioma cum lingua Vandalorum, quorum omnium manus fuit cum Hunis: & nunc pro maiori parte est cum Tartaris quos Deus suscitauit à remotioribus partibus, populum multum, & gentem stultam, secundum quod dicit Dominus, Prouocabo eos, id est, non custodientes Legem suam, in eo qui non est populus, & in gente stulta irritabo eos: Hoc complectur ad litteram super omnes nationes non custodientes Legem Dei, Hoc quod dixi de terra Pascatir scio per fratres Prædicatores, ¶ qui iuerunt illuc ante aduentum Tartarorum. Et ex tunc erant ipsi subiugati à vicinis Bulgaris Saracenis, & plures eorum facti Saraceni, Alia possunt sciri per Chronica: quia constat quod illæ provincie post Constantinopolim, quæ modo dicuntur Bulgaria, Valachia, Sclauonia, fuerunt provincie Grecorum. Hungaria fuit Pannonia, Equitauimus ergo per terram Cangle à festo Sanctæ crucis vsque ad festum Omnium Sanctorum, quolibet die ferè quantum est à Parisijs vsque Aurelianum, secundum quod possum estimare, & plus aliquando: secundum quod habebamus copiam equorum. Aliquando enim mutabamur bis in die vel ter equos. Aliquando ibamus duobus diebus vel tribus, quibus non inueniebamus populum, & oportebat leuius ire. De viginti vel triginta equis nos semper habebamus peiores, quia extraneieramus. Omnes enim accipiebant ante nos equos meliores. Mihi semper prouidebant de forti equo, quia eram ponderosus valde: sed vtrum suauiter ambularet vel non, de hoc non auderem facere quæstionem. Nec etiam audebam conqueri, si durè portaret. Sed fortunam suam oportebat vnumquemque sustinere. Vnde oriebatur nobis difficillimus labor: quia multoties fatigabantur equi, antequam possemus peruenire ad populum. Et tunc oportebat nos percutere & flagellare equos, ponere etiam vestes super alios saginarios, mutare equos saginarios; aliquando nos duos ire in vno equo.

De fame & siti, & alijs miserijs quas sustinuerunt in itinere.

DE fame & siti, frigore & fatigatione non est numerus. Non enim dant cibum nisi in sero. In mane dant aliquid bibere, vel forbere milium. In sero dabant nobis carnes, scapulam arietis cum costis & de brodio ad mensuram bibere. Quando habebamus de brodio carniū ad satietatem optimè reficiebamur. Et videbatur mihi suauissimus potus & maxime

Sequenti
Squibus in
ab Occidente
lia. Quasi
frater Andre
ram intelligen
in bonis pascu
sum de genere
super ripam E
atu scripsit ho
Tunc Baarn qu
quia ebrius era
me nominare in
cognoscere vsq
nos iuxta mō:es
gu transfulerat
quandam villam
nec redire per co
ignorauī: nec po
mus ad Orientem
qui vbi que cant
Huac enim hono

inus necessarium
e nostrum vnam
secundum mo-
eorum. Et ef-
centes signarios:
orum, per to-
la Romanorum,
mare Caspium,

sue

n, quod vocant
Idioma Pasca-
ur maiori Bul-
ari non est am-
m. De illa re-
maior Bulgae-
casu feras gen-
utum. Destru-
tentia, quam
illa enim ma-
Constantinopo-
Tartari sonare:
, & hos & il-
Idioma cum lin-
maiori parte est
tum, & gen-
custodientes
Hoc comple-
dixi de ter-
Tartarorum,
um facti Sara-
ost Constan-
rouincia Gra-
to Sanctae cru-
Parisijs vsque
m quod ha-
equos. Ali-
n, & oportet
ia extranei ce-
ouidebant de
non, de hoc
portaret. Sed
efficillimus la-
m. Et tunc co-
arios, mutago

nt

at cibum nisi
ut nobis car-
bebamus de
nus potus &
maximè

maximè nutrens. Peria texta permancebam ientius vsq; ad noctem, nihil hauriens. Tunc oportebat me in tristitia & dolore comedere carnes. Aliquando oportebat nos comedere carnes semicoctas vel ferè crudas propter defectum materiae ignis, quando iacebamus in campis & de nocte descendebamus: quia tunc non poteramus benè colligere stercorea equorum vel bo-
Defectus materiæ ignis.
um: aliam materiam ignis rarò inueniebamus; nisi fortè alicubi alquis spinas. In ripis etiam aliquorum fluminum sunt alicubi sylva. Sed hoc rarò. In principio despiciebat nos multum Ductor noster, & fastidiebat eum ducere tam viles homines. Postea tamen quando incepit nos melius cognoscere, ducebat nos per curias diuitum Moallorum: & oportebat nos erare pro ipsis. Vnde si habuissim bonum interpretem, habebam oportunitatem seminandi mul-
Aligua flumina.
ta bona. Ille Chingis primus Cham habuit quatuor filios, de quibus egressi sunt multi, qui omnes habent modo magnas curias: & quotidie multiplicantur & diffunduntur per illam vastam solitudinem, quæ est sicut mare. Per multos ergò illorum ducebat nos Ductor noster. Et mirabantur supra modum, quia nolebamus recipere aurum, vel argentum, vel vestes præciosas. Querebant etiam de magno Papa, si esset ita senex sicut audierant: au-
Vasta solitudo.
dierant enim quod esset quingentorum annorum. Querebant de terris nostris si ibi essent multæ oues, & boues, & equi. De Oceano mari non poruerunt intelligere, quod esset sine termino vel sine ripa. In vigilia omnium Sanctorum dimissimus viam in Orientem, quia iam populus descenderat multum versus meridiem: Et direximus iter per quas-
*Nota diligenter. Iter versus meridiem octo die-
tum.*
dam Alpes rectè in meridiem continuè per octo dies. In illa solitudine vidi multos asinos, quos vocant Colan, qui magis assimilantur mulis: quos multum prosequuti sunt nos, quæ nos vocant, sed nihil profecerunt propter nimiam velocitatem eorum. Septima die inceperunt nobis apparere ad meridiem montes altissimi: & intrauimus planiciem, quæ irrigabatur sicut hortus, & inuenimus terras cultas. In octauis omnium Sanctorum intrauimus villam quandam Saracenorum nomine Kenchat: cuius capiraneus occurrebat extra villam duci nostro cum ceruisa & ciphis. Hic est enim mos eorum; quod de omnibus villis subditis e.s., occurratur nuncijs Baatu, & Mangu cham cum cibo & potu. Tunc tem-
Asini velocissimi. Montes altissimi.
poris ibant ibi super glaciem. Et prius à festo Sancti Michaelis habueramus gelu in solitudi-
*Terræ cultæ. Kenchat villa Sa-
racenorum.*
ne. Quæsiui de nomine Prouincie illius: sed quia iam eram in alio territorio nescierunt mihi dicere, nisi à nomine ciuitatis, quæ erat valde parua. Et descendebat magnus fluuius in montibus, qui irrigabat totam regionem, secundum quod volebant aquam ducere: nec descende-
Septimo die Nouembris ibant super glaciem.
batur in aliquod mare, sed absorbebatur à terra: & faciebat etiam multas paludes. Ibi vidi vites, & bibi bis de vino.

De interfectione Ban & habitatione Teuto- nicorum.

Sequenti die venimus ad aliud casale propinquius montibus. Et quæsiui de montibus, de Casale. quibus intellexi, quod essent montes Caucafi: qui contriguantur ex vtraque parte maris ab Occidente vsque ad Orientem: & quod transueramus mare supradictum, quod intrat Eti-
Montes Caucafi contriguantur mari Orientali. Talas, vel Chincalis ciuitas. Frater Andreas.
lia. Quæsiui etiam de Talas ciuitate, in qua erant Teutonici serui Buri, de quibus dixerat frater Andreas, de quibus etiam quæsiueram multum in curia Sartach & Baatu. Sed nihil potui ram intelligere, nisi quod Ban dominus eorum fuerat interfectus tali occasione. Ipse non erat in bonis pascuis. Et quadam die dum esset ebrius, loquebatur ita cum hominibus suis, Nonne sum de genere Chingis can sicut Baatu? (Et ipse erat nepos Baatu vel frater) quare non vadam super ripam Etilia, sicut Baatu, vt pascam ibi? Quæ verba relata fuerunt Baatu. Tunc ipse Baatu scripsit hominibus illius, vt adducerent ei dominum ipsorum vincunt Baatu. Tunc ipse Baatu quæsiuit ab eo si dixisset tale verbum: & ipse confessus est, quod & fecerunt. quia ebrius erat: (quia solent condonare ebrijs): & Baatu respondit: Quomodo audebas me nominare in ebrietate tua? Et fecit ei amputari caput. De illis Teutonicis nihil potui cognoscere vsque ad curiam Mangu cham, intellexi quod ipse Man-
Casale.
nos iuxta mōtes per sex dietas. Quando veni ad curiam Mangu cham, intellexi quod ipse Man-
*Bolac villa Auri-
solida.*
gu transulerat eos delicta Baatu versus Orientem spacio itineris vnus mensis à Talas ad quandam villam quæ dicitur Bolac: vbi fodiant aurum, & fabricant arma. Vnde non potui ire nec redire per eos. Transiui eundo satis prope, per tres dietas fortè, ciuitatem illam: sed ego ignorau: nec potuissim etiam declinasse extra viam, si benè sciuissim. A prædicto casali iui-
Intrat ditionem Mangu cham.
mus ad Orientem iuxta montes prædictos: & ex tunc intrauimus inter homines Mangu cham, qui vbiq; cantabant & plaudiebant coram ductore nostro: quia ipse erat nuncius Baatu. Huc enim honorem exhibent sibi mutuo, vt homines Mangu cham recipiant nuncios Baatu prædicto

Alpes in quibus
habitant Caracay.
tagus fluuius.

Terra culta,
Equus villa
bona.
Longissime à
Perside,
Lacus quinque-
cam dictum
circu.

Cilac magna
villa plena
mercatoribus.

Contomanni.

per hunc modo: Et similiter homines Baatu nuncios Mangu. Tamen homines Baatu superi-
ores sunt, nec exeuntur ita diligenter. Paucis diebus post hoc intrauimus Alpes, in quibus
solebant habitare Caracay: & inuenimus ibi magnum fluuium, quem oportuit nos trans-
ire nauigio. Post hæc intrauimus quandam uallem, ubi vidi castrum quoddam destructum,
cuius muri non erant nisi de luto, & terra colebatur ibi. Et post inuenimus quandam bonam
villam quæ dicitur Equius, in qua erant Saraceni loquentes Persicum: longissime ta-
men erant à Perside. Sequenti die transgressi illis Alpibus quæ descendeant à magnis mon-
tibus ad meridiem, ingressi sumus pulcherrimam planiciem habentem montes altos à dextris,
& quoddam mare à sinistris, siue quendam lacum qui durat quindecim dienas in circuitu. Et
illa planicies tota irrigabatur ad libitum aquis descendentibus de montibus, quæ omnes recli-
piuntur in illud mare. In ætate rediimus ad latus Aquilonare illius maris, quæ omnes recl-
piuntur in illud mare. In planicie prædicta solebant esse multæ villæ: sed pro maiori parte omnes
exertæ, & pascere ibi Tartari: quia optima pascua erant ibi. Vnam magnam vil-
lam inuenimus ibi nomine Cilac, in qua erat forum, & frequentabant eam multi mercato-
res. In illa quæuimus quindecim diebus, expectantes quendam scriptorem Baatu, qui debe-
bat esse socius ductus nostri in negotijs expediendis in curia Mangu. Terra illa solebat dici Or-
ganum: & solebant habere proprium idioma, & propriam literam: Sed hæc tota erat
occupata à Contomannis. Etiam in literatura illa & idiome solebant facere Nestorini de
partibus illis. Dicuntur Organa, quia solebant esse optimi Organistæ vel Citharistæ, vt
dicebatur mihi. Ibi primo vidi Idolatrias, de quibus noueritis, quod sunt multæ scæ-
tæ in Oriente.

Quod Nestorini et Saraceni sunt mixti & Idolatræ.

Iugures populi,
Idolatræ.

Cilac.

Iugures scæta di-
uisa ab alijs Ido-
latriis.

fuit apud Caraca-
rum fratres Wil-
helmus.

Primi sunt Iugures, quorum terra contiguatur cum terra prædicta Organum inter montes il-
los versus Orientem: Et in omnibus ciuitatibus eorum sunt mixti Nestorini & Saraceni. Et
ipsi etiã sunt diffusi versus Persidem in ciuitatibus Saracenorum. In prædicta ciuitate Cealac ha-
bebant etiam ipsi tres Idolatrias, quarum duas intraui, vt viderem similitudines eorum. In prima in-
ueni quendam, qui habebat cruciculam de aramento super manum suam. Vnde credidi quod
esset Christianus: quia ad omnia quæ quærebam ab eo, respondebat vt Christianus. Vnde quæ-
siui ab eo: Quare ergo non habetis crucem & imaginem Iesu Christi? Et ipse respondit, non
habemus consuetudinem. Vnde ego credidi quod essent Christiani: sed ex defectu doctrine
omitterent. Videbam enim ibi post quandam cisternam, quæ erat eius loco altaris, super quam po-
nunt lucernas & oblationes, quandam imaginationem habentem alas quasi Sancti Michaelis:
& alias quasi ipsorum tenentes digitos sicut ad benedicendum. Illo sero non potui aliud inue-
nire. Quia Saraceni in tantum inuiant eos, quod nec etiam volunt loqui inde eis. Vnde quan-
do quærebam a Saracenis de ritu talium, ipsi scandalizabantur. In crastino fuerunt kalendæ &
pascha Saracenorum & mutauit hospitium: ita quod fui hospitatus prope aliam Idolatriam,
Homines enim colligunt nuncios, quilibet secundum posse suum vel portionem suam. Tunc
intrans Idolatriam prædictam inueni sacerdotes Idolorum. In kalendis enim aperiuunt tem-
pla sua, & ornant se sacerdotes, & offerunt populi oblationes de pane & fructibus. Primum ergo
describo vobis ritus communes omnes Idolatriarum: & postea istorum Iugurum, qui sunt quasi
scæta diuisa ab alijs. Omnes adorant ad Aquilonem complois manibus: & prosternentes se
genibus flexis ad terram, ponentes frontem super manus. Vnde Nestorini in partibus illis nul-
lo modo iungunt manus orando: sed orant extensis palmis ante pectus. Porrigunt templa
sua ab Oriente in Occidentem: & in latere Aquilonari faciunt cameram vnam quasi eorū exe-
untem: vel aliter, Si est domus quadrata, in medio domus ad latus aquilonare intercludunt v-
nam cameram in loco chori. Ibi ergo collocant vnam arcam longam & laram sicut mensam
vnam. Et post illam arcam contra meridiem collocant principale idolum: quod ego vidi apud
Caracay, ita magnum sicut pingitur Sanctus Christophorus. Et dixit mihi quidam sacerdos
Nestorinus, qui venerat ex Cataya, quod in terra illa est Idolum ira magnum, quod potest vi-
deri à duabus diebus. Et collocant alia idola in circuitu, omnia pulcherrime deaurata: Super ci-
sternam illam, quæ est quasi mensa vna, ponunt lucernas & oblationes. Omnes portas templorum
sunt apertæ ad meridiem contrario modo Saracenis. Item habent campanas magnas sicut nos.
Ideo credo quod orientales Christiani noluerunt habere eas. Ruteni tamen habent & Græci
in Gafaria.

Basu superi-
bes, in quibus
uit nos trans-
destructum,
dam bonam
ngissimè ta-
ngnis mon-
tos à dextris,
circuitu. Et
omnes reci-
milititer erant
parte omnes
magnam vil-
li mercator-
qui debe-
bat dici Or-
te tota erat
Nestorini de
hansiz, ve
mulaz scēz

r montes il-
Saraceni, Et
Cealae ha-
n primain-
edidi quod
Vnde que-
ondit, non
tu docting
quani po-
Michaelis:
aliud inue-
nde quan-
kalendz &
dolatriam,
am, Tunc
riunt tem-
rimd ergo
i sunt quasi
nentes se
illis nul-
unt templa
eorū exe-
cludunt v-
at mensam
vidi apud
n sacerdos
potest vi-
Super ci-
mplorum
sicut nos.
& Græci

De

De templis eorum & idolis, & qualiter se habent
in officio deorum suorum.

Omnes sacerdotes eorum rasum habent totum caput & barbam; sunt vestiti de croceo, & seruant castitatem, ex quo radunt caput: Et viuunt pariter centum vel ducenti in vna congregatione. Diebus quibus intrant templum, ponunt duo scamina, & sedent è regione chorus contra chorus habentes libros in manibus, quos aliquando deponunt super illa scamina & habent capita discooperta quādiu insunt in templo, legentes in silencio, & tenentes silentium. Vnde cum ingressus fuisset apud Oratorium quoddam eorum, & inuenerem eos ita sedentes, multis modis tentavi eos prouocare ad verba, & nullo modo potui. Habent etiam quocunque vadunt quandam ressem centum vel ducentorum nucleorum, sicut nos portamus pater noster: Et dicunt semper hæc verba: *Om mam Hallam*: hoc est, Deus tu nosti; secunda hæc hoc dicendo memoratur Dei. Circa templum suum semper faciunt pulchrum atrium, quod bene includunt muro: & ad meridiem faciunt portam magnam, in qua sedent ad colloquendum. Et per illam portam erigunt porticam longam, quæ emineat si possint, super totam villam. Et per illam porticam potest cognosci, quod domus illa sit templum Idolorum, illa commodos sedentes sub porta exteriori. Illi quos vidi, videbantur mihi fratres Franci esse rasis barbis. Tyaras habebant in capitibus cartacas. Istorum lugurum sacerdotes habent talem habitum Tyaræ cartacas, quocunque vadunt: semper sunt in tunicis croceis satis stricis acclineti desuper recte sicut Franci: & habent pallium super humerum sinistrum descendens inuolutū per pectus & dorsum ad latus dextrum sicut diaconus portans casulam in quadagesima. Istorum literas acceperunt Tartari, ipsi incipiunt scribere sursum, & dicunt lineam deorsum, & eodem modo ipsi legunt & multiplicat lineas a sinistra ad dextram. Isti multum viuunt carnis & caracteribus pro forisilegio. Vnde templa sua plena sunt breuius suspensis. Et Mangu-cham multo vobis literas in Chineses ita etiam scribunt. & recondunt puluerem in summitate pyramidis. Cum ergo sedissem iuxta prædictos sacerdotes postquam ingressus fueram templum & viderem idola eorum multa magna & parua: quæ suū ab eis, quid ipsi crederent de Deo. Qui responderunt, Non credimus nisi vnum Deum. Et ego quæsiui. Creditis quod ipse sit spiritus vel aliquid corporale? Dixerunt, credimus quod sit spiritus. Et ego: Creditis quod nunquam sumplerit humanam naturam? Dixerunt, minime. Tunc ego: ex quo creditis, quod non sit nisi vnus spiritus, quare facitis ei imagines corporales, & tot insuper? Et ex quo non creditis quod factus sit homo, quare facitis ei magis imagines hominum, quā alterius animalis? Tunc responderunt, Nos non figuramus istas imagines Deo. Sed quando aliquis diues moritur ex nostris, vel filius, vel vxor, vel aliquis charus eius facit fieri imaginem defuncti, & ponit eam hic: & nos veneramur eam ad memoriam eius. Quibus ego, Tunc ergo non facitis ista nisi propter adulationem hominum. Immo dixerunt ad memoriam. Tunc quæsiuerunt à me quasi deridendo: vbi est Deus? Quibus ego, Vbi est anima vestra? Dixerunt, in corpore nostro. Quibus ego, Nonne est vbiq; in corpore tuo & totum regit, & tamen non videtur? Ita Deus vbiq; est, & omnia gubernat, inuisibilis tamen, quia intellectus & sapientia est. Tunc cum vellem plura ratiocinari cum illis, interpret meus fatigatus, non valens verba exprimere, fecit me tacere. Istorum scēz sunt Moal siue Tartari, quantum ad hoc, quod ipsi non credunt nisi vnum Deum: tamen faciunt de filtro imaginem defunctorum suorum, & induunt eas quinque pannis preciosis, & ponunt in vna biga vel duabus, & illas bigas nullus audet tangere: & sunt sub custodia diuinatorum suorum, qui sunt eorum sacerdotes, de quibus postea narrabo vobis. Isti diuinatores semper sunt ante curiam ipsius Mangu & aliorū diuitum: pauperes enim non habent eos; nisi illi qui sunt de genere Chingis. Et cum debent bigare, ipsi præcedunt, sicut columna nubes filios Israel, & ipsi cum sit dies festus siue kalendæ ipsi extrahunt prædictas imagines & ponunt eas ordinate per circuitum in domo sua. Tunc veniunt Moal & ingrediuntur domum illam, & inclinant se imaginibus illis & venerantur illas. Et illam domum nemini ingredi extraneo licet: Quadam enim vice volui ingredi & multum durè increpatus fui.

De

De diuersis nationibus, & de illis qui comedere
solebant parentes suos.Paria Presbiteri
Iohannis.Tangut populi,
fortissimi.Boues pilosiss
caudis: his simi
les sunt in Qui
uera Americæ
septentrionalis
provincia.

Tebet populi.

Auri abundantia.

Tangut homines
magni sed luchi.

Langa & Solanga

Solangi similes
Hitpani, & luchi.Tabula de dente
elephantino.

Muc populi.

Magna Cathaya.

PRædicti vero Iugures, qui sunt mixti cum Christianis & Saracenis, per frequentes disputationes, ut credo, peruenerunt ad hoc, quod non credunt nisi vnum deum. Et isti lucent habitantes in ciuitatibus, qui post obdierunt Chingis Cham: vnde ipse dedit regi eorum filium suum. Et ipsa Caracaru est quasi in territorio eorum: Et tota terra regis sue presbyteri Iohannis & Vut fratris eius circa terras eorum: Sed isti in pascuis ad aquilonem, illi Iugures inter montes ad meridiem. Inde est quod ipsi Moal sumpserunt literas eorum. Et ipsi sunt magni scriptores eorum: & omnes fere Nestorini sciunt literas eorum. Post istos sunt ipsi Tangut ad orientem inter montes illos, homines fortissimi, qui ceperunt Chingis in bello. Et pace facta dimissus ab eis, postea subiugauit eos. Isti habent boues fortissimos habentes caudas plenas pilis sicut equi, & ventres pilosos & dorsa. Bassiores sunt alij bobus in tibijs, sed ferociiores multum. Isti trahunt magnas domos Moallorum: & habent cornua gracilia, longa, acutissima: ita quod oportet semper secare summities eorum. Vacca non permittit se iniungi nisi canetur ei, habent etiam naturam bubali quia si videt hominem inducum rubeis, insiliunt in eum volentes interficere. Post illos sunt Tebet homines solentes comedere parentes suos defunctos, ut causa pietatis non faceret aliud sepulchrum eis nisi viscera sua. Modo tamen hoc dimiserunt, quia abominabiles erant omni nationi. Tamen adhuc faciunt pulchros ciphos de capitibus parentum, ut illis bibentes habeant memoriam eorum in iocunditate sua. Hoc dixit mihi qui viderat. Isti habent multum de auro in terra sua. Vnde qui indiget auro, fodit donec reperiat, & accipiat quando indiget, residuum condens in terra: quia si reponeret in arca vel in thesauro, crederet quod Deus auferret ei aliud quod est in terra. De istis hominibus vidi personas multum deformes. Tangut vidi homines magnos sed fuscos. Iugures sunt mediocri stature sicut nostri. Apud Iugures est fons & radix ideomatis Turci & Comanici. Post Tebet sunt Langa & Solanga, quorum nuncios vidi in curia: Qui adduxerant magnas bigas plusquam decem, quarum quælibet trahebatur sex bobus. Isti sunt parui homines & fusi sicut Hitpani: & habent tunicas sicut supertunicale diaconi manicis parum strictioribus: & habent in capitibus mitras sicut episcopi. Sed pars anterior est parum interior quam posterior, & non terminatur in vnum angulum: sed sunt quadæ de super, & sunt de stramine rigidato per calorem magnum, & limato in tantum, quod fulget ad radium solis sicut speculum vel galea bene burnita. Et circa tempora habent longas bendas de eadem materia assutas ipsi mitræ; quæ se extendunt ad ventum sicut duo cornua egredientia de temporibus. Et quando ventus nimis iacet eas plicant eas per medium mitræ superius à tempore in tempus: & iacent sicut circulus extransuerso capitis. Et principalis nuncius quando veniebat ad curiam, habebat tabulam de dente elephantino ad longitudinem vnius cubiti, & ad latitudinem vnius palmi, rasam multum: Et quandocunque loquebatur ipsi Cham, vel alicui magno viro, semper aspiciebat in illam tabulam, ac si inueniret ibi ea quæ dicebat: nec respiciebat ad dextram vel sinistram, nec in faciem illius cui loquebatur. Etiam accedens coram domino & recedens nusquam respicit nisi in tabulam suam. Ultra istos sunt alij homines, ut intellexi pro vero, qui dicuntur Muc, qui habent villas, sed nulla animalia sibi appropriant: tamen sunt multi greges & multa armenta in terra ipsorum, & nullus custodit ea. Sed cum aliquis indiget aliquo, accendit collem & clamat, & omnia animalia audientia clamorem accedunt circa illum, & permittunt se tractari quasi domestica. Et si nuncius vel aliquis extraneus accedat ad regionem illam, ipsi includunt eum in domo, & ministrant ei necessaria, donec negotium eius fuerit expeditum. Quia si iret extraneus per regionem, animalia ad odorem eius fugerent, & efficerentur sylvestria. Ultra est magna Cathaya, cuius incolæ antiquitus ut credo dicebantur Seres. Ab ipsis enim veniunt optimi panni serici. Et ille populus dicitur Seres a quodam oppido eorum. Bene intellexi, quod in illa regione est oppidum habens muros argenteos & propugnacula aurea. In ista terra sunt multæ provincie, quarum plures adhuc non obediunt Moallis, Et inter *

Aliaqua desiderantur.

The



my selfe
when I
the Tarta
your mai
sufficient
that in the
which the
chants) o
uines, one
Synopolis
of the Lati
saria, that is
wards Syn
much that
bout 700,
which is a p
is, in a mane
Clement f
Church is sa
the South, a
gainst Syno
tries, in the
Northern re
furies, with o
silke, and diu
Matriga, whe
of is twelue m
a little sea, whi
site paces deep
stantinople, ar
to buy dyed sil
forefayd provin
West side, whe
Soldaia wherea
on the mouth of
on vnto the Tarta
not vnder the Tarta
which hath a gou
Constantinople,
dan of Turkic, w
Vastacius, whose
fection. All the
iurisdiction. Dea
Assanus, and Bulg

The iournal of frier *William de Rubruquis* a French
man of the order of the minorite friers, vnto the East parts
of the worlde. An.Dom. 1253.



In his most Soueraigne, & most Chyrtian Lozd Lewis, by Gods grace the renowned king of France, frier William de Rubruk, the meaneſt of the Moniques order, wiſeth health & continual triumph in CHRIST. It is written in the booke of Eccleſiaſticus concerning the wiſe man: He ſhall trauell into forren countries, and good and euill ſhall he trie in all things. The very ſame action (my lozd and king) haue I achieved: howbeit I wiſh that I haue done it like a wiſe man, and not like a fool. For many there be, that perſorme the ſame action which a wiſe man doth, not wiſely but moze vndiſcreetly: of which number I feare my ſelfe to be one. Notwithſtanding howſoeuer I haue done it, becauſe you commanded mee, when I departed from your highnes, to write all things vnto you, which I ſhould ſee among the Tartars, and you wiſhed me alſo that I ſhould not feare to write long letters, I haue done as your maieltie inioined me: yet with feare and reuerence, becauſe I want wordes and elquence ſufficient to write vnto lo great a maieltie. Be it knowne therefore vnto your ſacred Maieſtie, which the Bulgarians call the great ſea. It containeth in length (as I learned of certaine merchants) 1008 miles, and is in a manner, diuided into two parts. About the miſt thereof are two prouinces, one towards the North, and another towards the South. The South prouince is called Synopolis, and it is the caſtle and pozte of the Soldan of Turkie: but the North prouince is called Caſſaria, that is to ſay Caſſaria. And there are certaine head lands ſtretching forth into the ſea towards Synopolis. Alſo, there are 300 miles of diſtance betweene Synopolis and Caſſaria, inſomuch that the diſtance from thoſe pointes of places to Conſtantinople, in length and breadth is about 700 miles: and 700 miles alſo from thence to the Eaſt, namely to the countrey of Hiberia, which is a prouince of Georgia. At the prouince of Gaſaria or Caſſaria we arriued, which prouince is, in a manner, three ſquare, hauing a citie on the Weſt part thereof called Kerſoua, wherein S. Clement ſuffered martyrdom. And ſaying beſore the ſaid citie, we ſawe an iſland, in which a Church is ſayd to be built by the hands of angels. But about the miſt of the ſaid prouince toward the South, as it were, vpon a ſharpe angle of point, ſtandeth a citie called Soldaia directly ouer againſt Synopolis. And there doe all the Turkie merchants, which traffique into the North countreyes, in their iourney outward, arriue, and as they retorne homeward alſo from Ruſſia, and the ſaid North regions, into Turkie. The ſayd merchants tranſport thither ermines and gray fures, with other rich and coſtly ſkinnes. Others carrie cloathes made of cotton or bombast, and ſilke, and diuers kindes of ſpices. But vpon the Eaſt part of the ſaid prouince ſtandeth a citie called Matriga, where the riuer Tanais diſchargeth his ſtreames into the ſea of Pontus, the mouth whereof is twelue miles in breadth. For this riuer, beſore it entereth into the ſea of Pontus, maketh ſixte paces deepe, whereupon great veſſels cannot ſayle ouer it. Howbeit the merchants of Conſtantinople, arriuing at the ſayd citie of Matriga, ſend their barkes vnto the riuer of Tanais to buy dyed fiſhes, Surgeons, Thoſes, Barbiſſes, and an infinite number of other fiſhes. The ſayd prouince of Caſſaria is compaſſed in with the ſea on three ſides thereof: namely on the Weſt ſide, where Kerſoua the citie of S. Clement is ſituate: on the South ſide the citie of Soldaia whereat we arriued: on the Eaſt ſide Maricandis, and there ſtandeth the citie of Matriga vpon the mouth of the riuer Tanais. Beyond the ſayd mouth ſtandeth Zikia, which is not in ſubiecti- on vnto the Tartars: alſo the people called Sucui and Hiberi towards the Eaſt, wholiſe are not vnder the Tartars dominion. Moreouer towards the South, ſtandeth the citie of Trapeſunda, which hath a gouernour proper to it ſelfe, named Guydo, being of the lineage of the emperours of Conſtantinople, and is ſubiect vnto the Tartars. Next vnto that is Synopolis the citie of the Soldan of Turkie, who likewiſe is in ſubiecti- on vnto them. Next vnto theſe lyeth the countrey of Vaſtaci- on, whoſe ſonne is called Aſtar, of his grandfather by the mothers ſide, who is not in ſubiecti- on. All the land from the mouth of Tanais Weſtward as farre as Danubius is vnder thei- ſubiecti- on. Nea beyond Danubius alſo, towards Conſtantinople, Valakia, which is the land of Aſſanus, and Bulgaria minor as farre as Solonia, doe all pay tribute vnto them. And beſides the

Eccleſ. 39. ver. 4.

Gaſaria.

Soldaia.

The citie of Matriga.

Matriga.

Zikia.

tribute imposed, they haue also, of late yeares, exacted of euery houshold an are, and all such coine as they found lying on heapes. We arrived therefore at Soldaia the twelfth of the kalends of June. And diuers merchants of Constantinople, which were arrived there before vs, reported that certaine messengers were coming thither from the holy land, who were desirous to traueil vnto Sarrach. Notwithstanding I my self had publickly giuen out vpon Palme Sunday within the Church of Sancta Sophia, that I was not your nor any other mans messenger, but that I traualled vnto those insidels according to the rule of our order. And being arriu'd, the said merchants admonished me to take diligent heede what I spake: because they hauing reported me to be a messenger, if I should say the contrary, that I were no messenger, I could not haue free passage granted vnto me. The I spake after this manner vnto the gouernours of the citie, or rather vnto their Lieutenants, because the gouernours themselves were gone to pay tribute vnto Baau, & were not as yet returned. We heard of your Ioy Sarrach (quoth I) in the holy land, that he was become a Chistian: and the Chistians were exceeding gladd therof, & especially the most Chistian king of France, who is there now in pilgrimage, & fighteth against the Saracens to redeeme the holy places out of their handes: wherefore I am determined to go vnto Sarrach, & to deliuer vnto him y letters of my Ioy the king, wherein he admonisheth him concerning the good and commoditie of all Chriendome. And they receiued vs with gladnes, and gaue vs entertainment in the cathedrall Church. The bishop of which Church was with Sarrach, who told me many good things concerning the saide Sarrach, which afterward I found to be nothing so. Then put they vs to our choise, whether we woulde haue carres and oren, or packe horses to transport our carriages. And the merchants of Constantinople aduised me, not to take carres of the citizens of Soldaia, but to buy couered carres of mine owne, (such as the Russians carrie their skins in) and to put all our carriages, which I would buy, take out, into them: because, if I should vse horses, I must be constrained at euery baite to take downe my carriages, and to lift them by againe on sundry horses backs: and besides, that I should ride a more gentle pace by the oren drawing the carres. Wherefore, concerning my selfe with their euil counsel, I was traueiling vnto Sarrach 2. moneths which I could haue done in one, if I had gone by horse. I brought with me from Constantinople (being by the merchants aduised so to doe) pleasant fruits, muscadel wine, and delicate bisket bread to present vnto the gouernours of Soldaia, to the end I might obtaine free passage: because they looke sauourable vpon no man which commeth with an empty hand. All which thinges I bestowed in one of my carres, (not finding the gouernours of the citie at home) so they told me, if I could carrie them to Sarrach, that they would be most acceptable vnto him. Wee tooke our Iourney therefore about the kalends of June, with foure couered carres of our owne and with two other which wee borrowed of them, wherein wee carried our bedding to rest vpon in the night, and they allowed vs five horses to rine vpon. For there were iust five persons in our company: namely, I my selfe and mine associate frier Bartholomew of Cremona, and Goler the bearer of these presents, the man of Gled Turgemannus, and Nicolas my seruant, whome I bought at Constantinople with some part of the almes bestowed vpon me. Whereouer, they allowed vs two men, which draue our carts and gaue attendance vnto our oren and horses. There be high promontories on the sea shore from Kerfoua vnto the mouth of Tanais. Also there are fortie castles betweene Kerfoua and Soldaia, euery one of which almost haue their proper languages: amongst whome there were many Gothes, who spake the Dutch tongue. Beyond the said mountaines towards the 32.orth, there is a most beautiful wood growing on a plaine full of fountaines & freshets. And beyond the wood there is a mightie plaine champaign, continuing five dayes Iourney vnto the very extremitie and borders of the said prouince northward, and there it is a narrow Isthmus or neck land, hauing sea on the East & West sides therof, inso much that there is a ditch made fro one sea vnto the other. In the same plaine (before the Tartars sprang by) were the Comanians wont to inhabite, who compelled the foresayd cities and castles to pay tribute vnto them. But when the Tartars came vpon them, the multitude of the Comanians entred into the fore said prouince, and fled all of them, eu'n vnto the sea shore, being in such extreme famine, that they which were aliue, were constrained to eate vp those which were dead: and (as a marchant reported vnto me who saue it with his owne eyes) that the liuing men deuoured and roze with their teeth, the raw flesh of the dead, as dogges would gnawe vpon carrion. Towards the borders of the said prouince there be many great lakes: vpon the bankes whereof are salt pits or fountaines, the water of which so soone as it entereth into the lake, becometh hard salte like vnto ice. And out of those salte pittes Baau and Sarrach haue great reuenues: for they repaie thither out of all Russia for salte: and for each carre loade they giue two vedres of cotton amounting to the value of halfe an Yperpera. There came by sea also many ships for salt, which pay tribute euery one of them according to their burden. The third day after wee were departed out of the precincts of Soldaia, we found the Tartars, amongst whome being en-

Frier Bartholomew of Cremona.

The stricke of Taurica Chersonesus.

The Tartars.

The

tered, Pighon

T co
nubius
or small
cattel w
regions
ter when
cause the
round for
sister (in
cendeth
they lay
white. &
house, the
hang a fe
birds, and
in breadth
found it co
on each side
in one orde
carre was c
vpon the se
baskets of s
they frame
And then th
milke to kee
feathers. An
do strongly
rivers, & de
down their d
the carts lade
house stande
these lakes m
onlies for I
One rich Mo
wines, euery
the great on
houses do belo
placeth her cou
leth vpon the
east. Whereu
few men abid
tries are very p
sities a wench i
they chance to
goe a slowe pace

Of

Hauing taken
ward, they
place is alwaies
on his bed with his
hand of their mail

all such cozne
the kalends of
the vs, reported
rous to trauell
in day within 5
at I traualled
thats admoni-
e a messenger,
e granted vnto
r lieutenantes,
s yet returned,
ition: And the
e, who is there
their hawkes
loz the king,
mc. And they
The bishop of
saide Sarach,
er we woulde
s of Constan-
cartes of mine
I would day-
p baite to take
that I should
elfe with their
in one, if I had
s aduised so to
gonerous of
upon no man
p cartes, Nos
o Sarach, that
the kalends of
owed of them,
hoyses to the
mine affloate
f Gob Turge-
me part of the
carts and gane
from Kerfoua
Jaia, euery one
Goches, who
s a most beauti-
there is a mighty
bers of the said
East & West
me plaine (be-
the forstall ci-
e multitude of
sea shope, being
se which were
the lining men
we vpon carri-
bankes where-
lake, become
ue great reue-
they giue two
the many ships
day after wee
come being en-
ered,

tered, me thought I was come into a new worlde. Whose life and maners I wil describe vnto your Highnes as well as I can.

Of the Tartars, and of their houses. Chap. 2.

They haue in no place any settled citie to abide in, neither knowe they of the celestall citie to come. They haue diuided all Scythia among themselves, which stretcheth from the riuer Danubius euen vnto the rising of the sunne. And euery of their capitaines, according to the great or small number of his people, knoweth the bounds of his pastures, and where he ought to feed his cattel winter and summer, Spring and autumn. For in the winter they descend vnto the feed his regions southward. And in the summer they ascend vnto the colde regions northward. In winter when snow lyeth vpon the ground, they feede their cattell vpon pastures without water, because then they vse snow in stead of water. Their houses wherein they sleepe, they ground vpon a round foundation of wickers artificially wrought and compacted together: the rooffe whereof conserueth vponward a necke like vnto a chimney, which they couer with white felt, and oftentimes they lay moxer of white earth vpon the sayd felt, with the powder of bones, that it may shine white. And sometimes also they couer it with blacke felt. The sayd felt on the necke of their house, they doe garnish ouer with beautifull varietie of pictures. Before the doore likewise they hang a felt curiously painted ouer. For they spend all their coloured felt, in painting vines, trees, birds, and beastes thereupon. The sayd houses they make so large, that they containe thirtie foote in breadth. For measuring once the breadth betweene the wheele-ruts of one of their cartes, I found it to be 20 fette ouer: and when the house was vpon the carte, it stretched ouer the wheelles on each side fife fette at the least. I tolde 22. oren in one teame, drawing an house vpon a carte, elcuen in one order according to the breadth of the carte, and eleuen moxe before them: the axle-tree of the carte was of an huge bigyness like vnto the mast of a ship. And a fellow stood in the doore of the house, vpon the forstall of the carte drawing forth the oren. Moreover, they make certaine fouresquare baskets of small slender wickers as big as great chestes: and after ward, from one side to another, they frame an hollow lidd of couer of such like wickers, and make a doore in the foye side thereof. And then they couer the sayd chest of little house with black felt rubbed ouer with tallow of sheeps feathers. And in such chests they put their whole household stuffe & treasure. Also the same chests they do strongly bind vpon other carts, which are drawn with camels, to send them may wade through rivers. Neither do they at any tyme take down the sayd chests from off their carts. When they take down their dwelling houses, they turne the doores alwayes to the South: & next of all they place the carts laden with their chests, here & there, within half a stons cast of y house: in so much that the house standeth between two ranks of carts, as it were, between two wals. The matrons make for themselves most beautiful carts, which I am not able to describe vnto your maiestie but by pictures onlie: for I would right willingly haue painted al things for you, had my skill bin ought in that art. One rich Moal of Tartar hath 200. of 100. such cartes with chests. Duke Baaru hath fiftene the great one, being as it were chambers for their maidens to dwell in. And vnto euery of the said houses do belong 200. cartes. When they take their houses from off the cartes, the principal wife placeth her court on the West frontier, and so all the rest in their order: so that the last wife dwelleth vpon the East frontier: and one of the said ladies courts is distant from another about a stons cast. Whereupon the court of one rich Moal of Tartar will appeare like vnto a great village, very few men abiding in the same. One woman will guide 20. of 30. cartes at once, for their courtesies are very plaine, and they binde the cartes with camels or oxen, one behind another. And there sittes a wench in the foremost carte drawing the oren, and al the residue follow on a like pace. When they chance to come at any bad passage, they let them loose, and guide them ouer one by one: for they goe a slowe pace, as fast as a lambe or an ore can walke.

The benefite of a painter in strange countreys.

Of their beds, and of their drinking pots. Chap. 3.

Having taken downe their houses from off their cartes, and turning the doores Southward, they place the bed of the master of the house, at the South part thereof. The womens place is alwayes on the East side, namely on the left hand of the good man of the house sitting vpon his bed with his face Southward: but the mens place is vpon y West side, namely at the right hand of their master. When they enter into the house, will not in any case hang their quivers on the

the womens side. Vnto the masters head there is alwayes an image, like a puppet, made of felte, which they call the masters brother: and another ouer the head of the good wife or mistresse, which they call her brother being fastened to the wall: and aboue betwene both of them, there is a little leane one, which is, as it were the keeper of the whole house. The good wife or mistresse of the house placeth aloft at her beds feet, on the right hand, the skinne of a Kidde stuffed with wooll or some other matter, and neare vnto that a little image of puppet looking towards the maidens and women. Next vnto the dooze also on the womens side, there is another image with a cowes bodder, for the women that milke the kine. For it is the duty of their women to milke kine. On the other side of the dooze next vnto the men, there is another image with the bodder of a mare, for the men which milke mares. And when they come together to drinke and make merie, they sprinkle parte of their drinke vpon the image which is aboue the masters head: after ward vpon other images in order: then goeth a seruant out of the house with a cuppe full of drinke sprinkling it thise towards the South, and bowing his knee at every time: and this is done for the honour of the fire. Then perfourmeth he the like superstitious idolatry towards the East, for the honour of the ayre: and then to the West for the honour of the water: & lastly to the North in the behalfe of the dead. When the master holdeth a cuppe in his hande to drinke, befoze he tasteth thereof, hee powreth his part vpon the ground. If he drinketh sitting on horse backe, hee powreth our part thereof vpon the necke or maine of his horse befoze hee himselfe drinketh. After the seruant aforesaide hath so discharged his cuppes to the fower quarters of the world, hee returneth into the house: and two other seruants stand ready with two cuppes, and two basons, to carrie drinke vnto their master and his wife, sitting together vpon a bed. And if he hath moze wiues then one, the which whome hee slept the night befoze, sitteth by his side the daye following: and all his other wiues must that daye resorte vnto the same house to drinke: and there is the court holden for that day: the giftes also which are presented that daye are layd vp in the chests of the lady wife. And vpon a bench standes a vessel of milke or of other drinke and drinking cuppes.

Of their drinckes, and how they prouoke one another to drinking. *Chap. 4.*

In winter time they make excellent drinke of Risse, of Mill, and of honde, being well and highly coloured like wine. Also they haue wine brought vnto them from farre countries. In summer time they care not for any drinke, but Cosmos. And it standeth alwaies within the entrance of his dooze, and next vnto it standes a minstrell with his side. I sawe there no such riters and viols as ours commonly be, but mapp other muscicall instruments which are not used among vs. And when the master of the house begins to drinke, one of his seruants cryeth out with a lowde voice H A, and the minstrell playes vpon his side. And when they make any great solemne feast, they all of them clasp their hands & daunce to the noyse of musique, the men befoze their master and the women befoze their mistresse. And when the master hath drunke, then cries out his seruant as befoze, and the minstrell stayeth his musique. Then drinke they all around both men and women: and sometimes they carowse for the victorie very sitchly and drunkenly. Also when they will prouoke any man, they pul him by the eares to the drinke, and so lug and draw him strongly to stretch out his thoroate clapping their handes and dauncing befoze him. Dooze ouer when some of them will make great feasting and reioycing, one of the company takes a full cuppe, and two other stand, one on his right hand and another on his left, and so they three come singing to the man who is to haue the cuppe reached vnto him, still singing and dauncing befoze him: and when he stretcheth forth his hand to receiue the cuppe, they leape suddenly backe, returning againe as they did befoze, and so hauing deluded him thrice or fower times by drawing backe the cuppe vntill he be merie, and hath gotten a good appetite, then they giue him the cuppe, singing and dauncing and stamping with their feet, vntill he hath done drinking.

Of their foode and victuals. *Chap. 5.*

Concerning their foode and victuals, be it knowne vnto your Highnesse that they do, without difference of exception, eat all their dead carrions. And amongst so many doozes it cannot be, but some cattell must needs die. Howbeit in summer, so long as their Cosmos, that is, their mares milke lasteth, they care not for any foode. And if they chance to haue an ore or an horse dye, they dye the flesh thereof: for cutting it into thin slices and hanging it vp against the Sunne and the wind, it is presently dried without salt, and also without stench or corruption. They make

They vse the
like custome
in Florida.

Drying of flesh
in the wind.

make
of the
they d
sambal
it in a
a little
out of
multite
selfe ca
receiuen
to eate i
he puts
with the
not time
their foot

Their
along
foles of the
suffering e
it vnder her
to milke the
as cowes m
bag with a p
which is hol
fower and q
thereof, and
raspes, when
casse of almon
sceth byne to b
great loys to
part thereof d
and pure rema
white, are giue
cleare the ma
Baau hath chis
which serueth h
ther every day
bring. For eue
the courts of the
milke they first
ramus skinness, b
yet by reason of
milke which rem
boile it and in boi
hard as the dooze
winter season wh
bladder, and pow
water, which is th
very scrupulous, a

Of th

Great loys haue
chem Miller an
ries, for perchange
water, & are therewi
milk with thez tailes

et, made of felte,
mistrell, which
n, there is a litle
mistrell of the
the maidens and
the colwes bodder,
the kine. On the
of a mare, for the
ie, they spyne
ward upon other
the spyne which it
for the honour of
of the honour of
in the behalfe of
teeth thereof, hee
which our part
be seruant a-
turneth into the
arrie drinke vn-
es then one, the
and all his o-
urt holden for
f the sayd wife,

well and high
In summer
erence of his
s and vials as
vs. And when
voice H A, and
they all of them
the women be-
before, and the
and sometimes
oke any man,
ut his thpoute
l make great
e on his right
e the cuppe
oeth his hand
and so hauing
h hath gotten
h their seete,

do, without
ues it cannot
that is, their
an horse dye,
the Sunne
tion. They
make

make better puddings of their hysles then of their hogs, which they eate being new made: the rest of the flesh they reserve untill winter. They make of their ore skins great bladders or bags, which they doe wonderfully vpp in the smoake. Of the hinder part of their horse hides they make very fine fanals & pantofles. They giue vnto 50. or an 100. men the flesh of one ram to eat. For they mince it in a bowle with salt and water (other sauce they haue none) and then with the point of a knife, or a litle soyke which they make for the same purpose (such as wee vse to rake roasted peares or apples out of wine withal) they reach vnto euery one of the company a morsell or twaine, according to the multitude of guests. The master of the house, before the rams flesh be distributed, first of all himselfe taketh thereof, what he pleaseth. Also, if he giueth vnto any of the company a speciall part, the receiuer thereof must eat it alone, and must not impart ought thereof vnto any other. Not being able to eate it vp all, he caries it with him, or deliuereth vnto his boy, if he be present, to keepe it: if not, he puts it vp into his Saptargat, that is to say, his foure square buget, which they vse to carry about with them for the sauing of all such pouison, and wherein they lay vp their bones, when they haue not time to giue them thoroughly, that they may burnish them afterward, to the end that no whit of their food may come to nought.

How they make their drinke called *Cosmos*. Chap. 6.

Their drinke called *Cosmos*, which is mares milke, is prepared after this manner. They fasten a long line vnto 2. posts standing firmly in the ground, & vnto the same line they tie the young foales of those mares, which they mean to milke. Then come the dams to stand by their foales gently suffering themselves to be milke. And if any of them be too vnruly, then one takes her foale, & puts it vnder her, letting it suck a while, and presently carrying it away againe, there comes another man to milke the said mare. And hauing gotten a good quantity of this milke together (being as sweet as cowes milke) while it is newe they powze it into a great bladder or bag, and they beat the said bag with a piece of wood made for the purpose, hauing a club at the lower ende like a mans head, which is hollow within: and so soone as they beat vpon it, it begins to boile like newe wine, & to be softer and sharper of taste, and they beate it in that manner till butter come thereof. Then taste they thereof, and being indifferently sharpe they drinke it: for it biteth a mans tongue like the wine of raspes, when it is drunk. After a man hath taken a draught thereof, it leaueth behind it a taste like the taste of almon milke, and goeth downe very pleasantly, intoxicating weakelynes: also it causeth vyne to be auoided in great measure. Likewise *Caracosmos*, that is to say black *Cosmos*, for great joyes to drinke, they make on this manner. First they beat the said milke so long till the thickest part thereof descend righte downe to the bottome like the lees of white wine, and that which is thin and pure remaineth aboue, being like vnto whay or white milk. The said lees or dyeggs being very white, are giuen to seruants, and will cause them to sleepe exceedingly. That which is thynne and cleare they make their drinke: and in very deed it is marvellous sweete and wholesome liquor. Duke Baazu hath thirty cottages or granges within a daies iourney of his abiding place: euery one of ther every day with the milke of 3000. mares, besides white milke which other of his subjects bring. For euery one of the husbandmen of Syria bestow the third part of their fructes and carie it vnto the courts of their lords, even so doe they their mares milke euery third day. Out of their cowes milke they first churne butter, boyling the which butter vnto a perfect decoction, they put it into rams skinner, which they reserve for the same purpose. Neither doe they salt their butter: and yet by reason of the long seething, it putrifieth not: and they keepe it in store for winter. The churn-boile it and in boiling, it is turned all into curdes, which curdes they drie in the sun, making them as hard as the dyss of iron: and this kind of food also they store vp in sachelles against winter. In the winter season when milke faileth them, they put the foresaid curdes (which they call *Gry-vi*) into a bladder, and powzing hot water therein, they beat it lustily till they haue resolved it into the said water, which is thereby made exceedingly softe, and that they drinke in stead of milke. They are very scrupulous, and take diligent heed that they drinke not fayre water by it selfe.

Of the beastes which they eate, of their garments, and of their maner of hunting. Chap. 7.

Great lordes haue cottages or granges towards the South, from whence their tenants bring them Miller and meale against winter. The poorer lordes provide themselves of such necessities, for exchange of furs, & of other beastes skins. The Tartars slaues fill the bellies with thick water, & are therewithall contented. They will neither eate milke with long tailed, nor any kinde of milke with short tailed. They haue also certaine litle beastes called by the Sogur, which lie in a cawe
21
twenty

twenty or thirty of them together, at the whole winter keeping there for the space of six monethes: and these they take in great abundance. There are also a kind of conies hauing long tayles like vnto rats: & on the outside of their talles grow blacke & white haire. They haue many other small beasts good to eat, which they know and discern right well. I saw no Deere there, & but a few hares, but a great number of Hoes. I saw wild asses in great abundance, which be like vnto Mules. Also I saw another kind of beast called Arrak, hauing in al resemblance the body of a ram, & crooked hornes, which are of such bignes, that I could scarce lift by a paire of them with one hand: & of these hornes they make great drinking cups. They haue Falcons, Girdalcons, & other haukes in great plenty: all which they carry vpon their right hands: & they put alwaies about their Falcons necks a string of leather, which hangeth down to the midst of their gorges, by the which string, when they call them off the fist at their game, with their left hand they bow downe the heads & breasts of the sayd haukes, lest they should be tossed by & downe, & beaten with the wind, or least they should soare too high. Wherefore they get a great part of their victuals, by hunting & hauking. Concerning their garments and attire be it known vnto your Maestie, that out of Caraya & other regions of the East, out of Persia also and other countries of the South, there are brought vnto them stufes of silke, cloth of gold, & cotton cloth, which they weare in time of summer. But out of Russia, Moxel, Bulgaria the greater, & Pascarir, that is Hungaria the greater, and out of Kerlis (all which are Northern regions & full of woods) & also out of many other countries of the North, which are subiect vnto them, the inhabitants bring them rich and costly skins of diuers sortes (which I neuer saw in our countries) where withal they are clad in winter. And alwaies against winter they make themselves two gownes, one with the fur inward to their skin, & another with the fur outward, to defend them from wind & snow, which for the most part are made of woollens skins, or Fox skins, or els of Rapions. And when they sit within the house, they haue a finer gowne to weare. The poorer sort make their vpper gowne of dogs or of goats skins. When they goe to hunt for wild beasts, there meets a great company of them together, & inuironing the place round about, where they are sure to find some game, by little & little they appoach on all sides, til they haue gotten the wild beasts into the midst, as it were into a circle, & then they discharge their arrows at them. Also they make themselves byerches of skins. The rich Tartars sometimes fur their gowns with pellice of silke Wag, which is exceeding soft, light, & warme. The poorer sort do line their clothes with cotton cloth which is made of the finest wooll they can pick out, & of the courser part of the said wooll, they make felt to cover their houses and their chests, and for their bedding also. Of the same wooll, being mixed with one third part of horse haire, they make all their copage. They make also of the said felt coverings for their stools, and caps to defende their heads from the weather: for all which purposes they spend a great quantity of their wooll. And thus much concerning the attyre of the men.

Our falconers
like the left fist.
Another strange
custome, which
I leaue to be
scanned by fali-
coners them-
selves.

Great expence
of wooll.

Of the fashion which the Tartars vse in cutting their haire, and of the attire of their women. Chap. 8.

The men haue a plot foure square vpon the crownes of their heads, and from the two foremost corners they haue, as it were, two leaines downe to their temples: they haue also their temples and the hinder part of their head euen vnto the nape of the necke: likewise they haue the forepart of their scalp downe to their foreheads, & vpon their foreheads they leaue a locke of hayre reaching downe vnto their eye browes: vpon the two hindermost corners of their heads, they haue two lockes also, which they twine and braid into knots and so bind and knit them vnder each eare one. Whereouer their womens garments differ not from their mens, saving that they are somewhat longer. But on the morrowe after one of their women is married, shee shaues her scalpe from the midst of her head downe to her forehead, & weares a wide garment like vnto the hood of a Nunne, yea larger and longer in all parts then a Nunnes hood, being open before and girt vnto them vnder the right side. For herein doe the Tartars differ from the Turkes: because the Turkes fasten their garments to their bodies on the left side: but the Tartars alwaies on the right side. They haue also an ornament for their heads which they call Botta, being made of the bark of a tree, or of some such other lighter matter as they can find, which by reason of the thickness & roundnes thereof cannot be holden but in both hands together: & it hath a square sharp spire rising frō the top thereof, being more then a cubite in length, & fashioned like vnto a pinacle. The said Botta they couer alouer with a piece of rich silke: & it is hollow within: & vpon the midst of the sayd spire or square toppie, they put a bunch of quills or of slender canes a cubite long and more: & the sayd bunch, on the top thereof, they beautifie with Peacocks feathers, & round about al the length thereof, with the feathers of a Sparrowe, & with precious stones also. Great ladies weare this kind of ornament vpon their heads binding it strongly with a certain hat or cople, which hath an hole in the crowne, as for the spire to come

Concerning
When two men
help his owne
whosoever els of
with... all delays
with no man with
But being accur
confesse the crue

The
come
cher
with
great
ers w
an hel
they
cher
make
the les
too shan

The
aga
ally to
into one
appeal:
be hang
derfully
then wa
uer wish
must be
They mak
arrows,
churche
burthens
men. Alth
hands of
little, the
nes is to
somes tim
they can
but they
sisters. Th
ued them
that curre
nable & s
except his
to the yon
inheritance
for he thin
ter death.
mole! mak
Then saith
can find
must take

Of t

come

of fire monethe:
ing caples like vna-
many other small
re, & but a few
like unto Spiles,
of a ram, & croo-
h one hand: & of
other haikes in
ur their f alcons
which string, whē
heads & bzeads of
least they should
auking, Concer-
aya & other regi-
ought vnto them
but out of Russia,
Keris (all which
Rozth, which are
(which I neuer
winter they make
the furre outward,
ins, of For skins,
wreare. The poo-
t for wild beas-
t, where they are
n the wild beas-
s. Also they make
lure of silke bag,
rooth cloth which
they make felt to
being mixed with
kid felt couerings
ch purposes they
the men.

their

the two forme-
ue also their tem-
they haue the fore-
rooke of happy re-
heads, they haue
n under each care
they are somewhat
er scalpe from the
hood of a Ranne,
buto them vnder
urkes fasten the
side. They haue
f a tree, of some
mes the rof cannot
top therof, being
couer alouer with
quare toppes, they
on the top therof,
feathers of a Spar-
upon their heads
he for the spirit to
come

come through it: & vnder the foresaid ornament they couer the haire of their heads, which they ga-
ther by round to gether fro the hinder part therof to the crowne, & so lay them by in a knot or bundle
within the said Botta, which afterwarde they bind strongly vnder their throates. Hereupon when a
great company of such gentle women ride together, and are beheld a far off, they seem to be counti-
ers with helmets on their heads carrying their lances vpright: for the said Botta appeareth like
an helmet with a lance ouer it. Al their women sit on horsebacke describing their horses like men:
& they bind their hoodes or gownes about their waistes with a skie coloured silke skarfe, & with ano-
ther skarfe they girdle it about their bzeads: & they bind also a piece of white silke like a muffler of
make vnder their eyes, reaching down vnto their bzest. These gentle women are exceeding fat, &
the lesser their noses be, the fairer are they esteemed: they daube ouer their sweet faces with greafe
too shamefully: and they neuer lie in bed for their crauel of childbirth.

Of the duties inioined vnto the Tartarian women, and of
their labours, and also of their mariages. Chap. 9.

The duties of women are, to drie cares: to lay their houses vpon cares & to take them downe
again: to milke kine: to make butter & Gry-vr: to dresse skins & to sow them, which they vsu-
ally sowe with thread made of line wes, for they diuide line wes into slender threads, & then twine the
into one long thread. They make sandals & locks & other garments. Howbeit they neuer wash any
apparel: for they say that God is then angry, & that dreadfull thunder wil ensue, if washed garments
be hangen forth to drie: yea, they heat such as wash, & take their garments fro them. They are won-
derfully afraid of thunder: for in the time of thunder they thrust all strangers out of their houses, &
then wrapping themselves in black felt, they lie hidden therein, til the thunder be ouerpass. They ne-
uer wash their dishes or bowles: yea, when their flesh is sodden, they wash the platter wherein it
must be put, with scalding hot broth out of the pot, & then powze the said broth into the pot againe.
They make felte also, & couer their houses therewith. The duties of the men are to make bowes &
arrows, Cosmos, bydales, and saddles: to build houses & cares, to keepe horses: to milke mares: to
churne Cosmos and mares milke, & to make bags wherein to put it: they keepe camels also & lay
burthens vpon them. As for sheepe & goates they tend and milke them, as well the men as the wo-
men. With sheepe milke theye churke & salted they dresse and can their hives. When they wil wash their
hands or their heads, they fill their mouthes full of water, & spouting it into their hands by little and
little, they sprinkle their haire & wash their heades therewith. As touching mariages, your High-
nes is to vnderstand, that no man can haue a wife among them till he hath bought her: whereupon
sometimes their mads are very stale before they be married, for their parents alwaies keepe the till
they can sel them. They keepe the first and second degrees of consanguinitie inuolable, as we do:
but they haue no regard of the degrees of affinity: for they wil marrie together, or by succession, two
sisters. Their widowes marie not at al, for this reason: because they beleue, that al who haue ser-
ued them in this life, shall do them seruice in the life to come also. Whereupon they are perswaded,
that euery widow after death shall returne vnto her own husband. And hereence ariseth an abomi-
nable & filthy custome among them, namely that the sonne marrieth sometimes all his fathers wiues
except his own mother: for the court or house of the father or mother falleth by inheritance alwaies
to the ponger son. Whereupon he is to prouide for all his fathers wiues, because they are part of his
inheritance as well as his fathers possessions. And then if he will he vseth them for his owne vntu-
es: for he thinks it no iniurie or disparagement vnto himselfe, although they returne vnto his father af-
ter death. Therfore whē any man hath bargained with another for a maid, the father of the said da-
mosele makes him a feast: in the meane while she sleeth vnto some of her kinsfolks to hide her selfe.
Then saith her father vnto the bridegrome: Loe, my daughter is yours, take her wherefoeuer you
can find her. Then he and his friends seek for her till they can find her, and hauing found her hee
must take her by force and carpe her, as it were, violently vnto his owne house.

Of their execution of iustice and iudgement: and of
their deaths and burials. Chap. 10.

Concerning their lawes or their execution of iustice, your Maiesty is to be aduertised, that
when two men fight, no third man dare intrude himself to part them. Yea, the father dare not
help his owne sonne. But he that goes by the worst must appeale vnto the court of his lord. And
whofoeuer els offereth him any violence after appeale, is put to death. But he must go presently
witho... all delay: and he that hath suffered the injury, carrieth him, as it were captiue. They pu-
nish no man with sentence of death, vnles hee bee taken in the deede doing, or confesseth the same.
But being accused by the multitude, they put him vnto extreame torture to make him
confesse the cruelty. They punish murder with death, and carnall copulation also with any
other

other besides his owne. By his owne, I meane his wife or his maid seruant, for he may vse his slaue as he liketh himself. Vnious these also or felony they punish with death. For a light theft, as namely for stealing of a ram, the party (not being apprehended in the deed doing, but otherwile detected) is cruelly beaten. And if a executioner lates on an 100. strokes, he must haue an 100. slaues, namely for such as are beate upon sentence giuen in the court. Also counterfeit messengers, because they feine themselves to be messengers, when as indeed they are none at all, they punish with death. Sacriligious persons they vse in like manner (of which kind of malefactours your Maiesty shall vnderstand moze fully hereafter) because they esteeme such to be witches. When any man dieth, they lament & howle most pitifully for him: & the said mourners are free from paying any tribute for one whole yeare after. Also whosoeuer is present at the house where any one growen to mans estate lieth dead, he must not enter into the court of Mangu-Can till one whole yeare be expired. If it were a child deceased he must not enter into the said court till the next moneth after. Where vnto the graue of the partie deceased they alwaies leaue one cottage. If any of their nobles (being of the Rockor Chingis, who was their first lord & father) deceased, his sepulcher is unknowen. And alwayes about these places where they interre their nobles, there is one house of men to keepe the sepulchers. I could not learn that they vse to hide treasures in the graues of their dead. The Comanians build a great tomb ouer their dead, & erect the image of the dead party thereupon, with his face towards the East, holding a drinking cup in his hand, before his navel. They erect also vpon the monuments of rich men, Pyramides, that is to say, little sharpe houses or pinacles: & in some places I saw mighty towers made of brick, in other places Pyramides made of stones, albeit there are no stones to be found thereabout. I saw one newly buried, in whose behalfe they hanged vp 16. horse hides, vnto each quarter of the world 4. betweene certain high posts: & they set before his graue Colmos for him to drink, & flesh to eat: & yet they sayd that he was baptizd. I beheld other kinds of sepulchers also towards the East, namely large stowes or paucemets made of stone, some round & some square, & then 4. long stones pitched by right, about the said paucement towards the 4. regions of the world. When any man is sicke, he lieth in his bed, & causeth a signe to be set vpon his house, to signifie that there lieth a sicke person there, to the end that no man may enter into the said house: whereupon none at all visite any sicke party but his seruant onely. Howeuer, when any one is sicke in their great courts, they appoint watchmen to stand round about the said court, who wil not suffer any person to enter within the precincts thereof. For they feare least euill spirits or winds should come together with the parties that enter in. They esteeme of soothsayers, as of their priests.

Of our first entrance among the Tartars, and of their ingratitude. Chap. 11.

And being come amongst those barbarous people, we thought (as I said before) that I was entered into a new world: for they came flocking about vs on horse back, after they had made vs a long time to waite for them sitting in the shadow, vnder their black carts. The first question which they demanded was whether we had euer bin with them heretofore, or no: And giuing the answer that we had not, they began impudently to beg our victuals fro vs. And we gaue them some of our victuals & wine, which we had brought with vs from the towne of Soldaia. And hauing drunke off one flaggon of our wine they demanded another, saying, that a man goeth not into the house with one foote. Howbeit we gaue them no moze, excusing our selues that we had but a little. Then they asked vs, whence we came, & whither we were bound: I answered them with the words aboue mentioned: that we had heard concerning duke Sartach, that he was become a Christian, & that vnto him our determination was to trauele, hauing your Maiesties letters to deliuer vnto him. They were very inquisitiue to know whether I came of mine own accord, or whether I were sent: I answered that no man compelled me to come, neither had I come, vnles I my selfe had bin willing: & that therefore I was come according to mine own wil, & to the will of my superiour. I tooke diligent heed neuer to say that I was your Maiesties ambassadoz. Then they asked what I had in my carts; whether it were gold or silver, or rich garments to carie vnto Sartach? I answered that Sartach should see what we had brought, when we were once come vnto him, & that they had nothing to do to aske such questions, but rather ought to conduct me vnto their captaine, and that he, if he thought good, should cause me to be directed vnto Sartach: if not, that I would returne. For there was in the same province one of Baaru his kinsmen called Scacari, vnto whom my lord the Emperour of Constantinople had written letters of request, to suffer me to passe throug his territory. With this answer of ours they were satisfied, giuing vs horses & oxen, & two men to conduct vs. Howbeit before they would allow vs the foresayd necessities for our iourney, they made vs to awake a long while, begging our bread for their yong byars, wondering at all things which they sawe about our seruants, as their knives, gloves, purses, & points, and desiring to haue them. I excused my selfe that we

Of the
of oxen, &
ters: wh
500. in al
the seruam
sed vs to th
of the eloc
fine ppter
dictals, &
he was to f
could. The
filled a mau
with, becau
sence with f
late by him
seeme to be
ambinte sh
most byt in
plates before
wel forewar
neuer barle
at our hand
felle gold, o
howbeit he
present to be
gether for the
of Constanti
forthwith to
note about him
any Cosmos, th
the Russians, G
thereof, yea, they
reconcile them
that we had as p
constained to by
letters, which po
there was nothin
wee would deliue
these words were

may be his name
the ft, as name
her wife detected)
oo. flauers, name-
gers, because they
with death, Sa-
aity shall under-
man diech, the la-
y tribute for one
to mans estate li-
tired. Ifie were a
re vnto the graue
ing of the dookor
And alwayes ap-
p the Sepulchers.
Comaniā build
his face towards
the monuments
As I saw might
e no floues to be
ofse hides, vnto
auē Cosmos for
ds of sepulchers
of some square
ns of the world.
to signifie that
se: whereupon
ke in their great
er any person to
come together

I was entered
made vs a long
tion which they
e answered that
ne of our victu-
nke off one fla-
with one foot.
they asked vs,
ue mentioned:
e vnto him our
hey were very
answered that
: & that there-
igent hced ne-
yp carts; whe-
Sarrach should
g to do to aske
thought good.
re was in the
peroz of Con-
p. With this
os. Powbeit
away a long
we about our
to my self that
we

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

101

we had a long way to crauel, & that we must in no wise so soon depriue our selues of things necella-
ry, to finish so long a journey. Then they said that I was a very varlet. True it is, that they tooke
nothing by force from me: howbeit they will beg that which they see very importunately & shamelessly.
And if a man bestow ought upon the, it is but cost lost, for they are thankles wretches. They esteeme
these lodes & think & nothing should be denied the by any man. If a man giues them nought, &
afterward stands in neede of their seruice, they will do right nought for him. They giue vs of their
cowes milke to drinke after & butter was cherned out of it, being very sower, which they cal Apram.
And so we departed from the. And in very deed it seemed to me & we were escaped out of the hands
of diuels. On the morrow we were come vnto the captain. From the time wherein we departed from
Soldaia, till we arrived at the court of Sarrach, which was the space of two moneths, we neuer lay
in house or tent, but alwayes vnder the starry canopy, & in the open aire, or vnder our carts. Neither
pet saw we any village, nor any mention of building where a village had bin, but the graues of the
Comaniā in great abundance. The same evening our guide which had conducted vs, gaue vs
some Cosmos. After I had drunke thereof I sweate most extreemly for the nouelty and strange-
nes, because I neuer dranke of it before. Notwithstanding me thought it was very sauory, as in-
deed it was.

Of the court of Scacatai: and how the Christi- ans drinke no Cosmos. Chap. 12.

On the morrow after we met with the carts of Scacatai laden with houses, and me thought
that a mighty citie came to meete me. I wondered also at the great multitude of huge dyours
of oxen, & horses, and at the flockes of sheepe. I could see but a few men that guided all these ma-
ters: whereupon I inquired how many men he had vnder him, & they told me that he had not above
500. in all, the one halfe of which number we were come past, as they lay in another lodging. Then
the seruante which was our guide told me, that I must present somewhat vnto Scacatai: & to be cau-
sed vs to stay, going himselfe before to giue notice of our coming. By this time it was past three
of the clocke, and they vnload their houses nere vnto a certain wasser: And there came vnto vs his
interpreter, who being aduertised by vs that wee were neuer there before, demanded some of our
victuals, & we perced vnto his request. Also he required of vs some garment for a reward, because
he was to interpret our sayings vnto his master. Whereby we excused some of our selues as well as we
could. Then he asked vs, what we would present vnto his Lord? And we tooke a flagon of wine, &
filled a maund with bisket, & a platter with apples & other fruits. But he was not contented there-
with, because we brought him not some rich garment. Notwithstanding we entered so into his pre-
sence with feare and bashfulness. He satte vpon his bed halving a citron in his hand, and his wife
satte by him: who (as I verily thinke) had cut and pared her nose betweene the eyes, that the might
seeme to be more flat and fadde-nosed: for she had left her selfe no nose at all in that place, hauing
ambinted the very same place with a black ointment, and her eye browes also: which sight seemed
most ugly in our eyes. When I rehearsed vnto him the same wordes, which I had spoken in other
places before. For it stood vs in hand to vse one and the same speech in all places. For we were
wel soe warned of this circumstance by some which had been amongst the Tartars, that we should
neuer varie in our tale. Then I besought him, that he would vouchsafe to accept that small gifte
at our hands, excusing my selfe that I was a Sponke, and that it was against our profession to pos-
sele gold, or stier, or precious garment. And therefore that I had not any such thing to giue him,
howbeit he should receive some part of our victuals in stead of a blessing. Whereupon he caused our
present to be receiued, and immediately distributed the same among his men, who were mette to-
gether for the same purpose, to drinke and make merrie. I desired also vnto him the Emperoz
of Constantinople his letters (this was eight dayes after the feast of Ascension) who sent them
forth with to Soldaia to haue them interpreted there: for they were written in Greeke, and he had
note about him that was skilfull in the Greeke tongue. He asked vs also whether we would drinke
any Cosmos, that is to say mares milke? (For those that are Christians among them, as namely
the Russians, Grecians, and Alanians, who keep their own law very strictly, will in no case drinke
thereof, because they accompt themselves no Christians after they haue once drunke of it, & their piety
reconcile them vnto the Church as if they had renounced the Christian faith.) I gaue him answer,
that we had as yet sufficient of our owne to drinke, and that when our drinke failed vs, we must be
constrained to drinke such as should be giuen vnto vs. He enquired also what was contained in
letters, which your Highnesse sent vnto Sarrach? I answered: that they were sealed up, and that
there was nothing contained in them, but good and friendly wordes. And he asked what wordes
wee would deliuer vnto Sarrach? I answered: the wordes of Christian faith. He asked again what
these wordes were? For he was very desirous to heare the. When I expounded vnto him as well as I
could

I cannot rightly
write the
nothing.

could, by mine intercession, (who had no wit nor any utterance of speech) the Apostles erred. Which after he had heard, holding his peace, he shooke his head. Then hee assigned vnto vs two men, who shoulde giue attendance vpon our selues, vpon our horses, and vpon our Oxen. And hee caused vs to ride in his companie, till the messenger whome hee had sent, of the interpretation of the Emperours letters, was returned. And so wee trauelled in his companie till the morrowe after Pentecost.

Howe the Alanians came vnto vs on Pentecost or Whitson euen. Chap. 13.

* Or, Akas.

Vpon the euen of Pentecost, there came vnto vs certaine Alanians, who are there called ** Acias*, being Christians after the manner of the Grecians, using greek books and Grecian priests: howbeit they are not schismatiques as the Grecians are, but without acceptis of persons, they honour al Christians. And they brought vnto vs foddren flesh, requesting vs to eat of their meat, and to pray for one of their company being dead. Then I sayd, because it was the euen of so great and so solemne a feast day, that we would not eat any flesh for that time. And I expounded vnto them the solemnitie of the sayd feast, whereat they greatly reioyced: for they were ignorant of all things appertaining to Christian religion, except only the name of Christ. They and many other Christians, both Russians, and Hungarians demanded of vs, whether they might be saued or no, because they were constrained to drinke Cosmos, & to eate the dead carcases of such things, as were slaine by the Saracens, and other infidels: Which euen the Greeke & Russian priests themselves also esteeme as things strangled or offered vnto idoles: because they were ignorant of the times of fasting, neither could they haue obserued them albeit they had knownen them. Then instructed I them as well as I could and strengthened them in the faith. As for the flesh which they had brought we referred it vntill the feast day. For there was nothing to be sold among the Tartars for gold & silver, but only for cloth and garments, of the which kind of merchandise wee had none at all. Then our seruantes offered them any coine called Yperpera, they rubbed it with their fingers, and put it vnto their noses, to try by the smell whether it were copper or no. Neither did they allow vs any foode but cowes milke onely which was very soure & filthy. There was one thing most necessary greatly wanting vnto vs, for the water was so foule and muddy by reason of their horses, that it was not meete to be drunk. And but for certaine biske, which was by the goodness of God remaining vnto vs, we had undoubtedly perished.

Which is the chief marchandise in Tartaria.

Of a Saracen which said that he would be baptized: and of certaine men which seemed to be lepers. Chap. 14.

Vpon the day of Pentecost there came vnto vs a certain Saracen, vnto whome, as hee talked with vs, we expounded the Christian faith. Who (hearing of Gods benefits exhibited vnto mankind by the incarnation of our Saviour Christ, and the resurrection of the dead, & the promise of life to come, & that in baptisme was a washing away of sinnes) sayd, that hee would be baptized. But when we prepared our selues to the baptizing of him, he suddenly mounted on horsebacke, saying that he would goe home and consult with his wife what were best to be done. And on the morrow after he told vs, that he durst in no case receiue baptisme, because then he shoulde drinke no more Cosmos, for the Christians of that place affirme that no true Christians ought to drinke thereof: and that without the said liquore he could not liue in that desert. From which opinion, I could not for my life remoue him. Wherefore he is knowen of a certainty vnto your highness, that they are much estranged from the Christian faith by reason of that opinion which hath bin preached & confirmed among them by the Russians, of whom there is a great multitude in that place. The same day Scacatay the capitaine aforesayd gaue vs one man to conduct vs to Sarach, and two other to guide vs vnto the next lodging, which was distant from that place fower dayes journey for oxen to trauell. They gaue vnto vs also a goate for victuals, and a great many bladders of cowes milke, & but a litle Cosmos, because it is of so great estimation among them. And so taking our journey directly toward the North, me thought that wee had passed through one of hell gates. The seruants which conducted vs began to play the bold theues with vs, seeing vs take so little heed vnto our selues. At length hauing lost much by their theuery harme taught vs wisdom. And then we came vnto the extremity of that prouince, which is fortified with a ditch from one sea vnto another: without the bounds wherof their lodging was situate. Into the which, so soone as we had entered, al the inhabitants there seemed vnto vs to be infected with leprosie: for certain base fellows were placed there to receiue tribute of al such as took the salt out of the salt pits also called, from that place they

Salt pits.

they
then
gaue
how
in cer
in cer
depart
on the
twent
most e
their c
nia. B
otis, a
length
neith
inhabit
of Volg
ten daye
stretch
uer by t

T
Tare a
of thepe
the count
lem haue
fia, if they
Priest, that
would flee
ing nothing
Tanaia, and
places they
the desert,
some and set
our guide w
extend so far
the Tartars si
and the seru
each. The fle
be bought for
extreme and
lessly intrude
uer things we
to withdratwe
would lay their
they committ
ued me to the b
dification, my f
tell you, I cann
perceiued after
one thing, he wo
seeing the pange
solde my peace, a
a few dayes bef
uer Tanaia which
fia from Africa. A

les creed. Which
to vs two men,
our Oren. And
of the interpreta-
pauie till the mo-

t or

are there called
kes and Greian
peil of persons,
at of their meat,
euen of so great
expounded into
e ignorant of all
and many other
saue of no be-
hings, as were
ells themselves
of the runes of
en instructed
which they had
ng the Tartars
wee had none at
h their fingers,
did they allow
one thing most
on of their hor-
the goodnes of

and of

as hee called
hibited into
the ir age
he bap, con-
lebacke, say-
on the moy-
inke no more
like the most
I could not
that they are
ached & com-
The same
two other to
for oren to
wes milke, &
our iourney
p, The ser-
leghen into
and then we
so another:
ap entered al
lowes were
in that place
they

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

103

Ten dayes
iourney.

they told vs that we must trauele fifteen dayes iourney, before we should find any other people. With them wee dyante Cosinos, and gaue vnto them a basket full of frutes and of hether. And they gaue vnto vs eight oren and one goate, to sustaine vs in so great a iourney. I knowe not how many bladders of milke. And so changing our oren, we tooke our iourney, which we finished in tenne dayes, arriuing at another lodging: neither found we any water all that way, but onely departed out of the foresaid prouince of Galaria, we traualled directly Eastward, hauing a Sea most excellent pasture. Here the Comanians, which were called Capthac, were wont to feede their cattell. Howbeit by the Dutch men they are called Valani, and the prouince it selfe Valaquis, and so along as farre as Danubius, the countrey of Alania. And the same land continueth in length from Danubius vnto Tanais (which diuideth Asia from Europe) for the space of two moneths iourney, albe it a man should ride poste as fast as the Tartars vse to ride: and it was all ouer inhabited by the Comanians, called Capthac: yea and beyond Tanais, as farre as the riuer of Edil or Volga: the space betwene the two which riuers is a great and long iourney to bee traualled in stretch from Polonia and Hungaria, euen to the riuer of Tanais: and it hath bene wasted all ouer by the Tartars, and as yet is daily wasted by them.

The length of
Comania.

Russia.

Of our afflictions which we sustained: and of the Comanians maner of buriall. Chap. 15.

They preferre the Saracens before the Russians, because they are Christians, and when they are able to giue them no more golde nor silver, they dye them and their children like flockes of sheepe into the wildecnes, constraining them to keepe their cattell there. Beyond Russia lieth the countrey of Prussia, which the Dutch knights of the order of Saint Maries hospitall of Ierusalem haue of late wholly conquered and subdued. And in very neede they might easily winne Russia, if they would put to their helping hand. For if the Tartars should but once know, that the great Priest, that is to say, the Pope did cause the ensigne of the crosse to bee displayed against them, they would flee all into their desert and solitarie places. We therefore went on towards the East, seeing nothing but heauen and earth, and sometimes the sea on our right hand, called the Sea of Tanais, and the sepulchres of the Comanians, which appeared vnto vs two leagues off, in which places they were wont to burie their kinned altogether. So long as we were traueilling through the desert, it went reasonably well with vs, for I cannot sufficiently expresse in words the trouble some and tedious troubles which I sustained, when I came at any of their places of abode. For our guide would haue vs goe in vnto euery Captaine with a present, and our expenses would not extend so farre. For we were euery day eight persons of vs spending our waifaring piousson, for the Tartars seruantes would all of them eate of our victuals. We our selues were five in number, and the seruantes our guides were three, two to dye our carts, and one to conduct vs vnto Sar- he bought for our money. And as we sate vnder our carts in the coole shadowe, by reason of the extreme and behemnt heate which was there at that time, they did so importunately and shame- fully intrude themselves into our companie, that they would euen tread vpon vs, to see whatsoe- uer things we had. Having list at any time to ease themselves, the filthy lozels had not the maners to withdraue themselves farther from vs, then a beane can bee cast. Yea, like vile slouens they would lay their eailles in our pience, while they were yet talking with vs: many other things they committed, which were most tedious and loathsome vnto vs. But about all things it grie- ued me to the very heart, that when I would venter ought vnto them, which might tend to their edification, my foolish interpreter would say: you shall not make me become a Preacher now: I tell you, I cannot no: I will not rehearse any such wordes. And true it was which he saide, for I perceiued afterward, when I began to haue a little sinattering in the language, that when I spake one thing, he would say quite another, whatsoeuer came next vnto his witlesse tongues end. Then seeing the danger I might incur in speaking by such an interpreter, I resolved much rather to a few dayes before the feast of Saint Marie Magdalene, we arriued at the banke of the mightie ri- uer Tanais which diuideth Asia from Europa, euen as the riuer Nilus of Egypt diuidenth A- sia from Africa. At the same place where wee arriued, Baatu and Sarrach did cause a certaine cot- tage

Prussia.

Extreme heate
in Sommer.

Tanais.

The breadth
of Tanais.

He is much
deceitful.

About the be-
ginning of Au-
gust, the Tar-
tars returne
Southward.

cage to be built, upon the Caserne banke of the river, for a companie of Russians to dwell in to the ende they might transpoze Ambassadors and merchants in ferrie-boates over that part of the river. First they ferried vs over, and then our eares, putting one wheele into one lyter, and the other wheele into another lyter, hauing bounde both the lyters together, and so they rowe them ouer. In this place our guide played the foole most extreamely. For hee imagining that the said Russians, dwelling in the cottage, should haue provided vs horses, sent home the beafts which we brought with vs, in another cart, & they might returne vnto their owne masters. And when we demanded to haue some beafts of the, they answered, that they had a priuiledge from Baatu, whereby they were bound to none other seruise, but only to ferry ouer goers & commers: and that they receiued great tribute of marchantes in regard thereof. We staied therfore by the said riuer side thre daies. The first day they gaue vnto vs a great fresh curbut: the second day they bestowed the beafts, and a little flesh vpon vs, which the puruer of the billage had taken up at euerie house for vs: and the thirde day dyed fithes, which they haue there in great abundance. The saide riuer was euen as broad in that place, as the riuer of Sein is at Paris. And before we came there, we passed ouer many goodly waters, and full of fish: howbeit the barbarous and rude Tartars know not how to take them: neither do they make any reckoning of any fish, excepte it be so great, that they may pray vpon the flesh thereof, as vpon the flesh of a ram. This riuer is the limite of the East part of Russia, and it springeth out of the fennes of Mzotia, which fennes stretch vnto the North Ocean. And it runneth Southward into a certain great sea 700. miles about, before it falleth into the sea called Pontus Euxinus. And all the riuers, which we passed ouer, ran with full stream into those quarters. The foresaid riuer hath great store of wood also growing vpon the West side thereof. Beyond this place the Tartars ascende no farther vnto the North: for at that season of the yere, about the first of August, they begin to returne backe vnto the South. And therfore there is another cottage somewhat lower, where passengers are ferried ouer in Winter time. And in this place we were diuident to great extremitie, by reason that we could get neither horses, nor oren for any money. At length, after I had declared vnto them, that my comming was to labour for the common good of all Christians, they sent vs oren & men; howbeit we our selues were faine to trauel on foote. At this time they were reaping the rye. Wheat prospereth not wel in that soile. They haue the seed of Spillium in great abundance. The Russian women attire their heads like vnto our women. They imbroder their safegards or gowns on the outside, from their feet vnto their knees with particoloured or grey stuffe. The Russian men weare caps like vnto the Dutch men. Also they weare vpon their heads certain sharpe, & high-crowned hats made of felt, much like vnto a sugar loaf. Then trauelled we 3. daies together, not finding any people. And when our selues and our oren were exceeding weary and faint, not knowing how far off we should find any Tartars, on the sudden, there came two horses running towards vs, which we tooke with great ioy, and our guide and interpreter mounted vpon their backs, to see, how far off they could bespy any people. At length vpon the fourth day of our iourney, hauing found some inhabitants, we reioyced like sea-faring men, which had escaped out of a dangerous tempest, and had newly recovered the haven. Then hauing taken fresh horses, and oren, we passed on from lodging to lodging, till at the last, vpon the second of the Kalends of August, we arrived at the habitation of Duke Sartach himselfe.

Of the dominion of Sartach, and of his Subiects. Chap. 16.

The people of
Moxel are Pa-
gans.

The people
called Merdoi
being Saracens.

The circuite of
the Caspian
sea.

The region lying beyond Tanais, is a very goodly countrey, hauing store of riuers and woods toward the North part thereof. There be mighty huge woods which two sorts of people do inhabit. One of them is called Moxel, being meere Pagans, and without law. They haue neither townes nor cities, but only cottages in y woods. Their lord & a great part of themselves were put to the sword in high Germanie. Whereupon they highly commend the braue courage of the Almans, hoping as yet to be deliuered out of the bondage of the Tartars, by their meanes. If any merchant came vnto them, he must provide things necessary for him, with whom he is first of all entertained, all the time of his abode among them. If any lieth with another mans wife, her husband, vntles he be an ewitnes therof, regardeth it not: for they are not selous ouer their wiues. They haue abundance of hogs, and great store of honey & waxe, and diuers sorts of rich & costly skins, and plenty of falcons. Next vnto them are other people called Merclis, which the Latines call Merdoi, and they are Saracens. Beyond them is the riuer of Etilia or Volga, which is y mightiest riuer that enter I saw. And it issueth from the North part of Bulgaria the greater, & so trending along Southward, disimboqueth into a certain lake containing in circuit the space of 4. moneths trauel, wherof I will speak hereafter. The two foresaid riuers, namely Tanais & Etilia, otherwile called Volga, formeth the Northen regions through the which we trauelled, are not distant asunder about 9. dayes iourney, but

A
theye
cartes,
tic in Sa
who hath
vnto him
ly offend
malefical
before rec
fauour at
that I was
ous thing,
the cause
owne good
oult, that
himselfe
as we our
pye senly
was the gre
owne domin
ies by lord
bene in Cyp
our lodging
in so long a
seruants wit
and so bying
desirous to
and another
laide forth.
At the sight
Which sayi
well as we
maister wou
meane, but
the letters of
come vnto
bestimenes
vnto inuelt
Then I my
on, and the
Grace bestow
a crosse: and
vnto the pres

ffians to dwell in
s over that part o
uto one lyter, and
and so they rowe
magining that the
ne the bealls which
ers. And when we
from Baatu, wher
s; and that they re-
d rivers sbe thzee
flowed rye bread,
house for vs: and
r river was euen as
passed ouer many
w not how to take
they may ppye up
part of Russia, and
Ocean. And it run-
the sea called P6-
ose quarters, The
Beyond this place
ue the first of Au-
cottage foin what
ee were bynien to
ney. At length, af-
of all Chytili.
At this time they
of Spiliium in
They imbyoder
scoloured of grep
upon their heads
ere travelled we
exceeding weary
came two boyles
er mounted by-
the fourth day
which had escaped
ken fresh boyles,
the Kalends of

hap. 16.

ners and wood-
nes of people do
they haue neither
elues were put
urage of the Al-
nes, I famp mer-
test of all emer-
geter husband, w-
ues, They haue
kins, and plen-
al Merdui, and
r river that ent-
g Southward,
whereof I will
olga, to my
dates journey,
but

but Southward they are diuided a great space one from another, for Tanais descenderth into the sea
of Pontus: Etilia maketh the foresaid sea of lake, with the help of many ocher rivers which fall there-
into out of Persia. And we had to the South of vs huge high mountains, vpon the sides wherof, to-
wards the said desert, doe the people called Cergis, and the Alani of Acas inhabit, who are as pee-
Christians, & wage warre against the Tartars. Beyond the, next vnto the sea of lake of Etilia, there
are certaine Saracens called Lesgi, who are in subiection vnto the Tartars. Beyond these is Porta
ferrea, of the pyon gate, now called Derbene, which Alexander built to exclude the barbarous na-
tions out of Persia. Concerning the situation wherof, your maiestie shall understand moze about
the end of this Treatise: for I traualled in my returne by the very same place, Betweene the two
foresaid rivers, in the regions through the which we passed did the Comanians of olde tyme inha-
bite, before they were ouerrun by the Tartars.

Cergis of Asi.

The Saracens
called Lesgi.

He returned
by Derbene.

Of the Court of Sartach, and of the magnificence thereof. Chap. 17.

And we found Sartach lying within thzee daies journey of the river Etilia: whose Court
thre wine: neere one of which women hath a great house, & they haue ech one of them about 200.
carts. Our guide went vnto a certaine Nestorian named Coiar, who is a man of great aucthority
in Sartachs Court. He made vs to goe very farre vnto the Loydes gate. For so they call him,
who hath the office of enterreining Ambassadors. In the euening Coiar commanded vs to come
ly offered, when he saw that we had nothing ready to present. He tooke before him, and he face
maiestically, hauing muske and dauncing in his presence. Then I spake vnto him in the wordes
before recited, telling him, for what purpose I was come vnto his Loyde, and requesting so much
fauour at his hands, as to bring our letters vnto the sight of his Loyd. I reculed my selfe also,
that I was a Spoke, not hauing, nor receiuing, nor vsing any golde, or siluer, or any other pree-
ous thing, saue onely our bookes, and the vestiments wherein wee serued God: and that this was
the cause why I brought no present vnto him, nor vnto his Loyd. For I that had abandoned mine
owne goodes, could not be a transporter of things for other men. Then hee answered very courte-
ously, that being a Spoke, and so doing, I did well: for so I should obserue my vowes: neither did
himselfe stand in neede of ought that we had, but rather was ready to bestow vpon vs such things
as we our selues stood in neede of: and he caused vs to sit downe, and to drinke of his milke. And
presently after he requested vs to say our deuotions for him: and we did so. He enquired also who
was the greatest Prince among the Franckes: And I saide, the Emperour, if he could inlopy his
owne dominions in quiet. No (quoth he) but the king of France. For he had heard of your High-
nes by lord Balduine of Henault. I found there also one of the Knights of the Temple, who had
us by lord Balduine of Henault. I found there also one of the Knights of the Temple, who had
bene in Cyprus, and had made report of all things which he sawe there. Then returned wee vnto
our lodging. And on the morow we sent him a flaggon of Ruseabel wine (which had lasted very wel
in so long a journey) and a bore full of bisket, which was most acceptable vnto him. And he kept our
seruants with him for that euening. The next morning he commanded me to come vnto the Court,
and to bring the kings letters and my vestimentes, and bookes with me: because his Loyde was
desirous to see them. Which we did accordingly, lading one cart with our bookes and vestimentes,
and another with bisket, wine, and fruites. Then he caused all our bookes and vestimentes, to bee
lathe forth. And there stood round about vs many Tartars, Christians and Saracens on horseback.
At the sight wherof, he demanded whether I would bestow all those things vpon his Loyd or no:
Which saying made me to tremble, and grieved me full sore. Howbeit, dissimbling our grieve as
well as we could, we shapd him this answer: Sir, our humble request is, that our Loyde pour
maister would vouchsafe to accept our bread, wine, and fruits, not as a present, because it is too
meane, but as a benediction, least we should come with an empty hand before him, And he shall see
the letters of my soueraigne Lord the king, and by them he shall understand for what cause we are
come vnto him, and then both our selues, and all that we haue, shall stand to his curtesie: for our
vestimentes be holy, and it is vnlawfull for any but Priests to touch them. Then he commaunded
vs to inuest our selues in the saide garments, that we might goe before his Loyd: and wee did so.
Then I my selfe putting on our most precious ornaments, tooke in mine armes a very faire crosse
on, and the Bible which your Maiesty gaue me, and a most beautifull psalter, which the Queene
Grace bestowed vpon me, wherein there were goodly pictures. Mine associate tooke a missal and
a crosse: and the clearkes hauing put on his surpells, tooke a censer in his hand. And so wee came
vnto the presence of his Loyd: and they lifted by the felt hanging before his doore, that hee might
behold

Coiar the Ne-
storian.

behold us. Then they caused the cleaerke and the interpreter thise to bow the knee: but of vs they required no such submission. And they diligently admonished vs to take heed, that in going in, and in coming out, we touched not the threshold of the house, and requested vs to sing a benediction for him. Then we entred in, singing *Salve Regina*. And within the entrance of the dooze, stood a bench with colinos, and drinkeing cups thereupon. And all his wines were there assembled. Also the Moals of rich Tartars thrulling in with vs pressed vs soze. Then Coiar carried vnto his loze the censer with incense, which he beheld very diligently, holding it in his hand. Afterward hee caried the psalter vnto him, which he looked earnestly vpon, and his wife also that sat beside him. After that he caried the Bible: then Sartach asked if the Gospel were contained therein? Yea (said I) and all the holy scriptures besides. He tooke the crosse also in his hand, and demanded concerning the image, whether it were the image of Christ or no? I said it was. The Nestorians & the Armenians do neuer make the figure of Christ vpon their crosses. Wherefore either they seem not to thinke wel of his passion, or els they are ashamed of it. Then he caused them that stood about vs, to stand aside, that he might moze fully behold our ornaments. Afterward I deliuered vnto him your Psalteries letters, with the translation thereof into the Arabike, & Syriake languages. For I caused them to be translated at Acon into the character, & dialect of both the saide tongues. And there were certain Armenian priests, which had skil in the Turkish & Arabian languages. The aforesaid knight also of the order of the Temple had knowledge in the Syriake, Turkish, & Arabiantongues. Then we departed soze, and put off our vestiments, and there came vnto vs certaine Scribes together with the aforesaid Coiar, & caused our letters to be interpreted. Which letters being heard, he caused our bread, wine and fruits to be receiued. And he permitted vs also to carie our vestiments and bookes vnto our owne lodging. This was done vpon the feast of S. Peter ad vincula,

No good consequence.

How they were giuen in charge to goe vnto Baatu the Father of Sartach. Chap. 18.

The next morning betimes came vnto vs a certaine Priest, who was brother vnto Coiar, requesting to haue our boxe of Chisme, because Sartach (as he said) was desirous to see it: and so we gaue it him. About euentide Coiar sent for vs, saying: My lord your king wote good word vnto my lord and master Sartach. Howbeit there are certaine matters of difficulty in thim concerning which he dare not determine ought, without the aduise and counsell of his father. And therefore of necessitie you must depart vnto his father, leauing behind you the two carts, which you brought hither yesterdai with vestiments and bookes, in my custodie: because my loze is desirous to take moze diligent view thereof. I presently suspecting what mischiefe might ensue by his couetousnes, said vnto him: Sir, we will not onely leaue those with you, but the two other carts also, which we haue in our possession, will we commit vnto your custodie. You shall not (quoth he) leaue those behinde you, but for the other two carts first named, we will satisfie your request. I saide that this could not conveniently be done: but needes we must leaue all with him. Then he asked, whether we meant to carie in the land? I answered: If you thoroughly vnderstand the letters of my loze the king, you know that we are euen so determined. Then he replied, that we ought to bee patient and lowly: and so we departed from him that euening. On the morrowe after he sent a Nestorian Priest for the carts, and we caused all the foure carts to be deliuered. Then came the aforesaid brother of Coiar to meet vs, and separated all those things, which we had brought the day before vnto the Court, from the rest, namely, the bookes and vestiments, and tooke them away with him. Howbeit Coiar had commanded, that we should carie those vestiments with vs, which wee ware in the presence of Sartach, that we might put them on before Baatu, if neede should require: but the said Priest tooke them from vs by violence, saying: thou hast brought them vnto Sartach, and wouldest thou carie them vnto Baatu? And when I would haue rendred a reason, he answered: be not too talkatiue, but goe your wayes. Then I saide that there was no remedie but patience: for wee could haue no access vnto Sartach himselfe, neither was there any other, that would doe vs iustice. I was afraide also in regard of the interpreter, least he had spoken other things then I saide vnto him: for his will was good that we should haue giuen away all that we had. There was yet one comfort remaining vnto me: for when I once perreiuied their couetous intent, I conueyed from among our bookes the Bible, and the sentences, and certaine other bookes which I made speciall account of. Howbeit I durst not take away the psalter of my soueraigne Lady the Queene, because it was too wel known, by reason of the golden pictures therein. And so we returned with the two other carts vnto our lodging. Then came he that was appointed to be our guide vnto the court of Baatu, willing vs to take our iourney in all poste-halls: vnto whom I said, that I would in no case haue the carts to goe with me. Which thing he declared vnto Coiar. Then Coiar commaunded

The
ded, th
travell
wherco
ers sho
Scribe
Beaut
their pi
called C
all other
nation, a

H

A
domi
name of a
amongst
gouverne
Turkes
parts the
Kara signi
blache Ca
ple of Car
vnderstand
And in a cer
a mighty go
Nestorius,
they called
which come
iust nothing
the like also
make moze a
are no Christ
Howbeit, wh
but onely a fe
Frier Andre
mightie man
Cara Caray,
ouer a certai
kir, who were
Christ, follow
woyhippers of
were the pastur
out Lawe, ere
in those partes
The aforesaid
ched, and cause
holders of Moal
Moal. This C
the shepheards of
into the countrey
and hidde himsel
so from the Tart
of Moal, saying
our neighbours d
Then having seer
him, and Vut fled

re: but of vs they
at ingoing in, and
a benediction
the dooze, stood a
assembly. Also
d vnto his lord the
ward hee caried
beside him. After
Pea (said I)
ned concerning
ans & the Arme-
em not to think
ut vs, to stand a-
him your Paie-
I cauled them
there were cer-
ofe said knighe
tongues. Then
cribes together
bed, he cau-
vestiments and
ula,
u the
vnto Coiar, re-
s to see it: and
ote good word
in them concer-
er. And therfore
ich you bought
elicious to take
is couetousnes,
also, which we
leauē those be-
saue that this
ked, whether
ers of my lorde
to bee patient
nt a Nestorian
he foresaid by-
ay before vnto
with him. How-
ee ware in the
re: but the said
and wouldst
ence: so we
doe vs suffice.
n I saide vnto
was per one
ounered from
made speciall
Queene, be-
rned with the
vnto the court
I would in no
at commaun-
ed

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

107

ded, that we should leaue them and our seruant with him: And we did as he commanded. And so
trauelling directly Eastward towards Baacu, the third day we came to Ecilia of Volga: the streams
whereof when I beheld, I wondered from what regions of the North such huge and mighty wa-
ters should descend. Before we were departed from Sartach, the foresaid Coiar, with many other
scribes of the court said vnto vs: doe not make report that our Lord is a Christian, but a Moal.
Because the name of a Christian seemeth vnto them to be the name of some nation. So great is
their pride, that albeit they beleue perhaps some things concerning Christ, yet will they not be
called Christians, being desirous that their owne name, that is to say, Moal should be crated aboute
all other names. Neither will they be called by the name of Tartars. For the Tartars were another
nation, as I was informed by them.

They are called
as fatre as
Volga.

The Tartars
will be called
Moal.

Howe Sartach, and Mangu-Can, and Ken-Can doe reue- rence vnto Christians. Chap. 19.

At the same time when the French-men tooke Antioch, a certaine man named Con Can had
dominion ouer the Northren regions, lying thereabouts. Con is a proper name: Can is a
name of authoritie or dignitie, which signifieth a bitiner or soothsayer. All ouiners are called Can
amongst them. Whereupon their princes are called Can, because that vnto them belongeth the
gouernment of the people by diuination. Wee doe reade also in the historie of Antiochia, that the
Turkes sent for aide against the French-men, vnto the kingdome of Con Can. For out of these
parts the whole nation of the Turkes first came. The said Con was of the nation of Kara-Caray,
Kara signifieth blacke, and Caray is the name of a countrey. So that Kara-Caray signifieth the
blacke Caray. This name was giuen to make a difference between the foresaid people, and the peo-
ple of Caray, inhabiting Eastward ouer against y^e Decenn sea: concerning whom your maiesty shall
vnderstand more hereafter. These Carayans dwelt vpon certaine Alpes, by the which I traualled.
And in a certain plaine countrey within those Alpes, there inhabited a Nestorian shepheard, being
a mighty gouernour ouer the people called Yayman, which were Christians, following the sect of
Nestorius. After the death of Con Can, the said Nestorian exalted himselfe to the kingdome, and
they called him King Iohn, reporting ten times more of him then was true. For so the Nestorians
which come out of those parts, vse to doe. For they blaze abroad great rumors, and reports vpon
iust nothing. Whereupon they gaue out concerning Sartach, that he was become a Christian, and
the like also they reported concerning Mangu Can, and Ken Can: namely because these Tartars
make more account of Christians, then they doe of other people, and yet in very deepe, themselves
are no Christians. So likewise there went forth a great report concerning the said king Iohn,
howbeit, when I traualled along by his territories, there was no man that knew any thing of him,
but onely a few Nestorians. In his pastures or territories dwellecth Ken Can, at whose Court
Frier Andrew was. And I my selfe passed by it at my returne. This Iohn had a brother, being a
mighty man also, and a shepheard like himselfe, called Vur, and he inhabited beyond the Alpes of
Cara Caray, being distant from his brother Iohn, the space of three weekes iourney. He was lord
ouer a certain village, called Cara Carum, hauing people also for his subjects, named Crit, or Mer-
kir, who were Christians of the sect of Nestorius. But their Lord abandoning the worship of
Christ, followed after idoles, retaining with him Priests of the saide idoles, who all of them are
worshippers of deuils and sorcerers. Beyond his pastures some tenne or fifteene dayes iourney,
were the pastures of Moal, who were a poore and beggerly nation, without gouernour, and with-
out Lawe, except their soothsayings, and their diuinations, vnto the which detestable Studies, all
in those partes doe apply their mindes. Neere vnto Moal were other poore people called Tartars,
The foresaid king Iohn died without issue male, and thereupon his brother Vur was greatly in-
trigged, and caused himselfe to be named Can: and his houses and flocks raunged euē vnto the
borders of Moal. About the same time there was one Cyngis, a blacke smith among the people of
Moal. This Cyngis stole as many cattel from Vur Can, as he could possibly get: insomuch that
the shepheards of Vur complained vnto their Lord. Then prouided he an armie, and marched vpon
into the countrey of Moal to seeke for the saide Cyngis. But Cyngis fledde among the Tartars,
and hidde himselfe amongst them. And Vur hauing taken some spoiles both from Moal, and al-
so from the Tartars, returned home. Then spake Cyngis vnto the Tartars, and vnto the people
of Moal, saying: Sit, because we are destitute of a gouernour and Captaine, you see howe
our neighbours do oppresse vs. And the Tartars and Moals appointed him to be their Chiefstaine.
Then hauing secretly gathered together an armie, he brake in suddenly vpon Vur, and overcame
him, and Vur fledde into Caraya. At the same time was the daughter of Vur taken, which Cyngis
married

This historie of
Iohannes Iohn
in the North-
ren, is attested
by at large by
Gerardus Merc-
tor in his gene-
ral mappe.
From whence
the Turkes first
sprang.

An Ocean Sea,
Nayman.

Priest Iohn.

The place of
Ken Can his as-
sault.
Vur Can, or Vne
Can.
The village of
Cara Carum.
Crit and Merkir.

Moal in those
times a beggers
in people.
The place of
the Tartars.

Cyngis.

Mangu-Can.

Mancherule.

married vnto one of his sonnes, by whom he conceived, & brought forth the great Can, which now reigneth, called Mangu-Can. Then Cyngis sent þe Tartars befoze him in all places where he came: and thereupon was their name published and spread abroade: for in all places the people would cry out: Lo, the Tartars come, the Tartars come. Howbeit, through continuall warres, they are now, all of them in a manner, consumed and brought to nought. Whereupon the Moals indouour what they can, to extinguishe the name of the Tartars, that they may exalt their owne name, The countrey wherein they first inhabited, and where the Court of Cyngis Can as yet remaineth, is called Mancherule. But because Tartaria is the region, about which they haue obtained their conquests, they esteeme that as their royall and chiefe citie, and there for the most part doe they elect their great Can.

Of the Russians, Hungarians, and Alanians: and of the Caspian Sea. Chap. 20.

Dy, Bercha.

Changle.

Frier Andrew.

Now, as concerning Sarrach, whether he beleue in Christ, or no, I knowe not. This I am sure of, that he will not be called a Christian. Hea rather he seemeth vnto mee to deride and scoffe at Christians. He lieth in the way of the Christians, as namely of the Russians, the Valachians, the Bulgarians of Bulgaria the lesser, the Soldaianes, the Kerkis, and the Alanians: who all of them passe by him, as they are going to the Court of his father Baatu, to carie giftes: whereupon he is more in league with them. Howbeit, if the Saracens come, and bying greater giftes then they, they are dispatched sooner. He hath about him certayne Nestorian Priestes, who pray vpon their beades, and sing their deuotions. Also, there is another vnder Baatu called Berta, who feedeth his cattell toward Porta ferrea, or Derbent, where lieth the passage of all those Saracens, which come out of Persia, and out of Turkie to goe vnto Baatu, and passing by, they giue rewards vnto him. And he professeth himselfe to be a Saracene, and will not permit twines flesh to be eaten in his dominions. Howbeit, at the time of our returne, Baatu commanded him to remove himselfe from that place, and to inhabite vpon the East side of Volga: for hee was unwilling that the Saracens messengers should passe by the saide Berta, because he sawe it was not for his profite. For the space of foure dayes while we remained in the court of Sarrach, we had not any victuals at all allowed vs, but once onely a litle Cosmos. And in our iourney betwene him and his father, we traueiled in great feare. For certayne Russians, Hungarians, and Alanians being seruants vnto the Tartars (of whom they haue great multitudes among them) assemblie themselves twentie or thirtie in a companie, and so secretly in the night conueying themselves from home, they take bowes and arrowes with them, and whome soeuer they finde in the night season, they put him to death, hiding themselves in the day time. And hauing tired their horses, they goe in the night vnto a company of other horses feeding in some pasture, and change them for newe, taking with them also one or two horses besides, to eate them when they stand in neede. Our guide therefore was soe afraid, least we should haue met with such companions. In this iourney wee had died for famine, had we not caried some of our biscket with vs. At length we came vnto the mightie riuer of Ecilia, or Volga. For it is foure times greater, then the riuer of Sein, and of a wonderfull depth: and issuing forth of Bulgaria the greater, it runneth into a certayne lake or sea, which of late they call the Hircan sea, according to the name of a certein citie in Persia, standing vpon the shore thereof. Howbeit Isidore calleth it the Caspian sea. For it hath the Caspian mountaines and the land of Persia situate on the South side thereof: and the mountaines of Muschet, that is to say, of the people called Assassini towards the East, which mountaines are conioyned vnto the Caspian mountaines: but on the North side thereof lieth the same desert, wherein the Tartars doe now inhabite. Howbeit heretofore there dwelt certayne people called Changle. And on that side it receiueth the streams of Ecilia; which riuer increaseth in Sommer time, like vnto the riuer Nilus in Egypt. Vpon the West part thereof, it hath the mountaines of Alani, and Lesgi, and Porta ferrea, or Derbent, and the mountaines of Georgia. This sea therefore is compassed in on thre sides with the mountaines, but on the North side with plaine ground. Frier Andrew, in his iourney traueiled round about two sides therof, namely the South and the East sides: and I my selfe about other two, that is to say, the North side in going from Baatu to Mangu-Can, and in returning like wise: and the West side in coming home from Baatu into Syria. A man may trauel round about it in foure moneths. And it is not true which Isidore reporteth, namely that this sea is a bay or gulfie comming forth of the Ocean: for it doeth, in no part thereof, toyne with the Ocean, but is inclosed on all sides with lande.

Of

at Can, which now
es where he came:
he people would
small warres, they
in the Moals inde
their owne name,
as yet remaineth,
ue obtained their
st part doe they e

nd of

e not, This I am
ee to deride and
ans, the Valachi-
ians: who all of
fities: whereup-
eater giffes then
who pray vpon
Berta, who fer-
those Saracens,
ey giue rewards
fish to be eaten
remoue himse
ng that the Sara-
pofite. For the
ituals at all al-
his father, we
ruanes vnto the
wente of chit-
they take bowes
him to death,
ght vnto a con-
with them also
foze was foze a-
ied for famine,
riuer of Etilia,
depth: and it
ate they cal the
thereof. How-
land of Persia
the people cal
mountaines:
abite. How be-
the streams
r. Upon the
Derbent, and
with the moun-
auelised round
ther two, that
isse: and the
in foure mo-
liffe coming
ntered on all

Of

Of the court of Baatu: and howe we were interteined
by him. Chap. 21.

AL the region extending from the West Hoze of the foze said sea, where Alexanders Iron gate,
by the fennes of Meo:is, whereinto the riuer of Tanais falleth, and so forth, to the North Ocean, all along
was wont to be called Albania. Of which countrey Isidore reporteth, that there be dogs of such an
huge stature, and so fierce, that they are able in fight to macth bulles, and to master lions. Which is
true, as I vnderstand by diuers, who tolde me, that there towards the North Ocean they make
their dogges to draw in carts like oxen, by reason of their bignesse and strength. Which is
that part of Etilia where we arrived, there is a new cottage built, wherein they haue placed Tar-
cars and Russians both together, to ferrie ouer, and transpore messengers going and coming to
and fro the court of Baatu. For Baatu remaineth vpon the farther side towards the East, neither
ascendeth hee in Sommer time moze Northward then the foze said place where we arrived, but
was euen then descending to the South. From Ianuarie vntill August both he and all other Tar-
curs ascend by the banks of riuers towards cold and Northwardly regions, and in August they begin to
returne backe againe. We passed downe the streame therefore in a barke, from the foze said cottage
vnto his court. From the same place vnto the villages of Bulgaria the greater, standing toward the
North, it is five dayes iourney. I wonder what deuill caried the religion of Mahomet thither. For
from Derbent, which is vpon the extreame borders of Persia, it is about 30. daies iourney to passe
ouerthwart the desert, and so to ascend by the banke of Etilia, into the foze said countrey of Bulga-
ria. All which way there is no citie, but onely certaine cottages neere vnto that place where Etilia
falleth into the sea. Those Bulgarians are most wicked Saracens, moze earnestly professing the ba-
nable religion of Mahomet, then any other nation whatsoeuer. For euer, when I first beheld the
court of Baatu, I was astonied at the sight thereof: for his houses or tents seemed as though they
had bene some huge and mighty citie, stretching out a great way in length, the people ranging
about it for the space of some three or foure leagues. And euen as the people of Israell
knew euery man, on which side of the tabernacle to pitch his tent: euen so euery one of them know-
eth right well, towards what side of the court he ought to place his house when he takes it from off
the cart. Where vpon the court is called in their language Horda, which signifieth, the midst: because
the gouernour or chiefe among them dwels alwaies in the midst of his people: except onely
that directly towards the South no subject or inferior person placeth himselfe, because towards
that region the court gates are set open: but vnto the right hand, and the left hand they extend the-
selues as farre as they will, according to the conuenience of places, so that they place not their hou-
ses directly opposite against the court. At our arrival we were conducted vnto a Saracen, who pro-
uised not for vs any victuals at all. The day following, we were brought vnto the court: and Baatu
had caused a large tent to be erected, because his house or ordinarie tent could not containe so ma-
ny men and women as were assembled. Our guide admonished vs not to speake, till Baatu had gi-
uen vs commandement so to doe, and that then we should speake our mindes byie slip. Then Baatu
demanded whether your Maestie had sent Ambassadors vnto him or no: I answered, that your
Maestie had sent messengers to Ken-Cam: and that you would not haue sent messengers vnto him,
because you sent not vnto them for any feare, but onely for congratulation, and curtesies sake, in
regard that you heard they were converted to Christianitie. Then led he vs vnto his pavillion: and
wee were charged not to touch the ropes of the tent, which they account in stead of the threshold
of the house. There we stood in our habite bare-footed, and bare-headed, and were a great and
strange spectacle in their eyes, for indeede Frier Iohn de Plano Carpini had byn there before me
coming: howbeit, because he was the Popes messenger, he changed his habite that he might not be
contemned. Then we were brought into the very midst of the tent, neither required they of vs to do
any reuerence by bowing our knees, as they vse to doe of other messengers. Wee stood therefore
before him for the space wherein a man might haue rehearsed the Psalme, Miserere mei Deus: and
there was great silence kept of all men. Baatu himselfe satte vpon a seate long and broad like vnto a
bed, guile all ouer, with three staires to ascend thereunto, and one of his ladies satte beside him. The
men there assembled, satte downe scattering, some on the right hand of the said Lady, and some on
the left. Those places on the one side which the women filled not up for there were onely the wines
of Baatu were supplied by the men. Also, at the very entrance of the tent, stood a bench furnished
with cushions, and with stately great cuppes of silver, and golde, beeing richly set with precious
stones, Baatu beheld vs earnestly, and we him: and he seemed to me to resemble in personage, Mon-
sieur

The North Ocean.

The North Ocean.

He descended
downe the ri-
uer Volga in a
barke.

Afracen.

The descrip-
tion of Baatu's
court.

Horda signifi-
eth the midst.

Iohn de Plano
Carpini.

sieur Iohn de beau mont, whose soule resteth in peace. And hee had a fresh ruddie colour in his countenance. At length he commanded vs to speake. Then our guide gaue vs direction, that we should bow our knees & speake. Whereupon I bowed one knee as vnto a man: then he signified that I should kneele vpon both knees: and I did so, being loath to contend about such circumstances. And again he commanded me to speake. Then I thinking of prayer vnto God, because I kneeled on both my knees, began to pray on this wise: Sir, we beseech the Lord, from whom all good things doe proceed, and who hath giuen you these earthly benefices, that it would please him hereafter to make you partaker of his heauily blessings: because the former without these are but vaine and improfitable. And I added further, Be it known vnto you of a certainty, that you shall not obtain the ioyes of heauen, vnles you become a Christian: for God saith, Whosoever beleueth & is baptized, shall be saued: but he that beleueth not, shall be condemned. At this word he mouedly smiled: but the other Moals began to clap their hands, and to deride vs. And my silly interpreter, of whom especially I should haue receiued comfort in time of need, was himselfe abashed & bitterly bawled out of countenance. Then, after silence made, I said vnto him, I came vnto your sonne, because we heard that he was become a Christian: and I brought vnto him letters on the behalfe of my soueraigne Lord the king of France: and your sonne sent me hither vnto you. The cause of my comming therefore is best known vnto your selfe. Then he caused me to rise vp. And he enquired your maiesties name, and my name, and the name of mine associate and interpreter, and caused them all to be put down in writing. He demanded likewise (because he had bene informed, that you were departed out of your owne countreys with an armie) against whom you waged warre: I answered: against the Saracens, who had defiled the house of God at Ierusalem. He asked also, whether your Highnes had euer before that time sent any messengers vnto him, or no? To you sir? (said I) neuer. Then caused he vs to sit downe, and gaue vs of his milke to drinke, which they account to be a great fauour, especially when any man is admitted to drinke Colmos with him in his own house. And as I late looking downe vpon the ground, he commanded me to lift vp my countenance, being desirous as yet to take moze diligent view of vs, or els perhaps for a kinde of superstitious obseruation. For they esteeme it a signe of ill lucke, or a prognostication of euill vnto them, when any man sits in their presence, holding downe his head, as if he were sad: especially when he leanes his cheeke or chinne vpon his hand. Then we departed forth, and immediately after came our guide vnto vs, and conducting vs vnto our lodging, saide vnto me: Your master the King requesteth that you may remaine in this land, which request Baatu cannot satisfie without the knowledge and consent of Mangu-Can. Wherefore you, and your interpreter must of necessity goe vnto Mangu-Can. Howbeit your associate, and the other man shall returne vnto the court of Sartach, staying there for you, till you come backe. Then began the man of God mine interpreter to lament, esteeming himselfe but a dead man, & mine associate also protested, that they should sooner chop off his head, then withdraue him out of my company. Whereupon I my selfe saide, that without mine associate I could not goe: and that we stood in neede of two seruants at the least, to attend vpon vs, because, if one should chance to fall sicke, we could not be without another. Then returning vnto the court, he told these sayings vnto Baatu. And Baatu commanded saying: let the two Bzielles and the interpreter goe together, but let the clearke returne vnto Sartach. And comming againe vnto vs, hee tolde vs euens so. And when I would haue spoken for the clearke to haue had him with vs, he saide: No moze woordes: for Baatu hath resolved, that so it shall be, and therefore I dare not goe vnto the court any moze. Go: set the clearke had remaining of the almes money bestowed vpon him, 26. Yperpas, and no moze: 10. whereof he kept for himselfe and for the lad, and 16. he gaue vnto the man of God for vs. And thus were we parted asunder with teares: he returning vnto the court of Sartach, and our selues remaining still in the same place.

Of our iourney towards the Court of Mangu Can.

Chap. 22.

Vpon Assumption euen our clearke arrived at the court of Sartach. And on the morrow after, the Nestorian Bzielles were adjoyned with our vestments in the presence of the saide Sartach. Then wee our selues were conducted vnto another house, who was appointed to provide vs house-rooms, victualles, and horses. But because wee had not ought to bestow vpon him, hee did all things vntowardly for vs. Then wee rode on forwarde with Baatu, descending along by the banke of Ecilia, for the space of five weekes together: Sometimes mine associate was so extremelie hungrie, that hee would tell mee in a manner weeping, that it farced with him as though hee had neuer eaten any thing in all his life before. There is a faire market following the court of Baatu at all times: but it was so farre distant from vs that we could not

The letters of
the French
king.

They trauell
five weekes by
the banke of
Ecilia.

The

not ha-
length
and on
garian
was an
meanin
comfort
when t
had non
Bying i
they di
Hoyeou
tine, an
ded of h
Hungari
quired m
warde I
sters of f
in all. A
father was
duct you v
there is suc
thereof. T
dure it o
which othe
And I an
business of
mitted vnto
terward he
full for vs, h
vnto ech of
ches of the sa
hoods also m
ward on our
feast of All Sa
bite, who wer
Bulgaria the p

Of

H Auing re-
which riu
The language
hauling any citi
thereof. From
greater is the sa
gion of Pascari.
Next vnto it is
that with swift
together with th
from inuading th
as Egypt. Like
mightie then the
dals topped them
which inhabit be
led Ilac, which (sa
leer B) from who
the called Ilac (vor

the colour in his
celion, that wee
signified that
circumstances,
I kneeled on
all good things
in hereafter to
ut vain and im-
not obtain the
is baptized,
in hereafter but the
whom special-
ty out of coun-
we heard that
uerigne Lord
ning therefoe
alesties name,
to be put down
reparted out of
o: against the
Wighnes had
dict. Then came
great fauour,
And as I late
ing desirous as
eruatiou. For
an Aris in their
eeke of chinne
s, and conduc-
may remaine
of Mangu-
Howbeit your
you, till you
elfe but a dead
it hoare him
not goe: and
shoulde chance
these sayings
goe together,
s euen so. And
ze words: for
ny more. Go-
and no more;
dd for vs. And
and our feluts

an.

more after,
he saide Sar-
pointed to pro-
bestowe upon
aaru, desen-
retimes mine
ying, that it
is a faire of
that we could
not

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

not haue recourse thereunto. For wee were constrained to walke on foote for want of horses. At length certaine Hungarians (who had sometime bene after a sort Cleargie men) found vs out: Hungarians, and one of them could as yet sing many songs without booke, and was accomped of other Hungarians as a Psalme, and was sent for vnto the funerals of his deceased countrey men. There was another of them also pyerily wel instructed in his Grammar: for hee could vnderstand the meaning of any thing that wee spake, but could not answer vs. These Hungarians were a great comfort vnto vs, bringing vs Colmos to drinke, yea, and sometimes flesh to eate also: who, when they requested to haue some bookes of vs, and I had not any to giue them (for indeede we had none but onely a Bible, and a bzeuatie) it grieued them (for indeede we bring mee some inke and paper, and I will wyte for you so long as we shall remaine here: and they did so. And I copied out for them Horas beate Virginis, and Officium defunctorum: Forpouer, vpon a certaine day, there was a Comanian that accompanied vs, saluting vs in La- Comanian, tine, and saying: Saluete Domini. Wondering thereat and saluting him againe, I demaunded of him, who had taught him that kinde of salutation? Hee saide that hee was baptized in Hungaria by our frriers, and that of them hee learned it. He saide moreouer, that Baatu had enquired many things of him concerning vs, and that hee tolde him the estate of our order. Afterwarde I saue Baatu riding with his companie, and all his subiects that were householders of many of families riding with him, and (in mine estimation) they were not fere hundred persons in all. At length about the ende of Holy roode, there came a certaine rich Moal vnto vs (whose father was a Millenarie, which is a great office among them) saying: I am the man that must conduct you vnto Mangu-Can, and wee haue thither a iourney of foure moneths long to trauell, and there is such extreame colde in those parts, that stones and trees doe euen rise asunder in regarde thereof. Therefoe I would with you thoroughly to aduise your selues, whether you be able to indure it or no. Vnto whome I answered: I hope by Gods helpe that we shalbe able to brooke that which other men can indure. Then he saide: if you cannot indure it, I wil forsake you by the way. And I answered him: it were not iust dealing for you so to doe: for wee goe not thither vpon any businesse of our owne, but by reason that we are sent by your lord. Wherefoe sithence we are committed vnto your charge, you ought in no wise to forsake vs. Then he saide: all shalbe well. Afterward he caused vs to leaue it behind in the custodie of our host. On the moreow they brought vs to erch of vs a furred gowne, made all of rammes skinnes, with the woolle vpon them, and byeeches of the same, and bootes also of buskins according to their fashion, and shoes made of felt, and hoods also made of skinnes after their maner. The second day after Holy roode, we began to set for ward on our iourney, hauing three guides to direct vs: and we rode continually Eastward, till the feast of All Saints. Throughout all that region, and beyonde also did the people of Changle (inhabite, who were by parentage descended from the Romanes, vpon the moreth side of vs, wee had Bulgaria the greater, and on the South, the lesse said Caspian sea.

Of the riuier of Iagac: and of diuers regions or nations. Chap. 23.

HAuing traueiled twelue dayes iourney from Etilia, wee found a mightie riuier called Iagac: which riuier issuing out of the moreth, from the land of Pascatic, descended into the lesse said sea. The language of Pascatic, and of the Hungarians is all one, and they are all of them shepheards, not hauing any cities. And their countrey bordereth vpon Bulgaria the greater, on the West frontier thereof. From the moreth east part of the said countrey, there is no cite at all. For Bulgaria the greater is the farthest countrey that way, that hath any cite therein. Out of the forenamed region of Pascatic, proceeded the Hunnes of olde time, who afterwarde were called Hungarians. Next vnto it is Bulgaria the greater. Isidore reporteth concerning the people of this nation, that with swift horses they traueled the impregnable walles and bounds of Alexander, (which together with the rocks of Caucasus, serued to restrain those barbarous and blood-thirstie people from inuading the regions of the South) in so much that they had tribute paid vnto them, as farre as Egypt. Like wise they wasted all countreis euen vnto France. Whereupon they were more mightie then the Tartars as yet are. And vnto them the Blacians, the Bulgarians, and the Vandals ioynd themselves. For out of Bulgaria the greater, came those Bulgarians, the Vandals which inhabit beyond Danubius, neere vnto Constantinople, and not farre from Pascatic, are called Ilac, which (saying the pronunciation) is al one with Blac, (for the Tartars cannot pronounce the letter B) from whom also descended the people which inhabit the land of Assani. For they are both of the called Ilac (both these, & the other) in p languages of the Russians, & the Bohemians, & the

Hungarians.

Comanian.

A iourney of 4 moneths from Volga.

The 16 of September.

46 dayes. 21, Kangiz.

21, Ial.

Ial twelue dayes iourney from Volga. Pascatic.

The Hungarians descended from the Balcides.

Valachians.

Deut. 32. v. 21.
Rom. 10. v. 19.

Cangle an huge
plaine com-
crep.

The Sclauonians speake all one language with the Vandals, all which banded themselves with the Hunnes: and now for the most part, they unite themselves unto the Tartars: who God hath raised up from the remotest partes of the earth, according to that which the Lord saith: I will prouoke them to enuy (namely such as keepe not his Law) by a people, which is no people, and by a foolish nation will I anger them. This prophetic is fulfilled, according to the literal sense thereof, vpon all nations which obserue not the Law of God. All this which I haue written concerning the land of Pascatis, was told me by certaine Friars prædicants, which traualled thither before euery the Tartars came abroad. And from that time they were subdued vnto their neighbours the Bulgarians being Saracens, whereupon many of them proued Saracens also. Other matters concerning this people, may be known out of Chyonicles. For it is manifest, that those prouinces beyond Constantinople, which are now called Bulgaria, Valachia, & Sclauonia, were of old time prouinces belonging to the Greekes. Also Hungaria was heretofore called Pannonia. And wee were riding ouer the land of Cangle, from the feast of Holy roode, vntill the feast of All Saints: traueilling almost euery day (according to mine estimation) as farre, as from Paris to Oricans, and sometimes farther, as we were prouided of poste horses: for some dayes we had change of horses twice or thrise in a day. Sometimes we traualled two or thre daies together, not finding any people, and then we were constrained not to ride so fast. Of 20. or 30. horses we had alwayes the worst, because we were strangers. For euery one tooke their choice of the best horses before vs. They prouided mee alwayes of a strong horse, because I was very copulent & heavy: but whether he ambled a gentle pace or no, I durst not make any question. Neither yet durst I complaine, although he trotted full soze. But euery man must be contented with his lot as it fell. Whereupon we were exceedingly troubled: for oftentimes our horses were tired before we could come at any people. And then we were constrained to beate and whip on our horses, and to lay our garments vpon other emptye horses: yea and sometimes two of vs to ride vpon one horse.

Of the hunger, and thirst, and other miseries, which wee sustained in our journey. Chap. 24.

Certaine ri-
uers,

Eight dayes
journey south-
ward.
Hills swift of
foote.
High mount-
taines.

Of hunger and thirst, colde and wearinesse, there was no end. For they gave vs no victuals, but onely in the euening. In the morning they vsed to giue vs a little drinke, or some sodden Millet to sup off. In the euening they bestowed flesh vpon vs, as namely, a shoulder and breast of rams mutton, and euery man a measured quantitie of broath to drinke. When we had sufficient of the flesh-broath, we were maruellously wel refreshed. And it seemed to me most pleasant, and most nourishing drinke. Euery Saturday I remained fasting vntill night, without eating or drinking of ought. And when night came, I was constrained, to my great grief and sorow, to eat flesh. Sometimes we were faine to eat flesh halfe sodden, or almost rawe, and all for want of fuel to seethe it withal: especially when we lay in the fields, or were benighted before we came at our iourneys end: because we could not then conveniently gather together the doing of horses or oxen: for other felwe we found but seldom, except perhaps a fewe thornes in some places. Likewise vpon the bankes of some riuers, there are woods growing here and there. Howbeit they are very rare. In the beginning our guide highly disdained vs, and it was tedious vnto him to conduct such base fellowes. Afterward, when he began to know vs somewhat better, he directed vs on our way by the courts of rich Moals, and we were requested to pray for them. Wherefore, had I caried a good intercessor with me, I should haue had opportunity to haue done much good. The foresaid Chingis, who was the first great Can or Emperour of the Tartars, had foure sonnes, of whome proceeded by naturall descent many children, euery one of which doeth at this day enjoy great possessions: and they are daily multiplied and dispersed ouer that huge and waste desert, which is, in dimensions, like vnto the Ocean Sea. Our guide therefore directed vs, as we were going on our journey, vnto many of their habitations. And they maruelled exceedingly, that we would receiue neither gold, nor silver, nor precious and costly garments at their hands. They inquired also, concerning the great Pope, whether he was of so lasting an age as they had heard. For they had gone a report among them, that he was 500. yeeres olde. They inquired likewise of our countreis, whether there were abundance of theep, oxen, & horses or no: Concerning the Ocean sea, they could not chere of it, because it was without limits or banks. Vpon the euen of the feast of All Saints, we forsook the way leading towards the East, because the people were now descended very much South) and we went on our journey by certaine Alpes, or mountaines directly Southward, for the space of 8. dayes together. In the foresaid desert I saw many asses (which they call Colan) being rather like vnto mules: these did our guide & his companions chase very eagerly: howbeit, they did but lose their labour: for the beastes were too swift for them. Vpon the 7. day there appeared to the South of vs huge high

mountaines,

The
the
stretched
part they
streams, &
Buri, of w
the courts
lord & mad
and fertile
not I of th
ther or nep
my cattel
tu. Where
bid so. The
that he had
selfe that he
dumkenness
men, I coul
was inform
of a moneth
set to dig gol
bery neere th
ignorant that
From the for
that time we
foze our guide
other: namely
and so likewi
the people of E
lectors of Mang
where the Car
much that we
to a certaine ba
in that place the
us, wherein we
dance from Per
from the great
saines on our
neth fiftene day
with certaine tre
mer time we re
on that side also,
for the most part:

themselves with
the God hath rat-
: I will prouoke
le, and by a foo-
al sense thereof,
n concerning the
r before euer the
the Bulgarians
concerning this
eyond Constan-
prouinces belon-
were riding our
raueiling almost
sometimes far-
e twice of this
uple, and then we
st, because wee
ey prouided mee
ambled a gentle
th he trotted full
were exceedingly
. And then wee
ether emptye boy-

h wee

us no victuals,
of some sodden
er and breast of
had sufficient of
easant, and most
goe dynting of
eat flesh, Some-
wel to seeche
our iourneys end:
fo: other fewel
on the banks of
. In the begin-
se fellows. Af-
by the courts of
good interpreter
ningis, who was
ed by naturall
s and they are
where the Cara-
y, vnto many of
gold, nor silver,
the great hope,
nt among them,
ere were abun-
ure of it, because
the way leading
we went on our
dapes together,
nto miles: this
labour: for the
of vs huge high
mountaines,

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

113

mountaines, and we entred into a place which was well watered, and fresh as a garden, and found
land tilled and manured. The eight day after the feast of All Saints, we arrived at a certain towne
of the Saracens, named Kenchar, the gouernour whereof met our guide at the townes end with ale
and cups. For it is their maner at all townes and villages, subiect vnto them, to meet the messen-
gers of Baatu and Mangu-Can with meate and drinke. At the same time of the yere, they went vp
on the yee in that countrey. And before the feast of S. Michael, we had frost in the desert. I enquired
the name of that prouince: but being now in a strange territorie, they could not tell mee the name
thereof, but onely the name of a very small citie in the same prouince. And there descended a great
river downe from the mountaines, which watered the whole region, according as the inhabitants
would giue it passage, by making diuers channells and flures: neither did this river exonerate it selfe
into any sea, but was swallowed by an hideous gulfe into the bowels of the earth: and it caused
many fennes of lakes. Also I saw many vines, and drinke of the wine thereof.

Spanured
ground.
Kenchar a villa-
ge of the Sa-
racens.
The 7. day of
November.
A great river.
Sharp lakes.
Wines.

How Ban was put to death: and concerning the habita- tion of the Dutch men. Chap. 25.

The day following, we came vnto another cottage neere vnto the mountains. And I enquired
what mountains they were, which I vnderstood to be the mountains of Caucasus, which are
stretched forth, & continued on both parts to the sea, from the West vnto the East: and on the West
part they are consigned vnto the foresaid Caspian sea, wherinto the river of Volga dischargeeth his
streams. I enquired also of the city of Talas, wherein were certaine Dutchmen seruants vnto one
Buri, of whom Frier Andrew made mention. Concerning whom also I enquired very diligently in
the courts of Sarach & Baatu. Howbeit I could haue no intelligence of them, but onely that their
lord & master Ban was put to death vpon the occasion following: This Ban was not placed in good
not I of the stocke and kindred of Chingis Can, as well as Baatu? (for in very deepe he was byo-
ther of nephew vnto Baatu.) Which then doe I not passe and repasse vpon the banks of Euilia, to feed
my cattel there, as freely as Baatu himselfe doeth: Which speeches of his were reported vnto Ba-
tu. Whereupon Baatu wrote vnto his seruants to bring their Loyde bound vnto him. And they
did so. Then Baatu demanded of him whether he had spoken any such words: And hee confessed
that he had. Howbeit, (because it is the Tartars maner to pardon drunken men) he excused him-
selfe that he was drunken at the same time. Howe durst thou (quoth Baatu) once name mee in thy
drunkennesse? And with that hee caused his head to be chopped off. Concerning the foresaid Dutch-
men, I could not vnderstand ought, till I was come vnto the court of Mangu-Can. And there I
was informed that Mangu-Can had remoued them out of the iurisdiction of Baatu, for the space
of a moneths iourney from Talas Eastward, vnto a certaine village, called Bolac: where they are
set to dig gold, and to make armour. Whereupon I could neither goe nor come by them. I passed
very neere the saide citie in going forth, as namely, within thre dapes iourney thereof: but I was
ignorant that I did so: neither could I haue turned out of my way, albeit I had knowen so much.
From the foresaide cottage we went directly Eastward, by the mountaines aforesaid. And from
that time we traualled among the people of Mangu-Can, who in all places sang and daunced be-
foze our guide, because hee was the messenger of Baatu. For this curtesie they doe affoord eche to
other: namely, the people of Mangu-Can receiuing the messengers of Baatu in maner aforesaid:
and so likewise the people of Baatu intreating the messengers of Mangu-Can. Notwithstanding
the people of Baatu are moze surle and haute, and shewe not so much curtesie vnto the sub-
iects of Mangu-Can, as they doe vnto them. A fewe dapes after, wee entered vpon those Alpes
where the Cara Carayans were wont to inhabite. And there wee found a mightie river: inso-
much that wee were constrained to imbarke our selues, and to saile ouer it. Afterward we came in-
to a certaine valley, where I saw a castle destroyed, the walles whereof were onely of mudde: and
in that place the ground was tilled also. And there wee founde a certaine village, named Equi-
us, wherein were Saracens, speaking the Persian language: howbeit they dwelt an huge di-
stance from Persia. The day following, hauing passed ouer the foresaide Alpes which descended
from the great mountains Southward, we entred into a most beautiful plaine, hauing high moun-
taines on our right hande, and on the left hande of vs a certaine Sea or lake, which containeth
fiftene dapes iourney in circuite. All the foresayde plaine is most commodiously watered
with certaine fethers distilling from the said mountaines, all which do fall into the lake. In som-
mer time wee returned by the North shoze of the saide lake, and there were great mountaines
on that side also. Vpon the sozenamed plaine there were wont to bee great shoze of villages: but
for the most part they were all wasted, in regarde of the ferile pastures, that the Tartars might
feede

A cottage.
The moritation
of Caucasus are
extended vnto
the Caspian
Sea.
The citie of
Talas, of Chin-
dians.
Frier Andrew.

The village of
Bolac.

We entred in-
to the territo-
ries of Mangu-
Can.

Certaine Alpes
wherein the
Cara Carayans
inhabited.
A mightie ri-
uer.
Ground tilled.
Equius.

A lake of fif-
teene dapes
iourney in
circuite.

Cailac a great
citie, and full
of merchants.

forde their rattel there. Wee found one great citie there named Cailac, wherein was a mart, and great stoze of Merchants frequenting it. In this citie wee remained fifteene dayes, staying for a certaine Scribe or Secretarie of Baatu, who ought to haue accompanied our guide for the dispatching of certaine affaires in the court of Mangu. All this country was wont to be called Organum: and the people thereof had their proper language, and their peculiar kinde of writing. But it was altogether inhabited of the people called Contomanni. The Nestorians likewise in those parts used the very same kinde of language and writing. They are called Organa, because they were wont to be most skillfull in playing vpon the Organes or citherns, as it was reported vnto me. Wee first did I see worshippers of idoles, concerning whom, bee it knowne vnto your maiestie, that there be many sects of them in the East countries.

Contomanni.

How the Nestorians, Saracens, and Idolaters are ioy- ned together. Chap. 26.

The people
called Iugures
idolaters.

The first sort of these idolaters are called Iugures: whose land bordereth vpon the foresaid land of Organum, within the said mountains Eastward: and in all their cities Nestorians do inhabit together, and they are dispersed like wise towards Persia in the cities of the Saracens. The citizens of the foresaid city of Cailac had 3. idole-Temples: and I entred into two of them, to beholde their foolish superstitions. In the first of which I found a man hauing a crosse painted with ink vpon his hand, wherupon I supposed him to be a Christian: for he answered like a Christian vnto all questions which I demanded of him. And I asked him, Why therfore haue you not the crosse with the image of Iesu Christ therupon? And he answered: We haue no such custome. Wherupon I conjectured that they were indeede Christians: but, that for lacke of instruction they omitted the foresaid ceremonie. For I saw there behind a certaine chest (which was vnto them in stead of an altar, wherupon they set candles and oblations) an image hauing wings like vnto the image of Saint Michael, and other images also, holding their fingers, as if they would blesse some body. That euening I could not find any thing els, for of the Saracens doe onely inuite men thither, but they will not haue them speake of their religion. And therfore, when I enquired of the Saracens concerning such ceremonies, they were offended thereat. On the morrow after were the Kalends, and the Saracens feast of Pasche. And changing mine Inne or lodging the same day, I tooke by mine abode nere vnto another idole-Temple. For the citizens of the said citie of Cailac doe curiously inuite, & flouingly entertaine all messengers, euery man of them according to his abilitie and position. And entring into the foresaid idole-Temple, I found the priests of the said idoles there. For alwayes at the Kalends they set open their Temples, and the priests adorne themselves, and offer by the peoples oblations of bread and fruits. First therfore I will describe vnto you those rites and ceremonies, which are common vnto all their idole-Temples: and then the superstitions of the foresaid Iugures, which be, as it were, a sect distinguished from the rest. They doe all of them worship towards the North, clapping their hands together, and prostrating themselves on their knees vpon the earth, holding also their foreheads in their hands. Wherupon the Nestorians of those parts will in no case ioyne their hands together in time of prayer: but they pray, displaying their hands before their breasts. They extend their Temples in length East and West: and vpon the North side they build a chamber, in manner of a Vestry for themselves to goe forth into. Or sometimes it is otherwise. If it be a foure square Temple, in the midst of the Temple towards the North side thereof, they take in one chamber in that place where the quire should stand. And within the said chamber they place a chest long and broad like vnto a table: and behinde the said chest towards the South stands their principall idole: which I sawe at Caracorum, and it was as bigge as the idole of Saint Christopher. Also a certaine Nestorian priest, which had bin in Caray, saide that in that countrey there is an idole of so huge a bignes, that it may be seen two daies iourney before a man come at it. And so they place other idoles round about the foresaid principall idole, being all of them finely gilt ouer with pure golde: and vpon the said chest, which is in manner of a table, they set candles and oblations. The doores of their Temples are alwayes opened towards the South, contrary to the custome of the Saracens. They haue also great belles like vnto vs. And that is the cause (as I thinke) why the Christians of the East will in no case vse great belles, notwithstanding they are common among the Russians, and Grecians of Casaria.

Frier William
was at Caracorum.

Of their Temples and idoles: and howe they behaue themselves in worshipping their false gods. Chap. 27.

All their priests had their heads and beards shauen quite ouer: and they are clad in saffron-coloured garments: and being once shauen, they lead an vnmarr'd life from that time forthward: and

ano
daye
the
othe
foox
ly un
time
comp
haue
much
wayes
vnto n
remen
church
great p
a long
pole all
afore
idole-
med vnt
ments by
whither
being lac
cloake v
con car
ctive, C
reade and
character
god round
guage of
dead accord
had sit a wh
both great a
swered: W
believe that
Then said I
Noc. And a
my bodily im
doe you reles
swered saying
amongst vs, o
dead party to
vnto. Then I
(said they) but
is God? To w
is it not in euen
is not seeme o
bie, being vnde
ference with th
ning, I was cor
namely they bel
of their decesed
into one of two c
foothsayers, who
vnderstand herea
gu and of other gr
such onely as are c
iourney, the said v
Israel. And they ap

was a mart, and
res, staying for a
r guide for the
wont to be called
inde of w. Ang-
ians likewise in
organa, because
was reported un-
into your ma-

oy-

the foresaid land
orians do inha-
cens. The citi-
them, to beholde
ed with ink vpo
ian vnto al que-
crosse with the
ereupon I com-
mitted the foze-
eed of an altar,
image of Saint
mody. That eue-
but they will
ens concerning
ds, and the Sa-
ooke by mine a-
doe curiously
illitie and popu-
les there. For
lues, and offer
you those rites
ritidions of the
l of them wo-
on their knees
s of those parts
their hands be-
the 120th side
ometimes it is o-
of his sonne, of
said chamber
the South
idole of Saint
that countrey
an come at it.
hem finely gilt
et candles and
onetary to the
e cause (as I
ding they are

hem-

in saffron co-
ime forward:
and

The Tartars. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

115

and they lue an hundredth of two hundredth of them together in one clouster of couene. Upon those
dayes when they enter into their temples, they place two long footmen therein: and so sitting vpon
the sayd footmen like singing men in a quier, namely the one halfe of them directly ouer against the
other, they haue certaine books in their hands, which sometimes they lay downe by them vpon the
foomes: and their heads are bare so long as they remaine in the temple. And there they reade soft-
ly vnto themselves, not ventering any voice at all. Whereupon comming in amongst them, at the
time of their superstitious deuotions, and finding them all sitting mute in maner asforesayde, I at-
tempted others waies to prouoke them vnto speech, and yet could not by any means possible. They
haue with them also whither soeuer they goe, a certaine string with an hundredth of two hundredth
mushels thereupon, much like to our bead-roule which we carry about with vs. And they doe al-
wayes utter these wordes: *On mam Haddani*, God thou knowest: as one of them expounded it
vnto me. And so often doe they expect a reward at Gods hands, as they pronounce these wordes in
reuerent prayer of God. Round about their temple they doe alwayes make a faire court, like vnto a
churchyard, which they enuiron with a good wall: and vpon the South part thereof they build a
great portal, wherein they sit and conferre together. And vpon the top of the said portall they pitch
a long pole right by, exalting it, if they can. Due all the whole towne besides. And by the same
pole all men may knowe, that there standes the temple of their idoles. These rites and ceremonies
asforesayde be common vnto all idolaters in those parts. Going vpon a time towards the foresayd
idole-temple, I found certain priests sitting in the outward portal. And those which I sawe, sea-
med vnto me, by their shaven beards, as if they had bene French men. They wore certaine orna-
ments vpon their heads made of paper. The priestes of the foresaide Iugures doe vse such attire
whither soeuer they goe. They are alwaies in their saffron coloured iackets, which be very straight
being laced o' buttens from the bosome right downe, after the French fashion. And they haue a
cloak vpon their left shoulder descending before and behind vnder their right arme, like vnto a dea-
con carrying the housell-bore in time of lent. Their letters of kind of writing the Tartars did re-
ceive. They begin to write at the top of their paper drawing their lines right downe: and so they
reade and multiply their lines from the left hand to the right. They doe vse certaine papers and
characters in their magical practises. Whereupon their temples are full of such soyle scroules han-
g'd round about them. Also Mangou-Can hath sent letters vnto your Patience written in the lan-
guage of the Moals of Tartars, and in the foresayd hand of letter of the Iugures. They burne their
dead according to the ancient custome, and lay by the ashes in the top of a Pyramis. Now, after I
had sit a while by the foresaid priests, and entred into their temple and seene many of their images
both great and small, I demanded of them what they beleue concerning God: And they an-
swered: We beleue that there is onely one God. And I demanded farther: Whether do you
beleue that he is a spirit, or some bodily substance? They saide: We beleue that he is a spirit.
Then said I: Doe you beleue that God euer tooke mans nature vpon him? They answered: No.
And againe I said: Sithence ye beleue that he is a spirit, to what end doe you make so ma-
ny bodily images to represent him? Sithence also you beleue not that hee was made man: why
doe you resemble him rather vnto the image of a man then of any other creature? Then they an-
swered saying: we frame not those images whereby to represent God. But when any rich man
amongst vs, or his sonne, or his wife, or any of his friends deceaseth, hee causeth the image of the
dead party to be made, and to be placed here: and we in remembrance of him doe reuerence there-
unto. Then I replied: you doe these things onely for the friendship and flatterie of men. Doe
(said they) but for their memory. Then they demanded of me, as it were in scoffing wise: Where
is God? To whom I answered: where is your soule? They said, in our bodies. Then saide I,
is it not in every part of your bodie, ruling and guiding the whole bodie, and yet notwithstanding
is not seene or perceived? Euen so God is euery where and ruleth all things, and yet is he inuisi-
ble, being understanding and wisdom himselfe. Then being desirous to haue had some more con-
ference with them, by reason, that mine interpreter was weary, and not able to expresse my mea-
ning, I was constrained to keepe silence. The Moals of Tartars are in this regard of their sect:
namely they beleue that there is but one God: howbeit they make images of felt, in remembrance
of their deceased friends, covering them with fine most rich and costly garments, and putting them
into one of two carts, which carts no man dare once touch: and they are in the custodie of their
footslayers, who are their priests, concerning whom I will giue your Highnesse more at large to
vnderstand hereafter. These footslayers or diuitiers do alwaies attend vpon the court of Man-
gu and of other great personages. As for the poorer or meaner sorte, they haue them not, but
such onely as are of the stocke and kindred of Chingis. And when they are to remoue or to take any
tourney, the said diuitiers goe before them, euen as the cloude pillar went before the childe of
Israel, And they appoint ground where the tents must be pitched, and first of al they take downe their
owne

Waye.
So do the peo-
ple of China use
to write, draw-
ing their lines
perpendicular
downward. And
not as we doe
from the right
hand to the
left.

owne houses: & after them the whole court doth the like. Also upon their festiual daies of kalends they take forth the foresayd images, and place them in order round, or circle wise within the house. Then come the Moals of Tartars, and enter into the same house, bowing themselves before the said images and worship them. Whereouer, it is not lawfull for any stranger to enter into that house, & so upon a certaine time I my selfe would haue gone in, but I was chidden full well for my labour.

**Of diuers and sundry nations: and of certaine people
which were wont to eate their owne parents. Chap. 28.**

The countrey
of Presbyter Iohn

Tangut.

Strange oren.

The people of
Teber.

Abundance of
golde.

The stature of
the people of
Tangut, and of
the Iugures.

Langa & Solanga

The people of
Solanga resemble
the Spaniards

26 table of ele-
phants tooth.

But the foresayd Iugures (who liue among the Chyrtisms, and the Saracens) by their sundry disputations, as I suppose, haue bene brought vnto this, to be true, that there is but one onely God. And they dwell in certaine cities, which afterward were brought in subjection vnto Chingis Can: whereupon he gaue his daughter in marriage vnto their king. Also the citie of Caracorum it selfe is in a manner within their territory: and the whole countrey of king of Presbyter Iohn, & of his brother Vut lertch neere vnto their dominions: sauing, that they inhabite in certaine pastures Northward, and the sayde Iugures betwene the mountaines towards the South. Whereupon it came to passe, that the Moals receiued letters from them. And they are the Tartars principall scribes: & all the Nestorians almost can skill of their letters. Next vnto them, betwene the foresayd mountaines Eastward, inhabite the nation of Tangut, who are a most valiant people, and tooke Chingis in battell. But after the conclusion of a league hee was set at libertie by them, and afterward subdued them. These people of Tangut haue oren of great strength, with taitles like vnto horses, and with long shagge haire vpon their backs and bristles. They haue legges greater then oren oren haue, and they are exceedingly fierce. These oren haue the great houses of the Moals: and their hoznes are slender, long, dreight, and most sharpe pointed: inasmuch that their owners are faine to cut off the endes of them. A cowe will not suffer her selfe to be coupled vnto one of them, vntill they whistle or sing vnto her. They haue also the qualities of a Buffe: for if they see a man clothed in red, they run vpon him immediately to kill him. Next vnto them are the people of Teber, men which were wont to eate the carcases of their deceased parents: that for pitties sake, they might make no other sepulchre for them, then their owne bowels. Howbeit of late they haue left off this custome, because that thereby they became abominable and odious vnto all other nations. Notwithstanding vnto this day they make fine cups of the skulls of their parents, to the ende that when they drinke out of them, they may amidst all their tollities and delights call their dead parents to remembrance. This was tolde me by one that saw it. The sayd people of Teber haue great plenty of golde in their land. Whereouer therefore wanteth golde, diggeth till he hath found some quantitie, and then taking so much thereof as will serue his turne, he layeth vpon the redstone within the earth: because, if he should put it into his chest or storhouse, hee is of opinion that God would withhold from him all other gold within the earth. I sawe some of those people, being very deformed creatures. In Tangut I sawe ludy tall men, but byowne and swart in colour. The Iugures are of a middle stature like vnto our French men. Amongst the Iugures is the originall and roote of the Turkish, and Comanian languages. Next vnto Teber are the people of Langa and Solanga, whose messengers I saw in the Tartars court. And they had brought more then ten great carres with them, euery one of which was drawn with fire oren. They be litle byowne men like vnto Spaniards. Also they haue iackets, like vnto the byper vestment of a deacon, sauing that the sleeves are somewhat dreighter. And they haue miters vpon their heads like bishops. But the sope part of their miter is not so hollow within as the hinder part: neither is it sharpe pointed or corymbred at the toppe: but there hang downe certaine square flappes compacted of a kinde of straw which is made rough and rugged with extreme heat, and is so trimmed, that it glittereth in the sunne beames, like vnto a glasse, or an helmet well burnished. And about their temples they haue long bands of the foresayd matter fastened vnto their miters, which houer in the wind, as if two long hoznes grew out of their heads. And when the winde collecteth them vp and downe too much, they tie them ouer the midst of their miter from one temple to another: and so they lie circle wise ouerthwart their heads. Whereouer their principall messenger comming vnto the Tartars court had a table of elephants tooth about him of a cubite in length, and a handfull in breadth, being very smoothe. And whensoever hee spake vnto the Emperour himselfe, or vnto any other great personage, hee alwayes beheld that table, as if hee had found therein those things which hee spake: neither did he cast his eyes to the right hand, nor to the left, nor vpon his face, with whom he talked. Yea, going too and fro before his lord, hee looketh no where but only vpon his table. Beyond the (as I vnderstand of a certainty) there are other people

people
vnto h
no man
ascend
the top
same,
house,
strange
and so
post) w
And this
that in
golde,
vnto the

Part
first



by this our
all their libe
that is to say
from all their
souke, toll and
stagefrete, and
cording as it is
also that they a
they shall not a
king Henrie ou
land: And that
that they haue
they shall come
Henrie the king
of summonces is
lands are. So
the same Baron
in any other plac
way. And that
predecessors haue
of England, Edw
ther, and in the
father, by their
which we haue
their march and
cons shall saye in

ies of kalcnos
in the house.
lues before the
enter into that
n full well for

pple

by their sundry
but one onely
on into Chin-
tie of Caraca-
g of Presbyter
bite in certaine
s the South-
are the Tartars
them, between
valiant people,
bertie by them,
st), with tallies
p haue legges
the great houn-
anted: insemuch
selfe to be cou-
les of a Buffe:
Next vnto them
parents: that
ls. Powbeit of
nd obious vnto
f their parents,
d delights call
sayd people of
olde, diggerth
urne, be lay-
ehouse, hee is
sawe some of
it bytowne and
Amongst the
nt vnto Tcher
urt. And they
wen with fire
ke vnto the by-
they haue mi-
with in as the
tome certaine
with extreme
helmet well
ned vnto their
And when the
mter from one
their principl
of a cubite in
spake vnto the
able, as if hee
right hand, no
is loyd, he too-
here are other
people

people called Muc, hauing villages, but no one particular man of them appropriating any cattell vnto himselfe. Notwithstanding there are many flockes and vntoes of cattell in their countrey, & no man appointed to keepe them. But when any one of them standeth in neede of any beast, hee ascendeth vnto an hill, and there maketh a shout, and all the cattell which are within hearing of the noise, come flocking about him, and suffer themselves to be handled and taken, as if they were tame. And when any messenger or stranger cometh into their countrey, they shew him vp into an house, ministring there things necessary vnto him, vntill his businesse be dispatched. For if any stranger should trauell through that countrey, the cattell would flee away at the very sent of him, and so would become wilde. Beyond Muc is great Cathaya, the inhabitants whereof (as I suppose) were of olde time, called Seres. For from them are brought most excellent stufes of silke, And this people is called Seres of a certain towne in the same countrey. I was credibly informed, that in the said countrey, there is one towne hauing walles of siluer, and bulwarkes of towers of golde. There be many provinces in that land, the greater part whereof are not as yet subdued vnto the Tartars. And amongst *

The people
called Muc.

Great Cathaya.

Somewhat is wanting.

Part of the great Charter granted by king Edward the first to the Barons of the Cinque portes, in the sixt yeere of his reigne

1278. for their good seruices done vnto him by sea: wherein is

mention of their former ancient Charters from Edward the Con-
fessor, William the Conqueror, William Rufus, Henry the se-
cond, king Richard the first, king Iohn, and Henry
the third continued vnto them,



Edward by the grace of God king of England, lord of Ireland, & duke of Gascoigne, to all Archbishops, Bishops, Abbots, Priors, Carles, Barons, Iustices, Shireffs, Irouolls, Officers, & to all Bayliffes and true subiects greeting. You shall knowe that for the faithfull seruice that our Barons of the five portes hitherto to our predecessors kings of England, & vnto vs lately in our armie of Wales haue done, and for their good seruice to vs and our heires kings of England, truly to be continued in time to come, we haue granted & by this our Charter confirmed for vs and our heires, to the same our Barons and to their heires, all their liberties and freedomes. So that they shall be free from all toll, and from all custome; that is to say from all lassage, tallage, passage, eariage, riuage, asponlage, and from all wycke, and from all their sale, corping and recarping through all our realme and dominion, with locke and souke, toll and theme. And that they shall haue Infangthefe, and that they shall be wyckefree, larcenyfree, and loughfree. And that they shall haue Denne and Strande at great Yarmouth, as they have had of old tyme. And that they shall be free from all shires and hundredes: so that if any person will plead against them, they shall not aunswere nor pleade other wise then they were wont to plead in the time of the lord, king Henrie our great grandfather: And that they shall haue their finelles in the sea and in the land: And that they be free of all their goods and of all their marchandises as our freemen. And that they haue their honours in our court, and their liberties throughout all the land where soeuer they shall come. And that they shall be free for euer of all their lands, which in the time of Lord Henrie the king our father they possessed: that is to say in the 44. yere of his reign, from all manner of summonces before our Iudices to any manner of pleadings, tourneying in what shire soeuer they the same Barons doe implead any man, or if any man be impleaded. And that they shall not please in any other place, except where they ought, and where they were wont, that is to say, at Shepe- wap. And that they haue their liberties and freedomes from henceforth, as they and their predecessors haue had them at any time better, more fully and honourably in the time of the kings of England, Edward, William the first, William the second, Henrie the king our great grandfather, by their Charters: as the same Charters which the same our Barons thereof haue, and which we haue seene, doe reasonably testifie. And we forbid that no man vnlawfully trouble them nor their marchandise vpon our foryeiture of ten pounds. So neuerthelesse, that when the same Barons shall saile in doing of Justice or in receiuing of Justice, our Warden, and the wardens of our

The fishing at
great Yarmouth

Henry the third

Edward the con-
fessor.

Thomas of
Walsingham
writing the
history of
the reign of
Edward the
third.

heires of the Cinque Portes, which for the time shall be, their Portes and liberties may enter for to doe their full Justice. So also that the said Barons and their heires, do unto vs and to our heires kings of England by the yeare their full seruice of 57. shippes at their costs by the space of fiftene dayes at our commaundment, or at the commaundment of our heires. We haue granted also unto them of our speciall grace that they haue Duesangeheise in their lands within the Portes aforesayd, in the same maner that Archbishops, Bishops, Abbots, Carles and Barons haue in their manours in the countie of Kent. And they be not put in any Assises, Turies, or Recognisances by reason of their foireine tenure against their will: and that they be free of all their owne wines for which they do traualle of our right price, that is to say, of one tunne before the masse, and of another behind the masse. We haue granted furthermoze unto the said Barons for vs and our heires, that they for euer haue this liberty, that is to say, That we or our heires shall not haue the wardship or mariages of their heires by reason of their landes, which they holde within the liberties and Portes aforesayd, for the which they doe their seruice aforesayd: and for the which we and our progenitors had not the wardships or mariages in time past. But we our aforesayd confirmation upon the liberties and freedoms aforesayd, and our grants following to them of our especiall grace, of newe we haue caused to be made, sauing alwaies in all things our kingly dignitie: And sauing vnto vs and to our heires, plea of our crowne, life and member. Wherefore we will and surely command for vs and our heires that the aforesayd Barons and their heires for euer haue all the aforesayd liberties and freedoms, as the aforesayd Charters do reasonably testifie. And that of our especiall grace they haue outgaunte in their lands within the Portes aforesayd after the maner that Archbishops, Bishops, Abbots, Carles and Barons haue in their manours in the countie of Kent. And that they be not put in Assises, Turies, or Recognisances by reason of their foireine tenure against their will. And that they be free of their owne wines for which they traualle of our right price or custome, that is to say of one tunne of wine before the masse, and of another tunne behind the masse. And that likewise for euer they haue the libertie aforesayd: that is to say: That we and our heires haue not the wardships or mariages of their heires by reason of their landes which they holde within the liberties and Portes aforesayd, for which they doe their seruice aforesayd, and for which we and our predecessors the wardships and mariages haue not had in times past. But our aforesayd confirmation of their liberties and freedoms aforesayd and other grants following to them of our especiall grace of newe we haue caused to be made, sauing alwaies and in all things our regall dignitie. And sauing vnto vs and our heires the pleas of our crowne of life and member as is aforesayd. These being witnesses, the reuerend father Robert of Boxtuens Cardinall of the holie Church of Rome, frier William of Southhampton Prior pounical of the friers preachers in England, William of Valencia our uncle, Roger of the dead sea, Roger of Clifford, Master Robert Samuel deane of Sarum, Master Robert of Scarborough the Archdeacon of East Riding, Master Robert of Seyton, Bartholomew of Southley, Thomas of Wayland, Walter of Hoptan, Thomas of Normannel, Steuen of Pennester, Frances of Bonaua, Iohn of Lenetores, Iohn of Meringham and others. Given by our hand at Westminster the fourteenth day of June, in the sixth yeare of our reigne.

Thomas Walsingham
writing the
history of
the reign of
Edward the
third.

The roll of the huge fleete of Edward the third before Calice, extant in the kings great wardrobe in London, whereby the wonderfull strength of England by sea in those dayes may appeare.

The South fleete.						
Or, More,	The Kings	{ Shippes Partners	25. 419.	Hope	{ Shippes Partners	2. 59.
	London	{ Shippes Partners	25. 662.	New Hith	{ Shippes Partners	5. 49.
	Aileford	{ Shippes Partners	2. 24.	Margar	{ Shippes Partners	15. 160.
	Hoo	{ Shippes Partners	2. 24.	Motue	{ Shippes Partners	2. 21.
	Maydstone	{ Shippes Partners	2. 51.	Feuertham	{ Shippes Partners	2. 25.

Or, More,

Sandwich

Sandw

Douer

Wight

Winchel

Waymou

Lyne

Seton

Sydmouth

Exmouth

Tegmouth

Dartmouth

Portsmouth

Plimouth

Loo

Yalme

Fowey

Bristol

Tenmouth

Hasting

Romney

Rye

Bamburgh

may enter for to
us and to our heirs
the space of fiftene
to vnto them of our
mesays, in the same
mours in the coun-
rean of their for-
which they do tra-
behind the masse,
they for euer haue
marriages of their
ayes aforesayde,
pogenitoys had not
upon the libertie
face, of newe haue
vnto us and to our
nmand for vs and
said libertie and
al grace they haue
bishops, Bishops,
that they be not
at their will. And
of custome, that
r masse. And that
id our heires haue
they holde with-
and for which we
our aforesayde
ing to them of our
things our regall
member as is a
vntall of the holie
ters preachers in
ford, Waster Ro-
of East Riding,
Valter of Hopian,
netores, Iohn of
p of June, in the

bird be-
don,

2.
59.
5.
49.
15.
160.

2.
21.
2.
25.

Sandwich

The great fleete of Ed.3. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

119

Sandwich	{ Ships Partners	22. 504.	Hithe	{ Ships Partners	6. 122.
Douer	{ Ships Partners	16. 336.	Shoreham	{ Ships Partners	20. 329.
Wight	{ Ships Partners	13. 220.	†Soford	{ Ships Partners	5. 80. †Or, Soford
Winchelsey	{ Ships Partners	21. 596.	Newmouth	{ Ships Partners	2. 18.
Waymouth	{ Ships Partners	15. 263.	Hamowl- hooke	{ Ships Partners	7. 117.
Lyne	{ Ships Partners	4. 62.	Hoke	{ Ships Partners	11. 208.
Seron	{ Ships Partners	2. 25.	Southhāp- ton	{ Ships Partners	21. 576.
Sydmouth	{ Ships Partners	3. 62.	Leyming- ton	{ Ships Partners	9. 159.
Eximouth	{ Ships Partners	10. 193.	Poole	{ Ships Partners	4. 94.
Tegmouth	{ Ships Partners	7. 120.	Watham	{ Ships Partners	3. 59.
Dartmouth	{ Ships Partners	31. 757.	Swanzey	{ Ships Partners	1. 29.
Portsmouth	{ Ships Partners	5. 96.	Ilfercombe	{ Ships Partners	6. 79.
Plimouth	{ Ships Partners	26. 603.	†Patrick- stowe	{ Ships Partners	2. 27. †Or, Padlow,
Loo	{ Ships Partners	20. 315.	Polerwan	{ Ships Partners	2. 60.
Yalme	{ Ships Partners	2. 47.	Wadworth	{ Ships Partners	1. 14.
†Fowey	{ Ships Partners	47. 770. †Or, Foy.	Kardife	{ Ships Partners	1. 51.
Bristol	{ Ships Partners	22. 608.	Bridgwater	{ Ships Partners	2. 15.
Tenmouth	{ Ships Partners	25. 5.	Kacrimar- then	{ Ships Partners	1. 16.
Hasting	{ Ships Partners	5. 96.	Calechef- worth	{ Ships Partners	1. 11.
Romney	{ Ships Partners	4. 65.	Mulbrooke	{ Ships Partners	1. 12.
Rye	{ Ships Partners	9. 156.	Summe of the South fleete	{ Ships Partners	493 9639

The North fleete.

Hamburgh	{ Ships Partners	1. 9.	Newcastle	{ Ships Partners	17. 314.
			Walcrich		

Walcrich	{ Ships Partners	1. 12.	Or, Yermouth. Yernmouth	{ Ships Partners	43. 1950.01 1075.	
Herculpoole	{ Ships Partners	5. 145.	Donwich	{ Ships Partners	6. 102.	
Hull	{ Ships Partners	16. 466.	Orford	{ Ships Partners	3. 62.	
Yorke	{ Ships Partners	1. 9.	Goford	{ Ships Partners	13. 303.	
Rauenfer	{ Ships Partners	1. 27.	Herwich	{ Ships Partners	14. 283.	
Woodhoufe	{ Ships Partners	1. 22.	Ipswich	{ Ships Partners	12 239.	
Stockhich	Strok hithe	{ Ships Partners	1. 10.	Mersey	{ Ships Partners	1. 6.
Barton	{ Ships Partners	3. 30.	New Brickelley. Brightling- sey	{ Ships Partners	5. 61.	
Swinefleete	{ Ships Partners	1. 11.	Colcheſter	{ Ships Partners	5. 90.	
Saltfleet	{ Ships Partners	2. 49.	Whitbanes	{ Ships Partners	1. 17.	
Grimesby	{ Ships Partners	11. 171.	Malden	{ Ships Partners	2. 32.	
Waynefleet	{ Ships Partners	2. 49.	Derwen	{ Ships Partners	1. 15.	
Wrangle	{ Ships Partners	1. 8.	Boston	{ Ships Partners	17. 361.	
Or, Linne.	#Lenne	{ Ships Partners	16. 382.	Swinhum- ber	{ Ships Partners	1. 32.
Blackney	{ Ships Partners	2. 38.	Barton	{ Ships Partners	5. 91.	
Scarbo- rough	{ Ships Partners	1. 19.	The Summe of the North fleete	{ Ships Partners	217. 4521.	
The ſumme totall of all the English fleete			{ Ships Partners	700. 14151.		

Estrangers their ships and mariners.

Bayon	{ Ships Partners	15. 439.	Flanders	{ Ships Partners	14. 133.
Spayne	{ Ships Partners	7. 184.	Gelderland	{ Ships Partners	1. 24.
Ireland	{ Ships Partners	1. 25.	The summe of all the Estrangers		{ Ships Partners
			38. 805.		

T
and
Willia
reigne
peter o

Ano
elw
vato

A No
Fla
bus omni
bus Fran
sterandun
cum Lanc
habuitque
humiliand
filio suo luti

I In the pe
I offered un
ritories whic
Edward sent
and demaund
his forces to
Henry duke o
upon them, a
with which p
his ponger for
Realme of En

The voy
lent
North



misle, ipsique rel
tum esse in hanc
bat tanto impetu
possent, neque ver
iat. Simillima his
Hyberniz, sic enim
maris quædam mir
quam ex conducto
uasi in Abyssum v
tur fluctuum violen
Quatuor voragin
unt, vnde & tam m
stant.

The summe of expences at well of wages, & piers, as for the expences of the kings houses, and for other gifts and rewards, shippers and other things necessary to the parties of France and Normandie, and before Calice, during the siege there, as it appeareth in the accounts of William Norwel keeper of the kings Wardrobe, from the 21. day of April in the 18 yeere of the reign of the said king, unto the fourte and twentieth day of November in the one and twentieth yeere of his reigne, is six hundred and xxvii. thousand li. s. iii. d.

A note out of Thomas Walsingham touching the huge Fleete of eleven hundred well furnished ships wherewith king Edward the third passed over unto Calais in the yeere 1359.

A Nno gratia 1359. Iohannes Rex Francie sub umbra pacis, & dolose obrulit Regi Anglie Flandriam, Picardiam, Aquitaniam, aliasque terras quas equitauerat & vassarat: pro quibus Franci contradixerunt. Unde motus Rex Anglie, celeriter se & suos præparavit ad transfretandum, ducens secum principem Wallie Edwardum suum primogenitum, ducent Henricum Lancastrie, & serè proceres omnes, quos comitabantur vel sequebatur pene mille currus, habuitque apud Sanwicum instructas optime vndecies centum naues, & cum hoc apparatu ad humiliandum Francorum fastum Franciam nauigavit, relicto domino Thoma de Woodstock filio suo iuniore admodum paruulo, Anglici regni custode, sub tutela tamen.

The same in English.

In the yeere of our Lord 1359. Iohn the French king craftily, and under pretence of peace, offered unto Edward the third king of England, Flanders, Picardie, Gascoigne, and other territories which he had spoiled and wasted: for the ratifying of which agreement, the foresaid king Edward sent his ambassadors into France, but the Frenchmen gainsaid them in all their articles and demands. Whereupon the king of England being provoked, speedily prepared himselfe and his forces to crosse the seas, carrying with him Edward Prince of Wales his heire apparant, and Henry duke of Lancaster and almost all his Nobles, with a thousand wagons and cartes attending upon them. And the said king had at Sandwich eleven hundred ships exceedingly well furnished: with which preparation he passed over the seas, to abate the Frenchmens arrogancie: leaving his younger sonne Thomas de Woodstocke, being very tender of age, as his vicegerent in the Realme of England; albeit not without a protectour, &c.

The voyage of Nicholas de Lynna a Franciscan Frier, and an excellent Mathematician of Oxford, to all the Regions situate vnder the North pole, in the yeere 1360. and in the raigne of Edward the 3. king of England.



Vod ad descriptionem partium Septentrionalium attinet, eam nos accipimus ex Itinerario Iacobi Cnoyen Buscoducensis, qui quædam ex rebus gestis Arthuri Britannici, maiorem autem partem & potiora, à Sacerdote quodam apud Regem Noruegie, An. Dom. 1364. didicit. Descenderat is ex illis quos Arthurus ad has habitandas insulas miserat, & referebat, An. 1360. Minoritan quendam Anglum Oxoniensem Mathematicum in eas insulas venisse, ipsique relictis ad vltiora arte Magica profectum descripsisse omnia, & Astrolabio dimensum esse in hanc subiectam formam ferè, ut ex Iacobo collegimus. Euripos illos quatuor dicebat tanto impetu ad interiorem voraginem rapi, ut naues semel ingressæ nullo vento retroagi possent, neque verò vnquam tantum ibi ventum esse, ut molæ frumentariæ circumagendæ sufficerent. Simillima his habet Giraldus Cambrensis (qui floruit, An. 1210.) in libro de mirabilibus Hyberniz, sic enim scribit. Non procul ab insulis Hebridibus, Islandia, &c. ex parte Boreali, est quædam miranda vorago, in quam à remotis partibus omnes vndique fluctus marinitantum ex condito fluunt, & recurrunt, qui in secreta naturæ penetralia se ibi transfundentes, fluctuum violentia, ut eam statim irreuocabiliter vis voracitatis absorbeat. Quatuor voragines huius Oceani, a quatuor oppositis mundi partibus Philosophi descriunt, vnde & tam marinos fluctus, quam & æolicos flatus casualiter peruenire nonnulli constat.

The words of Gerardus Mercator, in the foot of his general map, upon the description of the North parties.

The same in English.

Touching the description of the North partes, I have taken the same out of the voyage of James Cnoyen of Hartzeuan Buſke, which alleageth certaine conquests of Arthur king of Britaine: and the most part, and chiefest things among the rest, he learned of a certaine priest in the king of Nozwayes court, in the yeere 1364. This priest was descended from them which king Arthur had sent to inhabit these Islands, and he reported that in the yeere 1360, a certaine English frier, a Frenchman, and a Mathematician of Oxford, came into those Islands, who leaving them, and passing further by his Magickall Arte, described all those places that he sawe, and took the height of them with his Astrolabe, according to the forme that I (Gerard Mercator) have set downe in my mappe, and as I have taken it out of the aforesaid James Cnoyen. Hee sayd that those foure Indyaughes were drawne into an inward gulle of whirlepoole, with so great a force, that the ships which once entered therein, could by no meanes be drawen backe againe, and that there is neuer in those partes so much winde blowing, as might be sufficient to drive a Coyne mill.

Giraldus Cambrensis (who flozished in the yeere 1210, under king John) in his booke of the miracles of Ireland, hath certaine wordes altogether alike with these, videlicet:

Not farre from these Islands (namely the Orkneyes, Island &c.) towards the North there is a certaine wonderful whirlepoole of the sea, wherinto all the waues of the sea from farre haue their course and recourse, as it were without stoppe: which, there conueying themselves into the secret receptacles of nature, are swallowed up, as it were, into a bottomlesse pit, and if it chauce that any shippe doe passe this way, it is pulled, and drawen with such a violence of the waues, that it eschews without remedy, the force of the whirlepoole deuoureth the same.

The Philosophers describe foure Indyaughes of this Ocean sea, in the foure opposite quarters of the world, from whence many doe coniecture that as well the flowing of the sea, as the blasts of the winde, haue their first originall.

A Testimonie of the learned Mathematician master

*Iohn Dee, touching the foresaid voyage of
Nicholas De Linna.*



ANno 1360. (that is to wit, in the 34. yeere of the reigne of the triumphant king Edward the third) a frier of Oxford, being a good Astronomer, went in company with others to the most Northen Islands of the world, and there leaving his company together, hee traualled alone, and purposely described all the Northerne Islands, with the indrawing seas: and the record thereof at his returne he deliuered to the king of England. The name of which booke is Louentio Fortunata (aliter Fortunata) qui liber incipit a gradu 54. vsque ad polum. Which frier for sunshypp purposes after that did fure times passe from England thither, and home againe.

It is to be noted, that from the haven of Linne in Norfolk (whereof the foresaid French frier tooke his name) to Island, it is not aboue a fortnights sailing with an ordinarie winde, and hath bene of many yeeres a very common and vsuall trade: which further appeareth by the priuileges granted to the Fishermen of the towne of Blacknie in the said Countie of Norfolk, by king Edward the third, for their exemption and freedome from his ordinary seruaice, in respect of their trade to Island.

Louentio Fortunata,

*An. 3. & 4. & 31.
Mardi certij.*

The voyage of Henry Earle of Derby, after Duke of

Hereford, and lastly king of England, by the name of Henry

*the fourth, An. Dom. 1390. into Prussia and
Lettowe, against the infidels, recorded by Thomas of Walsingham,*

Aa. Dom. 1390.



et alius Vilius

Dominus Henricus Comes de Derby per idem tempus profectus est in Pruijs, vbi cum adiutorio marescalli dictae patriae, & cuiusdam Regis vocatus Wytoz deuicit exercitum Regis de Lettowe, captis quatuor ducibus, & multis peremptis, & amplius quam trecentis, de valentioribus exercitus super dicti pariter interemptis. Ciuitas quoque vocatur Will, in cuius castris Rex de Lettowe nomine Skirgalle confugerat, potenti virtute dicti Comitis maximam

maxi
cende
runt.
cater
tis per
de Pr
octo.

A bel
quibet
the sla
the say
whereof
sayd Earl
of his
walle, a
the comm
was our
weekes: b
annoyed,
conuered
Lifland ear



*I*pse vero mox
turbinibus p
Tandem post
transcursum, p
antiquis notu
de Plafhy, m
uentu suo.

At the same
neither the Lord
his intended expe
left in his absence
sent. For in him
scarce passed as pe
by and downe with
the paired euen of h
walle of Denma
to the castle of Tinn
was refreshed him
springing great top

maximè, atque suorum capta est. Namque qui fuerunt de familia sua primi murum ascenderant, & vexillum ejus super muros, ceteris vel torpentibus vel ignorantibus, posuerunt. Captaque sunt ibi vel occisa quatuor millia plebanorum, fratre Regis de Poleynt inter ceteros ibi perempto, qui aduersarius nostri fuit. Obsessumque fuit castrum dictæ Ciuitatis per quinque hebdomadas: Sed propter infirmitates, quibus vexabatur exercitus magistri octo. Et magister de Liffand duxit secum in suam patriam tria millia captiuorum,

The same in English.

About the same time L. Henry the Earle of Derby trauesed into Prussia, where, with the helpe of the Marshall of the same Province, and of a certaine king called Wytor, hee vanquished the armie of the king of Lettow, with the captiuitie of foure Lithuanian Dukes, and the slaughter of thre, besides moze then thre hundred of the principall common souldiers of the said armie which were slaine. The Citie also which is called Wil of Vilna, into the castle whereof the king of Lettow named Skirgalle fled for his sauegard, was, by the valour of the said Earle especially and of his followers, surprisid and taken. For certaine of the chiefe men of his familie, while others were slouthfull or at least ignorant of their intenc, skaling the walles, aduanced his colours thereupon. And there were taken and slaine foure thousand of the common souldiers, and amongst others was slaine the king of Poland his brother, who was our professed enemy. And the castle of the foresaid Citie was besieged for the space of five weekes: but by reason of the infirmities and inconueniences wherewith the whole armie was annoyed, the great masters of Prussia and of Liffand would not stay any longer. There were conuerted of the nation of Lettow eight persons vnto the Christian faith. And the master of Liffand carried home with him into his countrey thre thousand captiues.

The voyage of Thomas of Woodstocke Duke of Gloucester into Prussia, in the yeere 1391. written by Thomas Wallingham.

Eodem tempore dux Glouerniæ Dominus Thomas de Woodstock, multis morientibus, iter apparauit versùs le Pruys: quem non Londinensium gemitis, non communis vulgi moeror retinere poterant, quin proficisci vellet. Nam plebs communis tam Urbana quam rustica metuebant quòd eo absumebant. Siquidem in eo spes & solatium totius patriæ reposita videbantur. Ipse verò mox, in fides patriæ suæ transijt, illud aduersa agitata fortuna, nunc hanc nunc illam turbinibus procellosis circumfertur; & in tantum destituitur, vt de vita etiam desperaret. Tandem post Laciæ, post Norwagiam, post Scotticam barbariem non sine mortis pauore transcursam, peruenit Northumbriam, & ad castellum se contulit de Tinnemutha velut asyllum antiquis notum sibi: vbi per aliquot dies recreatus, iter assumpsit versùs manerium suum de Plasby, magnum apportans gaudium toti regno, tam de ejus euasione, quàm de aduentu suo.

The same in English.

About the same time the Duke of Gloucester Lord Thomas of Woodstock (the pongest sonne of Edward the third) to the great griefe of many, tooke his iourney towards Prussia: whom neither the Londoners mones nor yet the lamentation of the communalte could restraine from his intended expedition. For the common people both of the Citie and of the countrey feared lest in his absence some newe calamitie mighte happen; which they feared not while he was present. For in him the whole nation seemed to repose their hope and comfort. Howbeit hauing scarce passed as yet the bounds of his owne countrey, he was immediately by hard fortune tossed vp and downe with dangerous stormes and tempests, and was brought into such distress, that he despaired euen of his owne life. At length, hauing not without danger of death, sailed along the coastes of Denmarke, Norway, and Scotland, he returned into Northumberland, and went to the castle of Tinnemutha as vnto a place of refuge knownen of olde vnto him: where, after being refreshed himselfe a fewe dayes, hee tooke his iourney toward his Mannour of Plasby, bringing great ioy vnto the whole kingdome, as well in regard of his safetie as of his returne.

The verses of Geoffrey Chaucer in the knights Prologue, who living in the yeere 1402. (as hee writeth himselfe in his Epistle of Cupide) shewed that the English Knights after the losse of Acon, were wont in his time to trauaile into Prussia and Lettowe, and other heathen lands, to aduance the Christian faith against Infidels and miscreants, and to seeke honour by feats of armes.

The English Knights Prologue.



Knight there was, and that a worthy man,
that from the time that he first began
to ride out, he loued Cheualrie,
trouth, honour, freedom, and Curtesie.
full worthy was he in his lordys warre:

and thereto had hee ridden no man farre,
As well in Christendome as in Heatheneste,
and euer had honour for his worthynesse.

At Alisandre hee was, when it was wonne:
full oft time hee had the houre begon
abouen all nations in Pruce,

In Lettowe had hee ridden, and in Ruce,
no Christen man so oft of his degree:

In Granade at the sieg hee had hee
At Algezer: and ridden in Belmarye:
At Leyes was hee, and also at Satalye,
when they were wonne: and in the great see
at many a Noble armie had hee bee.

At moztall batailles had he bin fifteen,
And foughten for our faith at Tramisien,
in listes thykes, and aye slayne his foe:

This ilke worthy Knight had bin also,
sometime with the lord of Palachye
apenst another Heathen in Turkie.

At Algezer in
Granado.
Leyes in the
marilla.
Froylar, lib. 3.
cap. 40.

At Alisandre in the
mayne of Asia
merre Rhodie.
Tramisien in the
Barbarie.

At Leyes, in the
Palace.
Froylar lib. 3.
cap. 40.
Turkie.

The time
when Chaucer
wrote, is thus
mentioned in
the end of his
letter of Cupide.

Writen in the lustie moneth of May
in our Palace, where many a million
of louers true haue habitation,
The yeere of grace ioyfull and iocund,
a thousand, foure hundred and serond.

**The original, proceedings and successe of the Northren
domestical and forren trades and traffiques of this Isle of**

*Britain from the time of Nero the Emperour, who deceased in the
yeere of our Lord 70. vnder the Romans, Britons, Saxons, and
Danes, till the conquest: and from the conquest, vntill
this present time, gathered out of the most
authenticall histories and records
of this nation.*

A testimonie out of the fourteenth Booke of the Annales

*of Cornelius Tacitus, proouing London to haue bene a famous Mart
Towne in the reigne of Nero the Emperour, which died in the yeere of
Christ 70.*



Suetonius mira constantia medios inter hostes Londinium perrexit, cognomento
quidem coloniz non insignis, sed copia negociatorum & comeatu maxime celebre.

The same in English.

But Suetonius with wonderfull constancie passed through the midst of his enemies,
vnto London, which though it were not honoured with the name and title of a
Romane

Ca
Rom
of pe

& ipa n

In the
lited two
Saxons, u
sea, whos
riuer, wh
by land.



fomento infla
trinque nauig
mittendos. E
eum & Offam
rum, & patrici
lutein, Primo
sinceritate, qu
pro amore De
eum pace sine
sectantes, inuen
volumus vt ex
loco iniusta affli
mus iustitiam fi

In the meane
to be his friend
and promote his
stomachs on both
Epistle of Albinu
I know not (qu
triall, some discop

ogue, who
File of Capide)
ont in his time to
uance the Chri-
seats of armes.

Car. Mag. Offa. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

125

Romane Colonie; yet was it most famous for multitude of Marchantes and concourse of people.

A testimonie out of Venerable Beda (which died in the yeere of our Lord 734.) proving London to have bene a Citie of great traffike and Marchandize not long after the beginning of the Saxons reigne.

Beda Ecclesi-
asticus histor-
icus Gentis Anglo-
rum lib. 3. cap. 3.



Nno Dominice incarnationis sexcentesimo quarto Augustinus Britannia-
rum Archiepiscopus ordinavit duos Episcopos, Mellicum videlicet & Iustum:
Mellicum quidem ad predicandum provincie Orientalium Saxonum, qui
Tamesi fluvio dirimuntur à Cantia, & ipsi Orientali Mari contigui, qui
Metropolis Londonia Ciuitas est, super ripam prefati fluminis posita,
& ipsa multorum eimporium populorum, terra marique venientium.

The same in English.

In the yeere of the incarnation of Christ 604. Augustine Archbishop of Britaine consecra-
ted two Bishops, to wit Mellicus and Iustus. He appoynted Mellicus to preach to the East
Saxons, which are diuided from Kent by the riuer of Thames, and border upon the Easterne
sea, whose chiefe and Metropolitane Citie is London, seated vpon the banke of the aforesayd
riuer, which is also a Parte Towne of many nations, which repayze thither by sea and
by land.

The league betweene Carolus Magnus and Offa King of
Mercia concerning safe trade of the English Marchants
in all the Emperours Dominion. This Offa
died in the yeere of our Lord
795.



Offa interea Carolum magnum Regem Francorum frequentibus legationi-
bus amicum parauit: quamvis non facile quod suis artibus conduceret in Ca-
roli animo inuenerit. Discordarunt antea, adeo vt magnis motibus vtrobi-
que concurrentibus, etiam negociatorum commeatus prohiberentur. Est Epi-
stola Alkini huiusce rei index, cuius partem hic apponam.

Malmbur. de
gestis Regum
Anglorum lib. 5.
cap. 4.

Nescio quid de nobis venturum sit. Aliquid enim dissentionis diabolico
fomento inflammante, nuper inter Regem Carolum & Regem Offam exortum est: ita vt v-
trinque navigatio interdicta negociantibus cesseret. Sunt qui dicant nos pro pace in illas partes
mittendos. Et nonnullis interpositis, Nunc, inquit, ex verbis Caroli fœdus firmum inter
eum & Offam compactum subijciam. Carolus gratia Dei Rex Francorum, & Longobardo-
rum, & patricius Romanorum, viro venerando & fratri charissimo Offæ Regi Merciorum sa-
lute, Primo gratias agimus omnipotenti deo, de salute animarum, de Catholice fidei
sinceritate, quam in vestris laudabiliter paginis reperimus exaratam. De peregrinis vero qui
pro amore Dei, & salute animarum suarum beatorum Apostolorum limina desiderant adire,
cum pace sine omni perturbatione vadant. Sed si aliqui, non religioni seruientes, sed lucra
sectantes, inueniantur inter eos, locis opportunis statuta soluant telonia. Negociatores quoque
volumus vt ex mandato nostro patrocinium habeant in Regno nostro legitime. Et si aliquo
loco iniusta affligantur oppressione, reclamant ad nos vel nostros iudices, & plenam videbi-
mus iustitiam fieri.

Navigatio in-
terdicta.

Negociatorum
Anglicanorum
patrocinium.

The same in English.

In the meane season Offa by often legacies solicited Charles le maigne the king of France,
to be his friend: albeit he could not easily finde king Charles any whie enclined to further
and promote his trafficke attempts. Their mindes were so alienated before, that, bearing heavy
stomachs on both parts, even the mutuall traffique of their Marchantes was prohibited. The
Epistle of Alkinus is a sufficient testimony of this matter: part whereof I will here put downe. The
I know not (quoth he) what will become of vs. For there is of late, by the instigation of the
prill, some discorde and variance sprung up betweene king Charles and king Offa: insomuch
that

Traffique pro-
hibited.

Marriage
forbidden.

A league be-
tweene Carol.
Mag. and K. Offa.

Protection of
the English
Marchants.

that sailing to and fro is forbidden vnto the Marchants of both their dominions. Some say that we are to be sent, for the obtaining of a peace, into those partes. And againe, after a few lines, Nowe (quoth he) out of Charles his owne words, I will make report of the league concluded betwene him and Offa.

Charles by the grace of God king of the Franks and Lombards and Senatur of the Romanes, vnto the ruerend and his most reare brother Offa king of the Mercians sendeth greeting. If it we doe tender vnto almighty God most humble thanks for the saluation of soules, and the sweetie of the Catholique faith, which we, to your great commendation, haue found signified in your letters. As touching those pilgrimes, who for the loue of God and their owne soules health, are desirous to resort vnto the Churches of the holy Apostles, let them goe in peace without all disturbance. But if any be found amongst them not honouring religion, but following their owne gaine, they are to pay their ordinarie customes at places conuenient. It is our pleasure also and commendement, that your marchants shall haue lawfull patronage and protection in our dominions. Who, if in any place they chance to be afflicted with any iniust oppression, let them make their supplication vnto vs, or vnto our Iudges, and we will see iustice executed to the full.

An ancient testimonie translated out of the olde Saxon lawes, containing among other things the advancement of Marchants for their thrise croising the wide leas, set downe by the learned Gentleman Master William Lambert pagina 500. of his perambulation of Kent.

It was sometime in English lawes, that the people and the lawes were in reputation: and then were the wisest of the people worship-worthy, euery one after his degree: Earle, and Thirle, Thein, and vnder-Thein. And if a thirle thriued so, that hee had fully five hides of his owne land, a Church and a Kir-hin, a Belhouse, and a gate, a scate, and a seuerall office in the Kings hall, then was he thenceforth the Theins right worthy. And if a Thein so thriued, that he serued the king, and on his message rid in his household, if he then had a Thein that followed him, the which to the kings iourney five hides had, and in the kings scate his Lord serued, and thirle with his errand had gone to the king, he might afterward with his sozroth his lords part play at any great neede. And if a Thein did thirle so, that he became an Earle; then was he afterward an Earles right worthy. And if a Marchant so thriued, that he passed thrise ouer the wide seas, of his owne craft, he was thenceforth a Theins right worthy. And if a scholar so prospered thow learning that he degree had, and serued Christ, he was then afterward of dignitie and peace so much worthy, as thereunto belonged: vntill he forfeited so, that he the vse of his degree vntill he might.

William of
Malmsh. lib. 2.
cap. 2. de gestis
Regum Anglo-
rum.

A testimonie of certaine priuiledges obtained for the English and Danish Marchants of Conradus the Emperour and Iohn the Bishop of Rome by Canutus the King of England in his iourney to Rome, extracted out of a letter of his written vnto the Cleargie of England.



It vobis notum quia magna congregatio nobilium in ipsa solemnitate Pascali, Romæ cum Domino Papa Ioanne, & imperatore Conrado erat, scilicet omnes principes gentium a monte Gargano, vsque ad istum proximum Mare: qui omnes me & honorifice susceperunt, & magnificis donis honorauerunt. Maxime autem ab imperatore donis varijs & muneribus pretiosis honoratus sum, tam in vasis aureis & argenteis, quam in pallijs & vestibus valde pretiosis. Locutus sum igitur cum ipso imperatore, & Domino Papa, & principibus qui ibi erant, de necessitatibus totius populi mei, tam Angli quam Dani, vt eis concederetur lex æquior, & pacificior in via Romæ adeundi, & ne tot clausuris per viam arcerentur, & propter iniustum telonij fatigaretur. Annuitque postulatis Imperator, & Rodolphus Rex, qui maxime ipsarum clausurarum dominatur, cunctique principes edictis firmarunt, vt homines mei tam Mercatores, quam alij orandi gratia viatores, absque omni anguria clausurarum & teloneariorum, cum firma pace Romam eant & redeant.

The

In the same ballad, which is a common Ireland, Norway, and visited with the wealth and commod



fluuijs famo

Not farre
the trafficke of
whereupon to
land, by reason
lesse gaine vnto
place of the Re-
of Thames: &
one and the selfe

The
tr.
gel

N eadem
bernia &
genitalib

Some say that
after a few lines,
league concluded

atour of the Ro-
sendeth greeting.
of soules, and the
found signified in
one soules health.
peace without all
owing their owne
pleasure also, and
on in our domini-
a, let them make
to the full.

xon lawes,
for their strife
er William Lani-

utation: and then
aile, and Churle,
idors of his owne
rice in the Kings
ed, that he serued
ollowed him, the
d, and thyle with
part play at any
he afterward an
the wide seas, of
so prospered tho-
gnitie and weare
of his degree vte

the English
in the Bishop of
, extracted out

ernitate Pascali,
erat, scilicet om-
roximum Mare:
nis honorauere,
ciosus honoratus
is valde pretiosis
olerant, de ne-
quior, & pax se-
niustum telonei
ne ipsarum clau-
am Mercatores,
raiorum, cum

The

Traff.to Lond.& Brist.K.Steph. Traffiques, and Discou. 127

The same in English

You are to vnderstand, that at the feast of Easter, there was a grent company of Nobles with nations from mount Garganus vnto the West Decan sea. Also all of them honourably inter-
ceded me, and welcomed mee with rich and magnificent gifts: but especially the Emperour be-
stowed vnto vs costly presents and rewards vpon mee, both in vessels of golde and silver, and also
in cloakes and garments of great value. Therefore I conferred with the Emperour himselfe
and the Pope, and with the other Princes who were there present, concerning the necesseties of
all my subiectes both Englishmen and Danes; that a moze fauourable lawe & secure peace in their
way to Rome might bee graunted vnto them, and that they might not bee hindered by so many
stops & impediments in their Iourney, and wearied by reason of iniust exactions. And the Empe-
rour condescended vnto my request, and king Rodolphus also, who hath greatest authority ouer
the foresaid stops and streights, and all the other princes confirmed by their Edicts, that my sub-
iects, as well Marchantes, as others who trauailed for deuotions sake, should without all hinde-
rance and restraint of the foresaid stops and custumers, goe vnto Rome in peace, and returne
from thence in safetie.

Garganus a
mountaine of
Apulia in Italia.

The flourishing state of Marchandise in the Citie of London in the dayes of Willielmus Malmesburiensis, which died in the yeere 1142. in the reigne of K. Stephen.



Aud longe a Rosa quasi viginti quinque milliarijs est Londonia Ciuitas no-
bilis, opima ciuium diuitijs, conspirata negociatorum ex omni tetra, &
maxime ex Germania venientium, commercijs. Vnde fit vt cum vbique in
Anglia caritas victualium pro sterili prouentu messium sit, ibi necessaria di-
strahantur & emanent minore, quam alibi, vel vendentium compendio, vel
emementium dispendio. Peregrinas inuehit merces Ciuitatis suisibus Tamesia
fluuius famosus, qui citra urbem ad 80. milliana fonticulo fufus, vltra plus 70. nomen profert.

Guiliel. Malmesb.
de gestis pont.
Anglorum lib. 2.

The same in English.

Not farre from Rochester, about the distance of foue and twenty miles, standeth the Noble
Citie of London, abounding with the riches of the inhabitants, and being frequented with
the traffique of Marchantes resorteing thither out of all nations, and especially out of Germanie,
whereupon it cometh to passe, that when any generall dearth of victuals falleth out in En-
gland, by reason of the scarcitie of coyne, things necessary may there be prouided and bought with
lesse gaine vnto the sellers, and with lesse hinderance and losse vnto the buyers, then in any other
place of the Realme. Our landish wares are conueighed into the same Citie by the famous riuer
of Thames: which since springing out of a fontaine 80. miles beyond the Citie, is called by
one and the selfe same name, 70. miles beneath it.

Germania.

The aforesaid William of Malmesburie writeth of traffike in his time to Bristowe in his fourth booke de gestis pontificum Anglorum, after this maner.



N eadem valle est vicus celeberrimus Bristow nomine, in quo est nauium portus ab Hi-
bernia & Norwegia & ceteris transmarinis terris venientium receptaculum, ne scilicet
genitalibus diuitijs tam fortunata regio peregrinarum opum fraudetur commercio.

The same in English.

In the same valley stands the famous Towne of Bristow, with an Haven belonging therunto,
which is a commodious and safe receptacle for all ships directing their course for the same, from
Ireland, Norway, and other occidentall and frozen countreys: namely that a region so fortunate
and blessed with the riches that nature hath vouchsafed thereupon should not bee destitute of the
wealth and commodities of other lands.

Norway.

The league betweene Henry the second and Fredericke Barbarossa Emperour of Germanie, wherein is mention of friendly traffike betweene the Marchants of the Empire and England, confirmed in the yeere of our Lord 1157. recorded in the first Booke and leuenteenth Chapter of Radeuicus Canonicus Frisingensis, being an appendix to Otto Frisingensis.



Bidem tunc affuere etiam Henrici Regis Angliæ missi, varia & preciosa donaria multo lepore verborum adornata præstantes. Inter quæ papilionem vnum quantitate maximum, qualitate optimum perspeximus. Cuius si quantitate requiris, non nisi machinis & instrumentorum genere & adminiculo leuari poterat: si qualitatem, nec materia nec opere ipsum putem aliquando ab aliquo huiusce apparatus superatum iri. Literas quoque mellito sermone plenas pariter direxerat, quarum hic tenor fuit. Præcordiali amico suo, Frederico Dei gratia Romanorum imperatori inuictissimo, Henricus Rex Angliæ, dux Normanniæ, & Aquitaniæ, & Comes Andegauensis, salutem, & veræ dilectionis concordiam. Excellentiæ vestræ quantas possumus referimus grates, dominantium optime, quod nos nuncijs vestris visitare, salutare literis, muneribus præuenire, & quod his charius amplectimur, pacis & amoris inuicem dignatus estis fœdera iachare. Exultauimus, & quodammodo animum nobis crescere, & in maius sensimus euehi dum vestra promissio, in qua nobis spem dedistis, in disponendis Regni nostri negocijs, alacriores nos reddidit, & promptiores. Exultauimus inquam, & tota mente magnificentiæ vestræ assurreximus, id vobis in sincero cordis affectu respondentes, quod quicquid ad honorem vestrum spectare nouerimus, pro posse nostro effectui mancipare parati sumus, Regnum nostrum, & quicquid vbique nostræ subijcitur ditioni vobis exponimus & vestræ committimus potestati, vt ad vestrum nutum omnia disponantur, & in omnibus vestri fiat voluntas imperij. Sit igitur inter nos & populos nostros dilectionis & pacis vnitas indiuisa, commercia tuta: Ita tamen vt vobis, qui dignitate præminetis, imperandi cedat authoritas, nobis non deerit voluntas obsequendi. Et sicut vestræ Serenitatis memoriam vestrorum excitat in nobis munus largitio, sic vos nostri quoque reminisci præparamus, mittentes quæ pulchriora penes nos erant, & vobis magis placitura. Attendite itaque dantis affectum, non data, & eo animo quo dantur accipite. De manu beati Iacobi, super qua nobis scripsistis, in ore magistri Herberti & Guilielmi Clerici nostri verbū posuimus. Teste Thoma Cancellario apud Norrbanton.

Commercia inter
Germanos &
Anglos,

The same in English.

There were present also the same time, the messengers of Henry king of England presenting diuers rich and precious gifts, and that with great learning & eloquence of speech. Amongst the which we saw a pavilion, most large in quantity, & most excellent in quality. For if you desire to know the quantitie thereof, it could not be erected without engines and a kinde of instruments, and maine force: if the qualitie, I thinke there was neuer any furniture of the same kinde, that surpassed the same either in stiffe or workmanship. The said king directed his letters also, full of sugred speeches, the tenour whereof was this that followeth.

To his entirely beloued friend Frederick by the grace of God Emperour of the Romanes most inuincible, Henry king of England, duke of Normandie and Aquitaine, Earle of Anjou wiseth health and concord of sincere amitie. We doe render vnto your highnes (most renowned and peerelesse Prince) exceeding great thanks for that you haue so graciously vouchsafed by your messengers to visite vs, in your letters to salute vs, with your gifts to present vs, and (which wee doe moze highly esteeme of then all the rest) to beginne a league of peace and friendship betweene vs. We reioyce, and in a manner sensibly fele our selues to bee greatly emboldened, and our courage to encrease, whilst your promise, whereby you put vs in good comfort, did make vs moze cheerefull and resolute, in managing the affaires of our kingdom. We reioyce (I say) & in our secret cogitations did humble obseance vnto your Maiestie, giuing you at this time to vnderstand feele the sincere & vnfeined affection of our heart, that whatsoever we shal know to tend vnto your honour, we are, to our power most ready to put in practise. Our kingdom, and whatsoeuer is vnder our iurisdiction we doe offer vnto you, and commit the same vnto your highnesse, that all matters may be disposed according to your direction, and that your pleasure may in all things be fulfilled. Let there be therefore betweene our selues and our subiects, an indiuisible vnitie of friendship and peace, and safe trade of Marchandise: yet so, as that vnto you (who excell in dignitie) authoritie in commanding may bee ascribed, and diligence in obeying shall not want in vs. And as the liberalitie of your rewards doeth often put vs in remembrance of your Maiestie, euen so in like maner sending vnto your highnesse the most rare things

K
ching
heart
there
minds
Co
M.1



eos ire &
fra. Teste
In eade
liuo de So
Vicecomi
ton fire, V

Iohn by t
vnderstan
conduct to p
be vouchsaf
these places
to be publish
gac & came, v
said Balliui

The same
of the Citie of
the therise of
Cinque ports
of Cornwal

Liter



dimento terram
Dum ramen litter
mus. Interim auct
nostra eant, venia
facere valeamus,
et de naui vestra &
quem de statu nost
pso apud Lamhieh

Eodem mo

ericke Barba-
ndly traffike be-
the yeere of our
ter of Radeuicus

a & preciosa do-
que papilionem
imus. Cuius si
genere & admi-
psum putem a-
sermone plenas
gratia Romano-
nitantiz & Comes
x quantas possu-
salutare literis,
nuicem dignatus
ere, & in maius
ndis Regni nostri
ta mente magni-
quod quicquid
eos ire & redire sine impedimento per debitas & rectas & solitas consuetudines in Balliua ve-
stra. Telle Galfredo filio Petri comite Essexie apud Kinefard 5. die Aprilis.
In eadem forma scribitur vicecomiti Sudsex, Maiori & communitati Ciuitatis Winton, Bal-
liuo de Southampton, Balliui de Lenne, Balliui Kent, Vicecomiti Norfolkie & Suffolcie,
Vicecomiti dorset & Sommerfet, Baronibus de quinque portubus, Vicecomiti de Southamp-
ton fire, Vicecomiti de Herteford & Essex, Vicecomiti Cornubie & Deuon.

gland presenting
speech. Amongst
o, if you desire to
struments, and
e kinde, that sur-
tters also, full of

of the Romanes
Carle of Anjou
es (most renown-
ously bouchsain
s to preuent vs,
league of peace
lues to bee great-
rely you put be-
nres of our king-
to your sparcle,
heart, that wher-
to put in practice,
and commit the
direction, and the
ur selues and our
mbize: petio, as
bed, and diligencie
th often put vs in
esse the most rare
things

K. Joh. safe cond. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

129

things in our custodie, and which we thought should be most acceptable vnto you, wee doe most
heartily wish that your selfe also would not altogether bee vniuersall of vs. Haue respect
therefore not vnto the gifts, but vnto the affection of the giuer, and accept of them with that
minde, wherewith they are offered vnto you.

Concerning the hand of S. James, about which you wrote vnto vs, we haue sent you word by
M. Herbert, and by William the Clerke. Witness Thomas our Chancelour at Northanton.

A generall safe conduct graunted to all forreine Marchants by
king Iohn in the first yeere of his reigne, as appeareth in the Records of the 1199.
Tower, Anno 1. Regis Ioannis.



Oannes Dei gratia & c. Maiori & Communitati Londinenſi ſalutem, Sciatis
voluntatem eſſe noſtram, quod omnes Mercatores de quocunq; fuerint terra
ſaluam habeant conductum ire & redire cum mercibus ſuis in Angliam, Vo-
lumus etiam quod eandem habeant pacem in Anglia, quam Mercatores de
Anglia habent in terris illis vnde fuerunt egreſſi. Et ideo vobis præcipimus,
quod hoc faciatis denunciat in Balliua veſtra, & firmiter teneri; pernuttentes
eos ire & redire ſine impedimento per debitas & rectas & ſolitas conſuetudines in Balliua ve-
ſtra. Teſte Galfredo filio Petri comite Eſſexie apud Kinefard 5. die Aprilis.
In eadem forma ſcribitur vicecomiti Sudſex, Maiori & communitati Ciuitatis Winton, Bal-
liuo de Southampton, Balliui de Lenne, Balliui Kent, Vicecomiti Norfolkie & Suffolcie,
Vicecomiti dorset & Sommerfet, Baronibus de quinque portubus, Vicecomiti de Southamp-
ton fire, Vicecomiti de Herteford & Eſſex, Vicecomiti Cornubie & Deuon.

Solite me-
torum conſue-
tudines.

The same in English

Iohn by the grace of God &c. to the Maior and communaltie of London, greeting. You are to
vnderſtand, that it is our pleaſure, that all Marchants of what nation ſoeuer, ſhall haue ſafe
conduct to paſſe and repaſſe with their Marchandise into England. It is our will alſo, that they
be bouchſafed the ſame ſauour in England, which is graunted vnto the Engliſh Marchants in
theſe places from whence they come. And therefore we giue you in charge, that you cauſe this
to be publiſhed, and proclaimed in your bailiwick, & firmitely to be obſerued, permitting them to
goe & come, without impediment, according to the due, right and ancient cuſtomes vſed in your
ſaid Bailiwick. Witness Geofrey Fitz-Peter Carle of Eſſer at Kinefard the 5. day of April.

The ancient
cuſtomes of
Marchantes.

The ſame ſorme of writing was ſent to the ſheriffe of Sudſex, to the Maior and communaltie
of the Citie of Wincheſter, to the Bailly of Southampton, the Bailly Lenne, the Bailly of Kent,
the ſheriffe of Norfolk and Suffolke, the ſheriffe of Dorset and Sommerfet, the Barons of the
Cinque-ports, the ſheriffe of Southamptonſhire, the ſheriffe of Hertford and Eſſex, the ſheriffe
of Cornewal and Deuon,

Literæ regis Henrici tertij ad Haquinum Regem Norwegiz de pacis ſadere & intercuſu mercandiſandi | Anno 1. Henrici 3.

1216.



Enricus Dei gratia & c. Haquino eadem gratia Regi Norwegiz ſalutem, Im-
menſas nobilitati veſtræ reſerimus gratiarum actiones de his quæ per literas
veſtras & prudentem virum Abbatem de Liſa, nobis ſignificatiſ, volentes &
deſiderantes ſœdus pacis & dilectionis libenter nobiſcum inire, & nobiſcum
conſederari. Bene autem placet & placebit nobis quod terræ noſtræ cômunes
ſine, & Mercatores & homines qui ſunt de poteſtate veſtra libere & ſine impe-
dimento terram noſtram adire poſſint, & homines & Mercatores noſtri ſimiliter terrâ veſtram.
Dum ramen literas veſtras parentes ſuper hoc nobis deſtinetis, & nos vobis noſtras tranſmitte-
mus. Interim autem bene volumus & concedimus, quod Mercatores tam de terra veſtra quàm
noſtra eant, veniant, & recedant per terras noſtras. Et ſi quid veſtræ ſederit voluntati, quod
facere valeamus, id ſecurè nobis ſignificetis. Detinuimus autem adhuc Abbatem prædictum,
de naui veſtra & rebus in ea contentis pro poſſe noſtro reſtitutionem fieri ſaceremus; per
quem de ſtatu noſtro & Regni noſtri vos certiſicare curabimus, & quàm citius &c. Teſte me
ſo apud Lambie decimo die Octobris.

Eodem modo ſcribitur S. Duci Norwegiz ibidem & eodem die.

The

The letters of King Henry the third vnto Haquinus
King of Norway concerning a treatie of peace
and mutuall traffique of marchan-
dize, &c,

HENRY by the grace of God, &c. vnto Haquinus by the same grace King of Norway, sendeth greeting. Wee render vnto your highnesse vspeakable thanks for those things which by your letters, and by your discrete subiect the Abbat of Lifa, you haue signified vnto vs, and also for that you are right willing and desirous to begin and to conclude betwene vs both a league of peace and amitie. And wee for our part both now are, and hereafter shalbe well contented, that both our lands be common, to the ende that the Marchants and people of your dominions may freely and without impediment resorte vnto our land, and our people and Marchants may likewise haue recourse vnto your territories. Whereby, that for the confirmation of this matter, you send vnto vs your letters patents, and wee will send ours also vnto you. Howbeit in the meane while wee doe will and freely graunt, that the Marchants both of our and your lands, may goe, come, and returne to and from both our Dominions. And if there be ought in your minde, whereby we might stand you in any stead, you may boldly signifie the same vnto vs. Wee haue as yet deterined the foresaid Abbat, that wee might, to our abillitie, cause restitution to be made for your ship, and for the things therein contained: by whome wee will certifie you of our owne estate, and of the estate of our kingdome so soone, &c. Witnessse our selfe at Lambich the tenth of October.

Another letter in the same forme and to the same effect was there and then sent vnto
S. Duke of Norway.

Mandatum pro Coga Regis Norwegia Anno 13.
Henrici 3.

Mandatum est omnibus Balliis portuum in quos ventura est Coga de Norwegia, in qua venerint in Angliam milites Regis Norwegia & Mercatores Saxonie, quod cum prædictam Cogam in portus suos venire contigerit, saluo permittant ipsam Cogam in portubus suis morari, quamdiu necesse habuerit, & libere sine impedimento inde recedere quando voluerint. Teste Rege.

The same in English.

A Mandate for the King of Norway his Ship
called the Cog.

WEE will and commaund all balliues of Portes, at the which the Cog of Norway (wherein certaine of the king of Norwaie his souldiers, and certaine Marchants of Saxonie are comming for England) shall touch, that, when the foresaid Cog shall chaunce to arrive at any of their Hauens, they doe permit the said Cog safely to remaine in their said Hauens so long as neede shall require, and without impediment also freely to depart thence, whensoever the gouernours of the sayd ship shall thinke it expedient. Witnessse the King.

Carta pro Mercatoribus de Colonia anno 20. Hen-

rici 3. Confirmata per Regem Edwardum primum

8. Iulij Anno Regni 18, prout extat in rotulo cartarum de Anno 18.

Regis Edwardi
primi.

Antiqua constructio Gildhallæ Colonien-
sis Londoni.

Rex Archiepiscopis &c. salutem. Sciatis nos quietos clamasse pro nobis & hzredibus nostris dilectos nostros, Cives de Colonia, & mercandisam suam de illis duobus solidis, quos solebant dare de Gildhalla sua London, & de omnibus alijs

deferent, vel suis nihil capiat vendant & negotiis mandamus firmam cum rebus ratis, aut ab alij tantiam prædictas nostras fieri ferentur bene & fide apud Westmonasterium litera duplicata est

Ch
alij co
stram
villa L
precep
liberta
etum e
rarijs, C
Galfrid
manum
O&auo

The K
med,
marchandiz
Gildhall at
in London,
throughout
and firmly
the liberties
as is aforesaid
Gilbert Bass
fer, Barthol
reuerend Cath
November, 13

Antiqua constructio Gildhallæ Colonien-
sis Londoni.

orway, sendeth
things which
granted unto us,
whereas both a
shall be well con-
ple of your vo-
eople and Mar-
the confirmation
s also unto you.
both of our and
And if there be
signific the same
abillie, cause
where we will
Witness our

then sent unto

13.

e Norwegia, in
oniz, quod cum
e ipsam Cogom
no inde recedere

ip

Cog of Norway
aine Marchants
Cog shall chame
aine in their lab
to depart thence,
the King.

Hen-

nobis & hære-
am fuisse de illis
& de omnibus
alijs

Charter Hen. 3. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

131

alijs consuetudinibus & demandis, quæ pertinent ad nos in London, & per totam terram no-
stram; & quod liberè possunt ire ad serias, per totam terram nostram & emere & vendere in
villa London & alibi, salva libertate Ciuitatis nostræ London. Quare volumus; & firmiter
precipimus pro nobis & hæredibus nostris, quod prædicti ciues de Colonia prænominatas
libertates & liberas consuetudines habeant per totam terram nostram Angliæ sicut prædi-
ctum est. His testibus, venerabili patre Waltero Cacerleolensi Episcopo, Willielmo de Fe-
rarijs, Gilberto Basset, Waltero de Bello campo, Hugone Dispenser, Waltero Marefcallo,
manum venerabilis patris Radulphi Cisterciensis Episcopi, Cancellarij nostri apud Dauinre
Octauo die Nouembris, Anno Regni nostri vicelimo.

The same in English
A Charter graunted for the behalfe of the Marchants
of Colen in the twentieth yeere of Henry the third, confir-
med by King Edward the first, as it is extant in the
roule of Charters, in the eighteenth
yeere of King Edward
the first.

The King unto Archbishops &c. greeting. Be it knowen unto you, that we haue quite clai-
med, and for vs and our heires released our welbeloued the Citizens of Colen and their
merchandise, from the payment of those two shillings which they were wont to pay out of their
Gildhall at London, and from all other customes and demaunds, which pertaine unto vs, either
in London, or in any other place of our Dominions: and that they may safely resorte vnto Fawers
throughout our whole Kingdome, and buy and sell in the Citie of London. Therefore we will
and firmly command for vs and our heires, that the foreraymed Marchants of Colen may enioy
the liberties and free priuiledges aboue-mentioned, throughout our whole Kingdome of England
as is aforesaid. Witnesses, the reuerend father Walter Bishop of Carlil, William de Ferarijs,
Gilbert Basset, Walter de Beau-champ, Hugh Dispenser, Walter Marefcal, Geofrie Dispens-
ser, Bartholomew Peach, Bartholomew de Saukeuill and others. Given by the hand of the
reuerend father Ralph Bishop of Chichester and our Chauncellour at Dauinre, the eight day of
Nouember, in the twentieth yeere of our reigne.

The ancient
custome of the
Colenors Gild-
hall in London.

Carta Lubecensibus ad septennium concessa.

Anno 41. Henrici 3.



Henricus dei gracia Rex Angliæ, dominus Hiberniæ, dux Normanniæ, Aquitaniæ, & Comes Andegauiz, omnibus Balliuis suis salutem. Sciatis nos
ad instantiam dilecti & fidelis fratris nostri Ricardi Comes Cornubiæ in Re-
gem Romanorum electi, suscepisse in protectionem & defensionem no-
stram & saluum & securum conductum nostrum Burgenfes de Lubek in
Alemania cum omnibus rebus & mercandisijs quas in Regnum nostrum
deferunt, vel facient deferri. Et eis concessimus, quod de omnibus rebus & mercandisijs
suis nihil capiat ad opus nostrum vel alterius contra voluntatem eorundem; sed libere
vendant & negociantur inde in Regno prædicto, prout sibi viderint expedire. Et ideo
vobis mandamus, quod dictis Burgenfisibus vel eorum nuncijs in veniendo in terram no-
stram cum rebus & mercandisijs suis, ibidem morando, & inde recedendo, nullum infe-
rant, aut ab alijs inferri permittatis impedimentum aut grauamen. Nec eos contra quie-
tiam prædictam vexetis, aut ab alijs vexari permittatis. In cuius rei testimonium has lite-
ras nostras fieri fecimus patentes per septennium durantes: Dum tamen iidem Burgenfes in-
apud Westmonasterium vndecimo die Maij Anno Regni nostri quadragesimo primo. Hæc
litera duplicata est, pro Burgenfisibus & mercatoribus Dacia, Brunswig, & Lubek.

Ricardus Comes
Cornubiæ Rex
Romanorum.

Carta condita
nalis.

The

The same in English.

The charter of Lubek granted for seven yeeres, obtained
in the one and fortieth yeere of Henry the third.

Henry by the grace of God King of England, Lord of Ireland, Duke of Normandie and Aquitaine, and Earle of Anjou, to all his Bailiffs sendeth greeting. Know ye that at the instant request of our welbeloued and trusty brother Richard Earle of Cornewal being of late elected king of the Romanes, we haue receiued vnder our protection and defence, and vnder our safe and secure conduct, the citizens of Lubek in Alemain, with all their goods and wares, which they shall bring or cause to be brought into our kingdome. We haue also granted vnto them, that of all their goods and merchandize, nothing shal be seized vnto the vse of our selues, or of any other without their owne consent, but that they may freely sell and exercise traffike therewith, according as they shall thinke expedient. And therefore we straightly command you, that neither your selues do offer, nor that you permit any other to offer any impediment or molestation vnto the said Burghers or vnto their messengers, either at their coming into our land, with their goods and merchandize, in the time of their abode there, or at their departure from thence, and that yee neither molest them your selues, nor yet suffer them by others to be molested, contrary to the aforesaid Charter. In testimonie whereof, we haue caused these our Letters to be made Patents, during the space of seven yeeres next following.

Provided, that the said Burghers doe in the meane time behaue themselves well and faithfully towards our foresaid elected brother. Witnesse our selues at Westminster the eleuenth day of March, in the one and fortieth yeere of our reigne,

This Letter was doubled, namely for the Burghers, and the Marchants of Denmarke, of Brunswig, and of Lubecke.

Carta pro Mercatoribus Alemannia, qui habent domum

in London, quæ Gildhalla Teutonicorum vulgariter nuncupatur Anno 44. Henrici tertij, & Anno primo & 29. Edwardi primi renouata & confirmata.



Ad instantiam Serenissimi principis Richardi Romanorum Regis charissimi fratris nostri concedimus mercatoribus Alemannia, illis videlicet qui habent domum in Ciuitate nostra London, quæ Gildhalla Teutonicorum vulgariter nuncupatur, quod eos vniuersos manere nobis per totum Regnū nostrum in omnibus iisdem libertatibus & liberis consuetudinibus, quibus ipsi nostris & progenitorum nostrorum temporibus vsi sunt & gausi. Ipsosque extra huiusmodi libertates & liberas consuetudines non trahemus, nec trahi aliquatenus permittemus. In cuius rei testimonium has literas nostras fieri fecimus patentes.

¶ Note an. quitate.

The same in English.

A charter for the Marchants of *Almaine*, who haue an house

at London commonly called *the Guild hall of the Dutch*,
graunted in the 44. yeere of Henry the third, renewed
and confirmed in the 1. & 29. yeere of
Edward the first.

¶ The Belliard.

At the instant request of the most gracious Prince Richard king of the Romanes our most beare brother, wee doe graunte vnto the Marchants of Alemain (namely vnto those that haue an house in our cite of London, commonly called the Guildhall of the Dutch Marchants) that we will, throughout our whole Realme, maintaine all and euery of them, in all those liberties and free customes, which both in our times, and in the times of our progenitors, they haue used and enjoyed. Neither will we inforce them beyond these liberties and free customes, nor in any wise permit them to be inforced. In witness whereof, wee haue caused these our letters to be made patents.

¶ Note the antiquite.

Mandatum



& omnium a
tium in regni
sub nostro de
temporibus p
promptiora, i
curando, in fo
scripta dictis

In primis vi
re sub tuitione
statem nostram
pannagio liber
bus, burgis, &
incolis eiusdem
uatis. Ita tamen
vendi possint,
suas, quas ipso
num & potestas
infra regnum &
terquam ad terr
nes quas debebu
quam infra idem
ciali non liceat eis

Item quod p
sua hospitari vale
domus.

Item quod qu
cunque fuerint sup
ter mercatorum a
cipales personas c
tenilo oriatur, fiat

Mandatum regis Edwardi primi de mercatoribus alienigenis.

Mercatores extranei vendant mercimonia sua in ciuitate London &c. infra quadraginta dies post ingressum suum, anno 3. Edwardi primi.

The same in English.

A mandate of king Edward the first concerning outlandish marchants.

We will and command that our landish marchantes doe sell their wares in the cite of London &c. within forty dayes of their arrival.

The great Charter granted vnto forreine marchants by king Edward the first, in the 31 yeare of his reigne commonly called Carta mercatoria, Anno Domini 1303.



Edwardus Dei gratia Rex Angliæ, Dominus Hiberniæ, dux Aquitanie, Archiepiscopus, Episcopus, Abbatibus, Prioribus, Comitibus, Baronibus, Iustitiarijs, Vicecomitibus, præpositis, ministris, & omnibus balliis & fidelibus suis salutem. Circa bonum statum omnium mercatorum subscriptorum regnorum, terrarum, & provinciarum, videlicet Alemannie, Franciæ, Hispaniæ, Portugalliæ, Nauaræ, Lombardiæ, Thuscie, Prouinciæ, Cataloniæ, ducatus nostri Aquitanie, Tholosaniæ, Caturuni, Flandiæ, Brabantie, & omnium aliarum terrarum & locorum extraneorum, quocumque nomine censeantur, venientium in regnum nostrum Angliæ, & ibidem conuersantium nos præcipua cura sollicitatur, venientibus sub nostro dominio tranquillitatis & plenæ securitatis communitas eisdem mercatoribus futuris temporibus præparetur. Vt itaque vota ipsorum reddantur ad nostra & regni nostri seruitia promptiora, ipsorum petitionibus fauorabiliter annuentes, & pro statu eorundem plenius asseriptione dictis mercatoribus duximus concedenda.

In primis videlicet quod omnes mercatores dictorum regnorum & terrarum saluè & secure sub tuitione & protectione nostra in dictum regnum nostrum Angliæ, & vbiue infra potestatem nostram alibi veniant cum mercandis suis quibuscunque, de muragio, pontagio & pannagio liberi & quieti. Quodque infra idem regnum & potestatem nostram in ciuitatibus, burgis, & villis mercatorijs possunt mercari duntaxat in grosso tam cum indigenis seu incolis eiusdem regni & potestatis nostræ prædictæ, quam cum alienigenis, extraneis, vel priuatis. Ita tamen quod merces, quæ vulgariter mercerie vocantur, ac species, minutatim vendi possint, prout antea fieri consuevit. Et quod omnes prædicti mercatores mercandis suas, quas ipsos ad prædictum regnum & potestatem nostram adducere, seu infra idem regnum & potestatem nostram emere, vel alias acquirere contigerit, possint quo voluerint tam infra regnum & potestatem nostram prædictam, quam extra ducere vel portare sicere, præter quas debebunt: vinis duntaxat exceptis, quæ de eodem regno seu potestate nostra, postquam infra idem regnum seu potestatem nostram ducta fuerint, sine voluntate & licentia speciali non liceatis educere quoquo modo.

Exceptio contra notorios reguli hostes.

Item quod prædicti mercatores in ciuitatibus, burgis, & villis prædictis pro voluntate sua hospitari valeant, & morari cum bonis suis ad gratiam ipsorum, quorum sunt hospitia sue domus.

Item quod quilibet contractus per ipsos mercatores cum quibuscunque personis vendicunque fuerint super quocunque genere mercandis initus, firmus sit & stabilis, ita quod neuter mercatorum ab illo contractu possit recedere, vel resilire, postquam denarius Dei inter principales personas contrahentes datus fuerit & receptus. Et si forsan super contractu cuiusmodi contentio oriatur, fiat inde probatio aut inquisitio secundum vsus & consuetudines fieriarum & villarum, vbi

vbi dictum contractum fieri contigerit & iniri.

4. Item promittimus præfatis mercatoribus pro nobis & hæredibus nostris in perpetuum concedentes, quod nullam prisam vel arrestationem, seu dilationem occasione prisæ de cætero de mercimonijs, mercandis seu alijs bonis suis per nos vel alium seu alios pro aliqua necessitate vel casu contra voluntatem ipsorum mercatorum aliquatenus faciemus, aut fieri patiemur, nisi statim soluto precio pro quo ipsi mercatores alijs eiusmodi mercimonia vendere possunt, vel eis alter satisfacto, ita quod reputent se contentos: Et quod super mercimonia, mercandis, seu bona ipsorum per nos vel ministros nostros nulla appreciatio aut estimatio imponetur.

5. Item volumus quod omnes balliui & ministri feriarum, ciuitatum, burgorum, & villarum mercatoriarum mercatoribus antedictis conquerentibus coram ijs celerem iustitiam faciant de die in diem sine dilatione secundum legem mercatoriam, de vniuersis & singulis quæ per eandem legem poterunt terminari. Et si forte inueniatur defectus in aliquo balliuorum vel ministrorum prædictorum, vnde ijdem mercatores vel eorum aliquis dilationis incommoda sustinerint vel sustineant, licet mercator versus partem in principali recuperauerit damna sua, nihilominus balliuus vel minister alius versus nos, prout delictum exigit puniatur. Et punitionem istam concedimus in fauorem mercatorum prædictorum pro eorum iustitia maturanda.

6. Item quod in omnibus generibus placitorum, salvo casu criminis pro quo infligenda est poena mortis, vbi mercator implacitatus fuerit, vel alium implacitauerit, cuiuscunque conditionis idem implacitatus extiterit, extraneus vel priuatus, in nundinis, ciuitatibus, siue Burgis, vbi fuerit sufficiens copia mercatorum prædictarum terrarum, & inquisitio fieri debeat, sit medietas inquisitionis de eisdem mercatoribus, & medietas altera de probis & legalibus hominibus loci illius vbi placitum illud esse contigerit. Et si de mercatoribus dictarum terrarum numerus non inueniatur sufficiens, ponentur in inquisitione illi quid idonei inueniuntur ibidem, & residij sint de alijs bonis hominibus & idoneis de locis in quibus placitum illud erit.

7. Item volumus, ordinamus, & statuimus, quod in qualibet villa mercatoria & feria regni nostri prædicti & alibi infra potestatem nostram pondus nostrum in certo loco ponatur, & ante ponderationem statim in præsentia emptoris & venditoris vacua videatur, & quod brachia sint equalia: & ex tunc ponderator ponderet in æquali. Et cum stateram posuerit in æquali statim amoueatur manus suas, ita quod remaneat in æquali: quodque per totum regnum & potestatem nostram sit vnum pondus & vna mensura: & signostandardi nostri signentur: Et quod quilibet possit habere stateram vnius quaternionis, & infra, vbi contra domini loci, aut libertatem per nos & antecessores nostros concessam illud non fuerit, siue contra villarum & feriarum consuetudinem hactenus obseruatam.

8. Item volumus & concedimus, quod aliquis certus homo fidelis & discretus Londini residens assignetur iustitarius mercatoribus memoratis, coram quo valeant specialiter placitare, & debita sua recuperare celeriter, si Vicecomites & Maiores eis non facerent de die in diem celeris iustitiæ complementum: Et inde fiat Commissio extra Cartam præsentem concessa mercatoribus antedictis: scilicet de his quæ sunt inter mercatores & mercatores secundum legem mercatoriam deducenda.

Lex mercatoria,
quæ

9. Item ordinamus & statuimus, & ordinationem illam statutumque pro nobis & hæredibus nostris in perpetuum volumus firmiter obseruari, quod pro quacunque libertate, quam nos vel hæredes nostri de cætero concedemus, præfati mercatores supradicti libertates vel earum aliquam non amittant. Pro prædictis autem libertatibus & liberis consuetudinibus obtinendis, & prisas nostris remittendis ijdem supradicti mercatores vniuersi & singuli pro se & omnibus alijs de partibus suis nobis concorditer & vnanimiter concesserunt, quod de quolibet dolio vini, quod adduceat vel adduci facient infra regnum & potestatem nostram, & vnde marinarijs fretum soluere tenebuntur, soluent nobis & hæredibus nostris nomine Customæ duos solidos ultra antiquas customas debitas & in denarijs solui consuetas nobis, aut alias infra quadraginta dies, postquam extra naues ad terram posita fuerint dicta vina. Item de quolibet sacco lanarum, quem dicti mercatores, aut alij nomine ipsorum ement & de regno educunt, aut emi & educi faciunt, soluent quadraginta denarios de incrementis ultra customam antiquam dimidiæ marce, quæ prius fuerat persoluta. Et pro lasta coriorum extra regnum & potestatem nostram vehendorum dimidiæ marcam supra id quod ex antiqua customa ante soluebatur. Et similiter de trecentis pellibus lanitis extra regnum & potestatem nostram ducendis quadraginta denarios ultra certum illud, quod de antiqua

Antiqua Customa.

antiqua
cto in gr
termixta
denarios

Cumq

Auerio po
de sera &

mercandi

res conce

valoris ter

libra in int

infra vigin

adductæ &

ber libra arg

in regno &

valore & est

libra argen

socijs suis ost

catorum, si

ramentis.

Liceat ins

fram prædi

uenia. Ita ra

bica de fraude

vno loco infr

candis suis i

modi mercan

tur, (exceptis v

sicut prædictu

dimus, quod n

dictorum, mer

superius & con

copototius An

colniense, Hun

Adomaro de Va

tenescallo hosp

fore, primo die

Edward by the
shops, Bishop
sacres, and all bayl
good estate of all in
France, Spaine, P
thie of Aquitaine,
and places by wha
there remaine, tha
time to come. And
the seruice of o
ring of their estate
for euer these pyn
First, that all ma
of England, and a
and securely unde
pannage. And tha
dominion they may
inhabitantes of our
or pynne persons,

In perpetuum
ne pñz de cæ.
los pro aliqua
emus, aut fieri
ercimonia ven-
d super merci-
ppreciatio aut

n, & villarum
fficiam faciant
& singulis quz
uo balliuorum
tionis incom-
perauerit dam-
nigrit puniatur,
um iustitia ma-

infigenda est
uscunque con-
uicariis, siue
inquisitio fieri
a de probis &
ercatonibus di-
illi qui idonei
in quibus pla-

atoria & seria
loco ponatur,
tur, & quod
eram posuerit
que per totum
andardi nostri
a, vbi contra
on fuerit, siue

s Londini re-
aliter placita
de die in diem
ntem concessa
res secundum

s & heredibu
e, quam nos
libertates vel
tudinibus ob-
& singuli pro
serunt, quod
estatem no-
edibus nostri
alui confectas
a fuerint dicta
omine ipso-
arios de inero-
upra id quod
lanitis extra
illud, quod de
antiqua

antiqua cultuma fuerat prius datum. Item duos solidos de quolibet scatato & panno tin-
cto in grano. Item decem & octo denarios de quolibet panno, in quo pars grani fuerit in-
termixta. Item duodecim denarios de quolibet panno alio sine grano. Item duodecim

Cumque de prefatis mercatoribus nonnulli eorum alias exercere soleant mercandisas, ut de
Auerio ponderis, & de alijs rebus subtilibus, sicut de pannis Tarsensibus, de serico, & cindallis,
de seta & alijs diuersis mercibus, & de equis etiam & alijs animalibus, blado & alijs rebus &
mercandis multimodis, que ad certam cultumam facile poni non poterunt, iidem mercato-
res concesserunt dare nobis & heredibus nostris de qualibet libra argenti estimationis seu
valoris rerum & mercandisarum huiusmodi, quocunque nomine censcantur, tres denarios de
libra in introitu rerum & mercandisarum ipsarum in regnum & potestatem nostram predictam
infra viginti dies postquam huiusmodi res & mercandis in regnum & potestatem nostram
adductæ & etiam ibidem exoneratæ seu venditæ fuerint. Et similiter tres denarios de quali-
bet libra argenti in eductione quarumcunque rerum & mercandisarum huiusmodi emparum
in regno & potestate nostris predictis ultra cultumas nobis aut alijs ante datas. Et super
valore & estimatione rerum & mercandisarum huiusmodi de quibus tres denarii de qualibet
libra argenti sicut prædicitur sunt soluendi, credatur eis per literas, quas de Dominis aut
socijs suis ostendere poterunt: Et si literas non habeant stetur in hac parte predictorum mer-
catorum, si presentes fuerint, vel valeorum suorum in eorundem mercatorum absencia, iu-
ramentis.

Liceat in super socijs de societate predictorum mercatorum infra regnum & potestatem no-
stram predictas, lanas vendere alijs suis socijs, & similiter emere ab ipsius abique cultuma fol-
uendis. Ita tamen quod dictæ lanæ ad tales manus non deueniant, quod de cultuma nobis de-
bita defraudemur. Et præterea est sciendum, quod postquam supradicti mercatores semel in-
vno loco infra regnum & potestatem nostram cultumam nobis concessam superius pro mer-
candis suis in forma soluerint supradicta, & suum habeant in eæ waranium, siue huius-
modi mercandis infra regnum & potestatem nostram remaneant, siue exterius deferan-
tur, (exceptis vinis, que de regno & potestate nostris predictis sine voluntate & licentia nostra
dimus, quod nulla exactio, prisæ, vel præstatio, aut aliquod onus super personas mercatorum præ-
dictorum, mercandis seu bona eorundem aliquatenus imponatur contra formam expressam
superius & concessam. His testibus veracibus principalibus, Roberto Cantuariensi Archiepis-
copo totius Angliæ primæ, Waltero Couentrix & Lichfeldi episcopo, Henrico de Lacy Lin-
colniense, Hunifredo de Bolum comite Herfordiense & Essexiæ & Constabulo magno Angliæ,
Adomaro de Valentia, Galfrido de Gaymal, Hugone de Lespensor, Waltero de Bello campo,
senescallo hospitij nostri, Roberto de Burijs, & alijs. Datum per manum nostram apud Winde-
sore, primo die Februarij, anno regni nostri xxxj.

The aforesaid generall Charter in English.

Edward by the grace of God king of England, lord of Ireland, duke of Aquitaine, to Archbishops, Bishops, Abbots, Priors, Carles, Barons, Justices, Vicounts, gouernours, officers, and all bayliffes, and his faithfull people sendeth greeting. We haue speciall care for the
good estate of all marchantes of the kingdomes, lands, and countreys following: to wit of Almaine,
France, Spaine, Portugal, Nauarre, Lombardie, Florence, Prouence, Catalonia, of our du-
chy of Aquitaine, Tholosa, Caturlune, Flanders, Brabant, and of all other foreyne countreys
and places by what name soeuer they be called, which come into our kingdome of England, and
there remaine, that the sayd marchantes may liue in quiet and full securitie vnder our dominion in
time to come. Wherefore that their heertes desires may bee more readily inclined to our seruice
and the seruice of our kingdome, we saourably agreeing to their petitions, for the fuller af-
firming of their estate, haue thought good to graunt to the sayd marchantes for vs and our heires
First, that all marchantes of the sayd kingdomes and countreys may come into our kingdome
of England, and any where else into our dominion with their marchandises whatsoeuer safely
and securely vnder our defence and protection without paying wharfrage, portage, or
pannage. And that in Cities, Borowghs, and market townes of the sayd kingdome and
dominion they may traffique onely by the great as well with the naturall subjects and
inhabitantes of our aforesayde kingdome and dominion, as with foreyners, straungers,
or ynnate persons, Yet so, that marchandises which are commonly called merretie wares,
sp 2

For exception
for trafficking
with & knowen
enemies of the
kingdome.

and spices, may be sold by the small, as heretofore hath bin accustomed. And that all the aforesaid marchants may carry of cause to be carried whither they will, aswell within our realme of dominion, as out of the same; saving unto the countreis of the manifest and knowen enemies of our kingdome, those marchandises which they shall bring into our aforesaid realme and dominion, of buy, of otherwise purchase in our sayd realme and dominion, paying such customes as they ought to doe: except onely wines, which it shall not be any wayes lawfull for them to carry out of our sayd realme and dominion without our speciall favour and licence, after they be once brought into our realme and dominion.

2. Item that the aforesaid marchants may at their pleasure lodge & remaine with their goods in the cities, boroughs, and townes aforesaid, with the good liking of those which are owners of their lodgings.

3. Item that every bargain made by the said marchants with any manner of persons, of what places soever they be, for any kind of marchandise whatsoever, shalbe firme & stable, so that none of both the marchants shall shrink or give backe from that bargain, after that the earnest penie be once given and taken betwene the principall bargainers. And if peradventure any strife arise about the same bargain, the trial and inquirie thereof shall be made according to the uses and customes of the sayes and townes where it chanced that the said bargain was made and contracted.

4. Item, we promise the aforesaid marchants granting for ever for us and our heires, that from hence forth we will not in any wise make nor cause to be made any stay of arrest, of any delay by reason of arrest of their wares, marchandises or other goods, by our selves, or by any other of others for any neede or accident against the will of the sayd marchants, without present payment of such a pice as the marchants would have sold those marchandises for to other men, or without making of them other satisfaction, so that they shall hold themselves well contented: and that no pice of valuation shalbe set upon their wares, marchandises, & goods by us or by any officer of ours.

5.
Where in this
law now be
done?

Item, we will that all bailiffes and officers of sayes, cities, boroughs, and market townes shall doe speedie justice from day to day without delay according to the lawe of Marchants to the aforesaid marchants when they shall complaine before them, touching all and singular causes, which may be determined by the same law. And if default be found in any of the bailiffes or officers aforesaid, where by the sayd marchants or any of them have sustained, or do sustaine any damage through delay, though the marchant recover his losses against the partie principall, yet the bailiffe or other officer shall be punished to us ward, according to the qualite of the defaults. And we doe grant this punishment in favour of the aforesaid marchants in regard of the hastening of their iustice.

6. Item, that in al manner of pleas, saving in case where punishment of death is to be inflicted, where a marchant is impleaded, or sueth another, of what condition soever hee bee which is such, whether stranger or home borne, in sayes, cities, or boroughs, where sufficient numbers of marchants of the aforesaid countreis are, and where the trial ought to be made, let the one halfe of the iurie be of the sayd marchants, and the other halfe of good and lawfull men of the place where the suite shall fall out to bee: and if sufficient number of marchants of the sayd countreis cannot bee found, those which shall be found fit in that place shall be put upon the iurie, and the rest shall be chosen of good and fit men of the places where such suit shall chance to be.

7. Item we will, we ordaine, and we appoint, that in every market towne and saye of our realme aforesaid and elswhere within our dominion our weight shall bee set in some certaine place; and that before the weighing the balance shall bee seene empty in the presence of the buyer and of the seller, and that the scales bee equall: and that afterward the weighter weigh in the equall balance. And when hee hath set the balances even, let him straightway remove his hands, so that the balance may remayne even: And that throughout all our kingdome and dominion there be one weight and one measure, and that they be marked with the marke of our standard. And that every man may have a weight of one quarter of an hundred, and under, where the same hath not bin contrary to the liberty of the lord of the place, and contrary to the libertie granted by us and our predecessors, or contrary to the custome of townes and sayes which hath hitherto bene observed.

8. Item we will and we grant that some certaine saythfull and discrete man resident in London be appointed to doe Justice to the aforesaid marchants, before whom they may have their sures decided, and may speedily recover their debtes, if the debtors and payors should not from day to day give them speedy iustice. And heroflet a Commission be made: which we grant unto the aforesaid marchants beloveth this present Charter: to wit of such things as betwene marchant and marchant are to be decided according to the lawe of marchants.

9. Item we ordaine and appoint, and we will that this ordinance and statute shall firmly be observed for ever for us and our heires, that the aforesaid marchants shall not loose the aforesaid liberties

be
gra
our
all
cum
whi
due
a cu
wine
marc
and c
paye
a mar
deth
pence
byon
any kin
etwelve
And
as of H
uers oth
marchan
have gra
lue of the
the poun
rie dayes
shall be th
ing out of
sayd abou
lue and est
as is afores
to the we fr
to the oth
servants.
Aforesaid
our realme
of them wit
be defraude
aforesaid ma
boue grant
ther these ma
no wife shal
is aforesaid
any other bur
or goods in an
pall witness
land, Walter b
Carle of Herf
mal, Hugh Spe
Gluen by our o

De me
eor

Agnifico
Simmo Edw
dilectione

that all the aforesaid
realme of dominion,
members of our king-
dominion, or buy, or
sell they ought to doe:
of our sayd realme
ought into our realme

with their goods in
are owners of their

persons, of what pla-
ce that none of both
parties shal be once
by strife arise about
uses and customes
contracted.

heires, that from
us, or any delay by
us by any other or o-
ther present payment of
men, or without ma-
do: and that no price
of officer of ours.

market towne shall
chambers to the aforesaid
regular causes, which
of officers aforesaid
any damage through
the baptise of other
And wee doe grant
of their iustice.

be inflicted, where
the which is sure,
the numbers of mar-
let the one halfe of
of the place where
countreies cannot
and the rest shall be

e and paye of our
t in some certaine
reference of the buy-
weigher weigh in
shipway remove his
kingdome and do-
marke of our stan-
under, where the
the libertie gran-
pieces which hath bi-

in resident in L on-
they may have their
of should not from
which we grant unto
as betweene mar-

e shall surmise bet-
of the aforesaid li-
berries

berries nor any of them, for any libertie whatsoever, which were of our heires hereafter shall
grant. And for the obtaining of the aforesaid libertie and free customes, and for remission of
our retelling of their goods, the aforesaid marchants all and euery of them for themselves and
all other of their parties with one accorde and one consent haue granted vnto vs, that of euery
tunne of wine, which they shall bring or cause to be brought into our realme and dominion, for
which they shall be bound to pay freight vnto the mariners, besides the olde customes which are
due and were wont to be payd vnto vs, they will pay vnto vs and to our heires in the name of
a custome two shillings in money, either out of hande, or else within thirtie dayes after the sayd
wines shall be brought on land out of the shippes. Item for euery sacke of wooll, which the sayd
marchants or others in their name shall buy and carie out of the realme, or cause to be brought
and caried out, they will pay forty pence about the olde custome of halfe a marke, which was
payed heretofore: And for a last of hides to be caried out of our realme and dominion halfe
a marke about that which heretofore was payed by the olde custome. And likewise for thre hundred
dyers skeltes with the wooll on them to be transported out of our realme and dominion forty
pence, about that certaine rate which before was payed by the olde custome: Also two shillings
vpon euery scarlate and euery cloth dyed in graine. Item eightene pence for euery cloth wherein
any kind of graine is mingled. Item twelue pence for euery cloth dyed without graine. Item
twelue pence vpon euery quintall of copper.

And whereas sundrie of the aforesaid marchants are wont to exercise other marchandises,
as of Hauer de pois, and other fine wares, as sacenets, lawnes, cindalles, and silke, and vi-
uers other marchandises, and to sell horses and other beastes, coze, and sundrie other things and
marchandises, which cannot easily be reduced vnto a certaine custome: the sayd marchants
haue granted to giue vnto vs, and to our heires of euery pound of siluer of the estimation and va-
lue of these kinde of goods and marchandises, by what name soeuer they be called, thre pence in
the pound in the byling in of these goods into our realme and dominion aforesaid, within twen-
tie dayes after these goods and marchandises shall be brought into our realme and dominion, and
shall be there vnladen and soke. And like wise thre pence vpon euery pound of siluer in the car-
ying out of any such goods and marchandises which are bought in our realme and dominion aforesaid
sayd about the customes beforetime payd vnto vs or any of our progenitors. And touching the va-
lue and estimation of these goods and marchandises, whereof thre pence of euery pound of siluer,
as is aforesaid, is to be payd, credite shall be giuen vnto them vpon the letters which they are able
to shewe from their masters or parteners. And if they haue no letters in this behalfe, we will stand
to the othe of the aforesaid marchants if they be present, or in their absence to the othe of their
seruants.

Moreover, it shall be lawfull for such as be of the company of the aforesaid marchants within
our realme and dominion aforesaid, to sell wooll to other of their company, and like wise to buy
of them without paying of custome. Yet so, that the said wooll come not to such hands, that were
be defrauded of the custome due vnto vs. And furthermore it is to be vnderstood, that after that the
aforesaid marchants haue once payed in our place within our realme and dominion, the custome a-
bout these marchandises remayne within our kingdome or be caried out (excepting wines, which in
no wise shall be caried forth of our realme and dominion aforesaid, without our fauour or licence as
is aforesaid) we will and we grant for vs and our heires, that no execution, attachment, or loane, or
any other burthen be layd vpon the persons of the aforesaid marchants, vpon their marchandises
or goods in any case, contrary to the forme before mentioned and granted. The faithfull and princi-
pall witnesses of these presents are these, Robert Archbishop of Canterbury, Primate of all Eng-
land, Walter bishop of Courcye and Lichfield, Henry Lacie of Lincolne, Humfrey de Bohune,
Earle of Herford and Essex, Hugh Constable of England, Adonare of Valencia, Geoffrey de Gay-
mal, Hugh Spenser, Walter Beauchampe Seneschall of our house, Robert of Bures, and others,
Giuen by our owne hand at Windesore the first day of february, in the yere of our reigne xxxi.

De mercatoribus Angliæ in Norwegia arrestatis, &
eorum mercimonijs dearrestandis litera Edwardi secundi
anno sexto regni sui, Haquino regi Norwegie.



Agnifico principi domino Haquino Dei gratia regi Norwegie illustri, amico suo charis-
simo Edwardus eadē Dei gratia rex Anglię, Dom. Hibernię, & dux Aquitanię salutē cū
dilectione sincera. Miramur nō modicū & in inimicis conturbamur de grauiamibus

Villa de Tonnes-
bergh.

& oppressionibus quæ subditis nostris infra regnum vestrum causa negociandi venientibus his diebus plus solito absque causa rationabili, sicut ex gravi querela didicimus, inferuntur. Nuper siquidem Willihelmus filius Laurentij de Waynflete, Simon filius Alani de eadem, Guido filius Mathei & eorum socij mercatores nostri nobis conquerendo monstrarunt, quod cum ipsi quosdam homines & servientes suos cum tribus nauibus suis ad partes regni vestri, ad negotiandum ibidem transmississent: & naues illæ in portu villæ vestræ de Tonnesbergh halece & alijs bonis diuersis vsque ad magnam summam oneratz fuissent: Et licet nautis nauis prædictarum hominibusque & seruentibus prædictis à regno vestro liberè cum nauibus & bonis prædictis ad partes Angliæ redeundi vestras fieri feceritis de cōductu, postmodum tamen antequam naues illæ proper ventum contrarietate portum prædictum exire potuerunt, quidam balliui vestri naues prædictas cum hominibus & bonis omnibus tunc existentibus in eisdem, occasione mortis cuiusdam militis nuper balliui vestri in Vikia per malefactores & piratas, dum naues prædictæ in portu supradicto sicut præmittitur remanserunt supra mare vt dicitur interfecti, de mandato vestro vt dicebant arrestarunt, & diu sub arefco huiusmodi detinebant, quousque videlicet homines & marinarij prædicti de quadraginta libris sterlingorū certo die statuto ad opus vestrum pro qualibet aut prædictarum soluendis inuiti & coacti securitatem inuenissent: Et similiter de eisdem nauibus cum hominibus prædictis infra portum prædictum citra festi natiuitatis Sancti Ioannis Baptistæ proximo futuro ad standum tunc ibidem de personis & nauibus suis vestræ gratiæ seu voluntatis arbitrio reducendis tres obfides vltimus liberafent: quod ipsis valde grate censetur, & auditu mirabile auribus audientium non immerito reputatur. Et quia contrarietatem & equitatem, omnemque iustitiam fore dinoscitur, atque legem, quod delinquentium culpæ seu demerita in personis vel rebus illorum qui criminis rei conscij vel participes, seu de huiusmodi delinquentium societate non fuerunt, aliquo aliter viciscantur, vestram amicitiam affectuose requirimus & rogamus, quatenus præmissa diligenti meditatione zelo iustitiæ ponderantes, obfides prædictos iubere velit ab hostiagio huiusmodi liberari, distamque securitatem relaxari penitus & resolu. Scientes pro certo, quod si malefactores prædicti, qui dictum militem vestrum, vt dicitur, occiderunt, alicubi infra regnum seu potestatem nostram potuerunt inueniri, de ipsis iustitiam & iudicium secundum legem & consuetudinem eiusdem regni fieri faciemus. Non enim possumus his diebus æquanimitè tolerare, quod naues prædictæ seu alia de regno nostro, quæ semper promptè ad nostrum seruitium esse debent, extra idem regnum ad partes remotas se diuertant sine nostra licentia speciali. Quid autem ad hanc nostram instantiam faciendum decreueritis in præmissis, nobis si placeat rescribatis per presentium portatorem. Datæ apud Windesore decimo sexto die Aprilis.

The same in English.

The letters of Edward the second vnto Haquinus king of Norway,
concerning the English marchants arrested in Norway,
and their goods to be freed from arrest.



The mighty Prince, lord Haquinus, by the grace of God the famous king of Norway his most deare friend, Edward by the same grace of God, king of England, lord of Ireland, duke of Aquitaine, greeting and sincere loue, We maruell not a litle, and are much disquieted in our cogitations, considering the greouances and oppellions, which (as wee haue herne informed by pitifull complaines) are at this ptesent, moze then in times past, without any reasonable cause inflicted vpon our subiects, which doe vsually resort vnto

your kingdome for traffiques sake. For of late one William the sonne of Laurence of Waynflete, and one Simon the sonne of Alan of the same towne, and Guido the sonne of Mathew, and their associates our marchants, in complaining wile declared vnto vs: that hauing sent certaine of their factors and seruants, with thre shippes into your dominions, there to exercise traffique, and the sayd shippes being laden in the hauen of your towne of Tonnesbergh, with Herrings and other commodities, to a great value: and also the said mariners, men, and seruants of the sayd shippes, being licenced by vertue of the safe conduct which you had granted them, freely to returne from your kingdome vnto the parts of England with their shippes and goods aforesayd, but afterward not being able to depart out of your hauen by reason of contrary windes: certaine of your bayliffes vpon occasion of the slaughter of a knight being himselfe also of late your bayliffe of Vikia, committed by malefactours and pirates vpon the sea, whilst the sayd shippes remained in the hauen aforesayd, did at your commandement (as they say) arrest: and for a long season also

The towne of
Tonnesbergh.

decreed

Edm.

detained by
by unwilli
thereunto
day appoi
liuered the
uen, before
to your sau
the parties
strange and
iustice, and
sons, as in
society with
and pover
the foresaid
And know y
your knight
iustice and iu
Realme. For
any other ship
without specia
you shall thin
ter of these p

Annot

Magnifico
mo, Ed
salutem cum di
Swyn de Wayn
ipsi nuper quos
monijs transmi
monis ad valenc
sua custodia lab
restari, & ea adh
modicum & dep
volumus, quaten
affectu, quatenus
super restitutione
iustitiæ complem
non oporteat nos
quid ad hanc nos
torem. Datæ vt su

The mighty
his most deare
and Duke of Aquit
merchants Thoma
the comes whered
traffike in your king
a reasonable occasion
the value of fortye po
berne, to be arrested,
great damage and im
to succour these our n

deteined vnder that arrest, the foresaid ships, with all the men and goods that were in them: namely vntill such time, as the men and mariners aforesaid (being by then perswaded, and constrained therunto) should lay in sufficient securitie for the payment of so much pounds sterling, vpon a certain day appointed, vnto your vs, for euery of the foresaid ships: and also vntill they had moouer betwixt them, before the feast of S. Johns the Baptiste next ensuing, and men backe againe into the foresaid ha- uen, your fauour and currelle, as touching the said persons, and those ships of theirs: which dealing, the parties themselves take very grieuously, yea, and all others that heare thereof thinke it to be a strange and vnwonted course. And because it is most vndoubtedly contrary to all reason, equite, iustice, and lawe, that the faults or demerits of offenders should in any sort be punished in such per- sons, or in their goods, as neither haue bene accessory nor partakers in the crime, nor haue had any society with the said offenders: we doe heartily intreat and request your Highnes, that weighing and pondering the matter in the balance of iustice, you would of your loue and friendship, commaund the foresaid pledges to be set at libertie, and the said securitie vnto be released and acquired. And know you this for a certaintie, that if the foresaid malefactors, who (as it is reported) shewe your Knight aforesaid, shall any where within our realme and dominions be found, we wil cause iustice and iudgement to be executed vpon them, according to the Lawe and custome of our sayde Realme. For we cannot in these times conveniently and well indure, that the ships aforesaid, or any other ships of our kingdome (which ought alwayes to be in a readinesse for our seruice) should without speciall licence, depart out of our sayde kingdome, vnto forreine dominions. Note, what you shall thinke good at this our request to performe in the premises, map it please you by the bea- rer of these presents to returne an answer vnto vs, Given at Windfore the 16. of April.

Another Letter of Edward the second, to Haquinus King
of Norway, in the behalle of certaine English
Marchants.

Magnifico Principi Dom. Haquino Dei gratia regi Norwegie illustri, amico suo charissi-
mo, Edwardus eadem Dei gratia Rex Angliz, dominus Hyberniz, & dux Aquitaniz,
salutem cum dilectione sincera. Querelam dilectorum Mercatorum nostrorum Thomæ
Swyn de Waynfleete, & Simonis filij Alani de eadem recepimus, continentem, Quod cum
ipsi nuper quosdam seruientes suos infra regnum vestrum pro sui ibidem exercendis merci-
monij transmississent, Thesaurarius vester bona & mercimonia prædictorum Thomæ & Si-
monis ad valenciam quadraginta librarum, quæ seruientes prædicti in villa de Northberne in
sua custodia habuerunt, die Sancti Michaelis ultimo præterita fecit absque causa rationabili a-
restari, & ea adhuc taliter arrestata desinet iniuste, in ipsorum Thomæ & Simonis dampnum non
modicum & depauperationem manifestam. Et quia eidem mercatoribus nostris subuenire
volumus, quatenus sudent iustitia poterimus in hac parte, vestram amicitiam requirimus cum
affectu, quatenus audita querela prædictorum Thomæ & Simonis, vel ipsorum attorneyum
super restitutione bonorum & mercimoniorum prædictorum impendere velitis eidem celeris
iustitiz complementum: Ita quod pro defectu exhibitionis iustitiz super arrestatione prædicta
non oporteat nos pro mercatoribus nostris prædictis de alio remedio providere, Nobis autem
quid ad hanc nostram instantiam duxeritis faciendum, rescribere velitis per præsentium porti-
torem. Datz vt supra.

Northberne
villa.

The same in English.

THE mightie Prince Lojd Haquinus, by the grace of God the famous King of Norway,
his most beare friend Edward by the same grace of God king of England, Lojd of Ireland,
and Duke of Aquitaine, greeting and sincere loue. Wee receiued the complaint of our welbelo-
ued Merchants Thomas de Swyn of Waynfleet, and Simon the sonne of Alanus of the same towne:
the contents whereof are, that whereas of late, the said parties sent certaine of their seruantes to
traffike in your kingdome, your Treasurer vpon the feast of S. Michael last past, without any iust
or reasonable occasion, cau'd the goods and merchandise of the foresaid Thomas and Simon, to
the value of fortye pound, which their said seruantes had vnder their custodie at the towne of North-
berne, to be arrested, and as yet also iniuriously deteined the same vnder the same arrest, to the
great damage and impouerishing of the sayd Thomas and Simon. And forasmuch as our desire is
to succour these our marchants so far forth as we can, Justice requiring no lesse in this behalle,
we

wee doe right earnestly request you, that having heard the complaint and supplication of the foresayde Thomas and Simon, or of their Attorneys, you woulde of your loue and friendship, vouchsafe them speedie administration of Justice, about the restitution of their goods and marchandise: aforesayde: least that for want of the exhibiting of Justice about the foresayd arrest, we be constrained to prouide some other remede for our marchants aforesayd. Our request is, that you woulde by the bearer of these presents, returne an answer vnto vs, what you are determined to doe, at this our instant motion. Given as above.

**A third letter of King Edward the second, to
Haquinus King of Norway in the behalfe
of certaine English Marchants.**

(* *)

Magnifico Principi Domino Haquino Dei gratia Regi Norwegie illustri, amico suo charissimo, Edwardus eadem Dei gratia Rex Angliz, dominus Hyberniz, & dux Aquitaniz, salutem cum dilectione sinceram, Pro mercatoribus nostris Lennar, & parium vicinarum, quos Balluus & Officiarij vestri ciuitatis vestre Bergen dudum ceperunt, & stricte carceri manciparunt, quorum multi vt iam intelleximus, propter alimentorum subractionem & duriciam, ac asperitatem carceris petierunt, vt ipsorum & bonorum suorum deliberationem precipere curaretis, vestre serenitati Regie nostras nuper transmissas literas speciales. Sed vos, retentis adhuc in carcere nostris mercatoribus sicut prius, nobis per literas vestras quas audiuimus & intelleximus diligenter, inter cetera rescriptis, quod quidam mercatores de regno vestro de iniurijs, violentijs & arrestationibus, quibus in regno nostro his diebus sunt, vt asserunt, contra iusticiam aggrauati, multipliciter conueniunt, adijcendis in vestris literis memoratis, quod quidam iniquitatis filij in villa Lennar, ad piscandam vt dicebant halecia venientes, quendam militem Balluum vestrum, in Vikia vna cum decem alijs subditis vestris, in vestris & regni vestri negotijs existentibus crudeliter occiderunt. Super quibus mens nostra grauatur quamplurimum & turbatur, presertim quum nunquam nostre fuerit voluntatis, quod iniuriar, violentiar, seu arrestationes aliquar mercatoribus, vel alijs de regno vestro per aliquos de regno & potestate nostris fierent indebitè vel iniuste: nec adhuc intelligere possumus, quod mercatoribus vestris per aliquem vel aliquos de subditis nostris huc vsque aliter factum fuerit: Sciennes pro certo quod si nobis per inquisitionem legitimam constare poterit huiusmodi grauamina subditis vestris infra regnum nostrum illata fuisse, nos sufficientes emendas, & satisfactiones debitas super illis, celerisque iustitiar complementum fieri faciemus. Et insuper si malefactores predicti, qui praefatum militem, & alios secum existentes, vt praemittitur, occiderunt, de regno, seu potestate nostra sunt, vel infra idem regnum vel potestatem poterunt inueniri, de ipsis iudicium & iusticiam fieri precipiimus, secundum Leges & consuetudines regni nostri. Et quia inter nos & vos, nostrisque & vestros subditos hinc inde foueri desideramus mutuam concordiam & amorem; ita quod mercatores nostri & vestri mercandias suas in nostris & vestris regnis & dominijs liberè, & absque impedimento valeant exercere, prout temporibus progenitorum nestrorum fieri consuevit, & ex dictarum litterarum vestrarum serie collegimus euidenter vos promptos esse similiter, & paratos ad omnia & singula, quae pro vobis & vestris subditis super discordijs, contentionibus, aut grauaminibus inter nostros & vestros subditos qualiterunque suscitatis pro bono pacis & iustitiar fuerint aequanimiter facienda: Nos consilia pro vobis & nostris, quantum ad nos & ad ipsos attinet, illius amore, qui pacis author fore dinoscitur, & pro quiete & commodo populi vtriusque regnorum nostrorum, quatenus ius & ratio distitauerint, promittimus nos facturos: Vestram amicitiam requirentes obnixius & rogantes, quatenus mercatores nostros praedictos, qui adhuc superstitibus relinquantur, quos etiam tempore, quo dicta feloniam committi dicebatur, interclusos tenebat custodia carceralis, iubere velitis nostri contemplatione, zeloque iustitiar ab huiusmodi custodia liberari, bona ab ipsis capta eis prout iustum fuerit restitui faciendo. Et vt deliberatio mercatorum nostrorum praedictorum, & honorum suorum eo facilius concedatur, placeat vobis cum diligentia debita ponderare, quod Galsfridus Drewe, & quidam alij mercatores nostri de Lennar, quibusdam mercatoribus de regno vestro occasione eiusdem grauaminis ipsis mercatoribus vestris, ad scellam Tidemanni Lippe infra regnum

Antiquitas commercij inter Angliam & Noruegiam.

regni
scripti
stros
tera c
de ali
feditu
nam d
merito
strum
tis ben
Wellm

The
of Aqu
ters, for
and office
whome, as
sommelle
Hoboweit,
diligently
vnto vs: cl
sences and
griued an
sonnes of in
thered a cer
of your sub
our minde is
any part of o
ny marchant
any intellige
ny one of mo
quisition we
within our re
due sacrifici
to aforesaid, si
to our kingd
on, we will co
customs of ou
maintained an
chantes may, in
traffique, as in
ly gathered ou
things in p
ctions, and molesta
vingly to be per
chem lieth, for h
of both our Rea
requesting at yo
of iustice, you wo
also at the time of
saide chapdome,
iustice, restoyed to
the moze easly pee
Drewe, and certai
to your marchants
vnto the same your

Supplication of the
our loue and friend-
ship of their goods
about the foresaid
said. Our request
what you are deter-

nd, to
lfe

ad, amico suo
ernia, & dux A.
& parum vi-
erunt, & stric-
a subractionem
deliberatio-
litas speciales.
ad quidam mer-
egno nostro hi-
ur, adiscendo
ad piscandum
ia una cum de-
delictis eccide-
cessitum quum
es aliquae mer-
is fierent inde-
is per aliquem
certo quod si
dictis vestris in-
es debitas su-
fectorum pra-
erunt, de reg-
erunt inueniri,
studines regi-
ueri desidera-
i mercandis
aleant exerce-
um literarum
ad omnia &
aut grauami-
& iusticie su-
ad nos & ad
ommodo po-
mittimus nos
mercatores no-
dicta feloniam
contemplati-
prouit iustum
& honorum
mod Galfridus
regno vestro
Lippe infra
regnum

regnum nostrum, vt dicebatur, illaci, centum libras sterlingorum persoluerunt, sicut in quodam scripto indentato inter Ingelstrum Lende de Thorenden, & quosdam alios mercatores veteros ex parte vna, & praefatum Galfridum, & quosdam alios de regno nostro similiter ex altera confectio, vidimus contineri. Si qui vero de subditis vestris de aliquibus subditis nostris, de aliqua iniuria ipsis facta querelas in curia nostra deponere voluerint, & prosequi nosstris, factu, ipsorum subditorum vestrorum petitiones admitti, & eis super querelis huiusmodi plenam & celerem iusticiam fieri faciemus. Ita quod iidem subditi vestri exinde reputare debebunt merito se contentos. Et interim de excessibus & grauaminibus subditis vestris infra regnum nostrum qualitercunque illatis inquiri faciemus cum diligentia veritatem. Vestrae igitur voluntatis beneplacitum in praemissis nobis referbere velitis per praesentium portitorem. Data apud Westminster tertio die Aprilis.

The same in English.

The mighty Prince king Haquinus, by the grace of God the famous king of Norway, his most deare friend Edward by the same grace of God, king of England, lord of Ireland, Duke of Aquitaine, greeting and sincere loue. We sent of late vnto your royall maiestie our special letters, for the behaile of our late marchants of Lenne, and of the coast abioynning (whome your bailie and officers of the cite of Bergen lately apprehended, committing them to close prison, many of whome, as we vnderstand, are, for want of due nourishment, and by reason of the extremitie & loathsome stonell of the prison, quite perished) that you would cause them and their goods to be released. Howbeit, you retaining as yet our marchants in durance as before, in your letters, which we haue diligently heard, and thoghly vnderstood, haue, amongst other matters, returned this answer vnto vs: that certaine marchants of your kingdome doe make sundrie complaints of iniuries, wronges and arrests, whereby they haue lately (as themselves auouch) contrary to iustice bene aggrieued and oppellessed in our dominions: adding mozeouer in your sayde letters, that certaine thereof a certaine Knight, who was in times past your bayliffe of Vikia, together with ten others of your subiects, being employed about the affaires of your kingdome. In consideration whereof our minde is exceedingly and aboue measure grieued and troubled, especially because it was neuer any part of our intent, that any iniuries, wronges, or arrests should vnto us be inflicted vpon any marchants, or any others of your realme by any of our kingdomes: neither can we as yet haue any intelligence, that any such hard measure hath bene offered vnto any of your marchants, by any one of moe of our subiects: giuing you for a certaintie to vnderstand, that if vpon lawfull inquisition we shall be aduertised of any such grieuances, which haue bene offered vnto your subiects within our realme, we will cause speedie iustice to be administered, and sufficient recompence, and due satisfaction to be made in regarde thereof. And mozeouer, if the sayde malefactors, which, as it is of record, sliue the foresaid Knight, and others of his companie, either be appertaining vnto our kingdome and dominion, or may at any time be found within our sayde kingdome or dominion, we will command iustice and iudgement to be executed vpon them, according to the lawes and customes of our realme. And so far as much as our desire is, that mutuall concord and amitie should be maintained and cherished between your and our subiects on both parts: so that our and your marchants may, in both our Realmes and dominions, freely and without impediment exercise their traffique, as in the times of our progenitors it hath bene accustomed: Whereas also we evidently gathered out of the contents of your letter, that you are in like sort readie and willing to put all things in practice, which are by you and your subiects (for the taking away of discords, contentions, and molestacions howsoeuer occasioned, and sprung by betwene your and our subiects) lawfully to be performed: we also doe promise for our selues, and our subiects, so much as in vs and them lieth, for his sake who is known to be the author of peace, and for the benefite & tranquillitie of both our Realmes (as iustice and reason shall moue vs) to doe the like. Desiring and earnestly requiring at your hands, that of your loue and friendship, hauing regard of vs, and consideration of iustice, you would command that our foresaid marchants, who as yet remaine alike, and who also at the time of the sayde felonie committed, were shut up in close prison, be deliuered out of the sayde thraldome, causing their goods which haue bene taken from them, to bee, according vnto the iustice, restored to them again. And that the deliuerie of our foresaid marchants and goods, may be the moze easily peyled vnto, may it please you with diligent obseruation to consider, that Gesserey to your marchants within our Realme, (as the report goeth) at the suite of Tidman Lippe, paid vnto the same your marchants an hundred pound sterling: euen as in a certain Indenture made betwene

The antiquitie
of traffique be-
tweene Eng-
land and Nor-
way.

betweene Ingelram Lende of Thorenden, and some other of your marchants on the one part, and betweene the sejsaibe Gessicy, and certayne of our marchants on the other part, wee sawe contened, Moreover, if any of your subiects be minded to exhibite, and effectually to prosecute their complaints in our Court, concerning any of our subiects, or of any iniury done unto them, we will cause the petitions of those your subiects to be admitted, and also full and speedie iustice to be administered, upon any such like complaints of theirs. Inasmuch, that those your subiects shal thinke themselves right well and sufficiently contented therewithall. And in the meane space we will cause diligene inquisition of the truth to be made, of all excesses and grieuances howsoever offered unto your subiects within our dominions. May it please you therefore, by the bearer of these presents, to returne an answer unto vs, what you are determined to doe in the premises. Given at Westminster, the third day of April.

De Stapula tenenda in certo loco ordinatio, Anno 13.

Edwardi secundi.

Maior & Communitas Stapula.

Charta anno regni nostri confecta.

REx collectoribus custumæ lanarum & pellium lanutarum in portu London salutem, Cum nos viceſimo die Maij anno regni nostri sexto attendentes damna & grauamina, quæ mercatoribus de regno nostro diuersimodè euenerunt, ex eo quod mercatores tam indigenæ quàm alienigenæ lanas & pelles lanutas infra regnum & potestatem nostram ementes, & se cum eisdem lanis & pellibus ad vendendum eas ad diuersa loca infra terras Brabantie, Flandrie, & de Artoys eorum libito voluntatis transulerint: & volentes etiam huiusmodi damnis & grauaminibus quatenus bono modo possemus providere, de consilio nostro ordinauerimus, quod mercatores indigenæ & alienigenæ lanas & pelles huiusmodi infra regnum & potestatem prædictam ementes, & ad terras prædictas ibidem vendendas ducere volentes, lanas illas & pelles ad certam Stapulam infra aliquam earundem terrarum, per Maiorem & Communitatem earundem mercatorum, de regno nostro ordinandam assignari, ac prout & quando expedire viderint murandum, & non ad alia loca in terris illis ducant, seu duci faciant illo modo: & inter cætera concesserimus mercatoribus de regno nostro supradicto pro vobis & hæredibus nostris, quod ipsi Maior & consilium dictorum mercatorum, qui pro tempore fuerint, quibuscunque mercatoribus indigenis seu alienigenis, qui contra dictam ordinationem venerint, & modo rationabili conuicti fuerint, certas pecuniæ summas pro delictis illis imponant, & quod illæ huiusmodi summe de bonis & mercimonijs mercatorum sic delinquentium, vbicumque ea infra regnum & potestatem prædictam inueniri contigerint, per ministros nostros ad opus nostrum leuentur: prout in Charta nostra inde confecta plenius continetur: quam quidem Chartam per singulos comitatus regni nostri super colteras maris fecimus publicari, & firmiter inhiberi, ne qui mercatores indigenæ seu alienigenæ contra tenorem Chartæ prædictæ sub penis contentis in eadem venerint illo modo: Ac postmodum dato nobis intelligi, quod quàmplures mercatores tam indigenæ quàm alienigenæ, lanas & pelles lanutas infra regnum & potestatem prædictas ementes, & se cum eisdem lanis & pellibus ad vendendum eas ad alia loca in dictis terris, quàm ad Stapulam iuxta concessionem nostram prædictam per Maiorem & Communitatem dictorum mercatorum de regno nostro in aliqua terrarum illarum ordinatam & assignatam transulerint in nostri contemptum, & contra Chartam ordinationis, publicationis & inhibitionis prædictarum assignauerimus quosdam fideles nostros in diuersis partibus regni ad inquirendum de lanis & pellibus lanutis ad dictas terras alibi quàm ad Stapulam illam ductis, ita quod emendæ inde ad nos pertinentes, ad opus nostrum leuentur; etiam intellexerimus, quod quasi omnes mercatores tam indigenæ quàm alienigenæ huiusmodi mercimoniam in dicto regno nostro exercentes sunt culpabiles de præmissis: & quod plures inde indictati, ac alij timentes inde indictari, lanas suas ac pelles lanutas sub nominibus aliorum non culpabilium faciunt aduocari, & extra regnum nostrum transniti quibusdam alienigenis, sic culpabilibus in dictum regnum forsitan non reuersuris, vt sic forsistaturas prædictas effugiant, & nos de emenda ad nos sic pertinente illudant: quæ si permitterentur sic transire in nostri damnum non modicum redundarent. Nos volentes huiusmodi fraudibus obuiare, & nostris damnis quatenus bono modo poterimus præcauere, vobis præcipimus firmiter iniungentes, quod à singulis mercatoribus lanas seu pelles lanutas per portum prædictum ad partes externas ducere volentibus corporale sacramentum ad sancta Dei Evangelia recipiatis, quod ipsi lanas seu pelles lanutas sub nomine ipsius, cuius propriæ sunt, & non alterius aduocabunt. & tunc recepta ab illo cuius lanæ & pelles huiusmodi erunt, vel nomine suo sufficiente securitate pro qua respondere volueritis, de respondendo & faciendo nobis id quod ad nos pertinet de lanis & pellibus lanutis per ipsum ductis seu missis ad aliquam di-

cturam

cturam
tionis, &
illas lanu
ras trans
gem & C
Et po
sumæ pra

The King
greeting
damages and
tion that the
within our kin
these lues, and
Flanders and
images and in
aliens, buying
stours to trans
and sels, or cau
the Mayor and
when they shall
in the same way
to the marchant
salve marchant
euer, that shall
summes of mon
ficers, to our use
uer they shall
made for the sam
lified upon the
be proclaimed, th
the tenour of the
it beeing given
by such woollens
selues with the
prouinces, bestid
and obtained by
those prouinces,
publication, and
parts of our Real
unto any other pla
nalties due vnto
ner all marchantes
culpable of the
indicted, doe cause

the one part, and
part, wee sawe
ally to p[ro]secute
done unto them,
to speeche iustice
our subiects that
meane space we
needes to be se
the better of the
ministers, & iust

13.

salutem, Cum
uamina, quæ
tam indigenz
ementes, & se
bantia, Flan
ismodi damnis
ordinauerimus,
um & potesta
Janas illas
Communica
quando expel
villo modo: &
s & haredibus
e fuerint, qui
nem venerint,
imponant, &
mum, vbi cum
ostros ad opus
quam quidem
car, & firmier
didit sub poe
, quod quam
regnum & po
ad alia loca
maorem & co
dinatam & al
publicationis
partibus regni
illam illam du
tiam intellex
ismo¹¹ merci
lures, inde in
aliorum
alienigenis,
prædictas e
sic transire
ibus obuiare,
rimus firmiter
m prædictum
ngelia recipi
& non alterius
l nomine suo
nobis id
aliquam di
tarum

Statum terrarum Flandriæ & Brabantia, & de Artoys contra formam Chartæ, proclama
tionis, & inhibitionis supradictarum, si ipsum super hoc conuinci contingat, lanas & pelles
illas lanatas extra portum prædictum, recepta prius custuma debita de eisdem, ad partes exte
ras transire permittatis. Teste Rege apud Doueram decimo octauo die Iunij, per ipsum Re
gem & Consilium.

Et postmodum per breue de priuato sigillo eodem modo mandatum est collectoribus cu
stumæ prædictæ in portibus subscriptis: Videlicet,

- In portu villæ Southhampton.
- In portu villæ Weymouth,
- In portu villæ Sancti Botolphi.
- In portu villæ de Kingtone super Hull.
- In portu villæ de nouo Castro.
- In portu villæ de magna Iernemutha,
- In portu villæ de Lenne,
- In portu villæ de Gypwico.

The same in English.

An Ordinance of the Staple to bee holden at one certaine place.

The King unto his Collectors of custome, for wooll and woollen fells, in his port of London,
greeting. Whereas we upon the 20. of May, in the first yeere of our reigue, considering the
damages and grieuances that haue diuersly happened unto the marchants of our realme, upon occa
sion that the marchants both of our owne, & of other countreys, buying by wooll and woollen fells
within our kingdome and dominions, haue, for the better sale thereof, at their pleasure conueyed
theselues, and trasported the said wooll & fells into sundry places within the p[ro]uinces of Brabant,
Flanders and Artoys: and being desirous also, to our power, to p[ro]uide a remeie against such da
mages and inconueniences, haue obtained by our counsel, that all marchants, both home-boine and
aliens, buying by such woolls and fells, within our kingdome and dominion aforesaid, and being de
sirous to trasport them into the foresaid p[ro]uinces, there to bee solde, may carrie the saide woolls
and fells, or cause them to be caried to some certaine Staple, within any of the saide p[ro]uinces, by
the Sp[eci]al and Communitie of the said marchants of our realme, to be appointed and assigned, and
when they shall thinke it expedient, to be changed and remoued, and not unto any other place with
in the saide p[ro]uinces whatsoever: and whereas also, amongst other things, we haue granted un
to the marchants of our foresaid realme, for vs and our heires, that the Sp[eci]al and Councel of the
saide marchants for the time being, may impose vpon all marchants, home-boine or aliens whatso
euer, that shall transgresse the foresaid ordination, and shall thereof lawfully be convicted, certaine
summes of money to be paid for their offences, and that such summes must by our ministers and of
ficers, to our vse, be leuied out of the goods and wares of the marchants so offending, where soe
uer they shall chance to be found within our kingdome and dominions aforesaid, as in our Charter
made for the same purpose, it is more plainly expessed, (which Charter we haue caused to be pub
lished vpon the Sea-coasts, throughout all the countreys of our realme, and a strong prohibition to
be p[ro]clained, that no marchants, neither home-boine, nor strangers, may in any wise transgresse
the tenour of the foresaide Charter, vnder the penalties therein contained) and whereas afterwar
it beinge giuen vs to vnderstand, that diuers marchants both home-boine, and aliens, bought
by such woollers and woollen fells within our saide Realme and dominions, and conueyed them
selues with the saide woolls and fells for the sale thereof, vnto other places within the foresaide
p[ro]uinces, besides the saide Staple, which was, according to our graunt aforesaid, appointed
and obtained by the Sp[eci]al and communitie of the said marchants of our Realme, in some one of
those p[ro]uinces, to the contempt of our auctoritie, and contrary to the Charter of the ordination,
publication, and inhibition aforesaid, we assigned certaine of our faithfull subiects, in diuers
parts of our Realme, to make inquisition for such woolls and woollen fells, as were conueyed
vnto any other place of the saide p[ro]uinces, then vnto the Staple, so that by these meanes, the pe
nalties due vnto vs might bee leuied vnto our vse: and hauing intelligence also, that in a ma
nifeste manner, and that many being indicted thereupon, and others fearing to bee
indicted, doe cause their woolls and woollen fells to bee auouched vnder the names of per
sons

A Charter
made in the
first yeere of
his reigne.

sons not culpable, and to be sent ouer vnto certaine strangers being also culpable, and not minding perhaps to return any moze into our realme, that they may so escape the foresaid forfeitures, and defraud vs of the penaltie, appertaining of right vnto vs, (which abuses, if they were suffered so to goe unpunished woulde rebound vnto our extreme hindrance:) and being likewise delirious to withstand such deceitfull dealing, and so farre forth as wee can, to prevent our owne losses, we stricly command, and stricly charge you, that you doe receive of every particular merchant, desirous to comie any wools, or woollen fells out of the foresaid port, into any foreign dominions, a co[m]pozal out vpon Gods holy Euangelists: that they shall auouch all those wools and woollen fells vnder his name vnto whom they doe properly belong, or vnder the name of none other: and then taking sufficient security from the owner of those wools and fells, or in his name, in regard whereof you wil vndertake to warrant, and make good vnto vs those penalties and forfeitures which shal vnto vs appertaine, for all wools, and woollen fells conueied or sent by any of the foresaid merchants vnto any of the said p[ro]uinces of Flanders, Brabant, and Artoys, contrary to the Charter of the Proclamation and inhibition aboue mentioned (if they shal chance to be concerned hereof) that first, our due custome being received, you doe permit the said wools and woollen fells to passe out of the foresaid port into foreign countries, Witness the king at Douer the 18. day of June. By the king himselfe and his Councell,

And afterwarde by a Writte vnder the Kings priuile Seale there was a like commandement given vnto the Collectors of the custome aforesayde in the portes vnderwritten.

Which is to say:

Weymouth,
Southampton,
Saint Roulphs towne, now called Boston.
In the port of Kingdome vpon Hull.
the Towne of Newcastle,
Lernemouth magna, or Yermouth,
Lenne,
Gypwick or Ipswich.

A Catalogue of the great Masters of the Order of the Dutch knights, commonly called the Hospitalaries of Ierusalem:

and what great exploits every of the said Masters hath achieved, either in conquering the land of Prussia, or in taming and subduing the Infidels, or els in keeping them vnder their obedience and subiection, taken out of Munster.



The order of the Dutch knights had their first original at Ierusalem in the pere of our Loyde 1290, within the Hospitall of the blessed Virgine: and the first Master of the saide order was called Henric of Walpot, vnder whose many good things, and much wealth and riches were throughout all Germanie and Italie procured vnto the order: and the saide Hospitall was removed from Ierusalem vnto Ptolemais, otherwise called Acon, and the foresaid order grew and mightily increased, whereof I will hereafter discourse moze at large in my Treatise of Syria. Henric of Walpot deceased in the pere of Christ 1200. The 2. Master was Otto of Kuppen, and he continued Master of the order for the space of five peeres. The 3. was Hermannus Bare a goodly and deuout person, who deceased in the pere 1210, being interred at Acon, as his predecessors were. The 4. was Hermannus de Salza, who thirte peeres together gouerned the saide order, and managed the first expedition of warre against the infidels of Prussia, and obtained another Master also in Prussia to bee his Deputie in the same region. In the pere 1239, the knights of the two orders, who traueled into Lithuania to conuert the inhabitants thereof vnto Christ, seeing they were not of sufficient force to performe that enterprise, and that their enemies increased on all sides, they vnted themselves vnto the famous order of the Dutch knights in Prussia, that their worthy attempt might bee defended and promoted by the aide and assistance of the saide Dutch knights. At the very same time the ensigne of the crosse was exalted thorough out all Germanie against the Prussians, and a great armie of souldiers was gathered together, the Burgrau of Meidenburg being generall of the armie, who combining themselves vnto the Dutch knights, topped battell with the Infidels, and slew about five hundred Gentiles, who before that time had made horrible inuasions and incursions into the dominions of Christians, wasting all with fire and sword, but especially the land of Com, and Lubonia, which were the p[ro]uinc

English forces.

The first war
moued against
the Prussian
infidels, anno
dom. 1239.

ces of
ter, build
goose foot
Refil, Bar
Master of
vnto Ladis
sessions un
ligious bo
Palestina
great arm
cer, alias
the Parqu
strength of
season, the
obscure un
there was a
a great cle
Kunigsberg
of his fort
them to obed
nigsberg wa
Curland, the
armed them
the best of
ing published
succour of the
the inconstanc
besieged these
creame famine
our Loyd 126
giving charge
ward the Pruss
berg, but the
perished again
fidelitie. For
knights of the
that they caused
geed to be hange
of the said inu
knights with the
at the same inst
being toged in
knights, but all
knights of the
number of chem
against religion.
felues, until suc
saide Duke and
strained eo sine fo
his sonnes that
selfe neuer prosp
time obserued no
ated one of the
ons vpon the saide
terme of his life.
our Spy Martine
to see howe the Pr
and the thirde the
into their enemys

able, and not num-
bered forleitures,
they were suffering
likewise defec-
tuene our owne
every particular
into any forerin
all those woolls
the name of none
of in his name,
se penalties and
ic of sent by any
d Arroy, concea-
that chance to be
said woolls and
king at Douer

like commande-
written.

der of the
of Ierusa-

uenced,
uing

alem in the pre-
me: and the first
to home many
Germanie and
moved from le-
and Oyer grew
Treatise of Sy-
s Otto of Kri-
as Hermannus
at Acon, as his
rather gouerned
Prussia, and op-
the peere 1239,
thereof unto
their enemies
each knight in
and assistance
called thourgh
sides vnto the
nities, who be-
mans, waiting
ere the Pomer-
ces

ces of Conradus Duke of Mallowia. Nowe, the sayde knyghts hauing made to huge a slough-
ter, built the castle of Reden, betwene Pomerania and the land of Colm, and so by degrees they
goite footing in the land, and bylie erected moze castles, as namely, Crutzburg, Willenbur-
Reil, Bartenstein, Brunsburg, and Heilsburg, and furnished them all with garrisons. The Ma-
ster of the Oyer was Conradus Landgrauius, the brother of Lodouick, which was husband
vnto Ladie Elizabeth. This Conradus, by his fathers inheritance, gaue great riches and pos-
sessions vnto the Oyer, and caused Ladie Elizabeth to be interred at Marsburg, within the re-
ligious house of his saide Oyer. Under the gouernment of this Master, Acon in the lande of
Palestina was subdued vnto the Saracens. Moreover, in the peere 1254, there was another
great armie of souldiers prepared against Prussia, by the Princes of Germanie. For Odo-
acer, alias Odoacer king of Bohemia, Otto Marquess of Brandeburg, the Duke of Austria,
the Marques of Moravia, the Bishops of Colen and of Olmutz came marching on with great
strength of their Nobles and common souldiers, and invading the lande of Prussia in the winter
season, they constrained the inhabitants thereof to receiue the Christian faith, and to become
obedient vnto the knyghts. After which exploit, by the aduise and assistance of king Odoacer,
there was a castle built vpon a certaine hill of Samogitia, which immediately after grew to be
a great cite, being at this day the seate of the Prince of Prussia: and it was called by Odoacer
Kunigsberg, that is to say, Kings Mount, or Mount royall, being finished in the peere 1255. Vnto
them to obedience. The first Master was called Boppo ab Osterna, vnder whom the citie of Ku-
nigsberg was built. At the very same instant the knyghts being occupied about the warre of
Curland, the Prussians conspiring together, and abandoning the Christian faith, in furious maner
armed themselves against the Christians, defaced and burnt downe Churches, slew Priests, and to
the vermouth of their abilitie, banished all faithfull people. The report of which misdeemeanour be-
ing published throughtout all Germanie, an huge armie was leuied and sent for the defence and
succour of the knyghts, which marching into the land of Nacan, made many slaughters, & throug
the inconstancie of fortune sometimes woonne, and sometimes lost the victorie. Also the Infidels
besieged these three castles, namely, Bartenstein, Crutzberg and Kunigsberg, and brought ex-
treme famine vpon the Christians contained within the saide fortes. Againe, in the peere of
our Lord 1262, the Earle of Iuliers, with other Princes and great chivalrie came downe, and
giving charge vpon the Prussians, put three thousand of them to the edge of the sword. After-
ward the Prussians banding themselves together, were determined to spoile the castle of Kunig-
berg, but their confederacie being disclosed, they had the repulse. And when the knyghtes had
prevailed against them, they laide in pledges, and yet for all that were not afraid to breake their
fidelitie. For vpon a certaine time, after they had given diuers pledges, they slew two noble
knyghtes of the Oyer, and so by that means incensed the principall of the saide Oyer, in somuch
that they caused two paire of gallows to be set vp besides the principall of the saide Oyer, in somuch
gesto to be hanged thereupon. Which severitie so vered and prouoked the Prussians, that in reuenge
of the said inturp, they renewed bloody and cruel warres, slew many Christians, yea, and put 40.
of the said inturp, they renewed bloody and cruel warres, slew many Christians, yea, and put 40.
at the same instant in Pomerania a Duke called Suandepolcus, professing the Christian faith, but
being wined in league with the Prussians, he deuoured for many peeres, not onely to expell the
knyghts, but all Christians what soeuer out of the lande of Prussia, in which warre the sayde
knyghtes of the Oyer suffered many abuses. For they lost almost all their castles, and a great
number of themselves also were slaine. This Suandepolcus put in practise many lewde attempts
against religion. For he himselfe was baptized, he did moze mischief then the very Infidels them-
selves, vntill such time as the knyghts being assisted by the Princes of Germanie, brought the
saide Duke and the Prussians also into such straighes, that (maugre their heads) they were con-
strained to sue for peace. Afterward Suandepolcus lying at the point of death, admonished
his sonnes that they should not doe any iniurie vnto the knyghtes of the Oyer, affirming that him-
selfe neuer prospered so long as he vied warre against them. Howbeit his sonnes for a certaine
time obserued not their fathers counsel, vntill at length one of them named Wartelslaus, was mar-
red one of the Oyer, and the other called Samborus bestowed by legacie his goods and posses-
sions vpon the saide Oyer, receiuing maintenance and exhibition from the saide Oyer, during the
terme of his life. He continued also vnder the gouernment of the sayde Master Boppo, that
one Spy Martine a Gelin being accompanied with another knight, went into the countrey
to see howe the Prussians were employed. And meeting with thre Prussians, they slew two,
and the thirde they refered to guide them the directest way. But this guide betrayed them
into their enemies handes. Which when they perceiued, they slew the Traytour. Then

The Prussians
abandon Chri-
stianitie.

Memorable
stratagem.

4000.

This man sent
an ambassa
dor to Richard
the second.

five Prussian horsemen came riding and took them, delivering them bounde to the custody of two. And the other three pursued the horses of the two, which broke loose in the time of the fray. And they tarrying somewhat long, the other two would have beheaded the two knights in the meane season. And as one of them was striking with his sword sworde, at the necke of Sir Martine, hee saide unto them: Sirs, you doe unwisely in that you take not off my garment before it be defiled with blood. They therefore loosing the copies wherewith hee was bounde, to take off his garment, set his armes more at liberty. Which Sir Martine well perceiving reached his keeper such a blow, that his sword fell to the ground. Which hee with all speede taking up, slew both the keepers and unbounde his fellowe knight. Whereafter, seeing the other three Prussians continuing furiously upon them, with some courageous heartes they made towarde the saide Prussians, and slew them, and so escaped the danger of death. The seventh great Master was Hanno de Sangerhusen, who deceased in the yeere one thousand two hundred threene. The eighth was Hartmannus ab Haldringen who deceased in the yeere 1282. The ninth was Burkardus a Schuenden being afterwarde made knight of the order of Saint Johns. The tenth was Conradus a Feuchtwang: under this man the Citie of Acon in Palestina was sacked by the Soldan, and many people were slayne. The Templars which were therein returned home out of France, where they had great reuerences. The Knights of Saint John, who also had an Hospital at Acon, changed their place, and went into the Ile of Cyprus, and from thence departing unto Rhodes, they subdued that Islande unto themselves. Nowe the Dutch Knights abounded with wealth and possessions throughout all Germanie, being Lordes of a good part of Prussia, Liuania, and Curland, whose chiefe house was then at Marburg, till such time as it was remooved unto Marienburg, a Towne of Prussia. The eleventh great Master was Godfrey Earle of Hohenloe. Under this man the knights sustained a great overthrowe in Liuania: but having strengthened their armie, they slew neere unto Ryc foure thousande of their enemies. The twelfth Master was Sifridus a Feuchtwang. Under this man, the principall house of the Order was translated from Marburg to Marienburg, which in the beginning was established at Acon, and from thence was remooved unto Venice, and from Venice unto Marburg. This Sifridus deceased in the yeere 1341. The thirteenth Master was called Charles Bisshop of Triers. This man built a for upon the river of Mummel, and it was named Christmummel. The fourteenth was Warnerus ab Orsele, whome a certaine knight of the Order slew with his sword. The 15. was Ludolphus Duke of Brunswick, who built the Towne of Ylgenburg, and deceased 1351. The sixteenth was Theodoricus Earle of Aldenborg, and hee built the Towne of Barenstein. The seuenenth was Ludolphus surnamed King. The eighteenth was Henrie a Tufimer. The nineteenth Winricus a Knoppesrodt. In this mans time the knights took the king of the Lithuanians named Kinfut captiue, and kept him prisoner in Marienburg halfe a yeere, but by the helpe of a seruante, having broken out of the Castle, hee escaped away by night. But fearing that hee was layde waite for in all places, hee left his horse, and went on foote through unknownen pathes. In the day time hee hidde himselfe in secreete places, and in the night hee continued his iourney untill hee came unto Massovia. But all the Knights toye was turned into sorrowe, after they had lost so great an enemy. The twentieth great Master was Conradus Zolner of Rothenstein. The one and twentieth Conradus Walenrod. The two and twentieth Conradus a Iungingen, who deceased in the yeere one thousand four hundred and seuen. The thre and twentieth Viricus a Iungingen. This man dyed in battell in the yeere one thousand foure hundred and tenne: which battell was fought against Vladislaus father of Casimire. Both parties had seuen nightie and huge forces: unto the Polonians the Lithuanians and the Tartars had loyened themselves, ouer whome one Vitoldus was capitaine: the Dutch Knights had taken up Souldiers out of all Germanie. And when eache armie had encamped themselves one within twenty furlongs of another, (hoping for victorie and impatient of delay) the great Master of the Prussians sent an herald to denounce warre unto the King, and immediately (alarme being giuen) it is reported that there were in both armies fourtie thousand horsemen in a readinesse. Vladislaus commaunded the Lithuanians and the Tartars to giue the first onsette, and placed the Polonians in the reerwarde of the battell: on the contrarie side, the Prussians regarded least of all to reserve any strong troupes behinde, which might rescue such as were wearie, and renewe the fight, if neede should require, but set forward the flower and chualtrie of all his Souldiers in the very forefront of the battell. The charge being giuen certaine unman

Tartars

Rich

Tartars
the seare
dead each
Lithuanian
filled foot
no sooner
Polonian
And the s
him that
The malle
gether, an
his people
as the Polo
and the Pol
sought in
successe of
querous. W
the knights
the Polonia
the possession
Plaen. This
Master was
Paulus a Rus
conflicts betw
with the state
freedome, th
lonian king to
ab Ellenich
chiefe cities an
were oppressed
king of Poloni
late with the k
guer. Also Fre
the knights, w
dels, and had
siding Nil in
ring unto the
and knights, p
bellon: but th
out forre in
into Prussia
and proceeding
son the Master
waves in his
their cenes, coo
ly escaped upon
themselves obt
which he had
he recovered
burg, Kunigsber
eracted then
whole capitaine
great summe
known, the Ma
solation was
caped Pomerell
burg: and the
yeere 1466. The
Prussia, The 30

me to the custo-
 me looke in the
 e haue behended
 with his d'aw
 e unwisely in the
 soze looking the
 s moze at liber-
 that his swoye
 keepers and un-
 nning furtiously
 silians, and flew
 Hanno de San-
 tue. The eight
 ninth was Burc-
 nt Johns. The
 Paletina was
 ch were therein
 ighes of Shme
 into the Aile of
 mive unto them
 oughout all Ger-
 ose chiefe house
 , a Towne of
 her this man the
 ther armie, they
 was Sifridus a
 ated from Mar-
 tence was re-
 sed in the peere
 man built a for-
 tny was War-
 . The 15, was
 ceased 1351,
 of Barcentlein,
 Tufimer. The
 of the Lithu-
 ere, but by the
 ight. But for
 in foote through
 in the night
 ches way was
 h grand Padre
 alenrod. The
 land foure hun-
 ed in battell in
 e against Vla-
 d. Unto the
 olome one Vi-
 all Germanie,
 s of another,
 us sent an He-
 ien) it is re-
 . Vladislus
 laced the Po-
 ed least of all
 e, and reneve
 tie of all his
 eaine unarm'd
 Tartar

Tartars & Lithuanians were slaine handmoorth: howbeit the multitude pressed on, neither durst the fearefull Polonians turne their backs, and so a cruell battell was fought upon the heapes of dead carcases. The combat continued a long time, terrible slaughters were committed, and the Lithuanians and Tartars were slaine like sheepe. But when newe and fresh enemies continually issued forth, the Dutch knights being wearied, began to fight moze faintly. Which Vladislau no sooner perceived, but in all haste bee sent forward his mightie and well armed bande of Polonians, who suddenly breaking in renewed the skirmish. The Dutch were not able to withstand the furie of the fresh troupes (great oddes there is betwene the wearied Souldier and him that comes in a fresh) insomuch that the knights with their people were constrained to flee. The master of the Order seeing his souldiers give way unto the enemy, gathered a companie together, and withstoode him in the face, howbeit himselfe was slaine for his labour, the flight of his people proved greater and moze dishonourable, neither did the Dutch cease to flee, so long as the Polonians continued the chase. There fell on the knights partie manie thousand of men, and the Polonians gotte not the victorie without great spoile and damage. This battell was foughten in regard of the bounds of regions in the yeere 1410. All Prussia following the happy successe of the Polonian king (except Marienburg onely) peeled themselves unto him being Conquerour. Howbeit the Emperour Sigismund taking up the quarrell, peace was obtained betwene the knights and Polonia, and a league concluded, certaine summes of money also were paid unto the Polonian, Prussia was restored unto the knights, neither was the saide order disturbed in Plaen. This man being deposed by the Chapter, was 7. yeeres holden prisoner at Dantzick. The 25. Walter was Michael Kuchenmeister, that is, master of the Cookes of Sternberg. The 26. was Paulus a Ruffdort. The 27. Conradus ab Ellerichshausen. This man, after diuers and sundry conflicts betwene the Dutch knights, and the king of Polonia, concluded a perpetuall league with the saide king. Howbeit the citizens of Dantzick secretly going about to obeyne their freedom, that the foresaide Order might haue no dominion ouer them, made sute unto the Polonian king to be their Protector. This Conradus died in the yeere 1450. The 28. was Lewis chiefe cities and the knights of the Order. The citizens demanded libertie, complaining that they were oppressed with diuers molestations. Whereupon they proudly made sute unto Casimir then king of Polonia. The Master of the Order seeing what would come to passe began to expostu- late with the king, that he kept not the peace which had bene concluded betwene them to last for ever. Also Frederick the Emperour commaunded the Prussians to reuerne unto the obedience of the knights, who by the dint of their swordes had released that prouince out of the hands of Infidels, and had bought it with the shedding of much blood. Notwithstanding the popular sort per- sisting still in their stubborn determination, proceeded at length to open warre. The cities adbe- ring unto the king vsurped diuers Castles belonging to the Master, tooke certain Commanders and knights, pen, and some they slewe also. Fiftie and fixe townes conspired together in that re- bellion: but thinking their estate and strength not sure enough against their own gouernours with- out foreign aide, they chose king Casimir to be their lord. Whereupon the Polonian king marched into Prussia with a great armie, taking possession of such cities as peeled themselves unto him, and proceeding forward against Marienburg, besieged the castle and the towne. In the meane sea- son the Master hauing hired an armie of German souldiers, suddenly surprised the king at vna- wares in his tents, and slewe about 300. Polonians, tooke prisoners 136. noblemen, spoiled their tents,ooke away their horses, victuals, and armour, insomuch that the king himselfe hard- ly escaped upon one horse. These things came to passe in the yeere 1455. The Master hauing thus obtained the victorie, sent his armie into the countrey, and recovered the castles and cities which he had lost, to the number of 80. putting many of his enemies also unto the sword. Pozcour, he recovered Kunigsberg being one of the foure principall cities, which are by name Thorne, El- burg, Kunigsberg, and Gdanum, that is to say, Dantzick. And when the warre was longer pro- tracted then the Master could well beare, and a whole yeeres wages was unpaid unto his captains, those captaines which were in the garrison of Marienburg conspired against the Master, and for a great summe of money betrayed the castle of Marienburg unto the king. Which practice heerey knowne, the Master fled to Kunigsberg, and newe warre was begunne, and great spoile and de- solation was wrought on both sides: untill at length, after composition made, the king re- ceined Pomerella, and all the castles and townes therein, together with Marienburg and El- burg: and the master inueyted Samartia, Kunigsberg, &c. This composition was concluded in the yeere 1466. The 29. Walter was Henrie Reuff, first being deputie, and afterwarde Master of Prussia, The 30. was Henrie a Richenberg, who deceased in the yeere 1477. The 31. called

The great mas-
 ter overcom-
 mended the king
 of Polonia,

The king by
 treason betray-
 ed the castle
 of the
 Master,

Martine Truchses died in the yeere 1439. The 32. John a Tieffen died in the yeere 1500. The 33. being Duke of Saxonie, and marques of Misn, deceased in the yeere 1510. This man began to call in question, whether the foresaid composition concluded betwene the king of Polonia, and the Order, were to be observed or no: especially thence it contained certaine articles against equitie and reason. Whereupon he appealed unto the Bishop of Rome, unto the Emperour, unto the princes and electors of Germany, and prevailed with them so farre forth, that there was a day of hearing appointed at Posna in Polonia. And the Legates of both parts meeting heard complainis and excuses, & dispatched no other business. In the meane time Prince Frederick deceased in the eight yeere of his government. The 34. After was Albertus marques of Brandenburg, whom the King of Polonia did so grievously molest with war, and oppressed all Prussia with such extreme rigour, that the Prince of the countrey was constrained to make a league of foure yeeres with him, and to yeeld unto such conditions, as turned to the utter overthrowe of the whole Order. And amongst other conditions are these which follow. Sithence that the originall of all discorde betwene Polonia and the order doeth from hence arise, for that hitherto in Prussia, no lawfull heire and successour hath borne title and authoritie, but diuers and sundry haue had the government thereof, by whose meanes the nations haue bene prouoked one against another, much Christian blood hath bin shed, the lands and inhabitants grievously spoiled, and many widowes and Orphanes made: the Popes, Emperours, and Princes being often sollicit for the establishing of that perpetuall league, wherby Casimir hath heretofore concluded &c. Sithence also that the truce which hath bene agreed vpon of both parties is in short time to be expired, and that it is to be feared, that bloody warres will then be renewed, and that all things will growe worse and worse, vntill some lawfull composition be made, and some good and wholesome deuise be put in practice, as well for the benefit of the King and of his posteritie, as for the commoditie of the whole common weale of Prussia, especially considering that Albertus the Marques refuseth not to submitte himselfe to the Councell of the King, &c.

The Oration or speech of the Ambassadors sent from Conradus de Zolner Master generall of the land of Prussia, vnto Richard the second, King of Eng- land, and France, &c.

The messengers which are sent from the Master generall of the land of Prussia, doe pro-
pound and declare the affaires and negotiations vnderwritten.



The ancient
assistance of
the kings of
England a-
gainst indolis.

Whereas it is apparant, that diuers and sundrie times heretofore, your fa-
mous progenitors and predecessors the kings of England haue alwaies
bene gracious promoters and speciall friends vnto the generall Masters of
the land of Prussia, and of the whole order: whereas also they haue bought
safely, by their Barons, Knights, and other their nobles of the kingdome of
England, vnto the Masters and order aforesaid, sundry and manifold fa-
uourable assistances in the conquest of the Indolis (in whose steppes your
excellent Paetie insisting, haue, in these your dayes shewed your selfe in like sort right gra-
tiously affected vnto the Master generall which now is, and vnto his famous Predecessour) in
due consideration of the premises, and in regard also of diuers other affaires, which are at this
present to be propounded vnto your Highnes, the foresaid Master general which now is hath com-
mended vs his messengers to be sent with letters of credence vnto your Paetie: humbly praying, and
earnestly beseeching your roial clemency, that in times to come, the said Master general, his success-
ors, & our whole Order may of your bounty most graciously obtaine the same fauour, beneuolence,
and steadfast amity & friendship, which hath bin continued from the times of your foresaid predecess-
sors: in regard wherof we do offer the said Master of ours, and our whole company, vnto your high-
nes, as your perpetual and deuote friends. Notwithstanding (most soueraigne Prince) certaine o-
ther things we haue to propound vnto your Grace, in the name & behalfe of our saide Master and
Order, by way of complaint, namely, that at certaine times past, and especially within the space of
x. yeeres last expired, his subjects and marchants haue sustained sundry damages and ablations of
their goods, by diuers subjects and inhabitants of your realme of England, and that very often,
both by sea and land: the which, for the behalf, and by the appointment of the Master general aforesaid,
of his predecessors, are put downe in registers, and recorded in the writings of his cities in
the land of Prussia. Of which parties damaged, some haue obtained letters froe the Master general
that

that now
memoz
from the
their time
plains &
consider
troubled
better ch
subjects, a
lish march
reasonable
also haue
of princip
two the p
for the in
your sub
general we
after f cas
command
Prussia res
they were
ships, pro
any other
ple, froe
own men
otherwise
themselves
their own
med with
rooke away
weapons of
they make
sisted vpo
urn, they
land called
not declare
your chanc
when they
they spake
your own
cherdore, &
Afterward
iointly and
upon the
their humble
selves, the
procure som
cute their
genses, and
& to no pur
by arrestin
the Master
his subjects
goods to be
in sure plac
all and sing
and our O
but are firm
your Highne

ere 1500. The
his man began
of Polonia, and
articles against
emperoz, unto the
ere was a day of
heard complain-
k decreased in the
denburg, whom
with such extreme
ure peeres with
hole Dider. And
of all discorde be-
no latofull hope
hermene thereof,
istian blood had
pphans made the
perpetual league,
had bene agreed
at blood warres
me lawfull com-
for the benefit
of Prussia, else
to the Council

urs sent
land

Prussia, doe pro-

etofore, your su-
and haue alwaies
erall Masters
they haue vouch-
the kingdome of
and manifeste so-
pote steppes your
foze righte gra-
pdecessour) in
which are at this
now is haue com-
pelling praying, and
erual, his succesi-
our, beneuolent,
foresaid predecess-
or, unto your high-
pnce) certaine
the Master and
with the space of
and ablations of
that very often,
her general aduise
of his cities in
the Master general
that

that now is, & also from his predecessoz, unto your renowned grandfather R. Edward of famous
memory, and sundry times unto your highnes also, to haue restitution made for their goods taken
from them: whereby they haue nothing at al puailed, but heaping losse vpon losse haue mispent
their time & their charges: both because they were not permitted to propound & exhibit their com-
plaints & letters before your maiesty, and also for diuers other impediments. Certain of them also
considering how others of their countriemen had laboured in vain, & fearing the like successe, haue
troubled the Master general very often with grieuous and sundry complaints, craning & humbly
beseeching at his hands, that he would vouchsafe graciously to prouide for the as his faithful & loial
subjects, as touching the restitution of their losses: especialy seeing & so much wealth of the Eng-
lish marchants was euer yeere to be found in Prussia, as being arrested, they might obtaine some
reasonable satisfaction for their losses. Althie thing the Master general also said & his predecessoz
also haue deferred unto this present (albeit to y great losse of their subjects) thereby hauing inere
& pncipal respect unto those special curtelles and fauours which your excellent Maiesty & your
wothy progenitors haue right graciously vouchsafed vpon our Masters and Dider: neither yet
for the injuries also said, was there euer any maner of offence, or molestation offered unto any of
your subjects noble or ignoble whatsoeuer. Howeuer, in the name & behalfe of our foresaid Pa.
general we do propound unto your excellency by way of cōplaint, that in the yere last past, 6. dayes
after y feast of the Ascension, certain persons of your realm of England, with their ships & captains
comming unto the poze of Flanders, named Swen, & finding there, amongst sundry other, 6. ships of
Prussia resident, which had there arrived in diuers goods & marchandises: and being informed that
they were of Prussia, & their friends, they caused them & their ships to remain next unto their owne
ships, proceeding unto them, that they should in no soze be molested or damaged by themselves or by
any other of their company, & that they would faithfully defend them, as if they were their own peo-
ple, fro y hands of their aduersaries: & for their farther security & trust, they deliuered some of their
own men & their standers into our mens ships: howbeit a while after being stirred up, & bene far
otherwise, they took out of y foresaid ships al kind of armors, wherewith they were to gear & defend
themselves fro pirates, & they detained the masters of those ships, not suffering them to return vnto
their own ships & companies, one also of y said ships (hauing taken al the goods out of her) they consu-
med with fire. And within 3. daies after they came with our accord vnto y abouenaiced ships, and
cooke a way from them al their goods and marchandises which they could find, and all the armour and
weapons of the said ships, the cheltes also of the marchants, of the ship-masters, & of other persons
and they brake open, taking out money, iewels, garments, & diuers other commodities: and so they in-
slicted vpon them irreuererable losses and unkind grieuances. And departing out of the foresaid ha-
land called Sandwich. Also, being after ward released, were compelled to sweare, that they should
not declare y injuries offered vnto them, either before your soial maiesty, or your hon. Council, or
your chancelor: neither were they permitted to come on those. And being offered such hard measure,
when they made pitiful mones & complain: s vnto your foresaide subjects, amongst other matters
they spake on this wise vnto them: Do you complain of injuries & losses offered vnto you? Lo, in
your own colterey of Prussia there are English marchants, & goods sufficient, go your waies home
your own colterey of Prussia, taking two for one: and in this maner they were left, & so departed.
Afterward returning vnto y land of Prussia, they & their friends repaired vnto the Mast. general,
toinely and w one consent making their complaint vnto him of the losses which had bin inflicted
vpon the by your subjects. And prostrating themselves at his feet, they all and euery of them made
their humble sues, y he would haue compassion on them, as vpon his pooze subjects, regarding the
selues, their wiues, & children, and pitying their distress, and penury, and that he would graciously
procure some redress for them. And when he offered his letters vnto them, wishing them to prose-
cute their cause before your highnes, they answered that they were no way able to defray the ex-
penses, and that others, who were in like soze damaged, had laboured that way altogether in vain
& to no purpose: beseeching him again and again, that he would by another kind of means, namely
by arresting of your marchants and their goods, procure the restitution of their losses. At length
the Master general being moued by so many and so great complaints, and by the molestation of
his subjects, caused (albeit still soze against his will) a certaine portion of English marchants
goods to be laid hold on, and to be arrested, in his cities of Elburg & Danzik, and to be bestowed
in sure places, until such time as he might conveniently by his messengers propound and exhibit
all and singular the premises vnto your highnes. And so much as the foresaid Master general
and our Dider do know no iust occasion, whereby they haue deserved your maiesties indignation,
but are firmly and most undoubtedly perswaded, to finde all curtelles, fauour, and friendship at
your Highnesse, according to your wonted clemencie: the said Master general theretofore maketh

The arresting
of the English
goods and
marchants.

no doubt, that al the aboue written damages & molestacions, being in such sort, against God and iustice, offered vnto his subjects by yours, be altogether unknown vnto your magnificence, & continuing against your mind: wherfore presently vpon the foresaid arrest of your marchants goods, he dispatched his messengers vnto your roial maiesty. Wherof one deceased by the way, namely in the territory of Holland: & the other remained sick in those parts for a long season: & so that ambassage took none effect. Wherfore the said master general was desirous to send his now & second time also vnto your highnesse. We doe make our humble suite therfore, in the name & behalf of our Spallier and Oyder aforesaid, vnto your kingly supremacy, that, hauing God and iustice before your eyes, and also the dutifull and obsequious demeanour of the said master, and order towards you, you would vouchsafe to extend your gracious clemency, for the redress of the premises: whereby the foresaid losses may be redressed and repaid vnto our subjects. All which notwithstanding, that it would please you of your wisdom & prouidence to procure so absolute a remedy, by means wherof, in time to come, such dealings and inconueniences may be avoided on both parts, & finally that your marchants may quietly be possessed of their goods arrested in Prussia, and our marchants may be admitted vnto the possession of their commodities attached in England, to conuert & apply them vnto such uses, as to themselves shal seem most conuenient. Howbeit (most gracious prince and lord) we are to sollicite your highnesse, not onely about the articles to be propounded concerning the losses aforesaid, but moze principally, for certain sinister reports and superstitious slanders, wherewith certaine of your subjects, not seeking for peace, haue falsely informed your maiesty, & your most honorable & discrete Councill: affirming that at the time of & aforesaid arrest your marchants were barbarously intreated, that they were cast into loathsome prisons, yenchted in myre and water up to & neck, restrained from al conference and company of men, and also that their meat was shewn vnto them, as a bone to a dog, with many other enymities, which they haue most slanderously deuised concerning the master general aforesaid, and his people, and haue published them in these dominions: vpon the occasion of which falsehoods certain marchants of our parts, and of other regions of Alemain (who, of your special beneuolence, were indued with certaine priuileges and fauours in your citie of London, and in other places) were, as malefactors, apprehended and caried to prison, vntill such time as the truth was moze apparant. Whereupon, the foresaid master general propounded his humble suite vnto your maiesty, that such enemies of truth and concord, your Spallier would vouchsafe in such sort to chastise, that they may be an example vnto others presuming to doe the like.

Howeouer, (high and mighty Prince and lord) it was reported vnto our Spallier general, that his former Legats required of your maiesty safe conduct freely to come into your highnesse Realme. Which when hee heard, he was exceedingly offended therat, since vndoubtedly they did not this at his commaundment or direction. We therfore humbly beseech your Grace, as touching this oversight, to holde the Spallier general excused, because there is no need of safe conduct, betwene so speciall friends.

Furthermoze, sundry damages and complaints of the foresaid general Spallier, and his subjects are by this exhibited, and put downe in the bills following. Also, all and singular dammified persons, besides other proofes, were compelled to verifie the losses by their forsmall othes, taken vpon the holy Bible.

Lastly, we doe make our humble suite and petition vnto the prouidence and discretion of your highnesse, and of your honorable Councell, that concerning the premises, and all other matters propounded, or to be propounded vnto your Spallier, we may obtaine a speedy answer, and an effectuall end, & of it would rebound vnto our great charges and losse to make any long delays.

An agreement made by the Ambassadors of England and Prussia, confirmed by king Richard the second.

Richard by the grace of God, king of England, and France, and lord of Ireland, To all, vnto whom these present letters shall come, greeting. We haue seene and considered the composition, opinionation, concord, and treatie, betwene our welbeloued clearkes, master Nicholas Stocker, licentiate in both lawes, Walter Sibel, and Thomas Graa, citizens of our citie of London & York, our messengers and ambassadours on the one part: and the honourable and religious personages, Conradus de Walrode, great commander, Sifridus Walpode de Basenheim, chiefe hospitallary commander in Elburg, and Viricus Hachenberg Treasurer, the messengers and ambassadours of the right reuerend and religious lord, lord Conradus Zolner de Rothenstein, master generall of the knightly order of the Dutch hospital of Saint Mary at Ierusalem on the other part, lastly concluded and agreed vpon in these wordes. In the name of the supream and indissoluble Trinitie, the Father, the Sonne, and the holy Ghost, Amen. Forasmuch as the authour of peace will haue peace-

makers

and God and in-
cidence, & commit-
ments goods, he dis-
tinctly in the ter-
ritory ambassage took
time also unto
Haller and
Haller, and also the
would vouchsafe
these losses may
please you of
in time to come,
merchants may
admitted unto the
such loss, as to
we are to sollicite
these losses, but
certaine of your
honorable & discrete
counsellors, and
the matter ge-
nerall, that his
honorable Realme
the did not this
as touching this
duty, betweene
and his subjects
permitted per-
sons, taken up
discretion of your
other matters
there, and an
ing delayes.

general, that his
honorable Realme
the did not this
as touching this
duty, betweene
and his subjects
permitted per-
sons, taken up
discretion of your
other matters
there, and an
ing delayes.

and his subjects
permitted per-
sons, taken up
discretion of your
other matters
there, and an
ing delayes.

and his subjects
permitted per-
sons, taken up
discretion of your
other matters
there, and an
ing delayes.

d and

d, To all, unto
the composi-
tion, Nicholas Stockert,
London & York,
these personages,
these hospitalary
ambassadors of
Haller general of
the, lately com-
e to the Trinity, the
will have peace-
makers

makers to be the sons of blessednes, and the execrable enemy of peace to be expelled out of the do-
minions of Christians: therefore for the perpetuall memorie of the thing, be it known unto all
men who shall see or heare the remembrance of these presents: that there being matter of dissension and
discord betwene the most renowned prince and king, Richard by the grace of God king of
England and France, and lord of Ireland, and his subjects on the one part: and the right reverend
of the Duch hospital of St. Marie at Jerusalem, Haller general of the knightly order
the other part: the foresaid lord and general master, upon mature counsell and deliberation had,
sent his honourable ambassadours towards England unto the foresaid most souveraigne prince
and king, to propound and make their complaint unto him of violence and injuries offered (as it
is sayd) by the English unto the Prussians: in consideration whereof certaine goods of the mar-
chantes of England were arrested in the land of Prussia. Whose complaint the foresaid most gra-
teous prince did courteously and friendly admit, receive, and accept, and after many speeches deter-
red in this treaty, lovingly dismissed them unto their owne countrey againe, promising by his
letters unto the foresaid reverend Haller general, that hee would dispatch his ambassadours unto
the land of Prussia; Whereupon, in the yeere 1388, he sent the hon: and reverend personages
Haller Nicholas Stockert licentiate of both lawes, Thomas Graa, and Walter Sibill, citizens of
London and Yorke, with sufficient authority and full commandement, to handle, discusse, and fi-
nally to determine the foresaid busines, and with letters of credence unto the right reverend lord
and master general of the said order. Which ambassadours, together with John Bevis of London their
informers, and the letters aforesaid, and their ambassage, the said right reverend lord and Haller ge-
nerall, at his castle of Marienburgh, the 28. of July, in the yeare aforesaid, reverently and honour-
ably received and entertained: and in his minde esteemed them worthy to create and decide the
causes aforesaid: and so unto the said ambassadours he toynd in commission on his behalfe, thye
of his owne counsellors, namely the honourable and religious personages Conradus de Walrode
burg, Wolricus Hachenberger treasurer, being all of the order aforesaid. Which ambassadours so
entersailing about the premises, and sundry conferences and consultations having passed between
them, friendly and with one consent, concluded an agreement and conceyd in manner following:
That is to say:

First, that all arrestments, repossessions, and impignozations of whatsoever goods and merchandi-
ses in England and Prussia, made before the date of these presents, are from henceforth quiet, free,
and released, without all fraud and dissimulation: inasmuch that the damages, charges and ex-
penses occasioned on both parts by reason of the foresaid goods arrested, are in no case hereafter to
be required or chalenged by any man: but the demands of any man whatsoever propounded in
this regard, are and ought to be altogether frustrate and void, and all actions which may or shall be
commenced by occasion of the said goods arrested, are to be extinct and of none effect.

Moreover, it is secondly concluded and agreed, that all and singular Prussians pretending them-
selves to be injured by the English at the port of Swen, or elsewhere, howsoever, and whensoe-
uer, before the date of these presents, having received the letters of the foresaid right reverend
lord and Haller general, and of the cities of their abode, are to repayre towards England, unto the
said hon: ambassadours, who are to assist them, and to propound and exhibit their complaints,
unto the foresaid lord and king. The most gracious prince is bounde to doe his endeavour, that the
parties damaged may have restitution of their goods made unto them, or at least complete iustice
and iudgement without delay. Also in like manner all English men affirming themselves to have
bene endamaged by Prussians, wheresoever, howsoever, and whensoever, are to have recourse un-
to the often foresaid right reverend lord the Haller general, with the letters of their king
and of the cities of their abode, propounding their complaints and causes unto him. Which like-
wise is bound to doe his endeavour that the said losses and damages may be restored, or at the least
that speedy iudgement may be, without all delayes, executed. This caveat being premised in each
clause, that it may and shall be freely granted and permitted unto every man that will civilly make
his suite and complaint, to doe it either by himselfe, or by his procurator or procuratores.

Also thirdly it is agreed, that whosoever of Prussia is determined criminally to propound his cri-
minal complaints in England: namely that his brother or kinsman hath bene slain, wounded, or
maimed, by English men, the same partie is to repayre unto the cite of London in England, and
unto the said ambassadours, bringing with him the letters of the said right reverend lord the ma-
ster general, and of the cities of their abode: which ambassadours are to have free and full authority,
according to the complaints of the men of Prussia, and the answers of the English men, to make
and ordaine a friendly reconciliation or honest recompence betweene such parties: which reconcil-
iation

1383.

1.

2.

3.

liaction the sayd parties reconciled are bound undoubtedly & without delay to obserue. But if there be any English man found, who shall rashly contradiet or contemne the composition of the foresayd ambassadoys: then the sayd ambassadoys are to bring the foresayd Prussian plaintifes before the presence of the kings Maiestie: and also to make supplication on the behalfe of such plaintifes, that complete iustice and iudgement may without delays bee administered, according as those suites are commenced. Whosoever whatsoeuer English man, against whom any one of Prussia would enter his action, shall absent himselfe at the terme, the sayd ambassadoys are to summon and scite the foresayd English man to appeare at the terme next ensuing, that the plaintifes of Prussia may in no wise seeme to depart or to returne home, without iudgement or the assistance of lawe. Nowe if the sayd English man being summoned shall be found disobedient, the foresayd ambassadoys are to make their appeale and supplication in manner aforesayd. And in like sort in all respects shall the English plaintifes be dealt withall in Prussia, namely in the cite of Danzick, where the deputies of the sayd cite and of the cite of Elburg shall take vnto themselves two other headboroughs, one of Danzick, and the other of Elburg: which four commissioners are to haue in all respects, the very like authoritie of deciding, discussing, and determining all criminall complaints propounded criminally, by English men against any Prussian or Prussians, by friendly reconciliation, or honest recompense, if it be possible. But if it cannot friendly be determined, or if any Prussian shall not perforce obedience vnto any such order of composition, but shall be found to contradiet and to contemne the same: from thenceforth the said four deputies and headboroughs are to make their appeale and supplication vnto the Master generall of the land aforesayd, that vnto the sayd English plaintifes speedy iudgement and complete iustice may be administered. But if it shall so fall out that any of the principall offenders shall increase, or already are deceased in either of the sayd countreies, that then it shall bee free and lawfull for the plaintiffe to prosecute his right against the goods or heires of the party deceased. Also, for the executing of the premises the termes under written are appointed: namely the first, from the Sunday whereupon Quasi modo geniti is to be sung next ensuing, vntill the seuerth day following: The second vpon the feast of the holy Trinitie next to come, and for seven dayes following: The third vpon the eight day after Saint John Baptill next to come, & for seven dayes following: The fourth, last, and peremptory terme shall be vpon the feast of S. Michael next to come, and vpon seven dayes next following. And from thenceforth all causes which concerne death, or the mayming of a member, with all actions proceeding from them, are to remaine altogether void and extinct. And if peradventure any one of the foresayd ambassadoys, shall in the meane season dye, then the other two shall haue authoritie to chuse a third vnto them. And if after the date of these presents any cause great or small doth arise or spring forth, it must be decided in England and in Prussia, as it hath bene accustomed in times past and from ancient times.

An ancient custom.

4.
The privilege
of the Eng-
lish marchants
in Prussia.

Also, it is further concluded and agreed vpon, that all lawfull marchants of England who-
ever shall haue free licence and authoritie, with all kindes of shippes, goods, and marchandises, to resorte vnto every port of the land of Prussia, and also to transpore all such goods and marchandises by farther vnto any other place in the sayde land of Prussia, and there with all kindes of persons freely to bargaine and make sale, as heretofore it hath from ancient times bene accustomed. Which privilege is granted in all things and by all circumstances vnto the Prussians in England. And if after the date of these presents, betwene the sayd kingdome of England, and land of Prussia any dissension or discorde (which God forbid) should arise: then the foresayd soueraigne prince and king of England, and the sayd right reuerend lord the Master generall are mutually by their letters and messengers to give certifi-
cation and intimation one vnto another, concerning the matter and cause of such dissension and discorde: which intimation, on the behalfe of the foresayd soueraigne prince & king of England, shall be deliuered in the foresayd cite of Marienburg: but on the behalfe of the sayd right reuerend lord the Master generall, such intimation shall be giuen in the cite of London aforesayd, vnto the Mayor of the said cite: that then such a denunciation or intimation being made, the marchants of England and the subjects of the land of Prussia may, within the space of one yeere next following, freely and safely returne home with all their goods & marchandises: if at the least, in the meane while, some composition, & friendly league betwene the two foresayd countreies be not in some sort concluded. And that all the premises may more firmly and faithfully be put in due p-
cise and execution on both partes, for the strong and inuiolable keeping of pence and tranquillity: and also for the full condemnation and strengthening of all the sayde premises, the three foresayd honourable and religious personages being by the said right reuerend lord the Master generall appointed as commissioners to deale in the aboue written obligation and composition, haue caused their seals vnto these presents to be put:

Rich
put: and
even as
ambassad
Marienbu
And we c
compositi
these our l
the thirtee

The

O
the bu
the, &
menbrance,
his vnto your
ladies, where
kingdome wi
gers annoyed
your realme,
nages, master
assistance of thei
foyd damages,
sayd it doeth n
the dammish
plemment and ex
of answere vnto
communitie of
liament, so feid
sayd, Howbeit
vidence of God
your highnesse,
fer offered vnto
a remedie and a
mooue and inuile
subjects may be
inriched by the o
composition afo
and contrariwise
misold discommod
being reasonably
uche and repeale
thereof, purely an
ther our selues or
but from hencefo
providet not w
hono: & that of yo
all marchants of yo
according to the fo
euen so in all respec
dominations: & y
aforesayd, notwithstanding
selues vnto your hig

put : and the sayd obdination also, and letter in the same tenour word for word, and in all pointes
euen as it is inserted into these presents, they haue mutually receiued fro the abouenamed thre
ambassadors of the right soueraigne king of England vnder their seales. Given at the castle of
Marienburg in the yere of our lord aforesayd, vpon the twentieth day of the month of August.
And we therfore doe accept, approve, ratifie, and by the tenour of these presents doe confirme, the
composition, obdination, concord, and treaty aforesayd. In testimony whereof we haue caused
these our letters to be made patents. Witness our selues at Westminster the 22. of October, in
the thirteenth yere of our reigne.

By the king and his counsell,

Lincolne.

The letters of *Conradus de Iungingen*, Master generall of *Prussia*,
written vnto *Richard* the second, king of *England*, in theyere
1398, for the renouncing of a league and composition conclu-
ded betwene *England* and *Prussia*, in regard of mani-
fold iniuries offered vnto the *Prussians*.

Our humble commendations, with our earnest prayers vnto God for your Maiestie, premi-
sible. After remoued prince and mighty lord, it is not (we hope) out of your Maiesties re-
membrance, how our famous predecessor going immediately before vs sent certaine letters of
his vnto your highnesse, effectually contayning sundry complaints of grieuances, iniuries and
losses, wherewith the marchantes of his lande and other being woont in times past to visite your
kingdome with their goods and marchandises, haue bene contrary to their liberties and priuile-
ges annoyed with manifold iniuries and wrongs. Especially suchens they haue bene molested in
your realme, being contrary to the friendly composition made and celebrated by the hono: perso-
nages, master Nicholas Stocket, Thomas Graa and Walter Sibill, in the yere 1388, with the as-
sistance of their counsellors on our part, and contrary to God and all iustice, or yessed with mani-
fold damages, losses, and grieuances: as in certaine articles exhibited vnto our predecessor afo-
sayd it dooth moze manifestly appeare. In consideration whereof being vehemently moued by
the dammished parties, he humbly besought your highnesse by his messengers and letters, for com-
pliment and execution of iustice. About the which affayres your Maiestie returned your letters
of answer vnto our sayd predecessor, signifying that the sayd busynesse of articles concerned al the
communaltye of your realme, and that your highnesse purposed, after consultation had in your par-
liament, to send a moze deliberate answer concerning the premises, vnto our predecessor afo-
sayd. Howbeit he being by death translated out of this present world, and our selues by the pro-
vidence of God succeeding in his roome, and also long time expecting an effectual answer from
your highnesse, are not yet informed as we looked for: albeit the complaints of iniuries and los-
ses offered vnto our subjects doe continually increase. But from hencefoorth to prouide
a remedie and a caueat for the time to come, the sayd complaynt woth vpon great reasons
mooue and inuite me. Suchens therfore in regard of the sayd composition, neither you nor your
subjects may be iudged in the empire: and suchens plaine reason requireth that the one be not
enriched by the others losse: as vndoubtedly our subjects shoulde sustaine great damage by the
composition aforesayd, by vertue whereof your subjects doe enioy all commodities in our lande,
and contrariwise our subjects in your realme haue suffered, & yet sundry wayes do suffer ma-
nifold discommodities, losses and iniuries. Therefore (most soueraigne prince and mighty lord)
being reasonably moued vpon the causes aforesayd, we doe, by the aduise of our counsellors, re-
uoke and repeale the sayd composition concluded as is aboue written, together with the effect
therof, purely and simply renouncing the same by these presents: refusing hereafter to haue ei-
ther our selues or our subjects in any respect to stand bound by the vertue of the sayd composition:
but from hencefoorth, and for the times heretofore also, bee it altogether void and of none effect.
Whereby not withstanding, that from the time of the notice of this denunciation given vnto the
hono: Maior of your cite of London, for the space of a yere next ensuing, it shall be lawfull for
all marchantes of your kingdome whatsoever, with their goods and marchandises to retorne home,
according to the forme in the sayd composition exprest: conditionally that our subjects may
euen so in all respects be permitted to depart, with the safety of their goods and liues out of your
kingdome, notwithstanding. Wherewith any other affayres whatsoever, becomyng to submit our
selues vnto your highnesse pleasure and commaund, both our selues, and our whole order are right
willing

willing and desirous : and also to benefite and promote your subiects we wil endeavour to the utmost of our willey. Given in our castle of Marienburg in the yeare of our Lord 1398, and upon the 22. day of February.

Frater Conradus de Iungingen, master generall of the Order of the Dutch knights of S. Maries hospital at Ierusalem.

A briefe relation of William Esturmy, and John Kington concerning their ambassages into Prussia, and the Hanse-townes.

1403.

In primis, that in the month of Iuly, and in the yeare of our Lord 1403, and the fift yeare of the reigne of our soueraigne Lord the king that now is, there came into England the ambassadours of the mighty lord Fr: Conradus de Iungingen, being then Master general of Prussia, with his letters directed vnto our foresayd soueraigne lord the king, requiring amends and recompense for certaine injuries vniuilly offered by English men vnto the subiects of the sayd Master general, written in 20. articles, which amounted vnto the summe of 19120. nobles and a halfe gr.

Item, that the thir day of the month of October, in the yeare of our Lord aboue written, and in the fift yere of the reigne of our soueraigne lord the king, between the reuerend father in God, Henrich n. bishop of Lincolne lord chancelor, and William lord de Roos high treasurer of England, on the one party and the sayd ambassadours on the other party, it was (according to their petition) amongst other things ordayned : namely that the liege people of our soueraigne lord the king should freely be permitted, vntill the feast of Easter then next after ensuing to remaine in the land of Prussia, and from thence with their goods & marchandise to returne vnto their own homes: and also, that the subiects of the sayd Master general in the kingdome of England should haue licence and liberty to doe the like. Whereby alwayes, that after the time aboue limited, neither the English marchants in the land of Prussia, nor the Prussian marchants in the realme of England should vse any traffique of marchandise as all, vntill in the meane space it were otherwise agreed and concluded by the sayd king and the sayd Master general.

Item, immediately after our sayd soueraigne lord the king sent his letters by John Browne marchant of Lin vnto the foresayd Master general, for to haue mutuall conuersation and intercourse of dealing to continue some certain space, betwene the marchants of England and of Prussia: promising in the same letters, that he would in the meane season send vnto the foresayd Master his ambassadours to intereat about the vttermost injuries aforesaid: which letters the foresayd Master, for diuers causes, refused to yeelde vnto, as in his letters sent vnto our lord the king, bearing date the 16. day of the month of Iuly, in the yeare of our lord 1404. more plainly appeareth.

Item, that after the receit of the letters of the Master aforesaid, which are next about mentioned, our sayd king, according to his promise, sent William Esturmy knight, W. John Kington clerke, and William Brampton citizen of London, from his court of parliament holden at Coventrie, very slightly assigned, as his ambassadours into Prussia.

Item, before the arrivall of the sayd ambassadours in Prussia, all intercourse of traffique betwene the English and the Prussians, in the realme of England, and in the land of Prussia was altogether restrained and prohibited: and in the same land it was ordayned and put in practice, that in whatsoever port of the land of Prussia any English marchant had arrived with his goods, he was not permitted to conueigh the sayd goods, out of that port, vnto any other place of the land of Prussia, either by water, or by lande, vnder the payne of the forfeiting of the same: but was assigned to sell them in the very same port, vnto the Prussians onely and to none other, to the great prejudice of our English marchants.

1405.

Item, that after the arrivall of the sayd English ambassadours in the land of Prussia, it was ordayned, that from the eight day of the month of October, in the yeare of our lord 1405, all English marchants whatsoever should haue free liberty to arrive with all kindes of their marchandise in whatsoeuer port of the land of Prussia, and to make sale of them in the said land, as hath heretofore from ancient times bene accustomed. Also sundry other commodious priuiledges vnto the realme of England were then ordayned and established: as in the indentures made for this purpose it doeth more manifestly appeare.

Item, the said English ambassadours being arrived in the land of Prussia, demanded of the said Master general, a reformation and amends, for the damages and injuries offered by the Prussians vnto the liege people of our soueraigne lord and king, written in fiftene articles, which were amounted vnto the summe of 4535. nobles.

Item, the said Master general, besides the articles exhibited vnto our soueraigne lord the king (as it is aboue mentioned) deliuered vnto the sayd ambassadours diuers other articles of certaine injuries

inuer
the sum
Item

peere of
made a c
partes,
Which
three mo
ment, en
rich men
without a
sayd. For
instructed.

Item, the
Prussia to
with the
common
bassadors
greemings
made for
the king.

Item, the
letters of
certward
another day

Item, the
& commission
in the yere
nobles and
pense in con
sayd. Also
which is ver
al the damag
reasonable
ueraigne lo
letters to be
doing at Br
were the real
Also it is fa

buried out
it may suffi
part of them
the goods, of
cles, did or
fully be prou
in the summe
as shall be
and reasonable
of the summe
nominated) are,
Also, at the
king and his
recompense
of 764. nobles,
whom the say
hard and ext
Item, that in
holden at Hage,
the articles of
summe of 1835. nobles

peur to the be-
1398, and upon

of the Order of
at Jerusalem.

in concer-
ves.

to the fifth yeare of
land the ambassa-
of Prussia, with
and recompense
ayd Master gene-
and a halfe of
about twelve, and
nd father in God,
re alises of Eng-
accompanying to the
ueraigne lord the
to remaine in the
their own home
nd should have li-
limited, neither
alme of England
otherwise agree

by John Browne
satisfaction and inter-
land and of Prus-
the foresayd Master
the foresayd Ma-
the king, bearing
wely appeareth
re about mentio-
John Kingdon
nt holden at Co-

of traffique be-
of Prussia was
put in practice,
with his goods,
place of the land
ne: but was re-
ther, to the great

Prussia, it was on
1405, all Eng-
etc marchandise
as hath hereto-
ledges unto the
ade for this pur-

members of the said
by the Prussians
which losses a-

me lord the king
cles of certain
injuries

Hen. 4. Pruss.ambass. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

155

injuries offered (as letaph) usually by English men, unto his sub. etc, which amounted unto
the summe of 500. nobles.

Item, it was after ward concluded, that upon the first of May next then ensuing, namely in the
yeere of our Lord 1406, or within the space of one yeare immediately following there should be
made a comm. ent, iust, and reasonable satisfaction, for all molestacions vniu. offered on both
partes, as well on the behalfe of our soueraigne lord the king, as of the foresayd Master general.
Which satisfaction not being performed, the Prussians with their goods & marchandises, within
three moneths after the end of the sayd yeere next following, were without molestacion, within
ment, enioined to depart out of the realme of England with their ships and goods, and the Eng-
ish men likewise, out of the territories and dominions of the said Master general, & both of them,
without any further admonition, to abstaine & separate themselves, from both the countreis afoze-
sayd. For the performance of which premises, the ambassadoys on both parts being sufficiently
instructed, were appointed to meete the first day of May, at the towne of Dordrecht in Holland.

Item, that the sayd William Eskurmy and John Kingdon in their returne homeward from
Prussia to wards England passed through the chiefe cities of the Hans, and created in such soye
with the Burgomasters of them, that there were sent messengers and agents, in the behalfe of the
common societie of the Hans marchantes, unto the towne of Dordrecht, to conferre with the am-
bassadoys of England, about the redressell of injuries attempted on both parts: where diuers a-
greements were set downe betwene the sayd ambassadoys, and messengers, as in the indentures
made for the same purpose is doth moze manifestly appeare.

Item, that the meeting appointed at the towne of Dordrecht, upon the first of May, was by the
letters of the foresayd ambassadoys, prozogen unto the first of August then next ensuing, and af-
terward by verue of the kings letters unto the first day of March next following: and there was
another day of prozogation also.

Item, that after the prozogations aforesayd, the ambassadoys of England, and the messengers
& commissioners of Prussia met together at the towne of Hage in Holland, the 28. day of August,
in the yeere of our lord 1407. And there was a treaty betwene the concerning the summe 25934.
nobles and an halfe, demanded on the behalfe of the sayd Master general for amendes and recom-
pense in consideration of wrongs offered unto himselfe and unto his subjects of Prussia, as is afoze-
sayd. Also the sayd Master and his Prussians, besides the summe not yet declared in the articles,
which is very small, are to red contented and satisfied with the summe of 8957. nobles, in lieu of
the damages aforesayd: no times of payment being then assigned or limited, but afterward to be
reasonably limited and assigned, by our sayd soueraigne lord the king. Inasmuch, that our said so-
ueraigne lord the king is to write his full intention & determination concerning this matter, in his
letters to be belivered the 16. day of March, unto the aldermen of the marchantes of the Hans re-
siding at Bruges. Otherwile, that from thenceforth all league of friendship shall bee dissolved be-
twene the realme of England and the land of Prussia.

Also it is farther to be noted, that in the appolnement of the summe next before written to be dis-
bursed out of England, this condition was added in writing, namely, that if by lawful testimonies
it may sufficiently and effectually be prooued, concerning the chiefe articles aboute written, or any
part of them, that satisfaction was made unto any of those parties, to whom it was due: or that
the goods, of and for the which complaint was made on the behalfe of Prussia, in the sayd arti-
cles, did or doe pertaine unto others, or that any other iust, true, or reasonable cause may law-
fully be prooued & alledged, why the foresayd summe or any of them ought not to be payed: that the
in the summes contained in the articles abouementioned, so much only must be cut off, or stopped,
as shalbe found, either to haue bene payd already, or to appertaine unto others, or by any true, iust,
and reasonable cause allenged, not to be due. Neither is it to be doubted, but for the greater part
of the summe due unto the Prussians, that not our lord the king, but others (which will in time be
nominated) are, by all equity and iustice, to be compelled to make satisfaction.

Also, at the day and place aboue mentioned it was appointed and agreed upon, that our lord the
king and his liege subjects, for the said 4535. nobles demanded of the Eng. in consideration of
recompense to be made for injuries offered unto the Prussians, are to discharge & pay the summe
of 764. nobles, which are not as yet disbursed: but they haue reserved a petition to them, unto
whom the sayd summe is due, or if they please, there shalbe made satisfaction: which will be very
hard and extreme dealing.

Item, that in the last assembly of the sayd ambassadoys of England and messengers of Prussia,
holden at Hage, made as is aforesayd, for the behalfe of England, there were exhibited anew cer-
tain articles of injuries against the Prussians. The value of which losses amounted unto the
summe of 1825. nobles and three shillings.

Item

Item, on the contrary part for the behalfe of the Prussians the summe of 1355. nobles, eight shillings and six pence.

Item, so far as much as divers articles propounded, as well on the behalfe of England, as of Prussia, and of the cities of the Hans, both heretofore and also at the last convention holden at Hage, were so obscure, that in regard of their obscurity, there could no resolute answers be made unto them: and other of the sayd articles exhibited, for want of sufficient proofes, could not clearly be determined upon: it was appointed and concluded, that all obscure articles given by any of the sayd parties whatsoever, ought before the end of Easter then next ensuing, and within one whole yeare after, to be declared before the Chancelour of England, for the time being: and other articles evidently exhibited, but not sufficiently proved, to be proved, under paine of perpetuall exclusion. Which being done accordingly, complete justice shall be administered on both parts.

Item, as concerning the eleventh article, for the behalfe of the Prussians, first exhibited, which contained losses amounting unto the summe of 2445. nobles: as touching the first article on the behalfe of England exhibited in the land of Prussia, containing losses which amounted to the summe of 900. nobles: after many things alleged on both parts, relation thereof shall be made in the audience of the king and of the Spatter generall: so that they shall see downe, ordaine, and determine such an ende and conclusion of those matters, as shall seeme most expedient unto them.

Now concerning the Liouonians who are subiect vnto the great Master of Prussia.

In primis, that the Spatter of Prussia demanded of the sayd English ambassadours, at their being in Prussia, on the behalfe of them of Liouonia, who are the sayd Spatter his liege people, to haue restitution of their losses, vniuilly (as he sayth) offered vnto them by the English, namely, for the robbing and rifting of three ships. The value of which ships and of the goods contained in them, according to the computation of the Liouonian marchantes, doeth amount vnto the summe of 8037. pound, 12 shillings 7. pence.

Wherbeit after wards the truth being inquired by the sayd ambassadours of England, the losse of the Liouonians exceedeth not the summe of 7498. pound, 13. shillings, 10. pence halfe penny farthing.

Item, so far as much as in the sayd ships, on the behalfe of the sayd Spatter, and of certaine cities of the Hans, there are alleged about 250. men very barbarously to be drowned, of whom some were noble, and others honourable personages, and the rest common marchantes & mariners, there was demanded, in the first dyce of convention holden at Dordrecht, a recompense at the hands of the sayd English ambassadours: albeit the complaint was exhibited in the very latter end of all the negotiations, in forme of a schedule, the tenor whereof is in writing at this present, & beginneth in manner following: Cum vita hominum &c. Wherbeit in the last convention holden at Hage, as is aforesaid, it was concluded betwene the ambassadours of England, and the messengers and commissioners of the land of Prussia, and of the cities of the Hans; that our sayd soueraigne lord the king, should, of his great pietie, vouchsafe effectually to deuise some conuenient and whole some remede for the soules of such persons as were drowned.

Item, that our sayd soueraigne lord the king will signifie in writing his full purpose & intention as touching this matter, vnto the aldermen of the Hans marchantes residing at Bruges, vpon the thirtieth day of March next following. Other wise, that from hence forth all amity and friendship, betwene the realme of England and the land of Prussia shall be dissolued.

Neither is it to be doubted, but that a great part of the sayd goods, for the which they of Liouonia doe demand restitution, namely ware and furre, redoundeth vnto the use and commoditie of our soueraigne lord the king. And also our said soueraigne lord the king gave commaundement by his letters, that some of the sayd goods should be deliuered vnto others. And a great part of them is as yet referred in the towne of Newcastle. One Berold also hath the best of the sayd three ships in possession. Also it is reported and thought to be true, that certaine Furrers of London, which will be detected in the end, haue had a great part of the sayd goods, namely of the Furre.

Now as concerning the cities of the Hans.

In primis the Hamburgers exhibited nine articles, wherein they demanded restitution for certaine damages offered, as they say, by the English men, the value of which losses amounted vnto the summe of 9117. nobles, 20. pence. For the which, after due examination, there was pronounced restitution to the summe of 416. nobles, 5. shillings. Besides the two articles propounded

These ships
were taken by
the English
20. of July
1494.

Hamburg.

des againe
there was
of was p
being re
them et
in one ye
prouing
being don

Also by
Linne in
burgers at

Item, 1
4414. nob
ence was r

Item, the
nobles, 20.
ueat to be
larly to be
are concern
that they wil
the very same

Item, they
and an halfe
was referred

Item, the
bles and an hal
the said men of
nobles, 18. s. as
was vnto the k

Item, the p
bles. There is
which was vnto

Item, the an
g injuries by the
2. s. 10. d. And a
Hage in Hollan
had not any such
full prouises, the
two procurator
lord the king abo
Baptist.

Compositio
gers
an

In the ye of ou
rie bishop of Lin
the ambassadours
same cities haue ac
ten: between the
Conradus de lung
people of Prussia an
first, that all ship
to the condition of
mbiaided & whole, a
ough, the value of th
the terme of the restit
Item, that all ship
are not now immediat

and, as of Prus.
golden at Hage,
bee made vnto
uld not clearly
en by any of
and within one
being: and o.
mine of perpetu
on both parts.
hibited, which
st article on the
d to the summe
be made in the
aine, and deter
into them.

into the

urs, at their be
lege people, to
stly, namely, for
s contained in
vnto the summe

and, the losse of
the halfe penny far

ertaine cities of
of whome some
mariners, there
re at the handes
p latter end of a
ent, & beginning
golden at Hage,
messengers and
souveraigne lord
and whole some

urpose & intenti
drages, vpon the
nity and friend

ch they of Livo
and commoditie
commandement
a great part of
of the sayd three
ties of London,
of the f. uctes.

o restitution for
h losses amount
ution, there was
articles propoun

Hen. 4. Prus. Ambas. Traffiques, & Discoueries.

157

de against the of Scardeburg, the summe whereof was 231. pounds, 15. s. 8. d. concerning the which
there was sentence giuen in England by the commissioners of our lord the king, the execution wher
of was promised vnto the said Hamburgers by the ambassadoys of England: leaue and licence
them exhibited, which declaration was to be made at the feast of Easter then next to come, or with
in one yeare next ensuing the said feast, vnto the chancelor of England for the time being, and of
proouing the sayd articles and others also, which haue not as yet sufficiently bene prooued. Which
being done they are to haue full complement and execution of iustice.

Also by the Hamburgers there are demanded 445. nobles from certaine of the inhabitants of
Linne in England, which summe, if it shalbe prooued to be due vnto any Englishmen, the Ham
burgers are to be contented with those goods, which they haue already in their possessions.

Item, they of Brene propounded five articles, wherein the summe contained amounted vnto Brene.
4414. nobles. And there was no satisfaction promised vnto them. But the same libertie and li
cence was reserved vnto them, in like manner as before vnto the Hamburgers.

Item, they of Straleisland propounded 23. articles, wherof the summe amounted vnto 7415. Straleisland,
nobles, 20. d. for the which there was promised satisfaction of 253. nobles, 3. q. Also here is a ca
ueat to be obserued: that they of Straleisland had of English mens goods a great summe particu
larly to be declared, which will peraduenture suffice for a recompense. And some of their articles
are concerning injuries offered before 20, 21, 22, 23, 24. yeres past. Also their articles are so obscure
that they will neuer, or very hardly be able to declare or proue them. Howbeit there is reserved
the very same libertie vnto them, that was before vnto the Hamburgers.

Item, they of Lube propounded 23. articles, the summe wherof extended vnto 8690. nobles Lube,
and an halfe: whereupon it was agreed, that they should haue paid vnto them 550. nobles. There
was reserved the same libertie vnto them, which was vnto the men of Straleisland.

Item, they of Griepswold exhibited 5. articles, the summe wherof amounted vnto 2092. no. Griepswold,
bles and an halfe. For the which there was promised satisfaction of 153. nobles and an half. And
the said men of Griepswold haue of the goods of Englishmen in possession, to the value of 22015.
nobles, 18. s. as it is reported by them of Linne. And the same libertie is reserved vnto them that
was vnto the Hamburgers.

Item, they of Campen propounded ten articles, the summe wherof extended vnto 1405. no. Campen,
bles. There is no satisfaction promised vnto them: but the same libertie is reserved vnto them,
which was vnto the other above mentioned.

Item, the ambassadoys of England demanded of the citizens of Rostok & Wismer, for damages
& injuries by them committed against the subjects of the foresayd soueraigne king 2407. nobles,
2. s. 10. d. And albeit euery of the foresayd cities sent one of their burgoasters vnto the towne of
Hage in Holland, to treat with the English ambassadoys, it was in the end found out, that they
had not any authoritie of negotiating or concluding ought at al. And therefore they made their faith
full promises, that euery of the said cities should send vnto our soueraigne Lord the king one of
two procurators or procurators sufficiently instructed to treat & conclude with our said soueraigne
lord the king about the damages and injuries aforesaid at the feast of the natiuite of Saint Iohn the
Baptist.

Compositions and ordinances concluded between the messen gers of Frater Conradus de Iungingen master generall of Prussia:

and the chancelor and treasurer of the realme of England 1403.

In the yere of our Lord 1403. vpon the feast of St. Michael the Archangel, the right hono: Hen
rie bishop of Lincoln, chancelor of England, and the lord de Roos high treasurer of England, &
the ambassadoys of Prussia, John Godek of Danizik, & Henry Monek of Elbing, masters of the
same cities haue at Westminster created in manner of composition about the articles vnderwrit
ten: between the most soueraigne lord the king of England, and the right true and honorable
Conradus de Iungingen Master general of Prussia, as concerning the injuries offered vnto the
people of Prussia and Livonia vpon the sea by the English.

First, that all ships with their appurtenances, & the commodities of the mariners, according vnto
the condition of the things, and all other goods taken away by the English, which are actually
vndiuided & whole, are incontinently & without delay to be restored. And if there bee any defect in
the terme of the restitution to be made and delivered, & with other losses of goods to be restored, ac
cording to the condition of the things, and all other goods taken away by the English, which are actually
vndiuided & whole, are incontinently & without delay to be restored. And if there bee any defect in
the terme of the restitution to be made and delivered, & with other losses of goods to be restored, ac

Item, that all ships, damages, and goods (as they are contained in our bill of accusation) which
are not now immediately restored, are to be restored and paid in the land of Prussia, between this
and

and the terme appointed, with full execution and complement of iustice.

Item, concerning the persons shewen ouer boord of flaine in the sea: it shall remayne to be determined at the will and pleasure of the most mighty prince the king of England, and of the right reuerend the Father of Prussia.

Item, betwene this and the terme appointed for the restoring of the goods taken away, y^e which there be due payment & restitution of the said goods perfolmed, the marchants of England and of Prussia are in no wise to exercise any traffique of marchandise at all in the foresaid lands.

1403.

Memorandum, that the thirde day of the moneth of October, in the yere of our L^o 1403. and in the fift yere of the reigne of the most mighty prince and lord, king Henrie the fourth, by the grace of God king of England and France &c. betwene the reuerend father Henrie bishop of Lincoln, chancelor, and the right honorable William lord de Roos, high treasurer of England, boch of them counsellors vnto the sayd soueraigne king on the one party, and the right worshipfull John Godeke, and Henrie Moncke, sent as messengers by the right reuerend and religious personage, Frater Conradus de Iungingen Master generall of the Dutch knights of the Order of S. Mary on the other party: it was, at the request and instance of the sayd messengers, appointed, and mutually agreed upon, that all the huge people and subiects of the sayd soueraigne lord and king shall haue free licence and liberty vntill the feast of Easter next ensuing, safely to travel vnto the land of Prussia foresaid, there to remaine, and thence, with their ships, marchandises, & other their goods whatsoeuer, to returne vnto their owne home: which on the other side, all the subiects of the sayd Master generall map, within the terme prefixed, like wise doe, in the foresaid realme of England, provided alwaies, that after the time aboue limited, neither the sayd marchants of the realme of England map in the land of Prussia, nor the marchants of that land, in the realme of England, exercise any traffique at all: vnles it be otherwise ordained by some composition, betwene the foresaid king of England, & the said Master generall in the meane time concluded. In witness whereof, one part of this present Indenture is to remaine in the custodie of the foresaid messengers. Given in the Chapter-house of the Church of S. Paul at London, the day and yere aboue written.

The letters of the chancelor and treasurer of England, vnto Frater Conradus de Iungingen, master generall of Prussia 1403.

Right reuerend and mighty lord, your honorable messengers John Godeke, and Henry Moncke, the bearers hereof conning of late befoze the presence of our most soueraigne lord the king of England and of France, and being welcomed by our said lord with a chearefull and fauourable countenance, they presented certaine letters on your behalfe vnto the kings Maie^{tie}, with that reuerence which becometh them: expounding vnto his highnes, sundry piracies & molestacions offered of late vpon the sea, by his liege people & subiects vnto yours, contrary to the leagues of peace and amitie, which hitherto (by Gods grace) haue bene maintained and continued on both parts. In consideration of which piracies and molestacions, your messengers demanded full restitution and recompense to be made, either vnto the damaged parties, or vnto their procurators. We therfore at that time, especially being in the presence of our soueraigne (who with his puissant army tooke his i^ugement towards the remote part of Wales being subiect vnto his dominion, to see iustice executed vpon his people of those parts, who very rashly haue presumed to rebel against him their soueraigne, contrary to their allegiance) right well perceiued that it was his highnesse intencion, that every one should haue due iustice faithfully administrad vnto him, especially your subiects, and that with all fauour, whom he hath alwaies in times past right graciously increased, as if they had bene his owne liege subiects and native countrey men, whome also he purposeth hereafter friendly to protect: inasmuch that betwene him and his subiects on the one party, and betwene you and yours on the other party, great abundance and perfection of mutual amity map increase. And therfore we offered vnto your foresaid messengers, after they had particularly declared vnto vs such piracies and wrongs, to sende the kings letters vnto them of whom complaint was made, sternely inuoyning them, vnder grievous penalties, that with our delay they restore or cause to be restored vnto the parties damaged, or vnto their procurators, all ships, marchandises, wares, and goods, by them taken or violently stolne from your subiects. And that your said messengers map partly attaine their desire, we haue commaunded certaine ships, marchandises, wares, and goods, found in certaine hauens, to be deliuered vnto them. Howbeit, as touching other goods, which are perhaps perished or wanting by inuoluntarie dissipation or destruction, and for the which the said messengers of yours demand satisfaction to be made vnto them within a certain time by vs limited: may it please your hono^r to vnderstand,

1 Mainly the ship of Edward Scot at Calcut. The ship of Tidman Dredewant and Tidman Warrwen, at Orrel and Zepfwich.

Hen

that in
in no w
of our f
to loom
also (rig
cept of
cially w
les (to t
deuour,
England
people of
ther in r
and with
lique, in
which por
the famou
successe
lord) with
don the firs

The l
gingen
an



griuous comp
both our contin
which as well a
bly to vse mutu
proceeds) hanc
ned: both the la
mutual redress
and especially fr
our presence, the
chants vnto our
rics (if any) as ha
consent, as we ch
is lieth, we are
make complaint,
subiects, which in
ent friendship & lo
and dominions, m
embayed of al t
& mayntained: we
would on your beh
wise) that from this
may be offered reas
by our realms, map
friendly amitie & c
your counsel in the
stices iniuries, so far

and Henry Mo-
urricane lord, the
carefull and fauor-
able Paëlie, who
scales a molesta-
ry to the leagues
continued on both
sides full esteeme
their procurators
who with his pui-
sance to his domi-
nium to rebel
that it was his
into him, especial-
right graciously
whome also her
subtlers on the
perfection of him-
selves, after they
sings letters into
allies, that with
to their procur-
tine from your
own command-
be deliuered into
ing by infoz-
mann Cassivern
to understand, the

Note well,
1403.

Enury by the grace of God, king of England & France, and loyd of Ireland, to the noble and mightie personage of sacred religion, Frater Conradus de Iungingen Pastor general of the Order of the Dutch knights of S. Marie ge. our most deare and welbelovyd friend, greeting, and continuall increase of our auncient and sincere amity. By the greivous complaynes of our liege subiects concerning traffique, as it were circularwise too & fro both our dominions, we haue often bene aduertised that in regard of divers iniuries and damages, which as well our as your marchants (who by their dealings in marchandise were wont peaceably to use mutual conuersation together, whereupon very many commodities are known to haue proceeded) have, by occasion of pirates, rowing by and do vnto the sea, sometimes heretofore sustayned & especially fronted that time, wherein at the instant request of your messengers, being of late before your presence, the free access of our marchants vnto your territories and dominions, & of your marchants vnto our realmes hath bene forbidden. Wherens therefore (our most deare friend) such iniuries, as we thinke that your life on the other side haue done the like: wherens also, so much as in the complaint, so that accordingly iustice may equally be done vnto any of your people being desirous to traffique, which marchants haue in like sort bene iniuriyd, wishing with all our heart, that the ancient friendship & loue, which hath continued a long time between our realme and your territories placed of al Christians, may according to the good pleasure of the author of peace, be nourished & maintained: we do most heartily requyre the sayd friendship, erhoizing you in the Loyd that you shoulde from this present vntill the feast of Easter next ensuing (al molestations & iniuries which our realmes, may peaceably & securely trauele, & that according to their wonted manner, they may traffique & exercise mutual traffick together: because we are determined to send vnto you & your counsell in the mean time some of our ambassadoys, friendly to intercede about the foresaid prohibitions, so far forth as they shal concerne our subiects, at whose actual we stand in good hope

that

**The Armistice
friendship be-
tween England
and Prussia**



that by the due administration of iustice on both parts, such order (by Gods assistance) shall be taken, that mutual peace and tranquillity may be established between vs in times to come. Also our desire is in particular, that our marchants & liege subiects may haue moze free passage granced them vnto the parts of Scania, for the pouding of herrings and of other fishes there, that they may there remaine, and from thence also may moze securely returne vnto their owne home: and we beseech you in consideration of our owne selues, that you would haue our marchants and liege subiects especially recommended vnto you, safely protecting them (if need shall requite) vnder the shadow of your defence: euen as you would haue vs to deale in the like case with your own subiects. Moreover, whatsoeuer you shall thinke good to put in practise in this behalfe, may it please you of your friendship, by our faithfull subiect Iohn Browne the bearer hereof to giue vs to vnderstand. In the sonne of the glorious virginie fare ye well, with continuall prosperitie and felicity according to your owne hearts desire. Given vnder our prynte seale, at our palace of Westminster, the fifth day of June, and in the fifth yere of our reigne.

Postscriptum.

Right reuerend and our most deare friend: albeit our welbeloued Arnold de Dassele the procurator of your foresaid messengers, being desirous at this time to make his final returne vnto your parts, by reason of the affayres, for which he hath remained in our realme of England, cannot as yet obtaine his wished expedition: notwithstanding you of your sincere affection ought not to maruel or any whit to be grieued thereat: because troubles of wars arising, which in some sort concerned our selues, and especially in regard of the continuall assaults of the French men & Britons against vs and our kingdome, for the offence of whom, and our owne defence, our liege subiects (especially they, of whom your subiects daunted haue made their complaints) haue armed themselves to combat vpon the sea: we could not grant vnto the foresaid Arnold such and so speedy an expedition, as he earnestly desired to haue. Vnto the which Arnold your procurator we haue offered in as short time as may be, to administer complete iustice with fauour, so ynd that for this cause he might dispose himselfe to remaine in our realme of England: & yet notwithstanding we would do the very same euen in the absence of the sayd procurator, Giuen as aboue.

To the most renowned prince and mighty Lord, Henrie king of England &c. our gracious Lord.

Our humble recommendations, with our most instant and continuall prayers for you being graciously by your Maestie taken in good part &c. Most soueraigne king, mighty prince, gracious lord, and vnto vs most vnfaignedly beloued, we receiued of late your gracious letters by your Maesties liege subiect Iohn Brown, the contents whereof seemed to be these following: first that of long time heretofore, there haue bene between the marchants of your realm & of our lands, not only quiet & peaceable access one vnto another, but also mutual participation, & common traffique of their wares, being right commodious & auailable for them both: wherof, that now in the foresaid profitable conuersation, by reason of certain notorious robberies, committed vpon the sea by pyrates against both parts, & the wanted access also of your subiects vnto our dominions, were altogether forbidden. Moreover, you call to remembrance the ancient amity & friendship betweene both our lands, with the inualluable commodity of sweet amiable peace, which are by all faithful Christians, to the utmost of their endeavour to be embraced. Whereupon you of your exceeding clemency, do offer your Maesties full consent, that the foresaid prohibition being released until the feast of Easter next ensuing, the said marchants of your dominions may in our territories, and our marchants likewise may in your realms (al molestations ceasing) exercise their wonted traffique: especially such as in the mean season your royall wisdom hath determined to direct vnto vs your hono: ambassadors in friendly sort to treat and parle with vs as touching the pretended injuries, so far forth as they may concerne your subiects. Adding moreover in particular that when your people shall repaue vnto the parts of Scania to fish for herrings, hauing consideration & regard vnto your maestie, we would haue them especially recommended vnto our protection &c. Most soueraigne lord & king, & gracious prince, wee doe with vnfaigned and hearty affection embrace the oracles of your maesties most courteous & acceptable offer: wherein you haue vied most diligent & effectual perswasions, that complement of iustice should be done vnto the parties injured, & that peace & friendship should take place, making no doubt of your own royall person, nor of our selues or of any other partyping vnto vs, but that our inclinations and desires in this regarde are all one and the same: neither would we lightly transgresse the limits of your perswasions without some iust, weighty, &

reaso:

He

reason
of a co
sed by
Catter
counse
releas
in word
there is
him cha
none bet
ons. For
kind of
sweetne
vnto our
and disqu
cannot ac
wee be su
subiects.
vnto the p
your high
of Denma
in y and au
ti. A true
be it from
or reproch
For this sp
iust: then
(most grac
any incon
hearts, that
and regim
hope from
Giuen at our

An ag
C



subiects, vnto the
the Dutch knight
manding, and rec
Walter generall,
of our Soueraigne
by our Soueraigne
hono: Lords and
de Terlingen chie
rators & commiss
and in all respects
thoie and power
& forerunners being
ners of & concernin
griues, violence &
ward

re)shalbe taken,
re. Also our desire
granted them vn-
at they may there
: and we beseech
wds liege subjects
nder the shadow
subjects. Hope
leaste you of your
vnderstand. In
elicity according
minster, the his

Daasse the pro-
final returne vn-
of England, can-
fection ought not
which in some for-
ench men & Bri-
e, our liege sub-
jects) haue armed
such and so spee-
curator we haue
end that for this
withstanding wee
oue.

, Henrie

rs for you being
lighty prince, gra-
t letters by your
magr first that of
ur lends, not on-
mon traffique of
the forsaide ppe-
sea by pyrates
were alsogethet
tweene both our
hsul Christians,
clemency, doct-
e feast of Easter
our marchanis-
ique: especially
your hono: am-
urtes, so far forth
your people shall
vnto your ma-
Soveraigne lord
oracles of your
& effectuall per-
peace & friend-
ues of any ap-
ne and the same
iust, weighty &
realo-

Hen. 4. Prins. Ambaf. Traffiques, &c Discoueries.

161

reasonable cause, forasmuch as the masters perswaded are in very deepe most happy preferuatiues
of a common weale, peace of nature it selfe. Wherefore wher as your highnes hath farther requie-
red vs, that the prohibition of your subjects accesse vnto our dominions might, vntill the frist of
Easter next ensuing, be released: we answere (vnder correction of your maiestie) more deliberate
counsel) that it is farre more expedient for both partes to haue the sayd prohibition continued then
released, but if such time as satisfaction be performed on both sides vnto the parties endamaged, not
in words only, but actually & really in deeds, or by some course of law or friendly composition. For
there is no equal nor indifferent kinde of consozt or trade between the impouerished party and
him that is enriched, between the partie which hath obayned iustice and him that hath obayned
none between the offender and the party offended: because they are not mooued with like affecti-
ons. For the remediance of iniuries easily stirreth vp inconsiderate motions of anger. Also, such a
kind of temperature or permission, as it were, by way of contrariety breedeth more bitterness then
sweetnes, more hate then loue: whereupon more grievous complaints aswel vnto your highnes as
vnto our selues, might be occasioned. The lord knoweth, that euen now we are too much wearied
and disquieted with the importunate and instant complaints of our subjects, inso much that wee
cannot at this present by any convenient meanes release or dissolve the sayd prohibition, before
wee be sufficiently informed by your maiesties ambassadoys, of the satisfaction of our endamaged
subjects. Forthermore, wher as your maiesties request, concerning your subjects that shal come
vnto the parts of Scania, is that we should defend them vnder our protection: be it known vnto
your highnes, that for diuers considerations vs reasonably mouing, being prouoked by the queens
of Denmarke and her people, being also vrged therunto full force against our toils, for the repe-
liti and auoiding of iniuries, we haue sent forth our armie against them. Howbeit for a certaine
time a truce is concluded on both parts, so that our people are actually returned home. Farre
be it from be also, that our subjects being occupied in warres, should in any sort willingly molest
or reppell any strangers, of what landes or nations soeuer, not being our pressed enemies,
For this should be to oppresse the innocent in stead of the guilty, to condemne the iust for the vn-
iust: then which nothing can be more cruel, nor a reuenge of greater impietie. In very deepe
(most gracious prince and lord) we are moued with right hearty sympathy and compassion for
any inconuenience which might happen in your regiment: wishing from the bottom of our
hearts, that all affaires may right prosperously and happily succede, about the roiall person
and regiment of your most excellent Maiestie, and that continually. The like wherof wee
hope from you: most humbly commending our selues, and our whole Order vnto your highnes,
Giuen at our castle of Marienburgh, the 16 day the moneth of July, in the yere of our Lord 1404.

Margaret queen
of Denmarke,

An agreement made betweene king Henry the fourth and Conradus de lungingen Master generall of the land of Prussia.



His Indenture made betweene Sir William Elmurmy knight, Iohn King-
ton clerke, and William Brampton citizen of London the ambassadoys, com-
missioners, & messengers of the most mighty prince and lord, our soueraigne
lord Henrie by the grace of God king of England and France, and lord of
Ireland, for the repaying, reformation, and amends of whatsoeuer damages,
grievances, excesses, violences, and iniuries in any sort vniuilly attempted,
done, or offered, by our sayd soueraigne lord the king and his liege people and
subjects, vnto the great and mighty lord Conradus de lungingen Master general of the order of
the Dutch knights of St. Maries hospitall of Ierusalem, or his subjects: and for the requiring, de-
manding, and receiuing of such like reparations, reformations & amends, by the sayd lord the
Master general, for the behalfe of himselfe or any of his subjects whatsoeuer, from & in the name
of our Soueraigne lord the king & his subjects, vnto the sayd Master general, into his land of Prussia,
by our Soueraigne lord the king, & appointed as ambassadoys on the one party: And betweene the
said Lord and religious personages Conradus de Lichtenstein great commander, Warnerus
de Teeingen chiefe hospitalary & commander in Elbing, & Arnold de Hacken treasurer, the pro-
curators & commissioners of the great & mighty lord the Master general, being in like & equal sort
and in all respects, as the ambassadoys of England are, authorized on the contrary side by the au-
thorities being holden between the said ambassadoys, messengers, & procurators or commis-
sioners of & concerning the reparations, reformations & amends of certaine damages, grievances,
grievances, violences & iniuries offered and attempted, aswel by the Prussians against the English

as by the English against the Prussians, and of other acts unwittily committed on both parts: in conclusion, after the sayd treatie, the sayd ambassadours, procuratoys and commissioners by vertue of the authoritie committed vnto them appoynted, and with one consent agreed vnto the articles vnder written.

Inprimis, that for the consideration of mutuall loue and booned friendship, and of peace and tranquillity hereafter to be continued and maintained, and also that the articles vnder written may more prosperously be brought vnto a wished effect, between our said soueraine lord the king & his liege people & subjects, & the subjects, people, & inhabitants of the territories and dominions of the sayd lord the Haster generall, it is agreed and concluded, that all liege marchants of England whatsoeuer, shall haue free licence and libertie to arriue with their shippes, goods and marchandises farther vnto any place of the sayd land of Prussia to transpoyt, and there with any person or persons freely to contract and bargain, euen as heretofore, and from auncient times it hath bene accustomed. Which liberty in all respect is granted vnto the Prussians in England.

1403.

Item it is farther agreed betweene the sayd ambassadours, procuratoys, and commissioners, that whereas of late, namely in the peare of our lord 1403, the sayd Haster general by his discret subjects Iohn Godek of Dantzic, and Henry Monck of Elbing, his ambassadoys & messengers, for this purpose hath caused certain articles, (namely 20. in number) containing in them matters of damages, molestacions, violences, and iniuries committed and offered against the said Haster generall & his subjects, by our sayd soueraine lord the king his subjects & liege people, to be exhibited, giuen by and deliuered vnto our lord the king asforesaid in his kingdom of England: it is concluded and agreed about the sayd 20. articles, by the asforesaid ambassadoys, commissioners, and procuratoys, as in the acts & pleas had and made befoze the sayd ambassadoys, commissioners and procuratoys, and in the records made and written of and about the examination of such articles, it is moze at large contayned (vnto the which the sayd ambassadoys, commissioners, and messengers doe here in this place referre themselves) of the which articles also some are receiued by the commissioners asforesaid, and others are propoged vnto a certaine time vnder written, euen as in the sayd regillers it is moze fully contayned and put downe in writting.

As touching certaine other articles also exhibited a newe vnto the sayd English ambassadoys, in the land of Prussia being 16 in number (whereof one is admitted, & the rest are propoged vntil a terme vnder written) the same course is to be taken and obserued, which was befoze appoynted and agreed vpon, about the articles deliuered and exhibited vnto our sayd soueraine lord the king, as is asforesaid.

Moreouer, as touching the articles exhibited by the English ambassadoys in the name and behalfe of their sayd soueraine lord the king of England, vnto the procuratoys and commissioners of the sayd lord the Haster generall (of the which some are declared already; and the declaration of the rest is propoged vntill a certayne terme vndernamed, euen as in the registers made of and vpon the examination of the sayd articles, it is moze manifestly prouided) the same course is to be taken, which must be obserued about the articles of the sayd lord the Haster generall, exhibited, as well vnto the sayd soueraine prince in England, as vnto his ambassadoys in the land of Prussia, euen as about the sayd articles it is befoze concluded.

The complaints of the Liouonians

And whereas on the behalfe of the citizens and marchants of the cities of Rij and Dorp, and of other townes in the land of Liouonia, many and great complaints haue bene by way of articles exhibited and deliuered vnto the sayd English ambassadoys in the land of Prussia, which for diuers causes, could not as then be ended: therefore concluded and agreed vpon betweene the ambassadours, and the commissioners asforesaid, that the saide citizens and marchants may in the towne of Dordrecht in Holland, vpon the first day of the month of May next ensuing (at the which time and place, the continuation and propogation of all other articles not fully declared in the partes of Prussia, shall be put in vye) by themselves or their lawfull procuratoys, make their appearance, for the obtayning of a conuenient, iust, and reasonable reformation of all iniuries attempted against them, then, or at some other times within one whole yeere next following, and not afterwar, being effectually set doone and limited, at the place asforesaid, by the consent of the ambassadours and commissioners of either parte, all lawfull impediments ceasing.

Prorided alwayes, that the value and price of all wares, goods, and marchandises, whereof the said citizens and marchants of Liouonia, in their articles recited by the sayd English ambassadours, as is asforesaid, doe make mention, shall be iustly esteemed, prized, and appoyued, not by any of England, or of Prussia, or of Liouonia, but by some other indifferent marchants of good credite, valuing them at the true rate of marchants, which such like marchandise would haue

haue amou
of Buges

Fozafin
plaines, be
their peflon
saire: The
also it was
saide partie
their appea
scues or by
scaled with
and sufficien
ges and grie
that they ma
curatoys, me
and that in fo
iustly attempt
ted at the foze
as it was abou

But if theye
appointed, fo
within one wh
ete of London
saide English
ered at the fo
dispatched: an
tion of all dama
of them: to the
dily and easily
vntillly attening
and finished,

Moreouer, it
missioners: that
fer for ward thei
the place appoin
there happen to

Furthermo
ners, it is enac
prohibitions frag
Prussia, or by his
or other places in
said Haster gene
ordinations, and
sia, must be firme

Also it is ordain
after to bee trans
be offered to bee
their endes,

Lastly, that the
treaty and confere
pet done, but the
mendment) must
sentes they are cont
solving, at the tow
places, in the mean
elle within one ye
hurt and damaged p
nent, iust, and reaso
the saide yeere, some

each parts in
commissioners by
unto the ar-

of peace and
inexpensive way
the King & his
minions of the
ants of Eng-
lands and mar-
and marchan-
any person or
it hath bene

commissioners,
by his discre-
e messengers,
then matters
the said Master
people, to be cr-
England: it is
commissioners, and
missioners and
such articles,
, and messen-
received by the
n, even as in

ambassadors,
proposed until a
more appointed
figure to be the

name and be-
commissioners
to the declara-
offers made of
the same course
general, ex-
ambassadors in the

ad Dorp, and
way of arti-
Prussia, which
ceeded upon be-
reus and mar-
of May next
articles not

lawfull pro-
reasonable reso-
ment whole yet
are as follows,
impediments

esses, whereof
English am-
and approued,
ent marchants
handful would
hau

Hen. 4. Prus. Ambass. Traffiques, & Discoveries.

163

have amounted unto, if, at the time when they were taken, they had bene to be solde at the towne
of Bruges in Flanders;

Forasmuch also, as diuers and sundry Prussians (who exhibited manifolde Articles of com-
plaints, being received by the said English Ambassadors, at their abode in Prussia) made not
safer The prozogation about-mentioned was made unto the first day of the moneth of May: and
also it was agreed upon by the said Ambassadors, Procurators, and Commissioners, that the
saide parties which had not appeared before shall haue libertie graunted them, lawfully to make
their appearance, upon the first of May aforesaide, at the towne of Dordrecht, either by them-
selves or by their Procurators, and also to bring with them the letters testimonial, and patents,
and sufficient information from the cities whereof the parties plaintiffe are citizens, of the dama-
ges and grieuances any way vniuersally inflicted vpon them or any of them by the English to the en-
curators, messengers, and Commissioners of both partes, the rate and value of their saide goods:
and that in so doing they may obtaine convenient, iust, and reasonable restitution, for all acts un-
iustly attempted against them, then, or at some other times effectually to bee set downe and limi-
ted at the foresaid place by the consent of the Ambassadors and Commissioners of both partes, euen
as it was about promised unto the marchants of Liouonia.

But if they of Prussia last about-mentioned, shall not vpon the first of May, and at the place
appointed, for some cause, make their appearance, that then it shall be lawfull for them at any time
within one whole yeere next following, to repaire unto the lord Chancellor of England, at the ci-
tie of London, and to insinuate and declare unto him their complaints before exhibited unto the
saide English Ambassadors in the land of Prussia, or which complaints should haue bene deli-
uered at the foresaid towne and place, or els, the which were not then and there fully finished and
dispatched: and also by articles as is aforesaide, to declare and proue the true worth and estima-
tion of all damages and grieuances any wayes vniuersally offered by the English unto them or any
of them: to the ende that they may (as it is about mentioned) effectually receiue, and also (spe-
cially) vniuersally attempted against them, which are contained in the complaints not as yet fully declared
and finished.

Whereouer, it is appointed and agreed upon betweene the foresaide Ambassadors and Com-
missioners: that the fornamed souereign Lord & the said lord the Master general are to send and
set forward their Ambassadors, messengers, and Commissioners, vpon the first of May unto
the place appointed, to treat, parle, agree, and conclude about those affaires, which shall then and
there happen to be created of and handled among them.

Furthermore, betweene the often mentioned Ambassadors, Procurators, and Commis-
sioners, it is enacted and concluded: that vnto all and singular lawfull statutes, ordinations, and
prohibitions framed, made, and ordained, by the saide lord the Master general, in his land of
Prussia, or by his Proconsuls and Consuls, and his gouernours of cities, to wnes, villages, and
or other places in the land of Prussia, vnto the obseruation whereof, as well the subiectes of the
saide Master general, as forciners and strangers, are tyed and bound: vnto the very same statutes,
ordinations, and prohibitions, all English marchantes whatsoeuer resorting vnto the land of Prus-
sia, must be firmly bounden and subiect.

Note well.

Also it is ordained, that whatsoeuer sale-clothes are already transported, or at any time here-
after to bee transported out of England into Prussia by the English marchantes, and shall there
be offered to bee solde, whetger they be whole cloathes or halfe cloathes, they must containe both
their endes.

Lastly, that the matters about-mentioned fall not short and voyde of their wished effect: the
treaty and conference about all and singular damages and grieuances (whereof there is not as
yet done, but there must be, by the vertue of these presents, performed, a reformation and as-
mendment) must be continued and prozoged untill the first of May next ensuing: as by these pre-
sents they are continued and prozoged with the continuation of the dayes then immediately fol-
lowing, at the towne of Dordrecht aforesaide: at the which time and place, or at other times and
places, in the meane space, as occasion shall serue, by both parties to be limited and assigne, or
else within one yeere after the said first day of the moneth of May next ensuing bee expired: the
hurt and damaged parties generally before-mentioned, shall haue performed vnto them a conue-
nient, iust, and reasonable reformation on both partes, shoulde alwayes, if within the terme of
the saide yeere, some convenient, iust, and reasonable reformation bee not performed vnto the
parties

parties injured, and endamaged, which are generally above mentioned: that then, within three whole moneths after the foresaid yere shall expired, the Prussians shall depart out of the realmes and dominions of the saide Soueraigne Lorde the king of England, together with their marchandise, and with other goods which they shall have gotten or bought, within the space of the foresaid three moneths: and that the English men also are likewise in all respects bounden to avoid and (no lawfull impediment hindering them) to withdraue themselves and to depart out of the territories and dominions of the saide Master generall, without all molestation, perturbation, and impediment whatsoever, none other intimation or admonition being necessarie in this regard.

Howbeit least that by the robberies and piracies of some insolent and peruerse people, matter should be ministred unto the said lord the Master generall, of swaruing from the faithfull obseruation of the foresaid agreements, or (which God forbid) any occasion bee given him of not obseruing them: it is also decreed by the often above mentioned Ambassadors and messengers, that if the goods and marchandise of any of the saide lord the Master generall his subiectes whatsoever shall bee from henceforth unlawfully taken vpon the Sea, by any English Pirates, and shall be caried into the realme of England, and there receiued, that the Gouernours and keepers of portes, and of other places (with whatsoever names they be called) at the which portes and places such marchandises and goods shall chaunce to arriue, being onely informed of the saide goods and marchandises, by sole report, or (other proofes wanting) by probable suspition are bound to arrest and to keep them in safe custodie, fauourably to be restored vnto the owners thereof, whensoever they shall be lawfully demanded: which if they shall omit or deny to performe, from thenceforth the saide gouernours and keepers are bound to make vnto the parties endamaged, a recompense of their losses.

And for fault of iustice to be executed by the said gouernours and keepers, our soueraign lord the king above named, after he shall conueniently be requested by the parties dammified, is bound within three moneths next ensuing (all lawfull impediments being excepted) to make correspondant, iust, and reasonable satisfaction, vnto the saide parties endamaged. Otherwise, that it shall be right lawfull for the saide lord the Master generall, to arrest, and after the arrest to keep in safe custodie the goods of the English marchants being in the land of Prussia, to the endigne satisfaction of such injuries, as shall haue bene offered vnto his subiects, vntill his said subiects be iustly and reasonably contented.

Likewise also in all respects, the same iustice is to be done vnto the English by the said Lord the Master generall and his subiects in Prussia, enen as it hath bene enacted and decreed in the above written clause, beginning, *Ceterum ne per &c.* In English, Howbeit least that &c. for the said Master generall, and his subiects by the foresaid ambassadors of England, and the commissioners of the said lord the Master generall, that in like cases iustice ought to be administered on the behalfe of himselfe, and of his subiects in the realme of England.

And that all and singular the couenants above written, may in time to come, by the parties whom they concerne, firmly and inuolably be obserued; the forenamed ambassadors, messengers, and commissioners, all and euery of them, for the full credite, probation, and testimonie of all the premises, haue vnto these present Indentures, made for the same purpose, caused euery one of their seales with their owne hands to be put. One part of the which indentures remaineth in the custodie of the English ambassadors, and the other part in the hands of the commissioners of Prussia. Given at the castle of Marienburgh in Prussia, in the yere of our Lorde 1405. vpon the 8. day of the moneth of October.

An agreement made betweene King Henrie the fourth and the common societie of the Marchants of the Hans,

This Indenture made betweene the honourable Sir William Esturmy knight, and Iohn Kington clerke, procurators, messengers, and commissioners sufficiently deputed and authorized by the most mighty Prince, Lord Henry, by the grace of God king of England, & France, and lord of Ireland, for the perforamation of things vnder written, on the one part: & the honourables Henry Vredeland, Riman Salum chief notaries, Thederic Knefuoek secretary, Simo Clouessen chief notary, and Iohn Zorebotter citizen, being sufficiently made and ordained procurators and messengers on the behalfe of the cities of Lubec, Bremen, Hamburg, Sund, and Griepswold, for the demanding & obtaining leuerally, of due reformation, and recompense at the hands of our saide soueraigne lord the king, and of his messengers and commissioners aforesayde,

for all im
seuerally
eties of
cities afo
the saide
vnto them
subiects
Dutch Ha
ately nett
to exercise
en as in
dome to e

Also th
perhaps to
first day of
rowne of D
competently
citizens, people
ges of the Ha
done and com
to the above
the same proc
the messenger
equall and like
ged, there is a
vnto the inhab
done and comm
king, in the pre
certain letters
moneth of Oct
on, reformation
derstood as if it

It was furth
compell the citi
med cities, or
their dwelling
complaints alre
to the inhabitant
above mentioned

Howeuer the
kingdome of En
gular the priuiled
England, and con
their contents, be
from henceforth
the saide Souera
of the sayde priuile
tised against the sa
be abolished.

But if after the
and leuett moneth
should, either by th
and marchants of
thers of the cities
ants of the Real
gers, commissioners
tutes and molesta
and amended, after
on and amends of iu

within thre
of the realme
with their mar-
age of the fore-
inden to avoid
depart out of
on, perturbati-
essarie in this

people, matter
alth full obser-
him of not ob-
messengers,
bictes what-
ates, and shal-
and keepers of
rich poyres and
ed of the saide
suspition are
e owners ther-
to persome,
eties enbana-

Soueraign lord
nified, is bound
anke corespone-
rest, that it shal
ress to keep in
e condigne fa-
bictes be iustly

by the said Lord
decreed in the
that &c. for the
the communi-
minisred on the

by the parties
s, messengers,
monie of all the
e curie one of
mainerly in the
loners of Prus-
s. upon the 8.

urch

ght, and Iohn
reputed and au-
land, & France,
& the hon. per-
secretary, &c.
ne and ordaine
urg, Sund, and
compense at the
ers aforesayde,
for

for all iniuries, damages, grieuances, and manslaughter, any wayes vniuilly done, and offered
seuerally by the liege people and subiects of our soueraigne lord the king, vnto the common so-
cietie of the marchants of the Hans, and vnto any of the Citizens, people and inhabitants of the
cities aforesayde whatsoeuer on the other part, Wherewith: That betwene all and euery of
the saide Procurators, messengers, and Commissioners, by vertue of the authoritie committed
vnto them, it hath bene and is appointed, concluded, and decreed: that the liege marchants and
subiects: our said soueraigne lord the king, and the marchants of the common societie of the
Dutch Hans aforesayde, from hence forth for one whole yeere and seven moneths immedi-
ately next ensuing and following, shalbe permitted and licenced friendly, freely, and securely,
to exercise mutual traffike, and like marchants to buy & sell together, one of, and vnto another,
euen as in times past, namely, in the yeere 1400, and before that time also, they haue bin accu-
stomed to exercise mutual traffike and marchandise, and to buy and sell.

1400.

Also the saide William and Iohn agreed and consented, that they themselves, or some other
perhaps to be appointed in this behalfe by their saide lord the king in their stead, shall vpon the
first day of the moneth of May next to come, with the continuation of the dayes following, at the
coune of Dordrecht in Holland, or vpon any other terme or termes, then perhaps to bee limited,
competently faulise, and performe conuenient recompence vnto the saide common societie, ci-
zens, people, and inhabitants of the cities aforesayde, and also of other cities, townes, and villa-
ges of the Hans, of and for all iniuries, damages, grieuances, and blowings, or manslaughter
done and committed, as they alleage, against them, deliuered and exhibited in written articles, vnto
the saide procurators or by some others, which shall perhaps be authorized in their stead, or by
equall and like manner and forme, euen as at the saide terme limited, or then perhaps to be pro-
posed vnto the inhabitants of Prussia and Liuania, for the iniuries, damages, and grieuances vniuilly
done and committed against them by the liege people and subiects of the saide soueraigne lord the
king, in the presence of the mightie lord the Master general of Prussia, in his land of Prussia, as in
certain letters indented, bearing date in the castle of Marienburgh in Prussia, the eight day of the
moneth of October, in the yeere of our lord 1405, and being made and written about the reparati-
on, reformation, and recompence of such like iniuries &c. (the tenour whereof ought here to be vn-
derstood as if it were inserted) it is more manifestly contained.

It was furthermore promised by the said William and Iohn, that they should not enforce nor
compell the citizens, people, or inhabitants of the common societie of the Hans, or of the aboue na-
med cities, or of any other cities of the Hans aforesayde (having received sufficient information of
their dwelling and place of abode) to more difficult or distrust proofes of their Articles of
complaints already exhibited, and in the foresayde termes to come, to be exhibited, then vnto
the inhabitants of the lands of Prussia and Liuania, according to the forme of the Indentures
aboue mentioned.

Moreover the saide William and Iohn doe promise, that so soone as they shall come into the
kingdome of England, and before the presence of their king, they shall prouide, that all and sin-
gular the priuiledges graunted vnto the marchants of the saide Hans by the renowned kings of
England, and confirmed by the said Soueraigne lord the king that now is, must, according to al
their contents, be inuicably obserued by the said soueraigne king and his subiects: and also, that
from hence forth nothing is vniuilly to be attempted, vpon any occasion, pretense, or colour, by
the saide Soueraigne Prince, and the inhabitants of the realme of England, to the preiudice
of the saide priuiledges. They shall prouide also, that all things heretofore attempted and prac-
tised against the saide priuiledges, shall, by reasonable amendement and iust reformation, vterly
be abolished.

But if after the date of these presents (which God forsend) within the space of the said one yeere
and seven moneths prescribed any damages, iniuries or grieuances, in ships, goods, or persons,
should, either by the English and the inhabitants of England be vniuilly inflicted vpon the cities,
and marchants of the cities, townes, and places of the Hans aforesayde, or by any marchants or o-
thers of the cities or townes of the saide Hans, either vnto the English, or vnto any of the inhabi-
tants of the Realme, vpon any fained pretense whatsoever, all and singular the foresaid messen-
gers, commissioners, ambassadours, and procurators haue promised, that all such damages, in-
iuries and molestations so inflicted by them who shall offer and commit them, must bee reformed
and amended, after the very same forme and manner, that in the like case reformation, reparati-
on and amends of iniuries, damages, and molestations committed by the English against them of
Prussia

Prussia is to be performed, according unto a certaine clause contained in the letters above mentioned, which beginneth: Ceterum ne per &c. In English: Whombeit least that &c. continuing unto that clause: Et vt præscripta omnia &c. In English: And what all the covenants above written &c.

It was also concluded betwene the foresaide messengers, commissioners, and procuratores, and with one generall consent agreed upon, that if from the first day of the moneth of May next to come, within one whole yeere following, some convenient, iust, and reasonable reformation be not performed unto the parties injured and damaged generally above mentioned, in regard of their damages, molestations, and injuries: then, within three moneths after the saide yeere be expired, the marchants of the Hans cities aforesaid are bound, without any molestation, perturbation, and impediment whatsoever (none other intimation or admonition being necessarie in this behalfe) to avenge: (and if no lawfull impediment shall hinder them) to abstaine and depart from the Realmes and dominions of the said Soueraigne king of England, with their marchandise and other goods bought or gotten within the space of the saide three moneths: and also the English likewise in all respects shall auoide, abstaine, and depart from the territories and dominions of the Hans cities aforesaid.

Also it was promised by the saide William and John, that at the terme appointed, namely by on the first of May next following, or at some other terme or termes then limited or to be limited, there must be made a due recompense, and a proportionall satisfaction, for all those persons of the land of Prussia, Livonia, and of the cities, townes, and other places of the Hans, who have vniuersally bene wronged, and slaine by the English: and that according to the tenour of a certain schedule written concerning a recompense to be had in regard of the saide persons wronged and slaine, and presented unto them by Albertus Rode consul of the cite of Thoren, and by the foresaide procuratores and messengers of the cities aforesaid, they must faithfully and effectually, to the utmost of their abilitie endeavour, for the obtaining of the saide recompense and amends. In witness whereof (these letters of Indenture remaining in the possession of the saide William and John the messengers, procuratores, & commissioners of England aforesaid, and left in their custody, by the above named procuratores and messengers Henric Rimarus, Theodericus, Simon, and John Sotebotter, of their certaine knowledge and assurance) and for the full confirmation and reformation of al the premises, the foresaide procuratores and messengers have put to their seales, given in the towne of Dordrecht the 15. day of December in the yeere of our Lord 1405.

William Esturmy knight, and John Kingdon canon of Lincolne (being in this behalfe sufficiently authorized and deputed as Ambassadors, procuratores, messengers and commissioners, by our said soueraigne lord the king, namely in regard of the molestations, injuries and damages vniuersally done and committed against the liege people and subiectes of his foresaide most excellent Prince and lord, Lord Henry by the grace of God king of England & France, and Lord of Ireland, by the communalities of the cities of Wismer and Rostok undertowitten, their common counsel being assembled for the same purpose, & authorized also, and as well closely as expressly maintained and ratified, by the whole companie of the common societie of the marchants of the Dutch Hans) doe, in this present diet at the towne of Hage situate in the countrey of Holland, being appointed for the very same occasion, demand of you Syr John de Aa knight, and Hermannus Meyer deputies for the cities of Wismer and Rostok, and sufficiently ordeined by authority requisite in this behalfe, to be the procuratores and messengers of the said cities, that convenient, iust, and reasonable satisfaction and recompense may certainly and effectually be done unto the injured and endamaged parties, who are specified in the articles vnder written.

Imprimis, that about the feast of Easter, in the yeere of our Lord 1394. Henry van Pomeran, Godekin Michael, Clays Sheld, Hans Howfoote, Peter Hawfoote, Clays Boniface, Rainbek, and many others, with them of Wismer and of Rostok, being of the societie of the Hans, tooke, by maine force, a ship of Newcastle upon Tyne, called Godezere sailing upon the Sea towards Prussia, being of the burthen of two hundred tunnes, and belonging unto Roger de Thornton, Robert Gabiford, John Paulin, and Thomas de Chester: which ship, together with the furniture thereof amounteth unto the value of foure hundred pounds: also the woollen cloth, the red wine, the golde, and the summes of money contained in the said ship amounted unto the value of 200. marks of English money: moreover they vniuersally slew John Patanlon and John Russell in the surplusing of the shippe and goods aforesaid, and there they imprisoned the sayde parties taken, and, to their utter undoing, detayned them in prison for the space of three whole yeeres.

Item, that in the yeere of our Lord 1394. certaine persons of Wismer and Rostok, with others of the Hans their confederates robbed one Richard Horuic of Hull of diuers goods and

Newcastle.

An English
ship of 200.
tunnes.

Hull.

Hen

and many
nobles.
Item,
Godekin
men of
wicked
and half
bles.
Item,
and other
ry of Hull
the value
Item,
der, Clays
neere unto
the Trinity
300. pound
Item,
and Rostok
one William
ship called
Item, in
uers others
Elbing (the
Wyman, lo
and bowstau
Item, in
chers of the
ster whereof
was eight mo
the foresaid
Item, in
their complice
woollen cloth.
Item, in
Wismer mar
wickedly and
besides 32. pou
Item, in
and Gerard Sle
and vniuersally
burgh marchan
Stephan Flispe,
value of 60. po
cloth to the val
vels of woollen
the same towne,
prisoned certai
unto John Dier
some 20. nobles
William, by reaso
Cornwaile, mar
nobles.
Item, in the ye
on the coastes of
dams and John W
man marchants of
Goldsmith was
and Reginald, to

and marchantizes in a ship called the Shipper Beeline of Prussia, being then valued at 160. nobles.

Item, that in the yeere of our Lozde 1395. Hans van Werthemunkule, Clays Scheld, ^{Hull} Godekin Mighel, and one called Sirotbeker, by force of armes, and by the assistance of the men of Wismer and Rostok, and others of the Hans, did upon the Sea nere unto Norway, wickedly and vniustly take from Iohn Tureburie, fure pieces of ware, foure hundred of werke, and halfe a last of osmundes, and other goods, to the value of foure hundred seuentie five nobles.

Item, in the yeere of our Lozde 1396. one Iohn van Derlowe, Hans van Gelder, ^{Hull} and other their complices of the Hans villainously and vniustly tooke a shippe of William Terry of Hul called the Cogge, with thirtie wollen broad clothes, and a thousand narrow clothes, to the value of 200. pounds.

Item, in the yeere of our Lozde 1398. one Iohn van Derlowe, Wilmer, Hans van Gel. ^{Hull} der, Clays Scheld, Euerade Pilgrimson, and diuers others of the Hans, did upon the Sea nere unto Norway villainously and vniustly take a shippe of Iohn Wiscdome of Hull called the Trinitie, with diuers goods and marchantizes, namely oyle, ware, and werke, to the value of 300. pounds.

Item, in the yeere of our Lozde 1399. one Clays Scheld, and others aboute written of Wismer ^{Hull} and Rostok, with certaine others of the Hans, their confederates, wickedly and vniustly took from one William Pound marchant of Hull, two cokes of worke, to the value of 18. pounds, out of the ship called the Hawkin Derlin of Dantzik.

Item, in the yeere of our Lozde 1394. one Godekin Mighel, Clays Scheld, Storbiker, and di. ^{Yorke} uers others of Wismer and Rostok, and of the Hans, wickedly and vniustly tooke out of a ship of Elbing (the master whereof was called Henry Puys) of the goods and marchantizes of Henrie Wyman, Iohn Topcliffe, and Henry Lakeniwisher of Yorke, namely in werke, ware, osmunds, and bowlaues, to the value of 1060. nobles.

Item, in the yeere of our Lozde 1394. certaine malefactozs of Wismer and Rostok, with o. ^{Yorke} thers of the Hans, their confederates, wickedly and vniustly took out of a ship of Holland (the master whereof was called Hinkensman) 140. woollen clothes (the price of one of the which clothes was eight nobles) from Thomas Thelster of Yorke, and a chest, with armour, silver and golde of the foresaid Thomas, to the value of 9. pounds.

Item, in the yeere of our Lozde 1393. certaine malefactozs of Wismer and Rostok, and others ^{London} their complices of the Hans, wickedly and vniustly tooke from one Richard Abel of London woollen cloth, greene cloth, meale and fishes, to the value of 133. li. 6. s.

Item, in the yeere of our Lozde 1405. about the feast of S. Michael, one Nicholas Femeer of ^{London} Wismer marchant of the Hans, with the assistance of other his complices of the Hans aforesaide, wickedly and vniustly tooke from one Richard Morley citizen of London fure lastts of herrings, besides 32. pounds, in the sea called Northfound.

Item, in the yeere of our Lozde 1398. about the moneth of September, one Godekin Wisse, ^{Colchester} and Gerard Sleyre of Wismer and Rostok, with others of the Hans, their confederats wickedly and vniustly took out of a ship of Prussia (whereof the master was named Rorebek) from Iohn Seeburgh marchant of Colchester two packs of woollen cloth, to the value of an 100. markes: from Stephan Flipse, and Iohn Plumer marchants of the same towne two packs of woollen cloth, to the value of 60. pounds: from Robert Wighs marchant of the same towne two packs of woollen cloth, to the value of an 100. markes: from William Munde marchant of the same towne, two farbels of woollen cloth, worth 40. li. & from Iohn Dawe, and Thomas Cornwaile marchants of the same towne, three packs of woollen cloth, worth 200. markes. Moreover they tooke and imprisoned certaine English men, which were in the said ship, namely William Furborne seruant into Iohn Diere, Thomas Merish seruant into Robert Wight, which Thomas paid for his ransom 20. nobles of English money, William Munde marchant of the towne aforesaide, which William, by reason of the extremity of that imprisonment, lost the sight of his eyes, and Thomas Cornwaile, marchant of the foresaide towne, which Thomas paid for his ransom twentie nobles.

Item, in the yeere of our Lozde 1394. certaine malefactozs of Wismer and Rostok, by ^{Yermouth} on the coastes of Denma. ke and Norway, beneath Scawe, and at Anold, tooke Thomas Adams and Iohn Walters marchants of Yermouth: and Robert Caumbrigge and Reginald Le-Goldesfinch was master) with diuers woollen clothes of the said Thomas, Iohn, Robert, and Reginald, to the value of one thousande markes English, and carried the persons and goods

goods aforesaid, away with them; and the said Thomas, Iohn, Robert, and Reginald they imprisoned at Courtbutresslow, and there detained them, until they paid an hundred marks for their redemption.

Yermouth,
Longfount in
Norway,

Item in the peere of our Lozde 1401. some of the inhabitants of Wismer and of Roslok wickedly tooke at Longfount in Norway, a certaine shippe of West-Stowe in Zeland (the Master whereof was one Gerard Dedissen) laden with diuerse goods and marchandise of Iohn Hughson of Yermouth, namely with the hides of oren and of herpe, with butter, maffe, sparrowes, boozbes, questingstones and wilde werke, to the value of an hundred marks, and do as yet detain the said things in their possession, some of the Hans bring their assistants in the premises.

Yermouth,

Item, in the peere of our Lozde 1402. certaine of the Hans, of Roslok, and of Wismer, tooke vpon the coast of England, neere vnto Plimmouth a certaine barge called the Michael of Yarmouth (whereof Hugh ap Fen was the owner, and Robert Rigweys the master) laden with bay salt, to the quantitie of 130. wapes, and with a thousand canuile clothes of Britaine, and doe as yet detain the said goods in their possession, the said Hugh being endamaged, by the losse of his ship, and of his goods aforesaid 800. nobles and the foresaid Master and the mariners loosing, in regard of their wages, canuas, and armour, 200. nobles.

Yermouth,
Selaw in Nor-
way.

Item, in the peere of our Lozde 1405. certaine malefactours of Wismer wickedly and vnjustly tooke, in a certaine port of Norway called Selaw, a ship of Yarmouth (the owner whereof was William Oxney and the master Thomas Smith) laden with salt, cloth, and salmon, to the value of 40. pound, and doe as yet detain the said ship and goods in their possession, some of the Hans their confederates ayding and assisting them at the same time.

Cley.

Item, in the peere of our Lozde 1395. one Godekin Mighel, Clays Scheld, Stertebeker, and other their accomplices of the Hans tooke vpon the sea a certain ship of one Iohn Dulwer of Cley, called the Friday (whereof Laurence Tuk of Cley was master) and conueighed the said ship vnto Mawstrond in Norway, and the said Master and mariners they robbed of diuers commodities, namely of artillerie, furniture, and salt fishes being in the same ship, to the value of 500. nobles.

Cley.

Item, in the peere of our Lozde 1395. Godekin Mighel, Clays Scheld, Stertebeker, and other their accomplices of the Hans, vnlawfully tooke vpon the sea a certaine ship of one William Betts of Cley called the Margaret (wherein Robert Robines was master) and conueighed the ship itself vnto Mawstrond in Norway, and there robbed the master and his partners of diuers commodities, namely of artillerie, furniture, and salt fishes, to the value of 400. nobles, and one of the said masters mates they maliciously drowned.

Cley.

Item, in the peere of our Lozde 1395. about the feast of the natiuitie of S. Iohn Baptiste, the foresaid named Godekin and Stertebeker, with others their accomplices of the Hans, vnlawfully took vpon the sea a certain ship of Nicholas Steyhard and Iohn Letis of Cley called the Nicholas (whereof Iohn Preft was master) and conueighed the said ship vnto Mawstrond, and there robbed the said master and his companie of diuers commodities, namely of furniture and salt fishes, being in the said ship, to the value of 320. nobles.

Cley.

Item, in the peere of our Lozde 1395. about the feast aforesaid, the said Godekins and Stertebeker, & their companions of the Hans vnjustly took vpon the sea a certaine ship of Thomas Peins of Cley called the Isabel (whereof William Noie was master) and conueighed it vnto Mawstrond, and there robbed the said master and his company of diuers commodities, as namely of furniture, and salt fishes, being in the said ship, to the value of 406. nobles.

Cley.

Item, in the peere next about mentioned, vpon the Saturday, about the foresaid feast, the foresaid named Godekins and Stertebeker, and other their accomplices of the Hans vnlawfully took vpon the sea, a certain ship of one Thomas Lyderpole of Cley, called the Helena, wherein Robert Alwey was master, & also wickedly and vnjustly drowned in the bottom of the sea diuers commodities, as namely salt fishes, together with the ship itselfe.

Cley.

Item, in the peere of our Lozde 1398. about the feast of S. Michael the archangel, the foresaid Godekin & Stertebeker, with other their confederates of the Hans, took at Langfount in Norway a certain crayer of one Thomas Motte of Cley, called the Peter, (wherein Thomas Smith was master) & the foresaid crayer they wickedly and vnjustly carried away, being worth 280. nobles.

Wiffricon,

Item, in the peere of our Lozde 1395. about the feast of the natiuitie of S. Iohn Baptiste, the foresaid named Godekins and Stertebeker, and others of the Hans vnjustly tooke a certain ship of Simon Durham, called the Dogger-ship, and the Peter of Wiueton, laden with salt fishes (whereof Iohn Aussen was master) vpon the coast of Denmarke. And they carried away the said Dogger, with the furniture thereof, and the foresaid salt fishes, to the value of 170. pound. Moreover, the master, and 25. mariners in the same ship they maliciously slewe, and a certaine ladde of the said Dogger

Dogger

Item,

tebeker,

pole, and

they villa

and seruia

therein w

Item,

ker & other

the Dogge

cupied abou

the said ship

wounded, f

ing endama

Item, in

complices v

Ligate mar

behalf of th

away with th

value of 66. p

Item, in th

taine others o

lan Barret th

and other mar

of the said Sir

Item, in th

vnjustly tooke

mon, worth 42

bound for Dan

Item, pitiful

the feast of S. G

of Wismer & R

of Norbern in

took at the mar

and munitions in

of false conduct de

mage and impou

houles belonging

mund Belyetere,

line of 1815. pour

Concerning
history o

I the meane w

king of Suecia, i

to be set at liberty,

persecuted, who, w

behalf of their loz

at the time of his ea

ges, but in the righte

could lay hold on. &

bealing to appoach,

merchants of Germ

all kinds, especially

that kingdome (as i

there, they set vpon th

ling in breake woodde

some conueyed such

spole booties, they ret

ertain ship of Si-
fishes (whereof
saide Dogger,
Doreouer, the
middle of the saide
Dogger

In the meane while Norway enioyed peace vnder the gouernment of a woman: vntill Albertus king of Suecia, who had now seuen yeeres continued in captiuitie vnder Queen Margaret, was to be set at libertie. At this, when the common souldiers of Roslok & Wisiner, called the Vitalians perceived, who, whilst their king was holden captiue, in the right of the forenamed cities, for the behalfe of their lord the king being prince of Meckleburg by birth, vndertooke and waged warres, but in the right of the said cities, to fall into the 3. kingdomes, and to take such spoiles as they could lay hold on. These common souldiers therfore, seeing an end of their tyrannical and violent dealing to appoach, fell into Norway, vnto the towne of Norhern, being a mart towne for all the merchants of Germanie: who transporting fishes from thence, doe bring thither marchandises of all kinds, especially corne, vnto the scarcitie wherof, unless it be brought out of other countreys, the kingdome (as we haue said) is very much subiect. Departing out of their ships and going on shore, they set vpon the towne, and by fire and sword they easly compelled the inhabitants dwelling in weakie wooden houses, to giue place. Thus these Vitalians entering and surprisling the towne conveyed such spoiles vnto their ships as they pleased, and hauing laden their ships with whole booties, they returned home frolike vnto the ports of their own cities. Without all respect,

21. boules of
English may
chanté buche
at Norhern in
Norway.

The Villains.

they robbed and ruled the goods, as well of the Germanes, as of the Nominagians: and like lewd companions, wasting and making havoc of all things, procured themselves neuer the wealthier. For it is not the guise of such good fellows to stoie vp or to preferre ought. The citizens, at the first, seemed to be enriched: howbeit afterward, (no man withstanding any such calamitie) goods ill gotten were worse spent. Thus saith Kranzius.

Lenne.

Item, pitifully complaining, the foresaid marchants auouch, verifie, and affirme, that vpon the 14. day after the feast of S. George, in the yeere of our Lord next aboue written, as 4. ships of Lenne, laden with cloth, wine, and other marchandise, were sailing vpon the maine sea, with all the goods and wares contained in them, for Prussia, sundry marchants of Wismer and Rostok, with others of the Hans, being in diuers ships, came vpon them, and by force of armes and strong hand tooke the said ships, with the goods and marchandise contained in them: and some of the people which were in the said foure ships, they slew, some they spoyled, and others they put vnto extreame ranlomes. And carying away with them those foure ships with the commodities and marchandise therein, they parted stakes therewith, as them listeth, to the great impoverishment & losse of the said marchants of Lenne, namely in cloth of Wiliam Silcken, Tho. Waterden, Ioh. Brandon, Ioh. Welenha, & other marchants of Lenne, to the value of 3623. li. 5. s. 1. d.

Lenne.

Item, pitifully complaining the foresaid marchants doe affirme, that one Henry Lambolde and other his adherents, in the yeere of our Lord 1396. tooke vpon the maine sea betwene Norway and Scaw, one craper laden with olivunds, and with diuers other marchandise, pertaining vnto Iohn Brandon of Lenne, to the summe and value of 443. li. 4. s. 2. d. Moreover, they tooke from Iohn Lakingay 4. lastes and an halfe of olivunds, to the value of 220. lib. 10. s.

Lenne.

Item, the foresaid marchants complaine, that certain malefactozs of Wismer, with other the Hans, in the yeere of our Lord 1396. tooke from Thomas Ploket of Lenne, out of a certaine ship sailing vpon the maine sea towards Seconland (whereof Iames Snycop was master) cloth and other marchandise, to the summe and value of 13. lib. 1. s. 4. d.

Lenne.

Item, the aboue-named marchants complaine saying, that certaine malefactozs of Wismer, with others of the Hans society, in the yeere of our Lord 1397. wickedly and vniustly took out of a certaine ship of Danzick (whereof Laurence van Rulle was master) from Ralph Beddingam of Lenne, one fardel of cloth worth 52. li. 7. s. 6. d. Also, for the ranlome of his seruant, 8. li. 6. s. 8. d. Item, they tooke from Thomas Earle diuers goods, to the value of 24. pounds.

Lenne.

Item, the foresaid marchants complaine, that certaine malefactozs of Wismer & Rostok, with others of the Hans, in the yeere of our Lord 1399. wickedly & vniustly tooke one craper pertaining vnto Iohn Lakingich of Lenne, laden with diuers goods and marchandise: pertaining vnto sundry marchants of Lenne, namely from the fozenamed Iohn one fardel of cloth, and one chest full of harness, and other things, to the value of 90. lib. Item, they took out of the foresaid ship from Roger Hood, one fardel of cloth, and one chest with diuers goods, to the value of 58. lib. Item, from Iohn Pikeron, one fardell of cloth, and one chest with diuers goods, to the value of 440. lib. Item, from Andrew Purser one fardell of cloth, and one chest with diuers commodities therein, to the value of ten pounds.

Lenne.

Item, the aboue-named marchants complaine saying, that certaine malefactozs of Wismer & Rostok, and others of the Hans, namely, Godekin Mighel, Henric van Hall de Sterrebeker, with other of their confederates, in the yeere of our Lord 1399. wickedly and vniustly took from Iohn Priour of Lenne, out of the ship of Michael van Burgh, namely 160. nests of mares, worth 100. lib. 13. s. 4. d. Item, 30. fures rigges of Kaleber worth 13. s. 4. d. a piece, the summe totall amounting to 20. li. Item, 20. fures wombs of Kaleber worth 4. s. Item, one girdle of siluer, and one dagger adorned with siluer worth 30. s. Item, two coats, and one long iacker, and other goods, to the value of 30. s. Item, he paide for his ranlome 4. lib. 1. s. 4. d.

Note the lesser treasours of the Hans.

Vnto all and singular the articles aboue-written, the ambassadozs of England alsoforesaid do further adde, that the doers and authozs of the damages, injuries, and robberies set down in the articles aboue written, (of whom some are named in particular, and others in general) performed and committed all those outrages, being hired thereunto at the expences and charges of the common societies of the cities alsoforesaid. And that the inhabitants of euery household in the foresaide cities (euer man according to his ability) willingly & purposefully set forth one, two, or more men, for the very same expedition, wherein all and singular the foresaid trespasses were committed.

The foresaid English ambassadozs doe exhibite the articles aboue written vnto the procurators of the cities of Wismer and Rostok alsoforesaid: leaue and libertie being alwayes reserved vnto the said ambassadozs, to enlarge, or to diminish, or to expound all, or partly, or any of the said articles whatsoeuer, to often as it shall seeme expedient vnto them.



ware buy and

Item, the and mansion cities, bozoug chians are no

Item, the

ons, but onely

standing at p

were constrain

foles contrary

matter before

paying afterw

their owne acc

conditionally, t

said marchants,

their charter, a

the officers of o

foresaid to pay

and refused to p

sted the goods o

that they were

vnto the said gild

marchants were

then their ancient

Item, the foresaid

the realm of Engl

ri. b. more then

chians are compel

a certain impossib

then the marchant

their marchandise

3. d. for the worth o

masters and of the

in this behalfe to sh

the othe of their atti

marchandise to buy

stones of 3. d. insti

king put their goods

compell them to pay

expences particular

ance of the said mar

Item, the foresaid

progenitoy of our L

ie vnto them to pay

Thel

and like lewde
the wealeher.
citizens, at the
lamitie) goods

me, that vpon
1, as 4. ships of
maine sea, with
winter and Ro-
of armes and
in: and some
and others they
the commoditie
impouertish
Th. Water-
3. li. 5. s. 1. d.
y Lambolt and
betweene Nor-
fes, perceiving
uer, they took

with other their
er of Lenne, our
S Syncop was

of Wismer,
fly to: k out of a
h Bedingam of
8. li. 6. s. 8. d.

& Rostok, with
crayer perpay-
pertaining vnto
h, and one chell
foresaid ship from
£ 58. lib. Item,
valu: of 440. lib.
modities therein,

of Wismer &
teebeker, with
took from Icha-
fers, worth 100.
of siluer, and
acket, and other

foresaid do fine
down in the ar-
d) performed
of the common
foresaid cities
more men, for
mitted.

into the pporu-
ayes returned
any of the said Ar-

These

Hen. 4. Pruss.ambass. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

171

These be the grieuances and offences, whereat the marchants
of the *Hans* of *Alm-tine*, comming vnto, and residing in the Realme of
England, doe finde themselves aggriued, contrarie to the Articles and
privileges of the Charter granted vnto them by the worthy Progeni-
tors of the king of England that now is, and also by the said
soveraigne Lord the King ratified, and confirmed.



Item, whereas the foresaid marchants haue a priuilege granted vnto
them by Charter, that they may, in cities, boroughs, and in other towns
and villages throughout the whole realme of England, exercise traffique in
groffe, as wel with the natural inhabitants of the kingdome, as with stran-
gers, and priuate persons: of late, those that are free denizens in the cities,
boroughs, and villages within the foresaid kingdome, do hinder and restraine
all others that be strangers, foreigners, and aliens, that they neither can, nor
dare buy and sel with the marchants of the *Hans* aforesaid, to their great hinderance and losse.

Item, the foresaid marchants by vertue of their charter were wont to haue and to hold houses
and mansions, for the reposing of themselves any of their goods, wherefoeuer they pleased in any
cities, boroughs, or villages, throughout the whole kingdome: howbeit of late the foresaid mar-
chantes are not suffered to take up their mansions, contrary to the tenour of their charter.

Item, the foresaid marchants are priuileged not to vndergoe any other burthens or impositi-
ons, but onely to pay certaine customs, as it doeth by their charter manifestly appeare. Notwith-
standing at p same time when Simon de Moreden was maior of London, the foresaid marchants
were constrained, in the ward of Doue-gate at London, to pay fifteenths, tallages, and other sub-
sidies contrary to the liberties of their charter. Whereupon the said marchants prosecuted the
matter before the Councel of our soveraigne lord the king, inasmuch that they were released from
paying afterwards any such tallages, fifteenths, and subsidies, which marchants, a while after, of
their owne accord and free will, gaue vnto the gild-hall of London an hundredth markes sterling,
conditionally, that they of the cite aforesaid should not at any time after exact or demand of the
said marchants, or of their successors, any tallages, fifteenths, or subsidies, contrary to the tenor of
their charter, as by records in the foresaid gild-hall, it doth more plainly appeare. Howbeit of late
the officers of our lord the king, in the foresaid ward of Doue-gate, constrained the marchants as
foresaid to pay tallages, fifteenths, & other subsidies, And because the said marchants murmured
and refused to pay any such contributions, alleging their priuileges, the foresaid officers arre-
sted the goods of those said marchants (which are as yet detained byr a the ar. est) notwithstanding
that they were released before the councel of our soveraigne lord the king, & also that they gaue
vnto the said gild-hall one hundredth marks to be released, as it is aforesaid. And also the foresaid
marchants were constrained to pay 12. d. in the pound, and of late 6. d. and other subsidies, more
then their ancient customs, to the great damage of those marchants.

Item, the foresaid marchants are priuileged as touching customs of wools by the bought within
the realm of England, & they are not bound to pay, ouer & b. Does their ancient customs, but onely
the realm of England, & they are not bound to pay, ouer & b. Does their ancient customs, but onely
chantes are compelled to pay for euery sack of wool (besides the ancient custom & the 40. d. aforesaid)
a certain imposition called Pence for the town of Calce, namely for euery sack of wool 19. d. more
then the marchants of England doe pay, to their great losse, & against the liberty of their charter.

Item, the foresaid marchants are priuileged by their charter, that concerning the quantitey of
their marchandize brought into the realme of England (in regard whereof they are bound to pay
3. d. for the worth of euery pound of siluer) credit is to be giuen vnto them for the letters of their
masters and of their companies, if they were able to shew them. And if so be they had no letters
in this behalfe to shew, that then credite should be giuen vnto themselves, and that their othe, or
the othe of their attorney should be taken, without any other proof, as touching the value of their
marchandize so brought in, & that thereupon they should be bound to pay customs, namely the cu-
stomes of 3. d. wistly for that cause to be paid. But now the customers of our soveraigne lord the
king put their goods to an higher rate then they ought or were wont to be: and hereupon they
compell them to pay custome for their goods, at their pleasure, scannir & about their freight and
carriage of the said marchants, and against the tenor of their charter.

Item, the foresaid marchants by way of pitifull complaint do allege, that whereas the worthy
progenitors of our Lord the king that now is, by vertue of the said great charter, granted liber-
tie vnto them to pay the customs of certain clothes, namely of kharlet, and cloth died in grape,

The ancient
customs of
wools.

Pence for the
towne of Calce.

The great
charter of
marchants.

and of other clothes of allise, which were by them to be caried out of the realme of England, enu-
as by their foresaid Charter it doth more plainly appeare: and whereas our soueraigne lord the
king that now is (ratifying and confirming the said charter, and being willing that they should
haue more especiall fauour shewed vnto them) granted vnto them by their Charter, that the said
marchants should be exempted and freed from all custome and imposition of small clothes, as in
pieces and in narrow clothes which were not of allise, and in such other clothes of like qualitie:
yet of late the Customers of our Lord the King that now is, not allowing their said speciall
Charter so granted vnto the marchants aforesaid, do compel them to pay for straight clothes and
for pieces of clothes which are not of allise, (together with other demands particularly & severally
made) as great custome as if the clothes were full out of allise. Whereupon also of late, the custo-
mers of the small or petty custome & of the subsidy doe demand of them custome for kersey-clothes
equal vnto the custome of those clothes, that be of full allise, whereas the foresaid marchants were
not wont to pay for those kerseys by vertue of their Charter, but onely according to the worth of
each pound of siluer, as namely for other goods which are of golde weight: to the great hinderance
of the foresaid parties, and against the manifest graunt of our soueraigne Lord the king, as it ap-
peareth in the said speciall Charter.

Item, the said marchants alleage, that they are priuiledged by their Charter, if they pay cu-
stome and subsidy for their goods in the behalfe of our lord the king, at any port of England where
those goods haue arrived, and afterward would transpoyt the said goods or any part of them un-
to any other port within the realme aforesaid: that then they should be quite released from paying
of any other custome for the same goods, if they bring a warrant that they haue paid the said cu-
stome, as is aforesaid. Of late it fortuned, that a certaine man of their Societe named Nicholas
Croshaire, being a marchant of the lande of Prussia, immediately after the conceits was conclu-
ded betwene the English and the Prussians, brought vnto the towne of Sandwich a shipp laden
with bow-staues and other merchandize, and there well and truly paid the custome of our lord
the king, for all his wares: and selling there part of the same goods, he afterward transpoyted par-
cel thereof in a small barke vnto London, there to be solde, and caried a warrant also with him,
that he had at Sandwich paid the custome due vnto our lord the king: & yet (the said warrant not-
withstanding) the customers of the petty custome & subsidy of London came & demanded custome
of him at another time contrary to reason, & against the tenor of their charter: and the said Nicholas
offred pledges vnto them, yea, euen ready money downe into their hands, until the question were
discussed and determined, whether he should pay new custome or no: but this they would not doe.
Then the said Nicholas brought a briefe from our lord the king, to get himselfe discharged from
paying the said custome: and for all that, the foresaid customers would not as yet haue regard vnto
him, but kept the said goods within shipboord, vnder the river of Thames, for the space of 15. dayes,
until he had paid another custome, to the great losse of the said Nicholas, for that which he sold first
at Sandwich to be deliuered at London for seven nobles, he could not afterward haue for it above
four nobles, and yet so was it solde, by reason of the harme which his wares had taken by ly-
ing so long vpon the water, contrary to the tenor of their Charter.

Item, the said marchants do alleage, that another of their company called Peter Herson bought
at Briskow certain clothes, & laded the same in a ship, to be transpoyted for Prussia, for the which he
truly paid at Briskow, the customs & subsidies due vnto our soueraigne lord the king: which ship
with the foresaid goods arriving at London: the customers of the petty-custome and of the subsidy
there would not permit the said ship with the goods to passe vnto the parts aforesaid, until the said
Peter had paid another custome for the same goods (the warrant, which he brought with him not-
withstanding) to his great hinderance, and contrary to the tenor of their Charter.

Item, pitifully complaining the foresaid marchants alleage, that whereas every marchant, bring-
ing wares into the realme, was wont to haue a schedule wherein his name was written, for a specifi-
cation & certificat of the quantity of his goods in the said schedule to be found at the arrual of the
ship, without paying thereof ought at all, of late the customers of the petty custome do compel the
to pay for each mans name written a peny, at the arrual of their goods out of every ship wherein the
said goods are found, what commodities & merchandize soeuer they be: when... notwithstanding,
if there be a chest or any other final matter, there should not thereof be any custome due vnto our
lord the king, nor any receiued vnto his Maiesties use. In like maner do the customers of the sub-
sidy deale. Whereas also the foresaid marchants were not wont to pay for a cocket for the conuey-
ance & transpoytation of their goods out of the realme (albeit many names were written therein)
more then 4. d. of late the customers of the petty custome do compel them to pay for every name con-
tained in the same cocket, 4. d. and in like sort do the customers of the said subsidy deale. Which
contribution in a yere extendeth it self vnto a great summe, to the vnkown preiudice of our lord
the

The speciall
Charter.

The custo-
mers of the
petty custome.

1405

The custo-
mers of the
subsidie.

Hen.

the king,
from his
the said m

Item, the
subsidie,
yet notwith-
stand the cus-
tomers of the
marchants
not to the g
quicke dispo-

Item, the
the subsidie
goods of the
be custome
aboue name
certaine sum-
me and to the
the said mar-
chants certain-
ly of clothes
sayd marchan-
t refused to com-
paying and yon-
dering of the
mers are bound
them by the said
fees and comm-
faithfully, with
custome.

Item, the said
ron do not pay
more then the
v, for every hund-
red said marchants
for being great

Item, the for-
of Prussia, bring-
usual custom of 3.
eracted 7. pound
got a briefe from
howbeit, that at
halfe, but would be

William Estur-
lord, L. Henry by
appointed to par-
of Almain, concern-
our said soueraigne
clerk aforesaid, the
our said soueraigne
to come to the know-
(hono. firs) Henr. W
clerk of Colen, Ma-
sten clerk, Sir Iohn d
of Wimar, being, as
together at the town
repres & reformation
hinder such priuileg
marchants aforesaid, by
that now is, & by him

the king, more then any man could suppose (for the customers enjoy their trees and commodities from his Gracety that they may doe him faithfull service) and likewise to the great damage of the said marchants.

Item, pitifully complaining the said marchants do alleage that they are constrained to pay for subsidies, sometime 12 d. and sometime 6 d. in the pound, contrary to the tenor of their charter: and yet notwithstanding when their marchandize cometh to the wharf, the customers prolong & detain the time 3 or 4 weeks before they will take custome for their goods, in the which space other marchants sell their goods, the customers not regarding whether the goods aforesaid take more or less to the great damage aswell of our lord the king, as of the said marchants: because, if they had quicke dispatch, they might pay custome unto his Gracety oftner then they doe.

Item, the said marchants doe farther alleage, that the customers of the petty custome, and of the subsidies in the port of London haue appointed among themselves certaine men to scale up the goods of the said marchants, so soon as they are arrived at the port of safety, until the said goods be customed. By means of the which scaling, the aforesaid parties doe compell the marchants certain summe of money, to the great hinderance of the sayde marchants, and contrarie to the said charter. Whereupon, the said customers haue obtained betwene themselves, that the said marchants shall put up no cloth into burlers, to transport out of the realme, but such as is appointed by them for the same purpose bee there present, to see what sayde marchants would haue made by such burlers, the sayde parties assigned to be overseers laying and upprocking from day to day, so long as themselves listed, to the great losse and undoing of the sayde marchants, and contrarie to their liberties: because the sayde customers are bound by their office to doe this, without any contribution thereto to bee paid unto them by the said marchants: for that they doe enjoy from our soueraigne Lord the king their fees and commodities, to the ende that they may serue him and euery marchant truly and faithfully, without any contribution by them to be imposed anewe vpon the sayde marchants, of custome.

Item, the said marchants doe alleage, that the customers & bailiffs of the town of Southhampton do compell them to pay for euery last of herrings, pitch, & rope athes brought thither by the 2 s. more then the kings custome: and for euery hundred of bowstaves & bowds called Waghenicot, 2 s. for euery hundred of bowds called Ricke. And for al other marchandize brought by the sayde marchants unto the same towne: which contributions they neuer paid at any time heretofore, being greatly to their hinderance, and contrary to the tenor of their Charter.

Item, the sayde marchants doe alleage, that one of their company, called Albert Redewilsh of Prussia, bringing diuers goods & marchandizes unto Newcastle vpon Tyne, & there paying the usual custom of 3 d. in the pound for al his wares, the bailiffs of the said towne, against all reason, exacted 7 pound sterling at his hands more then the custome whereupon the sayde marchant got a brieve from the kings maiesty, for the recovery of the said 7 li. according to equity & reason: howbeit, that at the coming of the said brieve the sayde bailiffs would do nothing on his behalf, but would haue haue their sayde associate, contrary to their charter and privileges.

William Esturmy knight, & John Kingdon canon of Lincolne, being by his most mightie prince & lord, L. Henry by Gods grace K. of England & France & lord of Ireland, sufficiently deputed and appointed to parle, treat, & agree wth the common society of the marchants of the Hans of Duchland of Almain, concerning & about the redressing & reformation of vniuersal attēpes happening betwene our said soueraigne L. the king his liege people & subjects on the one part, & betwene the common society aforesaid, the cities, towne, & particular persons thereof on the other part: do (for the behalf of our said soueraigne L. the king, with a mind & intention to haue al singular things vnderwritten to come to the knowledge of the said common society) intimate, declare, & make known unto you citizen of Colen, Mainard Buxtehude citizen, & deputy of the city of Lubec, Henry Fredelaw, Joh. van Berken clerk, Sir John de Aa knight deputy of the citie of Rostok, Herman Meyer deputy of the citie of Wilmar, being, as the procurators, messengers, & commissioners of the sayde cities, assembled together at the towne of Hage in Holland, with the aforesaid Will, & John in regard of the sayde cities & reformation: that, euen as our said soueraigne L. the king his meaning is not to disturb or hinder such privileges as haue bin heretofore granted & vouchsafed unto the common society of the marchants aforesaid, by the renowned kings of England, & the worthy progenitors of our L. the K. that now is, & by himself also vnder a certain form confirmed: euen so he is determined (without prejudice

preiudice of forren lawes) vpon iust, mature and sober deliberation, by his royall authoritie to withstand such priuiledges, as by reason of the abuse thereof, haue bene infinitely preiudiciall vnto himselfe and his subjects.

Inprimis the said ambassadours doe affirme as afoze, that whereas all and euery the Marchants of the said company, as often as they would, were, both in the Realme of England, and in other territories & dominions subiect vnto our soueraigne lord the king, admitted and suffered (according to the tenor of the forrenamed priuiledges granted vnto them) freely, friendly and securely to traffique and conuerse with any of his Maiesties liege people and subjects whatsoever, or with other people of whatsoever nation liuing in the realme of England, or in the dominions afozesaid: the said common society of marchants by their publike & deliberate common counsell did appoint & ordain, & no society in any cities, townes, or places, neither yet any particular man of any such society (there being no lawfull or reasonable cause why) shoulde in any wise admit any marchants of the realme of England resorting vnto their cities or other places for marchandize, to any intercoure of traffike: but that the said English marchants should bee altogether excluded from all traffike and mutuall conuersation among them, by denouncing and inflicting grieuous penalties of money as well vpon cities as other places, and vpon particular marchants also of the forsesaid societie practising the contrary.

Item, that immediately after, the forsesaid parties enacting and ordaining published their sayde statute and ordinance, in all kingdomes, prouinces, partes, cities, and townes, wherein any marchants of the said societie were conuersant.

Item, that after that publication, the statute and ordinance afozesaid by euery of the marchants of the forrenamed societie were inuolably obserued.

Item, that the said statute and ordinance hath bene so rigorously put in execution, that whereas immediately after certaine English marchants with their ships, mariners, and marchandize being in a certaine part of one of the principall cities of the forsesaid societie, utterly destitute of meate, drinke, and money, publickly offered to sell their wollen clothes of England, onely to provide themselves of necessary victuals: yet the marchants of the said citie, stoutly persisting in their statute and ordinance afozesaid, straightly prohibited the buying of such clothes, vnder paine by denying meate and drinke vnto the said English marchants.

Item, the forsesaid societie decreed and ordained, that no marchant of the said company shoulde in any place or countrey whatsoever, buy any woollen clothes of the realme or dominion of England (albeit offered by others and not by English men) or, hauing bought any, shoulde, after the terme prefixed, sell them, imposing grieuous pecuniary mulcts, besides the forfeiture of the clothes so bought or sold, vpon them that would attempt the contrary.

Item, that after the said statute and ordinance, the forsesaid societie decreed, that all marchants of the said companie, hauing among their wares and marchandize any woollen clothes made in England, shoulde either sell the said clothes, or within a short space there limited shoulde, vnder paine of forfeiting the said clothes, utterly reuocall the vse and commoditie thereof: so that withstanding a grieuous penaltie of money being imposed vpon the violaters of the same statute.

Item, that the statutes and ordinances afozesaid might with more speed and celerity be put in execution, the said authours and publishers thereof imagining, according to their desire, that by this means an utter extirpation and ouerthrow of English marchants might, yea & of necessity must ensue: vpon their serious & long premeditated deliberation, straightly commanded & intoynd, vnder paine of losing the benefit of all priuiledges, wherefoeuer, or by the princes of what lands, or the Magistrates of what Cities or townes soeuer vouchsafed vnto the said common societie, that not onely the aldermen of that societie in all places throughout the realme of England, but also all other marchants of the said companie, after the manner of marchants conuersing in the said Realme, shoulde, without exception of persons, utterly abstain from all intercoure of traffike with the marchants of the realme afozesaid: yea, and that they shoulde depart out of the said kingdome within a very short space limited. For the dispatching of al which premises without delay, it was accorded to their commandement effectually pproued.

Item, that the societie afozesaid hath appoynded diuers very unreasonable statutes & ordinances, made & published by the marchants of the same societie residing in the kingdome of Norway and Swedland, to the great preiudice of the kingdome of England, and the marchants thereof: and as yet both covertly and expressely do appoyne the same, vniuersally putting them in daily execution.

Item, whereas in the priuiledges & indulgences granted by & renouued by the same kinges of England, & worthy progenitors of our soueraigne lord the king & now is, vnto the societie afozesaid, it is provided, & the said marchants shal not auow any man which is not of their companie, nor shal not colour his goods and marchandize vnder their companie: whereas also in the confirmation of the

The Hans societie determined the ouerthrow of English marchants.

Statutes against & English marchants in Norway and in Swedland.

the sayd marchants paine of the ger of any or diminish thereabout ration of the ties of the l on whereof rations of t ambassadours what maner challengeth as is about r Forouen no ordained baining such times and pl

A letter

Henric the gengen greeting, and c When as yo there expected erpicio, that the toine iniuries y commoditie of h our welbeloued vpon our ambass (which, our forses remede and happy busines, could by day to the end yo there might be, al bassadoys, euen a the moneth of Jol long before the depe could be found wh 02 Middleburgh, Middleborough w strongly wasted ou maine in sustente e ffection vnto the bus from the bottoome of place betwee our good once again to se dract, giuing him the your commandement to bring the matter r friendship, without al might an answer in vnto you, that we haue the sayd William: for are and diligence about forsayd busines. Done spectry and to vnto y the peate of our Lord r

the sayd priuiledges made by our soueraigne lord that nowe is, it is manifestly proued, that the marchants of the Hans towne, vnder the colour of their priuiledges in England, shall not byponger of any other towne in their liberties, by whom the kings custome may in any soze be withholde or diminished: & yet the contrary vnto al these prouises hath bin euery yere, for these 20. yeres or thereabout notoriously practised and committed, as well openly by the generall counsell, and toller of the sayd Hans societie, as also seuerally by the aduise and permission of ouers particular cities of the sayd Hans societie are not able at this present fully to declare. But that all occasions of the last aboue mentioned diminution may be prevented for the time to come, the sayd ambassadoys doe demand to haue from the sayd societie a declaration in writing, what and what manner of ceremonies, cities, townes, villages or companies they be, for which the sayd societie challengerth and p. that they ought to enioy the priuiledges granted vnto their marchants, as is aboue mentioned.

How many of which be the Hans townes,

Howeuer, it is required by the sayd ambassadoys, if the societie aforesayd hath not decreed nor ordeined the things aboue written, that the names of the cities and places decreeing and ordaining such statutes & ordinances, may by the sayd common societie either now or at some other times and places conuenient for the same purpose, be expressed and set downe in writing.

A letter of Henry the fourth king of England &c. vnto Frater Conradus de Iungingen the master generall of Prussia.

Henrie the fourth to the most noble and mightie personage of sacred religion Fr: Conradus de Iungingen Master general of the order of the Dutch knightes of S. Marie, our most deare friend, greeting, and continual perfection of amity.

When as your messengers and ambassadoys were of late personally present in Holland, and there expected the arrival of our ambassadoys vntill the first day of the moneth of November last expired, that there might be by way of friendly conference a remedie provided in regard of certain injuries pretended to be offered, by both our subiects one against another. for the publike commoditie of both parts, we were determined to haue sent vnto Dordrecht, at the sayd daye, vpon our ambassage-affayres: hauing as yet in our desires, for a peaceable ending of the matter, (which our sayd ambassadoys, by reason of the shortnes of time, or the finding out of some other remedie and happy conclusion of all and singular the sayd attempts concerning the principall business, could by no means at that instant attaine vnto) that vpon some other moze conuenient daye to the end your ambassadoys might not returne home altogether frustrate of their expectation there might be, after the wonted friendly manner, a conference & agreement with your sayd ambassadoys, such as by other letters of ours directed vnto your sayd ambassadoys the second day of the moneth of November aforesayd wee haue deliuered our mind vnto them. But it founde not long before the departure of your ambassadoys into their owne countrey, that no sufficient shipping could be found wherein our sayd ambassadoys might haue secure and safe passage vnto Dordrecht, or Middleburgh, neither was it thought that they should get any passage at all, till the ships at Middleborough were returned into our kingdome, by the force whereof they might be the moze strongly wasted ouer. And so by reason of the departure of your ambassadoys, all matters reservation vnto the business as yet imperfect. Wherefore (our friend vnfainedly beloued) desiring place betwene our & your subiects, may in time to come also be kept inuolable, we haue thought good once again to send one of our sayd ambassadoys, namely William Esturmy knight to Dordrecht, giuing him charge thither to make haste, and there to stay, till some of your messengers, at your commandement doe in time conuenient repaie vnto that place, there (by Gods assistance) to bring the matter vnto an happy conclusion. May it please you therefore of your vnspayed friendship, without all inconuenience of delay, to returne, not vnto vs, but vnto our fornamed knight an answer in writing, what your will and determination is. Neither let it seeme strange vnto you, that we haue not at this present sent our fornamed Iohn Kington clerke together with the sayd William: for the cause of his aboue with vs is, that he may in the meane season employ his care and diligence about those matters which must be preparatiues for the final conclusion of the sayd business. Honorable sir, and most deare friend, we doe most heartily wish increase of prosperitie and joy vnto your person. Given in our palace of Westminster the 14. day of Feb. in the 1407.

To the right noble and valiant knight Sir William Sturmy sent at this present by the most souereigne King of England &c. as his ambassadour vnto Dordrecht, his most sincere friend,

Honorable Sir, our most entier friend, wee receiued the royall letters of the most myghty prince and lord, our lord the king of England and France and lord of Ireland, sent vnto vs vnder the date of the 14. day of February (which we receiued at our castle of Marienburgh the 11. of April) containing, amongst other matters, that his Maesties purpose was once againe to sende one of his ambassadoys, namely your selfe our very sincere friend vnto Dordrecht, giuing you in charge that you would make haste thither & there stay, vntill some of our subiects might at our commaundement, in conuenient time repaire vnto the same place, there (by Gods assistance) to bring our matters vnto a happy conclusion. And then he requested that wee should without delay write our determination vnto you, as the conclusion of the said letter imposeth. Powbeit our most deare friend the treaties & conferences about the redress of reformation of vniuersal attempts committed by the subiects of our sayd lord the king & our subiects, one against another, are both on our behalfe, and on the behalfe of the common societie of the Hans marchants, hitherto had, made, and continued common. And so our commissioners vpon our full and absolute commaundment, shal, for the managing of these and of other affaires of the foresaid societie, many waies bygent and diligent, vpon the feast of our Lords Ascension next to come, meet with the said societie at Lubec, there to giue notice what they haue determined to conclude in this present business & in others for their owne behalfe. For we wil giue our ambassadoys which are there to appeare, straightly in charge that according to the kings request aforesayd they doe without delay procure an answer to be written vnto your honour concerning the determination of the foresaid societie. Giuen at the place and vpon the day aboue named, in the yeare of our Lord 1407.

Fr. Wernherus de Tettingen, commander in Elbing, general vice-masler and lieutenant in the roome of the Masler generall of the Dutch knights of the Order of S. Marie &c. of late deceased.

The letters of Henry the 4. king of England &c. vnto Viricus de Iungingen Master generall of Prussia, 1408. wherin he doth ratifie and accept the last agreement made at Hage in Holland.

Henry &c. vnto the honourable and religious personage Fr. Viricus de Iungingen Master generall of the Dutch knights of S. Marie &c. our most deare friend, greeting and dayly increase of our accustomed amity and friendship. Wee doe by these presents giue your honour to understand, that our faithfull & welbeloued William Sturmy knight, and Master Iohn Kingdon clerke, our ambassadoys and messengers sent of late on our behalfe, vnto the presence of your predecessor for the redressing of certaine grieuances and damages being contrary to iustice offered against vs and our liege subiects by the people & subiects of your predecessor, & against them also by our subiects as it is aforesayd, in friendly maner to be procured, of late returning out of the parts of Alemain made relation vnto vs and to our counsell, that hauing conferred with your predecessor about the foresaid affayres, the particulars following were at length concluded: namely first of all, that at a certaine day and place they should meete in Holland with his ambassadoys and messengers, to hold a friendly conference between them about the redressing and reformation of the grieuances and damages aforesayd: and that they should by the equall waighe of diligent examination ponder, & in the balance of iustice discuss, & define al singular the foresaid grieuances & damages inflicted on both parts. Powbeit at length after sundry prologations then made & continued on this behalfe, our ambassadoys & messengers aforesaid vpon the 28. of August last past, assembling themselves for our part at the towne of Hage in Holland, the hon. & discret personages Arnold Heke burgomaster of the towne of Danzick, & Iohn Crolowe, for the behalf of your subiects of Prussia, and Tidman de Meule, & Iohn Epenscheid for the behalfe of Liuania, being assembled as messengers and commissioners about the redress and reformation aforesayd, did then and there demand in certaine articles, of our ambassadoys and messengers abouenamed 25034. nobles & half a noble, for the grieuances & damages offered (as it was the laid) to your subiects of Prussia, and 24082. nobles, 12. s. 8. d. in recompense of the damages offered vnto your

in meeting at
Hage the 28. of
August 1407.

your sub
aforesay
their ger
lar the fi
yeares at
ly they o
thing, an
much as c
halfe of o
sadoys & m
s offered
allo for wa
at the coun
upon by the
expired vnt
mediatly fol
England for
that they sho
hands, peren
petition of the
prouided
summes aboi
him of them
made on the b
inst, crue, and
summes of any
ced from the la
upon some true
ring that the say
vnto reason and
agreement. An
the league of am
our and your sub
our people may h
and peace of both
faithfull and muc
summe of 8957.
22496. nobles, si
in regard of the da
subiects offered by
ensuing the sayd si
Conditionally than
on your part withi
766. nobles and of
summes as withi
sufficient delatori
due. Euen as we i
sayd. Now as touc
required to procure
ence and religion see
for their sakes heart
that after the sy
two parties p^{ro}uened
table for the soules o
prouided: vpon cond
medie p^{ro}vided by you
may prosperously
our palace of Weim
four relieue,

the most mighty
d, sent unto us
arlenburgh the
once againe to
act, giuing you
might at our
stance to bring
out delay wth
obeyt our most
attempts com-
are both on our
had, made, and
ment, that, for
agent and diffi-
at Lubeck, there
others for their
highly in charge
n answer to be
e, Giuen at the

eral vice-master
all of the Dutch
ed.

o Pricus
doth

ngen Passer ge-
ing and dayly in-
our honour to ur-
ohn Kingdon
ence of your pre-
to iustice offer
against them al-
urning out of the
d with your sove-
at length conclu-
Holland with his
the redressing and
he equall waite
regular the forsa-
negotiations then
the 28. of August
be hon. & discreet
we, for the behalf
half of Liouonia,
nation aforesaid,
tengers about
as the laid) to point
offered unto those
your

Hen. 4. Pruss. ambass. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

177

your subjects of Liouonia. And when the substance of those articles about the granteances & loss of aforesaid was by the sayd ambassadours and messengers thoroughly examined and discussed, by their generall consent it was finally agreed, that your subjects, in consideration of all and singular the foresayd grievances and damages offered unto them by our people, should within three yeares after the feast of Easter next ensuing, at three equall payments receive from us, namely the first of Prussia, 8957. nobles, and the second of Liouonia 22496. nobles, six pence, halfe penny, farthing, and no more, so that we our selves thought good to condescend thereunto. Howbeit, forasmuch as certain other articles of your subjects of Prussia, and also certain articles in the be- half of our subjects containing grievous complaints in them, being propounded before the ambassadours & messengers aforesaid, for the attaining of reformation in regard of the damages & grievances offered on both partes, could not as the, for the great obscurity of diuers of the sayd articles, and also for want of sufficient proofe at the last meeting appointed and held by the sayd articles, and upon by the ambassadours and messengers of both partes, that from the 15. day of October then last expired unto the feast of Easter now next ensuing, and from thence forth within one whole yeere in- mediately following, the plaines of both partes should thoroughly declare before our chancelour of England for the time being, the foresayd obscurities concerning the substance of their articles, and that they should, for the obtaining of execution, and complement of iustice at our sayd chancelours hands, peremptorily minister necessary probations, vnder paine of perpetuall exclusion from the petition of those things which are contayned in the articles about mentioned.

Howbeit alwayes, that if at the last it shall be by lawfull proofes made manifest concerning the summes above written of any part or parcell thereof, that due satisfaction hath bene made to him or them unto whom it was due, or that those goods of and for the which complaint hath bene made on the behalfe of your subjects haue pertained or doe appertaine unto others, or any other just, true, and reasonable cause may lawfully be alleged, why the payment of all the foresayd summes of any of them ought not to be performed: that then so much only is to be cut off or deuoted from the sayd summes as shall be found to be already payd or to pertaine unto others, or else vpon some true, just, and reasonable cause (as is aforesaid) not to be due. The therefore con- sidering that the sayd friendly conference, and the final agreement ensuing thereupon are agreeable unto reason and equitie, doe, for our part ratifie and willingly accept the very same conference and agreement. And forasmuch as it hath bene alwayes our desire, and is as yet our intention, that the league of amity and the integritie of loue, which hath of olde time bene observed betwene our and your subjects, may in times to come perpetually remaine inuolable, and that your and our people may hereafter, not onely for the good of our common weale but also for the commodity and peace of both partes, according to their wonted maner, assemble themselves and enioy the faithfull and mutuall conuersation one of another: we will cause in our citie of London, with the summe of 8957. nobles, six pence, halfe penny, farthing, recompense to be performed unto the Liouonians, in regard of the damages and injuries (which in very deepe proceeded not of our consent) by our subjects offered unto them, as it is aforesaid, and within three yeares after the feast of Easter next ensuing the sayd summes of money to be payd at three payments, and by three equall portions. Conditionally that unto our subjects which be endamaged correspondent satisfaction be likewise on your part within the terme of the foresayd three yeeres performed, with paying the summes of 766. nobles and of 4535. nobles, demanded on our behalfe, and also with the payment of such summes as within one yeere immediately ensuing the feast of Easter aforesaid, shall be found by sufficient declarations and proofes to be made on the behalfe of our subjects (as is aforesaid) to be due. Euen as we in like maner will make satisfaction unto your subjects within our citie aforesaid. Now as touching the request of your ambassadours and of the Liouonians, whereby we were required to procure some hollesome remedy for the soules of certaine drowned persons, as consci- ence and religion seemeth to challenge (in regard of whom we are moued with compassion, and do for their sakes heartily console their misshaps) you are (our entier friend) of a certaintie to vnder- stand, that after we shall be by your letters aduertized of the number, state, and condition of the sayd parties drowned, we will cause suffrages of prayers and diuers other hollesome remedies pro- vided: vpon condition, that for the soules of our drowned countrey men there be the like re- medie provided by you. The almighty grant vnto your selfe and vnto your whole Dyer, that your palace of Westminster the 26. of March, in the yere of our Lord 1408. and in the ninth yere

The letters of *Fr: Ulricus* Master of *Prussia* directed
vnto the king of England, signifying that he is contented with
the agreements concluded by his messengers at *Hage*.

To the most renowned prince and mighty lord *L Henrie* king
of England and France, and lord of Ireland, our most gracious lord,



Unto your highnes pleasure at all assaies humbly recommending my voluntarie service &c. Most renowned king, mighty prince, and gracious lord, we received of late with great reverence as it becometh vs, by our welbelovéd Arnold de Dassel the bearer of of these presents, your *Spacities* letters of late directed vnto vs, making mention amongst other matters of certaine appointments first made and concluded between the noble and worthy personages William Esturmy knight, John Kington clerke, and William Brampton citizen of London your ambassadours and messengers on the one parte, and our honorabable and religious brethren, namely Conradus Lichtensten great commander, Warnherus de Tetingen chiefe hospitalary & commander in Elbing, and Arnold de Hacken treasurer, being the procuratours and commissioners of Fra, Conradus de Juingen our last predecessor of famous memory on the other parte, concerning the redressing, reformation, and amendement of uniuersall attempts committed on both sides, at our castle of Marienburgh, and also very lately at the towne of Hage in Holland, namely the twenty eight of the month August in the yeare immediately past, betwene your foresayde ambassadours William Esturmy knight, and John Kington clerke, for your parte, and our trusty and welbelovéd commissioners and procuratours, namely Arnold Hecht burgomaster of our citie of Danizik, and John Crolow citizen of the same citie, for our parte. And for our moze perfect knowledge in this behalfe, our sayd commissioners made relation vnto vs and vnto our whole counsell, that associating vnto themselves our messengers of Lituonia, namely, Tidman Myeul, and Iohn Epenhsid, together with your foresayd ambassadours and messengers, they there finally appoynted and concluded, of and about the aboue mentioned summes of money due on both partes, of the which mention is made in your letters aforesayde, with this speciall ppointment, that in like manner satisfaction be made in all points, both vnto other of our dammished subiects of Prussia, namely such whose goods of the true value thereof haue bene finally adiudged by the iudges or prosecutors of our lawes, and vnto such who hauing bought their articles of complaints vnto the audience of the most dread and mighty prince and lord, our lord Ruperus king of the Romans alwayes most sovereigne, were in conclusion to haue the estimations of their goods to be adiudged by the sentence of the sayd lord, with the aduise of two of his counsellors, and also vnto other of our subiects who haue bought in sufficient proofe of damages uniuersally inflicted vpon them by your subiects, ouer and besides the premises. So that in like maner satisfaction be made vnto the common Societie of the Hans marchants: and by the arbitrament set downe in the conferences had at Marienburgh, of the which it was aboue provided and enacted on their behalfe, namely if they will rest contented with our subiects in the courses and means then concluded. If not, we intend not at all to adhere vnto them in this behalfe. Afterward our messengers aforesayde, both they of Prussia and of Lituonia became deb conuenient, iust, and speedy satisfaction, with the payment of all and singular the summes aboue mentioned due vnto both parts (so farre as equity and reason would peld vnto, for the recompense of the parties iniured and endamaged on both sides) to be made within one whole yere accompting from the feast of Easter now last expired vnto the very same feast next to come in the yere immediately following, & that in three severall termes of payment, by three portions of the said summes equally to be diuided, at the towne of Bruges in Flanders as being a place indifferent for all parties, in maner and forme as it was before at Marienburgh required and floode vpon: namely that reformation, reparation, and amendement of all uniuersall attempts committed on both partes ought to be performed within one yere. Howbeit contrariwise your ambassadours aforesayde decreed that the sayd satisfaction should be performed vnto the parties iniured of both parts within three yeeres, beginning to accompt from the feast of Easter last past. And when your ambassadours were not contented with the maner of satisfaction set downe by our men, nor our commissioners were willing in any sort to consent vnto that course which was thought conuenient by your ambassadours, the honorable messengers of the sea-townes of the Hans being thre at that time present, made a motion that the foresayd satisfaction might be performed within two yeeres and an halfe, accompting from the feast of Easter last past, often before mentioned: yet vnder

Here relation
is had vnto
king of the
Romans.

The letters
of *Prussia*,
holder



the one parte, and concerning reformation to our subiects of both that, in the last conference, there was a conclusion in that behalf they durst not length bring by them in writing by our letters we doe at this what we thought gooders be certainly informed your foresayd intention

irected
with

Henrie king
lord.

my voluntarie
lord, we recei-
velon Arnold
of face directed
nominments first
William Estur-
your ambassa-
then, namely
lar & commin-
missioners of
your parte, com-
mitted on both
ge in Holland,
betweene your
your part, and
the Lurgoma-
your parte. And
satisfaction vnto
us of Liunia,
ambassadors and
note mentioned
eters asofesayd,
both vnto othe-
hereof haue bene
ing brought their
loyde, our lord
to haue the effe-
ne aduise of two
sufficient prooue of
premises. So
marchants: and
e which it was
ed with our sub-
here vnto them
Liunia deman-
ur the summes re-
ecto vnto, for the
one wholl pre-
tore come in the
ctions of the lab-
ce indifferent for
ode vpon: name-
ed on both parts
as ofesayd de-
both parts with
en your ambas-
n, nor our com-
ught conuenient
ing there at the
teth in two pres-
tioned: yet vnto
a ccc

a certaine proportion, namely if both parties should agree vnto that forme of satisfaction, and if they should thinke good finally and conclusively to yeild their consent vnto it, Which kind of satisfaction also concurred by the messengers, your lord ambassadors without giving notice therof vnto your royal Maestie, refused finally to approue; being rather desirous to make a true & faithful repose of the sayd forme of satisfaction last above mentioned vnto your kingly highnesse, and summes due and to be due on both partes should more conueniently and speedily bee performed, & thereupon we might be put in good hope, that more speedily and conueniently bee performed, termes, for the sayd satisfaction shoulde on both parts to be performed in, would haue proceeded from your hounsefull and gracious clemencie. And in very deede (most mighty prince) albeit it was neuer the meaning of our sayd predecesors, so far forth as these attayes concerned him, to protract and delay the execution of the sayd business so many and such long distances of time, and that for diuers respects, both because restitution vnto the parties robbed consisted therein, and al- phanes, and other miserable creatures, diuersly and miserably slaine and oppressed: norwichstand- ing we being moued with hearty & seruent zeale and speciall affection vnto your royal crowne of England, and hauing due regard and consideration of your most excellent Maestie, vpon the aduise of our honourable byrthen our counsellors, doe thankfully receive, & by the renour of these presents totally ratifie and approue such satisfactions of the sayd summes howsoever due vnto persons limited and prefixed by your highnes as are expessed in your maiesties letters, and also of other summes which within one yeare immediately ensuing after the feast of Easter last past, by sufficient proofes to be made on their part before your chancelour at your cite of London shall be found due vnto them. Conditionally that without inconuenience of delay and impediment they be performed as they ought to be, according to the premises. In like maner also we our selues with- med vnto your subjects endamaged, with the summe of 766, nobles, being in regard of their losses, of the which they haue given by sufficient informations, due vnto them; and with other like summes also which are by sufficient proofes, within the yeare asofesayd, and in maner and forme prescribed to be exhibited before our treasurer at our cite of Danzick. The almighty vouchsafe prosperously and long time to preserve your maiesties royal person. Given at our castle of Mari- enburgh the 27. of September, in the yeare of our Lord 1408.

Fr. Vlricus de Lungingen master general of the order of the
Duch knights of S. Maries hospital of Ierusalem.

Septem. 27.
1408.

The letters of king Henry the 4. sent vnto Fr. Vlricus master general
of Prussia, wherein he doth absolutely approue the foresaid conference
holden at Hage, and treateth about a perpetual league and amitie to be
concluded betweene England and Prussia.



Enry by the grace of God king of England and France and lord of Ireland, vn-
to the noble & mighty personage of sacred religion Vlricus de Lungingen mas-
ter general of the order of the Duch knights of S. Maries hospital of Ieru-
salem, our entirely beloved friend, greeting and increase of unfained friendship.
After diuers conferences had in sundry places beyond the seas, betweene the
ambassadors and messengers of your late predecesor and of your selfe also, on
the one parte, and betweene our especiall ambassadors and messengers on the other parte, con-
cerning rezoimations, reparations, & restitutions in certaine maner & forme to be performed vn-
to our subjects of both parts, in regard of manifold iniuries practised against them both, and after
that, in the last conference holden by the ambassadors of vs both at the towne of Hage in Hol-
land, there was a motion made concerning a certaine forme of satisfaction, by way of final
conclusion in that behalf: but not being as then by our ambassadors comprehended vnto, be-
cause they durst not proceede vnto the same conclusion without our priuie relation thereof ac-
cordingly being by them made before vs and our counsel: we returned vnto your honour on answer
in writing by our letters vnder our priuie seale, of our full purpose and intencion (vnto the which
letters we doe at this present referre our selues, as if they were here againe exprestly written)
that we thought good to haue done in this behalf: so that wee also might by your friendly let-
ters be certapnly informed of your will and expresse consent, being likewise conformable vnto
your sayd intention, Nowe whereas since that time we haue of late receiued the certaintie
of

of the matter by your letters written vnto vs from your castle of Marienburgh, bearing date the 27. of September last past, containing in effect amongst other matters, that you being moued with a feruent zeale and speciall affection (as you write) vnto the royall crowne of our realme, and hauing due regard and consideration of our roiall maiestie, vpon the abuse of your honourable byethren your counsellors, doe with a thankfull mind accept, and by the tenour of the said letters of yours locally appoynte the concord of a certaine satisfaction to be performed with the payment of certaine summes of money howsoever due vnto your subiects as well of Prussia as of Lithuania, expressed in our former letters, within the termes prescribed by our consent and limited in our said letters, and also of other summes which within one whole yeare immediately following the feast of Easter last past, by sufficient proofes on their part to bee made before our chancelour at our citie of London, shall be found due vnto them: conditionally, that without inconuenience of delay and impediments, the premises be performed as they ought to be. And that your selfe also will without faile, vpon the termes appoynted for the said payments, procure satisfaction to be made accordingly vnto our endamaged subiects with the summes due vnto them by reason of their losses, whereof they haue sufficient information. Wherefore in regard of those your friendly letters, and your courteous answer returned by them vnto vs, as is aforesaid, wee doe psee the vnto you right vnfained thanks. But because it will vndoubtedly be most acceptable and pleasing both vnto vs and vnto our people, and vnto you and your subiects, that the zeale and seruencie of loue which hath from auncient times growen and increased betwene our progenitours for them and their subiects, and your predecessors and their subiects, and which by the insolencie of of certayne lewde persons, without any consent of the principall lordes, hath often bene violated betwene vs and you and mutually betwene the subiects of vs both, may be put in perpetuall by and obtaine full strength in time to come, sithens hereupon (by Gods assistance) it is to be hoped, that vnspeakable commoditie and quiet will rebound vnto both parts: may it seeme good vnto your discretion, as it seemeth expedient vnto vs, that some messengers of yours sufficiently authorized to parle, agree, and conclude with our deputy, about the mutual contraction of a perpetuall league and confirmation of friendship, may with all conuenient speede be sent vnto our presence. At whose arriuall, not onely in this busines so profitable and behoofefull, but also in certaine other affaires concerning the former treaties and conclusions, they may, yea and of necessity must greatly auayle. Wherefore (our entirely beloued friend) euen as vpon consideration of the premises we haue thought good to grante vnto the marchants and subiects of our realme full authoritie to resort vnto your dominions, so we doe in like maner graunt vnto your marchants and subiects free licence and libertie with their marchandises and goods securely to come into our realmes and dominions, there to stay, and at their pleasures thence to returne home. Moreover, if Arnold Dassel, who last of all presented your foresayd letters vnto vs, shal thinke good in the meane season to make his abode here in our dominions (as in verie deepe it is expedient) he may both by serious consideration and deliberate consulting with our commissioners more conueniently and prosperously finde out wayes and meanes, for the more speedy expedition of all the premises. Fare ye well in Christ. Given vnder our priuie seale at our palace of Westminster, the tenth of March, in the yere of our lord 1408, according to the computation of the Church of England, and in the tenth yere of our reigne.

**A new concord concluded between king Henry the
4. and Vlricus de Iungingen Master generall of Prussia,
in the yere of our Lord 1409.**



In this indenture of letters indented be it evidently knowen (for the perpetuall memory of the matter) vnto all faithfull Christians, that the noble & honourable personages Richard Merlowe Prior and citizen of London, Master Iohn Kingdon clerke, and William Askham citizen and Alderman of the same citie, the commissioners of the most soueraigne prince and lord, L. Henrie by the grace of God king of England and France, and lord of Ireland, and Tidericus de Longenthorne knight, Lefardus de Hereford burghmaster of Elbing, and Iohn Crolowe citizen of the citie of Dantzke, the procurators, commissioners, deputies and messengers of the right noble and religious personage Fr. Vlricus de Iungingen Master general of the order of the Dutch knights of S. Maries hospital of Ierusalem, hauing in the names of the sayd king and Master by vertue of the power on both parts committed vnto them, sufficient authoritie, haue appointed and with one consent agreed vpon all and singular the things underwritten.

Inprimi

motion for a
perpetuall
league.

Imp
Sweete
of the
and all
by land
the man
tion of
ing plac
by la
ing in the
Referre
ed, and
in the artic
Item it
order, of
the kingd
comerle
people as
thence retu
and as oft
and wares
their said w
and success
ous, by the
the name of
Item it is

mages, grieu
sems again
the time of
soueraigne
the said Ma
grievances, an
letters obligat
named in this
and c. mmission

Item it is co
of his success
by the said souer
other person wh
molested and da
prisoned, or deat
of them, shal be l

Item it is cou
Master generall
about written, ch
king and his succ
as the subiects of
haue vnto this
Prince, of his succ
ters of the said
of fire moneths
Master generall
uement prooffe
the foresaid king
faction and recon
and also to be p
into the party of
Item by the com
and granted, that so

bearing date the
our being mooued
me of our realme,
of your honoura-
our of the said ter-
med with the pay-
Prussia as of Li-
and limited in our
ly following the
e chancelour ac-
ut inconuenienc
and that pour life
re satisfaction to
em by reason of
hose pour friendly
wee doe preste
able and pleading
and seruencie of
nitours for them
the insolencie of
ten bene violat
put in perpetuall
it is to be ho-
ay it seeme good
ours sufficiently
contraction of a
ede be sent vnto
onefull, but also
ap, pen and of ne-
upon confidence
ts of our realme
vnto your mar-
oods securely in
hence to returne
ters vnto vs, shal
n very deepe it is
our commissio-
e moze speedy
ale at our palat
the computation

Henry the
Prussia,

the perpetual me-
honourable per-
er John Kingdon
titie, the commi-
grace of God king
knight, Leofardus
Danzik, the pro-
us personage Fr.
Marie hospital
mer on both parts
nt agreed vpon all

In print

Hen. 4. Pruss. Ambass. Traffiques, and Discou.

181

In primis for the conseruation of mutuall loue and wanted amitie, and for the tranquillite of
the Realm of England and the Partchants of the territories & dominions of the said Realme
and all other persons of what state or condition soeuer, shall and may safely and securely, as well
by land as by water enter into the parts of Prussia, and there mutually conuerse, and freely after
the manner of Partchants exercise traffique as well with the Prussians as with others of what na-
tion or qualitie soeuer, there also make their abode, and thence vnto their owne homes and dwell-
ing places returne, and depart vnto any place whither and so often as they shall thinke good, as
by land as by water, with their goods, marchandize, and wares whatsoeuer: faithfully pay-
ing in the meane time all rightes & customes due in regard of their said wares and marchandize,
Reserued alwaies vnto the said Master and his successours all right and remedie ordained, gran-
ted, and vouchsafed in certaine obligations by our Lord the king, whereof mention shall be made
in the articles following.

Item it is ordained, that all and singular the subiects of the said Master generall and of his
order, of what state and condition soeuer, shall and may, as well by water as by land enter into
the kingdome of England and into the territories and dominions thereof, and there mutually
conuerse, and freely after the manner of Partchants exercise traffique as well with all English
people as with others of what nation or qualitie soeuer, and there also make their abode, and
thence returne vnto their owne habitations and dwelling places, and to depart whither they will
and as oft as they shall thinke good, as well by land as by water, with their goods, marchandize
and wares whatsoeuer: truly paying in the meane time all rightes and customes due in regard of
their said wares and Partchandize. Reserued alwaies vnto the said soueraigne king, his heires
and successours, all rightes and remedies ordained and graunted vnto them in certaine obligati-
ons, by the commissioners and procurators of the said Master generall aboue-named, and in
the name of the said Master generall.

Item it is with one consent agreed vpon, promised, and graunted that for all and singular da-
mages, grieuances, and robberies howsoeuer done and committed before the date of this pre-
sents against the foresaid soueraigne Prince and his subiects whatsoeuer, and all others which as
the time of the grieuances, damages, and robberies aforesaid, were, or at this present are the said
soueraigne king his subiects; there are due to be payed vnto the said king or his successours by
the said Master generall or his successours, in full satisfaction and recompence of the damages,
grieuances, and robberies aforesaid, written, certaine summes of English mony: euen as in the
letters obligatorie made by the said Master generall his procurators, and messengers aboue-
named in this behalf, and sealed with their seales, and deliuered vnto the fozenamed procurators
and commissioners of our said Lord the king it is expessed moze at large.

Item it is couenanted, graunted, and promised, that no subiect of the said Master generall or
of his successours, by reason of occasion of the damages, grieuances, and robberies aforesaid, shall
by the said soueraigne king or his successours, or by their authoritie or commandement, or by any
other person whatsoeuer who in regard of the foresaid losses, grieuances and robberies hath bene
molested and dammished, or at the procurement or instant suite of any, be attached, arrested, im-
prisoned, or detained; nor that the goods of the said Master generall, or of his successours, or of any
of them, shalbe laid hold on, arrested, or detained.

Item it is couenanted and ordained, that if any of the liege people and subiects of the sayde
Master generall or of his successours shall, contrary to the forme of the concord and graunt next
aboue-written, chance to be molested or endamaged: that then the foresaid soueraigne Lord the
king and his successours the kings of England are bound to make full satisfaction for all such losses
as the subiects of the said Master generall or of his successours or any of them shall for that cause
have vniuilly sustained, vnto the parties endamaged. Which thing, if the foresaid soueraigne
Prince, or his successours in the Realme of England, being conueniently requested by the let-
ters of the said Master generall or of his successours, shall refuse to doe, that then after the terme
of six moneths immediately following the said deniall or refusal, it shalbe right lawfull for the
said Master generall that now is and for any of his successours in time to come (hauing first made con-
uenient proofe that the foresaid request was by him or them exhibited) to arrest so many goods of
the foresaid king his subiects found in the land of Prussia, as may suffice for the reasonable satis-
faction and recompense of any person or persons whatsoeuer vniuilly molested in this behalf;
and also to detain the said goods vnder arrestes, vntill condigne satisfaction and amends be made
by the party or parties molested.

Item by the commissioners and procurators often aboue-named it is couenanted, promised, &
graued, that for all and singular the damages, molestations, and robberies by the foresayde
soueraigne

Soueraigne king his liege people & subjects howsoever before the date of these p[re]sents committed and offered against the said Master general or against any of his subjects whether Prussians or Liuvonians, and against all others who at the time of the damages, grievances & robberies aforesaid were, or at this present are the subjects of the Master general aforesaid (except notwithstanding certaine damages & grievances hereafter to be mentioned, whereof also some p[ro]visions shalbe had in the articles following, which damages were before the date of these p[re]sents by the said Soueraigne king his liege people and subjects inflicted upon certaine subjects of the aforesaid general Master, especially them of Prussia which hereafter shalbe named) there are certaine summes of money due to be payed unto the said Master general or unto his successours by the said Soueraigne Prince or his successours for the full satisfaction of the aforesaid damages, molestations and robberies inflicted upon the Prussians and Liuvonians, and the others above mentioned, even as in the letters obligatorie of the said Soueraigne Lord the king made in this behalfe, being given and deliuered unto the said Master general his procuratours and messengers, it is declared more at large.

Item, it is coucnanted, graunted and promised, that none of the liege people or subjects of the aforesaid Soueraigne prince or of his heires shall, by reason or occasion of the damages, grievances, and robberies aforesaid, by the said Master general or his successours or by their authoritie and commandement, or by any other who in respect of the said damages, grievances and robberies above mentioned, hath bene molested or dammified, or by any of their procurements or instance suites, shalbe attached, arrested, imprisoned or detained; nor that any goods of the subjects of the said Soueraigne king or his heires or any of them, shall bee attached, arrested, or detained. Reserved alwayes unto the aforesaid Master general and his subjects all right and remedie any way requisite or competent unto them by meanes of the obligations aforesaid.

Item it is coucnanted and agreed that if any of the liege people or subjects of the sayde Soueraigne prince or of his heires and successours shall (contrary to the forme of conceits and graunt next above-written) chaunce to bee molested or endamaged; that then the said Master general and his successours, for all losses and hinderances which the liege people and subjects of the sayde Soueraigne prince or of his heires or successours, shall by that meanes have violently sustained, are bound to make full satisfaction unto the partie endamaged. Which if the Master general aforesaid or his successours being conveniently required by the letters of the sayde Soueraigne prince or of his heires, shall refuse to doe; that then, after the space of three moneths next ensuing the time of the sayde request, it may bee right lawfull for the aforesaid Soueraigne prince that now is, or that then for that time shall be (conuenient proofe being first brought, that the sayde request had conueniently bene exhibited) to arreſt in many goods of the sayde Master general his subjects founde in the Realme of England, as may suffice for the reasonable satisfaction and amends of any person or persons violently molested in this behalfe; and also to detain the sayde goods under safe custodie, untill conuigene satisfaction and amends be made unto the partie or parties aggrieved.

Item it is coucnanted, that besides the summes due unto the sayde Master general and his successours in the behalfe of his subjects both of Prussia and of Liuvonia (whereof mention is made in the former Articles) there are due to bee payed unto the sayde Master general and his successours, for sundry other damages, grievances, and robberies against himselfe and diuers other of his subjects of Prussia, namely Mathewe Ludekenſon, Arnold Ashen, Henri Culeman, Iohn Vnkeltop, Iohn Halewater, Egghard Scoffe of Danzick, and Nicolas Wolmerſtene of Elbing, done and committed by the sayde Soueraigne king his liege people and subjects under-written, even before the date of these p[re]sents, for the full satisfaction of the sayde damages, grievances and robberies, certaine summes of nobles hereafter following. Namely Inprimis by Turburie, and Teny of Hull, 82. nobles, which are due unto the aforesaid Mathewe Ludekenſon. Item by Nicholas Scot of Caleis the some of Turbury, and Hilg of Hull, 256. nobles, which are due unto the aforesaid Arnold de Aschen. Item by the inhabitants of Scardeburgh, Blakeney, and Crowmer (who had one Iohn Jolly of Blakeney for their captaine) 156. nobles, which are due unto Henrie Culeman aforesaid. Item by the inhabitants of Bayon (whose Capitaine was one Pideuille) 125. nobles which are due unto the said Iohn Vnkeltop. Item by the inhabitants of Plymmouth and Derrymouth (whose Capitaines were Henry Pay, and William Gadeling) 600. nobles which are due unto the sayde Iohn Halewater, in respect of his goods by them violently taken away. Item 334. nobles to be payed by the selfe same parties, being due unto the sayde Iohn Halewater by reason that they detained his ship from him three moneths and more, which ship was of the burthen of three hundred tonnes of wine, and had in it all the aforesaid time due and fourtie seruants maintained at the expences of the sayde Iohn Halewater; Item then Sir William

the ship of the
burthen of
300. tonnes.

W
to
said
good
said
nor
much
of C
which
them
foresaid
Wol
the bar
to re
success
Item
made in
of Wes
prince
mitted
unto the
made un
heires, o
Item
committe
Master g
Scardeb
and robb
of Englis
Scardeb
into the
said. Gre
illue. And
them prom
authoritie
by delinetr
mentioned,
full exaration
Item it is
they shall co
inheritance,
unto the gre
coyne and gre
said great p
of all the tow
knownedged
above-named
behalfe of En
the peere of ou

William

Paſter generall and
 onia (whereof men
 ſayde Paſter gene-
 ralbertes againſt him
 leſſenſon, Arnold
 Scoffe of Dantzic,
 the ſoueraigne king
 he preſents, for the
 certaine ſummes of
 of Hull, 82.nobles,
 or of Caleis the ſumme
 of Arnold de Aſchen.
 And one John lolly of
 man afoſeyay. Item
 nobles which are due
 Derrimouth (whole
 e due into the ſoye
 a ſhip. Item 334d
 John Halewater by
 his ſhip was of the
 ſayde citie due and
 water. Item what Sir
 William

Item it is covenanted and granted, that the heires of Lord Henrie de Percy the yonger after
they shall come unto lawfull age, and shall have attained unto the possessions and goods of their
inheritance, must be compelled by the kings authoritie (iustice going before) to make satisfaction
unto the great procurator of Marienburgh with the summe of 87 s. nobles in lieu of certaine
coyne and graine which the foresaid Lord Henrie, in the yere 1403, bought and received of the
said great procurator, for the use of the castle of Zuerberik. In testimonie and confirmation
of all the which premises, the said Tedericus, Lefardus, and Iohn Crolow, of their certayne
knowledge haue put their seales vnto these p[re]sent letters indented, in the p[re]sence of the
above-named Richard Merlow, Iohn Kingston, and William Askam, commissioners for the
behalle of England. Given at the Citie of London in England the fourth day of December, in
the yere of our Lord 1409.

Q₂

Carta

Carta Henrici quarti Anno quinto regni sui concessa mercatoribus Angliæ in partibus Prusie, Dacie, Norwegie, Suethe, & Germanie, de gubernatore inter ipsos ibidem constituendo.



Henricus Dei gratia Rex Angliæ & Franciæ & Dominus Hiberniæ omnibus, ad quos præsentis literæ peruenerint, salutem. Sciatis quod cum, ut accepimus, ob defectum boni & sani regiminis & gubernationis, diuersa damna, dissensiones, grauamina, & angustia inter mercatores Regni nostri Angliæ in partibus Prusiæ, Daciæ, Norwegiæ, Hanzæ, & Suethe commorantes sæpius ante hæc tempora mota fuissent & perpetrata, ac maiora exinde, quod futuris temporibus verisimiliter euenire formidantur, nisi pro meliori gubernatione inter eosdem mercatores mutuo habenda manus nostras adiutrices apponamus: Nos damnis & periculis in hac parte imminentibus præcauere, & eosdem Mercatores & alios de dicto regno nostro ad partes prædictas venturos iuste & fideliter regi & pertractari intime desiderantes, volumus & tenore præsentium concedimus eisdem mercatoribus, quod ipsi quoties & quando eis placuerit in quodam loco competenti & honesto, ubi sibi placuerit, se congregare & venire, & certas personas sufficientes & idoneas in gubernatores suos in eisdem partibus inter se ad eorum libitum eligere & obtinere valeant libere & impune: Dantes ulterius & concedentes huiusmodi gubernatoribus per prædictos Mercatores sic eligendis, quantum in nobis est, potestatem & auctoritatem speciales, omnes & singulos mercatores Anglicos ad partes prædictas de cætero venientes & declinantes per se vel sufficientes loca sua tenentes regendi & gubernandi, ac eis & eorum cuilibet in suis causis & querelis quibuscunque inter eos in partibus prædictis motus vel mouendis plenam & celerem iusticiam faciendi & quascunque quæstiones, contentiones, discordias, & debatas inter ipsos mercatores Anglicos partium prædictarum motas seu mouendas reformandi, reformationemque petendi, redigendi sedandi, & pacificandi, & quascunque transgressiones, damna, imprisonmentes, excessus, violencias, & iniurias mercatoribus partium prædictarum per prædictos mercatores Anglicos factas seu faciendas redigendi, reparandi, restaurandi, & emendandi, consensibile & rectitudines, reparationes, restorationes & emendationes de ipsis mercatoribus partium prædictarum seu deputatis suis requirendi, petendi, & recipiendi: Ac de communi assensu mercatorum Anglicorum prædictorum statuta, ordinationes, & consuetudines, prout pro meliori gubernatione status eorundem mercatorum Anglicorum in hac parte videbitur expedire, faciendi & stabiliendi, & omnes & singulos mercatores Anglicos præfatis gubernatoribus sic eligendis vel eorum loca tenentibus seu eorum alicui, aut alicui statutorum, ordinationum, & consuetudinum prædictarum contrarios, rebelles, vel inobedientes iuxta quantitatem delicti sui in hac parte rationabiliter puniendi. Volentes insuper omnia iusta & rationabilia statuta, ordinationes & consuetudines per dictos gubernatores sic eligendos in forma prædicta faciendi & stabiliendi, nec non omnes iustas & rationabiles ordinationes per prædictos gubernatores prædictorum mercatorum Anglicorum de communi assensu eorundem mercatorum pro huiusmodi gubernatione sua in partibus prædictis iuxta privilegia & auctoritates sibi per magistrum Prusiæ seu alios dominos partium prædictarum concessa, factas & stabilitas, seu per prædictos gubernatores nunc ut præmittitur eligendos iuxta privilegia prædicta, seu alia privilegia eisdem mercatoribus Anglicis per prædictos magistrum & dominos in posterum concedenda, faciendi & stabiliendi, rata, firma & accepta haberi, & pro ratis, firmis, & acceptis ibidem firmiter & inuolabiliter obseruari. Damus autem vniuersis & singulis mercatoribus Anglicis prædictis tenore præsentium firmiter in mandatis, quod eisdem gubernatoribus sic eligendis & eorum loca tenentibus in præmissis omnibus & singulis ac alijs gubernationem & regimen in hac parte qualitercunque concernentibus intendentes sint, consules, obediens & auxiliantes, prout decet. Data in palatio nostro Westmonasterij sub magni sigilli nostri testimonio sexto die Iunij Anno regni nostri quinto.

[Notas

A Charter

A note to
tioned
in the

Edem Anno
post bellum de
Harstium. So

H
whom
ving as
mages,
among
the
marke,
No
leard to
be
uerne
ment
perills
and
others
whiche
fully
be rule
dones,
that
foer they
may choose
parts at
thei
are in
such
fo
and are
hostile
come
repa
the
into
them
or shall
here
forme
all
maner
the
English
and
compound
damages
mispry
parties
aga
restitutions,
rep
puties.
And
statutes,
ordina
uerne
ment
of
the
the
quantity
of
the
them;
or
any
of
the
same,
and
appo
ably
there
to
be
made
and
establi
reasonable
ordina
ments
with
the
com
assessay
accord
Prussia,
or
other
L
say
gouernours
foye
graunted,
or
the
afoye
sayde
offa
sents
wee
straitely
attend,
aduise,
obey
and
their
deputies
concerne
in
this
bel
under
the
testimoni

Hen.4. Prussian charter. Traffiques, and Discou.

185

A Charter of King Henry the fourth graunted in the fift yeere
of his reigne to the English Marchants residents in the partes of Prussia,
Denmarke, Norway, Sweden and Germanie for the chuling of Governours
among themselves.

Henry by the grace of God king of England and of France, and Lord of Ireland: to all to
whom these present letters shall come, sendeth greeting. Know ye, that whereas, accor-
ding as we are informed, through want of good and discrete rule and gouernement, sundry da-
mages, strifes, opprissions, and wrongs oftentimes heretofore have bene moued and committed
among the Marchants of our kingdome of England remaining in the partes of Prussia, Den-
marke, Norway, the Hans Steeds, and Sweden, and greater hereafter, which God forbid, are
likely to be like to fall out, vntill we put to our helping hands for the p̄seruing of better go-
uernement to be maintained among the said Marchants: wee heartily desiring to prevent the
perills and dangers which are like to fall out in this case, and that the sayde Marchants and
others which shall crauaile out of our said Realme into the partes aforesaid may iustly and law-
fully be ruled and intreated, we will and graunt by the tenour of these presents to the said Mar-
chants, that they may freely and without danger assemble and meete together as often and when-
soever they please in some conuenient and honest place where they shall thinke good, and that they
may choose among themselves certaine sufficient and fit persons for their gouernours in those
parts at their good liking. And furthermore we giue and graunt to the said Marchants which
are in such sort to be chosen by the aforesaid Marchants, as much as in vs lieth, speciall power
and authoritie to rule and gouerne all and singular the English Marchants which hereafter shall
come or repaie to the partes aforesaid by themselves or their sufficient Deputies, and to mini-
ster iusto them and euery of them in their causes and quarrels whatsoever, which are springing
of shall hereafter fall out among them in the partes aforesaid full and speedie iustice, and to re-
forme all manner of questions, contentious discords, and debates moued or to be moued betweene
the English Marchants remaining in those partes, and to seeke reformation, to redresse, appease,
and compound the same. And further to redresse, restore, repaie and satisfie all transgressions,
damages, misprissions, outrages, violences, and injuries done or to be done by the aforesaid English
Marchants against the Marchants of those partes: And to require, demand and receiue the like
restitutions, reparations, satisfactions and amends of the Marchants of those partes or of their
deputies. And by the common consent of the aforesaid English Marchants to make and establish
statutes, ordinances, and customes, as shall seeme expedient in that behalfe for the better go-
uernement of the state of the said English Marchants: and to punish with reason according to
the quantitie of their fault in that behalfe all and singular the English Marchants which shall
violate, resist or disobey the aforesaid gouernours so to be chosen or their deputies, or any of
them; or any of the aforesaid statutes, ordinances, or customes. Wherever we doe ratifie, con-
firm, and approue, and as certified, confirmed, and approued, these command firmly and inuiol-
ably there to be obserued all iust, and reasonable statutes, ordinances, and customes which shalbe
made and established by the said gouernours, so to be chosen, in forme aforesaid, and also all iust and
reasonable ordinances made & established by the late gouernours of the aforesaid English Mar-
chants with the common consent of the said Marchants for this their gouernement in the partes
aforesaid, according to the priuileges and authorities now granted vnto them by the Master of
Prussia, or other Lords of the partes aforesaid, or which shall be made and established by the aforesaid
said gouernours now as is mentioned to be chosen according to the aforesaid priuileges hereto-
fore graunted, or other priuileges hereafter to be granted to the sayde English Marchants by
the aforesaid Master and lords of the Countrey. And furthermore by the tenor of these pre-
sents wee straitly commaund all and singular the aforesaid English Marchants, that they
attend, obeye, obey and assist, as it becommeth them, the sayde gouernours so to be chosen,
and their deputies in all and singular the premises, and other things, which any way may
concerne in this behalfe their rule and gouernement. Given in our Palace at Westminster
under the testimonie of our great Seale the first day of June in the fift yeere of our reigne.

A note touching the mighty ships of King Henry the fift, men-
tioned hereafter in the treatie of keeping the Sea, taken out of a Chronicle
in the Trinitie Church of Winchester.

Item Anno quo victoria potius est uidelicet Anno Domini 1485. & regni sui Annos tertio,
post bellum de Agencourt, conuulsi a Francis venerunt cum multis Nautibus recuperaturi
Harfatum. Sed Rex Anglia misit fratrem suum Iohannem Ducem Bedfordia & An-
degnie

degratia, qui pugnauit cum eis & vicis, & Naves cepit, & quasdam submersit: ceteri fugerunt cum Hispanis nauibus qui venerant cum eis Anno gratia 1416. Sequenti vero Anno redierunt potentiores, & iterum deuicti perpetuam pacem cum Rege composuerunt, & propter eorum naues fecit Rex ferri naues quales non erant in mundo. De his sic condouit a Francis ita metricè scribitur.

*Naves maximè
Hicid quind,*

Regum belligero trito celeberrimus aruo
Gallos, Hispanos, Ianos, deuicit, & Vrget,
Vastat; turbantur cætera regna metu.
Nauali bello his deuicti quoque Iani.

A branch of a Statute made in the eight yeere of Henry the sixth, for the trade to Norway, Sweneland, Denmarke, and Fynmarke.

Item because that the kings most beare Uncle, the king of Denmarke, Norway & Sweneland, as the same our soueraigne Lord the king of his inclination hath vnderstood, considering the manifold & great losses, perils, hurts and damage which haue late happened as well to him and his, as to other foraines and strangers, and also friends and speciall subiects of our said soueraigne Lord the king of his Realme of England, by þ going in, entering & passage of such forain & strange persons into his realme of Norway & other dominions, streits, territories, iurisdictiones & places subdued and subiect to him, specially into his Isles of Fynmarke, and elsewhere, as well in their persons as their things and goods: for eschewing of such losses, perils, hurts & damages, and that such like (which God forbid) should not hereafter happen: our said soueraigne Lord the king hath ordeined and statuted, that all and singular strangers, as well Englishmen and others willing to apply by ship and come into his Realme of Norway and other dominions, streits, territories, iurisdictiones, Isles & places aforesaid with their ships, to the intent to get or haue fish or any other Marchandises, or goods, shall apply and come to his Towne of Northberne, where the said king of Denmarke hath specially ordeined and stablished his staple for the concourse of strangers and specially of Englishmen, to the exercise of such Marchandises: granting to the said Englishmen that they shall there enjoy in and by all things the same fauour, priuileges and prerogatiues which they of the Hans did enjoy. Therefore our said soueraigne Lord the king willing the loue, amitie and amities to be firmly obserued, which betwixt his said Uncle and his noble progenitors of good memory, their Realmes, lands, dominions, streits, territories, iurisdictiones and their said places, and the same our soueraigne Lord the king & his noble progenitors of famous memory, his great men, subiects, Realmes, lands & dominions hath bene of old times hitherto continued, nor nothing by our said soueraigne Lord the king or his people to be attempted or done to herby such amities by reason of any dissensions, enimities or discords might be broken: by the advice of the Lordes spirituall & temporall & of the commons of his said Realme of England, assembled in this present Parliament, hath ordeined, prohibiting that none of his liege people nor subiects of his Realme of England by audacitie of their follie presume to enter the Realmes, lands, dominions, streits, territories, iurisdictiones & places of the said king of Denmarke against þ ordinance, prohibition & interdiction of þ same his Uncle about remembrement, & in contempt of the same, vpon paine of forfeiture of all their mouable goods & imprisonment of their persons at the kings will.

Another branch of a statute made in the tenth yeere of the reigne of Henry the sixth concerning the state of the English Marchants in the dominions of the king of Denmarke.

Item because that our soueraigne Lord the king at the greivous complaint to him made in this Parliament by the commons of his realme of England being in this Parliament so informed, that many of his faithfull liege people be greatly impouerished, vnbone, & in point to be destroyed by the king of Denmarke & his lieges, which be of the amitte of the king our soueraigne Lord, because that they do daily take of his said faithfull subiects their goods, so that they haue taken of marchants of York and Kingdon vpon þul goods & marchandises to the valour of v. M. li. within a yeere, and of other lieges & marchants of þ Realme of England goods & cattails to the valour of xx. M. li. wherof they haue no remedie of the said king of Denmarke, nor of none other, forasmuch as none of them cometh within the Realme of England, nor nothing haue in the same Realme of England, & that þ goods be taken out of the same Realme: The king willing to prouide remedie for his said liege people, hath ordeined & establisshed, that if þ goods of any of þ said his lieges be or shalbe taken by the said king of Denmarke or any of his said lieges, the keeper of the priuile seale for þ time being, shall haue power to make to þ partie greiued, letters of request vnder the priuile seale, wher any other pursuite to be made to any for restitution to be had of þ goods so taken & to be taken.

The
taken.
his coun

Incipit liber de
custodia Maris
prescripti archi
inter Doctores
& Galileum.

Sigismund died
1418.
He was here
1416.
Videtur imperator
Sigismundus
villas inter car
the Anglie scilicet
Calistum & Do
uarias, ponens
fuerat duos digito
super duos suos
oculos, ut regi
Frater, custodie
illas duas villas
fuerat duos vestros
oculos.

The globe
was coined by
Edward the
third Anno
regni 18.
Quemadmodum
decentur in mo
neta nuda Ang
lica, que dicitur
Nobilit: scilicet
Rex, Nautis, gla
dius, & Mari:
Que designant
potestatem An
glicorum super
Mar. In quorum
opprobrium his
debris Britonum
moneta & Plan
dialis & alij di
oni Anglici:
Totius de vestro
Nobilit nouum &
imponere ouem.
Intendens, que
fuit quon
dam a tempore
Edwardi tertij
Anglici erant do
mini Maris, modo
huiusmodi sunt
modos, videt, &
ad bellandum de
Mare obseruan
dam velut oues.

f Henry the
Fynmarke.

by & Sweneland,
considering the ma-
to him and his, as
oueraigne Lord
in a strange pre-
mises places sub-
in their persons
and that such like
ing hath ordeined
ding to apply by
oyces, iurisdic-
any other what-
the said king of
& strangers and
and Englishmen
rogations which
ing the lowe, affi-
ble progenitors
ns and their said
ancus memory,
erto continued,
come to herby
by the advise
d, assembled in
noz subjects of
lands, domini-
all ordinance,
of the same, vps
the kings will.

ere of the
rchants in the

m made in this
ne is informed,
to be destroyed
tayne Lord, be-
e taken of mar-
d. It within a
to the valour of
her, forasmuch
the Realme of
enide remedy
his lieges be o-
the priue seale
ver the priue
to taken to be
taken.

Incipit liber de
custodia Maris
preferim ar di
inter Doueram
& Calisiam.

Sigismund died
1438.
He was here
1416.
Videtur imperator
Sigismundus duas
villas inter exte-
ras Anglie scilicet
Calisiam & Do-
ueram, ponens
super duas digi-
tas super duas
oculos, ait regi:
Frater, custodie
istas duas villas
sicut duos vestros
oculos.

The Noble
was crowned by
Edward the
third Anno
regni: 8.
Quoniam confi-
deratur in mo-
neta nra An-
glica, que dicitur
Nobis: scilicet
Rex, Navis, gla-
dius, & Marti
Que designant
potestatem An-
glicorum super
Mare. In quorum
opprobrium his
duabus Britonum
duabus & Flan-
dris & alijs
Anglicis
Tollite de vestro
Nobis nomen &
imponite ouem.
Incidentem
quod sicut quon-
dam a tempore
Edwardi tertij
Anglicus erat do-
mini Maris, modo
his dicitur fuisse
verdes, videli-
et bellandum &
Mare obscurum
dum redit oues.

The polittie of keeping the Sea. Traffiques, and Discou.

187

taken. And if restitution be not made by such letters, the king our soueraigne lord by the advise of his counsell shall prouide to the partie grieved his couenable remedy, according as hee shall requireth.

Here beginneth the Prologue of the proceffe of the Libel of English policie, exhorting all England to keepe the sea, and namely the narrowe sea: shewing what profite commeth thereof, and also what worship and saluation to England, and to all English-men.

The true proceffe of English policie
Of utterward to keepe this regne in
Of our England, that no man may deny,
Her say of sooth but it is one of the best;
Is this, that who seeth South, North, East and West,
Therish Sparchandise, keepe the admiraltie;
That we bee Masters of the narrowe see.

For Sigismund the great Emperour,
Which yet reignteth, when he was in this land
Which king Henry the first, Prince of honour,
Here much gloie, as him thought, he found,
A mightie land which had take in hand
To werre in France, and make mortallitie,
And euer well kept round about the see.
And to the king thus hee sayd: My brother,
(When hee perceived two Townes Calis and Douer)
Of all your Townes to chuse of one and other,
To keepe the sea and soone to come ouer
To werre outward and your regne to recouer:
Keepe these two Townes sure, and your Spawlie
As your tweyne eyne: so keepe the narrowe see.

For if this sea bee kept in time of werre,
Who can here passe without danger and woe:
Who may escape, who may mischiefe suffer:
What Sparchandise may forby bee agone:
For needs hem must take trewes euer for:
Flanders and Spaine, and other, trust to mee,
Or ellis binded all for this Narrow see.

Therefore I cast mee by a little writing
To shewe at eye this conclusion,
For conscience and for mine acquiting
Against God and ageyne aduision,
And cowardise, and to our enemies confusion.
For foure things our Noble sheweth to me,
King, Ship, and Sword, and power of the see.

Where ben our ships, where ben our swords become:
Our enemies ben for the ship let a sheepe,
Alas our rule halseth, it is benome.
Who dare well say that lordship should take keepe:
I will assay, though mine heart ginne to weepe,
To doe this werke, if wee will euer thee,
For very shame to keepe about the see.

Shall any Prince, what so be his name,
Which hath Nobles much leche ours,
Bee Lord of see: and Flemings to our blame,
Stop vs, take vs, and to make fade the flowers
Of English state, and disseyne our honours:
For cowardise alas it should so bee.
Therefore I ginne to write nowe of the see.

Of the commodities of Spaine and of Flanders. *The first Chapter.*

Figs,
Raisins,
Wine
Bastard,
Dates,
Apples,
Stall oyle,
Crappes,
White Paster
Soye,
Wax,
Iron,
Wadmoles,
Wortell,
Rutell,
Saffron,
Muckelmer.

Knowe well all men that profits in certaine
Commodities called comming out of Spaine
And Marchantie, who so will weete what it is,
Bene Figs, Raisins, wine Bastard, and Dates,
And Licoris, Shiull oyle, and grame,
White Pasterl Soye, and Ware is not wayne.
Pyon, Wool, Wadmoles, Wortell, Rutell also:
For Poynt-makers full needfull bene they thern:
Saffron, Quickeilver, which owne Spaine Marchandy,
Is into Flanders shipped full craftily,
Unto Bruges to her staple sayre:
The Haven of Schuse hit Haven for her repayre
Which is cleped Swyn the shippes giding:
Where many beseles and sayre are abiding.
But these Marchantes with their shippes great,
And such chaffare as they bye and get
By the weyes must nebe take on hand
By the coast to passe of our England,
Berwyt Douer and Caleis, this is no doubt.
Who can well els such matter bying about:

And when these sayd Marchants discharged bee
Of Marchantie in Flanders nere the see,
Then they bee charged againe with Marchandy,
That to Flanders bougeth full richly,
Fine cloth of Ypre that named is better than ours,
Cloth of Curtrike, fine cloth of all colours,
Such Fustian, and also Linen clo. h.
But Flemings, if yee bee not woth,
The great substance of your cloth at the full
Yee wot ye make it of our English woth.

Flemish cloth
made of Eng-
lish Wool.

Then may it not sinke in mannis hayne,
But that it must this Marchandy of Spaine
Both out and in by our costes passe:
Yee that sayd nay in witte may like an asse.
We should haue peace with the grounds thernye
Thus if this see were kept, I dare well sayne.
For Spaine and Flanders is as eche other brother,
And nether may well liue without other:
They may not liue to maintaine their degrees,
Without our English commodities:

The necessary
continuation
of Spaine
and Flanders.

Wolle and Tynne: for the wolles of England
Susteineth the Commons Flemings I understand.
Then if England would her wolles restraine
From Flanders, this followeth in certaine,
Flanders of nebe must with vs haue peace,
Or els thee is destroyed without leas.
Also if Flanders thus destroyed bee:
Some Marchandy of Spaine will neuer yee be:
For destroyed it is, and as in cheeste
The wolles of Spaine it cometh not to preeffe.
But if it be colled and mended well
Amongst the English wolles the greater be.
For Spanish wolles in Flaunders dyed is,
And euer hath bee, that men haue made of this:

And

Wine, Oyle,
Wax, Shalle,
Figs, Raisins,
Hony, Corde-
waine, Dates,
Salt, Waxes.

Note well.

Further
Some
Commodities

And yet Wooll is one of the chiefe Marchandys
That longeth to Spaine: who so will keepe,
It is of little value, trust vnto mee;
With English wooll but if it be inged be,
Thus if the sea be kept, than hearken hether,
If these two lands comen not together;
So that the flecte of Flanders passe nought
That in the narrow see it be not brought
Into the Rochelle to fetch the fume wine,
Nor into Byronuse Bay for sale so fine,
What is then Spaine? What is Flanders also?
As who sayd, nought, the thurst is agoe;
For the little land of Flanders is
But a staple to other lands ywis:
And all that groweth in Flanders graine and seede
May not a Honeth finde hem meate and bryde,
What hath then Flanders, bee Flemings liefte of loth,
But a little Pader and Flemish Cloth:
By Drapering of our wooll in substance
Liven her commons, this is her gouernance,
Withouth wich they may not liue at ease.
Thus must hem sterue, or with vs must haue peace.

Of the commodities of Portugal.
The second Chapter.

Wine, Oley,
Waxe, Graine,
figs, Raisens,
Hony, Corde-
weyne, Dates,
Salt, Hides.

Note well.

The Marchandys also of Portugal
By diuers lands turne into sale.
Portugalers with vs haue crouth in hand:
Whole Marchandys cometh much into England.
They ben our friends, with their commodities,
And wee English passen into their countreys,
Her land hath wine, Oley, Waxe, and Graine,
figges, Reylins, Hony and Cordoweyne:
Dates, and Sale, Hides, and such Marchandys:
And if they would to Flanders passe for by,
They should not bee suffred ones ner twyes,
For suppoztng of our cruell enemies,
That is to say Flemings with her gyle:
For changeable they are in litle while.
Then I conclude by reasons many moe,
If we suffred neither friend nor foe,
What so enemies, and so suppoztng
Passe for by vs in time of weering,
Seth our friends will not ben in cause
Of our hindring, if reason lede this clause:
Then nebe from Flanders peace bee to vs sought,
And other lands should seeke peace, our nought:
For Flanders is Staple, as men tell mee;
To all nations of Chritianitie.

The commodities of pety Britaine, with
her Routers on the sea. *The third Chapter.*

Furthermore to write I am faine
Somewhat speaking of the litle Britayne.
Commodities thereof there, is and was,

Salt,

The Britons
great Rovers
and Pirates.

Salt, and wine, crest cloch and canuas.
And the land of Flaunders sickerly
Is the Staple of their Marchandp.
With Marchandie may not passe away
But by the coast of England, this is no nay.
And of this Britaine, who so trureth lous,
Are the greatest roners and the greatest theewis,
That haue bene in the sea many one yeeres
That our Marchants haue bought full dere.
For they haue tooke notable goods of ours,
On this side see, these false pelours
Called of Sainte Malo, and ellis where:
Which to their Duke none obeyfance will bere:
With such colours wee haue bee hindred soze.
And sayned peace is called no werre herefoze.
Thus they haue bene in diuers coasts many
Of our England, moze then rehearse can I:
In Norfolk coastes, and other places about,
And robbed and hent and slaine by many a rowte:
And they haue also ransomed Towne by Towne:
That into the regnes of host haue run her towne:
Which hath bin ruth unto this Realme and shame:
They that the sea should keepe are much to blame.
For Britayne is of easie reputation;
And Sainte Malo turneth hem to reprobation.

A storie of Edward the third his ordinance for Britayne.

Historia ostendens
quam ordinationem Rex
Edwardus tertius
fecit contra depredatores
marinos Britanniae
minores, ad debellandum
eos et subiugandum
Britannos maiores.

Here bying I in a storie to mee lent,
That a good Squire in time of Parliament
Tooke vnto mee well wrytten in a scrowe:
That I haue commond both with high and lowe,
Of which all men accorden into one,
That it was done not many yeeres agone.
But when noble King Edward the thrid
Reigned in grace, right thus it betyd.
For hee had a maner gelousie
To his Marchants and loued them hartly.
He felde the weyes to rule well the see,
Whereby Marchants might haue prosperitee.
That for Harlew Houndflew did he maken;
And great werre that time were undertaken,
betwixt the King and the Duke of Britayne:
At last to fall to peace both were they sayne:
Upon the which made with conuencion
Our Marchants made hem readie bowne
Toward Britayne to loade their Marchandie,
Mening hem friends they went forth boldly:
But soone anon our Marchants were yake,
And wee spredde neuer the better for truce sake.
They lost her good, her nauy and spending:
But their complaint came vnto the king.
Then went he wroth, and to the Duke he sent,
And complained that such harme was hent;
By conuencion and peace made so refused:
Which Duke sent againe, and hym excused,
Rehearsing that the mount of Sainte Michael,

And

Scutum Regis
Edwardi tertij
pro Lombardia.

Anno Domini
1336. Hen. 6. 14.

M
And a
Into
And a
In the
Which
For he
And ye
Could
But if
Our go
Reeber
And oth
Dee wo

And Saint Malo would neuer a dell
 Be subiect vnto his gouernance,
 Nor be vnder his obeylance:
 And so they did withouten him that deede.
 But when the king anon had taken heed:
 Hee in his herte set a iudgement,
 Without calling of any Parliament,
 Of greete cary to take long aduise.
 To fortifie anon he did deuise.
 Of English Townes thre, that is to say,
 Derimouth, Plymouth, the thirde is Fowey:
 And gaue hem helpe and notable puilance
 With insistance set them in gouernance
 Upon peep Bretayne for to werre.
 Those good sea men would no more differre,
 But bete hem home and made they might not rowe,
 Toke prisoners, and made them for to lowe.
 And este the Duke, an ensample i use,
 Wrote to the king as he first did deuise,
 Him excusing: But our men wood
 With great power passed ouer the floode
 And werred forth into the Dukes londe,
 And had ny destroyed free and bond.
 But than the Duke knewe that the towne thre
 Shoulde haue lost all his native Countrie,
 He undertooke by suretie true not false,
 For mount Michael and Sainte Malo als,
 And other parties of the litle Brytaine,
 Which to obey, as sayd was, were not sayne.
 The Duke hymselfe for all did undertake:
 With all his herte a full peace did hee make:
 So that in all the life time of the king,
 Marchants had peace with queten merring:

Statutum Regis
 Edwardi tertij
 pro Lombardis.

He made a statute for Lombards in this land,
 That they shoulde in noe wise take on hande
 Here to inhabite, here to chardge and dischardge
 But for soe dayes, no more time had they large.
 This good king by witte of such appetitte
 Kept his Marchants and the sea from mischettie,

Of the commodities of Scotland and draping
 of her wolles in Flanders. The fourth Chapter.

Whereouer of Scotland the commodities
 Are Felles, Hides, and of Wooll the fleese,
 And all these must passe by way alway
 Into Flanders by England, sooth to say.
 And all her woolle was draped for to sell
 In the Townes of Poperinge and of Bell,
 Which my Lord of Gloucester with ire
 For her falsheid set vpon a fire.
 And yet they of Bell and Poperinge
 Could neuer drape her wooll for any thing.
 But if they had English wooll withall,
 Our goodly wooll which is so generall
 Needfull to them in Spaine and Scotland als,
 And other colles, this sentence is not fals:
 Hee worthy Marchants I doe it vpon you,

Anno Domini
 1436. Hen. 6. 14.

I haue

I haue this learned ye not well where and howe:
 Ye wotte the Staple of that Marchantie,
 Of this Scotland is Flaunders sekerly.
 And the Scots bene charged knowen at the eye,
 Out of Flanders with litle Mercerie,
 And great plentie of Haberdashers Ware,
 And halfe her shippes with cart wheelies bore;
 And with Barrowes are laden as in substance:
 Thus most rude ware are in her cheuelance.
 So they may not forbeare this Flemish land.
 Therefoze if wee would manly take in hand,
 To keepe this Sea from Flanders and from Spaine,
 And from Scotland, like as from pety Britaine,
 Wee should right soone haue peace for all her bolts,
 For they must needes passe by our English tolls.

Of the commodities of Pruce, and High Dutch men, and
 Esterlings. The fifth Chapitle.

NOW we goe forth to the commodities,
 That cometh from Pruce in two maner degrees.
 For two maner people haue such yle,
 That is to say, High Dutch men of Pruce,
 And Esterlings, which might not be forborne,
 Out of Flanders, but it were verely loyne.
 For they bying in the substance of the Beere,
 That they drinke feeles too good chepe, not here.
 We haue heard that two Flemings togider
 Will undertake or they goe any whither,
 Or they rise once to drinke a Ferkin full,
 Of good Beerekin: sofoze they hall and pull.
 Under the board they pissen as they liss
 This cometh of couenant of a woorthie wit.
 Without Caleis in their Butte they cakked
 When they fled home, and when they lesure lacked
 To holde their siege, they went like as a Doe:
 Well was that Fleming that might trulle, and goe.
 For feare they turned backe and byed fast,
 By Lord of Gloucester made hem so agast
 With his coming, and sought bent in her land,
 And byent and slowe as he had take on hand:
 So that our enemies durst not hide, nor here,
 They fled to mewe, they durst no moze appeare,
 Rebuked soze for euer so shamefully,
 Unto her bette euerlasting villanie.

Nowe Beere and Bakon bene fro Pruce bybought
 Into Flanders, as loued and farre sought;
 Diamond, Copper, Bow-stauers, Steels, and Waxe,
 Peltreware and grey Pitch, Tere, Board, and Axe:
 And Colleyne thre, Fustian and Canvas,
 Card, Bukeram: of olde time thus it was.
 But the Flemings among these things bere,
 In common louen best Bakon and Beere.
 Also Pruce men maken her aduenture
 Of Plate of siluer of wedges good and sure
 In great plentie which they bying and bye,
 Out of the lands of Beemie and Hungarie:
 Which is increas full great into their land,
 And they bene laden, I vnderstand,

Dutch, Carre,
 Board, Flee,
 Collein cheeb,
 Fustian, Can-
 uas, Cardes,
 Boheram,
 Bitter-plate,
 Wedges of
 siluer and
 spetall.

The p

107, Wood.

T
 all
 the
 Ape
 dist
 And
 Mir
 For
 Dign
 And
 In ou
 With
 Whic
 That
 Whic
 That
 Turb
 Rubar
 But I
 That g
 Let of
 But th
 Withou
 And pef
 It were
 He that
 Let him
 In this
 Who so

108

The policie of keeping the sea. Traffiques, and Discoueries. 193

With wollen cloth all maner of colours
By dyers crafted full diuers, that ben ours.
And they aduenture full greatly vnto the Bay,
for sale that is needefull withouten nay.
Thus if they would not our friends bee,
We might lightly d'oppe hem in the see:
They should not passe our streemes withouten leue,
It would not be, but if we should hem greue.

Of the commodities of the Genuoys and her
great Caracks. Chap. 6.

The Genuoys comen in sundry wises
Into this land with diuers marchandises
In great Caracks, arrayed withouten lacke
With cloth of gold, silke, and peppyre blacke
They bring with them, and of serood great plentie,
Wool Dye, Woolden, by vessel in the see,
Cotton, Rochalum, and good gold of Genne.
And then be charged with wolles againe I wenne,
And wollen cloth of ours of colours all.
And they aduenture, as ofte it doth befall,
Into Flanders with such things as they bye,
That is their chiefe staple sekerly:
And if they would be our full enemies,
They should not passe our streemes with marchandise.

Wool, Woold.

The comodities and nicetees of the Venetians
and Florentines, with their Gallies. Chap. 7.

The great Galees of Venice and Florence
Be well laden with things of complacence,
All spicery and of grossiers ware:
With sweete wines all maner of chaffare,
Apes, and Japes, and marmulets taylor,
Jasles and trifles that litle haue awayled:
And things with which they sorely blere our eye:
With things not induring that we bye.
For much of this chaffare that is wastable
Might be forsoyne for here and deceivable,
And that I wene as for infirmities
In our England are such commodities
Withouten helpe of any other lond
Which by witte and practise both yfound:
That all humors might be voyded sure,
Which that we gleder with our English cure:
That we should haue no neede of Scamonie,
Turbit, enforbe, coirect Diagrebie,
Rubarbe, Sene, and yet they ben so needefull,
But I know things al so speedefull,
That growen here, as those things sayn.
Let of this matter no man be dismayde;
But that a man may voyde infirmities
Without degrees fet fro beyond the sea.
And yet they should except be any thing
It were but sugre, trust to my saying:
He that trusteth not to my saying and sentence,
Let him better search experience.
In this matter I will not farther prease,
Who so not beleueeth, let him leaue and cease.

R

Thus

Thus these galeys for this licking ware,
 And eating ware, bare hence our best chaffare:
 Cloth, woll, and tinne, which as I sayd before,
 Out of this lond worst might be forboze,
 For ech other land of necessitie
 Haue great neede to buy some of them thre:
 And we receiue of hem into this coste
 Ware and chaffare that lightly wil be losse,
 And woulde Iesus, that our Lordis wold
 Consider this well both pong and old:
 Namely old that haue experience,
 That might the pong exhorte to prudence;
 What harme, what hurt, and what hinderance
 Is done to vs, vnto our great grievance,
 Of such lands, and of such nations:
 As experite men know by probations,
 By wytings as discouered our counsailes,
 And false colour alwaies the counterrails
 Of our enemies; that doth vs hindring
 Vnto our goods, our Relme, and to the king:
 As wise men haue shewed well at eye;
 And all this is couloured by marchandise.

An example
 of deceite.

Also they bere the gold out of this land,
 And sucke the thysle away out of our hand:
 As the Waspe souketh honie fro the bee,
 So minishe they our commoditee.
 Now wol ye here how they in Costestmolt
 Were wont to boztow: they shold be sold
 Her woll good as for yere and yere.
 Of cloth and tinne they bid in like manere:
 And in her gales ship this marchandise:
 Then soone at Venice of them men wold it bye.
 Then utterne there the chaffare by the yeise,
 And lightly als there they make her reise.
 And when the goods beerne at Venice sold,
 Then to carie her change they this money haue,
 They will it profer, their subtiltie to saue,
 To English marchants to yene it out by eschange
 To be payed againe they make not strange,
 At the receiuing and sight of a letter,
 Here in England, seeming for the better,
 by foure pence lesse in the noble round:
 That is twelue pence in the golden pound.
 And if wee wol haue of payment
 A full moneth, than must him needes assent
 To eight pence losse, that is shillings twaine
 In the English pound; as eft soone againe,
 For two moneths twelue pence must be pay.
 In the English pound what is that to say,
 But shillings thre: So that in pound sell
 For hurt and harme hard is with hem to dwell,
 And when English marchants haue content
 This eschange in England of assent,
 That these sayd Venecians haue in woone
 And Florentines to bere her gold soone
 Ouer the see into Flanders againe:
 And thus they liue in Flanders, sooth to saine,
 And in London with such cheuifance,
 That men call blurry, to our losse and hinderance.

Another

The

101, lone.

Note billig

It was of com-
 plaint of lacke
 of malle if need
 come.

It was of be-
 struction of
 Denmarke for
 destruction of
 their malle
 panta.

The mappe of
 Richard of Whi-
 ngton malle
 panta.

That le
 What
 And w
 And pe
 That pe
 Punt to

Another example of deceite.

NOW lesse well how they made vs a baleyne
 When they borrowed at the town of Caleis
 As they were wont, their wold that was hem lent,
 For yere and yere they should make payment.
 And sometime als two yere and two yere,
 This was saye | loue : but yet will ye heare,
 How they to Bruges would her wold carie,
 And for hem take payment withouten tarie,
 And sell it fast for ready money in hand,
 For fifty pounds of money of losse they wold not wond
 In a thousand pound, and lue thereby
 Till the day of payment easly,
 Come againe in exchange : making
 Full like usury, as men make undertaking.
 Than when this payment of a thousand pound
 Was well content, they should haue chaffare sound
 If they wold fro the Staple full,
 Receiue againe three thousand pound in wold.
 In Cottel wold also they ride about,
 And all England, and buy withouten doubt
 What them list with freedom and franchise,
 Soe then we English may giuen many wise.
 But would God that without lenger delayes
 These galees were vnfraight in forty dayes,
 And in forty dayes charged againe,
 And that they might be put to certaine
 To goe to oile, as we there with hem doe.
 It were expedient that they did right soe,
 As we doe there. If the king would it :
 Ah what worship wold fall to English wit:
 What profite also to our marchandise
 Which wold of nebe be cherished heretillie:
 For I would witte, why now our nauie sayleth,
 When manie a foe vs a our doore assaileth,
 Now in these dayes, that if there come a nebe,
 What nauie should we haue it is to dyede.
 In Denmarke were full noble conquerours
 In time past, full worship warriours :
 Which when they had their marchants destroyed,
 To pouerty they fell, thus were they noyed:
 And so they stand at mischiefe at this day.
 This learned I late well wryton, this no nay.
 Therefore beware, I can no better will,
 If grace it wold, of other mennis perill.
 For if marchants were cherished to her speede,
 We were not likely to sayle in any neede.
 If they be rich, then in prosperitee
 Shalbe our lonbe, lordes, and commontee,
 And in worship. Now thinke I on the sonne
 Of marchandy Richard of Whitingdon;
 That load sterre, and chiefe chosen flour :
 What hath by him our England of honour,
 And what profite hath bin of his riches,
 And yet tasteth dayly in worthines:
 That pen and paper may not me suffice
 Him to describe : so high he was of price

161, 1010.

Note diligently

At wofull come
 plant of lacke
 of naute if nebe
 come.

At floie of des
 truction of
 Denmarke for
 destruction of
 their march
 antes.

The maple of
 Richard of Whi
 tingdon mar
 chant.

About marchants, that set him one of the best:
I can no more, but God haue him in rest.

Now the principal matter.

What reason is it that we should goe to othe
In their countries, & in this English colke
They should not so: but haue more liberty
Then we our selues now also moue I thee,
I would to gifts men should take no herbe
That letteth our thing publicke so to speede.
For this we see well euery day at eye,
Gifts and felts stopen our policie.
Now see that foolles ben either they or wee:
But euer we haue the worse in this countree.
Therefore let hem vnto othe go here,
Or be we free with hem in like manere
In their countrees: and if it will not bee,
Compell them vnto othe, and yee shall see
Hoch auantage, and moch pposite arise,
Hoch more then I can write in any wise.

Of our charge and discharge at her marts.

Conceiue wel here, that Englishmen at marts
Be discharged, for all her craftes and artes,
In Brabant of her marchandp
In fourteene dayes, and ageine hastily
In the same dayes fourteene acharged est.
And if they bide lenger all is bereft,
Anon they should forfeit her goods all,
Or marchandp: it should no better fall.
And we to marts in Brabant charged beene
With English cloth full good and saye to seene:
We ben againe charged with mercerie,
Haburdasher ware, and with grosserie:
To which marts, that English men call sayen,
Ech nation oft maketh her repayen:
English, and French, Lombards, Genoyes,
Catalones, theye they take her wayes:
Scots, Spaniards, Itshmen there abides,
With great plenty bysing of sale hides.
And I here say that we in Brabant bye,
Flanders and Zeland more of marchandp
In common vse then done all other nations:
This haue I heard of marchants relations:
And if the English ben not in the marts
They ben feeble, and as nought bene her parts.
For they byemore, and fro purse put out
More marchandie then all the other rowte,
Kept then the see, shippes should not bying ne fetch,
And then the carreys wold not thioze stretch:
And to those marts wold full euill thee,
If we manly kept about the see.

Of the commodities of *Brabant* and *Zeland* and

Henquid and marchandp carried by land to the
marts, Cap. 8.

Yet marchandp of *Brabant* and *Zeland*
The *Spayze* and *Wood*, that dyers take on hand

spader, Wood

Galliche,
ow, Gallich

What our
marchants bye
in the colke
more then all
other.

T
If
Ch
W
As
And
Wal
It
Yuc
And
But
We
Ch
Expo
Bere
Then
In sea
Liche
On the
A p
In the
Becoke
In very
And it is
So in li
By the N
And the
What ne
Shewe a

The policie of keeping the sea. Traffiques, & Discoveries. 197

*Getlike, one-
and, laudly,* To open with, Warlike and Nations,
And saltlike also for husband and commons,
But they of Holland at Calais byen our selles,
And wolles our, that Englishmen hem selles.
And the chaffare that Englishmen doe byen
In the marts, that noe man may denien,
Is not made in Brabant that cuntree:
It cometh from out of Henauld, not by see,
But al by land, by carts, and from France,
Bourgoyne, Colein, Cameret in substance,
Thereto at marts if there be a restraint,
Then sayne plainly that list no fables payne,
If Englishmen be withdrawen away,
Is great rebuke and losse to her assay:
As though we sent into the land of France
Ten thousand people, men of good puissance,
To werre vnto her hindring multitudine,
So ben our English marchants necessarie.
If it be thus assay, and we shall witten
Of men experie, by whom I haue this witten.
For sayd is that this carred marchandp
Draweth in value as much verily,
As all the goods that come in shippes thider,
Which Englishmen bye most and bying it thider.
For her marts ben best, shame to say,
But Englishmen thider byesse her way.

*What our
marchants bye
in this coun-
trye then all
other.*

*A conclusion of this depending of keeping
of the sea.*

Than I conclude, if neuer so much by land
Were by carres brought vnto their hand,
If well the sea were kept in gouernance
They should by sea haue no deliurance.
We should hem stop, and we should hem destroy,
As prisoners we should hem bying to annoy.
And so we should of our cruell enemies
Make our friends for feare of marchandies,
If they were not suffered for to passe
Into Flanders. But we be fragile as glasse
And also brittle, not thought neuer abiding;
But when grace shineth soone are we sliding;
We will it not receiue in any wise:
That maken lust, emule, and couetise:
Erpone me this; and yee shall sooth it find,
Here it away, and keepe it in your mind.
Then shuld worship vnto our Noble bee
In fence and foyme to lord and Paletie:
Like as the seale the greatest of this land
On the one side hath, as I vnderstand,
A prince riding with his sword ydraw,
In the other side sitting, soch it is in law,
Betokening good rule and punishing
In very deede of England by the king.
And it is so, God blessed might he bee.
So in likewise I would were on the see
By the Noble, that swerde should haue power,
And the shippes on the sea about vs here.
What needeth a garland which is made of Iuie
Shewe a tauerne winelesse, also thine I:

Of Hankin
notis.

If men were wise, the Frenchmen and Flemming
Shuld bere no place in sea by warring.
Then Hankin Lyons shuld not be so bold
To stoppe wine, and shippes for to hold
Unto our shame. We had be beten thence.
Alas, alas, why did we this offence,
Fully to bend the old English fames;
And the profits of England, and their names:
Why is this power called of couetise;
With false colours cast befoyn our eyes:
That if good men called werrours
Woulde take in hand for the commons succours,
To purge the sea vnto our great auayle,
And winne hem goods, and haue by the sayle,
And on our enemies their liues to impart,
So that they might their prizes well depart.
As reason wold, iudice and equitie;

Lombards are
caute enough
to hurt this
land, although
there were
none other
cause.

False colon-
ring of goods
by lombards.

It is for bilbes
a gift of good,
feasts & other
meats, that
stoppen our
politic.

This is the
best state of
our time.

To make this land haue lordship of the sea.
Then shall Lombards and other fained friends
Make her chalenges by colour false offend,
And say their chaffare in the shippes is,
And challenge al. Look if this be amisse.
For thus may al that men haue bought to soye,
Ben soone excused, and saued by false colour.
Beware pee men that bere the great in hand
That they destroy the policie of this land,
By gifte and good, and the fine golden clothis,
And silke, and other: say pee not this soth is:
But if we had very experience
That they take meede with ynnuie violence,
Carpetts, and thinges of price and pleasure,
Where by stopped shoulde be good gouernance:
And if it were as pee say to me,
Than wold I say, alas cupiditie,
That they that haue her liues put in dyede,
Shalbe soone out of winning, all for meed,
And lose her costes, and brought to povertie,
That they shall neuer haue lust to goe to sea.

An exhortation to make an ordinance against colour of maintainers and excusers of filkes goods.

It is a mar-
uillous thing
that so great
a sickness and
hurt of this land
may haue no
remedie of so
many as take
helthes wise
men of gouer-
nance.

For this colour that must be sayd aloste
And be declared of the great sill offce,
That our seamen wol by many wise
Spoile our friends in steede of our enemies:
For which colour and Lombards maintenance,
The king it needes to make an ordinance
With his Counsaile that may not fayle, I trowe,
That friends shoulde from enemies be knowe,
Our enemies taken and our friends spared:
The remedy of hem must be declared,
Thus may the sea be kept in no sell,
For if ought be spoken, woe pee well,
We haue the strokes, and enemies haue the winning:
But mayntainers are parteners of the sinning,
We liue in lust and hide in couetise:
This is our rule to maintaine marchandise,
And policie that wee haue on the sea,
And, but God helpe, it will no other bee.

• D. hunting.

spices of sil-
uer and gold
in Ireland.

The p
C
• D. hunting.
F
An
fe
S
C
In
As
W
W
As
No
As
Cha
Dee
To
For
And
God
Dfor
But
That
I am
It mu
But it
And g

The policie of keeping the sea. Traffiques, & Discoueries. 199

Of the commodities of Ireland, and policie and
keeping thereof, and conquering of wild Irish: with
an incident of Wales. Chap. 9.

I Call to speake of Ireland but a litle:
Commodities of it I will recite,
Wides, and fish, Salmon, Hake, Herringe,
Irish wooll, and linen cloth, knolinge,
And martens goode ben her marchandise,
• 21, hunting. Hertes Hides, and other of * Venerie.
Whines of Deter, Squire, and Irish hare,
Of sheepe, lambe, and Foxe, is her chaffare,
Felles of Kiddees, and Conies great pientie.
So that if Ireland helpe vs to keepe the sea,
Because the King cleped is Rex Anglia,
And is Dominus also Hybernix,
Shoould be possessed by Progenitours:
The Irish men haue cause like to ours
Our land and hers together to defend,
That no enemy should hurt ne offend,
Ireland ne vs: but as one commonie
Shoould helpe well to keepe about the sea:
For they haue hauens great, and goodly bayes,
Sure, wyde and deepe, of good assayes,
At Waterford, and colles many one.
And as men sayne in England be there none
Better hauens, ships in to ride,
No more sure for enemies to abide.
Why speake I thus so much of Ireland:
For all so much as I can vnderstand,
It is fertile for things that there doe growe
And multipliē, loke who lust to knowe,
So large, so good, and so commodious,
That to declare is strange and maruailous.
For of silver and golde there is the ooze,
Among the wilde Irish though they be pooze.
For they are rude and can thereon no skill:
So that if we had their peace and good will
To myne and fine, and metal for to pure,
In wilde Irish might we finde the cure,
As in London saith a Juellere,
Which brought from thence golde ooze to vs here,
Whereof was fyned mettal good and clene,
As they touch, no better could be scene.
Nowe here be ware and heartily take intent,
As ye will answer at last iudgement,
That for slought and for rache shedde
We remember with all your might to hede
To keepe Ireland that it be not lost.
For it is a boecasse and a post,
Under England, and Wales another:
God forbid, but ech were others brother,
Of one ligeance due vnto the king.
But I haue pittie in good faith of this thing
That I shall say with auisement:
I am aserue that Ireland will be spent:
It must away, it wol bee lost from vs,
But if thou helpe, thou Iesu gracious,
And giue vs grace al slought to leue beside.

Spres of sil-
uer and gold
in Ireland.

For much thing in my herte is hilde,
Which in another treatise I caste to wyte
Hade al onely for that soile and site,
Of fertile Ireland, which might not be for bozne,
But if England were nigh as goode as gone,
God forbid that a wild Irish wirlinge
Should be chosen for to bee their kinge,
After her conqwest for our last puissance,
And hinder vs by other lauds alliance.
Wise men seyn, which sellin not, ne doute,
That wild Irish so much of ground haue gotten
There vpon vs, as likenesse may be
Like as England to shee is two or thre
Of this our land is made comparable:
So wild Irish haue wonne on vs unable
Yet to defend, and of none power,
That our ground is there a litle corner,
To all Ireland in true comparison.
It needeth no moze this matter to erpon,
Which if it bee lost, as Christ Iesu forbe,
Farewel Wales, then England cometh to dyer,
For alliance of Scotland and of Spaine,
And other mae, as the petie Britaine,
And so hie enemies enuiron round about.
I beseech God, that some prayers deuout
But let the said apparance probable
Thus disposed without feyned fable,
But all onely for perill that I see
Thus imminent, it's likely for to bee.
And well I wotte, that from hence to Rome,
And, as men say, in all Christendome,
Is no ground so land to Ireland like,
So large, so good, so plentrous, so riche,
That to this wyde Dominus doe long.
Then mee semeth that right were and no wrong,
To get the lande: and it were pitous
To vs to lese this high name Dominus.
And all this wyde Dominus of name
Shuld haue th: ground obeyant wilde and tame,
That name and people togidre might accorde
Al the ground subiect to the Lord.
And that it is possible to bee subiect,
Unto the king wel shal it bee detect,
In the litle booke that I of spake,
I trowe reason al this wol undertake.
And I knowe wel howe it stante,
Alas fortune beginneth so to scant,
O' ellis grace, that deade is gouernance,
For so mislieth parties of our puissance,
In that land that wee lese euer yere,
Moze ground and moze, as well as yee may here.
I herd a man speake to mee full late,
Which was a lord of full great estate;
Than expence of one yere done in France
Merrid on men well willed of puissance
This said ground of Ireland to conquire.
And yet because England might not forbere
These said expences gadged in one yere,
But in thre yeres or foure gadged y here,

This is now
to be greatly
feared.

This lord
was the Earle
of Ormond that
told me this
matter, that he
would vnder-
take it, in pain
of losse of al his
limbhood.
But this pro-
fesser could not
be admitted.
Ergo male.

The trade
of Skiffow to
Iland.

The old trade
of Scarborough
to Iland and
of Skiffow.

Wight winne Ireland to a small conqueste,
In one sole yeere to set vs all at rest.
And how soone wolde this be paid ageyne:
Which were it woth perely, if wee not seyne:
I wol declare, who so luste to looke,
I crowe full plainly in my litle booke.
But couetise, and singularitie
Of obume profite, enuie, crueltie,
Each doon vs harme, and doe vs euery day,
And musters made that shame is to say:
Our money spent al to litle auaile,
And our enemies so greatly doone preuaile,
That what harme may fall and ouerthwerte
I may vnneth wite moze for soze of herte.

An exhortation to the keeping of Wales.

BEware of Wales, Chriſt Ieſu muſt vs keepe,
That it make not our childers childe to wepe,
He vs alſo, ſo if it goe his way,
By vnwarenes: ſeth that many a day
Pen haue bee ſerue of her rebellion,
By great tokens and oſtentation:
Seche the meanes with a diſcrete auſe,
And helpe that they rudely not ariſe
For to rebell, that Chriſt it forbede.
Looke wel aboute, for God wote yee haue neede,
Unſainingly, vnſeyning and vnſeynt,
That conſcience for ſought you not attempt:
Kepe well that ground, for harme that may ben vſen,
Dy aſore God muſte yee ben accuſen.

Of the commodious Stockfiſh of Iſland, and
keeping of the Sea, namely the Narrow ſea, with
an incident of the keeping of Caleis. Chap. 10.

The trade of
Briſtowe to
Iſland.

The old trade
of Scarborough
to Iſland and
the North.

Of Iſland to wite is litle neede,
Sawe of Stock-fiſh: Yet for ſooth in deed
Out of Briſtowe, and coſtes many one,
Pen haue practiſed by nedle and by ſtone
Whider wardes within a litle while,
Within twelue yere, and without perill
Gon and come, as men were wont of old
Of Scarborough vnto the coſtes cold,
And now ſo ſele ſhippes this yeere there ware,
That moche loſſe for vnfreghyt they bare:
Iſland might not make hem to bee fraught
Vnto the Hawys: thus much harme they caught.
Then here I ende of the commodities
For which neede is well to kepe the ſea:
Eſte and Weſte, South and North they bee,
And chiefly kepe the ſharpe narrow ſee,
Betweene Douer and Caleis: and as thus
that ſoes paſſe none without good will of vs:
And they abide our danger in the length,
What for our coſtis and Caleis in our ſtrength.

An exhortation for the ſure keeping of Caleis.

Ad for the loue of God, and of his bliſſe
Cheriſh yee Caleis better then it is,

See well thereto, and heare the grete complain
 That true men tellen, that woll no lies paine,
 And as pee knowe that wylting cometh from thence:
 Doe not to England for sought so great offence,
 But that rebelle it bee for any thing;
 Leste a song of sorrow that wee sing.
 For litle weneth the foole who so might these
 What harme it were good Caleis for to lese:
 What wo it were for all this English ground.
 Which wel conceiued the Emperour Sigismound,
 That of all toyes made it one of the moste,
 That Caleis was subiect vnto English coste,
 Him thought it was a fewel most of all,
 And so the same in Latine did it call.
 And if yee wol moze of Caleis heare and knowe,
 I cast to wyce within a litle scrowe,
 Like as I haue done before by and by
 In other parteis of ou: policie.
 Loke how hard it was at the first to get;
 And by my counsell lightly doe not it let.
 For if wee lese it with shame of face
 Willfully, it is for lacke of grace,
 Howe was Harlew cried vpon, and Rone,
 That they were likely for thought to be gone;
 Howe was it warnen and cried on in England,
 I make recorde with this pen in my hand.
 It was warnen plainely in Normandie,
 And in England, and I thereon did crie.
 The world was defrauded, it beynde right so,
 Farewell * Harlew: letwoly it was a go.
 Howe ware Caleis, I can say no better:
 App soule discharge I by this present letter,

The top of Si-
 gismund the
 Emperour
 that Caleis was
 English.

Harlew was
 lost in the yere
 1449. In the
 27. of Henry
 the fifth.

After the Chapitles of commodities of diuers

lands, sheweth the conclusion of keeping of the sea

*enuiro, by a storie of King Edgar, and two incidents of
 King Edward the third, and King Henrie the
 fifth. Chap. 11.*

NDwe see we well then that this round see
 To our Noble by pariformittee
 Under the ship the wed there the sayle,
 And our king with royal apparayle,
 Which swerd drawn byght and extene
 For to chastise enemies violent;
 Shoulde be lord of the sea about,
 To keepe enemies from within and without;
 To behold through Chyrtiantee
 Pastre and lord enuiron of the see:
 All liuing men such a prince to deede,
 Of such a regne to be aserd in deede.
 Thus proue I well that it was thus of old;
 Which by a * Chronicle anon shalbe told,
 Right curious: but I will interpetre
 It into English, as I did it gete:
 Of king Edgar: O most maruellous
 Prince liuing, wittie, and cheualerous:
 So good that none of his predecessours
 Was to him like in prudence and honours.

* Dicit Chronica,
 quod iste Edga-
 rus cunctis pre-
 decessoribus suis
 felicior, nulli
 sanctitate inferi-
 or, omnibus mo-
 rum suauitate
 prestantior fue-
 rit. Luxit ipse
 Angliam non minus
 memorabilis,
 quam Cyrus Per-
 sis, Carolus Fran-
 cis, Romulus ve-
 ro Romanis.

Dicit Chronica,
 prepraueat na-
 us robustissimas
 numero tria mil-
 lia facient: in
 quibus redeunte
 astate omnem
 insulam ad terro-
 rem raterentur,
 & ad suorum ex-
 citationem cum
 maximo apparatu
 circumnavigare
 consueuerant.

we was fortunate and more gracious
 Then other before, and more glorious:
 He was beneath no man in holines:
 Hee passed all in vertuous sweetnes,
 Of English kings was none so commendable:
 To English men no lesse memorable,
 Then Cyrus was to Persie by puissance,
 And as great Charles was to them of France,
 And as to the Romanes was great Romulus,
 So was to England this worthy Edgarus,
 I may not write more of his worthines
 For lacke of time, ne of his holines:
 But to my matter I him exemplifie,
 Of conditions tweyne and of his politic:
 With in his land was one, this is no doubt,
 And another in the see without;
 That in time of Winter and of werre,
 When boystrous windes put see men into fere;
 Within his land about by all prouinces
 Hee passed throughe, perceiving his princes,
 Lords, and others of the commontee,
 Who was oppressour, and who to pouertee
 Was drawn and broughe, and who was cleue in life,
 And was by mischiefe and by strife
 With ouer leding and extortion:
 And good and badde of eche condition
 Hee aspied: and his ministers also,
 Who did trought, and which of hem was fals:
 Howe the right and lawes of the land
 Were execute, and who durst take in hand
 To disobey his statutes and decrees,
 If they were well kept in all countrees:
 Of these he made subtile inuestigation
 Of his owne espie, and other mens relation.
 Among other was his great busines,
 Well to ben ware, that great men of riches,
 And men of might in citie nor in towne
 Should to the poore doe non oppression.
 Thus was hee wont in this Winter tide
 On such enforchise busily to abide.
 This was his labour for the publike thing,
 Thus was hee occupied: a passing holy King.
 Howe to purpose, in the Sommer faire
 Of lusty season, when clered was the aire,
 He had redie shippes made before
 Great and huge, not fewe but many a shoze:
 Full thre thousand and sixe hundred also
 Stately inough on our sea to goe.
 The Chyonicles say, these shippes were full boysteous:
 Such things long to kings victorious.
 In Sommer tide would hee haue in woone
 And in custome to be ful redie soone,
 With multitude of men of good array
 And instruments of werre of best assay.
 Who could hem well in any wise deserue:
 It were not light for any man aloue.
 Thus he and his would enter shippes great
 Habilliments hauing and the flecte
 Of see werres, that topfull was to see

Dicit Chronica,
 preparauerat na-
 ues inbullissimas
 numero tria mil-
 fa sexcenta: in
 quibus totum
 armatum
 inale ad terro-
 rem extenderet,
 & ad suorum ex-
 citationem cum
 maximo apparatu
 circumnavigare
 consueuerat.

Such a nautie and Lord of Paistee,
 There present in person hem among
 To saile and rowe enuiron all along,
 So regalliche about the English isle;
 To all strangers terrors and perille.
 Whose fame went about in all the world stout,
 Unto great fere of all that be without,
 And exercise to Knights and his meynce
 To him longing of his natall cuntree.
 For courage of nebe must haue exercise,
 Thus occupied for eschewin of vice.
 This knew the king that politic ephie;
 Winter and Sommer he was thus occupied.
 Thus conclude I by authoritee
 Of Chyonike, that enuiron the see
 Should bene our subiects vnto the King,
 And hee bee Lord thereof for eny thing:
 For great worship and for profite also
 To defend his land fro euery foo.

Dicit Chronica
 &c, vt non minus
 quantam ei etiam
 in hac vita bono-
 rum operum mer-
 cedem donaue-
 rit eum aliquan-
 do ad maximam
 eius festiuitatem,
 reges, comites,
 multarumq; pro-
 uinciarum prote-
 ctos conueni-
 sent, &c.

That worthy king I leue, Edgar by name,
 And all the Chyonike of his worthy fame:
 Saffe onely this I may not passe away,
 A worde of mightie strength till that I say,
 That graunted him God such worship here,
 For his merites, hee was without pere,
 That sometime at his great festiuittee
 Kings, and Erles of many a countree,
 And princes fele were there present,
 And many Lordes came thider by assent,
 To his worship: but in a certaine day
 Hee had shippes to bee rebble of aray:
 For to visite Saine Johns Church hee list
 Rowing vnto the good holie Baptist,
 Hee assigned to Erles, Lords, and knights
 Many ships right goodly to sight:
 And for himselfe and eight kings moo
 Subiect to him hee made kepe one of thoo,
 A good shippe, and entrede into it
 With eight kings, and do'ne did they sit;
 And eche of them an ope tooke in hand,
 At ope hailes, as I vnderstand,
 And he himselfe at the shippe behinde
 As steris man it became of kinde.
 Such another rowing I dare well say,
 Was not seene of Princes many a day,
 Lo than how hee in waters got the pice,
 In lande, in see, that I may not suffice
 To tell, O right, O magnanimitee,
 That king Edgar had vpon the see.

An incident of the Lord of the sea King Ed- ward the third.

OF king Edward I passe and his prowes
 On lande, on sea yee knowe his worthines:
 The siege of Calcis, yee know well all the matter
 Round about by land, and by the water,
 Howe it lasted not peeres many agoe,
 After the battell of Creeye was pdoe:

Calcis was re-
 ded to y Eng-
 lish 1347.

Howe

King Edward
 had 700
 ships, &
 1415 Eng-
 lishmen in
 the Calcis.

The battell
 of Calcis.

The great
 ship of Henry
 the 4th, made
 at Hull, 1511.

Great ratche
 of Genes taken
 by the Duke of
 Bedford.

1416.

The French
 king's ship
 of 1000
 tons of five
 hundred sail.

At the
 siege of
 Calcis
 the king
 had 700
 ships, &
 1415 Eng-
 lishmen in
 the Calcis.

The policie of keeping the sea. Traffiques, and Discoueries. 203

Howe it was close enuiron about,
 Old men sawe it, which liuen, this is no doubt.
 Old Knights say that the Duke of Burgoyne,
 Late rebuked for all his golden coyne;
 Of ship on see made no besieging there,
 For want of shippes that durst not come for feare.
 It was nothing besieged by the see:
 Thus call they it no siege for honestie,
 Connes assailed, but assault was there none,
 No siege, but fuge: well was he that might be gone:
 This maner carping haue knights serue in age,
 Except through age of this maner language.
 But king Edward made a siege royall,
 And wanne the towne: and in especiall
 The sea was kept, and thereof he was Lord.
 Thus made he Nobles coynd of record;
 In whole time was no nauie on the see
 That might withstand his maiestie,
 Battell of Schute yee may rede euery day,
 Howe it was done I leue and goe my way:
 It was so late done that yee it knowe,
 In comparision within a litle tyme:
 For which to God giue we honour and gloie;
 For Lord of see the king was with victorie.

King Edward
 had 700 Eng-
 lish ships, and
 1415 English
 mariners bes-
 siege Calais.

The battell of
 Schute by sea.

Another incident of keeping of the see, in the
 time of the marueilous werrour and victorious
 Prince, King Henrie the fifth, and of his great
 shippes,

And if I should conclude all by the King
 Henrie the fifth, what was his purposing,
 When at Dampt on he made the great dromons,
 Which passed other great ships of all the commons;
 The Trinite, the Grace de Dieu, the holy Ghost,
 And other moe, which as now hee lost.
 What hope ye was the kings great intenc:
 Of thoo shippes, and what in minde hee meant:
 It was not ellis, but that hee cast to bee
 Lord round about enuiron of the see.
 And when Harflew had her siege about,
 There came caracks horrible great and stoune
 In the narrow see willing to abide,
 To stoppe vs there with multitude of pride.
 My Lord of Bedford came on and had the cure,
 Destroyed they were by that discomfure,
 This was after the king Harflew had wonne,
 When our enemies to siege had begonne,
 That all was slaine or take; by true relation,
 To his woorthippe, and of his English nation.
 There was present the kings chamberlaine
 At both barrailes; which knoweth this in certaine;
 He can it tell otherwise then I:
 As he him, and witte; I passe forth his
 What had this king of his magnificence,
 Of great courage, of wisdom, and prudence:
 Of great courage, of wisdom, and prudence:
 Of fortitude, iustice, and agilitie,
 Discretion, subtile auisedness,

The great
 ship of Henry
 the fifth, made
 at Harflew.

Great caracks
 of Genes taken
 by the Duke of
 Bedford.

1416,

The French
 came thus to
 Harflew
 was of fine
 painted sail.

Attentperance,

Attēperance, Noblesse, and worthinesse:
 Science, p̄uowelle, deuotion, equitie,
 Of most eſtace, wīch hīs magnanimitie
 Liketh to Edgar, and the laide Ed-ward,
 As much of both liketh hē as in regard.
 Where was on līue a man moze victorīous,
 And in so short time p̄ince so maruelous:
 By land and sea, so well he hīm acquitē,
 To speake of hīm I stōp in my witte.
 Thus here I leaue the kīng wīch hīs noblesse,
 Henry the fīfth, wīch whōm all my p̄ocesse
 Of this true booke of pure policie
 Of sea keeping, entēding victorie
 I leaue endly: fōr about in the see
 No p̄ince was of better strenuitee.
 And if he had to this time liued here,
 He had bene p̄ince named wīthouten pere:
 His great shīps shōuld haue ben put in p̄esse,
 Unto the ende that he ment of in theese.
 Fōr doubt it not but that he wōuld haue bee
 Lord and master about the round see:
 And kept it sure to stoppe our enemies hence,
 And wōnne vs good, and wisely brought it thence:
 That no passage shōuld be wīthout danger,
 And his licence on see to moue and sterre.

The Trinitie, the
 Grace de Dieu,
 the holy Ghost.

Of vnitie, shewing of our keeping of the see:
 wīch an endly or finall p̄ocesse of peace by autho-
 ritie. Chap. 12.

Now than fōr loue of Christ, and of his tōp,
 Bying it England out of trouble and nōp:
 Take heart and witte, and set a gouernance,
 Set many wits wīthouten variance,
 To one accord and vniūmitie.
 Put to good will fōr to keepe the see,
 Fīt it fōr worship and p̄ofice also,
 And to rebuke of eche enill willed foe.
 Thus shall worship and riches to vs long,
 Than to che Noble shall we doe no wrong,
 To heare that cogne in figure and in deede,
 To our courage, and to our enemies byede:
 Fōr which they must dyelle hēm to peace in haste,
 O ellis their chīst to standen, and to waste.
 As this p̄ocesse hath moued by and by
 All by reason and expert policy;
 And by stōles wīch p̄oued well this p̄arter:
 O ellis I will my life put in iēparie,
 But many lōnds wōuld seeke her peace fōr nede,
 The see wel kept: it must bee doo fōr yede.
 Thus must Flanders fōr nede haue wītee
 And peace wīth vs: it will non other bee,
 Wīthin short while: and ambassadours
 Wōuld bene here soone to treate fōr their succours.
 This vnitee is to God p̄easance:
 And peace after the wertes variance.
 The ende of battaile is peace likerly,
 And power causeth peace finallly.
 Kept than the sea about in speciall,

Exhortatio gene-
 ralis in custodiam
 eorū Angli-
 e, per diligēciam
 custodiam creni-
 tus maris circa
 litora euēlem
 que debet esse
 per vniūmitatē
 Consiliatorum
 regis, & homi-
 num bonar va-
 luntatis.

Tres sunt causa
 predictarū custo-
 diae: scilicet, ho-
 nor, commodum
 regni, & oppre-
 ssionis inimicū.

Ephel. 4. Sollic-
 itus seruare vni-
 tatem spiritus in
 vinculo pacis.

Math. 5. Beati
 pacifici, quoniam
 filij Dei voca-
 buntur.

Cum placuerint
 Domino vix ho-
 minū, eius inimici
 ad pacem
 conuertentur.

Ihs beatus Ieru-
 salē dīda pacis
 sūo.

which

Ephel. 4. Solliciti
sint seruire vni-
tatem spiritus in
vinculo pacis.

Math. 5. Beati
pacifici, quoniam
filij Dei voca-
buntur.

Cum plauerint
Domino viz ho-
minu, eius inimi-
coru ad pacem
conuerteret.

ubi beata Ieru-
salem dicitur pacis
habere.

Which of England is the towne wall,
As though England were likened to a citie,
And the wall enuiron were the see.
Kepe then the sea that is the wall of England;
And than is England kept by Goddes hande;
That as for any thing that is without,
England were at ease withouten doubt.
And thus should euery lond one with another
Entercommon, as brother with his brother,
And liue togither were lesse in vnitie,
Without rancour in very charitie,
In rest and peace, to Christes great pleasure,
Without strife, debate and variance.
Which peace men should enserche with businesse;
And knit it laddely holding in holinesse.
The Apostle saith, if ye list to see,
Bee ye bulke for to keepe vnitie
Of the spirit in the bond of peace.
Which is needfull to all withouten lesse.
The Prophet biddeth vs peace for to enquire
To pursue it, this is holy desire.
Our Lord Iesu saith, Blessed motte they be
That maken peace; that is tranquillitee.
For peace makers, as Matthew wytteth aright,
Should be called the sonnes of God almightie.
God giue vs grace, the weyes for to keepe
Of his precepts, and slugly not to sleepe
In shame of sinne: that our verrey foe
Might be to vs conuers, and turned so.
For in the Proverbs is a text to this purpose
Plaine inough without any glose:
When mens weyes please vnto our Lord,
He shall conuert and bring to accord
His enemies vnto peace verray,
In vnitie, to liue to Goddis pay,
With vnitie, peace, rest and charitie.
Hee that was here cladde in humanitie,
That came from heauen, and dyed vp with our nature,
Where he ascended, he gaue to vs cure,
And left with vs peace, ageyne strife and debate,
Hore glue vs peace, so well irradiate
Here in this woorld: that after all this felle
Wee may haue peace in the land of behelle,
Ierusalem, which of peace is the sight,
With his brightnes of eternall light,
There glorified in rest with his tuition,
The Deitie to see with full fruition:
Hee second person in diuinitie is,
Who vs assume, and bring vs to the blis. Amen.

Here endeth the true proceffe of the Libel of
English policie, exhorting all England to keepe
the sea enuiron: shewing what profit and saluation,
with worship cometh thereof to the
reigne of England.

God furth Libelle, and meekely shew thy face;
Appearing euery with humble countenance:
And pray my Lords to take in grace,

In opposaile and cherishing the aduance,
 To hardines if that not variance
 Thou hast seerought by full experience
 Authoys and reasons: if ought faile in substance
 Remit to her: at pase thee this science;
 That sech it is soch in verray sayth,
 That the wise Lord Baron of Hungerford
 Hath thee ouerseene, and verely he saith
 That thou art true, and thus hee dorth receyde,
 Next the Gospel: God wotte it was his worde,
 When hee thee redde all ouer in a night.
 Goe forth crew booke, and Christ defend thy righe.

The wise lord
 of Hungerford
 iudgement of
 this booke.

Explicit libellus de Politia conseruatiua maris.

A large Charter granted by K. Edward the 4. in the second yere of his reigne, to the marchants of England resident especially in the Netherlands, for their chusing of a master and governor among themselves, which gouernement was first appointed vnto one William Obray: with expresse mention, what authoritie he should haue.

1462



Edward by the grace of God king of France, & of England, & lord of Ireland, to al those which shal see or heare these letters, sendeth greeting, & good wil. Know ye, that whereas we haue vnderstood, as well by the report of our louing and faithfull Counsellors, as by the common complaint and repute of all men, that many veracions, griefes, debates, discords, annoyces, dissensions, & damages, haue heretofore bene done, moued, committed, & no hapened, and do daily fal out and happen among the common marchants & mariners, our subiects of our realmes of France & England, & our lordships of Ireland and Wales, & of other our dominions, seigneuries, and territories, because that good discretion and authoritie hath not bin obserued among our saide subiects, which abide, frequer, conuerse, remain, inhabit, & passe, aswel by sea as by land, into y parts of Brabant, Flanders, Henault, Holland, Zeland, and diuers other countreis & seigneuries belonging aswell to the high and mighty prince, our most deere and louing cousin y Duke of Burgoyne, of Flanders, &c. as being in the obedience & dominion of other lordes, which are in friendship, alliance, & good wil with vs: and that it is to be doubted that though the saide inconuenience, and occasion, many discommodities may ensue, & fal out in time to come (which God forbid) vnto us should prouide conuenient remedie in this behalfe for our subiects asforesaid: wherefore we desiring most effectually and heartily to auoide the mischiefes of the saide inconueniences & to prouide conuenient remedie for the same, to the end that the saide common marchants and mariners and others our subiects of our saide realmes & dominions, which at this present & hereafter shal haunt and frequent y saide countreis, may be iustly & lawfully ruled, gouerned, and increased by right & equity in the countreis asforesaid, and that equity, reason, & iustice may be ministered vnto them and euer of them, according as the cases shal require, we being wel assured and hauing full confidence, in the discretion, faithfulness, wisdome, experience, & good diligence of our most deare & welbeloued subiect Will. Obray our seruant, & in regard of the good, faithfull, and acceptable seruices, which he hath done vs in our realm & among our subiects in times past, & hoping that he will do also hereafter, we haue made, ordained, constituted, committed, and established, and by the tenour of this presents, of our special grace, full power, & authoritie royall, we ordaine, appoint, commit, and constitute, (during our pleasure) to be gouernour, iudge, warden of iustice, and the appurtenances & appendances therof, which we haue or may haue ouer our saide common subiects the marchants dwelling hereafter as wel by sea as by land, and abiding in the saide countreis of Brabant, Flanders, Henault, Holland, Zeland, and other countreis beyond the sea, as is asforesaid, together with the wages, rights, profits, and emoluments heretofore accustomed, & as the saide Will. Obray at other times hath had and receiued of our saide subiects, when he had, used, and exercised the saide office of gouernour, & also with other such rights and profits, as hereafter shal moze plainly be declared. And furthermore for our parts we haue giuen him, and by these presents do giue him, as much as in us lieth, during our pleasure, full power, authoritie, and special commandement, to gouerne, rule, and cause to be gouerned and ruled with good iustice by himselfe, or by his sufficient deuote tenants or deputies, all and euer our foresaid subiects the common marchants & mariners coming, remaining, frequenting, passing, & repaireing from henceforth into the saide countreis of Brabant, Flanders,

Flan-

cond yere of
in the Ne-
which go-
effe

of lord of Ireland, to
g, & good will. Know
t of our loving an
oye of all men, the
ns, & damages, have
do daily sal out an
es of France & Eng-
les, and territories,
aide subiects, which
p parts of Brabant,
s belonging as well
rgoine, of Brabant,
icly are in friendship
inconuenient, and
od forbid vnto the
wherefore we desire
nences & to provide
nd mariners and o-
after that haue an-
en by right & equi-
vnto them and en-
ful confidence, in
deare & welbelou-
ble seruices, which
he will do also her-
the tenour of this
e, commit, and dis-
purtences & of
the merchants of
Brabant, Flanders,
together with the
ill. Obay at other
ed the said office
ly be declared. And
n, as much as in
gouerne, rule, and
the lieutenants of
s committing, reman-
of Brabant, Flan-
ders,

ders, Henault, Holland, Zeland, and other countreys beyond the sea, as it is said, and to keep and
cause to be kept, to exercise and maintain, for vs and in our place, the said office of gouernour, and
to doe all such things which a faithfull gouernour ought to do, and to take knowledge and admini-
stration of the causes of the said common marchants and mariners, our subiects, and of euery of
them, and of their causes and quarrels moued, or hereafter to be moued in the countreis aforesaid,
or within the limits & borders therof, and to doe them full & speedy iustice. And to reforme, cause
reformation, gouerne, appeale, and pacifie all concensions, discords, questions, or debates between
those our said subiects moued, or to moue: and to right, redresse, repaire, restore, and amend all
transgressions, damages, emperpises, outrages, violences and iniuries committed, or to be comit-
ted: and likewise to require, to aske, demand, and recieve, restitution, reparations, restaurations,
and amends of our said subiects the common marchants & mariners, or of their factors in the coun-
treis aforesaid. And that, whensoever and as often as it shall please the said gouernour, or his depu-
ties, he may in some conuenient and honest place within the said countreis make, or cause to be
made, a session, and hold in our name iurisdiction, courts, and assemblies: and in our said name take
in our behalf, and to make agreement, viatours, and ympires, to iudge, to make decrees,
and to minister iustice, to ordaine, appoint, censure, and constrain our said subiects to observe
our auctoritie, and to vse, execute and accomplish, by way of equitie and iustice, and to enioy
cause to be done all execution and exercise of law and iustice; and to ordaine, appoint, & establish fire
sergeants or vnder, to doe the executions & arrests of our said court, by the commandement of the
said gouernour, or of his deputies, or at the request of the partie or otherwile, according as the
case shall require by their aduise, and to discharge and displace the said sergeants, as shall seeme
good vnto him, as often and whensoever as it shall please him, and change them, and appoint and
set others in their roomes, and to require returne and answer of the court, whensoever need shall
be, of all causes, quarrels, and businesses in regard of the said office belonging vnto vs and to our
said subiects the common marchants and mariners at all times, and as often as the case shall per-
mit and require: and generally and specially to doe as much for vs and in our stead, in the cases
before mentioned, and which hereafter shall be declared, as we could doe or cause to be done, could
we or require, if we were there present in our owne person. Wherefore we will, and by the te-
mour of these presents wee giue and graunt vnto the said gouernour, and to our said subiects
the common marchants and mariners, that as oft and whensoever it please them, they may meet
and assemble in some honest and conuenient place, and by the consent of the said gouernour to
chose and appoyne among them at their pleasure, freely and without danger, certaine suffi-
cient and fit persons to the number of twelve or vnder, which we will haue to be named Justices,
into the which Justices so elected by the said gouernour and our said subiects, as it is said, and
to enioy of them, we giue and graunt especial power and auctoritie, so liue and alid in court,
with the said gouernour or his lieutenants, for their aide and assistance, and to heare the griefes,
complaints, and demands of our said subiects their suites, pleas, and the state of their causes and
quarrels whatsoever moued or to be moued onto the ende of their cause: and at the request of the
said gouernour, his lieutenants, or any of them, to say, propound, and plainly to expresse and
declare their opinions, according to right and conscience, vpon the causes brought before them
and by the parties vetered and declared, and well, lawfully, and faithfully to counsell and aduise
the said gouernour or his lieutenants, to order and censure, iudge and determine, and ende the
same iustly and equally, according as the case shall permit and require. And furthermore we will,
that all iust and reasonable statutes, lawes, ordinances, decrees, and constitutions made and e-
stablished, or to be made and established, in the countreys aforesaid, by the consent of the said go-
uernour, and of the said Justices, shall be corrected, amended, and made: as they shall see to bee
expedient in this behalfe, for the better gouernment of the estate of the common marchants and
mariners our said subiects, and shall be held as ratified, firme, acceptable and approued; and from
henceforth we accept, admit, allow and appoyne them for ratified and confirmed, there to be firme
and inuolubly obserued, kept and obeyed. And also, of our fatherly fauour and grace wee will
and we grant, that by the consent of our said gouernour, our said subiects the common marchants
as they shall thinke good for their better gouernment and estate, such iust and reasonable lawes,
statutes, ordinances, decrees, constitutions, and customes, as they shall thinke expedient in this be-
halfe: which we command to be kept as ratified, confirmed, allowed, & approued, available, and estab-
lished. Whereby we command, that they do not seeke any thing prejudicial to this present power
and auctoritie giuen and graunted by vs to the said gouernour, in any point or article therein
comprised,

compil'd, by any meanes of way whatsoever: in which case if they shoulde doe any thing, or
 ought shoulde happen, we wil that it shal take no place, force, vigour, strength, nor vertue: neither
 that it shalbe of any effect, but it shalbe abolished, disannul'd, and utterly frustrate; and as aboli-
 shed, disannul'd, and utterly frustrate, from this time forthward, wee holde and take it, and will
 hereafter hold and take the same. And so to doe, and put in execution in our name, we have and doe
 give full and absolute power, & speciall authoritie to our said seruant William Obay, & to his said
 lieutenants. And likewise, to the end that a course of marchandise may be kept in good estate, and
 that by order of iustice a firme and constant rule may be set downe among those our said subiects
 and marchants, we have obtained and do obtaine, haue consented & doe consent, and by these pre-
 sents haue giuen & do giue full power & speciall authoritie to our said seruant Will. Obay, our gou-
 ernour, that at all time and times when he shal thinke good, he may obayne, elect, chuse, and
 appoint, in the countreys aforesaid, such ministers, officers, and seruitors as hereafter shalbe na-
 med, and such others as he shal thinke necessary, and to discharge them, and to change them, & let
 others in their roomes, at his good will and pleasure, vnto such a number as he shal thinke good
 and reasonable for the time being to be employed: as namely correctors of brokers as many as
 he shal thinke good, to make and to witnes the bargaines which are made or to be made, betwene
 our said subiects and others with whom they shal haue to do or to deale in the aforesaid countreys:
 our also as many alnagers to alner and measure all kinds of marchandises which they shal buy or
 sell by the yard: and also as many weighers to weigh the marchandise which shalbe sold or bought
 by weight: and also as many foldors to fold their clothes, and so many packers to pack their packs,
 and to make their fardels, mambos, and baskets, and other things needfull for the defence & pre-
 seruation of their marchandise. All which ministers, officers, and seruitors, so chosen, elected, charge,
 admitted, and established by the saide gouernour, as is saide, may take their wages for their
 paines & attendances vpon the said marchants, according to the custome of the said countreys, and
 as they haue bene accustomed to take of the said marchants before these presents by vs giuen and
 graunted. And hereupon we haue giuen and doe giue expresse charge and commandement by vs
 and in our names to all our said subiects common marchants and mariners, and to euery of them
 which shall frequent, come, remaine, passe, repaire, or inhabite within the countreys aforesaid, that
 they shall not make contract or bargain, sell or buy, nor shall not cause any contract or bargain
 to be made, nor in the said countreys sell or buy any manner of wares, goods, or marchandises, se-
 cretely nor openly, by way of fraude, barat, or deceit whatsoever, with any person or persons, at
 what estate, countrey, or condition soeuer they be, without he hath some of the said brokers at the
 bargain making, to present, repoze, and to retellie the said contracts or bargains before the said go-
 uernour or others, if need require, and strife or contention shoulde growe thereof betwene them: nor
 to packe or cause to be packe any goods or marchandises belonging vnto them, in packs, bales, or
 fardels, coffers, chests, mambos, or fardels, without hauing some deputy present thereat:
 nor to take or cause to be taken or set on worke in the said countreys, any other brokers, alnagers,
 weighers, foldors, or packers, then the aforesaid so chosen, admitted, established, as is ordained by
 the saide gouernour, & hereto authorized in our name, as it is saide, vnder paine of falling into, and
 incurring of our displeasure, and of forfeiture, and confiscation of all such goods, wares, and mar-
 chandises, which shallbe found to haue passed by other hands or order, then that or those which are
 before mentioned: the fourth part of which forfeitures and confiscations shall be employed to the
 repairing and maintenance of two chappels founded to the honour of Saint Thomas of Canter-
 burie by our saide subiects, in the townes of Bruges in Flanders, and of Middleborough in Ze-
 land; the other fourth part to vs, & our heire; the third fourth part to our said cousin of Burgundie,
 or the natural Lord of the countrey wherein the saide goods shall be found: and the fourth fourth
 part to him or them, which shall discouer, detect, or finde out the saide fraude. And also that none
 of our said subiects shall be laden, or cause to be laden, vnder any colour nor otherwise, nor in
 packs, in the countreys aforesaid, no kind of wares, goods, nor marchandises whatsoever, which
 they shall bring or cause to be brought into the countreys aforesaid, comming out of our
 countreys, dominions, or obedience, without first and beforehand they make the gouernour
 or his deputies acquainted with their actual, and craue leave, and deliuer, shewe, and de-
 clare their caskets, that it may vniuersally appeare, that the saide goods and marchandises haue tri-
 ly and lawfully payde vnto vs our rights and customes, and not to vnpacke them but in the pre-
 sence of the saide gouernour, his lieutenants or deputies, vpon paine of forfeiture, and confisca-
 tion of the saide goods, in manner and forme before declared in the aforesaid article. And if it be
 found by the visitation of the saide gouernour, his lieutenants, or deputies, that any goods, wares,
 or marchandises whatsoever be arrived and discharged in the countrey, aforesaid, belonging to our
 saide subiectes, not lawfully customed and acquited towards vs of our right and custome, for
 which

which
 or if
 lieue
 felt
 ch
 euer
 surde
 scul
 A
 first
 seal
 ed, app
 the seal
 pay to
 the go
 lous, cr
 ding to
 to be
 dom
 present
 ch
 good
 goun
 our p
 to the
 lapp
 part of
 his
 liuer of
 good
 lapp
 subie
 lapp
 Willia
 our lapp
 or ex
 hying of
 caus
 care, or
 into any
 other
 ro, we
 haue
 g
 Willia
 Obay
 leaued
 and r
 during
 our pl
 on, con
 stituti
 lapp
 goods,
 as
 lapp
 money,
 by
 so will
 we ha
 uer, and
 also
 gather,
 and rec
 like wa
 ges and
 held and
 exercis
 ed, not
 with
 stam
 and fa
 mous:
 as, o
 other
 money
 abou
 may ha
 ue and
 take
 the ha
 ue and
 doe
 of the
 lapp
 offic
 e, and
 these
 presen
 ces, fo
 our
 pleasi
 ure, wi
 the
 contri
 bution
 of in
 rimes,
 which
 shall
 be, so
 his
 lapp
 lieue
 nant,
 becom
 e, leu
 gress
 would
 be pun
 ished
 quantity
 of their
 of, and
 expres
 sly enoi
 ned, no
 so by
 vs or
 dat
 tery, and
 minist
 ers, be
 half
 our
 lapp
 or

doe any thing, or
may vertue: neither
strate; and as abol-
no take it, and will
me, we haue and doe
Orbay, & to his sub-
in good estate, and
e our said subjects
e, and by these pre-
Will. Orbay gover-
me, elect, chuse, and
ereafter shalbe na-
change them, & sit
ch shall thinke good
okers as many as
be made, betwene
s said countreis:
ch they shal buy of
albe sold of bought
o pack their packs,
e, the defence of pe-
nolen, elected, char-
rit wages for their
s said countreis, and
s by vs giuen and
mandement by vs
o to euery of them
e of the said countreis
tract of bargaine
r marchandise, se-
r of persons of
s said brokers at the
e before the said go-
uernour them;
in packs, bales, &
p present thereat:
okers, aduante-
e, & o bydne by
falling into, and
s, wares, and mar-
e those which are
e employed to the
omas of Cambr-
eborough in Ze-
s of Burgundie,
the fourth fourth
And also that none
therwise, nor by
whatsoever, which
unning out of our
e the gouernour
e, thewe, and de-
and officers haue
in but in the pre-
nture, and confide-
e. And if hee
y goods, wares,
e, belonging to our
and custome, for
which

which they cannot nor are not able to make any due proofe of our letters of coquet, as is mentioned,
or if they haue any other fraud: we will, we ordaine, and we grant, that the said gouernour, his
lieutenants or deputies may seaze upon the said goods on our behalfe, and may confiscate and for-
feit the same, distributing the same into foure partes in maner aforesaid. And also we will, that
euery one of the said packs, sables, bales, maunds, cofers, runnes, bales, routes, and other
furnitures and gear, wherein the said marchandise shalbe packed, to be sent out of the said coun-
treis, shall not be laden upon ships, carts, nor horses, to come into our dominion, without being
first sealed with a seale aduanced by vs and giuen by the said gouernour, without being
seen, applied, and confiscated to vs and into our hand, if they be found vnsigned and not sealed with
the seale. And for euery piece of marchandise which shall be sealed with the said seale, they shall
pay to the said sealer two pence of grosse money of Flanders, which shall goe to the profite of the
said gouernour. And so much as according to right and conscience, we ought not to vse the la-
bour, trauele, nor seruice of any man, without wages, paying, and fully contenting him accord-
ing to reason and equite, especially when we doe appoint any person or persons to doe or cause
to be done so great trauele, labours, busines, and executions, as these which are contained in this
present charter, as well for the benefit and profite of vs and our felues, as for the holisme, perfect, &
good government of our said subjects: we by the good aduise and deliberation of the said lord of
our priue counsell, haue granted and giuen, and as before, doe grant and giue, of our said grace,
to the said William Orbay our said seruant and gouernour about named, during our pleasure, for
part of his wages and fee of the said office, one pennie of our money of England of the value of a
liuer of grosse money of Flanders, vpon al and singular the goods, wares and marchandise of our
said subjects frequenting the said countreis, to be leuyed, gathered, receiued, and payed vnto the
said William Orbay or to his deputies, vpon the said wares and marchandise belonging vnto
our said said subjects buying and selling, of which they shall cause to sell, buy, put away, stricke
or exchange in the countreis abovesaid, as well of the goods and marchandise which they shall
bring or cause to be brought into the said countreis, as of all other goods which they shall take and
carie, or cause to be caried and conueyed out of those countreis into our dominion or else where
into any other part whatsoever. And to cause the same to be gathered, receiued, leauied and pay-
ed, we haue giuen, and by these presents doe giue full power and speciall authoritie vnto the said
William Orbay, and to his lieutenants and deputies aforesaid, to leaue, gather, and cause to be
leauied and receiued the said money, in forme and maner aboue mentioned, to his profite and vse,
during our pleasure: and to enioy and vse the same as his proper goods, without any contradic-
tion, contrainding and asserting if herbe hee, as well on land, as on the water, our said subjects, their
said money, vpon the said goods and marchandise, as is aforesaid. For such is our pleasure, and
so will we haue it done without contradiction or impeachment to him and his, during our plea-
sure. And also we will that the said William Orbay, our and about that which is said, shall take,
gather, and receiue of our said subjects from henceforth yearely, during our pleasure, all such and
like wages and profits, as he had and receiued of our said subjects, in the yeare 1458, when hee
held and exercised the said office of gouernour, without diminishing or rebating any thing there-
of, notwithstanding this present augmentation made, increased, and done vnto him, of our grace
and fauour: as o that hee shall gather, take, and receiue the same in such forme and maner, as the
other money aboue mentioned is to be gathered. And to the ende that the said William Orbay
may haue and doe place him, by the deliuey of these presents, in possession, reason, and entrance
of the said office, and of the rights, profits, stipends, wages, and monies aforesaid, to begin to ex-
ercise the said office of gouernour in our name, the first day of May next ensuing after the date of
these presents, for the said William Orbay to hold and exercise, peaceable and vse the same, during
our pleasure, with the said wages, monies, rights, and profits aboue mentioned, without any
contradiction or impeachment. And all and singular our subjects the common marchants and ma-
rines, which shall be contrary, rebellious, and disobedient to the said gouernour so aduanced by
vs, to his said lieutenants, to the said iustices so chosen, or to any of them, or to any of the statutes,
lawes, decrees, sentences, ordinaunces, and customes, offices, gifts, and graces abovesaid, let them
guiltily be punished by the said gouernour or his lieutenants, in this behalfe, according to the
quantity of their offences, and the exigencie of the cases. We doe sommon, commaund, straitly
enioyn by these presents all and euery one said subjects, that vnto the said gouer-
nour, or by vs or our lieutenants, or by our said iustices, or deputies, and also to the said iustices, offi-
cers, and ministers, in all and euery the things aforesaid, and others any wate concerning in this
behalfe our said ordinaunces, their government and rule, the circumstances and dependances thereon
that

that they giue their attendance, counsaile, comfort, obedience, and aide, diligently without fault or difficulty, surely, safely, fully and peaceably: without doing, inferring, or inflicting, or suffering to be done, inferred, or inflicted to them or any of them in body or goods, any disturbance or impeachment, in any manner whatsoever: but rather if any thing bee done vnto them contrary and to the prejudice of these p[re]sents, they shall remove and cause the same to be remooued, and that which shall be hindered they shall set at free deliuerance, vpon payne to fall into and to incurr our high displeasure. For such is our pleasure and so will wee haue it, notwithstanding anie letters falsely crept in, obtained, or to be obtained contrary herunto. And you our subjects, the common merchants and mariners, so behaue your selues, that you may receiue commendation of vs for your good obedience, knowing that such as shall be found doing or to haue done the contrary, we will see them so punished without redemption, that they shall bee an example to all rebellious persons. We pray and most instantlie require in the ap[er] of requite, all others our friends, allies, and well-willers, of well p[ri]nces and potentates, as their iudges, officers, lieutenants, deputies, commissaies, and subjects, and euery of them, in regard of equitie, that they would vouchsafe, and that it would please them to giue, doe, and lend comfort, ayde, assistance, and p[ro]tection if neede require, to our sayd gouernour, his lieutenants, commissaies, deputies, iudges, officers, and our officers and ministers aforesayd: and herein wee pray them on our behalfe, and in our owne name. And it may please them herein to doe so much, that we may haue occasion to thank them, and to accompe our selues beholding for the same: and as they would that we should do for them in the like manner, or in a greater: which we will willingly doe, if we be requited thereto by them. In witness whereof we haue caused these our letters to bee made patentes. Witness our selues at Westminster, the fifteneeth of Ap[ri]l, in the second yere our reigne.

A declaration of the *Indies* and lands discovered, and subdued vnto the Emperour, and the king of Portugall: And also of

other partes of the *Indies* and rich countries to be discovered, which the woorthie shipfull *M. Robert Thorne* merchant of *London* (who dwelleth long in the citie of *Siml* in *Spaine*) exhorted king *Henrie* the eighth to take in hand.

MOST EXCELLENT PRINCE,



xperience p[ro]oueth that naturally all p[ri]nces bee desirous to extend and enlarge their dominions and kingdomes. Wherefore it is not to be marvelled to see them euery day procure the same, not regarding any cost, perill, and labour, that may thereby chance, but rather it is to be marvelled, if there be any p[ri]nce content to liue quiet with his owne dominions. For surely the people would thinke he lacketh the noble courage and spirit of all other.

The world knoweth that the desires of p[ri]nces haue bene so feruent to obtaine their purpose, that they haue aduentured and p[ro]cured things to mans coniecture impossible, the which they haue made possible, and also things difficult haue made facill: and thus to obtaine their purpose, haue in manner turned by and to wane the whole world so many times, that the people inhabiting in the farthest region of the Occident haue pursued with great distress, labours and perils, to penetrate and enter into the farthest regions of the Orient: and in like wise those people of the said parts of the Orient haue had no lesse labour and desire to enter and penetrate into the farthest land of the Occident, and so following their purchase haue not ceased vntill they could passe no farther by reason of the great seas.

This naturall inclination to cause, that scarcely it may be said, there is any kingdom or state, nor king quiet, but that his owne imagination, or other p[ri]nces his neighbours doe trouble him. God and nature hath p[ro]vided to your Grace, and to your gracious progenitors, this Realme of England, and set it in so fruitfull a place, and within such limites, that it should seeme to be a place quiet and apart from all the aforesayd desire. One speciall cause is, for that it is compassed with the Sea: by reason thereof it seemes, this notwithstanding, their desires and noble conuises haue bene most commonly like vnto others: and with marvellous great labours, costes and perils, they haue trauielled and passed the Seas, making warre, not onely with kings and dominions nigh neighbours, but also with them of farre countries, and so haue woonne and conquered many rich and fertile dominions, and amplified this your Graces Realme with great blessing and glory. And also now of late your Grace hauing like courage and desire, and not without cause, to enlarge this your kingdom, and to extend your limites and tribute of the French king,

which
partic
conqu
and kn
fulfill
rie po
may at
your
bound
bid: w
kingdom
lectes in
North:
p[ri]nces.
of p[ro]uinc
they haue
toward th
discouere
discouere
Because
for that po
so great mi
ger, be foll
not the com
be now p[ro
then were c
followed the
der may be o
of, and by
ching, in com
great honour
is p[ro]uoced to
And now
rie: it is very
difficult and
without anie
day without ar
see at all time
it is betwee
twee houre
ignorant but y
Graces subie
they that be disc
coastes not disco
darkeneth hath
Realmes to the
same lightie wil
this glorious and
rous, (which may
they passe the
these partes, and
they will saye by
plaine, they may
If they will go
tend toward the mi
from thence to the
can be reckoned fro
toward the coasts of

which as that pretense be restrained, your Grace in person passed with a great power into France, putting your Graces person to great paine and labour, and without doubt victoriously you had conquered the said Realme of France, as ye began, if your aduersary had not reconciled himselfe, and knowledges your Graces right and title: and so promised truly to pay the tribute then due, & so you could not refuse.

Now I considering this your noble courage and desire, and also perceiving that your Grace may at your pleasure, to your greater glory, by a goodly meane, with little cost, perill, or labour to your Grace or any of your subjects, amplify and enrich this your sayd Realme, I know it is my duty: which is, that with a small number of ships there may bee discovered diuers New lands and kingdomes, in the which without doubt your Grace shall winne perpetuall glory, and your subjects infinite profite. To which places there is left one way to discover, which is into the North: for that of the fourte partes of the world, it seemeth thre partes are discovered by other Princes. For out of Spaine they haue discovered all the Indies and Seas Orientall, and about they haue compassed the world. For the one of them departing toward the Orient, and the other toward the Occident, met againe in the course of way of the middle of the day, and so then was discovered a great part of the same Seas and coastes by the Spaniards, so that now rest to be discovered the sayd North partes, the which it seemeth to mee, is onely your charge and duty, for that you haue already taken it in hand. And in mine opinion it will not seeme well to leaue it to be followed and obeyed: though heretofore your Grace hath made thereof a pprofe, & found not the commoditie thereby as you trusted, at this time it shall be no impediment, for there may be now provided remedies for things, then lacked, and the inconueniences and lets remoued, that then were cause that your Graces desire tooke no full effect, which is, the courses to be changed, that followed the foresaid new courses. And concerning the mariners, shippes, and provision, and of other may be devised and taken meete and conuenient, much better then hitherto. By reason whereof, in comparison to the great profite. Surely the cost herein will be no great labour and glory is hoped for: and considering well the courses, truely the danger & way is shorter to vs, then to Spaine of Portugall, as by euident reasons appereth.

And now to declare something of the commoditie and vtilitie of this Nauigation and discovery: it is very cleere and certaine, that the Seas that commonly men say, without great danger, difficulty and perill, yea rather it is impossible to passe, that those same Seas be navigable and without any such danger, but that shippes may passe and haue in them perpetuall clearnesse of the day without any darkenesse of the night: whiche thing is a great commoditie for the nauigants, to see at all times round about them, as well the safegards as dangers, and how great difference it is betwene the commoditie and perills of other which leese the most part of euery sourse and twelue houres the said light, and goe in darkenesse groping their way, I thinke there is none so ignoiant but perceiuet this more plainely, then it can be exprest. Yea what a vantage shal your Graces subjects haue also by this light to discover the strange lands, countries, and coastes: For if they that be discovered, to saile by the coastes in darkenesse is with great danger, much more then the coastes not discovered be dangerous to trauell by night or in darkenesse. Per these dangers of darkenesse hath not leetted the Spaniards and Portugals and other, to discover many vnknown Realmes to their great perill. Which considered (and that your Graces subjects may haue the same light) it will seeme your Graces subjects to be without actiue or courage, in leauing to doe this glorious and noble enterpryse. For they being past this litle way which they named so dangerous, (which may be two or thre leagues before they come to the Pole, and as much more after they passe the Pole) it is cleere, that from thence forth the seas and landes are as temperate as these partes, and that then it may be at the will and pleasure of the mariners, to chooseth whether they will saile by the coastes, that be colde, temperate or hote. For they being past the Pole, it is plaine, they may decline to what part they list.

If they will goe toward the Orient, they shall inioy the regions of all the Tartarians that extend toward the midday, and from thence they may goe and procede to the land of the Chins, and from thence to the land of Cathay Orientall, which is of all the maine Land most Orientall that can be reckoned from our habitation. And if from thence they doe continue their nauigation, following the coastes that returne toward the Occident, they shall fall in with Malaca, and so with all

secret.

The discovery of the North.

1589 Sebastian Cabot and Sir Thomas Pen in the eight pence of his engine. And this is the vantage spoken of by Gaspar Ouelo, that came to S. Domingo.

Note.

Nauigation vnder the Pole

Tartaria; China.

New found
land discovered
by English.

the Indies which we call Orientall, and following the way, may returne hither by the Cape of Buona Speranza: and thus they shall compasse the whole worlde. And if they will take their course after they be past the Pole, toward the Occident, they shall goe in the backe side of the new found land, which of late was discovered by your Graces Subjects, untill they come to the backe side and South Seas of the Indies Occidentall. And so continuing their voyage they may returne throught the straight of Magellan to this countrey, and so they compasse also the worlde by that way: and if they goe this third way, and after they be past the Pole, goe right toward the Pole Antartike, and then decline toward the lands and Islands situated between the Tropiques, and under the Equinoctiall, without doubt they shall finde there the richest lands and Islands of the worlde of golde, precious stones, balmes, spices, and other things that we here esteeme most: which come out of strange countries, and may returne the same way.

By this it appeareth, your Grace hath not onely a great advantage of the riches, but also your Subjects shall not trauele halfe of the way that other doe, which goe round about as aforesayd.

The booke made by the right worshipful M. Robert Thorne in the
yeere 1527. in Siuill, to Doctour Ley, Lord ambassadour for king

Henry the eight, to Charles the Emperour, being an information of the
parts of the world, discovered by him and the king of Portugall:
and also of the way to the Moluccas by the North.



Ight noble and reuerend in x^c. I haue receiued your letters, and haue procured and sent to know of your seruant, who your Lordship wrote, should be sicke in Merchena. I cannot there o^r els where heare of him, without he be returned to you, o^r gone to S. Lucar, and thither. I cannot iudge but that of some contagious sicknesse hee died, so that the owner of the house for defaming his house would bury him secretly, and not be knowen of it. For such things haue often times happened in this countrey.

Also to write vnto your Lordshippe of the new trade of Spicery of the Emperour, there is no doubt but that the Islands are fertile of Cloues, Nutmegs, Spice, and Cinnamon: and that the said Islands, with other there about, abound with golde, Rubies, Diamondes, Balasses, Garnets, Facinets, and other stones & pearls, as all other lands, that are vnder and neere the Equinoctiall. For we see, where nature giueth any thing, she is no niggard. For as with vs and other, that are aparted from the said Equinoctiall, our mettals be Lead, Tinne, and Iron, so there be Gold, Siluer, and Copper. And as our fruites and graines be Apples, Nuts, and Coynes, so theirs be Dates, Nutmegs, Pepper, Cloues, and other Spices. And as we haue Teat, Amber, Cristall, Jasper, and other like stones, so haue they Rubies, Diamonds, Balasses, Saphyres, Facinets, and other like. And though some say that of such precious mettals, graines, o^r kind of spices, and precious stones, the abundance and quantity is nothing so great, as our mettals, fruites o^r stones aboue rehearsed: yet if it be well considered, how the quantitie of the earth vnder the Equinoctiall to both the Tropicall lines, (in which space is found the sayd Golde, spices and precious stones) is as much in quantity, as almost all the earth from the Tropiques to both the Poles; it cannot be denied but there is moze quantity of the sayd mettals, fruites, spices, and precious stones, then there is of the other mettals and other things befoze rehearsed. And I see that the preciousnes of these things is measured after the distance that is between vs, and the things that we haue appetite vnto. For in this nauigation of the Spicery was discovered, that these Islands nothing set by golde, but set moze by a knife and a naylor of iron, then by his quantitie of Golde: and with reason, as the thing moze necessary for mans seruice. And I doubt not but to them should be as precious our coyne and seedes, if they might haue them, as to vs their spices: & likewise the pieces of glasse that here we haue counterfeited are as precious to them, as to vs their stones: which by experience is seene daplie by them that haue trade thither. This of the riches of those countries is sufficient.

Doctour Ley
letters.

Touching that your Lordship wrote, whether it may be profitable to the Emperour o^r no: it may be without doubt of great profit: if, as the king of Portugall doth, he would become a merchant, and prouide shippes and their lading, and trade thither alone, and defend the trade of these Islands for himselfe. But other greater businesse withholdeth him from this. But still, as now it is begonne to be occupied, it would come to much. For the shippes comming in safetie, there would thither many euery yere, of which to the Emperour is due of all the wares and iewels that come from thence the fift part for his custome cleare without any cost. And besides this hee

M

reth in e
pounds is
this title
one shoul
English m
same shipp
nauigation
desire to k
and cardes
caros, and
for those
For if str
North poin
leagues, the
rer to the
ringal are.
o^r the Empe
found lands
giue any decl
o^r Carde of t
stand, then m
set out, that is
moy in part
trust you shall
with my declar
first, your
gress in latitud
the earth: the la
which they mea
the line Equino
much from the l
moze is also from
round, is loone y
of ninetie degre
South, and from
counted from W
The sayd latitud
left hand: so that
a compasse, and s
apply the other fo
end of the Card, w
the Equinoctiall,
gion is in. Alfo the
ing also 360 degre
in headland called
where the diuision
How to know in
and set the one foot
extend the other foot
all o^r Occidental p
the end of the nethe
line that the region
with the vniuersal
north perpendicular
whose distance measu
all lines is onely to th
is Dyent. For that
other line in the S
the same that is Ge

her by the Cape of
they will take their
the side of the new
come to the backe
page they may re-
also the world by
right toward the
the Tropiques,
does and Islands of
were extreme most:

ches, but also pen-
as aforesayd.

Thorne in the
for king
of the
gal:

, and have pro-
ote, should be like
out he be returned
of some conta-
defaming his house
things have often

perour, there is no
nom: and that the
s, Valasses, Gre-
nd nere the Equi-
as with vs and o-
and Iron, so the
urs, and Coyne, so
haue Teat, Amber,
lasses, Sapphyr,
gratines, of kind of
our mettals, fruits
are under the E-
e, spices and pre-
to both the Poles;
ices, and precious
And I see that the
nd the things that
that these Islands
quantitie of Golde:
be not but to them
their spices: & like-
m, as to vs the
his of the riches of

Empereor: or not: it
uld become a mer-
the trade of these
But still, as now
ing in safetie, there
es and iewels that
ides this hee pur-
ch

teeth in euery store a certaine quantitie of money, of which hee enioyeth of the gaires pound and pounds like as other aduenturers doe. In a flecte of thre shippes and a Carauel that went from this cite armed by the marchants of it, which departed in April last past, I and my partner haile one thousand foure hundred ducets that we employed in the sayd flecte, principally for that two English men, friends of mine, which are somewhat learned in Cosmographie, should goe in the nauigation of those seas, and there to haue informations of many other things, and aduise that I desire to knowe especially. Seeing in these quarters are shippes, and mariners of that countrey, and carbes by which they saile, though much unlike ours, that they should procure to haue the said cards, and learne how they vnderstand them, and especially to know what nauigation they haue for those Islands Northwards, and North-eastward.

For if from the sayd Islands the sea did extend, without interposition of land, to laste from the North point to the North-east point one thousand seven hundred or one thousand eight hundred ver to the sayd Spicerie by almost two thousand leagues then the Emperour, or the king of Portugal are. And to aduise your Lordship whether of these Spiceries of the king of Portugal found lands are parted from it, (for that by twisting without some demonstration, it were hard to Card of the world: the which, I feare me, shall put your Lordship to moze labour to vnderstand, then me to make it, onely for that it is made in so litle roome that it cannot be but obscurely set out, that is desired to be seene in it, and also for that I am in this science litle expert: Yet to re- trust you shall perceiue in this Card part of your desire, if, for that I cannot expresse mine intent, with my declaration I doe not make it moze obscure.

First, your Lordship knoweth that the Cosmographers haue diuided the earth by 360 de- grees in latitude, and as many in longitude, under the which is comprehended all the roundnes of the earth: the latitude being diuided into foure quarters, ninety degrees amount to euery quarter, the line Equinoctiall till they come right under the North starre and South starres, being from much from the sayd line Equinoctiall to the South starre be other ninety degrees: and as moze is also from either of the sayd starres agayne to the Equinoctiall. Which imagined to bee of ninety degrees a quarter: so that this latitude is the measure of the world from North to South, and from South to North. And the longitude, in which are also counted other 360, is counted from West to East, or from East to West, as in the Card is set.

The sayd latitude your Lordship may see marked and diuided in the ende of this Card on the left hand: so that if you would know in what degrees of latitude any region or coast stendeth, take a compasse, and set the one foot of the same in the Equinoctiall line right against the said region, & apply the other foote of the compasse to the said region or coast, & then set the sayd compasse at the end of the Card, where the degrees are diuided. And the one foote of the compasse standing in the line Equinoctiall, the other will shew in the scale the degrees of altitude or latitude that the said region is in. Also the longitude of the world I haue set out in the nether part of the Card, containing also 360 degrees: which begin to be counted after Ptoleme and other Cosmographers from the diuision of the degrees beginneth, and endeth in the same Capo Verde.

Now to know in what longitude any land is, your Lordship must take a ruler or a compasse, and set the one foot of the compasse vpon the land or coast whose longitude you would know, and extend the other foot of the compasse to the next part of one of the transversall lines in the Occidental part: which done, set the one foot of the compasse in the said transversall line at the end of the nether scale, the scale of longitude, and the other foot sheweth the degree of longitude that the region is in. And your Lordship must vnderstand that this Card, though litle, containeth the vniuersall whole world betwixt two collaterall lines, the one in the Occidental part perpendicular vpon the 175 degree, & the other in the Oriental part on the 170 degree, whose distance measureth the scale of longitude. And that which is without the two said transversall lines, is onely to shew how the Oriental part is ioined with the Occident, and Occident with the Oriental. For that that is set without the line in the Oriental part, is the same that is set within the line in the Occidental part: and that that is set without the line in the Occidental part, is the same that is set within the line in the Oriental part, to shew that though this figure of the world

This was the
flecte where
Cabot discou-
red the river
of Plate, 1526.

Note.
The Actes
found Islands
discouered by
the English.

in shippes of
the world.

To know the
latitudes.

To know the
longitudes.

world in plaine of flatter seemeth to haue an end, yet one imagining that this sayd Card were set upon a round thing, where the endes should touch by the lines, it would plainly appeare howe the Orient part ioyneith with the Occident, as there without the lines it is described and figured.

And for moze declaration of the said Card, your Lordship shall vnderstand, that beginning on the part Occidental within the line, the first land that is set out, is the maine land and Islands of the Indies of the Emperour. Which maine land of coast goeth Northward, and finisheth in the land that we found, which is called here Terra de Labrador. So that it appeareth the sayd land what we found, and the Indies to be all one maine land.

Now called
the straight of
Magdane.

The sayd coast from the sayd Indies Southward, as by the Card your Lordshippe may see, cometh to a certaine straight Sea, called Estrecho de todos Santos: by which straight Sea the Spaniards goe to the Spiceries, as I shall declare moze at large: the which straight Sea is right against three hundred fiftene degrees of longitude, and is of latitude of altitude from the Equinoctiall three and fifty degrees. The first land from the sayd beginning of the Card toward the Orient are certaine Islands of the Canaries, and Islands of Capo verde. But the first maine land next to the line Equinoctiall is the sayd Capo verde, and from thence Northward by the straight of this sea of italie. And so followeth Spayne, France, Flanders, Almaine, Denmarke, and Norway, which is the highest parte toward the North. And ouer against Flaunders are our Islands of England and Ireland. Of the landes and coastes within the streights I haue set out onely the Regions, diuiding them by lines of their limits, by which plainly I thinke your Lordship may see, in what situation euerie region is, and of what highnesse, and with what regions it is ioyned. I doe thinke few are left out of all Europe. In the parts of Asia and Africa I could not so wel make the sayd diuisions: for that they be not so wel known, nor need not so much. This I wryte because in the sayd Card be made the said lines & strikes, that your Lordship may vnderstand wherefore they doe serue. Also returning to the foresaid Capo verde, the coast goeth Southward to a Cape called Capo de buona speranza: which is right ouer against the 60. & 6. degree of longitude. And by this Cape go the Portugals to their Spicerie. For from this Cape toward the Orient, is the land of Calicut, as your Lordship may see in the headland ouer against the 130. degree. For the sayd Cape of Buona speranza the coast returneth toward the line Equinoctiall, and passing forth, entereth the red sea, & returning out, entereth again into the gulfes of Persia, and returneth toward the Equinoctiall line, till that it cometh to the headland called Calicut aforesaid, and from thence the coast making a gulfes, where is the riuer of Ganges, returneth toward the line to a headland called Malaca, where is the principall Spicerie: & from this Cape returneth and maketh a great gulfes, and after the coast goeth right toward the Orient, and ouer against this last gulfes and coast be many Islands, which be Islands of the Spiceries of the Emperour. Upon which the Portugals and he be at variance.

Note.

The sayd coast goeth toward the Orient, and endeth right against the 155. degrees, and after returneth toward the Occident Northward: which coast not yet plainly knowne, I may iure to the New found lande found by vs, that I spake of before. So that I finish with this by the declaration of the Card aforesaid. Well I knowe I should also haue declared how the coastes within the Straights of the Sea of Italic runne. It is playne that passing the streights on the North side of that Sea after the coast of Granado, and with that which pertuneth to Spaine, is the coast of that which France hath in Italic. And then followeth in one piece all Italic, which land hath an arme of the Sea, with a gulfes which is called Mare Adriaticum. And in the bettome of this gulfes is the cite of Venice, And on the other part of the sayd gulfes is Sclauonia, and next Grecia, then the streits of Constantinople, and then the sea called Euxinus, which is within the sayd streights and coming out of the sayd streights, followeth Turcia maior (though now on both sides it is called Turcia.) And so the coast runneth Southward to Syria, and ouer against the sayd Turcia are the Islands of Rhodes, Candie, and Cyprus. And ouer against Italic are the Islands of Sicilia and Sardinia. And ouer against Spaine is Maiorca and Minorca. In the ende of the gulfes of Syria is Iudea. And from thence returneth the coast toward the Occident, till it cometh to the streights where we began, which all is the coast of Africke and Barbarie. Also your Lordship shall vnderstand that the coastes of the Sea throughout all the world: I haue coloured with yellow, for that it may appeare that all that is within the line coloured yellow, is to be imagined to be maine land of Islands: and all without the line so coloured to be Sea: where by it is made and light to know it. Albeit in this little roome any other description would rather haue made it obscure then cleere. And the sayd coastes of the Sea are all set iustly after the manner and forme as they lie, as the navigation approueth them throughout all the Card, save onely the coastes of the Isles of the Spicerie of the Emperour which is from ouer against the 160. to the 155. degree of longitude, for these coastes and situations of the Islands, euery of the Cosmographers and pilots of

M

pilots of
this, be
the Occi
this, be
to find
this differ
touching
I will de
that in the
your Lord
menture
In the p
Spicerie,
and crabe
wherefore
northward
taine arm
part of the
range thing
that they wou
which be gane
ing him that
found and disc
remembere the
he did not retu
could be discou
a great censur
Portugal, So
owne licence is
After this in
without making
scuils, and the
in this Card
the golde from
ing of Spaine;
that should be
about his
fear of
could not
it seemeth
and that to
lands of the
to receive the
and returne
line to Portu
ering. And no
more where
his case pay
is: so that he
fetched to the
them two. A
shp to be cou
the world tow
and 150 degre
Occident, unt
and righte di
from the land
and fight on bo
er they diuided

The Pope re-
sponded.

The longi-
tudes hard to
be found out.

Now to that these Islands of Spicery fall weere the terme and limites betweene these princi-
ces (for as by the sayd Card you may see they begin from one hundred and sixtie degrees of longi-
tude, and ende in 115) it seemeth all that fallith from 160 to 180 degrees, should be of Portu-
gal: and all the rest of Spaine. And for that their Cosmographers and Pilots coulde not agree in the situation of the sayde Islandes (for the Portugals set them all within their 180
degrees, and the Spaniards set them all without:) and for that in measuring, all the Cosmo-
graphers of both parties, of what other that ever haue bene cannot giue certaine order to mea-
sure the longitude of the world, as they doe of the latitude: for that there is no starre seen
from East to West, as are the starres of the Poles from North to South, but all mooueth
with the moouing diuine: no manner can bee founde howe certainly it may bee measured, but
by coniectures, as the Nauigants haue esteemed the way they haue gone. But it is manifest
that Spaine had the situation of all the lands from Cape Verde, toward the Orient of the Portugals
to their 180 degrees. And in all their Cardes they neuer hitherto set the sayde Islandes within
their limitation of the sayd 180 degrees, (though they knewe very well of the Islandes,) till
now that the Spaniards discovered them. And it is knowne that the king of Portugal had trade
to these Islandes afore, but would neuer suffer Portugal to go thither from Calicut: for so much
as he knewe that it fell out of his dominion: least by going thither there might come some know-
ledge of those other Islandes of the king of Spaine, but bought the cloues of Sparchantes of that
countrey, that brought them to Calicut, much better then they would haue cost, if he had sent for
them, thinking after this manner it would abide alwayes secret. And now that it is discovered by
Indes and keeps the Spaniards from the trade all that he can.

Also it should seeme that when this foresaid content of the diuision of the world was agreed of
betweene them, the king of Portugal had already discovered certaine Islandes that lie our
against Cape Verde, and also certaine part of the maine land of India toward the South, from
whence he sette Brazil, and called it the land of Brasil. So for that all should come in his terme
and limites, hee tooke three hundred and seuentie leagues beyond Cape Verde: and after this
his 180 degrees, being his part of the world, should begin in the Carde righe ouer against the
340 degrees, where I haue made a little compasse with a crosse, and should finish at the 160
gree, where also I haue made another little marke. And after this computation without any
crosser, the Islandes of the Spicery fall out of the Portugals domination. So that now the Spaniards
say to the Portugals, that if they would beginne their 180 degrees from the sayde Cape
Verde, to the intent they should extende more toward the Orient, and so to touch those Islandes
of the Spicery of the Emperour, which is all that is betweene the two crosse made in this Card,
that then the Islandes of Cape Verde and the lande of Brasil that the Portugals nowe obtaine
out of the sayd limitation, and that they are of the Emperours. If their 180 degrees they run
from the 370 leagues beyond the said Cape Verde, to include in it the said Islandes and lande
of Brasil, then plainly appeareth the said 180 degrees should finish long before they come to these
Islandes of the Spicery of the Emperour: As by this Card your Lordship may see. For the
limits should begin at the 340 degrees of this Card, and ende at the 160 degrees, where I haue
made two little markes of the compasse with crosses in them.

So that plainly it should appeare by reason, that the Portugals should leaue these Islandes
of Cape Verde and land of Brasil, if they would haue part of the Spicery of the Emperour:
as els holding these, they haue no part there. To this the Portugals say, that they will beginne
their 180 degrees from the selfe same Cape Verde: for that it may extende so much more
toward the Orient, and touch these Islandes of the Emperours: and would winne these Islandes
of Cape Verde and land of Brasil neuertheless, as a thing that they possessed before the confirmation
this limitation was made.

So none can verily sell which hath the best reason. They be not yet agreed, Quare sub
his est.

But without doubt (by all coniectures of reason) the sayd Islandes fall all without the limita-
tion of Portugal, and pertaine to Spaine, as it appeareth by the most part of all the Cardes made
by the Portugals, save those which they haue falsified of late purposely.

But now touching that your Lordship wrote, whether that which we discovered toucheth
any thing the foresaid content: once it appeareth plainly, that the Newfound land that was
covered, is all a maine land with the Indies Occidentall, from whence the Emperour hath all
gold and pearles: and so continueth of coast more then 5000 leagues of length, as by this Card
appeareth. For from the said New land it proceedeth toward the Occident to the Indies,
from the Indies returneth toward the Orient, and after turneth Southward by till it come to
the Straits of Todos Santos, which I reckon to be more then 5000 leagues.

New found
land discou-
ered by the
Englishmen.

M.

So

we mig

Now

saying

Islands

haue. I

Equino

leagues

the Span

of Cana

the Cape

Cape So

is 1700.0

the Equin

4300. leag

The na

ward towa

called Cap

Cape to the

So that

between our

should goe

And thou

Portugal, w

lesse rich

should, if

be no les

of Portugal.

But it is a

ce, and the

under the

Yet since (by

lude, I thin

nage, Nihil

navigable. If

I haue not

great intere

to my will, it

Southward

and come

of my father,

ra of the New

winners would

es (from whence

areth, and is

Also in this

ape of headland,

orde I thinke

spiceries: which,

ification how

we should haue,

mountaines

sea, the names

space would

Your Lordship

room is occupi

all Portugals

for Pilots to

if by this your

betweene these princi-
ple degrees of longi-
tude should be of Por-
tugals could be not
all within their 180
degrees, all the Cosmo-
graphers agree to mea-
re is no starre first
ly, but all inuoyce
up be measured, but
But it is manifest
that of Portugals
these Islands within
of the Islands, will
Portugals had trade
Calicut: for so much
be come some know
Merchants of the
off, if he had seen
that it is discovered

Portugals was agreed
advers that lie our
to the South, from
to come in his tem-
perde: and after this
right over against
Smith at the 160th
ion without any
so that now the Sp-
from the sayde Cape
touch those Islands
es made in this Can-
als now obtaine
so degrees they come
Islands and lands
they come to the
may see. For this
degrees, where I

leave these Islands
of the Emperours
that they will begin
inde so much more
winne these Islands
to before the consum-

ed, Quare sub ludo
all without the land
of all the Cardes

is discovered touch
round land that be
Emperours hath all
aght, as by this Ca-
ent to the ladies
by will come

So that to the Indians it should seeme that we haue some title, at least that for our discovering we might trade thither as other doe. But all this is nothing neere the Spicerie.

Now then if from the sayd New found lands the Sea be navigable, there is no doubt, but that passing Northward and passing the Pole, descending to the Equinoctial line, we shall hit these Islands, and it should be a much shorter way, then either the Spaniards or the Portugals haue. For we be distant from the Pole but thirty and nine degrees, and from the Pole to the Equinoctial be ninetie, the which added together, bee an hundred twenty and nine degrees, leagues 2489, and miles 7440: Where we should find these Islands. And the Navigation of the Spaniards to the Spicerie is, as by this Carte you may see, from Spaine to the Islands of Canarie, and from these Islands they runne over the line Equinoctiall Southward to the Cape of the maine land of the Indians, called the Cape of Saint Augustine, and from this Cape Southward to the Straites of Todos Santos, in the which navigation to the said Straites is 1700. or 1800 leagues; and from these Straites being past them, they returne towarde the line Equinoctiall to the Islands of Spicerie, which are distant from the said Straites 4200, or 4300 leagues.

To sail by the Pole.

By the Straites of Magelane.

The navigation of the Portugals to the said Islands is departing from Portugall Southward towarde the Cape Verde, and from thence to another Cape passing the line Equinoctiall called Capo de bona Speranza, and from Portugall to the Cape is 1800 leagues, and from this Cape to the Islands of Spicerie of the Emperour is 2500 leagues.

So that this navigation amounteth all to 4300. leagues. So that (as afoze is sayd,) if between our New found lands or Norway, or Island, the seas toward the North be navigable, we should goe to these Islands a shorter way by more then 2000. leagues.

And though we went not to the sayd Islands, for that they are the Emperours or kings of Portugall, we should be by the way and coming once to the line Equinoctiall, finde landes no lesse rich of golde and Spicerie, as all other landes are under the sayd line Equinoctiall: and also should, if we may passe under the North, enjoy the navigation of all Tartarie: Which should be no lesse profitable to our commodities of cloth, then these Spiceries to the Emperour, and king of Portugall.

Benefite to England.

But it is a generall opinion of all Cosmographers, that passing the seventh clime, the sea is all under the line Equinoctiall for much heate the land was uninhabitable. And hitherto they had all the like opinion, that Per since (by experience is proued) no land so much habitable nor more temperate. And to con-

Objection.

clude, I thinke the same should be found under the North, if it were experimented. For as all things, Nihil fit vacuum in rerum natura: So I thinke, there is no land uninhabitable, nor sea ir- navigable. If I should write the reason that presenteth this vnto me, I should be too prolix, and I thinke not requisite for this present matter. God knoweth that though by it I should haue no great interest, yet I haue had and still haue no little mind of this business: So that if I had facultie to my will, it should be the first thing that I would vnderstand, euen to attempt, if our Seas Northward be navigable to the Pole, or no. I reason, that as some sicknesses are hereditarious, and come from the father to the sonne, so this inclination or desire of this discoverie I inheri-

A true opinion.

of my father, which with another marchant of Brittain named Hugh Eliot, were the discoverers of the New found lands, of the which there is no doubt, (as now plainly appeareth) if the armiers would then haue bene ruled, and followed their Pilots minde, the lands of the West In- dyes (from whence all the gold cometh) had bene ours. For all is one coast, as by the Carte ap- pareth, and is afoze sayd.

A voyage of discovery by the Pole.

Also in this Carte by the coastes where you see C. your Lordship shall vnderstand it is set for Cape or headland, where I. for Island, where P. for Point, where R. for River. Also in all this little Carte I thinke nothing be erred touching the situation of the land, save onely in these Islands of Spicerie: which, for that (as afoze is sayd) euery one setteth them after his minde, there can be no justification how they stand. I doe not denie, that there lacke many things, that a consummate mariner should haue, or that a right good demonstration be desired. For there should be exprested all the mountains and Rivers that are principall of name in the earth, with the names of Portes of the sea, the names of all principall cities, which all I might haue set, but not in this Carte, for the space would not consent.

Your Lordship may see that setting onely the names almost of euery Region, and yet not of all the roomes is occupied. Many Islands are also left out, for the said lack of roomes, the names almost of all Portes put to silence, with the rest of the winds or points of the compasse: For that this is for Pilots to saile by, but a summary declaration of that which your Lordship commandeth. If by this your Lordship cannot well perceiue the meaning of this Carte, of the which I would

not

not maruelle, by reason of the rude composition of it, will it please your Lordship to aduise me to make a bigger and a better Mappe, or els that I may cause one to be made. For I knowe my selfe in this and all other nothing perfect, but Licet semper discens, nunquam tamen ad perfectam scientiam perueniens. Also I knowe, to set the forme Sphericall of the world in Plano after the true rule of Cosmographie, it would haue bene made other wise then this is: howbeit the demonstration should not haue bene so plaine.

And also these degrees of longitude, that I set in the lower part of this card, should haue bin set along by the line Equinoctiall, so then must be imagined. For the degrees of longitude neere to either of the poles are nothing equall in bignesse to them in the Equinoctiall. But these are set so, for that setting them along the Equinoctiall, it would haue made obscure a great part of the map. Many other curiosities may be required, which for the nonce I did not set downe, as well for that the intent I had principally was to satisfie your doubt touching the Spicerie, as for that I lack leasure and time. I trust your Lordship correcting that which is erred, will accept my good will, which is to doe any thing that I may in your Lordships seruice. But from henceforth I knowe your Lordship will rather commaund me to keepe silence, then to be large, when you shall be tired with the reading of this discourse. Iesus prosper your estate and health.

Your Lordships
Robert Thorne 1527.

ALso this Carde and that which I write touching the variance betwene the Emperour and the king of Portugal, is not to be shewed or communicated there with many of that countrey. For though there is nothing in it prejudiciall to the Emperour, yet it may be a cause of paine to the maker: as well for that none may make these Cardes, but certaine appointed and allowed for maistres, as for that peraduenture it would not sound well to them, that a stranger should knowe or discover their secrettes: and would appeare worst of all, if they vnderstand that I write touching the short way to the Spicerie by our Seas. Though peraduenture of each it is to be looked to, as a thing that by all opinions is impossible, and I thinke neuer will come to effect: and therefore neither here nor else where is it to be spoken of. For to moue it amongst wise men, it should bee had in derision. And therefore to none I would haue written nor spoken of such things, but to your Lordship, to whom boldly I commit in this all my foolishly fantasie as to my selfe. But if it please God that into England I may come with your Lordship, I will shew some conceits of reason, though against the generall opinion of Cosmographers, by which shall appeare this that I say not to lacke some foundation. And till that time I beseeche your Lordship let it be put to silence: and in the meane season it may please God to send our two Englishmen, that are gone to the Spicerie, which may also bring more plaine declaration of that which in this case might be desired.

Also I knowe I needed not to haue bene so pious in the declaration of this Carde to your Lordship, if the sayd Carde had bene better well made after the rules of Cosmographie. For your Lordship would soone vnderstand it better then I, or any other that could haue made it: and so it should appeare that I shewed Delphinū natans. But for that I haue made it after my rude manner, it is necessary that I be the declarer or glosser of mine own worke, or els your Lordship should haue had much labour to vnderstand it, which now with it also cannot be excused, it is so grossly done. But I knew you looked for no curious things of mee, and therefore I trust your Lordship will accept this, and hold me for excused. In other mens letters that they write they crave pardon that at this present they write no larger: but I must finish, asking pardon that at this present I write so largely. Iesus preserve your Lordship with augmentation of dignities,

Your seruant Robert
Thorne, 1527.

*Epitaphium M. Roberti Thorni, sepulti in Ecclesia
Templariorum Londini.*

Robertus iace hic Thorne, quem Bristolia quondam
Prætoris meritò legit ad officium.
Huic etenim semper magnæ Respublica curæ,
Charior & cunctis patria diuitijs,
Ferre inopi auxilium, tristes componere lites,

the same
bydde, o
ther vnto
Reicher m
building a
with poore
to be parbo
make the b
comped suc
ded thereab
Gentle, w
which regard
men, which
the original
what obscure
lette passe othe
scender of the
peneceless
Romane Empe
as to accept of
haue written in
Augustus (C
popined govern
sia was named
of Baltick sea
phewes of the fo
the very same pl
uices without any
the foresayd three
Nouogrod, in t
Drekes) 6370,
And so toyning th
among themselves,
of life.
Sinaus and Truu
named Igor; who
son of his kinsman
plesco (who, after
inople, was there
metels with the ney
making a drinking cu

ship to aduise mee to
of I know my selfe
amen ad perfectam
to in Plano after the
howbeit the demon

o, should haue bin se
of longitude nere to
But these are set so
eat part of the map
downe, as well for
ie, as for that I lack
accept my good will
henceforth I knowe
when you shall be wte

ne 1527

e the Emperour and
many of that count
e a cause of paine to
pointed and allowed
hat a stranger shoud
erstand that I wote
e of troth it is wote
will come to effect
amongst wise men,
no spoken of such
antasse as to my selfe
will shew some con
which shall appere
ur Lordship let it be
nglishmen, that un
at which in this case

this Card to your
graphie. For your
me made it: and I
after my rude ma
ur Lordship shoud
used, it is so grossly
I trust your Lord
p wyse they com
oon that at this
dignities.

27.

14

Duke

The geneal. of the D. of Mosc. Traffiques, & Discoueries. 221

Dulce huic consilio quosque iuuare luit,
Qui pius exaudis miserorum vota precésque,
Christe huic coeli des regione locum.

A brieft Treatise of the great Duke of Moscouia his genealogie, being taken out of the Moscouites manuscript Chronicles written by a Polacke.



There hath almost euer bene the custome of nations, in searching out the in-
fancie and first beginnings of their estate, to ascribe the same unto such
authoris as liued among men in great honour and endued mankinde with
some one or other excellent benefite. Nowe, this inbred desire of all
nations to blaze and set forth their owne pettigree hath so much pre-
uayled with the greater part, that leauing the vndoubted truely, they
haue betaken themselves vnto meere fables and fictions. And the
Chronicles of many nations written in diuers and sundrie ages doe testi-
fie the same. Euen so the Grecians boasted that they were either Autochthones, that is earth-
borne, or els lineally descended from the Gods. And the Romans affirme that Mars was fa-
ther vnto their first founder Romulus. Right well therefore and iudicially sayth Titus Lilius:
Neither meane I to auaunch (quoth he) ne to disable or confute those things which befoze the
building and foundation of the Citie haue bene reported, being moze adourned and fraughte
with poeticall fables then with incorrupt and sacred monuments of truely: antiquitie is
to be pardoned in this behalfe, namelie in ioyning together matters historycall and poeticall, to
make the beginnings of cities to seeme the moze honourable. For such antiquitie is ac-
counted such a notable argument of truc nobility, euen priuate men in all ages haue conten-
ded thereabout. Wherefoze citizens of Rome being desirous to make demonstration of their
Gentrie, vse to haue their aunccestours armes painted along the walles of their houses: in
which regarde they were so pulled vp, that oftentimes they would arrogantly disdain those
men, which by their owne vertue had attained vnto honour. In like sorte Poets, when
the originall of their worthines and haue champions was either utterly vnknewen or some-
what obscure, would ofte referre it vnto their Gods themselves. So in these our dayes (to
lete passe others) the Turkish Emperour with great presumption boasteth himselfe to be de-
scended of the Troian blood. Likewise the great duke of Moscouie, to make himselfe to be de-
scended of the Romane Emperours, yea caues from Augustus Cesar. Albeit therefore no man is so fonde
as to accept of this report for truely, yet will wee briefly set downe what the Moscouites
haue written in their Chronicles as touching this matter.

Augustus (believe it who listeth) had certaine brethren or kindfolkes which were ap-
pointed gouernours ouer diuers prouinces. Amongst the rest one Prussus (of whome Prus-
sia was named) had his place of gouernment assigned vnto him vpon the shore of the eastern
part of the Balticke sea, and vpon the famous riuer of Wixel. This mans graund children or ne-
phewes of the fourth generation were Rurek, Sinaus, and Truuor, who likewise inhabited in
the very same places. Whereas therefore at the very same time the Russians or the Mosco-
uities without any ciuill regiment possessed large and spacious territories towards the north,
the foresayd three brethren, vpon the perswasion of one Gostoinislaus the chiefe citizen of
Novogrod, in the yeare since the woordes creation (according to the computation of the
Grecians) 6370, which was in the yeare of our Lord 572, were sent for, to beare rule,
and so ioyning their kinsman Olechus vnto them, and diuiding these huge countreys a-
mong themselves, they laboured to reduce the barbarous and sauage people vnto a ciuill kinde
of life.

Russia became
ciuill in y^e yere
of our Lord
572.

Sinaus and Truuor deceasing without issue, Rurek succeeded and lefte a sonne behinde him
named Igor; who not being of sufficient yeres to beare rule, was committed vnto the protec-
tion of his kinsman Olechus. The sayde Igor begate of Olha daughter vnto a citizen of
Plesco (who, after her husbande was slaine by his enemies, taking her iourney to Constan-
tinople, was there baptized by the name of Helena) a sonne called Scolaus, who sought many
times with the neighbour countreys. Howbeit at length Scolaus was slayne by his foe, who
making a drinking cup of his skull, engraued thereupon in golden letters this sentence: Seeking
after

after other means, he lost his owne. He left behind him thre sonnes, namely Teropolchus, Oleg, and Vulodimir. The which Vulodimir having slaine his two yetheren, became sole gouernour of Russia, or (as the Moscouites call it) Rosseia, his owne selfe. This man beginning at length to loath and mislike the ethnike religion, and the multitude of false gods, applied his minde vnto the religion of Christ, and hauing taken to wife Anna sister vnto Basilus and Constantinus Emperours of Constantinople, was together with his whole nation, in the yeare of Christ 988, baptized, and embraced the Christian religion, with the rites and ceremonies of the Greeke Church, and his name being changed, he was called Basilus.

Howbeit Zonaras reporteth that before the time of Vulodimir, Basilus Emperour of Constantinople sent a bishop vnto the Russians, by whose means they were conuerced vnto the Christian faith. He reporteth moreover that they would not be perswaded vntill they might see a miracle: whereupon the said bishop hauing made his prayers vnto almighty God, that he the booke of the Euangelists into the fire, which remained there unconsumed. And that by this miracle they were moued to giue credite vnto the doctrine of Christ, and to conforme themselves thereunto.

The sonnes of Vulodimir were Vseslaus, Islolaus, Iaroslauus, Suatopolcus, Borislus, Glebus, Stoflaus, Vulzeulodus, Stanislaus, Sudislaus, and Podius who died in his childhood. Amongst the residue all Russia was diuided by their father, who not being contented with their portions, but inuading each other, were most of them slaine by their mutuall contentions. Borislus and Glebus in regard of their holy conuersation were registred for Saints, whose feasts are euery yeere celebrated with great solemnities vpon the twelfth of Nouember.

At length Iaroslauus only got the Soueraine authoritie into his owne hands, and left behind him foure sonnes, Vlodimir, Islolaus, Wecslauus, and Vulzeulodus.

Kioow,

The foresaid Vulodimir sonne of Iaroslauus kept his residence at the ancient citie of Kioow standing vpon the riuer of Boristhenes, and after diuers conflicts with his kinsmen, hauing subdued all the prouinces vnto himselfe, was called Monomachos, that is, the onely champion. This man (for I thinke it not amisse to report those things which their owne Manuscript Chronicles make mention of) waged warre against Constantine the Emperour of Constantinople, and when he had wasted & overrun Thracia, being returned home with great and rich spoiles, and making preparation for new wars, Constantine sent Neophytus the Metropolitan of Ephesus and two Bishops, with the gouernour of Antiochia, and Eustaphius the Abbat of Ierusalem, to present rich and magnificent gifts vnto him; as namely, part of the crosse of our Saviour Christ, a crowne of gold, a drinking cup curiously made of Sardonyx stone, a cloake set all ouer with precious stones, and a golden chaine; commaunded them to salute him by the name of Czar (which name, as it may be proued by many arguments, signifieth a king, and not an Emperour) and concluded a most inuolable league of amity and friendship with him.

The foresaid Vulodimir begate Vulzeulodus first; second. This Vulzeulodus left eight sonnes behind him, Miteislaus, Islolaus, Stoflaus, Teropolcus, Wecslauus, Romanus, Georgius, and Andrew. The sonnes of George were Rosslaus, Andrew, Basilus, and Demetrius.

1237.

Demetrius begat George, who in the yeere 1237, was slaine by one Barthy a Tartarian duke, which Barthy wasted Moscouia, and subdued the same vnto himselfe. Since which time the Russians were tributary to the Tartars, and were gouerned by such dukes as they pleased to set ouer them. Howbeit the Tartars so greatly abused that authoritie, that when they sent their ambassadours vnto the prince of Moscouie, he was constrained to goe forth and meete with them, and as Herbotus Fulstinus in his Polonian historie reporteth) to offer them a bason full of mares milk, and if they had spilt any whit thereof vpon their horses maines, to sicke it off with his tounge, and hauing conducted them into his princely court, to stand bareheaded before them while they sat downe, and with all reuerence to giue eare and attendance vnto them. But by what means they shooke off at the length this yoke of seruitude, I will forthwith declare.

About the same time almost all Polonia, and the dukedome of Silesia were overrun by the Tartars with fire and sword. Who hauing burnt Presla the chiefe citie of Silesia, & being come beside the citie of Legnitz, they sought there a most cruel and bloody felo, wherein was slain duke Henric himselfe being sonne vnto the most holy and deuout lady Hedwice, with many others, whose monuments and graues be as yet extant in sundry places, and with an infinite multitude of common souldiers, inasmuch that the Tartars filled nine great sackes with the eares of them which they had slaine. The Tartars to the end they might obtaine the victorie, presented vnto the view of our souldiers the portraiture of a mans head placed by arte magique vpon a banner, wherein the letter X, was painted, which being shaken and moued vp and downe by a breath of southerly wind, & strooke such a terrour into the hearts of our men, that being as it were assailed with the snaky visage of Medusa, they were utterly daunted and dismayed.

from

for
rie, and
scarcel
dingly
rius the
his bea
For he
being m
caine, li
This
wife, as
cage Baia
stocke un
Let us
in his roo
sonne of A
ving the ca
of Russia.
John succ
almes, he
and Andre
Simeon be
us. This D
of Constant
was called a
renoyed his
Howbeit at
ing stricken
Basilus, Ag
ken him by a
Moscouites
whom for his
behinde him
time but obse
superior to
as he could
Moscouia, an
under his sub
couie, and Mo
and hauing
Novogrod wa
300. carts la
He also was
Polonia he p
to Alexander
treated, and
Rome. But ag
ging his domi
season, we will
in diuers batt
to the purpose
He was marri
John, vnto w
ter of Stephan
us, deceased be
Afterward Iu
Thomas Palz
the Moscouite
a woman of a princ

eropolchus, Ole-
came sole gourt-
a man beginning
obs, applied his
Basilus and Con-
n, in the year of
ceremonies of the

emperour of Con-
ed unto the Chri-
p might see a mi-
thy the booke
this miracle the
felves therunto.
Borissus, Glebus,
hood. Amongst
th their portions,
Borissus and Gle-
s are euery yere

s, and left behin
ent title of Kiow
ment, hauing sub-
onely champion.
Manuscript Chy
Constantinople,
rich spoyle, and
licane of Ephesus
at of Ierusalem
Saviour Christ,
all our with
prie of Czar (which
emperour) and con-

olodus Ieste eight
manus, Georgius,
Demetrius.
Tartarian duke,
which time the Rus-
pleased to let our
sent their ambassa-
with them, and w
will of mares mil-
with his young, and
m while they sit
what means they

errun by the T-
being come before
slain duke Henne
ny others, whole
multitude of com-
ered vnto the birds
a banner, where
atched soonly a mul-
as it were allow

From

From thence Bathy and his company with the same bloodthirstie intent marched into Hunga-
rie, and had almost slaine king Bela the fourth, who together with his sonne escaping by flight did
scarcely ridde themselves out of the enemies hand. And when the whole world almost was exee-
dingly terrified at the cruell inuasions of this most barbarous nation, at length Pope Innocen-
tius the fourth sending ambassadours vnto Bathy obtained peace for siue yeres: but to for sake
his death: with superduous and to become a Christian, hee would by no means bee perswaded,
For he was by the instigation of the Saracens infected with deuillish opinions of Mahomet, as
being more agreeable vnto his barbarous rudenes, which euen vnto this day the Tartars do main-
taine, like as the prophane Turkes also.

These ambassa-
dours were
Iohan, de Iann
Carpini & Prixe
Benedict a Bos-
lonian.

This Bathy had a sonne called Tamerlan, whome the Moscouites call Temirkutla, who like-
wise, as it is recorded in histories, attained vnto great renowne. For he caried about with him in a
cage Baizer the Turkish Emperour being fettered in golden chaines, and made him a laughing
stocke vnto all men.

Let vs now returne vnto the Russians. George being slaine, Iaroslauus his brother succeeded
in his roome, and left behinde him three sonnes, Iheodorus, Alexander and Andreas, Daniel the
sonne of Alexander first established his royall seate in the citie of Mosco, and magnificently buil-
ding the castle which before time had bene obscure, he tooke vpon him the title of the great Duke
of Russia. He had siue sonnes, namely, George, Alexander, Borissus, Ophonias, and Iohn. This
Iohn succeeded his father, and because he continually caried a scrippe about with him to bestow
almes, he was surnamed Kalera, which word signifieth a scrippe. His sonnes were, Simeon, Iohn,
and Andrew. He gave vnto his sonne Simeon the prouinces of Vlodimiria and Moscouia: which
Simeon decreasing without issue his brother Iohn succeeded, who begate a sonne called Demetri-
us. This Demetrius had seuen sonnes, namely Daniel, Basilus, George, Andrew, Peter, Iohn,
and Constantine. Basilus reigned after his fathers death. This man dishonouring his sonne which
remoyed his Dukedome vnto his brother George, who kept his nephew a long time in prison.
Howbeit at his death, though himselfe had two sonnes namely Andrew and Demetrius, yet be-
ing stricken perhaps with remorse of conscience, he bestowed the Dukedome vpon his nephew
Basilus. Against whom his two cousins bearing a grudge waged warre, and at length hauing ta-
ken him by a wylpy stratageme they put out his eyes. Notwithstanding the Boiars (for so the
Moscouites call their nobles) continued their duefull alliegence vnto his their blinde Duke,
whom for his blindness they called Cziemnox, that is to say, darke or darkened. He left a sonne
behinde him called Iuan Vasilowich who brought the Russian common wealth, being before his
time but obscure, vnto great excellencie and renowne. Altho that he might the better get all the
superiourty into his owne hands put to death so many sonnes and nephewes of the former Dukes
as he could lay hold on, and began to take vpon him the title of the great Duke of Vlodimiria,
Moscouia, and Nouogardia, and to call himselfe the Monarch or Czar of all Russia. He brought
vnder his subiection two principall cities, namely Pleseo being the only walled citie in all Mos-
couie, and Mouogrod, both of them being in regard of traffike most riche and flourishing cities,
and hauing bin subiect vnto the Lithuanians for the space of 50. yeres before. The treasure of
Nouogrod was so exceeding, that the great Duke is reported to haue caried home from thence
300. carts laden with gold and silver.

The title of
Mosco first
made the state
of the great
Duke.

Iuan Vasilowich.

The name of
the Moscouites
first abbasied.

He also was the first man that waged warre against the Polonians and the Liouians: against
Polonia he pretended a quarrell, alleaging that his daughter Helena (whome hee had married vnto
Alexander the great Duke of Lithuania, which was after ward king of Polonia) was enuiled in
to Alexander the great Duke of Lithuania, which was after ward king of Polonia) was enuiled in
treated, and was withdrawen from the Greekish religion vnto the ceremonies of the Church of
Rome. But against the Liouians for none other cause, but onely for an incredible desire of enlar-
ging his dominions. Howbeit what impulsue causes of litle or no moment happened in the mean
season, we will in another place more plainly declare. Notwithstanding he was very often and
in diuers battels vanquished by Peterbergius the great master of the Dutch knights: but it is not
to the purpose to stand any longer vpon this discourse.

He was married first vnto Marie the Duke of Tyuersky his daughter, and of her hee begate
Iohn, vnto whom in his life time he surrendered his Dukedome, and married him vnto the daugh-
ter of Stephan the Palatine of Moldaui: which Iohn, after he had begotten his sonne Demetri-
us, deceased before his father.

Afterward Iuan Vasilowich aforesaide married a wife called Sophia being daughter vnto
Thomas Palaeologus, which is reported to haue had her dowry out of the Popes treasury, because
the Moscouite had promised to consoiue himselfe vnto the Romish Church. This Sophia being
a woman of a princely and aspiring minde, and often complaining that she was married vnto the
Tartars

Tartars bassal, at length by her insatiable and continual persuasions, and by a notable stratagem the cast off that slavish yoke very much unbefitting to mighty a prince. For whereas the Tartarian Duke had his procurators and agents in the Spolscouters court, who dwelt in their owne houses built within the very castle of Mosco, and were eye witnesses of all affaires which were there performed: Sophia said he was admonished from heaven to build a Temple in the selfe same place where the Tartars house stood, and to consecrate it unto Saint Nicholas, Being therfore delivred of a sonne he invited the Tartarian Duke unto the solenne baptizing of him, and being come, shee requested him to give her his house, and obtained it at his hands. Which house being razed and those Tartarian espials being excluded, the Tartars at length were quite bereaved and utterly dispossessed of their authoritie which they had exercised over the Russians for many yeres, and could never yet recover it; albeit they have given sundry attempts. Of his wife Sophia he begate five children, namely, a daughter called Helena, & five sonnes, the first is called Gabriel, Demetrius, George, Simeon, and Andrew.

The Duke-dome of right appertained unto Demetrius the sonne of Iohn, which was the sonne of Vasilowich by his first marriage. Howbeit Sophia prevailed so with her husband, that neglecting his graund-children Demetrius, hee bestowed his Duke-dome upon Gabriel his sonne.

Andrew the younger had a sonne called Vlodymir, of whom Mary was borne, which in the yeere of Christ 1573. was married unto Magnus the Duke of Holst.

Basilus.

Gabriel having obtained the great duke-dome of Russia, changed his name calling himselfe Basilus, and applied his minde to the achieving of high and great enterprises. For hee reduced a great part of the duke-dome of Moscouie, which Vitoldus the great Duke of Lithuania helde in possession, under his owne iurisdiction, and wonne upon the river of Boristhenes (which the Russians call Neiper) many cities and especially Smolensco, in the yeere of our Lord 1514. Having divorced his first wife, hee begate of Helena daughter unto Duke Glinkie, Iuan Vasilowich, which now this present 1580. reigneth as great Duke. Hee was borne in the yeere of our Lord 1528. the 25. of August, five houres after the rising of the sunne. The great duke-dome of Russia fell unto the said Iuan Vasilowich in the fifth yeere of his age, having his uncle George for his great protector: being 25. yeeres of age, and being of a strong body and of a courageous minde he subdued the Tartars of Cazan and Astracan upon the river of Volgha, carrying their Dukes and chieftaines into captivitie.

Iuan Vasilowich.

But by what waies and meanes (after the league which by the intercession of the most sacred Roman Emperour, continued from the yeere 1503. for the space of fifty yeeres, was expired) having renewed warres against Livonia, hee brought that most flourishing province into extreme miserie, using for the same purpose a new pretense, and alleadging that it belonged unto him by right of inheritance, I tremble to recount: and it requirerh a large historie, which perhaps in time and place convenient some more learned then my selfe will take upon them to adject.

He is exceedingly addicted unto piety and devotion, and both oftentimes obserue very strict fastings and abstinence with his monks: and whereas the Russes in doing reverence & adoration unto God doe beate their foreheads against the ground, this Iuan Vasilowich with performing of the same ceremonie causeth his forehead to be full of boines and swellings, and sometimes to be black and blew, and very often to bleed. He is much delighted with building of Churches & spareth no cost for that purpose. Whether therfore by nature, or (which hee pretendeth to be the cause) by reason of his subjects malice & treacherie, he be so addicted unto all rigour and cruelty, I dare not determine, especially sithens he hath not an illiberal or mishapen countenance, as Artala is reported to have had. Of his first wife which was sister unto Mikra Romanowich, beeing now great steward of his household, he begate two sonnes, namely Iuan and Theodore. And albeit he was five times married, yet had he not one child more.

Theodore.

Whereas this Iuan Vasilowich upon certaine frivolous reasons called himselfe the natural lord of Livonia, I thought it not amisse to adde an Epistle hereunto, which was written by a certain honourable man concerning the same matter.

S. All wee which inhabite this Province with all seemely reverence and submission of mind, do offer most humble thanks unto the Emperours most sacred and peerlesse maiesty our most gracious lord, in that according to his fatherly affection which he beareth towards all Christendome, and for the good & commoditie of this our distressed and afflicted countrey, which these many yeres hath bin in stead of a bulwarke against the invasion of barbarous nations, he hath sent his ambassadors unto the great duke of Moscouia. In regard of which his fatherly love and great beneficence vouchsafed on vs, wee are ready when occasion shall serve, to adventure our lives and goods praying in the meane season unto Almighty God, who is the onely establisher and confounder of

The yoke of
the Tartars
shaken off.

The

of com
a possi
to say
is most
and that
all aunc
ertane
that cho
cheir reg
are grou
For it
chants, m
howe the
latter, we
to aide and
converted
at all of the
conversion
whatsoever
wilde beas
ture of civil
all of our
whom also,
it one of the
rude and bar
received the
which religio
mion, using
the Livonian
thuania, Sam
be noted that
there have be
ly must ne
for said part
some remain
stones, or at
that curen in
Languages spok
with the Spolsc
uite pretendeth
cellours out of
About the beg
under some fa
should be due
could neither
be found wh
such tribute
tion unto the
therof from the
would not rem
yond the memo
for wilde beas
Russian border
to the Russian
the woods and
with the trees
time either dem
urning the caus
For, in the yeere of

by a notable str
ce. For whereas
urt, who dwelt in
lles of all affaires
dles a Temple
o Saint Nicholas,
olennue baptizing
ed it at his hands,
Lartars at length
ere crised over the
funder attempt,
f flue sonnes, the

ohn, which was
with her husband,
upon Gabriel his
ne, which in the

lling himselfe Ba-
For he reduced a
chuania helde in
(which the Rus-
yd 1514. Having
uan Vasilowich,
erre of our Loye
redome of Russia
e George for his
ragious minde
ing their Dukes

of the most sacre
was expired) ha-
ce into extreme
ged unto him by
y perhaps in time
of selfe.

ue very strict fa-
e & adoration wa-
er forming of the
times to be black-
es & spareth no
be the cause) by
ucty, I dare not
s Attila is repoy-
ing nowe great
theit he was the

elfe the natural
written by a cry-
mission of mind,
by our most gra-
l Christenome,
se many peres
ene his ambia-
great benefi-
lues and goods
and counten-
of

The general of the D. of Mosc. Traffiques, and Discoueries. 225

of common wealths, to bying this excellent wooyke, the foundation whereof is already laid vnto a prosperous conclusion. But as touching the title which the Polscoute maketh to his prouince; so say the very truly, we greatly wondred and were astonished at the declaration thereof. For it is most apparant, not onely out of all ancient and credible histories, but euen from the experience and state of these regions, that the said title and allegations are fabulous and fained. For out of all ancient monuments, by what names soeuer they bee called (whereof there are diuers extant among vs) it cannot be proued by any mention, nor yet by any likelihood of coniecture, that those things which the Polscoute affirmeth concerning the people which were gouernors of these regions in times past, and concerning the right and title of his ancestors vnto this prouince, are grounded vpon truth.

For it is not vnknown by what meanes this prouince, partly through the industry of merchants, and partly by the benefite of navigation, was first discouered: neither is it vnknown howe the inhabitants thereof being wholly addicted vnto heathenish superstitions and idolatrie, were by the cruell knights (who drew other knights professing the same order in Prussia to aide and accompanie them in this their enterprise) and that with great labour and difficultie, conuerthed vnto the Christian faith: when as at the same time the Liouonians had no knowledge at all of the iurisdiction, religion, manners, or language of Moscouie: who had not onely no conuersation nor dealings with the Polscoutes, but were estranged also from all other nations without heales, and in the desert and solitary woods, they were utterly ignorant of God and doctrine of ciuill magistrates. Howbeit this kind of gouernment was peculiar vnto them, namely that all of one familie and society used a kinde of reuerence vnto their elders more then to any other, whom also, that their authoritie might be the greater, they called by the name of kings, and (albeit it one of their families consisted of a 100. persons) they obeyed them in all respects, and after their rite and barbarous maner did them loyal seruice. At the very same time the Polscoutes had receiued the religion, and the Ecclesiasticall ceremonies of the Greeke and Easterne Church, which religion they published and dispersed throughout all prouinces subiect to their dominion, vnto their owne proper letters and characters for the same purpose. Of all which things the Liouonians, which very barbarously inhabited a lande being enuironed with Russia, Lithuania, Samogitia, Prussia, and the Balchic sea, neuer heard any report at all. It is moreover to be noted that neuer at any time heretofore either within the earth, or in other places of Liouonia, there haue bene found any monuments at all of the antiquitie or letters of the Russes: which verily must needs haue come to passe, if the Polscoutes, Russes, or any other nations which vnto this day haue bene liuing, had boyn rule and authoritie over the Liouonians: yea there had bene left some, or at the least of their manners, language, and diuine worship, or of their lawes and customs euen in Liouonia it selfe, there haue bin in times past and at this present are many and diuers languages spoken by the people. Howbeit no one language of them all hath any affinity either with the Polscoutian tongue, or with the tongues of any other nations. But whereas the Polscoutes ppretendeth that there hath bin vsually payde a pension or tribute vnto himselfe and his predecessors out of the whole prouince, it is as incredible as the former.

About the beginning of this tragickall warre, the Polscoute, to cloke his tyzanny and ambition vnder some faire pretence, amongst other of his demands, made mention also of a tribute which should be due vnto him out of the bishop of Dorpat his iurisdiction, whereof notwithstanding hee could neither bying any iust account, nor affirm any certainty: howbeit there is no man liuing to this day which either can tell of his owne remembrance, or from the relation of others, that any such tribute was euer paid vnto the Polscoute. What came therefore he referred at this negotiation vnto the matter of the Liouonian order, and commanded him to get what knowledge hee could thereof from the men of Dorpat, & vnto the tribute, saying if it were worth but one haire, that he would not remitt it: at length it was founde recozded in the ancient Chronicles of Dorpat, that beyond the memory of man, when the territory of Plesco contained nothing but woods and forests, the Russian borders, enjoyed free-homes in the said woods, and paid euery yeere in lieu thereof vnto the Russian gouernours, five shillings of Liouonian coine. But so soone as the Russians had settled the woods and had built townes and villages in their place, the saide pension ceased together with the trees which were cut downe. Wherefore the saide five shillings were neuer since that time either demanded by the Russes or paid by the Liouonians. These things which I knew concerning the causes of the Liouonian warres I thought good to signifie vnto you. Given the 22. of May, in the yeere of our Lord 1576.

The cominge
dinto of tra-
like and of na-
uigation.

Ordinances, instructions, and aduertisements of and for the direction of the intended voyage for Cathay, compiled, made, and deliuered by the right worshipfull M. Sebastian Cabota Esquier, gouernour of the mysterie and companie of the Marchants aduenturers for the discouerie of Regions, Dominions, Islands and places vnknown, the 9. day of May, in the yere of our Lord God 1553. and in the 7. yere of the reigne of our most dread soueraigne Lord Edward the 6. by the grace of God, king of England, Fraunce and Ireland, defender of the faith, and of the Church of England and Ireland, in earth supreme head,



Dirst the Captaine general, with the pilot maior, the masters, marchants & other officers, to be so knit and accorded in vnitie, loue, consojmie, and obedience in euery degree on all sides, that no dissention, variance, or contention may rise or spring betwixt them and the mariners of this companie, to the damage or hindrance of the voyage: for that dissention (by many experiences) hath ouerthrowne many notable intended and likely enterprises and exploits.

2 Item, for as much as euery person hath giuen an othe to be true, failefull, and loiall subiects, and liege men to the kings most excellent Maestie, his heires and successors, and for the obseruation of all lawes & statutes, made for the preservation of his most excellent Maestie, & his crowne Imperiall of his realmes of England and Ireland, and to serue his grace, the Realme, and this present voyage truly, and not to glue vp, intermie, or leaue off the said voyage and enterpryse vntill it shalbe accomplished, so farre forth as possibilitie and life of man may serue or extend: Therefore it behoueth euery person in his degree, as well for conscience, as for dutie sake to remember his said charge, and the accomplishment thereof.

3 Item, where furthermoze euery mariner or passenger, in his ship, hath giuen like othe to be obedient to the Captaine generall, and to euery Captaine and master in his ship, for the obseruation of these present orders contained in this booke, and all other which hereafter shalbe made by the 2. counsaillers in this present booke named, or the most part of them, for the better conduction, and preservation of the flecte, and achieving of the voyage, and to be prompt, ready and obedient in all acts and sences of honesty, reason, and dutie to be ministered, thewed & executed, in adiuancement and pferment of the voyage and exploit: therfore it is conuenient that this present booke shal once euery weeke (by the discretion of the Captaine) be read to the said companie, to the intent that euery man may the better remember his othe, conscience, dutie and charge.

4 Item, euery person by vertue of his othe, to doe effectually & with good will, as farre forth as him shal complayt) all, and euery such act and acts, deede and deeds, as shalbe to him or them from time to time commanded, committed and enioyned (during the voyage) by the Captain generall, with the assent of the Counsell and assistants, as well in and during the whole Nauigation and voyage, as also in discouering and landing, as cases and occasions shal require.

5 Item, all courses in Nauigation to be set and kept, by the aduice of the Captaine, Pilot maior, masters, & masters maers, with the assents of the counsaillers and the most number of them, as in voyces unisomely agreeing in one to preuaile, and take place, so that the Captaine generall, shal in all countsailes and assemblies haue a double voyce.

6 Item, that the flecte shal keep together, and not separate themselves asunder, as much as by winde & weather may be done or permitted, & that the Captaines, Pilots & masters shal specially come aboord the Admirall, when and as often as he shal seme to haue iust cause to assemble them for counsaile or consultation to be had concerning the affaires of the flecte and voyage.

7 Item, that the marchants, and other skilful persons in writing, shal daily write, describe, and put in memoie the Nauigation of euery day and night, with the points, and obseruation of the lands, tides, elements, altitude of the sunne, course of the moon and starres, and the same so noted by the order of the Master and pilot of euery ship to be put in writing, the captaine generall assembling the masters together once euery weeke (if winde and weather shal serue) to conferre all the obseruations, and notes of the said ships, to the intent it may appeare wherein the notes do agree, and wherein they dissent, and vpon good debatement, deliberation, and conclusion determine, to put the same into a comunon leger, to remaine of record for the companie: the like order to be kept in proportioning of the Cardes, Astrolabes, and other instruments prepared for the voyage, at the charge of the companie.

8 Item, that all enterprises and exploits of discouering or landing to search Isles, regions, and such like, to be searched, attempted, and enterprised by good deliberation, and common assent, determined aduisably. And that in all enterprises, notable ambassages, suites, requests, or presentment of gifts, or presents to princes, to be done and executed by the captaine generall in person,

person in the
9 Item, that
taine as
plaine
also of
and eue
other
10 Item, that
ed vnto
selve in
of the ca
ten, acco
condition
ment of
desert of
sed and ob
11 Item, that
the place
place whic
to be put
the minist
his minist
euerplus
with the p
necessaries
12 Item, that
nitation of
dicing, card
uerie to the
er destruction
These and all
offenders once
master, as app
13 Item, that
kings Maestie
in the Admirall
paraphrases
and had by hum
14 Item, that
and to render
dispensing of
genely to be
ping of all instr
15 Item, no li
and all other
to be brought
gation, as in ex
16 Item, the li
to be woine, but
good arap, for
the keeping of
the of his garment
17 Item, when
of apparell for
Marchant, at
person shal be, at
merchandise, the
to off the parties

and for the di-
side, and delive-
ur of the myserie
Regions, Domini-
r Lord God 1553.
Edward the 6, by
t the faith, and of

marchants & other
and obedience in
ention may rise &
damage & hinder-
) hath overtowen

and total subiecte,
and for the observa-
a'ellie, & his crown
Realme, and this
and emperysse un-
oe extend: Ther-
ies take to remem-

uen like othe to be
ip, for the observa-
ter shalbe made by
better conduction,
ready and obdure
ecuted, in advance-
his presene beke
on partie, to the in-
charge.

il, as farre forth as
o him of them from
Captain generall
le Nauigation and
e.

Captaine, Whoe ma-
umber of them, and
Captaine generall,

ber, as much as by
sters shall spend
e to assemble them
voyage.

twice, describe, and
observation of the
the same conuer-
ine generall assen-
eo conferre all the
the notes do agree,
lution determine,
he order to be kept
the voyege, at the

Alles, regions, and
common assen-
e, requies, & pri-
aptaine generall in
person,

Instructions of Cabota. Traffiques, and Discoveries. 227

person, & by such other, as he by common assen- shall appoint & assigne to doe & cause to be done in the same.

9 Item, the Steward and cooke of every ship, and their associates, to give and render to the cap- taine and other head officers of their shippe weekly (& oftener, if it shall seme requisite, a list of all of beere, wine, oyle, & vinegar, and all other kinde of victualling vnder their charge, and other, other-wise then reason and necessitie shall commaund.

10 Item, when any inferiour officer of what degree & condition he shalbe, shalbe cri- ro vncrue, remisse, negligent, & unpromisable in & about his office in the voyage, & not to vse him selfe in his charge accordingly, then every such officer to be punished & removed at the discretion of the captaine and assistants, & the most part of them, and the person so removed not to be repu- ren, accepted, & taken from the time of his remove, any more for an officer, but to remaine in such condition and place, as hee shall be assigned vnto, and none of the companie, to resist such chastise- ment of wothie punishment, as shalbe ministered vnto him moderately, according to the fault & desert of his offence, after the lawes and common customes of the sea, in such cases heretofore vsed and obserued.

11 Item, if any Mariner or officer inferiour shalbe found by his labour not merite no 2 wothie the place that he is presently shipped for, such person may bee vnshipped and put on lande at any place within the kings & parties realme & dominion, and one other person more able and wothie to be put in his place, at the discretion of the captaine and masters, & order to be taken that the par- tie dismissed shalbe allowed proportionably the value of that he shall haue deserved to the time of his dismissal of discharge, & he to giue othe with sureties, pawn, or other assurance, to repay the euermore of that he shall haue receiued, which he shall not haue deserved, & such wages to be made with the partie newly placed as shalbe thought reasonable, and he to haue the furniture of all such necessities as were prepared for the partie dismissed, according to right and conscience.

12 Item, that no blaspheming of God, or detestable swearing be vsed in any ship, no 2 commu- nication of ribaldrye, sleigh tales, or vngodly talke to be suffered in the company of any ship, nei- ther vicing, carding, rabling, nor other diuells games to be frequented, whereby ensueth not onely vo- uer destruction of the parties, and prouoking of Gods most iust wrath, and swoyde of vengeance. These and all such like pestilences, & contagions of vices, and sinnes to bee eschewed, and the offenders once monished, and not refo: ming, to bee punished at the discretion of the captaine and master, as appertaineth.

13 Item, that morning & evening prayer, with other common seruices appointed by the kings & parties, and lawes of this Realme to be read and saide in every ship daily by the minister in the Admirall, and the marchant or some other person learned in other ships, and the Bible & paraphrases to be read devoutly and Christianly to Gods honour, and for his grace to be obtained, and had by humble and heartie prayer of the Nauigans accordingly.

14 Item, that every officer is to be charged by Inuentorie with the particulars of his charge, and to render a perfect accompt of the displaying of the same together with modest & temperate spending of powder, shot, and vse of all kinde of artillery, which is not to be misused, but dili- gently to be preserved for the necessary defence of the fleet and voyage, together with due keep- ing of all instruments of your Nauigation, and other requisites.

15 Item, no liqor to be spilt on the ballast, no 2 filchines to be left within boord: the cook room, and all other places to be kept cleane for the better health of the companie, the groomes & pages to be brought up according to the laudable order and vse of the Sea, as well in learning of Naui- gation, as in exercising of that which to them appertaineth.

16 Item, the liueries in apparel giuen to the mariners be to be kept by the marchants, and not to be woine, but by the order of the captaine, when he shall see cause to muster & thewe them in good array, for the advancement and honour of the voyage, and the liueries to bee redelivered to the keeping of the marchants, vntill it shal be thought conuenient for every person to haue the ful vse of his garment.

17 Item, when any mariner or any other passenger shal haue neede of any necessarie furniture of apparel for his body, and conseruation of his health, the same shal be deliuered him by the marchant, at the assignement of the captaine and Master of that shippe, wherein such needie person shall be, at such reasonable price as the same cost, without any gaine to be exacted by the marchant, the value thereof to be entred by the marchant in his booke, and the same to be discoun- ted off the parties wages, that so shal receiue, and weare the same,

18 Item the sicke, diseased, weak, and visited person within boord, to be tended, relieved, comforted, and holpen in the time of his infirmity, and every manner of person, without respect, to beare anothers burden, and no man to refuse such labour as shall be put to him, for the most benefit, and publike wealeth of the voyage, and enterprise, to be achieved exactly.

19 Item if any person shall fortune to die, or military in the voyage, such apparell, and other goods, as he shall have at the time of his death, is to be kept by the order of the capitaine and spallier of the shippe, and an inventory to be made of it, and conserved to the use of his wife, and children, or otherwise according to his mind, and will, and the day of his death to be entered in the Sparchants and Sherwards bookes: to the intent it may be knownen what wages he shall have deserved to his death, and what shall rest due to him.

20 Item, that the Sparchants appointed for this present voyage, shall not make any shew of sale of any kind of marchandises, or open their commodities to any foreign princes, or any of their subjects, without the consent, privity, or agreement of the Capitaines, the cape Sparchants and the assistants, of four of them, whereof the capitaine generall, the pilot Spallier, and cape marchant to be thre, and every of the petty marchants to shewe his reckoning to the cape marchant, when they, or any of them shall be required: and no commutation or trucke to be made by any of the petty marchants, without the assent abovesaid: and all wares, and commodities trucked, bought or given to the companie, by way of marchandise, trucke, or any other respect, to be booked by the marchants, and to be wel ordered, packed, and conserved in one masse entirely, and not to be broken or altered, until the shippes shall returne to the right discharge, and inventory of all goods, wares, and marchandises to trucked, bought, or otherwise disposed, to be presented to the Gouvernor, Consuls, and Assistants in London, in good order, to the intent the Kings Majestie may be truly answered of that which to his grace by his grant of corporation is limited, according to our most bound duties, and the whole companie also to have that which by right unto them appertaineth, and no embazement shall be used, but the truth of the whole voyage to be opened, to the common wealeth and benefite of the whole companie, and myserie, as appertaineth, without guile, fraude, or male engine.

Wing Edwards
copied.

21 Item, no particular person, to hinder or prejudicate the common stocke of the company in sale or preferment of his own proper wares, and things, and no particular emergent or purchase to be employed to any private profit, until the common stocke of the company shall be furnished, and no person to hinder the common benefite in such purchases or contingents, as shall fortune to any one of them, by his owne proper policie, industrie, or chance, nor no contention to rise in that behalf, by any occasion of ire, stone, pearles, precious mettals, or other things of the region, where it shall chance the same to rise, or to be found, bought, trucked, permutted, or given: but every person to be bounden in such case, and upon such occasion, by order, and direction, as the generall capitaine, and the Councell shall establish and determine, to whose order and discretion the same is left: for that of things uncertaine, no certaine rules may or can be given.

22 Item not to disclose to any nation the state of our religion, but to passe it over in silence, without any declaration of it, seeming to beare with such lawes, and rites, as the place hath, where you shall arrive.

23 Item for as much as our people, and shippes may appeare unto them strange and monstrous, and theirs also to ours: it is to be considered, how they may be used, learning much of their natures and dispositions, by some one such person, as you may first either allure, or take to be brought aboard your ships, and there to learne as you may, without violence or force, and no woman to be tempted, or increased to incontinencie, or dishonestie.

24 Item the person so taken, to be well entertained, used, and apparelled, to be set on land, to the intent that he or she may allure otherto what nigh to shewe the commodities: and if the person taken may be made drunke with your beere, or wine, you shall know the secrets of his heart.

25 Item our people may not passe further into a lande, then that they may be able to recoure their pinnesles, or ships, & not to credit the false words of the strange people, which by many times tried fustile, and false, nor to be drawn into perill of losse, for the desire of golde, silver, or riches, and esteeme your owne commodities above all other, and in countenance shew not much to desire the foreign commodities: neuertheless take them as for friendship, or by way of permutation.

26 Item every nation and region is to be considered aduersely, & not to provoke them by any dishonour, laughing, contempt, or such like, but to use them with proper circumspection, with gentleness, and curtesie, and not to tary long in one place, until you shall have attained the most profitable place & may be found, in such sort, as you may returne to victuals sufficient prosperously.

27 Item the names of the people of every Island, are to be taken in writing, with the commodities, and incommunities of the same, their natures, qualities, and dispositions, the site of the

same,

Instr

same, and

part with

28 Item

your pinnes

dynumme, o

and heare y

or signe of r

29 Item

goe in such o

bulwers, and

30 Item

rowles, be no

for any other

31 Item

and shafts, co

they wil assaul

dine, and so wil

32 Item it

things as may

age, passing sic

which by sunn

voyage could no

have caused wau

venture of this v

shall have tried b

tion of the truck

ther by land, or

may passe in later

the voyage, in find

the company being

determine that wh

either providing b

or else otherwise to

ons are to be used, a

that you be not igno

the Councell, this w

indies, be replem

ms, and wellares, a

no lesse to succee

Emperour, and king

them, by those lands

nowne, and also by a

extremities of bea

adious, as all Euro

33 Item no cosp

rees, and fruits of co

all other bygodlines

ten and pacified by a

in, under whose merc

to vicine, but also fo

ing present in your

the remembrance of th

depend of, and upon

ment of you the cruall

you may satiffie the

furnished you in good

me, vled, or knowen

and brought to good

charge, and most bo

Instructions of Cabota. Traffiques, and Discoveries. 229

same, and what things they are most delicious of, & what commodities they wil most willingly be part with, & what mettals they haue in hils, mount aines, & riuers, in, or vnder the earth.

28 Item if people shal appeare gathering of stones, gold, metall, or other like, on the land, your pinnesses may graue nigh, marking what things they gather, vnder the playing vpon the and heare your instruments and voyces, but keepe you out of barking, to fantasie, or desire to see, or signe of rigour and hostilitie.

29 Item if you shall be invited into any Lords or Rulers house, to dinner, or other parlance, goe in such order of strength, that you may be stronger then they, and be ware of woods and ambushes, and that your weapons be not out of your possessions.

30 Item if you shall see them weare Lyons or Beares skinner, hauing long bowes, and arrows, be not afraid of that sight: for such be woyme oftentimes more to feare strangers, then for any other cause.

31 Item there are people that can swimme in the sea, hauens, & riuers, naked, hauing bowes and shafts, coueting to draw nigh your ships, which if they shal finde not wel watched, or warded, they wil assault, desirous of the bodies of men, which they couet for meate: if you resist them, they die, and so will flee, and therefore diligent watch is to be kept both day & night, in some Islands.

32 Item if occasion shal serue, that you may giue aduertisements of your proceedings in such things as may correspond to the expectation of the company, and like lihood of successe in the voyage, passing such dangers of the seas, perils of ice, intollerable coldes, and other impediments, which by sundry authours & writers, haue ministred matter of suspicion in some heads, that this voyage could not succede for the extremitie of the north pole, lacke of passage, & such like, which haue caused wauering minds, and doubtful heads, not onely to withhold themselves from the aduenture of this voyage, but also dissuade others from the same, the certaintie wherof, when you shall haue tried by experience, (most certaine spall of all wooldy knowledge) then you shall declare by land, or other waies, such two or one person, to bring the same by consent of counsell, sende them map passe in safetie: which sending is not to be done, but vpon urgent causes, as you shal thinke the voyage, in finding of passage, in towardlines of beneficiall traffike, or such other like, whereby you determine that which may seeme most good and beneficiall for the publike wealth of the same: neither providing before hand such things, as shall beare requisite for the continuance of the voyage, as are to be used, and the wares, and the contents of this capitule, by you much to be pondered, for that you be not ignorant, how many persons, as well the kings spallie, the Lords of his honora- ble Counsell, this whole companie, as also your wiues, children, kinfolkes, allies, friends and fa- milars, be replenished in their heares with ardent desire to learne and know your estates, con- dition, and wellfare, and in what lielihood you be in, to obtain this notable enterprise, which is to be no lesse to succede to you, then the Orient or Occident India haue to the high benefite of the Emperour, and kings of Portugal, whose subjects industries, and traualles by sea, haue enriched the world, and also by apparances of reason voide of experience thoughte and reputed inhabitable extremitie of heates, and colds, and yet indeede tried most rich, peopled, temperate, and so com- modious, as all Europe hath not the like.

33 Item no conspiracies, parttakings, factions, false tales, vnerie reportes, which be the very enemies, and fruits of contention, discord, & confusion, by euill tongues to be suffered, but the same, all other vngodlines to be challenged charitably with brotherly loue, and alwaies obseruance to be used, and practised by al persons in their degrees, not onely for duetie and conscience sake toward your soveraigne, but also for prudence and wooldy pollicie, and publike weale, considering and alwaies remembrance of the great importance of the voyage, the honour, glorie, praise, and benefite depend of, and vpon the same, toward the common wealth of this noble Realme, the aduancement of you the trouaillers therein, your wiues, and children, and so to endeavour your selues as you may satisfie the expectation of them, who at their great charges, and expences, haue furnished you in good hope, and plenty of all necessaries, as the like was neuer in any realme before, or known requisite and needful for such an exploit, which is most likely to be acceptable, and brought to good effect, if euery person in this vocation shall endeavour himselfe according to his charge, and most bounden duetie: praying the liuing God, to giue you his grace, to accom- plish

Reason vnder
of experience.

plish your charge to his glorie, whose merciful hand shal prosper your voyage, and preserve you from all dangers.

In witness whereof I Sebastian Gabon, Gouverneur aforesaid, to these present ordinances, have subscribed my name, and put my seale, the day and yeere above written.

The names of the twelve Counsellors appointed in this voyage.

- 1 Sir Hugh Willoughby Knight, Captaine generall.
 - 2 Richard Chancelour Captaine of the Edward Bonaventure, and Pilot generall of the flecte.
 - 3 George Burton Cape marchant.
 - 4 Master Richard Stafford Spilster.
 - 5 Thomas Langlie Spilster.
 - 6 James Dalabere Gentleman.
 - 7 William Gefferison Master of the Bona Speranza Admirall.
 - 8 Stephen Burrough Master of the Edward Bonaventure.
 - 9 Cornelius Dursfurth Master of the Confidentia.
 - 10 Roger Wilson.
 - 11 John Buckland.
 - 12 Richard Iogram.
- } Masters mates.

Exemplar Epistolæ seu literarum Missuarum, quas illustrissimus Princeps Eduardus eius nominis Sextus, Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Rex, misit ad Principes Septentrionalem, ac Orientalem mundi plagam inhabitantes iuxta mare glaciale, nec non Indiam Orientalem; Anno Domini 1553 Regni sui anno septimo, & vidimo.



Eduardus sextus, Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Rex, &c. Omnibus Regibus & principibus ac dominis, & cunctis Iudicibus terræ, & Ducibus eius, quibuscunque est excellens aliqua dignitas in ea, cunctis in locis quæ sunt sub vniuerso cælo: Pax, tranquillitas, & honor vobis, terris, & regionibus vestris quæ imperio vestro subiacent, cuius vestrum quemadmodum conuenit ei. Propterea quod indidit Deus Opt. Max. hominibus præ cunctis alijs viuentibus, cor & desiderium tale, ut appetat quisque cum alijs societari inire, amare, & vicissim amari, beneficijs afficere, & mutua accipere beneficia studeat, ideo quæque pro facultate sua hoc desiderium in omnibus quidem hominibus beneficijs fouere & conseruare conuenit, in illis autem maxime, qui hoc desiderio adducti, à remotis etiam regionibus ad eos veniunt. Quo enim longius iter eius rei gratia ingressi sunt, eo ardentius in eis hoc desiderium fuisse declarant. Insuper etiam ad hoc, nos patrum maiorumque nostrorum exemplum inuitant, qui semper humanissime suscepunt & benignissime tractauerunt illos, qui tum illis propinquis, tum à remotis, eos amice adibant, eorum se protectioni commendantes. Quod si omnibus id præstare æquum est, certe mercatoribus imprimis præstari debet, qui per vniuersum orbem discurrent, mare circumlustrantes & aridam, ut res bonas & viles, quæ Dei beneficio in regione eorum inveniuntur, ad remotissimas regiones & regna adferant, atque inde vicissim referant, quod suæ regioni vtile ibi repeterint: ut & populi ad quos eunt, non destituantur commodis quæ non profert illis terra eorum, & ipsi sint participes rerum quibus illi abundant. Nam Deus cæli & terræ, humano generi maxime consulens, noluit ut omnia in quibus regione inuenirentur, quod regio ope alterius regionis indigeret, & gens ab alia gente commodum aliquod expectaret, ac ita stabiliiretur amicitia inter omnes, singuliq; omnibus beneficijs carerent. Hoc itaque in eundem ac stabiliendæ amicitie desiderio moti viri quidam nostri, iter in remotas maritimas regiones instituerunt, ut loter nostros & illos populos, vinctibus inferendis & effendis sperirent, nosq; rogauerunt ut id illis concederemus. Quæ petitioni illorum annuentes, concessimus viro honorabili & forti, Hugoni Wilbeo, & illi qui cum eo sunt seruis nostris fidei & charis, ut pro sua voluntate, in regiones eis prius inopertas eant, quæ situri ea quibus nos caremus, & adducant illis ex nostris terris id quo illi carere. Atque ita illis & nobis commodum inde accedat, sitq; amicitia perpetua, & sœdus indissolubile inter illos & nos, dum permittent illi nos accipere de rebus, quibus superabundant in regione sua.

K. Ed

nis suis, & p
Reges & p
permitatis
Cogitate qu
vos illis tribu
ga eos, quon
quando tran
colio, terra &
nos pari beni
nobis & subd
damus vobis
gaumus, ut h
mus omnipote
habeat finem,
mundo, mense

The cop
Edward
hibiti
Car
C



Forasmuch as the
creatures, such as h
and be loud, alio to
saying to their pot
all men, and espe
come into them from
this intene, so in
them. Further more
as much as they ha
them, as well from
rection, And if it be
me ought chiefly to be
mo and the sea, to car
net regions and king
inmodious for their o
distitute of such coi
up be partakers of su
prouiding for mankin
oe that one should h
ed among all men, a
which vniuersall an
e, haue instituted and
at betwene our peopl
desiring vs to further
time and worthy ser
richare with him, acco
wells secke such thing
they lacke. So that he
issoluble and perpetual

nis suis, & nos concedemus illis ex regnis nostris res, quibus delinuerunt. Rogamus itaque vos Reges & Principes, & omnes quibus aliqua est potestas in terra, vt viris istis nostris, transiunt perimitur per regiones vestras. Non enim tangent quicquam ex rebus vestris inuitis vobis. vos illis tribuitis, accipientes vicissim ab eis quod poterunt rependere vobis. Ita vos gerite erga eos, quemadmodum cuperitis vt nos, & subditi nostri, nos gereremus erga seruos vestros, si colo, terra & mari continentur, perq: vitam nostram, & tranquillitatem regnorum nostrorum, nos patri benignitate seruos vestros accepturos, si ad regna nostra aliquid venient. Atque ad damus vobis benignitatem, quam nostris exhibueritis. Postquam vos Reges, Principes, &c, rogamus omnipotentem Deum nostrum, vt vobis diuturnam vitam largiatur, nobis charas, & habeat finem. Scripsum Londini, quæ ciuitas est primaria regni nostri, Anno 5585, à creato mundo, mense Iar, 14, die mensis, anno septimo regni nostri, Anno 5585, à creato

The copie of the letters missiue, which the right noble Prince Edward the sixth sent to the Kings Princes and others.

habiting the Northeast partes of the world, toward the mighty Empire of Cathay, at such time as Sir Hugh Willoughby knight, and Richard Chancellor, with their company, attempted their voyage thither in the yeere of Christ 1553. and the fourteenth and last yeere of his reign.

EDward the first, by the grace of God, King of England, France, and Ireland, &c. To all Kings, Princes, Rulers, Judges, and Governours of the earth, and all other bearing any excellent dignitie on the same, in all places under the sunne shall beauen : peace, tranquillitie, and honour be vnto you, and your lands and regions, which are vnder your dominions, and to euery of you.

Forasmuch as the great and Abmightie God hath giuen vnto mankinde, aboue all other living creatures, such an heart and desire, that every man desired to foine friendship with other, to loue, and be loued, also to giue and receiue mutual benefices: it is therefore the duty of all men, according to their power, to maintaine and increase this desire in every man, with well deserving, to all men, and especially to these: this good affection to such, as bring moued with this desire, come vnto them from farre Countreies. For how much the longer voyage they haue attempted, to this intent, so much the more doe they therefore declare that this desire hath bene ardent in them. Furthermore also, the examples of our fathers and predecessors doe inuite vs hereunto, inasmuch as they haue euer gently and louingly inuited such as of friendly mind came to them, as well from Countreies neare hand, as farre remote, commending themselves to their protection. And if it be right and equite to shew such humilitie towarde all men, doubtlesse the same ought chiefly to be shewed to merchants, who wandering about the world, search both the land and the sea, to carry such good and profitable things, as are found in their Countreies, to remote regions and kingdomes, and againe to bring from the same, such things as they find there requisite for such commodities as their Countreies bring not forth to them, as that also they may be partakers of such things, whereof they abound. For the God of heauen and earth greatly prouiding for mankinde, would not that all things should be found in one region, to the prouiding for mankinde, would not that all things should be found in one region, to the effect that one should haue neede of another, that by this meanes friendship might be established among all men, and every one seeke to gratifie all. For the establishing and furtherance which vniuersall amitie, certaine men of our Realme, moued hereunto by the said desire, haue instituted and taken vpon them a voyage by sea into farre Countreies, to the intent betwene our people and them, a way may be opened to bring in, and carry out marchandises, desiring vs to further their enterprise. Altho allowing to their petition, haue licensed the right honorable with him, according to their desire, to goe to countreies to them heretofore vnknewen, which seeketh such things as we lacke, as also to carry vnto them from our regions, such things as they lacke. So that hereby not onely commodities may ensue both to them and vs, but also an inuoluble and perpetuall league of friendship be established betwene vs both, while they per-

met us to take of their things, such whereof they have abundance in their regions, and we againe grant them such things of ours, whereof they are destitute. We therefore desire you kings & princes, and al other, to whom there is any power on the earth, to permit vnto these our seruants free passage by your regions and dominions: for they shall not touch any thing of yours unwillingly vnto you. Consider you that they also are men. If therefore they shall stand in neede of any thing, we desire you of all humanitie, and for the nobilitie which is in you, to ayde and helpe them with such things as they lacke, receiuing againe of them such things as they shall bee able to giue you in recompense. Shew your selues so towards them, as you would that we and our subjects should shewe our selues towards your seruants, if at any time they shall passe by our regions.

Thus doing, we promise you by the God of all things that are contained in heauen, earth, and the Sea, and by the life and tranquillitie of our kingdomes, that we will with like humanitie accept your seruants, if at any time they shall come to our kingdomes, where they shall as friends and gently bee entertained, as if they were bozne in our Dominions, that wee may hereby recompence the fauour and benignitie which you haue shewed to our men. Thus after we haue desired you Kings and princes, &c. with all humanitie and fauour, to entertaine our welbeloued seruants, we will pray our Almighty God, to graunt you long life, and peace, which neuer shall haue ende. Written in London, which is the chiefe Citie of our kingdome, in the yeere from the creation of the world, 5515, in the moneth of Iar, the fourteenth day of the moneth, and seuenth yeere of our reigne.

This letter was written also in Greeke, and diuers other languages.

The true copie of a note found written in one of the two ships, to wit, the *Speranza*, which wintred in Lappia, where sir Hugh Willoughby and all his companie died, being frozen to death, Anno 1553.



The voyage intended for the discouerie of Cathay, and diuers other regions, minions, Islands, and places unknowne, set forth by the right worshipful, most honorable Sebastian Cabota Esquire, and Gouernour of the mysterie and company of the Marchants Adventurers of the Citie of London: which flecte being finished, was set forth the tenth day of May, 1553. and in the seuenth yeere of our most dread Soueraigne Lord, and King, Edward the sixt.

The names of the shippes of the flecte, and of their burden, together with the names of the Capitaines, and Counsellors, Pilot Maior, Masters of the ships, Marchants, with other officers, and Mariners, as hereafter followeth.

The first ship.

The Bona Esperanza, Admirall of the flecte, of 120, tonnes, hauing with her a pinnesse, and boate.

Sir Hugh Willoughby, knight, Captaine generall of the flecte.

William G Jefferson, Master of the shippe.

Roger Wilson, his Mate.

William Gittons, Charles Barret, Gabriel Willoughby, John Andrews, Alexander Woodfoord, Ralph Chatterton, Marchants.

Mariners and officers, according to the custome, and vse of the Seas,

John Brooke, Master Gunner.

Nicholas Anthony, Boate swaine.

John Web, his Mate.

Christopher Banbrucke, Thomas Daufson, Robert Rosse, Thomas Simpson, quarter Masters.

William White, James Smith, Thomas Painter, John Smith, their Mates.

Richard Gwinne, George Goufaine, Carpenters.

Robert Gwinne, Purser.

Laurence Edwards, his Mate, and Couper.

Richard Morgan, Cooke.

Thomas Nashe, his Mate.

William Light, John Brande, Cubert Chelfie, George Blage, Thomas Walker, Thomas Allen, Edward Smith, Edward Hunt, John Fawkes, Rowland Brooke.

Alexander Gardiner, Richard Molton, Surgeons, which two were taken in at Harwich.

Discharge

Discharge

For your

The Ed

Richard

Stephen

John Bur

George

John Sta

James D

Richard John

Robert S

John Wal

James Lon

Thomas W

Peter Palm

Richard S

John Robin

John Aulse

Austen Jack

William Eu

Griffin Wag

Thomas S

Butter, John Br

cie, Thomas Br

Potter, Nicholas

The Bona C

Cornelius Du

Richard Ingr

Thomas Lang

Mari

Hennie Tailer,

George Thurl

William Hama

John Edwards,

Thomas Kirle,

John Reyne,

Thomas Hante,

Nicholas Knigh

Peter Lewike, N

William Barrie, Ric

forth.

The L

You shall sweare

fect apprehendeth

that you shall wel and

that voyage, committeth

shall haue achieved

of the flecte: you shall

the charge with o

person by any maner o

all men vnder your char

time from the true mi

much as in you lieth,

be made for the prefer

shall not permit no

med, but shall conseru

S. Hugh Willoughbie. Traffiques, & Discoveries.

233

Discharged at Harwich, by reason of sickness, George Blake, Nicholas Anthony.
 For picherie ducked at the yards arme, and so discharged Thomas Nash.
 The Edward Bonaventure, of 160. tunnes, with her a pinnetle, and a boate.
 Richard Chancelor, Captain, and Pilot maior of the flecte.
 Stephen Borowgh, Master of the Ship.
 John Buckland, his Mate.
 George Burton, Arthur Edwards, Parthams.
 John Stafford, Minister.
 James Dallaber, Nicholas Newborrow, John Segfwike, Thomas Francis, John Hassie, Richard Johnson, William Kempe,

The second Ship.

John Stafford Minister.

Maziners and officers, according to the custome and vse of the Seas,
 Robert Stanton, Master Gunner.
 John Walker, his Mate.
 James Long, John Cocks, Gunners.
 Thomas Walter, Surgeon.
 Peter Palmer, Boateswaine.
 Richard Strowde, his Mate.
 John Robinson, John Carowe, Thomas Stone, Roger Lishbie, quarter Masters.
 John Austen, Steward: Patrick Steuens, his Mate.
 Austen Jacks, Cooke.
 William Every, Cotper.
 Griffin Waghams, Carpenter.

Thomas Stelfton, Thomas Townes, John Robinson, John White, William Lawrence, Miles Butter, John Browne, William Morren, William Watson, Thomas Handcocks, Edward Pacie, Thomas Browne, Arthur Per, George Phibarie, Edward Patterson, William Beare, John Potter, Nicholas Lawrence, William Burrough, Roger Welford, John Williams.
 The Bona Confidentia of 90. tunnes, having with her a pinnetle, and a boate.
 Cornelius Durfoorth, Master of the Ship.
 Richard Ingram, his Mate.
 Thomas Langlie, Edward Keuer, Henrie Dorset, Parthams.

M. William Burrough is the comptroller of her Spanish naute. The third Ship.

Mariners and officers, according to the vse and custome of the Sea.
 Henrie Taler, Master Gunner.
 George Thurland, his Mate.
 William Hamane, Boateswaine.
 John Edwards, his Mate.
 Thomas Kirbie, Henrie Dickenson, John Hays, William Shepwash, quarter Masters.
 John Reyne, Steward.
 Thomas Hante, Cooke. William Lassie, his Mate.
 Nicholas Knight, Carpenter.
 Peter Lewike, Nicholas Wiggleworth, John Moore, William Chapman, Brian Chester, William Barrie, Richard Wood, Clement Gibson, John Clarocke, Erasmus Bently, John Duri.

The Iuramentum, or othe, ministred to the Captaine.

Y^e shall sweare to be a faithfull, true, and loyal subiect in all pointes, and duties, that to a subiect appertaineth, to our soueraigne Lord the kings Maestie, his heires, and successors: and that you shall wel and truly to the uttermost of your capacite, wit, & knowledge, serue this present voyage, committed to your charge, and not to give up, nor sooner intermit the same, vntill you shall haue achieved the same, so farre forth, as you may without danger of your life, and losse of the flecte: you shall give good, true, and faithfull counsell to the said societie, and to such as shall haue the charge with you, and not to disclose the secrets, or priuities of the same to any person by any manner of meane, to the preiudice, hurt, or damage of it. You shall minister iustice to all men vnder your charge, without respect of person, or any affection, that might moue you to decline from the true ministration of iustice. And further, you shall obserue, and cause to be obserued, as much as in you lieth, all and singular rules, articles, p^rouisions hitherto made, or hereafter to be made for the preservation or safe conduct of the flecte and voyage, and benefit of the company. You shall not permit nor suffer the stecke or goods of the company to be waisted, imbezeld, or consumed, but shall conferue the same whole and entire, without diminishment, vntill you shall haue deliuered,

delivered, or cause to be delivered the same, to the use of the company. And finally you shall be your selfe in all points, foyses, and conditions, as to a faithfull captain, and together of this company shall belong and appertaine: So helpe you God, &c.

The othe ministred to the Maister of the ship, &c.



Du shalt sweare by the holy contents in that booke, that you according and to the uttermost of your knowledge, and good understanding in mariners science and craft, shall in your vocation doe your best to conduct the good shippe called the M. &c. wherof you now are Maister vnder God, both vnto and from the portes of your discoverie, and so be your indeuour and faithfull diligence, in charging, discharging, lading againe, and rooming of the same shippe, as may be most for the benefite and profite of this right woorthipfull fellowship: and you shall not privately bargein, buy, sell, exchange, barter, or distribute any goods, wares, merchandize, or things whatsoeuer (necessary tackles and victuals for the shippe onely excepted) so or for your owne lucre, ga'ne or profite, neither to nor for the private lucre, ga'ne, or profite of any other person or persons whatsoeuer. And further, If you shall know any boatswaine, mariner, or any other person or persons whatsoeuer, to buy, sell, barter, trucke, or exchange any goods, wares, merchandizes, or things for private account, reckoning, or behalfe, you shall doe your best to withstand and forbeare the same: and if you cannot commodiously so doe, that then before the discharge of such goods bought for private account, you shall giue knowledge thereof to the cape martine of this said fellowship, by the time bring. And you shall not receive nor take, nor suffer to be received or taken into your said ship during this voyage any manner person or persons whatsoeuer, going or returning, but onely those mariners which without fraud or guile shall be hired to be of your company, and to serve in mariners craft and science onely: So helpe you God, &c.

These foresaid shippes being fully furnished with their pinnacles and boates, well appointed with all manner of artillery, and other things necessary for their defence with all the men, also refitted, departed from Ratcliffe, and sailed vnto Detford, the 10. day of May, 1552.

The 11. day about two of the clocke, we departed from Detford, passing by Greenwich, sailing the things daily then being there, shooting off our ordinance, & so sailed vnto Blackwall, and there remained until the 17. day, and that day in the morning we went from Blackwall, and came to Woolwich by nine of the clocke, and there remained one tide, and to the same night was Deprech.

The 18. day from Deprech vnto Grauesend, and there remained until the twentieth day: the day being Saturday, from Grauesend vnto Tilberie Hope, remaining there untill the two and twentieth day.

The 22. day from Tilberie Hope to Hollie hauen.

The 23. day from Hollie hauen, till we came against Lee, and there remained that night, by reason that the winde was contrary to vs.

The 24. day the winde being in the South west in the morning, we sailed along the coast ouer the Spits, vntill we came against S. Olych, about sixe of the clocke at night, and there came an anker, and abode there all that night.

The 25. day about tenne of the clocke we departed from S. Olych, and so sailed forward to the Naze, and there abode that night for winde and tide.

The 26. day at five of the clock in the morning, we weped our anker, and sailed ouer the Naze, the winde being at the South west, vntill we came to Orwell wands, and there came to an anker, and abode there untill the 28. day.

The same day being Trinitie Sunday about 7. of the clocke before noone we weped our ankers, and sailed till we came aghwart Wallfurye, and there came to an anker.

The 29. day from thence to Holmehead, where we stayed that day, where we consulted which way, and what courses were best to be holden for the discoverie of our voyage, and there againe.

The 30. day of May at five of the clocke in the morning we set saile, and came against Portsmouth about three leagues into the sea, riding there at anker all that night.

The last of May into the Sea sixe leagues North east, and there taried that night, where the winde blew very sore.

The first of June the winde being at North contrary to vs, wee came backe againe to Orwell, and remained there untill the 15. day, tarrying for the winde, for all this time the winde was contrary to our purpose.

June.

The
hers, an
The
tough,
The
remain
The
three day
The 2
hesse, and
our counte
our shipp
The 2
Shotland:
thruing in
North 16
east, with
contrary wi
land East w
went on thop
it was inhab
The land
afterwards)
in the latitu
Then we sail
came to anker
people motu
were an imm
nion of the kin
winde being c
of diuers kinde
The 22 day
ping the sea v
then went for
entred into one
called Lewfoot
vnder the king
we remained the
30 leagues North
The 30 day of
long these Island
gull: then hailing
thasse of the Island
Island was called
leagues, being al
onely dyed fish, an
if we might haue
haue a good harbor
which is the strong
haue entred into an
winde and terrible
ned to take the sea a
creasling so sore th
end to see the Royme
were not able to kee
was a discomfort v
at the last we deserie
saile, and bare room
Then the slaw some

Willoughbie.
ally you shal be
er of this compa

&c.

crossing and to
mariners Science
ood shippe called
eto and from the
full diligence, in
the shippe, as map
you shall not pu
handize, or things
for your owne
her person or per
other person or
mariners, or
land and let the
sch goe to the
ad fellowship by
en into your lan
ning, but one
p, and to seruen

well appoint
the men to be

Greenwich, sal
unto Blackwall,
Blackwall, and
same night was

Greenwich day: the
until the two an

ed that night, by

ing the coast
and there came

ailed forward

over the ship,
e came to an

we weped our

consulted which
and there agreed
me against the

night, where the

e againe to the
the wind was

Th

S. Hugh Willoughbie. Traffiques, & Discoveries.

235

The 15 day being at Orwel in the latitude of 52 degrees, in the morning wee weped out ankers, and went forth into the wands about two miles from the towne, and lay there that night.

The 16 day at eight of the clocke we set forthward, and layed untill we came athwart Alburrough, and there layed that night.

The 17 day about five of the clocke before noone we went backe unto Orfordnesse, and there remained untill the 19 day.

The 19 day at eight of the clocke in the morning we went backe to Orwel, and abode there three dayes tarrying for the winde.

The 23 day of June the wind being faire in the Southwest we hailed into the seas to Orfordnesse, and from thence into the seas ten leagues North-east: then being past the sands, we changed our course five leagues North-east: about midnight we changed our course againe, and went due North, continuing in the same unto the 27 day.

The 27 day about seven of the clocke North-west 42 leagues to the ende to fall with Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

Shoeland: then the wind beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, contrary winds, untill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entering into Leo, we discovered Jul.

In this land dwelle other as it seemeth.

Rost Islands.

Stanfrew harbor.

Lofoot.

Angul.

Seynam in 70 degrees

sapling

sapling North-east and by North, to the end to fall with the Wardhouse, as we did consult to doe before, in case we should part company. Thus running North-east and by North, and North-east fiftie leagues, then we sounded, and had 160 fadomes, whereby we thought to be farre from land, and perceived that the land lay not as the Globe made mention. Wherefore we changed our course the first day, and sailed South-east and by South eight and fiftie leagues, thinking thereby to find the Wardhouse.

The eight day much winde rising at the West-north-west, we not knowing how the coast lay, strook our sayles, and lay a drift, where we sounded and found 160 fadomes as afoze.

The ninth day, the wind bearing to the South South-east, we sailed North-east 25 leagues. The tenth day we sounded, and could get no ground, neither yet could see any land, whereat we wondered: then the wind comming at the North-east, we ran South-east about 48 leagues.

The 11 day, the wind being at South, we sounded, and found 40 fadomes, and faire land.

The 12 day the winde being at South and by East, we lay with our saile East, and East and by North 30 leagues.

The 14 day early in the morning we descried land, which land we bare with all, hoisting out our boat to discover what land it might be: but the boat could not come to land the water was so shoale, where was very much ice also, but there was no similitude of habitation, and this land lyeth from Seynam East and by North 160 leagues, being in latitude 72 degrees. Then we plyed to the Northward the 15, 16 and 17 day.

The 18 day, the winde comming at the North-east, and the Confidence being troubled with bilge water, and stoked, we thought it good to seek a harbour for her repose: then we bare roome the 18 day South-south-east, about 70 leagues.

The 21 day we sounded, and found 10 fadome, after that we sounded againe, and found betwixt 10 fadome, so shoalder and shoalder water, and yet could see no land, where we marvelled greatly: to avoide this danger, we bare roomer into the sea all that night North-west and by West.

The next day we sounded, and had 20 fadoms, then shayed our course, and ran West South-west untill the 23 day: then we descried Low land, unto which we bare as nigh as we could, and it appeared unto us inhabitable. Then wee plyed Westward along by that lande, which lyeth West South-west, and East North-east, and much winde blowing at the West, we haled in the sea North and by East 30 leagues. Then the winde comming about at the North-east, we sailed West North-west: after that, the winde bearing to the North-west, we lay with our sailes West South-west, about 14 leagues, and then descried land, and bare in with it, being the 28 day, finding shoale water, and bare in till we came to 3 fadome, then perceiving it to be shoale water, and all seeing dyie sands, we haled out againe North-east along that land until we came to the point thereof. That land turning to the Westward, we ran along 16 leagues North-west: then comming into a faire bay, we went on land with our boat, which place was inhabitable, but yet it appeared unto us that the people had bin there, by crosses, and other signes: from thence we went all along the coast Westward.

September.

The fourth day of September we lost sight of land, by reason of contrary winds, and the eight day we descried land againe. Within two dayes after we lost the sight of it: then running West and by South about 30 leagues, we gat the sight of land againe, and bare in with it until night: then perceiving it to be a lee shore, we gat us into the sea, to the end to have sea room.

The 12 of September we hailed to shoreward againe, having then indifferent winde and weather: then being neere unto the shore, and the tide almost spent, wee came to an anchor in 30 fadoms water.

The 13 day we came along the coast, which lay North-west and by West, and South-east and by East.

The 14 day we came to an anchor within two leagues of the shore, having 6 fadoms.

There we went a shore with our boat, & found two or three good bayes: though the land bring rocky, and high, but as for people could we see none. The 15 day we ran still along the coast until the 17 day: then the winde bring contrary unto us, we thought it best to returne unto the harbour which we had found before, and so we bare roomer with the same, howbeit we could not accomplish our desire that day. The next day being the 18 of September, we entered into the haven, and there came to an anchor at 6 fadoms. This haven runneth into the maine, about two leagues, and is in byeth halfe a league, wherein were very many seale fishes, & other great fishes, and upon the maine we saw beares, great deere, foxes, with divers Orange beastes, as gylolones, and such other which were to us unknowne, and also wonderfull. Thus remaining in this haven the space of a weeke, seeing the yeare scarce spent, & also very cold weather, as frost, snow, and halles, as though it had beene the verpe of winter, we thought best to winter there. Wherefore we sent out three men Southward

In this haven they died.

107, Eltona.

Rich

South-east
finde none
without
sapes returne

The river
riched for col
in the ship the

The boat
and 1
d

E

other countrey
partes of Russia
therein, Russia
dities as they ha
much ople which
They make it in
thing of salt water
Furres, as Sab
Ermines, Muscov
The taken there
past to sell, and fro
golden on Saine I
noue, in our lang
much ware and be
great store of hides,
Elare, Qonic; and

There is a place
but not so great ple
river called Duyna
Vologda and the M
logda to Ierslaue
thereof are hides, and
in other places.

The Mosco is fr
replenished with f
them: the ground is
dence that it is won
comming of going th
warre come to the M
thousand miles off: a
North partes of the T

Rich. Chancelour. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

237

Southwest, so search it they could find people, who went thre dayes iourney, but could finde none: after that, we sent other thre Westward foure dayes iourney, which also returned without finding any people. Then sent we thre men Southeast thre dayes iourney, who in like sojourn returned without finding of people, or any similitude of habitation.

Were evidently
that Hugh Will-
oughbie this
note, which
was written
with his owne
hand.

These two notes following were written vpon the outside of this Pamphlet, or Booke.

- 1 The proceedings of Sir Hugh Willoughbie after he was separated from the Edward Bonaventure.
- 2 Our shippe being at an anchor in the harbour called Sterier in the Island Loofoote.

The riuer of hauen wherein Sir Hugh Willoughbie with the companie of his two ships perished for cold, is called Arzina in Lapland, neere vnto Keger. But it appeareth by a Will found in the ship that Sir Hugh Willoughbie and most of the company were alive in January 1554.

The booke of the great and mighty Emperor of Russia, and Duke of Moscouia, and of the dominions orders and commo- dities thereunto belonging: drawn by Richard Chancelour.

INASMUCH as it is meete and necessary for all those that minde to take in hand the trauell into farre or strange countreys, to endeavour themselves not onely to vnderstande the orders, commodities, and fruitfulness thereof, but also to apply them to the setting forth of the same, whereby it may encourage others to the like traualle: these I haue I nowe thought good to make a briefe rehearsal of the orders of this my traualle in Russia and Moscouia, and other countreys thereunto adioyning; because it was my chance to fall with the Mozh therein, Russia is very plentifull both of land and people, and also welthy for knowledge of commodities as they haue. They be very great fishers for Salmones and small Coddes: they haue much oyle which wee call trefine oyle, the most whereof is made by a riuer called Duina. They make it in other places, but not so much as there. They haue also a great trade in Sec- fures, as Sables, martens, greisse Beuers, Foxes white, blacke, and reddie, Pinkes, Ermines, Spouier, and Harts. There are also a fishes teeth, which fish is called a Poysse. The takers thereof dwell in a place called Postelora, which lyinge them vpon Harts to Lam- holden on Saint Nicholas day. To the West of Colmogro, where the be market is pas to sell, and from Lampas carie them to a place called Colmogro, where the be market is holden on Saint Nicholas day. To the West of Colmogro there is a place called Gratanou, in our language Nouogorode, where much fine Flare and Hemye groweth, and also much ware and donle. The Dutch marchantes haue a Staplehouse there. There is also great store of hides, and at a place called Plefco: and thereabout is great store of Flare, Hemye, Ware, Potie; and that to wne is from Colmogro 120 miles.

1 Duyna

Nota.

There is a place called Vologda; the commodities whereof are Tallowe, Ware, and Flare: but not so great plenty as is in Gratanou. From Vologda to Colmogro there runneth a riuer called Duyna, and from thence it falleth into the sea. Colmogro serueth Gratanou, Vologda and the Mosco with all the countrey thereabout with faine and saltfish. From Vologda to Ierslaue is two hundred miles: which to wne is very great. The commodities thereof are hides, and tallowe, and coyne in great plenty, and some Ware, but not so plentifull as in other places.

The Mosco is from Ierslaue two hundred miles. The countrey betwixt them is very wel replenished with small Villages, which are so well filled with people, that it is wonder to see: hence that it is wonder to see it. You shall meete in a morning seven or eight hundred sleds coming of going thither, that carrie coyne, and some carie fish. You shall haue some that carie come to the Mosco, and some that fetch coyne from thence, that at the least dwell a thousand miles off: and all their carriage is on sleds. Those which come so farre dwell in the Mozh partes of the Dukes dominions; where the cold will suffer no coyne to grow, it is so extreme.

extreme. They bring thither fishes, furs, and beastes skinned. In those partes they haue but small hope of cattell.

The Mosco it self is great: I take the whole towne to bee greater then London with the suburbs: but it is very rude, and standeth without alloyd. Their houses are all of timber very dangerous for fire. There is a faire Castle, the walles wherof are of brycke, and very high: they say they are eigheteen foote thicke, but I doe not beleue it, it doth not so serue, nor withstanding I doe not certainly know it: for no stranger may come to vicine it. The one side is ditched, and on the other side runneth a riuer called Moscu which runneth into Tartarie and so into the sea called Mare Caspium: and on the North side there is a baste towne, the which hath also a brycke wall about it, and so it ioyneeth with the Castle wall. The Emperour lieth in the castle, wherein are nine saye Churches, and therein are religious men. Also there is a Metropolitan with diuers Bishops. I will not stande in description of their buildinges nor of the strength thereof because we haue better in all pointes in England. They be well furnished with ordnance of all sortes.

The Emperours of Dukes house neither in building nor in the outward shew, nor yet within the house is so sumptuous as I haue scene. It is very lowe built in eight square, much like the olde building of England, with small windowes, and so in other pointes.

Now to declare somewhat more before his Highnes: After I had remained twelue daies, the Secretary which had the charge of strangers did send for me, aduertising me that the Duke pleasure was to haue me to come before his Highnes with the kings my masters letters: wherof I was right glad, and so I gaue mine attendance. And when the Duke was in his place appointed, the interpreter came for me into the better chamber, where sate one hundred or more gentlemen, all in cloth of golde very sumptuous, and from thence I came into the Countesse chamber, where sate the Duke himselfe with his nobles, which were a faire company: they sate round about the chamber on high, yet so that he himselfe sate much higher then any of his nobles in a chaire gilt, and in a long garment of beaue golde, with an imperial crowne vpon his head, and a Staffe of Crystall and golde in his right hand, and his other hand halfe leaning on his chetie. The Chancelour stood vpon with the Secretary before the Duke. After my dutie done and my letter delivered, he bade me welcome, & enquired of me the health of the King my master, and I answered that he was in good health at my departure from his court, and that my trust was that he was now in the same. Vpon the which he bade me to dinner. The Chancelour presented my present vnto his Grace bareheaded (for before they were all couered) and when his Grace had receiued my letter, I was required to depart: for I had charge not to speake to the Duke, but when he spake to me. So I departed vnto the Secretaries chamber, where I remained two houres, and then I was sent for againe vnto another palace which is called the golden palace, but I had no cause why it should be so called: for I haue scene many sayre then it in all pointes: and so I came into the hall, which was small and not great as is the Kings Highnes of England, and the table was couered with a tablecloth; and the Parhall sate at the ende of the table with a little white rod in his hand, which badge was full of beffell of golde: and on the other side of the hall did stand a faire cupboorde of plate. From thence I came into the dining chamber, where the Duke himselfe sate at his table without cloth of estate, in a gowne of siluer, with a crowne imperiall vpon his head, he sate in a chaire somewhat high: There sate none neare him by a great way. There were long tables set round about the chamber, which were full with such as the Duke had at dinner: they were all in white. Also the places where the nobles stood were higher by two steppes then the rest of the house. In the middell of the chamber stood a table of cupboord set place on: which stood full of cuppes of golde: and amongst all the rest there stood foure marvellous great portes or crudences as they call them, of golde and siluer: I thinke they were a good yerde and a halfe high. By the cupboorde stood two gentlemen with napkins on their shoulders, and in their handes each of them had a cuppe of golde set with pearles and pecton stones, which were the Dukes owne drinking cuppes: when he was disposed, he drunke them off at a draught. And for his seruice at meate it came in without order, yet it was very rich seruice: for all were serued in gold, not onely he himselfe, but also all the rest of vs, which was very massie: the cups also were of golde and very massie. The number that dined there that day was two hundred persons, and all were serued in golden vessel. The gentlemen that waited were all in cloth of gold, and they serued him with their caps on their heads. Before the seruice came in, the Duke sent to every man a great shewe of bread, and the heaver called the party so sent to by his name aloud, and sayd, Iohn Basiluch Emperour of Russia and great Duke of Moscuia both toward thee with bread: then must all men stand up, and doe at all times when these words are spoken. And then last of all he giueth the Parhall

bread, which cometh thither which the I hope. And a dinner he crowne vpon uery one of I cherch is, as ner is done he could name longing, which household: but wars. This I for he is able the self himselfe uerth his boyers of Liefland warde the Magistrate to his was soomen, but I boyesmen are a the Turkes. The coats are couer especially the no I haue scene it, attired about all with stones that the French King into farr of str the Duke himselfe ther he is but re Duke sent two boyes: their summe as, as belue, cle further say: I nee me not occasion, warres: They are the most part the rich. But I beleue them. Pea and thou pard thicke, the e sence they haue and when I sawe thus doe the n their owne. The I carle & make I myselfe that me boye that eat green et wil he labour & se could we find to end reareth that naue fooken to order and could make the to es in Christendome be hardness of his peo paces stand him in: not much. As for his es, causing that he grie

ndon with the
all of timber be-
nd very high:
ene, not with-
The one side is
Tartarie and so
which hath
lieth in the ca-
re is a Petro-
ges noz of the
furnished with

, nor yet with
are, much like

eales, the Se-
he Dukes plea-
whereof I was
lace appointed,
oz more gentle
countsaie cham-
they late roun-
his nobles ma-
don his head, and
his cheere. The
and my letter
r, and I answ-
was that he was
need my ppele
ke, but when he
ned two hures,
lace, but I sh-
oynts: and soz
of England, and
the table with
the other side
ining chamber,
of siluer, with
e none neare him
ch were full in
des where the
best of the chym-
of golde: and
they call them,
cupbozde stee-
hem had a cuppe
king cuppe: when
came in without
selfe, but also al-
affe. The man
n golden vessel,
their caps on the
of bread, and the
ch Emperour
all men stand up,
sh the Spanish

Rich. Chancelour. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

head, whereof he eateth befoze the Dukes Grace, and so both reuerence and respect. Then
commeth the Dukes seruice of the Swaines all in pieces, and euery one in a severall dish: the
which the Duke sendeth as he did the head, and the beaver saith the same wordes as he sayd be-
foze. And as I sayd befoze, the seruice of his meate is in no order, but commeth in diuers dish:
and then after that the Duke sendeth drinke, with the like saying as befoze is tolde. Also befoze
dinner hee changed his crowne, and in dinner time two crownes; so that I saw three severall
crownes vpon his head in one day. And thus when his seruice was all come in hee gaue to e-
uery one of his gentlemen waiters meate with his owne hand, & so likewise drinke. His intent
therby is, as I haue heard, that euery man shall know perfectly his seruants. Thus when din-
ner is done hee calleth his nobles befoze him name by name, that it is wonder to heare howe
he could name them, hauing so many as he haue. Thus when dinner was done I departed to my
lodging, which was an house within night. I will leaue this, and speake no moze of him noz his
household: but I will somewhat declare of his land and people, with their nature and power in the
warre. This Duke is Lord and Emperour of many countreys, & his power is marvellous great.
For he is able to bring into the field two or thre hundred thousand men: he neuer goeth into
the field himselfe with under two hundred thousand men: And when he goeth himselfe hee fur-
nisheth his borders all with men of warre, which are no small number. He leaueth on the boz-
ders of Liffland fortie thousand men, and vpon the borders of Letto 60 thousand men, and to-
take to his warres neither husbandman noz marchant. All his men are horsemen: hee hath no
footmen, but such as goe with the ordnance and labourers, which are thirtie thousand. The
horsemen are all archers, with such bowes as the Turkes haue, and they ride shott as doe
the Turkes. Their armour is a coate of plate, with a skull on their heads. Some of their
coates are covered with velvet or cloth of gold: their desire is to be sumptuous in the field, and
especially the nobles and gentlemen: as I haue heard their trimming to very costly, and partly
I haue seene it, or else I would scarcely haue beleueu it: but the Duke himselfe is right
attire about all measure: his paulion is covered either with cloth of gold or siluer, and so set
with stones that it is wonderfull to see it. I haue seene the Kings paulions of England and
the French Kings paulions, whichore saye, yet not like vnto his. And when they bee sent
into farre or strange countreys, or that strangers come to them, they be very gorgeous. Els-
ther hee is but reasonably apparelled ouer other times. In the while that I was in Mosco the
Duke sent two ambassadours to the King of Poleland, which had at the lest fure hundred
horses: their sumptuousnes was about measure, not onely in themselves, but also in their hor-
ses, as velvet, cloth of golde, and cloth of siluer set with pearles and not scant. What shall I
saye further say: I neuer heard of noz saw men so sumptuous: but it is no dapply gulle, for when they
warre: They are men without al order in the field, & for they runne hurling on heapes, and for
the most part they neuer giue battell to their enemies: but that which they doe, they doe it all by
rush. But I beleue they be such men for hard living as are not vnder the sun: for no cold will hurt
them. And though they lie in the field two moneths, at such time as it shall freeze moze then
yard thicke, the common souldier hath neither tent noz anything else ouer his head: the most
valence they haue against the wether is a felte, which is set against the winde and weather,
and when the winde commeth hee doth cast it off, and waketh him a fire, and laireth him down there.
Thus doe the most of all his men, except they bee gentlemen which haue other provision of
their owne. Their lying in the field is not so strange as is their hardnes: for euery man must
eat & make his pillow for himselfe & his horse for a moneth or two, which is very wonderful. For
he himselfe shall lye vpon water & otemgate mingled together cold, and drinke water thereto: his
horse shall eat green wood, & such like baggage, & shall stand open in the cold field without couert, &
yet will he labour & serue him right wel. I pray you amongst all our boasting warriors how many
could we find to endure the field with the but one moneth. I know no such region about vs that
would be able to endure the field with the but one moneth. I know no such region about vs that
could make the to vnderstand & things as of old said. I da beleue that 3 of the best & greatest prin-
ces in Christendome were not wel able to match with him, considering the greatness of his power &
the hardnes of his people & strait living both of people and horse, and the small charges which his
partes stand him in: for hee giueth no wages, except to strangers. They haue a perely stipend &
much. As for his own countrey men euery one serueth of his owne proper colles and char-
ges, lauing that hee giueth to his Particulars certaine allowance for powder & shot: or else no

man in all his countrey hath one pennie wages. But if any man hath done very good service he giueth him a ferme of a piece of lande; for the which hee is bound at all times to be ready with so many men as the Duke shall appoyne: who considereth in his mind what that lande of ferme is well able to liue: and so many shall be bound to furnish at all and euery such time as warres are holden in any of the Dukes dominions. For there is no man of liuing, but hee is bound like wise, whether the Duke call for either souldier or labourer, to furnish them with all such necessaries as to them belong.

Also, if any gentleman or man of liuing do die without issue male, immediately after his death the Duke entereth his land, notwithstanding he haue neuer so many daughters, and peraduenture giueth it forth with to another man, except a small portion that he spareth to marrie the daughters with all. Also if there be a rich man, a fermour, or man of liuing, which is stricken in age, or by chance is maimed, and be not able to doe the Duke service, some other gentleman that is not able to liue and moze able to doe service, will come to the Duke and complaine, saying, your Grace hath such an one; which is unmeet to doe service to your Highness, who hath great abundance of welth, and like wise your Grace hath many gentlemen which are poore and lacke liuing, and we that lacke are well able to doe good service, your Grace might doe well to looke vpon him, and make him to helpe those that want. Immediately the Duke sendeth forth to inquire of his wealth: and if it be so prouen, he shall be called before the Duke, and it shall bee said vnto him, friend, you haue too much liuing, and are unseuerable to your prince, lesse will serue you, and the rest will serue other men that are moze able to serue. whereupon immediately his liuing shall be taken away from him, taking a little to him selfe and his wife on, and he may not once repaire thereat: but for answer he will say, that he hath nothing, but it is Gods and the Dukes Grace, and cannot say, as we the common people in England say, if wee haue any thing; that it is Gods and our owne. Then may say, that these men are in wonderfull great awe, and obedience, that thus one must giue and graunt his goods which he hath bene scraping and scratching for all his life to be at his Princes pleasure and commandement. Wh that our Turbie rebels were had in the like subiection to knowe their duety toward their Princes. They may not say as some snuggles in England say, I would find the Quene a man to see in my place, or make his friends carrie at home if money haue the upper hand. No, no, it is not so in this countrey: for he shall make humble sute to serue the Duke. And whom he sendeth most to the warres he thinketh he is most in his fauour: and yet as I before haue sayd, hee giueth no wages. If they haue their strength no man were able to make match with them: nor they that dwell nere them should haue any rest of them. But I think it is not Gods will: for I may compare them to a young boye that knoweth not his strength, whome a little childe ruleth and guideth with a hynde, in all his great strength: for if hee dyd, neither childe nor man could rule him. Their warres are holden against the Crime Tartarians and the Magars.

I will stand no longer in the rehearsal of their power and warres. For it were too tedious to the reader. But I will in part declare their lawes, and punishments, and the execution of iudice. And first I will begin with the commons of the countrey, which the gentlemen haue rule in. And that is, that euery gentleman hath rule and iustice vpon his owne tenants. And if it fall out that two gentlemen servants or tenants doe disagree, the two gentlemen examine the matter, and haue the parties before them, and soe giue the sentence. And yet cannot they make the ende betwixt them of the conseruerie, but either of the gentlemen must bying his servant or tenant before the high iudges of iustice of that countrey, and there present them, and declare the matter and case. The plaintiffe sayth, I require the law; which is graunted: then commeth an officer and arrester the party defendant, and vseth him contrarie to the lawes of England. For when they attach any man they beate him about the legges, vntill such time as he findeth suerity to answer the matter: And if not, his handes and necke are bound together, and he is led about the towne and beate about the legges, with other extreme punishments till he come to his answer: And the Iudges remaundeth if it be soz orde, and sayth: Dost thou this man any such debt? He will perhaps say nay. Then sayth the Iudge: art thou able to paie it? Let vs heare how? By othe sayth the defendane. Then he commanndeth to leaue beating him till further trial be had.

Their order in one point is commendable. They haue no man of Law to pleade their cases in any court: but euery man pleadeth his owne cause, and giueth bill and answer in writing: contrarie to the order in England. The complaint is in manner of a supplication, sent to the Dukes Grace, and deliuered him into his owne hand, requiring to haue iustice as in the complaint is alleaged.

The Duke
that such a
desirefully about
espied in clo
proue, then
Then is den
sometime he
so requiring
oether. So w
right, and the
held: and so e
they fight all o
they stand near
no house as the
no champion is
is. For althoug
often scene: be
hath gotten the
thamefully vied
swore in some
cittie, and the pa
Duke toether the
himto labour, o
make pouillon f
Again there are
men, to haue dur
mony. yea and so
also they haue a
into they can hang
weate him with w
byle him. If h
hath a piece of h
curies for his goo
me he is extreme
gentleman require
him: by which
turn to great decei
ing as well in fare
ing in prison then
labour, and ge
the poore is very in
hearing and oether
it to be mo
ch people vnder the
will in part declar
celle of superstition
churches, but all pain
intered images they b
either worship nor ho
agen (say they) haue
us: They say, Look
worship none be so
serue not part of the
They haue none oet
entry among them.
and newe Testame
For when the Pri
them, nor no me
to lone and one calke to

good service he
nes to be renow
what that lane
ill and euery such
of liuing, but
to furnish them

ly after his death
and peradventure
marrie the daughter
Striken in age
man that is
pne, saying, you
hath great abundance
and lacke liuing,
looke vpon him,
to inquire of his
saps vnto him,
serue you, and the
his liuing shall be
not once repaie
the Duker. O
thing: that he
and obedient,
scratching for all
rebelles were
map not say
ance, or made
countrey: for he
arres he thimself
If they haue
erre them thow
them to a young
with a hysle, in
their warres an

ere too tedious
reunion of iudici
en haue rule
nes. And if it
element exam
yet cannot the
must bying
esent them, an
granted: then
so the lawes
of such time
und together,
and thimself
th: Owell that
e thou able to
eo leaue beating
please their
answere in
plication, p
iustice as in

The duke giueth sentence himselfe vpon all matters in the Law, which is very comendable, that such a prince will take paines to see administration of iustice. Yet notwithstanding it is wonderfully abused: and thereby the Duke is much deceived. But if it fall out that the officers be eschew in cloaking the truth, they haue most conuigie punishment. And if the plaintiffe can nothing ppooue, then the defendant must take his oth vpon the crucifixe whether he be in the right or no. Then is demanded if the plaintiffe be any thing able further to make ppoofe: if hee bee not; then sometimes he will say, I am able to ppooue it by my body and hands, or by my champions body, or requiring the Campe. After the other hath his othe, it is graunted as well to the one as to the right, and that the one shall make the other to confesse the truth before they depart foot of the field: and so they goe both to the battell armed with such weapons as they vse in that countrey: they fight all on foote, & the doinge the parties themselves do fight, except they be Gentlemen. For they stand much vpon their reputation, for they will not fight, but with such as are come of as good an house as themselves. So that if either partie require the combat, it is granted vnto them, and no champion is to serue in their roomer: wherein is no deceit: but other wise by champions there often scene: because the common champions haue none other liuing. And as soon as the one party hath gotten the victorie, he demandeth the debt, and the other is carried to prison, and there is shamefully viled till he take order. There is also another order in the lawe, that the plaintiffe may sweare in some caused of debt. And if the partie defendant be poore, he shall be set under the Crucifixe, and the partie plaintiffe must sweare ouer his head, and when hee hath taken his othe, the Duke taketh the partie defendant home to his house, and vseth him as his bond-man, and putteth make ppoission for his redemption: or else hee remaineth in bondage all the dayes of his life. Again there are many that will sell themselves to Gentlemen or Marchants to bee their bond-men, to haue during their life meate, drinke and cloth, and at their conuining to haue their bond-mony. yea and some will sell their wiues and children to bee halldes and drudges to the byer. Also they haue a Lawe for Fellons and pickers contrary to the Lawes of England. For by their lawe they can hang no man for his first offence; but may keepe him long in prison, and oftentimes beat him with whips and other punishment: and there he shall remaine vntill his friends be able to ransome him. If he be a picker of a cut-purse, as there be very many, the second time he is taken, he hath a piece of his Nose cut off, and is burned in the forehead, and kept in prison till hee finde a way for his good behauiour. And if he be taken the third time, he is hanged. And at the first time he is extremely punished and not released, except hee haue very good friends, or that some Gentleman require to haue him to the warres: And in so doing, he shall enter into great bonds for him: by which means the countrey is brought into good quietnesse. But they be naturally hard to great deceit, except extreme beating did bryde them. They be naturally giuen to hard dealing in prison then foot, but for the great beating. For they haue meate and drinke without any labour, and get the charitie of well disposed people: But being at libertie they get nothing. The poore is very innumerable, and liue most miserably: for I haue seene them eate the pickle of peccering and other stinking fish: nor the fish cannot be so stinking nor rotten, but they will eate it with praise it to be more wholesome then other fish or fresh meate. In mine opinion there be no such people vnder the sunne for their hardnesse of liuing. Well, I will leaue them in this point, and will in part declare their Religion. They doe obserue the lawe of the Greekes with such felles of superstition, as the like hath not bene heard of. They haue no grauen images in their churches, but all painted, to the intent they will not bzeake the commandement: but to their images they vse such idolatrie, that the like was neuer heard of in England. They will worship no picture to declare what they be, and howe they be of God, and so to be not worship none before they be Christened. They say we be but halfe Christians: because we serue not part of the olde law with the Turks. Therefore they call themselves more holy then they. They haue none other learning but their mother tongue, nor will suffer no other in their country among them. All their seruice in Churches is in their mother tongue. They haue the newe Testament, which are daily read among them: and yet their superstition is no lesse. For when the Priest doo reade, they haue such tricks in their reading, that no man can vnderstand them, nor no man giueth eare to them. For all the while the Priest readeth, the people do wone and one talke with another. But when the Priest is at seruice no man sterteth, but gagle

and duke like so many Geese. And as for their prayers they haue but little skill, but vse to say As bodi pomele: As much to say, Lord haue mercy vpon me. For the tenth man within the land cannot say the Pater noster. And as for the Creede, no man may be so bolde as to meddle therewith but in the Church: for they say it shoulde not bee spoken of, but in the Churches. Speake to them of the Commandements, and they wil say they were giuen to Moses in the law, which Christ hath nowe abrogated by his precious death and passion: therefore, (say they) we obserue little or none thereof. And I doe beleue them. For if they were examined of their Lawe and Commandements together, they shoulde agree but in some paynes. They haue the Sacrament of the Lords Supper in both kindes, and moze ceremonies then wee haue. They present them in a dish in both kindes together, and carrie them rounde about the Church vpon the Priestes head, and so doe minister at all such times as any shall require. They bee great offerers of Candles, and sometimes of money, which wee call in England, Soule penne, with moze ceremonies then I am able to declare. They haue foure Lenten weeks peere, whereof our Lent is the greatest. Looke as we doe begin on the Wednesday, so they doe on the Monday before: And the weeke before that they call The Butter weeke: And in that weeke they eate nothing but Butter and milke. Where I beleuee there bee in no other countrey the like people for drunkenesse. The next Lent is called Saint Peters Lent, and beginneth alwayes the Monday next after Trinitie Sunday, and endeth on Saint Peters euen. If they shoulde heake that fast, their beliefe is, that they shoulde not come in at heauen gates. And when any of them die, they haue a testimoniall with them in the Coffin, that when the soule cometh to heauen gates it may deliuer the same to Saint Peter, which declareth that the partie is a true and holy Russian. The thirde Lent beginneth fiftene dayes before the last Lady day, and endeth on our Lady Euen. The fourth Lent beginneth on Saint Marins day, and endeth on Christmas Euen: which Lent is fasted for Saint Philip, Saint Peter, Saint Nicholas, and Saint Clement. For they four be the principall and greatest Saints in the countrey. In these Lents they eate neither Butter, Egges, Milke, nor Chese; but they are very straitely kept with Fish, Cabbages, and Rootes. And out of their Lents, they obserue truly the Wednesdayes and Fridayes throughout the peere: and on the Saturday they eat flesh. Furthermore they haue a great number of Religious men: which are blacke Monks, and they eate no flesh throughout the peere, but fish, milke and Butter. By their order they shoulde eate no fleshy-fish, and in their Lents they eate nothing but Colewortes, Cabbages, like Cowcumbers, with other rootes, as Radish and such like. Their drinke is like our peny Ale, and is called Quass. They haue seruice daily in their Churches; and vse to goe to seruice three houres before day, and that is ended by day light. At nine of the clocke they goe to Masse that ended, to dinner: and after that to seruice againe: and then to supper. You shall vnderstand that at euery dinner and supper they haue declared the exposition of the Gospel that we but howe they wyse and twine the Scriptures and that together by report it is wonderfull. As for whoredome and drunkenesse there be none such liuing: and for extortion, they be the most abhominable under the sunne. No one iudge of their holinesse. They haue twise as much land as the Duke himselfe hath: but yet hee is reasonable euen with them, as thus: When they take hyres of any of the poore and simple, he hath it by an order. When the Abbot of any of their houses dieth, then the Duke hath all his goods moueable and vnmoueable: so that hee successeur buyeth all at the Dukes hand: and by this meane they be the best Farmers the Duke hath. Thus with their Religion I make an ende, trusting hereafter to knowe it better.

Sir, Reade and correct;
For great is the defect.

To the right worshipfull and my singular good Vnde
Maste: Christopher Frothingham, glue thefe.

The Testimonie of M. Richard Eden in his Decades, concerning the Booke following.



And whereas (saith he) I haue before made mention howe Moscoue was in our time discovered by Richard Chanceler in his voyage toward Calicut by the direction and information of M. Sebastian Cabot, who long before this secret in his minde: I shall not neede here to deferre that voyage, inasmuch as the same is largely and faithfully written in the Latine tongue, by the learned young man Clement Adams, Schoolemaster to the Queenes headmen, as hee receiued at the mouth of the said Richard Chanceler.

The new



foraine Barban
Citizens of London
tray, began to thinke
a remedie (as it the
conueniencie: for so
and search of newe
be a course and way
strange Nauigation
dayes very renownd
diligently with him,
that three shippes sh
Northerne part of the
unknowne kingdomes

And whereas many
matter, they first mak
pemie, which shoulde la
requirke and profitable
taine summe of moneye
shippes. And lest any
taken, that euery man
pemie a piece: so that
gathered, the three shipp
and returned. But in a
expences, of the which
well seasoned plan
male, and their great
rich them, and among
ious inuention. For e
hypocrite, which many tin
at the Partners, and the
larger, they couer a pie
built the ships, and su
lesse trouble some and n
was to be made accordi
mind to haue the Call par
at ap: in, except they kep
ere any passage yea or no
my did for this reason. F
sely for seeing it, allowe
mine there is the extremi
one of their conning hom
Howe this prouision bein
cient Capetaines and go
lice and place, although in
Sir Hugh Willoughbie a
howe that care and charge
his goodly personage (for
waite, the company of the
died and made choise of hi

mirall, with authoritie and commaund other all the rest. And for the gouernement of other ships although diuers men seemed willing, and made offers of themselves thereunto, yet by a common consent one Richard Chancellor, a man of great estimation for many good partes of wit in him, was elected, in whom alone great hope for the performance of this businesse rested. This man was brought by by one master Henry Sidney, a noble pong Gentleman and very much beloued of King Edward, who at this time comming to the place where the Sparbants were gathered together, beganne a very eloquent speech of Oracion, and spake to them after this manner following.

After Henry
Sidney his
Oracion.

My very worshipfull friends, I cannot but greatly commend your present godly and deuout intention, in the serious enterprising (for the singular loue you beare to your Countrey) a matter, which (I hope) will prooue profitable for this nation, and honourable to this our land. Which intention of yours wee also of the Nobilitie are ready to our power to helpe and further: neither doe wee holde any thing to beare and precious vnto vs, which wee will not willingly forgoe, and lay out in so commendable a cause. But principally I reioyce in my selfe, that I haue nourished and maintained that wile, which is like by some meanes and in some measure, to profite and serue you in this worshipfull action. But yet I would not haue you ignorant of this one thing, that I doe now part with Chancellor, not because I make little reckoning of the man, or that his maintenance is burdous and chargeable vnto mee, but that you might conceiue and vnderstand my good will and promptitude for the furtherance of this businesse, and that the authoritie and estimation which hee deserueth may be giuen him. You know the man by report, I by experience, you by wordes, I by deedes, you by speech and companie, but I by the diueriall of his life haue a full and perfect knowledge of him. And you are also to remember, that howe many perils for your sakes, and his countreys loue, he is now to runne: whereof it is requisite that wee be not vnmindfull, if it please God to send him good successe. Wee committ a little money to the chaunce and hazard of Fortune: He committs his life (a thing to a man of all things most deare) to the raging Sea, and the vncertainties of many dangers. Wee will here liue and rest at home quietly with our friends, and acquaintance: but hee in the meanetime labouring to keepe the ignorant and unruly Sparbants in good order and obedience, with howe many cares shall hee trouble and vex himselfe: with how many troubles shall hee bryde himselfe: and howe many disquietings shall hee be forced to sustaine? Wee shall keepe our owne coastes and countrey: Hee shall seek strange and vnknown kingdomes. Wee shall commit his safetie to barbarous and cruell people, and shall hazard his life amongst the monstrous and terrible beastes of the Sea. Wherefore in respect of the greatness of the dangers, and the excellencie of his charge, you are to fauour and loue the man thus departing from vs: and if it fall to happily out that hee returne againe, it is your part and dueitie also, liberally to reward him.

After that this noble pong Gentleman had deliuered this or some such like speech, much more eloquently then I can possible report, the companie then present beganne one to looke vpon another, one to question and conferre with another: and some (to whom the vertue and sciencie of the man was knowne) began secretly to reioyce with themselves, and to conceiue a speciall hope, that the man would prooue in time very rare and excellent, and that his vertues ready appearing and shining to the world would growe to the great honour and aduancement of this kingdome.

After all this, the companie groweing to some silence, it seemed good to them that were of greatest grauitie amongst them, to inquire, search and seeke what might be learned & knowne, concerning the Easterly part or tract of the world. For which cause two Tartarians, which were then of the kings Stable, were sent for, an interpreter was gotten to be present by whom they were demaunded couching their Countrey and the manners of their nation. But they were able to answer nothing to the purpose: being in deepe more acquainted (as one there merrily and openly said) to tolle pottes, then to learne the fates and dispositions of people. But after much more many things passed about this matter, they grew at last to this issue, to set downe and appoint a time for the departure of the shippes: because diuers were of opinion, that a great part of the best time of the yere was already spent, and if the delay grew longer, the way would be stope and hard by the force of the Ice, and the colde climate: and therefore it was thought best by the opinion of them all, that by the twentieth day of May, the Captaines and Mariners should take shipping, and depart from Radcliffe vpon the ebbe, if it pleased God. They being saluted their acquaintance, one his wife, another his children, another his kinfolkes, another his friends deere then his kinfolkes, were present and ready at the day appointed, and hauing waied aue, they departed with the turning of the water, and sailing easily, and

They departed
from Radcliffe
the 20. of
May 1553.

Richard

first to Green
mariners be-
way with dili-
sently vpon the
gether, standing
of the Court,
their Ordinance
the tops of the
riners, they shou-
in the poope of it
could. Another
the maine yard,
er a foyle) in all
whom principally
this shewe, and in
accident of his de-

But to proceed
The shippes go-
cast ancre, with
a better winde than
in which porte they
with a good winde
oblie to their nation
againe or not. Where
doering into what
triall of.

Amongst the rest,
little grieued with
cried at Harwich, and
and fatherly affection
which were in the cas-
uen him to care, being
selle euery good or un-
with the multiplicitee
off, whereunto the Wi-
Kost Island, where the
towards the North, the
from which places w
of good sight and p
called together the chief
in the order of the gou-
the better: who being
pell should arise at any
mour his best to goe to
way, and that they th
the rest.

The very same day in
role, and the Sea were
we some were perforce
The generall with his lo-
in not to goe farre from
the Easter Hill in fog: for the
I knowe not by what
no businesse, that not long
me home and like rage
The shippes haue of
the and blew of the Wind
and arrive, they knowe not
But it is he so, that any m

other ships
by a com-
es of wit in
sted. This
very much
as were ga-
this manner

ly and ver-
Country)
is our land,
the and fur-
all not
selfe, that
the measure,
want of the
of the man,
be concerne
and that the
by report,
by the daily
ember, two
heret of it is
the coun-
ing to a man
The Chanc-
in the mean-
ence, which
all be by the
I keepe not
the shall com-
monstrous
gers, and the
us: and I
erally to re-

each, much
one to look
true and his
a concern
a better
duancment
ere of grow-
en, comen-
h were that
in they were
able to
and open
uch and an
d oppor-
a part of
the would be
was thought
of officers
They
Stokers, and

reality, can

Richard Chanceler. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

245

first to Greenwich. The greater shippes are towed downe with boates, and oares, and the mariners being all appaueled in blaketh of shie coloured cloth, towed amaine, and made way with diligence. And bring come neere to Greenwich, (where the Court then lay) together, standing very thicke upon the shoare: the yuile Counsel, they lookt out at the windowes of the Court, and the rest ranne up to the toppes of the towers: the shippes hereupon discharge their Ordnance, and shoot off their piers after the manner of warre, and of the sea, in so much that the tops of the hilles sounded therewith, the valleys and the water againe an Echo, and the Mariners, they shouted in such sort, that the Chie rang againe with the noyse thereof. One doode in the poope of the ship, and by his gesture bids fare well to his friendes in the best manner he could. Another walks upon the hatches, another climbs the shrouds, another stans upon the maine yard, and another in the top of the shippe. To be short, it was a very triumph (as it were a sort) in all respects to the beholders. But (alas) the good King Edward (in respect of this shewe, and not long after the departure of these ships, the lamentable and most sorrowfull accident of his death followed.

But to proceede in the matter.

The shippes going downe with the tyde came at last to Woolwich, where they stayed and cast ancre, with purpose to depart thence againe, as soone as the turning of the water, and a better winde should drawe them to set saile. After this they departed and came to Harwich, in which port they stayed long, not without great losse and consuming of time: yet at the last with a good winde they boyled up saile, and committed themselves to the sea, gining their last adieu to their native Countrey, which they knewe not whether they should ever returne to see againe or no. Many of them looked oftentimes backe, and could not refrain from teares, considering into what hazards they were to fall, and what uncertainties of the sea they were to make

Amongst the rest, Richard Chanceler the Captaine of the Edward Bonaventure, was not a little grieved with the feare of wanting victuals, part whereof was found to be corrupt and putrified at Harwich, and the hoggesheads of wine also leaked, and were not stanch: his naturall and fatherly affection also somewhat troubled him, for he left behinde him his two little sonnes, who him to care, being in the former respects after a sort unhappie, and were to abide with him, with the multiplicitie of sorowes and cares, after many dayes sapling, they kenneled land astare off, wherunto the Wilers directed the ships: and being come to it, they kenneled land astare towards the North, they espied certaine other Islands, which were called the Croffe of Islands, from which places when they were a litle departed, Sir Hugh Willoughby the General, a man of good foresight and providence in all his actions, erected and set out his flagge, by which he called together the chiefeest men of the other shippes, that by the helpe and assistance of their counsell the order of the gouernement, and conduction of the shippes in the whole voyage might be the better: who being come together accordingly, they conclude and agree, that if any great tempest should arise at any time, and happen to disperse and scatter them, euery shippe should indeuor his best to goe to Harboure, a haven or castell of some name in the kingdome of Norway, and that they that arrived there first in safetie should stay and expect the coming of the rest.

The very same day in the afternoone, about foure of the clocke, so great a tempest suddenly rose, and the seas were so outrageous, that the ships could not keepe their intended course, but some were perforce diuen one way, and some another way, to their great perill and hazard. The generall with his lowdest voyce cried out to Richard Chanceler, and earnestly requested him not to goe farre from him: but hee neither would nor could keepe companie with him, if hee knewe not by what means bearing all his saile, was caried away with so great force and swiftnesse, that not long after hee was quite out of sight, and the third ship also with the same rage and like rage was disperseed and lost.

The third boate of the Bonaventure (striking against the shippe,) was overwhelmed in the rage and violence of the storme: and as for them that are already returned, they knowe nothing of the rest of the ships what was become of them. But it is to be so, that any miserable mishap haue overtaken them, At the rage and furie of the

They returns
the next morn-
ing
the Bonaventure
was
the
other 2. shippes.

Sea haue deuoured those good men, or if as yet they liue, and wander vp and downe in strange Countreys, I must needs say they were men worthy of better fortune, and if they be liuing, let vs with them safetie and a good returne: but if the crueltie of death hath taken hoide of them, God send them a Chyistian graue and Sepulchre.

Nowe Richard Chancellor with his shippe and company being thus left alone, and become very pensiue, heauie, and sorrowfull, by this dispersion of the Fleet, hee (according to the order before taken,) shapeth his course for Wardhouse in Norway, there to expect and abide the arrivall of the rest of the shippes. And being come thither, and hauing stayed there the space of 7. dayes, and looked in vaine for their coming, hee determined at length to proceede alone in the purposed voyage. And as hee was preparing himselfe to depart, it happened that hee fell in company and speech with certaine Scottisshmen: who hauing vnderstanding of his intention, and wishing well to his actions, beganne earnestly to dissuade him from the further prosecution of the discoverie, by amplifying the dangers which hee was to fall into, and omitted no reason that might serue to that purpose. But hee holding nothing so ignominious and reprochfull, as inconstancie and leuitie of minde, and perswading himselfe that a man of valour coude not commit a more dishonourable part then for feare of danger to auyde and shunne great attempts, was nothing at all changed or discouraged with the speeches and wordes of the Scots, remaining steadfast and immuable in his first resolution: determining either to bring that passe which was intended, or els to die the death.

And as for them which were with Master Chancellor in his shippe, although they had great cause of discomfort by the losse of their companie (whom the foresaid tempest had separated from them,) and were not a litle troubled with cogitations and perturbations of minde, in respect of their doubtfull course: yet notwithstanding, they were of such consense and agreement of minde with Master Chancellor, that they were resolute, and prepared vnder his direction and gouernement, to make ppoofe and triall of all aduentures, without all feare or mistrust of future dangers. Which constancie of minde in all the companie did exceedingly increase their Couraiges carefulnesse: for hee being swallowed vp with like good will and loue towards them, feared lest through any error of his, the safetie of the companie should be endangered. To conclude, when they sawe their desire and hope of the arrivall of the rest of the shippes to be wearyd by more and more frustrated, they promised to sea againe, and Master Chancellor held on his course towards that unknown part of the world, and sailed so farre, that hee came at last to the place where hee found no night at all, but a continuall light and brightnesse of the Sunne shining clearely vpon the huge and mightie Sea. And hauing the benefite of this perpetuall light for certaine dayes, at the length it pleased God to bring them into a certaine great Bay, which was of one hundred miles or thereabout ouer. Whereinto they entred, and somewhat farre within it cast anchor, and looking euery way about them, it happened that they espied a farrre off a certaine shier boate, which Master Chancellor, accompanied with a fewe of his men, went towards to common with the fishermen that were in it, and to knowe of them what Countrey it was, and what people, and of what manner of liuing they were: but they being enuayed with the strange greatnesse of his shippe, (for in those partes before that time they had neuer seene the like) beganne presently to auyde and to flee: but hee still following them at last ouertooke them, and being come to them, they (being in great feare, as men halfe dead) prostrated themselves before him, offering to kisse his feete: but hee (according to his great and singular clemencie,) looked piteously vpon them, comforting them by signes and gestures, retelling their vnties and reuerences of others, and taking them vp in all louing sort from the ground. And is strange to consider howe much fauour afterwards in that place, this humanitie of his did purchase to himselfe. For they being dismissed spread by and by a report abroad of the arrivall of a strange nation, of a singular gentleness and courtesie: whereupon the common people came together offering to these newe-come ghests victuals freely, and not refusing to traffique with them, except they had bene bound by a certaine religious vie and custome, not to buy any by-reine commodities, without the knowledge and consent of the king.

By this time our men had learned that this Countrey was called Russia, or Moscouie, and that Iuan Vasiluich (which was at that time their Kings name) ruled and gouerned same, and vnde in those places. And the barbarous Russes asked likewise of our men whence they were, and what they came for: whereunto answere was made, that they were Englishmen sent from the most excellent King Edward the first, hauing the more him in care to procure certaine things to deliuer to their King, and seeking nothing els but his iustitie and felicity, and traffique with his people, where by they doubted not, but that great commodities would grow to the Subjects of both kingdomes.

They arrive
in the Bay of
White Sea
spies,

They discoverie
of Russia.

Richa

The
acquaint
In the
that place
wise for the
answered
things as th
of victuals.
Howe w
to certifie hi
them. Altho
them to come
it not best fo
them: and su
heare the wh
ferred the mat
sent of all the
dome compelle
the time, untill
pleasure.

But Master
ration, and th
ry instant with
that hee would
they knew not
such wares and
with all things w
Master Chancel
in her had the use
ried themselves v
knowing any oth
congealed in the
horrible, whereof
But nowe they
man (of whom I
by some ill happe
of the Tartars, th
one of his way, at
the way. To whom
with all counsell
was giuen, that pol
money. Which thin
began to quarrell
their post boxes to
the sic courney, (fo
came at last to Mos
and of the Emperou
diap more at large

Of

Moscouie, which
Mity, entry way
passed with Tartaria
part higher the Lappia
known to any other
then Limonia, and had
and great rivers in it, at

Richard Chanceler. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

247

The Barbarians heard these things very gladly, and promised their aide and furtherance to acquainte their king out of hand with so honest and a reasonable request.

In the meane time *Passer* Chanceler intreated victuals for his money of the gouernour of that place (who together with others came aboord him) and required hostages of them likewise for the more assurance of safetie to himselfe and his company. To whom the Gouernours answered, that they knewe not in that case the will of their king, but yet were willing in such things as they might lawfully doe, to pleasure him: which was as then to allow him the benefit of victuals.

Nowe while these things were a doing, they secretly sent a messenger vnto the Emperour, to certifie him of the arrivall of a strange nation, and withall to knowe his pleasure concerning them. Which message was very welcome vnto him, inso much that voluntarily hee invited them to come to his Court. But if by reason of the tediousnesse of so long a Iourney, they thought it not best so to doe, then hee granted libertie to his Subjects to bargain, and to traffique with them: and further promised, that if it would please them to come to him, hee himselfe would beare the whole charges of post horses. In the meane time the gouernours of the place deferred the matter from day to day, pretending diuers excuses, and saying one while that the commandement of all the gouernours, and another while, that the great and weightie affaires of the kingdom compelled them to differ their answer: and this they did of purpose, so long to protract the time, untill the messenger (sent before to the king) did returne with relation of his will and pleasure.

But *Passer* Chanceler, (seeing himselfe held in this suspense with long and vaine expectation, and thinking that of intention to delude him, they posted the matter off so often,) was very instant with them to performe their promise: Which if they would not doe, hee tolde them that hee would depart and proceede in his voyage. So that the Moscouites (although as yet they knewe not the minde of their king) yet fearing the departure in deede of our men who had such wares and commodities as they greatly desired, they at last reserued to furnish our people with all things necessarie, and to conduct them by land to the presence of their king. And so *Passer* Chanceler beganne his Iourney, which was very long and most excruciating, where hee had the use of certaine sleds, which in that Countrey are very common, for they are carried themselves vpon sleds, and all their carriages are in the same sort, the people almost not knowing any other manner of carriage, the cause whereof is the exceeding hardnesse of the ground congealed in the winter time by the force of the colde, which in those places is very extreme and horrible, whereof hereafter we will say something.

But nowe they hauing passed the greater part of their Iourney, mette at last with the *Sledeman* (of whom I spake before) sent to the king secretly from the Iustices or gouernours, who by some ill happe had lost his way, and had gone to the Sea shore, which is neere to the Countrey of the Tartars, thinking there to haue found our ship. But hauing long erred and wandered out of his way, at the last in his direct returne, hee met (as hee was coming) our Captaine on the way. To whom hee by and by deliuered the Emperours letters, which were written to him with all counsaile and in the most loving manner that could be: wherein expresse commandement was giuen, that post horses should bee gotten for him and the rest of his company without any money. Which thing was of all the Russes in the rest of their Iourney so willingly done, that they began to quarrell, yea, and to fight also in striving and contending which of them should put their post horses to the sledde: so that after much adoe and great paines taken in this long and tedious Iourney, (for they had trauailed very neere fiftene hundred miles) *Passer* Chanceler came at last to Moscou the chiefe citie of the kingdom, and the seate of the king: of which citie, and of the Emperour himselfe, and of the principall cities of Moscouie, we will speake more fully hereafter at large in this discourse.

The Emperours letters to *P. Chanceler*.

Of Moscouie, which is also called Rufsia.

Moscouie, which hath the name also of Rufsia the white, is a very large and spacious Countrey, euerie way bounded with diuers nations. Towards the South and the East, it is compassed with Tartaria: the Northward of it stretcheth to the Scythian Ocean: vpon the West side lieth the Lappians, a cold and Savage nation, living in woods, whose language is not knowne to any other people: Northward, more towards the South, lieth Finlandia, and last of all Laponia. This Countrey of Moscouie, hath also very many and great rivers in it, and is divided into many places: and as for the rivers, the greatest

and

and most famous amongst all the rest, is that, which the Russes in their owne tongue call Volga, but others know it by the name of Rha. Next unto it in fame is Tanais, which they call Don, and the third Boristhenes which at this day they call Neper. Two of these, to wit, Rha, and Boristhenes pissing both out of one fountaine, runne very farre through the land: Rha receiving many other pleasant rivers into it, & running from the very head of spring of it towards the East, after many crooked turnings and windings, discharges it selfe, and all the other waters and rivers that fall into it by divers passages into the Caspian Sea. Tanais springing from a fountaine of great name in those partes, and growing great neere to his head, spreads it selfe at length very largely, and makes a great lake: and then growing narrowe againe, doth so runne for certaine miles, untill it fall into another lake, which they call Iuan: and thence fetching a very crooked course, comes very neere to the river Volga: but disdaining as it were the company of any other river, doth there turne it selfe againe from Volga, and runnes toward the South, and falls at last into the Lake of Mootis. Boristhenes, which comes from the same head that Rha doth, (as wee sayde before) carrieth both it selfe, and other waters that are neere unto it, towards the South, not refusing the mixture of other small rivers: and running by many great and large Countreys falls at last into Pontus Euxinus. Besides these rivers, are also in Moscouie certaine lakes, and pooles, the lakes breedeth fish by the celestiall influence: and amongst them all, the chiefest and most principall is called Bealozers, which is very famous by reason of a very strong towpe built in it, wherein the kings of Moscouie reserve and repose their creature in all time of warre and danger.

The mightie
lake of Beal-
ozers.

Touching the Riphean mountaines, whereupon the snow lieth continually, and where hence in times past it was thought that Tanais the river did spring, and that the rest of the borders of nature, which the Grecians fained and invented of olde, were there to be seene: our men which lately came from thence, neither sawe them, nor yet have brought home any perfect relation of them, although they remained there for the space of three moneths, and had gotten in that time some intelligence of the language of Moscouie. The whole Countrey is plaine and champion, and few hills in it: and towards the North it hath very large & spacious woods, wherein is great store of fire trees, a wood very necessarie, and fit for the building of houses: there are also wilde beastes hyed in those woods, as Buffes, Beares, and blacke Molues, and another kinde of beest unknowne to us, but called by them Rosomakka: and the nature of the same is very rare and wonderfull: for when it is great with yong, and ready to bring forth, it seeketh out some narrow place betwene two lakes, and so going through them, yesteth it selfe, and by that means is eased of her burden, which other wise could not be done. They hunt these buffes for the most part a horse backe, but their Beares a foot, with wooden forks. The north parts of the Countrey are reported to be so cold, that the very ice of water which will melt out of the moist wood which they lay upon the fire is presently congealed and frozen: the diversitie growing suddenly to be so great, that in one and the selfe same firebrand, a man shall see both fire and ice. When the winters doth once begin there it doth still moze & moze increase by a perpetuallie of cold: neither doth the colde slake, untill the force of the Sunne beames doth dissolve the cold, and make glad the earth, returning to it againe. Our mariners which we left in the ship in the meane time to keepe it, in their going by onely from their cabins to the hatches, had their breath oftentimes so suddenly taken away, that they elsowes fell downe as men very neere dead, so great is the sharpnesse of that colde climate: but as for the South parts of the Countrey, they are somewhat moze temperate.

The sharpnes
of the winter
in Moscouie.

Of Mosco the chiefe Citie of the kingdome, and of the Emperour thereof.

It remaineth that a larger discourse be made of Mosco, the principall Citie of that Countrey, and of the Prince also, as before we have promised. The Empire and government of the king is very large, and his wealth at this time exceeding great. And because the citie of Mosco is the chiefest of all the rest, it seemeth of it selfe to challenge the first place in this discourse. Our men say, that in bignesse it is as great as the Citie of London, with the suburbs thereof. There are many and great buildings in it, but so farre beaute and splendore, nothing comparable to ours. There are many Townes and Villages also, but built out of order, and with no handiwork: their streets and wayes are not paved with stone as ours are: the walls of their houses are of wood: the roofes for the most part are covered with shingle boozes. There is hard by the Citie a very faire Castle, strong, and furnished with artillery, wherunto the Citie is joyntly directed

The manner
of building.

to wards the
are in bea
other doe
ving toward
In the C
vnhansome,
a Patricke
dwelt within
foyme it is fi
elegancie of
some of them
Princes are d
build and loyn
in all phtue
Some after
ger sent unto
their long stay,
Court, there is
paresse in clo
ber of presen
lost, in a very
with a robe all
with precious st
in his countena
his chiefe Secre
so in cloth of gol
soy araped, and o
perour, and of the
cramme: but not
and do his duetie
the letters of our
a litle to question
swered him direct
by the chiefe Secre
red: and so the En
going into the chan
there the space of
they goe, and being
they kinde the Empr
with another Diade
midnes of the room
so a round boord, in
rolve, and euery
placed the Emperour
able to sustaine the
of very fine gold: and
did adorne the rest of
them at the least five
not much differing fr
dyinke: on each side
very cleane cable clothe
were filled with the aff
with rich shinnies which
takes up by and on kni
that are in speciall fauor
dare from him: and befo
ancient custome of the
vins, with a tow upon
Moscouie, and chiefe En

call Volga,
call Don, and
and Boritthe.
receiving many
the East, after
and rivers
a fountaine of
at length very
for certaine
a very croo-
company of app
mouth, and fals
head that Rha
neere Vniou,
ing by many
uers, are al-
all influence:
which is very
couie refectio

where hence
the borders of
at men which
er relation of
in that time
and champion,
er in is great
are also with
kinde of best
very rare and
our some nar-
that means
the most part
Country are
to which they
denly to be lo-
en the winter
ther both the
had the earth,
to keepe it, in
so suddenly
harpenesse
at more tow

of

the Country,
at of the king
Moscow is the
Due may say,
here are no
ours, that
misse: that
ouises are at
by the Cite
ned directly
towards

towards the North, with a hycke wall: the walles also of the Castele are built with hycke, and are in breadth of thickenesse eighteen footes. This Castele hath on the one side a hycke ditch, on the other side the river Moscua, whereby it is made almost impregnable. The same Moscua trending towards the East doth aduente into it the companie of the river Occa.

In the Castele aforesaide, there are in number nine Churches, of Chappels, not altogether vnparsonage, which are vnder kept by certayne religious men, ouer whom there is after a sorte, a Patriarch, or Gouernour, and with him other reuerend Fathers, all which for the greater part, dwell within the Castele. As for the Kings Court and Palace, it is not of the neatest, onely in elegance of the houses of the Kings of England. The windowes are very narrowly built, and some of them by glasse, some other by lattices admit the light: and whereas the Palaces of our Printers are decked, and adorne with hangings of cloth of gold, there is none such there: they build and loyne to all their walls benches, and that not onely in the Court of the Emperour, but in all private mens houses.

Some after that they had remained about twelue dayes in the Cite, there was then a Messenger sent vnto them, to bring them to the Kings house: and they being after a sorte wearied with their long stay, were very ready, and willing so to doe: and being entered within the gates of the Court, there sate a very honorable companie of Courtiers, to the number of one hundred, all apparelled in cloth of golde, downe to their anckles: and there-hence being conducted into the chamber of presence, our men began to wonder at the Paletie of the Emperour: his seate was a loft, in a very toppall thron, hauing on his head a Diademe, or Crowne of golde, apparelled with a robe all of Goldsmiths worke, and in his hand he held a Scepter garnished, and beset with precious stones: and besides all other notes and apparances of honour, there was a Paletie in his countenance proportionable with the excellencie of his estate: on the one side of him stood his chiefe Secretarie, on the other side, the great Commander of silence, both of them arayed so in cloth of golde: and then there sate the Counsel of one hundred and fiftie in number, all in like sort arayed, and of great state. This so honorable an assemblie, so great a Paletie of the Emperour, and of the place might very well haue amazed our men, and haue dashed them out of countenance: but notwithstanding Master Chanceler being therewithall nothing dismayed saluted, and did his dutie to the Emperour, after the manner of England, and withall, deliuered vnto him the letters of our king, Edward the first. The Emperour hauing taken, & read the letters, began a litle to question with them, and to aske them of the welfare of our kings whereunto our men answered him directly, & in few wordes: hereupon our men presented some thing to the Emperour, by the chiefe Secretarie, which at the deliuey of it, put of his hat, being before all the time coming: and so the Emperour hauing inuited them to dinner, dismissed them from his presence: and going into the chamber of him that was Master of the Requests to the Emperour, & hauing stayed there the space of two howres, at the last, the Messenger commeth, and called them to dinner: they kinde the Emperour sitting vpon an high and stately seate, apparelled with a robe of siluer, and with another Diademe on his head: our men being placed ouer against him, sit downe: in the midde of the roome stood a mighty Cupboord vpon a square foot, whereupon stood a round boord, in manner of a Diamond, boarde beneath, and towards the topp narrowe, and euery steppe rose vpon more narrowe then another. Upon this Cupboorde was placed the Emperours plate, which was so much, that the very Cupboord it selfe was scarce able to sustaine the weight of it: the better part of all the vessels, and goblets, was made of very fine gold: and amongst the rest, there were foure pots of very large bignesse, which did adorne the rest of the place in great measure: for they were so high, that they thought them at the least foure footes long. There were also vpon this Cupboord certayne silver caskes, which were filled with the assemblie present: the ghesse were all apparelled with linnen without, and with rich skinner within, and so did notably see out this toppall feast. The Emperour, when hee takes any bread or knife in his hand, doth first of all crosse himselfe vpon his forehead: they are in speciall fauour with the Emperour sit vpon the same bench with him, but somewhat more from him: and before the comming in of the meate, the Emperour himselfe, according to an ancient custome of the Kings of Moscous, doth first bestow a peece of bread vpon euery one of his Counsellors, with a short pronounciation of his title, and honour, in this manner: The great Duke of Moscou, and chiefe Emperour of Russia, Iohn Basiluich (so then the officer nameth the ghesse)

King Ch.
ward letters
deliuered.

with

both giue thee bread. Whereupon al the ghefts rise vp, and by 3 by sit downe againe. This done, the Gentleman Usher of the Hall comes in, with a notable company of seruants, carrying the dishes, and hauing done his reuerence to the Emperour, puts a yong woman in a golden place vpon the table, and immediatly takes it thence againe, deliuering it to the Carver, and serueth other of his fellows, to be cut vp: which being perfourmed, the meate is then distributed to the ghefts, with the like pompe, and ceremonies. In the meane time, the Gentleman Usher receiues his bread, and casteth to the Emperour, and afterward, hauing done his reuerence, he departeth. Touching the rest of the dishes, because they were brought in out of order, our men can reposit no certaintie: but this is true, that all the furniture of dishes, and drinking vessels, which were then for the vse of a hundred ghefts, was all of pure golde, and the tables were so laden with vessels of gold, that there was no roome for some to stand vpon them.

We may not forget, that there were 40. seruitors arrayed in cloth of gold, that in the dinner time, changed thise their habite and apparill, which seruitors are in like sort serued with bread from the Emperour, as the rest of the ghefts. Last of all, dinner being ended, and candles brought in, (for by this time night was come) the Emperour collecteth all his ghefts and Noble men by their names, in such sort, that it seemes miraculous, that a Prince, otherwise occupied in great matters of estate, should so well remember so many and sundry particular names. The Russes tolde our men, that the reason thereof, as also of the bestowing of bread in that manner, was to the ende that the Emperour might keepe the knowledge of his owne household: and withal, that such as are under his displeasure, might by this meanes be knowne.

Of the discipline of warre among the Russes.

Whensoever the iniures of their neighbours doe call the King forth to battell, hee neuer armeth a lesse number against the enemy, then 300. thousand soldiers, 100. thousand whereof bee carrieth out into the field with him, and leaueth the rest in garrison in some fit place, for the better safetie of his Empire. He presseth no husbandman, nor Marchant for the Country is so populous, that these being left at home, the youth of the Realme is sufficient for all his wars. As many as goe out to warfare doe prouide all things of their owne cost: they fight not on foot, but altogether on horsebacke: their armour is a coate of maille, & a helmet: the coate of maille wher is gilded, or els adorned with silke, although it pertaine to a common soldier: they haue a great paye in shewing their wealth: they vse bowes, and arrowes, as the Turks do: they carry lances also into the field. They ride with a short stirrop, after the manner of the Turks: They are a kinde of people most sparing in diet, and most patient in extremitie of cold, aboue all others. For when the ground is couered with snowe, and is growen terrible and hard with the frost, this Russe hangs vpon his mantle, or souldiers coate, against that part from whence the winde and Snowe driues, and so making a little fire, lieth downe with his backe towards the weather: this mantle of his serues him for his bed, wall, house and all: his drinke is colde water of the river, mingled with oatermeale, and this is all his good cheere, and he thinketh himselfe well, and daintily free there with, and so stretcheth downe by his fire, and vpon the hard ground, resteth as it were his wearie bones thus daintily Russed: the hard ground to his leather bed, & some blocke or stone for pillow: and as for his horse, he is as it were a chamberfellow with his master, sitting both alike. How iustly may this barbarous, and rude Russe condemne the daintinesse and nicenesse of our Captaines, who liuing in a soile & aire much more temperate, yet commonly vse furred beds, and clokes: But this much of the furniture of their common souldiers. But those that are of higher degrees come into the field a little better prouided. As for the furniture of the Emperour himselfe, it is then aboue all other times, most notable. The coverings of his tent for the most part, are all of gold, adorned with stones of great price, and with the curious workmanship of plumassers. So often as they are to skirmish with the enemy, they goe forth without any order at all: they make no wings, nor militarie diuisions of their men, as we doe, but lying for the most part, in ambush, doe suddenly set vpon the enemy. Their horses can well abstaine two whole daies from any meate. They feede vpon the barks of trees, and the most tender branches, in all the time of warre. And this scant and miserable manner of liuing, both the horse and his Master can well endure, sometimes for the space of two moneths, lustie, and in good state of body. If any man behaue himselfe valiantly in the feld, to the contentation of the Emperour, he bestoweth vpon him in recompense of his seruice, some farme, or so much ground as he and his may liue vpon, which notwithstanding after his death, returneth againe to the Emperour, if he die without a male issue. For although his daughters be neuer so many, yet no part of that inheritance comes to them, except peraduenture the Emperour of his goodnesse, giue some portion of the land amongst

Ri

among
war
dies
maine
they die
if there
back for
Court
instant
ern toge
dren and
demene
that white
hand, bet
is sent to
for vpon
their pite

The M
serving in
parties with
of silke, and
pings of the
has also with
weariness
the Molcouie

Not bene
it be in
cell parte Co
yet the common
whereto it is
volume exceeds al
ware. The Fler
the like ill deati
they earnestly
armall of our m
them for pirates
were knowne of
the Emperour be
false suggestions

Yerlaue also
which is per
other places haue
between them
moving it towards
warper felds, going
miles to Mosco, to
well in the feld
is being up, it nee
sh, shames, and his

gaine. This done,
carrying the
in a golden platter
carner, and seven
distributed to the
an other receives
nce, he departeth
ur men can repose
sels, which were
were so laden with

that in the dinner
served with beem
to candles brought
and Noble men
occupied in great
men. The Rudes
manner, was to the
to withal, that such

es.

battell, hee neuer
ro, 100. thousand
in some fit place,
for the Countrey
for all his wars,
sight not on foot,
that of matter doe
they haue a great
they are a kind
others. For when
frost, this Russe
inde and Noble
ther: this made
the river, mingling
and dauntly seue
as it were he
locke or stone he
faring both alike.
ricenesse of our
use furred boots,
e those that are
of the Emperours
ene for the most
two hundred
about any order
ping for the most
taine two whole
er branches, in all
se and his spall
of body. If any
our, he bestoweth
his may live up
he die without
importance com
tion of the land
among

Richard Chanceler. Traffiques, and Discou.

251

amongst them, to bestowe them withall. As for the man, whosoever he be, that is in this sojourn
warded by the Emperours liberalitie, hee is bound in a great summe, to maintaine so many soul-
dren for the warre, when need shall require, as that land, in the opinion of the Emperour, is able to
maintaine. And all those, to whom any land falls by inheritance, are in no better condition: for if
they die without any male issue, all their lands fall into the hands of the Emperour. And moreover,
if there be any rich man amongst them, who in his owne person is unfit for the warres, and yet
hath such wealth, that thereby many Noble men and warriors might be maintained, if any of the
Courtiers present his name to the Emperour, the vnhappy man is by and by sent for, and in that
instant, depeived of all his riches, which with great paines and trauell all his life time he had got-
ten together: except perhaps some small portion thereof be left him, to maintaine his wife, chil-
dren and familie. But all this is done of all the people so willingly at the Emperours command-
ment, that a man would thinke, they rather make restitution of other mens goods, then giue
that which is their owne to other men. Nowe the Emperour hauing taken these goods into his
hands, bestoweth them among his Courtiers, according to their deserts: and the oftener that a man
is sent to the warres, the more fauour he thinketh is done to him by the Emperour, although he
goe upon his owne charge, as I said before. So great is the obedience of all men generally to
their Prince.

Of the Ambassadors of the Emperour of Moscouie.

The Moscouie, with no lesse pompe, and magnificence, then that which we haue spoken of,
sends his Ambassadors to foreign Princes, in the affaires of estate. For while our men were
dwelling in the Citie of Mosco, there were two Ambassadors sent to the King of Poland, accom-
panied with 500. notable horses, and the greater part of the men were armed in cloth of gold, and
of silke, and the most apparill was of garments of blew colour, to speake nothing of the trap-
pings of the horses, which were adorned with gold and siluer, and very curiously embrodered: they
had also with them one hundred white and faire spare horses, to vse them at such times, as any
wearienesse came vpon them. But now the time requireth me to speake briefly of other Cities of
the Moscouies, and of the wares and commodities that the Countrey yeeldeth.

Nouogorode.

NEXT vnto Mosco, the Citie of Nouogorode is reputed the chiefe of Russia: for although
it be in Spauie inferior to it, yet in greatness it goeth beyond it. It is the chiefe and grea-
test Port Towne of all Moscouie: and albeit the Emperours seate is not there, but at Mosco,
yet the commodiousnesse of the river, falling into that gulf, which is called Sinus Finnicus,
wherby it is well frequented by Marchants, makes it more famous then Mosco it selfe. This
towne receiues all the rest in the commodities of furs and hempe: it yeeldes also bees, honey, and
the like ill dealing there, which they did with us, they lost their pyramides, a restitution wherof
they earnestly sued for at the time that our men were there. But those Flemings hearing of the
actiual of our men in those parts, wrote their letters to the Emperour against them, accusing
them for pirates and robbers, wishing him to detain, and imprison them. Which things when they
were knowne of our men, they conceived feare, that they should neuer haue returned home. But
the Emperour beleewing rather the Kings letters, which our men brought, then the lying and
false suggestions of the Flemings, vied no ill intreatie towards them.

The intreaty
of the Flem-
ings against
our men.

Yeraslaue.

Yeraslaue also is a Towne of some good fame, for the commodities of bees, tallow, and coyne,
which it yeeldes in great abundance. Taken of wares are there also to bee sold, although
other places haue greater store: this Yeraslaue is distant from Mosco, about two hundred miles:
and betwixt them are many populous villages. Their fields yeeld such store of coyne, that in con-
spiring it towards Mosco, sometimes in a forenoone, a man shall see seven hundred or eight
hundred sleds, going and coming, laden with coyne and salt fish: the people come a thousand
miles to Mosco, to buy that coyne, and then carpe it away vpon sleds: and these are those people
that dwell in the North parts, where the cold is so terrible, that no coyne doth growe there, or
is springing up, it neuer comes to ripenesse. The commodities that they bring with them, are salt
fish, thimmes, and fides.

Vologda.

Vologda.

Vologda being from Mosco, 550. miles yeeldes the commodities of Pompe and Flaxe also: although the greatest part of Flaxe is sold at Novogrode.

Plesco.

The Towne of Plesco, is frequented of Merchants for the good store of Pompe and Flaxe that it yeeldeth.

Colmagro.

The North parts of Russia yeelde very rare and precious Skins: and amongst the rest, those principally, which we call Sables, woine about the necks of our Noble women and Ladies: it hath also Martins Skins, white, blacke, and red, Foxe Skins, Skins of Beares, and Ermys, and others, which they call and terme barbarously, as Beutrs, Stures, and Spinturs. The Sea aduoyning, breedes a certaine beast, which they call the Moss, which seeketh his foote upon the rocks, climbing by with the helpe of his teeth. The Russes vse to take them, for the great vertue that is in their teech, whereof they make as great accompt, as we doe of the Elephants tooth. These commodities they carry vpon Deeres backs to the towne of Lamps: and from thence to Colmagro, and there in the winter time, are kept great faires for the sale of them. This Citie of Colmagro, serues all the Countrey about it with salt, and salt fish. The Russes also of the North partes, send thither oyle, which they call traine, which they make in a mine called I Vria, although it be also made else where: and here they vse to boile the water of the sea, whereof they make very great store of salt.

[S], DUMA.

Of controuersies in Lawe, and how they are ended.

Having hitherto spoken so much of the chiefest Cities of Russia, as the matter required: it remaineth that we speake somewhat of the lawes, that the Moscovites doe vse, as farre forth as the same are come to our knowledge. If any controuersie arise among them, they first make their Landlords Judges in the matter, and if they cannot end it, then they pferre it to the Magistrate. The plaintiffe craveth of the said Magistrate, that he may haue leave to enter law against his aduersarie: and hauing obtained it, the officer fetcheth the defendane, and beateh him on the legges, till he be lying forth a suretie for him: but if he be not of such credite, as to procure a surety, then are his hands by an officer tied to his necke, and he is beaten all the way, till he come before the Judge. The Judge then asketh him (as for example in the matter of debt) whether he oweth any thing to the plaintife. If he denies it, then saith the Judge, How canst thou deny it: the defendane answereth, By an othe: thereupon the officer is commaunded to cease from beating of him, untill the matter be further tried. They haue no Lawyers, but every man is his owne Advocate, and both the plaintife and the accuser, and the answer of the defendane, as in manner of petition deliuered to the Emperour, increasing iudice at his hands. The Emperour himselfe heareth every great controuersie, and vpon the hearing of it, giueth iudgement, and that with great equitie, which I take to be a thing woorthy of speciall commendation in the Person of a Prince. But although he doe this with a good purpose of mind, yet the corrupt Magistrates do wonderfully peruert the same: but if the Emperour take them in any fault, he doth punish them most severely. Now at the last, when each partie hath defended his cause with his best reasons, the Judge demaundeth of the accuser, whether he hath any more to say for himselfe: he answereth, that he will trie the matter in fight by his Champion, or else increateh, that in fight betwix themselues the matter may be ended: which being graunted, they both fight it out: or if both of them, or either of them seeme unfit for that kinde of triall, then they haue publike Champions to be hired, which liue by reuing of quarrels. These Champions are armed with pyon axes, and speares, and fight on foot, and he whose Champion is ouercome, is by and by taken, and imprisoned, and terribly handled, untill he agree with his aduersarie. But if either of them be of any good calling, and degree, and doe challenge one another to fight, the Judge graunteh it in which case they may not vse publike Champions. And he that is of any good birth, doth commaunde the other, if he be basely bozne, and will not fight with him. If a poore man happen to grow in debt, his Creditors takes him, & maketh him pay the debt, in woording either to himselfe, or to some other man, whose wages he taketh by. And there are some among them, that vse willingly to make themselues, their wiues, and children

If any
for to
offend
third time
do not cu

The
in the
they do
without oth
no distinte
the most par
house doth sh
here oftentimes
or, woorth
doth nothing
and helo amo
again, not ca
spoken, to
in their owne
with leaured
prohibite no m
Obe and the y
they themselues
either Cellam
but in the time
themselues very
them knowes it
at the last very
secrete and holy
common people,
dements also are
they betterly resu
ignozant in them

Curry yeere
Saints: the first
amongst them the
fourth and last beg
begin theirs vpon
sailing Seaes doe
make they liue al
weakes, the last of
In the time of
another, and kil
concord: and then
seven dayes
Churches, or he
nothing but hear
imprancie of dy
they doe it very
these sailing
throughout the yeere,

Rich. Chancelour. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

253

open, bonollauen unto rich men, to haue a little money at the first into their hands, and so for ever after content themselves with meate and drinke: so little accompt doe they make of libertie.

Of punishments vpon theeuers.

If any man be taken vpon committing of theft, he is imprisoned, and often beaten, but not hanged for the first offence, as the manner is with vs: and thus they call the lawe of mercie. If the second time hath his nose cut off, and is burnt in the forehead with a hot yron. The third time, he is hanged. There are many curpurses among them, and if the rigour of the Prince do not cut them off, they could not be awayed.

Of their religion.

They maintaine the opinions of the Greeke Church: they suffer no graven images of Saints in their Churches, but their pictures painted in tables they haue in great abundance, which they do adore and offer unto, and burne waxe candles before them, and cast holy water vpon them, without other honour. They say that our images which are set up in Churches, and carued, haue no diuinitie in them. In their pyluace houses they haue images for their household Saints, and for the most part, they are put in the darkest place of the house: hee that comes into his neighbours house doth first salute his Saints, although he see them not. If any soojme of stoole stand in his way, hee oftentimes beatech his boy toe vpon the same, and often ducking downe with his head, and bowing, worshippeth the chiefe Image. The habite, and attire of the Priests, and of the Lay men, doth nothing at all differ: as for marriage, it is forbidden to no man: onely this is receiued againe, not take a second wife: and therefore they of secular states, as they call them, are made Monkes, to whom then chastitie for euer is commanded. The seruice is all done and said in their owne language, that euery man may vnderstand. The Masse seruice is all done and said with leaured bzead, and after the consecration, they carrie about the Church in a saucer, and prohibite no man from receiuing and taking of it, that is willing so to doe. They vse both the olde and the Newe Testament, and read both in their owne language, but so confusedly, that they themselves that doe read, vnderstand not what themselves doe say: and while any part of either Testament is read, there is libertie given by custome to praie, talke, and make a noise: but in the time of the rest of the seruice they vse very great silence and reuerence, and behaue themselves very modestly, and in good soyt. As touching the Lords praier, the tenth man amongst them knowes it not: and for the articles of our faith, and the ten commandments, no man, or at the least very fewe of them doe either know them or can say them: their opinion is, that such secret and holy things as they are shoulde not rashly and impudently be communicated with the common people. They holde for a Maxim amongst them, that the olde Lawe, and the commandments also are abolished by the deatch and blood of Christ: all studies and letters of humane science they utterly refuse: concerning the Latine, Greeke, and Hebrew tongues, they are altogether ignorant in them.

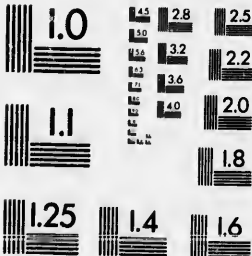
Euery yeere they celebrate foure severall fasten, which they call according to the names of the Saints: the first begins with them, at the time that our Lent begins. The second is called amongst them the fast of S. Peter. The third is taken from the day of the Virgin Marie. And the fourth and last begins vpon S. Philips day. But as we begin our Lent vpon Wednesday, so they begin theirs vpon the Sunday. Upon the Saturday they eat fleshy: whensoever any of those weekes they line altogether vpon white meates, and in their common language they call those weekes, the fast of Butter.

In the time of their fasts, the neighbours euery where goe from one to another, and visite one another, and kisse one another with kisses of peace, in token of their mutuall loue and Christian concord: and then also they doe moze often then at any other time goe to the holy Communion. When seven dayes are past, from the beginning of the fast, then they doe often either goe to their Churches, or keepe themselves at home, and vse often prayer: and for that seuen night they eat temperance of drinke, for they are not able to stop. As for the keeping of their fasting dayes, they doe it very strigently. neither doe they eat any thing besides hearbes, and salt fish, as long as those fasting dayes doe endure: but vpon euery Wednesday and Friday, in euery weeke throughout the yeere, they fast.



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 462 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 298 - 5989 - Fax

There are very many Monasteries of the order of S. Benedict, amongst them, to which many great livings, for their maintenance, doe belong: for the Priests and the Monks doe at the least possesse the third part of the livings, throughout the whole Moscovite Empire. To those Monks that are of this order, there is amongst them a perpetuall prohibition, that they may eate no fleshy: and therefore their meate is onely salt fish; milke, and butter: neither is it permitted them by the lawes, and customes of their religion, to eate any fresh fish at all: and at those foure fasting times, whereof we spake before, they eate no fish at all: onely they live with heartes, and cucumbers, which they doe continually for that purpose cause and take order to grow and syping, for their use and diet.

Note.

As for their drinke, it is very weake, and small. For the discharge of their office, they do every day say service, and that early in the mornings before day: and they doe in such sort, and with such observation begin their service, that they will be sure to make an ende of it, before day: and about nine of the clocke in the morning they celebrate the Communion. When they have so done, they goe to dinner, and after dinner they goe againe to service, and the like also after supper: and in the meane time while they are at dinner there is some exposition or interpretation of the Gospell.

Whencever any Abbot of any monastrie dieth, the Emperour taketh all his household stuffe, beastes, flocks of sheepe, golde, silver, and all that he hath: or els hee that is to succede him in his place and dignitie doth redeeme all those things, and buyeth them of the Emperour for money.

Their churches are built of timber, and the towers of their churches for the most part are covered with shingle boozes. At the boozes of their churches, they usually build some entrance or porch as we doe, and in their churchyardes they erect a certaine house of wood, wherein they lie by their beils, wherein sometimes they have but one, in some two, and in some also three.

There is one use and custome amongst them, which is strange and rare, but yet it is very ridiculous, and that is this: when any man dyeth amongst them, they take the dead body and put it in a coffine of chest, and in the hand of the corpse they put a little scroll, & in the same there are these wordes written, that the same man died a Russe of Russes, having received the faith, and died in the same. This writing of letter they say they send to S. Peter, who receiveth it (as they asseme) reades it, and by and by admits him into heaven, and that his glory and place is higher and greater then the glory of the Christians of the Latine church, reputing themselves to be followers of a more sincere faith and religion then they: they hold opinion that we are but halfe Christians, and themselves onely to be the true and perfect church: these are the foolish and childish dotages of such ignorant Barbarians.

Of the Moscovites that are Idolaters, dwelling

neere to *TARIAIA*.

Aurea vetula, of Zolotibaba,

There is a certaine part of Moscovie bordering upon the countreys of the Tartars, wherein those Moscovites that dwell are very great idolaters: they have one famous idole amongst them, which they call the Golden old wife: & they have a custome that whensoever any plague or any calamitie doth afflict the countrey, as hunger, warre, or such like, then they goe to consult with their idole, which they do after this manner: they fall down prostrate before the idole, & pray unto it, & put in the presence of the same, a cymbal: & about the same certaine persons stand, which are chosen amongst them by lot: upon their cymball they place a silver tobe, and sound the cymball, and to whomsoever of those chosen persons that tobe goeth, he is taken, and by and by slaine: and immediately, I know not by what illusions of the devill, or idole, he is againe restored to life, & then doth reveale and deliver the causes of the present calamitie. And by this meanes knowing how to pacifie the idole, they are delivered from the imminent danger.

Of the forme of their priuate houses, and of the apparell of the people.

The common houses of the countrey are every where built of beames of Firre tree: the lower beames doe so receive the round hotownesse of the uppermost, that by the meanes of the building thereupon, they resist, and expell all winds that blow, and where the timber is joined together, there they stop the chinks with moss. The forme & fashion of their houses in all places is foure square, with streit and narrow windowes, whereby with a transparent casement made of couered with skine like to parchment, they receive the light. The roofes of their houses are made of boozes couered without with y bark of trees: within their houses they have benches of grieys

The

grieys
the ble
either m
The a
rike of d
signe and
birth sup

creation ban

Th

Rezan, Poloz
denia, Comm
ring. Before
our most hea
stian faith, & g
honourable w
chard Chanc
of the twentie
by one Richa
and according
your Palestie
minions, and an
on the same to ha
declare the same
uant Hugh Will
married, as your
And we with
my honourable c
end unto us you
ance on our part
with us whereby
make their mark
through my whole
my let, damage o
commanded to b
le of Mosco, in th
This letter wa
ery faire writte
This seale was m
back in compl
in the Dutch to
These letters

em, to which many
hes doe at the least
To those Honkes
may ease no fleshy
minded them by the
oure fasting times,
and cucumbers,
pying, for their ble

office, they do enery
oye, and with such
oye day: and about
haue to done, they
supper: and in the
of the Gospel vnder
all his household
that is to succede
of the Emperour

the most part are co-
b some entrance of
o, wherein they sit
also three.

ed yet it is very ridi-
d body and put it in
ame there are these
e faith, and bled in
it (as they affirme)
s higher and great-
to be followers of a
lfe Christians, and
childish dotages of

ling

e Tartars, wherein
e tooles amongst
uer any plague of
goe to consult with
idol, & pray vnto it,
stand, which are the
the cymball, and im-
joyed to life: and im-
anes knowing how

f the

s of fire tree: the
at by the means of
the timber is iointed
out in all places
ent casement made
s of their houses are
they haue benches of
griets

The Emperors letter. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

255

griets hard by their wals, which commonly they sleepe vpon, for the common people knowe not
the vse of beens: they haue stoues wherein in the morning they make a fire, and the same fire doth
either moderately warme, or make very hote the whole house.

The apparell of the people for the most part is made of wooll, their caps are picked like vnto a
rike of diamond, broad beneath, and sharpe byward. In the manner of making whereof, there is a
signe and representation of nobilitie: for the loftier or higher their caps are, the greater is their
birth supposed to be, and the greater reuerence is giuen them by the common people.

The Conclusion to Queene Marie.

These are the things most excellent Queene, which your Subiects newly retur-
ned from Russia haue brought home concerning the state of that countrey: where-
fore if your maiestie shall be fauourable, and grant a continuance of the trauell,
there is no doubt but that the honour and renowne of your name will be spread a-
mongst those nations, whereunto these onely noble personages from the verie
creation haue had access, to whom no man hath bene comparable.

The copie of the Duke of Moscouie and Emperour of Russia his letters, sent to King Edward the sixt, by the hands of Richard Chancelour.

In the Almighty power of God, and the incomprehensible holy Trinitie, right-
full Christian belife, &c. Wee great Duke Iuan Vasiluich, by the grace of
God great lord and Emperour of all Russia, great Duke of Volodemer, Mos-
co, and Nouograd, King of Kazan, King of Astracan, lord of Plesko, and great
duke of Smolensko, of Tverria, Ioughoria, Permia, Vadska, Bulghoria, and
others, lord and great duke of Nouograd in the Low countrey, of Chernigo,
Rezan, Polotskoy, Rottoue, Yaruslaueley, Bealozera, Liefland, Oudoria, Obdoria, and Con-
dena, Commander of all Siberia, and of the North parts, and lord of many other countreies, gree-
ting. Before all, right great and worthy of honour Edward King of England &c. according to
our most hearty and good zeale, with good intent and friendly desire, & according to our holy Chri-
stian faith & great governance, & being in the light of great vnderstanding, our answere by this our
honourable writing vnto your kindly gouernance, at the request of your faithfull seruante Ri-
chard Chancelour, with his company, as they shall let you wisely know, is this. In the strength
of the twentieth yeere of our gouernance, be it known, that at our sea coastes arrived a shippe,
br yone Richard, and his company, and sayd, that hee was desirous to come into our dominions,
and according to his request, hath scene our Maiestie, and shew our eyes: and hath declared vnto vs
your Maiesties desire, as that we should grant vnto your subjects, to goe and come, and in our do-
minions, and among our subjects, to frequent free partes, with all sortes of marchandizes, and by-
on the same to haue wares for their returne. And they haue also desired vs your letters, which
declare the same request. And hereupon we haue giuen order, that whersoever your faithfull ser-
uant Hugh Willoughbie land or touch in our dominions, to be wel entertained, who as yet is not
arrived, as your seruant Richard can declare.

Iuan Vasiluich,
that is to say,
John the sonne
of Basilus.

That is, come
into our pre-
sence.

And we with Christian belife and faithfulness, and according to your honourable request, and
our honourable commandement will not leaue it vndone: and are furthermore willing that you
send vnto vs your ships and vessels, when and as often as they may haue passage, with good assu-
rance on our part to see them harmelesse. And if you send one of your maiesties counsel to create
with vs whereby your countrey marchants may with all kinds of wares, and where they will
make their market in our dominions, they shall haue their free partes with all free liberties
through my whole dominions with all kinde of wares to come and goe at their pleasure, without
my let, damage or impediment, according to this our letter, our word and our seale which we haue
commanded to be vnder seale, & written in our dominion, in our citie and our palace in the ca-
le of Mosco, in the yeare 7060, the second moneth of February.

This letter was written in the Moscouian tongue, in letters much like to the Greeke letters,
very faire written in paper, with a broad seale hanging at the same. Sealed in paper vpon ware,
this seale was much like the broad seale of England, hauing on the one side the image of a man on
his back in complete harness fighting with a dragon. Under this letter was another paper writ-
ten in the Dutch tongue, which was the interpretation of the other written in the Moscouian let-
ters. These letters were sent the next yeere after the date of king Edwards letters, 1554.

The coines, weights and measures vsed in *Russia*, written

by John Hassel, in the yere, 1554.



As much as it is most necessary for al marchants which seeke to haue traffique in any strange regions, first to acquaint theselues with the coines of those lands with which they do intend to loyne in traffique, and how they are called from the valuation of the highest piece to the lowest, and in what sort they make their payments, as also what their common weights and measures be: for these causes I haue thought good to write some thing thereof according to mine owne knowledge and experience, to the end that the marchants of that new aduenure may the better understand how the wealth of that new frequented trade will arise.

In coines of gold in Russia, but all of silver

First, it is to be noted that the Emperour of Russia hath no other coines then silver in all his land, which goeth for payment amongst marchants, yet notwithstanding there is a coine of copper, which serueth for the reliefe of the poore in Mosco, & no where els, and that is but only for quail, water and fruit, as nuts, apples, and such other like. The name of which money is called *Pole* or *Poles*, of which *Poles* there goe to the least of the silver coines, 18. But I will not stand upon this, because it is no currant money among marchants.

Of silver coines there be three sortes of pieces: the least is a *Poledenga*, the second a *Denga*, the third, *Nowgrote*, which is as much to say in English as halfe penie, penie, and two pence, and for other valued money then this, there is none: there are oftentimes there coines of gold, but they come out of forreign countreys, whereof there is no opinarie valuation, but they passe according to the agreement of marchants.

Their order in summing of money is this: as we say in England, halfe penie, penie, Shilling and pound, so say they *Poledenga*, *Denga*, *Aline* and *Rubble*: There goeth two *Poledengas* to a *Denga*, six *Dengas* to an *Aline*, and 23 *Alines*, and two *Dengas* to a *Rubble*.

The weights in Russia.

Concerning the weights of Russia they are these: There are two sortes of pounds in vse amongst them, the one great, & other small: the great pound is iust two small pounds: they call the great weight by the name of *Beasmar*, and the small they call the *Skalla* weight: with this final weight they weigh their silver coines, of the which the Emperour hath commanded to put in euery small pound three *Rubbles* of silver, and with the same weight they weigh Grocerie wares, and most al other wares which come into the land, except those which they weigh by the *Pode*, as pepper, salt, iron, lead, tinne & battie with diuers others, notwithstanding they vse to weigh battie more often by the small weight then by the great.

Whensoever you find the prices of your wares rated by the *Pode*, consider that to be the great weight, and the pound to be the small. Also they diuide the small pound into 48 parts, and they call the eight and fortieth part a *Siornike*, by the which *Siornike* the retailers sell their wares out of their shops, as Goldsmiths, Grocers, Silke sellers and such other like as we doe vse to retail by the ounce: and as for their great weight which they call the *Beasmar*, they sell by *pode*, or *shippond*. The *pode* both containe of the great weight, 40 pounds, and of the small 80: there goe 10 *podes* to a *shippond*.

Yet you must consider that their great weight is not full with ours: for I take not their great pound to be full 13 ounces, but about 12 I thinke it be. But for your iust proofe, weigh 6 *Rubbles* of Russia money with our pound weight, and then shal you see what it lacke: 6 *Rubbles* of Russia is by the Emperours standers, the great pound: so that I thinke it lacke 1/2 to make the iust weight, as well of the great pound as of the small.

The weight of Warbouse.

There is another weight needfull to be knownen, which is the weight of *Warbouse*, for in much as they weigh all their dyel stuff by weight, which weight is the *Beasmar*, as they of Russia doe vse, notwithstanding there is another sorte in it: the names of those weights are these: the marke pound, the great pound, the weie, and the *shippond*. The marke pound is to be vnderstood as our pound, and the great pound is 24 of their marke pound: the weie is 3 great pound, and the weie is a *shippond*.

The Russia measures.

Now concerning their measures. As they haue two sortes of weights, so they haue also two sortes of measures: wherewith they measure cloth both linnen and wollen: they call the one *Archine*, and the other a *Locus*: the *Archine* I take to bee as much as the Flanders ell, and their *Locus* halfe an English yard: with their *Archine* they may measure all such sortes of cloth as come into the land, and with the *Locus* all such cloth both linnen and wollen, as they make themselves. And whereas we vse to giue yard and inch, or yard and handfull, they do giue nothing but bare measure.

the hal
And as
neuer
March
of Dan

The
and Jew
and abou
the Rub
a certain

The

pulling
me by a
Rye, Po
Russia: w
whites w
pinnedge

To spee

a certaine
all the sorte
chers and
Seales, w

in: they ma
there carie
commeth fr
shalt they e
Liedanders.

The Fur

Letting, Grai
by the men of
are counted
merchans of
mogro carie
come from Pe

Four mee
opinion I tak
by great and g
as are called in
ware, but is cor

The towne

towns of Russi
mootie to it.
wonderfull, be
And for their w
meeteth by the r

should be to gre
men, which in
there in the *Alia*

himselfe of wares
other commoditie
other, it is by
charges of cariag

Our marchan
serie them of, as
little charge then
out of Flanders
mogrode, which is

The

reke to haue traffique
coines of those lands
are called from the
they make their pay-
ment for these causes
to mine owne know-
ledge may the better under-

then silver in all his
is a coine of copper,
is but only for quail-
money is called Rube-
I will not stand upon

the second a Denga,
and a Doyence, and
pieces of gold, but they
they passe according to

nie, penie, Milling and
two Polendengas in a
bubble,

pounds in vse amongst
they call the great
with this small weight
to put in euery "mall
coine it wares, and so
by the Podes, as they
to weigh their "mall

er that to be the great
parts, and they call
their wares out of
we doe vse to retaine
by sel by podes, of the
mall so: there goe 10

I take not their great
podes, weigh 6 Rub-
de" 6 Rubbles
reap to know

Warhouse, for
mar, as they of Rus-
weights are these: the
is to be understood
3 great pounds, and

so they haue also
in: they call the one
the Flanders: all
such sorts of clothes
as they make them
they do glue nothing

They haue also a measure wherewith they doe mete their coine, which they call a Setforth, and the half of that an Osmine: this Osmine I take take to be three bushels of London measure. And as for their other measure, they call it a Spanne, which is much like a bucket, and of that I haue heard wherewith they mete their cloth, there is no difference between that and the measure of Danke, which is halfe an English ell.

Concerning the customes of Russia, it was reported to me in Moscouia, that the Turkes and Armenians pay the great penie custom of all the wares they bring into the Emperours land, and about that they pay for all such goods as they weigh at the Emperours beame, two pence of the Rubble, which buyer or seller must make report of to the Master of the beanie: they also pay a certaine horse toll, which is in diuers places of his Realme foure pence of a horse.

The Dutch nation are free of this: notwithstanding for certaine offences, they had lost their privileges which they haue recovered this Summer: to their great charge. It was reported to me by a Justice of that countrey, that they paid for it thirtie thousand Rubbles, and also that Rye, Dorpe, and Reuel haue yielded themselves under the government of the Emperour of Russia: whether this was a baggage of the Russes or not, I know not, but thus he sayd, and in deed whilst we were there, there came a great Ambassadour out of Liefland, for the assurance of their privileges.

To speake somewhat of the commodities of this countrey, it is to be understood, that there is a certaine place foure score miles from the Sea called Colmogro: to which place there resorteth all the foxes of Wares that are in the North parts, as Dyles, Salt, Stockfish, Salmon, Feathers, and furs: their Salt they make of saltwater by the sea side: their Dyles they make of fish: they make it in the Spring of the yeere, and bring it to Colmogro to sell, and the merchants cometh from a place called Mallums, not farre from Warhouse: their Salmon and their Salt they carrie to Mosco, and their Dyle fish they carrie to Nouogrode, and sell it there to the Lieflanders.

The furs and Fethers which come to Colmogro, as Sables, Beavers, Sphinks, Armine, Lince, Grates, Wooluerings, and white furs, with Deere skinner, they are brought thither, by the men of Penninge, Lampas, and Powltzer, which fetch them from the Samodes, that are counted Savage people: and the merchants that bring these furs, doe vse to trucke with the merchants of Colmogro for Cloth, Tanne, Barrie, & such other like, and the merchants of Colmogro carrie them to Nouogrode, Vologda, or Mosco, & sell them there. The Fethers which come from Penninge they doe little esteeme.

If our merchants do desire to know the meetest place of Russia for the standing house, in mine opinion I take it to be Vologda, which is a great towne standing in the heart of Russia, with many great and good towne about it. There is great plentie of coine, victuals, and of all such wares as are raised in Russland, but specially, flaxe, hempe, tallow and bacon: there is also great store of wares, but is cometh from the Mosko.

The towne of Vologda is meetest for our marchants, because it lieth amongst all the best towne of Russia, and there is no towne in Russia but trades with it: also the water is a great comfort to it. If they plant themselves in Mosco or Nouogrode, their charge will be great and wonderfull, but not so in Vologda: for all things will there be had better cheape by the one half, and for their vent, I know no place so meet. It is likely that some will thinke of Mosko to be the meetest by the reason of the court, but by that reason I take it to be woofse: for the charge there would be so great by crannes and expenses, that the moitie of the profite would be wholly consumed there in the winter to serue the Emperour and his court. And yet notwithstanding our marchants may be themselves of wares and fables, which with good foresight may be procured to their hands: as for other commodities there are little or none in Moscouia, besides those aboue rehearsed: if there be other, it is brought thither by the Turkes, who will be daintie to buy our clothes considering the charges of carriage over land.

Our marchants may doe well to prouide for the Russes such wares as the Dutch nation doeth serue them of, as Flanders and Holland clothes, which I beleue, they shal serue better and with lesse charge then they of Rye, Dorpe, or Reuel: for it is no small aduenture to bring their clothes out of Flanders to either of these places, and their charge not litle to carie them ouer land to Nouogrode, which is from Rye nine hundred Russian miles.

The measure of Warhouse in cloth, is the measure of Danke.

The Turkes and Armenians pay custom.

The Emperours beame.

The Dutch nation lost their privileges, & renewed them with a great summe.

The commodities of Russia.

Vologda and the flaxe thereof.

The Emperour of Moscouie is a marchant himselfe.

This Nouogrode is a place wel furnished with flaxe, Ware, Hides, tallows and many other things: the best flaxe in Russia is brought thither and there sold by the hundred bundles, which is done also at Vologda, and they that bying the flaxe to Nouogrode, dwell as neere Vologda, as Nouogrode, and when they heare of the viterance which they may haue with our nation, they will as willingly come to them as goe to other.

Two fols of
Ruse.

They haue in Russia two sorts of flaxe, the one is called great flaxe, and the other small: that which they call great flaxe is better by foure rubbles in 100. bundles then the small: It is much longer then the other, and cleaner without wood: and whereas of the small flaxe there goe 27. or 28 bundles to a shippound, there goeth not of the greater sort about 2. or 2.4 at the most. There are many other trifles in Russia, as sope, mace, &c. but I thinke there will bee no great account made of them.

The letters of king *Philip* and Queene *Marie* to *Juan Vasiluich* the Emperour of *Russia* written the first of April 1555 and in the second voyage.



Hilip and Marie by the grace of God, King and Queene of England, France, Naples, Ierusalem, and Ireland, defenders of the faith, Princes of Spaine and Sicilie, Archdukes of Austria, Dukes of Burgundie, Millaine, and Brabant, Counties of Hespurge, Flanders, and Tiroll: To the right High, right High, and right excellent Prince, garnished with all gifts of nature, by Gods grace Iohn Vasiluich Emperour of all Russia, great Duke of Volodomer, Mosco, and Nouogrod, King of Cazan, King of Astracan, Lord of Plefco, and great Duke of Smolensko, of Tueria, Ioughoria, Permja, Vadska, Bulghoria, and others, Lord and great Duke of Nouogrod of the same Countrey, of Chernigo, Rezan, Polotskay, Rostone, Yerslaue, Bealozera, Liefland, Oudoria, Obdoria, and Condensa, Commander of all Siberia, and of the North partes, and lord of many other countreys, greeting. Whereas by the consent and licence of our most beare and emetrey beloved late brother, King Edward the first, whose soule God pardon, sundrie of our subiects marchants of the cite of London within this our realme of England did at their owne proper costs and aduenture furnish three shippes to discover, serch, and find lands, Islands, regions, and territories before this aduenture not knownen, commonly haunted and frequented by seas. The one of the which three shippes, named the Edward Bonaventure, (whereof our right welbeloued Richard Chancelour was then gouernour and great Captaine) chanced by the grace of God, and the good conduct of the sayd Chancelour to arrive and winter in the North part of your Empire of Russia. Forasmuch as we veridibly informed by the report of our trustie and welbeloued subiect, that your Highnesse did not only call him and certaine of his company to your imperiall presence and speech, enterdayned and banquetted them with all humanitie and gentleness: but also being thereunto requested partly by the letters of our said brother, & partly by request of the sayd Richard Chancelour, haue by your letters patents vnder your scale among other things granted: That all such marchants as shall come forth of any of our realmes of England or Ireland withal manner of wares, if they will travel, occupie within your dominions. The same marchants with their marchandise in al your lordship may freely, & at their libertie traualle out and in without hinderance of any manner of losse: And of your farther ample goodnesse haue promised that our ambassadours, if wee send any, shall with free good will passe to and from you without any hinderance of losse, with such mesage as shall come vnto you, and to returne the same to our kingdomes well answered, as by the same your letters, written in your lordly Palace and Castle of Mosco in the yere 7063 the moneth of Februarye more at large appeareth. Like as wee cannot but much commend your princely fauour and goodnesse, and in like manner thanke you for the abundant grace, extended to the sayd Richard Chancelour, and others our subiects marchants: Euen so these are to pray and request you to continue the same beneuolence toward them, and other our marchants and subiects, which doe or hereafter shall resort to your countrey: And for the more assurance and encouragement to trade and exercise the fease of marchandise with your subiects and all other marchants within your dominions, that it may please you at this our contemplation to assigne and authorise such Commissioners as you shall thinke meete to trade and conferre with our welbeloued subiects and marchants, the sayd Richard Chancelour, George Killingworth, & Richard Graie, bearers of these our letters: who are by us authorised for

for el
uerne
said in
gouern
this in
Chan
uolent
that th
right C
haue y
April, i
and fecu

Ar
M
e



ward Bon
and aduan
fence, or fo
either of the
ward in good
tame, which
cles of this c
2 Item,
by debt for n
and bind the l
for credits, an
3 Item fi
Richard Chan
the king and
exhibite the m
one of them to
be made to the
fects, accompi
whereunto rela
taining of the li
4 Item, cha
liuered to them
people of the cou
chants, & parne
buying and sellin
lathe neither of
them, ne per by a
and such other rit
either outward o
or common tranq
5 Item, that p
trade shall be four
your accustomed
none of the inferio
the Agents withou

low and many other
ed bundles, which is
neere Vologda, as
our nation, they will
the other small: the
small: It is much
flage there goe 27.02
at the most. There
be no great account

arie to Juan
st of April

England, France,
Spain, and
allaine, and Brabant,
High, right High
ature, by Gods grace
Vologdmer, Mosco,
great Duke of Smo-
s, Lozbe and great
ray, Rostoue, Yen-
ander of all Siberia,
Whereas by the com-
ward the first, whole
don within this com-
e shippes to dis-
ure not knowne, as
es, named the Ed-
as then gouernour
of the said Chancel-
much as we be no
Paletie did not con-
ch, entertained and
requested partly by
elour, haue by your
merchants as shall
es, if they will trans-
dices in al your way-
any manner of lesse:
s, if we send any
fle, with such mat-
all answered, as by
in the yere 7063
at much communi-
e abundant grace,
rephants: Then so
e them, and other
country: And for
merchandise with
please you at this
all thinke meete to
hard Chancelour,
are by us authorized
for

Articles for the Agents. Traffiques; & Discoueries.

259

for that purpose: and to confirme and graunt such other liberties and priuiledges vnto the Gouernour, Consuls, Assistants, and Communitie of the Fellowship of the said Merchant, as the said bearers in their name propone and require by you to be granted for their safe conduct, good this with such your clemencie and expedition, as wee, vpon the next arrivall of the said Richard Chancelour may bee enforced. Our gracious disposition and answer. Which your bene- volences so to be extended, wee be minded to require towards any your Subjects Merchants, that shal frequent this our realme at your contemplation therefore to be made. Thus right high, right Excellent, and right mightie, Almighty God the Father, the Sonne and the holy Ghost, haue you in his blessed keeping. Given vnder our Seale at our Palace of Westminster, the first of April, in the yere from the blessed incarnation of our Saviour Iesus Christ, 1555, and in the first and second yeres of our reignes.

Articles conceived and determined for the Commission of the Merchants of this company resident in Russia, and at the Warehouse, for the second voyage, 1555. the first of May, as followeth.



Item, the Gouernour, Consuls, Assistants and whole company assembled this day in open court, committeeth and authorizeth Richard Gray and George Kil- lingworth, jointly and severally to be Agents, Factors, and Attornies generall permutte al, and every kind and kindes of wares, marchandizes and goods to the said company appertaining, now laden & shipped in the good ship called the Ed- ward Bonaventure, appointed for Russia, the same to utter and sell to the best commoditie, profit and advantage of the said corporation, be it for ready money, wares & marchandises, or truck, pre- sently, or for time, as occasion & benefit of the company shal require: and all such wares as they or either of them shal buy, trucke, or prouide, or cause to be bought for the company to lade the home- ward in good order and condition, as by prudent course of marchandises, shall, and ought to apper- taine, which article extendeth also to John Brooke for the Warehouse, as in the 17. and 18. arti- cles of this commission appeareth.

2 Item, it is also committed, as above, to the said Agents, to binde & charge the said company by debt for wares vpon credit, as good opportunity and occasion shal serue, with power to charge and bind the said company, and their successors, for the payments of such things as shalbe taken vp for credit, and the said Agents to be relieved ab opere facis dandi.

3 Item full authoritie and power is committed to the said first named factors, together with Richard Chancelor grand Pilor of this flecte, to repaire to the Emperours court, there to present exhibite the marchantes presents at such time and place as shalbe thought most expedient, they, or one of them to demand, and humbly desire of the Emperour such further grants and priuiledges to be made to this company, as may be beneficiall for the same, to continue in traffike with his sub- iects, according to such instructions as bee in this behalfe deuised and deliuered to the Agents whereunto relation is to be had, and some one of these persons to attend vpon the court for the ob- taining of the same, as to their discretions shalbe thought good.

4 Item, that all the said Agents doe well consider, ponder and weigh such articles as bee de- liuered to them to know the natures, dispositions, lawes, customes, manners and behaviours of the people of the countreys where they shal traffike, as well of the Nobilitie as of the Lawyers, Mar- chants, Partners and common people, and to note diligently the subtilties of their bargaining, buying and selling, making as fewe debtes as possible may bee, and to be circumspect, that no lawe neither of religion nor politike bee broken or transgressed by them, or any minister vnder them, ne yet by any mariner or other person of our nation, and to forsee that all colles, customes, and such other rites be so duely paid, that no forfeiture or confiscation may ensue to our goods either outward or inward, and that al things passe with quiet, without breach of the publike peace or common tranquillitie of any of the places where they shal arrive or traffique.

5 Item, that prouision bee made in Mosco or elsewhere, in one or mo good townes, here good trade shall be found for a house or houses for the Agents, and companie to inhabite and dwell at your accustomed diets, with warehouse, sellers, and other houses of offices requisite, and that none of the inferiour ministers of what place or vocation soeuer he be, doe lie out of the house of the Agents without licence to be given, and that every inferiour officer shalbe obedient to the or- ders

doers, rules and governments of the said Agents, and in case any disobedient person shall be found among any of the m, then such person to be punished for his misbehaviour, at the discretion of the said Agents, of one of them in the absence of the other.

6 Item, if any person of the said ministers shall be of such pride, obstinacie, that after one or two honest admonitions, hee will not be reformed nor reconciled from his faultes, then the said Agents to displace every such person from the place or rounte to him here committed, and some other discreete person to occupie the same, as to the said Agents by their discretions shall seeme meete.

7 Item, if any person shall be found so arrogant, that he will not be ordered nor reformed by the said Agents or by one of them in the absence of the other, then the sayde person to be delivered to the Justice of the countrey, to receive such punishment, as the lawes of the countrey doe require.

8 Item, that the said Agents and factours shall daily one houre in the morning conferre and consult together what shall be most convenient and beneficiall for the companie, and such orders as they shall determine, to be written by the Secretaries of the companie in a booke to be provided for that purpose, and no inferiour person to infringe or breake any such order or devise, but to observe the same exactly, upon such reasonable paines as the Agents shall put him to by discretion.

9 Item, that the said Agents shall in the ende of everie weeke, or oftener as occasion shall require, peruse, see and trie, not onely the Cashiers, bookes, reckonings and accounts, signing the same with their handes, but also shall receive and take weekly the account of every other officer, as well of the Vender, as of the emptieus, and also of the state of the household expences, making thereof a perfect declaration as shall appertaine, the same accounts also to be signed by the said Agents handes.

10 Item, that no inferiour minister shall take upon him to make any bargain or sale of any wares, marchandises or goods, but by the Commission and Warrantie of the sayde Agents under their handes, and hee not to transgresse his Commission by any way, pretence or colour.

11 Item, that every inferiour minister, that is to understand, all Clerks and pong merchants being at the order of the said Agents, shall ride, goe, saile and traualle to all such place, and places, as they or hee shall be appointed unto by the said Agents, and effectually to follow and do all that which to him or them shall be committed, well and truly to the most benefite of the company, according to the charge to him or them committed, even as by their othes, duties and bonds of their masters they be bounden and charged to doe.

12 Item, that at every moneths end, all accounts and reckonings shall be brought into per. order, into the Ledger or memoriall, and the decrees, orders, and rules of the Agents together with the privileges, and copies of letters, map and shall be well and truly written by the Secretary, in such forme as shall be appointed for it, and that copies of all their doings may be sent home with the said ship at her returne.

13 Item, that all the Agents doe diligently learne and observe all kinde of wares, as well naturals as forein, that be beneficiall for this Realme, to be sold for the benefit of the company, and what kinde of our commodities and other things of these West partes be most vendible in these Realmes with profit, giving a perfect advise of all such things requisite.

14 Item, if the Emperour will enter into bargain with you for the whole masse of your stock, and will have the trade of it to venter to his owne subjects, then debating the matter prudently among your selves, set such high prices of your commodities, as you may assure your selves to be gainers in your owne wares, and yet to buy theirs at such base prices, as you may here also make a commoditie and gaine at home, having in your mindes the notable charges that the company have diffused in advancing this voyage: and the great charges that they sustaine daily in wages, victuals and other things: all which must be requited by the wise handling of this voyage, which being the first president shall be a perpetual profit for ever: and therefore all circumspection is to be used, and to reserve in this first enterprise, which God blesse and prosper under you, to his glorie, and the publique wealth of this Realme, whereof the Queenes Majestie, and the Lords of the Council have conceived great hope, whose expectations are not to be frustrated,

15 Item, it is to be had in minde, that you viz all waies and means possible to learne how men may passe from Russia, either by land or by sea to Cathaya, and what may be heard of our other ships, and to what knowledge you may come, by conferring with the learned or well travelled persons, either naturall or forein, such as have traualled from the North to the South.

16 Item, it is committed to the said Agents, that if they shall be certified credibly, that any

Note.

Inquire for the way to Cathaya.

Art

of our
that the
them, a
saries as
them as
uertill
with our
no less

17

that their
Marbo
bins pilot
be done th
captaine o
fish, by o
cloth, meal
time, or an
both the say
continuance in
ward in her
may amount
the returne
to England,
selues upon
terminated den
to be put in
betweene the

18

Item,
our Agents, h
good order to
dispositions
rather be trust
the fisher
kindes and diu
in calke.

19

Item, h
and not to suffe
counsel, and co
is in him, he to
ny, and to render
pamp to be quiet
ing as much as m
ought to apperte

20

Item, it is
as much wares a
red to be taken in
to be forseele and
but to come home
further advise for

21

Item, it is
ships, or either of
other of them shall
other shall serve, bu
their right discharge
whatsoever thing
for the same, and a
to take viewe, and c
the said bulke, or c
shall the we the

shall be found at the discretion of the

that after one is faulted, then the other is committed, and their discretions shall

not reformed by reason to be desired of the country doe

giving confesse and nie, and such orders a booke to be prepared of the use, but not him to by discre-

as occasion shall require, firming the every other officer, to expenses, making firm by the same

gaine or sale of any of the sayde Agents say, pretense of co-

and yong merchants such place, and place to follow and do all the of the companies and bonds

brought into port. The Agents together iten by the secret may be sent home

wares, as well as of the company, and most vendible in that

masse of your stock, matter prudently to see your selues to be may here also make that the company fine daily in wages, his voyage, which circumspicion is under you, to his glory and the Lords of the

to be learne how to be heard of out of the well known to the South. credibly, that any of

Articles for the Agents. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

261

of our said first ships be arrived in any place where unto passage is to be had by water or by land, that then certain of the company at the discretion of the Agents shall be appointed to be sent to faries and requistes, at the common charges of the company, and to imbace, accept, and intreat them as our deare and welbeloued brethren of this our Societie, to their relieving and comfort, ad- without desire to heare of them, with all other things done in their absence for their commoditie, no lesse then if they had bene present.

17 Item, it is decreed, that when the ships that arrive at this going forth at the Wardhouse, that their Agents, with master Chancellor grand pilot, John Brooke merchant, deputed for the bins pilot of the Philip and Marie, shall conferre and consult together, what is most profitable to the benefit of the company, & to consider whether they may bargain with the captain of the castle, and the inhabitants in that place, or along the coast for a large quantity of fish, or other ware, killed by the naturals, or to be taken by our men at a price reasonable for trucke of cloth, meale, sale, or beere, and what traine oyle, or other commodity is to be had there at this time, or any other season of the yeere, and whether there will be had or found sufficient lading for continuance in hanting the place, if profit wil so arise to the company, and to consider whether the Ed- ward in her returne may receive at the Wardhouse any kind of lading homeward, and what it may amount unto, and whether it shall be expedient for the Philip to abide at the Wardhouse to England, without abiding for the Edward, and so to conclude & accord certainly among them- selves upon their arrivall, that the certainie may (upon good deliberation) be so ordered and de- termined betwene both ships, that the one may be assured of the other, and their determinations be put in writing duplicate to remaine with each ship, according to such order as shall be taken betwene them.

The Philip and Marie.

18 Item, that John Brooke our marchant for the Wardhouse take good advise of the rest of our Agents, how to use himselfe in all affaires, whiles the ship shall be at the Wardhouse, he to see good order to be kept, make bargains advantage, not crediting the people untill their natures, dispositions & fidelities shall be well tried, make no debts, but to take ware for ware in hand, and rather be trusted then to trust. Note diligently what be the best wares for those parts, and howe the shippes fallerth on the coast, and by what meane it is to be bought at the most advantage, what kindes and diversities of sorters in fishes be, and whether it will keepe better in bulke piled, or in calke.

Note.

Note.

19 Item, he to have a diligent eye & circumspection to the beere, salt, and other liquid wares, and not to suffer any waste to be made by the company, and he in all contracts to require advise, counsel, and consent of the master and pilot, the marchant to be our housewife, as our speciall trust is in him, he to tender that no lawes nor customes of the countrey be broken by any of the compa- ny, and to render to the pince, and other officers, all that which to them doth appertaine, the com- pany to be quiet, void of all quarrelling, fighting, or veration, abstaine from all excessse of drink- ing as much as may be, and in all to use and behaue themselves as to quiet marchants doorth, and ought to appertaine.

20 Item, it is decreed by the company, that the Edward shall returne home this yeere with as much wares as may be conveniently & profitably provided, bought, and laden in Russia, and the rest to be taken in at the Wardhouse, as by the Agents shall be accorded. But by all meanes it is to be foretense and noted, that the Edward returne home, and not to winter in any foreign place, but to come home, and bying with her all the whole advancements of the marchants, with such further advise for the next yeeres provision, as they shall give.

21 Item, it is further decreed and ordeined, inviolably to be observed, that when the good ships, or either of them (by Gods grace) shall returne home to the coastes of England, that neither of them shall stay or touch in any Haven or Port of England, other wise then wind and wea- ther shall serve, but shall directly saile and come to the Port of the citty of London, the place of their right discharge, and that no bulke be broken, hatches opened, chest, farvell, russe, barrel, fat, or what soever thing it shall be, be brought out of the shippe, untill the company shall give order for the same, and appoint such persons of the company as shall be thought meet for that purpose, to take view, and consider the shippe and her lading, and shall give order for the breaking up of the saide bulke, or give licence by discretion, for things to be brought to land. And that every of them shall the we the inuiole of his charge to him first committed, and to examine the wares and losses,

losses, and to deliuer the remainder to the vse and benefite of the company, according to such order as shall be appointed in that behalfe.

Note.

22 Item, the company exhorteth, willetch, and requirerth, not onely all the said Agents, pilots, masters, marchantes, clerkes, boatswaines, stewards, skaffmasters, and all other officers and ministers of this present voyage, being put in charge and trust dayly to peruse, read, and studie such instructions as be made, giuen, & deliuered to them for perfect knowledge of the people of Russia, Moscouia, Wardhouse, and other places, their dispositions, maners, customes, vices, tolls, carriages, conies, weights, numbers, measures, wares, merchandises, commodities, and incontinencies, that one to be accepted and imbraced, the other to be reiected and vicerly abandoned, to the intent that every man taking charge, may be so well taught, perfected, and readly instructed in all the premises, that by ignorance, no losse or prejudice may grow or chance to the company: aduising themselves, that so far as much as the company hath traueiled and laboured so in these their instructions to them giuen, that every man may bee perfect, and fully learned to eschew all losses, hurts and damages that may inlie by pretence or colour of none knowledge, the company entredeth not to allow, or accept ignorance for any lawfull or iust cause of excuse, in that which shall be misordered by negligence, the burden whereof shall light vpon the negligent offending person, especially vpon such as of their owne heads, or temeritie, will take vpon him or them to doe or to attempt any thing, whereby prejudice may arise, without the commission of the Agents as aboue is mentioned, whereunto relation must be had,

23 So far as much as it is not possible to write and indite such prescribed orders, rules and commissions to the Agents and factours, but that occasion, time and place, and the pleasures of the princes, together with the operation of successe of fortune shall change or shift the same, although not in the whole, yet in part, therefore the said company doe commit to you their deare and intimate beloued Agents and factours to doe in this behalfe for the commodity and wealth of this company, as by your discretions, vpon good aduised deliberations shall be thought good and beneficiall. Inprouided alwayes, that the honour, good name, fame, credite, and estimation of the same company be conserved and preserved: which to confirme we beseech the liuing Lord to his glory, the publicke benefite of this realme, our common profits, and your praises.

Finally for the seruice, and due accomplishment of all the premises, every Agent and minister of and for this voyage, hath not onely giuen a corporall othe vpon the Euangelists to obserue, and cause to be obserued, this commission, and every part, clause and sentence of the same, as much as in him lyeth, as well for his owne part as for any other person, but also haue bounde themselves and their friends to the company in severall summes of money, expresse in the actes and records of this societie, for the truely and fidelities of them, for the better, and also manifest testification of the truely, and of their othes, promises, and bands also said, they haue to this Commission subscribed particularly their severall hands, and the company also in confirmation of the same, haue set their seale. Given the day, moneth, and yeeres first aboue mentioned,

The othe ministred to the seruants of the fellowship.



We swear by the holy contents of .hat booke, that ye shal wel, faithfully and truly, and vprightly, and with all your indenuour, serue this right worshipfull company in that order, which by this fellowships Agent or Agents in the dominions of the Emperours of Russia, &c. shall bee vnto you committed, by commission, commandement, or other his direction. And that you shall bee obedient and faithful to the same our Agent or Agents, and that well, and truly and vprightly according to the commission, charge, commandement, or other direction of the said Agent or Agents to you from time to time giuen and to be giuen. you shall prosecute and doe all that which in you lieth, for the good renowne, commoditie, benefite and profite of the said fellowship: and you shall not directly or indirectly, openly or couertly doe, exercise or vse any trade or seate of merchandises for your owne priuate account, commodity, gaine or profite, or for the account of or for any other person or persons, without consent or licence of this said fellowship, first obtained in writing. And if you shall know or vnderstand any other person or persons to vse, exercise or doe any trade, traffike, or seate of merchandise, to or for his or their own account or accounts, at any time or times hereafter, that then ye shall truly and plainly disclose, open, utter and reueale, and shew the same vnto this said fellowship, without fraude, colour, countenance or delay: So helpe you God, &c.

The

Georg

Th



had them all
the marchantes
but I feare te
our wares lie
did determine
ry, Christoph
logda, and
And we did la
with vs, but th
all the frost. I
her, comes to
October, and
Emperour his
two: des, and
grace, and then
ect, that the er
appointed to a
that we shoul
things that we
every two dayes
me, and a poore
we had giuen m
ers a reward wi
Emperour on the
we came before
number, where
dies, all parcel
cloth of gold, and
the other chambe
aces letters, with
to our Quene's
ship into his Rea
ace did his vs goe
with our faces co
ing. I thinke nee
ices, cuppes, and
aining still on the
eat and byinke from
a cuppe with drin
so with diuers fo
re by diuers Italia
us that we would
ame. So first a Russ
did desire a stronge
we came againe,
his grace is so cro
haue byn required o

said Agents, pilots, other officers and crew, and beside such the people of Russia, as, vices, colleges, carriages, and incontinently abandoned, to the society instructed in all the company: all so in these their loves to each other all losses, the company entered in that which shall be the offending person, or them to do as the Agents as above

ers, rules and come the pleasures of the same, although their deare and interest of this company, and beneficiall. As the same company be as glory, the public

ship. faithfully and true worshipfull counts in the dominions, by commission, obedient and faithfully and by right as Agent of Agents that which in your ship: and you shall eat of merchandise of 10 for any obtained in writing, of 10 for any trade, any crime of times, and then the same God, &c.

The

George Killingworth. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

263

The letter of M. George Killingworth the companies first Agent in Moscouie, touching their interteinement in their second voyage. Anno 1555. the 27. of Nouember in Mosco.



Right worshipfull, my duetie considered, &c. It may please your worship to vnderstand, that at the making hereof we all be in good health, thanks be to God, save onely William our cooke as we came from Colmogro fell into the river out of the boate, and was drowned. And the 11. day of September we came to Vologda, and there we laide all our wares up, and sold very little: but one merchant would haue giuen vs 12. rubles for a broad cloth, & he said he would haue had them all, and 4. altines for a pound of sugar, but we did refuse it because he was the first, and the marchantes were not come thither, nor would not come before Winter, trusting to haue more: but I feare it will not be much better. Yet notwithstanding we did for the best. And the youle that our wares lie in costs from that day until after ten rubles. And the youle that we determine with our selues that it was good for vs. Gray, Arthur Edwards, Thomas Hauto-logda, and 99. Chancellor, Henry Lane, Edward Prife, Robert Best and I should goe to Mosco, with vs, but the way was so deepe, that we were faine to turne back, and leaue it all at Vologda till the frost. And we went forth with posse hoise, & the charge of euery hoise being sitten in number, comes to 10. 8. 7. d. halfe pence, besides the guides. And we came to the Mosco the 4. day of October, and were lodged that night in a simple house: but the next day we were sent for to the Emperour his secretarie, and he haue vs welcome with a cheerefull countenance and cheerefull heart, that the true meaning might be declared to the Emperour, and so we did: and then he was appointed to a better house: and the seventh day the secretarie sent for vs againe, & then he shewed vs that we should haue a better house, for it was the Emperour his will, that we should haue all very two dayes to receiue eight hens, seuen altines, and two pence in money, and meade a cer- taine had giuen many rewards before, which you shall perceiue by other, and so we gaue the messen- gers a reward with thanks: and the ninth day we were sent to make vs ready to speak with the Emperour on the morrow. And the letters were sent by that wee might deliuer them our selues, where stood many small tunnes, pailles, bowles and pots of silver, I meane, like washing clothes, all parcel gilt: and within that another chamber, wherein sate (I thinke) neere a hundred cloth of gold, and then into the chamber where his grace sate, & there I thinke were more then the other chamber also in cloth of gold, and we did our duety, & shewed his grace our Quenes graces letters, with a note of your present which was left in Vologda: and then his grace did alke shew our Quenes grace did, calling her cousin, saying that hee was glad that wee were come in faith into his Realme, and we went one by one vnto him, andooke him by the hand, and then his grace bid vs goe in health, and come to dinner againe, and we dined in his presence, and were with our faces towards his grace, & none in the chamber sate with their backs towards him, ing I thinke neere a hundred at dinner then, and all serued with golde, as platters, chargers, cups, and all not slender but very massy, and yet a great number of platters of golde, and vpinke from his owne table, and when we had dined we went vnto his grace, and recei- ued with diuers soyes of wine and meade, to whome wee gaue a reward. And afterwarde we were by diuers Zealians counselled to take heed whom we did trust to make the copie of the pil- grimage, so first a Russian did write for vs a Decree to the Emperour, the tenour whereof was, that we desired a stronger priuilege: when the Secretary saw it, he did deliuer it to his grace, and we came againe, his grace willed vs to write our minds, and hee would see it, and so we did. to his grace is so troubled with preparations to warres, that as yet we haue no answer: but haue byn required of his Secretary, and of the vnder Chancellor, to know what wares we haue brought

Quenes Maies letters to the Emperour of Russia.

The Zealians counsell to our people.

brought into the Realme, and what wares we doe intend to haue, that are, or may be had in this Realme: and we shewed them, and they shewed the Emperour thereof. And then they said his graces pleasure was, that his best marchants of the Mosco should be spoken to, to meet and talk with vs. And so a day was appointed, and wee mette in the Secreatary his office, and there was the vnder Chancelor, who was not past two yeeres since the Emperours marchant, and not his Chancelour: and then the conclusion of our talke was, that the Chancelour willed vs to berthinke vs, where we would desire to haue a house or houses, that wee might come to them as to our owne house, and so marchandise to be made preparation for vs, and they would know our prices of our wares and stile: and we answered, that for our prices they must see the wares before we could make any price thereof, for the like in goodnesse hath not bene brought into the Realme, and we did looke for an example of all sorts of our wares to come from Vologda, with the first shewing, and then they should see them, and then we would shew them the prices of them: and likewise we could not tell them what we would giue them lustily, till we did knowe as well their lust weights as their measures: for in all places where we did come, all weights and measures did vary. Then the Secreatary (who had made promise vnto vs before) said, that we should haue all the lust measures vnder scale, & he that was found faulty in the contrary, to buy or sell with any other measure, then that, the law was, that he should be punished: he said moreover, that if it so happed that any of our marchants do promise by couenat at any time to deliuer you any certain sum of wares in such a place, and of such like goodnesse, at such a day, for such a certain price, that then because of wantance, we should cause it to be writen, according as the bargain is, before a iustice or the next ruler of the place: if he did not keepe couenat & promise in all points, according to his couenat, that then looke what losse or hinderance we could lustily proue that we haue thereby, he should make it good: he be worth so much: and in like case we must do to them: and to that we did agree, saue onely if we were to come ouer the sea, then if any such fortune should be (as God forbid) that the ship should mischance or be robbed, & the prooofe to be made that such kind of wares were laden, the English marchants to beare no losse to the other marchant. Then the Chancelor said, we thinke you shall best haue your house at Colmogro, which is but 100. miles to the right discharge of the ships, and yet I trust the ships shall come neerer hereafter, because the ships may not tary long for their lading, which is 1000. miles from Vologda by water, and all our marchants shall bring all their marchandise to Colmogro to you, and so shall our marchants neither go empty nor come empty: for if they lacke lading homeward, there is salt, which is good ware here, that they may come laden againe. So we were very glad to heare that, and did agree to his saying: for we shall neuer be lesse, if we lust haue a house at Vologda, & at the Mosco, yea, & at Nouogrode, where we live in Rusland: But the thre & twentieth of this present we were with the secreatary, and then another talke, we moued, that if we should tary at Colmogro with our wares, and should not come to Vologda, or further to seeke our market, but tary still at Colmogro, and then the marchants of the Mosco and others should not come and bring their wares, and so the ships should come, and not haue their lading ready, that then it were a great losse and hinderance for vs: then saide he againe to vs, that the marchants had bene againe together with him, and had put the like word that if they should come and bring their wares to Colmogro, and that they should not find wares there sufficient to serue them, that then they should be at great losse and hinderance, they leaue their other trades to sal to that: and to that we did answer, that after the time that we do agree with them to bring their wares to Colmogro, God willing, they should neuer come thither, but at the beginning of the yere, they should find that our marchants would haue at the least for and fardobles, although the ships were not come: so that he saide, that then wee must talke further with the marchants: so that as yet I know not, but that we shall haue neede of one house at Colmogro, and another at Vologda, and if that they bring not their wares to Colmogro, then we shall be sure to buy some at Vologda, and to be out of bondage.

And thus may we continue thre or foure yeeres, and in this space we shall know the count and the marchants, and which way to saue our selues best, and where to plant our houses, and where to seeke for wares: for the Mosco is not best for any kind of wares for vs to buy, for our ware, which we cannot haue vnder seven pence the Russe pound, and it lackes two ounces of pound, neither will it be much better cheape, for I haue bidde 6. pence for a pound. And though we maye, five hundred weight of yarne, which stands mee in eight pence for the Russe pound one with another. And if wee had receiued any stoie of moneys, and were dispatched by it, that we tary for, as I doubt not but we shall be shortly (you know what I meane) then as we haue made sale, I doe intend to goe to Nouogrode, and to Plesco, whence all the numbers of the best tow flaxe cometh, and such wares as are there I trust to buy part. And you not but we will do that may be done, if God send us health, desiring you to prepare fully

The diuision
of weights &
measures in
Russia.

Colmogro.

Vologda.

Nouogrode.

The

one of
C
by the
he wa
is Iua
send ar
to be co
Dolish
ury our
conuey
And e
weather
Christo
wares, b
the Empe
and the bu
I pray
made, I w
at the rig
by any man
cruell in, I
sales be ma
woyship, and

A cop



being of a natura
wanting, as it is p
most requisite for
all marchandise is
nature, for their clo
and profitable t
summers in so grea
things be in euery p
such sort, as amitt
men living in a g
hereunto inuoluing
the high, right exce
and, France, &c. in t
communitie of mere
know ye therefore
men and graued, a
such as in vs is and li
mistake: Sir John C
p, and to their succet

The Emperours priuilege. Traffiques, & Discoueries.

265

one ship to be ready in the beginning of April to depart off the coast of England.

Concerning all those things which we haue done in the wares, you shal receiue a perfect note by the next bearer (God willing) for he that carrieth these from vs is a marchant of Terwill and he was caused to carry these by the commendement of the Emperour his secretarie, whose name is Iuan Mcallawich Weskawate, whom we take to be our very friend. And if it please you to send any letters to Dantiske to Robert Elson, or to William Warfons seruane Dunstan Walton to be conveyed to us, it may please you to inclose ours in a letter sent from you to him, written in Polish, Dutch, Latine or Italian: so inclosed, comming to the Mosco to his hands, written in our letters to vs whereforuer he be. And I haue written to Dantiske already to thin for the conuenance of letters from thence.

And to certifie you of the weather here, men say that these hundred yeres was neuer so warme weather in this countrey at this time of the yere. But as yesternight wee receiued a letter from Christopher Hudson from a cite called Yerallau, who is comming hither with certaine of our wares, but the winter did deceiue him, so that he was faine to tarry by the way: and he wrote that the Emperours present was deliuered to a gentleman at Vologda, and the sled did ouerthrow, and the bucke of Hollocke was lost, which made vs all very soory.

I pray you be not offended with these my rude letters for lacke of time: but as soone as sales be made, I will finde the meanes to conuey you a letter with speed: for the way is made so doubtful, by any man, if he might, for he knowes not of these: and to say the truth, the way is not for him to trauell in. But I will make another shift besides, which I trust shall serue the turne till he come, if sales be made before he be ready, which is and shall be as pleases God: who euer preserve your worship, and send vs good sales. Written in haste.

By yours to commaund
GEORGE KILLINGWORTH
Draper.

A copie of the first Priuileges graunted by the Emperour
of Russia to the English Marchants in the yere
1555.



John Vasiluich, by the grace of God Emperour of Russia, great duke of Novogrode, Moscouia, &c. To all people that shal see, reade, heare or vnderstand these presents, greeting. Forasmuch as God hath placed al realmes and dominions in the whole world with sundry commodities, so as the one hath neede of the amity and commodities of the other, and by means thereof traffike is vntwined from one to another, and amity thereby increased: and for that as amongst men nothing is more to be desired then amity, without the which no creature being of a naturall good disposition can liue in quietnes, so that it is as troublesome to be vntwined, as it is perceived to be grievous to the body to lacke aire, fire, or any other necessities: most requisite for the conseruation and maintenance thereof in health: considering also how needfull marchandize is, which furnissheth men of all that which is conuenient for their liuing and nourishment and profitable for them, and that marchandize bringeth the same commodities from diuers parts in so great abundance, as by means thereof nothing is lacking in any part, and that all things be in euery place (where entercoure of marchandizes is receiued and imbraced) generally such for, as amity thereby is entered into, and planted to continue, and the inuoyers thereof be herein to mouing, and chiefly vpon the contemplation of the gracious letters, directed from the high, right excellent, and right mightie Queene Mary, by the grace of God Queene of England, France, &c. in the fauour of her subiects, merchants, by the grace of God Emperour of Russia, and to the communitie of merchants aduenturers for discouery of lands, &c.

Know ye therefore, that we of our grace speciall, mere motion, and certaine knowledge, haue graunted, and by these presents for vs, our heires and successours, do giue and grant as followeth: Sir Iohn Gresham, &c. Assistants, and to the communitie of the aforesaid fellow-traders, and to their successours for euer, and to the successours of euerie of them, these articles, graunts,

grants, immunities, franchises, liberties and privileges, and every of them hereafter following, expressed and declared. Videlicet:

1 Item, we for vs, our heires and successours, do by these presents give and graunt free licence, facultie, authoritie and power vnto the said Gouverneur, Consuls, Assistants, and communalitie of the said fellowship, and to their successours for ever, that all and singular the merchants of the same company, their Agents, factors, doers of their businesse, attornies, servants, and ministers, and every of them may at all times hereafter for ever more surely, freely and safely with their shippes, merchandizes, goods and things whatsoever saile, come and enter into all and singular our lawes, countreies, dominions, cities, townes, villages, castles, portes, iurisdiccions and detraicts by sea, land or fresh waters, and there tarry, abide and sojourne, and buy, sell, barter and change all kind of merchandizes withal maner of marchants and people, of whatsoever nation, rite, condition, state or degree they be, and with the same or other shippes, wares, merchandizes, goods & things whatsoever they be, vnto other empires, kingdomes, dukedomes, partes, and to any other place or places at their pleasure and libertie by sea, land or fresh waters may depart, and exercise all kinde of merchandizes in our empire and dominions, and every part thereof freely and quietly without any restraint, impeachment, price, exaction, yssell, straight custome, toll, imposition, or subside to be demanded, tared or paid, or at any time hereafter to be demaded, taxed, let, levied or inferred upon them or any of them, or upon their goods, shippes, wares, merchandizes and things, of, for or upon any part or parcell thereof, or upon the goods, shippes, wares, merchandizes, and things of any of them, so that they shall not need any other safe conduct or licence generall, ne speciall of vs, our heires or successours, neither shall be bound to aske any safe conduct or licence in any of the aforesaid places subject vnto vs.

2 Item, we give and graunt to the said marchants this power and libertie, that they, ne any of them, ne their goods, wares, merchandizes or things, ne any part thereof, shal be by any means twixen our dominions, landes, countreies, castles, townes, villages, or other place or places of our iurisdiction, at any time hereafter attached, staied, arrested ne disturbed for any debt, due, tie or other thing, for the which they be not principall debtors or sureties, ne also for any offence or trespass committed, or that shall be committed, but onely for such as they or any of them shall actually commit, and the same offences (if any such happen,) shall bee by vs onely heard, and determined.

3 Item, we give and graunt, that the said Marchants shal and may have free libertie, power, and authoritie to name, choose and assigne bookers, shippers, parkers, weighers, measurers, wagoners, and all other meet and necessary labozers for to serve them in their feat of marchandises, and minister and give vnto them and every of them a coppy of all othe, to serve them well and truly in their offices, and finding them or any of them doing contrary to his or their othe, may punish and dismisse them, and from time to time choose, sweare and admit other in their place or places, without contradiction, let, variation or disturbance, either of vs, our heires or successours, or of any other our Iudices, officers, ministers or subjects whatsoever.

4 Item, we give and graunt vnto the said Marchants and their successours, that such person as is, or shal be commended vnto vs, our heires or successours by the Gouverneur, Consuls and assistants of the said fellowship resident within the cite of London within the realme of England, to be their chiefe factor within this our empire and dominions, may and shal have full power and authoritie to governe and rule all Englishmen that have had, or shall have acceste, or repaire or go to this said Empire and iurisdiccions, or any part thereof, and shal and may minister vnto them, and every of them good iustice in all their causes, plaines, quarrels, and disorders betweene them moved, and to be moved, and assemble, deliberate, consult, conclude, define, determine and make such actes, and ordinances, as he so commended with his Assistants shall thinke good and meet for the good order, government and rule of the said Marchants, and all other Englishmen repairing to this our said empire and dominions, or any part thereof, and to let and leve upon all, and every Englishmen, offender or offenders, of such their acts and ordinances made, and to be made, penalties and mulctes by fine or imprisonment.

5 Item, if it happen that any of the said Marchants, or other Englishman, as one or more, doe rebell against such chiefe factor or factors, or his or their deputies, and will not discipline him or themselves to obey them and every of them as shall appertaine, if the said Rebels disobedients doe come, and bee founde in our said Empire and iurisdiccions, or any part or place thereof, then wee promise and graunt, that all and every our officers, ministers, and subjects shall effectually ayde and assist the said chiefe factor or factors, and their deputies, and for their power shall really woorkke, to bying such rebell or disobedient rebels, or disobedients to due obedience: And to that intent shall lende vnto the same factor or factors, and their

deputies to
to time.

6 Item, his
hibite and d
that when c
their plain
or any of the
and before o
be, the said
or against an
such Marchan
shall require.

7 Item, u
same Marchan
place of our
and other offic
erigence of the
shall chaunce
shall offende
the goods, w
ro, confiscated
cers, ministers
commitment and

8 Item, we g
in prison, so far
er leade them
shops, or their
scale the partie

9 Moreover,
other vessels sh
from our saide
other person, wh
is to cause restitu
ments by our lette
in iustice.

10 Item, for vs
ne, corroborate,
in privileged, lik
one the same by al
of the said Engli
And to the intent
obserued and per
the Duke of Nou
ly may in the ad
obserue, and caus
grants and y
for the moys copy
of Mosco the 2

The Cha
upon

Hilp
of offi
well to
and v
read, g
with

grant free licence,
and communalty of
chambers of the same
and ministers, and
with their shippes,
singular our lands,
to bestraits by sea,
change all kind of
ite, condition, rate
ods & things what
other place or pla-
ercise all kind of
quieply without
on, or subsidie to be
or inferred upon
of, for or upon
nd things of any of
pecial of vs, or
in any of the aforesayd

that they, ne any of
al be by any means
place or places of
or ante debt, or
also for any offence
or any of them shall
nely heard, and do

ce libertie, power,
ra, measures, wa-
nt of marchandises,
hem well and truly
o the, may punish
it place or places,
successors, or of any

urs, that such pro-
our, Consuls and
realme of England
have full power and
cesse, or repaired
minister unto them,
ers betwene them
etermine and make
ke good and men-
Englishmen repa-
nd levie upon all and
uable, and to be made

man, as one of our
and will not dispo-
the saide Rebels
ns, or any part
ers, ministers, and
and their depu-
rebels, or dole-
factours, and the
deputie

Q. Maries patent. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

267

deputies upon request thereto to be made, prisons, and instruments for punishments from time to time.

6 Item, we promise unto the saide Marchants, and their successours upon their request to ex-
hibite and doe unto them good, eare and favourable iustice, with expedition in all their causes, and
that when they or any of them shall have access, or come to or before any of our Iudices, for any
of any of them, that then they shall be first and forthwith heard, as soon as the party which they shall
find before our Iudices shall be ready and dispatched, which party being heard forthwith, and as soon as may
be, the said English marchants shall be ridde and dispatched: And if any action shall be moved by
or against any of the said Marchants being absent out of our saide empire and dominions, then
such Marchants may substitute an Attorney in all and singular his causes to be followed as need
shall require, and as shall seeme to him expedient.

7 Item, we graunt and promise to the saide Marchants, and to their successours, that if the
same Marchants or any of them shall be wounded, or (which God forbid) slaine in any part of
place of our Empire or dominions, then good information thereof given, and our Iustices
and other officers shall execute due correction and punishment without delay, according to the
exigence of the case: so that it shall be an example to all other not to commit the like. And if
it shall chauce the factors, servants, or ministers of the saide Marchants or any of them to tres-
pass or offend, whereby they or any of them shall incur the danger of death or punishment,
the goods, wares, marchandises, and things of their Masters shall not therefore be forfeited,
seco, confiscated, spoiled or seised by any means by us, our heires or successours, or by any our of-
ficers, ministers or subiects, but shall remaine to their use, franke, free, and discharged from all
punishment and losse.

8 Item, we graunt that if any of the English nation be arrested for any debt, he shall not be laid
in prison, so farre as he can pnt in sufficient suretie and pawne: neither shall any sergeant, or offi-
cer leave them or any of them to prison, before he shall have known whether the chiefe factor or
other, or their deputies shall be sureties, or bring in pawne for such arrested: then the officers shall
release the partie, and shall set him or them at libertie.

9 Moreover, wee give, graunt and promise to the saide Marchants, that if any of their ships
or other vessels shall be spoiled, robbed, or damaged in sailing, anchoring or returning to or
from our saide Empires and Dominions, or any part thereof, by any pirates, Marchants, or
other person, whatsoever hee or they be, that then and in such case we will doe all that in
us is to cause restitution, reparation, and satisfaction to be duly made to the said English mar-
chants by our letters and otherwise, as shall stand with our honour, and be consonant to equitie
and iustice.

10 Item, for vs, our heires and successours, wee doe promise and graunte to performe, main-
tayne, corroborate, autenticate, and observe all and singular the aforesayde liberties, franchises,
and privileges, like as presently we firmly doe intend, and will corroborate, autenticate and per-
forme the same by all means and way that we can, as much as may be to the commoditie and pro-
fit of the said English Marchants, and their successours for ever.
And to the intent that all and singular the saide gifts, graunts and promises, may be inviola-
bly observed and performed, we the said John Vasilivich by the grace of God Emperour of Russia,
the Duke of Novogrode, Mosco, &c. for vs, our heires and successours, by our Imperall and
apostolicall authority, have and doe promise by these presents, inviolably to mainteyne
and observe, and cause to be inviolably observed and maintained all and singular the aforesayde
gifts, graunts and promises from time to time, and at all and every time and times hereafter,
for the more corroboracion hereof have caused our Signet hereunto to be put: Dated in our
city of Mosco the 10. day of
in the yeere.

The Charter of the Marchants of Russia, granted upon the discoverie of the saide Countrey, by King Philip and Queene Marie.



Philip and Marie, by the grace of God King and Queene, &c. To all manner
of officers, true Jurie men, ministers and subiects, and to all other people as
well within this our Realme or elsewhere under our obedience, jurisdiction,
and rule, or otherwise unto whome these our letters shall be shewed, seme, or
read, greeting.

Whereas wee be credibly informed, that our right trustie, right faithfull,
and

The discoverie
principally in-
tended for
Gods glory.

Sebastian Cabot
first govern-
our of the
apocoinie
companye.

Sir George
Barnes, William
Garret, Anthony
Husie, Job, Suth-
cor, the first 4.
Consuls.

and welbeloued Counsaillors, William Barques of Winchester Lord high Treasurer of this our Realme of England, Henrie Earle of Arundel Lord Steward of our household, John Earle of Bedford Lord keeper of our priuie Seale, William Earle of Pembroke, William Lord Howard of Effingham Lord high Admirall of our saide Realme of England, &c. haue at there owne aduenture, costs and charges, provided, rigged, and tackleed certaine ships, pinnesses, and other meere vessels, and the same furnished with all things necessary haue aduanced and set forward, for to discover, descric, and finde Isles, landes, territories, Dominions, and Seignories vnknown, and by our subiects before this not commonly by sea frequented, which by the suffrance and grace of Almighty God, it shall chauce them sailing Northwards, North-eastwards, and North-westwards, or any partes thereof, in that race or course which other Christian Spemarches (being with vs in league and amitie) haue not heretofore by Seas traffiqued, haunter, or frequented, to finde and attaine by their said aduenture, as well for the gloie of God, as for the illustrating of our honour and dignitie royall, in the increase of the reuenues of our Crowne, and generall wealth of this and other our Realmes and Dominions, and of our subiects of the same: And to this intent our subiects aboue specified and named, haue most humbly beseeched us, that our abundant grace, fauour and clemencie may be graciously extended vnto them in this behalf: Whereupon wee are inclined to the petition of the foresaide our Counsaillours, subiects and merchants, and willing to animate, aduance, further and nourish them in their said godlie, honest, and good purpose, and as we hope, profitable aduenture, and that they may the more willingly, and readily attaine the same, Of our especiall grace, certaine knowledge and meere motion, haue graunted, and by these presents doe graunt, for vs, our heires and successours, vnto our said right trustie, and right faithfull, and right welbeloued Counsaillours, and the other before named persons, that they by the name of marchants aduenturers of England, for the discouery of lands, territories, Isles, Dominions, and Seignories vnknown, and not before that late aduenture or enterprise by sea or Nauigation, commonly frequented as aforesaid, shalbe from henceforth one by die and perpetuall fellowship and communalte of themselves, both in deede and in name, and them, by the names of Marchants aduenturers for the discouerie of lands, territories, Isles and seignories vnknown, and not by the Seas, and Nauigations, before their saide late aduenture or enterprise by sea or Nauigation commonly frequented, shalbe doe incorporate, name, and declare in these presents, and that the same fellowship or communalte from henceforth shalbe, and may haue one Governour of the saide fellowship, and communalte of Marchants aduenturers.

And in consideration that one Sebastian Cabot hath bin the chiefest setter forth of this voyage, therefore we make, ordeine, and constitute him the said Sebastian to be the first and present governour of the same fellowship and communalte, by these presents. So haue and giue the said office of Governour, to him the said Sebastian Cabot during his naturall life, without amouing or dimissing from the same roome.

And furthermore, we graunt vnto the same fellowship and communalte and their successours, that they the saide fellowship and communalte, and their successours after the decease of the said Sebastian Cabot, shall, and may freely and lawfully in places conuenient and honest, assemble themselves together, or so many of them as will or can assemble together, as well within the Citie of London, or elsewhere, as it shall please them, in such sort and manner, as other worshipfull corporations of our saide Citie haue used to assemble, and there yeerely name, elect and choise one Governour or two, of themselves, and their liberties, and also as well yeerely during the naturall life of the said Sebastian Cabot now Governour, as also at the election of such saide Governour or governours before his decease, to choise, name and appoint eight and twenty of the most discreet, and honest persons of the saide fellowship, and communalte of Marchant aduenturers, as is aboue specified, and 4. of the most expert and skillfull persons of the same 28. to be named called Consuls, and 24. of the residue, to be named and called Assistants to the saide Governour, and Consuls for the time being, which shal remaine and stand in their authoritie one whole yeere then next following. And if it shall fortune the saide Governour, Consuls, assistants, or any of them to be elected, and choosen as is aforesaid, to die within the yeere of his or their election, that then and so often, it shall and may be lawfull to and for the saide fellowship, and communalte, to elect and choise of themselves or other Governour or governours, Consuls and assistants, in the place and steade of such as so shall happen to die, to serue out the said yeere.

And further we doe make, ordeine, and constitute George Barnes knight and Alderman of the Citie of London, William Garret Alderman of our saide Citie, Athonie Husie, and John Suthcor, to be the first and present 4. Consuls of the said fellowship and communalte by these presents to haue and enioy the said offices of Consuls to them the said George Barnes, William Garret, Anthony

Anthony

Anthony
patentes: I
drew Iudd
ver, Thomas
Pointer, Ri
Henry Bech
Ellor, John
the saide Co
these presen
next after the
as much as is
fellowship &
uernour of ge
appointed, or
the more part
25. at the least
said Consuls
stants, and in
assistants at the
to rule and gou
to erecte and d
res, variances, c
rilditions onely
foresaid, or the g
Also wee for
graunt, that the
cellos shall and
serue for the affa
their successours,
and possesse in fee
wile, lands, tenem
uer they bee, by et
of the Marchants
ries, Isles, Domin
enterprise by seas not
fully alien, graunte
saide to take, and rec
thereof into mortm
tenement.

Also wee for vs, c
vnto the saide Goue
chants and to their si
vnto them and their s
steare yeerely batue c
of England and not al
shall be holden of vs
pounded against alien
any of them contained
withstanding. And
and communalte of g
sons and Seignories
nature of enterprise by
be implemented, to au
er Iudge of Justice, te
courts, and in all actio
el disseison, and also in
p bee, touching and c
minutie of the same onel
saime may doe,

Transur of this
John Carle
William Lope
&c. Haue at the
pinnacles, and
anced and let for
and Seigniorie
which by the said
Roiheastward
er Christian
affairs, haue
of God, as for
our Crowne
victors of the same
beferched us, the
in this behalfe
Subjects and mag
goblie, honest, and
oze willingly, and
ere motion, haue
unto our said right
before named per
ouery of lands, the
e adventure of
heuce forth one
and in name, the
copies, fies & o
e adventure of no
me, and declare
the, and may ha
urers.
foyle of this
to be the first
to haue and en
arall life, with
to their success
hecause of the said
honest, alle
well within
other wo
ces and choo
ouring the har
a laide Gouver
ty of the most
bant aduentur
8, to be nam
laide Gouvern
their authoritie
our, Consuls,
hin the peere
of the laide
gouvernours, Ca
etue out the
to Alderman of
e, and John Se
by these pre
William Carle
Anthony

Anthony Husie, & John Suchcot, for terme of one whole yere next after date of these our letters
patentes: And we doe likewise make, ordaine and constitute Sir John Gresham knight, Sir An-
drew Iudde knight, Sir Thomas White knight, Sir John Yorke knight, Thomas Offley the el-
der, Thomas Lodge, Henry Herdson, John Hopkins, William Watton, Will. Clifton, Richard
Pointer, Richard Chamberlaine, William Mallorie, Thomas Pallie the elder, William Allen,
Henry Becher, Geoffrey Walkenden, Richard Fowles, Rowland Heyward, George Eacon, John
Ellor, John Sparke, Blase Sanders, & Miles Mording, to be the first and present 24. Assistants to
these presents, to haue and enioy the said offices of assistants to them for terme of one whole yere,
next after the date of these our letters patentes. And further, we for vs, our heires and successors, and
as much as in vs is, wil & graunt by these presents vnto the laide Gouvernour, Consuls, assistants,
fellowship & company of Marchants aduenturers aforesaid, & to their successors, that the laide go-
uernour of gouernours, 4. Consuls, & 24. Assistants, that now by these patents are nominated and
appointed, or that hereafter by the laide fellowship & communalitie of marchants aduenturers, or
the more part of them, which shalbe then present, so from time to time to be chosen, so that there be
15, at the least wholly agreed therof, the laide Gouvernour of gouernours, or one of them, and 2. of the laide
said Consuls shalbe there, and 12. of the residue of the said number of 15, shall be of the laide as-
sistants at the least for the time being that & may haue, vse and exercise full power and authoritie
to rule and gouerne all and singular the Marchants of the laide fellowship and communalitie, and
to execute and doe full and spediue iustice to them, and euery of them, in all their causes, differen-
ces, variances, controuersies, quarrels, and complaints, within any our realmes, dominions & iur-
isdiccions onely moued, and to be moued touching their marchandise, traffiques, and occupiers a-
foresaid, or the good order or rule of them or any of them.

Also wee for vs, our heires and successors, so much as in vs is, doe likewise by these presents
graunt, that the laide Gouvernour, Consuls, assistants, fellowship and communalitie, and their suc-
cessors shall and may haue perpetual succession, and a common Seale which shall perpetually
serue for the affaires and businesse of the laide fellowship and communalitie. And that they and
their successors, shall and may be for euery able persons, and capar in the lawe, for to purchase
and possesse in fee and perpetuitie, and for terme of life or liues, or for terme of yeeres or othe-
uer they bee, by the name of the Gouvernour, Consuls, assistants, fellowship and communalitie
of the Marchants aduenturers by Seas and Nauigations for the discouerie of landes, territo-
ries, fies, Dominions, and Seigniories vnknownen, and before the laide last adventure or en-
terpryse by seas not frequented, as before is specified, and by the same names shall and may law-
fully alien, graunt, let and let the same or any part thereof to any person or persons able in the
lawe to take and receiue the same. So that they doe not graunt nor alien the same, or any part
thereof into mortmaine, without speciall licence of vs, our heires or successors, first had and
obtained.

Also wee for vs, our heires and successors haue graunted, and by these presents doe graunt
vnto the laide Gouvernours, Consuls, assistants, fellowship and communalitie of the laide Mar-
chants and to their successors, that they and their successors, shall and may lawfully purchase
vnto them and their successors for euery, landes, tenements and hereditaments whatsoever, of the
cleare peece value of threescorpe like pounds, thirtene shillings & foure pence of lawful money
of England and not aboute, as well of such lands, tenements and hereditaments, as be holden
of vs, our heires or successors, as of any other person or persons, the statutes
prouided against alienations into mortmaine, or any of them, or any article or clause in them or
any of them contained, or any other lawe, custome, statute or prouision to the contrary in any wise
withstanding. And that they by the name of the Gouvernour, Consuls, assistants,
fellowship and communalitie of Marchants aduenturers, for the discouerie of landes, territories, fies, domi-
nions and Seigniories unknownen by the Seas and Nauigations, and not before the said last ad-
venture or enterpryse by seas frequented as aforesaid, shall and may be able in the lawe to implead,
be impleaded, to answere, and to be answered, to defende, and to be defended before whatsoe-
uer Judge or Justice, temporall or spirituall, or other persons whatsoever, in whatsoeuer court,
courts, and in all actions personall, reall, and mixt, and in euery of them, and in all plaints of no-
fel disseison, and also in all plaints, suites, quarrels, affaires, businesse and demaunds whatsoever
they bee, touching and concerning the laide fellowship and communalitie, and the affaires and
businesse of the same onely, in as ample manner and forme, as any other corporation of this our
realme may doe,

Wherefore, wee for vs, our heires and successours, haue giuen and graunted, and by these presents doe giue and graunt vnto the said Gouvernour, Consuls, assistants, fellowshipp, and communalitie of Marchants aduenturers aforesaid, and to their successours, that the said Gouvernour, or Gouvernours, Consuls and assistants, and their successours, in manner, forme, and number, aforesaid, shall haue full power and authoritie from time to time hereafter, to make, ordeine, establish and erect all such statutes, actes and ordinaunces, for the gouernement, good conditioun, and laudable rule of the said fellowshipp and communalitie of Marchants aduenturers aforesaid, as to them shall bee thought good, meete, conuenient and necessarie. And that euery such person or persons, as shall fortune hereafter to bee admitted into the said fellowshipp, communalitie and copporation, shall bee thought good, meete, conuenient and necessarie. And that euery such person or persons, as shall from the time of his or their admittance, bee free of the same. And also wee will, and by these presents graunt for vs, our heires and successours, vnto the said Gouvernours, Consuls, assistants, fellowshipp, communalitie of Marchants aduenturers aforesaid, and to their successours, that the Gouvernour, or gouernours, Consuls and assistants of the same, in manner, forme, and number aforesaid, and their successours for the time being, shall, and may haue full power and authoritie by these presents from time to time, as to them shall seeme good, to limite, set, ordeine and make, mulcts, and penalties by fines, forfeitures, & imprisonment, for any of them upon any offender of the said fellowshipp and communalitie, for any offence touching the same fellowshipp and communalitie, and also that all acts and ordinaunces by them or their successours to bee made, which time shall thinke not necessarie or preiudiciall to the said fellowshipp or communalitie, at all times to reuoke, breake, frustrate, annihilate, repeale and dissolve at their pleasure and liberty. And further, wee will, that if any of the said fellowshipp and communalitie shall be found contrarious, rebellious, or disobedient to the said Gouvernour or gouernours, Consuls, and the said assistants for the time being, or to any statutes, acts or ordinaunces by them made or to be made, then the said Gouvernour or gouernours, Consuls, and the said assistants, in manner, forme, and number aboue specified, for the time being, shall and may by vertue of these presents, mulct, and punish euery such offender or offenders, as the quality of the offence requirerh, according to their good discretions.

And further, we will that none of the said offender or offenders shall decline from the power of the said Gouvernour, or gouernours, Consuls and assistants, in manner, forme, and number aforesaid for the time being: so alwayes, that the said actes, statutes and ordinaunces, doe only touch and concerne the said Gouvernour or gouernours, Consuls, assistants, and the said fellowshipp and communalitie of our beforesaid Marchants aduenturers, or the men of the same fellowshipp and communalitie, and none other: And so alwayes, that such their acts, statutes and ordinaunces bee not against our prerogatiue, lawes, statutes, and customes of our realmes and Dominions, nor contrary to the severall dutie of any our subiects towards vs, our heires and successours, nor contrary to any compacts, treaties or leagues, by vs or any our progenitors heretofore had or made, or hereafter by vs, our heires and successours to bee made, to or with any forreine Prince or potentate, nor also to the preiudice of the copporation of the said, communalities and Citizens of our Citie of London, nor to the preiudice of any person or persons, habie politique, or copporate, or incorporate, iustly pretending, clayming, or hauing any liberties, franchises, priuiledges, rightes or preeminences, by vertue of pretext of any graunt, gift, or Letters patents, by vs, or any our Progenitors, heretofore giuen, graunted, or made.

Wherefore, we for vs, our heires, and successours, will, and by these presents, doe graunt vnto the said Gouvernours, Consuls, assistants, fellowshipp and communalitie of our Marchants aforesaid, that their said Gouvernour or gouernours, Consuls and assistants, and their successours for the time being, in manner, forme and number aboue rehearsed, shall haue full power and authoritie to assigne, constitute and ordaine one officer, or diuers officers as well within our aforesaid Citie of London, as also in any other place or places of this our Realme of England, or else where within our dominions, which officer or officers, wee will to be named and called by the name of Sergeant or Sergeants to the fellowshipp or communalitie of the said marchants, and that the said Sergeant or Sergeants, shall and may haue full power and authoritie by these presents, to take, leue and gather all maner fines, forfeitures, penalties and mulcts of euery person and persons, of the said fellowshipp and communalitie conuict, and that shall be conuicted, upon or for breaking of any statutes, acts, ordinaunces, to bee made by the said Gouvernour or gouernours, Consuls and assistants for the time being.

And further, wee will and also graunt for vs, our heires and successours, that the said officer

or officer in this behalf chatted. And if it shall of, to be in the said office, bayliffes, or place of uernour or said, under may attach and chatteles franchised, offenders, be seized, shall a sayd officer.

And further euery such copporate, in copporate, court or court.

And further for vs, our heires and successours, we will that the said fellowshipp and communalitie of our Marchants aforesaid, shall haue full power and authoritie to assigne, constitute and ordaine one officer, or diuers officers as well within our aforesaid Citie of London, as also in any other place or places of this our Realme of England, or else where within our dominions, which officer or officers, wee will to be named and called by the name of Sergeant or Sergeants to the fellowshipp or communalitie of the said marchants, and that the said Sergeant or Sergeants, shall and may haue full power and authoritie by these presents, to take, leue and gather all maner fines, forfeitures, penalties and mulcts of euery person and persons, of the said fellowshipp and communalitie conuict, and that shall be conuicted, upon or for breaking of any statutes, acts, ordinaunces, to bee made by the said Gouvernour or gouernours, Consuls and assistants for the time being.

And we haue also graunted vnto the said Gouvernours, and to their assistants, full power and authoritie to assigne, constitute and ordaine one officer, or diuers officers as well within our aforesaid Citie of London, as also in any other place or places of this our Realme of England, or else where within our dominions, which officer or officers, wee will to be named and called by the name of Sergeant or Sergeants to the fellowshipp or communalitie of the said marchants, and that the said Sergeant or Sergeants, shall and may haue full power and authoritie by these presents, to take, leue and gather all maner fines, forfeitures, penalties and mulcts of euery person and persons, of the said fellowshipp and communalitie conuict, and that shall be conuicted, upon or for breaking of any statutes, acts, ordinaunces, to bee made by the said Gouvernour or gouernours, Consuls and assistants for the time being.

And further, we will that none of the said offender or offenders shall decline from the power of the said Gouvernour, or gouernours, Consuls and assistants, in manner, forme, and number aforesaid for the time being: so alwayes, that the said actes, statutes and ordinaunces, doe only touch and concerne the said Gouvernour or gouernours, Consuls, assistants, and the said fellowshipp and communalitie of our beforesaid Marchants aduenturers, or the men of the same fellowshipp and communalitie, and none other: And so alwayes, that such their acts, statutes and ordinaunces bee not against our prerogatiue, lawes, statutes, and customes of our realmes and Dominions, nor contrary to the severall dutie of any our subiects towards vs, our heires and successours, nor contrary to any compacts, treaties or leagues, by vs or any our progenitors heretofore had or made, or hereafter by vs, our heires and successours to bee made, to or with any forreine Prince or potentate, nor also to the preiudice of the copporation of the said, communalities and Citizens of our Citie of London, nor to the preiudice of any person or persons, habie politique, or copporate, or incorporate, iustly pretending, clayming, or hauing any liberties, franchises, priuiledges, rightes or preeminences, by vertue of pretext of any graunt, gift, or Letters patents, by vs, or any our Progenitors, heretofore giuen, graunted, or made.

Conquest pre-
mitted.

The epistles
into priu-
leges vnto
the English.

The largenes
of the priu-
leges of the
spicourne
compantie.

Anno 1555.

granting vnto them by his letters addressed vnto vs, franke access into all his Seigniories and dominions, with licence freely to traffique in and our with all his Subjects in all kinde of Marchandise, with diuers other gracious priuiledges, liberties and immunities specified in his sayde letters vnder his Signet: Know yee therefore that wee of our further ropall fauour and munificence, of our merite motion, certaine knowledge, and speciall grace, for vs our heires and successours, haue giuen and granted, and by these presents doe giue and grant vnto the same Governours, Consuls, assistants, fellowship, and comunality aboue named, and to their successours, as much as in vs is, that all the mayne landes, Isles, portes, hauens, creekes, and ri- uers of the said mighty Emperour of all Russia, and great duke of Mosco, &c. And all and sin- gular other lands, dominions, territories, Isles, portes, hauens, creekes, rivers, armes of the sea, of al and euery other Emperour, king, prince, ruler and gouernour, whatsoeuer he or they before the said late aduenture or enterpryse not knowne, or by our foresayd marchantes and subiects by the seas, not commonly frequented, nor by any part nor parcell thereof lying Northwards, North- eastwards, or Northwestwards, as is aforesayd, by sea shall not be visited, frequented nor hanted by any our subiects, other then of the sayd company and fellowship, and their successours without expresse licence, agreement and consent of the Governour, Consuls, and Assistants of the said fel- lowship and comunality aboue named, or the moie part of them, in manner and number afoze- sayd, for the time being, vpon paine of forfeiture and losse, as well of the shippe and shippes, with the appurtenances, as also of all the goods, marchandises, and things whatsoeuer they be, of those our subiects, not being of the sayd fellowship and comunality, which shall attempt or presume to saile to any of those places, which bee, or hereafter shall happen to bee found, and traffike vnto: the one halfe of the same forfeiture to be to the vse of vs, our heires and successours, and the other halfe to be to the vse of the sayd fellowship and comunality. And if it shall fortune one stranger or strangers, for to attempt to hurt, hinder, or endamage the same marchants, their fac- tores, deputies or assignes, or any of them in sailing, going or returning at any time in the sayd ad- uenture, or for to saile or trade or from any those places, landes or coasts, which by the sayd marchantes, their factozs, deputies and assignes haue bene, or shall bee descriced, discouered and found, or frequented, as well within the coastes and limites of gentility, as within the dominions and Seigniories of the sayd mighty Emperour and Duke, and of all and euery other Empe- rour, King, Prince, Ruler and gouernour whatsoeuer he or they be, before the sayd late aduenture or enterpryse not knowne by any our said marchants and subiects, by the seas not commonly fre- quented, and lying Northwards, Northeastwards or Northwestwards as aforesaid, then wee will and grant, and by these presents doe licence, and authorise for vs, our heires and successours, the said marchantes, their factozs, deputies, and assignes, and euery of them to doe their best in their defence, to resist the same their enterpryses and attempts. Willing therefore, and straightly com- manding and charging al and singular our Officers, Maiors, Sherifes, Escheatores, Constables, Bailiffs, and all and singular other our ministers and liege men, and subiects whatsoeuer, to be- aiding, fauouring, helping & assisting vnto the sayd gouernour or gouernours, Consuls, assistants, fellowship and comunality, and to their successours and deputies, factozs, seruants, and assignes, and to the deputies, factozs and assignes of euery of them, in executing and enioying the premit- ses, as well on land as in the sea, from time to time, and at all times when you or any of you shall be required. In witness whereof, &c.

Apud Westmonasterium, 6 die Feb. Annis regnorum nostro-
rum, primo & secundo.

Certaine instructions deliuered in the third voyage, Anno 1556.
for Russia, to euery Purser and the rest of the seruants, taken for the
voyage, which may serue as good and necessary directions,
to all other like aduenturers.

IF you shall before the ship both begin to lade, goe aboard, and shall there take, and write one inuentorie, by the aduise of the spatter, or of some other principall officer there aboard, of all the rackle, apparell, cables, anchors, ordi- nance, chambers, shot, powder, artillerie, and of all other necessaries whatsoeuer both belong to the sayd ship: and the same listly taken, you shall write in a booke, making the sayd spatter, or such officer priuie of that which you haue so written, so that the same may not be denied, when they shall call accompt thereof: that done, you shall write a copie of the same with your owne hand, which you shall deliuer before the

shippe

Pur

shippe
so the em-
belene

2 Also
such goods
the marks
pipe, punc-
ching, whi-
packes, or
you shall de-
ners thereo-
you can not
in your booke
Marchants
being not ma-
ced in all
laden, recit-
wise deliuer

3 Also wh-
gent, and shall
openly, to be
know any othe-
to be priuily de-
here to the Age-
belicenced to
others as do pay-
let the deliuerie
any other that
deliuered there
companies goods
same truely to
declared.

4 Also when
you shall dilig-
then such as be
Gouernours and
such person or
let the passage
person passe vnder
anker, call the
the ende that you
voyage.

5 Also you must
harbour in this coast
of from time to time
gent for the company
ners, write that which
you shall do very well

6 And principally
call the company with
will haue the better su-
7 Also in calme we-
during the voyage
seruants aboard, call vpon
engines as they haue ab-
quelsayd: and if there
ence.

8 And when God shall
be a hope with the first

Shippe shall depart, for the voyage to the companies booke keeper here to be kept to their vantage, so the end that they may be iustly answered the same, when time shall require: and this order to be leene and kept every voyage orderly, by the Purfers of the companies owne ship, in any wise.

2 Also when the shippe beginneth to lade, you shall be ready a boord with your booke, to enter the markes and numbers of every packe, fardell, trusse, or pocket, cozoupa, chest, fatte, butte, thing, which may, or shall be packed by any other manner of wales or devise. And first, all such you shall doe the best to let that the same be not laden, and to enquire diligently to know the owners thereof, if you can, and what commoditie the same is, that is so brought aboard to be laden: if you can not know the owners of such goods, learne what port can thereof, as well making a note in your booke, as also to send or bring word thereof to the Agent, and to some one of the four being not marked with the companies marke, as is aforesaid: and when the said shippe hath received in all that the companies Agent will have laden, you shall make a iust copie of that which is will deliver to the said booke keeper to the use aforesaid.

3 Also when the ship is ready to depart, you shall come for your cockets and letters to the Agent, and shall shew him all such letters as you have received of any person or persons privately or openly, to be delivered to any person or persons in Russia or elsewhere, and also to declare if you know any other that shall passe in the ship either master or mariner that hath received any letters to be privately delivered to any there, directed from any person or persons, other then from the Agent here to the Agent there: which letters so by you received, you shall not carie with you, without you be licensed so to doe by the Agent here, and some of the four merchants, as is aforesaid: and such others as do passe, having received any private letters to be delivered, you shall all that in you lieth, let the deliuerie of them at your arriuing in Russia: and also if you have or do receive, or shall know any other that doth or hath received any goods or ready money to be employed in Russia, or to be companies goods, and that under their marke, you shall before the ship doeth depart, declare the same truely to the said Agent, and to some of the other merchants to him aduyned, as it is before declared.

4 Also when the shippe is ready to depart, and hath the master and the whole company aboard, you shall diligently foresee and take heede, that there passe not any private person or persons, other then such as be authorized to passe in the said ship, without the licence and warrant of one of the Countours and of the assistants, for the same his passage, to be first shewed. And if there be any such person or persons that is to passe and will passe without shewing the same warrant, you shall let the passage of any such to the uttermost of your power: And so that there may no such private person passe vnder the cloke and colour of some mariner, you shall upon the weying of your ships anker, call the master and the mariners within boord by their names and that by your bookes, to the end that you may see that you have neither more nor lesse, but iust the number for the voyage.

5 Also you must have in remembrance, that if it shall chance the shippe to bee put into any harbour in this coast by contrary windes or other wise in making the voyage, to send word there of from time to time as the case shall require, by your letters in this manner. To master I.B. Agents, write that which he must haue for the portage. And for your better knowledge and learning, you shall do very well to keepe a daily note of the voyage both outwards and homeward.

6 And principally see that you forget not daily in all the voyage both morning and evening, to call the company within boord to prayer, in which doing you shall please God, and the voyage will haue the better successe thereby, and the company prosper the better.

7 Also in calme weather and at other times when you shall fortune, to come to anker in the straits aboard, call upon the Boatswaine and other of the company to vie such hookes and other engines as they haue aboard to take fish with, that such fish so taken may bee eaten for the cause aforesaid: and if there bee no such engines aboard, then to provide some before you goe from hence.

8 And when God shall send you in safetie into the Bay of S. Nicholas at an anker, you shall be a shore with the first boate that shall depart from the ship, taking with you such letters as you haue

haue to behue to the Agent there : and if he be not there at your comming a land, then send the companies letters to Colmogro to him by some sure mariner or otherwise, as the matter and you shall thinke best, but goe not your selfe at any hand, nor yet from aboard the ship, unless it bee a shope to create with the Agent for the lading of the ship that you be appointed in, which you shall apply diligently to haue done so speedily as may be. And for the discharging of the goods there in in the Bay, to be caried from thence, see that you doe looke well to the unlading thereof, that there be none other goods sent a shope then the companies, and according to the notes entered in your booke as is aforesaid : if there be, inquire diligently for whom they bee, and what goods they be, noting who is the receiver of the sayd goods, in such sort that the company may haue the true knowledge thereof at your comming home.

9. Also there a shope, and likewise aboard, you shall spie and search as secretly as you may, to learne and know what bargaining, buying and selling there is with the master and the mariners of the shippe and the Ruffes, or with the companies seruants there : and that which you shall perceiue and learne, you shall keepe a note thereof in your booke secretly to your selfe, which you shall open and disclose at your comming home to the gouernours and assistants, in such sort as the truth of their secret trades and occupings may be reuealed and knowen. You shall bene alwayes to haue Argos eyes, to spie their secret packing and conuoyance, as well on land as aboard the shippe, of and for such fures and other commodities, as secretly they doe use to buy, packe and conuey hither. If you will bee vigilant and secrete in this article, you cannot misse to spie their priuite packing one with another, either on shope or aboard the shippe : woe he herein wisely, and you shall deserue great thanks of the whole company.

10. Also at the lading againe of the shippe, you shall continue and abide aboard, to the ende that you may note and write in your booke all such goods and marchandises as shall be brought and laden, which you shall orderly note in all foyses as heretofore, as in the second article partly it is toucht : and in any wise put the Master and the company in remembrance, to looke and see the substantially to the rooting of the shippe, by faire meanes or cheates, as you shall see and thinke will serue for the best.

11. Thus when the shippe is full laden againe, and all things aboard in good order, and that you doe fortune to goe a shope to the Agent for your letters, and dispatch away : you shall demand whether all the goods be laden that were brought thither, and to know the truth thereof, you shall repaire to the companies storehouse there at S. Nicholas, to see if there be any goods left in the sayd storehouse : if there be, you shall demand why they be not laden, and note what kinde of goods they be that be so left : and seeing any of the shippes there not fully laden, you shall put the Agent in remembrance to lade those goods so left, if any such be to be laden, as is aforesaid. And thus God sending you a faire wind, to make speede and away.

12. If finally, when God shall send you to arrive againe upon this coast in safetie, either at Harwich, or elsewhere, goe not you aland, if you may possible, to the ende that when you be gone a shope, there may no goods be sent priuily a shope to be sold, or else to be sold aboard the ship in your absence, but keepe you still aboard, if you can by any meanes, for the causes aforesaid, and write the company a letter from the shippe of your good arrivall, which you may conuey to them by land by some boy or mariner of the shippe, or otherwise as you shall thinke best : and likewise when God shall send you and the shippe into the riuer here, doe not in any wise depart out of the shippe that you be in, until the company doe send some other aboard the shippe, in your stead and place, to keepe the shippe in your absence.

The Nauigation and discouerie toward the riuer of Ob, made by Master Steven Burrough, Master of the Pinnesse called the Serch-christ, with diuers things worth the noting, passed in the yere 1556.

Myll 23.

27



Departed from Rother to Blackewall the 23 of April, Saturday being S. Markes day, we departed from Blackewall to Grays.

The 27 being Sunday, the right worshipfull Sebastian Cabota came aboard our Pinnesse at Grauesende, accompanied with diuers Gentlemen, and Gentlewomen, who after that they had viewed our Pinnesse, and talked of such cheere as we could make them aboard, they went on shope, giuing to our mariners right liberrall rewards : and the good olde Gentleman Master Cabota gaue to the poorest liberrall almes, wishing them to pray for the good fortune, and prosperous successe of the Serch-christ, our Pinnesse. And then at the signe of the Christopher, hee and his friends banketed, and made me, and them that were in the company great cheere : and for very loy that he had

to see the
of the poin
commendin

Tuesday
Wednesday
that night w

Thursday
at an anker
where the w

Friday the
cude at a Sho
pany and the
and Northwe

Saturday
was off to Ca
South turne
summe : and wh

and halfe a poi
Northwell alo

Upon Sunday
Northwell we

Calendars of
changed our co
and mistle, and

Serch-christ, beca
and pinnelle, we

this mist came by
Southwell

From that vnt
we went North
the latitude this

we had sight of our
From that vnt

Northwell. From
from that vnt

east : then had we
Northwell summe

and saw the high la
went North and by

From the sayd
ten leagues and a ha

nine degrees, and a
east eleven leagues a

and a halfe Eastmo
the broad floe of vs

From that vntill
Northwards forty ei

shope, and thwarte of
head to the seawards

there in with the shope
the found and saw two

ding, God be praye
enough : and then the

large : with the mark
large was a token, w

to see the towardnes of our intended discovery, he entered into the dance himselfe, amongst the rest of the young and lusty company: which being ended, hee and his friends departed most gently, commending vs to the gouernance of almighty God.

Tuesday we rode still at Grauesend, making promise for such things as we wanted. Wednesday in the morning we departed from Grauesend, the winde being at South-west, that night we came to an anchor thwart our Lady of Hollands.

Thursday at thye of the clocke in the morning we wayed, and by sight of the clocke, we were at an anchor in Orwell waupes, and then incontinent I went aboard the Edward Bonaventure, where the worshipfull company of marchantes appointed me to be, untill the sayd good ship arrived at Wardhouse. Then I returned againe into the pinuelle.

Friday the 15 of May we were within 7 leagues of the shoare, on the coast of Norway: the latitude at a South sunne, 58 degrees and a halfe, where we saw thre sailles, beside our owne company: and thus we followed the shoare of Iano, which lieth North-north-west, North and by West, and North-west and by North, as it doth appeare by the plat.

Saturday at an East sunne we came to S. Dunstons Island, which Island I so named. It was off vs East two leagues and a halfe, the wind being at Southeast: the latitude this day at a South sunne 59 degrees, 42 minutes. Also the high round mountain bare East of vs, at a South sunne: and where this hill is East of you, and being bound to the Northward, the land lyeth North North-west alongst the shoare.

Upon Sunday at five of the clocke in the morning, the farthest land that we could see that lay North-north-west, was East of vs thye leagues, and then it trended to the Northwards, and to the Eastwards of the North, which headland I iudged to be Scoutnesse. At seven of the clocke we changed our course and went North, the wind being at South-fourth-east, and it waied very thick and mistie, and when it cleered, we went North-north-east. At a South sunne we lost sight of the land and pinuelle, we were within two leagues & a halfe of the shoare: the last land that we saw when this mist came vpon vs, which is to the Northwards of Scoutnesse, lay North-north-east, and South-fourth-west, and we made our way North untill a west sunne five leagues.

From that untill Sunday thye a clocke in the morning ten leagues North-north-east: and then we went North and by East, because the winde came at the West-south-west with thicke mist: the latitude this day at a South sunne sixtie thye degrees and a halfe truly taken: at this season we had sight of our pinuelle againe.

From that untill Tuesday a South sunne North-north-east fortie foure leagues, and then North-east. From a South sunne untill eight of the clocke, sixtene leagues North-east, and then from that untill Wednesday a South sunne North-north-east, except the first watch North-east: then had we the latitude in sixtie seven degrees, thirtie nine minutes. From that unto a North-west sunne eighteen leagues North-east, & then we were within two leagues off the shoare, and saw the high land to the Southwards of Lowfoot breake out through the mist, and then we went North and by east.

From the sayd North-west sunne untill foure of the clocke in the morning North and by East ten leagues and a halfe: and then North-north-east untill a South sunne, the latitude being sixtie nine degrees, and a halfe. From that untill halfe an houre past seven of the clocke, North-north-east eleven leagues and a halfe, and then we went North-east ten leagues. From that 3 leagues and a halfe East-north-east, and then we sawe the land through the cloudes and hazie thwart on the broad side of vs the winde being then at South-fourth-west.

From that untill Saturday, at eight of the clocke in the morning East-north-east, and to the Northwards fortie eight leagues, and then the wind came by at North, wee being aboard the shoare, and thwart of the Chappel, which I suppose is called Kedilwike: then we cast the shippes head to the leeward, because the winde was very scant: and then I caused the pinuelle to beare in with the shoare, to see whether she might find an harborough for the ships or not, and that being done, God be praised, the winde enlarged vpon vs, that we had not occasion to goe into the harborough: and then the pinuelle bare her Hyslen mast our hood with flagge and all, and lost the flagge: with the mast there fell two men our hood, but God be praised, they were saved: the flagge was a token, whereby we might understand whether there were a good harbour there or not.

At a North sunne the North cape (which I so named the first boage) was thwart of vs, which is nine leagues to the Eastwards of the foresayd Chappel from the Easternmost point of it.

June

The North cape so named by Steven Burrowe.

Note May 15.

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

Kedilwike Chappel.

June.

7 The Sunday we weied in Corpus Christi Bay, at a Noztheast and by East sunne: the Bay is almost halfe a league deepe: the headland which is Corpus Christi point, lyeth Southeast and by East, one league from the head of the Bay, where we had a great tyde, like a race ouer the flood: the Bay is at the least two leagues ouer: so doe I imagine from the sayde fozele to Corpus Christi point ten leagues Southeast and by East: It floweth in this Bay, at a South and by West moone full sea. From that we went vntill seuen a clocke at after noone twenye leagues Southeast and by South: and then we tooke in all our sailes, because it was then very mistie, and also we met with much ice that ran out of the Bay, and then wee went Southsouth-east with our fozele: at eight of the clocke, we heard a peece of ordnance, which was out of the Edward, which had vs fare well, and then we shot off another peece, and had her fare well: we could not one see the other, because of the thicke miste: at a Nozthwest sunne it began somewhat to cleere, and then we sawe a head lande, and the shoare trended to the Southsouthward, which I iudged to be about Crosse Island: it was off vs at a Nozthnozthwest sunne, Westsouthwest.

8 From this Nozthnozthwest sunne, vntill Sunday, we went South-east, and this morning we came at anker among the shoales that lie off of point Look out, at a Noztheast and by East sunne, the wind being at Eastsouth-east. At this point Look out, a South Shoone maketh a full sea. Cape good fortune lyeth from the Isle of Crosse Southeast, and betweene them is twenye leagues: point Look out lieth from Cape Good fortune Eastsouth-east, and betweene them are sixe leagues. S. Edmonds point lieth from point Look out Eastsouth-east, and halfe a point to the Southwards, and betweene them are sixe leagues. There is betweene these two points, a Bay that is halfe a league deepe, and is full of shoales and dangers. At a Southeast sunne we weied, and turned to the windwards, the winde being at Eastsouth-east: and at a South-east sunne, we came to an anker, being then a full sea, in sixe favours and a halfe water. T. lieth in this place where we roade, and also at point Look out, foure favours water. At a Westnozthwest sunne we weied, and byrue to the windwards, vntill Tuesday, a Nozthnoztheast sunne, and then being a high water, we came to an anker open of the riuer Cola, in eight favours water, Cape S. Bernard lyeth from S. Edmonds point, Southeast and by South, and betweene them are sixe leagues, and also betwixt them is the Riuer Cola, into which Riuer wee went this evening.

10 On Wednesday we roade still in the sayd riuer, the winde being at the north: we sent our skiff to land to be dyessed: the latitude of the mouth of the riuer Cola is sixtie sixe degrees, fortye and eight minutes.

11 Thursday at 6 of the clocke in the morning, there came aboord of vs one of the Russe Lobbers, rowing with twentie oares, and there were scure and twenty men in her. The master of the boate presented me with a great loafe of bready, and sixe ringes of bready, which they call Coliches, and foure dyed pikes, and a peeke of fine otemeale, and I gaue vnto the Master of the boate, a combe, and a small glasse: and he declared vnto me, that he was bound to Pechora, and after that, I made them to drinke, the tide being somewhat broken, they gently departed. The officers name was Pheodor.

Whereas the tenth day I sent our Pinelle on shoare to be mended, because she was leake, and weake, with the Carpenter and three men more to helpe him, the weather chaunced so, that it was Sunday before they could get aboord our shippe. All that time they were without provision of victuals, but onely a little bready, which they spent by Thursday at night, thinking to have come aboord when they had listred, but winde and weather denied them: insomuch that they were faine to eate grasse, and such weedes as they could finde then about ground, but fresh water they had plentie, but the meate with some of them could scant frame by reason of their queasie stomaches.

14 From Thursday at afternoone, vntill Sunday in the morning, our barke did ride such a road that it was to be maruelled, without the helpe of God, how she was able to abide it. In the bight of the Southeast shoare of the riuer Cola, there is a good roade in sixe favours, or foure favours and a halfe, at a lowe water: but you shall haue no land Nozthnoztheast of you then, I proued with our pinelle, that the depth goeth on the Southeast shoare.

18 Thursday we weied our ankers in the Riuer Cola, and went into the Sea seuen or eight leagues, where we met with the winde farre Noztherly, that of force it constrained vs to goe and gaine backe into the sayd riuer, where came aboord of vs sunny of their Boates, which desired

Ste

red b
gaie

As
ant the
salle of
to me
sitting
with a
glad of
werde.

Some
speciall
Shun
foze the
vid often

Tuesday
that from
full of sho
sent day w
the sayd C
foze nighe
east. The b
This after
company the
with two o
company had
Wednesday
found it almo
Although c
to sit our cap
neere a high
barre in the en
to lead it in, an
ground on the l
in a very brea
others also, the
bene dyedown
stone ankers we
also sent it v
down long, thin
anker came hom
other small anker
these two ankers
and when the bar
that day with our
The Thursday
Friday at afterno
at Eastsouth
as farre as we we
of their small bo
our friendship, and
one lost. This Gab
that we had thus con
and made them li
of their skiffes ab
dwelt in Colnigro
the b. The b. The b.
in thanks for the lone

Call Summe: the Day is
oint, Iperth South-east
e type, like a race oure
the saye forrend to
this Day, at a Sunch
e after noone twene
cause it was then ber
ee went South-west
which was out of the
ade her farewell: we
unne it began some
to the South-west
South-west Summe.

and this morning we
yeast and by Call
Spone maketh a full
weene them is reue
and betwene them
east, and halfe a poine
ne these two poines,
South-east Summe we
and at a South-east
fe water. I liked
er. At a West-north-
South-east Summe,
in eight fadome we
South, and betwene
Riuer we went this

we sent our Skiffe
degrees, forzie and

the Russe Lodias,
The master of the
sch they call Cole
Batter of the bowe,
Pechora, and after
departed. The Sp

ause she was lake,
r chanced so, that
were without provi
ht, thinking to haue
uch that they were
e, but fresh water
on of their queye

ke did ride such
ble to abide it,
e in five fadome, of
heast of you then

ea seven of eight
ained vs to goe
ates, whilst deue
to

red who met that they were also bound to the northward, a fishing for Horse, and Salmon, and
gave me liberally of their white and wheaten bread.

As we rode in this river, we sawe daily comming downe the river many of their Lodias, Lodias having
and they that had leade, had foure and twenty men in them, and at the last they grew to thirtie
saile of them: and amongst the rest, there was one of them whose name was Gabriel, who shew
ed me very much friendship, and he declared vnto mee, that all they were bound to Pechora, a
fishing for Salmon, and Horses: insomuch that hee shewed mee by demonstrations, that
with a saile where wee had seuen or eight dayes sailing to the Riuer Pechora, so that I was
glad of their company. This Gabriel promised to giue mee warning of shoales, as hee did in
ber.

Sunday being the one and twentieth day, Gabriel gaue me a barrell of beere, and one of his
speciall friends gaue me a barrell of beere, which was carryed vpon mens backs at least a miles.
Sunday we departed from the riuer Cola, with all the rest of the said Lodias, but sailing be-
foze the wind, they were all so good for vs: but according to promise, this Gabriel and his friend
did often strike their sayles, and caried for vs forsaking their owne company.

Tuesday at an East-north-east Summe we were thwart of Cape S. John. It is to be understood,
that from the Cape S. John vnto the riuer of bay that goeth to Mezen, it is all sunke land, and
fall of shoales and dangers, you shall haue scant two fadome water, and see no land. And this pre-
sent day wee came to an anker thwart of a creeke, which is 4 or 5 leagues to the Northward of
the sayd Cape, into which creeke Gabriel and his fellow rowed, but we could not get in: and be-
foze night there were about 20 saile that went into the sayd creeke, the wind being at the North-
east. We had indifferent good landfang.

This afternoone Gabriel came aboard with his skiffe, and then I rewarded him for the good
company that he kept with vs ouer the shoales with two small mozy combs, and a Steele glasse,
company has gotten further to the Northward.

Wednesday being the thirtieth day, we sent our skiffe a land to sound the creeke, where they
found it almost drye at a low water. And all the Lodias within were on ground.

Although the barbozough were euil, yet the Lodias within were on ground,
to let our sayles, & we let slip a cable and an anker, and bare with the barbozough, for it was then
nere a high water: and as alwaies in such tourments varieties do chance, when we came vpon the
bare in the entrance of the creeke, the wind did sink so suddenly vpon vs, that we were not able
to lead it in, and before we could haue started the shippe before the winde, we should haue bene on
ground on the lee shoze, so that we were constrained to let fall an anker vnder our sayles, and rode
in a very heach, thinking to haue waypt in. Gabriel came out in his skiffe, and so did sundry
others also, offering their good will to helpe vs, but all to no purpose, for they were likely to haue
bene downed for their labour, in so much that I desired Gabriel to lend me his anker, because our
owne ankrs were too big for our skiffe to lay out, who sent me his owne, and bozrowed another
also and sent it vs. Then we layd out one of those ankrs, with a hawser which he had of 140 fa-
dom long, thinking to haue waypt in, but it would not be: for as we shoyed vpon y said warpe the
anker came home, so that we were faine to beare the end of the warpe, that we rushed in vpon the
other small anker that Gabriel sent aboard, and layd that anker to seawards: and then betwene
these two ankrs we trauesed the ships head to seawards, and set our forsaile and maine sayle,
and when the barke had way, we cut the hawser, and so gate the sea to our friend, and tryed out at
that day with our maine coyle.

The Thursday we went roome with Cape S. John, where we found indifferent good rode
foze North-north-east wind, and for a neede, for a North and by West winde.

Friday at afternoone we weyed, and departed from thence, the weather being meetly faire, & the
time at East-south-east, and plied for the place where we left our cable and anker, and our hawser:
so faine as we were at an anker, the foresaid Gabriel came aboard of vs, with 3 or foure moze
of their small boats, and brought with them of their Aquauitz & Peade, professing vnto me very
much friendship, and reioiced to see vs againe, declaring that they earnestly thought that we had
bene lost. This Gabriel declared vnto me, that they had saued both the ankrs and our hawser, and
made thus communed. I caused 4 or 5 of them to goe into my cabbin, where I gaue them
of their skiffes aboard with one who was a Keril, whose name afterwarres I learned, & that
dwelt in Colmogro, & Gabriel dwelled in the towne of Cola, which is not far from the riuer
of the said Keril. He said vnto me that one of the ankrs which I bozrowed was his, I gaue
him thanks for the lene of it, thinking it had bene sufficient. And as I continued in one accustomed
maner

Lodias having
24 men a piece
From Cola to
Pechora is but
7 or 8 dayes
sailing.

21
22
The currente
of this Gabriel.

23
at good & nee
ordaine note.

24

25

26

**Current right
Robins belong
ginger Cola.**

37

28

The latitude of Cape John 66 degrees 50 minutes.

**Earth swim-
ming about
water like
hubb.**

manner, that if the present which they brought were worth entertainment, they had it accordingly, he brought nothing with him, & therefore I regarded him but little. And thus he ended, & they took their leave and went a shore. At their coming ashore, Gabriel and Keril were at uncommencing words, and by the ears, as I understand: the cause was because the one had better entertainment than the other: but you shall understand that Gabriel was not able to make his party good, because there were 17 lobins of the Kerils company who took his part, and but 9 of Gabriels company. The next high water Gabriel and his company departed from thence, and rowed to their former company and neighbours, which were in number 28 at the least, and all of them belonging to the river Cola.

And as I thus stood Keril made reckoning that the hawser which was fast in his anker should have been his mine, and at first would not deliver it to our boat, inasmuch that I sent him word that I would comply upon him, whereupon he delivered the hawser to my company.

The next day being **Saturday**, I lent our boat on shore to fetch fresh water and wood, and in the morning on shore this Keril welcomed our men most gently, and also barked them: in the meane time caused some of his men to fill our barrells with water, and to help our men to fetch wood into their boat: and then he put on his best silk coase, and his collar of pearles, and came alhoood againe, & brought his present with him: and thus hauing more respect vnto his present then to his person, because I perceived him to be ainglorious, I bade him welcome, and gave him a dish of grapes: and then he declared vnto me that his father was a gentleman, and that he was a slave of the more pleasure, and not Gabriel, who was but a pyless sonne.

After their departure from be weeled, and plyed all the ebbe to the windwards, the wind being Northerly, towards night it waxed very stormie, so that of force we were constrained to go roome with Cape S. Iohn againe, in which storme wee lost our skiffe at our sterne, that wee bought at Wardhouse, and there we rode until the fourth of July. The latitude of Cape S. Iohn is 66 degrees 30 minutes. And it is to be noted, that the land of Cape S. Iohn is of height from the full sea marke, as I iudge, 10 fadomes, being cleane without any trees growing, & also without stones or rocks, and consists onely of blacke earth, which is so rotten, that if any of it fall into the sea, it will swimme as though it were a piece of wood. In which place, about thre leagues from the shoie you shall not haue about 9 fadom water, and clay ground.

Julie

4

Saturday at a Northmoethwell summe the wind came at Calnepothead, then we wield, and
to the Northwards, and as we were two leagues from the Cape, we saw a hawke flinging
in a valley, which is saide to be scene in those parts, and by and by I saw three men on the top
of the hill. Then I iudged them, as it afterwards proued, that they were men which came from some
other place to set traps to take vermin for their fures, which trappes we did perceiue betwixt
along, the shoe as we went.

5

Sunday at an early sunne we were thwart off the creek where the Russes lay, and there came to an anchor, and perceiving the most part of the Lodias to be gone we thought it not good to lay any longer there, but weyed and spent all the ebbe plying to the windward of the creek.

6

Sunday at a South sunne it was high water. All along the coast it floweth little, only a South moone makes a full sea: and as we were tarying we espied the Ruffe Lobias, which is first lost. They came out of a creeke amongst the sandy hills, which hills beginne 15 leagues Northnortheast from Cape S. John.

7

Helping this ebbe to an end, we came to an anchor 6 leagues Northward of the place where we saw the Russes come out; and there the Russes harboured themselves within a lagoon bank, but there was not water enough for us.

The latitude
68 degrees,
and a half.

At a North funne we werped and plied to the Northwards, the land lying Northnorthwest, as Southnorthwest, untill a South funne, and then we were in the latitude of 68 degrees & a half: and in this latitude ende those sandy hills, and the land beginneth to lie North and by East, South and by East, and Northnorthwest, and to the Westwards, and there the water begunneth to waue becom.

As a North-west gale we came to an anchor within halfe a league of the Sho:z. where we
found plenty of fish, both Haddock and Cods, rising in 10 fathom water.

8

Wednesday we tramped, and pined nearer the headland, which is called Caninoz, the town being at East and by North.

2

Thursday the wind being calm we turned to windward the elbe, to get about Canine's latitude this d. & none was 68 degrees 40 minutes.

Friday
we saw the
succor for the
winde was
of a creeke
rough and cold
we weped and
very mistre.
Saturday
called Morgie
sadome and a
sadoms, 4 and
prouide wood,
plenty of yownde
whereof we we
Sunday ou
roue.

This morning
was two leagues
and brought with
to vs, and he pro
Sunday I fe
fresh water: the
there at a South
At a Westing
saw an Island
from the Easter
Wednesday at
at afternoone we
sawome water.

Thursday we
Friday I went
grass and a half fr
quintess.

From two of the
thor, it is all sandy
It higheth on the
full sea.

Sunday at a No
where we had but f
then we did goin
a. which caused the
the breaches, which
pe vs : and at our co
nds did not appeare
tle water.

Then we were a f
much that we stoppe
ast north east.

Tuesday at a 12 o'clock: which afterwards within a little more we were aware of as much as we could in another, with as much of this ice, we lay the next day we were Thursday being calm the this day at noone

Friday we turned to the windward of the ebbe, but to no purpose: and as we rode at an anchor, we saw the similitude of a flame rising at Northnorthwest, & could not tell where to get rode nor succor for that winde, and harborough we knew none: & that land which we rode under with that winde was a lee shoar. And as I was musing what was best to be done, I saw a saile come one of a creeke under the foresayd Caninoz, which was my friend Gabriel, who forsooke his harborough and company, and came as neere us as he might, and pointed us to the Eastward, & then we weped and followed him, and went East and by South, the wind being at Northnorthwest, and very mistie.

Saturday we went Eastsoutheast & followed Gabriel, and he brought us into an harborough called Morgiouets, which is 30 leagues from Caninoz, & we had upon the barre going in the sadome and a fourth part: and after we were past in over the barre, it wared deeper, for we had 5 fadoms, 4 and a half, and 3 fadoms. Our barke being moored, I sent some of our men to shoare to provide wood, where they had plenty of oist wood, but none growing: and in this place we found plenty of young foule, as Gulls, Seapies, and others, whereof the Russes would eat none, whereof we were nothing sorry, for there came the moze to our part.

Sunday our men cut wood on shoare, and brought it aboard, and wee ballasted our shippe with stones.

This morning Gabriel saw a smoke on y way, who rowed unto it with his skiffe, which smoke was two leagues from the place where we rode: and at a Northwest sunne he came aboard again, and brought with him a Samord, which was but a young man: his apparell was then strange unto us, and he presented me with three young wild geese, and one young barnacle.

Monday I sent a man to the maine in Gabriels boat, and he brought us aboard 8 barricoes of fresh water: the latitude of the said Morgiouets is sixtie eight degrees and a terre. At floweth there at a Southsouthwest moone full sea, and herye two fadome and a halfe water.

At a Westnorthwest sunne we departed from this place, and went East 25 leagues, and then saw an Island North and by West of us eight leagues, which Island is called Dolgoieue: and from the Eastmost part of this Island, there lyeth a land East and by South 7 leagues long.

Tuesday at a North and by East sunne Sweinoz was South of us 5 leagues, This day at afternoone we went in over the dangerous barre of Pechora, and had upon the barre but one fadome water.

Thursday we rood still.

Friday I went on shoare and observed the variation of the Compasse, which was three degrees and a halfe from the North to the West: the latitude this day was sixtie nine degrees ten minutes.

From two or three leagues to the Eastward of Sweinoz, untill the entering of the river Pechora, it is all sandy hilles, and towards Pechora the sandie hilles are very low.

At higheth on the barre of Pechora foure foote water, & it floweth there at a Southwest moone full sea.

Sunday at a North & by East sunne, we weped, and came out over the sayd dangerous barre, where we had but foue foote water, in so much that we found a foote lesse water coming out when we did going in. I thinke the reason was, because when we went in the winde was off the sea, which caused the sands to breake on either side of us, and wee kept in the smoothest betweene the beaches, which we durst not have done, except we had seene the Russes to have gone in before us: and at our coming out the winde was off the shoare, and saye weather, and then the sands did not appeare with beaches as at our going in: we thanke God that our ship did draw so little water.

When we were a lea aboard the barre the wind franted upon us, and was at Eastsoutheast, in so much that we stopped the ebbs, and plyed all the floods to the windwards, and made our way almost east.

Tuesday at a Northwest sunne we thought that we had seen land at East, or East & by North: which afterwards proved to be a monstrous heape of ice.

Within a little moze then halfe an houre after, we first saw this ice, we were inclosed within it as much as we could doe to keepe our shippe aloofe from one heape of ice, and beare roomer from another, with as much wind as we might beare a course. And when we had past from the danger of this ice, we lay to the Eastward close by the wind.

The next day we were againe troubled with the ice.

Thursday being calme, we plyed to the windwards, the winde being Northwest. We had the latitude this day at noone, in 70 degrees 12 minutes.

We had not runne past two hours North-west, the wind being at North-north-east and North-east and by North a good gale, but we met againe with another heape of ice: we weathered the head of it, and lay a time to the sea-wards, and made way well 6 leagues,

24

Friday at a Southeast sunne we cast about to the Eastwards, the wind bring at Nozelnorth
east: the latitude this day at noone was 70 degrees 15 minutes.

25

On S. James his day bolting to the windwardes, we had the latitude at noone in scruetye degrees twentie minutes. The same day at a Southwest sunne, there was a monstrous Challenge aboord of vs, to come to our side that we might haue thust a fwoye or any other weapon in him, which we durst not doe for feare hee should haue ouerthrowen our shippe: and then I called my company together, and all of vs shouted, & with the crye that we made he departed from vs: the was as much about water of his backe as the breadth of our pinnelle, and as his falling downe, he made such a terrible noise in the water, that a man would greatly haue marvelled, except hee had knownen the cause of it: but God be thanked, we were quietly deliuered of him. And a little while we spied certaine Islands, with which we bare, and found good harbor in 15 or 18 fadome, and blacke oze: we found crewe to an anker at a South-east sunne, & named the Island S. James his Island, where we came fresh water.

James
H. H. H.

26

Sunday, much wind blowing we rode still.

27

The variation of the Compass 7 degrees and a half.

28

The relation
of Loshak.
The way to
the river of Ob.
20 mighty hill
in Nova Zembla.

Sunday I went on shore and took the latitude, which was 70 degrees 42 minutes: the variation of the compasse was 7 degrees and a halfe from the North to the West.

Tuesday we plyed to the Westwards alongst the shoare, the wind being at Northwester, and as I was about to come to anchor, we saw a sayle coming about the point, where under we thought to have anchored. Then I sent a skiffe aboord of him, and at their coming aboord, they took acquaintance of them, and the chiefe man said hee had bene in our company in the river Cola, and also declared unto them that we were past the way which should bring vs to the Ob. This I say he, is called Noua Zembla, that is to say, the New land: and then he came aboord himselfe with his skiffe, and at his coming he told me the like, and sayd further, that in this Noua Zembla is the highest mountaine in the worlde, as he thought, & that Camen Bolshay, which is on the maine of Pechora, is not to be compared to this mountaine, but I saw it not: he made me also certaine demonstrations of the way to the Ob, and seemed to make haste on his owne way, being very lothe to tarry, because the yeere was farre past, and his neighbour had fed Pechora, and not he: so I gave him a Steele glass, two pewter spoones, and a paire of beluet sheathed knives, and then he seemed somewhat the more willing to tarry, and shewed me as much as he knew for our purpose: he also gave me 17 wilde geese, and shewed me that foure of their lobes were by urn perforce from Caninoze to this Noua Zembla. This mans name was Loshak.

Lozhak.

29

The next day, as we plied to the Eastwards, we espied another sail, which was one of this
 Shaks company, and we bore rounde, and spake with him, who in like sort told us of the Ob,
 the other had done.

30

Thursday, we plied to the Eastwards, the winde being at Eastnortheast.

31

The Islands of Nagai.

¶ Friday, the gale of winde began to increafe, and came Weſterly withall, ſo that by a Storme well ſunne we were at an anchor among the Iſlands of Baigats, where we ſaw two ſmall Iſlands, the one of them came aboard of vs, and preſented me with a great loafe of bread : and they told me that they were all of Colmogro, except one man that dwelt at Pechora, who ſeemed to be the riſeſt among them in killing of the Horſe.

There were some of their company on shoare, which did chase a white beare over the high cliff into the water, which beare the lobta that was aboard of vs killed in our sight.

This day there was a great gale of wind at North, and we saw so much ice driving a seaboard, that it was then no going to sea.

August.

I

Sainord.

Saturday I went ashore, and there I saw three moyses that they had killed: they held one in a spoise, which was not great, at a robe, and one white beare skin at three robes & two robes: they further tolde me, that there were people called Samoeds on the great Island, and they would not abide them no way, who have no houses, but only coverings made of Deerskin: yet ouer them with stakes: they are men expert in shooting, and haue great plenty of Deers,

2

Sunday we had very much wind, with plenty of snow, and we rode with two anchors at

3

Sunday we weped and went roome with another Iland, which was five leagues East from us: and there I met againe with Loshak, and went on shore with him, and hee brought

Steen Burrowe. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

281

me to a heape of the Samoeys idols, which were in number about 300, the worst and the most vn-
artificiall worke that euer I saw: the eyes and mouthes of sundrie of them were bloodie, they had
the shape of men, women and children, very grossly wrought, & that which they had made for other
parts, was also sprinkled with blood. Some of their idols were an olde sticke with two or three
notches, made with a knife in it. I saw much of the footing of the sayd Samoeys, and of the sleds
that they ride in. There was one of their sleds broken, and lay by the heape of idols, & there I saw
a deers skinne which the foules had spoiled: and beside certaine of their idols blocks were made
as high as their mouthes, being all bloody, I thought that to be the table whereon they offered their
sacrifice: I saw also the instruments, whereupon they had roasted fish, and as farre as I could
perceiue, they make their fire directly vnder the spit.

The manner
of the Sa
moey.

Loshak being these present tolde me that these Samoeys were not so hurtful as they of Ob
are, and that they haue no houses, as indeede I saw none, but onely tents made of Deers skins,
which they vnderpopte with stakes and poles: their boates are made of Deers skins, and when
they come on shoare they carry their boates with them vpon their backs: for their carriages they
haue no other beastes to serue them, but Deere only. As for bread and coyne they haue none, ex-
cept the Russes bying it to them: their knowledge is very base, for they know no letter.

The Samoeys
of the Ob very
hurtfull and
fierce people.

Tuesday we turned for the harborough where Loshaks barke lay, wherelas before we rood vn-
der an Island. And there he came aboozd of vs and said vnto me: if God sende winde and wea-
ther to serue, I will goe to the Ob with you, because the Voyages were scant at these Islands
of Vaigars: but if he could not get to the riuier of Ob, then he sayd hee would goe to the riuier of
Naramzay, where the people were not altogether so sauage as the Samoyds of the Ob are: hee
shewed me that they will shoot at all men to the vttermost of their power, that cannot speake their
speech.

4

Wednesday we saw a terrible heape of ice approachere vnto vs, and therefore wee thoughte
good with all speed possible to depart from thence, and so I returned to the Westwards againe, so
the Island where we were the 31 of July.

Naramzay.

Thursday I went a shoare, and tooke the latitude, which was 70 degrees 25 minutes: and the
variation of the compasse was 8 degrees from the North to the West.

5

Loshak and the two small Lodias of Pechora departed from this Island, while I was on
shoore taking the latitude, and went to the Southwards: I marvelled why he departed so sudden-
ly, and went ouer the shoales amongst the Islands where it was impossible for vs to follow them.
But after I perceiued them to be weatherwise.

6

Friday we rood still, the winde being at Northmostheast, with a cruell storme. The ice came in
so abundantly about vs at both ends of the Island that we rood vnder, that it was a fearefull sight
to beholde: the storme continued with snow, raine, and hable plenty.

The latitude
of the variation
of the compasse.

Saturday we rood still also, the storme being somewhat abated, but it was altogether mi-
sty, that we were not able to see a cables length about vs, the winde being at Northmostheast and by
East.

7

Sunday at foure of the clocke in the morning we departed from this Island, the winde being
at Southeast, and as we were cleere a sea booozd the small Islands and shoales, it came to thick
with mistes, that we could not see a base spotte from vs. Then we tooke in all our sailes to make
sure way.

8

At a Southeast sunne it waxed cleere, and then we set our sayles, and lay close by the wind to
the Southwards along the Islands of Vaigars. At a West sunne we cooke in our Cagle againe
because of the great mist and raine. Wee sounded at this place, and had fise and twenty fadomes
water, and soft blacke oze, being three leagues from the shoare, the winde being at South and
by East, but still misty.

9

Monday at an East sunne we sounded, and had 40 fadomes, and oze, still misty: at noone wee
sounded againe, and had 36 fadome, still misty.

10

Tuesday at an Eastmostheast sunne we let fall our anker in thye and twenty fadome, the mist
still continuing.

11

Wednesday at thye of the clocke in the morning the mist brake vp, the winde being at North-
east by East, and then we saw part of the Islands of Vaigars, which we bare withall, and went
all our best close by the winde: at a West sunne we were at an anker vnder the Southmost
part of the said Vaigars, and then I sent our kiffe to shoare with three men in her, to see if they
might speake with any of the Samoeys, but could not: all that day was raine, but not windie.

12

Thursday the wind came Westierly, so that we were faine to seeke vs another place to ride in,
because the wind came a sea booozd land, and although it were misty, yet wee followed the shoare
our lead: and as we brought land in the winde of vs, we let fall our anker. At a West sunne

Then land be-
on Vaigars.

10

the mist brake up, so that we might see about vs, and then we might perceiue that we were entred into a sound.

This afternoone we tooke in two or three skiffes lading of stones to ballast our shippe withall, it being here fourt foot water, and floweth by firs, vncertaine to be iudged.

14
The uncertaintie of ebbing & flowing.

Friday we roade still in the sound, the wind at South-west, with very much raine, and at the end of the raine it waxed againe mistie.

15

Saturday there was much winde at West, and much raine, and then againe mistie.

16

Sunday was very mistie, and much winde.

17

Monday very mistie, the winde at West-north-west.

18

Tuesday was also mistie, except at noone: then the sunne brake out through the mist, so that we had the latitude in 70 degrees 10 minutes: the afternoone was misty againe, the wind being at West-north-west.

19

Wednesday at three of the clocke afternoone the mist brake up, & the wind came at East-north-east, and then we weyed, and went South & by East, vntill leuen of the clocke, eight leagues, thinking to haue had sight of the sandie hills that are to the Eastwards of the riuer Pechora. At a North-west sunne we took in our maine sail, because the wind increased, & went with a foresails West-north-west, the wind being at East-north-east: at night there grew so terrible a storme, that we saw not the like, although we had indured many stormes since we came out of England. It was wonderfull that our barke was able to booke such monstrous & terrible seas, without the great helpe of God, who neuer faileth them at neede, that put their sure trust in him.

20

Depressed within 15 leagues of Pechora

Thursday at a South-south-west sunne, thanks be to God, the storme was at the highest, & then the winde began to shake, and came North-easterly withall, & then I reckoned the Westmost point of the riuer Pechora to be South of vs 15 leagues. At a West-south-west sunne we set our maine saile, and lay close by the winde, the winde being at North-west and by North, making but little way, because the billow went so high: at midnight wee cast about, and the shippe caped North-north-east, making little way.

21

Friday at noone we had the latitude in 70 degrees 8 minutes, and we sounded, and had 29 fadomes sand, and in manner stremy ground. At a West sunne we cast about to the Westwards, and a little after the wind came up at West.

22

Saturday was calme: the latitude this day at noone was 70 degrees and a terce, we sounded heere, and had nine and forty fadomes and oze, which oze signified that we drew towards Noua Zembla.

And thus we being out of all hope to discouer any more to the Eastward this yeere, we thought it best to returne, and that for three causes.

Depressed within the 22 of August.

The first, the continuall North-east and North-easterly winds, which haue more power after a man is past to the Eastwards of Caninoze, then in any place that I doe know in these North-easterly regions.

Second, because of great and terrible abundance of ice which we saw with our eyes, and we doubt greater store abideth in those parts: I auentured already some what too farre in it, but I thanke God for my safe deliuerance from it.

Third, because the nightes waxed darke, and the winter began to draw on with his stormes: and therefore I resolued to take the first best wind that God should send, and plie towards the bay of S. Nicholas, and to see if we might do any good there, if God would permit it.

24

This present Saturday we saw very much ice, and were within two or three leagues of it: it shewed vnto vs as though it had bene a firme land as farre as we might see from North-west of vs to the Eastwards: and this afternoone the Lord sent vs a little gale of wind at South, so that we bare cleere off the Westmost part of it, thanks be to God. And then against night it waxed calme againe, and the winde was at South-west: we made our way vntill Sunday noone North-west and by West, and then we had the latitude in 70 degrees and a halfe, the winde at South-west: there was a billow, so that we could not discern to take the latitude exactly, but by a reasonable gresse.

25

Monday there was a pectle gale of wind at South, so that wee went West and by South, the latitude this day at noone was 70 degrees 10 minutes: wee had little winde all day: at a West-north-west sunne we sounded, and had 29 fadomes blacke sandie oze, & then we were North-east 5 leagues from the North-east part of the Island Colgoiue.

26

Tuesday the wind all Westerly we plyed to the wind wards.

27

Wednesday the wind was all Westerly, and calme: wee had the latitude this day in 70 degrees 10 minutes, we being within three leagues of the North part of the Island Colgoiue.

28

Thursday, we went roome about the Westmost part of the Island, seeking where we might

Richa

find a place

the seaward

Friday,

Saturday,

brake up, and

we sounded

had 19 fadomes

night there

head to the

Sunday,

about to the

then we cast

like clay.

Monday, it

kill some fish

plentie, that the

ried away fund

A little after

were faine to w

South-west and

Tuesday at a

thone Can

The eleventh

the next Sonme

our tynploiments

copyingly perfozm

Certaine n

to Master

and N

a



the Ward house, and

may not goe to the

to Lappia: in which

finnes, which Scrickfin

these people liue in ten

continue in heards and

small stature, and are

head but fleshy all rat

in alcombitons: but the

subjection to him. And

erents as the other doe.

And these people are

and Nouogardia. And

the Lawe of the

emire, and they speake

they doo with the Pope

et they will worshipspe

Richard Iohnson. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

283

finde a place to ride in for a North west wind, but could find none, and then we cast about againe to the seawards, and the winde came at West South west, and this morning we had plenty of snow.

Friday, the winde being at South, we plyed to the Westwards, and at afternoone the mist brake up, and then we might see the land seuen or eight leagues to the Eastwards of Caninoz: we sounded a little before and had 35. fathoms and oze. And a while after wee sounded againe, and had 19. fathoms and land: then we were within three leagues and a halfe of the Roze, and towards night there came downe so much winde, that we were faine to bying our ship a trie, and laide her head to the Westwards.

Sunday, the winde became more calme, and then it waied verie mysie: At noone wee cast about to the Eastwards, the winde beeing at South, and ranne eight houres on that boorde, and then we cast about and caped West South west: we sounded and had 32. fathoms, and tough oaze like clay.

Monday, we doubled about Caninoz, and came at an anker there, to the intent that we might kill some fish if God would permit it, and there we gate a great Ruse, which Ruses were there so plenty, that they would scarcely suffer any other fish to come neere the hookes: the said Ruses carried away sundrie of our hookes and leads.

A little after at a West Sunne, the winde began to blow Northie at West South west, so that we were faine to wep and forsake our fishing ground, and went close by the winde South west, and South west and by West, making our way South South west.

September.

Monday at a West Sunne we sounded and had 20. fathoms, and byoken Wilkesbels: I reckoned Canonize to be 24. leagues North North east from us.

The eleuenth day we arrived at Colmogro, and there we wintered, expecting the approach of the next Summer to proceede farther in our intended discoverie for the Ob: which (by reason of our imploiments to Wardhouse the next spring for the search of some English ships) was not accomplishingly performed.

Certaine notes vnperfectly written by Richard Iohnson servant to Master Richard Chancelour, which was in the discoverie of Vaigatz and Nova Zembla, with Steven Burrowe in the Serchthrift 1556, and afterwarde among the Samoedes, whose deuillish rites hee described.

1556



First, after we departed out of England we fell with Norway, and on that coaste Norwey. North Northen or Northbergen, and this people are vnder the King of Denmarke: But they differ in their speech from the Danes, for they speake North. And North of Northben lie the Isles of Roske and Lofoot, and these Islands Roske & Lofoot. pertaine vnto Finmarke, and they keepe the lawes and speake the language of Finmarke.

the Ward house, and the King of Denmarke doeth fortifie it with men of warre: and the Russes Wardhouse. may not goe to the Westward of that castle. And East Southeast from that castle is a lande called Lappla: in which lande be two maner of people, that is to say, the Lappians, and the Serick- Lapla. finnes. these people liue in tents made of Deares skinner, and they haue no certaine habitations, but continue in herdes and companies by one hundred and two hundreds. And they are a people of small stature, and are clothed in Deares skinner, and drinke nothing but water, and eate no bread but flesh all raw. And the Lappians be a people aduoyning to them & be much like to them in all conditions: but the Emperour of Russia hath of late overcome manie of them, and they are in subiection to him. And this people will say that they beleue in the Russes God. And they liue in tents as the other doe. And Southeast and by South from Lappla lyeth a prouince called Core- Corelia. lia, and these people are called Kerilli. And South Southeast from Corelia lyeth a countrey called Nouogardia. And these three nations are vnder the Emperour of Russia, and the Russes Nouogardia. keepe the Lawe of the Greekes in their Churches, and write somewhat like as the Greekes The Russes. write, and they speake their owne language, and they abhorre the Latine tongue, neither haue they to doe with the Pope of Rome. and they holde it not good to worshippe any carued Image, nor they will worshippe paynted Images on tables or boordes. And in Russia their Churches,

Tartaria.

Lampas a mart
of faire of the
Rusles, Tar-
tars and Sa-
moeds.
Chr Samoeds
country.
Of Pechora,
Vogars.

Nova Zembla.
Store of foule.
White Fores.
White Beares.

The manner of
the Samoeds
sacrifices, a-
bout the river
of Pechora.

chies, keeples, and houses are all of wood: and their shippes that they haue are colued with
twiches and haue no nayles. The Kertiles, Russians and Polscoutians bee much alike in all
conditions. And South from the Polscoutians I get the Tartarians, which bee Sabumetians,
and liue in tentes and wagons, and keepe in herdes and companies: and they holde it not good
to abide long in one place, for they will say, when they will curse any of their chylde, I woulde
thou mightest tary so long in a place that thou mightest smell thine owne dung, as the Chyilians
doe: and this is the greatest curse that they haue. And East North-east of Russia lieth Lampas,
which is a place where the Rusles, Tartars and Samoeds meete thise a peere, and make the
faire to barter wares for wares. And North-east from Lampas lieth the countrey of the Samo-
eds, which be about the river of Pechora, and these Samoeds bee in subiection to the Emperour
of Russia, and they lie in tentes made of Deere skimes, and they vse much witchcraft, and shooe
well in bowes. And North-east from the river Pechora lieth Vaygarz, and there are the wilde Sa-
moeds which will not suffer the Rusles to land out of the Sea, but they will kill them and eate
them, as wee are tolde by the Rusles: and they liue in herdes, and haue all their carriages with
deere, for they haue no horses. Beyond Vaygarz lyeth a lande called Noua Zembla, which is a
great lande, but wee sawe no people, and there wee had foule enough, and three wee sawe
white Fores and white Beares. And the sayde Samoeds which are about the hankes of Pe-
chore, which are in subiection to the Emperour of Russia, when they will remoue from one place
to another, then they will make sacrifices in manner following. Euerie kindred doeth sacrifice
in their owne tent, and hee that is most auncient is their Priest. And first the Priest doeth
beginne to playe vpon a thing like to a great flue, with a skime on the one ende like a
dymmie: and the fluke that he playeth with is about a faine long, and one ende is round like
a ball, couered with the skime of an Haric. Also the Priest hath vpon his head a thing of
white like a garlande, and his face is couered with a piece of a Skirt of malle, with manie small
ribbes, and teeth of fishes, and wilde beastes hanging on the same malle. Then hee singeth as
wee vse heere in Englande to hallow, whope, or shoute at boundes, and the rest of the company
answere him with this Dicit, Igha, Igha, Igha, and then the Priest replieth againe with his
vopces. And they answer him with the selfsame wopces so manie times, that in the ende he be-
commeth as it were madde, and falling downe as hee were dead, hauing nothing on him but a
shirt, lying vpon his backe I might perceiue him to breathe. I asked him why hee lay so, and
they answered mee, Nowe doeth our God tell him what wee shall doe, and whither wee shall
goe. And when he had lye thus a litle while, they cried thus three times together, Oghao, Og-
hao, Oghao, and as they vse these thre calles, hee riseth with his head and lieth downe againe, and
hee rose vp and sang with like vopces as hee did before: and his audience answered him, Igha,
Igha, Igha. Then hee commaunded them to kill five Deers of great Deere, and continu-
ing singing still both hee and they as before. Then hee tooke a sworde of a cubite and a faine
long, (I did mete it my selfe) and put it into his bellie half way and sometime lesse, but no
wounde was to be seene, (they continuing in their sweete song still) Then hee put the sworde
into the fire till it was warme, and so thrust it into the flit of his shirt and thrust it through
his bodie, as I thought, in at his nauill and out at his fundament: the popnt beeing out of his
shirt behinde, I layde my finger vpon it, then hee pulled out the sworde and fate downe. This
beeing done, they set a kettile of water ouer the fire to heate, and when the water doeth keepe,
the Priest beginneth to sing againe they answering him, for so long as the water was in heating,
they fate and sang not. Then they made a thing being foure square, and in height and squarenesse
of a chaire, and couered with a gown very close the sojourn therof, for the hinder part stood to the
tents side. Their tents are rounde and are called Chome in their language. The water still
lying on the fire, and this square seate being ready, the Priest put off his shirt, and the thing like
garlande which was on his head, with those things which couered his face, & he had oner all this
while a paire of holten deeres skins with fhaire on, which came vp to his buttocks. So hee went
into the square seate, and fate down like a callour and sang with a strong vopce of halloing. Then
they tooke a small line made of deeres skimes of foure fathoms long, and with a final knotte the
Priest made it fast about his necke, and vnder his left arme, and gaue it vnto two men standing on
both sides of him, which held the ends together. Then the kettile of hote water was set before him
in the square seate, at this time the square seate was not couered, and then it was couered wth a gown
of broad cloth without lining, such as the Rusles do weare. Then the 3 men which did hold the ends
of the line still standing there, began to draw, & drew till they had drawn the ends of the line fluke and
together, and then I hearde a thing fall into the kettile of water which was before him in the tent.
Thereupon I asked them that fate by me what it was that fell into the water that doode before
him. And they answered me, that it was his head, his shoulder and left arme, which the line had

Amb

cut off, I
would haue
see him wth
the Rusles to
halloing wth
thus singing
the gowne
saide, not his
a beate, but
was no hole
arme, and all
ring the space
put by their
the Priest, and
his owne peopl
ded. This I sa

A discou
first An
155

The
ly
th
th
gr
of
goriskie, Permsk
many others, as N
Rezewskie, Bielsk
denskie, and manie
following the accou
his right honozab
tre of Vologda, to c
king and Queene of
Austria, dukes of Bur
ambassadors & Datoz
gifts mentioned in the
and friendship to be m
commoditie and benefi
barber and shipp'd in,
to the Gouernoz, Consi
plior, and Iohn Buckl
said Ambassadors, and m
ple, tallow, fures, felt
Rusles attendant vpon
ed within the said Bay
called the Bona Speranz
berling, as by the inuol
and particularly appea
the same in their tourney
impells of weaether seue
two other English shys a
Mary, the other the Con
where the said Conside
peranza, with her whole
winter there, whereof no c
p and Mary arrived in th

cut off, I mean the knot which I sawe afterwarde drawn hard together. Then I rose up and would have looked whether it were so or not, but they laid hold on me, and said, that if they should see him with their bodily eyes, they should live no longer, And the most part of them can speake the Russ tongue to bee understood: and they tooke me to be a Russian. Then they beganne to halloo with their wordes, Oghao, Oghao, Oghao, many times together. And as they were thus singing & out calling, I sawe a thing like a finger of a man two times together thrust through the gowne from the Priest. I asked them that late next to me what it was that I sawe, and they saide, not his finger; for he was yet dead: and that which I sawe appeare through the gowne was was no hole to bee seene: and then at the last the Priest lifted up his head with his shoulder and arme, and all his booke, and came forth to the fire. Thus farre of their service which I sawe: but put up their stiffe for to remoue from that place where they lay. And I went to him that serued the Priest, and asked him what their God saide to him when he lay as dead. He answered, that his owne people doeth not know, neither is it for them to know: for they must doe as he commandeth. This I sawe the first day of Januarie in the yere of our Lord 1556, after the English account.

A discourse of the honourable receiuing into England of the first Ambassador from the Emperor of Russia, in the yere of Christ 1556, and in the third yere of the raigne of Queene Marie, serving for the third voyage to Moscoue. Registered by Master John Incent Protonotarie.

IT is here recorded by writing and autenticall testimonie, partly for memorie of things done, and partly for the veritie to be knowne to posteritie in time to come, that whereas the most high and mightie Iuan Vasiluich Emperour of all Russia, great Duke of Volodemer, Moscouia and Nouogrode, Emperour of Cassan, and of Astrachan, Lord of Pleskie, and great Duke of Smolenskie, Tuerskie, Yovgoriskie, Permskie, Viarskie, Bolgarskie, and Sibierskie, Emperour and great Duke of Rezewskie, Bielskie, Rostoskie, Yeraslaueskie, Bealozarskie, Oudarskie, Obdorskie, Consodenskie, and manie other countries, and lord ouer all those partes, in the yere of our Lord God, following the account of p Latin church, 1556, sent by the sea from the port of S. Nicholas in Ruscia, his right honorable ambassador, surnamed Osep Napea, his high officer in the towne and countrey of Vologda, to the most famous and excellent princes, Philip and Mary by the grace of God, King and Queene of England, Spaine, France and Ireland, defenders of the faith, Archbukes of Austria, dukes of Burgundie, Millaine, & Brabant, counties of Hapsurge, Flanders and Tyroll, his gifts mentioned in the foot of this memoriall, as a manifest argument and token of a mutual amitie and friendship to be made and continued betwene their maiesties & subjects respectiue, for the commoditie and benefit of both the realmes and people: which Datore was the 20. day of July in the barke and shipped in, and upon a good English ship named the Edward Bonaventure, belonging to the Governour, Consuls and company of English marchants, Richard Chancelor being grand pilor, and John Buckland master of the said ship. In which was laden at the aduerture of the fore- said Ambassador, and marchants at severall accounts, goods & merchandizes, viz. in ware, trane, felle, callo, fures, felts, yarne and such like, to the summe of 20000. li. sterling, together with 16. Russes attendant upon the person of the said Ambassador. Duer and above ten other Russes shipped within the said Bay of S. Nicholas, in one other good ship to the said company also belonging, called the Bona Speranza, with goods of the said Ambassadors & marchants to the value of 6000. lib. sterling, as by the invoices and letters of lading of the said severall ships (whereunto relation is to be had) particularly appeareth. Which good ships comming in good order into the seas, & trauesling the same in their tourney towards the coast of England, were by contrary windes and extreme tempests of weather seuered the one from the other, that is to say, the saide Bona Speranza with two other English ships also appertaining to the saide company, the one surnamed the Philip and Mary, the other the Confidentia, were driuen on the coast of Norway, into Myrron water, where the saide Confidentia was seene to perish on a Rocks, and the other, videlicet, the Bona Speranza, with her whole company, being to the number of foure and twentie persons seemed to winter there, whereof no certaintie at this present day is knowne. The third, videlicet, the Philip and Mary arrived in the Thames nigh London the eighteenth day of April, in the yere of our Lord,

four ships.

The Edward Bonaventure arriveth in Scotland, in the Bay of Pettislego, Novemb. 7. 1556.

Rich. Chancellor
Dowager.

Lozd one thousand five hundred fiftie and seven. The Edward Bonaventure traueiling the seas foure moneths, finally the tenth day of November of the aforefaide yere of our Loyde one thousand five hundred, fiftie and seven, arrived within the Scottishe coast in a Bay named Pettislego, where by outrageous tempests, and extreme stormes, the said ship being beaten from her ground rackles, was driven vpon the rocks on thore, where the hake and spile in pieces in such sort, as the grand Pilot vling all carefulnesse for the safetie of the bodie of the sayde Ambassadour and his trayne, taking the boat of the said ship, trusting to attaine the shore, and so to save and preserve the bodie, and seven of the companie of attendants of the saide Ambassadour, the same boat by rigorous waues of the seas, was by darke night ouerwhelmed and drowned, wherein perished not only the bodie of the said grand Pilot, with seven Russes, but also diuers of the Partners of the said ship: the noble personage of the saide Ambassadour with a fewe others (by Gods preservation and speciall fauour) onely with much difficultie saved. In which shipwrecke not onely the saide shippe was broken, but also the whole masse and bodie of the goods laden in her, was by the rude and rauenous people of the Countrey therunto aduoyning, rifled, spoiled and caried away, to the manifest losse and utter destruction of all the lading of the said ship, and together with the ship, apparell, ordnance and furniture belonging to the companie, in value of one thousand pounds, of all which was not redoyed toward the costs and charges to the summe of five hundred pound sterling.

As soone as by letters addrested to the said companie, and in London deliuered the sixt of December last past, it was to them certainly knowen of the losse of their Pilot, men, goods and ship, the same merchants with all celeritie and expedition, obtained not onely the Queenes most gracious and fauourable letters to the Ladie Dowager, and lordes of the Council of Scotland for the gentle comfortment and entertainment of the saide Ambassadour, his trayne and companie, with persuation and restitution of his goods, as in such miserable cases, to Christian pitie, princely honour and meere Justice appertaineth, but also addrested two Gentlemen of good learning, grauitie and estimation, videlicet, Maister Lawrence Hufie Doctor of the Ciuill Lawe, and George Gilpin with money and other requisites into the Realme of Scotland, to comfort, ayde, assist, and relieve him and his there, and also to conduct the Ambassadour into England, sending with them by poste a Talmach or Speechman for the better furniture of the seruice of the sayde Ambassadour, trusting thereby to haue the moie ample and speedie redyesse of restitution: which personages vling diligence, arrived at Edenborough (where the Queenes court was) the thre and twentieth day of the saide moneth of December, who first visiting the saide Ambassadour, declaring the causes of their coming and Commission, shewing the letters addrested in his fauour, the order given them for his solace and furniture of all such things as he would haue, together with their daily and readie seruice to attend vpon his person and affaires, repaired consequently vnto the Dowager Queene, deliuering the letters.

Whereupon they receiued gentle answers, with hope and comfort of speedie restitution of the goods, apparell, iewels and letters: for the moie apparance whereof, the Queene sent first certaine Commissioners with an Harold of armes to Pettislego, the place of the Shipwrecke, commanding by Proclamation and other Edictes, all such persons (no degree excepted), as had any part of such goods as were spoiled and taken out of from the ship to bring them in, and to redoye the same with such further order as her grace by aduise of her Councel thought expedient: by reason whereof not without great labours, paines and charges (after long time) diuers small parcels of Ware, and other small trifling things of no value, were by the poorer sort of the Scottes brought to the Commissioners, but the Jewels, rich apparell, presents, gold, silver, costly furrer, and such like, were conueyed away, concealed and vterly embeyelled. Whereupon, the Queene at the request of the said Ambassadour, caused diuers persons to the number of 180. or more, to be called personally before her princely presence, to answer to y^e said spoile, & ready to exhibit and bring in all such things as were spoiled and violently taken, & caried out of the same, whereof not onely good testimonie by writing was shewed, but also the things themselves found in the hands of the Scottishe subiects, who by subtilie and craftie dealings, by conniueance of the commissioners, so vled or rather abused themselves towards the same Dratoz & his attendants, that no effectuall restitution was made: but he fatigued with daily attendance and charges, the 14. day of February next ensuing, distrusting any real and effectuall redoying of the said goods and marchandizes and other the premises, vpon leaue obtained of the saide Queene, departed towards England, hauing attending vpon him the said two English Gentlemen and others (trusting neuertheless in Scotland thre Englishmen to pursue the deliuerie of such things as were collected to haue bene sent by ship to him in England: which being in Aprill next, and before

His departure
from Scotland
towards Eng-
land.

Amba

before im-
buarie to
maiesties
nourable lo-
to place, as
nage of such
to the cite of
chantes with
liuerie, as all
foure miles fr
thereunto req
next day being
Russia, to the n
uerie, as about
the hunting of
mandement w
her grace for hi
elemen and peo
cie of London,
saire and large
shed with gold
merchants: w
wards Smithfi
Spai^z accompan
the Cite of Lon
number of merch
apprentices foll
plaisibilite of
as no man withou
were provided for
ture of the whole
and serue him at all
der written, vntil
personages of the
seruants, with al
balladour of honour
It is also to be re
him on the Queene
one rich piece of cloi
crimson belacet, a pie
purpled, a piece of cr
ging refreshing and p
the kings maiesties re
tewme of Parch, the
on of our Ladie (the
most honourably byou
accompanied first with
ning at Westminster
where by the lord
Counsellors, hee was
Queenes maiesties pre
worked and furnished, a
letters, made his d^eati
English and Spanis
ament, in sight of a g
to his former lodging
Queenes maiesties, repa
Bishop of Elie, and s
after diuers secret call

auerting the seas
Loye one thousand
and Pettisago,
from her ground
ces in such sort,
ambassadour and
to saue and pre-
re, the same boat
wherein perished
of the Mariners
(by Gods pre-
shipwacke not
s labo in her,
s, spoiled and
s ship, and toge-
s, in value of one
s summe of five

to the first of De-
men, goods and
the Queenes ma-
of the Councell
our, his traine
erable cases, to
essed two Ship
Hussie Dorcas
of the Realme of
to conduct the Am-
an for the best
the more ample
Edenborough
of December,
ing and Comma-
ndance and furni-
shment to attend
her, deliuering the

the restitution of
Queene sent first
e Shipwacke,
re excepted, as
ing them in, and
though it expen-
long time) by
the poorer sort
e sentes, gold, sil-
ezelles. Where-
to the number of
to spoile, & really
out of the same,
penalties found
nnuence of the
his attendants,
and charges, the
of the said goods
eene, departed
and others (the
such things as
next, and more
before

before imbarked for London, was not at this present day here arrived) came the 18. day of Fe-
buarie to Barwike within the dominion and realme of England, where he was by the Queenes
maiesties letters and commandement honourably receiued, used and intertained by the right ho-
nourable lord Wharton, lord Treasurer of the Exchequer, with goodly conducting from place
to place, as the daily iourneys done ordinarily did lie, in such order, manner and forme, as to a pers-
onage of such estate appertained. He prosecuting his voyage vntil the 27. of Februarie approached
to the citie of London within twelue English miles, where he was receiued with fourscore mer-
chants with chaires of gold and goodly apparell, as wel in order of men seruants in one vniiforme
liuerie, as also in and vpon good horses and geldings, who conducting him to a marchantes house
threunto requilite, where with he made him a riding garment, reposing himselfe that night. The
next day being Saturday and the last day of Februarie, he was by the merchants aduenturing for
Russia, to the number of one hundred and forty persons, and so many of more seruants in one li-
uerie, as aboute said, conducted to wards the citie of London, where by the way he had not onely
the hunting of the force and such like sport shewed him, but also by the Queenes maiesties com-
mandement was receiued and embraced by the right honourable Viscount Montague, sent by
her grace for his entertainment: he being accompanied with diuers lustie knights, esquires, gen-
tlemen and yeomen to the number of thre hundred horses led him to the North partes of the Ci-
tie of London, where by four notable merchants richly appaelled was presented to him a right
faire and large gelding richly trapper, together with a footcloth of Orient crimson veluet, gen-
erally with gold laces, all furnished in most glorious fashion, of the present, and gift of the sayde
merchants: where vpon the Ambassadour at instant desire mounted, riding on the way to-
wards Smithfield barres, the first limites of the liberties of the Citie of London. The Lord
Mayor accompanied with all the Aldermen in their sharlet did receive him, and so riding through
the Citie of London in the middle, betwene the Lord Mayor and Viscount Montague, a great
number of merchants and notable personages riding before, and a large troupe of seruants and
appentilles following, was conducted through the Citie of London (with great admiration and
plausiblie of the people running plentifully on all sides, and replenishing all streets in such sort
as no man without difficultie might passe) into his lodging situate in Saint church streete, where
were provided for him two chambers richly hainged and becker, ouer and aboute the gallant furni-
ture of the whole house, together with an ample and rich cupboord of plate of all sortes, to furnish
and serue him at all meales, and other seruices during his abode in London, which was, as is vn-
derwritten, vntil the third day of May: during which time daily diuers Aldermen and the grauest
personages of the said companie did visite him, prouiding all kind of victuals for his table and his
seruants, with all sortes of Officers to attend vpon him in good sort and condition, as to such an am-
bassadour of honour doeth and ought to appertaine.

It is also to be remembred that at his first entrance into his chamber, there was presented vnto
him on the Queenes Maiesties behalfe for a gift and present, and his better furniture in apparell,
one rich piece of cloth of tisse, a piece of cloth of golde, another piece of cloth of golde raised with
crimson veluet, a piece of crimson veluet in graine, a piece of purple veluet, a piece of Damaske
purple, a piece of crimson damaske, which he most thankfully accepted. In this beautifull lod-
ging refreshyng and preparing himselfe and his traine with things requisite he abode, expecting
the kings maiesties repaire out of Flanders into England, whose highnesse arriuing the one and
thre of our Lable (the day twelue moneth he took his leaue from the Emperour his master) was
most honourably brought to the King and Queenes maiesties court at Westminster, where ac-
companyed first with the said Viscount and other notable personages, and the merchants, her ac-
cording at Westminster byodge, was there receiued with fire lordes, conducted into a stately cham-
ber, where by the lordes, Chancellor, Treasurer, Priuie Seale, Admirall, Bishop of Elie, and other
Counsellors, hee was visited and saluted: and consequently was brought vnto the Kings and
Queenes maiesties presence, sitting vnder a stately cloth of honour, the chamber most richly
furnished and furnished, and most honourably presented. Where, after that hee had deliuered his
message, made his Oration, given two timber of Sables, and the report of the same made boch
in English and Spanish, in most louing manner embraced, was with much honour and high enter-
tainment, in sight of a great confluence of people, Lordes and Ladies estioones remitted by wa-
ter to his former lodging, to the which, within two dayes after by the assignement of the King and
Queenes maiesties, repaired and conferred with him secretly two graue Counsellors, that is, the
Bishop of Elie, and Sir William Peter Knight, chiefe Secretary to their highnesse, who
after diuers secret talks and conferences, reported to their highnesse their proceedings, the gra-
uitie,

1557. Feb. 27.

His honorable
receiving into
the citie of
London.

uite, wise dome, and stately behauiour of the sayd Ambassadour, in such sort as was much to their maiesties contentations.

Finally concluding upon such treaties and articles of amitie, as the letters of the Kings and Queenes maiesties most graciously vnder the great seale of England to him by the sayd counsellors deliuered, both appeare.

The thre and twentieth of Aprill, being the feast of S. George, wherein was celebrated the solemnitie of the Noble order of the Garter at Westminster, the same sayd ambassadour was first soones required to haue audience: and therefore conuoced from the sayd lodging to the court by the right Noble the lordes Talbot and Lumley to their maiesties presence: where, after his Oration made, and thanks both giuen and receiued, hee most honourably tooke his leaue with commendations to the Emperour. Which being done, he was with special honour led into the chapel, where before the Kings and Queenes maiesties, in the sight of the whole Order of the Garter, was prepared for him a stately seate, wherein he accompanied with the Duke of Norfolk, the lordes last aboue mentioned, and many other honorable personages, was present at the whole seruice, in ceremonies which were to him most acceptable: the diuine seruice ended, hee first was remitted and reued to his barge, and so repaired to his lodging, in like order and gratulation of the people vniuersally, as before.

The time of the yeere halting the prosecution and departure of the Ambassadoz, the merchants hauing prepared foure good, and well crimmed shippes laden with all kinds of merchandises for Russia, the same Ambassadour making provision for such things as him pleased, the same shippes in good order valed downe the Riuer of Thames, from London to Grauesend, where the same Ambassadour with his traine and furniture was imbarked towards his voyage homeward, which God prosper in all felicitie.

It is also to be remembered, that during the whole abode of the sayd Ambassadour in England, the Agents of the sayde merchants did not onely prosecute and pursue the matter of restitution in Scotland, and caused such things to be laden in an English shippe hired purposely to conuey the Ambassadours goods to London, there to be deliuered to him, but also during his abode in London, did both inuite him to the Palace, and diuers worshipfull mens houses, for dining and banquetting him right friendly, shewing vnto him the most notable and commendable sights of London, as the kings palace and house, the Churches of Westminster and Powles, the Tower and Guild hall of London, and such like memoizable spectacles. And also the said 13. day of Aprill, the said merchants assembling themselves together in the house of the Drapers hall of London, exhibited and gaue vnto the sayd Ambassadour, a notable supper garnished with musicke, Enterludes and bankets: in the which a cup of wine being drunke to him in the name and lieu of the whole companie, it was signified to him that the whole company with most liberal and friendly hearts, did frankly giue to him and his all manner of costs and charges in victuals rising from Scotland to London during his abode there, and withall setting of faine aboord the ship, requesting him to accept the same in good part as a testimonie and witness of their good hearts, zeale and beneuolence towards him and his country.

It is to be considered that of the Bona Speranza no word nor knowledge was had at this present day, nor yet of the arrivall of the ships or goods from Scotland.

The third of May the Ambassadour departed from London to Grauesend, accompanied with diuers Aldermen and merchants, who in good gard set him aboard the noble shippe, the Primrose Admirall to the flecte, where leave was taken on both sides and parts, after many imbracements and diuers farewells not without expressing of teares.

The King and Queenes scdd letters to the Emperour of Russia.

Memorandum, that the first day of May the Counsellors, videlicet, the Bishop of Elye, and Sir William Peter on the behalfe of the Kings and Queenes Maiesties repairing to the sayd Ambassadour did not onely deliuer vnto him their highnes letters of recommendations vnder the great seale of England to the Emperour, very tenderly and friendly written, but also on their maiesties behalfe gaue and deliuered certaine notable presents to the Emperours person, and also gifts to the sayd Ambassadours proper use and behoofe, as by the particulars vnder written appeareth, with such further good wordes and commendations, as the more friendly haue not bin heard, whereby it appeareth how well affected their honours be to haue and continue amitie and traffique betwene their honours and their subjects: which thing as the Kings and Queenes maiesties haue shewed of their princely munificence & liberalities, to haue likewise the merchants and fellowship of the Adventurers, for and to Russia, manifested to the world their good willes, mindes and zeales boyns to this new commented voyage, as by the discourse aboue mentioned, and other the notable actes ouer long to be recited in this present memoriall, both and may not clearly

in league and articles of amitie concluded and confirmed vnder the great seale of England.

Foure goodly ships of the merchants provided for Russia, 1557.

clearly
Fozafin
ship wack
restored, i
the ships el
pleasure in
Scotland un
intertaine
then, and wi
truethe of
elchewment
to the Amba
likely made,
traue in p
gro. When
saye shippe
nie in London

Giftes

by

spoy

- 1 First,
- 2 Item,
- 3 Item,
- 4 Item,
- 5 Item,
- 6 Item,

Giftes

Queenes

- 1 First,
- 2 Item,
- 3 Item,
- 4 Item,
- 5 Item,
- 6 Item,

Giftes giuen

aboue

- 1 First, a ch
- 2 Item, a la
- 3 Item, a pa
- 4 Item, a pa

Richard Chanceler. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

289

clearly appeare, the like whereof is not in any president or historie to bee shewed.
Forasmuch as it may bee doubted how the ship named the Edward Bonaventure suffered
shipwrecke, what became of the goods, howe much they were spoiled and deteined, howe little
restored, what charges and expences ensued, what personages were drowned, howe the rest of
the ships either arrived or perished, or howe the disposition of almighty God hath wrought his
pleasure in them, howe the same ambassadour hath bene after the miserable case of shipwrecke his
Scotland unreuerently abused, and consequently into England received and conducted, there
intertained, used, honoured, and finally in good safetie towards his returne, and repaire furni-
shed, and with much liberalitie and franke handling friendly dismissed, to the intent that the
truth of the premises may bee to the most mightie Emperour of Russia sincerely signified in
the shewment of all euents and misfortunes that may chance in this voyage (which God defend)
to the Ambassadors person, traine, and goods, this present memoriall is written, and auten-
tically made, and by the sayde Ambassadour his seruants, whose names be underwritten, and auten-
tically in presence of the Potarie, and witnesses undernamed, recognized, and acknow-
ledged. When the day, moneth, and yeere underwritten, of which instrument into euery of the
sayde Shippes onecessionall is deliuered, and the first remaineth with the sayde Compa-

Giftes sent to the King and Queenes Maiesties of England
by the Emperour of Russia, by the report of the Ambassadour, and
spoiled by the Scots after the Shipwrecke.

- 1 First, five timber of Sables rich in colour and haire.
- 2 Item, clementie entire Sables exceeding beautifull with teeth, eares and claws.
- 3 Item, foure living Sables with chaines and collars.
- 4 Item, thrie Lufarnes large and beautifull.
- 5 Item, five large and great skines very rich and rare, woyned onely by the Empe-
rour for woorthinesse.
- 6 Item, a large and faire white Herfawcon for the wilde Swanne, Crane, Goose,
and other great fowles, together with a byzonne of siluer, the hoopes gilt,
used for a lure to call the sayd fowles.

Giftes sent to the Emperour of Russia by the King and
Queenes Maiesties of England.

- 1 First, two rich pieces of cloth of Tissue.
- 2 Item, one fine piece of Scarlet.
- 3 Item, one fine Violet in graine.
- 4 Item, one fine Azure cloth.
- 5 Item, a notable paire of Bygamines with a Purrian couered with Crimson bel-
uet and gilt nailes.
- 6 Item, a Pale and Female Lions.

Giftes giuen to the Ambassadour at his departure, ouer and
aboue such as were deliuered unto him at his first arrivall.

- 1 First, a chaine of golde of one hundred pounds.
- 2 Item, a large Balon and Cwer, siluer and gilt.
- 3 Item, a paire of pottle pots gilt.
- 4 Item, a paire of flaggons gilt.

The names of all such Russies as were attendant vpon the
Ambassadour, at and before his departure out of England.

Isaak Fwesschencke.

Demetre.

Gorbolones.

Symonde.

Yeroffia.

Stephen.

Lowca.

Andria.

Foma.

Memorandum, the day and yeere of our Lord above mentioned, in the house of the worshipfull John Dimmocke Citizen and Draper of London, situate within the famous Citie of London in the Realme of England, the above named honourable Osep Gregory with Napea Ambassadour and Oator above mentioned, personally constituted and present, having declared vnto him by the mouth of the right worshipfull master Anthonie Huffle Esquire, the effect of the causes and contents of, and in this booke, at the interpretation of Robert Best his interpreter twoyne, recognized, and knowledged in presence of me the Notarie & personages underwritten, the contents of this booke to be true, as well for his owne person as for his seruantes about named, who did not subscribe their names as is above mentioned, but onely recognize the same. In witness whereof, I John Incent Notarie Publike, at the request of the said Master Anthonie Huffle, and other of the Merchants haue to these presents underwritten set my accustomed signe, with the Subscription of my name, the day and yeere above written, being present the right worshipfull,

Andrew Iudde.

George Barne.

William Chester.

Rafe Greeneaway.

John Merth Esquier.

John Dimmocke.

Blase Sanders.

Hubert Huffle, and

Robert Best above mentioned.

Knights.

Aldermen of London.

The voyage of the foresaid M. Stephen Burrough, An. 1557. from
Colmogro to Wardhouse, which was sent to seeke the Bona Esperanza, the Bona Confidentia, and the Philip and Mary, which were not heard of the yeere before.

May.

23 **V**pon Sunday the 23. of May, I departed with the Searchlight from Colmogro, the latitude whereof is 64. degrees, 25. minutes, and the variation of the compasse, 5. degrees, 10. minutes from the North to the East.

26 **W**ednesday we came to the Island called Pozanka, which Island is within foure leagues of the barre Berozoua. It sheweth here at an East and South Spoone full sea.

29 **S**aturday in the morning we departed from Pozanka, and plied to the barre of Berozoua, whereupon we came to anchor at a lowe water, and sounded the said Barre with two Skiffes, and found in the best vpon the shoaldest of the barre 23. fathome water by the rule, higher vpon this barre, in spring tides 3. fathome water: and an East Spoone maketh a full vpon this barre.

30 **S**unday in the morning we departed from the barre of Berozoua, and plied along by shoals in fine sadome, vntill I had sight of S. Nicholas roade, and then we cast about to Northwards, and went with a hommocke, which is halfe a mile to the Eastwards of Coya Roade, which hommocke and S. Nicholas abbey lye Southsouthwest, and Northnorth east, and

Stepha.

twene the
caynos & the
Berozoua li
as you may s
Sunday
Dogs wol
and Dogs no
point of Dog

From Dog
The 2. d
the latitude of
Spoone full sea.
So that it is to
fore it be a lowe
the North to the
This day the
ride thwart of a
for a North and
Dogs nose.

Friday at a S
elut foure miles
water lye: and el
that Dogs nose la
seene in all that C
A head of Fore
Zolatis there are
Sunday I loun
in the best of it I for
Sunday, I had el
of vs.

Wednesday I w
4. minutes.
We being one lea
go to be Cape go
Cape grace is 7. l
There are 2. Island
a little long Island
hard aboord the
Cape Race is from
agues, and from that
high point and Cape
Westwards of the
Three leagues and
is moneth in 67. degre
found it to be a full sea
spoone, and the callow
into small sand con
from a South sunne
the windwards halfe t
head to the Westwar
the day was very mistie.

Friday in the morning
by West a stiff gale,
a thorne: I thought i
two leagues to the S
we found harbor to t

Stephan Burrough. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

291

twene them are 11. leagues. Coia Rea is halfe a mile to the Eastward of Colcaynos. Colcaynos is the middes of the Island called Mondeustonia on troue, which is thwart of the barre of Berozoua lieth South and by East, North and by West, and betweene them are 4. leagues, as you may say from the Scaboyd part of the barre to Colcaynos are 3. leagues and a halfe.

Sunday at a North-east and by East sunne we were thwart of Colcaynos. Dogs nose lieth from Colcaynos Northnorthwest, and betweene them are eithe leagues: point of Dogs nose there standeth a crosse alone.

June.

From Dogs nose to Forenose are three leagues, North and by West.

The 2. day of June I went on shoare 2. miles to the Northwards of Dogs nose, and had the latitude of that place in 65. degrees, 47. minutes. It floweth a shoare at this place, at an East spoone full sea, and the shippe lay thwart to wende a flood, in the off, at a Southsouth-east moone. So that it is to be understood, that when it is a full sea on the shoare, it is two points to ebbe, before the North to the East.

This day the Northnorthwest winde put vs backe againe with Dogs nose, where a ship may ride thwart of a salt house, in 4. fadome, and a halfe of water, and haue Landange for a North and by West winde: which Salt house is halfe a mile to the Southwards of Dogs nose.

Friday at a Southsouthwest Sunne, we departed from this Salt house. It is to be noted that foure miles to the Northwards of Dogs nose there growe no trees on the banke by the water side: and the banke consist of fullers earth. Over the cliffes there growe some trees: so that Dogs nose is the better to be known because it is fullers earth, and the like I haue not seene in all that Countrey.

A head of Fore nose a league from the shoare there are 5. fadome: betwixt Fore nose and Zolatisa there are 6. leagues, I meane the Southerly part of Fore nose.

Sunday I sounded the barre of Zolatisa, which the Russes told me was a good harborow, but in the best of it I found but 4. foute water.

Sunday I had the latitude in 66. degrees, and then was point Pentecost five leagues South of vs.

Wednesday I went on land at Crosse Island, and tooke the latitude, which was 66. degrees 4. minutes.

Me being one league North-east of Crosse Island, I sawe the land on the Eastside, which I went to be Cape good fortune, and it was then East-south-east of vs 9. leagues.

Cape grace is 7. leagues and a halfe North-east from Crosse Island.

There are 2. Islands 5. leagues North-north-east from Cape grace, the Southermost of them a little long Island almost a mile long, and the Northmost a little round Island, and they are both hard aboord the shoare.

Cape Race is from the Southermost Island North and by West, and betweene them are two leagues, and from that and halfe a league North-northwest, there is another point. Betweene which point and Cape Race, the Russes haue a Stanauish of harborow for thre Lodias: and to the Westwards of the said point, there is a shoale bay.

Three leagues and a halfe to Northwards of Cape Race, we had the latitude on the 10. day of the moneth in 67. degrees 10. minutes. Riding within half a league of the shoare in this latitude I found it to be a full sea at a North and by East moone. I had where we roade two and twentie fadome, and the callow which is taken up is full of great broken shels, and some stones withall.

From a South sunne that wee weyed, the winde being at North and by East, wee dyed the windwards halfe the ebbe, with the ships head to the Eastwards. And then when we cast our head to the Westwards, we sounded, and had 2. fadome broken shels, and gray sand; this point was very mistie, with frost on the shoyds as the mist fell.

Friday in the morning at an East sunne, the mist brake up a little, the winde being at North by West a stiff gale, our shoyds and roapes ouer head being couered with frost, and likewise a storme: I thought it good to seeke an harborow, and so plied roome with the Islands which are two leagues to the Southwards of Cape Race, and within these Islands (thanks bee to God) we found harborow for vs. At highest at these Islands two fadome water: it floweth in the harborow

Dogs nose.
The variation
of the Com-
passe 4. de-
grees.

Fore nose.

Point Pentecost.

Crosse Island.

Cape good fortune.

Cape grace.

Cape Race.

10

Frost in June.

Tri Ostrou.

harbour at this place at a South-southeast moone full sea: and a sea boord it floweth at a South-southwest moone a full sea. The Russes call this Island, Tri Ostrou.

You may come in betwene the little Island and the great Island, and keepe you in the mid of the Sound, and if you boztowe on any side, let it bee on the greatest Island, and you shall haue at a low water, foure fadome, and three fadome and a halfe, and three fadome, untill that you be shot so farre in as the narrowest, which is betwene the Northermost point of the great Island, and the Southerne point of the maine which is right against it, and then hale to the Northwards with the crosse which standeth in the maine, and you shall haue at a low water 10. foute water, and faire sand. And if you be disposed to goe through the Sound to the Southwards, keepe the Northwest shoare aboord, for on the Island side after you be shotte so farre in as the crosse, it is a shoale of rockes halfe the sound ouer: which rockes do last unto the Southerly part of the great Island, and rather to the Southwards. And if you be constrained to seeke a harbour for Northerly winde, when you come out of the sea, hale in with the Southerly part of the great Island, giuing the Island a faire birth, and as you shoore towards the maine, you shall finde roome for all Northerly winde, in foure fadome, five, sixe and seuen fadome, at a low water.

Also within this great Island (if neede bee) you may haue a good place to ground a ship in: the great Island is almost a mile long and a quarter of a mile ouer.

16

Aer.

The variation.

This Noyme of Northerly winde lasted untill the 16. of this moneth, and then the winde came Southerly, but we could not get out for Ice. I went on shore at the crosse, and tooke the latitude, which is 66. degrees, 58. minutes, 30. seconds: the variation of the Compasse 3. degrees and a halfe from the North to the East.

17

Thursday being faire weather, and the winde at North we plied to the winde-wards with sailes and oares: wee stopped the flood this day three leagues to the Northwards of Cape Race, two miles from the shoare, and had twentie fadome water, faire gray and blacke sand, and broken shels. And when the flake came wee wayed and made aboord to the shoare-wards, and had within two cables length of the shoare, eightene fadomes faire gray and blacke sand: a man may finde roade there for a North winde, and so to the Westwards.

18

Two leagues to the Southward of Corpus Christi poynt, you may haue Landfang for a North and by East winde, and from that to the Westwards in 23. fadome almost a mile from shoare, and faire sand, and amongst the sand little yong small limpets, of such like as growe by on mufcles: and within two cables length and lesse of the shoare are eightene fadomes, and the sounding asforesaid, but the yong limpets moze plentifull. It was a full sea where we roade, almost a mile from shoare, at a South and by West moone: two leagues to the Southwards of Corpus Christi point is the uttermost land, which land and Cape Race lyeth South and half a point to the Westwards, and North and halfe a point to the Eastwards, and betwene them are sixe leagues. Riding this day sixe leagues to the Northwards of Cape Race, the winde at North-west, with mist and frost, at noone the sunne appeared throughe the mist, so that I had the latitude in 67. degrees, 29. minutes.

19

21
Corpus Christi point.

Sunday we were thwart of Corpus Christi point, two leagues and a halfe from shoare, where the moze, where we sounded, and had 36. fadomes, and broken cocke shels, with byzannie sand, the broken shels very thicke.

22
Cape Gale land.

Tuesday in the morning we were shotte ahead of Cape gallant, which the Russes call Selenoz. And as we were shot almost halfe a league betwixt it, and Cape comfort, the winde came by at the North-west, and after to the Northwards, so that we were faine to beare roome to seek a harbour, where we found good harbour for all winde, and the least 7. fadome water betwene S. Johns Islands, and the maine.

After that we came to an ancre, we tooke the latitude, which was 68. degrees 1. minute, at noone, the winde at North with plentie of snowe.

At a West sunne there came aboord vs certaine Lappians in a boate, to the number of threene persons, and amongst them there were two wenches, and some of them could speake the Russic tongue: I asked them where their abiding was, and they tolde mee that there was a companie of heard of them, to the number of 100. men, besides women and children, but a litle from in the riuer Iekonga.

They tolde me that they had bene to seeke meate among the rockes, laying. If wee get meate, wee ate none. I sawe them ate rocke weedes as hungerly, as a cowe doeth grasse when she is hungrie. I sawe them also ate fowles egges rawe, and the yong birde also that was in the egges.

I obliu

Friday in the morning
from the shoare, h

Pol
Au
An
Tey
Iom
Pall
Olin
Cape
Alke
Nei
Oyul
Cyel
Nenn
Neal
Panne
Neug
Seama
Pealle
Teapp
Voap
Keat, a
Soarme
Iowkie
Peelkie,
Sarke, h
Lein, iln
Payte, a
Tol, fire.
Kearse, h
Murr, we
Vannace,
Arica, an
Nurr, a ro
Peyue, a d
Hyr, a night
Peyuezes,
Manna, the
Lasse, h
Cozam vo
Oetapp, h
Tallye, that
Kieedde pie
Ickie, a pe
Kesse, h
Talue, h
Iowksam, co
Parox, warn
Abrye, raine
Youghang, y

you in the mid
b, and you shall
come, untill the
me of the great
ale to the North-
water 10. fath-
the Southward,
so farre in as the
e Southly part
to seeke a harbor
part of the great
I shall finde some
water.

ground a ship in

n the winde came
ooke the latitude
e 3. degrees and

(inde-wards with
bs of Cape Race,
ke sand, and by
-wards, and by
lacke sand: a man

e Landfang for
almost a mile from
like as growne by
fathom, and the
here we rode
Southwards
h South and ball
etweene them
e winde at 3 fath
so that I had the

From shoare, my
h byzantine sand

Ruffles call So-
er, the wind
are room to sit
ne water betwee

ees 1. minute, and

the number of in-
n could speak
ne there was a
but a little from

g. If wee get
e doeth graffe
ades also that we

I obser

Stephan Burrough. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

I obserued certaine wordes of their language, which

*I thought good to set downe for their vse, that here-
after shall haue occasion to continue
this voyage.*

293

Cowghtie coteat, what call you
this.
Poddychicke, come hieher.
Auanchyihocke, get the hence.
Anna, farewell.
Teyrue, good morrowe.
Ioinne lemaufes, I thanke you.
Passuellie, a friend.
Olmuelke, a man.
Capella, a woman.
Alke, a sonne.
Neit, a daughter, or yong wench.
Oyuie, a head.
Cyelme, an eye.
Nenna, a nose.
Nealma, a mouth.
Pannea, teeth.
Neughtema, a tongue.
Seaman, a beard.
Peallee, an eare.
Teappat, the necke.
Voapt, the haire.
Keat, a hand.
Soarme, fingers.
Iowlikie, a legge.
Peelkie, the thombe, or great toe.
Sarke, wollen cloth.
Lein, linen cloth.
Payte, a shirt.
Tol, fire.
Kearfe, water.
Murr, wood.
Vannace, a boate.
Ariea, an oare.
Nurr, a roape.
Peyue, a day.
Hyr, a night.
Peyueza, the Sunne.
Manna, the Moone.
Lasse, starres.
Cozam volka, whither goe you.
Oetapp, sleepe.
Tallye, that.
Keiedde pieue, a weeke.
Isckie, a yerre.
Kesse, Sommer.
Talue, Winter.
Iowksam, colde.
Parox, warme.
Abyre, raine.
Youghang, pre.

Keatykye, a stone.
Sellowpe, silver.
Solda, golde.
Tennae, timme.
Veskue, copper.
Rowadr, yron.
Neybx, a knife.
Axthe, a hatchet.
Leabee, hzead.
Icauegoat, meale.
Peacka, the winde.
Iowte, a platter.
Kemnie, a kettle.
Keeftes, gloves.
Sapege, shoes.
Conde, a wilde Deare.
Poatfa, the labouring Deare.

Their wordes of num-
ber are these as fol-
loweth.

OFre,
Noumpte, 1.
Colme, 2.
Nellye, 3.
Vitte, 4.
Cowte, 5.
Keydeem, 6.
Kafits, 7.
Owghchte, 8.
Locke, 9.
Ostretumbelocke, 10.
Cowghtnumbelocke, 11.
Colmenonbelocke, 12.
Nellynombelocke, 13.
Vittie nombelocke, 14.
Cowtenombelocke, 15.
Keydemnombelocke, 16.
Kafits nombelocke, 17.
Owght nombelocke, 18.
Coffteylocke, 19.
Colmelocke, 20.
Nellylocke, 30.
Vitte locke, 40.
Cowtelocke, 50.
Keydemlocke, 60.
Kaffitelocke, 70.
Oughchetelocke, 80.
Tewet, 90.
100,

Friday in the morning we departed from Saint Johns Island: to the Westwards thereof,
from the shoare, we sounded, and had 36. fathoms, and oazie sand,

B b 3

Iuana

Iuana Creos.

Iuana Creos is from Cape gallant Westward, and halfe a point to the Northwards, and betwene them is 7. leagues. The point of the Island, which is Cape comfort, lyeth from Iuana Creos, Northward and by North, and almost the 3. part of a point to the Westward, and betwene them are 3. leagues.

S. Georges Islands.

Cape comfort.

The Eastermost of S. Georges Islands, of the 7. Islands, lyeth from Iuana Creos Northward, & halfe a point to the Northwards, and betwene them are 14. leagues & a halfe. The westernmost of the 7. Islands, & Cape comfort lieth Northward, & by North, Southeast, and by South. Under the Southermost Island you shall finde good roade for all Northerly winde from the Northward to the Northeast. From the Southeast part of the 7. Islands, unto the Northward part of them, are 3. leagues and a halfe.

S. Peters Islands.

From the Northward part of the Islands aforesaid, unto S. Peters Islands, are 11. leagues Northward.

S. Peters Islands rise an indifferent low point, not seeming to be an Island, and as if it had a castle vpon it.

S. Pauls Islands.

S. Pauls Islands lie from S. Peters Islands Northward and to the Westward, and betwene them are 6. leagues. Within these Islands there is a faire sandy bay, and there may be found a good roade for Northerly winde.

Cape Sower beere.

Kildina.

Cape Sower beere lyeth from S. Pauls Islands Northward and by West, and betwene them are 5. leagues.

Cape comfort, which is the Island of Kildina, lieth from Cape Sower beere, 6. leagues West Northward, and it is altogether a bay betwene them seeming many Islands in it.

Cape Bonaventure.

From Cape Bonaventure, to Chebe Nauoloch are 10. leagues Northward, and a litle to the Westward. Chebe Nauoloch is a faire point, wheron standeth a certaine blacke, like an empie butte standing a head.

Kegor.

From Chebe Nauoloch to Kegor, is 9. leagues and a halfe Northward, and halfe a point to the Westward. Kegor riseth as you come from the Eastward like 2. round hornocks standing together, and a faire saddle betwene them.

Doms hall.

It floweth where we roade this Sunday to the Eastward of Kegor, at a Southeast and by East moone, a full sea: we roade in 15. fadome water within halfe a mile of the shoare: at Northward Sunne the mist came downe so thicke, that we were faine to come to an anchor within lesse then a mile of the point that turneth to Doms hall, where we had 33. fadome, and the sounding like to the skurfe of a skalde head.

Wardhouse.

28 Sunday at afternoone, we came into the Sound of Wardhouse, although it were very mistie. Then I sent a man a shoare to know some newes, and to see whether they could heare any thing of our ships.

Which were the Bona Confederatia, the Bona Confederatia and the Whittie and Sparte. Wherof the two first were lost.

29 Thuesday I went on shoare, and dined with the Captaines deputie, who made me great chere: the Captaine himselfe was not as yet come from Bergen: they looked for him every houre, and they said that he would bring newes with him.

101, Trombon.

At a Northward and by North sunne we departed from Wardhouse, toward Colmogro. 30 Wednesday we came to Kegor, where we met with the winde at East Southeast, so that we were faine to go in to a bay to the Westward of the point Kegor, where a man may moore 1. or 3. small ships, that shall not draw past 11. or 12. fadome water, for all winde, an East Northward winde is the worst. It is a ledge of rocks, that defendeth the Northerly winde fro the place where they moore. When we came into the bay we saw there a barke which was of 11 Drontons, & three or foure Norway peaghies, belonging to Northberne: so when I came a shoare, I met first with the Dutchmen, amongst whom was the Boyrow-masters sonne of Dronton, who tolde me that the Philip and Mary wintered at Dronton, and departed from thence for England in Sparte: and withall he shewed me that the Confidence was lost, and that he had bought her sailes for his ship. Then the Dutch-men carried me to their Boothe, and made me good chere, where I sawe the Lappians chepen of the said Dutchmen, both silver platters and dishes, spoones, gillings, ornaments for girloes of silver & gill, and certaine things made to hang about the neck, with silver chaines belonging to them.

The Whittie and Sparte. The Bona Confederatia call away.

The Dutchmen bring hither mightie strong beere, I am certaine that our English double beere would not be liked of the Kerils and Lappians, as long as that would last.

Here I sawe the Dutchmen also haue course cloth, both blew, greene and redb, and sad boyes flesh colour. And hither they bring also Otters cases and fox cases, both blacke and redb: our English fox cases are but counterfaits vnto them.

They would not let me understand any of their prices, but as I otherwise understood they wanted 2. load of silver for 100 of stockfish, and 2. load is a daller. And the Dutchmen tolde me that

Instructions

and about 1. Russia, for the of London,



the Royalties, and
for, I say from Iuana
Westwards, and be-
Iuana Creos Royalty
s a halfe. The water
theast, and by South-
erly winds from the
into the Royalties

ands, are 1. leagues
land, and as if it be
wards, and betweene
there may be found:

st, and betweene them
eere, 6. leagues West
os in it.
west, and a litle to the
e blacke, like an em-
p, and halfe a poynt
nd hornocks standing

, at a Southeast an-
le of the shoare: as
me to an ancre within
adome, and the low-
though it were very
they could hear my
who made mee great
oked for him every
ward Colmogro.
outheast, so that he
man may moore 1. g
s, an East Royalty
s frō the place wher
off Dronon, & the
are, I met first with
who tolde me the
England in Spaine
the her sailes for joy
cheere, where I
dishes, spoones, gill
ang about the necke,

our English double
all.
redde, and Sabbo-
acke and redde: we
understood they two
men told me, that
they

they had made a notable good yeere this present yeere 1557. They tolde me that they should be
saine to goe to Wardhouse with one lading, and lay it on land there, and so come againe and fetch
another. The Woytowmasters some told me, that he would go to Amsterdam with his lading of
stockfish, who gaue me a barrell of strong beere, and brought it in aboard our ship himselfe.
After this I went among the Russes and Kerils, who offered me fish to sell, and likewise the
Lappians desired me to looke vpon their fish. I made them answer, that I had now no wares
nor money to barter with them, and said that I came only to see if I might meete with our Eng-
lish ships. When they desired me that I would come thither the next yeere: I said to them, If I
should come the next yeere, I thinke here would not be fish ynough to serue the Dutchmen and
so kill and make fish: and further they said, that some of them came thither a fishing 8. weekes
journey with Deere, which Deere will crauaile more speedily then hoxles will.

As I was thus in talke with the Kerils and Lappians, the Emperour of Russia his depucie
(who was there to gather the tribute of the Lappians) sent for me to come to his tent, who alter
familiar salutations, made me good cheere. He demaunded of me, why none of our ships came
thither. I answered him, because we knew not the place before now, neither yet heard of any faire
that was kept there. Then said he, If you will come hither, here would more people resort to
kill fish, I thinke it good (said he) that you make a beginning. I tolde him, that by the grace of
God the next yeere, one English ship should come thither.

Because I sawe the seruants of the king of Denmarke there also gathering the tribute, I
asked Vasilie Phedorouich the Russe depucie, whether the Denmarks would not be a let to vs,
if we should come to this Keger. And he said, no, they should not: for this land is my kings, and
therefore be bolde to come hither.

The Kerils and the Lappians tolde me no fish, vntill the said depucie had looked vpon it, and had gi-
uen them leave to sell. I asked him what wares were best for vs to bring thither, and he said, Sit-
ter, pearles, cloth, blew, red, and Greene, meale, strong beere, wine, pewter, fure cases, and gold.

The Lappians pay tribute to the Emperour of Russia, to the king of Denmarke, and to the
king of Sweden. He tolde me that the River Cola is little more then 20. leagues to the South-
wards of Keger, where we should haue great plenty of Salmon, if coyne were any thing cheape
in Russia: for then poore men would resort thither to kill Salmon.

The Dutchmen tolde me that they had made a good yeere of this, but the Kerils complained of
it, because they could not sell all their fish, and that which they sold was as pleased the Dutchmen,
and at their owne pprice. I asked the Kerils at what pprice they sold their fish to the Russes, & they said
good cheape: we sell 14. fishes for 4. altines. I thinke they tolde little about 20. pence, the 25.
fishes this yeere.

The Dutchmen tolde me that the best stockfish is made at Keger. I sawe at Vasilies tent 7.
or 8. launcins, and halfe a dozen of bowes bent, with their budgets of arrowes, & likewise two dozen
with other weapons: Otherwise I sawe no weapons there.

I was also conuered to their lodgings, which gathered tribute for the king of Denmarke,
where I sawe a paire of bilbowes: and I asked whether they were for the Lappians (if neede
were,) and they said no, but onely for their owne company if they should chance to be vnruly.
The Kerils and the Lappians are not to be trusted, for they will steale as well as the Russes, if
they may conueniently come by any thing.

Concerning my voyage, because the winde was scant to goe backe againe to Colmogro, I
carried to the Eastwards of the poynt Keger, and sent to land, and baked two batches of bread in
the ovens that the Kerils haue for their prouision.

Instructions giuen to the Masters and Mariners to be obserued in
and about this Fleet, passing this yeere 1577. toward the Bay of S. Nicolas in
Russia, for this present Race to be made & returne of the same by Gods grace to the port
of London, the place of their right discharge, as in the Articles ensuing is deduced.



First, it is accorded and agreed betweene the seuerall proprietaries and owners,
masters and companies of the foure ships, surnamed the Primrose, the Iohn E-
angelist, the Anne and the Trinitie, and the Lieutenant, Consuls, assistants and
companye of the Merchant aduenturers, that the aboue named foure ships
shall in good order and conduct, saile, passe, and crauaile together in one flot,
ging, and conferue of societie, to be kept indissolubly and not to be seuered, but
in which continuall light, so farre forth as (by winde & weather) by possibilitie shall or may be

as gamefull
trade of fishing
at Keger.

Commodities
fit for Keger.

be without any separation or departure of one from the other.

2 Item, it is agreed that the good ship named the *Primrose*, shalbe Admirall of this flecte, and that *Anthonie Ienkinson* Gentleman, shalbe captaine thereof: and that all other the 3 ships shall ensue and follow her in all courses, and that no course nor waying (in harborough especially) shall be made without advice, consent and agreement of the sayd Captaine, the *Palter*, his mate, and two other officers of the said ship, or of three of them at the least.

3 Item, that the said *Anthonie* is and shalbe reputed & taken for Captaine general of the said flecte together with all such orders, preeminences, privileges and preferments as by the order of seas is due and accustomed to a Captaine during his abode and exercise of the same.

4 It is also ordered, that if any one or moe of the said 3 ships shalbe out of sight either before or behinde the Admirall, that then the rest of the ships shall tacke or take off their sailes in such sort as they may meete and come together, in as good order as may be, to the intent to keepe the consortment exactly in all points.

5 It is constituted, that if any ships shalbe scured by mist or darke weather, in such sort as the one cannot haue sight of the other, then and in such case the Admirall shall make sound and noise by drumme, trumpet, hoze, gunne or otherwise or meanes, that the ships may come as nigh together, as by safetie and good order they may.

6 It is also to be obserued, that every day once the other three shippes shall send and come aboard the Admirall, and there consult and determine of such matter and things as shall be for the assurance of their Navigation, and most expedition of the same.

7 Item, that notes & entries be daily made of their Navigations put in writing & memorie, and that the young Mariners and appentices may be taught & caused to learne and obserue the same.

8 It is accepted that the said Captaine shall haue the principall rule and gouernement of the appentices: And that not onely they, but also all other the sailers, shalbe attendant and obedient to him, as of duetie and reason appertaineth.

9 Also that no beere nor broth, or other liqour be spilt vpon the balast, or other place of the ship, where by any annoyance, stinke, or other vnlawfullnesse shall growe in the shippe to the infection or hurt of the persons in the same.

10 Item, that the Captaine by discretion shall from time to time disship any artificer or English seruicingman or appentice out of the *Primrose* into any of the other three ships, and in lieu of him or them, take any such appentice as he shall thinke conuenient and most meete to serue the benefite of the companie.

11 Item, that great respect be had to the Gunners and Cookes roomes, that all danger and perill of powder and fire may be eschewed and auoyded.

12 Item, that singular care and respect be had to the ports of the ship, aswell in Navigation as in harborow, and especially in lading and unlading of the shippes, that nothing be lacking or surcharged: and that the bookes may oftentimes be conferred and made to agree in escheuement of such losses, as may ensue.

13 Special foresight is to be had, that at the Wardhouse no treacherie, insuasion, or other perill of molestation be done or procured to be attempted to our ships by any kings, princes, or companies, that do mislike this new found trade by seas to Russia, or would let & hinder the same; whereof no small boast hath bene made: which giueth occasion of moze circumspection and diligence.

14 If the winde and weather will serue, it is thought good rather to goe by the Wardhouse then to come in and ancre there, lest any male engine, or danger may be the rather attempted against vs, our goods and ships as above.

15 It is thought good that *Richard Iohnson*, late seruant to *Ed. Chancellor*, shall be sent home in this next returne, to instruct the company of the state of the Countrey, and of such questions as may be demanded of him, for our better aduertisements and resolutions, in such doubt as shall arise here: and that he shall haue the room of the Captaine in such sort, as *Palter Ienkinson* is in this present cocket assigned vnto. And if *Iohnson* can not, may not, nor will not returne and occupie the said place, then any other person to be preferred thereunto, as by the discretion of our said Captaine, with consent of our Agents, shall be thought meete and apt to supply the same.

16 Provided alway, that the ships returning be not disurnished of one such able man, as shall occupie the Captainship in like order, as is, and hath bene in such case appoynted, as reason and good order requirith.

17 Item that all other former orders, rules, and deuises, made and prouided for the good order of our ships, wares, and goods, being not repugnant, contrary or diuerse, to these articles, and the contents of the same, shall be, and stand in full force and effect, to be in all respects obserued and kept of all and every person and persons, whom the same both or shall touch or concerne.

Let.

In w
said four
sheetes o
our Lord

A let



celer and his
seruants escape
were lost and
we looke for i
patience: and
entertainment of
and Queene's
that be free in R
others. The lik
dour. The Phil
Confidence is lo
feare it is wron
ceine what wares
were made, whic
Richard Gray: b
water that we can
the part of Russia
Primrose of the b
uangelist of 170, 2
burthen of 160, tur
then of 140. Cum
peare: which you m
and good ships, God
stowing, all marked
107, sorting clothes
running with numbe
11, 9, 8, the cloth, one
the cottons at 9, 11, 1
thire kerfles, that is 4
pieces which cost the
the packe: and part
Thomas Hales make
Iuniope in cuerp

In witness of the premises faithfully to be observed and kept, the owners and Masters of the said four ships, together with the said Captaine, to these seuentene articles, contained in two sheets of paper, have subscribed their hands. Given in London, the third of May, in the yeere of our Lord God 1557.

¶ Owners of the Primerose.

Andrew Iudde.

William Chester.

Anthony Hickman.

Edward Casteline.

¶ Owners of the John Euangelist.

Andrew Iudde.

William Chester.

¶ Owner of the Anne.

John Dimocke.

¶ Owner of the Trinitie.

R. T.

A letter of the Company of the Marchants aduenturers to
Russia unto George Killingworth, Richard Gray, and Henry Lane
their Agents there, to be deliuered in Colmogro or
els where: sent in the John Euangelist.



For our heartie commendations unto you and to either of you: your generall 1557.
letter and other particular letters with two bookes of the sale and remainders of
our goods, and the buying of ware there with you, we receiued about the ende
of Nouember out of the Edward, with heauie newes of the losse of the sayde
good shippe and goods at Peillego in Scotland, with the death of Richard Chan-
celor and his Boy, with certaine of the Embassadors seruants, and he himselfe with nine of his
seruants escaped very hardly onely by the power of God: but all his goods and ours in maner
were lost and pilfered away by the Scots, and that that is saued is not yet come to our hands, but
we looke for it daily, and it will shant pay the charges for the recovering of it. No remedy but
patience: and to pray to God to send vs better fortune hereafter. As touching the receiuing and
entertainment of the Embassador and his retinue since his coming to England at the king
and Queenes Maesties hands, with the Counsell & Lordes of this Realme, and the Marchants
others. The like we thinke haue not bene seene nor shewed here of a long time to any Ambassa-
dour. The Philip and Marie arriued here tenne dayes past: they wintered in Norway. The
Confidence is lost there. And as for the Bona Esperanza, as yet we haue no newes of her. We
fear it is wrong with her. By your billes of lading receiued in your generall letters we per-
ceiue what wares are laden in them both. Your letters haue no date nor mention where they
were made, which were written by Henry Lane, and signed by you George Killingworth and
Richard Gray: both it and the other Letters and Bookes came so soze spoiled and broken with
water that we cannot make our reckoning by them. You shall vnderstand we haue freighted for
the parts of Russia foure good shippes to be laden there by you & your order: That is to say, The
Primerose of the burthen of 240. Tunnes, Master vnder God John Buckland: The John E-
uangelist of 170. Tunnes, Master vnder God Laurence Roundal: The Anne of London of the bur-
then of 160. tunnes, Master vnder God David Philly, and the Trinitie of London of the bur-
then of 140. Tunnes, Master vnder God John Robins, as by their Charter parties may ap-
peare: which you may require to see for diuers causes. You shall receiue, God willing, out of the
said good ships, God sending them in safety for the vse of the Company, these kinds of wares fol-
lowing, all marked with the general marke of the Company as followeth. 25. fardels containing
307. sorting clothes, one fine violet in graine, and one skarlet, and 40. cottons for wrappers, be-
ginning with number 1. and ending with number 52. The sorting clothes may cost the first penny
3. li. 9. s. the cloth, one with the other. The fine violet 18. li. 6. s. 6. d. The skarlet 17. li. 13. s. 6. d. Wares sent
the cottons at 9. li. 10. s. the packe, accompying 7. cottons for a packe, more 500. pieces of Hamp- into Russia
shire kersties, that is 400. white kersties, 43. blewes, 53. v. ds. 15. greenes, 5. ginger colours, and 2. ye- out of Eng-
lows which cost the first penny 4. li. 6. s. the piece, & 3. packes containing 21. cottons at 9. li. 10. s. land.
the packe: and part of the clothes is measured by Archibins. More 9. barrells of pewter of
Thomas Hasels making, &c. Also the wares bee packed and laden as is aforesayde, as by
the Arthins
to a thirde
measure,
in a poyce in euery Shippe more plainly may appeare. So that when it shall please
God

7. Ropesma-
hers sent into
Russia.

Cables and
Ropes a prin-
cipall commo-
ditie.

Danske the old
chiefe place for
Cables.

Commodities
not bearing
the charges of
long freight.

Furres most
vendible.

Steel.

Copper.

Woollen cloth
of Rie and
Kemel, of Do-
larb and Kets
colours.

Russian leather.

Things good
to be withall.

God to send the said good ships to you in safetie, you are to receiue our said goods, and to procure the sales to our most auantage either for ready money, time or batter: hauing consideration that you doe make good debts, and giue such time, if you giue any, as you may employ and returre the same against the next voyage; and also forseeing that you batter to a profit, and for such wares as be here most vendible, as were, tallowe, traine oyle, tempe and flaxe. Of furs we desire no great plentie, because they be dead wares. And as for felts, we will in no wise you send any. And whereas you haue provided tarre, and as we suppose, some tempe ready bought, our aduise is, that in no wise you send any of them hither vnbought, because our freight is 4. li. a tunne of little lesse: which is so deare, as it would not beare the charges: and therefore we haue sent you 7. ropemakers, as by the copies of their countauns here inclosed shall appere. Whom we will you see to worke with al expedition in making of cables & ropes of all sorts, from the smallest rope to 11. inches: And that such tarre and tempe as is already brought to the water side, they may there make it out, and after that you settle their worke in Vologda or Colmogor, you shall thinke good, where their stiffe may be nearest to them: at which place and places you doe assigne them a principall overseer aswell to see the deliuerie of the stiffe vnbought, as also to take charge of the stiffe wrought, & to forsee that neither the yarne be burnt in tarring, nor the tempe rotted in the watering; and also to furnish them so with labourers, workemen and stiffe, as hereafter when these workmen shall come away, we be not destitute of good workmen, and that these may dispatch as much as possibly they may, doing it substantially: for we esteeme it a principall commoditie, and that the Councell of England both well allowe. Let all diligence be vsed, that at the returre of these shippes we may see samples of all ropes & cables if it be possible, and so after to continue in worke, that we may haue good stoffe against the next yeere. Therefore they haue neede to haue a place to worke in, in the winter: and at any hand let them haue helpe pough to spinne their stiffe: for seeing you haue great plentie of tempe there, and at a reasonable price, we trust we shalbe able to buy as good stiffe from thence, and better cheape then out of Danske: if it be diligently vsed, and haue a good cuerfeer.

Let the chiefest lading of these foure shippes be principally in were, flaxe, tallowe and traine oyle. And if there be any more wares then these ships be able to take in, then leaue that which is least in balew and grossest in stouage vntill the next shipping: for wee doe purpose to ground our selues chiefly vpon these commodities, as were, cables and ropes, traine oyle, flaxe and some linen yarne. As for Halls, Tarre, Tempe, Feathers, or any such other like, they would not beare the charges to haue any, considering our deere freight. We haue sent you a Skinner to be there at our charges for meate, drinke and lodging, to to viewe and see such furs as you shall cheape or buye, not minding neuerthelesse, that you shall charge your selues with many, except those which be most vendible, as good martens, minuers, otherwise called Lettes, and Wyntkes. Of these you may send vs plentie, finding them good and at a reasonable price. As for Sables and other rich furs, they be not euery mans money: therefore you may send the fewer, vsing partly the discretion of the skinner in that behalfe.

We heare that there is great plentie of Steele in Russia and Tartarie, whereof wee would you sent vs part for an example, and to write your nuaders in it what stoffe is to be had for we heare say there is great plentie, and that the Tartars Steele is better then that in Russia. And likewise we be informed that there is great plentie of Copper in the Emperours Dominions: we would be certified of it what plentie there is, and whether it be in plates or in round flat cakes, and send vs some for an example. Also we would haue you to certifie vs what kinde of woollen cloth the men of Rie and Reuel, and the Poles and Lettors doe bring to Russia, and send the skanklings of them with part of the liss, and a full aduise of the lengths and breadth, colours and prices, and whether they be strained or not: and what number of them may be delivered in a peere, to the intent we may make provision for them for the like sort, and all other Flemish wares which they bring thither and be most vendible there. And to certifie vs whether our set clothes be vendible there or not: and whether they be rowen and shorne: because sometimes they goe vnderest. Moreover, we will you send vs of euery commoditie in that Country part, but no great quantitie other then such as is before declared. And likewise euery kinde of Leather, whereof wee be informed there is great stoffe bought yearly by the Esterlings and Duches for his Almaigne and Germanie.

More, that you doe send vs for prooffe a quantie of such earth, hearbes, or what thing soeuer it be, that the Russes do dye and colour any kinde of cloth linen or wollen. Leather or any other thing whichall: and also part of that which the Tartars and Turkes doe bring thither, and how it must be vsed in dying and colouring. Moreover, that you haue a speciall forselight in the chusing of your Tallowe, and that it may be well purified and tried, or els it will in one yeere putrifie & consume.

Also
with our
Also w
whom we
keepe acc
the notabl
aduertise
now, as al
negligent
home, and
And beca
doe appoynt
to haue like
counting but
poynted and
vnde your s
and traffike
and businesse
(which we do
young men, as
his and Cre
is nearer the
Lane to be cha
our Inuoyces,
other place wh
And so first time
that be may en
his Bookes at t
passed. And w
April next send
owne hands of a
vnde: and al
men vnder you p
at the fine of M
against the comm
telle, and not ming
compt of euery bo
euery peere putr
to the accompt of
April next, be put
will not take it in
if we doe it for n
and ours may by th
that you doe keepe
wherein is our most
lisses of lading, lette
voyage: and that u
good by your wisdo
an. And all such m
to your discretion, v
els where. And
beginning of June
that wee may re
sles are made, and
charges haue bene lay
what they cost, and
some accompt in euery
peere of wares in comp
telle much more then

us, and to procure
 ing consideration
 may employ and
 to a profit, and for
 d flare. Of surres
 will in no wise you
 mpe ready bought,
 ecause our freight
 ges: and therefore
 ofed shall appeare,
 s of all sorts, from
 ough to the water
 dha of Colmogro
 place and places
 use into yough, as
 e burnt in tarring,
 rs, woemen and
 if good woemen,
 for we esteeme
 et all diligence be
 es if it be possible,
 re yeere. There-
 and let them have
 pe there, and at a
 and better choyse
 allowe and traine
 leave that which is
 purpose to growne
 ple, flare and some
 e, they would not
 ou a Skinner to
 uch surres as you
 lues with many
 ise called Letris,
 reasonable price,
 heretofore you may
 e, whereof wee
 ope is to be haue
 en that in Russia,
 mperours Domb
 plates of iron
 ie us what time
 ng to Russia, and
 chs and bracelets,
 hem may be bet-
 res, and all other
 rifice us whether
 ene: because of
 in that Countrey
 e every kinde of
 e Esterlings and
 hat thing soeuer
 any other thing
 and how it must be
 e chusing of you
 rifice & continue
 All

Also that you certifie us the truth of the waights and measures, and howe they doe answer
 with ours, and to send us 3. robes in money, that we may trie the iust value of them.

Also we doe send you in these ships ten young men that be bound Apprentises to the Companie,
 whom we will you to appoynt enery of them as you shall there finde most apt and meete, some to
 keepe accompts, some to buy and sell by your order and Commission, and some to send abroad into
 the notable Cities of the Countrey for understanding and knowledge. And we will you send us
 advertisement from time to time aswell of the demeanours of our Apprentises which we doe send
 now, as also of such other as bee already there with you. And if you finde any of them remisse
 negligent, or otherwise mislike themselves and will not be ruled, that then you doe send him
 home, and the cause why.

Ten young men
 sent into Rus-
 sia.

And because we doe perceiue the Countrey to be large, and that you haue three households, we
 doe appoynt Henry Lane to be one of our Agents, and to toyne with you in all your doings, and
 to haue like authoritie and power as you George Killingworth and Richard Gray haue: not
 doubting but you three will so conferre together, as both our Apprentises and others may be ap-
 poynted and diuided enery of them to his office, and to that he can best skill of: and you also so
 diuide your selues enery of you to an house, as by advertisement one from another, our businesse
 and trafficke may take good successe. And for diuers considerations, to auoyde many troubles
 (which we doe thinke to bee most meetest Henry Lane) shall haue with him there such of our
 young men, as can best skill in keeping of accompts after the maner of Merchantes, that is, by De-
 bitos and Creditos: And that there shall be the place, where our bookes shall be kept: because it
 is nearer the sea side, where our goods shall be discharged and our ships laden. And the said Henry
 Lane to be charged with all such goods as we shall discharge there out of our ships, according to
 our Inuoyces. Which goods are to be sent from Colmogro to Vologhda or to Mosco, or to any
 other place where you three or two of you do appoynt the to be sold, so that Henry Lane be one.
 And so from time to time immediately as any thing is sold, doe you certifie the same to Henry Lane,
 his Bookes at the coming of our ships, when he should send us the account of the whole yeere
 passed. And we will also that you George Killingworth and Richard Gray doe in the fine of
 April next send either of you unto Henry Lane a whole perfite, & iust account framed with your
 owne hands of all the goods you haue sold and bought untill that time, and what remaineth
 untill then: and also the account of all maner costs of wares, and charges of you and the pong
 men under you particularly in such sort as the said account may bee with him in Colmogro
 at the fine of May at the furthest: to the intent that hee may make all our accompts perfite
 against the coming of our ships: and in any wise to keepe account of euery voyage by it
 selfe, and not mingle one voyage with another at no hand. And as we will haue you to keepe ac-
 count of euery voyage by it selfe, euen so wee would haue all the whole costes and charges of
 euery yeere put into the voyage of that yeere. As the charges of all the last yeere must be put
 into the account of the third voyage: and the charges of this yeere present, must in the fine of
 to the account of the fourth voyage. Nor doubting but your wisdom is such, that you
 will not take it in euill part, that wee doe appoynt Henry Lane to take the account of the rest,
 for we doe it for none other cause, but to keepe a good order in our bookes, that his bookes
 and ours may by this meanes agree: and hee bring the ponger man, may best take paines: and
 that you doe keepe account of euery kinde of wares by it selfe, to the intent wee may perceiue
 wherein is our most gaine. And also in the making of your returne, in any wise name in your
 billies of lading, letters, and accompts, what wares doe appertaine to the first, second, and third
 voyage: and that wee may knowe the same by the numbers or otherwise as you shall thinke
 good by your wisdomes, putting the charges of the saide wares unto them, as nigh as you
 can. And all such mony as shall bee made of your goods in any place, wee referre that
 to your discretion, where it shall remaine untill it bee employed, either at Vologhda, Mosco,
 or els where. And likewise wee will that Henry Lane doe make in a readinesse about the
 beginning of June euery yeere our whole account of the voyage in that yeere passed: in such
 sort that wee may receiue the same by our shippes: and that wee may plainly perceiue what
 charges haue bene layde out for the sayd voyages, and what wares bee bought, and what
 they cost, and for what voyage euery parcell thereof is: and to send us a copie of the
 same account in euery shippe. And also so far as much as at this time we haue sent you but small
 quantity of wares in comparison of that we haue hope will be uttered in short space, and yet neuer
 so much more then you wrote for, whereby there shall not be sufficient to make any ample
 returne

Henry Lane
 Agent.

The fourth
 voyage.

The olde traf-
fike of Russia
to the Muscovy
and Poland
turned to
Sourth
Cholas.

The articles
of their first
Commission
giuen 1555.

Leonard Brian
sent to search
out Pewe in
the North
partes of
Russia.

2. Coopers
sent into
Russia.

returne: and vnderstanding that there is great quantitie of goods stayed for our trade there by the Emperour, we haue moued the Embassado: that you may haue credite for such quantitie as shall seeme good to you to prouide for our benefite. Which credite if you may by his means obtaine, or otherwise haue, we would you bought as much Ware principally as you may get. For if there be in that countrey so great quantitie, as we be informed there is, it will be the best commodity we may haue: for hauing that wholly in our hands, we may serue our owne countrey and others. Therefore seeing the Emperour both minde, that such commodities as bee in his dominions shall not passe to Rie and Reuel and Poland as they haue done, but bee reserved for him: therefore we must so lay for it, that it may not ly upon their hands that haue it to sell, alwayes hauing consideration in the price and time as our next dispatch may correspond. Whereof you may send a certaine aduise, as well what you shall receiue of credite, and to what quantitie, as also what wares are remaining in your hands: which together well considered, you may aduertise us as well for how many hundred tonnes we must prouide freight against the next peere, as also what sortes, quantities and qualities of wares we shall send you, as well to pay your credite, as also to furnish the next aduenture after. Of this we would be answered largely. For we trust by this time you are able to giue full instructions of the state of the countrey: according to the articles of your first Commissions, and what commodities doe principally abound there with their prices: and likewise what of our commodities haue most vnterance there, and what prices will be giuen for them there: and all other things requisite and necessary to be knownen.

Also we doe vnderstand that in the Countrey of Permia or about the riuer of Pechora is great quantitie of Pewe, and likewise in the Countrey of Vgory, which we be desirous to haue knowledge of, because it is a speciall commodity for our Realme. Therefore we haue sent you a yong man, whose name is Leonard Brian, that hath some knowledge in the wood, to shew you in what sort it must be cut and clouen. So our minde is if there be any store, and that it bee found to be good, that there you doe prouide a good quantitie against the next peere for the comming of our shippes: and if there can bee found none that will serue for our purpose, then you may let the sayd Leonard Brian to any other businesse that you shall finde most fittest for him, untill the returne of our ships the next peere. For he is hired by the peere onely for that purpose. We would not but see how you shall doe you good seruice there. For he hath good knowledge of wares of that Countrey: for his bying by hath bene most in Danske, and hath good vnderstanding in making of Ropes and Cables. Also we doe send you two Coopers to remaine there with you at our finding for meate and drinke and lodging to make in a readinesse all such caske as shall be needfull for traine oyle, tallow, or any thing else. One of them may goe with Leonard Brian to cut and cleue such Pewe as he shall like there. And because we be not sure what timber they shall finde there to make Caske, we haue laden in these ships 140. tonnes empty Caske, that is 94. tonnes shaken Caske and 46. tonnes whole, and ten thousand hoopoes, & 480. wetheres of twigs: they may be doing with that till they can prouide other timber, which we would be glad to heare of. They haue an example with them of the bignesse of the Caske they shall make. Feuerthelc, all sayd Buttres and Hoggeheads as may be found to serue we will haue filled with Traine Oyle.

Also we charge you that you suffer no goods nor marchandies of any persons being not free of the Company, and of the accompt of the Company to be laden in any wise in our ships either now or at any time hereafter: except the Emperour or Embassadour minde to send any thing to the King and Queenes Maesties, or to any noble man, or to the Marchantes of the Company: nor likewise that you suffer any goods that goe in these ships to be brought on land there, except the Ambassadors goods, and the Physicians & Apothecaries, and others that bee hath with him, who carie no Marchandise. And because our ships be freighted by the great, it shall be very necessary that you do appoynt certaine to see the romaging of the ships, and to giue the master or Swaine, or him that will take upon him to romage, a good reward for his labour to see the goods well romaged. If it be iii. d. or iiij. d. the turne, it shall not be amisse. For if it be not substantially well looked vnto, it may bee a great deale of money out of our wages.

Also because we reckon that from the Mosco will bee alwayes better conueyance of letters to vs by land: our minde is that from time to time as occasion shall serue, our Agents shall write him that shall lie at Mosco of all things that shall passe, that hee may giue vs large instructions, as well what is solde and bought, as also what lading we shall take, and what quantitie and kind of goods we shall send. For whereto we haue had but a slender aduise, moze like a bill to serue a Chapman, then for quantitie of wares to serue a kingdom. For we must procure to better good quantitie of wares, especially the commodities of our Realme, although we affoord a good pennyworth, to the intent to make other that haue traded thither, weare it, and so to bying our selues and our commodities in estimation, and likewise to procure to haue the chiefe commodities of that Country

Let.

countre
our hand
Lubeck,
so buy, it
poynce
Cyphers
ring of y
send them
And becau
rise, where
send vs hon
tise vs in su
ships. We t
on in that m
As touchi

logda we tr
may take era
perceive that
except we had
discouerie with
gimling of Tur
him here in En
We doe per
foot upon the bar
great pleasure
to we haue sent
to be in further
thonic Huse and
men as hee shall thi
best to take with
halfe peere, or as
wares here at this
right pound the hu
tallow at sixteene
come out of Danske
Except untill the
were recover: & out
the traine oyle can
that you shall lade
so long barrels no
any other ware
an get.

Also if the Em
as reasonable a p
and lade it for our ac
tome of the shippes in
tissue, or according
going to such patern
conformable to reas
th euerie man will be
th him or with any
they bee in bill peo
themselves. Where
ne, nor none to con
said, for his owne pe
Also we charge you
mp of our ships; but
e: and to haue conde
the shillings eight pence

our trade there by
e for such quantitie
may by his meanes
s you may get. For
will be the best com-
owne countrey and
as be in his domi-
ee referred for the
it to sell, alwayes
and. Wheresof you
at quantitie, as also
may aduertise vs
next yeece, as also
pay your credits, as
y. For we trust by
corbding to the ar-
nd there with the
what prices will be
en.

of Pechora is grow-
ous to haue know-
wee haue sent you a
ood, to shew you in
nd that it bee found
of the coming of
en you may let the
him, buttill the re-
rpose. We doubt
e of wares of the
derstanding in ma-
re with you at our
as shalbe needfull
d Brian to cut and
der they shall find
that is 94. tunnes
of twigs: they may
to heare of. They
erthel. We all say
Traine Dyle,
ys being not free
in our ships either
send any thing to
f the Company
land there, except
ee hath with him,
haue very nece-
e master of. You
r to see the goods
not substantially

ance of letters
ents shall write
ege instructions,
ancie and kinde
e a bill to seru-
ure to beeter good
d a good penny-
ng our selues and
mmodities of the
Country

Let. of the Mosc. Companie. Traffiques, & Discoueries. 301

countrey in our hands, as ware and such others, that other nations may bee serued by vs and at
our hands, if o; we doe vnderstand that the greatest quantitie of ware that cometh to Danske,
Lubeck, and Hambourgh, cometh out of Russia. Therefore if we should buy parte, and they al-
to buy, it would raise the price there, and would bee litle woorth here. And all such letters of in-
portance and secretie as you doe send by land for any wares or other wise, you must write them in
Cyphers, after the order of a booke sent you in the shippes: alwayes taking good heede in pla-
cing of your letters and cyphers, that we may vnderstand them by the same booke here, and to
send them in such sort, that we may haue them here by Christmas or Candlemas, if it be possible.
And because you cannot so certainly aduertise vs by letters of your doings, but some doubt may a-
rise, wherof we would most gladly be certified: our mind is therefore that with these ships you
send vs home one such young man as is most expert in knowledge of that countrey, and can best cer-
tific vs in such questions as may be demanded, whome we will remit vnto you againe in the next
ships. We thinke Arthur Edwards will be fittest for that purpose: neuertheless use your discreti-

The marchants
letters once
kind written in
cyphers.

As touching our goods that were robbed and pilfered out of our ships at Colmogro and Vo-
logda we trust by this time they are restor'd againe, and the malefactors so punished, that other
may take example for doing the like, other wise it will be an enill president. Moreover, we doe
perceiue that Richard Gray doeth buy mastes to send into England, they will not quit the costes,
except we had a ship of purpose for them. And likewise that Secuen Burrow is returned from his
discouerie with the Serchthrift, and wintereth at Colmogro, and is minded to set forth in the be-
ginning of June next to seeke the river of Ob. We say God so speere him well, and trust to haue
him here in England this yeece to bring vs good newes.

The voyage of
Secuen Burrowe
for the discouerie
of the river
of Ob.

We doe perceiue there is a river found about the mouth of S. Nicholas Bay that hath thirteen
foot upon the barre at a lowe water, and is as neere Colmogro as S. Nicholas: which will bee a
great pleasure vnto vs. We will that Steuen Burrowe doe proceed on his voyage to discover, Al-
though we haue sent you one Anthonie Jenkinson Gentleman, a man well trauelled, whom we mind
to be in further traueilling, according to a Commission deliuered him, subscribed by master An-
thonie Hulse and others. Therefore we will you deliuer him one of such painfull young
men as he shal thinke meetest for his purpose: and likewise such money and wares as he shal thinke
best to take with him. We must haue forty pounds a yeece for foure yeeces, to be paid him by the
half yeece, or as he will demaund it of you, so let him haue it from Easter last. Also the prices of
wares here at this present are, bale flaxe twenty pound the packe and better, towe flaxe twentie
pound the hundred, craine oyle at nine pound the tunne, ware at foure pound the hundred,
yallow at sixteen shillings the hundred, cables and ropes very deare: as yet there are no shippes
come out of Danske.

Mr. Anthonie
Jenkinson hath
first traualle
intended for Ca-
thy by the Cas-
pian sea and
Boghar.

Kept vntill the tenth day of this present. As this day came the goods out of Scotland that
were recouered out of the Edward Bonauenture: and now we doe perceiue that the caske that
the trayne oyle came in, is verie good, and much better then ours. Therefore our minde is,
that you shall lade it all in such barrells of the bigger sort as you laded in the Edward, and
so long barrells not small. And that caske that wee haue sent may serue for the Tallowe
and other ware that is not leakage. Neuertheless, this voyage you must take such as you
can get.

Good raske
made in Russia.

Also if the Emperour bee minded to deliuer you any summe of money, or good Ware
as reasonable a price as you may haue for ready money, wee will that you shall take it
and lade it for our accomptes, and to come at our aduenture, and hee to be payed at the re-
turne of the shippes in Veluets, Satens, or any other kinde of silke, or cloth of golde, cloth
going to such patermes as hee shall send. Wee doe not finde the Ambassadors now at the last
conformable to reason as wee had thought wee should. Hee is very mistrustfull, and thin-
keth euery man will beguile him. Therefore you had neede to take heede howe you haue to doe
with him or with any such, and to make your bargaines plaine, and to see them downe in writing,
they bee subtil people, and doe not alwayes speake the truth, and thinke other mento bee
so, not none to come for passengers, vntill the Emperour doe make a bargain with you, as is
also we charge you not to suffer any of our nation to send any wares to their wiues or friends
abroad: and to haue consideration how you doe take the robe. For although we doe rate it after six-
ty shillings eight pence of our money, yet it is not woorth past 12. or 13. shillings sterling.

Moreover,

Whereof, you had neede to sende newe accompes, for them that came in the Edward be married and tojue, so that we can make no reckoning by them: and likewise to write vs a perfect note of all the goodes which you receiued the last voyage out of the Edward, an b herein not to faile.

Andrew Iudde.
George Barne,
Anthonie Hufe,
William Garrard.
William Chester.

A Letter of Master Thomas Hawtrej to the worshipfull
Master Henrie Lane Agent at Colmogro, written in Vologda
the 31. of Ianuarie 1557.

1557

John Sedgewick
at Nouogrode.

spalls of 30.
pards.

An Urshine is
3. quarters of
a pard of more.

A rope house
erected at Col-
mogro.

A tarre house.

Robert Austen.

W^{orshipfull} Sir, heartie commendations premised. These may bee to aduertise you, that yester day the thirtieth of this present came hither Robert Best, and brought with him two hundred robes, that is, one hundred for this place, and one hundred for you at Colmogro. As for hempe which is here at two robes and a halfe the berrouite, master Gray hath written to buy no more at that price: for John Sedgewicke hath bought for five or seven hundred robes worth at Nouogrode for one robe and a halfe the berrouite, and better cheape: and within Nouogrode flake is there at three robes the berrouite. I trust he will doe much good by his going thither. As I doe vnderstand, Richard Iohnson is gone to Nouogrode with money to him, I doubt not but Master Gray hath aduertised you of all their doings, both at the Moscoo and at Nouogrod. And touching our doings here, you shall perceiue that wee haue solde wares of this fourth voyage for one hundred and fourtie robes, besides fiftie robes of the second and this voyage since the giuing vp of my last account, and for wares of the Countrey, you shall vnderstand that I haue bought tried and vntried for 77. robes foure hundred podes of tried tallowe, besides foure hundred podes that I haue giuen out money for, whereof God graunt good receipt when the time cometh, which is in Lent. And in browne flake and hempe I haue bought fiftene berrouites, five podes and fiftene pound, which cost 28. robes, eleven alines and two pence, and as for other kindes of wares I haue bought none as yet. And for masses to bee provided, you shall vnderstand that I wrote a letter to Torma the 28. of this present. for fiftie masses, to wit, for 25. of fiftene fathoms, and 25. of foureteene fathoms, to be an archine and a halfe at the small end, and more, I haue written for 30. great trees to be two archines and a halfe at the small end, and for the other that were provided the last yeere, I trust they shall be sent downe in the spring of the yeere. And as concerning the Ropemakers, you shall vnderstand that their abiding place shall bee with you at Colmogro, as I doe thinke Master Gray hath aduertised you. For, as Roger Bontinge Master of the workes doeth say, there is no place more meete for their purpose then with you: and there it will be made with lesser cost, considering that the pale is the one half of it: which is to set one pale more to that, and so for to couer it ouer, which as they say, will be but little cost. They doe pray that it may bee made fiftene foote broad, and one hundred and eightie fathoms long: and that in the midde way twentie foote from the pale towarde the water side there may be a house made to tarre in, standing alone by it selfe for danger of fire. The same house that they would haue made, is to bee fiftene fathoms long, and ten fathoms broad, and they would that house should be made first: for I thinke they will not tarre before they come downe. And farther they desire that you will provide for as much tarre as you may, for heere wee haue small doze, but when the time cometh that it should be made, I will provide as much as I can here, that it may bee sent downe when the Nafade cometh. The stuffe that they haue made is about five thousand weight, and they say that they trust to haue by that time come downe yarne ynough to make 20. cables. As concerning a copie of the Alphabet in cyril, Master Gray hath written hither that Robert Austen had one, which he wished that he should liuer to you. Thus I surceale, beseeching God to preserve you in health, and to send your hearts desire.

By yours to command to his power,
Thomas Hawtrej.

A Letter

W^{orshipfull}

bene scene
my wife, a
Olep Boico
make vs pay
partner be
gone to that
you since our
this yeere, T
be in a readin
hempe is spun
Haulers from
fande pounde
yed weight in
seven podes the
more shorly, fi
ched by the four
of hempe that co
was bought befor
spent aboute fiftie
spunne and say ab
their hands, hau
which these two bo
beth by and is ver
if I can finde g
came out of the Tr
Thomas Bunting
es at the least to s
le all, as one of the
shed in her floore
the sterne, as I haue
our ware and tallo
appes: I doe int
appes shall ride, y
we will, there shall b
ouble you withall,
er Ienkinson, Th

As for these our
workes. These daye
haue none, nor any w
ence from the Emper
I intend God will
as for money there

A Letter of
Gray, and
Po.

A Letter

Power premised
Aduertised, & my last

in the Edward be
to write us a per
ward, and herein

shipfull
gda

to aduertise you,
and brought with
for you at Colmo
er Gray hath with
seven hundred to
cheape: and with
much good by his
de with money u
y at the Mosco
auue folde wares
he second and the
ou shall understand
to tallowe, but his
good receipte when
bought seuen
es two pence, and
prouided, you shall
es, to wit, for 12,
at the small end,
the small end, and
in the ffining of the
abiding place that
you. For, as for
for their purpose
ale is the one half
is they say, will
d one hundred
owarde the wares
of fire. The Com
hons broade, and
ze they come there
for heere were but
wide as much as
that they have no
by that time the
alphabet in cypher
that he should
to send you your

power,

A Letter

Rich. Gray his letter. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

303

A Letter of Master Richard Gray one of the first Agents of
the Mosconie companie to Master Henrie Lane at Mosco, writ-
ten in Colmogro the 19. of Februarie 1558.

Worshipfull Sir, after heartie commendations &c. You shall understand that this Lene
bene scene these ten yeeres. Thither come many out of Vgori: therefore I would haue bene there
my selfe, and also haue receiued such money as is owing vs in wares by Kerill his brother and
Olsep Boicouo. For as you well know, thence they will goe with their wares to the Mosco, and
make vs payment with delayes, as they haue done these other yeeres past. Colobonc and his
partner be departed towarde I. an. pas with seuen sledges laden with victuals. Others also are
gone to that Part. As touching the bying of money with you, I will bee good, for I assure
you since our coming to this countrey haue not so many persons gone to the Sea, as will doe
this yeere. Trusting that God will send good store of traine oyle, I will cause as much calke to
bee in a readinesse as I can, if you shall thinke it meete to send some money before. All our olde
hempe is spunne and wrought in tenne cables from fiftene pynes to ten the least, and thirteene
Haulers from sixe pynes to thre pynes: and all may weigh white eight and twenty thou-
sande pounde weight and upwarde. There is in hempe ockam fne thousand pound two hun-
dred weight in twelue sakes at the least: the flaxe that came downe in the Nassadaes with those
seuen podes that came last is all spunne with a good part of that hempe that came last. God send
more shortly, for all that is here and that is coming in the thre other sledges, will bee dispat-
ched by the fourth weeke in Lent. Within these few dayes I bought thirteene podes, seuen pound
of hempe that cost two robles, twenty eight alaines, foure pence, which together with that that
was bought before, shall bee laide in dipping and sounding lines, for it is very good. There are
spent above fiftie barrells of care already: you shall understand that these eight workemen will
spunne and lay about fourescore and tenne thousand pound of hempe, so it bee dyessed ready to
their hands, hauling two to turne the wheelles, and two to winde by. Therefore I haue agreed
with these two boyes to serue the workshoppe companie foure yeeres a piece. One of them win-
deth by and is very apt to spinne: therefore I will haue two other young men Russes to spinne,
if they can finde good sureties for their truce. I haue bene in hand with these two young men that
came out of the Trinitie, and they with me, but under seuen pound a yeere they will not serue, nor
Thomas Bunting that was Roger Bunting his servant. Therefore I would haue thre Rus-
ses at the least to spinne, fne of them will be as good as these thre, and will not be so chargea-
ble all, as one of these would be. I thinke it were good that our Nassada were somewhat streng-
thened in her floore on both sides with planks of fne o. fire pynes thicke, from the stemme to
the sterne, as I haue written to Thomas Hawtrey at Vologda. Also if you shall so thinke meet,
your ware and tallowe shall bee laden in two Dolnickes, for they bee meete to goe aboord the
shippes: I doe intend to set vp an house at Boroleua ouer against the place whereas the
shippes shall ride, your aduise therein I expect, it shall not cost about thre robles, and yet if
you will, there shall be two warne roomes in it. As for other matter at this present I haue not to
trouble you withall, and if it would please you I would be glad to heare some good newes of Pa-
ter Lenkinson. Thus I thus be with you and be his guide.

Postscriptum,

As for these our Hawkes they bee not white, but white and mapled, but inderde are Jar-
woks. These dayes past our Olen died. So this yeere our Haulers of the companie are like
haue none, nor any white beares. Neither may any passe out of the realme without a special li-
cence from the Emperour.
I intend God willing to goe to Lampas, if I doe I will take foure o. fne kerseys with me,
as for money there is small store here to carie.

Yours, Richard Gray,

A Letter of Thomas Alcocke to the worshipfull Richard
Gray, and Henrie Lane Agents in Mosconia from Tirwill in
Polonia, written in Tirwill the 26. of Aprill 1558.

Powerty promised unto your workshops, with commendations &c. It may please you to be ad-
uertised, by my last I sent fro Smolefco, which I trust you haue receiued in other letters to
diuers

1558

Lampas a great
winter for the
Santorde in
the North.

what quanti-
tie of drimpe &
woolmen will
looke in a
yeere.

where halles
& white beares
prohibited
without li-
cence.
After Grays
touring to
Lampas.

1558

diuers of our English men, wherein I certified you of my long captivity there, as also of my departure from thence, and howe that I had hired a Tolar to bring mee to Danske. We came to a certaine village on Saterday the first and twentieth of February, and there remained that night and Sunday to refresh our horses, intending to haue gone away on Sunday early. But on Saterday at night one of his neighbours departed to Tirwill, and there declared to the Captaine howe that at such a place there was a Dutch man that was come from the Mosco, and would ride to Danske, saying, for the one, I cannot tell what he is. The Captaine incontinent rode to the King to shewe him thereof, so that without any delay there was sent out for mee one of the Gentlemen of the Kings house, and one of the Desputches of the Towne with five Officers to take mee. They came thither in the night about midnight, and there apprehended mee and tooke all that I had from me: they left mee nothing but my clothes to put on my backe, and so brought mee to Tirwill to the Captaines house, where before I dyed, I had a payre of letters clapped on my legges, wherewithall I late until it was Sunday in the Easter weeke. On which day, after long and earnest calling to the Captaine as hee rode by the window, hee commaunded the Marshall that mine prons should be taken off, but no worde I could heare when I should be deliuered out of captiuitie till it was Saint George his day: on which day I was had before the Marshall, who declared vnto me that the Kings Maistie had shewed his mercie and goodnesse towards mee: for his pleasure was that I should be deliuered out of prison to depart into England, but no way else. So after I had giuen thanks for the Kings Maisties goodnesse shewed vnto me, I desired him that he would be a meane that I might haue the remaynder of such thinges as were taken from me restored vnto me againe. Hee made me answer, that I might thanke God that I escaped with my head, and that if euer there came any more of vs through the land, they should not do so. The weeke before Easter they deliuered mee my Corobia againe with all thinges that were therein. They tooke from mee in money nine Hungers gylberns in golde, five shillings foure pence in Lettoes money, fourtie Aleines in Rulle money, whereof twentie and more were for tokens, halfe an angell and a quarter of Master Doctor Scandishes, with his ring. Your two pieces of money (Master Gray) that you sent to your wife and daughter, with my two pieces of Boghary money. Of all this I had eight Hungers gylberns deliuered me the thirde weeke of mine imprisonment to paye for my charges, which stode mee in a Daller a weeke. So that at the day of my deliuerie I had but three gylberns left me. For the rest I made a supplication to the Captaine and had the like answer given mee as the Marshall gave me. So that all the rest of the thinges before writtten are lost, and no recouerie to be had, which grieueth me more for the tokens takes then doeth mine eight weeks imprisonment. They haue also my sword, my bootes, my bowe and arrowes that I bought at Smolensco, which cost me foure marks, my slew, my felt, the combold, a booke of the flowres of goodly prayes, and my booke wherein my charges were writtten. Of all these I can get nothing againe, nor to much as my two bookes.

Doctor Scandish the Emperours Physician.

After I had remayned there five and thirtie dayes, I was had before the Captaine by to a great chamber to be examined for letters and of the cause of my comming through the Countrey. In the Captaines companie was one of the Lordes of Danske. They demanded of mee where my letters were, I declared vnto them that I had none: your Officers (sayd I) tooke me when I was in my bedde, they searched mee and tooke all that I had from me, if there be any they shall finde them among my suite which they haue. They asked mee then for what cause I went home ouer land: I declared vnto them, that the Winter being a warme season, and hauing intelligence that The frozen Sea was not much frozen, and supposing this Sommer it would be nautigable, I was onely sent to prouide a Shippe to be sent to passe the sayde Seas to discouer Caratia: which if God graunted wee might doe, it would not onely bee a commoditie to the Realme of Englande, but vnto all Christian landes, by the riches that might bee brought from thence, if the histories bee true that are writtten there. Such other communication I had with them concerning the same voyage. Then he demanded of mee what wares wee brought into Russia, and what wee carried from thence. I declared the same vnto them. Then they burdened mee, that wee brought thither thousands of ordinance, as also of harneis, swordes, with other munitions of warre, artificers, carpenter, with many other thinges: I made them answer, that wee had brought thither about hundred thirties of maple, such olde thinges netwe scowzed as no man in Englande would weare. Other talke they had with mee concerning the trade of Moscouia too long to committ to writing.

At my comming hither heere were Ambassadors from the townes of Danske, Lubec

and Hans in their ships. with Francis peere.

To consoleme into, thus I com his help w

ALc
Bo

W^o of p
advertiseth tha
all in health, e
ther on our voy
warres, which
passe, neither
And although o
and expences,
woolfsfull C
trade of merche
haue brought of
with prostitute:
wares as there i
ing escaped as to
to bee followed.
ferre the discou
ther things. Sir,
and intendeth to p
ite, and haue wite
shipping to imbar
that you are a mau
arte as I perceiue
Hudsons letters, si
on Richard Iohns
my wench Aur
parts desire,

A Letter of
Master Hen
their se
lon

After our heartie
Letter, thanks be

Let. of M. Ant. Fenkinson. Traffiques, and Discoveries. 305

and Hamburg, as also out of Liefland to desire this king to bee their Captaine and head in their intended voyage, which was to stoppe all such shippes as shoulde goe out of England for Moscouia. Whereunto the King granted, and immediately they departed to prepare their shippes. So that I am afraid that either these our enemies, or the great warres that we have with France and Scotland will be an occasion that you shall have no shippes at Colmogro this yeere.

To conclude, although I have no tokens to deliuer them, that the tokens taken from me were sent unto, yet I will declare unto them that I had tokens for them, with the mischance. And thus I commit you to Amightie God with the rest of the companie, who keepe you in health to his holp will and pleasure.

By yours to commaund
THOMAS ALCOCKE,

A Letter of Master Anthonie Ienkinson vpon his returne from Boghar to the worshipfull Master Henrie Lane Agent for the Moscouie companie resident in Vologda, written in the Mosca the 18. of September, 1559.

W^{orshipfull} Sir, after my heartie commendations premised with most desire to God of your welfare and prosperous successe in all your affaires. It may please you to bee advertised that the fourth of this present I arrived with Richard Johnson and Robert Johnson upon our voyage toward the lande of Carhay, had it not bene for the vncertaine and continuall warres, which are in all these byual and wilde countreys, that it is at this present impossible to passe, neither went there any Carauan of people from Boghar that way these three yeeres. And although our iourney hath bene so miserable, dangerous, and chargeable with losses, charges and expences, as my penne is not able to expresse the same: yet shall wee bee able to facilitate the trade of merchandise to bee had in such landes and countreys as bee thereabout adiacent, and haue brought of the wares and commodities of those Countreies able to answer the principall with profit: wishing that there were utterance for as great a quantitie of herbes and other wares as there is profit to bee had in the sales of a small quantitie, (all such euill fortunes becoming escaped as to vs haue chaunced this present voyage,) for then it woulde be a trade woorthie to bee followed. Sir, for that I trust you will be here shortly (which I much desire) I will deliver the discourse with you at large untill your coming, as well touching my trauel, as of our intended to passe by the way of Sweden, by whom I sent a letter to the worshipfull Company, and haue written that I intend to come downe unto Colmogro to be ready there at the next shipping to imbarke my selfe for England, declaring that my seruice shal not be needfull here, for that you are a man able to serue their worshipps in greater affaires then they haue heere to doe, so farre as I perceiue. As touching the Companies affaires heere, I referre you to Christopher Hudsons letters, for that I am but newly arrived. Hauling here but litle businesse to doe, I send you Richard Johnson to helpe you there in your affaires. Thus giuing you most heartie thanks for my wench Aura Solcana, I commend you to the tuition of God, who send you health with hearts desire.

Your assured to command,
Anthonie Ienkinson.

A Letter of the Moscouie companie to their Agents in Russia, Master Henrie Lane, Christopher Hudson, and Thomas Glouer sent in their seueneth voyage to Saint Nicholas with three ships, the Swallow, the Philip and Marie, and the Jesus the fifth of May, 1560.

After our heartie commendations to you. The twelfth day of the last moneth here arrived in safety, thanks be to God, our two ships, & by them we receiued your letters & inuolces very well.

1559

Master Ienkinson's voyage into the Caspian Sea.

The discourse of the Caspian Sea.

Passage to and from Moscouia by Sweden.

This was a young Turke which he gave to the Quene as a reward.

Tallowe.

Ware.

Trains oyles.

Sables.

Molierings.

Luternes.

Ermines.

Squirrels.

Flare.

Cables and ropes.

A proclamation
against foreign
furs.3000. podes of
Tallow a perr.500. Rosh
hides.

Note.

well perceiving what you have laden in them. The tallowe came euill conditioned and broken, by reason it came in Corrobias, wee lose and spoyle more then the Caske will cost, and much of this tallowe is verie euill, blacke, soft and purrified. Touching the Ware, as yet wee knowe not howe the weight will rise, by reason that some of it was lost in the barkes. The weight of the last perrers ware did not rise so well as the other perrers befoze it did. There had neede good heede to bee taken in the weighing. Also much of this Ware had a great foote and is not so faire ware as in times past wee haue had. You must cause the foote to bee taken off befoze you doe weigh it, or else you must seeke to haue a good allowance for it. The trains Oyles which you laden this perr came well conditioned, and the caske was good and of a good sife. But if they were made a little bigger it were the better, for they be not hogdrone. You haue written to vs to send you caske which is not heere to be had, neither doe wee thinke it so best if it were heere, considering it must goe either shaken and bounde vp, or else empty, which will bee pederable, and likewise will shynke and dyle, and not be fite to lade oyles in. Therefore our minde is, you shall cause so much caske to bee made there of the sife of hogdrone as will serue both for your oyles and tallowe, and let them be well trimmed with pitch on the heads and seames, and stand full of water thre or foure dayes befoze you put Oyles in them. Your Comper may bee overseer to them that make them, that they be well hooped and cleere tymler without knottes, the woofst caske you may put the tallowe in. Wee that send the filling of the oyles had neede to looke well to it, for there was much water in this that came nowe. Wee perceiue you haue bought and haue in a readinesse one hundred and foure tunnes of oyles, and that if neede be you may haue more stoze. Wherefoze we doe minde to send you shipping for thre hundred tunnes and vpwards, because we would haue this next Sommer as great a returne as you can of the commodities of that Countrey, as also such of our wares as you haue that are not vendible, or will not be solde or bartered, because we would haue a full knowledge and date of our accounts. The Sables which you sent this perr be very base, among them all we could not make one principall timber: we haue alwayes written vnto you to send them that bee good or else none. The Molierings were indifferent, and some of the wolues, the rest verie base, the Luternes but meane, the Lettes not so large skinned as we haue had: the best is, they were of a new deach. As for the Ermines, they cost more there wien you, then we can sell them for here. Therefore buy no more of them, nor of Squirrels, for we sell the one halfe in the other. The wares that we would haue you provide against the coming of the shippes are, Ware, Tallowe, trapne Oyles, Flare, Cables and Ropes, and Furses, such as we haue written to you for in our last letters by the shippes: and from hencefoorth not to make any great provision of any rich Furses except principall Sables & Lettes: for now there is a Proclamation made that no furses shall be woen here, but such as the like is growing here within this our Realme. Also we perceiue that there might be a great deale of tallowe more provided in a perr then you send. Therefore our minde is, you should enlarge some what more in the price, and to send us if you can thre thousand podes a perr: for we doe most good in it. And likewise the Russes, if you would giue them a reasonable price for their wares, would be the wilinger to buy and sell with you, and not to carie so much to Nouogrode as they doe, but would rather bring it to Vologda to you, both Ware, Tallowe, Flare, Hempe, and all kinde of other wares fite for our Countrey. Our minde is you should provide for the next ships five hundred Rosh hides, of them that be large and faire, and thickest in hand, and to be circumspect in the choosung, that you buy them that bee killed in season and well dyed and whole. If they be good we may sell them here for fiftene shillings and better the piece, wee would haue the whole skinned, that is, the necke and legges withall, for these that you sent now lacke their neckes and legges. Wherefore for this time you must sende them as you may get them: if you would finde the meanes that the haire might bee clipped off them, they would not take so much room in the shippes as they doe. Wee perceiue by your letters that the prices of Ware doe rise there with you, by reason that the Poles and Lifelanders doe trade into Russia by licence: which if there should bee peace betweene them, would bee an occasion that all other commodities in Russia would rise to a bigger price, and not bee sufficient to serue them and his too, and likewise would bring downe there the prices of our commodities. Therefore we thinke it good you should make a supplication to the Emperour in the name of The Companie to returne the trade from Rye and Rewel to us, especially for such wares as wee doe buy promising that wee will bee bounde to take them at a reasonable price, as wee haue bought them in times past: and likewise that wee will bring to them such wares of ours, as we thought fite for the Countrey, and to sell them at such reasonable prices as wee haue done. This should not come to passe, wee might be out of hope of doing any good by the trade there: for

that is
by rea
Russia
that yo
last per
they sh
and ran
If you
we will
make m
cables b
for shou
parne th
pull and fo
they haue
to send po
be had at o
the white
a readinesse
them. Th
through Po
for that we
do best secur
you doe send
and goodnes
the rope mak
of hempe, wh
fers, ne wher
are woej no
And those wh
fettered in man
if they had com
ding. We hoy
Lenkison. W
both gone of it
from whence it
shippes, we wou
instruction of ou
and knowledge
needs come awa
namely with Chi
Agrens in your r
felous so discreet
company. And as
all their boings:
not onely obedient
illegent, and true
That hereafter in
elsewhere. And if
you shall send him h
the time that he hat
whereas Christoph
ing the death of his
is wife were his sp
which we haue appoi
for his seruice an
ere liuing. Thus
at Coimogro, o
olco: neuer the less

conditioned and by
ask will cost, and
the Mare, as yet we
in the barks. The
it did. There
had a great foot
the foot to be taken
for it. The crane
was good and of a
they be not hogheads
either doe wee thinke
the vp, of else empty,
fite to lade oyles in
e of the sile of hog
trimmed with pitch
foze you put Dyes in
be well hooped and
in. Wee that serch
ater in this that came
and fourtie tunnes of
inde to send you ship
Sommer as great
of our wares as you
ould have a full know
very base, among
aten vnto you to find
some of the wotary,
as we haue had: the
here which you, then
rels; for wee lost the
the countering of the
, and furre, such
n henceforth not to
ettes: for now there
like is growing here
of tallow moze pro
some what moze in
st good in it. And like
s, would be the wis
they doe, but wee
type, and all kinde
the next ships shue
be circumspect in the
whole. If they
ould haue the whole
acke their neckes and
them: if you could
ot take so much room
the Mare doe rise the
sia by licence: which
ne all other company
true them and by the
Therefore we thinke
of The Company
does as wee doe buy
as wee haue bought
ares of ours, as
as wee haue none
by the trade there:

that we haue a further hope of some good trade to be found out by Master Antonie Lenkinson: by reason we doe perceiue by your letters, that saw like is as plentiful in Persia, as flaxe is in Russia: beside other commodities that may come from thence. Wee vnderstand by your letters that you be at a point with the Russe for the Ware, Tallow, and Crane oyles that he shipped the last yere for 31 robes 20 alaines, which is well: although much be not gotten by it, but because they should not vnderstand our reckonings. Wee much maruel what you mean to buy Seale skins and tanne them. All that you haue sent in times past lie here vnsold, and will yeelde no money. If you send 100 of them talwed with the bare on, they will bee sold, or else not. In our shippe we will send you such things as you write to haue for the ropers: and wee would they should make moze Noze of small cables and ropes, as cables of 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, inches. For these great cables be not for euery man; and the greatest cables bee not best laded: and likewise small ropes for shroudes, hoies, and other small cackeling: and that you looke better to the spinning of their parrue that it be euen and well tarren. The cables that you doe mind to send vs let them be pynted pall and sayre, and not past foure or fise timbars. For they will not be so commonly woyme here as they haue bin with noble men: and likewise of Lufers send fewe and pyntical good. Wee mind to send you in our shippes 100 tunnes of salte. And because we perceiue that balast is hardy to be had at our lading place there with you, we would you should haue in a readinesse 100 tunnes of the white stones whereof you sent vs home an example two yeres past. And likewise to haue in a readinesse masses of all sorters for our shippes: for we know not what neede wee shall haue of them. The bynger hercolis Thomas Alcock, he could not be sufficed the last yere to passe through Poland. And as we wrote vnto you in our shippes, hee is our seruant for yeres: And for that we know him to be honest, true and painefull, our mind is hee shall be placed where he may do best seruice. Wee doth know the commodities and discommodities of all kinde of wares which you doe send vs. Therefore we would you should credite his sayings both in quanttie of wares of the ropemakers should remaine there two yeres moze; and that you haue provided great plentie of hemp, which we are content withall. But as yet we haue sold none of our cables nor hats, neither is the pfoofe of them known; because the first you sent vs were made of flaxe, which are woorth no money: for after they be once wet they will rotte and moulder away like molle. And those which you sent vs new last, by misfortune there with you at the lading were wetted and fretted in many places, and haue lost their colour: by means whereof they be not so vendible as if they had come well conditioned. Of an hard beginning we trust God will send vs a good ending. Wee hope in your next letters to heare good newes of the proceedings of Master Antonie Lenkinson. Wee perceiue by his letters that Astracan is not so good a part to wine as the saue hath gone of it: and maruell much that round peller should be so good, and good chepe there, and from whence it should come. And whereas you write that you will come for England in our next shippes, we would gladly haue you to remaine there vntill the next yere following, for the better instruction of our seruants there; who haue not had so long time of continuance for the language, and knowledge of the people, coimetry, and wares as you haue had. Nevertheless if you will needs come away, we haue no doubt, but that you will leaue good order with our seruants there, namely with Christopher Hodson and Thomas Glouer, whom we appoint to remaine there as Agents in your roome, till further order bee taken: not doubting but that they will vse themselves so discretely and wisely in all their doings, as shall be to the worship and benefite of this company. And as we haue a good hope in them that they will be careful, diligent and true in all their doings: so haue we no lesse hope in all the rest of our seruants there, that they will be docorely obedient to them (considering what roome they be in) but also will be careful, painefol, diligent, and true euery one in his roome and place for the benefite and profite of the company: that hereafter in the absence of others they may be called and placed in the like roome there or elsewhere. And if you find any to be disobedient and sabbayne, and will not be ruled; wee will you shall send him home in our shippes: who shall find such small fauour and friendship during the time that he hath to serue, as by his disobedience and euill seruice hee hath deserued. And whereas Christopher Hodson hath written to come home, as partly he hath good cause, considering the death of his father and mother: yet in regard that Sir George Barne and the Ladie his wife were his special friends in his absence, we doubt not but that he will remain in the roome, for his seruice and paines hee shall be considered, as reason is; as friendship as if his friends were living. Thus we trust you will take such order the one to remaine at the Mosco, and the other at Coimogro, or elsewhere, as most neede is. Thomas Alcocke is desirous to be in the Mosco: neuertheless you shall find him reasonable to serue where he may doe most good. The

Hope of trade to be found by Master Antonie Lenkinson.

Seale skins talwed.

Small cables best vendible.

Masses of all sorts to be pynted.

Astracan no great good matter.

Christopher Hodson and Thomas Glouer appointed Agents 1560.

62 robes which you receiued of Iohn Boucher we haue payed him here, and also the 8 robes, which you receiued the yere before of Christopher Rose, and the money which you receiued moze of George Burton, for the which we haue you our debtozs. Thus we rest, referring that which is here omitted to the report of the byinger: and so God haue you in his keeping. Also we wold that you should send vs in our shippes 20 hogse-clothes moze. The things be soze witten we would that you should let our seruantes see and reade, to the intent they may perceiue our mindes.

Another letter to the foresaid parties. 1560.

Stockholme.

Iohn Lucke taken
prisoner in Liel-
lande.

The Swallow.

The Philip and
Marie.

The Iesus.

This letter before witten is the copie of one sent you by Thomas Alcock, trusting that he was with you long since. The 26 day of the last moneth we receiued a letter from him, dated in Stockholme in Sweden the 14 day of January, and we perceiue by his letter that he had talked with a Dutch man that came lately from the Mosco, who informed him that our friend Master Antony Ienkinson was returned to the Mosco in September last past, but how farre he had bene, or what he had done, he could not tell. Also he wrote that one Iohn Lucke a Joyner was taken by the Liefelanders, and put in prison. As yet we haue not heard from the sayd Iohn Lucke, nor know not whether he be released out of prison or not. We suppose that by him you wrote some letter which as yet is not come to our hands: so that we thinke hee is yet in prison, or otherwise dispatched out of the way. The sixteenth day of December wee receiued a letter from Christopher Hodson, dated in the Mosco the 29 of July, by the way of Danske: which is in effect a copie of such another receiued from him in our shippes. You shall understand that we haue laden in three good shippes of our these kind of wares following: to wit, in the Swallowe of London, Master vnder God Steuen Burrow, 34 fardels No 136 broad shoye clothes, and foure fardels No 38 Hampshire Kertles: and 23 pipes of ballards and seckes, and 263 pieces of raisins and 4 hogthes No 154 pieces of round pewter, and ten hogthes and poncheons of pyures, and one dyspate with Almonds. And in the Philip and Marie, Master vnder God Thomas Wade, 25 fardels No 100 broad clothes, and three fardels No 42 Hampshire Kertles, and thirtie pipes of seckes and ballards, and 100 pieces of raisins. And in the Iesus of London, Master vnder God Arthur Petre, 10 fardels No 40 broad shoye clothes, and twenty pipes of ballards and seckes, as by the Inuices herewith inclosed may appere: Also you shall receiue such necessaries as you did write to be sent for the rope makers: trusting that you shall haue better successe with them which you shall send vs in these ships, then with the rest which you haue sent vs yet: for we as yet haue sold none of them. And whereas we wrote vnto you in our former letter, that we would send you a hundred tunnes of salte, by reason it is so deare here we doe send you but nine tunnes and a halfe, for it cost here ten pence the bushell the first penny: namely in the Swallowe 5 tunnes and a halfe, in the Philip and Marie one tunne and a halfe, and in the Iesus one tunne and a halfe. The 4 hogthes of round pewter goe in the Swallowe and in the Philip and Marie No 154 pieces, as is aforesaid. We send you three ships, trusting that you haue provided according to our former writing good stoe of lading for them. If yee haue more wares then will lade the ships, let it be Traine oyles that you leaue behinde: the price is not here so good as it was: it is worth here 9 pound the tunne. We thinke it good you should let the laster ship lading as much of the traine as she can carie: And that the masters of the ships do looke to the romaging, for they might bying away a great deale moze then they doe, if they would take paine in the romaging: and bestowe the traine by it selfe, and the ware and tallowe by it selfe: for the leakage of the traine doth foule the other wares much. As for Allard the Skinner, if you thinke good, he may come home in these shippes. We haue no doubt but that you Henrie Lane, if you minde to come home now in these ships as you requested, will leaue such good order them with our seruantes as shall bee for our most profite and their preferment, if they doe the duties diligently and truly. If our friend Master Antony Ienkinson bee returned, we meane to come away in these ships to declare his mind and opinion of his traualle, if need require, and he be so minded he may returne thither by land and be there by the fine of Iannarie of next yere. But as we be uncertaine whether he be returned or not: so we know not what he hath done, what benefite may rise hereafter of his traualle. Therefore in this wee reuise it to his your good discretions. We send you Thomas Hawney which is our seruante for pretertime minde is he should be placed, where he may doe best seruice.

Nicholas Chan-
celour.

Also we send you Nicholas Chancelour to remaine there, who is our apprentice for pretertime minde is he should be set about such businesse as he is most fit for: he hath been kept at his sing schoole long: he hath his Algorithmie, and hath understanding of keeping of booke of reckonings. We send you now but 100 Kertles: but against the next yere, if occasion serue, we will

send you
the Swallow
for it is sp
It is wite
monds is
way at a re
the waight
for the com
Therefore
pose. The
of the shippe
none: but e
sures or oth
we may kno
sent in our
the thousand
spay 1560.
if 2 lacke
two letters fir

The maner

Lane, a
miskey is

After the c
Marie, I
obtained letters
thing upon good
compound in bale
value of 600 robes
before my commin
double, or as I p
man, Robert Beit
fused. So that we
day and maner of tr
Moscouia was th
Judges, sate in cou
the great presse w
the souerle parties
the curtle, so wit
standing that I p
per of gentleness at
enly commended
two equall balles
with standing up and
with consents among
cap, come by: wh
wherein they put the
compersion, they call
right cleene, and willed
the two balles: wh
late in ball first eak
the people, and to be the
sneaky. I was willed f
their wrong of sinne
wapes after, as the m
thes of this iudgement

also the 8 robes,
ou received more
erring that which
Also we would
foze written we
eue our minde.

o.

crusking that he
er from him, daren
er that hee had
at our friend
how farre he had
ke a Topper was
om the Capt John
e that by him you
e is yet in prison,
received a letter
anske: which is
nderstand that we
uit, in the Swallow
had those clothes,
ckes, and 263 p
and punctions of
r under God Th
mpshire Herles
Iesus of London,
and twenty seven
e: Also you shall
ing that you shall
ch the rest which
wore unto you
e is so deare here
ell the first penit
tume and a half,
the Swallow
e, crusking that you
If pee have more
he price is not
ould let the said
ships do looke
if they would
allowe by in selfe
the skinner, if you
Henrie Lane,
good order
if they doe
be returned, no
ille, if need require
Manuarie of 1560
as he hath denie
true it to his
ane for peeres:

penice for petro
been kept at
of books of
tion terus, we

Justice by lots in Russia. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

309

send you a greater quantitie, according as you shall advise us: One of the pyres of seekes that is in the Swallow, which hath a round compasses upon the bung, is to be presented to the Emperour: for it is speciall good. The nete waight of the 10 punctions of pyres is 4300. 2 thirds 1 pound. It is written particularly upon the head of every punction: and the nete weight of the fatte of almonds is 500 li. two quarters. The raisins, pyres, and almonds you were best to dispatch away at a reasonable price, and principally the raisins. for in keeping of them will be great losse in the waight, and the fruit will decay. We thinke it good that you provide against the next prepe for the comming of our shippes 20 or 30 bullockes killed and salted, for beefe is very deare here. Therefore you were best to save some of this salt that we doe send you in these ships for the purpose. The fatte of that countrey is not so good. In this you may take the opinion of the masters none: but there were mariners that bought many. If any of the mariners doe buy any trifling fures or other commodities, we will they shall be registred in our purfers bookes, to the intent we may know what they be. We desire to know how the Emperour tooke the letter which we sent in our ships, as an answer to the letter that came in his name and under his seale for the first thousand dalters. Thus wee rest, committing you to God, from London the first day of May 1560.

The salt of Russia is not so good as 25ap salt.

Fore skinnies white, blacke, and russet vendible in England

May 5. 1560.

for lacke of time the gouernours haue not signed this letter: which is the copie of the other two letters signed by them.

Yours, William Mericke,
Yours, Blase Sanders.

The maner of Iustice by lots in Russia, written by Master Henrie Lane, and executed in a controuersie betweene him and one Sheray Costromisky in Mosco. 1560.

After the comming home into Russia of Ioseph Napea the first ambassadour to Queene Marie, I remaining the Agent there, sundrie Russian marchants by Iosephs procurement thing upon good consideration I answered and refused. They were then giuen to credit vs and value of 600 robes, there grewe question by their double demand. So in April Anno 1560. before my comming from Moscouia, they obtained trial by combat of letter to haue their summe double, or as I proffered 600 robes. For combatte I was provided of a strong willing Englishman, Robert Best, one of the companies seruants: whome the Russes with their Champion refused. So that we had the words of our priuledge put in effect, which were to dray lots. The day and maner of trial appointed by the Emperour at his castle in his palace and high Court of Moscouia was thus. The Emperours two Treasurers, being also Chancelours and chiefe Judges, sate in court. They appointed officers to bring me, mine interpreter, & the other, through the great presse within the rable of barre, and permitted me to sit downe some distance from them: the sowerie parties being without at the barre. Both parties were first perswaded with great curtesie, so wit, I to enlarge mine offer, and the Russes to mitigate their challenge. Notwithstanding that I proffered my conscience to be cleere, and their game by accompt to bee sufficient, yet of gentleness at the magistrates request I made proffer of 100 robes more: which was openly commended, but of the plaintifes not accepted. Then sentence passed with our names in standing up and wishing well to the truth attributed to him that should be first drayen, by which consents among the multitude they called a tall gentleman, saying: Thou with such a coate wherein they put the halles, by the crowne vpright in sight, his arme not abasing. With like circumstance, they called at aduenture another tall gentleman, commanding him to strip by his right sleue, and willed him with his bare arme to reach by, and in Gods name severally to take the two halles: which he did, deliuering to either Judge one. Then with great admiration the people, and to be the right and true parte. The chiefe plaintifes name was Sheray Costromisky. I was willed forthwith to pay the plaintifes the summe by me appointed. Out of which payes after, as their maner is, the people tooke our nation to be true and vpright dealers, and altho of this iudgement to our great credit.

trial by combat of lot.

Note.

The former letters dated 1558, 1559, and 1560, should
all followe M. Ienkinsons voyage to Boghar.

The first voyage made by Master *Anthonie Ienkinson*, from
the Citie of *London* toward the land of *Russia*, begun
the twelfth of May, in the yeere 1557.



First by the grace of God, the day and yeere aboue menticned, I departed from the sayd Citie, and the same day at Graueland embarked my selfe in a good shippe, named the *Primerose*, being appointed, although untoo shy, chiefe captaine of the same, and also of the other 3 good ships, to say, the *Iohn Euangelist*, the *Anne*, and the *Trinitie*, hauing also the conduct of the Emperour of *Russia* his ambassadour named *Osep Nepea Gregoriwich*, who passed with his company in the sayd *Primerose*. And thus our foure tall shippes being well appointed, aswell for men as victuals as other necessarie furniture, the saide twelfth day of the moneth of May, we weyed our ankers, and departed from the saide Graueland, in the after noone, and plying downe the *Thames*, the wind being Easterly, and saye weather, the 13 day we came a group with the *Primerose*, vpon a sand called the *blacke talle*, where we fate fast vntill the 14 day in the morning, and then God be prayesd, she came off: and that day we pleyd downe as farre as our *Labie* of *Holland*, and there came to an anker, the wind being Easterly, & there remayned vntill the 20 day: then we weyed and went out at *Goldmore gate*, and from thence in at *Balleij slade*, and so into *Orwel wandes*, where we came to an anker: but as we came out at the sayd *Goldmore gate*, the *Trinitie* came on ground on certaine rockes, that lye to the Northward of the said gate, and was like to be bilged and lost. But by the aide of God, at the last she came off againe, being verie leake: and the 21 day the *Primerose* remaing at an anker in the wandes, the other thye shippes bare into *Orwel hauen*, where I caused the sayd *Trinitie* to be grounded, searched, and repaired. So we remayned in the said hauen, vntill the 28 day: and then the winds being Easterly, the thye shippes that were in the hauen, weyed and came forth, and in coming forth the *Iohn Euangelist* came on ground vpon a sand, called the *Andros*, where she remained one tide, and the next full sea she came off againe without any great hurt, God be praised.

The 29 day in the morning all foure ships weied in the *Wlands*, and that tide went as farre as *Orfordnesse*, where we came to an anker, because the wind was Northerly: And about six of the clock at night, the wind vered to the Southwezt, and we weyed anker, and bare cleere of the reef, and then set our course Northeast & by North vntill midnight, being then cleare of *Yarmouth sands*. Then we winded North and by West, and Northnorthwest, vntill the first of June at noone, then it waxed calme, and continued so vntill the second day at noone: then the wind came at Northwest, with a tempest, and much raine, and we lay close by, and caped Northnorthwest, and Northeast and by North, as the winds shifted, and so continued vntill the third day at noone: then the wind vered Westerly againe, and we went North our right course, and so continued our way vntill the fourth day, at thye of the clocke in the afternoone, at which time the wind vered to the Northwest againe and blew a fresh gale, and so continued vntill the seuench day in the morning, we lying with all our shippes close by, and caping to the Northwards: and then the wind being moze Northerly, we were forced to put roomer with the coast of *England* againe, and fell northward *Newcastle*, but went not into the hauen, & so pleyd vpon the coast the eight day & the ninth.

The tenth day the wind came to the Northnorthwest, & we were forced to heare roomer with *Flamborow head*, where we came to an anker, and there remained vntill the seuentecn day. Then the wind came fairer, and we weyed, and set our course North and by East, and so continued the same with a mery wind vntill the 21 at noone, at which time we took the sunne, and had the latitude in sixty degrees. Then we shifted our course, and went Northnorthwest, and Northeast and by North, vntill the 25 day. Then we discovered certaine *Islands*, called *Heilick Islands*, lying from vs Northeast, being in the latitude of sixty six degrees, 40 minutes. Then we went north and by West, because we would not come too nigh the land, and running that course four boates, we discovered, and had sight of *Rost Islands*, joining to the main land of *Finmark*, then continuing our course along the coast of *Norway* and *Finmark*, the 27 day we took the sunne, being as farre shot as *Lofoot*, and had the latitude in 69 degrees. And the same day in the afternoone appeared ouer our heads a rainebow, like a semicircle, with both ends upwarde. North

Heilick Islands
in 66 degrees
40 minutes.

Rost Islands,

there is
halfe ebb
of the in
within the
it by force
bene so be
Finmark
the boate
ling forwar
this Island
long: and be
an Island, ca
This coast
east and sout
said Kettel wi
where the fish
we fell with
a voyage to S, N
found East, an
of July, we ha
Wardhouse, be
ding in an Isla
Callermott lan
the Castle of W
and make much
they haue none,
which are also fe
with a Cape of li
Wardhouse, and
is a *Sponasterie* of
and sapling along
great mills and da
gaine, vntill the se
entering into the R
that passed the reb
vntill they did so, &
there is verie dark
Willoughbie, with
Arzina.

The land of *Lap
ple of the Countrey
to take fish, of the wh
the woods, where the
with whose flesh they
there is nothing seem
in cents, removing fr
my facultie, but one ly
as as serue them fi
the ninth day of July
waters, and is at the ene
some water, and sund
west and Northeast. F
which is seuen leagues
from the side of the Bay
and on the other side is
of the sayd moneth of
in the land of *Russia*, i
hundred and sixty leag*

should
har.

n, from

I departed from
y selfe in a good
ship, chief cap-
John Evangelist,
emperor of Rus-
so passed with his
ppointed, as well
moneth of May,
one, and plying
we came a ground
until the 14 day
as farre as our
remained until
at Balley Slade,
the sayd Golde-
ward of the land
me off againe, be-
wounds, the ebbe
ounded, scarcely
the winds being
in coming forth
remained as the
went as farre as
about five of the
leere of the orke,
are of Yarmouth
the first of June
in the winds came
North-east, and
at noones the
continued our way
wind varied to the
up in the morning,
the wind being
me, and fell out
the ninth day
more roomer with
fewer men, and
I, and so continued
the sunne, and in
east, and North-
Heilick Islands.
Then we went
that course toward
Finmark, the
ooke the sunne
day in the after-
warre. Note the
the

M. Amb. Lenkinson. Traffiques, & Discoueries.

311

there is between the said Rost Islands & Lofoot, a whirle poole called Malostrand, which from halfe ebbe untill halfe flood, maketh such a terrible noise, that it shakerh the ringes in the doores of the inhabitants houses of the sayd Islands tenne miles off. Also if there cometh any Whale within the current of the same, they make a pitifull crye. Moreover, if great trees be caried into it by force of streams, and after with the ebbe be cast out againe, the ends and boughs of them have bene so beaten, that they are like the stalkes of hempe that is bruised. Note, that all the coasts of Finmarke is high mountaines and hills, being covered all the yere with snow. And hard above the shoare of this coast, there is 100 or 150 fadomes of water in depth. Thus proceeding and sailing forward, we fell with an Island called Zenam, being in the latitude of 70 degrees. About this Island we saw many Whales, very monstrous, about our ships, some by estimation of 60 foot long: and being the ingendering time they roared and cried terrible. From thence we fell with an Island, called Ketelwicke.

Malostrand a
strange whirle
poole.

Zenam Island.

Ketelwicke Is-
land.

Inger sound.

The North
Cape.

Wardhouse.

Cattell fed
with fish.
The Spinnaster
ry of Pechin-
chow.

Arzina recs the
river where the
Hugh Willough-
bie was frozen.

The Lappians
covered all the
using their eyes.

The current at
Cape Grace.

The entering
of the Bay of
S. Nicholas is
seven leagues
broad at the
least.

This coast from Rost unto Lofoot lieth North and South, and from Lofoot to Zenam North-east and South-west, and from Zenam to Ketelwicke East and North-east, and West South-west. From the where we fished, being becalmed, and took great plenty of Codds. Thus plying along the coast, we fell with a Cape, called the North Cape, which is the Northmost land that we passed in our voyage to S. Nicholas, and is in the latitude of 71 degrees and ten minutes, and is from Inger sound East, and to the Northwards 15 leagues. And being at this North Cape the second day of July, we had the sunne at North 4 degrees about the Horizon. The third day we came to Wardhouse, having such mists that we could not see the land. This Wardhouse is a Castle standing in an Island 2 miles from the maine of Finland, subject to the king of Denmarke, and the Castle of Wardhouse standeth. There are two other Islands neere adjoining unto that, whereon they have none, but such as is brought them from other places. They have small store of cattell, and make much stockefish, which they dry with frost: their most feeding is fish; by bread and drinke which are also fed with fish. From Wardhouse we sailed South South-east ten leagues, and fell with a Cape of land called Keger, the Northmost part of the land of Lappia. And betwene Wardhouse, and the said Cape is a great Bay, called Dommes haff, in the South part whereof is a Spinnasterie of Honkes of the Russes religion, called Pechinchow. Thus proceeding forward and sailing along the coast of the said land of Lappia, winding South-east, the fourth day through great mists and darkenes we lost the company of the other three ships, and met not with them againe, untill the seventh day, when we fell with a Cape of headland called Swetinoz, which is the entering into the Bay of S. Nicholas. At this Cape lieth a great stone, to the which the barkes untill they did so, their barkes should there perish, as it hath bene oftentimes seen: and there is very dark and mistie. Note that the first day we passed by the place where Sir Hugh Willoughbie, with all his company perished, which is called Arzina reca, that is to say, the river Arzina.

The land of Lappia is a high land, having snow lying on it commonly all the yere. The people of the Countrey are halfe Gentiles: they live in the summer time neere the sea side, and use to take fish, of the which they make bread, and in the winter they remove up into the countrey into the woods, where they use hunting, and kill Deere, Beares, Woodnes, Foxes, and other beastes, with whose flesh they be nourished, and with their skinner apparelled in such strange fashion, that there is nothing seeme of them bare but their eyes. They have none other habitation, that in tents, removing from place to place, according to the season of the yere. They know no art nor facultie, but onely shooting, which they exercise daily, as well men as women, and kill such beastes as serve them for their foode. Thus proceeding along the coast from Cape Swetinoz, and is at the entering in of the Bay of S. Nicholas, about this land there is 20 or 30 fadomes water, and sundry grounds good to anker in. The current at this Cape runneth South-west and North-east. From this Cape we proceeded along untill we came to Crosse Island, which is seven leagues from the sayd Cape South-west: and from this Island, we set out to the other side of the Bay, and went South-west, and fell with an headland called Foxenose, which is seven leagues from the sayd Cape South-west. The entering of this Bay from Crosse Island to the neere end of the sayd month of July, all our four ships arrived in safetie at the roade of Saint Nicholas, and had sailed from London unto the said roade seven hundred and fifty leagues. The Russian ambassadour and his company with great joy got to those

August. Soze, and our ships here forthwith discharged themselves: and being laden againe, and having a faire winde, departed toward England the first of August. The third of the said moneth I with other of my company came unto the citie of Colmogro, being an hundred verstes from the Bay of Saint Nicholas, and in the latitude of 64 degrees 25 minutes. I carried at the said Colmogro untill the fifteenth day: and then I departed in a litle boate by the great river of Dwina, which runneth very swiftly, and the selfe same day passed by the mouth of a river called Pinego, leaving it on our left hand fiftene verstes from Colmogro. On both sides of the mouth of this river Pinego is high land, great rocks of Alabaster, great woods, and pineapple trees lying along within the ground, which by report have lien there since Noes flood. And thus proceeding forward the nineteenth day in the morning, I came into a towne called Yemps, an hundred verstes from Colmogro. All this way along they make much tarre, pitch and ashes of Aspen trees. From thence I came to a place called Vtiug, an ancient citie the last day of August. At this citie were two rivers: the one called Iug, and the other Sucana, both which fall into the aforecited river of Dwina. The river Iug hath his spring in the land of the Tartars called Cheremizzi, joining to the countrey of Permia: and Succana hath his head from a lake not farre from the citie of Vologda. Thus departing from Vtiug, and passing by the river Succana, we came to a towne called Toima. About this place the water is verie shallow, and stonie, and troublesome for Barkes and boats of that countrey, which they call Nassades, and Dofineckes, to passe that way: wherein marchandise are transported from the aforecited Colmogro to the citie of Vologda. These vessels called Nassades, are very long builded, boade made, and close above, flatter bottomed, and draw not above foure foote water, and will carrie two hundred tunnes: they have none iron appertaining to them but all of timber, and when the winde seuereth, they are made to saile. Otherwise they have many men, some to hale and draw by the neckes with long small ropes made fast to the sayd boats, and some set with long poles. There are many of these barkes upon the river of Dwina: And the most part of them belongeth unto the citie of Vologda: for there dwell many marchantes, and they occupy the said boates with carrying of salte from the sea side unto the sayd Vologda. The twentieth of September I came unto Vologhda, which is a great citie, and the river passeth through the midst of the same. The houses are builded with wood of Firre trees, joined one with another, and round without: the houses are square without any iron or stone worke, covered with birch barkes, and wood over the same: Their Churches are all of wood, two for every parish, one to be heated for Winter, and the other for Summer.

On the toppes of their houses they laye much earth, for feare of burning: for they are long plagued with fire. This Vologhda is in 59 degrees, eleven minutes, and is from Colmogro, 1000 verstes.

All the way I never came in house, but lodged in the wilderness, by the rivers side, and carried provision for the way. And he that will travell those wayes, must carrie with him an hatchet, a tinder box, and a kettle, to make fire and seeke meate, when he hath it: for there is small succour in those parts, unlesse it be in townes.

The first day of December, I departed from Vologhda in posse in a sleb, as the manner is in Winter. And the way to Moscu is as followeth. From Vologhda to Commelski, 27 verstes, so to Olmor 25 verstes, so to Teloytske 20 verstes, so to Vre 30 verstes, so to Veshansko 30 verstes, then to Yeraslaue 30 verstes, which standeth upon the great river Volga, so to Roslow, 50 verstes, then to Rogarin 30 verstes, so to Peralau 10 verstes, which is a great towne, standing by a faire lake, from thence to Dowbnay 30 verstes, so to Godoroke 30 verstes, so to Owchay 30 verstes, and last to the Mosco 25 verstes, where I arrived the six day of December.

There are 14 postes called Yannes betwene Vologhda and Mosco, which are accompanied 500 verstes asunder.

The 10 day of December I was sent for to the Emperors Castle by the sayd Emperour, and delivered my letters unto the Secretary, who talked with me of divers matters, by the commandement of the Emperour. And after that my letters were translated, I was answered that I was welcome, and that the Emperour would give me that I desired.

The 25 day, being the day of the natiuitie, I came into the Emperors presence, and kissed his hand, who sate aloft in a goodly chaire of estate, having on his heade a crowne most richly bedecked, and a staffe of gold in his hand, all apparelled with golde, and garnished with precious stones.

There sate distant from him about two paces his brother, and next unto him a boy of twelve yeares of age, who was inheritor to the Emperour of Casan, conquered by this Emperour 8 yeares past.

Good counsel
for travellers.

December.

The description
of their
Nassades.

past. Then
had done of
dinner, and
light.

The Em-
perour
very artificial
face the Em-
perour
the young
Ambassadors
ber of 600 m-
nearly come
against the L-
with me, three
winers bowles
me by a Duke,
were set bowles
the place which
There was
the which, was
gons heads, also
ally made. The
net was ended, I
parted to my lodg-
Note, that the
dynasty of Russia
was here noted.

The 4 of January
his nobles, all mo-
a crowne upon his
ropolitan, and dis-
apparel, and the C-
me to dinner: I
all frozen, and ch-
re, and the Petrop-
the sayd water upon
hanging filled po-
when in, and stre-
which the Emperour
two hallowed water
candle light, and s-
so strange: and I
head and drinke sent
The citie of Mos-
toves of pyon, which
of wood, which are ma-
the, walled four square
on the South west
is separated from
his palace are Cher-
the Church doores
ings, are within the sa-
the. And in the winter
there is sold coyne, e-
The countrey is full
with good plenty of coyn-
of the Lieflanders, &
rmoeds, having there
all matters passe by
The Petropolitan de-

De

greatly honoꝛeth. They vse the ceremonies, and orders of the Grecke Church. They worſhip many images painted on tables, and ſpecially the image of S. Nicholas. Their Priests be mering, but their wiues being dead, they may not marie the ſecond time, and ſo become Monkes, whereof there are a great number in the land.

They haue ſoure Lentes in the yere, and the weeke beſore Shroſetide, they call the Butter weeke, &c.

They haue many ſoztes of meats and drinke, when they banke and delight in eating of game meates, and ſinking ſike. Beſore they drinke they vse to blowe in the cup: their greateſt friendſhip is in drinke: they are great talkers and lpers, without any faith or truſt in their wordes, flatterers and diſſemblers. The women be there very obedient to their huſbands, & are kept ſtraightly from going abroad, but at ſome ſeaſons.

At my being there, I heard of men and women that drunke away their childzen, and all their goods at the Emperours tauerne, and not being able to pay, hauing impaunod himſelfe, the Tauerner bringeth him out to the high way, and beates him vpon the legges: then they that paſſe by, knowing the cauſe, and hauing peraduenture compaſſion vpon him, giue the money, and ſo he is ranſomed.

In euery good towne there is a drunken Tauerne called a Curſmay, which the Emperour ſometimes letteth out to farme, & ſometimes beſtoweth for a yere or two on ſome duke or gentle man, in recompence of his ſeruiſe: and for that time he is Lord of all the towne, robbing and ſpoiling, and doing what pleaſeth him: and then he being growen rich, is taken by the Emperour, and ſent to the warres againe, where he ſhall ſpend all that which he hath gotten by ill meanes: ſo that the Emperour in his warres is little charged, but all the burden lieth vpon the poore people.

They vse ſables made of wood & ſinewes, with the tree gilded with damasked woyle, & the ſeue covered with cloth, ſometimes of golde, and the reſt Sappian leather, well ſtitched. They vse little drummes at their ſable bowes, by the ſound whereof their hoſles vſe to: unne moze ſwiftly.

The Ruſſe is apparelled in this maner: his vpper garment is of cloth of golde, ſilke, or cloth long, downe to the foot, and buttoned with great buttons of ſiluer, or els laers of ſilke, ſet on with brooches, the ſleeues thereof very long, which he weareth on his arme, ruffed vp. Under that he hath another long garment, buttoned with ſilke buttons, with a high collar ſtanding vp of ſome colour, and that garment is made ſtraight. Then his ſhirt is very fine, and wrought with red ſilke, or ſome gold, with a collar of pearle. Under his ſhirt he hath linnen byerches, vpon his legges, a paire of hoſe without ſeete, and his bootes of red or yellow leather. On his head he weareth a white Colepecke, with buttons of ſiluer, gold, pearle, or ſtone, and vnder it a blacke ſore cap, turned by very broad.

When he rideth on hoſebacke to the warres, or any iourney, he hath a ſwoꝝd of the Turkiſh faſhion, and his bowe and arrowes of the ſame maner. In the towne he weareth no weapon, but onely two or thyeer paire of knives, hauing the hafts of the tooth of a fiſh, called the Hoſſie.

In the Winter time, the people trauell with ſleds, in towne and countrey, the way being hard, and ſmooth with ſnow: the waters and riuers are all frozen, and one hoſe with a ſled, will draw a man vpon it 400 miles, in thyeer daies: but in the Summer time, the way is deepe with mire, and traueilling is very ill.

The Ruſſe, if he be a man of any abilitie, neuer goeth out of his houſe in the winter, but vpon his ſled, and in Summer vpon his hoſe: and in his ſled he ſits vpon a carpet, or a white Bears ſkinne: the ſled is drawn with a hoſe well decked, with many ſores and Moollus cailes at his necke, & is conducted by a little boy vpon his backe: his ſervants ſtand vpon the taile of the ſled.

The voyage, wherein Oſep Napea the Moſcouite Ambaſſador returned home into his countrey, with his entertainment at his arriuall, at Colmogro: and a large deſcription of the maners of the Countrey,



he twelfth of Maye, in the yere of our Lord 1557 there departed from Grauelend, ſoure good ſhippes well appointed for Parchants, which were preſently bound into the Baye of S. Nicholas in Ruſſia: with which ſhippe was tranſported, or caried home, one Oſep Gregorovich Napea, who was ſent Peſſenger from the Emperour and great Duke of Moſcouia. The ſoure ſhippes were theſe, whole names follow, viz.

The Primerole Annitall.

The Iohn Euangelist Alceadmirall.

Deſc

The
for an Ab
wich Na
ned with
and laden
1000 bet

The 20
mogro, w
rancer wel
meate and
beefe, mut
als, both fi
preſents are

The 29
where we

The 27
and lading
ranging are
the Moſco, w
ſterthen the

There are
Roſaue, & Per
It cometh int
in 50 parts
habitants of the

The people
ſpices, muſke, an
buy in Siberia

The 12 of Se
and two of the
appointed.

The 14 of Sep
our comming
willingly, and kiſſed
head, and a ſtaffe of
and when we had al
er that we were al
that day we ga

When dinner
where we were ſet
at he might wel beh
he ſet theſe tables
fiſt at the vpper

four of Cazan, whi
me, being a child of
the men.

And at another table
was in all points as we
called Chirkasles, whi
les. Of which people

All the tables alſo ſe
the Emperour ſer
to euery m in ſeue rally

ke, which was giuen
the tables alſo: layd u
the diſhes and ſawce
of diuers faſhions,

They too of this mo
Pisles be making
Sponkes, & hereof

they call the Butter

in eating of graine
their greatest friend
in their wayes, & are kept straightly

dozen, and all three
himselfe, the Co
in they that passe by
money, and so be

which the Emperour
me Duke of Genoa
r, robbing and spoi
the Emperour, and
ill means: so that
poore people.

the woyle, & the few
ed. They use little
more swiftly,
olde, silke, & cloth
of silke, set on with
up. Under that is
standing by of some
ught with red silk,
on his legs, a pair
e weareth a white
oxe cap, turned by

nd of the Turkish
th no weapon, but
he Hoyle.
ry, the way being
e with a sled, and
way is deepe with

winter, but upon
12 a white Horse
soluces carles at his
estate of the sleds.

Ambas
ement

re departed from
nts, which were
ted which shipped
a, who was sent
The four ships

the men.

And at another table neere vnto the Emperours table, there was set a Sponke all alone, which
as in all points as well serued as the Emperour. At another table sate another kind of people
called Chirkasies, which the Emperour entertaineth for men of warre to serue against his ene-
ies. Of which people and of their countrey, I will hereafter make mention.

All the tables aforesayd were couered onely with salt and bread, and after that we had eaten a
hile, the Emperour sent vnto euery one of vs a piece of bread, which were giuen and deliuered
to euery man in senceably by these wordes: The Emperour and great Duke giueh the bread this
ake, which was giuen by these wordes, The Emperour and great Duke giueh thee to drinke.
the tables aforesayd were serued in vessels of pure and fine golde, as well basons and ewers,
utensils and sawers, as also of great pots, with an innumerable sort of small drinking
vessels of diuers fashions, whereof a great number were set with stone. As for collipeated

Description of Russia. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

315

The Anne and the Trinitie Attendants.

The 13 of July, the foresayd foure shippes came to an anchor in the Baye of S. Nicholas, be-
for an Abbey, called the Abbey of S. Nicholas, whereas the sayd Pellenger, Osep Gregori-
with Napea went a shoare, and as many English men as came to serue the Emperour remai-
ned with him at the Abbey for the space of five daies, untill he had gotten all his things a shoare,
and laden the same in barkes, to goe vpon the riuer Dwina, vnto Vologhda, which is by water
1000 verstes, and euery verste is about thre quarters of an English mile.

The 20 of Iuly, we departed from S. Nicholas, and the 24 of the same, we came to Col-
mogro, where we remained eight daies: and the sayd Pellenger was there of all his acquaint-
ance welcomed home, and had presents innumerable sent vnto him, but it was nothing but
meate and drinke. Some sent white bread, some rye bread, and some buttered bread & pancakes,
beefe, mutton, bacon, egges, butter, fishes, swannes, geese, bucces, hennes, and all manner of victu-
als, both fish and flesh, in the best manner, that the rude people could drusse: for among them, these
presents are highly esteemed.

The 29 of Iulij, we departed from Colmogro, and the 14 of August we came to Vsiug,
where we remained one day, and changed our barkes of boats.

The 27 of August, we came to Vologhda, where we remained 4 daies unloading the barkes,
and lading our chests and things in small waggons, with one horse in a piece, which in their
tongue are called Telegos, and with these Telegoes they caried our stuffe from Vologhda vnto
the Mosco, which is 500 verstes: and we were vpon the same way 14 daies: for we went no fa-
ther then the Telegoes.

There are thre great towines betwene the Mosco and Vologhda, that is to say, Yeraslaue,
Rossaue, & Percilaue. Vpon one side of Yeraslaue runneth a famous riuer, which is called Volga,
It runneth into the Caspian sea, and it driueth it selfe before it come into the Mare Caspium,
in 50 parts of more, and neere vnto the same sea there stands a great Citie, called Boghar, the in-
habitants of the which are called by the same name.

The people of the said Citie doe traffique vnto the Citie of Mosco: their commodities are
spices, mulke, ambergreeke, rubarbe, with other drugs. They bring also many furs which they
buy in Siberia comming towards the Mosco: these sayd people are of the sect of Mahomet.

The 12 of September we came vnto the citie of Mosco, where we were brought by Napea,
and two of the Emperours gentlemen vnto a large house, where euery one of vs had his chamber
appointed.

The 14 of September we were commanded to come vnto the Emperour, and immediately af-
ter our comming we were brought into his presence, vnto whom each of vs did his dueitie accor-
dingly, and kissed his right hand, his maiestie sitting in his chaire of estate, with his crowne on his
head, and a staffe of gold in his right hand, and his left hand well garnished with rich and costly stones:
and when we had all kissed his hand and done our nuzties, his maiestie did declare by his interpre-
ter that we were all welcome vnto him, and into his countrey, & therupon willed vs to dine with
him: that day we gaue thanks vnto his maiestie, and so departed vntill the dinner was ready.

When dinner time approch'd, we were brought againe into the Emperours dining chamber,
where we were set on one side of a table that stood ouer against the Emperours table, to the end
that he might well behold vs all: and when we came into the foresayd chamber, we found there rea-
dy set these tables following.

First at the upper end of one table were set the Emperour his maiestie, his brother, & the Cin-
trour of Cazan, which is prisoner. About two yardes lower sate the Emperour of Cazan his
sonne, being a child of five yeres of age, and beneath him sate the most part of the Emperours na-
tural men.

And at another table neere vnto the Emperours table, there was set a Sponke all alone, which
was in all points as well serued as the Emperour. At another table sate another kind of people
called Chirkasies, which the Emperour entertaineth for men of warre to serue against his ene-
ies. Of which people and of their countrey, I will hereafter make mention.

All the tables aforesayd were couered onely with salt and bread, and after that we had eaten a
hile, the Emperour sent vnto euery one of vs a piece of bread, which were giuen and deliuered
to euery man in senceably by these wordes: The Emperour and great Duke giueh the bread this
ake, which was giuen by these wordes, The Emperour and great Duke giueh thee to drinke.
the tables aforesayd were serued in vessels of pure and fine golde, as well basons and ewers,
utensils and sawers, as also of great pots, with an innumerable sort of small drinking
vessels of diuers fashions, whereof a great number were set with stone. As for collipeated

I haue many times seene better: but for change of wines, and diuers sorts of meads, it was wonderfull: for there was not left at any time so much void room on the table, that one cuppe might haue bin set, and as far as I could perceiue, all the rest were in the like maner serued.

In the dinner time there came in fire singers which stood in the midst of the chamber, and their faces towards the Emperour, who sang there before dinner was ended three seuerall times, whose songs or voices delighted our eares little or nothing.

The Emperour neuer putteth morsell of meate in his mouth, but he first blesteth it himselfe, in like maner as often as he drinketh: for after his maner he is very religious, & he esteemeth his religious men above his noble men.

This dinner continued about the space of foure houre, which being ended, and the tables taken vp, we came into the midst of the chamber, where we did reuerence vnto the Emperours maiestie, and then he deliuered vnto euery one of vs with his own hands a cup of mead, which when euery man had receiued and drunke a quantitie thereof, we were licenced to depart, & so ended that dinner. And because the Emperour would haue vs to be mery, he sent to our lodging the same evening thre barrels of meade of sundry sorts, of the quantitie in all of one hogthead.

The 16 day of September the Emperour sent home vnto our lodging for euery of vs a Tartarie horse to ride from place to place as we had occasion, for that the streets of Mosco are very foule and mirie in the Summer.

Sp Standish
doctor of Physick.

The 18 of September there were giuen vnto master Standish doctor in Physick, and the rest of our men of our occupations, certaine furred gownes of hyanchel velvet and gold, and some of red damaske, of which master Doctors gowne was furred with Sables and the rest were furred some with white Ermine, and some with gray Squirrel, and all faced and edged round about with blacke beauer.

The 1 of October in the morning we were commanded to come vnto the Emperours court, and when we came thither, we were brought vnto the Emperour vnto whom we did our duties accordingly: whereupon he willed vs to dine with him that day, and so with thanks vnto his maiestie, we departed untill dinner time, at which time we came and found the tables couered with bread and salt as at the first: & after that we were all set vpon one side of the table, the Emperours maiestie according to his accustomed maner sent vnto euery man a piece of bread by some of the Dukes which attended on his highnesse.

And whereas the 14 of September we were serued in vessels of gold, we were now serued in vessels of silver, and yet not so abundantly as was the first of gold: they brought drinke vnto the table in silver boles which contained at the least five gallons a piece, and euery man had a final silver cuppe to drinke in, & another to dip or to take his drinke out of the great boill withall: the dinner being ended, the Emperour gaue vnto euery one of vs a cup with meade, which when we had receiued, we gaue thanks and departed.

Moreover, whensoever the Emperours pleasure is that any stranger shall dine with him, he doth send for them in the morning, and when they come before him, he with his owne mouth bidderth them to dinner, and this order he alwaies obserueth.

The 10 of October the Emperour gaue vnto Sp. Standish 70 rubles in money, and to the rest of our men of occupations 30 rubles apiece.

Long dinners

The 6 of December being S. Nicholas day, we dined againe at the Emperours, for that was one of the principall feasts which the Poscouites hold: we were serued in silver vessels and ordered in all points as before, and it was past 7 of the clocke at night before dinner was ended.

Ordinance in
Russia.

The Emperours maiestie vseth every yeare in the moneth of December, to haue all his ordinance that is in the citie of Mosco caried into the field which is without the Suburbs of the citie, and there to haue it planted and bent vpon two houses of Wood filled within with earth: againe which two houses there were two faire white markes set vp, at which markes they discharged their ordinance, to the ende the Emperour may see what his Gunners can doe. They haue ordinance of bullet of all sorts, bales, faulcons, minions, fakers, culuerings, cannons, bowling royall, ballistikes long and large, they haue fire great pieces whose shot is a yard of height, who shot a man may easily discern as they flee: they haue also a great many of morter pieces of guns, out of which pieces they shoote wild fire.

Sp. Standish
doctor of Physick.

The 12 of December the Emperours Maiestie and all his nobility came into the field on horsebacke, in most goodly order, hauing very fine Jennetts & Turkie horses garnished with gold, & uer abundantly. The Emperours maiestie hauing on him a gowne of rich tissue, & a cap of fur on his head, set not onely with pearles, but also with a great number of rich and costly stones: his noble men were all in gownes of cloth of gold, which did ride before him in good order by 3. & 4. houre.

De
before
euery
order
Ant
poles
were c
long as
bushes
perozs
ged and
shiemish
After
bold, Ant
and so
began to
the small
a houses
and filled
departed a
charged eu
On the
meat and v
saw the like
gers, and the
could stand o
goodly place
about 12 gal
continued ab
Euery ye
through the ci
First, they
bout the sides
with procession
first and for
a great lantern
Nicholas, a
ges follow cert
ed betweene eu
his head, and after
the water, & whe
about it. And at o
faire chaire in wh
After this the
time that they had
le thereof in his
they returned agai
there was about
house 1000 pots
drinks himselfe vnt
And very many
was a little gone, the
like wise many
our horses as holp
All these ceremon
in vessels of silue
The Russes begin
the, these & were e
ing another, & from
they are drunke v

of meads, it was wont
e, that one cuppe moe
the maner serued.

the chamber, and there
seuerall times, whise

A blessed it himselfe,
us, & he esteemeth his

u, and the tables taken
the Emperors maiestie

ad, which when euer
re, & so ended that dis-

aloging the same Em-
perour.

For euer of vs a Car-
ets of Mosco are very

in whitelick, and the red
and gold, and some of

and the rest were turne
dged round about with

the Emperors court, and
e did our duties acce-

into his maiestie, be-
couered with beean and

Emperors maiestie
by some of the Dukes

we were now seruise
pouge drinke unto the

erie man had a small
boll withall: the wile

e, which when we be-
hall dine with him, he

his owne mouth
money, and to the red

ere serued as before.
emperours, for that

in silver vessels and
dinner was ended.

to haue all his
Suburbs of the city

in with earth: againe
rkes they discharged

doe. They haue
s, cannons double

pard of beight, wh
f moxer pieces of p

Description of Russia. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

before them there went 5000 harquebussiers, which went by 5 and 5 in a rank in very good order,
euer of them carrying his gun upon his left shoulder, and his match in his right hand, and in this
order they marched into the field where as the foresayd ordinance was planted.

And before the Emperors maiestie came into the field, there was a certaine stage made of small
poles which was a quarter of a mile long, and about three score paces off from the stage of poles
were certaine pieces of ice of two foot thicke, and five foot high set vp, which ranke of ice was as
long as the stage of poles, and as soone as the Emperors maiestie came into the field, the harque-
bussiers went vpon the stage of poles where they seated themselves in order. And when the Em-
perors maiestie was settled where he would be, and where he might see all the ordinance dischar-
ged and shot off, the harquebussiers began to shoot off at the banke of ice, as though it had bin in any
firmly of battel, who ceased not shooting, untill they had beaten all the ice flat on the ground.

After the handguns, they shot off their wild fire vp into the aire, which was a goodly sight to be-
hold. And after this, they began to discharge the small pieces of brass, beginning with the smallest
and so orderly bigger and bigger, untill the last and biggest. When they had shot them all off, they
began to charge them againe, and so shot them all off 3 times after the first order, beginning with
the smallest, and ending with the greatest. And note that before they had ended their shooting, the
houses that they shot vnto were beaten in pieces, & yet they were very strongly made of wood
and filled with earth, being at the least 30 foot thicke. This triumph being ended, the Emperour
departed and rode home in the same order that he came forth into the field. The ordinance is dis-
charged euery yeare in the moneth of December, according to the order before mentioned.

On Christmas day we were all willed to dine with the Emperors Maiestie, where for bread,
On Christmas day we were all willed to dine with the Emperors Maiestie, where for bread,
ment and drinke, we were serued as at other times before: but for goodly and rich place, we neuer
saw the like of so much before. There dined that day in the Emperors presence about 500 stran-
gers, and two hundred Russes, and all they were serued in vessels of gold, and that as much as
could stand one by another vpon the tables. Besides this there were foure cupboards garnished with
about 12 gallons a piece, and at each end of euery barrell were 6 hoopes of fine gold: this dinner
continued about six houres.

Euery yeare vpon the 12 day they vse to blesse of sanctifie the riuer Mosca, which runneth
through the citie of Mosco, after this maner.

First, they make a square hole in the ice about 3 fadoms large euery way, which is crinimed a-
bout the sides & edges with white boords. Then about 9 of the clocke they come out of the church
with procession towards the riuer in this wise.

First and foremost there goe certaine young men with ware tapers burning, and one carrying
a great lantern: then follow certaine banners, then the crosse, then the images of our Lady, of
Nicholas, and of other Saints, which images men carie vpon their shoulders: after the ima-
ges follow certaine priests to the number of 100 or moze: after them the Metropolitane who is
his head, and after his maiestie all his noble men orderly. Thus they followed the procession vnto
the water, & when they came vnto the hole that was made, the priests set themselves in order round
about it. And at one side of the same hole there was a scaffold of boords made, vpon which stood a
faire chaire in which the Metropolitane was set, but the Emperours maiestie stood vpon the ice.

After this the priests began to sing, to blesse and to senle, and did their seruice, and so by that
time that they had done, the water was holy, which being sanctified, the Metropolitane tooke a li-
tle thereof in his hands, and cast it on the Emperour, like wise vpon certaine of the Dukes, & then
they returned againe to the church with the priests that face about the water: but that prealte that
there was about the water when the Emperour was gone, was wonderful to behold, for there came
about 5000 pots to be filled of that water: for that Polcouite which hath no part of that water,
thinks himselfe vnhappie.

And verie many went naked into the water, both men and women and children: after the prealte
was a litle gone, the Emperours Jemmers and hoyses were brought to drinke of the same water,
and like wise many other men brought their hoyses either to drinke, and by that means they make
the hoyses as holp as themselves.

All these ceremonies being ended, we went to the Emperour to dinner, where we were ser-
ued in vessels of silver, and in all other points as we had bene beforetime.

The Russes begin their Lent alwaies 8 weekes before Easter: the first weeke they eat eggs, & the Russes
the cheese & butter, and make great cheare with pancakes and such other things, one friend vi-
sing another, & from the same Sunday vntil our Shrovesunday there are but few Russes sober,
they are drunke day by day, and it is accounted for no reproch of shame among them.

The halloving
of the riuer of
Mosco.

The Russes
drink.

The next weeke being our first weeke of Lent, or our cleuning weeke, beginning our Shrofe Sunday, they make and keepe a great fast. It is reported, and the people do verily beleue that the Petropolitan neither eateth nor drinketh any manner of thing for the space of seven dayes, and they say that there are many religious men which doe the like.

The Emperours Maistie eateth but one morsel of bread, and drinketh but one draught of drinke once in the day during that weeke, and all men that are of any reputation come not out of their houses during that time, so that the streets are almost void of company, saving a few poore folkes which wander to and fro. The other five weekes they keepe as we do ours, but not one of them will ease either butter, cheese, eggs or milke.

On Palme Sunday they haue a very solemne procession in this maner following.

First, they haue a tree of a good bignesse which is made falk upon two sleds, as though it were growing there, and it is hangen with apples, raisins, figs and bates, and with many other fruits abundantly. In the midst of the same tree stand 5 hopes in white vestures, which sing in the tree before the procession: after this there followed certaine pong men with waue tapers in their hands burning, & a great lanterne that at the light should not go out: after them followed two with long banners, & five with round plates set upon long stauces: the plates were of copper very full of holes and thin: then followed 6 carrying painted images upon their shoulders, after the images followed certaine priests to the number of 100 or more, with goodly vestures, whereof 100 or 12 are of white damaske, set and imbrodered round about with faire and orient pearles, as great as pease, and among them certaine Sophytes and other stones. After them followed the one halfe of the Emperours noble men: then cometh the Emperours maistie and the Petropolitane, after this maner.

First, there is a hope couered with white linnen cloth down to the ground, his ears being made long with the same cloth like to an asses ears. Upon this hope the Petropolitane sitteth looking like a woman: in his lappe lieth a faire booke, with a crucifix of Goldsmiths worke upon the cover, which he holdeth fast with his left hand, and in his right hand he hath a crosse of gold, with which crosse he censeth not to blesse the people as he rieth.

There are to the number of 30 men which spread abroad their garments before the hope, and as soone as the hope is past over any of them, they take them up againe and run before, and spread them againe, so that the hope doth alway go on some of them. They which spread the garments are all priests sonnes, and for their labours the Emperour giueth unto them new garments.

One of the Emperours noble men leadeh the hope by the head, but the Emperour himselfe going on foote leadeh the hope by the ende of the reime of his hyde with one of his hands, and in the other of his hands he had a branch of a Palme tree: after this followed the rest of the Emperours Noble men and Gentlemen, with a great number of other people. In this order they went from one church to another within the castle, about the distance of two flights shot: and so returned againe to the Emperours Church, where they made an end of their seruice. Which being done, the Emperours maistie and certaine of his noble men went to the Petropolitane his house to dinner, where of delicate fishes and good drinke there was no lacke.

The rest of this weeke untill Easter day they kept very solemly, continuing in their houses for the most part, and upon Sunday or Thursday the Emperour doth alwayes vse to recite the Sacrament, and so doe most of his nobles.

Upon good Friday they continue all the day in contemplation and prayers, and they vse euery yere on good Friday to let loose a prisoner in the stead of Barrabas. The night following they go to the Church where they sleepe untill the next morning, & at Easter they haue the resurrection, & after euery of the Lents they eat flesh the next weeke following. Friday, Saturday and all.

They haue an order at Easter which they alwayes obserue, and that is this: euery yere against Easter to die of colour red with Bayell a great number of eggs, of which euery man and woman giueth one unto the priest of their Parish upon Easter day in the morning. And moreover the common people vse to carie in their hands one of their red eggs, not onely upon Easter day, but also three or foure dayes after, and gentlemen and gentlewomen haue eggs gilded which they carie in like maner. They vse it as they say for a great loue, and in token of the resurrection, whereof they reioyce. For when two friends meete during the Easter holy dayes, they come & take one another by the hand: the one of them sayth, the Lord of Christ is risen, the other answereth, it is of a truth, and then they kille and exchange their eggs both men and women, continuing in killing 4 dayes together.

The 12 of Apill being Tuesday in the Easter weeke, master Ienkinson and master Gray and certayne other of vs English men dined with the Emperour, where we were seuered as we had bin before time. And after dinner the Emperours maistie gaue vnto master Ienkinson and master Gray, and so vnto euery one of vs a cup of Mead, according to his accustomed maner.

The Emperour
leadeh the
Petropolitane
hope in process-
ion.

Killing used in
the Greeke
church.

Dej

which
chamber
to him
his man-
letters
haue ore-
ing gran-
the Em-
their plea-

The
gland, the
at our con-
to mark
report who

The ch
opinion, the
rich and
higher then
was lined w

Thee saw
nie other gre
they came ou
tion of them.

We sawe
pearles ouer a
other good sto
large, round a
cloth of gold a
When we
England, so
could be clarif
So we took

The



Emperours nor kin-
which now is Iuan
Emperour, even so
and a great de-
of the lackes.
His enemies with
enmarke, Lifland,
more and a hardie
This Emperour bl-
matters which serue
all vine oftentimes
Church of another
beloued of his no-
to that it th
better beloued. For
woyde to any of the

ginning our Abso-
lutely believe that the
of seven days, and

but one draught of
action come not out of
p, saving a few poor
ours, but not one of

owing.

as though it were
many other fruits
hanging in the trees be-
tween the leaves in their hon-
dours two with long
very full of holes
the images followed
10012 are of tube:
great as peafe, and a
the halfe of the Empe-
ne, after this manner,
his eares being made
neane like the dwelling
people vpon the coast
of gold, with which

before the horse, and
in before, and (spee)
ed the garments are
garments.

Emperour himſelfe
of his hands, and in
the reſt of the Em-
. In this order they
ſlightes ſhot: and in
ſervice. Which be-
the Petropolitane his

...ing in their houses
...ble to receive the

s, and they ble
 night following they
 haue the resurre
 Saturday and all
 s: cuery yere agai
 ery man and woma

And moreover the
n Easter day, but de
ded which they say
urrection, wherof
come & take one
an answereth, it is h
omtaining in killing
n and master Gra
re serued as we ha
lenkinson and was
s accustomed man
to bid

Description of Russia. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

319

which when every man had received and given thanks, M. Lenkinson Dreyed into the midst of the chamber before the Emperours maiestie, and gave thanks to his highnesse for his goodnesse unto him extended, beseeching his grace to licence him to depart, and in like manner M. Maister Gray. His maiestie did not onely licence them to dep. re, but also granted unto Maister Lenkinson his letters under his great seale, unto all princes though whose dominions Maister Lenkinson should have occasion to passe, that he might the sooner and quietter passe by means thereof. Which being granted, Maister Lenkinson and Gray lowly submitted themselves, thanking his maiestie for the Emperours grace unto either of them a cuppe of mead to drinke and will.

With these leads
from Sp. Lenkin-
son took him
by the
line to the
Bohgar.

The 14. of Aprill in the morning when Mr. Gray and I were ready to depart towards England, the Chancellors came unto us and willed us to come to their office in the Chancery, England, to make and behold the writs by a great number of the Emperors letters, and rich robes, willing to make us to be lords, to the end that at our arrival in England we should be received as lords.

The chiefest was his maiesties crowne, being close vnder the top very faire wrought: in mine
rich and precious stones abundantly, among the which one was a rubie, which stood a handfull
higher then the top of the crown vpon a small wier, it was as big as a good beane: the same crown
was lined with a faire blacke Sable, worth by report 4. rubies.
Wee sawe all his maiesties robes which by

**The Empe-
rour's wardrobe.**

¶ Wee save all his manerly robes which were very richly furred with furs, they threw away manie other great stones of divers kinds, but the most part of them were unweien. In maner they came out of the woyle, for they doe moze effeme the creature.

The same two goodly gowmes which were as beaute as a man could easily carrie, all set with pearles ouer and ouer: the gardes o' borders round about them were garnished with sapphires and large, round and oylent: as for the rest of his gowmes was very rich, for the pearles were very cleyn of gold and all furred with very blacke Sables.

So we tooke our leaue the same time, and departed towards Vologda immediately.

The manners, usages, and ceremonies of the Russians.

Of the Emperour.



"El, Ralms

His enemies with whom he hath warres for the most part are these: Lito, Poland, Sweden, Liffand, the Crimmes, Nagaians, and the whole nation of the Tartarians, which are

which serue him either in his warres, or in occupations: for his pleasure is that they
 should be oftentimes in the peece in his presence, and besides that he is oftentimes abroad, either
 in the Church or abroad, and walking with his noble men abroad. And by this means he is not
 beloued of his nobles and commons, but also had in great dread and feare through all his
 nations, so that I thinke no prince in Christendome is more feared of his owne then he is, nor
 better beloued. For if he bid any of his Dukes goe, they will runne, if he giue any euill or
 worde to any of them, the partie will not come into his maiesties presence againe of a long
 time

time if he be not sent for, but will come him to be very like, and will let the haire of his head grow very long, without either cutting or shauing, which is an euident token that hee is in the Emperours displeasure: for when they be in their prosperitie, they account it a shame to weare long haire, in consideration whereof, they vse to haue their heads shauen.

Moiz.

His maiesty heareth all complaines himselfe, and with his owne mouth giueth sentence, and iudgement of all matters, and that with expedition: but religious matters he molestly not touch, but referreth them wholly vnto the Metropolitane.

His maiesty retaineth and well rewardeth all strangers that come to serue him, and especially men of warre.

He delighteth not greatly in hawking, hunting, or any other pastime, nor in hearing instruments of musicke, but setteth all his whole delight vpon two things: first, to serue God, as vndoubtedly he is very deuoute in his religion, and the second, howe to subdure and conquer his enemies.

He hath abundance of gold and siluer in his owne handes or treasure: but the most part of his knoweth not a crowne from a counter, nor gold from copper, they are so much cumbered therewithall, and he that is worth 2. 3. or 4. groten, is a rich man.

Of their Religious men.

The Metropolitane is next vnto God, our Lady and S. Nicholas excepted: for the Emperour maiesty iudgeth & affirmeth him to be of higher dignitie then himselfe: for that, saith he, he is Gods spiritual officer, and I the Emperour am his tempozall officer, and therefore his maiesty submitte himselfe vnto him in many things concerning religious matters, as in leading the Metropolitans hoyle vpon Palme Sunday, and giuing him leaue to sitte on a chaire vpon the 2. day, when the riuer Mosco was in blessing, his maiesty standing on the pee.

All matters of religion are reformed by the Metropolitane, he heareth the causes and giueth sentence as himselfe listeth, and is authorized so to doe, whether it be to whip, hang or burne, he will must needs be fulfilled.

They haue both monks, friers and nunnas, with a great number of great & rich monasteries: they keepe great hospitalitie, and doe relieue much poore people day by day. I haue bene in one of the monasteries called Troitsa, which is walled about with hycke very strongly like a castle, and much abundance of brasse vpon the walles of the same. They told me themselves that there are seuen hundred brethren of the which belong vnto that house. The most part of the lands, towns, and villages which are within 40. miles of it, belong vnto the same. They shewed me the church, wherein were as many images as could hang about, or vpon the walle of the Church round about, and euen the roofof the church was painted full of images. The chiefe image was of our Lord, which was garnished with gold, rubies, sapphires and other rich stones abundantly. In the midst of the church stood 2. waxe tapers of two yards long, and a fashion about in bignesse, & there stode a kettie full of waxe with about 100. weight, wherein there is alwayes the wicke of a candle burning, as it were a lampe which goeth not out day nor night.

They shewed me a coffin couered with cloth of gold which stode vpon one side within the church, in which they told me lay a hoip man, who neuer eat or dranke, and yet that he liueth. So they told me (supposing that I had beleued them) that he healeth many diseases, and giueth the blind their sight, with many other miracles, but I was hard of belief because I saw him wrought no miracle whilest I was there.

After this they brought me into their sellers, and made me taste of diuers kinds of vyinks, and wine and beere, mead and quassie, of sundry colours and kinds. Such abundance of vyink as they haue in their sellers, I doe suppose few princes haue more, or so much at once.

Their barrels or bellers are of an vnruefullurable bignes & size: some of them are 3. yards long and more, and 2. yards & more broad in their heads: they containe 6. or 7. tunnes a piece: they haue none in their sellers of their own making that are lesse then a tunne. They haue 9. or 10. great vauces which are full of those barrels which are seldom remoued: for they haue crunks which come downe through the roofof the houses in sundry places, through which they pour the vyink downe, hauing the caske right vnder it to receiue the same, so it should be a great trouble to vntie it all downe the stappes.

The hospitalitie of their monasteries.

They giue bread, meat and vyinke vnto all men that come to them, not onely while they are in their abbey, but also when they depart, to serue them by the way.

There are a great number of such monasteries in the Realm, and the Emperours maiesty cometh sometimes from one to another of them, and lieth at them 3. or 4. daies together.

The
and sell
merchan

They
Thursday
times to

They
onely.

They be
the most
lay a great
Emperours
so much tha
need. Al men
all their w
their heads
in like maner
will salute an

They reck
of the boord
and about wit

The priest
except their
their crowne
so that it hange
wife happen to

They minist
and putteth it
take the bread ou
and giue it to oth

Their cere
and they allow no
but the Clerics to

All their churc
and knocke their
with knocking, as

All their seruice
but this, Ghospod
Christ, sonne of G
learned knowe rich
bestand the one hal

When any chi
not baptized
for them to take as m
When they go to c
and Godmothers follo
in an earthen pot full of
shide, settle them selfe
then cometh the priest
thers must answere w
that name is pronoun
with the water which is
collops haue, and holdin
giueth euery one his can
it in a small tubbe, a
all vpon the childes head

Description of Russia. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

321

The same monkes are as great merchants as any in the land of Russia, and doe occupy buying and selling as much as any other men, and haue boats which passe too and fro in the rivers which merchandise from place to place where any of their countrey do traffike.

They cate no flesh during their lues as it is reported but upon Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Thursday and Saturday it is lawfull for them to cate egges, butter, cheese and milke, and at all times to cate fish, and after this for they lead their lues.

They weare all blacke garments, and so doe none other in all the lande, but at that abbey onely.

They haue no preachers no not one in all the land to instruct the people, so that there are many, the most part of the poore in the countrey, who if one aske them how many gods there be, they will say a great many, meaning that euery image which they haue is a god: for all the countrey and the Emperours maiedly himselfe will blesse and bowe, and knocke their heads before their images, in so much that they will erie earnestly vnto their images to helpe them to the things which they need. All men are bound by their law to haue those images in their houses, and ouer euery gate in all their towines and cities are images set vp, vnto which the people bow and bend, and knocke their heads against the ground before them: as often as they come by any church or crosse they do in like manner. And when they come to any house, they blesse themselves 3. or 4. times before they will salute any man in the house.

Want of preachers cause of great ignorance and idolatry.

They reckon and hold it for great sinne to touch or handle any of their images within the circle of the boord where the painting is, but they keep them very devoutly, and rich men deck them ouer and about with gold, silver and stones, and hang them ouer and about with cloeth of gold.

The priestes are married as other men are, and weare all their garments as other men doe, except their nightcaps, which is cloth of some sad colour, being round, & reacheth vnto the eares: their crownes are shauen, but the rest of their haire they let grow, as long as nature will permit, so that it hangeth beneath their eares vpon their shoulders: their beards they neuer shau: if his wife happen to die, it is not lawfull for him to marry againe during his lue.

They minister the Communion with bread and wine after: in order, but he breaketh the bread and putteth it into the cup vnto the wine, and commonly some repareters with them: and they take the bread out againe with a spoon together with part of the wine, and so take it themselves, and giue it to others that receiue with them after the same manner.

Their ceremonies are al as they say, according to the Greeke Church used at this present day, and they allow no other religion but the Greeks, and their owne: and will not permit any nation but the Greeks to be buried in their sacred burials, or churchyards.

All their churches are full of images, vnto the which the people when they assemble, doe bowe and knocke their heads, as I haue before said, that some will haue knobbes vpon their foreheads with knocking, as great as egges.

All their seruice is in the Russe tongue, and they and the common people haue no other prayers but this, Ghospod! Iesus Christos esine voze ponuloi nashe. That is to say, O Lord Iesus Christ, sonne of God haue mercy vpon vs: and this is their prayer, so that the most part of the vnderstand the one halfe of their seruice which is read in their Churches.

At their seruice is in their mother tongue.

Of their Baptisme.

When any child is borne, it is not baptized vntil the next Sunday, and if it chance that it be not baptized then, it must tary vntil the second Sunday after the birth, and it is lawfull for them to take as many Godfathers and Godmothers as they will, the more the better.

When they go to the Church, the midwife goeth foremost, carrying the child, & the Godfathers and Godmothers follow into the midst of the Church, where there is a small table ready set, and on it an earthen pot full of warme water, about the which the Godfathers and Godmothers, with the child, settle themselves: then the cleare giueth vnto euery of them a small ware candle burning, then commeth the priest, and beginneth to say certaine words, which the Godfathers and Godmothers must answer word for word, among which one is, that the child shal forsake the deuill, and that name is pronounced, they must all spit at the word as often as it is repeated. Then he blesseth the water which is in the pot, and doth breathe ouer it: then he taketh al the candles which the priest haue, and holding them all in one hand letteth part of them drop into the water, and then letteth euery one his candle againe, and when the water is sanctified, he taketh the child and holdeth it in a small cubbe, and one of the Godfathers taketh the pot with warme water, and pouereth all vpon the childs head.

After

After this he hath many more ceremonies, as anoynting eares and eyes with spittle, and making certaine crosses with hoyle upon the backe, head, and brest of the childe: then taking the childe in his armes, carrieth it to the images of S. Nicholas, and our Ladie, &c. and speaketh vnto the images, desiring them to take charge of the childe, that he may liue, and beleeue as a Christian man or woman ought to doe, with many other words. Then comming backe from the images, he taketh a paire of sheares and clipperth the yong and tender haire of the childes head, in three or foure places, and then deliuereth the childe, wherunto euer of the Godfathers & Godmothers lay a hand: then the priest chargeth them, that the childe be brought vp in the faith & feare of God or Christ, and that it be instructed to clinege and bow to the images, and so they make an end: then one of the Godfathers must hang a crosse about the necke of the childe, which he must alwayes weare, for that Russe which hath not a crosse about his necke they esteeme as no Christian man, and thereupon they say that we are no Christians, because we do not weare crosses as they do.

Of their Matrimonic.

Their matrimonic is nothing solemnized, but rather in most points abhominable, and as necesse as I can learne, in this wise following.

First, when there is loue betwene the parties, the man sendeth vnto the woman a small chert or bore, wherein is a whip, needles, chyeed, silke, linnen cloth, sheares, and such necessaries as shee shall occupie when she is a wife, and perhaps sendeth therewithall raisins, figs or some such things, giuing her to vnderstand, that if she doe offend, she must be beaten with the whip, & by the needles, chyeed, cloth, &c. that she should apply her selfe diligently to sowe, and do such things as shee cometh best doe, and by the raisins or fruites be meane that if she doe well, no good thing shall be withholden from her, nor be too deare for her: and she sendeth vnto him a shirt, handkerchers, and some such things of her owne making. And now to the effect.

When they are agreed, and the day of marriage appointed, when they shall goe to towne to the Church, the wyde will in no wise consent to go out of the house, but resisterth and striverth with him that would haue her out, and raineth her selfe to weepe, yet in the end, two women get her out, and lead her towards the church, her face being couered close, because of her dissimulation, that it should not be openly perceriued: for she maketh a great noise, as though she were sobbing and weeping, until she come at the Church, and then her face is vncouered. The man cometh after among other of his friends, and they cary with them to the church a great pot with wine or mead: then the priest couereth them together much after our order, one promising to loue and serue the other during their liues together, &c. which being done, they begin to drinke, and first the woman drinke to the man, and when he hath drunke he letereth the cuppe fall to the ground, haling immediately to cread vpon it, and so doth she, and whether of them tread first vpon it must haue the victorie, and be master at all times after, which commonly happeneth to the man, for he is readier to set his foot on it, because he letereth it fall himselfe, then they goe home againe, the womans face being vncouered. The boyes in the streets cry out and make a noise in the meane time, with very dishonest words.

When they come home, the wife is set at the upper end of the table, and the husband next vnto her: they fall then to drinking till they bee all drunke, they perchance haue a minstrell or two, and two naked men, which led her from the Church daunce naked a long time before all the company. When they are wearie of drinking, the wyde and the wydegrome get them to bed, for it is in the euenng alwayes when any of them are married: and when they are going to bedde, the wydegrome putteth certain money both golde and siluer, if he haue it, into one of his bootes, and then letereth down in the chamber, crossing his legges, and then the wyde must plucke off one of his bootes, which she will, and if she happen on the boote wherein the money is, she hath not onely the money for her laboz, but is also at such choyse, as she need not euer from that day forth to pull off his boot, but if she misse the boote wherein the money is, she doth not onely loose the money, but is also bound from that day forth to pull off his bootes continually.

Then they continue in drinking and making good cheere three daies following, being accompanied with certaine of their friends, and during the same three daies he is called a Duke, & three daies, although they be very poore persons, and this is as much as I haue learned of their ceremony: but one common rule is amongst them, if the woman be not beaten with the whip once a weeke, she will not be good, and therefore they looke for it orderly, & the women say, that if their husbands did not beate them, they should not loue them.

They vse to marry there at a yong, their sonnes at 6, and 8 yeeres olde, and the daughters at 12, or 13 yeeres or yonger: they vse to keepe their wiues very closely, I meane those that

Discover

of any reputation at Christmas or The most part of them on Friday The husband to payne themselves they graue their almost a slight though they were as blacke as leat. The best people and golde excellen

When any freeze, becom do, but they forger he vnto S. Nicholas in a coffin of wood, the friends and kinsmen wepe and howle, and They that be hangd into heauen, it There are great which is a pitifull case peeres, about 80, per he had straw and water winter to dyle straw and head. In the summer a good meate which them as liberally as do the power, felers, and also to relieue die of famine or hunger. It is a countrey full of as they holde opinion, to come, which hee beate themselves therein.

The nam Rus.

The first and principa Russia, Malieno, which I haue seene in Paris. The second meade is called Moscoberie: but it is like in The third meade is called small resin, and groweth in The fourth meade is called The fifth meade is made of There is also a delicate wine, which drinke the most months of the spring time cannot haue it.

of any reputation, so that a man shall not see one of them but at a chance, when she goeth to church at Christmas or at Easter, or els going to visite some of her friends.

The most part of the women use to ride a stride in saddles with stirrups, as men do, and some of them on hies, which in summer is not commendable.

The husband is bound to finde the wife colours to paint her withall, for they use ordinarily to paynt themselves: it is such a common practise among them, that it is counted for no shame: they grease their faces with such colours, that a man may discern them hanging on their faces almost a flight shoote off: I cannot so well liken them as to a millers wife, for they looke as though they were beaten about the face with a bagge of meale, but their eye browes they colour as blacke as ascat.

The best propertie that the women haue, is that they can sowe well, and imboder with silke and golde excellently.

The women of Russia paint their faces;

Of their buriall.

When any man or woman dieth, they stretch him out, and put a new paire of shoes on his doe, but they sojger not to put a testimonie in his right hand, which the priest giueth him, to testifye unto S. Nicholas that he died a Christian man or woman. And they put the corpse alwayes in a coffin of wood, although the partie be very poore: and when they goe towards the Church, the friends and kinsmen of the partie departed carrie in their hands small ware candles, and they wepe and howle, and make much lamentation.

They that be hanged or beheaded, or such like, haue no testimonie with them: how they are received into heaven, it is a wonder, without their pasporte.

There are a great number of poore people among them which die daily for lacke of sustenance, which is a pitifull case to behold: for there hath bene buried in a small time, within these two yerres, aboue 80. persons young and old, which haue died onely for lacke of sustenance: for if they haue straw and water enough, they would make shift to liue: for a great many are forced in the winter to dye straw and stampe it, and so make bread thereof: or at the least they eate it in stead of bread. In the summer they make good shift with grasse, herbes and roots: barks of trees are good meat with them at all times. There is no people in the world, as I suppose, that liue so miserably as do the poeerty in those parts: and the most part of them that haue sufficient for themselves, and also to relieve others that need, are so vnnmerciful that they care not how many they see die of famine or hunger in the streets.

Wheat made of straw.

The vnnmercifulness of the Russes towards the poore.

It is a countrey full of diseases, blisters, and euill, and the best remedie is for aile of them, as they holde opinion, to goe often vnto the hote houses, as in a maner euery man hath one of his owne, which hee deareth commonly twise euery weeke, and all the householde sweate, and wash themselves therein.

Strowes of barks vnto which the poore countes.

The names of certaine sortes of drinckes vsed in Russia, and commonly drunke in the Emperours Court.

The first and principall meade is made of the iulce or liccor taken from a berrie called in Russia, Malieno, which is of a maruelous sweete taste, and of a carmosant colour, which berry I haue seene in Paris.

Reported by Thomas Bulley.

The second meade is called Vishnou, because it is made of a berry so called, and is like a blacke gooseberrie: but it is like in colour and taste to the red wine of France.

The third meade is called Amarodina or Smorodina, chopt, of a small berry much like to the small resin, and groweth in great plenty in Russia.

The fourth meade is called Chereunikyna, which is made of the twilbe blacke cherry.

The fifth meade is made of hony and water, with other mixtures. There is also a delicate drinke drawn from the root of the birch tree, called in the Russe tongue prozeuices, which drinke the noble men and others vse in Aprill, May, and June, which are the three moneths of the spring time: for after those moneths, the sappe of the tree drieth, and then they cannot haue it.

The voyage of Master *Anthony Ienkinson*, made from the citie
of *Mosco* in *Russia*, to the citie of *Boghar* in *Bactria*, in the yeere
1558: written by himselfe to the Merchants of London of the
Moscouie companie,



In the 23. day of April, in the yeere 1558. (having obtained the Emperour of *Russia* his letters, directed vnto sundry kings and princes, by whose dominions I should passe) I departed from *Mosco* by water, hauing with mee two of your seruants, namely, *Richard Iohnson*, & *Robert Iohnson*, and a *Tartar* *Tolmach*, with diuers parcels of wares, as by the inuentory appeareth: and the 28. day we came to a towne called *Collom*, distant from the *Mosco* 20. leagues, & passing one league beyond the saide *Collom*, we came vnto a riuer called *Occa*, into the which the riuer *Mosco* falleth, and looeth his name: and passing downe the saide riuer *Occa* 8. leagues, we came vnto a castle called *Terreuecksko*, which we left vpon our right hand, and proceeding forward, the second day of May, we came vnto another castle called *Peroslaue*, distant 8. leagues, leauing it also on our right hand. The third day we came vnto the place where olde *Rezan* was situate, being now most of it ruined and ouergrown, and distant from the saide *Peroslaue*, 6. leagues: the 4. day we passed by a castle called *Terrecouia*, from *Rezan* 12. leagues, & the 6. day we came to another castle called *Cassim*, vnder the gouernment of a *Tartar* prince named *Vzar Zegoline*, situate vnto the Emperour of the worthy citie of *Cazan*, and now subiect vnto the Emperour of *Russia*. But leauing *Cassim* on our left hand, the 8. day we came vnto a faire towne called *Morum*, from *Cassim* 20. leagues, where we took the sonne, and found the latitude 56. degrees: and proceeding forward the 11. day, we came vnto another faire towne & castle called *Nyse Nouogrod*, situate at the falling of the foresaid riuer *Occa* into the worthy riuer of *Volga*, distant from the saide *Morum* 15. leagues, in the latitude of 56. degrees 18. minutes. For *Rezan* to this *Nyse Nouogrod*, on both sides the saide riuer of *Occa*, is raised the greatest shoie of ware and honp in all the land of *Russia*. We tarried at the foresaid *Nyse Nouogrod* until the 19. day, for the coming of a captain which was sent by the Emperour to rule at *Astracan*, who being arrived, and hauing the number of 500. great boates vnder his conduct, some laden with victuals, souldiers, and munition: and other some with merchandise, departed altogether the said 19. day from the saide *Nyse Nouogrod*, and the 21. we came vnto a castle called *Vasiliagorod*, distant 25. leagues, which we left vpon our right hand. This towne of castle had his name of this Emperours father, who was called *Vasilius*, and gorod in the *Russe* tongue is as much to say as a castle, so that *Vasiliagorod* is to say, *Vasilius* castle: and it was the furthest place that the saide Emperour conquered from the *Tartars*. But this present Emperour his sonne, called *Iuan Vasiliuich*, hath had great good successe in his warres, both against the *Chyistians* and also the *Pagometts* and *Gentiles*, but especially against the *Tartars*, enlarging his Empire euen to the *Caspian* sea, hauing conquered the famous riuer of *Volga*, with all the countreys thereabout adiacent. Thus proceeding on our tourney the 25. day of May also, we came to another castle called *Sabowshare*, which wee left on our right hand, distant from *Vasiliagorod* 16. leagues. The countrey heereabout is called *Mordouits*, and the habitants do professe the law of the *Gentiles*: but now being conquered by the Emperour of *Russia*, most of them are chrestened, but lie in the woods and wilderness, without towne of habitation.

The 27. day we passed by another castle called *Swyasko*, distant from *Sabowshare* also, distant 25. leagues: we left it on our right hand, and the 29. came vnto an Island one league from the citie of *Cazan*, from which falleth downe a riuer called *Cazanka*, & entereth into the foresaid *Volga*. *Cazan* is a faire towne after the *Russe* or *Tartar* fashion, with a strong castle, situate vpon a high hill, and was walled round about with timber & earth, but now the Emperour of *Russia* hath giuen order to plucke downe the old walles, and to builde them againe of free stone. It hath bene a citie of great wealth and riches, and being in the hands of the *Tartars* it was a kingdom of it selfe: and did more here the *Russes* in their warres, then any other nation: but 9. yeres past, this Emperour of *Russia* conquered it, and tooke the king captiue, who being but young is now baptised, and brought vp in his court with two other princes, which were also kings of the saide *Cazan*, and being each of the in time of their raignes in danger of their subiects through ciuill discord, came and renoued themselves at several times vnto the saide Emperour, so that at this present there are three princes in the court of *Russia*, which had bene Emperours of the saide *Cazan*, whom the Emperour bleth with great honour.

We remained at *Cazan* till the 13. day of June, and then departed from thence: and the 15. day

day passed where all other nations dwell without to Mare Ca

Thus passed left on our left is from *Cazan* on the left wilderness by the saide riuer land on the left North and North into the countrey all destroyed in companies with consumed of the neuer seen in the maineth now by a long time together

The *Magapans* called *U* led a *Spurle*, *C* having his *Boys* men the pasture like times for their wives, children at the least four or their cattell for *Magapans*, wherein shoie of cattell, whichinke mares mill and murder. *C* some, and disabling more of the same, of their strength.

All the countrey the towne of *Astracan*, and liue for the with the Emperour the great *Turke*.

The 16. day of June from the riuer *Cazan* 21. day, and passing it, and runneth the came vnto a great hill, where the lust in the *Magapans*, whose root

Thus going for two miles in times past the *Magapans* Don, by land, which such as passed do to Mare *Euxinum*, into a plaine ground, secured by land, and is bene, by reason of Departing from *Pe* *Magapans*, pasturing,

emperor of Rus-
dominions 3
ee two of your
arar Tolmach,
to the 28. day we
gues, & passing
which the river
agues: the 4. day
ing so farward, the
leaving it also
uate, being
agues: the 4. day
came to another
oline, situate
Russia. But Len-
n, from Calsim
ceding so farward
uated at the sal-
aide Moron 23.
uogrod, on both
land of Russia,
a captain which
the number of
unition 1 and 1
Nysle Nouogrod,
we left upon our
was called Vsi-
gorod is to say,
from the Tanais.
success in his
specially against
the famous river
ourney the 23.
wee left on our
called Mordo-
nquered by the
rnessie, without
where as yet
gue from the ri-
into the soysaie
ile, situate upon
etour of Russia
ee none. It hath
was a kingdom
but 9. perss, all
at young is
ago of the fish Ca-
ugh ciuill discor-
this present time
Cazan, whom the
nce: and the same
day

M. Anth. Lenkinson. Traffiques, & Discoueries.

325

day passed by an Island called the Island of merchants, because it was woone to be a place where all merchants, as well Russes and Cazanites, as Nagayans and Crimmes, and diuers other nations did resort to keepe mart so buying and selling, but nowe it is forsaken, and standeth without any such resort thither, or at Cazan, or at any place about it, from Mosco vnto Mare Caspium.

The Island of merchants.

Thus proceeding so farward the 24. day, we passed by a goodly river called Cama, which we left on our left hand. This river falleth out of the countrey of Permia into the river of Volga, and is from Cazan 15. leagues: and the countrey lying betwixt the said Cazan and the said river Cama on the left hand of Volga is called Vachen, and the inhabitants be Gentiles, and liue in the wilderness without house or habitation: and the countrey on the other side of Volga ouer against the said river Cama is called the land of Cheiemizes, halfe Gentiles, halfe Tartars, and all the land on the left hand of the said Volga from the said river vnto Astracan, and so following the North and North-east side of the Caspian sea, to a land of the Tartars called Turkemen, is called the countrey of Mangar or Nagay, whose inhabitants are of the lawe of Mahomet, and were all destroyed in the yeere 1518, at my being at Astracan, through ciuill warres among them, accompanied with famine, pestilence, and such plagues, in such sort that in the said yeere there were consumed of the people, in one sort and another, about one hundred thousand: the like plague was neuer seen in those parts, so that the said countrey of Nagay being a countrey of great pasture, remaineth now bereft of the great contentation of the Russes, who haue had cruel warres a long time together.

The river of Cama.

Nagay Tartars

The Nagayans when they flourished, liued in this manner: they were diuided into diuers companies called Voyds, and euery Voyd had a ruler, whom they obeyed as their king, and was called a Purse. To wone or house they had none, but liued in the open fields, euery Purse or King hauing his Voyds or people about him, with their wives, children and cattell, who hauing consueth the times set upon wagons or carts, which are drawn from place to place with camels, & therein their wives, children, and all their riches, which is very little, is caried about, and euery man hath as the least four or five wives besides concubines. Use of money they haue none, but doe barter their cattell for apparell and other necessaries. Use of money they haue none, but doe barter warres, wherein they are expert, but for the most part they be pasturing people, and haue great store of cattell, which is all their riches. They eat much flesh, and especially the horse, and they drinke mares milke, wherewith they be oftentimes drunke: they are leuitious & inclined to theft and murder. Come they slowe not, neither doe eat any beere, mocking the Christians for the more of the same, allowing their great deuouring of flesh, and drinke of milke to be the increase of their strength. But now to proceed so farward to my Iourney.

Voyds.

All the countrey upon our right hand the river Volga, from ouer against the river Cama vnto the towne of Astracan, is the land of Crimme, whose inhabitants be also of the lawe of Mahomet, and liue for the most part according to the fashions of the Nagayes, hauing continual warres with the Emperour of Russia, and are vallant in the filds, hauing countenance, and support from the great Turke.

The Crimme Tartars.

The 16. day of Iune we passed by certaine fishermenes houses called Petowse twenty leagues from the river Cama, where is great fishing for sturgeon, so continuing our way vntill the 22. day, and passing by another great river called Samar, which falleth out of the aforesaid countrey and runneth through Nagay, and entrench into the salde river of Volga. The 28. day we came vnto a grea hill, where was in times past a castle made by the Crimmes, but now it is ruined, being the iust midway betwene the said Cazan and Astracan, which is 100. leagues or thereabout, in the latitude of 51. degrees 47. minutes. Upon all this thore groweth abundance of Licoris, whose root runneth within the ground like a vine.

The river of Samar.

Licoris in great plenty.

Thus going so farward the first day of Iuly we came to a place called Perouolog, so named because in times past the Tartars caried their boates from Volga vnto the river Tanais, oetherwise called Don, by land, when they would robbe such as passed downe the said Volga to Astracan, and also such as passed downe by the river Tanais, to Asou, Caffa, or any other towne situated vpon the Mare Euxinum, into which sea Tanais falleth, who hath his spring in the countrey of Rezan, out of a plaine ground. It is at this streight of Perouolog from the one river to the other two leagues by land, and is a dangerous place for thieves and robbers, but now it is not so euill as it hath bene, by reason of the Emperour of Russia his conquests.

Departing from Perouolog, hauing the wilderness on both sides, wee sawe a great heard of Nagayans, pasturing, as is abovesaid, by estimation aboue a thousand Camels drawing of carts with

C e

with houses upon them like tents, of a strange fashion, seeming to bee a farre off a towne: that word was belonging to a great Hurle called Smille, the greatest prince in all Nagay, who hath slain and gyven away all the rest, not sparing his owne brethren and children, and having peace with this Emperour of Russia he hath what he needeth, and ruleth alone: so that now the Russes live in peace with the Nagayans, who were wont to have moztall warres together.

Astracan.

Store of Sturgeons.

The 14. day of July passing by an old castle, which was Old Astracan, and leaving it upon our right hand, we arrived at New Astracan, which this Emperour of Russia conquered five yeeres past, in the yeere 1552. It is from the Mosco unto Astracan five hundred leagues, or thereabout. The towne of Astracan is situated in an Island upon a hill side, having a castle within the same, walled about with earth and timber, neither faire nor strong: The towne is also walled about with earth: the buildings and houses (except it be the capitaines lodging, and certaine other gentlemen) most base and simple. The Island is most destitute and barren of wood and pasture, and the ground will beare no coyne: the aire is there most infected, by reason (as I suppose) of much fish, and specially Sturgeon, by which onely the inhabitants live, having great scarcity of flesh and bread. They hang up their fish in their streets and houses to dry for their provision, which causeth such abundance of flies to increase there, as the like was never scene in any land, to this great plague. And at my being at the sayd Astracan, there was a great famine and plague among the people, and specially among the Tartars called Nagayans, who the same time came thither in great numbers to render themselves to the Russes their enemies, & to seeke succour at their hands, their countrey being destroyed, as I said before: but they were but ill entertained or relieved, for there died a great number of them for hunger, which lay all the Island thorough in heapes dead, and like to heaves unburied, very pitifull to behold: many of them were also sold by the Russes, and the rest were banished from the Island. At that time it had bene an easie thing to have converted that wicked Nation to the Christian faith, if the Russes themselves had bene good Christians: but how should they shew compassion unto other Nations, when they are not mercifull unto their owne? At my being there I could have bought many goodly Tartars children, if I would have had a thousand, of their owne fathers and mothers, to say, a boy or a wench for a load of bread worth five pence in England, but we had more need of victuals at that time then of any such merchandise. This Astracan is the furbest hold that this Emperour of Russia hath conquered of the Tartars towards the Caspian sea, which he keepeth very strong, sending thither every yeere provision of men, and victuals, and timber to build the castle.

There is a certaine trade of merchandise there used, but as yet so small and beggerly, that it is not woorth the making mention, and yet there come merchants thither from divers places. The chiefest commodities that the Russes bring thither are redde robes, trade sherpes skinner, wooden vessels, bybdes, and saddles, knives, and other trifles, with coyne, bacon, and other victuals. The Tartars bring thither divers kindes of wares made of cotton wolll, with divers kindes of wrought silkes: and they that come out of Persia, namely from Shamacki doe bring fowing silke, which is the courtliest that they use in Russelano, Crasko, divers kinds of pipe silkes for girdles, shutes of male, bowes, swoyds, and such like things: and some yeeres coyne, and wools, but all such things in such small quantitie, the merchants being so beggerly and poore that bring the same, that it is not woorth the writing, neither is there any hope of trade in all those parts woorth the following.

The length of the Island of Astracan.

They enter into the Caspian sea.

The blew sea.

This foresaid Island of Astracan is in length twelve leagues, and in breadth three, & lieth East and West in the latitude of forty seven degrees, nine minutes: we tarried there until the first day of August, and having bought and provided a boate in company with certaine Tartars and Persians, we laded our goods and imbarked our selves, and the same day departed I, with the said Johnfons having the whole charge of the Navigation downe the sayd river Volga, being very crooked, and full of flats toward the mouth thereof. We entered into the Caspian sea the tenth day of August at the Easterly side of the sayd river, being twentie leagues from Astracan aforesaid, in the latitude of forty six degrees, twentie seven minutes.

Volga hath severntie mouths or falls into the sea: and we having a large wind, kept the North east shore, and the eleventh day we sailed seven leagues East northead, and came unto an Island having an high hill therein, called Accurgar, a good marke in the sea. From thence East ten leagues, we fell with another Island called Bawhiata, much higher then the other. Within the two Islands to the Northwards, is a great Baie called the Blew sea. From thence we sailed East and by North ten leagues, and having a contrary wind, we came to an anchor in a shallow water, and so rid onell the fifteenth day, having a great storme at South east, being a most contrary wind, which we rid out. Then the wind came to the North, and we weyed, and set our course South east, and that day sailed eight leagues.

M. A.

Thus 110 leagues, and being 74. leagues the coast lying eth buried a be all such Pabos

The ninete

leagues, and p night unto the fi Mare Caspiu to the aforesaid shore of Russia, and are all men ing at an anchor sicke, and five came unto us a b enter into our b would have, and Gentlemen, banis of other Christian swered, that there will not be alive) in delitie of that Tare booz, and the wind being the 20. of Au

The 21. day w two Islands at the land trended No springing out of the

The 22. 23. and 2

The 25. the wind lowe land, and there worth in a great Bay, ter, being much troubl all 20. leagues, and fi 20. leagues, the furthe

The 27. day we cro point of land: & being e berdy we should have p pozt called Mangulla be Caspian sea, is 22. leagues, were 22. leagues being very low pure flesh people, where

But yet here we sent ell for our good vlsage a lops sea side to a place deys journey. Our n

Therefore the 3. day were genely entertaine found them to be very p being, making of beggin there to be, and for and to conclude wic with other provision being but 400. maighs, and to the Prince of g the severall things, and c

Thus proceeding forwarde, the 17. day we lost sight of land, and the same day sailed thirtie leagues, and the 18. day twentie leagues winning East, and fell with a land called Baughicara, being 74. leagues from the mouth of the said Volga, in the latitude of 46. degrees 54. minutes, the coast lying nearest East and by South, and West and by North. At the point of this land lieth buried a holy Prophet, as the Tartars call him, of their law, where great deuotion is vsed of all such Paganeths as doe passe th at war.

Englishes being 74. leagues from Volga.

The nineteenth day the winde being West, and we winding East southeast, we sailed tenne leagues, and passed by a great river called Iaie, which hath his spring in the lande of Siberia, nigh into the foresaid river Cama, and runneth through the lande of Nagay, falling into this Mare Caspium. And by this river one wayes tourney is a Towne called Serachick, subiect to the foresaid Tartar prince called Musie Smille, which is now in friendship with the Emperour of Russia. Here is no trade of merchandize vsed, for that the people haue no vse of money, and are all men of warre, and pastures of cattel, and giuen much to theft and murder. Thus being at an anker against this river Iaie, and all our men being on land, sauing I, who lay soe came into vs a boate with thirtie men well armed and appointed, who boorded vs, and began to enter into our barke, and our holy Tartar called Azy. perceiuing that, asked them what they would haue, and withall made a prayer: with that these rousers staid, declaring that they were Gentlemen, banished from their countrey, and out of tuing, & came to see if there were any Russes or other Christians (which they call Caphars) in our barke: To whom this Azi most stoutly answered, that there were none, auowing the same by great othes of their lawe, (which lightly they will not breake) whom the rousers beleue, and vpon his wordes departed. And so through the desire of that Tartar, I with all my company and goods were saued, (which lightly they boord, and the wind faire, we departed from that place, and winding East and Southeast, that day being the 20. of August sailed 16. leagues.

Iaie river.

Serachick.

The 21. day we passed ouer a Bay of 6. leagues broad, and fell with a Cape of land, hauing two Islands at the Southeast part thereof, being a good marke in the sea: & doubling that Cape springing out of the land of Colmack.

The 22. 23. and 24. dayes, we were at an anker.

The 25. the winde came faire, and we sailed that day 20. leagues, and passed by an Island of some land, and there about are many flars and sands: and to the Northward of this Island there groweth in a great Bay, but we set off from this Island, and winned South to come into drepe water, being much troubled with shorles & flats, and ran that course 10. leagues, then East Southward 20. leagues, and fel with the maine land, being full of copped hills, and passing along the coast the further we sailed, the higher was the land.

The Countrey of Colmack.

The 27. day we crossed ouer a Bay, the South shore being the higher land, and fel with a high point of land: & being ouerthwart the Cape, there rose such a storme at the East, that we thought verily we should haue perished: this storme continued 3. dayes. From this Cape we passed to the Caspian sea, is 12. leagues within a Bay: but we being soe journeyed and rolled with this storme, were diuised vnto another land on the other side the Bay, ouerthwart the sayd Manguslaue being very lowe land, and a place as well so; the ill commoditie of the haue, as of those people, where neuer barke nor boate had before arrived, nor liked of vs.

The port of Manguslaue.

But yet here we sent certaine of our men to land to talke with the gouernour and people, as well for our good vsage at their handes, as also for prouision of camels to carry our goods from the sayd sea side to a place called Sellyzure, being from the place of our landing sixe and twentie dayes tourney. Our messengers returned with comfortable wordes and faire promises of all things.

Wherefore the 3. day of September 1558. we discharged our barke, and I with my company were gently entertained of the Prince & of his people. But before our departure from thence, I found them to be very bad and brutish people, for they ceased not daily to molest vs, either by being, stealing or begging, raising the price of horse and camels, & victuals, double that it was wont to be, and forced vs to buy the water that we did drinke: which caused vs to hasten on, and to conclude with them as well for the hire of camels, as for the price of such as mee they brought, with other prouision, according to their owne demaund: As that for every camels laage, being but 400. maigh of ours, we agreed to giue three blodes of Russia, and four wooden shoules, and to the Prince or gouernour of the sayd people, one ninth, and two seuenms: Namely, the seuerall things, and twise seuen seuerall things: for money they vse none.

They got an land.

The countrey
of Mangulaue,

And thus being ready, the fourtieth of September we departed from that place, being a Caravan of a thousand camels. And having travailed five dayes journey, we came to another Princes Dominion, and upon the way there came unto vs certaine Tartars on horseback, being well armed, and seruantes unto the saide Prince called Timor Solan, gouernour of the saide countrey of Mangulaue, where wee meant to haue arriued and discharged our baggage, if the great Oxus aforesayd had not discomfited. These aforesaid Tartars sayd our Caravan in the name of their Prince, and opened our wares, and tooke such things as they thought best for their saide prince without money, but for such things as they tooke from me, which was a ninth (after much dissension) I ridde vnto the same Prince, and presented my selfe before him, requesting his fauour, and passport to traualle through his countrey, and not to be robbed nor spoiled of his people: which request he graunted me, and intreated me very gently, commending me to be well furnished with flesh and mares milke: for bread they vse none, nor other drinke except water: but money he had none to giue me for such things as he tooke of mee, which might be of value in Russe money, fiftene rubbles, but he gaue me his letter, and a horse woorth seven rubbles. And so I departed from him being glad that I was gone: for he was reported to be a very tyrant, and if I had not gone vnto him, I vnderstoode his commaundement was, that I should haue been robbed and destroyed.

This Solan liued in the fieldes without Castle or towne, and sat, at my being with him in a little rounde house made of reedes covered without with felt, and within with Carpets. There was with him the great Petropolitian of that wilde Countrey, eldest son of the people as the Bishop of Rome is in most parts of Europe, with diuers other of his chiefe men. The Solan with this Petropolitian demanded of me many questions, as wel touching our kingdoms, lawes, and Religion, as also the cause of my comming into those parts, with my further pretence. To whom I answered concerning all things, as vnto me seemed best, which they tooke in good part. So leauing leaue I departed and ouertooke our Caravan, and proceeded on our journey, and traualled 20. dayes in the wilderness from the sea side without seeing towne or habitation, carrying provision of victuals with vs for the same time, and were diuised by necessity to eat one of my camels: and a horse for our part, as other did the likes: and during the said 20. dayes we found no water, but such as we drue out of old deepe welles, being very brackish and salt, and yet sometimes passed for 20. dayes without the same. And the 3. day of October ensuing, we came vnto a gulfe of the Caspian sea againe, where we found the water very fresh and sweete: at this gulfe the customes of the king of Turkeman meet vs, who took custome of euery 25. one, and 7. ninches for the same king and his brethren, which being received they departed, and we remained there a day after to refresh our selues.

Note that in times past there did fall into this gulfe the great riuer Oxus, which hath his Springs in the mountains of Parapomis in India, & now cometh not so far, but falleth into another riuer called Ardock, which runneth toward the North, & consumeth himself in the ground passing vnder ground about 500. miles, and then issueth out againe and falleth into the lake of Kichay.

We hauing refreshed our selues at the foresaide gulfe, departed thence the 4. day of October, and the seuen day arriued at a castle called Sellizure, where a king called Azim Can, remained with 3. other of his brethren, and the 9. day I was commaunded to come before his presence, to whom I deliuered the Emperors letters of Russia: and I also gaue him a present of a ninth, who entertained me very well, and caused me to eat in his presence as his brethren did, feasting with flesh of a wilde horse, and mares milke without bread. And the next day he sent for me againe, and asked of me diuers questions, as wel touching the affaires of the Emperour of Russia, as our countrey and lawes, to which I answered as I thought good: so that at my departure he gaue me his letters of safe conduct.

This Castle of Sellizure is situated vpon an high hill, where the King called the Can, whose palace is built of earth very basely, and not strong: the people are but poore, and haue no trade of marchandise among them. The South part of this Castle is lowe lande, but very full, where grow many good fruites, among which there is one called a Dynie, of a great bignesse and full of mofsture, which the people doe eat after meate in steade of drinke. Also there grow another fruit called a Carbulc of the bignesse of a great cucumber, yellow and sweete as sugar: also a certaine coine called Iegur, whose stalk is much like a sugar cane, and as high, and graine like rice, which groweth at the toppe of the cane like a cluster of grapes: the water that serueth all that countrey is drawn by ditches out of the riuer Oxus, vnto the great distance of the said riuer, for which cause it falleth not into the Caspian sea as it hath done in times past, and in short time all that land is like to be destroyed, and to become a wilderness so long as the riuer of Oxus shal faile.

20. dayes tra-
uaile in the
wildernesse,
with scantie
of victuals.

Another gulfe
of the Caspian
sea.

Will. de Rubri-
cis describeth
this riuer of
Ardock, fol. 4.

Sellizure, or
Shayzore.

Letters of safe
conduct.

M. J.

The 14. we arriued at camels and be-
uile, the king
from a towne
the Persians,
this king also
of Russia, and
gaue me his let-
ter.

This city of
marion 4. miles
distant from
wonne and lost
merchants in it,
chiefest commodi-
ties of the coun-
ty.

gences is called
be the number
beeing found in
counting, and
them, by reason
of the
of Sulan hath
and when there
are
he be not fla-
the liueth in the
Caravans of
his life, vntill
the Caspian sea
the people liue
ther in great
these both came
of 80. pound in
their harness, and
the harness are
selues and sope
horse with his
death, whereon
The Tartars ne-
uer
any other plea-
sure, they haue
not the vse of
necessaries, they
barter their
commodities for
they be great
deuotion, espe-
cially the boy-
les of the Ma-
garians, & they
in their countrey,
vntill you
except it be in
their journey
and more, &
the men, and
so also in
in great com-
pany.

The 26. day of
December
riuer Oxus, 1000
miles, & the
peep custome.
This ri-
uer is
pulling about
1000. miles
before declared.

The 7. of
December fol-
lowed
Solon, who
of his brother
the king.

The 14. day of the moneth we departed from this Cattle of Sillizure, and the 16. of the same
we arrived at a citie called Virgence, where we paid custome as wel for our own heads, as for our
camels and horses. And hauing there fouintured one moneth, according the time of our further tra-
uile, the king of that countrey called Aly Solan, brother to the soynamed Azyr Can, returned
from a towne called Corasan, within the borders of the soynamed Azyr Can, returned
the Persians, with whom he and the rest of the kings of Persia, which he lately had conquered from
this king also I was commanded to come, to whom I likewise presented the Emperors letters
of Russia, and he entertained me wel, and demanded of me diuers questions, and at my departure
gave me his letters of safconduct.

This city or towne of Vrgence standeth in a plaine ground, with walles of the earth, by estimation 4. miles about it. The buildings within it are also of earth, but ruined and out of good order: it hath one long street that is covered aboue, which is the place of their market. It hath bene a famous towne and lost 4. times within 7. yeeres by ciuill warres, by means whereof there are but few rich commodities there sold are such wares as come from Boghar, and out of Persia, but the greatest quantity not worth the writing. All the land from the Caspian sea to this Citie of Vrgence is called the land of Turckeman, & is subiect to the said Azim Can, and his hezzen which hee hath in his owne Dominion, and where by dwelleth the chiefe king called Can, but he is little obeyed, by reason that they are begotten of diuers women, and commonly they are the children of Sulian hath at the least 4. or 5. wives, besides yong maidens and boyes, liuing most viciously: so when there are warres betwixt these hezzen, (as they are selde without) he that is overcome if he be not slaine, flieth to the field with such companie of men as will followe him; and he that is overcome and others as they be able to euertaine, continuing in this sort his triuall life, until such time as he may get power and aide to inuade some of his hezzen againe. A from the Caspian sea vnto the Castle of Sellizure aforesaid, and all the Countreys about the said Sea, in great allie companies with their catel, whereof they haue great Cows, remouing from one place to another both tame and wilde. Their sheepe are of great stature with great buttocks, waggling 60. pound in weight. There are many wild horses which the Tartars doe many times kill with bows, and eat in this order.

The country
of Turkmen.

The hunters are lured to leape upon the beasts neckes or heads, which with chafing of themselves and the beating of the hawkes are thro: then the hunter following his game doeth slay the beast with his arrow or sword. In all this labour there groweth no grasse, but a certaine bush of the Tattars never ride withoute chaine.

The Caracass never ride without their bow, arrowes, and sword, although it be on halloking, or
at any other pleasure, and they are good archers both on horsebacke, and on foote also. These peo-
ple have not the use of golde, silver, or any other copre, but when they lacke apparell or other ne-
cessaries, they barter their cattell for the same. Bread they have none, for they neither sill nor
ow: they be great devourers of flesh, which they cut in small peeces, & eat it wth handes most grea-
tly, & especially the horse flesh. Their chiefest drinke is mares milke sowped, as I have said before
of the Bagarians, & they wilbe drunk with the same. They have no rivers nor places of water in
their countrey, until you come to the foresaid gulf, distant from the place of our landing 20. dayes
journey, except it be in wells, the water wherof is saltish, & yet distant the one from the other two
miles, them, and so also when they pray. As for science they have none, but live most idly, sitting
in great companies in the fields, devising, and talking most vainely.
The 26. day of November, we departed from the place

The river of
Ardoek falls
into the lake
of Kny.

The 26. day of November, we departed from the town of Vergence, and having cruised by
 the city of Ouz, 300 mile, we passed over another great river called Ardock, where we paid a cer-
 tain petty custom. This river Ardock is great, and very swift, falling out of the forestain Ouz,
 falling about 1000. mile to the Northward, it then consumeth it selfe in the ground, and pas-
 seth the same about 500. mile, issueth out againe, and falleth into the lake of Kiley, as I
 before declared.

The 7. of December following.

The cattle of Kaji

On the 7th of December following, we arrived at a Castle called Kair, subject to a Soltan called
 Soltan, who wanted to have robbed all the Christians in the Caravan, had it not been for
 one of his brother the king of Vigence, as we were informed by one of his chiefest counsellors.

who willed vs to make him a present, which he tooke, and deliuered besides we paid at the said ca-
stle for custome, of euery camel one red robe of Russia, besides petty gifts to his officers.

Thus proceeding in our iourney, the tenth day at night being at rest, and our watch set, there
came vnto vs foure horsemen, which we tooke as spies, from whom wee tooke their weapons and
bound them, and hauing well examined them, they confessed that they had seene the tract of many
horsemen, and no footing of camels, & gaue vs to vnderstand, that there were rousers and cheuen
abzades: for there trauaile few people that are true and peaceable in that Countrey, but in companie
of Carauan, where there be many camels: and horsefettering now without camels were to be
doubted. Whereupon we consulted & determined amongst our selues, and sent a poste to the said
Solan of Kaye, who immediately came himselfe with 300. men, and mette these foure suspected
men which we sent vnto him, and examined them so stricly, and threatened them in such sort,
that they confessed, there was a banished Prince with 40. men 3. daies iourney forward, who lay
in wait to destroy vs, if he could, and that they themselves were of his companie.

The Solan therefore vnderstanding, that the cheuen were not many, appointed vs 80. men
well armed with a Captaine to goe with vs, and conduct vs in our way. And the Solan himselfe
returned backe againe, taking the foure cheuen with him. These souldiers traualled with vs two
dayes, consuming much of our victuals. And the 3. day in the morning very early they set out
before our Carauan, and hauing ranged the wilderness for the space of foure houres, they mette
vs, comming towards vs as fast as their horse could runne, and declared that they had founde the
tract of horses not farre from vs, perceiving well that we should meete with enemies, and there-
fore willed vs to appoint our selues for them, and asked vs what wee would giue them to conduct
vs further, or els they would returne. To whom we offered as we thought good, but they re-
fused our offer, and would haue more, and so we not agreeing they departed from vs, and went back
to their Solan, who (as we coniectured) was pyle to the conspiracie. But they being gone,
certaine Tartars of our companie called holy men, (because they had bene at Mecha) called
the whole Carauan to stay, and would make their prayers, and deuine howe wee should prosper
in our iourney and whether we should meet with any ill company or not. To which, our whole Ca-
rauan did assent. And they tooke certaine sheepe and killed them, and tooke the blade bones of the
same, and first sodde them, and then burnt them, and tooke of the blood of the said sheepe, and mix-
gled it with the powder of the said bones, and wrote certaine Characters with the said blood,
vnto many other ceremonies and wordes, and by the same deuined and found, that wee should
meet with enemies and cheuen (to our great trouble) but should overcome them, to which for-
certie, I and my companie gaue no credit, but we found it true: for within 3. houres after that the
souldiers departed from vs, which was the 15. day of December, in the morning, we espied first
off diuers horsemen which made towards vs, and we (perceiving them to be rousers) gathered our
selues together, being 40. of vs well appointed, and able to fight, and we made our prayers to-
gether euery one after his lawe, professing to liue and die one with another, and so prepared our
selues. When the cheuen were nigh vnto vs, we perceiued them to be in number 37. men well
armed, and appointed with bowes, arrows and dows, and the captaine a prince banished from
his Countrey. They willed vs to perdue our selues, or els to be slaine, but wee desired them
wherewith they shotte at vs all at once, and wee at them very hotly, and so continued our fight
from morning vntill two houres within night, diuers men, horses and camels being wounded on
slaine on both partes: and had it not bene for 4. handgummes which I and my companie had, we
shd. we had bene overcome and destroyed: for the cheuen were better armed, and were more
ter archers then we; But after wee had slaine diuers of their men and horses with our gun-
nes, they durst not approach so nigh, which caused them to come to a truce with vs vntill the next morn-
ing, which we accepted, and encamped our selues vpon a hill, and made the fashion of a Castle,
walling it about with packes of wares, and laye our horses and camels within the same to keepe
them from the shotte of arrows: and the cheuen also incamped within an arrowe shotte of vs,
but they were betwixt vs and the water, which was to our great discomfort: because neither
nay our camels had drinke in 2. dayes before.

Thus keeping good watch, when halfe the night was spent, the Prince of the cheuen sent
a messenger halfe way vnto vs, requiring to talke with our Captaine, in their tongue, the Car-
uan Bashia, who answered the messenger. I will not depart from my companie to goe into
halfe way to talke with thee: but if that the Prince with all his companie will sweare by
Lawe to keepe the truce, then will I send a man to talke with thee, or els not. Which the Prince
vnderstanding as vnto himselfe as his companie, swore so fast that we might all heare
then we sent one of our companie (reputed a holy man) to talke with the same messenger.
The message was pronounced aloude in this order, Our Prince demandeth of the Caruan Bashia

Distinction by
society.

Handgummes be-
re profitable.

and of all
deliuer into
are among
quietness,
ouertome p
Christians in
although he
cheuenings,
(contrary to
token of victo
would betray
anything wh
and wounded
selues to batte
of vs: And so I
like to looke, &
(that is to say)
ceiued, the the
forward. And
dayes without
horses and came
again of such li
wildern of san
wel, the water be
uals, being forc
In this wilder
rest, there came
from the Caruan
mels, and departe
Ons againe, and
that we had gotten
couered vs, we kno
So vpon the 23.
This Boghar is sit
with diuers gares in
and the 3. part is for
by themselves. The
so many houses, tem
backhouses to stric
long to reherse. T
water there of is ma
cially in them that be
the flesh and
arguons being mu
every day the commu
And yet it is there for
is found to beache that
there are officers appo
sary if he haue either
spicke the drinke, and p
true but by the breath
the their hands.

There is a Spectopo-
is more obeyed then
we, as he did by this kin
of the said Spectopolit
a Prince that loued
This Countrey of B
an tongue, but yet now

and of all you that be Bullarmans, (that is to say circumcised) not desiring your bloods, that you
 deliver into his hands as many Caphars, that is, unbelievers (meaning vs the Christians) as
 are among you with their goods, and in so doing, hee will suffer you to depart with your goods in
 quietnesse, and on the contrary, you shall be handled with no lesse cruelty then the Caphars, as hee
 overcome you, as he doubteth not. To the which our Caravan Basha answered, that he had no
 Christians in his company, nor other Strangers, but two Turkes which were of their Law, and
 although hee had, hee would rather die then deliver them, and that we were not astride of his
 chicanings, and that should he know when day appeared. And so passing in talke, the theuees
 (conceary to their orbe) carried our holy man away to their dwynce, crying with a lowde voyce in
 token of victorie, Olo, olo. Wherewith we were much discomfited, fearing that that holy man
 would betray vs: but he being cruelly handled and much examined, would not to death confesse
 anything which was to vs prejudiciall, neither touching vs, nor yet what men they had slaine
 and wounded of ours the day before. When the night was spent, in the morning we prepared our
 selves to battell againe which the theuees perceiving, required to fall to agreement & asked much
 of vs: And to be briefe, the most part of our companie being loth to go to battell againe, and having
 little to loofe, & safeduct to passe, we were compelled to agree, and to give the theuees 20 mints
 (that is to say) 2000000 of several things, and a camell to carry away the same, which being re-
 ceived, the theuees departed into the wilderness to their old habitation, and we went on our way
 toward. And that night came to the river Oxus, where we refreshed our selves, having bene 3.
 dayes without water and dyinke, and carried there all the next day, making mery with our slaine
 horses and camels, and then departed from that place, & for feare of incuring with the said theuees
 againe of such like, we left the high way which went along the said river, and passed through a
 wilderness of sand, and travelled 4 dayes in the same before we came to water: and then came to a
 well, the water being very brackish, and we then as before were in neede of water, and of other be-
 neals, being forced to kill our horses and camels to eat.

Russarman
Caphar.

The river of
Oxus.

A wilderness
of sand.

In this wilderness also we had almost fallen into the hands of theuees: for one night being at
 rest, there came certaine Scouts, and carried away certaine of our men which lay a little separated
 from the Caravan, where with there was a great house anderie, and we immediatly laden our ca-
 vons againe, and then we feared nothing being walled with the said river: & whether it was so
 that we had gotten the water, or for that the same theuees were far from vs when the Scouts dis-
 covered vs, we knowe not, but we escaped that danger.

So upon the 23 day of December we arrived at the citie of Boghar in the lande of Bactria,
 with divers gates into the same: it is divided into 4 quarters, whereof two parts are the kings,
 and the 3 part is for Merchants and markets, and every science hath their dwelling and mart
 by themselves. The Citie is very great, and the houses for the most part of earth, but there are al-
 so many houses, temples and monuments of stone sumptuously builded, and gilt, and specially
 long to rejoyce. There is a little river running through the middelt of the said Citie, but the
 water there of is most unholysome, for it breedeth sometimes in men that dyinke thereof, and espe-
 cially in them that be not there bozne, a woyme of an ell long, which lyeth commonly in the legge
 between the fleshe and the skinne, and is plucked out about the ancle with great art and cunning, the
 persons being much practised therein, and if thee bryake in plucking out, the partie dieth, and
 every day the cometh out about an inch, which is rolled up, and so wo:kerh till the be all out,
 And yet it is there forbidden to dyinke any other thing then water, & mares milke, and whosoever
 is found to bryake that law is whipped and beaten most cruelly through the open market, and
 there are officers appointed for the same, who have authoritie to goe into any mans house, to
 spoile the dyinke, and punish the masters of the house most cruelly, yea, and many times if they per-
 ceive but by the breath of a man that he hath dyunked, without further examination he shall loose ef-
 fect their hands.

Boghar a citie
of Bactria.

A strange
woyme in
mens leggs.

There is a Metropolitane in this Boghar, who causeth this law to be so strictly kept: and
 is more obeyed then the king, and will depose the king, and place another at his will and plea-
 sure, as he did by this king that reigned at our being there, and his predecessor: by the means
 of the said Metropolitane: for he becomen him, and in the night slew him in his chamber, who
 was a prince that loved all Christians well.
 This Countrey of Boghar was sometime subject to the Persians, & do now speake the Per-
 sian tongue, but yet now it is a kingdom of it selfe, and hath most cruel warres continually with
 the

the sayd Persians about their religion, although they be all Spahomerists. One occasion of their wars is, for that the Persians will not cut the haire of their upper lips, as the Bogharians and all other Tartars doe, which they accompt great shame, and call them Caphars, that is, unbelievers, as they doe the Christians.

The king of Boghar hath no great power or riches, his revenues are but small, and he is most maintained by the Citie: for he taketh the tenth parte of all things that are there sold, as well by the craftsmen as by the merchants, to the great impoverishment of the people, whom he keepeth in great subjection, and when he lacketh money, he sendeth his officers to the shopmen of the sayd Spahomers to take their wares to pay his debts, and will have credite of force, as the like he was to pay me certaine money that he owed me for 19 pieces of Kersley. Their money is silver and copper, for gold there is none current: they have but one piece of silver, & that is worth 12 pence English, and the copper money are called Booles, and 120 of them goeth the value of the said 12 pence, and is moze common payment then the silver, which the king causeth to rise and fall to his most advantage every other moneth, and sometimes twice a moneth, not caring to oppress his people, for that he lotheth not to reigne about 12 or 13 yeeres before he be either slaine or by his way, to the great destruction of the countrey and merchants.

The 26 day of the moneth I was comming when he came before the sayd king, to whom I presented the Emperour of Russia his letters. Both were much pleased with most gentely, and caused us to eat in his presence, and divers times he sent for me, and deulled with me familiarly in his secret chamber, as well of the power of the Emperour, and the great Turke, as also of our countries, laws, and religion, and caused us to shote in handgunes before him, and did himselfe practise the use thereof. But after all this great intertainment before my departure he shewed himselfe a very Tartar: for he went to the wars obtaining me money, and saw me not pay before his departure. And although indeede he gave order for the same, yet was I never paid, and forced to receive part, and to take wares as payment for the rest contrary to my expectation; but of a begger better payment I could not have, and glad I was so to be paid and dispatched.

But yet I must needs praise & commend this barbarous king, who immediately after my arrival at Boghar, having understood our trouble with the theures, sent 100 men well armed, and gave them great charge not to returne before they had either slaine or taken the sayd theures. Who according to their commission ranged the wilderness in such sorte, that they met with the said company of theures, and slew part, and part fledde, and foure they tooke and brought unto the king, and two of them were soye wounded in our skirmish with our gunnes: And after the king had sent for me to come to see them, he caused them all 4 to be hanged at his palace gate, because they were Gentlemen, to the example of others. And of such goods as were gotten againe, I had part bestowed me, and this good justice I found at his hands.

There is verely great resort of Spahomers to this Citie of Boghar, which traualle in great Caravans from the countries thereabout adjoining, as India, Persia, Balgh, Russia, with divers others, and in times past from Cathay, when there was passage: but these Spahomers are so hungry and poore, and bying so litle quantitie of wares, bying 1200 or 1300 pences to sell the same, that there is no hope of any good trade there to be had worth the following.

The chiefe commodities that are brought thither out of these soylays Countreys, are the following.

The Indians doe bying fine whites, which the Tartars do all roll about their heads, & all other kinds of whites, which serve for apparell made of cocoon wooll and crashe, but golde, silver, precious stones, and spices they bying none. I enquired and perceived that all such trade passeth to the Deccan sea, and the bottomes where all such things are gotten are in the subjection of the Portugals. The Indians carie from Boghar againe wrought silkes, red bydes, flannes, and boyles, which such like, but of Kersley and other cloth, they make litle accompt. I offered to barter with Spahomers of these Countreys, which came from the furthest parts of India, even from the countrey of Bengala, & the river Ganges, to give them Kersley for their commodities, but they would not barter for such commodities as cloth.

The Persians do bying thither Crashe, wollen cloth, linen cloth, divers kinds of wrought pike silkes, Argomacks, with such like, and doe carie from thence redde bydes with other flanne wares, and flannes, which are of divers countreys, but cloth they will be none, for that they bying thither their selues, and is brought unto them as I have inquired from Aleppo in Syria, and the parts of Turkie. The Russes doe carie unto Boghar, redde bydes, the best finnes, wollen cloth of divers soyes, wooden vessels, bybles, saddles, with such like, and doe carie away from thence divers kinds of wares made of cotton wooll, divers kinds of shawls, and such other things, but there is but small traffike. From the Countreys of Cathay are brought thither in time of peace,

The countrey of Boghar.

Spahomers of India.

Spahomers of Persia.

Spahomers of Russia.

and when I was at Boghar, I saw cause why the coming thither in the way by well Strickle Caskar, and they which these a barbe almost subduer to passe by the countrey.

To speake thought it best time, and having thereto adjoined king being gone, politan himselfe good and meete, Persia, and to have by thereof, as well like the trades of others occasions: the kings of Tartary with others & the journey from Boghar, who is great, which I should have better for cloth, and unto me, were not come backe againe departed out of the parted when we did doies after our departure Boghar, the king be like chanceth in those there aboute thier or.

The 25 of March, rousers, which lay in of the cues, which we there were in my countrey of Boghar, the king of Boghar, the And after having caried making ready of our moe Ambassadors in our then unto the Emperour Ambassadors were also promised most faithfully to depart from the letters: for they somer time before.

The 27 of April, we came in, but neither a and spurne a cable our se wooll, and rigged our barbe being desiring to me from Afracan, with Tartars and thus being in a trading Spahomers our selues, ha

Marchant & Co.
of Cathay.

Tashkent 8. CaG.
CaG.

He returned
the right of
March 1559.

The King of
Balke, or Balgh.

The 23 of Aprill, we arrived at the Mare Caspium againe, where we found our barke which we came in, but neither anchor, cable, corke, nor saile: neuerthelesse wee brought heime with vs, and spurne a cable our selues, with the rest of our carkling, and made vs a saile of cloth of cotton, and rigged our barke as well as we could, but boate or anchor we had none. In the meane time being deuising to make an anchor of wood of a cart wheele, there arrived a barke, which came from Astracan, with Tartars and Russes, which had 3 anchors, with whom I agreed for the one: and thus being in a readines, we set saile and departed, I, and the two Iohnsons being Master and Partners our selues, having in our barke the said fixe ambassadoys, and 25 Russes, which had bene

1988

bene slaves a long time in Tartaria, nor ever had before my coming, libertie, or meanes to get home, and these slaves served to rowe when neede was. Thus sailing sometimes along the coast, and sometimes out of sight of land, the 23. day of May, having a contrary winde, wee came to an anchor, being thre leagues from the shore, & there rose a foze stoyne, which continued 44. houres, and our cable being of our owne spinning, broke, and lost our anchor, and being off a lee shoare, and having no boate to helpe us, we boyed our saile, and bare roomer with the said shoare, looking for perfect death: but as God should for vs, we came into a creeke full of oze, and so saved our selves with our barke, & lived in great discomfort for a time. For although we should have escaped with our lives the danger of the sea, yet if our barke had perished, we knew we should have bene, either destroyed, or taken slaves by the people of that Countrey, who live wildely in the field, like beasts, without house or habitation. Thus when the stoyne was leasd, we went out of the creeke againe: and having set the land with our Compasse, and taken certaine markes of the same, during the time of the tempest, whilst we ridde at our anchor, we went directly to the place where we rode, with our barke againe, and found our anchor which wee lost: whereat the Tartars much marvelled, how we did it. While we were in the creeke, we made an anchor of wood of cart wheeles, which we had in our barke, which we threw away, when wee had found out upon anchor againe. Within two dayes after, there arose another great stoyne, at the Nozthead, and we lay a while, being driven far into the sea, and had much ado to keepe our barke from sinking, the billow was so great: but at the last, having faire weather, we tooke the Sunne, and knowing how the land lay from us, we set with the River Yaik, according to our desire, whereof the Tartars were very glad, fearing that we should have bene driven to the coast of Persia, whose people were unto them great enemies.

The English
Bay in the
Caspian sea.

Note, that during the time of our Navigation, wee set by the redde crosse of S. George in our flagges, for honour of the Christians, which I suppose was never seene in the Caspian sea before. We passed in this voyage divers fortunes: notwithstanding the 28. of May we arrived in safetie at Astracan, and there remained till the tenth of June following, as well to prepare our small boates, to goe up against the streame of Volga, with our goods, as also for the compane of the Ambassadors of Tartarie, committed unto me, to bee brought to the presence of the Emperour of Russia.

A notable de-
scription of the
Caspian sea.

This Caspian sea (to say some thing of it) is in length about two hundred leagues, and in breadth 150. without any issue to other seas: to the East part whereof, ioyneith the great desert countrey of the Tartars, called Turkemen: to the West, the countreys of the Chyrcazes, the mountaines of Caucasus, and the Mare Euxinum, which is from the said Caspian Sea a hundred leagues. To the North is the river Volga, and the land of Nagay, and to the South part ioyneith the countreys of Media and Persia. This sea is fresh water in many places, and in other places as salt as our great Ocean. It hath many goodly Rivers falling into it, and it auoideth not it selfe except it be under ground. The notable Rivers that fall into it, are first the great River of Volga, called in the Tartar tongue Edell, which springeth out of a lake in a marish or plaine ground, not farre from the Citie of Nouogrode in Russia, and it is from the spring to the Sea, about two thousand English miles. It hath divers other goodly Rivers falling into it, as out of Siberia, Yaik, and Yeam: Also out of the mountaines of Caucasus, the Rivers of Cyrus and Arach, and divers others.

As touching the trade of Shamaky in Media and Tebris, with other townes in Persia, I have enquired, and do well understand, that it is even like to the trades of Tartaria, that is little vnterrance, and small profit: and I have bene advertised that the chiefe trade of Persia is into Syria, and so transported into the Levant sea. The fewe shippes upon the Caspian Seas, the want of Sparr and poxe Townes, the pouertie of the people, and the ice, maketh that trade naught.

At Astracan there were merchants of Shamaky, with whom I offered to barter, and to give them herles for their wares, but they would not, saying, they had them as good cheape in their countrey, as I offered them, which was like rubbish for a herle, that I asked: and while I was at Boghar, there were brought thither out of Persia, Cloath, and divers commodities of our countreys, which were sold as good cheape, as I might sell ours.

The tenth day of June, we departed from Astracan towards the Mosco, having an hundred gunners in our company at the Emperours charges, for the safe conduct of the Tartar Ambassadors and me. And the eight and twentieth day of July following, wee arrived at the citie of Cazan, having bene upon the way from Astracan thither, six weekes and more, without any resting of vicuals: for in all that way there is no habitation.

The seventh of August following, wee departed from Cazan, and transported our goods by water, as farre as the citie of Morun, and then by land: so that the second of September, we ar-

riued at the citie of Mosco, and presented by accepted. Also I brought all the Russe slaves: I meane by a Duke, bene. And thus I returned your wares were sent: 21. day I came to you, and then having scene you in safetie, I am glad to hear you will make no longer, and I

The

Mosco in
Nouogro
Nouogro
Colmog
Vologhd
Cazan
Oweke
African
At the em
pian sea.
Mangula
pian sea.
Vrgence in
tourney fr
Boghar a ci
dayes tour

Certaine notes gather
with M. Anthony Jenkinson
the wayes of Russia to C

The first note given by
of Boghar, which are also
from African being the

From Astracan
with wares, is
from Serachi
from Vrgen
from Boghar to
from Cascar to Cathaya, 30. d

By the same parti

From Astracan to Turkemen
from Turkemen by lande
common burthens, is 20. dayes
from Vrgenhe to Boghar, 15. d
me. At this Citie of Boghar is
of those parts and the Cathayan
so the toll there is the 40. part to

ruined at the cite of Mosco, and the fourth day I came before the Emperours Paletie, killed his hand, and presented him a white Cowes eale of Cathay, and a dumme of Tartaria, which he well accepted. Also I brought before him all the Ambassadors that were committed to my charge, with all the Russe slaves: and the day I dined in his Paleties presence, and at dinner, his Grace sent me mee by a Duke, & asked me divers questions touching the lands and countries where I had bene. And thus I remained at the Mosco about your affaires, untill the 17. day of February that your wares were sent downe: and then having licence of the Emperours Paletie to depart, the 21. day I came to your house at Vologhda, and there remained untill the breaking up of the yee: and then having seene all your goods laden into your boates, I departed with the same, and arrived withall in safetie at Colmogro the 9. of May 1560. And here I cease for this time, and entreating you to beare with this my large discourse, which by reason of the varietie of matter, I could make no shorter, and I beseech God to prosper all your attempts,

His arrival at Mosco the 2. of September.

The latitudes of certaine principall places in Russia, and other Regions.

	Deg.	Min.
Mosco in	55	10
Nouogrod the great	58	16
Nouogrod the lesse	56	33
Colmogro	64	10
Vologhda	59	11
Cazan	55	33
Oweke	51	40
Astracan	47	9
At the entrance into the Caspian sea.	46	72
Manguslaue beyond the Caspian sea.	45	00
Vrgence in Tartary 20. dayes journey frō the Caspian sea.	42	18
Boghar a cite in Tartary 20. dayes journey frō Vrgence.	39	10

Certaine notes gathered by Richard Johnson (which was at Boghar with M. Anthony Jenkinson) of the reports of Russes and other strangers, of the wayes of Russia to Cathaya, and of divers and strange people.

The first note given by one named Samichoke a Tartarian subiect to the Prince of Boghar, which are also Tartars bordering vpon Kazilash or Persia, declaring the way from Astracan, being the furthest part of Russia, to Cathaya as foloweth.

- 1. From Astracan to Serachick by land, traualling by leasure as Merchants use with wares, is 10. dayes journey.
- 2. From Serachick to a towne named Vrgenshe, 15. dayes.
- 3. From Vrgenshe to Boghar, 15. dayes.
- 4. From Boghar to Cascar, 30. dayes.
- 5. From Cascar to Cathaya, 30. dayes journey.

* At Vrgenshe.

By the same partie a note of another way more sure to traueile, as he reporteth.

- 1. From Astracan to Turkenen by the Caspian sea, 10. dayes with barkes.
- 2. From Turkenen by lande specially with Camels, bearing the weight of 15. pooders for the common burthens, is 10. dayes to Vrgenshe.
- 3. From Vrgenshe to Boghar, 15. dayes.
- 4. At this cite of Boghar is the marte or meeting place betweene the Turkes and nations of those parts and the Cathayans.
- 5. At the toll there is the 40. part to be payed of Merchandizes of goods.

From

From thence to Cascar is one moneths journey, and from Cascar (being the frontier of the great Can, hauing many towines and fortes by the way) is also a moneths trauel for merchants by land to Cathay.

Further, as he hath heard (not hauing bene in those parts himselfe) ships may saile from the dominions of Cathaia vnto India. But of other waies, or how the seas lie by any coast he knoweth not.

The instruction of another Tartarian merchant dwelling in the cilde of Boghar, as he hath learned by other his countrey men which haue bene there.

First from Astracan by sea to Serachick is 15 daies: affirming also that a man may trauel the other way before written by Turkenen.

From Serachick to Vrgence is 15 daies.

From Vrgence to Boghar also 15 daies.

Note. These last 30 daies journey is without habitation of houses: therefore travellers longe in their owne tenes, carrying with them to eat, their seuerall provisions: and for dyuells there be many wells of faire water at euall baiting places not farre distant dayly to be had.

From Boghar to Taskent easie traouelling with goods, is 14 daies by land.

From Taskent to Occient 7 daies.

From Occient to Cascar 20 daies. This Cascar is the head towne or citie of another piaz, lying betwene Boghar and Cathaia, called Reshit can.

From Cascar to Sowchick 30 daies journey, which Sowchick is the first border of Cathay.

From Sowchick to Camchick 5 daies journey, and from Camchick to Cathay is a moneth journey, all the way being inhabited, temperate, & wel replenished with innumerable fruits, & the chiefe citie in that whole land is called Cambalu, which is yet 10 daies journey from Cathay.

Beyond this land of Cathay, which they praise to be still & unspeakably rich, is the countrey named in the Tartarian tongue Cara-calmack inhabited with blacke people: but in Cathay, the most part therof stretching to the sunne rising, are people white and of faire complexion. Their religion also, as the Tartars repute, is christian, or after the maner of Christians, and their language peculiar, differing from the Tartarian tongue.

There are no great and furious Beares in traouelling through the waies aforesaid, but beares white and blacke. And because that woods are not of such quantitie there, as in these parts of Russia, but in maner rather scant then plentiful, as is reported, the Beares breed not that way, but some other beastes (as namely one in Russia called Barse) are in those coasts. This Barse appeareth by a skinned of one seene here to sell, to be nere so great as a big lion spoken very faire and therefore we here take it to be a Leopard or Tiger.

Note that 20 daies journey from Cathay is a countrey named Angrim, where liueth the best that beareth the best Hushe, & the principell therof is cut out of the knee of the male. The people are tawny, & so that the men are not bearded nor differ in complexion from women, they haue certaine tokens of iron, that is to say: the men weare the sunne round like a bosse vpon their shoulders, and women on their ppiule parts. Their feeding is raw flesh in the same land, and in another called Tikay: the Duke there is called Can. The way to ship the fure, and it is 34 daies journey from great Cathay, and in the way lyeth the beautifull people, eating with knives of gold, and are called Comorom, and the land of small people is neerer the Mosko then Cathay.

The instructions of one of Permia, who reporteth he had bene at Cathay the way before written, and also another way neere the sea coast, as foloweth, which note was sent out of Russia from Giles Holmes.

First from the prouince of Dwina is knownen the way to Pechora, and from Pechora trauelling with Dens or harts, is fixe daies journey by land, and in the Sommer as much by water to the riuer of Ob.

The Ob is a riuer full of flats, the mouth of it is 70. Russle miles out. And from thence the daies journey on the right hand is a place called Chorno-lesle, to say in English, blacke water, and from thence neere hand is a people called Pechey-cony, wearing their haire by his best maner on after the Irish fashion.

From Pechey-cony to Iouk Calmachey three daies journey, & from thence to Chorno-lesle three daies tending to the South-east.

These two people are of the Tartarian faith, and tributaries to the great Can.

Wherofa but
six daies jour-
ney by land of
water from
Ob.

Angrim.

Mandeville
speaketh here-
of.

St. Mitay.

Small people.

Here follow c
on the riuer Ob,
word by word, a
Towine, who by



Don
stern
calles
eate o
vnto
all. An
and so doe they eate ther
noses, but they be swife
apprell is Sables and
Item, on the sam
another kinde of Samoe
lure in the sea, and doe ne
Item beyond these
is flesh and fish, and their
call Pielts) and Quares Chi

The relation of C
mus, and other
the chiefe citie of Per
liffe had passed before

From Tauria to Soltania
from Soltania to Casb
from Casbin to Veremi.
from Veremi to Eri.
from Eri to Boghara.
from Boghar to Samarchan
from Samarchand to Calca
from Calcar to Actiu.

Which Campon is a citie
the greatest quantitie of Rub

A letter of Sigismund K
reigne to Elizabeth the

Sigismund Augustus by the
Prussia, Massouia, and Sam
Elizabeth by the same grace of
her and hisfwoman, greeting
to be that you haue receiued r
to them both. First to the one,
harue, which if it had bene don
might haue answered your
Dilettie to those matters o
first, so much as your Diletti
goods, and of the names o
commandement of your Dile
we acknowledge great ple
being to common agreeme
the opinion touching your Dile
Forasmuch as we like wis
request for your subjects, to
ing to your Dilettie in contentio

Her

The way to Cathaya. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

337

Here follow certaine countreys of the Samoeds which dwell vpon the river Ob, and vpon the sea coasts beyond the same, taken out of the Russe tongue word by word, and traauiled by a Russe borne in Colmogro, whose name was *Phedro* *Tonigin*, who by report, was slaine in his second voyage in one of the said countreys.

Vpon the East part beyond the countrey of Vgori, the river Ob is the most Westernmost part thereof. Upon the sea coast dwell Samoeds, and their countrey is called *Molgomsy*, whose meate is flesh of Deers, or Hares, and Fish, and doe eat one another sometimes among themselves. And if any *Wharhautes* come vnto them, then they kill one of their children for their sakes to feast them withall. And if a *Wharhaute* chance to die with them, they burie him nor, but cate him, and so doe they cate them of their owne countrey likewise. They be euill of sight, and haue small noses, but they be swift and shoote very well, and they traauile on Harts and on bogges, and haue small apparell is Sables and Harts skinner. They haue no *Wharhaute* but Sables onely. Item, on the same coast of quarter beyond those people, and by the sea side also doth dwell another kinde of Samoeds in like manner, hauing another language. One moneth in the yeere they liue in the sea, and doe not come or dwell on the dry land for that moneth. Item beyond these people, on the sea coast, there is another kinde of Samoeds, their meate is fish and fish, and their merchandise are Sables, white and blacke Foxes (which be Rusles call *Picles*) and Harts skinner. and *Sawus* skinner.

Travelling on boge & harts.

The relation of *Chaggi Memet* a Persian Marchant, to *Baptista Ramusius*, and other notable citizens of *Venice*, touching the way from *Tanris* the chiefe citie of *Persia*, to *Campion* a citie of *Cathay* ouer land: in which voyage he himselfe had passed before with the Carauans.

From Tauris to Soltania.	6	} dayes tourney.	From Acfu to Cuchi.	20	} dayes tourney.
From Soltania to Casbin.	4		From Cuchi to Chialis.	10	
From Casbin to Veremi.	6		From Chialis to Turfon.	10	
From Veremi to Eri.	15		From Turfon to Camul.	13	
From Eri to Boghara.	20		From Camul to Succuir.	15	
From Boghara to Samarchand.	5		From Succuir to Gaura.	5	
From Samarchand to Calcar.	25		From Gaura to Campion.	6	
From Calcar to Acfu.	20				

Which *Campion* is a citie of the Empire of *Cathay* in the ppointure of *Tangut*, from whence the greatest quantitie of *Rubarbe* cometh.

A letter of *Sigismund* king of *Polonia*, writen in the 39. yeere of his reigne to *Elizabeth* the Queenes most excellent Maiestie of *England*. 1559

Sigismundus Augustus by the grace of God king of *Polonia*, great Duke of *Lituania*, *Russia*, *Prussia*, *Masouia*, and *Samogitia*, &c. Lord and heire &c. to the most Noble Princess *Ladie Elizabeth* by the same grace of God Queene of *England*, *France* and *Ireland*, &c. our deare sister and kinsewoman, greeting and increase of all felicitie. Whereas your Maiestie writeth to vs that you haue receiued two of our letters, wee haue looked that you should haue answered to them both. First to the one, in which we increased more at large in forbidding the voyage to *Narus*, which if it had bene done, we had bene unburdened of so often writing of one matter: and might haue answered your Maiestie much better to the purpose. Now we thus answer to your Maiestie to those matters of the which you writte to vs the 3. of October from *Windfore*. First, so much as your Maiestie at the request of our letters had discharged the arrest of *Danish* goods, and of the names of the men of *Danske* our subjects, which was set vpon them by commandment of your Maiestie: and also haue restored the olde and ancient libertie of trafike, we acknowledge great pleasure done vnto vs in the same: and also thinke it to be done according to common agreement made in times past. Neither were we euer at any time of any opinion touching your Maiestie, but that wee should obtaine right and reason at your request for your subjects, so farre as shall stand with iustice, yet neither will we pcede any thing to your Maiestie in contention of loue, beneuolence, and mutuall office, but that we iudge every

The trade to Narus forbidden by the King of Poland.

The ancient enmities of the King of England & Prussia.

The olde libertie of traffike.

The means of increate of the power of the Polacke.

every good turne of yours to be recompensed by vs to the uttermost: and that shall we prouoe as occasion shall serue. Therefore we shall commaund the aresles, if any be made by our subiects (as it is vnknewen to vs) of merchants goods and English names to be discharged: and shall conserue the olde libertie of traffike, and all other things which shall serue to appertene to neyghbourhood betwene vs and your Maiesty: so that none of the subiects of your Maiesty hereafter presume to vse the navigation to the Narue forbidden by vs, and full of danger not onely to our parts, but also to the open destruction of all Christians and liberrall nations. The which as we haue wrytten afore, so now we wryte againe to your Maiesty that we know and feele of a furye, the wofcouite, enemy to all libertie vnder the heauens, daily to grow mightier by the increate of such things as be brought to the Narue, while not onely wares but also weapons be retorted vnknewen to him, and artificers & arts be brought vnto him: by meane whereof he maketh himselfe strong to vanquish all others. Which things, as long as this voyage to Narue is vsed, can not be stopp'd. And we perfectly know your Maiesty can not be ignorant how great the crueltie is of the said enemy, of what force he is, what tyranny he vseth on his subiects, and in what terrible sort they be vnder him. We seemed hitherto to vanquish him onely in this, that he was ruer of artes, and ignorant of policies. If so be that this navigation to the Narue continue, what shall be vnknewen to him? Therefore we that know best, and ioyder vpon him, do admonish other Christian princes in time, that they do not betray their dignitie, libertie and life of them and their subiects to a most barbarous and cruell enemy, as we can no lesse do by the buy of a Christian prince. For now we do forsee, except other princes take this admonition, the wofcouite puffed vpon pride with those things that be brought to the Narue, and made moze perfect in warlike affaires with engines of warre and shippes, will make assault this way on Christianisme, to stay or make bound all that shall withstand him: which God defend. With which our admonition diuers princes already content themselves, and abstaine from the Narue. The others that will not abstaine from the sayd voyage shall be impeached by our naule, and incurre the danger of losse of life, libertie, wife and childzen. Now therefore if the subiects of your Maiesty will forbear this voyage to Narue, there shall be nothing denied to them of vs. Let your Maiesty well weigh and consider the reasons & occasions of our stopping of shippes going to the Narue. In which stopping, our subiects of Danske be in no fault, as we haue already wrytten to your Maiesty, neither vse we their countie in the same. In any other matter, if there be any fault in them against your Maiesty or your subiects, we will gladly do iustice vpon them, that your Maiesty may well vnderstand that we be carefull of you and your subiects. Neither thinke we it meet to take Hamburg, or any other place to iudge the matter: for we haue our counsell & iudgement seat at Rie, where your Maiesty or your subiects, or any other, shall haue iustice administered vnto them, with whom we haue an ancient league and amity. And thus much we haue thought good to let your Maiesty vnderstand. Fare ye well. Dated the first of December the 39 of our reigne.

Sigismundus Augustus Rex.

The Queenes Maiesties Letters to the Emperour of Russia, requesting licence, and safe conduct for M. Anthony Fenkinson to passe thorow his kingdome of Russia, into Persia, to the Great Sophie. 1561.



LIZABETHA Dei gratia, Angliz, &c. Regina, serenissimo & potentissimo principi, D. Iohanni Basiluich, Imperatori totius Russiæ, Magno Duci, &c. Salutem, & omnium rerum prosperarum felicissimum incrementum. Potentissime Princeps, res est nobis ad memorandum longè gratissima, illa vestra Maiestatis erga nos & nostros amicitia. Quæ tempore felicissime memoriæ Regis Edwardi sexti, fratris nostri charissimi, Dei benignitate incepta, deinceps verò vestra non solum singulæ humanitate alia ac fortis, sed incredibili etiam bonitate aucta acque cumulata, nunc autem omnibus beneuolentiæ vestræ officijs sic firmata est acque constabillata, ut iam minimè dubitemus, quin ea ad laudem Dei, ad gloriam vtriusque nostrum, ad publicam nostrorum vtriusque regnorum immensam commoditatem, ad priuam singulorum vtriusque subditorum optatam spem, certamque felicitatem multis sit deinceps seculis duratura. Et quamquam hæc vestra bonitas, plenissime sese effundit in omnes nostros subditos, qui sese in vllas imperij vestri partes vnquam receperunt, (pro qua ingentes nostras, ut par est, gratias vestræ Maiestati habemus, vestrisque vicissim in omni opportunitate loco libentissime feremus) tamen abundantia benignitatis vestræ, in accipiendo, & tanque humaniter tractando nostrum fidelem & per dilectum famulum Antonium Fenkinson, qui has perferet literas, seorsum nobis gratissima existit. Nam præterquam quod dicitur

M. An

lia non locis
permisissu sold
faciendi ratio
lum, varijs ex
Imperiali figill
villo periculo,
stram commer
mina hæc vestra
tis nostris vniu
nobis in mente
opportunam co
ge beneuolentiæ
lecto famulo, vtr
quin quem fauor
ostendit, eundem
nignè velit denu
cedere eldem nos
tenore, autoritat
mercibus, facin
mickia, atque pro
& inde recedere qu
Maiestas hæc omni
largiter hinc famulo
sua eodem nostrum
pibus literis suis dign
Imperatori, in cuius
undi peregrina com
Confidimus legi
vestra bonitate, pro
cepta etiam vestra
tis, &c. Datum in c
nostri Iesu Christi 15

Elizabeth by the gr
Emperie Prince, &c.
increate in all prosp
our subiects is very
God in the reigne of our
maue, through your not
reuerible goodnesse increa
of your beneuolence
some shall endure to t
our Realmes on either
parts. And although the
we haue at any time repai
your Maiesties right be
whensoever opportunitie
and also in entreteining
of these our letters, is v
of your Empire, be
enjoyed much libertie
of the same our welbelou
soyren Princes, vnto w
vnto him happily, accor
and also archb
pour duplicated beneuol

lis non loca vestri Imperij & magna libertate, & summa humanitate vestre clementiæ non
permisso solum, sed iussu etiam frueretur, vestra bonitas tamen non in hac domestica benignè
faciendi ratione conqueuit, sed perlibenter & vltro eundem nostrum hunc per dilectum famu-
lum, varijs exteris principibus, quoquoersus ipse iter suum instituerat, literis suis, suo magno
Imperiali sigillo consignatis commendauit. Quod beneficium illi vbius gentium, & viam sine
vilo periculo, propter publicam vestram fidem, & adueniunt cum magno fauore, propter ve-
stram commendationem, operæ quidem & sollicitæ communiuit. Itaq; quemadmodum ge-
nibus hæc vestra beneuolentia, cum illa generalis exhibita in vestro regno negotiantibus subdi-
nobis in mente non solum ad gratam perpetuamque memoriam, perfideli nostro famulo,
opportunitam compensationem, firmissimè defixa est: ita, petimus a vestra Maiestate vt vtram-
que beneuolentiæ vestre rationem & communem nostris vniuersis, & priuatis huic nostro di-
lecto famulo, vtriusque deinceps dignetur tueri, atq; conseruare. Neque nos quidem diffidimus,
quin quem fauorem vestra Maiestas antea sua sponte Antonio Lenkinson, tum quidem priuato
ostendit, eundem nunc vestro rogatu Antonio in nostrum iam familiarum cooptato be-
cedere eidem nostro famulo, literas suas commetas ad vestra Maiestate, vt dignetur iterum con-
mercibus, farcinis, equis, & bonis suis vniuersis, inuehendis euehendisque, per vestra regna, do-
miciilia, atque provincias, proficisci, ire, transire, redire, abire, & itic morari, quamdiu placuerit,
& inde recedere quandocunque illi aut suis libitum fuerit. Et sic uti morari, quamdiu placuerit,
Maiestas hæc omnia humanitatis grata officia, pro immensa bonitate suæ naturæ benignè &
largiter huic famulo nostro sit concessura, ita valde optamus, adeoque non dubitamus, quin vestra
literis eidem nostro famulo, vnâ cum omnibus suis familiaribus, ac bonis, exteris alijs princi-
bus literis suis dignetur commendare, præsertim verò atque scorsim Magno Sophi, Persarum
Imperatoris, in cuius etiam imperia & ditiones idem noster famulus grata possimè experi-
undi peregrina commercia, proficisci vnâ cum suis constituit.

Confidimus igitur hæc omnia nostra postulata pro famuli spe, pro nostra expectatione, pro
vestra bonitate, pro nostrorum vtriusque subditorum commoditate, fausta illi, grata nobis, ac-
cepta etiam vestra Maiestati, & nostris vtriusque perquam vtilia euasura. Deus vestra Maiesta-
tis Iesu Christi 1611, regnorum verò nostrorum tertio.

us Rex.

Elizabeth by the grace of God, Queene of England, &c. to the right excellent, and right mightie Prince, Lord Iohn Basilwich, Emperour of all Russia, &c. greeting, and most happy increase in all prosperitie. Right mightie Prince, the amitie of your Maestie towards vs, and our Subjects is very pleasant to vs to be remembred, which being begun by the goodnesse of God in the reigne of our most deare brother of happie memorie, King Edward the first, and afterwards, through your not onely singular humanitie, fed, and nourished, but also through your incredible goodnesse increased, and augmented, is now firmes and established, with all manner of comforte. And although that this your goodnesse hath bene abundantly extended to all our Subjects, your Maestie right heartie thanks, and will againe shew the like vnto yours, right willingly, and also in entreteining our faithfull and beloued seruante, Anthonie Lenkinson, the byrnes of your Empire, be not onely by your Maesties sufferance, but also by your commendement, enioyed much libertie, and great friendship, your goodnesse not ceasing in this your doctore, vnto whom he was intreated by your letters to take with your Imperiall sale, to comfort him happily, according to his best, both passage without all perill, though your not onely duplicating your beniuolences, both that one generally exhibited to all our Subjects frequent

ting that your Realine, and also this the other extened apart to this our right faithfull seruante Anthonie Ienkinson, is right assuredly fastened in our remembrance, not onely for a perpetuall and gratefull memorie, but also for a mutuall and meet compensation: so we desire of your Maestie, to vouchsafe from henceforth to conserue and continue the geminate disposition of your beneuolences, both generally to all our subiects, and also puiately to this our beloued seruante. And we doubt not, but that at our request, you will againe graciously shew vnto the same Anthonie, now admitted into our seruice, the like fauor as heretofore your Maestie of your meere motion did exhibite vnto him, being then a puiate person. And therefore we desire your Maestie effectually to grant to the same our seruante, your letters of licence, passport, & safe conduct, by which the tenour, authoritie, and helpe whereof, he, his seruants, together with their merchandises, baggages, horses, and goods whatsoeuer, that shall be brought in, or carried out, by or to any of all your empire, kingdom, dominions, and prouinces, may surely and freely iourney, go, passe, repasse, depart, and there tary so long as it shall please him: and from thence returne whensoever it shall seeme good to him or his: and as we doubt not, but that your Maestie in the goodnesse of your nature will graciously and abundantly grant all these good offices of humanity, so we do heartily desire that your Maestie will likewise vouchsafe to commend the same our seruante, together with all his goods, by your letters to vther fozen Princes, and specially to the great Sophy, and Emperour of Persia, into whose empire and iurisdictiones the same our seruante purposeth with his by to iourney, chiefly for trial of fozen merchandises.

We therefore doe trust that all these our demands shall tend, and haue effect, according to the hope of our seruante, and to our expectation, for your wealth, for the commoditie of both our subiects, lucky to him, thankefull to vs, acceptable to your Maestie, and very profitable to our subiects on either part. God grant vnto your Maestie long and happy felicity in earth, and dwelling in heauen. Dated in our famous city of London the 25 day of the month of April, in the yere of the creation of the world 5523, and of our Lord God Iesus Christ 1561, and of our reigne the thirde.

The Quenes Maiesties Letters to the Great Sophy of Persia, sent by M. Anthonie Ienkinson. 1561.



ELIZABETHA Dei gratia, Angliz, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Regina, &c. Potentissimo & inuictissimo Principi, Magno Sophi Persarum, Medorum, Parthorum, Hircanorum, Carmanorum, Margianorum, populorum eis & vltra Tygrim fluuium, & omnium intra Mare Caspium, & Persicum sinum nationum atque Gentium Imperatori saluem, & rerum prosperarum felicissimum incrementum. Summi Dei benignitate factum est, vt quas gentes, non solum immensa terrarum spacia, & insuperabiles marium vastitates, sed & ipsæ etiam cælorum cardines longissime disiunxerunt, ipsæ tamen terarum bono & mentis certa cogitata, & humanitatis grata officia, & intelligentiæ munus multa commoda facili inter se & opportunè possint communicare. Itaque cum perdidicimus, & fidelis noster famulus Antonius Ienkinson, qui has literas nostras perfert, cum bona reuerentia, & gratia nostra hoc Angliæ nostræ regnum excedere, & in Persiam vsque, vestraque alias ditiones Dei benignitate penetrare constituerit, hoc illius institutum perlaudabile quidem grato nostro fauore prosequi, & promouere studuimus: id quod eo nos libentius facimus, quoniam hoc eius propositum ex honesto studio commercij constituendi possimum cum vestris subditis, alijsque peregrinis hominibus, ad vestra regna consulentibus, omnino oportum sit. Propterea nobis & scribendum ad vestram Maiestatem, ab eaque petendum eduximus, vt nostro rogatu dignetur concedere huic famulo nostro Antonio Ienkinson licentiam publicæ fidei, & salui conductus, quarum autoritate atque præsidio, licitum, liberumque illi, vnâ cum suis familiaribus, seruis, sarcinis, mercibus & bonis vniuersis, per vestra regna, milicia, ditiones, atque prouincias liberè, & sine impedimento proficisci, ire, transire, redire, abire, & istic morari, quamdiu placuerit, & inde recedere, quandoque illi vel suis lubum fuerit. Si hæc sancta hospitalitatis iura & dulcia communis humanitatis officia, inter nos, & vestra regna, nostrisque subditos libenter constitui, sincerè coli, & constantèr conservari queamus speramus nos, Deum Optimum Maximum effecturum, vt ab his paruis initijs, grandiorum rum momenta, nobis ad magna ornamenta atque decus, nostris ad summa commoda & vsus, aliquando sint oriutura: siquidem, vt non terra, non mare, non cælum, ad nos longè sperandos, quam diuina ratio communis humanitatis, & mutæ beneuolentiæ ad nos missimè coniungendos pius visum habuisse videatur. Deus saluem omnem, & felicem

M. Anth

terris, & perpet
vbe Londino,
1561, regnorum

ELizabeth, by
capious Prin
Carmanians, Ma
men, and nations,
increase in all pop
ple, which not one
also the very quart
things good comm
only the concerned
by commodities of
ues seruante Anthon
uour, and grace, to
Persia, and other you
auance that his right
is onely grounded by
with other strangers
to your Maestie, and
want, Anthonie Ienki
it may be free and law
and goods whatsoeue
ly, and without impe
from thence to returne
siment, and sweet off
ced, and firmly obseru
Almightie God will b
shall hereafter spying, b
ble of our peoples: so it
much force to separate v
how to loyne vs strongl
earth, and perpetuall in h
of the month of April,
Iesus Christ, 1561, and

A remembrance

stants of the com
May 1561, to our tru
soto Persia, in this our

Eff you sh
low, one
wherein ar
thing old co
fire you to
Mosco, our
appoints some such p
sent, or place, as to your
into him the Quenes
we thinke it good that
licence of safe conduct for
wares and merchandise
to passe out of his dom
into Mosco with such
country that is not in his do

M. Anth. Fenkinson. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

341

terris, & perpetuam in caelis, vestra concedat Maiestati. Datum in Anglia, in celebri nostra
urbe Londino, 25 die mensis Aprilis, anno mundi, 5523, Domini ac Dei nostri Iesu Christi,
1561, regnorum vero nostrorum tertio.

The same in English.

ELizabeth, by the grace of God, Queene of England, &c. To the right mightie, and right ble-
ssed Prince, the great Sophie, Emperour of the Persians, Medes, Parthians, Hircans,
Carmanians, Margians, of the people on this side, and beyond the river of Tygris, and of all
men, and nations, betwene the Caspian sea, and the gulfes of Persia, greeting, and most happy
increase in all prosperitie. By the goodnesse of the Almighty God it is ordeined, that those peo-
ple, which not onely the huge distance of the lands, and the invincible widenesse of the seas, but
also the very quarters of the heavens do most farre separate, and let asunder, may neuertheless
through good commendation by writing, both ease, and also communicate betwene them, not
onely the conceived thoughts, or deliberations, but also communicate betwene them, not
by commodities of naturall intelligence. Therefore whereas our sayd full, and right wel be-
loved servant Anthonie Fenkinson, bearer of these our letters, is determined with our licence, fa-
vour, and grace, to passe out of this our Realme, and by Gods sufferance to traueell euen into
Persia, and other your iurisdictions: we minde truly with our good fauour, to let forthward, and
advance that his right laudable purpose: and that the more willingly, for that this his enterprise
is onely grounded vpon an honest intent, to establish trade of merchandise with your subiects, and
with other strangers traffiking in your realmes. Wherefore we haue thought good, both to write
to your Maiestie, and also to desire the same, to vouchsafe at our request, to grant to our sayd ser-
uant, Anthonie Fenkinson, good pases, and safe conduct, by means, and authoritie whereof,
it may be free and lawfull for him, together with his familiars, seruantes, carriages, merchandise,
and goods whatsoeuer, to iourney, go, passe, repasse, iurisdictions, and prouinces, free
from thence to returne whensoever he or they shall thinke good. If these holy duties of enter-
tainment, and sweet offices of naturall humanity may be willingly concluded, sincerely emba-
zed, and firmly obserued betwene vs, and our Realmes, and subiects, then we do hope that the
Almighty God will bying it to passe, that of these small beginnings, greater moments of things
shall hereafter spring, both to our furniture and honours, and also to the great commodities, and
benefit of our peoples: so it will be known that neither the earth, the seas, nor the heavens, haue so
much force to separate vs, as the goodly disposition of naturall humanity, and mutuall beneuolence
betweene vs strongly together. God grant vnto your Maiestie long and happy felicity in
earth, and perpetuall in heauen. Dated in England, in our famous citie of London, the 25 day
of the month of April, in the yere of the creation of the world, 5523, and of our Lord and God
Iesus Christ, 1561, and of our reigne the thirti.

This letter
was also writ-
ten in Hebrew,
and Italian.

A remembrance giuen by vs the Gouvernours, Consuls, and As-
sistants of the company of Merchants trading into *Russia*, the eight day of
May 1561, to our trustie friend *Anthonie Fenkinson*, at his departure towards *Russia*, and
into *Polia*, in this our eight iourney.

If you shall vnderstand that we haue laden in our good ship, called the Swal-
low, one Chest, the keyes whereof we doe here deliuer you, and also a bill,
wherein are written particularly the contents in the sayd Chest, and what euer
thing is old cost: and because, as you know, the sayd Chest is of charge, we de-
sire you to haue a speciall regard vnto it, and when God shall send you vnto
Mosco, our mindes and will is, that you, with the auaile of our Agents there,
or place, as to your good discretion shall be thought meet, and when you haue deliue-
red vnto him the Queenes Maiesties Letters, and our sayd present in the name of the Compa-
ny, we thinke it good that you make your humble suite vnto his Highnesse in our name, to ge-
ue licence of safe conduct for you and all other our seruantes or Agents at all times hereafter with
such wares and merchandise as you at this time, or they hereafter at all other times shall thinke
good to passe out of his dominions towards *Tartaria*, *Peria*, or other places, and also to re-
turne vnto *Mosco* with such wares and merchandise as you shall bying or send from any land
or country that is not in his dominions, and if it be thought good by you and our Agents there

to make composition with the emperor or his officers for some certaine customs or tale upon such goods as we shall passe th^e way, to the intent we might be the better favored, we refer it to your discretion, foreseeing that the opening of this matter be not prejudiciall unto our former priviledges.

And for the sale of our cloth of gold, plate, pearles, saphyres, and other Jewells, we put our trust and confidence in you principally to sell them for ready money, time to time for good beere, or in barter for good wares, so that you make our Agents yuiup how and for what price you sell any of the Jewellies, and also deliuer such summes of money, billes of wares, as you shall receive, unto our said Agents: thinking good further, that if you perceiue that the plate or other Jewells, or any part thereof will not be sold for profit before your departure from the Mosco, that then you cause them to be safe packed, and set order they may be sent hither againe in our shippes the next yeere, except you perceiue that there may be some profit in carrying some part of them into Persia, which we would not to be of any great value.

We haue also laden in the sayd Swallow and the other two ships 80 fardeles, containing 400
herbies, as by y^e inuice doth appaare, which fardeles be packed, & appointed to be caried into Per-
sia: neuertheless, if you chance to finde good sales for them in the Mosco, we thinke it woud be good
to sell part of them there, and to carry the lesse quantity with you, because we be uncerteine what
rent or sale you shall finde in Persia or other places where you shall come.

If you obtaine the Emperours licence to passe out of his dominions, and to returne, as aforesaid, & that you perceiue you may safely so the same, our minde is, that at such time as you thinke best and most conuenient for that purpose, you do appoint so many, and such of our hired seruantes as apperteynes as you thinke necessary & meet for our affaires, and may best be spared, to go with you in your said voyage, whereof we would one to be such as you might make profit of all your doings for diuers considerations and causes that may happen: to wch seruantes and apperteynes, we will and commaund, by this our remembrance, to be obedient vnto you as vnto vs, not onely to go with you, and to doe such things as you commaund them in your presence, but also to go vnto such countreys or places as you shall appoint them vnto, either with warres or without warres, & there to remaine and continue so long as you shall thinke good, and if they or any of them will refuse to do such things as you do appoint them, as aforesaid, or that any of them (be he hired seruant or apperteyne) do misuse himselfe by any manner of disobedience or disobedience, and will not be gentle and faire meane to be reclaimed, we will that you send him backe to the Mosco, with straight orders that he may be sent from thence hither, & let vs haue knowledge of his rull behauiour, to the intent that if he be a hired seruant we may pay him his wages according to his seruice, and if he be an apperteyne we may vse him according to his deserts.

We will also that you take with you such kirtles, scarles, and other clothes, or any other such wares of ours, as you shall thinke good, and so in the name of God to take your journey towards Persia, either by the way of Afracan and Marc Caspium, or other wise, as you shall see cause: and when God sendeth you into Persia, our minde is, that you repaite vnto the great Sophy with the Queene's Palatines letters, if he be not too farre from the Caspian Sea for you to traueile, and that you make him such a present as you shall thinke meet, and if you passe by any other kings, princes, or gouernours, before or after you come to the presence of the Sophy, like wise: make them some present, as you see cause, according to their estate and dignitie, and wishall to procure letters of pziuitage for the safe conduct of the sayd Sophy or other princes in as large and ample manner as you can, for the sure Establishing of further trade in merchandise by vs hereafter to be made, frequented and continued in those parts, not onely that we may freely sell in all places within his dominions such wares as we carry thither, but also buy and bring away any manner of wares of merchandise whatsoeuer it be, that is for our purpose and commoditie within his dominions, touching passage also for vs at all times, to passe as often as we will with our goods and merchandise manie part of India or other countreys thereunto adioyning, and in like maner to returne thither by dominions into Russia or elsewhere.

And for the sale of our kettles of other wares that you shall haue with you, as our trust is that you will doe for our most profit and commoditie: euen so we referre all vnto your good discretion, as well in the sale of our sayd goods, as to make our returne in such things as you shall thinke there, and thinke best for our profit. But if passage cannot be had into Persia by Altracan, or otherwise, the next Summer, which shalbe in the yeere 1562, then our minde is, that you pur-
to sell our kettles, & other such wares as are appointed for Persia, in the Mosco, or other the Em-
perours dominions, if you may sell them for any reasonable price, and then to employ your self
with such other of your seruants, as you shall thinke meet for the search of the passage by New
Zembla, or els you to returne for England as you thinke good. Whom we allowes, that if
you perceiue if vnderstand, that passage is like to be had into Persia the Summer following, that

The passage of Nova Zembla.

M. Antb

shalbe in the per
foresayd, at a re
yeere 1563, an
A passage into
1563, neither p
we thinke good
Polonia, or any o
then in Russia.

Thus haue we
much as we do co
order what you sh
foze knowing your
minde in the archi
that you take in ha
unto your good dis
the honour and com
name for ever.

And yet further
company, that you
at Colmogro and V
striments of apparel
up part of our goods
terrible by the reaf of
And for the better
I suppose you shall sit
crime of jugglers, whether
of such wares and by
and one ounce twelfth
know what things he
distructions thereof, as
And if you understand
Persia or other places,
money to make provision
from Colmogro thirty
Richard Johnson might
twelvepence Persia: so
how many miles it is to
out the straight and vast

A compendious

Jenkinson, from the
this same journey the
employed therein by
discouerie of Lands,
and in the third yere
claration being direct

First timber
Grauesend
ting all to
thereby fo
you haue b
the pere al
twentieth day of the same m
our worships affaires, I
the eight day of August then
truen hundred miles, where

shalbe in the yere 1563, and that you can not sell our herles in the Emperours dominions, as aforesayd, at a reasonable price: then we will rather they may be kept till the said Summer in the yere 1563, and then you to proceed forwarde upon your journey towards Persia, as aforesayd. If passage into Persia cannot be obtained the next yere, neither good hope of passage in the yere 1563, neither yet in the meane time good sale of our herles in the Emperours dominions, then we thinke good for you to see if you can practise to carry your said wares by safe conduct thowen Polonia, or any other wayes unto Constantinople, or els where you thinke better sale may be had, then in Russia.

Thus haue we giuen you to vnderstand our meanings in this intended aduenture: but forasmuch as we do consider and know, that if we should prescribe vnto you any certaine way, or direct order what you should doe, we might so worke cleane contrary to our purpose and intent: therefore knowing your appoynted wise dome with youre experience, and also your carefull and diligent minde in the achieuing and hyinging to good successe (by the helpe of almighty God) all things that you take in hand, we doe commit our whole affaires concerning the said aduenture wholly vnto your good discretion, praying God so to prosper you, as may be first for his glory, secondly for the honour and commoditie of this realme, and next for our profit, with the increase of your good name for euer.

And yet further desiring, and also most earnestly requiring you, as you tender the state of our company, that you will haue a speciall regard vnto the order of our houses & our seruants, as well at Colmogro and Vologda, as at Mosco, and to see and consider if any misorder be amongst our seruants or apprentices, whereby you thinke we might be after put to hinderance or losse of a certeine vs thereof by your letter at large, as our trust is in you.

And for the better knowledge to be had in the prices and goodnes of such things as we do partely suppose you shall finde in the partes of Russia, we doe herewith deliuer you a quantitie of certayne of such wares and vugges, as be here most vendible: also we deliuer you herewith one pound and one ounce weight in balle, to the end, that you may thereby, & with the bill of prices of wares, know what things be worth here. As for the knowledge of silks, we need not to giue you any instructions thereof, other then you know.

And if you vnderstand that any commoditie in Russia be profitable for vs to haue with you into Persia or other places, our minde is that our Agents shall either prouide it for you, or deliuer you money to make provision your selfe. And because the Russes say that in travelling Eastwardes from Colmogro thirty or forty dayes Iourney, there is the maine sea to be found, we thinke that Richard Iohnson might in play his time that way by land, and to be at Mosco some enough to goe how many miles it is towards the East from Colmogro, it will be a great helpe for vs to finde out the straight and passage that way, if any be there to be had.

William Gerard. }
Thomas Lodge. }
Gouernors. }
William Merike.
Blaise Sanders.

A compendious and briefe declaration of the journey of M. Anth. Ienkinson, from the famous citie of London into the land of Persia, passing in this same journey thorow Russia, Mosconia, and Mare Cassium, alias Hircanum, sent and employed therein by the right worshipfull Societie of the Merchants Aduenturers, for the discoverie of Lands, Islands, &c. Being begun the foureteenth day of May, Anno 1561, and in the third yere of the reigne of the Queenes Maiestie that now is: this present declaration being directed and written to the foresayd Societie.

1561

First imbarcking my selfe in a good shippe of yours, named the Swallow, at Grauesend, hauing a faire and good winde, our anker then weped, and committing all to the protection of our God, hauing in our sailing diuersitie of winde, & thereby forced to direct and obserue sumy courses (not here rehearsed, because you haue bene thereof heretofore amply informed) on the fourteenth day of Iuly, the yere aforesayd I arriued in the bay of S. Nicholas in Russia: and the sice and twentieth day of the same moneth, after conference then had with your Agents, concerning your worshipps affaires, I departed from thence, passing through the country of Vago, and on the right day of August then following, I came to Vologda, which is distant from Colmogro, where I remained foure dayes, attending the arrival of one of your boats, wherein

The Ambassadors
brought to the
Emperour of
Russia.

wherein was laden a chest of Jewels with the present, by your worship appointed for the Emperours Paletie: which being arrived, and the chest received, I therewith departed toward the city of Mosco, and came thither the twentieth day of the same month, where I immediately caused my coming to be signified unto the Secretary of the Imperiall Paletie, with the Quenes Highnesse letters addrested unto the same his Paletie, who informed the Emperour thereof. But his Highnesse having great affaires, and being at that present ready to be married unto a Lady of Chircasia, of the Spahometicall Law, commanded that no stranger, Ambassadour, nor other, should come before him for a time, with further freight charge, that during the space of thre dayes that the same Solemne feast was celebrating, the gates of the citie should be shut, and that no person, stranger or native (certeine of his household reserved) should come out of their said houses during the said triumph, the cause thereof unto this day not being known.

The first of September following, the Emperour made a great feast, whereunto were called all Ambassadors and strangers being of reputation, and having affaires: amongst whom I was one, but being willed by the Secretary first to come, and to shew him the Quenes Paleties letters, I refused so to doe, saying I would deliver the same unto the Emperours owne hands, and not otherwise: which heard, the Secretarie answered, that unless he might first peruse the said letters, I should not come into the Emperours presence, so that I was not at the feast. Nevertheless, I was advertised by a noble man that I was inquired for by the Emperours Paletie, although the cause of my absence was to his Paletie unknown. The next day following, I caused a supplication to be made, and presented it to his Highnesse owne hands, and thereby declared the cause of my coming, signified by the Quenes Paleties letters, and the answer of his said Secretary, most humbly beseeching his Grace that he would receive and accept the same his Highnesse letters, with such honour and friendship, as his letters sent by Osep Napea were received by the hands of our late Souveraigne Lady Quene Mary, or else that it would please his Highnesse to dismisst me, saying that I would not deliver the said letters but unto his owne hands, for that it is so used in our country. Thus the matter being pondered, and the effect of my supplication well digested, I was forthwith commaunded to come with the said letters before his Paletie, and so delivered the same into his owne hands (with such presents as by you were appointed) according to my request, which were graciously accepted, & the same day I dined in his Graces presence, with great entertainment. Shortly after, I desired to know whether I should be licensed to passe throught his Highnesse dominions into the land of Persia, according to the Quenes Paleties request: hereunto it was answered, that I should not passe thither, for that his Paletie meant to send an armie of men that way into the land of Chircasia, whereby my journey should be both dangerous & troublesome, and that if I should perill therein, it would be much to his Graces dishonour, but he doubted other matters, although they were not expressed. Thus having received his answer, neither to my expectation, nor yet contentation, and there remaining a good part of the yeere, having in that time solde the most part of your herles and other wares appointed for Persia, when the time of the yeere required to returne for England, I desired my passport, and paid hostes for money, which was granted: but having received my passport, ready to depart, there came unto our house there Osep Napea, who perswaded me that I should not depart the day, saying that the Emperour was not truly informed, imputing great fault to the forwardnes of the Secretary, who was not my friend: before whom coming againe the next day, and shewing the same Secretary and Osep Napea together, after many allegations and objections of things, and perceiving that I would depart, I was willing to remaine untill the Emperours Paletie were spoken with againe touching my passage: whereunto I was content, & within thre dayes after sending for me, he declared that the Emperours pleasure was, that I should not onely passe throught his dominions into Persia, but also have his Graces letters of commendations to foreign princes, with certaine his affaires committed to my charge, too long here to rehearse: whereupon I appointed my selfe for the voyage, & the 15 day of March, the yeere aforesaid, I dined againe in his Paleties presence in company of an Ambassadour of Persia and others, and receiving a cup of ozinke at his Paleties hands, I took my leave of his Highnesse, who did not onely give me letters, as aforesaid, but also committed master of importance and charge unto me, to be done when I should arrive in those countreys whither I intended to go, and having all things in readiness for the same voyage, I departed from the city of Mosco the 17 day of April 1562, by one of the great river of Volga, in company of the said Ambassadour of Persia, with whom I had great friendship and conference all the way downe the same river unto Astracan, where we arrived in health the 10 day of June.

And as touching the situations of the cities, townes, castles and countreys, as well of Russia as also of Persia adjoining to the same, whereby I passed from Mosco unto Astracan, I

Request to
passe into Per-
sia throught
Moscoule.

Osep Napea
Ambassadour
from the Em-
perour of Russia
to Q. Mary.

His Ambassa-
dour at Persia.

Astracan.

omit in this by cause
in my voyage to Be-
captaine there, where
that he not only should
to discontinue me in
an sea, until I had pay-
and having prepared
barke of his owne charge
from the sayd Astracan
twenty miles distant
Ilands being distant
sailing throught the
lica Ostria, being so
from thence sailing
teepe of Tumen, where
East forty miles, and
then, escaping most ha-
zard from the said Chir-
casians, we were not able to see
miles off in thre or four
dayes, which was called Si-
ring at two ankers a-
long groven very soye, I
had much adoe to keepe
with losse of our boat, and
of us upon the lee shore
who attended our ship
the extremities, but one
to wit, untill the weather
with faire weather, our
shippe with a little sta-
we came againe to an anch-
males, and there we conti-
nued without head, and sail-
city called Derbent in the
captaine there with a pre-
sent I departed.

This city of Derbent is
an hill called Caslow, built
thick, and was first erected
and Persians, and then be-
the same city to the Georgi-
though it be now rased, or
to the intent that the inhabi-
should not lightly flee, nor
power of the Sophy of Persia
in the latitude of 41 degree
niles, the first day of August
where my barke discharged
much for feare of rowers, who
country named Alcan Mur-
ning a present, he appointed
me newes from the king of
thing, with order that I should
the number of five and forty
miles, so that the goods la-
8 of the same month I came
called Shiruan, and there
were discharged: the ne-

omitted this by cause to rehearse, for that I heretofore have declared the same most amply unto you
in my voyage to Bosphor. Thus being arrived at Astracan, as is aforesaid, I repaired unto the
captaine there, unto whom I was commended from the Envoys of Persia, with great charge
that he not only should aid and succor me with all things needfull during my abode there, but also
to safeconduct me with 50 gunners well appointed in two stroogs of brigantines into the Caspi-
an sea, until I had passed certaine dangerous places which pirates & rovers do accustom to haune,
and having prepared my barke for the sea, the Ambassadors of Persia being before departed in a
barke of his owne the 15 day of July, the yeere aforesaid, I and my company took our voyage
from the said Astracan, and the next day at a West sunne, passed the mouth of the said river being
twenty miles distant, lying next Southeast. The 18 at a South west sunne, we passed by three
Islands being distant nine miles from the said mouth of Volga, and Southsouthwest from thence,
falling Southsouthwest the next day, at a West & by North sun we set with the land called Chal-
lica Ostria, being foure round Islands together, distant from the said three Islands forty miles.
From thence falling the said course the next day, we had sight of a land called Tuke, in the coun-
treyp of Turmen, where pirates and rovers do use: for feare of whom we hailed off into the sea due
East forty miles, and fell upon shallows out of the sight of land, and there were like to have peri-
shed, escaping most hardly: then the 22 day we had sight of a goodly Island called Charaler, di-
stant from the said Chalice Ostria an hundred miles, the winde being contrary, and a stiffe gale,
we were not able to seize it: but were forced to come to anchor to the leeward of the same stre-
tes, which was called Skafcaioy Connyk a countrey of Dahometans, about miles, and so
riding at two anchors a head, having no other provision, we lost one of them, the storme and sea be-
ing grown very soye, and thereby our barke was so full of leaks, that with continuall pumping
we had much adoe to keepe her above water, although we threw much of our goods overboard,
with losse of our boat, and our selues thereby in great danger like to have perished either in the sea
or is upon the lee shoie, where we should have fallen into the hands of those wicked infidels,
who attended our shipwacke: and surely it was very unlike that we should have escaped both
the extremities, but onely by the power and mercy of God, for the storme continued seven dayes,
with faire weather, our anchor wept, and our saile displayed, lying South, the next day halting to
the shoie with a West sunne, we were nee a land called by the inhabitants Shyrwan, and there
we came againe to an anchor, having the winde contrary, being distant from the said Charaler 50
miles, and there we continued untill the third day of August, then having a faire winde, winding
Southsouthwest, and falling threety miles, the next day at a Southeast sunne we arrived at a
city called Derbent in the king of Hircans dominion, where comming to land, and saluting the
captaine there with a present, he made to me and my company a dinner, and there taking fresh
water I departed.

Sp. Ienkinson
voyage to
Bosphor.

We passed the
Caspien sea.

The countrey
of Turmen.

The Island of
Charaler.

The land of
Shirwan.

Derbent.

re minding
to All.
and Tiphil.

Fortie one
br green
Shabran.

Alcan Murcy the
gouverneur.

This city of Derbent is an ancient towne having an olde castle therein, being situated upon
a hill called Caslow, builded all of free stone much after our building, the walles very high and
thick, and was first erected by king Alexander the great, when he warred against the Persians
and Medians, and then he made a wall of a wonderfull height and thicknesse, extending from
the same city to the Georgian, yea unto the principall city thereof named Tewlish, which wall
though it be now rased, or other wise decayed, yet the foundation remaineth, & the wall was made
to the intent that the inhabitants of that countrey then newly conquered by the said Alexander
should not lightly flee, nor his enemies easily invade. This city of Derbent being now under the
power of the Sophy of Persia, bordereth upon the sea, adioyning to the aforesaid land of Shalcal,
in the latitude of 41 degrees. From thence falling Southeast to the aforesaid land of Shalcal,
where my barke discharged: the goods layd on shoie, and there being in my tent keeping great
company named Alcan Murcy, comming vnto me, entertained me very gently, unto whom gi-
uing a present, he appointed for my safeguard forty armed men to watch & ward me, until he might
have newes from the king of Shirwan. The 12 day of the same moneth newes did come from the
king, with order that I should repaire unto him with all speed: and for expedition, as well easen
the number of slue and for to carry my goods, as also for to see me and my company were in
the 18 of the same moneth I came to a city called Shamaky, in the said countrey of Hircan, other-
wise called Shirwan, and there the king had a faire place, where my lodging being appointed, the
goods were discharged: the next day being the 19 day, I was sent for to come to the king, named
Obdolvcan,

King Obdowean.

The maiesty
of King
Obdowean.

Obdowean, who kept his court at that time in the high mountainous parts, distant from the city of Shamaki twenty miles, to avoid the injury of the heat: and the 20 day I came before his presence, who gently inquired me, and having kissed his hands, he had me to dinner, and commanded me to sit downe not farre from him. This king did sit in a very rich paullion, wrought with silke & golde, placed very pleasantly, upon a hill side, of silkeene fashon long, and five fashon broad, having before him a goodly fountaine of faire water: whereof he & his nobility did drinke, he being a prince of a meane stature, and of a fierce countenance, richly appparelled with long garments of silke, and cloth of gold, imbroided with pearles and stone: upon his head was a colpe with a sharpe end standing upwards halfe a yard long, of rich cloth of golde, wrapped about with a piece of India silke of twenty yards long, wrought with golde, and on the left side of his colpe stood a plume of feathers, set in a trunk of golde richly inameled, and set with precious stones: his eare-rings had pendants of golde a handfull long, with two great rubies of great value, set in the ends thereof: all the ground within his paullion was covered with rich carpets, & under himselfe was spread a square carpet wrought with siluer & golde, and thereupon was layd two futeable cushions. Thus the king with his nobility sitting in his paullion with his legs a crosse, and perceiving that it was painfull for me so to sit, his highnesse caused a stoele to be brought in, & did will me to sit thereupon, after my fashion. Dinner time then appproching, divers clothes were spread upon the ground, and sundry dishes served, and set in a ranke with divers kindes of meates, to the number of 140 dishes, as I numberd them, which being taken away with theseable clothes, and others of silke, a banket of fruites of sundry kindes, with other banketting meates, to the number of 150 dishes, were brought in: so that two fruices occupied 190 dishes, and at the end of the sayd dinner & banquet, the king said unto me, Quoth he queld, that is to say, Welcome: and called for a cup of water to be drawn at a fountaine, and raising thereof, did deliver me the rest, demanding how I did like the same, and whether there were so good in our countrey or not: unto whom I answered in such sorte, that he was therewith contented: then he proposed unto me sundry questions, both touching religion, and also the state of our countreys, and further questioned whether the Emperour of Almaine, the Emperour of Russia, or the great Turke, were of most power, with many other things too long here to rehearse, to whom I answered as I thought most meet. Then he demanded whether I intended to goe any further, and the cause of my coming: unto that I answered, that I was sent with letters from the Queenes most excellent Majesty of England unto the great Sophy, to intreat friendship and free passage, and for his safeconduict to be granted unto English merchants to trade into his Segniories, with the like also to be granted to his subjects, when they should come into our countreys, to the honour and wealth of both realmes, and commoditie of both their subjects, with divers other words, which I omit to rehearse. This sayd king much allowing this declaration, sayd, that he would not onely give me passage, but also men to safeconduict me unto the sayd Sophy, lying from the foresayd cite of Shamaki thirrie dayes journey, by into the land of Persia, at a castle called Casbin: so departing from the king at that time, within three dayes after, being the foure and twentieth day of August the yere aforesaid, he sent for me againe unto whom I repaired in the morning, and the king not being risen out of his bed (for his manner is, that watching in the night, and then banketting with his women, being on hundred and forty in number, he sleepech most in the day) did give one commandement that I should ride on hawking with many Gentlemen of his Court, and that they should shew me so much game and pasture as might be: which was done, and many games killed. We returned from hawking about three of the clocke at the afternoon: the king then risen, and ready to dinner, I was invited therunto, and appproching nigh to the eare-ring of his tent, and being in his sight, two gentlemen encountered me with two garments of that countrey fashion, one, downe to the ground, the one of silke, and the other of silke and golde, sent unto me from the king, and after that they caused me to put off my upper garment, being a gowne of black velvet furred with Sables, they put the sayd garments upon my backe, and so conducted me unto the king, before whom doing reverence, and kissing his hand, he commanded me to sit not farre from him, and so I dined in his presence, he at that time being very merry, and demanding of me many questions, and amongst other, how I like the manner of their hawking. Dinner so ended, I required his highnesse safeconduict for to depart towards the Sophy, who dismissing me with great favour, and appointing his Ambassadors (which returned out of Russia) and others, to safeconduict me, he gave me at my departure a fair horse with all furniture, and custome free from thence with all my goods. So I returned to Shamaki againe, where I remained untill the first of October, to provide camels, horses, and other necessities for my sayd intended journey.

The description
of Hircania.

But now before I proceed further, I purpose to write something of this countrey of Hircania, now called Shirvan, with the townes and commodities of the same. This countrey of Hircania

in times past was of great
thereof in time of antiquity
but now it is not onely
king to submit to the
dominion of the sayd So-
phie, and caused not onely
over and besides, raised
that there should be no
to be erected in the sayd
the heads of the sayd noi-
with camels, seven vases
Americans, another
opulent in the trade of n-
silke, and thither the Tur-
dians good and necessary
and smooth, cotton woooll
were all kinde of spices an-
out of East India, but in
the same: but the chiefest
ty. Not farre from the sa-
beaten downe by this So-
and was besieged by Alex-
the sayd castle was a Hun-
med Amelock Channa, who
(the possessing chancery) to
of the countrey do repose
Also in the sayd countrey
commonly reported) did
by eyes, and eares, and eyes
for kepe a passage thereby, v-
one of the Sophies, who
him in chains, but
they were of that co-
as it is by the) favoured
I referre it to further kn-
Now to returne to the dis-
the 6 of October in the yee-
and having journeyed thre
saire house, with 20 charres
with a great river called Co-
into the countrey of Hircan-
the one two ancient townes ca-
from thence issued further
which dwell in the Summe-
without resorting to re-
in caravans or troops
upon bullocks. Now pass-
house, the sixteenth day of Oc-
in an hospitall builden with
the for the succour and lodgin-
and feeding for man and horse
well buried in a faire churche
made in his life time. This
ancient cite in the pounce of
and there Alexander the gre-
journey to the Westward is
is, but not of such trade of me-
the great invasion of the Tur-
of Tauris, which the sayd E-

in times past was of great renowne, hauing many cities, towne, and castles in it: and the kings thereof in time of antiquity were of great power, able to make wars with the Sophies of Persia: but now it is not onely otherwise (so) that the cities, towne, and castles be decayed: but also the king is subject to the Sayd Sophie (although they haue their proper king) and be at the commandement of the Sayd Sophie, who conquered them not many yeeres passed, so) that the diuersity in religion, and caused not onely all the nobility & gentlemen of that countrey to be put to death, but also the poorer and belower, saied the wailles of the cities, towne, and castles of the said realme, to the intent that there should be no rebellion, and so) that the great terror, caused a turret of free stone and stines to be erected in the sayd city called Shamaki, and in a ranke of stines of the sayd turret, did see the heads of the sayd nobility and gentlemen, then executed. This city is distant from the sea side, with camels, seuen dayes iourney, but now the same being much decayed, & chiefly inhabited with Armenians, another city called Arrash, bordering upon the Georgians, is the chiefest and most opulent in the trade of merchandise, & therabouts is nourished the most abundant growth of raw silke, and thither the Turke, Syrians, and other strangers do resort and traffike. There be also diuers good and necessary commodities to be prouided & had in this sayd realme: viz. galles rough and smooth, cotton wool, alcome, and raw silke of the naturall growth of that countrey: besides, were all kinde of spices and drugges, and some other commodities, which are brought thither from out of East India, but in the little quantity, so) that they be not assured to haue vent or vertueance. For the same but the chiefest commodities be there raw silks of all sorts, whereof there is great plenty. Not farre from the sayd city of Shamaki, there was an olde castle called Gullistone, now broken downe by this Sophie, which was esteemed to be one of the strongest castles in the world, and was besieged by Alexander the great, long time before he could win it. And not farre from the sayd castle was a Runne of sumptuous building, wherein was buried a kings daughter, named Amelock Chama, who slew herself with a knife, so) that her father would haue forced her (the possessing chastity) to haue married with a king of Tauris: upon which occasion the maidens of that countrey do resort thither once euery yere to lament her death.

Danger to be
noted in this
gion,

Barbarous
crueltye

The title of
Amash of Iran.

The coun-
trey of this
countrey

The strong ca-
stle of Gullistone
broken.

Also in the sayd countrey there is an high hill called Quiquis, upon the toppe whereof is commonly reported) to dwell a great Giant, named Arneotte, hauing upon his head a crown of hyacinth, and eares and eyes like a Horse, and a taile like a Cow. It is further sayd, that he doth keep a passage there by, vntill there came an holy man, named Haucoir Ham She, a kinteman to one of the Sophies, who mounted the sayd hill, and combating with the sayd Giant, did binde him in chains, but also his woman called Lamisache, with his sonne named Asier: so) that they were of that countrey haue this holy man in great reputation, and the hill at this daye (as it is written) is honoured so ill, that no person may come nigh vnto it: but whether it be true or no, I referre it to further knowledge.

Now to returne to the discourse of the proceeding in my voyage towards the great Sophie. The 6 of October in the yeere aforesayd, I with my company departed from Shamachi aforesayd, and hauing iourneyed thre score miles, came to a towne called Yauac, wherein the king hath a faire house, with orchards and gardens well replenished with fruits of all sorts. By this towne passeth a great river called Cor, which springeth in the mountaynes of the Georgians, & passing by the countrey of Hircania aforesayd, falleth into the Caspian or Hircan sea, at a place becoming from thence success further, passing the town of Bachu, situate within the realme of Hircane, which dwell in the Summer season upon mountaynes, and in Winter they remooue into the valleys without resorting to towne, or any other habitation: and when they remooue, they doe so upon bullocks. Now passing this wilde people ten dayes iourney, comming into no towne, on the first day of October we arrived at a citie called Ardouill, where we were lodged in an hospitall builded with faire stone, and erected by this Sophies father named Ismael, for the succour and lodging of strangers and other trauellers, wherein all men haue victuals freely buried in a faire cheske, with a sumptuous sepulchre in the same, which he caused to be made in his life time. This towne Ardouill is in the latitude of eight and thirte degrees, and there Alexander the great did keepe his Court when he conquered the Persians. Four dayes iourney to the Westward is the citie Tebris in olde time called Tauris, the greatest citie in the great situation of the Turke, who hath conquered from the Sophie almost to the sayd city of Tauris, which the sayd Turke once sacked, and thereby caused the Sophie to forsake the

The towne of
Yauac.

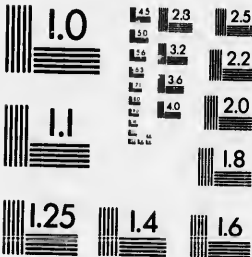
The city of
Ardouill.

The city Tebris
of Tauris.



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA

(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone

(716) 288-5989 - Fax

the same, and to keepe his court ten dayes journey from thence, at the sayd citie of Casbin.

The 21 day we departed for Ordowil aforesayd, travelling for the most part our mountaines all in the night season, and resting in the day, being destitute of wood, and therefore were forced to ble for fewell the dung of horses & camels, which we bought of the pasturing people. Thus passing ten dayes journey the yere aforesayd, the second day of November we arrived at the aforesayd citie of Casbin, where the sayd Sophie keepeth his court, and were appointed to a lodging not farre from the kings pallace, and within two dayes after the Sophie commanded a prince called Shalli Murzey, sonne to Obdolowan king of Shiuan aforesayd, to send for me to his house, who asked me in the name of the said Sophie how I did, and whether I were in health, and after did welcome me, and invited me to dinner, whereat I had great entertainment, and so from thence I returned to my lodging. The next day after I sent my interpreter unto the Sophies Secretary, declaring that I had letters directed from our most gracious Soueraigne late the Queenes most excellent Palestie of the Realme of England, unto the sayd Sophie, and that the cause of my coming was expressed in the same letters, desiring that at convenient time I might come into his Palaesties presence, who advertising the Sophie thereof, shortly after answered me that there were great affaires in hand: which being finished, I should come before his presence, willing me in the meane time to make ready my present if I had any to deliver.

At this time, the great Turkes Ambassadour arrived foure dayes before my coming, who was sent thither to conclude a perpetuall peace betwixt the same great Turke and the Sophie, and brought with him a present in golde, and faire horses with rich furnitures, and other gifts, esteemed to be worth forty thousand pound. And thereupon a peace was concluded with joyfull feasts, triumphs and solemnities, coprobated with strong othes, by their law of Alkaron, for either to observe the same, and to live alwayes after as sworn by then, ayding the one the other against all princes that should warre against them, or either of them. And upon this conclusion the Sophie caused the great Turkes sonne named Baier Soltan, a valiant Prince (who being fled from his father unto the Sophie, had remained in his Court the space of foure yeeres) to be put to death. In which time the sayd Turkes sonne had caused moztall warres betwixt the sayd Princes, and much persecuted therein: the Turke demanded therefore his sonne to be sent unto him, & the Sophie refused thereunto to consent. But now being slaine according to the Turkes will, the Sophie sent him his head for a present, not a little desired, and acceptable to the Turkes father. Discourting at my first arrivall with the king of Shiuan of sundry matters, and being intertained as hath bene before declared, the sayd king named Obdolowan, demanding whether that we of England had friendship with the Turkes or not: I answered, that we never had friendship with them, and that therefore they would not suffer us to passe through their country into the Sophie his dominions, and that there is a nation named the Venerians, not farre distant from vs, which are in great league with the sayd Turkes, who trade into his dominions with our commodities, chiefly to barter the same for raw silks, which (as we understand) come from thence: and that if it would please the sayd Sophie and other Princes of that country, to suffer our merchants to trade into those dominions, and to give us passport and safe conduct for the same, as the sayd Turke hath granted to the sayd Venerians, I doubted not but that it should grow to such a trade to the profit of them as never before had bene the like, and that they should be both furnished with our commodities, and also have utterance of theirs, although there never came Turke into their land, persuading with many other wordes for a trade to be had. The king understanding the matter liked it marvellously, saying, that he would write unto the Sophie concerning the same: as he did in very deed, assuring me that the Sophie would grant my request, and that at my returne unto him he would give me letters of safe conduct, and privileges. The Turkes Ambassadour was not then come into the land, neither any peace hoped in the concluded, but great preparation was made for warre, which was like much to have furthered my purpose, but it chanced otherwise. For the Turkes Ambassadour being arrived, and the peace concluded, the Turkish merchants there at that time present, declared to the same Ambassadour, that my coming thither (naming me by the name of Franke) would in great part destroy their trade, and that it should be good for him to persuade the Sophie not to favour me, in his Highnesse meant to observe the league and friendship with the great Turke his master, which request of the Turkish merchants the same Ambassadour earnestly preferred, and being afterwards dismissed with great honour, he departed out of the Realme with the Turkes sonne head aforesayd, and other presents.

The 20 day of November aforesayd, I was sent for to come before the sayd Sophie, whose wife called Shaw Thomas, and about the yee of the clocke at afternoone I came to the Court, in lighting from my horse at the Court gate, before my feet scurched the ground, a paine of the

pp. Fenkinjons
arrivall at the
Sophies
court 2. No-
vember,
1562.

The Turkes
Ambassadour
to the Sophie.

The Turkes
merchants
withstand pp.
Fenkinjon.

Shaw Thomas
the Sophies
name.

Sophies own
when he arised
thos I might
them Gower,
not beleue as
gate the thing
to sundry scrui
suffered to ente
his Palaestie
dies letters wit
I was, and wha
Citie of London
excellent and gr
friendship, and
minions, for to
the mutual com
omitted. He then
Latine, Italian and
tongues. There
not people of all na
with me of the State
and the great Turk
sion, not displaying
new with me much
we, of a Muselman,
believe not Mahom
sonne, who being a
he that beleuech in
phet. Dost thou bel
said he, we have now
being glad thereof di
men and others, and
gone within the said p
Thus I repaired a
of Hircan aforesayd,
father, would mee meet
with the Sophie, and g
Thus I continued
conferre with me, espec
way I intended to return
mus, and so with the Po
thap of Ormus, the Port
was advertised that the
charged mee that I had in
als, thinking them and
quidence of God this w
After this the said Sopi
that he should not ente
was a Franke, and of th
if he did other wise, an
would be a meane to break
cause he had no neede, ne
those Countreys lay farre
said great Turke for a p
wanting to send his Amba
But the king of Hircan
to his father, for to declar
that I had passed throug
the Sophie at that which h

Casbin,
art our moun-
the refos were
passuring peo-
ber we at warre
the apper to
a commande a
to send for me
to were in health
inment, and so
r but to the So-
Soureigne la-
yob Sophi, and
onnuent time
hozily after an-
also come before
to deliuer,
omitting, who
nd the Sophi,
to other gifts,
ed with imfull
of Alkaron, for
he one the other
this conclusion
nce (who being
ce peeres) to
overtwite the So-
to be sent into
ing to the Turks
to the vnnu-
nacters, and by
o, demanding
that we neuer
to their com-
not, for re-
dominions with
and) come from
ntrepe, to suffice
conduct for the
ue that it should
e that they should
ugh there neuer
to be had. This
te unto the So-
ould graunt my
ct, and pynish-
eace hoped to be
to haue further
erriuer, and the
he same Amba-
in great part
to fauour me, to
rke his matters
uerred, and being
Turks sonne

Sophies owne shoes termed in the Persian tongue Balmackes, such as hee himselfe wear- when he ariseth in the night to pray (as his maner is) were put vpon my feet, for without the same shoes I might not be suffered to tread vpon his holy ground, being a Christian, and called amongst them Gower, that is, vnbeleener, and vnleane: reckeming all to be infidels, and called amongst them the things that I brought to present his Paletie with, were deuised by sundry parcels suffered to enter into the Court, to carry before me, for none of my company or seruants might be his Paletie with such reuerence as I thought meete to be vsed, I deliuered the Queenes Paletie I was, and in what affaires I had: here to doe: Unto whom I answered that I was of the famous Citie of London within the noble Realme of England, and that I was sent thither from the most excellent and gracious soveraigne Lady Elizabeth Queene of the saide Realme for to treat of the mutual commodities of both Realmes, and to carry away theirs to the honour of both princes, omitted. He then demanded me in what language the letters were writen, I answered, in the Latine, Italian and Hebrew: well said he, we haue none within our Realme that vnderstand those tongues. Whereupon I answered that such a famous and worthy prince (as hee was) wanted not people of all nations within his large dominions to interpret the same. Then he questioned with me of the state of our Countreys, and of the power of the Emperour of Almanie, king Philip, and the great Turke, and which of them was of most power: whom I answered to his contenta- tion, not displaying the great Turke, their late concluded friendship considered. Then he reaso- ned with mee much of Religion, demanding whether I were a Gower, that is to say, an vnbele- ueuer nor Mahometan, but a Christian, What is that, said he vnto the king of the Georgians he that beleueueth in Iesus Christ, affirming him to be the Sonne of God, and the greatest Pro- phet. Dost thou beleue so, said the Sophie vnto me: Yea that I do, said I: Whou vnbeleue- ing, he was glad thereof did reuerence and went my way, being accompanied with many of his gentle- men and others, and after me followed a man with a Balaet of sand, sitting all the way that I had gone within the said palace, euen from the said Sophies sight vnto the court gate.

The Queene a letters deliue- red.

The Sophies questions.

Thus I repaired againe vnto my lodging, and the said night Shally Murzey sonne to the king of Hircan aforesaid, who fauoured me very much for that I was commended vnto him from his father, willed mee not to doubt of any thing, putting mee in hope that I should haue good successe with the Sophie, and good intertainment.

The curtesie of Shally Murzey.

Thus I continued for a time, dayly resorting vnto me diuers gentlemen sent by the Sophie to conferre with me, especially touching the affaires of the Emperour of Russia, and to know by what way I intended to returne into my countrey, either by the way that I came, or by the way of Ormus, and so with the Portingals ships, vnto whom I answered, that I durst not returne by the way of Ormus, the Portingals and wee not being friends, fully perceiving their meaning: for I was aduersed that the said Sophie meant to haue warres with the Portingals, and would haue charged mee that I had bene come for a spie to passe through his dominions vnto the said Portingals, thinking them and vs to be all one people, and calling all by the name of Franks, but by the poudence of God this was prevented.

Warres inter- ded against the Portingals.

After this the said Sophie conferred with his nobilitie and counsel concerning me, who perswa- ed that he should not entertaine me wel, neither dismisle me with letters or gifts, considering that I was a Franke, and of that nation that was enemy to the great Turke his brother, perswading that if he did other wise, and that the newes thereof should come to the knowledge of the Turke, it would be a meane to breake their new league and friendship lately concluded: dissuading further trouble he had no neede, neither that it was requisite for him to haue friendship with vnbeleue- rs, those Countreys lay farre from him, and that it was best for him to send me with my letters vnto the said great Turke for a present, which he was fully determined to haue done at some meet time, meaning to send his Ambassadour vnto the said great Turke very shortly after.

But the king of Hircan aforesaid, vnderstanding this deliberation, sent a man in post to his father, for to declare and impart the purpose vnto him, who as a gracious prince, consid- ering that I had passed through his dominions, and that I had tourneyed for a good intent, did wille the Sophie al that which he vnderstood of his said determination, & that it should not stand with his

The king of Hircan second letters to M. Ienkinson des- ualke.

his Daies his honour to doe mee any harme or displeasure, but rather to giue mee good entertainment, seeing I was come into his land of my free will, and not by constraint, and that if hee used mee euill, there would few strangers resort into his countrey, which would bee greatly vnto his hinderance, with many other perswasions: which after that the saide Sophie had well and thoroughly pondered and disgested (much esteeming the same king of Hircane, being one of the ballantest princes vnder him and his high kinsman) changed his determined purpose, and the twentieth of March 1562. he sent to me a rich garment of cloeth of golde, and so dismissed me without any harme.

Conferreth
with Indian
merchants.

M. Ienkinson
returneth.

Priviledges
obtained of
Obdowean,
which are
hereafter an-
neced.

29th Armenian
sent to M. Ien-
kinson from the
king of Georgia.

Tenruk king
of Chircassi.

During the time that I sojourned at the sayde City of Casbin, diuers merchants out of India came thither vnto mee, with whom I conferred for a trade of spices: whereunto they answered that they would bring of all sorts so much as we would haue, if they were sure of vent, whereof I did promise to assure them, so that I doubt not but that great abundance thereof may from time to time be there provided and had.

The same twentieth day of March I returned from the saide Citie of Casbin where I remained all the Winter, having sent away all my Camels before, and the thirtieth day I came to the saide Citie of Ardouil, and the fifteenth of April vnto Zauar aforeseyn, where king Obdowean was at that present, who immediately sent for me, and demanding of me many questions, declared that if it had not bene for him, I had bene utterly cast away, and sent to the great Turke for a present by the Sophie, though the euill perswasion of his wicked counsell, that the Zicities and help men were the chiefe and principal procurers and mooners thereof: but the Sophie himselfe ment mee much good at the first, and thought to haue giuen me good entertainment, and so had done, had not the peace and league so tuncd to haue bene concluded betwene them and the great Turke. Neuertheless, sayd he, the Sophie hath written vnto me to entertaine you well, and you are welcome into my Countrey, and so he intreated mee very gently, in whose Court I remained seven dayes, and obtained of him letters of safe conductes and priuiledges in your names to bee free from paying custome, which I deliuered vnto your seruants Thomas Alcocke and George Wrenne, at their departure towards Persia for your affaires: and his highnesse did giue mee two garments of silke, and so dismissed me with great fauour, sending with me his Ambassadors againe vnto the Emperour of Russia, and committed the chiefe secret of his affaires vnto me, to declare the same vnto the Emperours Daies at my returne: and thus departing the tenth day of April, I came to the City of Shamachi, and there remaining certaine dayes for pouision of Camels downe to the Sea side, I sent from thence before men to repaire my Barke, and to make her in a readinesse. And during my abode in Shamachi, there came vnto me an Armenian sent from the king of Georgia, who declared the lamentable estate of the same king, that being enclosed betwixt those two cruell tyrants and mightie princes, the said great Turke and the Sophie, he had continuall warres with them, requiring for the true of Christ and as I was a Christian, that I would send him comfort by the said Armenian, and aduise how he might send his Ambassadors to the sayd Emperour of Russia, and whether I thought that he would support him or no. and with many other wordes required me to declare his necessitie vnto the same Emperour at my returne: adding further that the said king would haue written vnto me his minde, but that hee doubted the safe passage of his messenger. Vnto whom I did likewise answer by word of mouth, not onely perswading him to sende his Ambassadors to Russia, not doubting but that hee should finde him most honourable and inclined to helpe him, but also I directed him his way how the sayde king might send by the Countrey of Chircassi, through the fauour of Tenuk king of the sayd Countrey, whose daughter the said king had lately married. And thus dismissing the saide Armenian, within two dayes after I sent Edward Cleark your seruant vnto the Citie of Arrash, where the most store of Silkes is to be had, giving him Commission to haue passed further into the Countrey of Georgia, and there to haue repaired vnto the sayde king. And after my commissions permitted, and my minde declared to haue pursued for safer conduct of the same Prince by our Merchants to trade into his dominions, and that obtained to haue returned againe with speede. The same your seruant iourneying to the sayd Citie of Arrash, and there finding certaine Merchants Armenians, which promised to goe to the sayd City of Georgia, comming to the borders thereof, was perceived by a Captaine there, that he was a Christian, and thereupon demanded whither he went, and vnderstanding that he could not passe further without great suspicion, answered that he came thither to buy Silkes, and shewed the king of Hircanes letters which hee had with him, and so returned backe againe, and the fifteenth of April came to Shamachi from whence I departed the firste of the same moneth, and the one and twentieth thereof comming to the Sea side, and finding my barke in a readinesse, I caused your goods to be laden, and there attended a faire winde.

But before
what to create
religion.

This land of
lan, Coran, Sh
Curey province
names of the chi
Shamachi, Arrash
and full of pasture
reth upon Arabia
aria, To the East
ria, and other the
mas, some to Ilin
power be great, an
ded his countreys
court. And now ha
the said Turke pur
on the mountaines
sell within his dom
him, they should no

This prince is o
well soune he keep
he possiteth a kind
Murezzali: and al
honore they chis fa
not had, curling ar
ran, and Abebeck,
renes of holy men
warres. To increas
ron, I shall not need
and of good courage,
holmes, which is m
ing in saie horses an
thought god to create
of my voyage.

My barke being re
our felers vnto God ch
gres upon the Sea in
said Alracan, untill ch
for my safegard vnto
the Captaine entertain
vnto the Citie of Mosc
bee to God, with all s
Emperours stocke an
into the Emperours c
warres which were fo
suppy colours and
viz. Crasko, and
ught vnto your barke
lately returned.

Shortly after my com
sent vnto him the app
purchasing the princes affa
it pleased him to recei
pined your good service,
wishing that I would re
me: so to whom I answer
vnto his highnesse, ackno
his grace to continue his g

But before I proceede any further to speake of my returne, I intend with your fauours some-
what to treat of the countrey of Persia, of the great Sophie, and of his countrey, lawes and
religion.

This land of Persia is great and ample, deuised into many kingdomes and prouinces, as Gil-
lan, Corasan, Shiruan, and many others hauing diuers Cities, townes and castles in the same.
Curey prouince hath his seuerall King, or Sultan, all in obedience to the great Sophie. The
names of the chiefest Cities be these: Teueris, Casbin, Keshan, Yesse, Meskie, Heirin, Ardouill,
Shamachi, Arrash with many others. The countrey for the most part toward the sea side is plaine
and full of pasture, but into the land, high, full of mountaines, and sharpe. To the South it bozde-
reth vpon Arabia and the East Ocean. To the North vpon the Caspian sea and the lands of Tar-
aria, and other the Turkes lands. All within these dominions be of the Sophies, named Shaw Tha-
mas, sonne to Ismael Sophie. This Sophie that now reigneth is nothing valiant, although his
power be great, and his people martiall: and through his pusillanimite the Turke hath much inua-
ded his countreys, even nigh vnto the Citie of Teueris, wherein hee was wont to keepe his chiefe
court. And now hauing forsaken the same, is chiefly resident at Casbin aforesaide, and alwayes as
the said Turke pursueth him, he not being able to withstand the Turke in the field, trusteth rather
in the mountaines for his safegard, then to his fortres and castles, bath caused the same to bee ra-
uaged, and to be destroyed, and his ordinarie to be molten, to the intent that his enemies pursuing
him, they should not strengthen themselves with the same.

The description
of Persia.

The chiefe Ci-
ties of Persia.

This prince is of the age of fiftie yeeres, and of a reasonable stature, hauing five children. His
best sonne he keepeth captiue in prison, for that he feareth him for his valiantnesse and actiuitie:
He professeth a kinde of hoynesse, and saith that hee is descended of the blood of Mahomet and
Murtezalli: and although these Persians be Mahometans, as the Turkes and Tartars be, yet
honour they this false fained Murtezalli, saying that hee was the chiefest disciple that Maho-
met had, cursing and chiding daily theyr other disciples that Mahomet had called Ouear, Vi-
renes, of holy men and lawes, they haue had and haue with the Turkes and Tartars mortall
warres. To increase of their religion at large, being more of lesse Mahometes lawe and the Alka-
ron, I shall not need at this present. These persons are comely and of good complexion, proude
and of good courage, esteeming themselves to be best of all nations, both for their religion and
holinesse, which is most erroneous, and also for all other their fashions. They be martial, deligh-
ting in faire hories and good harness, soone angrie, craftie and hard people. Thus much I haue
thought good to create of this nation, and now I returne to discourse the proceeding of the rest
of my voyage.

The difference
of religion.

My Iacke being ready at the Caspian sea as aforesaide, hauing a faire winde, and committing
our selues vnto God the 30. day of May 1563, we arrived at Astracan, hauing passed no lesse dayes
vpon the Sea in our returne, then wee sustained in our going forth, and remayning at the
said Astracan, vntill the tenth day of Iune, one hundred gunners being there admitted vnto mee
for my safegard vpon the riuer Volga, the fiftieth of July I arrived at the Citie of Casan, where
the Capitaine entertained me well, and so dismissing mee, I was conducted from place to place
vnto the Citie of Mosco, where I arrived the twentieth day of August 1563. in safetie, thanks
bee to God, with all such goods, merchandizes, and trelles, as I had prouided as well for the
Emperours stocke and accompt, as also of yours, all which goods I was commaunded to bring
into the Emperours treasure before it was opened, which I did, and deliuered those parcels
wares which were for his Patesties accompt, videlicet, precious stones, and wrought silkes
of many colours and types, much to his highnesse contentation, and the residue belonging to
you, viz. Crasko; and rawe silkes, with other merchandizes, (as by accompt appeareth) were
sought vnto your house, whereof part there remained, and the rest was laden in your shippes
lately returned.

The 30. of
May 1563.

Shortly after my comming to the Mosco, I came before the Emperours Patestie, and pre-
sented vnto him the apparell giuen vnto me by the Sophie, whose highnesse conferred with mee
touching the princes affaires which he had committed to my charge: and my proceedings therein
pleased him so to accept, that they were much to his contentation, saying vnto mee, I haue per-
ceived your good seruice, for the which I doe thanke you; and will recompence you for the same, re-
solving that I would requell againe in such his other affaires, wherein hee was minded to employ
me: so whom I answered, that it was to my heartie reioycing that my seruice was so acceptable
vnto his highnesse, acknowledging all that I had done to be but of duetie, humbly beseeching
his grace to continue his goodnesse vnto your shippes, and euen at that instant I humbly reque-
sted

Ande pmi-
ges obtained
hereafter fol-
lowing.

sted his Paetie to vouchsafe to graunt vnto you a newe priuiledge moze ample then the first, which immediately was graunted, and so I departed. And after wards hauing penned a briefe note howe I meant to haue the same priuiledges made, I repaired daily to the Secretery for the perfecting of the same, and obtained it vnder his Paetistles byroade scale, which at my departure from thence, I deliuered vnto the custodys of Thomas Glouer your Agent there. The copy whereof, and also of the ocher priuiledges graunted and giuen by the king of Hircan, I haue already deliuered vnto you. Souourning all that winter at Mosco, and in the meane time hauing bargained with the Emperours Paetie, I sent away your seruant Edward Clarke hithe ouer-land with aduise, and also made ppeparation for sending againe into Persia in meeete time of the yeere. And committing the charge thereof vnto your seruants Thomas Alcocke, George Wrenne, and Richard Cheinie, the 28. of June last, I departed in posse from the said Mosco, and comming to Colmogro and so downe to the Sea side, I found your ships laden and ready to depart, where I embarked my selfe in your good ship called the *Swallow*, the 9. of July, one thousand five hundred fittie four, and hauing passed the Seas with great and extreme dangers of loss of shipp, goods and life, the 28. day of September last (God be praised) we arrived here at London in safetie.

28. Sept. 164.
1564.

Thus knowing that the couragious and valiant souldier, which aduentureth both fame, member and life, to serue faithfully his Soueraigne, esteemeth not the perils and dangers passed (the victorie once obtained) neither for his guerdon desireth any thing moze, then that his seruice be well taken of him for whom he enterprised it: So I perceiuing your sauourable beneuolence to me extended in accepting my trauels in good part to your contentations, do thinke my selfe therein with in great part recompensed: beseeching Almighty God so to prosper your aduentures, from time to time hereafter to be made for reaping the frutes of my trauels (at your great charges, and to my no small dangers) that ye may plentifully gather in and enioy the same, to the illustrating of the Queenes most excellent Paetie, the honour and commoditie of this her highnesse Realme, and to the ample benefite and abundant enriching of you and your succession, & posteritie for euer,

A copie of the priuiledges giuen by *Obdowcan King of Hircania*, to the company of English merchants Aduenturers for *Russia, Persia*, and *Mara Caprima*, with all the lands and countreys adioyning to the same, obtained by *M. Anthonie Ienkinson* at his being there about the affaires of the said company, April 14. Anno 1563.

WHE Obdowcan by the mightie power of God maker of heauen and of earth, appointed and now reigning king of Shiruan and Hircan, of our meere motion and great goodnes, at the earnest sute and request of our sauoured and welbeloued Anthonie Ienkinson Ambassadeur, haue giuen and graunted vnto the right worshipfull Sir William Garret, Sir William Chester, Sir Thomas Lodge, P. Richard Mallarie, and P. Richard Chamberlaine, with all their company of merchants Aduenturers of the Citie of London in England, free libertie, safe conduct, and licence to come or sende their factorys in trade of merchandize into our countreys, and to buy and sell with our merchants and others, either for ready money or barter, and to tary and abide in our countrey, so long as they will, and to goe away when they list, without impediment, let, or hinderance, either of body or goods.

And further our commaundement and pleasure is, that the said English merchants with their company, shall pay no manner of custome for wares, which they or their factorys shall buy or sel within our dominions. And if at any time our customers or other officers, or any of them, doe disturbe, misuse, force or constrain the said English merchants or any of them, or their factorys, to pay any manner of custome or dutie for any wares they bring in or carry out of our dominions contrary to this our commaundement, and the same be knowne vnto vs, then we will that the saide customers and officers shall loose & be put out of their said offices, with our further displeasure, and the saide English merchants to haue redoyed all such money & wares as our customers haue taken of them for our said custome. And whensoever the saide English merchants or their factorys shall bring any manner of wares meere for our treasure, then our treasurer shall take the said wares into our treasure, and shall giue vnto the said English merchants, either ready money or raw silkes, to the value of their saide wares. And whereloeuer this our letter of priuiledges shall be seene and read within our dominion, we straightly will and command that it take effect, and be obeyed in al points.

Dated at our place of Iauat, the day and yeere aboue written, and sealed with our princely seale, and signed by our Secreterie in the 12. yeere of our raigne,

The se. on
there, an
paine of A



shall please you I
I receiued none
could not tell why
could neuer see the
vpon our borage
guilt we departed
the 11. day of the l
arrived at Shamm
of heathen people,
king: we gaue him
At our comming
cent vpon the groun
ing conered with ca
his place to sit. An
and to giue vs the v
maki towards Casb
maki ought for wan
I could recouer but
towne called Lenuac
towne whereas I lay
there in safetie with
he made suite to the k
for that the Empero
Thomas Alcocke see
that the Russes sent the
haue knowledge of the
goods as he had brought
The thirde day after
staine committing on his
demanded whether he
When this fell out, you
ple. Who hauing such
their goods with as muc
wares to the sea side, I
staine, I sent in company
in August, and a Sweet
all which goods after w
scripte of all things wh
life, I remained after I
purty of such debts as w
me hungrily rubbles or
no all such goods as I b
will appeare. Also he ha
due named, he then had
Richard Iohnson thwene
rubles. All these
being in Persia in pou
And whereas he saith, th
what the wares cost in
ges turned to pour wo
The

The second voiage into Persia made by Tho. Alcock, who was slaine there, and by George Wrenne, & Ric. Cheinie seruants to the worshipfull compaignie of Mosconie merchants in Anno 1563. written by the said Richard Cheinie.

IT may please your wozships to vnderstand, that in the yere 1563, I was appointed by M. Ancho. Ienkinson, and M. Thomas Glouer your Agent in Russia, to goe for Persia in your wozships affaire. one Thomas Alcock hauing the charge of with him in your busines, hauing with vs, as they said 1500. rubbles. And if it should please you I cannot tell certainly what summe of money we had then of the Emperours: for we receiued none, nor disbursed any of it in wares for the voyage. Also, God I take to record, I could not tell what stocke your wozships had there, for the bookes were kept so priuily that a man could neuer see them. The 10. of May anno 1563. we departed from a towne called Yeraslaue upon our voyage toward Persia. The 24. of July we arrived at Astracan: and the second of August we departed from Astracan, and the 4. of the same moneth we came to the Caspian sea, and the 17. day of the said moneth we arrived at our port in Media: and the 21. of the said August wee of heathen people, for the thirde day after our arrivall at Shammaki wee were well entertained king: we gaue him a present, and he entertained vs very well. At our comming to the Court wee were commaundered to come before the king, who sat in his tent vpon the ground with his legs a crosse, and all his dukes round about his tent, the ground before his place to sit. And the king commaundered the Emperour of Russlands merchants to rise up, and to giue vs the vpper hande. The 20. of October Thomas Alcock departed from Shammaki toward Casbin, leauing mee at Shammaki to recouer such debts as the dukes of Shammaki ought for wares which they tooke of him at his going to Casbin. In the time I lay there I could recouer but little. And at the Thomas Alcockes comming from Casbin, who arrived at a towne called Leuuaeta, whereas the king Obdolocan lay, a day and a halfe journey from the Leuuaeta. there in safetie with all such goods as he had with him. During his abode there for leuen dayes he made suite to the king for such money as the dukes ought him. But the king was displeased that the Russes sent their goods to the sea side, for that they feared that the king of Persia should haue knowledge of the death of the Bolesman, willd mee to depart to Shammaki with all such goods as he had brought with him from Casbin, I leauing him at the Court.

rubble to a
blacke Eng-
lish.

Leuuaeta.

Bolesman
is a Renegado.

Thomas Alcocke
slaine in the
way betwene
Leuuaeta and
Shammaki.

Keselbath, or
Kesebath.

the same mem-
bers passed (the
his seruice be-
demeuolence to
my selfe there-
reuerences, from
the charges, and
the illustrating of
my selfe Realme,
eritie for euer.

f Hircania,
Persia, and
there, obtained by
company, April

arch, appointed
great goodnes,
son Ambulla-
William Che-
with all the
ertie, safe com-
merces, and in
to carry and
impediment, let

ants with their
bury of set with
in, doe disturbe
oyes, to pay my
ous contrary is
aide customers
re, and the same
taken of them
shall bring my
s into our trea-
thes, to the be-
seene and read-
ed in al pointes,
pincely seale,

The

sowen the seede, and other men haue gathered the haruest: I haue trauailed both by lande and by water full many a time with a sorrowfull heart, aswell for the safegarde of their goods as yours, how to frame all things to the best, and they haue reaped the fruites of my trauaile. But euer my prayer was to God, to deliuer mee out of those miseries which I suffered for your seruice among those heathen people. Therefore knowing my duetie to which I haue done, as a true seruant ought to do, I beseech your worships (although I haue but small recompence for my seruice,) yet let me haue no wrong, and God will prosper you the better.

Gillan in Persia.

Also, to informe your worships of your Persian voyage what I iudge: it is a voyage to be tolerated. The king of Gillan, whereas yet you haue had no traffique, liueth al by marchandise and is neere Casbin, and not past six weekes trauaile from Ormus, whither all the spices be brought: and here, (I meane at Gillan) a trade may be established: But your worships must send such men as are no riotous liuers, nor drunkards. For if such men goe, it will be to your dishonour and great hinderance, as appeared by experience the yeere 1565. when as Richard Iohnson went to Persia, whose journey had bene better stayed then set forward. For whereas before we had the name among those heathen people to be such marchants as they thought none like in all respects, his vicious living there hath made vs to be compred worse then the Russes.

Again, if such men trauaile in your affaires in such a voyage, you shall neuer know what gain is to be gotten. For how can such men imploy themselves to seeke the trade, that are inclined to such vices? or howe can God prosper them in your affaires? But when a trade is established by wise and discreet men, then will it be for your worships to traffique there, and not before: for a voyage or market made euil at the first, is the occasion that your worships shall neuer vnderstand what gain is to be gotten thereby hereafter.

1565.

The thirde voyage into Persia, begun in the yeere 1565. by

Richard Iohnson, Alexander Kitchin, and Arthur Edwards.

A letter of Arthur Edwards to M. Thomas Nicols, Secretarie to the worshipful company trading into Russia and other the North parts, concerning the preparation of their voyage into Persia.



Ierusalem a towne vpon the riuer of Volga.

Richard Iohnson thiefe of the third voyage into Persia.

A barke of 30. tunnes made at Ierusalem 1564. to passe the Caspian seas.

After Nicols, my bounden duetie remembred, with desire of God for the preservation of you and yours: you shall vnderstand that the second of March I was sent by M. Thomas Glouer (your Agent) unto Ierusalem, appointed to receiue such goods as should come from Vologhda, as also such kinde of wares as should be bought and sent from Mosco by your Agent, and M. Edward Clarke, thought meete for your voyage of Persia. And further, I was to provide for biscuit, beere, and beefe, and other victuals, and things otherwaies needful according to aduise. Thus I remained here vntill the coming of your Agent, which was the 12. of May, who taried here three dayes, to see vs set forward on our voyage, and then he departed towards Colmogro, hauing appointed (as chiefe for your voyage of Persia) Richard Iohnson, for my part I am willing, as also haue bene & shalbe content to submit my selfe vnder him, whom the Agent shall appoint, although he were such a one as you should thinke in some respects vnniete. Thirtie two yokes of carleis are all of that kinde of cloth that we shall haue with vs. The other 18. yokes that should haue gone, were sold in Mosco. What other goods are shipped for our voyage, you shall vnderstand by your Agents letters. Whereas Edward Clarke (being an honest man) was appointed Agent for Persia, as one for those parts moe fit then any I do know here, God hath taken him vnto his mercie, who departed this present life the 16. of March last past. I wished of God for my part he had liued: for my desire was in his company to haue trauailed into Persia. Your barke or craer made here for the riuer of Volga and the Caspian sea is verie little and the burthen of 30. tunnes at the most. It is handsomly made after the English fashion: but I thinke it too little for your goods and provision of victuals. If the worshipful company would hire a Shiptwright, being skilfull to make one of the burden of 60. tunnes or moe, drawing fire foote water at the most when it is laden, I thinke it should be profitable. For if your goods would not lade the same, here be Marchants that would be glad and faine to giue you freight to lade their goods with vs, whereby your charges would be much lessened: And so it may happen, the wages of your men hired here may be souer, and your seruants and goods in greater assurance: for their boates here are dangerous to saile with and to passe the Caspian. There be Carpenters here that will doe well enough hauing one to instruct them. Your goods bought here, and orders taken for those that goe for your voyage of Persia are yet unknowne to me: wherefore I cannot (as I would at this present) write to you thereof. Yet, (as you do know)

Another
A
Kn
wo
cou

VV
you that my
chard Iohn
of contrary
There, after
wonderles
small Riuer
And as soon
to this towne
dollocan the
gilt, three
He receiue
son were in
to himselfe
to doe vs any
ennelle, and haue
be poulden in
will such ti
to put our whol
But while we
the 2. of Octobe
taine debets, I pot
vs for this voyag
bene lost if the ki
wards vs: who
say: who since the
then euer we found
Great troubles
where any rule abou
her sent for vnto
they might, to m
haue sent to Casbi
and before him dep
with receiued to his
thurs were se to em
William Smith, a
of Partners that sh
the broad side of our
erry deliuered vs
Marchants here will
his present is conce
arks as must passe

both by lande and by
their goods as yours
uall. But since my
your seruice among
a true seruant ought
p seruice, yet let me

a voyage to see
p marchandise and
the spices be brought
us must send such men
dishonour and great
in Iohn went to Persia
we had the name
in all respects, his

your know what gaine
e, that are inclined to
trade is established by
do not before: for a
reuer vnderstand what

re 1565. by
dwards.

to the worship
erning the prepa-

ire of God for the
he second of March
slave, appointed to
to such kinde of wa
gent, and M. Edward
further, I was to p
and things oherwa
our Agent, which was
voyage, and then he
Persia) Richard Joh
st my selfe vnder him
thinke in some resp
we shall haue with
ther goods are ship
ward Clarke (being
it then any I do know
16 of March last
to haue traueiled
pian sea is very little
nglish fashion: but
al company would
as of more, paying
ble. For if your
and faime to giue
lessened: And so it
nines and goods in
o passe the Caspian
cut them. Your
are per vnkknown
Yet, (as you do know
it

it was the Gouvernors mind I should be acquainted with greater affaires then these. Wobbeit I
doubt not but I shall be informed of them that are appointed, and all things shall be bought when
they shall see time and haue more laisure. Thus in hast (as appereth) I commit you and yours
into the hands of almighty God; who preserve you in perfect health with increase of worship.
From Iersaue the 15. of May 1565.

By yours to command here or elsewhere
during life. Arthur Edwards.

Another letter of the said M. Arthur Edwards, written the 26. of
April 1566. in Shamaki in Media, to the right worshipful Sir Thomas Lodge
Knight and Alderman: and in his absence to M. Thomas Nicols, Secretarie to the right
worshipfull companie trading into Russia, Persia, and other the North and East partes,
touching the successe of Richard Iohnson in the third voiage into Persia.

1566

VV^{or}shipfull Sir, my bounden dutie remembred, with heartie prayer vnto God for the
preseruatiou of you and yours in perfect health with increase of worship. It may please
you that my last letter I sent you was from Astracan the 26 of July 1565. From whence Ri-
chard Iohnson, my selfe, and Alexander Kitchin, departed as the 30 of the same. And by meanes
of contrary winde, it was the 23 of August before we came to our desired port named Nazauc.
There, after we had gotten your goods on land, with much labour and strength of men, as also
wonderles deuised and made, we heled your barke ouer a barre of beach of pebble stones into a
small Riuer, sending your ships apparell with other things to an house hired in a village there by.
And as soone as we might get camels, being the first of September we departed thence, and came
to this towne of Shamaki the 11. of the same: and the 17. day following, we presented vnto Ab-
dollocan the king of this countrey, one timber of Sables, one tunne of siluer cups parfill
gle, three Posset teeth, 4. Arshines of karlet, 3. pieces of karletis, with 40. red fores.
We receiued our presents with giuing vs thanks for our good wils, demanding if M. Jenkin-
son were in good health, and whether he would returne into these partes againe. We willed vs al-
so him selfe to sit downe before him the distance of a quoyts cast from his tent, where he sat with
others of his counsaile and nobilitie, sending vs from his table such meate as was before him:
And after certaine talke had with vs, he sayd, if he might perceiue of know any manner of person
to doe vs any wrong, he would punish them in example of others, where by we should liue in qui-
etnesse, and haue no cause to complaine, giuing vs a little house for the time, untill a better might
be found in such place as we should thinke most meete, neuer willing vs to rise or depart, vntill
all such time as we of our selues thought it conuenient. At the taking of our leaue, he willed vs
to put our whole minds and request in writing, that he might further vnderstand our desires.
But while we were about to doe so, Godooke this good king our friend out of this present life
the 2. of October past. The want of him hath bene the cause that as yet wee cannot receiue cer-
taine debts, Wobbeit, we doubt not but we shall recouer all such summes of money as are owing
vs for this voyage. As for Thomas Alcockes debts they are past hope of recouerie, which had not
bene lost if the king had liued. We trust in the place of him, God will send as friendly a king to
wards vs: who by report (and as we be credibly informed,) shall bee his sonne named the Mur-
shin cux we found: God grant the same.

They departed
from Astracan
the 30. of July
1565.

Presents to
the king Ab-
dollocan.

A house giuen
our men in
Shamaki by
the king.

The death of
Abdollocan
the 2. of Octo-
ber 1565.

Shurip the
new king of
Media.

Great troubles haue chanced in these partes. Of those which were of the old kings counsell or
were any rule about him in these quarters, some are in prison, some are pinched by the purse, and
other sent for vnto the Shaugh. These troubles haue partly bene the let that wares were not sold
as they might, to more profite. Your Agent Richard Iohnson bought foure horses, minding to
haue sent to Casbin Alexander Kitchin, whom Godooke to his mercy the 23. of October last:
and before him departed Richard Davis one of your Pariners, whose soules I trust the Lord
hath receiued to his mercy. We are now destitute of others to supply their roumes. Foure Pa-
riners were sent enough to saile your barke, whereof at this present we haue but one, whose name
is William Smith, an honest pong man, and one that doeth good seruice here. For want and lacke
of Pariners that should know their labours, we all were like to be cast away in a storme. For all
the good side of our barke lay in the water, and we had much adoe to recouer it, but God of his
mercy deliuered vs. Pariners here may doe you good seruice all the winter oherwaies: and
merchants here will be gladder to ship their goods in vs giuing good freight. One merchant at
this present is content to pay 20. rubbles for twentie camels lading freight to Astracan. Such
wares as must passe these seas, may not pay aboute five foote of water, because that in many pla-

The death of
Alexander
Kitchin the 23.
of October
1565.

The Caspian sea
is very shoale in
many places.

ces are very shallow waters. Wee mind hereafter to make the Russian boats more strong, and they shall serve our turnes very well.

And whereas some in times past tooke great paines, trauell and care, and could not haue their desire in the getting of the Shaughes letters of priuiledge: Now, I trust (with Gods helpe) they may be obtained: which being had, will be beneficiall to the company, and great quietnes to those that shall remaine here, although heretofore things haue chanced ill, as the like in other countreies hath bene. But I doubt not, this priuiledge once gotten and obtained, we shall live in quietnes and rest, and shall shortly grow into a great trade for silkes both raw and wrought, with all kind of spices and drugs, and other commodities here, as to P. Anthonie Ienkinson is well known, who (I doubt not) hath long agoe thoroughly aduertised the Companie thereof.

The trust of the slaughter of Thomas Alcock your seruant, is not certainly known. Some thinke it was by the meanes of a noble man, with whom your sayd seruant was earnest in demanding of your debts: upon whose wordes he was so offended, that he procured his death. But other doe thinke verily, that in riding from the Court without companie, false knaues lay in waite, thinking he had much about him, and so slew him. I doubt not though this misfortune hath chanced, that things shall come well to passe, and that we shall be better beloved when we shall be more known.

Honest merchants are glad of our being here, and seeke to grow in acquaintance with us, being glad to further vs in that they may, & haue spoken in our fauours to the chieftest of this Countrey: one being a noble man, with whom your Agent and I are entered into friendship, who is at this time in great fauour with the Shaugh. We hath here and in other places of these parts set a good day in things since the kings death: he is well known to P. Ienkinson, his name is Cozaimon. Also another Duke named Ameddin-heck is our great friend: And his sister is the Shaughes wife. These two haue promised your Agent by their lawe, not onely to procure to get the Shaughes priuiledge, but also that I shall haue the debts paid me of those that went from hence to Casbin, if we would send one with them. In consideration whereof, I was upon some warning (for want of a better) appointed by your Agent P. Richard Iohnson, all excuses laid apart, presently to put my selfe in readinesse, and to depart in company with these noblemen: with charge, when God should send me to Casbin, to vse my discretion with their aduise, for the recovering of your debts and priuiledge. I shall haue with mee one interpreter and two bought seruants: one of which partly vnderstandeth this tongue, and may be put in trust whatsoeuer should become of me. I haue receiued 6. tumens in ready money, 100. shaughes is a tumen, reckoning a uery shaugh for five pence Russe. I haue further receiued two timbers of Sables, one to be sold, the other to bee giuen to Thomas the Shaugh: and haue order further to giue as I shall see good to those that shall further my suite, and as occasion seruerth. And so far as much as I am commaunded to go, I shall willingly do my best, putting my trust in God that he will send me well to speed in this journey.

For all kind of wares bought or sold, you shall thoroughly be aduertised by your Agent Richard Iohnson, whose reckonings or accounts at no hands I might see or be priuile unto. Your karrets were good and well sorted, they are and will be sold from 150. shaughes, to 160. the piece. Two hundred pieces were sold under, that needed not: one 100. pieces at 146. and 147. the piece but more would haue bene giuen, if circumspection had bene vsed. They were sold to those noble men aforesayd, when as yet it was not known that I should haue gone with them. They may stand vs much in stead, as they haue promised vs their good wils in that they may doe. This is at this time bought for England, 1. packes of rawe silke, 25. and 26. batmans being in euery packe: The batman being 7. pound, which may be 6. pound and a halfe of English weight, being bought here from 66. to 70. shaughes the batman. It is fine and good, little course at this time was to be had. And where course silke might be had being at Grobin, we could not send thither: for that time was neglected at the first. When wee shall haue lodgers here to remaine in Sommer, we may buy it at the first hand of the countrey people that bring it to sell hither, and to other places. I would to God the Companie could find the meanes to haue a vent to make sales for the one halfe that we may buy here. The Companie may haue for 30. or 40. thousand pounds per annu. And as appeareth by your Agents wordes being at Varas, he and others sawe there so great abundance, that by report of diuers, you may bestow (if it were not for the Turkes) for a hundred thousand pounds: besides silke of all colours dyed in graine, bound up in pound waights. I thinke 15. of our ounces to their pound weight, and here sold for 23. shaughes, at 6.8. the shaugh may be 11.6.6. pence.

From Astracan in 7. or 8. dayes, wee may saile with our barke to a place named Gilan: which place in time to come, (I thinke) shall serue our purpose best to goe vnto. Alom is the

The number-
ring of Tho-
mas Alcock.

Cosaimon
a noble man
that favoured
our nation.

The value of a
tumen.

What a bat-
man is.

Varas a great
mart for silke.

Gilan 7. dayes
sailing from
Astracan.
Alom.

good cheape,
inn, which in
for example. A
great store of
4. dayes to Cas-
to be sold. For
Teueris, Ardou
merchants are
Rusles and othe
erue the same to
Casbin to Ormu
in my letter to the

Also you shall
be bought vs for
being in them. The
Agent will send for

This day being
well to speed, with
mind to P. Gioue-
try, and to send for
me shall do well here
discretion, and be so

(if they can get some
those that shall be so
language and the Po-
ings, not making the
are better beloved by
these people. It is to

that kind of vice:
himselfe, that no disho-
rabbles, being in this
from a Tschick one of
boy was become, and by
vice because of his Rus-

Your London rebo-
them. Here be rebo of m-
which: the common pec-
your cloth. Your shall
in colours, that may be
the King Philip hath gi-
spective captains.

Thus wishing I had
that you haue red it, that

Commodities

1 K
2
3
4
5
Copper at

not have their
goods help, they
resist to those
other countries
in quietness
with all kind
well known,

known, some
earnest in de-
sire of death. But
knaues say in
disfortune hath
then we shall be

ace with vs, be-
cause of this Com-
p, who is at
these parts for a
name is Cora-
nister is to the
procure toge-
that went from
was upon those
all excuses laid
oblemens with
s, for the re-
you bought in
of Locuer Thob-
n, reckoning
one to be sold,
I shall see good
um commenda-
well to spend in

Agent Richard
to. Your hat-
160. the price
5. and 147. the
ere sold to those
h them. They
may doe. Here
being in every
fish waights, be-
cause at this time
ot send either
matine in Som-
ner, and so other
ake sales for the
d pounds pre-
ere there for great
kes) for a two
pound waights
6. d. the haugh

med Gilan: the
Aloni is the
good

Arthur Edwards. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

357

good cheape, being brought from thence hither to Shainaki, and sold here for two bills their bat-
man, which may be 5. pence in our money: and so I have bought to be sent home 223. batmans
for example. And at Gilan there is rawe silke enough for the companies stocke. I beleue, if any
great store of wares be sent from you, that must be the place: & from thence a man may trauell in
4. dayes to Casbin, and there make quicke and deere sales, at which place your commodities are
to be sold. For there be the chiefe and best merchises, and diuers other cities round about, to wit,
Teueris, Ardouil, and Caishan, being the heart of the countrey, where there is more stillie and
merchants are better vled. Concerning this point I have inquired of diuers merchants both
Russes and others that haue bene in those parts, and found them all agreeing in one tale, and per-
ceive the same to be true, and that all kind of wares come from thence into these parts. And from
Casbin to Ormus, is about 30. dayes traueilling with camels. I have written the prices of wares
in my letter to the gouernour both for spices and some drugs which I do know.

Gilan 4 dayes
journey from
Casbin.

From Casbin
to Ormus a
monthes tra-
uel with ca-
mel.

Also you shall vnderstand here is plenty of yew for bowshaues. I caused three horse loades to
be bought vs for to know the truth: but they were cut out of season this month of April, the sap
being in them. Three monthes I neuer left speaking to the Countrey men to bring some. Your
Agent will send some home for example.

This day being the 26. of April I departed towards Casbin: God giue me a good houre and
well to speed, with a merry heart. In returning againe, as my hope is I shall. I have written my
mind to G. Glouer your Agent, what Russian wares I thinke best to be bought for this Coun-
tre, and to send some one hither that hath the Russe tongue, for we haue need. And the compa-
nie shall do well hereafter in taking of seruants to be sent hither, to see that they be such as haue
discretion, and be something broken in the world, and seene in the trade of merchandise, and one
(if they can get some such) as can speake the Poringall tongue, may do them as good seruice, as
chole that shall be here two yeeres before him: for then we may buy a slaue that can speake this
language and the Poringall tongue also, which shall then interpret vnto vs in all your secret do-
ings, not making the Russes pryuy: for they are say that we doe trade into these parts, for we
are better beloued then they are: because they are giuen to be drunkards, they are much hated of
these people. It is to be wished that none should serue your worships in these parts that be giuen
to that kind of vice: And that your chiefe Agent and Factor should be able to rule and gouerne
himselfe, that no dishonestie should be imputed to him and vs. By his euill vsage he paid here 24.
rubbles, being in this Countrey 4. tumens for a boy, that he was charged to haue conueied away
from a Tesicke one of this countrey men, who willed him to sweare that he knew not where the
boy was become, and he should not pay it. If he were honest he might do your worships good ser-
uice because of his Russian tongue.

The secret do-
ings of this
spies company.

Your London redds are not to be sent hither, for they will not giue about 18. haughes their ar-
gent. Here be redds of moze valient colour, being Venice die. The people are giuen much to weare
such: the common people specially weare karkies, and the merchants of moze wealth weare
silk cloth. You shall doe well to send five or six broad clothes, some blackes, pukes, or other
colours, that may be affoorded at 20. haughes the arshine, and not about. It is here reported
that King Philip hath giuen the Turkes a great ouerthrow at Malta, and taken 70. or 80. of his
chiefe captains.

Valient redds of
Venice die.

Thus wishing I had moze time to write, I pray you to heare with this my scribled letter, and
that you haue read it, that G. Nicola may haue a sight thereof.

By your seruant to command,
Arthur Edwards.

Commodities to be caried out of England into Persia,
with their prizes there.

- 1 Karkies are sold there for 180. Shaughes: so that a karkie is sold there
in Persia for foure pound ten shillings: for every haugh is five pence
English, and euery Bill is two pence halfe penny English, and in Russe
money three pence.
- 2 Linne is sold in Persia for 14. and 18. Shaughes the batman. The batman
containing as I haue mentioned before.
- 3 Brass is at 10. and 12. Shaughes the batman.
- 4 Red cloth fine, at 25. and 30. Shaughes the part.
- 5 Copper at 20. and 25. Shaughes the batman.

18 haughes is
6. d. English.

Commodities

Commodities to be brought out of Persia for England.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 RAw silke at 60. shaughs þ batman. 2 Pepper at 32. shaughs þ batman. 3 Ginger at 18. & 20. shaughs þ batman. 4 Nutmegs at 30. shaughs the batman. 5 Bymstone at 4. shaughs the great batman. The great batman is 12. li. English. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6 Allom at 2. bils and a halfe the batman and lesse. 7 Rice at halfe a bil the batman. 8 Bals at halfe a bil the batman. 9 Cloues at 40. shaughs the batman. 10 Pew for bow staves, at |
|---|--|

A letter of M. Arthur Edwards, written the 8. of August 1566. from the towne of Shamaki in Media, to the right worshipfull the Gouernours, Consuls, Assittants, and generallie of the companie of Russia, &c. Shewing his accesse vnto the Emperour of Persia, his conference with him, his obtaining of a priuiledge, with diuers other good obseruations.

Right worshipfull Sirs, my bounden dutie remembred, with most humble commendacions and like request to God for the preservation of your good healths, with the rest of the companie, &c. To map please you to vnderstand, that the last letter which I sent you from hence was of the 26. of April of this present yeere by Richard Johnson at my departure towards Casbin: to which cite I came the 25. of May following, not slackning any day, houre, nor moment, to procure and make friends for the speedie bringing me before the presence of the Shaugh, being the 29. day of the same moneth brought before him, with whose maiestie I was in talke (as I thinke) two houres. He willed me twice to come neerer him, demanding what were my requests: and hearing heard them, he promised me his gracious letters. Afterwards he called me twice againe to come neerer him, and talked with me of our Queenes maiestie and Countrey, and what commodities we had, and what other commodities we desired: and then of other countreies adioyning to vs and their commodities, as also of king Philip, what overthrow he gaue the Turks at the siege of Malta. And how long we had traded into Russeland and Moscouia, and in what space we might saile out of England into Russeland, & how many weekes trauell it is from Colmogro to African: and then came to discourse of Russeland, and what townes the Emperour had wonne, declaring vnto me himselfe most of our commodities. In the end he willed that your worshipps should send him of all sorts of cloths, but of one especially which maidens do make (as he sayd:) He named it Karengi, I thinke it is Westerne dozens died into scarlets. Time will not permit me to write at large the conference which I had with his maiesty. It was strange to his people (knowing our religion) to see me so long in talke with him, willing his Secretarie before mee to write what he was desirous of: to wit, of London clothes, three or foure of all sorts for example, bring well shoyne and dyest. Clolets in graine and fine rebs be most woyn, but other good colours will away, when they shall see them. I wove a garment of London russet, being much esteemed. You shall doe well to send such sorts as be liuely to the sight, and some blacks for womens garments, with some Dyenge colours and rawneis. There is much broad cloth woyn. They talke much of London clothes, and they that know the wearing, are desirous of them before the cloth of the woyns making, for they find it nothing durable. For when it cometh to weare on the cheere, it renteth like paper. There is much Venice cloth woyn, being cromplished a yard and a halfe broad, and sold here from 24. to 30. shaughs their arshine, being longer by two inches then the Russ arshine is. I wish also that you send some good chamlets & beluets dyed in graine, with purple colours & fine rebs: because these are most woyn. Also some blacks with other colours: some cloth of gold, silke & bocky, some beluets wrought with gold, with satins and damaskes, most purple and rebs of all sorts. You may not forget to send some Westerne karleis, to wit, dozens, which are thicked well, and close shut in the weauiing, being dyed into fine rebs, and some skarlets: for I thinke there is no such cloth for their caps.

Your worshipps shall vnderstand, that after my first departure from the presence of the Shaugh, I neglected no thine in daily attendance on them, who had my priuiledge in writing, that I might haue it in readinesse at such time as I should againe be called before the presence of the Shaugh, which was the 29. of June last. I was in apparell that he gaue vnto me, with other garments mine interpreter, and one of your seruants, and then I receiued your letters of priuiledge, according to my desire, sealed and armed with the Shaughs owne hand. I payed bee God wils to you, and for me, in all my doings.

The 29. of June is one of their chiefe festiual daies, so that all his nobilitie was there present.

This arrival at Casbin the 25. of May.

Conference & demands of the Shaugh.

All sorts of cloth to be sent, specially Westerne dozens dyed into scarlet.

London clothes much talked of in Persia. Such Venice cloth woyn in Persia.

The second admission to the Shaugh's presence, the 29. of June 1566. at which time he receiued the priuiledge.

with cu
not to m
gaue his
our Qu
thought
should be
replied w
farther go
since
then, who
cate and b
way when
then farthe
but we shal
friendly use
I was at
of herles, as
crey with tw
the last yere,
not permit an
There is a
belides other
other wares, a
herles in bart
of this countre
Aleppo, at 11.
first peny 132.
Shamaky to A
by water, a mo
willed in lesse
adured friends
serries to deliue
nothing haue do
The Armenia
serues of all kin
deliuer it vs in Sh
Pepper this 20
Spaces large fe
Cloues for 40.
Nutmegs for 1
Shamom for 4
spices, with yug
from Casbin to
this laden: but if
I thinke to Or
in laden. But her
which they are to buy
The Shaugh him
as we will, an
as we might g
peereely, foure,
in byng. If your
graine, belides othe
send a great sub
they map: for I
it shall cleane allee
adjoyning. You shal
one village of et
and bringeth thence

Arthur Edwards. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

359

with two Ambassadors in companie with his maiestie, who sayd unto me that if my letters were not to my mind, in time to come they should be mended. Whereupon I made my reuerence, and gaue his highnesse most humble and heartie thanks, saying, that with as much speed as might bee, our Queenes Maiestie should understand of his goodnesse towards her Merchants, which I thought would write their letters of request unto his Highnesse, in such forme & order as by them should be thought meete and equitie for their good assurance in the trade of merchandises: who replied with these wordes: when wee shall see their reasonable request, we will shew them our farther good will, and so I departed.

Since the receiuing of the Shaughs letters, I haue eaten in company of good Dukes and others, who before would not come neere me. And every day some would come to my shop, and eate and drinke with me out of mine owne dish. Likewise in riding from Casbin hither, on the way when I sae downe to dinner, they would come and eate with mee vnbidden, when I wished them farther off: for I feared them that, which gladly I would haue eaten my selfe. I doubt not friendly bled with the best.

I was asked by the Shaugh if you were able to bring him yearly one hundred thousand pieces of karkies, and clothes. And I answered him, saying, your wozships were able to furnish his countrey with two hundred thousand. Whereat his Highnesse reioyced: for the Turkes Ambassadors the last yere, as diuers haue told me, did put the Shaugh in despair, saying, that the Turke would not permit any cloth to be brought into his countrey.

There is a cite Syria named Aleppo, wherein continually are many Venetians dwelling, besides other that come yearly and there buy wools, gals, tallow, saffron, skins, cotton woolle, and other wares, and great store of spices. Also the Armenians yearly receiue at the Venetians hands, karkies in barter for rawe silks, giuing sometimes 60. pieces of karkies for 70. batmans of silke of the countrey, and 40. pieces for Groin silke. And karkies sold commonly for ready money in Aleppo, at 11. and 12. buckets the piece. (the bucket being here worth 12. shillings) may cost the first penny 13. 2. and 144. Shaughs a karkie. By report it is one moneths trauel from this towne of Shamaky to Aleppo, and from thence to Tripolis, six dayes iourney: and from Tripolis to Venice by water, a moneth of sixe weekes sailing. As I learne, from hence to Venice may easily be trauesled in lesse then thre moneths. Therefore I wish your wozships to procure some cruize and assured friends there, to whom from hence letters may be sent. For I can haue them here to put in scries to deliuer my letters, and to bring answer. If I had any other here with me, I would nothing haue doubted to haue brought you the Shaughs letters that way.

The Armenians and other are desirous to barter with vs, giuing silke for karkies, and also will sell vs of all kind of spices, we giuing them sufficient warning to fetch it in the Indies, and will deliuer it vs in Shamaky at these prizes.

Pepper this towne batman for 18. Shaughs, cuery Shaugh is sixe pence, Spaces large for 40. Shaughs, and 45. the batman.

Cloues for 40. Shaughs the batman.

Mustegs for 16. and 18. Shaughs the batman,

Shanmom for 40. Shaughs the batman,

spices, with drugs and other like in time,

from Casbin to Ormus is six weekes trauel, and from hence to Casbin is 16. dayes with ca-

ries laden: but if one trauell with a good shule vnladen, it may be gone in seuen or eight dayes.

And I thinke to Ormus and other places, may be trauelled in like order and proportion, with cat-

ch which they are to buy, and thus they trauell but a footepale.

The Shaugh himselfe is desirous to bargain with you, who will giue money, silke, and other

wares as we will, and take our wares as we may affoord them, willing me himselfe to bring such

wares as we might giue by him. The Armenians by report, and as I perceiue, bring from A-

lep po yearly, foure, five, and six thousand pieces of karkies and clothes, besides those which other

men bring. If your wozships might procure and find vent of sales for rawe silke, and silke dyed

graine, besides other silkes bought and made here, by which, profite may be made: then you

might send a great substance of wares hither. But I feare you shall be hindered by the Venet-

ians, if they may: for I know it will grieue them, that you doe trade into these partes: for in short

time it shall cleane alter their trade, and hinder the sales of their clothes in Aleppo and other pla-

ces, one village of the Armenians yearly carrieth 400. and 500. shules lading: and as it is re-

ported, they bring thence 800. of a thousand shules laden with karkies & Venice clothes. And 18.

pieces

The Shaugh
wishes to in-
crease the pri-
uiledge.

Aleppo a cite
of great trade.

Armenians
barter with
the Venetians

The distance
from Shamaky
to Aleppo.

Armenians
and others, des-
irous to haue
silke and spices
for karkies.

The Shaugh
desires to
bargaine for
our comman-
dities.

2000. pieces of
karkies to be
sent into Pers-
ia.

pieces of karkies are a Quiles lading. But I with you not to send about 2000. pieces of karkies, although I haue bene willed to write for more. If I might haue had any understanding what your Wopships had written for in your letters sent this yeere, I should in this my letter haue bene better able to haue answered you. They which be now in Astracan, might haue written some thing vnto me hither, if it had pleased them, or else haue sent me such letters of mine, as I hope some of my friends haue written to me: for here are arrived eight weekes past, two boates with wares and Russes, by whom they might haue written, had it bene but 3. or 4. lines. They promised the Russes to write, but promise was not kept. I would be sorry that any boat should depart out of these partes, and not write vnto them, warning how all things stand. I heare they haue bought a boat, which cost 40. rubbles, and shipped certaine wares to come hither. God send them in safetie. I do tarie their coming, or els I had thought to haue come to Astracan in those boates which departed hence lately.

He departed
from Casbin
the 15. of July.

The fiftenth of July last, I departed from Casbin, and came to this towne the 29. of the same. And the fourth of August I found meanes to arrest the fastest knaue in this countrey, to wit, the Customer for 22. tumens, and 100. shaughs is a tumen. I haue caused him to put in securities for his forthcoming at all times, what ende I shall haue with him, God knoweth, the debt will be recovered, but not yet, for he must pay the Shaugh 1000. rubbles. These partes as yet are in no stay for lacke of a Gouernour or head to rule, which I thinke shall bee the Mussey. Within 5. or 6. dayes we shall know, for it is time, because men are in feare to traueil for being robbed. If there were a prince placed, I should soone get in your debts, for they dare not disobey the Shaughs letters of priuiledge: wherein he hath not onely written that our debts shall be paid, but also that we shall be taken heed to, so as we need not to doubt (God willing) in time to come, to be here as well vsed as we are in Russeland. The bills of debts that Rich. Johnson left with me, had neither the parties name nor summe of money in two of them, and in other bills but his owne name. If I had not vsed discretion in causing to be written in our priuiledge, that such debts as are owing, should be paid any of vs in the absence of the other, some men would not haue paid one penie, but onely to Richard Johnson, who hath written but his owne name onely in the bills. I receiued in Casbin of Forackan in part of 29. tumens, 300. shaughs in money: the rest he will deliuer me here in like, and this is all that I haue receiued to this day. And as for Hawrambecke twelve tumens, I make account, that if I could ride to speake with him, I should be paid in money and wares. Touching Ackons money, by meanes of Duke Ammedinbeck, who first clomb the debt, because they meant not to pay a penie, he did rather seeke to hinder my sute, then to further mee, but I found out a present remedie: for God sent me friends that were alwayes about the Shaugh, and daily put on his apparell, who opened all my sute, and brought mee to the presence of the Shaugh before that Cozomomei sawe the Shaughs eyes. But Cozomomei in the end was my friend: for he was sent for, and declared vnto the Shaugh what good merchandises we were, vying truely in all our doings, and how we were in great fauour with the Emperour of Russia, and what good commodities we might bring into his Countrey, with other talke. And daily he was sent for to the Shaugh about the affaires in those partes, for no man was able to aduise the Shaugh of the state and affaires of those Countreys so much as hee was. Wee tooke your Wopships seuen tumens and 48. shaughs, which was not all this time to be gotten at his hands: for hee was at great charges in riding to Casbin, and giuing great gifts since his coming, which hee twice declared vnto me. I feeling his grieke became Physician to ease his paine, and forgaue him his debt aboue sayd, in recompence of ten pieces of karkies, that were promised him by Richard Johnson and me, to giue him at the coming of our goods, in consideration that he should with speed doe what lay in him, to dispatch me away: for I perceiue hee procured other that did helpe me in my sute to delay me of, till time he had his purpose. I neuer was in quere, till I had the Wopships priuiledge, and had got mee out of Casbin: for victuals, and all other things are very deare there, because they are brought thither from farre off. As for all other small debts (which may be about 7. tumens) when our Merchants are come hither, we shall seeke to get them in as we may. I wish your Wopships to send some bullion to bee coyned here, it will please the prince there, and be profitable to you. Silke is better cheape by two or three shaghts the batman, then it was the last yeere. You shall understand that I haue written two letters of all my proceedings, which I sent from Casbin since: to wit, the 24. and 29. of June last, by one of your seruants to Gilan, there to take ship and to goe to Astracan, and to deliuer the same vnto your Factors, which might haue bene to their quietnes and mine, long agoe. But I am right sorry to heare since my coming hither, that he hath plaied the loitering merchant in Gilan, not getting in those boates that went first, but taried for the last boates. But I will teach him, to the example of other, how he shall make haste hereafter in such affaires. The karkies which you sent last, being

Rich. Johnson
somewhat great
negligence.

Cozomomei
was Arthur
Edwards friend
to the Shaugh.

Victuals and
all things deare
at Casbin.

being bought
some of Gilan
to Gilan, to ob-
serving moun-
small charges,
from Casbin to
ships. There is
countrey like to
half. I haue ma-
into England at
10. shillings the
commodities the
to be done by the
battian, being six
man ready money
batman. Your w-
12. and 13. s. a po-
man more had be-
things, what for we
pieter, and so haue
being the chiefe of
haue spent 4. or 5.
wopships of. I hope
goods from hence,
not with diligence,
hand, and other men
from whence it ma-
the rest of your good
I doubt not to bring
and better known.
Shaugh, it was sayd
those parties, deliue-
ries to be had three
yellow like of Grosh
hundred hope todes
Dollars at ten shaghts
in readiness at the time
it first to be sold. If y-
or other wise deale w-
like for two pieces a
you will write with c-
mendation at all your
partes, was oftentimes
dings. To this day I
your wopships, for I
whether had I the com-
pendue heart, as God
doe graunt you in hea-

Another letter o
June, 1567. at his
panic trading into R
I may please your
priuiledge, but also th-
uch commodities as the
directed to your Wopshi-

pieces of karkies,
bestemring wher
my letter have
ave written some
mine, as I hope
two boates wher
They promised
uld depart out of
ey have bought a
d chem in Safetie,
ofe boates wher

the 29. of June,
crep, to wit, the
caused him to put
n, God knoweth,
These parts
all bee the Mur-
to traueil for he-
they dare not dis-
our debts shall be
filling in time to
ohnson left with
bills due his com-
at such debtes as
uld not haue paid
only in the bil-
p: the rest he will
Hawrambecke
uld be paid in ro-
w, who first elum-
y fure then to fur-
e alwayes about
me to the ppe
Cozonomet in
good merchants
h the Emperour
with other talke,
no man was able
e was. We then
he gotten at his
ces since his com-
to eate his paine,
at were promised
onsideration that
he he procured o-
uer was in que-
is, and all other
for all other smal
we shall seeke to
med here, it will
of three shaghs
two letters of all
June last, by one
er the same vnto
ur I am right so-
in Gilan, not go-
him, to the exam-
pley you sent last,
being

bring bought of ^{the} Quarles, were good and full lengths and well sorted. The Princes Amba-
sador of Gilan was in Casbin, at my being there. I hope in God, if I remaine here, and may goe
to Gilan, to obtaine for your worships the like priuiledge at the kings hand there also. For I haue
somthing moued the matter, being put in such comfort, that I doubt not the getting thereof with
small charges, which I had done at this time if I had had other here with me to put in trust: for
from Casbin to Gilan is but 5. dayes riding, which Countrey may be profitable to your Wor-
ships. There is in that Province good store of silke, better cheape, & better in goodnesse then this
countrey like is. Also great store of Alom, being there sold this towne batman, for one bist and a
halfe. I haue made reckoning, al charges boyned from hence to Colmogro, & from thence freight
into England at three pounds the tunne, al charges accounted, will not stand you in about 18. and
20. shillings the hundred. You haue yearly by report two or three hundred tunnes lading. Other
commodities there for England I heare not of. As for gals here so bee bought, there is no profit
to be done by them. They be brought from Aleppo, and sold here not vnder 3. or 4. shaghs their
batman, being six pounds English waight. Graime that you die scarlet withall is worth the bat-
man ready money, 200. shaghs, reckoning the shaghs for 6. pence Russe, it may be 6. rubbles their
batman. Your worships may send some portion of money, if you may buy, as I thinke you may, for
12. and 13. s. a pound the berries, so you shall gaine both in the price and waight. If one English-
thing, what forer should haue chanced of me, I would then haue deliuered our bills of debtes and other
pieter, and so haue gone to Ormus and Aleppo, which both loyne on the borders of this countrey,
being the chiefe Part towne, whereunto from all places merchants resort. And thus would I
haue spent 4. or 5. months in traueiling for further knowledge of things for to haue certified your
worships of. I hope in God to vse things in such order, that yearly you shall haue returne of your
goods from hence, as you haue for of Russe land, and in those ships. For if we may, as I doubt
not with diligence, poutoe to make sales in time, and with speed receiue silke at the Shaughs
from whence it may be sent to Colmogro in three months and lesse, and there to be ready with
the rest of your goods by the end of June for your ships to receiue, that will be time enough. This
I doubt not to hying to passe within a yeere or two, when we are thoroughly settled in these parts,
and better knownen. Whereouer you shall understand, that at my last being in the presence of the
Shaghs, it was sayd to mee that ^{the} Anthonie Ienkinson did proffer to take all the rawe silke in
these parts to be had three or foure thousand horses lading, euery horse load being 50. or 60. batmans,
beside silke of Grofin. Great abundance of silke at times is sent out of these parts, to 4. or 5.
hundred horse loads at a time by the Turkes, who bring great store of siluer to be coined, to wit,
Dollars at ten shaghs the peice. The Hungarie Duckett is at 12. shaghs. And hauing money
in readiness at the time of the yeere, they buy silke the better cheape, when the countrey men bring
it first to be sold. If your worships may bargain with the Venetians to take silke at your hands,
or otherwise deale with them, I doe not mistrust but to haue at the Shaughs hand fire batmans of
silke for two peices and a halfe of karkies. Your good aduise herein, and in other matters, I trust
you will write with convenient speed. Master Anthonie Ienkinson hath deserued great com-
mendation at all your worships hands: for the good report of his well and wise doings in those
parts, was oftentimes a comfort to me to heare thereof, and some good helpe to me in my proce-
dings. To this day I neuer heard from any of our merchants. God graunt me in health to see
your worships, for I haue had a carefull traueil, with many a sorrowfull day and vnquiet sleepes.
Neither had I the company of one English person, to whom sometimes I might haue ealed my
gentle heart, as God well knoweth, who hath deliuered me from mine enemies. Thus almightie
God graunt you in health and wealth long to liue.

The Ambassa-
dor of the Prince
of Gilan.

Gilan but five
dayes riding
from Casbin.

Gala.

Gratus.

Ormus.
Aleppo.

pp. Anthonie
Ienkinson's offer
to the Shaugh.

pp. Anthonie
Ienkinson com-
mended.

The Shaugh
letters to the
English com-
pans.

Your humble seruant at commandement
during life, Arthur Edwards.

Another letter of Arthur Edwards written in Astracan the 16. of
June, 1567 at his returne in his first voiage out of Persia, to the right worshipfull Com-
panie trading into Russia, Persia, and other the North and Northeast partes.

It may please your Worships that here in I haue written not onely certaine articles of your
priuiledge, but also the Gouvernours names, with the Consuls, Assistants and generalitie. Also
the commodities as the Prince of Emperour of the Countrey hath written in one of his letters
directed to your Worships to be sent him, with other notes which I thought good to be remem-
bered,

byed, as may appeare hereafter following. Your privilege is written, graunted, and given in the names of these five persons following: to wit, Sir William Garrard, Sir William Chester, Governours, Sir Thomas Lodge, Master Anthony Jenkinson, Master Thomas Nicols and Arthur Edwards.

1 First, it is granted that you shall pay no manner of customes or tols, any kinde of wayes, now, nor in time coming, unto his betres after him. And that all English merchants, such as you shall appoint now and hereafter, shall and may passe and repasse into all places of his dominions and other countries adioyning in the trade of merchandize, to buy and sell all manner of commodities, with all manner of persons.

2 Item, that in all places where any of our merchants shall have their resort, or abiding, his chiefe Gouvernours, Rulers and Justices shall take heed unto vs, being our aide & defence against all evil persons, punishing those that shall do vs any wrong.

3 Item, that for all such debts as shall be owing by any manner of person, justice shall be done on the partie, and we paid at the day.

4 Item, that no manner of persons of whatsoeuer estate or degree they be of, shall be so hardie as to take any kind of wares, or any gifts, without any leave and good will.

5 Item, if by chance medley any of our merchants or seruants, as God forbid, should kill any of his subjects, that no part of your goods shall be touched or medled withall, neither any partie but the offendour, and true iustice to bee ministred, and being any of vs, not to suffer without the Princes knowledge and aduise.

6 Item, that all such debts as are now owing, or hereafter shall be, are to be paid unto any of vs, in the absence of the other, be the partie dead or alive.

7 Item, that no person returne any kind of wares backe againe, being once bought of vs.

8 Item, that when God shall send your goods to Hoze, presently his people shall helpe vs in land with them.

These articles before written, I trust in God wil content your minds, untill your farther letters be hitherto written unto the Prince, who I am assured will graunt your farther reasonable requests, which his maiestie hath promised. For I moved the question, declaring unto him that I thought your Voyships would write your letters of requests, to craue his farther good will, as should be thought meet for your better assurance in the trade of merchandize: you will hardly beleue what long and gracious talke he had with mee, which I assure you continued two houres, which was strange unto the people & other merchant strangers. For betwixt euery question that his maiestie moued, when I had answered him, hee would talke with his Nobles and other seruants, hauing some knowledge of our Westerne parts & commodities, and then againe would demand other questions. He caused his Secretarie to write the articles before named, in all of his foure letters given me (whereof two as I required, are in the Turkish tongue to be sent you). On the backe side of one, hee hath written what wares his Maiestie would haue you to send him. He held me one houre within might before I departed from him.

These bee the names of the wares or commodities which on the backe side of one of his letters the Shaugh hath written to you to be sent him.

First, some cloth of Gold, with cloth of Tissue, and cloth of Botky, as Veluets wrought with gold.

Item, good veluets, to wit, crimosins, purples, redds, greenes and blackes. These colours his maiestie requireth, for they are most woynne. And though there be some of these wares made in the cite of Cassan, yet nothing like in goodnes, to those that you may procure for him. Small price I thinke will be in these wares: yet for diuers considerations, as also to satisfie the Princes mind, I wish you to send some, and those that be especiall good.

Item, good damasks and satins of all sortes, with an hundred pieces of good charmlies, which are woorth here 80. haughs the piece, at five pence the Shaugh, and those silkes to bee of those colours aboue written, to wit, crimosins, purples, redds, greenes, blackes, with some light warlike colours.

Item, three or foure complete harnesses that will abide the shot of a handgun with 100. or 120. arrows of Steele, being good.

Item, ten or twelue good shirts of male being very good or else none, that may abide the blow of an arrow, and two buffe serkins.

Item, ten or twelue pieces of Westerne karkies, being thicked well and close shut in the two wing, and dyed into scarlets and fine redds. I thinke there will be no such cloth for noblemens capes.

Distances of places

The princenamed them
Item, six pieces of fine
piece.

Item, twentie handgum
locks to trauel withall.

Item 100. bysses for
be sold.

Item, six stone bowes
Item, a mill to grind coze

to write for one to be sent, to
Item, the Prince require

lesse then 40. or 50. for I kn
ned for 20, though the archin

are be fine scarlets, violets
for, for the prince and other in

tainies, lion colours, good li
strictly to see of all sortes, which

estimation then they are: for the
Princes subjects intend to en

were woont to sell unto the V
Thus I commit you all to

Astracan the 16. of June, 156

Distance

The way from Saint Nicho
to Mosco.

To Colmogro

To Viliug

To Toma

To Vologhda

All by the river of Dwina 3

To Yeraulaue

To Rostoue

To Perallaue

To Mosko

By land East and West. 344

The way from Mosko to Smolen

To Moram

To Smolensko

The way from Mosko to Nonogrod

To Otter

To Torzhoke

To Wihouolloko

To Nonogrod

Southeast and Northwest 345

The way from Nonogrod to Narue

To Teleua

To the Friers

To Vria Niagorod

To Narue

Southeast and Northwest 346

Distances of places. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

363

The prince named them *karangies, saying, that materna did make them, & is desirous of them, * 28p the word Karangies, & that he they

Item, twentie handgunes being good, some of them with fire locks, and also six good bags, with locks to trauel withall.

Item 100. busshes for garments (none made of swines haire,) for gifts, and other wise to be sold.

Item, six stone bowes that shoot lead pellets.

Item, a mill to grind coize in the field as they goe, finely deuised: for Cozomomet willed me to write for one to be sent, to giue the Prince.

Item, the Prince requirerth of all foytes and colours of London clothes, I willed you to send no more than 40. or 50. for I know they will be sold to profit, especially such cloth as may be affoorded: ere be fine shaklets, violetes in graine, fine redds, blacks, violetes, fower or five of euery colour, lion colours, good lively greenes, with other, as you shall thinke good: for the prince desireth to see of all foytes, which will be an occasion that the Venetians and Turkes shall bee in lesse estimation then they are: for they themselves do feare, and secretly say the same. And truly the princes subiects intend to enter into trade with vs for spices and other commodities that they were wont to sell vnto the Venetians and Turkes.

Thus I commit you all to God, who send you health with increase of worship. Written in Astracan the 16. of June, 1567.

By your seruant during life to command,
Arthur Edwards.

Distances of certaine places in Russia.

The way from Saint Nicholas Baie to Mosco.

	verts
To Colmogro	100
To Vriug	500
To Totma	250
To Vologhda	250
All by the riuer of Dwina	1100
To Yeraslaue	180
To Rostoue	60
To Peraslau	60
To Mosko	120
By land East and West.	440

The way from Mosko to Smolensko.

To Moram	300
To Smolensko	200

The way from Mosko to Nouogrod.

To Otuer	180
To Torzhoke	60
To Wisnouolloko	60
To Nouogrod	150
Southwest and Northwell	450

The way from Nouogrod to Narue.

To Ieleua	50
To the Friers	60
To Yria Niagorod	40
To Narue	15
Southwell and Northwell	165

From Nouogrod to Vobsky, is 180. verts by East.

The way from Vobsky to Ry in Liefland.

To Newhouse	50
To Gouen on p bozvers.	
To Wenden	
To Trecado	
To Newslot	
To Ric	

All is 200. verts

The way from Mosco to Astracan.

To Costrom	
To Nisnouogrod	
To Cazau	
To Astracan in all is	2800. verts

The way from Vologhda to Narue.

To Belozereo	140
To Batag	80
To Witergen	40
To Ladiski	60
To Onega lake	80
To Oher	90
To Narue	180

Southwell and Northwell 770. verts

To go with a small boat within the land from S. Nicholas to Warabonse.

To Newnox riuer	
To Oufca Gouba	
To Lobshanga	
To Ouf Nauclocki	
To Orlouanos	

To Solulca Bonalterie,
To Candellox
To Oult Colla
To Zhemaker
To Poganna Volocki
To Chibe Nauolocke
To Keger

To Wardhouse
in all 800. versts
Northwest and
Southeast.

To Velcom
To Soyaua
To Coula
To Nendega
To Lampas
To Sloboda

All is 230. versts

The way from Colmogro to Mizemike
Sloboda, where the Samoeds keep
their Mart.

The way to Promo from Mezemike
Sloboda, where the Losh bides
are gotten.

To Vii Pinnego
To Palango
To Leudona

To Lampas
To Pogorel
To Zapolle
To Vromo

All is 115. versts
North-east and
South-west,

The way and distances from Saint Nicholas, to the Caspian Sea.

If you goe straight from Saint Nicholas to the Caspian Sea, you must goe to Vologhda by water, as by the easiest passage, and that is accomplished, passing day and night, in foureteeen dayes and foureteeen nights, in boates cut out of a tree: (the boates are called Stroogs) 1100. versts it is.

By boyle and sleds in 8. dayes you may passe it in Winter. In Summer the way is dangerous by means of marishes and bogs, and not safely then to be passed. Then from Vologhda to Yerslaue, 180. versts ouer land. This Yerslaue standeth vpon the riuer of Volga, 180. versts I say distant from Vologhda.

To the Caspian sea are 2700. versts from Yerslaue.

So from S. Nicholas to the Caspian sea, are } 3800.80. versts.

The iourney from S. Nicholas to Yerslaue is accomplished in foureteeen dayes by water, and two dayes by land. } 16. dayes.

From thence to Astracan men trauell by water in 30. dayes and 30. nights,

So between S. Nicholas and the Caspian sea, are } 46. dayes iourney.

There passe downe Volga euery Summer, 500. boats great & small, from all the upper parts of the riuer, whereof some be of 500. tunne. They goe for Selterall salt and for Sturgeon.

The salt lieth in rocks (and is whitish red, and in fine sand) as it were 30. miles from Astracan toward the Caspian sea. They dig it themselves and pay nothing for it, but to the prince a penny a poob, viz. 40. pound weight.

The Sturgeon which they call Ocerera is taken fiftie miles on this side Astracan. Along the riuer the space of 20. miles, they make their booties in plaine grounds, & fish for the space of three moneths, viz. from the end of May till the end of August, and hauing salt they use to salt them.

The riuer is there 5. or 6. miles broad, but with some Islands.

The riuer below Yerslaue, where it is most narrow, is a mile broad from side to side.

The riuer runneth vpon red clay, all woods of birch and oke on the riuer sides, laue about the townes of the fishing places.

Dwina from S. Nicholas to Vsiug runneth all on chalk and sand: the fish are sweete & fat.

The Mene a fish with a great head a foot long byed with about Vologda, and is fat and delicate.

Between Volsko and Nouogrod, the space of an 180. miles, groweth flaxe: the whole sale in length is so imployed, and as much in breadth: this is vpon a flat soile.

The hempe groweth about Simolensko vpon the Polish bozder, 300. miles in compass: much of the soile is so imployed.

Of this hempe they bring in Winter to Vologda and Colmogro, and we see in woyke in making of cables about 100. men.

The Russians do spin and hatchell it, and the English carre it in thred and lay the cable. One cable of those is woyth two of Danzick, because the Danzickers put in old cable and rotted fluffe, which in fowle weather is found of no strength.

Soinoua, a tree that cureth the woike with the haulings of the woods, groweth in these parts, and of the barks they make ropes as big as a mans arme for their boates.

The Samoeds lacking linnen make handkerchiefs and towels of the very wood of this tree.

Fishing for
Sturgeon for
3. moneths.

The English
men in making
of cables,
set on woyke a
100. men in
Kulita,
Soinoua tree,
excellent for
the cure of the
woike.

Somtham and

The wood of this tree is
Rose Island in S. N.
marie: This Island is in
The snow here about
ground is not deep with
after September the first
hath fire and Birch, and

The way discou
from the towne o
vnto the citie of N
stance of miles, as
Edapan
Backe,
in the sa
fozere ch
The
with we



monalterie called S. Mic
which there met vs.

From Colmogro to this
to till the 21. day in the mo
parted thence.

21 We departed from ch
ued at Rose Island, ouer au
in the morning, which is 35.

trap wind and tide we were

23 We departed from the
to an anker at the Beacons, g
fer from thence, the wind bein

when as we came to an anker

The sayd towne of Newn

25 We departed fro New
and Southeast, and our course

The point of Tolstick whi
headland of Seufemski lie nex

to an anker there this day at 4

where we continued in harbor

27 We departed from Seuf
by North, and our course No

The sayd land of Seufemski
well and by North, and betwee

This day at Sunne set we c
with the wind at South and by

Owaa riuer,

Being past the said Island 1
Island of Sogifney, where we r

29 The 29. day we departed f
wind at East north-east, & our co

ger, being 30. miles from Sogifi

Island called Abdon, being from

if the great prouidence of G
mongst them in the night time, an

million as we found it.

But whosoener will trauell th
chennell which groweth along the c
the lead, and so goe a leaboo

headland,
We gaue the headland a birch o

Southam and Spark. Traffiques, & Discoueries.

365

The wood of this tree is as heauie as hollie, and the shavings tough.

Rose Island in S. Nicholas Bate is full of Roses damaske and red, of violets and wild Rose.

The description of Rose Island.

The snow here about the midst of May is cleared, hauing bin two moneths in melting, then the ground is m. d. by within 14. dayes after, and then the grasse is knce high within a moneth. The hah of fire and Birch, and a faire fresh spring nere the house built there by the English.

The way discovered by water by vs Thomas Southam & John Sparke, from the towne of Colmogro, by the Westerne bottom of the Baie of S. Nicholas, vnto the cite of Nouogrod in Russia, containing many particulars of the way, and distance of miles, as hereafter foloweth. Anno 1566.



W^e departed from Colmogro about 10. of the clocke afore noone in a Lodja or Barke, which we hired to bring vs along the coast to a place called Soroka, & forerheard.

The Lodja or barke was of the burden of 25. tunnes or thereabout, where with we valed downe the riuer of Dwina, the winde being then caline, vnto a monasterie called S. Michael where we were constrained to anker because of a contrary wind which there met vs.

From Colmogro to this monasterie are 50. versts or miles of Russia, at which place we tarried till the 21. day in the morning, and then hauing the wind somewhat faire, we set saile and departed thence.

21 versts to be 3. quarters of an english mile.

21 We departed from the monasterie of S. Michael, hauing the wind somewhat faire, and arrived at Rose Island, ouer and against the monasterie of S. Nicholas, the 22. day at 2. of the clocke contrary wind and tide we were constrained to tarry there all that day.

22 We departed from the monasterie of S. Nicholas at 7. of the clocke in the euening, & came to an anker at the Bearcons, & continued there until halfe an houre past 10. of the clocke, and then when as we came to an anker against Newnox town, where we continued until the 25. day. The sayd towne of Newnox is from the monasterie of S. Nicholas 35. miles.

At this towne Richard Chancellor in his first voyage, with 150. companies of shipboard were killed.

25 We departed from Newnox hauing at one of the clocke in the after noone, the wind at South and Southeast, and our course North west and by West.

The point of Tolstick which is the headland before the entrance of Newnox hauen, and the headland of Seulemski lie next Southeast and by South, North west and by North. We came to an anker there this day at 4. of the clock in the afternoon, being from Newnox hauen 15. miles, where we continued in harbour til the 27. day of the month, by reason of contrary winds.

27 We departed from Seulemski in the morning at 5. of the clocke, the wind next at East and by North, and our course North west and by West.

The sayd land of Seulemski & the headland going into Owna riuer lieth East and by South, west and by North, and between them is 25. miles.

This day at Sunne set we came to an Island called Sogisney passing betwixt it & the maine, with the wind at South and by East, our course was West and by South, being 85. miles from Owna riuer.

Being past the said Island 10. miles, the wind came contrary, whereupon we returned to the Island of Sogisney, where we remained until the 29. day.

29 The 29. day we departed from Sogisney afore sayd, at 5. of the clocke in the after noone, the wind at East northeast, & our course was South west & by west, passing by an Island called Anger, being 30. miles from Sogisney, and keeping on our course, we came by the headland of Anger, and if the great prouidence of God had not preserved vs, we had there perished, being fallen amongst them in the night time, and our pilot none of the perfectest, which was contrary to his profession as we found it.

But whosoener will trauell that way must either keepe hard aboord the shoare, for that there is a shoale which goeth along the coast within the rocks, or els giue the headland a birth of 6. miles at the least, and so goe a sea boord all: for there are ledges of rocks that lie five miles from the headland,

We gaue the headland a birth of 3. miles, notwithstanding there lay two rockes two miles to sea

sea boord of vs, so that we were inclosed with them, and fate vpon the highest of them: but it pleased God to make it calme, and giue vs the day also, or els we had miscaried.

30 We departed from the headland of the Island of Abdon, at 4. of the clocke in the morning, directing our course West, and at 10. of the clocke before noone, we arrived at a monastrie named Solosky, which is 15. miles from Abdon.

At this monastrie we continued untill the 31. day of this moneth. We had here deliuered vs by the chiefe monkes of the monastrie, their letter and house seale, and a seruant of theirs to conduct vs safely through the dangerous riuer of Owiga.

The people of all those parts are wild, and speake another kind of language, & are for the most part all tenants to the monastrie. The effect of the letter was, that they should be ready to helpe and assist vs in all dangerous places, and carie our boats and goods ouer land in places needfull, as in deed they did, as hereafter shall appeare.

Note, that at our being at the monastrie, there was no Abbot for the place as then chosen: for 15. dayes before our arrival there, the Abbot was sent for by the Emperour, and made Episcopopolitane of the realme, as he now is. The number of monkes belonging to the monastrie are at the least 200.

31 We departed from the monastrie of Solosky, as is aforesayde, to a faire stone house of theirs, which is 5. miles from the monastrie, lying from it South and by West.

August.

1 We departed from the Stone house at 3. of the clocke in the morning: our course was West for 60. versts, and then passing betwixt diuers and sundry rocks, with many small Islands round about vs for the space of 20. miles, keeping most commonly the same course still, we then shap'd a new course, and yet sundry times shifting, but we alwayes kept the South west, and needfull of all South south west, until we came within two miles of the entrance of the riuer Owiga, where we were to beare in, West and by North.

The riuer
Owiga.

From the riuer Owiga, to the Islands and rocks before mentioned, are 20. miles.

We arrived about 4. of the clocke in the after noone within the riuer of Owiga, at a place named Soroka, at which place we forsooke our barke of Lobia, & continued there in making provision for small boates to carie vs by the riuer untill the 3. day of the same.

3 We departed from Soroka at two of the clocke in the afternoone, with 3. boats and 12. men to rowe, and set the foresaid boates by the riuer of Owiga, which we hired.

The fall of a
riuer.

We went this day 7. miles to a place called Ostroue, where we lay all night, but in the way 4. miles from Soroka, at a place where the water falleth from the rocks, as if it came steepe downe from a mountain, we were constrained to take out our goods and wares out of the said boats, and caused them to be caried a mile ouer land, and afterwards also had our boates in like sort caried by drawen ouer land by force of men which there dwelled, being tenants to the monastrie aforesaid.

And when our boats were come to the place where our wares were laid, we lanch'd our boats and laded our wares againe, and went to the place before named, where we continued and remained that night.

We departed from Ostroue in the morning before Sunne rising, rowing and setting by the riuer 5. miles, where we came to a place whereas we were againe constrained to take out our wares, and to carie them and our boats three miles ouer land, so that with rowing, drawing and setting, we went this day 10. miles more to a place called Sloboday, where we lay all night.

5 We departed from Sloboday in the morning at Sunne rising, and at six of the clocke in the afternoone, we came to a village called Paranda, which is from Sloboday 30. miles, where we remained all that night.

6 We departed from Paranda at 6. of the clocke in the morning, and all that day what with setting and drawing our boats, we went but 11. miles, for we twice unladed our wares, & drew our boats ouerland, in one place a mile & an halfe, in another place as it were the eighth part of a mile, and so we came to a place called Voyets, where we caried all that night.

7 We departed from Voyets at 4. of the clocke in the morning, & so came to an Ozero of lake, called after the name of the riuer, & vnto a place called Quequenich, we came thither by one of the clock in the afternoone, which is 25. miles from Voyets, and there we remained all night to hire men and boats to carie vs forward on our iourney.

Here departed backe from vs the seruant which we had at the Monastrie, being sent by the monkes to go thus far with vs. And after that he had hired the boats and taken the mens names that should conduct vs, & giuen them charge to deliuer vs with all things in safetie, at a place being a litle towne called Pouenfa, then he departed from vs without taking any reward for his paines, so he was charged and commanded by the monkes.

8 We departed from Quequenich at sunne rising, & all that day rowed vpon the lake amongst many

many Islands there are dayes miles from Q

9 We departed went that day ning we came e

10 We departed the riuer ended, forsooke our boat seven mile off, for our goods, and at things in safetie.

This towne which is 20. miles ouer, being miles, you shall ha here it is to be

dangerous riuers: rempoze any goods Summer it is imp descend from the ro which make so terri

from Nouogrod to Some standeth on th

of Some, with the di

12 We departed hired to carie vs to a

where we arrived the wares from thence to

14 We departed fr a certaine Island nam

cray windes we there

16 We departed fr 17 day in the morning,

the 21. day of the said m

18 We departed fro monastrie at 2. of the c

19 We departed from long the lake: we saile

into a riuer called Swire

of the riuer, where we ca

of that riuer went with v

23 We departed from summer sailing, and son

place called Vassian.

24 We departed from where we lay all night, at

25 We departed from S

which riuer hath his beg

City, and so falleth into

road. This lake falleth i

a good pilot, may goe t

as soone as we were ent

where we lay all that nig

We departed from S

our boates all day, &

miles from S. Nicholas

Sowham and Spark Traffiques, and Discoueries.

367

many Islands. The inhabitants doe there report that there are as many Islands in their lake, as there are dayes in the peere. In the euening we came to a village named Tellekina, which is 60. miles from Quequenich.

*The lake here
full of Islands.*

9 We departed from Tellekina in the mozing at 5. of the clocke, and so entering into a riuer, we went that day 13. miles. In one place we caried our boates and goods ouer land 3. miles. At eue-ning we came to a place called Oreiche na maclay, where we lay all night.

10 We departed thence at 5. of the clocke in the mozing, and so rowing, came to a place where the riuer ended, being 20. miles distant from the place where we lay all night, at which place we e forooke our boates and unladed our wares, and sent a man to the towne of Pouensa, which was seven mile off, for hozies to cary vs and our wares to the said place. The hozies came, and we laded our goods, and at fixe of the clocke in the afternoone we arrived at the towne of Pouensa, with all things in safetie.

This towne of Pouensa standeth within one mile of the famous lake of Ozera of Onega, which is 30. miles long, and in some places 70. miles ouer. But where it is narrowest it is 25. miles ouer, being fild with many goodly riuers which fall into it. But where it is narrowest it is 25. miles, you shall haue 40. and 45. fathoms of depth.

*The famous
lake of Onega.*

Here it is to bee noted that from this place of Pouensa vnto the billage of Soroka downe those dangerous riuers which we came throug, at no time of the peere can any man cary of transport any goods that come from Nouogrod, of the Narue, and such other places: for in the summer it is impossible to cary downe any wares by reason of the great fells of water that doe descend from the rocks. Likewise in the Winter by reason of the great foze and fall of waters which make so terrible raises, that in those places it neuer freezeth, but all such wares as come from Nouogrod to Pouensa, are transported by land to a place called Some in the Winter, which Some standeth on the sea side, as doth Soroka. The ready way from Pouensa by land to this place of Some, with the distance of miles I will shew hereafter.

11 We departed from Pouensa at 5. of the clocke in the mozing, with 2. small boats which we hired to cary vs to a place called Toluo upon the lake of Onega, being 50. miles from Pouensa, where we arrived the 13. day in the mozing, where we bought a boate that caried vs and all our wares thence to the Citie of Nouogrod.

12 We departed from Toluo at 3. of the clocke in the afternoone, and at the euening arrived at a certaine Island named Salasalma, upon the said lake 7. miles from Toluo, and by reason of contrary winds we there caried but till the 16. day of this moneth.

13 We departed from Salasalma, at 8. of the clocke in the mozing, and came to an Island the 17. day in the mozing, named Vorrionia, where we continued by reason of contrary winds, vntill the 21. day of the said moneth, and it is 60. miles from Salasalma.

14 We departed from Vorrionia Island two houres before day, and arrived at S. Clements Island named S. Clements Monasterie at 2. of the clocke in the after noone, being from Vorrionia 48. miles, along the lake: we sailed without striking of saile vntill two houres within night, and then entred into a riuer called Swire, at a Monasterie called Vofnessino Christo, five miles from the entrance of the riuer, where we taried all night. It is from S. Clements Monastery 160. miles: the streame of that riuer went with vs.

*S. Clement his
Monasterie.*

15 We departed from Vofnessino Christo before Sunne rising, and baled downe the riuer sometime sailing, and sometime rowing, so that this day we went 90. miles and lay at night at a place called Vassian.

16 We departed from Vassian at the breake of the day, and came to a place called Selucax, where we lay all night, and is 10. miles from Vassian.

17 We departed from Selucax at 4. of the clocke in the mozing, and entred vpon the Lake of Ladiskaie, the winde being calme all that day sailing 3. houres, and then it was with vs, so that we rowed that day 10. miles, along vpon the said lake, and entred into the riuer of Volhuski, which riuer hath his beginning 20. miles aboue Nouogrod, and runneth through the midst of the Citie, and so falleth into this lake, which is farre longer then the lake of Onega, but it is not so good a pilot, may goe through the sea that commeth from the Sound: where any vessel of boat, ha-ving a good pilot, may goe through the Sound into England.

*The riuer of
Volhuski
The lake of
Ladiskaie.*

18 As soone as we were entred into the riuer, we came to a Monasterie called S. Nicholas Medu-where we lay all that night.

19 We departed from S. Nicholas Medued, at fixe of the clocke in the mozing, rowing and sailing our boates all day, and came at night to another Monasterie called Gosnopol, which is 10. miles from S. Nicholas Medued, where we lay all that night.

*The monaste-
rie of Gosno-
poli.*

The Citie of
Nouogrod.

27 We departed from Gofnopol at 6. of the clocke in the morning, and at evening came to a place called Moillaue, where we lay all night, being 46. miles from the Monasterie of Gofnopol.

28 We departed from Moillaue, and the saide day at night came to a place called Gruffina, 35. miles from Moillaue where we lodged.

29 We departed from Gruffina in the morning, and the same day at evening came to a place called Petroe Sueroe, where we lay all night, being 40. miles from Gruffina.

30 We departed from Petroe Sueroe in the morning, and at two of the clock in the afternoon we arrived at the Citie of Nouogrod, being twentie miles from Petroe Sueroe. Here we found William Rowlie Agent to the company, who was there stayed with all his company, and was not licenced to depart thence for the Mosco, by reason that the plague was then in the Citie of Nouogrod. Unto him we deliuered all the wares that wee brought from Colmogro, for by the way we sold not a peny worth, the people of the countrey euery where be so miserable.

The right way to bying and transport wares from Nouogrod to Rose Island into S. Nicholas bay, where our Ships peereely lade, with the distance of miles from place to place, is as followeth:

- 20 Miles from Nouogrod to Petroe Sueroe.
- 40 Miles from thence to Gruffina.
- 35 Miles from thence to Moillaue.
- 46 Miles from thence to the Monasterie Gofnopol.
- 15 Miles from thence to Ladega towne.
- 15 Miles from thence to Selunaz ouer the lake of Ladega, albeit there be many villages all along the lake.
- 180 Miles from Ladega towne by the riuer of Swire, vnto the Monasterie of Vosnessino Christo, albeit there are many villages vpon the riuer: for within euery fine or sixe miles you shall haue villages or small townes.
- 160 Miles from Vosnessino Christo to S. Clements Monastery, albeit there be many villages all along the lake of Onega.
- 48 Miles from thence to Voronia.
- 67 Miles from thence to Toluo towne: and there are diuers villages al along the lake where the carriers may lie, and haue meate for man and horse.
- 50 Miles from thence to Pouensa, where Onega lake endeth.

The way from Pouensa to Some towne is this:

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| 30 Miles from Pouensa to Mastelina. | } | 20 Miles from thence to Varnich. |
| 10 Miles from thence to Tellekina. | | 10 Miles from thence to Ostrou. |
| 30 Miles from thence to Toluich. | | 15 Miles from thence to Lapina. |
| 35 Miles from thence to Carraich. | | 20 Miles from thence to Some it self. |

Note, that from the Citie of Nouogrod vnto the towne of Some is 936. miles, and from the towne of Some vnto the Monasterie of S. Nicholas or Rose Island, ouer and against where our Ships do ride, is iust as many miles as is Soroka village from S. Nicholas, as the Russes doe compute it, as also we do iudge it, namely 325. miles. So that from Nouogrod to S. Nicholas towne, is by our accompt 1261. miles or veris.

If furthermoze it is to be noted that all such wares as shall be bought at Nouogrod, and sent to Some towne, must be sent by sled way in the Winter: for if any ware should be sent from Nouogrod by water in the Spring of the yeere after the pee is gone, then must the said wares remaine at Pouensa towne al that Summer, by reason that in the Summer there is no way to goe from Pouensa vnto Some towne.

At Pouensa there are many warehouses to be hired, so that if there were as much goods as our ships could cary away, you might haue warehouses to put it in: but if there should remaine much ware all the Summer, to be caried in the Winter to Some towne, then horses are not easily to be gotten at that place to cary it thither: so that your wares once bought at Nouogrod, you must haue carriers there to cary it to the towne of Some by sleds, whereof you may there haue 2000. if you will, by the report of the Russes.

For from Nouogrod perely there go many sleds in the Winter to fetch the salt from Some, with carriers and empty sleds there to buy it, and to bying it to Nouogrod to sell it in the market or other wise.

From Nouogrod vnto Some towne you may haue a pood of wares caried for eight pence or nine pence: but in any wise your wares must bee sent from Nouogrod by the first of January, so

Travel by
sleds.

2000. sleds
belonging to
one towne.

that the wares in
the way vntill the
the heate of the s
cleare: and if the
then doe the lake
wed, although oth

In the towne
reposing of our w
S. Nicholas road,
vnto S. Nicholas
alines the tunne.

Woulde alwa
hope that the natu
libering the great

An Act for th
covering
Anno 15



Miles, lands, territo
last king not comm
the said king, who
priviledges promise
uers other respects
leas, to graunte by h
remember the 26. day o
men in the said letters
cents, and to their fur
couertie of lands, te
the aduenture of ent
each one booy, and pe
and that the same s
gouernours, soure Co
aduenturers, and that
minalltie of Merchant
Seigniorie unknown
interpile, by Seas fi
men, so answere and to
iudice temporall of s
all actions, real, perfo
also in all plaints, su
and concerning the said
as ample manner and
grauing vnto them by
minces, franchises, li
appeare. And among o
ships, by the said s
Edward Bonauent
Prince Lord John V
c. who receiued the

ening came to a
e of Goshopolie
ed Gruffina, 35,

came to a place

in the afternoone
Here we found
any, and was not
Cittie of Nouo-
rod, for by the way

and into S. Ni-
ce to place, is as

many villages all

ie of Volnessino
fine of five miles

re be many vill-

ag the lake where

o Varnich.
o Oltrouo.

o Lapina,
to some it selfe,

stiles, and from the
against where on
the Russes dwell
S. Nicholas tom,

ogrod, and sent to
sent from Nouo-
wares remaine at
y to goe from Po-

much goods as can
uld remaine much
are not easily to be
rod, you must have
haue 2000. if you

the sale from Some,
to sell it in the mar-

for eight pence
st of January, in
that

The Q^{ueenes} A^{de}. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

369

that the wares may bee at Some by Candolemas, or soone after: for if your wares should tary by the way untill the 15. of February when the Sunne is of some power, then is it dangerous: for the heate of the Sunne in the day causeth the deepe lakes of Ladega, and specially of Onega to cleane: and if there should come then a sudden thaw, as oftentimes in that time of the yeere doeth, then doe these lakes open and bryake, whereby many men are lost, and both men and horse dyed, nee, although other riuers do remaine frozen a long time after.

In the towne of Some also there are many warehouses, whereof we cannot be destitute for the repoyling of our wares, as also as many barkes as you will to transport your wares from thence to S. Nicholas road, and that for three pence a pood's carpage: so that from the Cittie of Nouogrod alimes the tuncne.

It should alwayes, that you buy your wares there your selfe, and send it thence: for there is no hope that the natives will bring their wares from Nouogrod to Some, in hope to sell unto vs, considering the great trade that they haue at the Narue, which is within 180. miles off thence.

Written by Thomas Southam a seruant to the company.

No good cause for reasonable example.

Nouogrod within 180. miles of the Narue.

An Act for the corporation of Merchants aduenturers for the discouering of new trades, made in the eight yeere of Queene Elizabeth.

Anno 1566.



Whereas diuers very good Subiects of this Realme of England in the latter ende of the reigne of the late right high and mightie prince our Soueraigne Lord king Edward the sixt, at the gracious encouragement, and right good liking of the said king, and by his specialities liberall example, did at their aduenture, and to their exceeding great charges, for the glory of God, the honor and increase of the reuenues of the Crowne, and the common vtilitie of the whole Realme of England, set forth thre ships for the discouery by Sea, of Isles, lands, territories, dominions, and Seigniories vnknownen, and by the Subiects of the said late king not commonly by Seas frequented: and after that Almighty God had called to his mercie the said king, who died before the finishing and sealing of his most ample and gracious letters of specialities promitted to the said Subiects, as well in consideration of the said enterpryse, as for diuers other respects it pleased our late Soueraigne Q. Mary, at the humble suites of the same Subiects, to graunt by her letters Patents under the great Seale of England, bearing date at Westmister the 26. day of February, in the second yeere of her raigne, for the considerations mentioned in the said letters Patents, to the said Subiects being specially named in the said letters Patents, and to their successors, that they by the name of Merchants aduenturers of England, for the discouerie of lands, territories, Isles, dominions, and Seigniories vnknownen, and not before their late aduenture or enterpryse, by Seas or Nauigations commonly frequented, should be from thenceforth one body, and perpetual fellowship and communalitie of themselves, both in deed and in name, and that the same fellowship and communalitie from thenceforth should and might haue one or two gouernours, foure Consuls, and 24. assistants, of the said fellowship and communalitie of Merchants aduenturers, and that they by the name of the Gouernour, Consuls, assistants, fellowship, and communalitie of Merchants aduenturers, for the discouery of lands, territories, Isles, dominions, and Seigniories vnknownen, by the Seas and Nauigations, and not before their said late aduenture or enterpryse, by Seas frequented, should or might be able in the lawe to impleade and to be impleaded, to answer and to be answered, to defend and to be defended, before whatsoeuer Iudge or Iustice temporal or spiritual, or other persons whatsoeuer, in whatsoeuer court or courts, and in all actions, real, personal, and mixt, and in euery of them, and in all plaints of Nouel disseisin, and also in all plaints, suites, quarrels, affaires, businesse, and demands whatsoeuer they be, touching and concerning the said fellowship and communalitie, and the affaires and businesse of the same, only in as ample maner and forme, as any other corporation of this Realme might doe, giuing also, and granting vnto them by the said letters Patents, diuers authorities, powers, iurisdictiones, priuileges, franchises, liberties, and priuileges, as by the same letters Patents more at large will appeare. And among other things mentioned in the said letters Patents, whereas one of the three ships, by the said fellowship before that time set forth for the voyage of discouery aforesaid, named by Edward Bonauenture, had arrived within the Empire and dominion of the high and mightie prince Lord Iohn Vasilivich, Emperour of all Russia, Volodimersky, great duke of Musky, &c. who receiued the Captaine and Merchants of the said shippe very graciously, granting vnto them

them freely to traffique with his subiects in all kinde of merchandizes, with diuers other graciouſe priuiledges and liberties: therefore the ſaid late Queene by the ſame letters patents, ſo her heires and ſucceſſors, did graunt that all the maine lands, iſles, ports, hauens, creeks and riuers of the ſaid mighty Emperour of all Ruſſia, and great duke of Moleco, &c. and all and ſingular other lands, dominions, territories, iſles, ports, hauens, creeks, riuers, armes of the ſeas, of al and euery other Emperour, king, prince, ruler, or gouernour whatſoever he or they be, before the ſaid late aduenture or enterpriſe not knownen, or by the aforeſaid merchants and ſubiects of the ſaid king and Queene, by the ſeas not commonly frequented, nor any part or parcell thereof, and lying ſouthwards, northwards, or northweſtwards, as in the ſaid letters patents is mentioned, ſhould not be viſited, frequented nor haunted by any the ſubiects of the ſaid late Queene, other then of the ſaid company and fellowſhip, and their ſucceſſors, without expreſſe licence, agreement, and conſent of the Gouernour, Conſuls, and Aſſiſtants of the ſaid fellowſhip, and communalitie, or the more part of them, in maner & ſort, as is expreſſed in the ſaide letters patents, vpon paine of forfeiture and loſſe aſwell of the ſhip and ſhips, with the appurtenances, as alſo of the goods, merchandizes, and things whatſoever they be, of thoſe the ſubiects of the ſaid late Queene not being of the ſaid fellowſhip and communalitie, which ſhould attempt or preſume to ſaile to any of thoſe places, whither they were, or after ſhould happen to be found and traffiqued vnto, the one halfe of the ſame forfeiture to be to the vſe of the ſaid late Queene, her heires & ſucceſſors, and the other halfe to be to the vſe of the ſaid fellowſhip & communalitie, as by the ſame letters patents more plainly will appeare.

Since the making of which letters patents, the ſaid fellowſhip haue, to their exceeding great coſtes, loſſes and expences, not onely by their trading into the ſaid dominions of the ſaide mightie prince of Ruſſia, &c. found out conuenient way to ſaile into the ſaide dominions: but alſo paſſing throught the ſame, and ouer the Caſpian ſea, haue diſcouered verie commodious trades into Armenia, Media, Hyrcania, Perſia, and other dominions in Asia minor, hoping by Gods grace to diſcouer alſo the countrey of Cathaia, and other regions verie ſcducient to be traded into by merchants of this realme, for the great benefite and commodities of the ſame.

*This is taken
by Silberman
Bond the ſilber.*

And ſo ſo much as diuers ſubiects of this realme, vnderſtanding the promiſes, and perceiuing that now after the charge and trauel aforeſaid, diuers wares and merchandizes are brought by the ſaide fellowſhip into this Realme, out of the dominions already diſcouered, which bee within this realme of good eſtimation, minding for their peculiar gaine, directly to decay the trade of the ſaide fellowſhip, haue contrary to the tenor of the ſame letters patents, in great diſorder traded into the dominions of the ſaid mightie prince of Ruſſia, &c. to the great detriment of this common wealth. And for that the name by which the ſaide fellowſhip is incorpored by the letters patents aforeſaid, is long, & conſiſteth of very many wordes: Therefore be it enacted by the Queenes moſt excellent Maieſtie, the Lords ſpiritual and temporall, & the commons in this preſent parliament aſſembled, and by authoritie of the ſame, that the ſaid fellowſhip, company, ſociety or copoyation made or created by the ſaid letters patents, ſhall at al time & times from henceforth be incorpored, named and called onely by the name of the fellowſhip of Engliſh merchants, for diſcouery of new trades, and by the ſame name for euer ſhall and may continue a perpetuall body incorporeate in deede and name, and onely by the ſame name from henceforth, ſhall implead, and be impleaded, and ſue and be answered, defend and be defended, ſue and be ſued, in whatſoever courts and places, and ſhall and may by the ſame name bee enabled to purchaſe, haue, holde, poſſeſſe, receiue, and enioy whatſoever manors, landes, tenements, rents, reuerſions, ſeruices, & hereditaments not exceeding a hundred marks pecuniary, not being holden of the Queenes maieſtie, her heires, or ſucceſſors by knight ſeruiſe in Capite, and all goods, merchandizes, chattels, and other things whatſoever, and ſhall and may by the ſame name make and do all things as any other copoyation may do, and alſo ſhall haue and enioy all and ſingular the liberties, priuiledges, iuriſdictions, franchiſes, preeminences, powers, authorities, and things, and may doe and execute all other matters and things in the ſaid letters patents mentioned, or in any wiſe contained.

*English merchants for
diſcouery of new
trades.*

And that no part nor parcell of the maine lands, dominions, iſles, ports, roads, creeks, riuers, armes of the ſeas, of any Emperour, king, prince, ruler or gouernour whatſoever he or they be, before the ſaid firſt enterpriſe made by the merchants of the ſaide copoyation, not knownen by the merchants and ſubiects of this Realme, or by them not commonly by ſeas frequented, and lying from the City of London northwards, northweſtwards, or northwards, nor any part or parcell of the ſame lands, dominions, iſles, ports, roads, hauens, creeks, armes of the ſeas, that now be ſubiect to the ſaid high and mightie prince Lord Iohn Vaſiliuich, his heires or ſucceſſors, or to the Emperour, chiefe gouernour or ruler of the ſaid countrey of Ruſſia for the time being, his heires or ſucceſſors, nor the countreies of Armenia maior or minor, Media, Hyrcania, Perſia, or the Caſpian ſea, nor any part of them ſhall be ſaile or traffiqued vnto, viſited, frequented, or haunted by any perſon being of that ſhalbe a ſubiect or be

men of this realme by any waies or ſort of ſignification of the ſame more part of the ſons offending appurtenances, perſons ſhalbe by or exchanged, in the true intent of the ſaid late Queene's fellowſhip of England taken where reigne laſt, her ſelf or new tract ſerued by the ſaid ſubiects for viſited any perſon or perſons, or their ſubiects, or els whome in which ſuite no elſe beſide of the parcell provided alſo way aforeſaid, haue heretofore letters patents, charters of them ſhall not be or perſons in any in the ſaid fellowſhip, provided alſo, that ſuch goods, wares, or ſhips might be ſent or by this ſtatute of the ſame be brought or conueyed ſhalbe in the prerogative of the ſaid contrie provided alſo, that ſuch ſhips, ſervants, or ſhips, and land of the ſaid Realme, any thing ſhall be better inſtanced, that is ſhall not be inſtanced, or cauſe of ſuit, but onely in the ſaid ſtatute of the ſame to lying into this Realme other commodities but ſhall be ſent for euer the Queenes Maieſtie, be ſent, hauing any haue ſeparation of ſuch ſhips ſhall be information, whether or allowed, provided alſo, and by the ſaid ſtatute, or cauſe of ſuit, or ſhall be ſent into this Realme, upon the ſaid ſtatute, five pounds: other halfe to the ſaid being, by what name provided alſo that ſuch

es ether gracious
ments, for her
creeks and rivers
and singular order
as, of al and euer
the said late
the said king and
and lying forth
ventions, theru
other then of the
ement, or consent
of the more part
of forfeiture and
merchandizes, and
of the said let
those places, whic
of the same forfei
balle to be to the
nly will appeare,
re exceeding great
the said mightie
but also passing
trades into Arme
d grace to discou
into by merchants

s, and perceiving
re brought by the
ch bee within this
trade of the sayde
ner trades into the
common wealth:
ers patents afore
eenes most ereli
parliament affir
opozate made of
opozate, names
ry of new trades,
opozate in deede and
ved, answer and
d places, and shal
and enioy whols
e exceeding a how
cessors by knight
foster, and shal
y do, and also shal
preheminences,
things in the say
cell of the man
Empereour, king,
made by the ma
his Realme, or by
ethwards, for
ations, lites, poys
and mightie yma
mour of ruler
tries of Arme
them shall be said
be a subiect of

nizen of this realme, by themselves, their factozs, or factozs, or any other to their vse of commoditie,
by any wayes of meanes, directly or indirectly, other then by the order, agreement, consent, or rati
fication of the gouernour, Consuls and assistants of the said fellowship and communitie, or rati
more part of them, and their successors for the time being: upon paine that euery person and per
sons offending in this behalf, shall forfeit and loose, lpslo facto, euery such ship and ships, with the
appurtenances, and all such goods, merchandizes, and things whatsoeuer, as by any such person or
persons shalbe by any wayes of meanes, directly or indirectly, provided, caried, conducted, brought
or exchange, in, at, to, through or from any of the places prohibited, as is afore said, contrary to
the true intent of this statute: the one moitie of all which forfeitures to bee to our said soueraigne
Ladie the Queenes Maieste, her heires and successors, and the other moitie thereof to the sayde
fellowship of English Merchants for discouery of newe trades, and their successors, to be seized
and taken wherefoeuer they may be found, by any person or persons, to the vse of our said Soue
reigne Lady, her heires and successors, and of the said fellowship of English merchants for discou
ery of newe trades, and of their successors, or the same of the value thereof to bee demanded of
said by the Queenes highnesse, her heires and successors, or by the said fellowship of English
merchants for discouery of newe trades, or their successors, or their attorney or attorneys, or by
any person or persons being of the same fellowship of English Merchants for discouery of newe
trades, or their successors in any court of Record, or in any other Court or courtes within this
Realme, or els where, by Action of debt, action of detinue, bill, plaint, information, or otherwise:
in which suite no essoine, protection, wager of lawe, or intinccion shall be allowed, for, or on the
behalf of the partie or parties defendant.

Provided alwayes, that whereas diuers Subiects of this Realme being nat of the fellowship
letters patents, that the said subiects, their heires, executors, administrators and assigns, or any
of them shall not be impeached, impleaded, troubled, sued, nor molested for the same in their goods
or persons in any manner of wise, either by our said soueraigne Lady, her heires or successors, or
the said fellowship, or their successors.

Provided also, that it shall be lawfull for any subiect of this Realme, hauing presently any ship
ping goods, wares, or ready money, remayning at or in any place, of or within the dominion of the
sayd mightie prince of Russia, or in any other of the places prohibited to be visited or traffiqued vnto
by this statute of the said letters patents, to fetch, bring, and conuey the same, or cause the same to
be brought or conueyed from thence by sea or otherwise, before the feast of S. Iohn Baptist, which
shalbe in the yeere of our Lorde God 1568, any thing contained in this statute, or in the said letters
patents to the contrary notwithstanding.

Provided also, that it shall be lawfull for any of the subiects of this Realme, to saile to the pozt,
to some, territoire, or castle of Wardhouse, or to any of the coastes, townes, hauens, creeks, rivers,
islands, and land of Norway for trade of fishing, or any other trade there used by the subiects of
this Realme, any thing in this statute to the contrary notwithstanding.

And for the better maintenance of the Hauie and Partners of this Realme, be it provided and
enacted, that it shall not be lawfull to the said fellowship and company, nor to any of them to car
ry and transport, or cause to be caried and transported any commodie of this Realme to their netwe
trade, but onely in English ships, and to be sailed for the most part with English Partners, nor
also bying into this Realme nor into Flanders from their said netwe trade, any merchandizes, or
other commodities but in English ships, and sailed for the most part by the English Partners, or
to forfeit for euery such offence two hundred pounds, whereof the one moitie shall be to the
Queenes Maieste, her heires and successors, the other moitie to the head officers of any pozt
where any haue or harborough decayed, by what name soeuer they bee incorporated, to the
separation of such harborough, that will sue for the same in any Court of Record, by action, bill,
plaint or information, wherein no essoine, protection, or wager of lawe for the defendant shall be
allowed or allowed.

Provided also, and be it enacted, that no manner of person or persons shall from hence forth car
ry or transport, or cause to be caried or transported out of this Realme of England, any maner
of clothes or karkles into any of the partes where the said fellowship and societie is privileged to
trade by this Act, before the same clothes and karkles shall be all dyed, and for the most part dyed
within this Realme, upon paine of forfeiture for euery such cloth and karkle, otherwise caried and
transported, five pounds: the one halfe thereof to the Queenes Maieste, her heires and successors,
the other halfe to the Master and Wardens of the Clothworkers in the Citie of London for the
being, by what name soeuer they be incorporated that will sue for the same.

Provided also that whensoever the said societie or company shall willingly withstand, and dis
continue

continue wholly by the space of three yeeres in time of peace, the discharging of their merchandizes at the roade of S. Nicholas bay in Russia, and doe not discharge their said merchandizes at some other port or roade lying on that North coast of Russia, or other territoire now subject to the mightie prince of Russia, &c. Hereto by the subiects of this realme not commonly frequented, that then during the time of any such discontinuance and withholding, as is aforesaid, it shalbe lawfull to all the subiects of this realme to trade to the Narue onely in English bottoms, any thing in this Act to the contrary notwithstanding.

Provided also, that every of the Queenes Palatines Subiects inhabiting within the Citie of Yorke, the towne of Newcastle upon Tyne, Hull and of Boston, having continually traded the course of merchandize by the space of ten yeeres, and which before the 25. of December that shalbe in Anno D. 1567, shal contribute some, and put in stocke, to, with, and amongst the said company, such summe & summes of money, any of the said company, which hath thoroughly continued and contributed to the said new voyage, from the yeere 1552, hath done, and before the saide 25. of December 1567, shall do, the summe of one ordinary, full and entire position, or share, and be in all things behaue himselfe as others of the said societie be bound to doe, and hereafter shall be bound to do by the priviledges, ordinances and statutes of the saide company, shall from the same 25. day of December 1567, be, and be accounted free, and as one of the said societie and company, and subject to the priviledges, ordinances and statutes of the saide company, reasonably made and to be made, any thing in this present Act to the contrary notwithstanding.

A very briefe remembrance of a voyage made by M. Anthony Jenkinson, from London to Moscovia, sent from the Queenes Maiestie to the Emperour, in the yeere 1566.

The fourth day of May in the yeere aforesaid, I embarked my selfe at Grauesend in the good ship called the Harry of London, and having had a prosperous voyage arrived at the bay of S. Nicholas in Russia the 10. day of July following, and immediately I sent in post to the Emperour to aduertise of my coming, and travelling then thowhe the countrey, I with my company came to the Mosco wherethe Emperour kept his court, the 23. of August, and forthwith gaue the Secretarie to vnderstand of my arrival, who aduertised the Emperours Palatice of it, and the first day of September, being a solenne feast among the Russes, I came before the Emperours Palatice, sitting in his seat of honour, and having kissed his hand, and bene the Queenes Palatices commendations, and delivered her Graces letters and present, he bad me to dimer, which I accepted, and had much honour done unto me both then and all the time of my abode in Russia.

The Priuiledges graunted by the Emperour of Russia to the English merchants of that company: obtained the 22. of September, Anno 1567. by M. Anthony Jenkinson.

Our onely strengthener of all things, and God without beginning, which was before the world, the Father, the Sonne, and the holy Ghost, our onely God, Trinity, and maker of all things, whom we worship in all things, and in all places, the doer and fulfiller of all things, which is the perfect knowledge giuer of the true God, our Loyde Iesus Christ, with the comforter the holy Spirit, in thou which art the strengthener of our faith, keepe vs together, & giue vs health to preserve our kingdome, thou giuer of all good fruites, and helper of all Christian beleeuers.

We great lord by the grace of God, and great duke Iohn Vasiluich of all Russia, Volodimer, Mosco, Nouogrod, Cazan, Astracan, Plesco, Smolensko, Tweria, Yougorie, Vadika, Bulgai, Siber and others, Emperour and great duke of Nouogrod of the lower land, of Chernygo, Rezan, Polorski, Rostoue, Yereflaue, Bealozera, Oudoria, Obdoria, Condensa, and lord of many other lands, and of all the North parts, commander and lord of Liffeland.

Whereas our sister Queene Elizabeth, by the grace of God, Queene of England, France and Ireland, hath writen to vs her letters, that we would graunt her merchants, William Gerrard, William Chester, Rowland Heyward, Lawrence Hulsie, Iohn Marsh, Anthony Jenkinson, William Rowly, and their company of England, to come in ships into this kingdome, and to be merchants, William Gerrard and his company haue required of vs that we would graunt and licence them to come into our countrey of Dwina, with all kind of wares at will, to our city of Mosco, and to all our castles in our kingdomes, we for our sisters sake Elizabeth, by the grace of God, Queene of England, France and Ireland, haue licenced her merchants, William Gerrard

his company to other our inber castles and com we would graunt heretofore of N other our castles some, which re them licence to to our inberitance with all kinde of they bring out of all those wares: take out of the Cas gaine, to sell and our chancellers, e chanceller will se so sell and barter: no other mens wares: and if those wares har, Sharmaky, C they to take their ry, and to bring it tance of Cazan and Cazan and Astracan them passe without them in any wise: shalbe taken of them And likewise we kinde of wares: and they sell with our there: and they shal sell it in their owne land and at vnto to be kin owne wares: and ne the in any wares, no whereas those merch wares at Colmogro man, Astracan, great shall haue their will e then, neither they no to aduertise our chan wares they carry awa no come upon the sea, wares, then we will th Gerrard and his comp Gerrards company be r mds of theirs shall be and of his company co mwared. And wherere our kingdome of Mosc we still holde thet ho we also do licence el ofe voyagers shall wel be graunted them to them selves, and their owne charge, and to their owne, or els two o our owne wares at will any for them. And o

their merchandises
andizes as some
subject to the fau
ly frequented
it shall be lawfu
any thing in this

within the Citie of
usually trade the
December that shal
the said compa
roughly continue
of the said : and
on, or have, and
thereafter shall be
all from the same
societie and compa
reasonably make

Anthony Ien-
taleslie to the

at Grauesend in
spacious bogget
to living, and im
ing, and travelling
Mosco where the
ie to understand
September, being
ing in his lease of
ations, and delive
had much home

to the Eng-
tember, Anno

inning, which was
our onely God in
ings, and to all p
mouldge given of
holy Spirit, and
er, & give us hea
dian beleueers,
ussia, Volodime,
adika, Bulgay, S
Chernygo, Reza
loz of many othe

England, France
William Gerrard
thony Ienkinson
ngdom, and th
ould graunt and
to our city of Mo
the grace of God
William Gerrard

The Emp. privilege. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

373

for company to passe in ships to our kingdome of Colmogro, and to the land of Dwina, and to all
other our inheritances in the North partes, with all kinde of wares to our city of Mosco, and to all
castles and townes in our kingdome. And sir William Garrard & his company desired of us, that
we would grant them licence to passe to our inheritance of Cazan and Astracan, and into our in-
heritance of Nouogrod the great, and to our inheritance of Lifland to Narue and Dorpe, and to
some, which request we haue granted to sir William Garrard and his company, and haue giuen
them licence to passe to our inheritance of Cazan and Astracan, and Nouogrod the great, and in-
to our inheritance of Lifland, Narue and Dorpe, and other places of our inheritance in Lifland
with all kinde of wares, to buy, barter and sell at will, without custome : and what wares soeuer
they bring out of England, or out of any other countrey, needfull or necessary, that they shall bring
take out of the same, such wares as shalbe needfull for our treasury, & those wares there to be opened, and then to
gaue, to sell and barter at their pleasure, and to sell none of the fine wares before they be serued by
our chancellors, excepte sayeing clothes, and other wares not meet for our treasury : and when out
to sell and barter it for wares meet for our treasury, and bring it to our treasury, and they to take
no other mens wares to barter or sell with them, nor yet our people to buy or sell for them their
har, Shamaky, Chaday, or into any other countrey, or els to go into their owne countrey, then
they to take their treasure with them, and to barter and sell it for wares necessary for our inheri-
tance of Cazan and Astracan, or to any other of our castles and townes, that then our capitaine of
them passe without taking custome of them or their wares, and without pening or looking upon
shalbe taken of them nor their wares to be serued of any man.

And likewise we haue granted them to buy and sell in all our kingdomes and castles, with all
kinde of wares : and we haue also licensed them, that when those English merchants do desire to
buy or sell with our merchants wholly together, that they shall haue liberty so to do wholly toge-
ther : and they that do desire to sell their owne wares by retails to our people & other strangers, as they can agree : and without
sell it in their own house by retails to our people & other strangers, as they can agree : and without
and articles to be kept in their house with our scale, and they themselves to barter and sell their
owne wares : and no Russe merchant in Mosco, or any other place in our kingdome to sell for
them any wares, nor to buy or barter any wares for them, nor couler any strangers goods. And
whereas those merchants of England, sir William Garrard and his company do desire to sell their
wares at Colmogro, Dwina, Vologda, Yeraslaue, Colstrum, and in Nouogrod the lesser, Ca-
shan, Astracan, great Nouogrod, Plesko, Narue, Dorpe, and in other our townes & castles, they
shall haue their will to sell it : and of their wares of England and Russeland no custome shalbe ta-
ken, neither they nor their wares shalbe stayed in any place : and when they depart out of Mosco,
to aduertise our chancellors thereof, and not to giue any note or inuentory of any kinde of their
wares they carry away : and when the English merchants, sir William Garrard and his company
do come upon the sea, and by misfortune haue their ships cast away upon those coasts of the North
parts, then we will their goods to be sought out with truerth, and to be deliuered to sir William
Garrard and his company, which as then shall be found in our countrey : and if that sir William
Garrards company be not in the Mosco nor in our countrey, then we will and command that those
goods of theirs shall be layd up in a place of safe garde until such time as the said sir William Gar-
rard or his company come to demand the same : and then at their comming we will that it shall be
deliuered. And whereas heretofore we haue giuen sir William Garrard and his company in this
our kingdome of Mosco the new castle by the church of S. Maxim behinde the market, they shal
here still holde their house as heretofore we haue giuen them, paying no custome for the same :
and we also do licence them to keepe one Russe poyter or two, or els of their owne countrey, and
to buy or sell with them, and not sell for them, nor barter, nor buy for them : And also
we haue granted them to buy a house at Vologda and at Colmogro, or in any other place where
they shall haue charges : and in Vologda or the other houses to keepe two or three poyters of
their owne, or els two or three Russes, and their wares to be layd up in those houses, and to sell
their owne wares at will : and the poyters without them to sell none of their wares, neither yet to
buy any for them. And our officers of Colmogro and Dwina, and of other our castles & townes
shall

shall not looke ouer the wares, nor take any custome thereof: neither shall those English merchants Sir William Garrard and his company be iudged by any of them. And when the English merchants shall send from our kingdome their owne people into their owne countrey by land or ouer other kingdomes whatsoeuer they be, they may without warr send their owne people at their pleasure. And when any matter of law doth fall out in their trade of merchandise, then they shall be iudged by our chancellers, and law shall be done with equitie betwixt our people and them: and when they cannot be iudged by law, they then shall be tried by lots, and whose lot is first taken out, he shall haue the right. And if it happen any of those merchants to haue any matter of law in any other part of our dominions for trade of merchants, then our capitaines, iudges, and chiefe officers shall heare the matter, and admiſtſer iuſtice with equitie and truethe, and where law can take no place, to be tried by lots, and his lot that is first taken out to haue the right, and for their matters of law no custome to be payed.

The river of Ob ſtraſſible.

Furthermoſe, we for our ſitters ſake Elizabeth haue granted, that none beſide Sir William Garrard and his company, out of what kingdome ſoeuer it be, England or other, shall come in trade of merchandise nor otherwiſe to Colmogro, nor to the river Ob, nor within Wardhouse, nor to Petzora, nor Cola, nor Mezen, nor to the abbey of Petchingo, nor to the 3land of Shallawy, nor to any mouth of the river of Dwina, nor to any part of the North countrey of our coast. And if any merchant, out of what countrey ſoeuer it be, doe come with ſhip or ſhippes, buſſes, or any other kinde of vellell to any of our harbours, within all our North parts, we will that then the people and goods, ſhip or ſhipps, ſhalbe conſiſcate, and forfeited to vs the Emperour and great Duke.

Giuen in our kingdome and houſe of Mosco, the yere from the beginning of the world 7076, in the moneth of September, and in the 34 yere of our reigne, and in our conqueſt of Cazan 16, and in our conqueſt of Afracan 15.

Perused and allowed by vs :

Anthony Ienkinson.
William Rowly.
Thomas Hawtry.
Thomas Sowtham.
Raſe Rutter, tranſlatour hereof
of the Ruſſie tongue.

A letter of M. Henrie Lane to M. Richard Hakluyt, concerning the first ambassage to our most gracious Queene Elizabeth from the *Ruſſian* Emperour anno 1567, and other notable matters incident to those places and times.



Wherewithall ſir, becauſe I ſinde you haue the ſucceſſe and proceedings of Olep Napea the firſt ambassaſſadour of the Ruſſian Emperour to the *Spaſſieſſes* of King Philip and Queene Marie, at what time and at his returne I was remaining in Ruſſia, & do not finde that the perfect knowledge of the firſt ambassaſſage from thence to this our Soueraigne Ladie Queene Elizabeth is come to your hands, betweene whose Highneſſe and the ambassaſſadours I was interpreter, I thinke good to expreſſe it. In Auguſt Anno 1567 arrived at London with their reſtinue two ſpeciall authoriſed meſſengers, named Stephen Iwerdico, and Theodore Pogorella, with letters and preſents to her Maieſty, at that time being at Otelande, where diuers of the chiefe merchants of the Ruſſian company did aſſociate them, and I there doing my duetie and office of interpreter, her Maieſty gaue them audience. Firſt they rehearſed the long ſtile and Highneſſe of their Maſter, with his moſt friendly and hearty commendations to her Highneſſe, and then they reſiſſed the ſingular great ioy and pleaſure that he conceiued to heare of her moſt princely eſtate, dignitie and health: and laſtly, they deliuered their letters and preſents. The preſents ſent vnto her Maieſty were Sables, both in paires for ſhippes, and two timbars, to wit, two times foſtie, with Luſerns and other rich furs. For at that time that princely ancient ornament of furs was yet in vſe. And great pitie but that it might be renewed, eſpeciall in Court and among Magiſtrates, not onely for the reſtoying of an olde woſhipfull Art and Company, but alſo becauſe they be for our climate wholeſome, delicate, graue and comely: expreſſing dignitie, comfoꝛting age, and of longer continuance, and better with ſmall coſt to be preferred then theſe new ſilks, ſtagges, and ragges, wherein a great part of the wealth of the land is haſtily conſumed.

The be of furs wholeſome, delicate, graue and comely.

Theſe ambassaſſadours were appointed lodging and entertainment by the Poſcoule company at their houſe then in Seething Lane, and were ſundry times after permitted to be in preſence

Let

And in the
Spaſſieſſes
that our
and merc
detractio
lowe and
keepe an
and not b
and kneeli
The let
our, bein
The royle
haue ſent y
other letter
the Ruſſieſſ
of 1566, he
countrey at
and Caſſerli
that their ow
of Poland.

This king
reported to be
great duke do
And in the y
in that Duchy
with the ſaid S
loſt all, except
but to Lubec a
out of Dutcha
cattans alſo fur
the arte of foſtie
toward their eaſe
thing. This Sig
withour illu
in better order, a
well I take my

A Letter of
by Stephen
Ruſſia, vnto the



ſiſſa, quod plane
noſtra
iur, pari, cum ve
nos eſſe, Quo no
ſentia officia, vt
lenſum ſuſius li
amus, quin veſtra
1567.

shall those English men
And when the English
one countrey by land o-
eir owne people at their
chandise, then they shall
r people and them : and
ole lot is first taken out,
mp master of law in any
changes, and these offi-
and where law can take
right, and for their ma-

none beside Sir William
d of other, shall come
ob, nor within Ward-
ingo, nor to the Island
f the North countrey of
me with ship or shippers,
r North parts, but will
ed to be the Emperours

ing of the world 7076,
r conquest of Cazan 16,

enkinson.
owly.
awtry.
owham.
r, translate of heretofore
sle tongue.

concerning the
b from the Russian
e places and times.

to proceedings of Olyp
ur to the Maestrie of
o returne I was reme-
e of the first ambassa-
zabeth is come to you.
I was interpreter, I
with their residence
re Pogorella, with in-
re diuers of the chieft
mp duetie and office
long file and ship
r Highnesse, and the
are of her most princely
esentia. The princely
timbars, to wit, the
e princely ancient orna-
ed, especiall in Count
ull Art and Compara-
omely : expelling di-
ll cost to be preserv-
e wealth of the land

the Polacke comm-
mitted to be in presen-
8

Letters of M. H. Lane. Traffiques, & Discoveries.

375

And in May 1568 tooke their leaue at Greenwich, where they understood and had the Queenes
Maestries minde, letters and reward. At the latter part of her talke, her Highnesse considering
that our trade to Saint Nicholas since the beginning had bene offensive to diuers princes, states,
and merchants Eastward, vnder these speeches of the like : Who is or shall be more touched by
detractours, with flying tales and vnrue reports, then Princes and Rulers, to the breach of
loue and vnicie ? your Master and I in things that passe by word and writing, I doubt not will
keepe and performe promises. If he heare the contrary of me, let him suspend his iudgement,
and not be light of credit, and so will I. These wordes they termed her Maestries golden speech;
and kneeling downe, kissed her hand, and departed.

The letters that these two messengers brought, were deliuered to me by my Lord Treasu-
rer, being then Secretarie, to be translated, the copies whereof I had, but now cannot finde.
The copie of the Queenes Maestries letter I send inclosed herewith vnto your worship. I also
haue sent you a copy of a letter written from the king of Polonia to the Queenes Maestrie, with
other letters from some of our nation and factours, declaring the displeasure for our traffike to
the Russes from anno 1558 to the yere 1566, especially by the way of the Narue : in which yere
at 1566, having generall procuracion and commission from the Company, I was in the Lowe
countrey at Antwerpe and Amsterdam, and sometimes in company with Polacks, Danes, and
other Countreys : and by reason I had bene a lodger in Russia, I could the better reply and proue,
that their owne nations and the Italians were most guiltie of the accusations written by the king
of Poland.

This king Sigismundus (whose ambassadours very sumptuous I haue seene at Mosco) was
reported to be too milde in suffering the Polackes, Besceze our traffike they ouerranne his
great dukedome of Lituania, and tooke Smolensco, carrying the people captiues to Mosco.
And in the yere 1563, as appeareth by Thomas Alcockes letter, they suffered the Russes likewise
in that Duchy to take a principall city called Polotzko, with the lord and people thereof. Like-
wise the said Sigismundus and the king of Sweden did not looke to the protection of Liuania, but
lost all, except Rie and Reuel, and the Russes made the Narue his port to traffike, not onely to vs,
but to Lubec and others, generall. And still from those parts the Polackes were furnished
out of Dutchland by enterlopers with all arts and artificers, and had few or none by vs. The I-
talians also furnished them with engines of warre, and taught them warrelike stratagemes, and
the arte of fortification. In the dayes of Sigismund, the Russes would tant the Polacks, that they
lowered their ease at home with their wiues, and to drinke, and were not at commandement of their
king. This Sigismund had to wife the daughter of Ferdinando, Charles the sixts brother, and he
died without issue. Since which time their late elected king Stephanus Batore kept the Russes
in better order, and recovered Polotzko againe in the yere 1579. Thus with my heartie fare-
well I take my leaue of your worship.

Your assured friend Henrie Lane.

A Letter of the most excellent Maestrie of Queene Elizabeth, sent
by Stephen Twerdico and Pheodora Pogorella, messengers of the Emperour of
Russia, vnto their Master the ninth of May 1568.

Imperatori Mosconitarum, &c.



LIZABETHA &c. Literas vestras Maiestatis superiori anno 1567, decimo
die mensis Aprilis datas, vestri mercatores Stephanus Twerdico, & Pheo-
dora Pogorella, qui has nostras perferunt, nobis tradidere. Quos vestros
mercatores in omni suo apud nos & nostros obeundo negotio, ita tracta-
ri, & libenti voluntate, & expresso nostro mandato curauimus, vt non so-
lum vestras Maiestatis pro illis postulationi, sed eorumdem etiam hominum
expectationi plenè satisfactum esse confidamus. Id quod eo fecimus stu-
dia nostra, nostrarumque literarum commendatione, istuc, sub vestro imperio negotiari
munt, pari, cum vestras Maiestatis fauore, tum vestrorum subditorum humanitate, vbiuis ac-
tos esse. Quæ nostra vtrobique, & mutuz inter nos amicitia, & gratia inter nostros bene-
fentia, vt crebra & perpetua existant, nos admodum postulamus. Quem animi no-
sentium susus hi vestri, & opportunius suo sermone coram declarabunt : Quibus non du-
amus, quin vestra Maiestas amplam fidem sit tributura. Deus &c. Grenouici nono die
Mij 1567.

The trade to
St. Nicholas of
Russia to di-
uers princes
& states East-
ward.

Smolen'co won
by the Russes.
Polotzko taken.

Polotzko recou-
ered by Ste-
phanus Batore.

1568

The Ambassage of the right worshipfull Master Thomas Randolphe, Esquire, to the Emperour of *Russia*, in the yeere 1568, briefly written by him selfe.

In this voyage went Thomas Bannister, & Gentrey Duckes, for their voyage into *Peria*.



The 22 day of June, in the yere of our Lord 1568, I went aboard the Harry, lying in the road at Harwich with my company, bring to the number of certaine persons of therabout: of which the one halfe were gentlemen, desirous to see the world.

Within one dayes sailing, we were out of the sight of land, and following our course directly North, till we came to the North Cape, we sailed for the space of twelue dayes with a prosperous winde, without tempest or outrage of sea: having compassed the North Cape we directed our course flat South east, lying upon our right hand Norway, Wardhouse, Lapland, all out of sight till we came to Cape Gallant: and so sailing betwene two bayes, the two and thirtieth day after our departure from Harwich, we cast anchor at Saint Nicholas road. In all the time of our voyage, moze the more great number of Whales ingendering together, which we might plainly beholde, and the Sperma Cetæ, which we might see swimming vpon the sea, there was no great thing to be wonderred at. Sometimes we had calmes, wherein our Mariners fished, and tooke good stoie of diuers sorts. At S. Nicholas we landed the 23 of Iuly, where there standeth an abbey of Monks (to the number of twentie) built all of wood: the apparell of the Monks is superstitious, in blacke hoods, as ours haue bene. Their Church is faire, but full of painted images, tapers, and candles. Their owne houses are low, and small roomes. They lie apart, they eat together, and are much giuen to drunkenness, vnlerned, wpite they can, preach they doe neuer, ceremonious in their Church, and long in their prayers.

At my first arriual I was presented from their Prior with two great rie loanes, fish both salt and fresh of diuers sorts, both sea fish and fresh water, one sheepe alive, blacke, with a white face, to be the more graceful vnto me, and so with many solemn words inuiting me to see their house, they tooke their leave.

Towne of habitation at S. Nicholas there is none more then about foure houses neere the abbey, and another built by the English Company for their owne vse.

This part of the countrey is most part wood, sauing here and there pasture & arable ground, many riuers and diuers Islands uninhabited, as the most part of the countrey is, for the coldest in Winter.

S. Nicholas standeth North east: the eleuation of the pole 64 degrees. The riuer that runneth thre into the sea is called Dwina, very large, but shallow. This riuer taketh his beginning about 700 miles within the countrey, & vpon this riuer standeth Colmogro, and many pretty villages, well situated for pasture, arable land, wood, and water. The riuer pleasant betwene his hills either siue inwardly inhabited, and in a maner a wilderness of his firre trees, and other wood.

At Colmogro being 100 versts, which we account for three quarters of a mile every verst, we taried thre weeks, not being suffered to depart before the Emperour had word of our coming, who sent to meet vs a gentleman of his house, to conuey vs, and to see vs furnished of victuals, and all things needfull, vpon his owne charge.

The allowance of meat and drinke was for euery day two rubbles, bestes the charge of wood by water, and foure scoie post horses by land, with about 100 carts to cary my wines, and other cartage.

Colmogro is a great towne builded all of wood, not walled, but scattered house from house. The people are rude in maners, and in apparell homely, sauing vpon their festiual, and marriage dayes.

The people of this towne finding commoditie by the English mens traffike with them are much at their commandement, giuen much to drunkenness, and all other kinde of abominable vices.

In this towne the English men haue lands of their owne, giuen them by the Emperour, faire houses, with offices for their commoditie, very many.

Of other townes vntill I come to Vologda, I write not, because they are much like to this and the inhabitants not differing from them.

I was siue whole weeks vpon the riuer of Dwina till I came to Vologda, being drawn by men against the streame, for other passage there is none.

Vologda standeth vpon the riuer of Vologda, which commeth into Dwina. The towne great and long, built all of wood, as all their townes are.

In this towne the Emperour hath built a castie inuironed with a wall of stone, and byrches.

M. Th. R.

walles faire and built of byrche, the and many rich men from hence we quall with our mile

The countrey is riuer, and woods, f. At Yerslaue we

gunning at Beal Oze with flat bottomes, b

To saile by this ri 27 cumms, which ther her whole furniture

To Mosco we came some countrey men su

then we had hitherto so We were brought

large, after the fashion Two gentlemen w

that we lacked nothing the house, nor suffer any

their charge. But spee small cause to doubt that

could take place for our Having passed ouer 1

by against Tuesday the The houre being com

small them) came vnto m pelle vs to depart, and m

had bestowed, his men The Ambassaour (be

with life to sit, being the courses before I was sent

erour was set, I was i where late by my estimati

on that day, vpon the rare that they were either

At the first entry into the theirately sitting, graue c

not answered againe of any Emperors was, there recei

Emperors counsellors, and I where I was willed to

send my message as I rece me the Emperors stood by,

where being made, he gau further alked me diuers

This done, I deliuered be by brought, with verses g

all being sayd and done (as to depart, who were all i

unto me: I dine not this and giue leave to ther and

one lone and fauor to our sild with reuerence tooke my

brought me to the Empero to me to the office where I

m I conferred a while, and in one houre after in co

The abbey of S. Nicholas of 20 Monks.

The English house at S. Nicholas.

The riuer of Dwina.

Colmogro.

In English house with lands at Colmogro.

M. Th. Randolfe. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

377

walles faire and hie, round about. Here (as in all other their towne) are many Churches, some built of wycke, the rest of wood, many Ponks and Runnes in it: a towne also of great traffike, and many rich merchants there dwelling.

From hence we passed by land towards Mosco in poste, being 500 versts great, which are equall with our miles. In their towne we baited of lay, being post towne.

The countrey is very faire, plaine & pleasant, well inhabited, cozne, pasture, medowes enough, rivers, and woods, faire and goodly.

At Yerslaue we passed the riuer of Volga, more then a mile ouer. This riuer taketh his beginning at Beal Ozero, & descendeth into Mare Caspium, portable thowow of very great vessels with flat bottomes, which farre passe any that our countrey vseth.

To saile by this riuer into Mare Caspium the English company caused a barke to be built of 27 umms, which there was neuer scene before: This barke built, and ready rigged to the sea with her whole furniture cost not the company aboue one hundred marks there.

To Mosco we came about the end of September, receiued by no man, not so much as our owne countrey men suffered to meet vs, which bred suspicion in me of some other course intended, then we had hitherto found.

We were brought to a house built of purpose by the Emperour for Ambassadors, faire and large, after the fashion of that countrey.

Two gentlemen were appointed to attend vpon me, the one to see vs furnished of victuals, and that we lacked nothing of the Emperours allowance: the other to see that we should not goe out of their charge. But specially he that looked to our persons so straightly handled vs, that we had no small cause to doubt that some euill had bene intended vnto vs. No supplication, sure, or request could take place for our liberty, nor yet to come to his presence.

Having passed ouer 17 weeks in this sort, the Emperour sendeth word that we should be ready against Tuesday the 20 of February, at eight a clocke in the morning.

The houre being come that I should goe to the Court, the two gentlemen Prietaues (as they call them) came vnto me apparelled more princely then before I had euer scene them. They

had borrowed, his men marching on foot, to their great griefe. The Ambassadors (being my selfe) was conueyed into an office where one of the chancellors

was before I was sent for to the Emperour. In the end message being brought that the Emperour was set, I was conueyed by my gentlemen by a paire of staires thowow a large room,

where late by my estimation 300 persons, all in rich attire, taken out of the Emperours wardrobe on that day, vpon three ranks of benches, set round about the place, rather to present a maiestie,

then that they were either of quality or honor. At the first entry into the chamber I with my cap gaue them the reuerence, such as I iudged

to be due to them, graue countenances, and sumptuous apparell required, and seeing that it was

the Emperours countelloys, and she wold me to the Emperour, and brought me to the middle of the chamber, where I was willed to stand still, and to say that which I had to say. I by my Interpreter

delivered my message as I receiued it from the Queene my Mistresse, from whom I came, at whose

words being made, he gaue me his hand in token of her health and state: whereunto

he further asked me diuers questions, and caused me to sit downe,

which done, I deliuered her Maiesties present, which was a notable great Cup of silver curi-

ously wrought, with verses grauen in it, expressing the histories workmanly set out in the same.

All being sayd and done (as appeared) to his contentment, he licenced me and my whole com-

pany to depart, who were all in his presence, and were saluted by him with a nod of his head, and

gave leave to thee and thine to go at liberty, and augment our allowance to thee, in token

of love and fauor to our sister the Queene of England.

With reuerence tooke my leave, being conueyed by two other of greater calling then those

who brought me to the Emperours sight, who deliuered me to the two first gentlemen, who con-

ferred a while, and so returned to my lodging.

Within one houre after in comes to my lodging a duke richly apparelled, accompanied with

The description
out of the in-
land of Mos-
couie.

His arrival at
Mosco.

A special house
at Mosco, built
for Ambassa-
dours.

Two Prietaues.

His admission
to the Empe-
rours presence.

The Queens
present.

The Empe-
rours speech to
the Ambassa-
dour.

fitte persons, ecy of them carrying a silver dish with meate, and couered with silver. The duke first deliuered twenty loaves of bread of the Emperours owne eating, hauing tasted the same, and deliuered every dish into my hands, and tasted of euery kinde of drinke that he brought.

This being done, the duke and his company late done with me, and tooke part of the Emperours meate, and filled themselves well of all foyses, and went not away from me vnto the ward.

Within few nights after the Emperour had will to speake secretly with me, and sent for me in the night by the Long duke: The place was farre off, and the night colde, and I hauing changed my apparell into such as the Russes do weare, found great incommoditie thereby.

Hauing talked with him about three houres, towards the morning I was dismissed, and so came home to my lodging, where I remained about six weeks after, before I heard againe from the Emperour, who went the next day to Slouoda, the house of his solace. After the end of twelue weekes, which was about the beginning of April, the Emperour returned from Slouoda aforesayd, and sent for me againe to make repaire vnto him. And being come, I dealt effectually with him in the behalfe of our English merchants, and found him so graciously inclined towards them, that I obtained at his hands my whole demands for large priuileges in generall, together with all the rest my particular requests. And then he commended to my conduct into England, a noble man of his, called Andrew Savin, as his Ambassadour, for the better confirmation of his priuileges granted, and other negotiations with her Maiesty. And thus being dispatched with full contentment, the sayd Ambassadour and my selfe departed, and imbarked at S. Nicholas about the end of July, and arrived safely at London in the moneth of September following.

A second conference with the Emperour.

Andrew Savin Ambassadour to the Emperour.

A copie of the priuiledges granted by the right high and mightie Prince, the Emperour of *Russia*, &c. vnto the right worshipfull fellowship of English merchants, for the discoverie of new trades: and higher sent by *Thomas Randolfe* Esquire, her Maiesties Ambassadour to the sayd Emperour, and by *Andrew Savin* his Ambassadour in the yere of our Lord God. 1569.



O God euerslasting, and without and before the beginning, the Father, the Sonne, and the holy Ghost, the blessed Trinitie, our onely God, maker, and preseruer of all things, and replenisher of all things euery where, by thy goodnesse doest cause all men to loue the giuer of wisdom our onely Mediatour, and leader of vs all vnto blessed knowledge by the onely Sonne his word, our Lord Iesus Christ, holy and euerslasting Spirit, and now in these our dayes teachest vs to keepe Christianitie, and sufferest vs to winne our kingdome to the happy commodie of our land, and wealth of our people, in despite of our enemies, and to our fame with our friends.

We Iohn Vasiluich by the grace of God, great lord, Emperour, and great duke of all *Russia*, Voloderm, Moscouia, Nouogrod, Emperour of Cazan, Tuersky, Vgorsky, Permisky, Valsky, Bulgaria, and many others, lord and great duke of the Low countreys of Nouogrod, Chornigorsky, Refansky, Polotsky, Rastow, Yeraslaue, Bealoscra, Owdorsky, Condinsky, and all Siberland, great commander of all the North parts, lord of Leiland, and many other Northward, Southward and Westward.

Whereas our sister Elizabeth by the grace of God Queene of England, France and Ireland, defender of the faith, hath written vnto vs her letters for her merchants, who hath made intercession, we should grant our goodnesse to the merchants which are of one Company, and giue them leave to come to traffike in our kingdome to Colmogro, and to the countrey of Dwina, and to our great citie of Moscouia, and to all the cities in our dominions, and thozow our countreys Boghar, to Persia, Casbin, and Charday, and to all other countreys.

We Iohn Vasiluich Emperour and great duke of all *Russia* (for our sister Elizabeths late Queene of England) haue giuen and granted to the English merchants, the Countenours, Consuls, Assistants & fellowship, Sir Wil. Garrard Knight, Rowland Haiward Alderman, Iohn Thaworth Esquire, Iohn Riuer Alderman, Henry Beecher Alderman, Consuls: Sir Wil. Chelms Knight, Edward Iackman Alderman, Lionel Ducker Alderman, Edward Gilbert, Laurence Huse, Francis Walsingham, Clement Throgmorton, Iohn Charles, Nicholas Wheeler, Thomas Banister, Iohn Harrison, Francis Burnham, Anthony Gamage, Iohn Somers, Richard Winkinson, Ioh. Sparke, Richard Barne, Robert Woolman, Thomas Browne, Thomas Smith, Thomas Allen, Thomas More, William Bully, Richard Yong, Thomas Arkinson, Assistants: Ioh. Merth Esquire, Geoffrey Duckett, Francis Robinson, Mathew Field, & all the rest of their company and fellowship, and to their successours and deputies, to come with ships and other vessels

into our Countrey, hereafter shall at any time, in all the townes, ko & Leiland, Vria, our land to Boghar, come there to be any some of all people, And if so be they

har, Persia, Casbin, or any other part in our Countrey to die the same for vs, And all such view of our Cancell needful for vs, before that shall be needfull the same wares: And to Mosco: and then if they, to conuey their where at their pleasure our Treasure, they sh

And when our Countrey, they to take our for our Treasure, and

And when we shall yeeres warning, that it leuen not their owne be And to take our about

Neither shall the Countrey sell it in any wise: li for them.

And when they shall Dominions, then our Countrey passe, not taking a And when we shall their wares, not taking without Merchants or

And whatsoever their which house I granted strangers as they may be under seales.

We haue granted them, as heretofore we did, in our Countrey men, pers that shall liue at their them, but that the said wares: And our Moscoui townes, not to buy any wares at any towne.

And whatsoever Eng Yeraslaue, Casbin, Nouo Nare, Vnagorod, or at all wares as well of other in any place to stay them whatsoever.

And whatsoever march Russe not to returne those the said wares, otherwise the same with all expediton.

into our Countrey, at Colmogorod, & Dwina, and to all the North parts now being ours, or that hereafter shall at any time be in our possession, by sea, river or land, even to our great Citie of Mosko, in all the townes of our Countrey, to Casan and Astracan, to Nouogorod the great, to Pleskour land to Boghar, Persia, Casbin, Charday, and other Countreys: And wheresoever they come there to be and abide freely, and to barter and bargain freely all wares of sale, without cu-
And if so be they bring any fine wares out of

har, Persia, Casbin, or from any other place, & those their wares that come by the way of Narue, or any other part into our Dominion, to bring the same wares into our treasure, and our Treasurers to view the same wares, and to take into our Treasure of the same such as shall be needfull for vs. And all such wares as we shall not need, our Chancellour to rebetune & same: And after the needfull for vs, before our Chancellour have seene the same, not selling any of their wares that shall be needfull to our use, not being brought to Mosco, And all other grosse and heauy wares the same wares: And to giue a note thereof by name, and how much they leaue there, not brought to Mosco: and then if we neede not the said wares, the English Marchants, their seruants & Factors, to conuey their wares the neerest way to Visiting the great, and so to Colmogorod, or elswhere at their pleasure, there to barter and sell the same. But those wares that shall be needfull for our Treasure, they shall not hide from vs in any case.

And when our Chancellour shall send our aduenture, with the said Marchants or their Factors, they to take our aduentures with them, and so sell, & to barter for such wares as shall be meete for our Treasure, and to returne it into our Treasure.

And when we shall sende any aduenture into England then our Chancellour to giue them a peres warning, that their ships may be provided thereafter, that by taking in of our wares, they leaue not their owne behind them.

And to take our aduenture perely when they goe into Persia,

Neither shall the English marchants receiue or colour any of our peoples goods, nor barter nor sell it in any wise: likewise our people not to barter for the sayd English marchants or occu-
py for them,

3 And when they shall come into our Empire of Casan and Astracan, and other places of our Dominions, then our Captaines of Casan and Astracan, and our authorised people, quietly to let them passe, not taking any toll or custome of their wares, nor once to make search thereof.

And when we shall send no aduenture with them, yet to suffer them freely to passe, not biewing their wares, nor taking any kinde of custome. And whatsoeuer English marchant will bargain with our Marchants or Factors wares for ware to barter the same at their pleasure.

And whatsoeuer their Marchant or Factor will sell their wares at their house at Mosco, which house I granted them at S. Maxims at the Mosco, they to sell the ware to our people, either strangers as they may best utter it, keeping within their house, arthimes, measures, and waightes under scales.

4 We haue granted them the saide house at S. Maxims in the halfe free, and without standing rent, as heretofore we did graunte it the said English Marchants, fir Wil. Garrard, and the Company, maintayning in the said house one housekeeper a Russe, and two Russe seruants, or some of their owne countrey men, and none other Russes besides the aforesayde. And the said housekeeper, but that the said marchants themselves or their factors, neither to buy nor sell any wares for them, nor to take the said Englishmens wares to sell them in our townes, nor to buy any wares for them, neither the English marchant to colour any Russes wares as any towne.

5 And whatsoeuer English marchant will sell his wares at Colmogorod, Dwina, Vologda, Yerslaue, Casran, Nouogorod the lower, Casan, Astracan, Nouogorod the great, Vopsko, the Narue, Vniagorod, or at any other townes, they to sell their wares there at their pleasure: And of all wares aswell of other countreys as of Russia, no officer or other to take any custome, neither in any place to stay them in any wise, neither take any kinde of toll of them for their wares whatsoeuer.

6 And whatsoeuer marchant shall bargain or buy any wares of English marchants: The said Russe not to returne those wares vpon the marchants hands againe, but to giue ready money for the said wares, or otherwise they to craue the Iustice to giue right, and to execute the lawe vpon the same with all expedition. And when the English marchants or factors shall traualle from Moscouie

coue after the dispatch of their wares and busiuelte, then to the wh. mietues vnto our Chancel-
lours, whatsoeuer wares of theirs shall goe from Mosco, they not to shew the same wares to any
our officers, noz pay no custome noz toll in any place.

7 If it so happen the English marchants haue any wacke, and the shippes be brought to any
port of our Dominions, we to command the said goods to be enquired & sought out, and to be
giuen to the English merchants, being here abiding at that time in our Countrey, the factors, ser-
uants, or deputies, of the Company aforesayd, to whom we haue granted this our gracious letter.

And if there happen none of the English merchants, factors, seruants, or deputies to be in our
Countreys at such time, then we will all the said goods to be sought out and bestowed in some con-
uenient place, and when any of the Company aforesayd, bying the said letters, shall come
for their goods, we to command their goods to be restored vnto them.

8 Likewise we haue granted leaue to the English merchants, their Gouernours, Counsaile,
and assistants, namely, sir William Garrard knight, Rowland Hayward, and to the Company,
to builde houses at Vologda, Colmogro, and the seauie, at Luangorod, at Cherell, and in all
other places of our Dominions, as shall be needefull for their trade. And they to keepe at the
said house one housekeeper, a Russe, and two or three men to keepe their wares at the said houses,
making sale thereof to whom they will, they, their Factors or deputies: the said house keeper not
to buy or sell for them.

9 Also we haue giuen and granted to the English Merchants, their house which they haue by
our goodnesse at S. Maximus in the Zenopski, and other their houses in the towne of Zenopski,
made for the better assurance of their goods, and all such as they shall set vp hereafter shall be of the
|| Opressini, and will make them knownen to all them of Opressini.

10 And whereas by our goodnesse we haue granted them a Ropehouse at Vologda, being farre
from the English Merchants house, now we haue giuen them to build a house for that vse by the
said English house, and haue giuen and granted them (of our goodnesse) ground, one hundred
and fourescore fathoms long, and fiftie fadomes in breadth, according to their owne request.

11 Also, we haue of our goodnesse giuen and granted to the English Merchants, leaue to buy
them a house at Wichida, and there to search out mines of pyon. And where they shall happily find
it, there to set vp houses for the making of the same pyon: and to make the same, of our goodnesse
haue granted them woods, five or six miles compasse about the said houses, to the making of the
said pyon, and not to exceede these bounds and limits: And where they shall cut the sayd woods,
not to set by any village or farme there, bying the artificers for making of their pyon, out of
their owne Countrey, and to leaue our people that arte, and so freely occupying the said pyon in
these our Dominions, transporting also of the same home into Englannde, allowing for euery
pound one dingo, or halfe penie.

12 And if any of the said pyon shall be needfull for our workes, then we to take of the said pyon to
our workes, vpon agreement of price, paying money out of our Treasure for the same: And no when
the said English Merchants or Factors shall send their owne people out of our Realme into other
Countrey, ouer land through any Countrey whatsoeuer, freely to send the same with our weapons.

13 Also, we of our goodnesse haue granted, that if any man misuse the said English, the fac-
tors or seruants, or the said English Merchants, their Factors or seruants abuse any other at
Moscouie, or any other out townes whatsoeuer within our Dominions in trade of Marchandise
or otherwise, then they to haue wright iustice in all such matters of our counsaile the Opressini
without all let or delay: But if our Justice may not agree the parties, then lets to be made, and to
whose lotte it shall fall, to him the right to be giuen, and that onely our counsaile at Moscouie, and
none of our Captaines, or authorized people, or officers in any other our townes, giue iudgement
vpon the said English Merchants for any thing.

14 Also, if any stranger shall haue matter of controuersie with any English Merchant, Factor or
seruant, abiding within these our Realmes, or contrariwise any English Merchant, Factor or
seruant, against any other stranger, in all those causes our Counsaile of the Opressini, to giue
them Justice, and to make an agreement & end betwene the parties, without all delay: And
none to deale therein, save our Counsaile of the Opressini. 15 And if any man haue action
against any English Merchant being absent, that then in his absence it shall be lawful for any other
Englishman at his assignation to answer his cause.

16 If any Englishman happen to be wounded or beaten to death, or any Russe or stranger slain
or beaten, 17 Or any stolen goods to be found in the said English houses, then our Counsaile
to cause the guiltie persons to be sought out, and to doe right and Justice in the cause, and the par-
tie that is guiltie, if he deserue punishment, to be corrected accordingly after his offence: That the
said English Merchants, factors and seruants, sustaine thereby no hinderance or damage.

18 And

Ido, chosen
for.

18 And wh
deseruing ou
and their goo
to examine th
therin, and no
fence, noz to
19 If any
to doe iustice
20 If any
any of our peo
die before the
to whom soeue
factor, or seru
money is owing
our Counsaile
without delay.

21 And what
mand the partie
Agree with him,

And if any
uer him to the

22 Also of our
our Townes, Ca
theues, robbers,

23 If in commu
swoles on the
they shall finde
to our commande

24 Also of our
Wagers, and such
browsers and the

25 We like wise
co, Nouogorod
and coine money
workmanship.

26 Also of our
needfull times, lea
uering or dimini

27 Also for our
within wrighten, this
come without the

28 Also that no
the Narue, or Vri
And whatsoeuer

29 And whatsoe
come with any
out of Dwina, by

30 Also of our
merchants or
hardy, or other

31 Also whatsoe
mions, without

32 Also whatsoe
mions, without

33 Also whatsoe
mions, without

34 Also whatsoe
mions, without

35 Also whatsoe
mions, without

36 Also whatsoe
mions, without

37 Also whatsoe
mions, without

38 Also whatsoe
mions, without

39 Also whatsoe
mions, without

40 Also whatsoe
mions, without

to our Chance
me wares to any

thought to any
out, and to be
the factors, ser-
gracious letter,
tles to be in our
wed in some con-
ceers, shall come

nours, Corsula,
the Company,
merell, and to all
to keepe at the
the said houses,
house keeper ne

ich they have by
of Zenopski,
ter hal be of the

gda, being farre
p that use by the
nd, one hundred
ne request.

nts, leaue to buy
shal happily find
of our goodnes
the making of the
the sayde wood,
theire pyon, out
of the said pyon
willing to curre

f the said pyon to
same: And when
lealine into their
with our woyce,
English, the fa-
buse any other
of Oparchante
the Opressi
to be made, and
at Moscouie, an
give iudgement

erchant, factor
chant, factor
prelini, to give
all delay: And
an have action
ful for any other

stranger slaine
our Counsellors
ause, and the par-
offence: What the
damage.

18 And whatsoeuer English Merchant, factor, servant, or depuie, shall be guilty of any fault, deserting our displeasure, then our Counsellors to cause the guiltie partie to goe under sureties, and their goods to be sealed and kept, untill our pleasure be further knownen, and our Counsaile therein, and none other to be arrested or haue their goods sealed, which are not guilty of that offence, nor to stay or apprehend them in any of our Dominions for the same.

19 If any English Merchant, factor, or servant shall offend, it shall be lawfull for their Agent

20 If any English Merchant, factor, or servant, haue lent or hereafter shall lend money to any of our people, or credite them with wares, and so depart into any forreigne Countrey, or to whom soeuer shall be appointed to the said roome or charge, and the said English Merchant, factor, or servant, to bring his bill of debt to our Counsell, to shewe them what is due, and what money is owing them for any wares: and thus to doe truly, not adding any whit to the debt, and without delay.

21 And whatsoeuer English Merchant shall be arrested for debt, then our Counsell to command the partie vnder arrest to be deliuered to the Agent: and if he haue no suretie, to binde the Agent with him, for the better force of the bond.

And if any Englishman be endebted, we will the Creditor not to call him in prison, or to deliuer him to the Sergeant, lest the officer lose him, but to take ware in pawne of the debt.

22 Also of our goodnes, we haue granted the English Merchants to send our Commission to all our Townes, Capitaines, and authorized men, to defende and garde the said Merchants from all cheuens, robbers, and euill disposed persons,

23 If in comming or going to and fro our dominions, the Merchants, the factors, or servants be sploted on the sea, our Counsell shall send our letters, and will them to be sought out, and where they shall finde the goods, cause it to be restoyed againe, and the offender to be punished, according to our commande ment.

24 Also of our goodnes, we haue granted the said Merchants to take by Workers, Packers, butlers and they shall agree.

25 We likewise of our goodnes, haue licensed the English Merchants in our Townes of Mosco, Nouogorod the great, and Plesko, that the Toiners of the said Townes shall melt Dollers, and coine money for them, without custome, allowing for coales, and other necessities, with the workmanship.

26 Also of our goodnes, we haue granted to the said English Merchants, to take posse hoise at needfull times, leauing with our officers a note how many they take, and not else, in no case hindring or diminishing our treasure.

27 Also for our sister Queene Elizabethes sake, we of our goodnes haue granted to the merchants within written, this our letter, and to their successors, that no Englishman, nor any other stranger, come without the Quenes leaue to Colmogorode, the river of Vob, Vasiagy, Pechora, Co-

28 Also that no English Merchant, without the Quenes leaue, shall come with any wares, to the Narue, or Vriogorod.

29 And whatsoeuer English Merchant, stranger, or other, of whatsoeuer Countrey he be, shall come with any shippe, bulle, or any other vessel, to any of the said hauens, of the north side, to any part of Dvina, by Rogeth the Narue, or Vriogorod, without the Quenes leaue or knowledge,

30 Also of our goodnes we haue granted the said company of English merchants, that no English merchants or strangers shall passe through our dominions, to Boghar, Persia, Casbin, harday, or other Countreys, save onely the company of English merchants, and our owne

31 Also whatsoeuer Englishman, comming out of England or any other Countrey, into our dominions, without the Quenes leaue, and knowledge, not being of the said company, written within

32 Also of our goodnes we haue granted the said company of English merchants, that no English merchants or strangers shall passe through our dominions, to Boghar, Persia, Casbin, harday, or other Countreys, save onely the company of English merchants, and our owne

33 Also of our goodnes we haue granted the said company of English merchants, that no English merchants or strangers shall passe through our dominions, to Boghar, Persia, Casbin, harday, or other Countreys, save onely the company of English merchants, and our owne

34 Also of our goodnes we haue granted the said company of English merchants, that no English merchants or strangers shall passe through our dominions, to Boghar, Persia, Casbin, harday, or other Countreys, save onely the company of English merchants, and our owne

35 Also of our goodnes we haue granted the said company of English merchants, that no English merchants or strangers shall passe through our dominions, to Boghar, Persia, Casbin, harday, or other Countreys, save onely the company of English merchants, and our owne

within those our letters, mind, and purpose, to abide in our realme, contrary to the Queenes will and pleasure, or any way abuse himselfe, the Agent shall freely send him home, to the Queene his Soueraigne: which if the Agent of himselfe be unable to do, let him pray for any of the captaines and officers of our townes there being, and so send him to prison, and will the sayd captaines not to hinder the sayd Agent from sending home such euill persons into England.

32 And if any man within our countrey runne away to any other towne or place, the English merchants and factours, to haue free libertie to apprehend him, and take their goods from him againe.

33 And as for our priuilege given to Thomas Glouer, Ralfe Rutter, Christopher Bennet, John Chappell, and their adherents, we haue commanded the same priuileges to be taken from them.

34 Also we of our goodnesse haue granted the sayd company of English merchants, their factours, seruantes and deputies, that doe or shall remaine at Mosco, or elsewhere within our dominions freely to keepe their owne law: and in any wise none of ours to force them to our law or faith against their will.

Moreover, besides and with the company of English merchants, we permit all strangers, to trade to our towne of Narue, Iuanogorod, & other our townes of Liefland, as they haue done beforetime. Given from the beginning of the world 7077, in the moneth of June 10, Indiction 13, the yere of our lordship and reign 35, and of our Empire of Rusland 23, Cazan 17, Astracan 15.

Other speciall grants by his Maiesties priuate letters at the sute of
M. Randolfe Ambassadour.

Releasement out of prison of Fitzherbert, that was accused for writing of letters against the Emperour.

Liberty given to Thomas Greene that was accused and troubled vpon suspicion of his dealing with the Ambassadour, and licence given to him to traffike as he was accustomed.

Andrew Acherton and his sureties released at the Narue and his seruant at the Mosco, that were in trouble for sending the merchants letters into England.

A letter granted to Thomas Southam to the Councell, for iustice against them that stole the peatles.

His Maiesties fauor promised to the Artificers, and liuings to be appointed them as they can best deserue.

A letter to the merchants that went into Persia, to passe freely without impeachment in his dominions, as also letters of fauour to the great Shaugh of Persia.

A grant vnto the company that at what time soeuer they send to the discovery of Caraya, they shall be licensed to repaire vnto this countrey, and haue such conducts and guides, mariners, vessels, men and victuals as they shall stand in need of.

It is also promised by Knez Alfanaz, and Peter Gregoriwich in the Emperours name, that if Benei Butler or any English man complaine, deface, hinder in way of traffike or otherwise about to discredit the worshipfull company, and their doings, that therein they shall not be heare, and the doers to be punished, as in such cases they shall be iudged to haue deserved.

Certaine persons granted to be sent home into England that serued the company, and were practisers against them in that countrey.

A Commission giuen by vs Thomas Randolfe Ambassadour for the
Queenes Maiestie in *Russia*, and *Thomas Bannister, &c.* vnto *James Bassendine, James Woodcocke* and *Richard Browne*, the which *Bassendine, Woodcocke*, and *Browne* we appoint ioynly together, and aiders, the one of them to the other, in a voyage of discovery to be made (by the grace of God) by them, for searching of the sea, and border of the coast, from the riuer *Pechora*, to the Eastwards, as hereafter followeth Anno 1588. The first of August.



Primis, when your barke with all furniture is ready, you shall at the beginning of the yere (as soone as you possibly may) make your repaire to the sterne part of the riuer *Pechora*, where is an Island called *Dolgoieue*, from thence you shall passe to the Eastwards along by the Sea coast of *Hugoric*, or the maine land of *Pechora*, and sailing along by the sea coast, you shall passe within seuen leagues of the Island *Vaigars*, which is the straight, almost halfe way from the coast of *Hugoric*, vnto the coast

Not

Nova Zembla therefore you shall see the riuer *Ob*.

There is a narrow way, into the other Narue, which Bay you shall see the riuer *Ob* (if to the riuer *Ob* the sayd riuer.

And when you are to the Eastwards, as you can best doe it, at least in sight of the yere so farre as you can reach to farre as you to the Eastwards, lie, leaving no part know by the report, whereby you of your sea both in those places we would haue to be left undiscovered.

But and if the fact that it doe proue to him the sea from *V* the land coast, and so

And if it doe so proue, ending of the land as you may from thence shall from thence pass and so to search whether be discovered in leagues to the Westward with *Nova Zembla* the time of the yere will be the same backe with you, we refer the same to your knowledge in the matter. Note you, it was the yerie, to Winter in *R* from thence with an East wind, to the *11* of *De* streights, on both sides, covered the parts that are bene done then: but we by you, it shall not be renowned both to you, waronelle towards the, and happily to end the

necessarie notes to be, as hereafter followeth.

When your barke is part to the sea (if *Recca*) you shall faille, & make all,

the Queene will
the Queene his
of the capitaines
pd capitaines not

the English
oods from him:

er Bennet, John
aken from them.
ers, their succer:
thru our domini:
our law of faith

all strangers, to
ep have done be:
10, Indiction 11,
17, Afracan 15,

t the sute of

recters against the

Opition of his de:
Comen.

the Mosco, that

hem that stole the

them as they in

peachment in his

y of Cataya, they

s, martiners, wi

erous name, that

e of other wits g

shall not be hean

ed.

panpy, and were

dour for the

ames Bassendine,

, and Browne we

voyage of disco

and border of the

Anno 1588. The

shall at the begi

repaire to the Ca

Dolgoiue, and

the Sea coast

ngst by the sa

vaigats, which is

unto the coast

No

M. Randolphs commisson. Traffiques, & Discoueries.

383

Noua Zembla; which Island Vaigats and Noua Zembla you shall finde noted in your plat, therefore you shall not need to discover it: but proceed on alongst the coast of Hugory, towards the river Obba.

There is a Bay betweene the sayd Vaigats, and the river Obba, that doth bite to the South: into the land of Hugory, in which Bay are two small rivers, the one called Cara Reca, the other Naramsy, as in the paper of notes which are given to you herewith may appeare: in the which Bay you shall not need to spend any time for searching of it, but to direct your course to the river Ob (if other wise you be not constrained to keepe alongst the shore) and when you come to the river Ob you shall not enter into it, but passe ouer vnto the Easterne part of the mouth of the sayd river.

Cara Reca.
Naramsy Reca.

And when you are at the Easterne part of the mouth of Obba Reca, you shall from thence passe to the Eastwards, alongst by the border of the sayd coast, describing the same in such perfect order as you can best do it. You shall not leaue the sayd coast or border of the land, but passe alongst by it, at least in sight of the same, vntill you haue sailed by it so farre to the Eastwards, and the time of the peece so farre spent, that you doe thinke it time for you to returne with your barke to Winter, which trauell may well be 300 or 400 leagues to the Eastwards of the Ob, if the Sea doe reach so farre as our hope is it doth: but and if you finde not the said coast and sea to extend so farre to the Eastwards, yet you shall not leaue the coast at any time, but proceed alongst by it, as it doth lie, leaueing no part of it vnsearched, or secne, vntill it be some bay, or river, that you doe certainly know by the report of the people, that you shall finde in those borders, or els some certaine tokens where by you of your selues may iudge it to be so. For our hope is that the said border of land and sea doth in those space after you passe the Ob, incline East, and so to the Southwards. And therefore we would haue no part of the land of your Harreboord side, as you proceed in your discovery, to be left vnscovered.

But and if the said border of land do not incline so to the Eastwards as we presuppose it, but that it doe proue to incline and extend to the Northwards, and so to ioyne with Noua Zembla, making the sea from Vaigats to the Eastwards but a bay: yet we will that you do keepe alongst by the said coast, and so bring vs certaine report of that forme and manner of the same bay.

And if it doe so proue to be a bay, and that you haue passed round about the same, and so by the trending of the land come backe vnto that part of Noua Zembla that is against Vaigats, where as you may from that see the said Island Vaigats, if the time of the peece will permit you, you shall from thence passe alongst by the said border and coast of Noua Zembla to the Westwards, and so to search whether that part of Noua Zembla doe ioyne with the land that sir Hugh Wilkes discovered in anno 53, and is in 72 degrees, and from that part of Noua Zembla 120 leagues to the Westwards, as your plat doeth shew it vnto you: and if you doe finde that land to ioyne with Noua Zembla, when you come to it, you shall proceed further along the same coast, if the time of the peece will permit it, and that you doe thinke there will be sufficient time for you to returne backe with your barke to Winter either at Pechora or in Russia, at your discretion: we refer the same to your good iudgements, trusting that you will lose no time, that may further your knowlege in this voyage.

Note you, it was the 10 of August, 56 yet the Serchchrist began to returne backe from her discovery, to Winter in Russia, and then she came from the Island Vaigats, being forcibly driven thence with an Easterly winde and yce, and so she came into the river Dwina, and arrived at Colmogro the 11 of September, 56. If the peece had not bene so much that yere as it was in the streights, vnto both sides of the Island Vaigats, they in the said pinnelle would that yere haue discovered the parts that you are now sent to seeke: which thing (if it had pleased God) might haue bene done then: but God hath reserved it for some other. Which discovery, if it may be done by you, it shall not only be profitable vnto you, but it will also purchase perpetuall fame and renowne both to you and our countrey. And thus not doubting of your willing desires, and wardmelle towards the same, we pray God to blesse you with a lucky beginning, fortunate success, and happily to end the same. Amen.

Necessarie notes to be obserued, and followed in your discovery, as hereafter followeth.

When your barke with all furniture and necessaries shall be in readinesse for you to depart to the sea (if it be that you take your barke at S. Nicholas, or any part of Dwina Reca) you shall from thence, euen as timely in the spring as the peece will permit you, sail, & make all expedition that may be, vnto the mouth of the river Pechora (as your commission

commission doth leade you) and as you passe by the coast all along (notwithstanding the place that sheweth you the description of the said coast, from Dwina unto Vaigats) yet you shall iue by all the meanes that you can, to amend the same place, vntill as many obseruations, as you possibly can do: and the these notes following are to be obserued by you principally.

1 First, that you do obserue the latitude as often, and in as many places as you may possibly do it, noting diligently the place where you do so obserue the same.

2 Also that you doe diligently set with your compasse, how the land doth lie from point to point, all along as you goe, and to vse your iudgements how farre there may be betwene each of them.

3 Item, that you do alwayes vse to draw the proportion, and biting of the land, as well the lying out of the points, and headlands, vnto the which you shall giue some apt names (at your discretion) as also the forme of the Bayes, and to make some make in drawing the forme, and border of the same, where the high cliffes are, and where low land is, whether sandy hills, or whatsoever: omit not to note any thing that may be sensible and apparant to you, which may serue to any purpose.

4 In passing along by any coast, that you keepe your lead going often times, and sound at the least once euery glasse, and oftener if you thinke good as occasion doth serue, and note diligently the depth with the manner of the ground, and at euery time, how farre the same sounding may be from the next voyer to it: and how the next point of headland doth beare from you. And in the last after you set off from your port, you shall orderly at the end of euery foure glasse sound, and if you finde ground, note the depth and what ground, but if you can finde no ground, you shall also note in what depth you could find no ground.

5 Also that you do diligently obserue the flowing, & ebbing in euery place, and how the tides do set, which way the flood doth come, and how much water it doth high in euery place, and what force the same tide hath to draw a ship in an houre, as neere as you can iudge it.

6 Also that you doe seeke to obserue with the instrument which I deliuer you herewith, according as I taught you at Rose Island, the true platformes, and distances, in as many places as conueniently you may, for it serueth very aptly your purpose.

7 Also that you take with you paper and ynke, and keepe a continuall iournall of remembrance day by day, of all such things as shall fall out worthy the knowledg, not forgetting or omitting to write it, and note it, that it may be shewed and read at your returne.

8 These orders if you shall diligently obserue, it will be easie for you to make a place and perfect description of your discovery, and so shall your notes be sufficient to answer that which is looked for at your hands. But withall you may not forget to note as many things as you can learne and vnderstand by the report of any people whatsoever they be, so that it appertaine any way to our desires. And thus the Lord God prosper your voyage. Amen.

Certaine letters in verse, written by Master *George Turberuile* out of *Mosconia*, which went as Secretarie thither with Master *Tho. Randolph*, her Maiesties Ambassadour to the Emperour 1568, to certaine friends of his in *London*; describing the manners of the Countrey and people.

To his especiall friend Master *Edward Dancie*.

MY Dancie deare, when I recount within my breast,
My London friends, and wonted mates, and thee about the rest:
I feele a thousand fits of deepe and deadly woe,
To thinke that I from land to sea, from blisse to bale did go.
I left my native soile, full like a retchlesse man,
And vnaquainted of the coast, among the Russes ran:
A people passing rude, so vices vile inclinde,
Folke fit to be of Bacchus traine, so quaffing is their kinde.
Drinke is their whole desire, the pot is all their pride,
The sobbest head doth once a day stand needfull of a guide.
If he to banquet bid his friends, he will not thinke
On them at dinner to bestow a dozen kindes of drinke:
Such licour as they haue, and as the countrey giues,
But chiefly two, one called *Kuas*, whereby the Mouse like lues.
Small ware and waterlike, but somewhat rare in taste,

The
And if
De car
No wo
Sich w
Their
Unlesse
The ho
Is not
Vellies
Their c
Deuout
Was ne
Almost
The wom
In sundy
In buskin
Each wom
Which all
Their gat
And yet the
It is no th
Anothers b
Is not the
To buy her
Where with
She pranks
Dea those th
Within the
Upon some
In platter so
For such as
By sayle p
They lay the
Way easily be
I not a little m
Their faces, v
For seldom w
A man shall see
The Russe me
And so he mew
Thus much, frie
To let thee wee
Hereafter I per
To thee, and oth
And other stuffe
Peace while I li

If I should now
For I to open the
And thou wert be a
And as I went the
No better prooffe of
I doe remember w
And that the posse
Thou wrongst me
Didst craue of me a

The rest is Mead of homie made, where with their lips they baste.
 And if he goe unto his neighbour as a guest,
 He cares for little meate, if so his drink be of the best.
 No wonder though they vse such vile and beastly traps,
 With which the hatcher and the hand, their chiefest goods be made.
 Their Tooles haue their hearts, on God they neuer call,
 Unless it be (Nichola Bough) that hangs against the wall.
 The house that hath no god, or painted Saint within,
 Is not to be resorted to, that roofo is full of sinne.
 Besides their ymage gods, in open places stand
 Their crosses vnto which they crooke, and blesse themselves with hand.
 Deuoutly do wne they duke, with forehead to the ground,
 As neuer more deceit in ragges, and grosse garments found.
 Almost the meanest man in all the countrey rides,
 The woman eke, against our vse, her trotting horse bestrides.
 In sundry colours they both men and women goe,
 In buskins all, that money haue on buskins to bestoe.
 Each woman hanging back a ring within her eare,
 Which all of ancient vse, and some of very pyde doe weare.
 Their gate is very hye, their countenance wise and sadde,
 And yet they follow fleshy lusts, their trade of luting badde.
 It is no shame at all accomped to be idle
 Another's bedde, they make no care their follies to conceale,
 Is not the meanest man in all the land but hee,
 To buy her painted colours doeth allow his wife a fee.
 Therewith she deckes her selfe, and dies her tawnye kinnes,
 She pranks and paints her smokie face, both brow, lip, cheek, & chinne.
 Yea those that honest are, if any such there bee
 Within the land, doe vse the like: a man may plainly see
 Upon some womens cheekes the painting how it lies,
 In plaster soe, for that too thicke her face the hartor dies.
 But such as skillfull are, and cunning Dames in deede,
 By wylly practise doe it well, yea sure they doe excede.
 They lay their colours so, as he that is full wisse,
 May easily be decei'd therein, if he doe trust his eyes.
 I not a little muse, what madnesse makes them paint
 Their faces, waping how they keepe the stoock by meere constraint,
 For leaue: when, vntil on Church or marriage day
 A man shall see the Dames abroad, that are of best array.
 The Russe means to reape the profit of her pyde,
 And so he mewes her to be sure, she lye by no mans side.
 Thus much, friend Vancie, I did meane to wyte to thee,
 To let thee wete in Russia land, what men and women bee.
 Hereafter I perhaps of other things will wyte
 To thee, and other of my friends, which I shall see with sight:
 And other stufte besides, which true report shall tell,
 Heane while I ende my louing lines, and bid thee now farewell.

To Spencer.

If I should now forget, or not remember thee,
 Thou Spencer might'st a soule rebuke, and shame impute to mee.
 For I to open shew did loue thee passing well,
 And thou wert he at parture, whome I loathe to bid farewell.
 And as I went thy friend, so I continue still,
 No better prooffe thou canst then this desire of true good will.
 I doe remember well when neeces I should away,
 And that the Poste would licence vs, no longer time to stay:
 Thou wyldest me by the fist, and holding fast my hand,
 Didst craue of me to send thee newes, and how I liked the land.

It is a sandie soile, no very fruitful vaine,
 Hoze waste and wooddie groundes there are, then closes fit for graine,
 Yet graine there growing is, which they vntimely take,
 And cut of eare the corne be ripe, they mowe it on a flacke.
 And laying the ale by the ale, their haruest so they wy,
 They make the greater halle, for feare the frost the corne veltroy.
 For in the winter time, so glarie is the ground,
 As neither grasse, nor other graine, in pastures may be found.
 In come the cattell then, the sheepe, the colts, the cowe,
 Fall by his bed the Howlike then a lodging both allowe,
 Whom he wylch fodder feeds, and holds as deere as life:
 And thus they weare the winter with the Howlike and his wife.
 Seuen months the Winter dureth, the glare it is so great,
 As it is May before he turne, his ground to sowe his wheate,
 The bodies eke that be vnburied lie they then,
 Laid vp in coffins made of firre, as well the poojest men,
 As those of greater state: the cause is lightly found,
 For that in Winter time, they cannot come to breake the ground,
 And wood so plenceous is, quite throughtout all the land,
 As rich, and poore, at time of death assur'd of coffins stand,
 Perhaps thou muste much, how this may stand wylch reason,
 That bodies dead can vncorrupt abide so long a season.
 Take this for certaine trothe, as soone as heate is gone,
 The force of colde the body binds as hard as any stone,
 Without offence at all to any living thing:
 And so they lye in perfect state, till next returne of Spring.
 Their brasts be like to ours, as farre as I can see
 For shape, and shewe, but somewhat lesse of bulke, and bone they be.
 Of watrily taste, the flesh not firme, like English beefe,
 And yet it seru's them very well, and is a good releefe:
 Their sheepe are very small, sharpe singled, handfull long,
 Great roye of fowle on sea and land, the moozly reedes among.
 The greatnes of the roye doeth make the pyces lesse,
 Belles in all the land they know not how good meate to dyeste.
 They vse neither boarch nor spit, but when the stowe they beate,
 They put their victuals in a pan, and so they bake their meate.
 No pewter to be had, no dishes but of wood,
 No vse of trenchers, cups cut out of birche are very good.
 They vse but wooden spoones, which hanging in a case
 Each Howlike at his girdle ties, and thynkes it no disgrace.
 With whittles two or thre, the better man the moe,
 The chiefeest Russies in the land, wylch spoone and knives doe goe,
 Their houses are not huge of building, but they say,
 They plant them in the loselst ground, to shifte the snow away,
 Which in the Winter time, eache where full thicke doth lye:
 Which makes them haue the moze desire, to set their houses hye.
 No stone wozke is in vse, their roofes of rafters be,
 One linked in another fast, their wals are all of tree.
 Of masks both long, and large, wylch molle put in betweene,
 To keepe the force of weather out, I neuer eart haue scene
 A grosse deuise so good, and on the roofe they lay
 The burthen barke, to rid the raine, and sudden showres away.
 In euery roome a stowe, to serue the Winter turne,
 Of wood they haue sufficient stowe, as much as they can burne,
 They haue no English glasse, of slices of a rocke
 Wylch Sluda they their windows make, that English glasse doth moche,
 They cut it very thynne, and sow it wylch a thre
 In pretty order like to panes, to serue their present need.
 No other glasse, good faith doth giue a better light:

And fur
 The ch
 The o
 Unles
 The str
 And in
 The Ara
 Where
 And mu
 In Russ
 For wh
 I mus
 With in
 Unles
 They fear
 I wylch
 Thou wo
 As I and
 And yet
 Doe thus
 But that
 I wylch
 For if I
 Who so
 And thinke
 But if no
 The hard
 They say
 And so may

M^d Pa
 And
 Wherefore,
 If I would
 And sthence
 And made m
 The maners
 And other p
 The Russi
 The greatest
 Flat head
 But bytowne,
 It is their con
 Their heads,
 Unless perha
 For then he m
 A certaine fig
 For euery man
 And during al
 Dares no man
 Their garmen
 A cap aloft the
 Which Colpac
 The best haue
 Their shirts in
 And on the flee
 Aloft their shir
 Wylch Onoriad

And sure the rocke is nothing rich, the colt is very slight.
 The chiefest place is that, where hangs the god by it,
 The owner of the house himselfe doth neuer sit,
 Unless he better come, to whom he yealds the seat:
 The stranger bending to the god, the ground with brow must beat.
 And in that very place which they most sacred deeme,
 The stranger lies: a token that his guest he doth esteeme.
 There he is wont to haue a beares skinne for his bed,
 And must, in stead of pillow, clasp his saddle to his head.
 In Russia other thise there is not to be had,
 For where the bedding is not good, the boasters are but bad.
 I mused deep much, what made them so to lie,
 Sith in their countrey Downe is rife, and feathers out of crie:
 Unless it be because the countrey is so hard,
 They feare by nicenesse of a bed their bodies would be mard,
 I woulde thee oft with vs, saue that I stood in feare
 Thou wouldest haue loathed to haue layd thy limmes vpon a beare,
 As I and Stafford did, that was my mate in bed:
 And yet (we thanke the God of heauen) we both right well haue sped.
 Loe thus I make an end: none other newes to thee,
 But that the countrey is too colde, the people beastly bee.
 I wite not all I know, I touch but here and there,
 For if I should, my penne would pinch, and eke offend I feare.
 (Alho so shall read this verse, coniecture of the rest,
 And thinke by reason of our trade, that I do thinke the best,
 But if no traffique were, then could I boldly pen
 The hardnesse of the soile, and eke the manners of the men.
 They say the Lions paw giues iudgement of the beast:
 And so may you deeme of chy: great, by reading of the least.

To Parker.

M^y Parker, paper, pen, and inke were made to wite,
 And idle heads, that little do, haue leisure to indite:
 Wherefore, respecting thee, and thine assured loue,
 If I would write no newes to thee, thou might'st my pen repproue.
 And sithence fortune thus hath thou'd my shippe on thoye:
 And made me seeke another Realme vnseene of me before:
 The manners of the men I purpose to declare,
 And other private points besides, which strange and reason are.
 The Russie men are round of bodies, fully fard,
 The greatest part with bellies bigge that ouerhang the walle,
 Flat headed for the most, with faces nothing faire,
 But browne, by reason of the stoue, and closenesse of the aire:
 It is their common vse to haue o' els to heare
 Their heads, for none in all the land long lolling locks doth weare,
 Unless perhaps he haue his soueraigne prince displeas'd,
 For then he neuer cuts his haire, vntill he be appeas'd.
 A certaine signe to know who in displeasure be,
 For every man that bites his head, will say, Loe this is he.
 And during all the time he lets his locks to grow,
 Dares no man for his life to him a face of friendship shew.
 Their garments be not gay, nor handsome to the eye,
 A cap aloft their heads they haue, that standeth very hie,
 Which Colpack they do terme. They weare no ruffes at all:
 The best haue collers set with pearle, which they Rubasca call.
 Their shirts in Russie long, they worke them downe before,
 And on the sleeves with coloured silks, two inches good and more,
 Aloft their shirts they weare a garment tacker wise
 Wight Onoriadka, and about his burtie waste he eyes

His porckies, which in stead of better breeches beare
Of linnen cloth that garment is, no codyce is to see.
A paire of yarmen stocks to keepe the colde away,
Within his boots the Russie weares, the heeles they underlay
With clouting clamps of Steele, sharpe pointed at the toes,
And ouer all a Shuba furd, and thus the Russie goes,
Well burned is the Shube, according to his state,
Some Silke, of Siluer other some; but those of poojest rate
Do weare no Shubs at all, but grosser gownes to sight,
That reacheth downe beneath the calfe, and that Armacha hight:
These are the Russies robes. The richest vse to ride
From place to place, his seruant runnes, and followes by his side.
The Callacke beares his felt, to sojce away the raine:
Their bydles are not very bjaue, their saddles are but plaine.
No bits but snaffles all, of birch their faddles be,
Much fashioned like the Scottish seates, broad flakes to keepe the knee
From sweating of the hofse, the pannels larger farre
And broader be then ours, they vse short stirrups for the warre:
For when the Russie is pursued by cruel foe,
He rides away, and suddenly betakes him to his boe,
And bends me but about in saddle as he flies,
And therewithall amidst his race his following foe he hits.
Their bowes are very short, like Turkie bowes outright,
Of sinowes made with birchen bark, in cunning maner dight.
Small arrowes, cruel heads, that fell and forked bee,
Which being shot from out those bowes, a cruel way will see.
They selome vse to shoo their hofse, vntill they ride
In post vpon the frozen flouds, then cause they shall not slide,
He sets a slender calke, and so he rides his way.
The hofses of the countrey go good fourestoie veris a day,
And all without the spur, once picke them and they skippe,
But goe not forward on their way, the Russie hath his whippe
To rappe him on the ribbes, for though all booted bee,
Yet shall you not a paire of spurs in all the countrey see.
The common game is chesse, almost the simplest with
Both giue a checke and eke a mate, by practise comes their skill.
Againe they dice as fast, the poojest rogues of all
Will sit them downe in open field, and there to gaming fall.
Their dice are very small, in fashion like to those
Which we doe vse, he takes them vp, and ouer thumbe he thowes
Not shaking them a whit, they cast suspiciouly,
And yet I deeme them boyd of art that dicing most apply.
At play when Siluer lacks, goes saddle, hofse and all,
And eche thing els worth Siluer walkes, although the pyce be small.
Because thou lovest to play friend Parker other while,
I with thee there the weary day with dicing to beguile.
But thou weart better farre at home, I wis it well,
And wouldest be loath among such lotors so long a time to dwell.
Then iudge of be thy friends, what kinde of life we had,
That neere the frozen pole to walle our weary dayes were glad,
In such a sauage soile, where lawes do beare no sway,
But all is at the king his will, to saue or els to slay.
And that sans cause, God wor, if to his minde be such.
But what meane I with Kings to deale? we ought no Shaints to touch.
Conceiue the rest your selfe, and deeme what liues they lead,
Where lust is Lawe, and Subjects liue continually in dread.
And where the best estates haue none assurance good
Of lands, of liues, no; nothing failes vnto the next of blood.
But all of custome doeth vnto the pynce revolute,

And all the
Good faith
But true is
So Tarqu
And what
Where wil
And lust is
The strang
As if I wou
The colde is
The Realm
The maner
The women
The Seate
As if I wou
In summe, I
Nor people li
Wild Irish a
Hard choice
If thou bee wi
I lie still at ho
No good befall
No ciuill cust
And truly ill
That neither lo
Which though
Of sinfull wigh
A dieu friend
To Sigismund
For he long earl
Sent by the Po
To him I recom
And now at last d

The fourth voyage

John Sparke, Laurence
yeere 1568. declare
rence Chapman to a w
Domini 1569. Apri



Whippfull
good succe
heart's desire
Edwards a
gust arrived
goods in her
ple to ready to ap
vs for the
Shaughs puiuege, as the
we were compelled to ope
for vs. Being to satisfie
Erasmus Sulttan his appe
the first of September, findi
of our late comming, and
of hartle of vs, and lying th
would disperse vs abroa
their goods to that and
abroad in time conuenient,
to see. To conuince, th
with him the greatest sum
Sparke and my selfe, to hel

And all the whole reuenue comes vnto the King his crowne.
Good faith I see thee muse at what I tell thee now,
But true it is, no choice, but all at princes pleasure bow.
So Tarquine ruled Rome as thou rememberest well,
And what his fortune was at last, I know thy selfe canst tell.
Where will in Common weale dooth beare the onely sway,
And lust is Lawe, the prince and Realme must needs in time decay.
The strangenesse of the place is such for sundry things I see,
As if I woulde I cannot write ech priuate point to thee,
The colde is rare, the people rude, the prince so full of pride,
The Realme so storied with Gponks and nunnes, and priests on euery side:
The maners was Mon, Temples thrust with idols that defile
The Seats that sacred ought to be, the customes are so quaint,
As if I would describe the whole, I feare my pen would faint.
In summe, I say I neuer saw a prince that so did raigne,
No people so bestr with Saints, yet all but vile and vaine.
Vnto Irish are as ciuill as the Russies in their kinde,
Hard choice which is the best of both, ech bloody, rude and blinde.
If thou be wise, as wise thou art, and witte be ruld by me,
I live still at home, and couer not those barbarous coasts to see.
No good befallies a man that seeks, and findes no better place,
No ciuill customes to be learn'd, where God bestowes no grace,
And cruelly ill they do deserue to be below'd of God,
That neither loue nor stand in awe of his allured rod:
Which though be long, yet plagues at last the vile and beastly sort
Of sinfull wights, that all in vice do place, their chiefest sport.
A deu friend Parker, if thou list, to know the Russes well,
To Sigismundus booke repaire, who all the truely captell:
For he long earli in message went vnto that sauage King,
Sent by the Pole, and true report in ech respect did bring.
To him I recommend my selfe, to ease my penne of paine,
And now at last do wish thee well, and bid farewell againe,

The fourth voyage into Persia, made by M. Arthur Edwards Agent, John Sparke, Laurence Chapman, Christopher Faucet, and Richard Pingle, in the yeere 1568. declared in this letter written from Caubin in Persia by the forsaide Laurence Chapman to a worshipfull merchant of the companie of Russia in London. Anno Domini 1569. Aprill 28.

Worshipfull sir, my buetie alwayes remembred, and your prosperous health, and hearts desire, &c. May it please you to understand that your Agent M. Arthur Edwards and we departed from Yerasslave in July 1568, and the 14. of August arrived at our port called Bilbil, with your ship the Grace of God, and the goods in her in good safetie, God be thanked for it, finding there neither the example to render to you for the bringing of her in, or unlading of the goods, nor yet so obedient to the Shalghs privilege, as the worshipfull company have bene informed. Our goods brought upon board for vs, Being so facilitated to their contentment, we were speedily laden with camels by the name Erasbec Sulcan his appointment, to carry our goods to Shamaki, to which place we arrived the first of September, finding it so thoroughly furnished with all manner of commodities by order of karkie of vs, and lying then the space of one whole moneth before your Agent Arthur Edwards might disperse vs abroad with the goods, such as came out of Russia afterwards, had our goods would be sold to that and other places, and spoiled those sales we might have made, being so shipwreck in time convenient, being no little hindrance to the worshipfull, as also great griefe to us to see. To conclude, though our daily calling upon him, he bent himselfe for Casbin, taking with him the greatest summe of the goods, and two of the worshipfulls servants, to witte, an Spake and my selfe, to helpe and procure the better sale for the same: as leaving at Shamaki

1568.

their arrival at Bilbil the 14. of August

Witness Erasbec,

Ek 3

mak

Their arrival
at Bilbil the 14th
of August
1568.

Prince Erad
bcc,

Christopher Fau-
cet and Richard
Pingle.

maketh Christopher Faucet and Richard Pingle with thre hundred and fiftie pieces of karkies in their handes, supposed to be solde there oʒ in Arrash before hee should be able to make his returne from Casbin, which, so farre sooth as I can vnderstand, lie for the greatest part vnfolded. And being vpon our way, at a certaine towne called Ardouil, we chanced to barter nine pieces of karkies with thole merchents for fourescore and foure batemans of cynamom, selling the karkies at one hundred and fiftie shawghs the peece.

And being at that present not farre from Teueris, called the pꝛincipall place in this countrey for vterring of cloth oʒ karkies, by much intreatie I perswaded your Agent to send thither to procure what might be done, and receiuing from him foure and fiftie pieces of karkies, as also his commission for the sale of the same, I proceeded on that voyage my selfe, and one Tolmach in company with me, finding in that place great store of broad cloth and karkies brought thither, sente part by the Tinkes who be resident there, some by the Armenians, who fetch them at Aleppo, and some by the towne smen, to be traueled vnto Venice and there buy them, so that no man offered me one peece more then a hundred and foure shawghs for a karkie: and hauing speciall commission and charge from your Agent not to stay there about the space of leuen dayes after my arriuall there, but to repaire to Casbin with all speed, and furthermore, hauing regard to keepe by the peece of the woꝛshipfulls commodities, according to their desire, I found meanes to barter them away for spices, such as were there to be had, neither in goodnesse nor yet in price to my content: neuertheless, considering the colde sales which were there, as well for your karkies, as for the hot netwes, that Ormuz way was shut by by occasion that the Indians do warre against them, which is true in deed: and againe the desire that the woꝛshipfull hath to haue such commodities bought. I thought it necessary to buy them, the prices and weight whereof appeareth at large by my accompt sent to the woꝛshipfull, and is, as I thinke, the whole summe of spices bought at this time.

Warre against
the Portuguese
at Ormuz.

The goner
mour of Gro-
zin his spee-
ch.

It chanced me in that place to meet with the gouernours merchant of Grozin, who was not a little desirous to bargen with me for a hundred pieces of karkies for his matter called Leuocis, and offering me so good handes for the payment of the money oʒ like to the merchants contentment vpon the deliuey of them, as in any place within all this countrey is to be had: and offering me besides his owne letter in the behalfe of his master, that no custome should be demanded for the same, and the obtaining also at his masters hand as large a priuilege for the woꝛshipfull to trauele into all parts of his dominion, as the Shaugh had giuen them, and hearing good report made of him by the Armenians also, and that he was a Christian, I was much more the willing to bargen with him, and sold him a hundred pieces for a hundred and threescore shawghs a peece, to be paid to the merchant in Grozin either in money oʒ like to his contentment, within thre dayes after the deliuey of the karkies there, hauing a band of him made by the Metropolitanians owne hand, for the performance of the same, which is as sure as any here is to be deuised: and vpon the same I sent my Tolmach from me backe to Shamaki, with such goods as I bought at Teueris, and to the end he might cause the woꝛshipfulls seruants there to see this bargen accomplished. At whole arriuall there, as I do perceiue, the Captaine would not accomplish his bargen to take them, but saith he hath no need of them: such is the constancie of all men in this countrey, with whomsoever you shall bargen. If the ware be bought, and they doe mislike it afterwards, they will bring it againe, and compel you to deliuer the money for it againe, regarding the Shawghs letters, which manifesteth the contrary, as a straw in the wind: by meanes whereof, the woꝛshipfull may know whether it be true that hath bene written of this countrey people oʒ not.

The generall
inconstancie in
the merchants
and dealers of
these partes.

I am informed by all the brokers in Teueris, that the way once open to Ormuz, from whence cometh no such store of spices as the woꝛshipfull doeth looke for, that here will be put a way in Teueris, some for money, and other some for barter, to the number of thre hundred oʒ foure hundred pieces of karkies, being in colours and goodnesse to the examples here sent you, the rest of the karkies to make them by a thousand, and broad clothes to the summe of a hundred, bee as many as will be put away yearly in this countrey, so farre as yet I can perceiue.

To breake the trade betwixt the Venetians and the whole company of the Armenians it is not possible, unless the woꝛshipfull will finde some meanes to receiue of them yearly to the number of 100. catters oʒ mules lading, and deliuer them for the same one third part money, the rest cloth: karkies fitted in colours meete for this countrey: the examples, as aboue said, are sent vnto you.

At Anadia sixe dayes iourney from Teueris, grow abundance of gallees, which are brought yearly by the Venetians, and be solde there for two bittes the Teueris bateman, which as your agent here saith, maketh sixe pound English weight, but I doubt it will not so be proued. I cannot lesse it is supposed much good will be done by buying of them: which might at this present be partly bene proued, if so be that some could do but halfe that which hath bene written.

The trade be-
tweene the Ve-
netians and the
Armenians not
easily to be
broken.

Touching bugges, I finde many as well at Teueris, as also in Casbin, but the goodnesse

thing like to such a game will be had in bene, if some would bene fene in England, but all lying buy all such commodities. Shaugh neuer took whole trade is in rate and such other as vnder the time, not sending this day to their great

Babylon is from and sold for a little the might easily haue bene the same. Casan also of officers be at all times by him to be seen a want of one which can

To trauele in this villages to harbour in of need, but also such be found any day for fire by these infidels, who vs. Better it is therefore to remaine a rich Merch

By commandment for your ship, as also to found the way from here it vnto you: no man tr to buy Rice for their re and it lieth no lower the with the same.

The towne of Laigh and Rofar also, which be ple so robbed, that not a bought, is raw like, and is little about 40. li. waigh will, and sold there for on

In these partes be many they were glad of our meanes to hinder our sale pꝛocesse of time. I hope v rest of our commodities a great number of Armenians our karkies to be sold pꝛes money 165. shawghs: but wibly to the contrary, and a rudence thirre in the hunt cloth and karkies, and of se them, to bring vs into trou

The price of spices be when God shall send open, shipful what benefit is there the Teueris bateman: Clow dinger 24. shawghs, ready sold for 60. shawghs the Te this time, before which God c

thing like to such as be brought into England out of other places: & the price is so high that final
gaine will be had in buying of them: albeit, if I had bene furnished with money, as I might have
bene, if some would, I wold haue bought some, to the ende the goodnesse of them might haue
bene seene in England. At my conning to Casbin I found no maner of sales of any commoditie
made, but all lying there whoſe, and newes giuen out (as your Agent saith) that I shaugh would
buy all such commodities as he had, and giue him like and spices for the same: but by report the
Shaugh neuer tooke cloth into his treasure all the dayes of his life, and will not now begin: his
and such other as be to buy it: thus hoping of that which is not like to be had, hee hath diuinen off
this day to their great hinderance, which I for my part am not a little sorry to see.

Babylon is from hence fifteene dayes Iourney, where as by true report be great store of Dates,
and sold for a bisse the batman, the commoditie fit for England, and the place so neere vnto vs
might easily haue bene known, if hee, whose deede and sayings differ much, had bene willing to
the same. Cassan also is but seuen dayes Iourney from hence, & a place by report where most store
of spices be at all times to be had, euer and about any place in this countrey: it could not be gran-
ted by him to be seene and prooued at this time: if this be losse to the worshipfull goods he vsold to
want of one which can do that which he speaketh in wordes.

Babylon 15.
dayes Iourney
from Calbin.

To Casuell in this countrey is not onely miserable and vndomfortable for lacke of towne and
villages to harbour in when night commeth, and to refresh men with whole some victuals in time
of need, but also such scarcitie of water, that sometime in three dayes Iourney together, is not to
be found any drop fit for man or beast to drinke, besides the great danger we stand in for robbing
vs. Better it is therefore in mine opinion to continue a beggar in England during life, then to
remaine a rich Merchant seuen yeeres in this Countrey, as some shall well find at their com-
ming hither.

By commandment of the Agent also I went to Gilan, as well to see what harbor was there
for your ship, as also to vnderstand what commoditie is there best sold, and for what quantitie. I
found the way from hence so dangerous and trouble some, that with my pen I am not able to note
it vnto you: no man traueleth from hence thither, but such poore people as need con-
st: ainteth to buy Rice for their reliefe to liue vpon, and they lay not aboute twentie batmans vpon a caster,
and it lieth no lower then the skirts of the saddle, and he escapeth very hardly that commeth there
with the same.

This voyage to
Gilan.

The towne of Laighon, which was the chiefe place in all that land, haue I seene, and Langro
and Rosar also, which be now ouerrun by the Shaugh and his power, and be so spoiled, & the pro-
ple so robbed, that not one of them is able to buy one karsie. The best commoditie there to be
bought, is raw silke, and is sold in the Summer time for 38. shaghs the batman, which
is litle about 40. li. waighe, and for ready money: also there is to bee had what store of Alom you
will, and sold there for one bisse the Teueris batman.

In these partes be many Turkie merchants resident, which giue an outward shew, as though
they were glad of our conning hither, but secretly they be our mortall enemies, searching by all
meanes to hinder our sales, because we should the sooner giue ouer our trade thither, which in
processe of time I hope will growe to better perfection. They wish vs to go to Hallape with the
great number of Armenians which be there resident, and the custome but two in the hundred, and
our karsies to be sold yf we sent, had we neuer so many, for twelue duckets, which maketh of this
money 165. shaghs: but by such as know the place, market and custome, it is reported to vs cre-
dibly to the contrary, and that such karsies as ours be, are not sold for about 8. duckets there: the
custome threie in the hundred and moze, that no place in the world is so well furnished with good
cloth and karsies, and of so bzare colour as that place is, supposing it to be craftily purposed of
them, to bring vs into trouble, which God defend vs from.

The malice of
the Turkish
merchants.

The price of spices be these, at this present enhanced by reason I way is shut to Ormus, which
when God shall send open, I purpose (God willing) to see, and at my returne to aduertise the wo-
rshipfull what benefit is there to be had in all points, so neere as I can learne: Pepper 25. shaghs
the Teueris batman: Cloues 50. shaghs, Long pepper 25. shaghs, Paces large 50. shaghs
Dinger 24. shaghs, ready money all, or els looke not vpon them. And the best sort of rawe silke is
sold for 60. shaghs the Teueris batman. Thus for want of further matter to enlarge, I ende for
this time, beseeching God to preserve you in continuall health.

The price of
spices.

By your obedient seruant, Laurence Chapman.
Notes

Notes concerning this fourth voyage into Persia, begun in the month of July 1568, gathered by M. Richard Willes from the mouth of Master *Arthur Edwards*, which was Agent in the same.



When he came first to the Sophies presence, at his court in Casbin, bringing his interpreter with him, and standing farre off, the Sophie (sitting in a scar roiall with a great number of his noble men about him) bad him come neere, and that thus, untill he came so neere him that he might haue touched him with his hand. Then the first demand that he asked him was, from what countrey he came: he answered, that he came from England. Then asked hee of his noble men, who knew any such countrey? But when Edwards saw that none of them had any intelligence of that name, he named it Inghilterra, as the Italians call England. Then one of the noble men said London, meaning thereby London, which name is better known in far countreies out of Christendome, then is the name of England. When Edwards heard him name London he said that that was the name of the chiefe citie of England, as was Teueris of the chiefe city of Persia. He asked him many things more, as of the realme of England, maruelling that it should be an Island of so great riches and powert, as Edwards declared vnto him: of the riches & abundance of our merchandize he further understood by our traffike in Moscouia and other countreies. He demanded also many things of the Queenes maiestie, and of the customes and lawes of the realme: saying oftentimes in his owne language, Bara colla, (that is to say) Well sayd. He asked also many things of king Philip, & of his wars against the Turcke at Malta. Then he demanded of him what was the chiefe cause of his resort into his realme. And being certified that it was for the trade of merchandize, he asked what kind of merchandize he could bring thither. Such (sayd hee) as the Venerian merchants do, which dwelling in our country in the city of London send to Venice, & from thence into Turkie by Halepo & Tripoli in Syria, from whence, as by the second and third handes, whyggeare charges of many customes and other things thereunto pertaining, they are at the length brought into your countrey and cities of Persia. What merchandize are those? sayd the Sophie. Edwards answered, that they were great abundance of fine karkies, of broad clothes of all sorts & colours, as karklets, viols, and other of the finest cloth of all the world. Also that the Venerians brought out of England not onely such clothes ready made, but further more great plenty of fine wooll to mingle with their woolls, of which they could not other wise make fine cloth: affirming that there went out of England yearly that waies, aboue two hundred thousand karkies, and as many broad clothes, beside fine wooll & other merchandize, beside also the great abundance of like clothes, which were caried into Spaine, Barbarie, & diuers other countreies. The Sophie then asked him by what means such merchandize might be brought into Persia. Right wel sir (said he) by the way of Moscouia, with more safety and in much shorter time then the Venerians can bring them: first from England to Venice, and from thence into Persia by the way of Turkie. And therefore we shal please your maiestie to grant vs free passage into all your dominions, with such priuileges as may appertaine to the safegard of our liues, goods and merchandize, we will furnish your countreies with all such merchandize and other commodities, in shorter time, and better cheape then you may haue the same at the Turks hands. This talke and much more was between the Sophie and Edwards for the space of two houres: all which things liked him so well, that shortly after he granted to the sayd Arthur Edwards other priuileges for the trade of merchandize into Persia, all written in Azure and gold letters, and deliuered vnto the lord keeper of the Sophie his great seale. The lord keeper was named Coche Califay, who sayd that when the Shaugh (that is the king of prynces) did sit to seale any letters, that last priuilege should be sealed & deliuered to Lawrence Chapman. In this priuilege is one principall article for seruants of merchants: That if the Agent do perceiue that vpon their naughtie doings, they would become Busormen, that then the Agent wheresoeuer he shall find any such seruant or seruants, to take them and put them in prison, and no person to keepe them or maintaine them. This article was granted in respect of a custome among the Persians, being Dahunetans, whose maner is friendly to receiue and welcome, both with gifts and liuing, all such Christians, as for taking their religion, will become of the religion of the Persians. Inasmuch that before this priuilege was granted, there was great occasion of naughtie seruants to deceiue and rob their masters, that vnder the colour of professing that religion, they might liue among them in such safetie, that you might haue no lawe against them, either to punish them or to recover your goods at their hands, or elswhere. For before the Sophie (whom they say to be a marvelous wise and gracious prince) seemed to fauour our nation, and to grant them such priuileges, the people abused them very much, and so hated them, that they would not touch them, but reuiled them, calling them Cafars and Gawars, which is, in their

Londro,
London.

The Venetians
and traffike in
England.

of mil beleuers. But
ward in great reuer
rooke it for no young
chandises as they ha
ned. And if any stran
flaine, and for the deb
many other such like
made vnto him for res
of contrary religio
ty to the profit of him

The Articles o man, which are

- 10 Item, that the n
and all other places of
- 11 Item, if by misfe
ons on the sea coast, his s
of the sayd merchants
maime them.
- 12 Item, if any of the
his gouernours there to
shall demand them.
- 13 Item, the said me
people, and that no Ruffe
bound to answer them su
to the losses of their camel
- 14 Item more, that th
to pay them.
- 15 Item more, if they
see they keepe their promi
16 Item, if any of the s
them and see them in safetie
- 17 Item, in all places, s
gure them honest roume, and
- 18 Item, the sayd merch
of houses to their owne
man where they will, o

The commodities which
great, and may in time
much as by the way of Per
the Portugals make the
us boing all by sea: for wh
the most famous Hatt to come
the same may in shorter time
the Caspian sea, and from
the citie of Yerasslaue, and fr
by water euen vnto Englan
The merchandises which b
colours, both raw and wroug
carpets of diuers foie
came last from Persia, cha
brought into the city of L
very five hundred, and somet
being 4 dayes iourney from
from the use liks which the
pendome.

ing his
least toll
e, and that
th his ho,
e came: he
men, who
nce of the
said Lon-
tendon,
at was the
him ma-
of so great
erchandise
also many
of king
the church
handise, he
erian mer-
thence m-
with great
th brought
Edwards
& Colours,
ns brought
e wool to
that there
many had
clothes, the
asked him
by the way
them: first
refoze it
tull-ges as
your coun-
heape thn
the Sophie
shortly after
into Persia,
ie his great
that is the
red to Lau-
s: Charit
n, that then
out them in
spect of a
and well
I become of
was great
t poffessing
we agaynst
before the
our nation
them, that
is, in the

Arthur Edwards. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

393

of misbeleuers. But after they saw how greatly the prince fauoured them, they had them after-ward in great reuerence, and would kisse their hands and vse them very friendly. For before they chandizes as they had bought or sold, make them take it againe, and change it as often as them li- staine, and for the debts of any stranger would take the goods of any other of the same nation, with many other such like abuses, in maner vnknownen to the prince, before the complaints of our men made vnto him for refozation of such abuses: which were the cause that no merchant strangers of contrary religio durst come into his dominions with their commodities, which might be great- ly to the pposite of him and his subiects.

The Articles of the second priuiledge deliuered to Laurence Chap- man, which are to be annexed vnto the former priuiledge.

- 10 Item, that the merchants haue free libertie, as in their first priuiledge, to goe vnto Gilan, and all other places of his dominions, now or hereafter when occasion shall be giuen.
- 11 Item, if by misfortune any of their ships should breake, or fall vpon any part of his domini- ons on the sea coast, his subiects to helpe with all speed to saue the goods and to be deliuered to any man of them.
- 12 Item, if any of the said merchants depart this life in any citie or towne, or on the high way, his gouernours there to see their goods safely kept, and to be deliuered to any other of them that shall demand them.
- 13 Item, the said merchants to take such camel-men as they themselves wil, being countrey people, and that no Rissell Bash do let or hinder them. And the said owners of the camels to bee bound to answere them such goods as they shal receiue at their hands, and the camel-men to stand to the losses of their camels or horses.
- 14 Item more, that the said Carriers do demaund no more of them, then their agreement was to pay them.
- 15 Item more, if they be at a price with any Carriers, & haue giuen earnest, the camel-men to see they keepe their promise.
- 16 Item, if any of the said merchants be in feare to trauel, to giue the one or more to goe with them and see them in safetie with their goods, to the place they will goe vnto.
- 17 Item, in all places, to say, in all cities, townes or villages on the high way, his subiects to giue them honest rouse, and victuals for their money.
- 18 Item, the said merchants may in any place, where they shall thinke best, build or buy any house or houses to their owne vse. And no person to molest or trouble them, and to stand in any Carauan where they will, or shal thinke good.

The commodities which the merchants may haue by this trade into Persia are thought to bee great, and may in time perhaps be greater then the Portugals trade into the East Indies, for- asmuch as by the way of Persia into England, the returne may be made every yeere once: where- as the Portugals make the returne from Calecut but once in two yeeres, by a long and dan- gerous boiage all by sea: for where as the citie and Island of Ormus, lying in the gulfes of Persia, is the most famous Hart towne of all East India, whither al merchandise of India are brought, the same may in shorter time and more safely be brought by land and riuers through Persia, euen to the Caspian sea, and from thence by the countreys of Russia or Moscouia by riuers, euen by the citie of Yerassauc, and from thence by land 180. miles to Vologda, and from thence againe by water euen vnto England.

The merchandises which be had out of Persia for the returne of wares are silke of all sortes of colours, both raw and wrought. Also all maner of spices and drugs, pearles & precious stones, and fine carpets of diuers sortes, with diuers other rich merchandises. It was told me of them that came last from Persia, that there is more silke brought into some one city of Persia, then is of any five hundred, and sometime a thousand mules laden with silke to Halepo in Soria of Tur- key being 4. dayes iourney from Tripoli, where the Venetians haue their continuall abiding, and from thence silks which they returne for English kirtles and other clothes into all partes of ppendome,

The maner how the Christians become Busformen, and forsake their religion.

I have noted here before that if any Christian will become a Busforman, that is, one that hath forsaken his faith, and be a Mahumetan of their religion, they give him many gifts, and sometimes also a living. The maner is, that when the devill is entered into his heart to forsake his faith, he resorteth to the Soltan or gouernour of the towne, to whom hee maketh protestation of his doubtful purpose. The gouernour appointeth him a horse, and one to ride before him on another horse, bearing a sword in his hand, and the Busforman bearing an arrow in his hand, and rideth in the citie, curling his father and mother: and if euer after he returne to his owne religion, he is guilty of death, as is signified by the sword borne before him. A pong man, a seruant of one of our merchants, because he would not abide the correction of his master for his fautes, was minded to forsake his faith. But (as God would) he fell suddenly sicke and died, before he gaue himselfe to the deuill. If he had become a Busforman, he had greatly troubled the merchants: for if he would then haue said that halfe their goods had bene his, they would haue giuen credite vnto him. For the avoiding of which inconuenience, it was granted in the priuileges, that no Busforman, &c. as there appeareth.

In Persia in diuers places oxen and kine beare the tents and household stuffe of the poore men of the countrey, which haue neither camels nor horses.

Of the tree which beareth Bombasin cotton, or Gossampine.

In Persia is great abundance of Bombasin cotton, & very fine: this groweth on a certaine little tree or byer, not past the height of a mans waste or little more: the tree hath a slender stalk like vnto a byer, or to a carnation gilliflowre, with very many branches, bearing on euery branch a fruit or rather a cob, growing in round forme, containing in it the cotton: and when this bud or cob cometh to the bignes of a walnut, it openeth and sheweth forth the cotton, which groweth still in bignes vntill it be like a fleece of wooll as big as a mans fist, and beginneth to be loose, and then they gather it as it were the ripe fruite. The seeds of these trees are as big as a peason, and are blacke, and somewhat hard, and not round: they sowe them in plowed ground, where they grow in the fields in great abundance in many countreies in Persia, and diuers other regions.

The writing of the Persians.

Alreher Edwards shewed me a letter of the Sophie, written in their letters backward, subscribed with the hands both of the Sophie & his Secretarie. The Sophies subscription was onely one word (his name I suppose was Shaugh) written in golde letters vpon red paper. The whole letter was also written on the same piece of red paper, being long & narrow, about 8 length of a foote, and not past three inches broad. The priuate signet of the Sophie was a round pyram marke about the bignes of a roial, onely printed vpon the same paper without any waie or other seale, the letter seeme so mishapen and disordered, that a man would thinke it were somewhat scribbled in maner at adventures. Yet they say that almost euery letter with his pyckie or circunsciss signifieth a whole word. In so much that in a piece of paper as big as a mans hand their writing doeth containe as much as deeth ours almost in a sheet of paper.

The fift voiage into Persia made by M. Thomas Banister, and master Geoffrey Ducket, Agents for the Moscouie companie, begun from England in the yeere 1568. and continuing to the yeere 1574. following. Written by P.I. from the mouth of M. Lionel Plumtree.



Vpon the 3. day of July 1568. they embarked themselves at Yeraslaue, being accompanied with Lionel Plumtree, and some 12. English men more, in a shippe called the Thomas Bonauenture of the burden of 70. tunnes, taking also along with them of Russes to the number of 40. for their vse and imployments. It fell out in the way, before they came to Afracan by 40. miles, that the Nagaien Tartars, being a kind of tyfely and cruell people, made an assault vpon them with 18. boates of theirs, each of them being armed, some with swords, some with speares, and some others with bowes and arrowes, and the whole number of them they discovered to be about 300. men. They for their parts, although they could haue wished a quiet voyage and iourney without blowes and violence, yet not willing to be spoiled with such Barbarians as they were, began

The English
Barke assault-
ed neere to
Afracan by the
Nagaien
Tartars.

defend them
and continu-
caltures, cha-
wars entor-
Afracan, at w
In this co
the weekes
the indigene
of siege to win
had receiued
the defence of
found it.

Upon their
down, they left
to Shauaran, 1
troopes of Hol-
males out of the
was sent vnto
Having staie

their iourney, the
employes Shaua-
and from thence
count and much
most part lie there
towne of Ardouil
but to no purpose
then merchants.

The difference
hither sought the
inasmuch that one
in a garboile. And
curious to behold,
cragorie, being c
At this towne
bin, to whom Tho
Ardouil, and in fur
Shaugh was receiv
on the most part of
pylgrimage or suffer
the Shaugh seemed
some further time. A
one so prone grant
ness, and made him
the waies before
men dealing.

One thing some
impelled to send a
sophet, he would
exchange his com
the money of the
therefore wooe the
gotten by se and
the use.

After five moneths
of Tauris, where
left all at Ardouil.
At this time the for
to that purpose th
of that countrey,

After five moneths
of Tauris, where
left all at Ardouil.
At this time the for
to that purpose th
of that countrey,

After five moneths
of Tauris, where
left all at Ardouil.
At this time the for
to that purpose th
of that countrey,

one that hath for-
fakes, and sometime
take his faith, be re-
nion of his dwelt
another hoile, be-
ridely in the cite,
ion, he is gultie of
ne of our mercha-
nted to forsake his
elfe to the deuill. If
would then haue said
of the auoiding of
as there apparat
fe of the poore men

offampine.

th on a certaine title
a slender stalle like
on euery bynch a
and when this was
ton, which groweth
meth to be looke, and
fig as peason, and me
d, where they grow
re regions.

ers backward, sub-
ies subscription was
upon red paper. The
row, about p length
was a round pyram
at any ware or other
were somewhat stre-
pyricke or circumfere
hand their writing

ter, and maste
om England in the
en by P.I. from the

Yerafaue, being
men more, in a Bachi
s, taking also along
mploiments. It is
at the Nagaiian Em-
ault upon them with
speares, and some
ren to be about 300
and journey with
they were, began
desire

Banister & Ducket. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

395

defend themselves against their assault, by means whereof a very terrible & fierce fight folowed
and continued hot & sharpe for two hours, wherein our men so wel plated their parts with their
calivers, that they forced the Tartars to flee with the losse of 120. of them, as they were after-
wards enforced by a Russe prisoner, which escaped from the Nagaiians, and came to them to A-
stracan, at which towne they arrived the 20. of August.

In this towne of Astracan they were somewhat hindered of their journey, and staid the space of
foure weekes by reason of a great army of 70000. Turkes and Tartars which came thither upon
the instigation of the great Turke, hoping either to haue surprised it suddenly or by continuance
of siege to win the same. But in the end by reason that the winter appoched, as also, because they
had receiued newes of a great expedition, which the Emperour of Russia was in providing for
the defence of the said place, they were constrained to raise their siege, & to leaue the towne as they
found it.

Astracan be-
sieged by
70000. Turkes
and Tartars.

Upon their departure our men had opportunity to proceed on their voyage, and using the occa-
sion, they left Astracan, and came to Bilbil towards the end of October: from whence they went
to Shauaran, where (as they lodged in their tentes) they were greatly molested with strange
troopes of holcanes or foxes, which were so busie with them that they tooke their meate and vic-
tuals out of their lodgings, and deuoured to the bare bones in one night a mighty wilde Boze that
was sent unto them for a present from the gouernour of the country.

Having staid here some three or foure daies in providing of carriages, and other necessaries for
their journey, they departed thence and came to Shamaky, which is foure dayes journey from the
foresayd Shauaran. In this towne of Shamaky their whole company spent out the Winter,
and from thence in April following they tooke their journey towards Ardouil a place of great ac-
count and much esteemed, by reason of the sepulchres of the Emperours of Persia, which for the
most part lie there buried, and so is growen to bee a place of their superstitious deuotion. In this
towne of Ardouil they sojourned the space of 5. or 6. moneths, finding some traffique and sales,
but to no purpose, the towne being more inhabited and frequented with gentiemen and noblemen
then merchants.

The difference of religion bred great boiles in this towne whiles they remained there: for the
brother sought the destruction of the brother, and the neerest kinsmen rose vp one against another,
in a garboile. And he being further desirous to see their maner of fight, or rather somewhat more
curious to behold, then mistrustful of their blowes, was like to haue bozned a share in their bloodie
straggle, being twise wounded with their shot and arrowes, although not to the death.

In this towne the Shaw Thomas sent a messenger for our men to come to his presence at Cas-
bin, to whom Thomas Banister failed not to goe, although master Ducket lay very sicke at
Ardouil, and in such case that they almost despaired of his recovery. Hee being come to the
Shaugh was receiued and entertained of him with great fauour and speciall countenance, and
the most part of all his requests granted him, this onely excepted, that whereas he entreated a
part of his sufferance to transport and carry through his dominions certaine boxes into India,
the Shaugh seemed loth to yeeld thereunto, and yet did not altogether denie it, but referred it to
some further time. As for the point of traffique, he could not make that motion or request that was
made him as good payment as any man could wish, and oftentimes would send his money
for the wares before the wares were deliuered, that he might be the surer of this honourable in-
deed dealing.

One thing somewhat strange I thought good in this place to remember, that whereas hee
was disposed to lend a great summe of money to Mecca in Arabia, for an offering to Mahomet their
prophet, hee would not send any money or coyne of his owne, but sent to the English merchants
in exchange his coyne for theirs, according to the value of it, yeelding this reason for the same,
that the money of the merchants was gotten by good meanes, and with good consciences, and
therefore woorthie to be made for an oblation to their holy prophete, but his owne money was
not gotten by fraud, oppression and dishonest meanes, and therefore was not fit to serue for so
a use.

After five moneths spent in Casbin the sayde Thomas Banister departed towards the great
city of Tauris, where being arrived, he found M^r. Ducket well recovered of his sickness, whom he
left ill at Ardouil.

In this cite the foresayd M^r. Ducket made sales of the English commodities, remaining
there to that purpose the space of two yeeres and a halfe. And besides other kindes of merchan-
dis of that country, he bought great store of gals which grow in great abundance at a place
within

within one dayes journey of the aforesayd Tauris.

After this Thomas Banister departed from Tauris, and went to Shamaky to give order for the transporting of those commodities which were bought for England. And having dispatched them away, he went thence to Arrash, a towne foure dayes journey with camels from Shamaky for the buying of rawe silke. But there by reason of the wholefomnesse of the aire, and corruption of the waters in the hote time of the yeere, he with Lawrence Chapman and some of the English men unhappily died: which being knowen of M. Ducket, he immediately came from Tauris to Arrash, to take possession of the goods, for otherwise by the custome of the country, if there had bene no merchant or other friend of his to enter upon that which he left, all had fallen into the Shaugh's hands, which goods notwithstanding could not bee recovered from the officers which had seized and sealed up the same, until M. Ducket had bene in person with the Shaugh, and had procured his order for the deliuerie thereof.

Lionel Plumtree, in the meane time that M. Ducket was at Casbin in suite for goods, upon the perswasion of certaine Bogharians, made pponition for a journey to Cathaia, with cariages and commodities, and having all things ready, departed secretly with a Caravan: but being gone forwards on his way five dayes journey, some fifty horsemen by the procurement of Humfrey Greenfell (who afterwards being at Ormus in the East Indies, was there cruelly burnt in the Execution by the Portugals) were sent after him in posse from Soltan Erasebec, the Shaugh's lieutenant, to fetch him backe againe, not suffering him to passe on so perillous and dangerous a journey for feare of diuers inconueniences that might follow.

After this M. Ducket returned from Casbin to Shamaky againe, and immediately made preparation for a journey to Cassan, being about foure dayes journey from Shamaky, and caried with him foure mules laden with mony.

In the way of his travel he passed through Persepolis, sometime the roiall seat of the Emperors of Persia, but now altogether ruined and desaced, whereof remaine to be seene at this day two gates onely that are distant one from the other the space of 12. miles, and some few pyramids in the mountains and conuiciences for fresh water.

The aforesaid Cassan is a towne that consisteth altogether of merchandise, and the best trade of all the land is there, being greatly frequented by the merchants of India.

Here our men bought great store of all manner of wrought silkes, and fine spices, and good store of Turkie stones.

The towne is much to be commended for the ciuill and good gouernment that is there, in which no idle person is not suffered to liue amongst them.

The child that is but five yeeres old is set to some labour. No ill ruse, disorder or riot by gaming or otherwise, is there permitted, playing at Dice or Cards is by the lawe: present death.

At this Cassan they remained about the space of tenne weekes, and then came downe to gaine to Skamaky, and after some time spent in diuers places of the countrey for buying of rawe silke and other commodities, they came at last to Shauaran againe, where their ship was in harbour, and then they shipped all their goods and embarked themselves also, setting saile the eighth day of May, in the yeere 1573. intending to fetch Astracan. By reason of the varietie of the windes and dangerous flats of the Caspian sea, they beat it by and downe some 30. dayes, on the 28. day rising at anchor vpon the flats, certaine Russe Cassaks, which are outlawes of banished men, hauing intelligence of their being there, and of the great wealth that they had with them, came to them with diuers boates vnder the colour of friendship, and entered their ship, but immediately they tooke their hatchets & slew diuers of the Russes that were of the ship vpon the hatchet. Whereupon master Ducket, Lionell Plumtree, William Smith, the master, a man of singular valour, and Amos Riall being vnder the spardecke, did so well behaue themselves, that they slew the hatchets, and slew 14. of the Cassaks gunners, and hurt and wounded about 30. more, being of them all in number 150. at the least, armed with caliuers and other weapons fit for so famous a purpose.

M. Ducket notwithstanding and the rest aforesaid receiued diuers wounds from the enemies, and were so hurt, and withall so oppressed with the multitude and force of them, that they were constrained to make an agreement with the Cassaks by rendering the ship into their hands, using receiued first their othes twoyne by their crucifixes, not to do any further harme to their persons.

Thus the shippe being taken, and all the English grieuously hurt, the Cassaks immediately discharged the ship of them, putting them all into the ship boate with two or three Persian turkes full of horse flesh and swines flesh, without further victuals or reliefe: they being in that case made the best halt they could to get to Astracan: and being come to the towne, master Ducket

The death of
Thomas Banister
and Laurence
Chapman.

Humfrey Green-
fell burnt at
Stymus.

The English
ship taken by
the Cassaks.

Geffrey

made great use
of the ship if it
had beene to
the ship, but by
them, the Cassaks
not being able
out to pursue
many of those
of their goods
English merche-
ants in the ship.

In the same
buried in the ear-
thie carpes
taken by the
men in all places.

But our men
two moneths at
they then prouide
recovered from
intercepted them
with a cruell
crushed and cut in
loss of goods: but
flow to Vologda,
England.

But Master Du-
ket, and there said
they had sustained
loss, and payed
such wares prouide
embarked in the mo-
and three dayes, with
them, they arrived
there, and so made
all things had come
had plowed the rich
taken by English
small adventure, but
in the same time.

Further obseru-
forelaid fifth v
of the Agents e

H
th
ba
Ar
the
Sil
wh

of one sort and good
the quantitie of
of the name of t
and of other cu
the king of Persia
the Shaugh. He were

to glue over for
having dispatched
camels from Sha-
le of the alive, and
man and some
mediately came from
of the country, if
left, all had fallen
from the officers
with the Shaugh,

for goods, upon the
with carriages and
not being gone for
of Humfrey Green-
burnt in the Jampi
the Shaughs were
dangerous a hour

mediately made pay-
ky, and carried long
seats of the Empe-
re scene at this
some few pinnacles

and the best trade

ices, and good they

at is there when

over of riots by
present death.

then came down
for buying of
their ship was in
ing fable the
of the variety of
me 20. dayes, and
outlawes of
they had with
the ship, but immedi-
upon the hatches
a man of singular
crises, that they
ed about 30. myn-
repons fit for

os from the enemy
n, that they were
into their hands
harme to their

assaks immediately
the Persian camp
being in that
e, master Duck-

made great sure to the captaine to have men and boates set out for the rescuing and recouering of the ship if it were possible: who immediately sent out his sonne with forty boates and five hun- dred men to pursue the Pirats, and by good hap came to the place where they rid at anchor with the ship, but by reason of their foolishnes in striking by their drums before they were come neere them, the Cassaks discourring the boats, cut their gables and put out to sea, whereupon the boats out to pursue them againe the second time: & that second army came to a place where they found many of those Cassaks and slew them, and found out the places where they had hid certaine par- cels of their goods in the earth in the chests of the ship: all which they recovered againe for the English merchants, to the value of 5000. li. of 30. or 40. thousand pound, but all the rest the Cas- saks in the ship had caried away.

In the same place they found further viuers of the Cassaks which the Englishmen had laine, buried in the earth, and sawe some in forty or fifty ards of Sattin and Cassakes, and some in be taken by the Persians who entirely loued the English merchants, were put to most cruell to- ments in all places according to their desires.

But our men being thus spoiled of their goods, and wounded in their bodies, remained about two moneths at Astracan for their better recouerie: & hauing gotten some reasonable strength, recovered from the Cassaks. From Cazan they went towards Yerslaue, but in the way the ice with a cruell and vehement frost, and there withall the waters so congeled, that their boates were crushed and cut in sunder with the ice, whereby they sustained both a further danger of life and loss of goods: but as much as they could perseue with much adoe, they conueyed ouer land in snow to Vologda, and from thence sent much of it to Saint Nicholas to be laden in the ships for England.

See in the be-
ginning of
October.

Our Master Ducket, Lionel Plumtree and Amos Riell went with some parcels to the Mo- sco, and there sold certaine quantities of it to the Emperour, who pitying the mightie losse that they had sustained by his owne rebellious people and subiects, bought himselfe as much as hee liked, and payed present money for the same. So that Winter being spent out in Mosko, and ended in the moneth of August: and hauing endured a very terrible passage in nine weekes and three dayes, with some hardnesse of victuals, contrary and furious windees, and other sea ac- cidents, they arrived at London in the moneth of October, one thousand five hundred seueritie and all things had come home as safely as they were carefully provided, and painfully laboured for, it had poured the richest voiage and most profitable returne of commoditie, that had euer bene vnder- taken by English merchants, who, notwithstanding all misfortunes, lost nothing of their prin- cipall adventure, but onely the interest and gaine that might haue risen by the vse of their Rocks in the same time.

1574

Further obseruations concerning the state of Persia, taken in the foresayd fift voyage into those partes, and written by M. Geffrey Ducket, one of the Agents employed in the same.



Shamaky is the fairest towne in all Media, and the chiefeest commoditie of that countrey is rawe silke, & the greatest plentie thereof: at a towne thre dayes journey from Shamaky called Arash: and within 3. dayes journey of thought to be they which are other wise called Georgians: there is also much silke to be sold. The chiefe towne of that countrey is called Zegham, from whence is caried peereley into Persia, an incredible quantitie of Casell nuts, of one sort and goodnesse, and as good and thin shaled as are our Filberds. Of these are caried away the quantitie of 4000. Camels laden,

Grosin 93
Georgia.

Of the name of the Sophy of Persia, & why he is called the Shaugh, and of other customes.

The king of Persia (whom here we call the great Sophy) is not there so called, but is called the Shaugh. It were there dangerous to call him by the name of Sophy, because that Sophy is

in the Persian tongue, is a begger, & it were as much as to call him, The great begger. He lieth at a towne called Casbin, which is situate in a goodly fertile valley of 3. or 4. daies iourney in length. The towne is but eull builded, and for the most part all of brycke, not hardened with fire, but only dyed at the sunne, as is the most part of the building of all Persia. The king hath not come out of the compasse of his owne house in 33. or 34. yeeres, whereof the cause is not knowen, but as they say, it is vpon a superstition of certaine prophetes to which they are greatly addicted: he is now about 80. yeeres of age, and very lusty. And to keepe him the moze lusty, he hath 4. wiues alwayes, and about 300. concubines, and once in the yeere he hath all the faire maidens and wiues that may be found a great way about brought vnto him, whom he diligently peruseth, feeling them in all parts, taking such as he liketh, and putting away some of them which he hath kept before, & with them that he putteth away, he gratifieth some such as hath done him the best seruice. And if he chance to take any mans wife, her husband is very glad thereof, and in recompense of her, oftentimes he giueth the husband one of his old shoye, whom he thankfully receiueth.

If any stranger being a Christian shall come before him, he must put on a new paire of shooes made in that countrey, and from the place where he entereth, there is digged as it were a causay off the way, vntill he come to the place where he shall talke with the king, who standeth alwayes above in a gallerie, when he talketh with any strangers: and when the stranger is departed, then is the causay cast downe, and the ground made euen againe.

Of the religion of the Persians.

Their religion is all one with the Turkes, sauing that they differ who was the right successor of Mahomet. The Turkes say that it was one Homer and his sonne Viman. But the Persians say that it was one Morus Ali, which they would proue in this manner. They say there was a counsell called to decide the matter who should be the successor: and after they had called vpon Mahomet to reueale vnto them his will and pleasure therein, there came among them a little Liard, who declared that it was Mahomet's pleasure that Morus Ali should be his successor. This Morus Ali was a valiant man and slew Homer the Turkes prophet. He had a sword that he fought withall, with the which hee conquered all his enemies, and killed as many as he desired. When Morus Ali died, there came a holy prophet, who gaue them warning that shortly there would come a white Camell, vpon the which he charged them to lay the body and sword of Morus Ali, and to suffer the Camell to cary it whither he would. The which being performed, the said white camell caried the sword & body of Morus Ali vnto the sea side, and the camell going a good way into the sea, was with the body & sword of Morus Ali taken vp into heauen, for whose returne they haue long looked in Persia. And for this cause the king alwayes keepeth a horse ready salu for him, and also of late kept for him one of his owne daughters to be his wife, but she died in the yere of our Lord, 1573. And they say furthermore, if he come not shortly, they shall be of our belife: much like the Jewes, looking for their Messias to come & reigne among them like a worldly king for euer, and deliuer them from the captiuitie which they are now in among the Christians, Turkes, and Gentiles.

The Shaugh or king of Persia is nothing in strength & power comparable vnto the Turke: for although he hath a great Dominion, yet is it nothing to be compared with the Turkes: neither hath he any great Ordnance of gunnes, or harquebusses. Notwithstanding his eldest sonne Ismael about 25. yeeres past, fought a great battell with the Turke, and slew of his armie about a hundred thousand men: who after his returne, was by his father cast into prison, and there continued vntill this day: for his father the Shaugh had him in suspicion that he would haue put him downe, and haue taken the regiment vnto himselfe.

Their opinion of Christ is, that he was an holy man and a great Prophet, but not like Mahomet: saying, that Mahomet was the last prophet by whom all things were finished, & therefore the greatest. To proue that Christ was not Gods sonne, they say that God had no wife, and therefore could haue no sonne or children. They go on pilgrimage from the furthest parts of Persia vnto Mecha in Arabia, and by the way they visite also the sepulchre of Christ at Ierusalem, which they now call Couch Kaly.

The most part of spices which cometh into Persia is brought from the Island of Ormus situate in the gulf of Persia called Sinus Persicus, betwene the maine land of Persia and Arabia. The Portingals touch at Ormus both in their voyage to East India and homeward againe, from thence bring all such spices as are occupied in Persia and the regions thereabout: for of pepper they bring very small quantitie, and that at a very deare price.

The Turkes oftentimes bring pepper from Mecha in Arabia, which they sell as good as

Whose strength
is not
is not
is not

It goodly and
well ground
religion.

Their opinion
of Christ.

as the which
in their owne
singals fetch
Persia.

Within the
gold and silver
summe of D

They haue
good sciences,
whiches, in the

Their lawes
he punisheth it
many as are of
him that is ruler

to make friends,
There is often
his sonnes was gr

together by the
also in the great
were bying in

although they shau
upon their heads al
hears. They answer

for their religio
every morning and
Mahomet and Moro

not in abstinence fro
the they eate som
it as might they will

new spoone, and they
end, vntill they p
should not be seen in

They haue among
any of their ances
on pilgrimage to

alled Sees, and count
one of these, he w
ment lie, although he l

then spirituall p
to haue their heads
some vntoauen, and use

ill grow.
Every morning they
to ward the South

to ward the South,
many of them to
to the South, and t

to ward the South,
many of them to
to the South, and t

to ward the South,
many of them to
to the South, and t

to ward the South,
many of them to
to the South, and t

to ward the South,
many of them to
to the South, and t

to ward the South,
many of them to
to the South, and t

as that which is brought from Ormus. Silkes are brought from no place, but are brought all in their owne countrey. Ormus is within two miles of the maine land of Persia, and the Portugals fetch their fresh water there, for the which they pay tribute to the Shaugh of king of Persia.

Within Persia they haue neither gold nor silver mines, yet haue they coined money both of gold and silver, and also other small monies of copper. There is brought into Persia an incredible summe of Dutch dollars, which for the most part are there imployed in raw silke.

They haue few bookes and lesse learning, and are for the most part very brutish in all kind of good sciences, saving in some kind of like works, and in such things as pertaine to the furniture of their houses, in the which they are passing good.

Their lawes are as in their religion, wicked and detestable. And if any man offend the prince, he punisheth it extremely, not onely in the person that offendeth, but also in his children, and in as many as are of his kin. Theft and murder are often punished, yet none other wise then pleasantly to make friends, or with money to redeeme his offence.

There is oftentimes great mutinie among the people in great Townes which of Mortus Ali together by the ares for the same, as I haue seene in the towne of Shiamaky and Ardouil, and also in the great City of Teueris, where I haue seene a man committing from fighting, in a bazaar bringing in his hand foure or five mens heads, carrying them by the haire of the head: for although they haue their heads most commonly twice a weeke, yet leaue they a tuft of haire upon their heads about a foote long. I haue enquired why they leaue the tuft of haire upon their heads, and they haue certaine priests who are appa-
Such was the law of the apostreedom for treason.

For their religion, they haue certaine priests who are appa-
Mention for religion.

every morning and afternoone to go by to the tops of their churches, and tell there a great tale of Mahomet and Mortus Ali: and other preaching haue they none. Their Lent is after Christmas, not in abstinence from flesh onely, but from all meats and drinks, untill the day be of the Chie, but yet as night they will take great excess thereof and be drunken. Their Lent begins at the new moone, and they do not enter into it untill they haue seene the same: neither yet doeth their Lent end, untill they haue seene the next new moone, although the same (though close weather) should not be seene in long time.

They haue among them certaine holy men whom they call Sees, counted holy for that they are on pilgrimage to visite the sepulchre of Mahomet, both he and all his posteritie are euer after called Sees, and counted for holy men, and haue no lesse opinion of themselves. And if a man con-
Their saints and holy men, pilgrimage.

any of their ancestors haue bene on pilgrimage at Mecha in Arabia, for whosoever goeth thither on pilgrimage to visite the sepulchre of Mahomet, both he and all his posteritie are euer after called Sees, and counted for holy men, and haue no lesse opinion of themselves. And if a man con-
Their saints and holy men, pilgrimage.

any of their ancestors haue bene on pilgrimage at Mecha in Arabia, for whosoever goeth thither on pilgrimage to visite the sepulchre of Mahomet, both he and all his posteritie are euer after called Sees, and counted for holy men, and haue no lesse opinion of themselves. And if a man con-
Their saints and holy men, pilgrimage.

any of their ancestors haue bene on pilgrimage at Mecha in Arabia, for whosoever goeth thither on pilgrimage to visite the sepulchre of Mahomet, both he and all his posteritie are euer after called Sees, and counted for holy men, and haue no lesse opinion of themselves. And if a man con-
Their saints and holy men, pilgrimage.

any of their ancestors haue bene on pilgrimage at Mecha in Arabia, for whosoever goeth thither on pilgrimage to visite the sepulchre of Mahomet, both he and all his posteritie are euer after called Sees, and counted for holy men, and haue no lesse opinion of themselves. And if a man con-
Their saints and holy men, pilgrimage.

any of their ancestors haue bene on pilgrimage at Mecha in Arabia, for whosoever goeth thither on pilgrimage to visite the sepulchre of Mahomet, both he and all his posteritie are euer after called Sees, and counted for holy men, and haue no lesse opinion of themselves. And if a man con-
Their saints and holy men, pilgrimage.

which are called
greater affairs,
will obey them, al-

stous, and when
more of less, and
as in pasing his
wines and com-
counted a very
more: for they
his misfortune
path reigned him

m lither: and if
p of those children
hee to fauour
eth to bee king of
iences and chaf-
p ble circumsion

but only dyne in
ept it be their car-
e of copper. They
man so simple
e secret is wholy
: and in the show

ond women, is one
y maydes of young
n one hath bought
m lither, and then
metimes sold in the
ond woman say he
e, he may kill her

to say any time, he
mmerly to an other
men to hire, as was

which falleth into
ing to behold, for
etch from the water

the Countrey
a company. They
pprecious: and
m Shamaky, and
e, that in our ship

the other are man-
them: their
apture, which is
l fauoured best

in the fields nere
here hundred
your victuals

William Borough. Traffiques, & Discoveries.

401

The Caspian sea doeth neither ebbe nor flowe, except sometimes by roges of wind it sweeteth by very high: the water is very salt. Howbeit, the quantite of water that falleth out of the great river of Volga maketh the water fresh at the least twentie leagues into the sea. The Caspian sea is marvellous full of fish, but no kind of monstrous fish, as farre as I could understand, yet hath it sundry forces of fishes which are not in these partes of the world.

The mutton there is good, and the sheepe great, hauing very great rumpes with much fat by on them.
Rice and mutton is their chiefe victuall.

The copy of a letter sent to the Emperour of Moscouie, by Christopher Hodsdon and William Burrough, Anno 1570.



All mightie Emperour, &c. Whereas Sir William Garrard and his felowship the company of English merchants, this last Winter sent hither to the Narue these ships laden with merchandise, which was left here, and with it Christopher Hodsdon one of the sayd felowship, and their chiefe doer in this place, who when hee came first hither, and vntill such time as hee had dispatched those ships from hence, was in hope of goods to lade twelue or thirteene sailes of good ships, against this shipping, wherefore he wrote vnto the sayd Sir William Garrard and his companie to send hither this spring the sayd number of thirteene ships. And because that in their coming hither wee found the freebooters on the sea, and supposing this peere that they the sayd number of ships so strongly, as they should be able to withstand the force of the freebooters: whereupon they haue according to his aduise sent this peere thirteene good ships together well furnished with men and munition, and all other necessaries for the warres, of which 13. ships William Burrough one of the sayd felowship is capitaine generall, vnto whom there was given in charge, that if hee met with any the Danske freebooters, or whatsoeuer robbers and cheus that are enemies to your highnesse, he should doe his best to apprehend and take them. It so hapned that the tenth day of this moneth the sayd William with his fleet, met with sixe ships of the freebooters nere vnto an Island called Turtee, which is about 50. versts from Narue, vnto which freebooters hee with his fleet gaue chase, and tooke of them the Admirall, wherein were left but thye men, the rest were fled to shoze in their boats amongst the woods vpon Turtee, on which ship hee set fire and burnt her. He also tooke foure more of those ships which are now here, and one ship escaped him: out of which foure ships some of those ships which are now so escaped, others were slaine in fight, and some of them when they saw they could not escape, cast themselves willingly into the Sea and were drowned. So that in these sixe ships were left but 83. men.

Five ships of
Freebooters
taken.

The said Wil. Borough when he came hither to Narue, finding here Christopher Hodsdon and the rest of their whole companie and felowship, did present vnto your highnesse of those freebooters taken by our ships 82. men, which we deliuered here vnto Knez Voioda, the 13. of this moneth. One man of those freebooters we haue kept by vs, whose name is Hauence Snarke a captain. And the cause why we haue done it is this: When wee should haue deliuered him with the rest of his felowes vnto the Voiodaes officers, there were of our Englishmen more then 50. which fell on their knees vnto vs, requesting that he might be rescued in the ship, and caried back into England: and the cause why they so earnestly intreated for him, is, that some of those our Englishmen had bene taken with freebooters, and by his meanes had their liues saued, with great fauour besides, which they found at his hands. Wherefore if it please your highnesse to permit, we will carry him home with vs into England, wherein we request your highnesse to permit, we will carry him home with vs into England, wherein we request your highnesse to permit. We haue also sent our seruant to your highnesse with such bestellings and writings as wee haue in those shippes: whereby your highnesse may see by whom, and in what order they were taken, and what they pretend, which writings wee haue commended vnto Knez Yorue your highnesse at Plesco, by our seruant. And haue requested his furtherance for the safe deliuerie of them to your maiesties hands: which writings when you haue perused, we desire that they may be returned vnto vs by this our seruant, as speedily as may bee: for these ships which we haue here will be soone dispatched from hence, for that we haue not goods to lade above the halfe of them. And the cause is, we haue this winter (by your maiesties order) bene kept from

crasquing, to the companies great losse. But hoping your maiestie will hereafter haue consideration thereof, and that we may haue free libertie to crasque in all partes of your maiesties Countreies, according to the priuiledge giuen vnto vs, we pray for your maiesties health, with prosperous successe to the pleasure of God. From Narue the 15. of Iuly, Anno 1570.

Your Maiesties most humble and obedient,
Christopher Hodsdon. William Borough.

A letter of Richard Vscombe to M. Henrie Lane, touching the burning
of the Citie of Mosco by the Crimme Tartar: written in Rose Island the 5. day of
August, 1571.

1571



After Lane I haue me commended vnto you. The 27. of Iuly I arrived here with the Magdalene, and the same day and houre did the Swallow and Harry arrive here also. At our coming I found master Proctor here, by whom were vnderstand very heauie newes. The Mosco is burne every sticke by the Crimme the 24. day of May last, and an innumerable number of people: and in the English house was smothered Thomas Southam, Toftid, Waugley, Greenes wife and children, two children of Rafe, & more to the number of 25. persons were killed in our Beere seller: and yet in the same seller was Rafe, his wife, John Browne, and Iohn Clarke preserved, which was wonderfull. And there went into that seller master Glouer and master Rowley also: but because the heate was so great, they came forth againe with much perill, so that a boy at their heeles was taken with the fire, yet they escaped blindfold into another seller, and there, as Gods will was, they were preserved. The Emperour fled out of the citie, and many of his people were caried away by the Crimme Tartar: to wit, all the pong people, the old they would not meddle with, but let them alone, and so with exceeding much spoile and infinite prisoners, they returned home againe. What with the Crimme on the one side, and with his cruetie on the other, he hath but few people left. Commend me to mistresse Lane your wife, and to P. Locke, and to all our friends.

Yours to command, Richard Vscombe.

A note of the proceeding of M. Anthonie Jenkinson, Ambassadour
from the Queenes most excellent Maiesie, to the Emperour of Russia, from the
time of his arriual there, being the 26. of Iuly 1571. vntill his departure from thence
the 23. of Iuly 1572.



The said 26. day I arrived with the two good ships called the Swallow and the Harry in safetie, at the Citie of S. Nicholas in Russia asforesayd, and landed at Rose Island, from whence immediately I sent away my interpreter Daniel Siussester in post towards the Court, being then at the Mosco, whereby your maiestie might as well be advertised of my arriual in his Dominions, as also to know his highnes pleasure for my further accesse. And remaining at the sayd Island two or three dayes, to haue conference with your Agent about your affaires, I well perceiue by the wordes of the sayd Agent and others your seruants, that I was entred into great perill and danger of my life: for they reported to mee that they heard said at the Mosco, that the princes displeasure was such against me, that if euer I came into his countrey againe, I should loose my head, with other wordes of discouragement. Whereat I was not a litle dismayed, not knowing whether it were best for me to proceed forwarde, or to returne home againe with the ships for the safegard of my life. But calling to mind mine innocencie and good meaning, and knowing my selfe not to haue offended his Maiestie any manner of wayes either in word or deed, or by making former promises not performed, heretofore by mine enemies falsly surmised: and being desirous to come to the trial thereof, whereby to iustifie my true dealings, and to reprove my sayd enemies as well here as there, who haue not ceased of late by vntrue reports to inuade the cause of the sayd Emperours displeasure towards you to proceed of my dealings, and promises made to him at my last being with him (although by his letters to the Queenes Maiestie, and by his owne wordes to me the contrary doeth appeare) I determined with my selfe rather to put my life into his hands, & by the prouidence of God to prosecute the charge committed vnto me, then to returne home in vaine, discouraged with the wordes of such, who haue rather that I had tarried home, then to be sent ouer with such crueltie, whereby I might sit out their euil doings, the only cause of your losse.

Wherefore,

Wherefore, I am
the least, and the first
of my said messenger.

But all the Countre
place was shut by, th
miles vpon his way, w
goe any further, nei
space of foure moneths,
my said messenger found
his stay, as of the cause of
any neerer the Prince
gainst the Sweethens, and
And so my said messenge
of his stay through the gr
aguide by an unknown
should passe without let:
Iourny, fell into the hand
hous had not bene burnt,
direct wayes, and many ha
neither could that messeng
And thus was I kept in
Colmogro, vntill the 18. of
hanging appointed me, no
doubt, which argued his gr
my perceiuing the same, w
as, as foreshaid, the plague
that I should haue poss
called Peraflaue neere to the
I arrived at the said Perafla
clerman, hauing then a house
of our nation or other might
ing, I was sent for to the Co
gentleman which had charge
to remaine there vntill his
mailed what that sudden c
his Maiestie much disquiete
the twentieth of the same, I
white, who caused mee to kille
ly receiving and accepting th
of all his nobilitie. After
her highnesse letters, and p
said, how doth Queene Eliz
her Maiestie sitting do
Then his Maiestie sitting do
supper the chamber, sauing
to appoch neere vnto him w
Anthonie, the last time thou
hellage, to be declared vnto
and did expect thy coming
the same from her highnesse. A
messengers, the one called M
way of the Narue about the
thou Anthonie, were recu
me: but those messengers cou
my messenger and thee, where
Goodman had letters about him
wherein was written mu
lawfull things done, where
gers to haue accesse vnto by:

The citie of
Mosco burnt
by the Crimme.
Englishmen
smothered at
the burning of
Mosco.

pp. Glouer and
pp. Rowley vnto
Israhel.

to understanding the great griefe and displeasure towards sir William Garret, and his company, merchants traffiking in the *Paisies* dominions, hath thought good to send mee at this present unto the Lord Emperour, and great duke, as well with her highnes full mind, touching the prince-ly affaires, as also to know the iust cause of the said displeasure towards the said company of merchants: and hath commanded me to answer to all things in their behalfe, and accorde rather vpon the euill, and vntreue reports of the late Ambassadoz in England, and of such wicked persons of our nation resident here in the highnes dominions, rebels to her *Paisie*, and their Countrey, then of any iust desert of the said merchants, who neuer willingly deserued the highnes displeasure, but rather fauour in all their doings and meanings. And since the first time of their traffiking in the *Paisies* dominions, which is now nineteene yeres, the said merchants have bene, and are alwayes ready and willing truly to serue the highnes of all things meete for the Treasurie, in time of peace and of warre in despite of all the enemies: although the Princes and do bying from time to time such commodities to the, Lord, as her *Paisie* doeth not suffer to be transported forth of her Realme to no other Prince of the world. And what great losse the said sir William Garret, with his company hath sustained of late yeres in this trade, as well by shipwache, as by false seruantes it is manifestly known: and what seruice the said companies they sought with the king of Poles shippes & resbooters, and burnt the same and slew the people, and as many as were taken alius deliuered unto the Captaine at the Narue, I trust the highnes excellent *Paisie* the louing sister, doeth request the highnes to restore the said sir William Garret with his company into the princely fauour againe, with their priuiledges for free traffique dominions, as aforesaid: and that the same may be signified by the Princely letters, directed to the officers in all places, and the highnes commandement of restraint to the contrary notwithstanding. And further that it will please the *Paisie*, not to give credite to false reports, and vntreue suggestions of such as are enemies, and such as neither would haue mutuall amitie to continuation, as Ralfe Rutter, and others which lye lurking here in the highnes dominions, seeking our some dissensions betwixt your *Paisies* by false surmises, spending away their masters goods riotously, and will not come home to giue vp their accompts, aduancing themselves to be merchants, and able to serue the highnes of all things fit for the Treasurie, whereas indeed they be of no credit, nor able of themselves to do the *Paisie* any seruice at all: the Queenes highnes request is, that it would please the *Paisie* to command that such persons may be deliuered unto me to be carried home, least by their remaninge here, and doing practises and friendship with such as be the highnes friends, their euil doing might be made hereafter to withstand the goodnes from sir William Garret and his company, who haue true meaning in all their doings, and are ready to serue the highnes at all times, vntill many other words to the aduancement of your credit, and the disgracing of your enemies, and so I ended for that time.

Then sayd his *Paisie*, We haue heard you, and will consider of all things further, when wee haue read the Queene our sisters letters: to whom I answered, that I supposed his *Paisie* should by those letters vnderstand her highnes full minde to his contentation, and what wanted in writing, I had credite to accomplish in words. Whereat with his *Paisie* seemed to be well pleased, and commanded me to sit downe. And after patting a while, his *Paisie* said these words vnto me, It is now a time which we spend in fasting, and praying, being the weeke before Easter, and so that we will shortly depart from hence, towards our borders of Nouogrod, wee cannot giue you answer, nor your dispatch here, but you shall goe from hence, and tary vs upon the way, where wee will shortly come, and then you shall knowe our pleasure, and haue your dispatch. And so I was dismissed to my lodging, and the same day I had a dinner ready dynt sent from his *Paisie*, with great doze of oyls, of diuers sorts, and the next day following, vnto mee a Gentleman, to signify vnto mee, that the Emperours *Paisies* pleasure was, that I should immediately depart towards a Citie, called Ower, three hundred miles from the aforesaid borders, and there to tary his highnes comming vnto a place called Staryes, three score miles from the said Ower.

Then I sent my Interpreter to the chiefe Secretary, requesting him to further, and shew his word vnto our said merchants in their letters, which they should haue occasion to moue in my absence:

sence: who sent me word againe, that they should be well assured of his friendship, and furtherance in all their sutes. And forthwith post horses were sent me, with a Gentleman to conduct me. And so departing from the said Sloboda, I arrived at the said Ower, the 28. of March of y^e said, where I remained till the eight of May following. Then I was sent for to come unto his Paistie, to the said Storys, where I arrived the tenth of the same, and the twelfth of the same I was appointed to come to the chiefe Secretary, who at our meeting said unto me these words,

Our Lord Emperour, and great Duke, hath not onely perused the Queene her highnes letters sent by you, and thereby doeth perceiue her minde, as well touching their princely affaires, as also her earnest request in the merchants behalfe, but also hath well pondered your words. And therefore his Paisties pleasure is, that you let me understand what sutes you haue to moue in the merchants behalfe, or otherwise, for that to morrowe you shall haue access againe unto his highnes, and shall haue full answer in all things, with your dispatch away.

Then after long conference had with him of diuers matters, I gaue him in writing certaine briefe articles of request, which I had drawen out ready, as followeth:

1 First the Queenes Paistie her request is, that it would please the Emperours highnes to let me know the iust cause of his great displeasure fallen vpon sir William Garrard, & his company, who neuer deserued the same, to their knowledge.

2 Also that it would please his highnes not to giue credence vnto false and vntrue reports, by such as seek to sowe dissention, and breake friendship betwixt the Queenes highnes, and his Paistie.

3 Also that it would please his Paistie to receiue the said sir William Garrard, with his company into his fauour againe, and to restore them to their former priuiledges and liberties, for traffike in, and through, and out of all his Paisties dominions, in as ample manner as aforetime, according to his princely letters of priuiledge, and accustomed goodnes.

4 Also it would please his highnes to graunt, that the said company of merchants may haue iustice of all his subiects, as well for money owing vnto them, as other their griefes and iniuries, throughout all his dominions suffered since the time of his displeasure, during which time, the merchants were forced by cruere iustice to answer to al mens demands, but theirs could not be heard.

5 Also that his Paistie would vnderstand, that much debts are owing to the said merchants, by diuers of his Nobilitie, whereof part are in durance, and some recured, and the said merchants know not howe to be paid, and answered the same, except his highnes pittie their case, and commaund some order to be taken therein.

6 Also it would please his highnes to commaund that the saide merchants may be payed such summe of monies as are owing, and due vnto them by his Paistie, for wares as well English, as Shamaki, taken into his highnes treasury by his officers in sundry places, the long forbearing whereof hath bene, and is great hinderance to the said company of merchants.

7 Also it would please his Paistie to vnderstand, that at this present time there are in Persia of English merchants, Thomas Banister, and Geoffrey Ducker, with their company, & goods, ready to come into his Paisties countrey of Astracan, and would haue come the last yeere, but that the ship, with our merchants and mariners appointed to goe for them, were stayed at Astracan by his highnes Captaine there, to the great hinderance of the said merchants. Wherefore may now please his Paistie to direct his princely letters vnto his Captaines and rulers, both at Astracan and Cazar, not onely to suffer our people, as well merchants as mariners, quietly and freely to passe and repasse with their shippes, barques, or other vessels betwixt the riuer Volga, and our the Mare Caspium, to fetch the sayd English merchants, with their company and goods, out of the sayd Persia, into his Paisties dominions, but also that it would please his highnes straightly to commaund, that when the sayd Thomas Banister, and Geoffrey Ducker, with their charge, shall arrive at the sayd Astracan, his Paisties Captaine there, and in all other places vpon the riuer Volga, shall so ayde and assist the sayd merchants, as they may be safely conducted out of the danger of the Crimmes, and other their enemies.

8 Also it may please his highnes to vnderstand, that lately our merchants committing to Shamaki, haue bene ill vsed by his Paisties Customers, both at Astracan and Cazan, at both which places they were forced to pay custome for their wares, although they solde no part thereof, but brought the same into his highnes treasury at Sloboda: and the sayd Customers did not exact, and take much more custome then was due by his Paisties lawes, but also for want of present money, tooke wares much exceeding their exacted custome, and doe keepe the same as pawne. It may therefore please his highnes to direct his princely letters to the said Customers, to signifie vnto them his great goodnes againe restored vnto the said English merchants, as also to commaund them to send the said merchants their said goods so detained, vnto the Moscovy

paying such

9 Also it may please his highnes to direct his Paistie to be brought out of the said cities: as commodities, great troubles, dominions, ma

10 Also if it is possible, and all other the ancient Paistie, and his comfitt to e

11 Also for as much as the comment that is sustained by the Garrard and his moue to the sun goodnes and grea some good vnto

12 Also that tellie, at the earne pardon and forgie mitted, onely for h to waile fauourabl being their seruants Garrard with his contrariation, and bound himselfe both his returne into Ru for the said compan ment, and that the

Thomas, yet will h his Paistie other to pay the said m of the premises, and that he may disci such merrie an

13 Also for as much as the Country, and to str of the spoiles and goodly spending the Ca he was sent for, with other his adheren their Paisties, the said Ralse with the Paisties subie to be suffered to the sent home: for the riotous seruants, d

14 Also whereas di do liue. them Country at their w here here resident in

Also it may please his highnes to direct his Paistie to be brought out of the said cities: as commodities, great troubles, dominions, ma

Also it may please his highnes to direct his Paistie to be brought out of the said cities: as commodities, great troubles, dominions, ma

paying such custome for the same, as shall be by his Palettie appointed.

9 Also that it would please his highnesse to grante, that Sir William Garrard with his company may establish their trade for merchandise at Colmogro in Dwina, and that such wares as shall be brought out of our Countrey sit for his treasure might be looked upon, and received by his officers there: and that his Paletties people traffiking with our merchants may bying downe their commodities to the said Colmogro, by meanes whereof the said English merchants autopying great troubles and charges, in transporting their goods so farre, and into so many places of his dominions, may sell the same better cheape, to the benefite of his Paletties subjects.

10 Also if it seemed good to his highnesse, that the whole trade likewise from Persia, Boghar, and all other those Countreys beyond the Mare Caspium, might be established at Astracan, the ancient Persie towne in times past, which would be both for the great honour and profite of his Palettie, and Subiectes, as I am well able to procure, if it will please his highnesse to appoint any of his counsell to take with me therein.

11 Also forasmuch as it pleased his Palettie, immediately after the burning of the Mosco, to command that the said English merchants should give in a note into his Treasury, for their losses sustained by the said fire, which was done by William Rowly, then chiefe Agent for Sir William Garrard and his company, and the particulars in the same note consumed with the said fire did amount to the summe of 10000. rubbles and above: It may please his highnesse of his said fire did approve good and great clemencie to consider of the same, and to give the said company so much as shall

12 Also that it will please his highnesse to understand that the Queenes most excellent Palettie, at the earnest sute and request of Andrea Savin his Paletties Ambassadors, did not onely pardon and forgive Thomas Glouer his great and grievous offences towards her highnesse concerning the said Glouer, but also commanded Sir William Garrard with his company, being their servant, detained their goods in his hands a long time: whereupon the said Sir William Garrard with his company counted with the said Glouer, and ended all things even to his satisfaction, and was found to be debter to the said company 4000. rubbles and above, and bound himselfe both by his sollemne othe, and his hand-writing, to pay the same immediately after his returne into Russia with the said Andrea Savin, unto Nicholas Prochor chiefe Agent there, for the said company of merchants. But although it is now two yeeres past, since the said agreement, and that the said Nicholas hath divers and sundry times requested the said money of the said Thomas, yet will he not pay the same debt, but maketh delay from time to time, alledging that his Palettie oweth him a great summe of money, without the payment whereof he cannot be able to pay the said merchants his due debt long forborne, to their great hinderance. In consideration of the premises, It may please his highnesse to give order that the said Glouer may be payed, and that he may discharge his debt to the said company of merchants, and the rather for that he should such merrie and favour in England, onely for his Paletties sake.

13 Also forasmuch as Ralfe Rutter a rebell to the Queenes Palettie, and an enemy to his Countrey, and to Sir William Garrard and his company, hath of long time remained here, living of the spoiles and goods of the said merchants, which he wrongfully detained in his handes, notwithstanding the same, during the time that he was their servant, and would not come home when he was sent for, and also for that the Queenes Palettie doth understand, that the said Ralfe, with other his adherents, doe seeke by all faile meanes to sowe dissention, and breake amitie between their Paletties, and to overthrowe the trade of the said merchants: Her highnesse request is, that the said Ralfe with his complices may be delivered unto me, to be carried home, and none other way, to be suffered to traffike within his highnesse dominions, but to be delivered to their Agent in Moscow: for that the said merchants with great charges and losses, both by shipwacke, and their great hinderance, did first finde out this trade, and have continued the same these 19. yeeres.

14 Also whereas divers masters and artificers of our Nation are here in his Paletties Countrey, and do finde themselves grieved that they cannot have licence to depart home into their native Countrey at their will and pleasure: the Queenes Paletties request is, according to her highnesse request, that not onely it will please his Palettie to permit and suffer such persons here resident in the service of his highnesse, to have free libertie to depart, and go home, if they request the same, but also all other the like, which shall come hereafter to serve his highnesse, to have free libertie to depart likewise, without any let or stay.

15 Also it may please his Palettie to understand that during the time of my long being at Colmogro,

Colmogro, attending his highnesse pleasure for my further accesse, I with my company have not onely bene ill used and intreated there, and likewise the merchants there, by one Besson My. seruey his Spaiellies chiefe officer, who hath dishonoured me, and smitten my people, and owerth the said merchants much money, and will not pay them: but also the said Besson hath spoken wordes of dishonour against the Queenes Spaiellie. Wherefore it may please his highnesse to send downe with me to Colmogro, a Gentleman, as well chiefly to search forth his euill behauiour towards her Spaiellie, as towards me her highnesse Ambassadoz, and to punish him accordingly: and also that it may please his Spaiellie to sende downe his letter of iustice, by vertue whereof the said Besson may be forced to pay all such money as he owerth to the said merchants, without delay.

Also that it would please his highnesse to vnderstand, that Sir William Garrard with his company vnderstanding of the great dearth in his Spaiellies dominions, by licence of the Queenes Spaiellie, (not otherwise permitted) hath sent certaine ships laden with coine into his highnesse Countrey of Dwyna, rather for the reliefe of his Spaiellies subiects, then for any gain: yet the good will of the said merchants lightly regarded, they were forbidden to sell the said coine, to their great discouragement hereafter to lend any moze. Wherefore it may please his highnesse, to tender the good will of the said merchants, as well in sending the said coine, as in all other things, ready to serue his Spaiellie, and to direct his letters to his officers of Dwyna, to suffer the said merchants with their company, to sell the said coine by measure, great or small at their pleasure, without paying custome.

These articles being deliuered to the chiefe Secretary, as aforesayde, and our calke ended in that time, I departed to my lodging, accompanied with certaine Gentlemen. The next day, being the 13. of May aforesaid, I had warning early in the morning, to prepare my selfe to be at the Court, betwixt the houres of 10. and 11. of the clocke, where I should haue accesse vnto the presence of the Prince, as well to receiue answer of all things, as to be dismissed to goe home. At which houres I was sent for to the Court, and brought into the Chamber of presence, where his Spaiellie did sit apparelled most sumptuously, with a riche Crowne vpon his head, garnished with many precious stones, his eldest sonne sitting by him, and many of his Nobilitie about him: and after my duetie done, his highnesse commanded me to appoach very neere vnto him, and layd vnto me these wordes.

Anthony, the Queene our louing sister her letters wee haue caused to be translated, and we well vnderstand the same, and of all things as well therein contained, as by wordes of mouth by you to vs declared wee haue well considered, and doe perceiue that our secret message was you committed, was done truly according to our minde (although wee were aduertised to the contrary) and now wee are by you fully satisfied. And when wee did sende our Ambassadors into England, about those our great and weightie affaires, to conclude the same with the Queene our sister, our Ambassadors coulde enue nothing for want of such assurance as was requir'd in princely affaires, according to the manner of all Countreys, but was dismissed vnto vs againe, with letters of small effect, touching the same, and no Ambassadors sent with him from the Queene: which caused vs to thinke, that our princely affaires were set aside, and little regarded, wherewith wee were at that time much grieved: for the which cause, and for the euill behauiour of your merchants, resident in our dominions (who haue diuers wayes transgressed and broken our lawes, liuing wilfully in al their doings) we did lay our heauie displeasure vpon them, and did take away from them their priuiledge, commaunding that the same throughout all our dominions, should be voyd, and of none effect: and thereupon did write to the Queene our sister, touching our griefes.

And now her highnesse hath sent vnto vs againe, you her Ambassadors, with her louing letters, and full minde, which we doe thankfully receiue, and are thereby fully satisfied. And for the que princely, and secret affaires were not finished to our contentation at our time appointed, according to our expectation, we doe now leaue of all those matters, and set them aside for the time, because our minde is now otherwise changed, but hereafter when occasion shall moue us the like, we will then talke of those matters againe. And for that it hath pleased the Queene our louing sister, to sende vnto vs at this present, and doeth desire to continue in friendship with vs for ever (which wee doe gratefully accept, and willingly agree to the same) we of goodnesse for her highnesse sake, will not onely from hence forth put away, and forget al displeasure towards the same Sir William Garrard and his company (as though they had offended vs) but also will restore them to their priuiledges, and liberties, in, and throughout all our dominions, and will signifye the same by our letters, in all Townes and Cities, where the said merchants do traffique, and we will shewe them fauour as aforesayde, if they deserv

The causes of
the Emperours
displeasure.

the contrar
knoweth to
our indigna

Then I
the said mer
Queenes Sp
ments for th
offences: an
by her Spai
stand some p

Then his
the merchants
read the same
and answer to
will depart fro
with our letter
man one of our
you victuals, bo
the standing by
come vnto our lo
esse: and there
ring by him, to se
his Spaiellie caus
thought, wherco
Then the next
any, one other o
appointed by the E
quels deliuered in

1 To the first
away from the mer
with his ambassado
made by Thoo
chans resident here

2 To the second
the moue to bea

3 To the third, p
and fauour agai
much letters of p

4 To the fourth, b
and put in twic
will for debts, as othe
will have iustice truly

5 To the fifth, b
Noblemen, as in al
be tried out, and c

6 To the sixth, it is
is owing to the mar
the be. den of accomp

7 To the 7 his Spai
and Cazan, and
to suffer your peopl

can, ouer the Mare c
and goods out of Per
and assist them, and se

To the eight, his ma
can and Cazan, com

my company have
one Besson Myf-
people, and with
Besson hath spoken
leave his highnes
with his euil beha-
to punish him accor-
iustice, by vertue
saye merchants,

Garrard with his
nce of the Queene
into his highnes
any gaine: yet the
said come, to the
his highnesse, to ter-
in all other things,
to suffer the same
all at their pleasure,

our talke ended by
The next day, he
are my selfe to be at
haue access vnto the
to goe home,
of presence, where
his head, garbment
nobilitie about him:
vnto him, and hope

translated, and the
woorde of mouth by
secret message was
were aduertised to the
the our Ambassadors
me with the Queene
as was requyred
alised vnto vs againe,
with him from the
ye, and little re-
and for the euill be-
pen transgression
pleasure vpon them,
throughout all our
ueene our sister, in

with her louing
satisfied. And by the
time appointed, we
em aside for the time
shall moue the Queene
pleased the Queene
continue in friendship
the same) were of
p, and forget all
is though they had
s, in, and through
s and Cities, we
e, if they deserue

the contrary. And if the Queene our sister had not lent the Anthonij vnto vs at this present, we should knoweth what we should haue done to the said merchants, or whether we would haue called back our indignation.

Then I humbly beseeched his Maiestie, to let me know the particular offences committed by the said merchants, and the offenders names, to the intent I might make report thereof, vnto the Queenes Maiestie, my mistres, accordingly, that the said offenders might receiue iust punishment for their delicts: but he said, I should not know them, because he had cleerly remitted all offences: and further, that it was not princely to forgive, and after to accuse the parties, where- by her Maiesties displeasure might fall vpon them at home, notwithstanding I did offer vnder- stand some part thereof, by other meanes.

Then his Maiestie proceeding in talke, said: As touching the articles of request, concerning the merchants affaires, which you did yesterday deliuer vnto our Secretary, we haue not onely read the same our selfe, but also haue appointed our said Secretary to declare vnto you our mind, and answer to the same. And for that we are now vpon our iourney towards our borders, and will depart from hence shortly, we will dismiss you to the Queene our louing sister, your mistres, with our letters, & full mind by word of mouth, touching all your requests, & will send a gentle- man one of our household with you to take conduct you to your ships: and of our goodnes will giue you victuals, boates, men, and post horses, so many as you shall neede. And therewith his Maiestie standing by, and putting off his cappe, said vnto me these wordes. Doe our hearty commenda- tions vnto our louing sister, Queene Elizabeth, vnto whom we wish long life, with happie suc- cesse: and therewith his highnes extended his hand to me to kisse, and commanded his sonne, si- ting by him, to send the like commendations, which he did, whose hand like wisse I kissed. And then his Maiestie caused me to sit downe, and commanded wine and drinckes of diuers sorts to be brought, whereof he gaue me to drinke with his owne hand, and so after I departed.

Then the next day, being the 14 of May as aforesaid, I was sent for to come to the chiefe Secre- tary by the Emper of his maiesty, to giue you answer from his highnes, touching your re- quies deliuered in writing, which his Maiestie himselfe hath perused, & answered as followeth.

1. To the first request it is answered, that all his Maiesties griefes and displeasure (now put away from the merchants) did grow, because the Queenes Maiestie did not accomplish and en- de mize made by Thomas Randolph, at his being here: and also of the ill behauiour of your mer- chants resident here in our Countrey, as his Maiestie did himselfe yesterday declare vnto you.

2. To the second, his Maiestie willeth you to vnderstand, that he hath not, nor will not hereaf- ter be moved to speake friendship with the Queenes Maiesty, without good and iust cause.

3. To the third, you are answered by the Emperors Maiestie himselfe, that his great good- will and fauour againe vnto the merchants shall be restored, and the same to be knownen by his grauous letters of priuilege now againe granted.

4. To the fourth, his maiesty hath commanded, that your merchants here resident shall exhibi- te, and put in writing vnto me his Maiesties Secretary, all their griefes, and complaints, as well for debtes, as other iniuries offered them since the time of his highnes displeasure, and they shall haue iustice truly ministered throughout all his Maiesties dominions without delay.

5. To the fifth, his maiesty doth not know of any debtes due vnto the merchants, by any of his Noblemen, as is alleaged: and whether it be true or no, he knoweth not: the truth whereof shall be tried out, and thereupon answer to be giuen: and hereafter his maiesty would not haue the merchants to trust his people with too much.

6. To the sixth, it is answered, that his maiesty hath commanded search to be made what no- thing is owing to the merchants, for wares receiued into his treasury, as in the article: (the most part) shall be paid forthwith to the merchants, their factories or seruants, which shall come for the same, and for paymēt of the rest, his maiesties further pleasure shall be signified hereafter.

7. To the 7 his Maiesties answer is, that letters shall be written forthwith to his capitaines of Astracan, and Cazan, and other his officers, vpon the riuer Volga, to whom it appertaineth, not to suffer your people, both merchants, & mariners, to passe with their ships, or barkes, from the Mare caspium, to fetch Thomas Banister, and Geofrey Duckett, with their goods, out of Persia, but also when they shall arrive within his Maiesties dominions, to be safe- ly and alid them, and see them safely conducted by the riuer Volga, from danger of enemies.

8. To the eighth, his maiesty hath commanded letters to be written to the Customers, both of Astracan and Cazan, to make restitution to the English merchants of their goods so detained by them.

them for custome, & to take custome for the same, according to his Maiesties letters of priuilege.
 9 To the ninth and tenth articles, his Maiestie will consider of those matters, and hereafter will signifie his princely pleasure therein.

11 To the eleuenth, as touching an inuentione giuen into the treasury, what goods the merchants had burnt in the Mosco, in their houses there, his Maiesties pleasure was to understande the same, to the intent he might know the losses of all strangers at that present, but not to make restitution, for that it was Gods doing, and not the Emperours.

12 To the twelfth, concerning Thomas Glouer, his Maiestie was enformed by his Ambassadors of the Queenes great mercy and clemencie towards the said Thomas, for his sake, which his Highnes receiued in good part, but what agreement or dealings was betwixt the said Sir William Garrard, & his company, & the said Glouer, or what he doth owe vnto the said merchants, his Maiestie doth not know. And as for the money which the said Thomas saith is owing vnto him by the Emperour, his Maiesties pleasure is, that so much as shall be found due, & growing vpon wares deliuered vnto the treasury, out of the time of his Maiesties displeasure, shall be paid forthwith to the said Thomas, and the rest is forfeited vnto his Maiestie, and taken for a fine, as appertaining to Rutter and Benner, accompanied traitors vnto his Highnes, during the time of his displeasure.

13 To the thirteenth article, concerning Rutter to be deliuered vnto you, to be caried home, the answer was, that as his Maiestie will not detain any English man in his Countrey, that is willing to go home, according to the Queenes request: euen so will he not force any to depart, but is willing to tary with him. Yet his Highnes, to satisfie the Queenes Maiesties request, is contented at this present to send the said Rasse Rutter home with you, and hath commanded that a letter shall be written vnto his chiefe officer at the Mosco, to send the said Rutter away with speed, that he may be with you at Vologda, by the line of May, without faile: and touching the rest of your request in the said article, his Maiesties pleasure shall be signified in the letters of priuilege, granted to the said merchants.

14 To the fourteenth, touching artificers, his Maiestie will accomplish all the Queenes Highnes request in that behalf, and now at this present doth licence such and so many to depart to their native countrey as are willing to goe.

15 To the 15, touching Besson Messenger, the Emperours maiestie is much offended with him, and will send down a gentleman with you to inquire of his ill behauior, as well for speaking of two decept words against the Queenes maiestie as you haue alleged, as also against you, and the merchants for his outrages mentioned in the article, & the said Besson being found guilty, to be imprisoned & punished by seuerer iustice accordingly, and after to put in sureties to answer the Emperours high displeasure; or els to be brought up like a prisoner by the said gentleman to answer his offences before his Maiestie. And his highnes doth request that the Queenes highnes should doe the like vpon Middleton and Manlie her messengers sent thither two yeeres past, and of others for their ill behauiour towards his maiestie, as may appeare by letters sent by Daniel Messenger from his highnes, least by the bad demeanour of such lewd persons, the amity and friendship betwixt their maiesties might be diminished.

16 To the 16 and last article, touching the coynes brought into the Emperours dominions by the merchants, his maiestie doth greatly commend them for so well doing, and hath commanded to giue you a letter forthwith in their behalf, directed to his officers of Duina; to suffer the said merchants to sell their coynes, by measure great or small at their pleasure without custome.

Thus I receiued a still answer from his maiestie by his chiefe Secretarie & one other of his counsel, to the 16 articles afore rehearsed, by me exhibited in writing touching your affaires, and his letter also sent by me to the Queenes maiestie. Which being done, I requested that the letters of priuilege granted by his highnes vnto you might be forthwith dispatched, in the which I might carie the same with me. Also I requested that such money due to you, which he hath sent his maiestie to command to be paid, might be deliuered to me in your behalf.

Touching the letters of priuilege, the Secretary answered me, it is not possible you can be with them, for they must be first written and shewed vnto the Emperour, and then they to be written of one counsellor according to your request, which cannot be done with speed, for that his Maiesties pleasure is, you shall depart this night before him, who remoueth himselfe to march towards Nouogrod: but without faile the said letters shall be dispatched vpon the way, and after you with speede to Colmogro. And as touching the money which you require, it cannot be paid here because we haue not the bookes of accounts, for want whereof we know not how to pay: wherefore the best is that you send one of the merchants after the Emperour to Nouogrod, let him repaire vnto me there, and without faile I will paye all such money as shall be appointed by his maiestie to be paid after the bookes serue.

But forasmuch as I earnestly importuned names, one monsaile to come his should commend the said Secret of money, as in any wise that my leave with the gentleman who by also for me all the time of the sayd Besson present by order from the said Secretary my journey, I arrived as well expected of Rutter, who sent down to me without the same. And when the sudden cause was I could not help myselfe, because by absent messenger Iohn must then lay, expressed sent vnto me according to the said letters of priuilege he returned vnto me from the said Volga, and remained there with me in all that time of his business, and remained before his going vnto your journey therewith. I am by the letters of priuilege according to his wish at this present, much displeasure from the reasons there rest, the cruel doings haue

the names of Sultan, from the Secretary of England, vntill I passed into Flar through Germanie, passing through Piemont, where also trauelled through Sicily, Cyprus, Candia, and bene in many places, where I trauelled through the mountaines over the mountains, Philistines of Palestine, and bene in diuers places of Tunis.

ers of privilege,
eters, and heretofore

at goods the mer-
as to understande
but not to make

by his Ambassa-
his sake, which his
he said Sir William
merchman, his Spe-
ing unto him by the
owing upon words
he paid forthwith
e, as appertaining
of his displeasure,
be carried home, the
unrety, that is with-
any to depart, but
ies request, is com-
manded that a let-
er away with spee-
touching the use of
letters of privilege,

ally all the Queene
to many to depart

offended with his
et for speaking of
ark you, and the wo-
mans guilty, to be
to answer the Que-
eneleian to answer
enes bighe. And
res past, and of al-
sent by Daniel St-
amity and friendship

peroy's dominions
to hath commanded
to suffer the said in-
at custome.

arie & one other of
ing your affairs, he
sequer that the ne-
spachen, to the inter-
you, to which it was
hehelfe.

he possible you can
e, and then there-
ch speede, for that
ch himselfe to make
upon the way, and
ou require, it cannot
we know not why
meroy to Novogro-
ep as shall be appoy-

But forasmuch as there was none of your servants with me at that present (although I had earnestly written unto your Agent Nicholas Proctor by Richard Pingle one of your owne servants, one moneth before my coming to Starits, where I had my dispatch, that he should not fail to come himselfe, or send one of your servants to mee thither, to follow all such lites as I should commence in your behalfs, which he neglected to doe to your great hindrance) I request of money, as for the speedy dispatch of the letters of privilege, but it would not be granted in any wise that I should leave any of mine own companie behind me, and therupon I did take my leave with full dispatch, and departed to my lodging, and forthwith there came unto me a gentleman who had charge as well to conduct me, and provide boates, men, post horses and victuals for me all the way to the sea side, being a thousand and three hundred miles, as also to doe justice of the sayd Beslone, as aforesaid. And he said unto me, the Emperours pleasure is, that you shall presently depart from hence, and I am appointed to goe with you. And that night I departed from the said Starits, being the fourteenth of May aforesaid. And passing a great part of my journey, I arrived at the citie of Vologda the last of the sayd May, where I remained dwelling of Ruter, whom the Emperours made hisse himselfe the new letters of privilege, as the com- sent unto me without faille, and I did see the letters written to the chiefe officers at the Mosco for the same. Nevertheless the said Ruter did not come, neither could I heare of him after, nor know the sudden cause of his stay contrary to the princes owne word and meaning, as I suppose. But I could not help the matter being farre from the prince, neither could I tell how to have recourse, because by absence I could not complaine. Notwithstanding I used my endeavour, and sent then lay, especially with letters, as well to aduertise his maiestie that the sayd Ruter was not sent unto me according to his highnes commandement & order, as also about the dispatch of the letters of privilege and recite of your money, with straight charge that he should in any wise returne unto me againe before the departing of the ships. And the first day of June I departed from the said Vologda by water towards Colmogro, where I arrived the 21 of June aforesaid, and remained there untill the 23 of July, looking for the said John Norton to have returned to me in at that time, which had respice fully enough in that space both to go to the court to discharge his business, and to have returned againe unto me, but he came not, for it was otherwise devised before his going, as I did after understand, and can moze at large by worde of mouth declare unto your worships the occasion thereof. Nevertheless, I am well assured before this time your Agent hath received into his hands the letters of privileges, and shall have dispatch with expedition in all things touching your affairs, according to his maiesties grant by me obtained, and as he hath written to the Queenes at this present, wishing that as now by my going the Emperour hath withdrawn his uncommodious displeasure from you, and restored you againe into his favour, so your Agent and others his servants there resident may be able, & endeavour themselves to keepe & augment the same, so evill doings have bene the onely occasion of his indignation now remitted.

The names of such countries as I *Anthony lenkinson* have trauelled into, from the second of October 1546, at which time I made my first voyage out of England, untill the yeere of our Lord 1572, when I returned last out of *Russia*. I passed into Flanders, and trauelled through all the base countries, and from thence through Germanie, passing over the Alpes I trauelled into Italy, and from thence through Piemont into France, throughout all which realme I have thoroughly furnished. I have also trauelled through the kingdomes of Spaine and Portingal, I have sailed through almost seas every way, & have bene in all the chiefe Islands within the same sea, as Rhodes, Sicilia, Cyprus, Candie, and divers others, and bene in many partes of Grecia, Morea, Achaia, and where the olde citie of Constantinople. I have trauelled through a great part of Turkie, Syria, and divers other countries in Asia, and passed over the mountaines of Libanus to Damasco, and trauelled through Samaria, Philistie of Palestine, unto Ierusalem, and so through all the Holy land, and bene in divers places of Affrica, as Algiers, Cola, Bona, Tripolis, the gollet within

I have sailed farre Northward within the Mare glaciale, where we have had continuall day, and sight of the Sunne ten weekes together, and that navigation was in Norway, Lapland, Samogitia, and other very strange places.

I have trauelled through all the ample dominions of the Emperour of Russia and Moscovia, which extende from the North sea, and the confines of Norway and Lapland, even to the Mare Caspium.

I have bene in diuers countries neere about the Caspian sea, Gentiles, and so haue means, as Cazan, Cremia, Rezan, Cheremisi, Mordouiti, Vachin, Nagaia, with diuers others of strange customes and religions.

I have sailed ouer the Caspian sea, & discovered all the regions thereabout adiacent, as Chircassi, Comul, Shalsal, Shiruan, with many others.

I have trauelled 40 daies Iourney beyond the Casp sea, towards the Orientall India, and Cathia, through diuers deserts and wildernesses, and passed through 5 kingdomes of the Tartars, and all the land of Turkestan and Zagaray, and so to the great cite of Boghar in Badkia, without great perils and dangers sunny times.

After all this, in An. 1562, I passed againe ouer the Caspian sea another way, and landed in Armenia, at a cite called Verbene, built by Alexander the great, & from thence trauelled through Media, Parthia, Hircania, into Persia to the court of the great Sophie called Shaw Tamasso, whom I deliuered letters from the Queenes maiestie, and remained in his court 8 moneths, and returning homeward, passed through diuers other countries. Finally I made two voyages more after that out of England into Russia, the one in the yeere 1566, and the other in the yeere 1571. And thus being weary and growing old, I am content to take my rest in mine owne house, cheeryly comforting my selfe, in that my seruice hath bene honourably accepted and rewarded of her maiestie and the rest by whom I haue bene imploied.

A letter of James Alday to the Worshipfull M. Michael Lock, Agent in London for the Moscovie company, touching a trade to be established in Lappia, written 1575.

We marvelled
the company
do not conferre
with him of
Lappia.

I have in remembrance (worshipfull Sir) the talke we had when I was with you as touching the trade in Lappia: And certainly I haue something maruelled in all this time the right way, your societie haue not given order that some conference (by you, or with some other) might haue bin had with me touching the parts, considering they know (as I thinke) that I remained there one whole yeere more, by which meanes reason would that I should haue learned something. But the cause they haue not desired to conferre with me (as I iudge) resteth only in one of these 4 causes, I say, either they thinke themselves so thoroughly certified of that trade, as more neede nor be of therof, or that they haue no lust more to deale that waies, or that they hold mee so vntruly that they dare not open their minds, for feare of doubt. I should heare more affectio to others to them, & so discover their secrets: or els they think me of so simple vnderstanding, that I am unworthy to be spoken with in these matters. To which 4 causes I answered as followeth: first, they thinke themselves so thoroughly certified as more neede not to be spoken: certainly I found maruel by whom it should be: for in þ winter past there lay but 5 English persons there, viz. Christopher Colk, Roger Leche, Adam Tunstall cooper, one lad, & I: for Henry Cocknedge was whole winter at Mosco. And of these persons, as touching Colk, I thinke him (if I may without offence speake my conscience) the most simple person that was there, (as touching the handling of a marchant) although indeed he tooke vpon him very much to his owne harme without doubt, for he vsed himselfe not like a marchant, neither showed diligence like a worthy factor, but lay still in a den all þ whole winter, hauing wares lying vpon his hand, which he did not employ to any vse, although sundry waies there were that he might haue put his wares in by money with gaine, & no great aduenture, which money would haue bin more acceptable to poore Lappes & sibermen at the spring, then any kind of wares: but his fond head did as he thought the talent in the Gospell, & yet he had counsel to the contrary which he disobained, so that making him from knowledge of the trade that might be in that countrey, the winter time, which was peraduenture then most men think of. Wherefore if Colk haue written or said any thing touching those countries, it is doubtful whether it toucheth the effect or not, considering he lay still all winter without trial of any matter. And for Henry Cocknedge assuredly speaking so much do perfectly know, I must needs say, that he is a very honest young man, & right carefull of

1574.

5 English men
wintered in
Lappia.

Christopher Colk
a simple marchant.

Good trade in
winter in Lappia.

Henry Cocknedge honest, but ignorant.

sure, and in
by heart say
of the lad no
with, so that
of whom I co
like knowledg
may: he in the
and learned not
of commodities
be made of them
then haue they
be to beare mine
ficial secrets of
cept, as in the
deale not that w
although not En
for the greater p
good reason, if I
with advantage, e
it is, and like w
considered, rather
to this, and that
that strue for the
such or not, as not
necessly put from th
without interruptio
heart, as ever I wil
I write of. And for
thanks God I am m
care holden out of
then will men poore
can inter by speech
name: but surely ho
in my heart to your la
and me as a false dis
chance, beating the b
in Lappia 3 ships, as
maine oile, yet am I si
marrels belloes 27 ba
oyen. And yet there is
will be (I truce) too ha
wishing as to my dea
ade of Russia of Lapp
will be to be accepted in
The request of a
led and directed i
I pray you please
by the piouson and
passing from England
how many sibermen
how many boats, and
what wages of such
how many baryng wa
thing, and what for a
how many ketles, the
on trunks or on firer
what quantite of cash
much thereof to be sta

What quantitie of victuals, and what kinde of victuals for the men in all the ship for 4 months time.

For the common mariners and officers to gouerne the ship, we shall not neede any out of Biskiaie, but onely men skilful in the catching of the Whale, and ordering of the oile, and one Cooper skilfull to set vp the staued caske.

Also what other matters are requisite to be knowne, and done for the said voyage to catch the Whale, not here noted nor remembred.

These requests were thus answered, which may serue as directions for all such as shall intend the same voyage, or the like for the Whale.

A proportion for the setting forth of a ship of 200. sunne for the killing of the Whale.

There must be 55 men who departing for Wardhouse in the moneth of April, must bee furnished with 4 kintals and a halfe of bread for euery man.
 250 hogsheds to put the bread in.
 150 hogsheds of Cedar.
 6 kintals of oile.
 8 kintals of bacon.
 6 hogsheds of beefe.
 10 quarters of salt.
 150 pound of candles.
 8 quarters of beanes and pease.
 Saltfish & herring, a quantitie conuenient.
 4 cunnies of wines.
 Half a quarter of mustard seed, and a querne.
 A grindstone.
 800 empty shaken hogsheds.
 350 bundles of hoopes, and 6 quintalines.
 800 paire of beds for the hogsheds.
 10 Catches called rores for harping irons.
 10 pieces of Arpoxeras.
 3 pieces of Baibens for the Taulines small.
 2 catches to turne the Whales.
 A halser of 27 fathom long to turne 3 whales.
 15 great Taulines.
 18 small Taulines.

50 harping irons.
 6 machicos to cut the Whale withall.
 2 dozen of machicos to mince the Whale.
 2 great hookes to turne the Whale.
 3 paire of Can hookes.
 6 hookes for staues.
 3 dozen of staues for the harping irons.
 6 pulleys to turne the Whale with.
 10 great bakers.
 10 lampes of iron to carie light.
 5 kettles of 150 li. the piece, and 6 ladles.
 1000 of nails for the pinnacles.
 500 of nails of Carabie for the houses, and the wharfe.
 18 axes and hatchets to cleare wood.
 12 pieces of lines, and 6 dozen of hookes.
 2 beetles of Rosemarie.
 4 dozen of oares for the pinnacles.
 6 lanternes.
 500 of Tella.
 Item, gunpowder & matches for harquines as shalbe needfull.
 Item, there must be caried from hence 5 pinnacles, five men to strike with harping irons, two cutters of Whale, 5 coopers, & a purser of two.

A note of certaine other necessarie things belonging to the

Whalefishing, receiued of master W. Burrough.

A sufficient number of pulleys for tackle for the Whale.
 A dozen of great bakers.
 4 furnaces to melt the Whale in.
 6 tables of copper.

A thousand of nails to mend the pinnacles.
 500 great nails of spikes to make then
 3 paire of bootes great and strong, for that shall cut the Whale.
 8 calue skins to make appons or barbares.

The deposition of M. William Burrough to certaine Interrogatories mitted vnto him concerning the Narue, Keger, &c. to what king or prince they do appertaine and are subiect, made the 23 of Iune, 1576.

These articles seeme to haue bene ministred vpon the quarel between Alderman Bond the elder, and the Moscouie company, for his trade to the Narue without the consent.

The first Interrogatorie.

First, whether the villages or towncs vulgarly called the Narue, Keger, Pechingo, Cola, and the portes of the same towncs, as well at the time of the grant of the letters of

uilege by the
 1569, 1570
 instruction,
 Emperour of
 said places,
 and either of
 1571 and
 1572 hidden to a

To this I
 vulgarly called
 the grant of the
 tion, & subiect
 1566, and th
 tually they we
 Emperour of
 nemour respect
 said places are
 in the grant of
 very of new treat
 hidden to any o
 1571 and
 king of Denmar
 selfe, or with his
 Lappia, taken of
 by giuen to winne
 marke which bo
 nere unto them.

Russia, and the k
 came into Lappia
 and did demaund
 wares betwene
 hath bene paid by
 that they would
 ing it haue their ill

But the truth is
 is the chiefe lord
 serued by them, hee
 come Christians it is
 ple, such as cannot
 they, they repaice to
 place spiritted Kego
 chingo, which are
 appointed by the clea

Also in the yeere of
 of Iune, the 29 day be
 there, the Russes, were
 of Russia, and of
 Denmarke on the othe
 to the Russe had th
 subject to his master, a
 to his master the k
 the abbot of S. Nichol
 as diuers plac
 all which plac
 said Emperour, and
 what it hath bene fi
 fresh water which sat
 chingo, and the bay
 Emperour receiue

village by the Emperour to our merchants, as also in the yeeres of our Lord, 1566, 1567, 1568, 1569, 1570, 1571, 1572, 1573, 1574, and 1575. respectively were (as presently they be) of the jurisdiction, and subiect to the mightie prince the Emperour of Russia: and whether the saide said places, and so vulgarly known, had, and reputed: and whether the saide colonies and places, and either of them be situated towards the North and North-east or North-west, and between the North and the East point: and be the same places whereunto by force of the said privilege, it is forbidden to any other subiect to haue traffike, saving to the societie aforesaid, it is

To this Interrogatorie the deponent saith, that it is true that the villages, colonies and places, vulgarly called the Narue, Keger, Pechingo and Cola, and the portes thereof, at the time of the grant of the said privilege (as he judgeth) were reputed respectively to be under the jurisdiction, and subiect to the Emperour of Russia, and so from the time of the said grant, unto the present, truly they were (as presently they be) of the jurisdiction, and subiect unto the mightie prince the Emperour of Russia, and the same Emperour of Russia, by all the time aforesaid, was chiefe governor respectively of the said places, and so vulgarly known, had and reputed. And that all the in the grant of the letters patents, and privileges of the said companie of merchants for the discovery of new trades, and the same places whereunto by force of the said letters patents, it is forbidden to any other subiect to haue traffike saving to the societie aforesaid, it is forbidden to any other subiect to haue traffike saving to the societie aforesaid.

The Depo-
nent answer

king of Denmarke of late yeeres, or euery yeere once, hath had one of his subiects or more by him selfe, or with his guide a Lappian, that hath at the places Cola, Keger, and diuers other places in Lappia, taken of the Lappies certain tribute or head pence, which the said Lappies haue willingly given to winne fauour of the saide prince, and to liue quietly by his subiects, the people of Finmarke which border vpon their countrey, whereof Wardhouse is the strongest hold, bordereth vpon them. He hath also heard that in the time of peace betweene the saide Emperour of Russia, and the kings of Sweden, there was peace betweene the saide Emperour of Russia and his subiects, in manner as the king of Denmarke serueth vnto the king of Sweden, and his subiects, in manner as the king of Denmarke serueth vnto the king of Sweden, hee hath not heard of any thing that hath bene paid by them to the king of Sweden: such is the simplicitie of this people the Lappies, that they would rather giue tribute to all those that border vpon their countrey, then by deny-

But the truth is, as this Deponent saith, that the saide mightie prince the Emperour of Russia is the chiefe lord and gouernour of the saide countrey of Lappia, his lawes and orders are obserued by them, hee takes toll and custome &c. of them. They are infidels, but if any of them be Christians it is after the Russe law. If there happen any controuersie betweene those people, such as cannot be ended amongst themselves, or by the Emperours deputies in that countrey, they repaire to the Mosko as their highest Court, and there haue it ended. Betweene the place specified Keger, and the confines of Finmarke aforesaid in Lappia, is the monastrie Pechingo, which are monkes, and vse the Russe lawe, the chiefe or head of that abbey is alwayes appointed by the cleergie in Mosko.

Pechingo
abbey.

Also in the yeere of our Lord 1577, the saide Deponent was at the place Keger, in the month of June, the 29 day being S. Peters day, at which time was a great assembly of people at a mart there, the Russes, Merits and Lappians on the one side subiects to the saide mightie prince the Emperour of Russia, and the Northwegians or Rozes and people of Finmarke subiects to the king of Denmarke on the other part, they did barter and exchange fish for other commodities. The deponent to his master, and the captain of Wardhouse had then the gouernment of the people subiect to his master the king of Denmark. He saith also, that betweene the abbey Pechingo, and the abbey of S. Nicholas in Russia, vpon the border of the saide coast of Lappia, he hath bene vpon those as diuers places, where fresh riuers fall into the saide coast of Lappia, he hath bene vpon those, all which places he doth know for certaine, that they were farmed out to the subiects of the saide Emperour, and he the saide Emperour receiued yeerely the rent for them. And further he saith that it hath bene further credibly reported vnto him, that there is not any such riuer or creek of fresh water which falleth out of the saide countrey of Lappia into the sea, between the saide abbey Pechingo, and the bay of S. Nicholas, but they are all and euery of them farmed out, and the Emperour receiue the rent for them.

Item,

The second
Interrogato-
rie.

Item, whether as well before, as also within the memorie of men, till the time of the graunt of the said letters patents any of the English merchants (sailing the merchants of the said Societie) subjects of this realme of England, haue commonly exercised or frequented businesse or trade in the said villages or townes called the Narue, Keger, Pechingo, and Cola, or in any of them, or in any ports or territories of the said Emperour of Russia.

The depo-
nents answer.

To this Interrogatorie the Deponent answereth, that the subjects of this realme before the graunt of the said letters patents did not commonly exercise, neither frequent or trade to any of the said places called the Narue, Keger, Pechingo or Cola, or to any of them.

Certaine reasons to dissuade the vse of a trade to the Narue aforesaid, by way through Sweden.

The merchandise of the Narue are grosse wares, viz. flaxe, hempe, ware, callow and hides. The traffique at that place standeth vpon the agreement and liking of the Emperour of Russia, with the king of Sweden: for all these merchandises that are brought thither come from Plecoue, Nouogrod, and other parts of the Emperours dominions.

For transporting those merchandises from Narue to Stockholm, or what other place shall be thought convenient in Sweden, it must be in vessels of those countries, which will be of small force to resist freebooters, or any other that shall make quarell or offer violence against them.

When the goods are brought into Sweden, they must be discharged, and new laden into smaller vessels, to carpe the same by riuer: or lake a part of the way, and againe to be unladed and transported by land to Newles.

So as the ordinary charges for transporting of goods from Narue to Newles by way as aforesaid, besides the spoile by so often lading and unlading, cartage by land, and the dangers of the sea, pirates, &c. will be such as when it shall be so brought to Newles it will be as deare to the merchants in that place as it shall be worth to be sold in London, wherefore the trade that wayes cannot be profitable to our nation.

Moreover, when the goods shall be in Newles, it may be thought doubtfull to bring it thence quietly without disliking or forcible resistance of the king of Denmarke, so far as much as he maketh quarell, and allegeth damage vnto him in his tolles of the Sound by our trade to S. Nicholas, how much more will be now doe by this way, and with how much greater advantage may be perforce it: The danger that may grow in our trade to Russia by way of S. Nicholas, through the displeasure that the Emperour may conceiue by our trade with the Sweden to Narue is also to be considered.

Ans.

A remembrance of aduise giuen to the merchants, touching a voyage for Cola aforesaid. 1578.

Whercan you require my counsell after what order the voyage for Cola is to be set forth, I and were that I know no better way then hath bene heretofore vsed, which is after this manner. First of all we haue hired the ship by the great, giuing so much for the wearing of the rable and the hull of the shippe, as the ship may be in bignesse: as if there bee about the burden of a hundred tunnes, we pay fourescore pound, and so after that race and thereunto we doe vnto the ship our selues, and doe ship all our men our selues, shipping no more men, nor giuing them more wages then we should doe if they went of a merchants voyage, for it hath bene a great helpe to our voyage hitherto, to haue our men to fish with one boate, & colling vs no more charges then it should do, if our men should lie & doe nothing sauing the charges of salt, & of lines, which is treble paine againe. For this last yere past our men killed with one boat betwixt 9, or 10. thousand fish, which perloed to vs in money with the oile that came of it, about 15, or 16. score pound, which is a great helpe to a voyage. And besides at this, our ship did take in so much oile and other commodities as we bestowed 100. whole clothes in. But because, as I doe suppose, it is not the vse of London to take ships to freight after that order before prescribed, neither I thinke that the mariners will take such paines as our men will: Therefore my counsell is, if you thinke the good, to freight some ship at Hull or Newcastle, for I am sure that you may haue them there better cheape to freight, then at London. Besides at this, one may haue such men as will take paines for their merchises. Furthermore when it shall please God that the ship shall returne to come to discharge at Hull, it will be the most for your profit for the sales of all such like commodities as comes from that place as for fish, oyle, and Salmon chiefly, see that will seeke a better market for the sales then at Hull: he must seeke it out of England, for the like is not in England. This is the best way that I

Hull the best
market of Eng-
land for sale of
fish.

M. Will. Burro

best, and most for your profit
that are necessarie for such a
three yeres be forced to lea-
uere to my will, I would of
light ships with them home a

A dedicatorie Epistle

written by Master William
vnto his exact and notable
his great trauailes, obserua-
Northeaern parts.

To the most big and
of England, Fr



My minde e
from my p
mured by d
and not the
ries and o
voyage for
(being then
when the cosles of Samoe and
and in the yere 1557, when the c
discovered. Since which time, by
cholas in Russia, or to the Narue,
from S. Nicholas to Mosco, and
cholas by land, in the yeres 1574
points of English merchants for dis-
and diligence, true obseruations &
things requisite to the artes of Ma-
exact notes and descriptions of the
my little sufficiently furnished to gi
Joseph parts of the world in soyme a
in all those my trauels. The places
haue set downe by the best authoritie
Gerardus Mercator, Abraham Ortel-
chel in France hither to London, and
Mosco and to S. Nicholas by land:
to S. Nicholas, and to the straight
I haue boldly affirmed (and that I trust
may here sit it open to the view, with
true latitude and longitude, (as com-
place in 12. degrees) as till this time
learning onely, except he trauaileth, a
and topographie, that no man can be
the other: and as neither of them can
much lesse without these two gro-
which learned in those sciences hath
proofe of the profite in them: so ne-
eare. Albeit there are diuers both lea-
of navigation will encre deeply an
pramance reforme them. Such also h
arm, and would so be accompred of, e
plices. To whom I thinke it shal
in practice allowed, thus much to sa
which are not perfectly true: amo
22. points of the compasse or wind
for principall, so condemne the occ
and Gerardus Mercator vsed them

benefit, and most for your proficte, and if you will, I will also see you downe all the commodities that are necessarie for such a voyage, and which way also that the Hollanders may within two or three yeeres be forced to leaue off the trade of Cola which may easily be done. For if my abilitie were to my will, I would vse the matter so that they should either leaue off the trade, or els carry tight ships with them home againe.

A dedicatorie Epistle vnto the Queenes most excellent Maiestie,
written by Master *William Burrough* late Comptroller of her Highnesse nauie, and annexed vnto his exact and notable mappe of *Russia*, briefly containing (amongst other matters) his great trauailes, obseruations, and experiments both by sea and land, especially in those Northeasterly parts.

To the most high and renowned Princeesse ELIZABETH by the grace of God Queene of England, France and Ireland, &c.



My minde earnestly bent to the knowledge of nauigation and Hypographie (most excellent my dread Soueraigne) hath effrained bene moued by diligent studie to search out the chiefest points to them belonging: and not there with sufficent hath also sought by experience in diuers discoueries and other voyages and trauailes to practise the same. I was in the first voyage for discouerie of the partes of *Russia*, which begun in anno 1553. (being then sixteen yeeres of age) also in the yeere 1556. in the voyage when the coastes of *Samood* and *Noua Zembla*, with the straightes of *Vaigatz* were found out: and in the yeere 1557, when the coast of *Lappia*, and the bay of *S. Nicholas* were more perfectly discovered. Since which time, by my continuall practise in the voyages made petyly to *S. Nicholas* in *Russia*, to the *Narue*, and to some other countreys also by Sea: as likewise in passing cholas by land, in the yeeres 1574. and 1575. (being then Agent in those countreys for the compass of *English* merchants for discoueries of new trades) setting downe alwayes with great care and diligence, true obseruations & notes of all those countreys, Islands, coastes of the sea, and other things requisite to the artes of Nauigation and Hypographie: and with like diligence gathering exact notes and descriptions of the wayes, riuers, cities, townes, &c. as I passed by land: I made my selfe sufficiently furnished to giue report vnto your Maiesty, and to make description of those parts of the world in forme and maner of every leagues distance that I haue passed & scene in all those my trauels. The places herein described, which I haue not scene and tried my selfe, I haue set downe by the best authorities that I could finde, and therein may erre with the learned Gerardus Mercator, Abraham Ortelius, and the rest: but for the maine part which is from *Romoloco* and to *S. Nicholas* by land: also from hence Northwards and North-eastwards by Sea to *S. Nicholas*, and to the straight of *Vaigatz* (first craving humbly your highnesse pardon) I am bold to asseme (and that I trust without suspect of arrogancie, since truly I may say it) I haue here set it open to the view, with such exactnesse and exact, and so placed euery thing aright in true latitude and longitude, (accompying the longitudes from the meridian of *London*, which place is in 51. degrees) as till this time no man hath done the like: neither is any man able by learning onely, except he trauaileth, as I haue done. For as it may be truly saide of nauigation and Hypographie, that no man can be cunning in the one which wanteth conuenient knowledge of the other: and as neither of them can be had without the helpes of *Astronomie* and *Cosmographie*, much lesse without these two grounds of all artes, *Arithmetike* and *Geometrie*: so none of the best learned in those sciences Mathematicall, without conuenient practise at the sea can make proofe of the proficte in them: so necessarily dependeth art and reason vpon practise and experience. Albeit there are diuers both learned and vlearned, little or nothing experienced, which in the nauigation will erre deeply and speake much of and against errors bled therein, when they cannot reforme them. Such also haue written thereof, pretending singular great knowledge and wisdom, and would be accounted of, though in very deepe not worthy the name of good and sufficient iudges. To whom I thinke it shall not be amisse in defence of rules builded vpon reason, and practise allowed, thus much to say for and were. It is so, that there are rules vsed in nauigation, which are not perfectly true: among which the straight lines in sea-cardes, representing the points of the compass or windes, are not holden to be the least, but noted off such tal- for principally, so condemne the occupiers thereof for ignorant: yet hath the famous and learned Gerardus Mercator vsed them in his vniuersal mappe. But such as condemne them for false,

saile, and spake most against their life cannot giue other that should serue for navigation to better purpose and effect. Experience (one of the keyes of knowledge) hath taught mee to say it. Wherein with my abilitie, together with some part of my studie, I am the rather moued (in this my plot) to make some trial vnto you maiestie: for that I perceiue that such attempts of newe discoueries (whereunto this noble Island is most aptly situated) are by your royall maiestie so willingly furthered: beseeching your highnesse so to accept of these my trauailes, as a pledge of my well willing to my countrey, and of my loyall seruice to your maiestie, whose healthfull happie life and reigne God continue which is Almightie. Amen.

Your Maiesties most humble subiect
William Burrough.

The Queenes Maiesties letters to *Shaugb Thomas the great Sophi of Persia*, sent by *Arthur Edwards, William Turnbull, Matthew Tailbois*, and *Peter Gerrard* appointed Agents for the Moscouie companie, in their sixth voyage to Persia, begun in the yeere 1579.

To the most noble and invincible Emperour of Persia, King of Shiruan, Gilan, Grofin, Corassian, and great Governour of the Indies.

1568
pag. 394.



Lizabeh by the grace of God Queene of England, France and Ireland, Defender of the faith, &c. To the most noble and invincible Emperour of Persia, King of Shiruan, Gilan, Grofin, Corassian, and great gouvernour euen vnto the Indies, sendeth greeting. Most noble and invincible Prince, it is now I come to your maiestie, by the noble man Anthony Ienkinson our welbeloued subiect, to your most noble and invincible father performed) we laboured to bring to passe by Thomas Bannister and Geoffrey Duckes merchants, our subiects, that throughout all the kingdomes subiect to his empire, first power might be given to Will. Garrard, Thomas Osley, William Chester knight, Rowland Haiward, Lionel Ducket, William Allen, Thomas Bannister, Gefferey Ducket, Lawrence Chapman Merchants, and vnto their societie, to enter into his lands and countreys at all times when they would and could, there to exercise & vse their trade of merchandise, and from thence likewise after exchange or sale made of those wares, which they should byrig with them with like good leaue and fauour, to carie from thence those things wherewith his dominions do abound with vs be fraine. Which our petition the most noble prince your father took so thankfully in such good part, that he not onely graunted franke and commodious leaue, as was desired: he the same he would to bee vnto them most free and beneficiall, and to haue continuance for many yeeres and times. The benefite of the which his wonderfull liberality, our subiects did much with such humanitie & freedom as there could be no greater, till the time that by reason of us more and more increasing in those parties, by the which our subiects were to make their iourney into Persia, they were debarred and shut from that voyoge & traffique. The which traffique said societie being themselves desirous to returne to the weale and commoditie of both our dominions they haue now sent into Persia their factots & Agents Arthur Edwards, William Turnbull, Matthew Tailbois, Peter Gerrard merchants, with their associates, whom we beseech your most noble maiestie to entertaine with that fauour wherewith your father did embrace Tho. Bannister & Gefferey Ducket, and to enfranchise their whole societie with that freedom, that neither through any their misdeemeanours towards your subiects, may thereof seme vnto you, nor hope they will not neither we our selues other wise enjoy them, then with the perpetuall recompence of your good affection towards vs, and with the like favourable inclination of our part towards you. The matter it selfe & tract of time shall sufficiently proue the foresaid manner of our affaires on earth, that echone should neede other. And as for our people & subiects of the English nation, in verie deed your maiestie shall find them made and fashioned so pliant to the pleasure of all duties of humanity, that it can neuer repent you to haue graunted them this free traffike, nor shame vs to haue obserued it for them at your handes. That therefore it may please your maiestie to seeke vnto them this at our request, most earnestly we beseech you. And we do wel beseech your maiestie if ever hereafter we may, will them our selfe not to bee vniuoluntarily great a benefite. We with your maiestie wel & prosperously so fare. Given at our palace of Westminster the 10. day of June, in the yere of our Lord 1579. and of our reigne the 21.

Adverti

Aduertisements
fia and Media, for
new trades, in the y
Christopher Burrough.

For it is to be vnder
factots and merchants
the 19. of June, 1579. v
and merchants landes, an
of the countrey, to be vari
he, the posthikes departe
is to say, in posse, by conti
Colmogro the 27. day, as
Vhyoug (which is at the
they stayed but a small tim
backmen, & so departed the
countie some whar more c
their castles, and departed
where they landed their go
at Volodga, Telegas, & 1
the same by land towards
and came to the East side of
the said goods the leaving o
of backs provided to transp
quently carie the same from c
tuer Volga, and there took
merchandise they dep
day 11 September at nine o
day a thire of the clocke aft
our going any custome, and
part, arrived at Cazani (C
where they staid, where
there went from them) & c
one of the clocke after 1
Volga, within fortie 55. de
and remained about 3.
the 11. of September the
of the countie, he
first part of Licos: the fo
the countie. Queak is 1
the countie by the name Queak
to be a part of the countie
God by the wickednesse of
there a part of the ruines of
the personages: for vpon
he with a bold in his han
sped out of the countie, which
with the weather, and the
them to be characters of A
the river they departed fro
to Peraiouok the 10.
at that place, but passed al
a narrow strait of necke
the river Volga, at that pla
men may well traden on fo
the Emperour of Ru
by the Tartar name Caray
Burrough.

Christopher Burrough. Traffiques & Discoueries, 419

Aduertifements and reports of the 6. voyage into the parts of Persia and Media, for the companie of English merchants for the discouerie of new trades, in the yeeres 1579. 1580. and 1581. gathered out of sundrie letters written by Christopher Burrough, seruanto to the saide companie, and sent to his vnckle Master William Burrough.

First it is to be understood, that the ships for the voyage to S. Nicholas in Russia, in which the factors and merchandise for the Persian voyage were transported, departed from Grauesend the 19. of June, 1579. which arrived at S. Nicholas in Russia the 22. of July, where the factors and merchants landed, and the merchandise were discharged & laden into dozhnikes, that is, barks of the country, to be caried from thence by the river into Vologda. And the 23. day of the said July is the dozhnikes departed from Rose Island by S. Nicholas by the river Dwina, Peremene, that is to say, in posture, by continual sailing, rowing, setting with poles, or drawing of mē, which came to Colmogro the 27. day, and departed thence the 29. of July by the said river Dwina, and came to the mouth of the river Dwina, and mouth of Sughano the 9. of August, where they departed but a small time, providing some victuals, and shifting certaine of their cassacks of barken, & so departed thence the same day by the river Sughano, and came to Torina (which is counted some what more then halfe the way from Vtioug) the 15. day, where they shifted some of their cassacks, and departed thence the same day, and came to the citie Vologda the 19. of August, where they landed their goods, and staid at that place till the 30. of the same. Having provided the same by land towards Yersaue the said 30. of August at right of the clocke in the morning, and came to the East side of the river Volga our against Yersaue, with 25. Telegas laden with the said goods the seventh of September at siue of the clocke afternoone. Then the three stronges of barks provided to transport the said goods to Astracan (where they should meete the ship that came ouer from Yersaue unto the same side of the river Volga, and there tooke in the said goods. And hauing prepared the said barks ready with all the necessary furniture they departed with them from Yersaue downe the river of Volga on the 14. day of September at nine of the clocke in the morning, and they arrived at Niznouogrod the 17. day at three of the clocke afternoone, where they shewed the Emperors letters to passe free without paying any custome, and taried there about three houres to provide necessaries, and then departed, arrived at Cazan (or neere the same towne) on the 22. of September at siue of the clocke afternoone, where (through contrary winde, and for providing new cassacks in the places of some that were from them) they remained till the 26. day, at what time they departed thence about two of the clocke after noone, and arrived at Tetsuagorod, which is on the Crim side of the river Volga, in latitude 55. degrees 32. minutes, the 28. day at ten in the forenoone, where they arrived and remained about 3. houres, and departing thence came to Oueak, which is on the Crims side of the river Volga the first of October about siue of the clocke in the morning. This place is at counted halfe the way betwene Cazan and Astracan: and here there groweth much of Licoris: the soile is very fruitfull: they found there apple trees, and cherrie trees, and many other fruitfull trees. At this place had bene a very faire stone castle, called by the name Oueak, & adioyning to the same was a towne called by the Russes, Sodonu, which was a part of the castle (by report of the Russes) was swallowed into the earth by the iustice of God, for the wickednesse of the people that inhabited the same. There remaineth at this day to be seen a part of the ruines of the castle, and certaine tombs, wherein as it seemeth haue bin laid some personages: for vpon a tombe stone might be perceiued the forme of a horse and a man sitting on it with a bow in his hand, and arrows girt to his side: there was a piece of a scutcheon also with the wordes, and the rest left imperfect: but by the forme of them that remained, we iudged them to be characters of Armenia: and other characters were grauen also vpon another tombe stone. Soe they departed from Oueak the said first of October at siue of the clocke after noone, and came to Perauolok the 10. day about eleven of the clocke the night, making no stay at that place, but passed along by it. This waye Perauolok in the Russe tongue doth signify a narrow straight or necke of land betwene two waters, and it is so called by them, because the river Volga, at that place, so the river Don or Tanais, is counted thirty versts, or as much as a man may well tread on foot in one day. And sence herforth beneath, vpon an Island called by the Tartar name Carawool, betwene this place and Astracan are siue other Carawools.

Yersaue,

Great stage of Licoris.

Perauolok.

- 1 The first is named Kamení Carawool, and is distant from Peraulok 120. versts.
- 2 The second named Stupino Carowool, distant from the first 50. versts.
- 3 The third called Polodý Carowool, is 10. versts distant from the second.
- 4 The fourth named Kezeczyr Carawool, is 50. versts distant from the third.
- 5 The fifth named Ichkebre, is 30. versts distant from the fourth, and from Ichkebre to Astracan is 30. versts.

Astracan.

Peter Garrard.

The 16. of October they arrived at Astracan, with their three stroogs in safety about nine of the clock in the morning, where they found the ship provisioned for the Persia voyage in good order & readynesse. The 17. day the four principal factors of the company, Arthur Edwards, William Turnbull, Matthew Talbois, and Peter Garrard, were invited to dine with the chiefe blake of Secretary of Astracan (Vasili Pheodorovich Shelepin) who declared then unto them the troubles that were in Media and Persia: and how the Turke with helpe of the Crims had conquered, and did possesse the greatest part of Media: also he said before them that Winter was at hand, and if they should put out with their ship to the sea, they should bee constrained to take what hazards might happen them by wintering in the parts of Media, or els where, for backe againe to that place there was no hope for them to returne: whereupon the said factors determined to stay there all Winter to learne further of the state of those countreys.

Ice at Astracan
for foure mo-
neths.

The 19. of November the winde being Northerly, there was a great frost, and much ice in the river: the next day being the 20. of November the ice stood in the river, and so continued unill Easter day.

Anno 1580.

The 21. of December departed this life John Moore the gunner of the ship. Thursday the 7. of January betwene 8. and 9. of the clocke at night there appeared a comét proceeding from the moone, with two galleys at the Southward Northward thereof.

The 6. of January being Twelke day (which they call Chrichenia) the Russies of Astracan brake a hole in the ice upon the river Volga, & hollowed the water with great solemnity according to the manner of their countrey, at which time all the soldiers of the towne shot off their small pieces upon the ice, and likewise to gratifie the captaine of the castle being a Duke, whose name is Pheodor Michalovich Troicouria, who stood hard by the ship, beholding them as they were in the river, was shot off all the ordinance of ear ship being 15. pieces, viz. 2. faulcons, 2. faultons, 4. fowlers, 4. fowlers chambers, and 3. other small pieces made for the stroogs to shoot halckstones, and afterward the great ordinance of the castle was shot off.

On the 31. of January there happened a great eclipse of the moone, which began about 1. of the clocke at night, and continued before the was cleare an houre and a halfe by estimation, which ended the first of February about halfe an houre past one in the morning: the was wholly darked by the space of halfe an houre.

The 16. of February the towne of Nagay Tartars, called the Yourt, which is within 7. miles of a mile of the castle of Astracan, by casualty was set on fire about 10. of the clock at night, & continued burning till midnight, whereby one halfe of it was burnt, and much cattell destroyed. The Nagayes that inhabit that towne, are the Emperours of Russia his vassals: 't is supposed there are of them inhabiting that place of men, women, and children, the number of four thousand. That night the Allarum was made in the castle and towne of Astracan. The captain thereof had all his soldiers in very good order and readynesse, being of them in number thousand gunners and callaks, that is to say, a thousand gunners, which are accounted meeke soldiers, and are not put to any other service then the use of their pieces, which, &c. as soldiers are alwaies keepe the castle, and the callaks also using their pieces, do keepe the towne, and are commonly set to all kind of labours.

Astracan sits
upon an Island.

The 7. of March 1580. the Nagayes and Crims came before Astracan to the number one thousand foure hundred horsemen, which incamped round about, but the nearest of them was two Russie versts and a halfe off from the castle and towne: some of them lay on the Crims side of the Volga, and some on the Nagay side, but none of them came upon the Island that Astracan lieth on. It was said that two of the princes of the Crims his sonnes were amongst them. He sent a messenger on the eight day to the captain of Astracan, to signifie that as they would come to his aid, he was ready to receive them: and taking a great shot of bullet he himselfe killed the messenger to tel them that they should not want of that grace. In long as it lasted. The ninth day news was brought that the Crims determined to assault the towne, and were making of signs of trede, to hying with them for that purpose. The tenth day the Russies that were captives, and two of the Tartars bondmen came away from the Nagayes, and came into Astracan. The same day word was brought to the Duke of two Nagayes that were scene at Gostine house, supposed to be spies, but were gone againe from thence before they were

suspected. This Gostine house merchants do usually receive more with them, came againe Russies, and brought to the towne, and was only to seeke the bondmen were delivered to Russies, and they were set a watchward into the countrey.

The 17. of April the variety of the weather. This springing wind had bene with a great given them a great overthow, still possessed and kept by the watermen to leave at Astracan other halfe the other three fact of Media, to see what might be new to proceed to the coast of Georgia: and thereupon appointed the merchandize of Cistiks of Persia.

The 29. of April Amos Rias Astracan by the said factors, by England, and had order for law to maintaining the trade yore in those parts.

The first day of May in the morning the Duke Pheodor Michalovich Shelepin, with other of the were intertained to their good ship, and about nine of the clocke a ship from Astracan, and being but a small one, having with them a pauc of the clocke in the morning they were sent downe, which is called the river, that is to say, to the Southward: (but Ochoog is the name of the Emperours barly lying there. This Vchoog is counted without staying at the Vchoog, they hoped to lighten their ship by the pauc: This day by mischance the ship was sunk, and great loss of pauc: for not withstanding their all the best shifts they could make, and stop. The 12. day the pauc of all the goods. The 13. day of Astracan, to learne whether the industry and trauell they got the trouble from the ninth day was of little. The 16. day they came are counted forty versts from Vchoog bare off into the sea, and being a halfe water about eleven of the clocke into the shippe, and filled themselves about seven of the clock, the pauc then at Southward, they road still place, found it to be 45. degrees 20. 10. in the latitude at Southward the shippe by the 45. degrees 20. 10. in the latitude at Southward

Christopher Burrough. Traffiques, & Discoveries.

421

supposed. This Golline house is a place a litle without the towne where the Tisiks (or Persian merchants) do usually remaine with their merchandize. The 11. day the said Nagayes, and one Russes, and brought to the capitaine of the castle, and being examined, confessed that their commodity was onely to seeke two of their bondmen that were runne from them: whereupon their bondmen were delivered to them: which favour the said capitaine commonly sheweth if they be not Northwards into the countrey of Nagay.

The 17. of April the variation of the compasse observed in Astracan was 13. deg. 40. min. from North to West. This spying there came newes to Astracan that the queene of Persia (the king being ill) had bene with a great army against the Turks that were left to possesse Media, and had given them a great overthrow: yet not withstanding Derbent, & the greatest part of Media were still possessed and kept by the Turks. The factors of the company consulting upon their affaires, determined to leave at Astracan the one halfe of their goods with Arthur Edwards, and with the other halfe the other three factors would proceed in the ship on their purposed voyage to the coast of Media, to see what might be done there: where, if they could not find safe traffike to the coast, they would proceed to the coast of Gilan, which is a province nere the Caspian sea bordering upon Persia: and thereupon appointed the said goods to be laden aboard the ship, and tooke into her also some merchandize of Tisiks or Persian merchants.

The variation of the compasse in Astracan was 13. deg. 40. minuts.

The 29. of April Amos Rial, and Anthony Marsh, the companies servants were sent from Astracan by the said factors, by the river Volga to Yersaue, with letters of advise to be sent for England, and had order for shipping the goods in Russia that should come that yeere out of England: and for maintaining the trade purposed for Persia, until further trial were made what might be done in those parts.

The first day of May in the morning, having the shippe in readinesse to depart, the factors inuited the duke Phedor Micalouich Proiocoow, and the principall secretary Vasil Phedorovich Shelepin, with other of the chiefest about the duke to a banquet aboard the ship, where they were intertained to their good liking, and at their departure was shot off all the ordinance of the ship, and about nine of the clocke at night the same day they weped anker, and departed with their ship from Astracan, and being but litle winde, rowed her with the boat about three versts, & then ankered, having with them a paus or lighter to helpe them at the flats. The second day at foure of the clocke in the morning they weped & pyled downe the river Volga toward the Caspian sea. The third day in the morning they passed by a tree that standeth on the left hand of the river as they went downe, which is called Mahomet Agach, or Mahometes tree, & about three versts further, that is to say, to the Southwards of the said tree, or Mahometes tree, & about three versts further were: (but Ochoog is the name of a weare in the Tartar tongue) where are certain cotagins, and the Emperour hath lying at that place certaine gunners to guard his silvermen that keepe the weare. This Vchoog is counted from Astracan 60. versts: they proceeded downe the said river without staying at the Vchoog. The ninth and tenth dayes they met with shoale water, and were forced to lighten their ship by the paus: the 11. day they sent backe to the Vchoog for anther paus: This day by mischance the shippe was bilged on the grapnell of the paus, whereby the company had sustained great losses, if the chiefest part of their goods had not bene layde into the paus: for not withstanding their pumping with 3. pumps, heauling out water with buckets, and mowing, The 12. day the paus came to them from the Vchoog, whereby they lighted the ship of all the goods. The 13. day in the morning there came to them a small boat, sent by the duke of Astracan, to learne whether the shippe were at sea cleere of the flats. The 15. day by the industry and trauell they got their ship cleere off the shoales and flats, where with they had been troubled from the ninth day until then: they were forced to passe their shippe in three foot of water. The 16. day they came to the Chetara Bougori, or Island of Foure Hillocks, which are counted forty versts from Vchoog, and are the furthest land towards the sea. The 17. day they bore off into the sea, and being about twelve versts from the foure hillocks, riding in foure and a halfe water about eleven of the clocke in the forenoon, they tooke their goods out of the shippe into the shippe, and filled their shippe with all things necessary. The 18. day in the morning, about seven of the clock, the pauses being discharged departed away towards Astracan, the shippe then at Southeast, they rowd still with the shippe, and observing the elevation of the pole at that place, found it to be 45. degrees 20. minutes. The 19. day the wind Southeast, they rowd still, and at Southeast they set sail about one of the clocke in the morning, & steered by West, & Southsoutheast, about 3. leagues, and then ankered in 6. foot and a halfe

May.

Vchoog.

Shoale water.

Flats.

Chetara Bougori.

The Caspian sea.

45. degrees 20. minutes. The first observation in the Caspian sea.

Whackish wa-
ter farre with
in the sea.

43. degrees
15. minutes.

41. degrees
31. minutes.

40. degrees
54. minutes.

Bilbil.

Bachu port.

a halfe water, about nine of the clocke before noone, at which time it fell calme: the elevation of the pole at that place 45. degrees 13. minutes. The 21. having the winde at North-west, they set sail, and there: thence South by West, and South untill eleven of the clocke, and had then nine foute water: and at noone they observed the latitude, and found it to be 44. degrees 47. minutes: then had they three fathoms and a halfe water, being cleare of the flats. It is counted from the foure hundred lockes to the sea about fiftie versts. From thence they sailed noonetive untill foure of the clocke they sailed South by East five leagues and a halfe: then had they five fathoms and a halfe and blackish water: from that till twelve at night they sailed South by East halfe a league, East cenne leagues: then had they eleven fathome, and the water clear. From that till the 22. day three of the clocke in the morning they sailed three or fiftie leagues, then had they five fathome water: from thence they sailed untill noone South and by West seven leagues and a halfe, the latitude then observed was 43. degrees 15. minutes, the depth then eight and twentie fathoms, and shallow ground: from that untill eight of the clocke at night, they sailed South by East five leagues and a halfe, then had they three and forty fathoms shallow ground. From thence till the 23. foure of the clocke in the morning, they sailed South south west three leagues and a halfe: then could they get no ground in two and fiftie fathoms deepe. From thence untill noone they sailed South nine leagues, then the latitude observed was 42. degrees 20. minutes. From that till the 24. day at noone they sailed South by West seutene leagues and a halfe, then the latitude observed was 41. degrees 31. minutes. From noone till seven of the clocke at night, they sailed South south west foure leagues, then had they perfect sight of high land or hills, which were almost couered with snow, and the mids of them were West from the ship, being then about twelve leagues from the nearest land: they sounded but could finde no ground in two hundred fathoms. From thence they sailed South west untill midnight: about three leagues from thence till the 25. day four of the clocke in the morning, they sailed West three leagues, being then litle winde, and were the land. They took in their sails, and lay belling: at noone the latitude observed, was 40. degrees 54. minutes: then sounded but could get no ground in two hundred fathoms. At four of the clocke in the afternoon, the winde North west, they set their sails, & from thence till the 26. day at noone they sailed East south east foure leagues. From thence they sailed till eight of the clocke at night South west three leagues, the winde then at North. From thence they sailed untill the 27. day two of the clocke in the morning, West south west eight leagues, the winde blowing at North very much. From the 28. day two till foure of the clocke they sailed South by West one league: then being day light, they saw the land plaine, which was not past three leagues from them, being very high ragged land. There were certaine rocks that lay farre off into the sea, about five leagues from the same land, (which are called Barmake Tash, they say they were sent thence rocks and the land, and about five of the clocke they passed by the port Bilbil, where they shoulde have put in but could not: and being longt the shore about two of the clocke afternoon, they came to Bilbil in the country of Media, or Sheruan, against which place they anchored in 9. foot water. Presently after they were at anchor, there came aboard of them a boat, wherein were seven or eight persons, two Turks, the rest Persians, the Turke vassals, which had them welcome, and seemed to be glad of their arrival, who told the factors that the Turke had conquered all Media, or the country Sheruan, and how that the Turke Bascha remained in Derbent with a garrison of Turkes, and that Shamaly was wholly spoiled, and had few or no inhabitants left in it. The factors then being desirous to come to the speech of the Bascha, sent one of the Tukes (or merchants that went over with them from Astracan, passing by) and one of the companies servants Robert Golding, with those labourers, to the capitaine of Bachu, which place standeth hard by the sea, to certifie him of their arrival, and what commodities they had brought, and to desire friendship to have quiet traffike for the same. Bachu is from Bilbil, the place where they rood, about a dayes journey on foot easily to be travelled, which may be five leagues the next way over land: it is a walled towne, and strongly fortified. When the sayd messenger came to the capitaine of Bachu, he said capitaine gaue him very friendly intertainment, and after he understood what they were come in the shippe, and what they had brought, he seemed to reioyce much thereat: whereupon the said Golding licence to depart backe the next day, being the eight and twentieth day: and promised that he would himselfe come to the shippe the next day following: with which answer the said Golding returned and came to the shippe the sayd eight and twentieth day about nine of the clocke at night. The nine and twentieth day in the morning the factors caused a tent to be let out of the shore near the shippe, against the coming of the sayd capitaine: who came thither about six of the clocke after noone, and brought about thirtie followers, that attended on him, in his male, and some of them had garments of silver, others of Steele, and very faire. The factors met him at their tent, and after very friendly salutations passed betwene them, they gaue him

appresent a garment of clo
After they had talked toge
of their coming thither,
they made request unto hi
that their demand was rea
he could, and sayd, be cause
would send thither, and cer
and such commodities as the
the said Bascha to provide fo
certifie him what they most de
they were consulting togethe
over in the ship with them se
the capitaine, that the night be
backe againe to Astracan, and
but the matter of the barke
not good for them to depart, &
Bascha to goe to the Bascha, &
gesta willingly, desiring the
that night, and the next day
Derbent. They were vnto the
was not in readinesse, but requ
was reported vnto him, so
to happen, he were in great dan
one for a pledge: wherefore he
he could not speak: the Bascha
yours: that night they rood to
the capitaine had much talk
while, whilst countreys were ne
of our countrey he could not cont
were Englishmen, he deman
mills of, then (quoth he) your l
of he was very glad when
Garrard next to himselfe, and
his tongue hard by. There wa
to make great account: him
rooms about him talking toge
supper being brought in, he re
was done, and likewise the
my mingled withall: after all w
he set before the capitaine: he call
company one placeer, and to his
call ment from the placeers whic
Christopher Burrough at suppe
manly, or by order. Their din
in the garden) the capitaine den
in the house or in the garden, and
but their life was to lie in house
for they: and caused his kinship
he himselfe with his gentlemen
the morning very early he sent
by them that were come thence
the capitaine were in the mornin
while, which he did. Wholy after
said, ap. Turnbull, ap. Tailboyes
when they had all broken their fast
the day, for that he had hurt his le
they were ordered towards Derbent,
for his safe conduct, with a

present a garment of cloth of velvet, and another of scarlet, who accepted the same graciously. After they had talked together by their interpreters, as well of the state of the voyage and cause of their coming thither, as also learned of the saybe captain the state of that country, the saybe court made request unto him, that he would helpe them to the speech of the Basia, who answered that their demand was reasonable, and that he would willingly shew them therein what pleasure he could, and sayd, because the way to Derbent, where the Basia remaines, was dangerous, he would send thither, and certifie him of their arrivall, and what commodities they had brought, and such commodities as they would desire to exchange or barter the same for he would procure the said Basia to provide for them: and therefore willed the factors to consult together, and certifye him what they most desired, and what quantitie they would have provided: so whilst the factors were consulting together thereupon, the captain talked with a Russe merchant that came over in the ship with them from Astracan, which Russe, among other matters in talk, certified the captain, that the night before, the factors & their company were determined to have returned backe againe to Astracan, and that they were about to wey their anchors, which in deed was true, but the maister of the barke Thomas Hudson of Linchouse perswaded them that the wind was not good for them to depart, &c. When the factors came againe to talke with the captain, they desired willingly, desiring them to goe with him to a village hard by, and there to abide with him the night, and the next day they should go to Bachu, and from thence proceede on their journey to Derbent. They were unwilling to go that night with him, because their provision for the way was not in readinesse, but requested that they might stay till the morning. Thereupon the captain said it was repozed unto him, that they meant the night before to have gone away: and if it should so happen, he were in great danger of losing his head: for which cause he requested to have some one for a pledge: wherefore M. Garrard one of the factors offered himselfe to go, who, because he could not speake the Russe tongue, tooke with him Christopher Burrough, and a Russe interpreter: that night they roode from the seashore, to a village about ten miles off, where at supper the captain had much talke with M. Garrard of our country, demanding where about it was, what countries were neare unto it, and with whom we had traffike, for by the Russe name our country he could not conjecture who we should be: but when by the situation he perceived we were Englishmen, he demanded if our prince were a mayden Quene: which when he was answered he was very glad when he knew the certaintie. He made very much of them, placing M. Garrard next to himselfe, and Christopher Burrough, with the Russe interpreter for the time being. There was a Gellan merchant with him at that present, of whom he seemed to make great account: him he placed next to himselfe on the other side, and his gentlemen sat round about him talking together. Their sitting was upon the beeles, or cross-legged. Supper being brought in, he requested them to eate. After their potage (which was made of munged withall: after all which, there came in platters of rice sodden thicke, and mingled withall) after all which, came a sheepe rosted whole, which was brought in a tray, and set before the captain: he called one of his servitours, who cut it in pieces, and laying thereof to divers platters, set the same before the captain: then the captain gave to M. Garrard and Christopher Burrough one platter, and to his gentlemen another, and to them which could not well reach to Christopher Burrough at supper time, about their oter, inquiring whether they eat fish or flesh, or by order. Their drinke in those partes is nothing but water. After supper (walking in the garden) the captain demanded of M. Garrard, whether the use was in England to have the use of the garden, and which he had best liking of: he answered, where it pleased him, but their use was to lie in houses: whereupon the captain caused beds to be sent into the garden, and caused his kinsman to attend on them in the night, if they chanced to want any thing: he himselfe with his gentlemen and souldiers lying in the garden. The morning very early he sent horse for the rest of the company which should go to Derbent, by whom that went thence sheepe for the shippe. In that village there was a Stoue, into which the captain went in the morning, requesting M. Garrard to go also to the same to wash himselfe, which he did. Shortly after their coming out of the Stoue, whilst they were at washing, M. Turnbull, M. Tailboyes, and Thomas Hudson the M. of the shippe, came thither, whom they had all broken their falls, they went to Bachu: but Christopher Burrough returned thither, for that he had hurt his leg, and could not well endure that travail. And from Bachu he proceeded towards Derbent, as it was by the captain promised, being accompanied on his safe conduct, with a gentleman, and certaine souldiers, which had the captain's

Thomas Hudson
of Linchouse,
maister of the
English barke,

M. Christopher
Burrough.

The receiving
of the English
into Derbent.

of Bachu his letters to the Basha of Derbent, very friendly written in their behalfe. In their journey to Derbent they forsooke the ordinarie wayes, being very dangerous, and travelled through woods till they came almost to the towne of Derbent: and then the gentleman road before with the captaines letters to the Basha, to certifie him of the English merchants coming, who receiving the letters, and understanding the matter, was very glad of the newes, and sent forth to receive them certaine souldiers gunners, who met them about two miles out of the towne, saluting them with great reverence, and after wardes road before them: then againe met them other souldiers, some great neerer the castle, which likewise having done their salutations road before them, and then came forth noble men, captaines, and gentlemen, to receive them into the castle and towne. As they entered the castle, there was a shot of twentie pieces of great ordnance, & the Basha sent Mr. Turnbull a very faire booke with furniture to mount on, esteemed to be worth an hundred markes, and so they were conveyed to his presence: who after he had talked with them, sent for a coate of cloth of golde, and caused it to be put on Mr. Turnbules backe, and then willed them all to depart, and take their ease, for that they were wearie of their journey, and on the morrow he would talke further with them. The next day when the factozs came againe to the presence of the Basha, according to his appointment, they requested him that he would grant them his privilege, whereby they might traffike safely in any part and place of his countrey, offering him, that if it pleased his Highnesse to haue any of the commodities that they had brought, and to write his mind thereof to the captaine of Bachu, it should be delivered him accordingly. The Basha answered, that he would willingly give them his privilege: yet for that he regarded their safety, having come so farre, & knowing the state of his countrey to be treacherous, he would haue them to bring their commodity thither, & there to make sale of it, promising he would provide such commodities as they needed, and that he would be a defence unto them, so that they should not be troubled by any: whereupon the factozs sent Thomas Hudson backe for a ship to bring her to Derbent, and the Basha sent a gentleman with him to the captaine of Bachu, to certifie him what was determined, which message being done, the captaine of Bachu, and the Bashaes messenger, accompanied with a doozen souldiers, went from Bachu with Thomas Hudson, & came to the ship at Bildih the 11. day of June. After the captaine and his men had bene aboard, and scene the ship, they all departed presently, but the gentleman, messenger from the Basha, with three other Turkes, remained aboard, and continued in the ship till he came to Derbent: the latitude of Bildih by his observations is 40. degrees 25. minutes: the variation of the compass 10. degrees 40. minutes from North to West. After the returne of Thomas Hudson backe to Bildih, they were continued to remaine there with the shippe though contrary windes untill the 16. day of June fourth of the clocke in the morning, at which time they went anchor, set saile and departed thence towards Derbent, and arrived at anchor against Derbent Castle by South from the said castle in four fathoms, and a halfe water, the 22. day of June at ten of the clocke in the morning: then they took up their ordnance, which before they had stowed in hold for easing the shippe in her rowling. In the afternoon the Basha came downe to the waterside against the shippe, and having the said ordnance placed, and charged, it was all shotte off to gratifie him: and presently after his departure backe, he permitted the factozs to come aboard the shippe. The 29. day their goods were landed and carried to the Bashaes garden, where he made choise of such things as he liked, taking for some of every five & twenty karkies, or whatsoeuer, one, or after the rate of foure for the hundred. The factozs after his choise made, determined to send a part of the rest of the goods to Bachu for the speedier making sale thereof, for which cause they obtained the Bashaes letter to the captaine of Bachu, written very favourably in their behoofe: and thereupon was laden and sent a small boat of that countrey in merchandize, to the value (very neere) of one thousand poundings: videlicet, one hundred pieces of karkies, seven broad clothes, two barrels of cockenill, two barrels of tinne, foure barrels of Gaffer. There went with the same of the companies Lewis William Winckle, Robert Golding, and Richard Relfe, with two Russies, whereof one was interpreter, besides foure barkemen. They departed from Derbent with the said barke the 1. of July, and arrived at Bildih the 25. day: their passage and carriage of their goods to Bachu was chargeable, although their sales when they came thither were small: they had great trouble the ship shewed them of the captaine of Bachu, as well for the Bashaes letter, as also for the said sales, who had dealt friendly with him, as before is declared, Robert Golding desirous to stand what might be done at Shamaky, which is a dates journey from Bachu, went thither, thence returning, he was set on by the turcs, and was shot into the knee with an arrow, who very hardly escaped with his life & goods, but that by good hap he killed one of the turcs with his caliver, and shot a Turke through both cheeks with a dag. On the first day of August the factozs being advertised at Derbent that their ship was so rotten & weak, that it was dangerous

The latitude
of Bildih 40.
deg. 25. min.
The variation
of the compass
10 deg. 40.
min.

would not carry them backe
men, whose name was
which came that pere from
three or foure leagues beyon
they ment to haue with them
the rest at Bachu, that they sh
be returned to Derbent, and
ly. When all their goods w
departed thence for Derbent
whereof the cables and halter
against the rocks: euer of
there was a Carobia or ches
the commodities of the comp
fill by the barke side into the
which they could not well take
the barke saved.

The 18. of August, the Fact
of the bargaine made with him

The 19. day the Factozs w
could not speake with him, but
saw whether any thing were be
Turnbull answered, that their
it was answered there was no
for how it stood betwene them,
to haue spoken with the Basha.

The 22. day they heard new
whom the Factozs left at Astr
the of

The 23. day the Factozs rece
September newes was brought
by the turcs (Turkes) and had

The 5. Tobias Atkins the gun
the Southward of the Castle of I
About the 20. of September
sight of Jacob the Armenian as
was in writing from any of our

The 26. of September was lat
October, they took into the ship,
the said 26. of October, the Facto
and get them with their provision
and carry their things to the sea side
of this land, as saying them out of
the Factozs went to the Basha to take
at hand committing toward him

The 3. day of Oct. all things
the Factozs went to the Basha to take
company seruants, &c. which they
the Countrey: who caused their na
be injured of any. After this lea
set saile and departed towards A
mouthall: And as they were readie
thereupon the boat was sent a shoar
with his writing tables, where
of the Russe, and that they were
as they sailed with a small boar
Armenian village: Whereupon t
the windes that then blew, they
could not come with that time, it
and sue them, against the place wh

losse of those Southerly Windes, was a cause of great troubles, that they after wardes sustained through pece, &c. entering the Volga as hath been declared.

The 4. day the winde South South-east, the shippe rode still: This day Christopher Burrough was sent to shope to Derbent to prouide some necessaries for the voyage, & with him a Triske of two, which should goe in the shippe passengers to Astracan. And being on shoare he saw there the comming in of the Turkes treasure, being accompanied with 300. souldiers, and one hundred pionsers, besides Captaines and Gentlemen: the Basha with his Captaines and souldiers very gallantly apparelled and furnished went out from Derbent about three or foure miles, to meete the said treasure, and receiued the same with great top and triumph. Treasure was the chiefe thing they needed, for not long before the souldiers were ready to breake into the Countrey against the Basha for their pay: there was a great murmur amongst them, because hee had long differed and not payed them: their due. The treasure came in seven wagons, and with it were brought tenne pieces of brasse.

In the parts of Media where they were, there was no commoditie to be bought of any wares, but rawe like, neither was that to be had but at the Bashas hands: who shortly after their comming thither taxed the Countrey for that commoditie. His dealing with our Sparchanes as it was not with equitie in all points according to his bargain, but was noe extreme ill. Of the commodities they carried hee tooke the chiefe part, for which hee gaue but a small price in respect of the value it was there worth, and because he had prouided such quantitie of commoditie for them, which otherwise they could not haue had, the Countrey being so troublesome, and vnuaile by land so dangerous, he vsed them at his pleasure.

The newes that was reported vnto them at Astracan touching the warres betwene the Turkes & Persians differed little from the truth: for the Turkes armed with aide of the Crims, (being in number by information of two Spaniards that serued in those wars, about 10000) invaded and conquered the Countrey of Media in Anno 1577. When the great Turke understood of the conquest, he appointed Osmán Basha (the said Basha, and now Captaine of Derbent) gouernour of the whole Countrey, who settled himselfe in Shamaky the chiefe Citie of Media, and principall place of traffike, vnto whom was sent from the great Turke, in signification of the gratefull acceptance of his seruice and the great conquest, a word of great value.

After the said Basha had brought the Countrey in order to his liking, and placed garrisons where he thought convenient, the arme was dissolved and sent backe: When the Persians understood that the Turkes arme was dissolved and returned, they gathered a power together, and with the Queene of their Countrey as chiefe, they entered the Countrey of Media, and ouerran the same with fire and sword, destroying whatsoeuer they found, as well people, cattell, as whatsoeuer els, that might be commodious to the Turkes. And after they had so ouerrunne the Countrey, they came to Shamaky, where the said Basha Lieutenant generall of the great Turke was settled, and besieged it: whereupon the Basha seeing hee could not long indure to withstand them, fled thence to Derbent where he now remaineth.

Derbent is a strong Castle which was built by Alexander the great, the situation whereof is such, that the Persians being without Ordnance, are not able to winne it but by famine. When the Turkes were fled from Shamaky, the Persians entered the same and spoiled it, leaving therein neither liuing creature nor any commoditie, and so returned backe into Persia, and settled themselves about Teueris, where there grew some question among them for the kingdome. Afterwards the Persians hauing intelligence of an arme from the Turke comming into Media, gathered themselves together in a great arme and encountering the said Turkes, set vpon them at the sudden, and vanquished them, putting them all to the sword. This overthrow of the Turkes grieved the Basha of Derbent, and made him to haue the more care for his owne safetie. Whereupon, newes was brought vnto him that the Kisel Bashas, (that is to say the nobles and Gentlemen of Persia) were minded to set vpon him, and that neere vnto Bachu there lay an army ready to besiege it. Whereupon the Basha oftentimes would ride about the Castle of Derbent viewing the same, and the spyings that did come to it, and where he saw any cause of reformacion it was amended.

The latitude of Derbent (by diuers obseruations exactly there made) is 41. deg. 52. min. The variation of the Compass at that place about 11. degrees from North to West. From Derbent to Beldih by land 46. leagues. From Derbent to Shamaky by land, 45. leagues. From Shamaky to Bachu about 10. leagues, which may be 30. miles. From Bachu to Beldih about 12. leagues by land, but by water about 12. leagues. From the Castle of Derbent to the Caspian sea, which is distant by water two stone wals to the worder of the Caspian sea, which is distant by water 160. stone wals are 9. foote thicke, and 18. or 20. foote high, and the space betwene them is 160. stone

The Turke his treasure sent to Derbent.

Osmán Basha,

Derbent built by Alexander the great.

The latitude of Derbent 41. deg. 52. min.

The variation of the Compass.

Christopher Burrough.

critical places, that is 800 fowle extend into the sea above perceive the ruines of a Roman Pontus Euxinus, and was the

The 5 of October about Derbent, being along the about foure leagues the wind water.

The 6 day they waped anchor water, the ship being 100 miles might escape the storm.

The 7 day about 7 of the considered the time of the perishing, determining not to carry any longer themselves directly towards leagues, the wind then came to them to take in all their sails, the sea, South by West, and morning their great boate sunke their great griefe and discomfort. About 10 of the clocke South of Derbent, and bare lon came at once in three fathoms, the wind was shifted to the fallowes being in the Armenian sea, the place where against they man in the night following along with a fire brand in the top of whereupon they hoisted out their which returned a letter from which was at the Armenian village, and the ships. The 9 day it was little towards the said village, and ancre. fetch those men and the goods they returne to fetch the ship, they of the day it was calme.

The 11 day the wind Northwesterly, and bare against were to come aboard and colden them that our not that the gunners defended them any hand they should hasten aboard the came aboard the same day having returned aboard the ship, the wind blew to take in their kiffe into the ship in the morning the skiffe was hoisted the two Ruffles, which were ready to be captiues at the Golea in Barbary (of Christian charitie) they brought which were brought over into England 1581. The wind this day at 11 o'clocke sloped, and filled fresh water. The day the wind East South-east, they waped anchor, and the same night they entered the Blacke sea, which place it was the wind at North West Northwesterly about one of the clocke after the clocke Northwesterly 100 leagues, from the wind South-east: from thence till the 19 day sent

crickall paces, that is 800 foot. There are yet to be perceived of the ruine of those wals, which do now extend into the sea about halfe a mile: also from the castle Westward into the land, they did perceive the ruines of a stone wall to extend, which wal, as it is reported, did passe from thence to Ponens Euxinus, and was built by Alexander the great when the castle Derbent was made.

The 5 of October about noone the winde Northnorthwest they wayed ancre, and set sail from Derbent, being alongst the coast to the Southward to seeke their men: but as they had sailed about foure leagues the winde scattered Calterly, so that they were forced to ancre in the fathom water.

The 6 day they wayed ancre, and bare further off into the sea, where they ancred in seven fathoms water, the ship being very lake, and so rotten abast the maine mast, that a man with his nailes might scrape the yew her side.

The 7 day about 7 of the clocke in the morning, they set sail, the winde Southwest. They considering not to carry any longer for Wincoll and his fellows, leake and rotten, and therefore determined themselves directly towards Afracan: and sailing Northnorthwest unill midnight about 16 leagues, the winde then came to the Northnorthwest and blew much, a very storme, which caused them to take in all their sailes, saving the fore course, with which they were forced to steere before the sea, South by West, and Southsouthwest. And on the 8 day about two of the clocke in the morning their great boat limke at the ships sterne, which they were forced to cut from the ship to their great griefe and discomfozt: for in her they hoped to save their lives if the ship should have miscaried. About 10 of the clocke before noone they had sight of the land about 5 leagues to the South of Derbent, and bare longst the coast to the Southeastwards unto Nezanoo, where they came at ancre in three fathoms, and blake oze, good ancre helpe, where of they were glad, as also that the winde was shifted to the Northwest, and but a meane gale. Wincoll and the rest of his fellows being in the Armenian village, which is about 18 versts to the Westwards of Nezanoo, the place where against they rode at ancre, saw the ship as she passed by that place, and sent a man to the night following alongst the coast after her, who came against the ship where she rode, and with a firebrand in the top of a tree made signes, which was perceived by them in the shippe, whereupon they hoised out their skiffe, and sent her ashore to learne what was meant by the fire: which returned a letter from Wincoll, wherein he wrote that they were with such goods as they had at the Armenian village, and prayed that there they might with the same goods be taken into the said village, and ancred. The 10 day they sent their skiffe to the Armenian village to fetch those men and the goods they had, with order that if the winde served, that they could not returne to fetch the ship, they of the ship promised to come to them, against the said village. This day it was calme.

Nezanoo.

The 11 day the winde Northwest they rode still. The 12 day the winde Southeast they wayed ancre, and came against ancre to the Armenian village where they ancred, and then the skiffe came aboard and tolde them that our people at those were like to be spoiled of the Tartars, were not that the gunners defended them: then was the skiffe sent backe againe to charge them at hand they should fasten aboard the ship what ever it cost them. Whereupon, all the company came aboard the ship, the winde blew at Southcast. The sea was growen, so as they were forced to take in their skiffe into the ship, and rode still till the 13 day, and then being faire weather, in the morning the skiffe was hoised out of the ship, and sent to those to fetch the said Reliefe, with two Ruffles, which were ready at the shore side, and with them two Spaniards that were captives at the Goletta in Barbary, which served the Turke as souldiers. Those Spaniards (of Christian charitie) they brought also aboard the ship to redeme them from their captivity, which were brought over into England, and set free and at liberty here in London, in September 1581. The winde his day at Northnorthwest, faire weather. The 14 day they sent the ship to those, and filled fresh water. The 15 day they rode still, being litle winde and fog. The 16 day the same night they ancred in ten fathoms water, about five miles from the shore of Shalkauls countrey, which place is eight leagues Northnorthwest from Derbent. The 17 day the winde at Northwest stormy, they rode still all that day and night. The 18 day the winde Northnorthwest, about one of the clocke afternoone, they wayed ancre, and sailed thence till foure of the clocke Northnorthwest, then they might see the land Northwest about tenne leagues from the winde Southeast: from thence they sailed till midnight Northnorthwest about tenne leagues, from thence till the 19 day seven a clocke in the morning they sailed Northnorthwest till eight

Two Spaniards delivered by our English men.

eight leagues: the winde then Eastsoutheast, a faire gale, they sounded and had 17 fathoms, and land, being (as the *Paster* iudged) about the head of Sherly: from thence till 12 of the clocke at noone they sailed North 5 leagues, the winde then at East a faire gale, they sounded and had 3 fathoms. From thence till 8 of the clocke at night, they sailed North 7 leagues, the winde then at North-east with small raine, theyooke in their sailes, and ancred in 3 fathoms water and left oze, where they rode still all night, and the 10 day and night the winde North-east, as before with small raine.

The 11 day the winde North-west, they likewise rode still. The 12 day about 3 of the clocke in the afternoon, they waped ancre, the winde Westnorth-west, and sailed from thence till five of the clocke at night North 4 leagues, then they ancred in a fathoms and a halfe soft oze, the winde at West a small breath.

The 13 day about 7 of the clocke in the morning, they waped ancre, and set saile, bring little winde Easterly, and sailed till 1 of the clocke after noone North-west in 17 fathoms about five leagues, and then ancred in 6 foot water, having perfect sight of the low land (land hills) being about 3 miles from the nerest land. This place of the land that they were against, they perceived to be to the Westwards of the 4 Islands (called in the Russe tongue Chetera Bougori) and they found it afterwards by due proofe, to be about 70 versts, or 30 English miles to the South-west, or South-west by South, from the sayd Chetera Bougori.

The 14 day the winde at East, and by South, a Sea winde called Gillouar, caused them to ride still. The 15 day they thought good to send in their skiffe Robert Golding, and certaine Russes, to row him along Northwards by the shoze, to seeke the foure Islands, and so to passe unto the Vchooge, and there to land the sayd Robert Golding to proceed to Astracan, to deliver Amos Riall a letter, wherein he was requies to provide Pauofes to meet the shippe at the sayd Islands, and the skiffe with the Russes were appointed to returne from the Vchooge with victuals to the shippe, which skiffe departed from the shippe about nine of the clocke in the forenoone. The 16, 17, 18, and 19 dayes, the winde Easterly and North-east, they rode still with their ship. The 20 day the winde Southeast, they waped, and set saile to the North-eastwards: but the ship fell so on the side to the South-eastwards, that they were forced esloones to take in their saile, and ancre againe, from whence they neuer remoued her. That day they shared their bread: but in their want God sent them two coules of partridges, that came from the shoze, and lighted in and about their ships, whereby they were comforted, and one that lay sicke, of whose life was small hope, recovered his health.

Strange accident of promise for their rescue.

Remember.

The 4 of November the skiffe returned to the ship with some victuals, and certified that the foure Islands were about 60 versts from them to the North-eastwards. When Robert Golding came to Astracan, and delivered there the Factors letters to Amos Riall, the duke, captain of the place, was done to underhand of the ships arrival, of the state they were in, and their request for Pauofes, who was very glad to heare of their safe returne, and appointed to be sent with all speed two Pauofes and a Stroog, with gunners to guard and to defend them. With the which Stroog and Pauofes, Amos Riall went downe to the Chetera Bougori, or 4 Islands aforesayd, where he waped with those barks, according to the Factors appointment. The 5 day they purposed to send from the ship their skiffe with the carpenter, and 4 Russes to row him to the 4 Bougeries, to request Amos Riall to come from thence with the Pauofes to the shippe with all possible speed. The skiffe with those men departed from the ship in the morning, and within one houre they went with a small boat with Russes, rowing towards the ship, which came from the Ouchooze with wilde swine and other victuals to sell: with the same boat the skiffe returned backe to the ship, where the Russes had recreated and were satisfied for the victuals they brought: the same day they returned with their boat backe toward the Ouchooze, and with them in the same boat was sent the Carpenter of the shippe to the Chetera Bougori, which were in their way, to declare unto Amos Riall the message before appointed him. From the 5 until the 9 day the ship rode still with contrary winds Easterly. The same 9 day came to the shippe certaine Russes in a small boat, which brought with them some victuals sent by Amos Riall, and declared that he with the Pauofes and Stroog had remained at the Chetera Bougori these dayes, expecting the comming of the ship. The 10 day being doubtfull of the Pauofes comming, they sent Thomas Hudson of the ship in the skiffe (and with her went the foyersayd skiffe boat) towards the Chetera Bougori to the Pauofes to hying word whether they would come to the ship or not, the wind then at North-east with fogge. The 11 day the winde North-eastly with fogge, the ship rode still. The 12 Amos Riall, Christopher Fawcer, and a new gunner came to the ship, and with them the Thomas Hudson returned: but the Stroog with the gunners remained at the Chetera Bougori: from thence (when it began to freeze) returned to Astracan, Amos Riall declared that he sent

carpent

carpenter backe from the shippe, who was not come to the shippe, and our shoc her, an in her but the Russes that in chooge, and there stayed, much speed as might be, to laden it, theyooke in also could.

The 13 day in the morning, provide victuals and cariages Islands, but was there overpasse to Astracan, finding an handled with the extremity of the goods to wards the Chetera, which they more that were in much promise to returne backe in money to carry the ship her where he rode all winter, day with those lightes South-west from them, the winde, three or remoued the said remoued byuing with the pee, the sixteenth day the pee stood, were great: for oftentimes they were tolled and byuen one upon another at sometimes to neere unto their better destruction: but I saw and beliver them then.

Within three or foure dayes theyooke out all their goods, be the pee, and covered the same with they agreed to leaue all the goods by their Chetras and Corobias, to make libors for euery of them to them warme, and such victuals as they, and so they departed from the morning, and traouailing on the same daye about two of the clocke, four hlocks of Islands so called that night.

The goods and Pauofes which they were about 20 versts,

And the next morning departed from the Islands before spoken of, before where they remained all day, very early they lost their way, being too much towards the left hand upon the pee foure or five dayes towards land or not, at length it fortuned towards towards the sea: that was brought them to a place called, which diuers of the company know. There they remained that night, being to find: with the two Russes they whom they chanced to meet, the sayd Crasnoyare, who certified they had been escaping with their liues. In the morning they departed early the clocke before noone, being with

The 29 day they came to Vologda, with all their goods in safety, and good order. The same day, William Turnbull and Peter Garrard departed from Vologda post by water towards Colmogro, the city of July, having their goods laden in a small boat, they departed with the of July, and found there the Agents of Russia, and in the eve the ships sent out of England, all most laden ready to depart.

The 25 day departed for England (out of the rove of S. Nicholas) the ship Elizabeth.

The 26 day departed thence the Thomas Allen and Mary Susan, and in the Thomas Allen of the Persia voyage were laden into the ship, William and John, whereof was Master, William Biggs, and in her with the same goods came Peter Garrard and Tobias Parris.

The 21 of August, the same ship being laden and dispatched departed from the rove of S. Nicholas, and with her in company another of the companies freighted ships, called the Tomasin, whereof was M^r. Christopher Hall. In their returne home wards they had some foule weather, and were separated at the sea, the William and John put into Newcastle the 24 of September: where the sayd Peter Garrard and Tobias Parris came to London by land, and brought news of the arrivall of the ship.

The 25 of September both the sayd ships arrived at the port of London in safety, and ankered before Limehouse and Wapping, where they were discharged, 1581.

Observations of the latitudes and meridian altitudes of diuers places in Russia, from the North to the South: Anno 1581.

Michael Archangel.	{ Peridian altitude observed at Michael the Archangel, 42. degrees, 30. minutes.	
	{ The true latitude, 64. degrees, 54. minutes.	
The English house in Colmogro.	{ The English house in Colmogro, in latitude, 64. d. 25. m.	
	{ The meridian altitude there observed, the 29 of July, 42. d. 25. m.	
Aerola.	{ Peridian altitude the 30 of July, 41. d. 40. m.	{ 64. d. 20. m.
	{ Declination, 16. d. 6. m.	
Yergia.	{ Peridian, 4 of August, 41. d. 50. m.	{ 62. d. 59. m.
	{ Declination Northerly, 14. d. 49. m.	
Sowlma.	{ Peridian altitude, the 15 of August, 40. d. 45. m.	{ 60. d. 17. m.
	{ Declination Northerly, 11. d. 2. m.	
Vologda.	{ Peridian altitude, the 20 of August, 40. d.	{ 59. d. 17. m.
	{ Declination Northerly, 9. d. 17. m.	
Vologda.	{ Peridian altitude, 21 of August, 39. d. 36. m.	{ 59. d. 20. m.
	{ Declination, 8. d. 56. m.	
Orsklawe.	{ Latitude by gisse, 57. d. 50. m.	
Yoskagorod.	{ Peridian altitude, 21. September, 31. d.	{ 56. d. 4. m.
	{ Declination, 2. d. 56. m.	
Alons Monastery.	{ Peridian altitude, 23. September, 30. d. 26. m.	{ 55. d. 51. m.
	{ Declination, 2. d. 56. m.	
Yoskagorod.	{ Peridian altitude, 28. September, 28. d. 28. m.	{ 55. d. 22. m.
	{ Declination, 5. d. 35. m.	
Orsk.	{ Peridian altitude, 5. October, 30. d. 12. m.	{ 51. d. 30. m.
	{ Declination, 8. d. 18. m.	
Orsk.	{ Astracan meridian altitude, 22. October, 29. d. 36. m.	{ 46. d. 10. m.
	{ Declination, 14. d. 16. m.	
	{ Peridian altitude, 1 of November, 26. d. 35. m.	{ 46. d. 9. m.
	{ Declination, 17. d. 16. m.	

Certaine

Certaine directions giuen by M. Richard Hakluyt of the Middle Temple, to M. Morgan Hubblethorne, Dier, sent into Persia, 1579.

For that England hath the best wool & cloth of the world, and so; that the clothes of the Realme haue no good vent, if good dyng be not adde: therfore it is much to be wished, that the dyng of forren countreys were scene, to the end that the arte of dyng may be brought into the Realme in great excellency: for thereof will follow honour to the Realme, and great and ample vent of our clothes: and of the vent of clothes, will follow the setting of our poore on worke, in all degrees of labour in clothing and dyng: for which cause most principally you are sent ouer at the charge of the cley: and therfore for the satisfiing the lordes, and of the expectation of the merchants and of your company, it behooues you to haue care to returne home with more knowledge then you caried out.

The great dearth of clothes is a great let in the ample vent of clothes, and the price of a cloth, for a fifth, sixth and seventh part rise by the colour and dyng: and therfore to deale to die as good colours with the one halfe of the present price were to the great commodity of the Realme, by sauing of great treasure in time to come. And therefore you must haue great care to haue knowledge of the materials of all the countreys that you shall passe thorow, that may be used in dyng, be they beards, weeds, barks, gummes, earths, or what els soeuer.

In Persia you shall finde carpets of course thymmed wooll, the best of the world, and excellently coloured: those cicles & townes you must repaire to, and you must vse meanes to learne all the order of the dyng of those thymmes, which are so dyed as neither raine, wine, nor yet water ger can staine: and if you may attaine to that cunning, you shall not need to feare dyng of cloth: for if the colour holde in yarne and thymme, it will holde much better in cloth.

For that in Persia they haue great colouring of silks, it behooues you to learne that arte, for that cloth dyng & silke dyng haue a certaine affinity, and your merchants mind to bying much raw silke into the Realme, and therfore it is more requisite you learne the same.

In Persia there are that staine linnen cloth: it is not amisse you learne it if you can: it hath bene an olde trade in England, whereof some excellent clothes yet remaine: but the arte is now lost, and not to be found in the Realme.

They haue a cunning in Persia to make in buskins of Spanish leather flowers of many kindes, in most liuely colours, and these the Courtiers do weare there: to learne which arte were no harme.

If any Dier of China, or of the East parts of the world, be to be found in Persia, acquaint your selfe with him, and learne what you may of him.

You shall finde Anile there, if you can procure the herbe that it is made of, either by seed or by plant, to carry into England, you may do well to endeavour to enrich your countrey with the same: but withall learne you the making of the Anile, and if you can get the herbe, you may carry the same dy into England, for possibly it groweth there already.

Returne home with you all the materials and substances that they die withall in Russia, and also in Persia, that your company may see all.

In some litle pot in your lodging, I wish you to make daily trials in your arte, as you shall from time to time learne ought among them.

Set downe in writing what soeuer you shall learne from day to day, lest you should forget, or lest God should call you to his mercy: and by each returne I wish you to send in writing what soeuer you haue learned, or at the least keepe the same safe in your cofler, that come home with you your countrey may enjoy the thing that you goe for, and not lose the charge, and trouble showed in this case.

Learn you there to fixe and make sure the colour to be giuen by logge wood: so shall not need to buy wood so deere, to the enriching of our enemies.

Enquire of the price of seckar, and all other things belonging to dyng.

In any wise set downe in writing a true note from whence euery of them doe come, in what place, and in what connexed ech of them doth grow, I meane where the naturall place of them is, as how neere to such a city, or to such a sea, or to such a portable river in Russia, Persia, or else where.

If before you returne you could procure a singular good workman in the arte of Turkish carpet making, you should bying the arte into this Realme, and also thereby increase to your company.

Commission giue
Barn, Aldermen at
discouery of new trades
be made, for discouery of



the said company, on the first pa
tine, Spalter, and chiefe ruler
40. tunnes, of thereabouts, on ci
in of Middlesex, Captaine, w
the burthen of 20. tunnes, of th
Thames against Limehouse Jon
pump haue hired the said Arth
and a boy: And likewise the said
with five men and a boy, for a boy
of a passage by sea from hence by
countreis or dominions of the mi
Cities of Cambalu and Quinsay

The which passage (upon auth
Vagias Castwaras, according to
Burrough, whereof either of the sa
them, and also one other sailing ca
in all points, according to that be
with no stretch it selfe so farre
the latitude of 70. and 80.
barkes to make trial of the same:
friends and by others, to all purposes
same voyage. And likewise order
no care, to helpe and succour them
may appeare, that though they be
your greater comfort and assurance)
the uttermost of your powers, to per
Do you obserue good order in
the better.

We would haue you to meete ofte
the names you may best performe
writing we thinke it requisite, that y
were doe appoint as merchant
of change) to the end that wh
some instructions and knowledg
and consultations together, a
we would haue you to note them in
barkes one. We to appoint Arth
top, and Charles Iackman in the
your good and orderly keeping of co
we like sight the one of the other, r
some river, when and where you may
come to your discretions.

do not for your good direction in th
weather, that God shall send thereun
of May, saile from this river of
in the Wardhouse, and from th
and from it passe along to the Nou

Commission giuen by sir Rowland Hayward knight, and George Barne, Aldermen and gouernours of the company of English Merchants, for discouery of new trades, vnto Arthur Pet, and Charles Lackman, for a voyage by them to be made, for discouery of Cathay, 1580. in forme following.



In the Name of God Almighty, and euertlasting, Amen. This writing for commission Tripartite, made the twentieth day of May Anno Dom. 1580. and in the 22. yeere of the reigne of our Soueraigne Lady Elizabeth by the grace of God, Queene of England, France and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. Betweene sir Rowland Hayward knight, and George Barne, Aldermen of the Citie of London, and gouernours of the company of English Merchants, for discouery of new trades, for the behoofe, and in the name of

the said company, on the first partie, and Arthur Pet of Rarcliffe, in the Countie Middlesex, Captain, Master, and chiefe ruler of the good barke, called the George of London, of the burthen of 40. tunnes, of the second partie, and Charles Lackman of Popler, in the said Countie of Middlesex, Captain, Master and ruler of the good barke, called the William of London, of the burthen of 20. tunnes, of the third partie, witnesseth, that the said Gouernours, and company haue hired the said Arthur Pet, to serue in the said barke, called the George, with nine men and a boy: And likewise the said Charles Lackman, to serue in the said barke, called the William, of a passage by sea from hence by Boroughs & Seaighes, and the Island Vaigars, Eastwards, to the Counties of dominions of the mightie Prince, the Emperour of Cathay, and in the same vnto the Cities of Cambalu and Quinsay, or to either of them.

The which passage (vpon authoritie of writers, and great reason) is conceived to bee from the Vaigars Eastwards, according to the description in plac of spirall lines, made by master William Burrough, whereof either of the said Arthur Pet, and Charles Lackman, haue one deliuered vnto them, and also one other sailing card, and a blank place for either of them. But if it should not be in all points, according to that description, yet we hope that the continent of firme land of Asia toucheth it selfe so farre Northwards, but that there may be found a sea passage by it, betwixt the latitude of 70. and 80. degrees. And therefore we haue appointed you with these two frigates and brothers, to all purposes and effects, to the furtherance and orderly performing of the same voyage. And likewise order your companies, that they of the one barke may haue such loue and care, to helpe and succour them of the other, as most beere friends and brothers would doe: so that though they be two barkes, and two companies, (which is so appointed for your greater comfort and assurance) yet that you are wholly of one minde, and bend your selues to the utmost of your powers, to performe the thing that you are both employed for. Doe you obserue good order in your dayly seruice, and pray vnto God, so shall you prosper the better.

We would haue you to meete often together, to talke, conferr, consult, and agree how, and by what means you may best performe this purposed voyage, according to our intents. And at such meeings we thinke it requisite, that you call vnto you your mates, and also Nicholas Chanceler, (whom wee doe appoint as merchant, to keepe accompt of the merchandize you shall buy or sell, or of change) to the ende that whatsoeuer God should dispose of either of you, yet they may haue some instructions and knowledge howe to deale in your place, or places. And of all your actions and consultations together, and the substance of matter you shal at every time agree vpon, we would haue you to note them in the paper bookes that wee giue you for that purpose, vnto each barke one. We do appoint Arthur Pet in the George, as Admirall, to weare the flagge in the top, and Charles Lackman in the William, as Viceadmirall. For good orders to be taken in your good and orderly keeping of company together, which we wish may be such, as you should haue sight the one of the other, except by both your consents, to discouer about an Island, or some river, when and where you may certainly appoint to meete together againe, wee refferre the same to your discretions.

Now for your good direction in this voyage, we would haue you with the next good winde we hear, that God shall send thereunto meete and conuenient, after the 22. day of this present month of May, saile from this river of Thames, to the coast of Finmarke, to the Point, Cape, or of the Wardhouse, and from thence direct your course to haue sight of Willoughbyes Bay, and from it passe along to the Noua Zemla, keeping the same landes alwayes in your sight

A tripartite commission. Traffiques, & Discoueries.

435

But if it happen that the land of Asia, from beyond the river Ob, extend it selfe Northwards to 80. degrees, or neerer the poole, whereby you finde it to leade you into that extremitie, that the tract of the same land, as farre as you can discover this Summer, hauing care to finde out by the way a convenient place for you to winter in, the which (if you may discover the same lande of Asia this Summer to extend it selfe to 80. degrees of latitude, and upwards to 85. degrees) we wish then that the same your wintering place may be in the river of Ob, or as neere the same river as you can, and finding in such wintering place, people, be they Samoeds, Yowgorians, or Moigomes, &c. doe you gently entreat with them as aforesaide, and if you can learne that they haue a prince or chiefe gouernour amongst them, doe you deliuer him one of her Maiesties letters, and procure thereof an answer accordingly: do you procure to barter & exchange with the people, the merchaundise and commodities that you shall carry with you, for such commodities as you shall finde them to haue, &c.

The Quene
writes.

If you so happen to winter, we would haue you the next Summer to disrouer into the riuer Ob, so farre as conveniently you may: And if you shall finde the same riuer (which is reported to be wide of broad) to be also navigable and pleasane for you, to trauell farre into, happily you may come to the riete Siberia, or to some other towne or place habited upon or neere the bojer of it, and thereby haue liking to winter out the second winter: Use you therein your discretions.

The Duke of
Siberia.

But if you finde the said riuer Ob to be sholor, or not such as you may conveniently trauell in with your barkes, so you then the next Summer retorne backe through Boroghs streights: And from that part of Noua Zembla, adioyning to the same streights, doe you come alongst the tract of that coast Westwards, keeping it on the starboord side, and the same alwayes in sight, if conveniently you may, until you come to Willoughbies land, if outwards bound you shall not happen to discover and reie whether the said Willoughbies land loyne continent with the same Noua Zembla, or not. But if you shall then proue them to be one firme and continenc, you may from Noua Zembla direct your course unto the said Willoughbies land, as you shall thinke good, and as you may most conveniently: and from Willoughbies land you shall proceed Westwards alongst the tract of it, (though it be line Northwards) even so farre as you may or can trauell, hauing regard to the convenient time you may retorne home hither to London for wintering.

Willoughbies
land.

And for your orderly passing in this voyage, and making obseruations in the same, we referre you to the instructions giuen by M. William Burrough, whereof one copie is annexed vnto the first part of this Indenture vnder our seale, for you Arthur Pet, another copie of it is annexed to the second part of this Indenture, vnder our seale also, for you Charles Jackman, and a third copie thereof is annexed vnto the third part of this Indenture, remaining with vs the said companie, sealed and subscribed by you the said Arthur Pet, and Charles Jackman.

And to the obseruing of all things contained in this Commission (so neere as God will permit) we graunt shewen) to the said Arthur Pet doe covenante by these presents to performe them, and to the said Charles Jackman doe for my part likewise covenante by these presents to performe the same, and every part thereof, so neere as God will giue me grace thereunto.

And in witness thereof these Indentures were sealed and deliuered accordingly, the day and year first above written. Thus the Loze God Almighty sende you a prosperous voyage, with all successe and safe retorne, Amen.

Instructions and notes very necessary and needfull to be obserued in the purposed voyage for discouery of Cathay Eastwards, by Arthur Pet, and Charles Jackman: giuen by M. William Burrough, 1580.

When you come to Orfordness, if the winde doe serue you to goe a sea boord the sands, doe not you let off from thence, and note the time diligently of your being against the said sands, turning then your glasse, whereby you intende to keepe your continuall watch, and appoint your course as you shall thinke good, according as the winde serueth you: and first that time forwarde (if your ship be loste vnder sail, a hull or reie) do you at the end of every glasse at the (except calmes) bound with your dipplin lead, and note diligently what depth of ground, and at what grounds. But if it happen by wisdom of the Skipper, or otherwise, that you cannot get your voyage, as well outwards as homewards, (the which is to be obserued by any sholor banks in the sea, you are then to use your leuer ofence, as you shall thinke it requite, &c.)

How to note
down in his
Journal of the
Voyage, his
dead reck-
oning, and other
observations.

sire, noting diligently the order of your depth, and the deeping and shoaling. And so likewise you note the depths into harbours, rivers, &c.

And in keeping your dead reckoning, it is very necessary that you doe note at the end of every foure glasses, what way the shippe hath made (by your best proofes to be used) and howe far way hath bene though the water, considering withall for the lagge of the sea, to leeward, according- ly as you shall finde it growen: and also to note the depth, and what things worth the noting hap- pened in that time, with also the wind upon what point you finde it then, and of what force of strength it is, and what sailles you beare.

But if you should omit to note those things at the end of every foure glasses, I would not have you to let it slip any longer time, then to note it diligently at the end of every watch, or eight glass- ses at the farthest.

Doe you diligently observe the latitude as often, and in as many places as you may possible, and also the variation of the Compasse (especially when you may be at shoare upon any land) no- ting the same observations truly, and the place and places where, and the time and times when you do the same.

When you come to have sight of any coast or land whatsoever, doe you presently set the same with your sailing Compasse, howe it beares off you, noting your iudgement how farre you thinke it from you, drawing also the forme of it in your booke, howe it appears unto you, noting dili- gently how the highest or notablest part thereof beareth off you, and the extreames also in sight of the same land at both ends, distinguishing them by letters, A, B, C, &c. Afterwards when you have sailed 1. 2. 3. or 4. glasses (at the most) noting diligently what way your barke hath made, and upon what point of the Compasse, do you againe set that first land scene, or the parts thereof, that you first observed, if you can well perceiue or discerne them, and likewise such other notable points or signes, upon the land that you may then see, and could not perceiue at the first time, dis- tinguishing it also by letters from the other, and drawing in your booke the shape of the same land, as it appeareth unto you, and so the third time, &c.

And also in passing along by any and every coast, doe you drawe the maner of biting in of every Bay, and entrance of every harbour, or rivers mouth, with the lying out of every point, or headland, (unto the which you may give apt names at your pleasure) and make some markes in drawing the forme and border of the same, where the high cliffs are, and where lowe land is, whether sande, hills, or woods, or whatsoever, not omitting to note any thing that may be sensible and apparent to you, which may serue to any good purpose. If you carefully with great heed and diligence, note the observations in your booke, as aforesaid, and afterwards make demon- stration thereof in your plat, you shall thereby perceiue howe farre the land you first sawe, or the parts thereof observed, was then from you, and consequently of all the rest: and also how farre the one part was from the other, and upon what course or point of the Compasse the one lieth from the other.

And when you come upon any coast where you find floods and ebs, doe you diligently note the time of the highest and lowest water in every place, and the flake or still water of full sea, and lowe water, and also which way the flood doeth runne, how the tides doe set, how much water it hath, and what force the tide hath to drive a ship in one houre, or in the whole tide, as neere as you can iudge it, and what difference in time you finde betwene the running of the flood, and the ebbe. And if you finde upon any coast the current to runne alwayes one way, doe you also note the same way, how it setteth in every place, and observe what force it hath to drive a ship in one houre, &c.

Item, as often and when as you may conveniently come upon any land, to make observation for the latitude and variation, &c. doe you also (if you may) with your instrument, for trying altitudes, observe the platfome of the place, and of as many things (worth the noting) as you may then conveniently see from time to time. These orders if you diligently observe, you may thereby perfectly set downe in the plats, that I have given you your whole travell, and description of your discovery, which is a thing that will be chiefly expected at your hands. But when you may not forget to note as much as you can learne, understand or perceiue of the maner of the soile, or fruitfulness of every place and countrey you shall come in, and of the maner, shape, and disposition of the people, and of the commodities they have, and what they most covet to see, or the commodities you carry with you. It becometh you to give trifling things unto such peo- ple as you shall happen to see, and to offer them all courtesie and friendship you may, to winne their love and favour towarde you, not doing or offering them any wrong or hurt. Though you should be offered wrong at their hands, yet not to reuenge the same likewise, but by means possible seek to winne them, yet alwayes dealing wisely and with such circumspection that you keepe your selues out of their dangers.

For observing
of tides and
currents.

To take the
platfomes of
places, with
compasse of
view upon
land.

M. Dees aduise

Thus I beseech God
successe, and send you safe
rets with you, and all your

Certaine briefe

Charles Jackman

Anno 1580.

If we reckon from War-
rence of longitude
two parts: from Co-
lumbus, at 70. degrees of lati-
tude, of longitude (the high-
est life of 70. degrees, mak-
ing 600 leagues, or 1800, Engli-
sh miles, or 50. English miles
into each in five and ebbie
by help of wind and prosper

When you are past Tabin,
two, three, four, or five deg-
rees, right hand runne much shou-
to the mouth of the famous ri-
ver, the renowned City of Cam-
bodia, 300, or 400, miles of
the late rivers mouth, or the
point of all Asia, passing by the
hill the land in view on your
right hand, being the chiefe
from the other better knowne.

And in about either of both
compass the whole winter, after
the fresh rivers, sometime in
the land, &c. and ever assaying to cor-
rectify of China, and by some of
the way to late over to Japan,
the Chippendome some,
instruction and advice for por-

Notes in writing, besides

by M. Richard Hakluyt

1580: to M. Arthur Pet, and

some companie for the disc-

some other enterprises of di-

What respect of

Whereas the Portugals ha-
ve ports and fortifications to the
what Islands, and what ports you
for which cause I wish you to
and to set them downe in plat
by them. And also for the know-
ing in our purposed trade that way,
and for that the people to the which
the most of our commodities
there. Therefore it were good that
the might plant, for the, and that
the heathen nations with our con-
whole masse in the bowels of their c

M. Dees aduise. Traffiques, & Discoveries.

437

Thus I beseech God Almighty to bleesse you, and prosper your voyage with good and happy success, and send you safely to returne home againe, to the great ioy and reioyng of the aduenturers with you, and all your friends, and our whole countrey, Amen.

Certaine briefe aduises giuen by Master Dee, to Arthur Pet, and Charles Iackman, to bee obserued in their Northeasterne discoverie,
Anno 1580.

If we reckon from Wardhouse to Colgoiue Island 400. miles for almost 20. degrees difference onely of longitude very neere East and West, and about the latitude of 70. degrees and 1/2. or parts: From Colgoiue to Vaigats 200. miles for 10. degrees difference onely in longitude at 70. degrees of latitude also: From Vaigats to the promontorie Tabin 60. degrees difference of longitude (the whole courie, or shortest distance being East and West) in the latitude betweene of 70. degrees, maketh 1200. miles: then is summa totalis from Wardhouse to Tabin 600. leagues, or 1800. English miles. Therefore allowing in a discoverie voyage for one day with saild easily in fire and chertie wayes: but by Gods helpe it may be finished in much shorter time, both by helpe of winde prosperous, and light continuall for the time requisite therunto.

When you are past Tabin, or come to the longitude of 142. degrees, as your chart sheweth, or two, three, four, or five degrees further Easterly, it is probable you shall finde the land on your right hand runne much Southerly and Eastward, in which course you are like either to fall in to the mouth of the famous river Ocharides, or some other, which yet I coniecture to passe by the renowned Cite of Cambalu, and the mouth to be in latitude about 50. or 52. degrees, and within 200. or 400. miles of Cambalu it selfe, being in the latitude of 45. degrees Southerly of the same rivers mouth, or els that you shall turne about the very Northerne and most Easterly point of all Asia, passing by the province Ania, and then to the latitude of 46. degrees, keeping still the land in view on your right hand (as neere as you may wish safetie) you may enter into Quinsay haven, being the chief citie in the Northern China, as I terme it for distinctions sake, from the other better knowne.

And in or about either or both of these two warme places, you may to great good purpose be occupied the whole winter, after your arrivall in those quarters, as sometime by sea, sometime in the fresh rivers, sometime in discrete view and noting downe the situation of the Cities with- in land, &c. and ever assaying to come by some chares or ways of the countrey, made and printed in the Cahay of China, and by some of their bookes likewise for language, &c. You may also have opportunity to sale over to Japan Island, where you shall finde Chyrtian men, It suits of many great instruction and abuse for you affaires in hand.

M. Dee gave them a Chart of his owne making, which here he refers them unto.

Notes in writing, besides more priue by mouth, that were giuen by M. Richard Hakluyt of Eison in the Countie of Hereford, Esquire, Anno 1580: to M. Arthur Pet, and to M. Charles Iackman, sent by the Merchants of the Mos- some companie for the discoverie of the Northeast straight, not altogether vnfit for some other enterprises of discoverie, hereafter to be taken in hand.

What respect of Islands is to be had, and why.

Whereas the Portugals have in their course to their Indies in the Southeast, certaine ports and fortifications to thrust into by the way, to diuers great purposes: so you are to what Islands, and what ports you had neede to haue by the way in your course to the North, of which cause I wish you to enter into consideration of the matter, and to take all the care, and to see them downe in place, to two ends: that is to say, That we may be able to take the way by them, And also to see if in by them the Saunges or ciuill Princes may in any sort an- swer in our purposed trade that way.

And so that the people to the which we purpose in this voyage to go, be no Chyrtians, it were because the masse of our commodities were alwayes in our owne disposition, and not at the will of others. Therefore it were good that we did seeke out some small Island in the Orientall sea, whose barren nations wish our commodities without cloying them, or without venturing the masse in the bowels of their countrey.

And to which Island (if neede were, and if wee should thinke so good) wee might allure the moste apte naule, the naule of Cambalu to reside with their commodities to w^{ch} there planted, and stayling there.

And if such an Island might be found so standing as might shorten our course, and so standing, as that the naule of Cambalu, or other those parties might conveniently saile vnto without their dislike in respect of distance, then would it sal out well. For so, besides lesse danger and more safety, our ships might there vnlade and lade againe, and returne the selfe same summer to the ports of England or of Norway.

And if such an Island may be for the stayling of our commodities, to the which they of Cambalu would not saile, yet we might, having ships there, employ them in passing betwene Cambalu and that stayling place.

Respect of hauens and harborowes.

And if no such Islands may be found in the Scythian sea toward the firme of Asia, then are you to search out the ports that be about Noua Zembla, all along the tract of that land, to the end you may winter there the first yeere, if you be let by contrary winds, and to the end that we may in short time come vnto Cambalu, and vnlade and set saile againe for returne without venturing there at Cambalu, that you may on your way come as farre in returne as a port about Noua Zembla: that the summer following, you may the sooner be in England for the more speedy bene of your East commodities, and for the speedier discharge of your Spariners: if you cannot go forward and backe in one selfe same summer.

And touching the tract of the land of Noua Zembla, toward the East out of the circle Arctike in the more temperate Zone, you are to haue regard: for if you finde the soyle planted with people, it is like that in time an ample bene of our warme wollen clothes may be found. And if there be no people at all there to be found, then you shall specially note what plentie of whales, and of other fish is to be found there, to the end we may turne our newe found land fishing or Island fishing, or our whale fishing that way, for the ayde and comfort of our newe trades to the most head to the coasts of Asia.

■ good con-
sideration.

Respect of fish and certaine other things.

And if the aire may be found vpon that tract temperate, and the soyle predoing wood, wheat, land and grasse, and the seas fish, then we may plant on that maine the offals of our people as the Portugals do in Brasil, and so they may in our fishing in our passage, and diuers wayes make commoditie to England by harbouring and victualling vs.

And it may be, that the island there may yeeld mallow, pitch, tarre, hennep, and all things by the nature, as plentifully as Eastland doeth.

The Islands to be noted with their commodities and wants.

To note the Islands, whether they be hie land or low land, mountaine or flat, grauelly, chalkie, or of what soyle, woody or not woody, with springs and riuers or not, and what beastes they haue in the same.

And whether there seeme to be in the same apt matter to build withall, as stone free or rough, and stone to make lime withall, and wood or coale to burne the same withall.

To note the goodnesse of the badnesse of the hauens and harborowes in the Islands.

If a straight be found, what is to be done, and what great importance it may be of.

And if there be a straight in the passage into the Scythian seas, the same is specially and to be great regard to be noted, especially if the same straight be narrow and to be kept. For it is to be noted as a thing that doth much import: for what prince soeuer shall be Lord of the same, and shall possesse the same, as the king of Denmarke doeth possesse the straight of Denmarke, onely shall haue the more out of these regions into the most head parts of the world for himselfe, and for his private profit, or for his subiects onely, or to enioy wonderfull benefits of the toll of the same, like as the king of Denmarke doth enioy of his straights, by suffering the merchants of all princes to passe that way. If any such straight be found, the eleuation, the high or lowe land, the hauens neere, the length of the straights, and all other such circumstances are to be set downe many purposes: and al the Spariners in the voyage are to be sworne to keepe close all such things that other princes presume vs not of the same, after our returne vpon the disclosing of the same, if any such thing should hap.

Which

Which way the Sa
and other their w

If you find any Island or
are you to dwell where con
If they be poore, then are
be made to enrich them, cha
If you enter into any mai
what kind of timber they be o
wood, clappard, or for build
may be brought perhaps to vi

Not to v

You must haue great care
venture any one man in any

To bring hom

Bring home with you, if you
Balthough you leaue one for
Also the fruites of the Count
serue them.

And bying with you the herne
shall find these.

Also the seeds of all strange her
mother part of the world, and so
for that the same may grow, and c

If you arrive at Cymbalu or
you haue the perfect description, b
Co bying thence some old print
remains in Europe as some write.

To note th

If you arrive in Cambalu or
force, greatnesse, manner of buildin
them, with ordnance, armour, an

Also, to note the force of the wa
they haue any calueres, and what
To note what armour they haue

What swordes,
What pikes, halberds and bills

What hostes of force, and what
And so throughout to note the fo

Things to be m

To take speciall note of their build
Take a speciall note of their a
more of, of which a Merchant may

To note their Shoppes and March
or also.

To see their Shambles, and to vict
shall soone see the commodities, and

To note their fields of graine, and the
and other, and what plentie of earst

M. Rich. Hakluyt. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

439

Which way the Sauage may bee made able to purchase our cloth
and other their wants.

If you find any Island of maine land populous, and that the same people hath need of cloth, then
make you to deuide what commodities they haue to purchase the same withall.
If they be poore, then are you to consider of the soile, and how by any possibilitie the same may
be made to enrich them, that hereafter they may haue something to purchase the cloth withall.
If you enter into any maine by portable river, and shall find any great woods, you are to note
what kind of timber they be of, that we may know whether they are for pitch, tarre, masses, deale-
boards, clapboards, or for building of ships or houses, for so, if the people haue no vse of them, they
may be brought perhaps to vse.

Not to venture the losse of any one man.

You must haue great care to preserve your people, since your number is so small, and not to
venture any one man in any wise.

To bring home besides merchandize certaine trifles.

Bring home with you, (if you may) from Cambalu or other ciuill place, one or other young man,
although you leaue one for him.
Also the suites of the Countreys if they will not of themselves dure, dye them and so pre-
serve them.

And bring with you the kernels of peares and apples, and the stones of such stonefruits as you
shall find there.

Also the seeds of all strange herbs & flowers, for such seeds of fruits and herbs coming from
another part of the world, and so far off, will delight the fantasie of many for the strangeness, and
for that the same may grow, and continue the delight long time.

If you arrive at Cambalu or Quinsay, to bring thence the mappe of that countrey, for so shall
you haue the perfect description, which is to great purpose.
To bring thence some old printed booke, to see whether they haue had print there before it was
invented in Europe as some write.

To note their force by sea and by land.

If you arrive in Cambalu or Quinsay, to take a speciall view of their Maie, and to note the
force, greatness, manner of building of them, the sails, the cackles, the anchors, the furniture of
them, with ordnance, armour, and munition.

Also, to note the force of the wals and bulwarks of their cities, their ordnance, and whether
they haue any castles, and what powder and shot.

To note what armour they haue.

What weapons.

What pikes, halberds and bills.

What horses of force, and what light horses they haue.

And so throughout to note the force of the Countrey both by sea and by land.

Things to be marked to make coniectures by.

To take speciall note of their buildings, and of the ornaments of their houses within.
To take a speciall note of their apparell and furniture, and of the substance that the same
made of, of which a Merchant may make a gesse as well of their commodities, as also of their
manners.

To note their Shoppes and Warehouses, and wish what commodities they abound, the
more.

To see their Shambles, and to view all such things as are brought into the Markets, for so
shall you see the commodities, and the manner of the people of the inland, and so give a gesse
of things.

To note their fields of graine, and their trees of fruite, and how they abound or not abound in
other, and what plenty or scarcity of fish they haue.

Things

Things to be caried with you, whereof more or lesse is to bee caried for a shew of our commodities to be made.

Kirtles of all oylent colours, specially of damell, broadcloth of oylent colours also. Frizabees, Poeties, Bismol frizes, Spanish blankets, Vaies of alcolours, specially with damel, Moysters, Carrels, Vaies, Moysters, Flannels, Ruffs, &c.

Feles of diuers colours.

Taffeta hats.

Deepe caps for Mariners coloured in Damel, whereof if ample vent may be found, it would turne to an infinite commodity of the common poore people by knitting.

Quitted caps of Leuant taffeta of diuers colours, for the night.

Knit Stock of like of oylent colours.

Knit Stock of Jersey parne of oylent colours, whereof if ample vent might follow the poore multitude should be set in woake.

Stocks of harte of diuers colours for men and for women.

Quarters of like of severall kinds, and of colours diuers.

Circles of Buffe and all other leather, with gilt and ungilt buckles, specially wale girdles, wale girdles of bruler.

Gloves of all soyes knit, and of leather.

Gloves perfumed.

Points of all soyes of like, cheere, and leather, of all maner of colours.

Shoos of Spanish leather of diuers colours, of diuers length, cut and vneut.

Shoos of other leather.

Cluuet shoos and pantophles.

These shoos and pantophles to be sent this time, rather for a shew then for any other cause.

Purses knit, and of leather.

Night caps knit, and other.

A garnish of pewter for a shew of a vent of that English commodity, bottles, flagons, spoons, &c. of that metall.

Glasses of English making.

Venice glasses.

Looking glasses for women, great and faire.

Small dials a few for poore, although there they will not hold the ozer they do here.

Spectacles of the common soye.

Others of Chysall crummed with Aluer, and other wise.

Power glasses.

Combes of Tuozle.

Linnen of diuers soyes.

Handkerchiefs with like of severall colours layughe.

Glazen eyes to ride with against dust.

Knives in sheaths both single and double, of good edge.

Reeles great and small of euery kind.

Buttons greater and smaller, with moulds of leather and not of wood, and such as be durable of double like, and that of sundry colours.

Bones with weighe for gold, and of euery kind of the coine of gold, good and bad, to shew the people here the weight and measure, which is a certaine shew of wisdom, and of certaine government sealed here.

All the severall Aluer coyne of our English monies, to be caried with you to be shew to the gouernours at Cambalu, which is a thing that shall in silence speake to wise men more then you imagine.

Locks and keyes, hinges, bolts, hatches, &c. great and small of excellent woorkmanship, which if vent may be, hereafter we shall set our subjects in woake, which you must have in great regard. For in finding ample vnt of any thing that is to be wrought in this realme, is more to the people besides the gaine of the merchant, then Chyselchurch, Wyndwell, the Shire, and the Hospitals of England.

For banketting on shipboord persons of credite.

First, the sweetest perfumes to set under hatches to make place sweet against their coming aboard, if you arrive at Cambalu, Quinsy, or in any such great cite, & not among the

Parmelabe.

Sucker.

Comets of diuers kinds.

Pjunt's damaske.

Dyed peares.

Smaluts.

Blues to make them eat.

The apple lohn that dur.

Quillocke.

Dials of good sweet water.

ter their counting aboard.

Sugert to use with their w.

The sweet oyle of Zante, a

same to make a banketting of

herb the spirits of man.

Cynamom water

is to be h

Imperiall water

like in th

Which these and such like, por

or with the gift of these sp

guide by way of gift, or you m

The Map

Take with you the mappe of

to make shew of your countrey

And also the large mappe of L

full of ships of all soyes, to make

shew.

Oris

If you take Orclius booke of

with: and if need were, to p

business account.

The booke

Such a booke caried with you a

ly selfe.

If any man will lend you the net

fishes, fowles and beastes of the

and also their merchantes to ha

from the things of those re

more, yet to see those things in a

TH

Take with you the booke of Race

quitters, that you shall chance e

you shall chance to be.

Tables of Parthments, for that w

small count.

Carie Claws, for that we haue pl

Ke

to be sent because we haue grea

Sop

to what vent it may haue, for the

¶ Parmelade.

¶ Ducket.

Consists of waters kinds made of purpose by him that is most excellent, that shall not dissolve.

¶ Purses damask.

¶ Dye peares.

¶ Almonds.

Olives to make them taste their wine.

The apple John that dures two yeeres to make thew of our fruits.

¶ Bullocke.

Clials of good sweet waters, and casting bottles of glasses to besprinkle the guests withall, at

ter their comming aboard.

Suger to use with their wine if they will.

The sweet oyle of Zante, and excellent French vineger, and a fine kind of Bisket steeped in the

shew the spirits of man.

¶ Cynamom water

is to be had with you to make a shew of by taste, and also to comfort your

Imperiall water

like in the voyage.

With these and such like, you may banquet where you arrive the greater and best persons.

Or with the gift of these Parmelades in small boxes, or small vials of sweet waters you may

graue by way of gift, or you may make a merchandize of them.

The Mappe of England and of London.

Take with you the mappe of England set out in faire colours, one of the biggest soyt I meane;

And also the large Mappe of London to make shew of your Citie.

And let the river be by water full of ships of all soys, to make the moze shew of your great trade and traffike in trade of mer-

chandise.

Ortelius booke of Mappes:

If you take Ortelius booke of Mappes with you to marke all these Regions, it were not a

small : and if need were, to present the same to the great Can, so it would be to a Prince of mar-

The booke of the attire of all Nations:

Such a booke caried with you and bestowed in gift would be much esteemed, as I perswade

my selfe.

Bookes.

If any man will lend you the new Verball and such Bookes as make shew of herbes, plantes,

trees, fishes, foules and beasts of these regions, it may much delight the great Can, and the nobi-

tie, and also their merchants to haue the view of them : for all things in these partes so much

striving from the things of those regions, since they may not be here to see them, by meane of the

shadow, by this meane will delight them.

The booke of Rates.

Take with you the booke of Rates, to the ende you may pteke all those commodities there

specified, that you shall chance to find in Cambalu, in Quinsay, or in any part of the East,

for you shall chance to be.

¶ Parchment.

Books of parchment, for that we may vent much without hurt to the Realme, and it lieth

small rowing.

¶ Glaw.

Carrie Glaw, for that we haue plenty and mane vent.

Red Oker for Painters.

Take vent because we haue great mines of it, and haue no vent,

Sope of both kinds.

For what vent is may haue, for that we make of both kinds, and may perhaps make moze.

Saffron.



Saffron.

To try what vent you may haue of Saffron, because this realme peels the best of the world, and for the tillage and other labours may see the poore greatly in woake to their reliefe.

Aquaticke.

By new deuises wonderful quantities may be made here, and therefore to seeke the vent, Blacke Conies skins.

To try the vent at Cambalu, for that it lieth towards the North, and for that we abound with the commoditie, and may spare it.

Threed of all colours.

The vent thereof may see our people in woake.

Copper Spurres and Hawkes bels.

To see the vent for it may see our people in woake.

A note and Caueat for the Merchant.

That before you offer your commodities to sale, you endeavour to learne what commodities the country there hath. For if you bring thither velvet, taffeta, spice, or any such commodity that you your selfe desire to haue your selfe home with, you must not sell yours deare, least hereafter you purchase theirs not so cheape as you would.

Seeds for sale.

Carte with you for that purpose all sorts of garden seeds, as well of sweete strawing herbs as of flowers, as also of pot herbes and all sorts for roots, &c.

Lead of the first melting.

Lead of the second melting of the slags.

To make triall of the vent of Lead of all kinds.

English iron, and wiew of iron and copper.

To try the sale of the same.

Brimstone.

To try the vent of the same, because we abound with it made in the Realme.

Antimonie a Minerall.

To see whether they haue any ample vse there for it, for that we may haue whole nauires of it and haue no vse of it unlesse it be for some small portion in founding of bels, or a litle that the Alchymists vse: of this you may haue two sortes at the Apothecaries.

Tinder boxes with Steele, Flint & Matches and Tinder, the Matches to be made of Iuniper to auoid the offence of Brimstone.

To trie and make the better sale of Brimstone by shewing the vse. Candles of Waxe to light.

A painted Bellows.

For that perhaps they haue not the vse of them.

A pot of cast iron.

To try the sale, for that it is a naturall commodity of this Realme.

All maner of sedge reeles.

To be sold there or to the lesse ciuill people by the way where you shall touch.

What I would haue you there to remember.

To note specially what excellent vying they vse in these regions, and therefore to note their garments and ornaments of houses: and to see their Diet houses and the Materials & Drapery that they vse about the same, and to hying milters and shewers of the colours and of the materials, for that it may serue this clothing realme to great purpose.

To take with you for your owne vse.

All maner of engines to take fish and fowle.

To take with you those things that be in perfection of goodnesse.

For as the goodnesse now at the first may make your commodities in credite in time to come so false and Sophisticate commodities shall deceiue you and all your commodities into contentment and ill opinion.



Iterum iterum
ter dolo
instru
non leu
Oriente
choaran
dimidium itineris vestri ia
continuo ingens sequitur
hunc medium maxima illi
existimo, in intima contin
libet merces ex Cataio, Ma
glam deportandi. Ceteru
nabar ab Imperatore Russi
verò cum illius gratia vlt
montorium quærere, atque
commodissimum, statione
tunitate, minoribus que per
dagariposset. Esse autem i
Plinio tantum, verum & ali
beo. Polum etiam Magneti
bus didici: circa quem & T
nem existimo: difficilior
ciderem tentatur. Propinqu
propius accedere non puto
quo ex omni parte respiciat
netis virtute imbutum, mag
prouit quis vel orientior, ve
tis, & Mundi ducitur, Mirabil
hunc Magnetis inconstantia
In hac re si non sit instructus
nre & castigare possit, timeo
gocio & gelu preoccupetur:
contingat hoc quod consulti
fluminibus quæ dixi, portum c
renissimæ Regine noticiam, a
gratam, imo gratissimam fore
chardi fluminum maximorum
milliaria Germanica esse, & ite
milliarij Germanicis ab ostijs
Valde optarem cognoscere,
portum quem vestri pro statione
an mare in hoc districtu semper
verò pro ratione æstuum fluat,
casum, & iterum sex in ortum fl
mon parum viles hinc depende
Quod ad Sinum Merosio, & Ca
sunt ex quadam Tabula mari
illius Galli descriptione exerce
Leodienis oblata. Non dubito,
ad veritatem ea quàm proximè
tudinis per medium sui extensa
undam, qua deprauata latitudi
Jacobi Cnoyen Buscoducensis it
mihi Amicus Antuerpiæ ab a
ost multos annos eundem ab an
selmi Typolitani & Ioannis de p

the best of the world,
to their reliefe.

to seeke the vent,

for that we abound with

ant.

the what commodities the
such commodities that you
care, least hereafter you

mette strawing herbs on

Realme.

ay take whole nauires of
bells, or a little that the

Tinder, the Mar.
rimstone.

ball touch.

ember.

and therefore to note that
the Materials of Shipps
stores and of the materials

of goodnesse.
in credite in time to come
commodities in a content

A letter

Ger. Mercators letters. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

443

A letter of Gerardus Mercator, written to M. Richard Hakluyt of Oxford, touching the intended discouerie of the Northeast passage, An. 1580.



Iter tuum (vir humanissime) 19. Iunij demum mihi redditum fuerunt: vehementer dolui visis illis tantam, non modo temporis, sed multo magis tempestiue instructionis iacturam factam esse. Optassem *Arthurum* Per de quibusdam Orientem in Cathaium est nauigatio: & saepe miratus sum, eam feliciter inchoaram, desertam fuisse, velis in Occidentem translatis, postquam plus quam dimidium itineris vestri iam notum haberent. Nam post Insulam Vaigats, & Noua Zembla hunc medium maxima illabuntur flumina, quae vniuersam Regionem Sericam perlucunt, vique existimo, in intima continentis usque magnis nauigijs peruia, facillimam rationem exhibent quaglium deportandi. Caeterum cum non temere eam navigationem intermissam crederem, opinabar ab Imperatore Russorum & Mosconiae obtaculum aliquod intermissum fuisse. Quod si verum cum illius graua vltior illac nauigatio deperit, suaderem profecto non primum Tabin promontorium querere, atque explorare, sed Sinum hunc atque flumina, in quibus portum aliquem tunitate, minoribusque periculis Tabin promontorium, & totius Cathai circumnauigatio in Plinio tantum, verum & alijs scriptoribus, & tabulis aliquot (licet rudius depictis) certum habebat didici: circa quem & Tabin plurimos esse scopulos, difficilisque & periculosa nauigationem existimo: difficiliorem tamen ad Cathaium accessum fore opinor, ea qua nunc via in Occidentem tenditur. Propinquior enim fiet haec nauigatio polo Magnetis, quam altera, ad quem quo ex omni parte respicit: quo propius ad eum acceditur, eo directior illud Nauticum magis necesse imbutum, magis a Septentrione deuiat, nunc in Occidentem, nunc in Orientem, prout quis vel orientior, vel occidentior est illo Meridiano, qui per vtrumque: polum Magnetis inconstantiam notis, & ad poli eleuationem per instrumenta subinde respiciat, nire & castigare possit, timeo ne deuias faciat anabages, tempus illum fallat, & semper actio negotio, a gela preoccupetur. Aiunt enim Sinum illum fortius quotannis congelari. Quod si fluminibus quae dixi, portum querat, & per Legatum aliquem, cum magno Cham, nomine Segratam, imo gratissimam fore propter remotissima commercia, Opinor ab ostijs Bautisi & Oemilliaris Germanicis ab ostijs distare videtur, & paret Magno Cham.

Valde optarem cognoscere, quam alte communiter exurgat assus maris in eo Mosconiae portum quem vestri pro statione habent, & in alijs versus orientem locis vsque ad Tabin. Item, an mare in hoc districtu semper in vnam partem, videlicet Orientem, aut Occidentem fluat, an vero pro ratione aestuum fluat, & refuat, in medio inquam canali, hoc est, an ibi sex horis in oceanum, & iterum sex in ortum fluat, an vero semper in eandem partem: alia enim speculationes non parum viles hinc dependent. Idem optarem a D. Frobiscero in occidentem obseruari. Quod ad Sinum Merosio, & Canadam, ac Nouam Franciam attinet, ea in meis tabulis desumpta sunt ex quadam Tabula marina, quae a quodam sacerdote ex earum ditionum Naucleri peritissimi Galli descriptione excerpta fuit, & illustrissimo Principi Georgio ab Austria episcopo Leodiensi oblata. Non dubito, quin quantum ad littorum situm attinet & poli eleuationem, veritatem ea quam proximè accedant. Habebat enim ea tabula praeter scalam graduum latitudinis per medium sui extensam, aliam praeterea particularem Nouae Franciae littoribus adiacentem, qua deprauatae latitudines, occasione erroris Magnetis ibi commissae, castigarentur. Iacobi Cnoyen Buscoduensis itinerarium per omnem Asiam, Africam, & Septentrionem, o-mni mihi Amicus Auernepiae ab alio mutuo acceptum communicauit, eo usus sum, & reddidi: post multos annos eundem ab amico repetij, & meminisci ille non potuit a quo accepisset, Guelmii Tarpolitani & Ioannis de plano Carpinii scripta non vidi, tantum excerpta ex illis quaedam

Ingens Sicut post
Insulam Vaigats
& Nouam Zem-
blam,

Tabin promon-
torium ingens,

Quo propius ad
polum acceditur,
eo directior
Nauticum magis
a Septentrione
deuiat,

Bautisi & Oe-
miliaris maxime
flumina in hunc
Sinum illabun-
tur,

Postulas Mercatoris,
de quibus
centior fieri cupit,

dam in alijs scriptis libris inueni. Abilfade Epirome gaudeo verri, vnam ciu habeamus.
 Hæc (mi Domino) tuis respondenda putau: si quid est aliud quod a me desideres, libentissimè tibi communicabo: hoc vicissim amanter a tua humanitate petens, vt quæ ex virtutibus nauigationis cursu obseruata nancisci poteris, mihi communicas, penes me pro tuo arbitrio manebunt omnia, & quæcumque inde collegero, fideliter ad te perferibam, si forte ad pulcherrimum, vtilissimumq; orbi Christiano hoc nauigationis institutum aliquod opis & consilij adesse possint. Bene vale, vir doctissime. Duisburgi in Cluiua, 28. Iulij 1580.

Redeunte Arthuro, quæso discas ab illo quæ optauit, & num alicubi in suo itinere, dulce mare, aut parum salum inuenierit: suspicor enim, mare inter Noua Zembla, & Tabin dulce esse.

T. H. paratissimus quantus quantus sum.

Gerardus Mercator.

Dulce mare inter
 Nouam Zem-
 blam & Tabin
 suspicatur.

The same in English.

Si, I receiued your letters the 19. of June: it grieved me much that vpon the sight of them the time being spent, I could not giue any conuenient instructions: I wisht Arthur Per had bene informed before his departure of some speciall pointes. The voyage to Cathaio by the East is doubtlesse very easie and short, and I haue oftentimes marueiled, that being so happily begun it hath bene left off, and the course changed into the West, after that more then halfe of your voyage was discouered. For beyond the Island of Vaigars and Noua Zembla, there followeth presently a great Baie, which on the left side is inclosed with the mightie promontorie Tabin. Into the mids hereof there fall great riuers, which passing through the whole countrey of Serica, and being as I thinke navigable with great vessels into y heart of the continent, may be an easie means for to traffique for all maner of merchandize, and transport them out of Cathaio, Mangi, Mien, and other kingdoms thereabouts into England. But considering with my selfe that this nauigation was not intermitted, but vpon great occasion, I thought that the Emperour of Russia and Polande had hindered the proceeding therof. If so be that with his grace and fauour a further nauigation may be made, I would counsell them certainly not first to seeke out the promontorie Tabin, but to searcho this baie and riuers asforesayd, and in them to yicke and chuse out some conuenient port and harborough for the English merchants, from whence after ward with more opportunitie and lesse perill, the promontorie Tabin and all the coast of Cathaio may be discouered. And that there is such a huge promontorie called Tabin, I am certainly perswaded not onely out of Plinie, but also other writers, and some sayes (though some what rudely drawn) and that the pole of the Loadstone is not farre beyond Tabin. I haue learned of the certaine obseruations of the Loadstone: about which pole and Tabin I thinke there are very many rocks, and very hard and dangerous sailing: and yet a more hard and difficile passage I thinke it to bee this way which is now attempted by the West, for it is neerer to the pole of the Loadstone, to the which I thinke it not safe to appoach. And because the Loadstone hath another pole then that of the world, to the which from all parts it hath a respect, the neerer you come vnto it, the more the needle of the Compasse doeth varie from the North, sometimes to the West, and sometimes to the East, depending as a man is to the Eastward or to the Westward of that Meridian, that passeth by both the poles of the Magnes and the World.

This is a strange alteration and very apt to deceiue the Sailer, vlesse hee knowe the variance and variation of the Compasse, and take the eleuation of the pole sometimes with his instruments. If master Arthur be not well prouided in this, or of such best write, that permitting the error he be not able to correct the same, I fear he is wandering vp and downe by his time, and hee ouertaken with the ice in the midst of the enterprise. For that gulf, as they say, is frozen euery yere very hard. Which if it be so, the best counsell I could giue for their best safety were to seeke some harborough in that baie, and those riuers whereof I haue spoken, and by some Ambassadors to make friendship and acquaintance with the great Can, in name of the Quene of Russia, which I beleeeue will be gratefull to the mightiest Emperour in the world, yea much excellent for the length of the traffique, and great distance of the places. I thinke from the mouthes of the mighty riuers Baucis and Oechardus to Cambalu the chiefest seat of the prince the Can there are not past 300. Germane miles, and to passe by Ezina a citie of the kingdom of Tangut there seemeth to be but 100. Germane miles from the mouthes of the sayd riuers, and is hither to the great Can.

I would gladly know how high the sea doeth flowe commonly in the port of Poliscia, where your men do harborow, and in other Easterly places vnto Tabin. And also whether the sea in this streight do flowe alwaies one way to the East or to the West, or whether it do ebbe and flowe at

In great gulfe
 to beyond
 Vaigars,
 wherinto
 mighty riuers
 descend.

The best course
 to be taken in
 discoueries.

The mouthes
 of Baucis and
 Oechardus 300.
 leagues from
 Cambalu.

ving to the maner of the tides
 houres into the West, and as
 ons of importance. I would
 gulf of Merolo and Cana
 a certaine sea caru'd out by
 full in those partes, and y
 the trending of the coast, and
 ruct: for the Chartre had, b
 another particularly annexed
 committed by reason of the da
 age of Iacobus Croonen Busc
 to time past by a friend of min
 up perces I required it againe
 The writings of Gulielmus I
 found certaine pieces of them
 is translated. I would we mig
 Thus much Sir: I thought
 would require of me, I will in
 your curtesie, that whatsoever
 would impart them to me, they
 sure, and whatsoever I gather
 they may yeeld any helpe or lig
 fiable to our christia: common
 Cleland, 28. of Iulie, the yere
 At Arthur his returne I pray
 where in his voyage, he found the
 in Zembla and Tabin to be fresh

The discouerie made by
 the Northeast parts, bey
 one called the Geo

Don Sunday the
 twine being at 2
 double the pole,
 day in the morning
 bout 3. a clocke in
 we passed Orford
 mouth at a West north west sun
 meaine, and the flood was come.
 The next day being the first of Ju
 the wind at the South west, a
 The 10. day about one of the clo
 of the headlands of the Sound is c
 in Island called Kene. Deere I
 and it glieth 7. or 8. foote, not a
 The 11. day in the morning the w
 at the in the afternoon we set sail
 and fogge.
 The 12. day the wind being at We
 6. in the morning we did double
 nelle, and had along the coast C
 East, and Southeast by East.
 The 13. day about 3. in the morning
 of our coming in was to seeke

ding to the manner of the tides in the midole of the channel, that is to say, whether it flow the e lre
hours into the West, and as map backe againe to the East, for hereupon depend other speculati-
ons of impozance. I would with M. Frobisher to obserue the same Westwards. Concerning the
gulf of Merolo and Canada, and new France which are in my mappes, they were taken out of
a certaine sea cart by a certain priest out of the description of a Frenchman, a Pilot very
skilfull in those partes, and presented to the worthy prince George of Austria, bishop of Liege: for
the rendering of the coast, and the elevation of the pole, I doubt not but they are very neere the
truth: for the Chartre had, beside a scale of degrees of latitude passing through the middest of it,
another particularly annexed to the coast of New France, wherewith the error of the latitudes
committed by reason of the variation of the compasse might be corrected. The historye of the voy-
age of Iacobus Cnoyen Buschoducensis throughout al Asia, Affrica, and the North, was lent me
in time past by a friend of mine at Antwerpe. After I had used it, I restored it againe: after ma-
ny peeres I requir'd it againe of my friend, but hee had forgotten of whom hee had borrowed it.
The writings of Gulielmus Tripolitanus, and Ioannes de Plano Carpini I neuer saw: onely I
found certaine pieces of them in other written hand bookes, I am glad the Epitomie of Abilsada
is translated. I would we might haue it shortly.

Upon the ob-
servations of
the tides de-
pend great
speculations.

Thus much Sir: I thought good to answer your letters: if there bee any thing els that you
would require of me, I will most willingly communicate it with you, craving this likewise of
your curtesie, that whatsoever obseruations of both these voyages shall come to your hands, you
will impart them to me, they shall all remaine with mee according to your discretion and plea-
sure, and whatsoever I gather of them, I will faithfully signify unto you by letters, if happily
they may be of some helpe or light unto this most excellent enterprize of nauigation, and most pro-
fitable to our christians common wealth. Fare you well most learned friend. At Duisburg in
Chieland, 28. of Iulie, the yeere, 1580.

At Arthur his returne I pray you learne of him the things I haue requested, and whether any
where in his voyage, he found the sea fresh, or not very salt: for I suppose the Sea betwene No-
va Zembla and Tabin to be fresh.

Yours wholly to my power to be commanded,
Gerardus Mercator.

The discouerie made by M. Arthur Pet, and M. Charles Lackman, of
the Northeast parts, beyond the Island of Vaigaz, with two Barkes: the
one called the *George*, the other the *William*, in the yeere 1580.

Written by Hugh Smith.

Upon Sunday the 30. of May, we departed from Harwich in the afternoone, the 4th of
winde being at South, and to the Eastward. The ebbe being spent we could not
double the pole, and therefore were constrained to put in againe untill the next
day in the morning, being the last of May: which day wee wayed our ankers a-
bout 3. a clocke in the morning, the wind being West south west. The same day
we passed Orfordness: at an East Sunne, and Stamford at a West Sunne, and
amouth at a West north west Sunne, and so to Winterton, where we did anker at night: it was
calme, and the flood was come.

The next day being the first of Iune, we set saile at 3. a clocke in the morning, and set our course Iune.
The wind at the South west, and at South south west.

The 10. day about one of the clocke in the afternoone, wee put into Norway to a place where
of the headlands of the sound is called Bortel: the other headland is called Mosle. There is al-
so an Island called Kene. Where I did find the pole to be elevated 62. deg. it doeth flowe there
and it is high 7. or 8. foor, not above.

The 11. day in the morning the winde came to the South and to the Southeast: the same
at five in the afternoone we set saile, and bare along the coast: it was very foule weather with
and fogge.

The 22. day the wind being at West, we did hall the coast East north east, and East. The same
at 6. in the morning we did double the north cape. About 3. in the afternoone wee past Skices
ness, and bare along the coast East, and East south east, and all the same night wee halled
East, and Southeast by East.

The 23. day about 3. in the morning we came to Wardhouse, the wind at the North west. The
of our coming in was to seeke the *William*, whose compaignie wee lost the 6. day of this
month,

The North
cape doubt.

Wardhouse.

money, and to send letters into England. About one of the clock in the after .noone the William also came into Wardhouse to us in good safetie, and all her company in good health.

The 24. the wind came to the East North-east. This day the William was halfe a ground, because she was somewhat leaky, and to mend her sterage. This night about 12. of the clocke she bid hale a floe againe.

The 25. day the wind was at East north-east.

The 26. day the Toby of Harwich departed from Wardhouse for London; Thomas Greene being master, to whom we delivered our letters.

The 27. day the wind was at South south-east, and the 28. also.

The 29. day about 6. in the afternoone, the wind came to the West north-west for the space of one houre, and presently to the East againe, and so was variable all the same night.

The 30. about five in the morning, the winde came to East south-east, and continued so all the same day.

July.

The first of July about 5. in the afternoone, the wind was at North-north-west: and about 7. of the clocke we set saile from Wardhouse East and by South.

The second day about 5. in the morning, the wind was East, and East south-east, and we did lie to the Southwards. And about 10. in the morning the wind came to South south-east, and we laid it to the Eastward: sometime we lay East by South, sometime East south-east, and sometimes East by North. About 5. in the afternoone we bare with the William, who was willing to goe with Keger, because we thought her to be out of trie, and sailed very ill, where we might mend her sterage: whereupon master Pet not willing to go into harborough saile to master Jackman, that if he thought himselfe not able to keepe the sea, he should doe as he thought best, and that he in the meane time would beare with Willoughbies land, for that it was a parcel of our direction, and would meete him at Veroue Ostroue, or Vaigars, and so we set our course East north-east, the winde being at South-east.

Willoughbies
land.

The 3. day the winde at South-east we found the pole to be eleuated 70. degrees, 46. minutes. The same night at 12. of the clocke we founde, but had no ground, in 120. fathoms, being fifty leagues from the one side by our reckoning East north-east from Keger.

50. leagues
from Keger.

The 4. day all the morning was calme. This day we found the pole to be eleuated 71. degrees 38. minutes. This day at 9. in the afternoone the wind at North-east with a gentle gale, we had along South-east by East.

The 5. day the wind at North-west, we had East and East by South: this day we saw land, but we could not make it, the wind being North-east, so that we could not come neere to it.

The 6. day about 2. in the afternoone, the wind at North-north-west, we halde East south-east with a faire and gentle gale: this day we met with ice. About 6. in the afternoone it became calme: we with saile and oares labored it to the North-east part, hoping that way to cleare us of it: for that way we did see the head part of it, as we thought. Which done, about 12. of the clocke at night we gate cleere of it. We did thinke it to be ice of the bay of Saint Nicholas, but it was not, as we found afterwards.

20 light of per-
fect land.

The seventh day we met with moze ice, at the East part of the other ice: we halde along a weather the ice to finde some ende thereof by East north-east. This day there appeared more land North from vs being perfect land: the ice was betwene us and it, so that we could not come neerer to it.

The same morning at five of the clocke we put into the ice to finde some way through it, we continued in it all the same day and all the night following, the winde by the North-north-west. We were constrained to goe many pointes of our compasse, but we went and an Easterly course.

The eighth day the winde at North-north-west, we continued our course, and at five in the morning we founde, and had 90. fathoms red oze. This day at foure in the afternoone we founde againe, and had 84. fathoms oze, as before. At five in the after noone we cleared our sides of the ice, and halde along South-east by South: we founde againe at 10. a clocke at night, and had 43. fathom Land oze.

The 9. day at 2. in the morning, we founde againe, and had 45. fathoms, then there appeared a shadow of land to us East North-east, and so we ran with it the space of 2. houres, and then perceiving that it was but fogge, we halde along South-east.

70. deg. 3. min.

This day at 2. in the afternoone we founde and had fiftie fathoms blacke oze. Our latitude was 70. degrees three minutes. At euen a clocke at night we founde againe, and had fiftie fathoms blacke oze.

The tenth day the wind being at North-north-west, we halde East and by North, which was

we see, because at ten of fathoms blacke oze. All land to make it, and so we land, wherewith we halde, and then we sent our boat to visit an Island, where were the le. for we

The 11. day the wind words, we saw a very faire

then with an Island in the

The 12. of July the ice there came a great white

chased him with our boate where we named the bay

hope that the winde would it was calme with fogge.

The 13. day in the morning with great store of ice the moze because of the fog

The 14. day in the morning we went in, which was by

heme impossible, and at 2.0. by West. The same day we

the coast North-west, thinking it to be the maine of Noi

to double the ice, which we West along under the ice.

At about 11. a clock at night we were at this time.

The 15. day about 3. in the morning to the Eastwards: the

there, and so we came all the domes small grey land. This

domes land, as afore.

The 16. day unto 3. in the morning red land, then we had

day at 10. of the clocke we met which way to get cleere of it.

Northwards. We thought it about 6. in the afternoone, the

had 30. fathoms blacke oze. This night at 12. a clocke we had

The 17. day at 3. in the morning South and South by West, at

the afternoone, the winde was East North-east. At 12.

of Pechora.

The 18. day at 7. in the morning land. There are also overf

ent to the head, where we had

miners. This day we had sight

at, we had East south-east, and

being calme, we anchored in

The 19. day at two in the morning day at 8.7. and 6. fathoms,

and South, This day at

minute 3. and 2. and a halfe,

way to found, and all to see war

boate betwene Vaigars & t

we set, because at ten of the clocke afore noone wee did see land, and then wee sounded hailing 35 fadoms blacke oze. All this day there was a great fogge, so that wee durst not beare with the land to make it, and so we kept an outwardly course. This day at 6. in the afternoon we espied land, wherewith we hailed, and then it grew to calme: we sounded and had 120. fadoms blacke oze: and then we sent our boat a land to sound and pique the land. The same night we came with our ship within an Island, where we rode all the same night. The same night wee went into a bay to the north of the Is. for wood and water.

The 11. day the wind came to the East southeast: this day about a league from vs to the Eastwards, we saw a very faire sound of river that past very farre into the countrey with 202.3. bzant. The maine land.

The 12. of July the wind was East Southeast. This day about 11. a clocke in the morning, there came a great white beare down to the water side, and tooke the water of his own accord, we chased him with our boate, but for all that we could doe, he got to land and escaped from vs, where we named the bay Bearebay. This day at 7. in the after noone we set sail, for we had good hope that the winde would come Westerly, and with saile and oares we gate the sea. All the night it was calme with fogge.

The 13. day in the morning the wind was very variable with fog, and as it cleared by wee met with great store of ice, which at the first shewed like land. This ice did vs much trouble, and the more because of the fog, which continued untill the 14. day, 12. of the clocke.

The 14. day in the morning we were so imbayed with ice, that we were constrained to come out as we went in, which was by great good fortune, or rather by the goodnesse of God, other wise it had bene impossible, and at 12. of the clock we were cleere of it, the wind being at South and South by West. The same day we found the pole to be elevated 70. degrees, 26. minutes: we lay along the coast North west, thinking it to be an Island, but finding no end in rowing so long, we supposed it to be the maine of Noua Zembla. About 3. in the afternoon we laide it to the Southward to double the ice, which wee could not doe upon that booye, so that we cast about againe and lay off about 11. a clock at night we brought the ice Southeast of vs, and thus we were ridde of this trouble at this time.

The 15. day about 3. in the morning, the wind was at South south west: wee cast about and lay to the Eastwards: the winde did West, so that wee lay South south west with a slowe down small grey land. This night at twelve of the clocke we sounded againe, and had 29. fadoms sand, as afore.

The 16. day unto 3. in the morning we had along East Southeast, where we found 18. fadoms red land, then we had along North east. In these soundings wee had many overfalls. This day at 10. of the clocke we met with more ice, which was very great, so that we could not tell which way to get cleere of it. Then the winde came to the South Southeast, so that we lay to the Southwards. We thought that way to cleare our selues of it, but that way we had more ice. At about 6. in the afternoon, the wind came to the East. Then we lay to the Southwards that wee had 30. fadoms blacke oze. This day we found the pole to be elevated 69. deg. 40. minutes, and this night at 12. a clocke we had 41. fadoms red land.

The 17. day at 3. in the morning, we had 12. fadoms. At 9. we had 8. and 7. all this day we ran South and South by West, at the depth afore said, red land, being but shallow water. At eight in the afternoon, the winde with a showre and thunder came to the South west, and then wee came East North east. At 12. at night it came to the South and by East, and all this was in the bay of Pechora.

The 18. day at 7. in the morning we bare with the headland of the bay, where wee found two Islands. There are also overfalls of water of tides. We went between the maine and the Island, next to the head, where we had about 2. fadoms and a halfe. We found the pole elevated 69. deg. 13. minutes. This day we had sight of Vaigatz: the land of the maine of Pechora did trend Southward, we had East southeast, and had 10. fadoms oze all the same day untill 4. in the after noone, being calme, we anchored in 10. fadoms all the same night.

The 19. day at two in the morning we set saile, and ran South and South south west all the day at 8. 7. and 6. fadoms, this was off the South part of Vaigatz, this part of the land lieth North and South. This day at 4. in the afternoon we found shallow water sometime 4. fadoms, sometime 3. and 2. and a halfe, and one fadome and a halfe: there we anchored and sent our boate up to sound, and all to leeward we had 4. fathome and 3. fathome, and 2. fathome, there was not water for the boate betweene Vaigatz & the other side: finding no more water, there was no other way but

to an Island.

The maine land.

Bearebay.

70. deg. 26. min.

The supposed maine of Noua Zembla.

span overfalls.

The bay of Pechora.

The bay of Vaigatz.

to goe backe as we came in, hauing the wind North-west, so at twelue at night we set saile.

The 20. day we sailed to the Northwards, and got deepe water againe 6. and 7. fadoms.

The 21. day the wind by the North-west, we had along the coast North and North north-west, we had 8. and 9. and 10. fadoms.

The 22. day the wind came to the South-west, we bare along the coast of Vaygatz, as we found it to lie North and by West, and North north-west, and North. The wind blew very much with great fogge, we lacking water and wood here within an Island where we founde great store of wood and water, there were three or foure goodly founts. Under two pines there was a crosse set vp, and a man buried at the foote of it. Upon the said crosse after Pet did graue his name with the date of our Voye, and likewise vpon a stone at the foote of the crosse, and said also, to the end that if the William did chauce to come thither, they might haue knowledge that wee had bene there. At eight in the afternoone the wind came to the North north-west, we set saile and turned out of the Bay. The same night the wind came to the West, so that we lay North along the land.

An Island ha-
uing store of
wood & water.

6. faire Islands.

The 23. day at five in the morning, the wind came to the South-west, a Sea booyd we sawe a great number of faire Islands, to the number of six: a Sea booyd of these Islands, there are many great ouerfalls, as great streames of rides: we halde North-east and East north-east as the same did trend. At eight aforesaid the wind came to the South-east with very much wind, raine and fogge, and very great store of ice a Sea booyd: so we lay to the South-west to attaine to one of the Islands to harbour vs if the weather did so extremely continue, and to take in our boate, thinking it meete so to doe, and not to towne her in such weather. About twelue of the clocke it became very calme vpon the sudden, and came vp to the West North-west, and North-west by West, and then weooke in our boate, and this done, there came downe so much wind, as we were not able to steere afoze it, with coyle and bonnets of each, we halde South with the land, so the land did trend. This day all the afternoone we sailed vnder a great land of ice, we sailed betwene the land and it, being not able to crosse it. About twelue at night we found the ice to stretch into the land, that we could not get cleare to the Eastward, so we laide it to the shoze, and there we founde it cleare hard aboord the shoze, and we found also a very faire Island which makes a very good harbour, and within are 12. fadoms.

An Island to
the East of
Vaygatz 4. or
5. leagues.

This Island is to the Eastwards of Vaygatz 4. or 5. leagues. This land of the maine both from South-east, and South-east by East. It is a very faire coast, and euen and plaine, and not full of mountains nor rocks: you haue but shallow water of 6. or 7. fadoms, about a league from the shoze, all this morning we halde East south-east. This day we found the pole to be eleuenth 69. degrees 14. minutes. About 12. a clocke we were constrained to put into the ice to seeke some way to get to the Northwards of it, hoping to haue some cleare passage: that way, but there was nothing but whole ice. About nine in the afternoone we had sight of the William, and when we sawe her, there was a great land of ice betwene her and vs, so that we could not come one to the other, but as we came neere to her, we sounded our trumpet and shot off two muskets, and she put out her flag vpon her foretop mast in token that she did see vs: all this time wee did frozen our sailes, and went with our fore saile & mainetop saile, seeking the best way through the broken ice, the making away the best that she could to follow vs, we put out our flagge to answere her againe with the like: thus we continued all the afternoone till about 12. a clocke at night, and then we moored our ship to a piece of ice to tarry for the William.

The William
and the George
sighted againe.

The 24. day about five in the morning, the William came to vs, being both glad of our meeting. The William had her sterne post broken, that the rudder did hang cleane besides the sterne, so that she could in no wise poze her helme, with all hands she did lighten her sterne, and trimme her head, and when we had brought her so farward all that we could, wee brought a cable vnder her sterne, and with our captaine did wind by her sterne, and so we made it as well as the place would giue vs leaue, and in the ende wee brought her to steere againe. Wee acknowledge this our meeting to be a great benefite of God for our mutuall comfort, and so gaue his maiestie thanks for it. All the night after weooke our rest being made fast vpon a piece of ice: the wind was West North-west, but wee were so inclosed with ice that we could not tell which way to goe. The windes wee haue had at will, but ice and fogge too much against our wills, if it had pleased the Lord God otherwise.

The 25. day the wind was at West North-west: we set saile to the Northwards, to seeke we could finde any way cleare to passe to the Eastward, but the further we went that way, the more and thicker was the ice, so that wee could goe no further. So about foure in the afternoone wee were constrained to moore vpon another piece of ice. I thinke we sailed in all a league from here we had 15. fadoms deepe, and this deepe is all the channell ouer. All the same day after foure

the clocke, and all the spire. This day wee were land of times deccid vs.

The 27. day the wind was North-east, and wee were constrained to goe to a piece of ice, and noone we warped from ice until the next day.

The 28. day the wind was North-east. At one in the afternoon wee were constrained to goe to a piece of ice, and noone we warped from ice until the next day.

The 29. day the wind was North-east, and wee were constrained to goe to a piece of ice, and noone we warped from ice until the next day.

The 30. day the wind was North-east, and wee were constrained to goe to a piece of ice, and noone we warped from ice until the next day.

The 31. day the wind was North-east, and wee were constrained to goe to a piece of ice, and noone we warped from ice until the next day.

The 1. day of August the wind was North-east, and wee were constrained to goe to a piece of ice, and noone we warped from ice until the next day.

The 2. day the wind was North-east, and wee were constrained to goe to a piece of ice, and noone we warped from ice until the next day.

the clocke, and all the night we waited there, being without all good hope, but rather in despair. This day Master Iugman did see land East North-east from vs, as he did thinke, whether it were land or no, I cannot tell well, but it was very like land, but the fogges haue many times deceived vs.

The 27. day the winde was at North-west. This day at nine in the morning we set saile to seeke the shore. Further into the ice we could not goe, and at leuen in the afternoone we moored to a piece of ice, and the William with vs, here we had 14. fathoms oze. At thre in the after- noone we warpe from one ice to another. At nine in the afternoone we moored againe to a piece of ice untill the next day. All this night it did snow with much wind, being at West North-west, and at North-west, and by West.

The 28. day the winde came to the South-west, and South-south-west: this day was a very faire day. At one in the afternoone master Pet and master Lackman did conferre together what they did agree to seeke to the land againe, and so to Vaygat, and there to conferre further. At 2. in the afternoone we did warpe from one piece of ice to another to get from them if it were possible: here were pieces of ice so great, that we could not see beyond them out of the toppes. Thus we warped untill 9. in the afternoone, and then we moored both our shippes to a great and high piece of ice, untill the next morning.

Their returne is.

The nine and twentie day the winde came to the South-west, we set saile at five in the morning to ply into the shore if it were possible, we made many turnes among the ice to small pur- pose, for with the winde doeth the currant runne. This day by misfortune a piece of ice strooke our greene aske at two aforesnoone, yet for all this we turned to doe our best. The William being incumbered with ice, and perceiving that they did little good,ooke in all her sailes, and made her selfe fast to a piece of ice, and about foure in the afternoone she set saile to followe vs. We were afraide that shee had taken some hurt, but she was well. At leuen afoze noone weooke in all our sailes to ealie for the William, and made our shippe fast to a piece of ice: the William before she came to vsooke in all her sailes, and moored to another piece of ice, and thus we continued untill the next morning.

The currant runneth with the winde.

The 30. day the winde at South-east, and by South, and at 9. in the morning we set saile, and as well wish her: But as soone as we made saile, she did the like. All this day wee did our best to take our way as the ice would giue vs leaue, sometime we lay South, sometime West, and sometime East, and thus we continued untill eight at night, and then being calme, wee made our way up to the East, and East and by South, but there came downe a shewre of raine with it, which continued the space of one houre: Which being done, it became calme againe, so that wee could doe no good all that night, butooke our rest untill the next day.

The 31. the winde being at South-west, we set saile to turne to windward at thre a clock in the morning. In this turning we did little good, for the currant would not giue vs leaue. For as the winde is, so is the currant. We did our best untill ten of the clocke, and then perceiving that we did no good, and being inclosed with ice, wee made our ships fast to a piece of ice: All this day the William lay still, and did as much good as we that did labour all the forenoone. Thus we took our rest all the same day.

In the afternoone we set saile, the winde being at South by East, we lay to the Westward, South-west and South-west and by South, and sometime to the Westward as wee might. Thus we continued untill 9. at night, and then we could go no further for ice: so we with the William were constrained to make our ship fast to a piece of ice at the same night. This day we found the place 69. degrees 30. minutes, and here we had 17. fathoms oze.

The first day of August was verie calme in the morning, the winde being at West North-west. About twelue the winde came to the West, and continued so all the same night.

The second day the winde was at South-west all day with rayne and fogge. All this day we were inclosed with ice, so that we were forced to lye still. Here we had one and twentie fathoms oze. At five in the afternoone the winde was at West with very much foule weather, and continued all the same night.

The third day the winde was at West, and West by North, and West North-west, this day we were inclosed with ice, the weather being darke with fogge: thus abiding the Leys measure, we continued with patience. And sounding we found a 1. fathoms.

The fourth day we lay still inclosed with ice, the winde being at West North-west, this ice did

did every day increase upon us, yet putting our trust in God, we hoped to be delivered out of it in good time.

The first day all the morning it rained with very much wind, being at South Southeast: about 3, in the after noone we set saile, and presently it became calme for the space of one houre, then the wind came to the North Northeast, and here we had 33 fathoms: thus we made way among the yce South-west, and South-south-west, & West, as we might finde our way for the space of 3. houres: then we met with a whole land of yce, so that we could go no further: here we mended our ship to tarie for a further opening. Here we found 45 fathoms oze, and all the night was very darke with fogge.

24 whole land
of yce.

The first day having no opening of the yce wee lay still, the winde being at West, and West by South: here we had sixty three fathoms oze: all the same night the winde was at the West North-west.

The 7. day the winde was at West, and West and by North all day. And all this day we lay still being inclosed with yce, that we could not stirre, labouring onely to defend the yce as it came upon us. Here we had 68 fathoms oze.

The 8. day was very faire & calme but foggy. This day towards night there was little winde by the South South-west: then the yce began a litle to open, and here we had 70 fathoms oze: all the night was foggy.

70. degr. 4.
min.

Frost.

The appen-
ring of the
starses, signe
of Winter.

The 9. day the winde was at North-west, and by West, all the afternoone we lay still because of the yce, which did still inclose us. This day we found the pole elevated seventy degrees, 4. minutes, we had 63 fathoms oze: this night was a very fayre night, but it froze: in the morning we had much adoe to goe through the same: and we were in doubt that if it should have frozen so much the night following, we should hardly have passed out of it. This night there was one thin that appeared to us.

The tenth day the winde was at East Northeast with a very small gale. Wee with saile and oares made way through the yce: about five in the morning we set saile: sometime we lay South-west, and sometime South, and sometime West, as we might best finde the way. About three in the afternoone the gale began to fresh: about five in the afternoone the winde was at Northeast with fogge. Here we had eighty eight fathoms: we bare saile all the same night, and it snowed very much.

much snow.

The eleventh day we were much troubled with yce, and by great force we made our way through it, which we thought a thing impossible: but extremity doth cause men to doe much, as in the weakenesse of man Gods strength most appeareth. This day we had 95 fathoms. At three in the afternoone the winde came to the South-west, we were forced to make our shippe fast to a piece of yce, for we were inclosed with it, and taried the Lordes leisure. This night we had 97 fathoms.

The 12. day the wind was at the Southeast not very much but in a manner calme: at 11. of the clocke the winde came to the West South-west: all the day was very darke with snow and fogge. At 6. in the afternoone we set saile the winde being at the North Northeast: all this night we bare away South-west, and South-south-west, as well as as neere as the yce would give us leaue: all this night we found the yce somewhat favourable to us, more then it was before, where upon we stood in good hope to get out of it.

The 13. day at 7. in the morning, the winde was at the Northeast, and Northeast and by East: all this day we were much troubled with the yce, for with a blow against a piece of yce we broke the stocke of our ancre, and many other great blowes we had against the yce, that it was manifest that the ship was able to abide them: the side of our boate was broken with our ship which recule backe, the boate being betwixt a great piece of yce, and the ship, and it perished the head of our rudder. This day was a very hard day with us: at night we found much broken yce, and all this night it blew very much winde, so that we lay in distress with the yce, & our distress was such, for the winde was at North all this night, and we had great store of snow.

Great store
of snow.

The 14. day in the morning we made our shippe fast to a piece of yce, and let her mende with it. In the meane time we mended our boate and our sterage: all this day the winde continued North-erly, and here we had threescore and two fathoms. Thus wee lay a while all the same night.

The 15. day we set saile at 6. in the morning, the winde being at Northeast. At 9. afternoone we entered into a cleare sea without yce, whereof wee were most gladd, and not without great cause, and gave God the praise. We had 19 fathoms water, and ranne in South-west all the morning untill we came to 14 fathoms, and thence we hailed West, till we came to 10 fathoms, and then we went North-west, for so the land doeth trend. At 12. of the clocke we had sight

the land, which wee
when wee had sight of
the pole elevated 69 de-
grees. It is a
of rocks.

The 16 day the win-
d was thist with ic: for
we were thwarte of the
yce, for the we stood in
6 in the afternoone w
noone it was darke tw
time North and by E
North-west.

The 17 day in the m-
orn, and it was very d-
be passed without hur-
day for us, and sent for-
as we came to the Wil-
lands, and hailed W-
About two of the cl-
ranne South-west untill
in West.

The 18 day at 6 in
at 10. 14 fadoms, and t
and East by South, we
noone we had 17 fadoms

The 19 day the win-
d: at 12 of the clock
at 3 in the afternoone 1

The 20 day the wind
30 fadomes blacke oze:
many great sands, and c
and so did the William,
it was calme: all night
off Colgoeyue: it is ver
floweth North-east, and S

The 21 day the wind
ships as much as was pol
helpe of God, we got bot
it to flow the more water

This day we found the
saile to seke way to get o-
all within the land which
more to the Eastwards, a
way to the Southwards
4 fadoms, and presently
ground upon the bay before
presently had, as 10, 15, &c.

The 22 day at 8 in the
we saw the William unde-
r the yce, and since we
the yce, which we had a
and three fadoms, and the
following.

The 23 day we had at C
at East South-east, we
the cluse of the clocke we
came to five fadoms of
the North-east, and
and East by North, &c.

the land, which wee might haue had sooner, but it was darke and fogge all the same day: for when wee had sight of the land, wee were not passing three leagues from it. This day we had the pole eleuened 69 degrees 49 minutes. All day we ran along the coast in ten and nine fadoms, of rocks. It is a very goodly coast and a holoe, and faire soundings off it, without sandes

69 degrees 49 minutes.

The 16 day the winde was at East: this day we were troubled againe with ice, but we made great mist with it: for we gotte betweene the shoare and it. This day at twelue of the clocke we were thwart of the Southeast part of Vaigars, all along which part there was great floe of ice, so that we stood in doubt of passage, yet by much adoe we got betwixt the shoare and it: about 6 in the afternoone was found a great white beare vpon a piece of ice: all this day in the afternoone it was darke with fogge. And all the night we haled North and North by West, and sometime North and by East, for so doth the land trend.

Then are thwarted against Vaigars.

The 17 day in the morning we haled West, for so doth the land lie. The wind was at South-east, and it was very darke with fogge, and in running along the shoare we fell a ground, but God be praised without hurt, for wee came presently off againe. The William came to an anchor so as we came to the William we did stowe our boates, and made saile, we went within some of the Islands, and haled Westsouthwest.

Sands.

The Islands.

About two of the clocke in the afternoone, we set our course Southwest and by South: so we came Southwest until twelue at night, the wind came to the Northnortheast, and then we haled West.

The 18 day at 6 in the morning we had 16 fadoms red sand: at 6 in the morning 13 fadoms, at 10, 14 fadoms, and we haled Westnorthwest. At 12 a clocke the winde came to the East, and East by South, we haled West and by North all the same day and night. At 6 in the afternoone we had 17 fadoms red sand.

The 19 day the wind was at Eastnortheast: at 6 in the morning we had 19 fadoms red sand: at 12 of the clocke the wind blew North and North by East, we had 17 fadoms of water, at 1 in the afternoone 15.

The 20 day the wind was at North-east, and Northnorth-east: at 7 in the morning we had 30 fadoms blacke oze: at twelue of the clocke we were vpon the suddaine in shoale water, and so did the William, but we had no hurt, for the wind was off the shoare, and the same night it was calme: all night we did our best, but we could not haue her astoe. These shoales doe lie off Colgoycue: it is very flat a great way off, and it doth not high about 2 or 3 fote water: it lieth North-east, and Southwest.

Shoales off Colgoycue.

The 21 day the wind was at Southwest, and being very faire weather we did lighten our ships as much as was possible for vs to doe, by reason of the place. The same high water, by the helpe of God, we got both a shoale, and the wind being at the Southwest did help vs, for it caused it to flow the moze water.

This day we found the pole to be eleuened 68 degrees 40 min. In the afternoone we both set saile to seeke way to get out of these sands, our boate a head sounding, hauing 6, 7, and 8 fadomes all within the sand which was without vs. We bare to the Southward, and the William bare moze to the Eastward, and night being at hand the wind came to the Southeast, whereupon we layd it to the Southward, lying Southwest, and South and by West, and ran to 19, and 12 and 4 fadoms, and presently we had but five fadoms, which was off the sands head, which we were a ground vpon the day before. Then we east about to the Eastward for deepe water, which we presently had, as 10, 15, and 20 and so to 23 fadoms.

The 22 day at 8 in the morning, we east about to the Southward, and this day in the morning we saw the William vnder our lee as far as we could see her, and with a great fogge we lost the sight of her, and since we haue not seene her. Thus we ranne till we came to thirtie fadomes blacke oze, which we had at twelue of the clocke, and at three in the afternoone we had twenty and three fadoms, and then we ranne Westnorthwest, and West by North, all the same night sailing.

They lost the William here.

The 23 day we had at 6 in the morning 27 fadoms, at 8 a clocke 28 fadoms: at 9 the winde being at Eastsoutheast, we haled Westnorthwest: this day we had sight of the land of Hugri side. At twelue of the clocke we had thirty two fadoms sand. This day we ranne West and by North, and came to five fadoms off the bay of Morzouets. The wind after came to the North, and North by East, and we layd it to the Northnorth-east. The wind after came to the North, and North by East, and we layd it to the Eastward againe: and thus we lay till we came to

The land of Hugri.

The bay of Morzouets.

to forty fadoms, and then we went North-west till we came to fourteen fadoms, and so to tenne fadoms. Then we cast about to the Eastwards and lay East, and East by North all the same night.

The 24 day at 8 in the morning we had 32 fadoms. We ran North-west till we came to 12 fadoms, then we lay to the Northwards till 12 at night, and then we came to forty fadoms, then the wind at North-east we lay to the Westwards, and haled North-west along.

The 25 at 4 in the morning we had 37 fadoms, we ran North-west, the wind at North-east very much.

The 26 day we ran with the same winde, and found the pole to be elevated 70 deg. 40 min.

The 27 at 7 in the morning we saw land, which we made to be Keger, then we haled North-west, and North by West to double the North Cape.

The 28 day at 3 in the morning we ran North-west, and so all day. At night the wind came to the South-west, and we ran North-west all that night.

The 29 day we put into a sound called Tane, and the towne is called Hungen: we came to anchor at 5 in the afternoon, at 25 fadoms very faire land. This sound is very large and good, and the same night we got water aboord.

The 30 day in the morning the wind at North-east, and but litle, we set saile, and with our boate on head we got the sea about 12 of the clocke: the wind with a faire gale came to the East South-east, and all this day and night we ran West North-west.

The 31 day at 12 of the clocke we doubled the North Cape, the wind being at East South-east, we haled West all the same day, and at night we ran West South-west.

The 1 day of September the wind was at North-east with very much fogge: all this day we ran West South-west: at 2 in the afternoon the wind came North.

The second day at 3 in the morning we doubled Fowlness, & the wind was this day variable at all parts of the Compass. In the afternoon we made but litle way: at 6 a clocke the wind came to the South-west, and we went North-west. At 9 in the night there came downe some much winde by the West South-west, that we were faine to lay it a hull, we haled it to Northwards for the space of a houre, and then we layd her head to the Southwards, and at the break of day we saw land, which is very high, and is called by the men of the countrey Fowlness. It is full of small Islands, and without full of rocks very farre out, and within the rocks you have faire land at 20 fadoms.

The 3 day in the morning we bare with the sound as before said: Within it is but shoale water, 45 and 3 fadoms, sandie ground, the land is very high, and the Church that is seene is called like Kirke. It doth high here not above 8 or 9 foute.

The 12 day at 3 in the afternoon, we put into a sound by Lowfoote, where it doeth flow South-west, and by South, and doth high 7 or 8 foute water.

The 13 day much wind at West: we had a ledge of rocks in the wind of us, but the road was reasonable good for all Southerly and Westerly winds. We had the maine land in the wind of us: this day was stormie with raine.

The 23 day at four of the clocke in the afternoon we put into Norway, into a sound called Romel, where it floweth South South-east, and doth high 8 foute water: this place is full of low Islands, and many good sounds without the high mountaine land. Here is great store of wood growing, as firre, birch, oke, and hallow: all this night the wind was at the South, very much winde, with raine and fogge.

The 28 day in the morning the wind being at East North-east we set saile at 8 of the clocke, and haled out of the bay West South-west, and South-west, hauing a goodly gale untill one of the clocke, and then the wind came to South-east, and to the South with raine and fogge, and very much winde: at five of the clocke we came into a very good roade, where we did ride all the same night in good safetie.

The 29 day we put into a good sound, the wind by the South-west: at three in the afternoon there came downe very much wind by the South, and all night with vehement blasts, and raine.

The 30 day all day the wind was at West South-west. And in this sound the pole is elevated 63 deg. 10 min.

The first day of October the winde was at South with very much winde, and with much blasts.

The 7 day we set saile: for from the first of this moneth untill this 7 day, we had very much weather, but specially the fourth day when the wind was so greene, that our cables brake with very storme, and I do not thinke that it is possible that any more wind then that was should blow

The towne of
Hungen.

They double
the North
Cape in their
returne.

Fowlness.

Lowfoote.

The sound of
Romel.

October.

for after the breaking
but God be thanked

The 7 day at night
when the winde gre
sounded againe: and at o
through our best anker
and by our ship in fu
menes (by the helpe of
saile abiding for a win
untill the 24 day, which
we set saile. This sound
South South-east. The
sound, where was a ship
to the Southwards of us.

The 12 day of Novemb
the sound where the king
the sound, we found the
our ship betweene 2. Illa
saile, we went to sea hoping
and South South-west, so

The next day being the
as farre out as we, and m
moored our ship in an bett
cable, and we did not grea
pole is elevated 62 deg. 4
we set saile at 6 a clocke in

The 9 day we had sight
The 10 day we were of

The 11 day at 4 in the
much: the same day at 10

to the South and South-ea
were constrained to put o
lake, which we found to be
South-east untill the 20 day.

The 22 day by reason of
ber, but the wind came to th
in a sea boord the sands, and
them. The next day we h

The 24 day we came thro
The 25 day being the Ma
berie hope. The same day w

The 26 day we turned as
I came, 1580.

The William with Charl
Roslock in October 1580, at

the following, and went in co
time he was neuer heard

Instructions made b
covery of new trades, ynto

John Hal, and James Wood
ted for a voiage with them:

Roslock, and backe againe: w
to depart vpon the said voy

this Fleet afterwards was i

Drasimich as the nu
for Saine Nichola

thunder, as also for
by such as with force

for after the breaking of our cable, we did apace a league, before our anchors would take any hold : but God be thanked the storme began to slacke, otherwile we had bene in ill case.

The 7 day at night we came to an anchor untill the next day, which was the 8 day of the month, when as the winde grew great againe, with raine, whereupon we set saile and returned into the sound againe : and at our first coming to an anchor, presently there blew so much winde, that although our best anchor was out, yet the extremitie of the storme drove vs upon a ledge of rocks, and with this our ship in such soze, that we were constrained to lighten her to save her, and by this saile abiding for a wind. We rid from this day by reason of contrary winds, with fogge and raine untill the 14 day, which day in the morning the wind came to the North-east, and at 8 of the clocke we set saile. This sound is called Moore sound, where it higheth about 5 foorer water, & floweth southward. The next day being the 15 day we put into a sound which is called Viar

Moore sound,

to the southwards of us, that came out of Island: & wind was contrary for us at South-west, the 12 day of November we set saile the wind being at the East South-east, and past through the sound where the kings ship did lie : which sound is called Sloure sound. But as we did open our ship betwene 2 Islands untill the 18 day, and then the weather being faire and calme, we set saile, & went to sea hoping to find a faire wind, but in the sea we found the wind at the South-west, so that we were constrained to returne into the same sound.

The next day being the 19 the kings ship came out also, because she saw vs put to sea, & came as farre out as we, and moored where we did moore also, 1 And at our returne backe againe, we moored our ship in an other sound called Scorpe sound, because the kings ship was without vic-pole is elevated 62 deg. 47 min. Thus we lay till for a wind untill the 1 of December, which day we set saile at 6 a clocke in the morning, & at 4 in the afternoon we laid it to the inwards.

The 9 day we had sight of the coast of Scotland which was Buquhamnesse.

The 10 day we were open off the Frisch.

The 11 day at 4 in the morning we were thwart of Barwike : at 6 we were thwart of Barnburgh : the same day at 10 at night we were shot as farre as Hollyfoote. Then the wind came from the South and South-east, so that we lay still untill the next day in the morning, and then we were constrained to put with Tinnmouth. The same day at night we haled aground to stoppe a leak, which we found to be in the starke afoze. The wind continued by the South-east & South-east untill the 20 day, and then we set saile about 12 at night, bearing a' ing the coast.

The 22 day by reason of a South-east wind, we thought we should have bene put into Humbers, but the wind came to the West, so that we haled South-east : and at 3 in the afternoon we haled a lee boord the sands, and had shoale water off Lymery and Owry, and were in 4 fadomes off them. The next day we haled as we might to sea of Orfordnesse.

The 24 day we came thwart of the Nase, about 8 in the morning.

The 25 day being the Natiuitie of Christ, we came to an anchor betwene Dithauen, and Tiberi hope. The same day we turned as high as Porther.

The 26 day we turned as high as Ratcliffe, and praised God for our safe returne. And thus I close, 1580.

The William with Charles Lackman arrived at a port in Norway betwene Tronden and Roslock in October 1580, and there did winter : And from thence departed againe in February following, and went in company of a ship of the King of Denmarke toward Island : and since the time he was never heard of.

Instructions made by the company of English merchants for discouery of new trades, vnto Richard Gibb, William Biggat, John Backhouse, William Freeman, John Haly, and James Woodcock, & c. masters of the 9 ships, and one barke that we had freighted for a voiage with them to be made (by the grace of God) from hence to S. Nicholas in Russia, and backe againe: which ships being now in the riuer of Thames are presently ready to depart vpon the said voyage, with the next apt winds that may serue therunto : and with this Fleet afterwards was ioined M. Christopher Carls with the Tyger. The 1 of Iune 1582.

As much as the number of shippes which we purpose to send in this voyage together for Saint Nicholas in Russia is greater then at any time heretofore we have sent thither, as also for some speeches are given our that you shall be met withall by such as with force & violence will assault you as enemies, to the end that good order may

may be established among you for keeping together in company, and vniing your forces, as well for the better direction to be had in your navigation, as also for your more safety and strength against the enemy, we haue thought good to appoint among you an Admirall and Viceadmirall, and that all of you and euery one particularly shall be bound in the summe of one hundred pounds to keepe company together.

2 Because the Salomon is the biggest ship, best appointed, and of greatest force to defend or offend the enemy, we doe therefore appoint that ship Admirall, which shall weare the flag in the maine top.

3 The Thomas Allen being a good ship and well appointed, and for that the master of her is the ancientest master of the fleet that hath taken charge that way, we doe appoint the same ship to be Viceadmirall, and to weare the flag in the foretop.

4 And for that the master of the Prudence is of great experience, and knowledge in that voyage, we doe appoint that he with the master of the Admirall and Viceadmirall shall conferre, consult and agree vpon the courses and directions that shall be used in this voyage, and it shall be lawful vnto the master of the Admirall, with the consent of ap, Gills, and ap, Biggins, or one of them to make his courses and directions from time to time during the whole voyage, and all the fleet are to follow and obserue the same without straying or breaking of company at any time vpon the penalty before specified.

5 The appointing of the ships for Admirall and Viceadmirall, and those men to consult and agree vpon the courses and directions of the voyage, as aforesaid, hath bene done by the consents and with the liking of you all, and therefore we doubt not but that you will all carefully and willingly obserue the premises.

6 Item, we haue thought good to put you in mind, that at such times as you may conueniently from time to time, you do assemble and meete together, to consider, consult, and determine vpon such articles as you shall thinke necessary to be propounded touching your best safety and defence against all forces that may be offered you in this voyage, as well outwards bound, and while you shall remaine in the roade and bay of S. Nicholas, as also homewards bound, and that which you shall agree vpon, or that which most of you shall consent vnto, cause it to be set down in writing for record, which may serue for an act amongst your selves to binde you all to obserue the same.

7 We haue appointed James Woodcock in the final barke to attend vpon you, & to receive his directions from you. You are therefore to remember well what conference and talke hath bene had with you here before your going touching & sayd barke, to what purposes the may best serue, and the manner how to imploy her, and thereupon to giue your order and direction vnto him as the time and place shall require.

Berozoua Vilia.

8 Item, if you shall understand as you are outwards bound, that the enemy is come before you to S. Nicholas, remember what aduise hath bene given you for your stay at Berozoua Vilia, till you haue by espials viewed and understood the forces, and the manner of their abode at that place.

9 Any if in the sea either outwards or homewards, or in the time of your abode at another Saint Nicholas, you shall be assaulted by force of any, as enemy whatsoever, you are to defend your selves with such forces as you may or can: trust not too farre, neither giue place in inconuenience.

10 You will not forget what conference we had touching your passing outwards bound by Wardhouse, to view and understand what you can at that place, and to shew your selves to see if there be any there that haue a mind to speake with you, for that we thinke it better then otherwise, then afterwards or els where.

11 While you shall remaine in the roade at S. Nicholas, be circumspect and carefull to haue your ships in readinesse, and in good order alwaies, and vpon all suddens. The greatest danger vnto you in that place will be while you shall shift your ships: therefore you are to consider of it, but the fittest time for you to doe the same, will bee when the winde is Southerly off the Hoze, or calme, and at such time you may the better doe it without danger. You must take such order among you, that your companies may be alwaies willing and ready to helpe one the other, and appoint among your selves such ships to shift first, and such after, in such sort and forme as you shall thinke best and most conuenient. And while they shall be in discharging, shifting, and loading, let the rest of your companies which haue not then to doe in loading or discharging, keep those ships that shall haue labour to doe, as well for carrying the barke from ships to the shore, or from shore to the ships, with your boates, as also for any other helpe that they shall haue neede of.

12 Remember what hath bene said
aduantage against the enemy,
13 See that you serue God
14 You are to consult and
the better keeping of company
ap, or helpe may be giuen by
Thus we pray God to send y

The opinion of Matthe
ring his iudgement for
S. Nicholas in Russia.

Whereas you request me
before the fine of May,
for you know that the sooner we
shall sende them in the beginn
of the same moneth: and by that
come downe, especially the flare
ure of Dyna, that by the ende of
this is alwaies to be accounted for
may be brought to that place
laste and charge of that time cou
and yet will the Owners put that
ing hence.

Now seeing by sending our ship
Nicholas may be at the ende of the same
laure and come thence by the last of
commodities to serue the market of
commodities.

But it may be objected, that if all
the able to send vs in so much corbagg
remained a moneth longer, neither cou
you would doe.

For answere thereunto this is my
ago as aforesaid, yet would I haue
that should depart alwaies from hence
time to be conditioned: whichall to rem
ber of August, or to be dispatched
time: by this order these commodities

1 You may haue our commodities
dispersed in the countrey at your pleasure

2 The greatest part of our goods may
3 Our late ships remaining so long

4 Their remaining so late with you
by such corbagg, Ware, Dile, &c.

5 This ship may serue vs in stead of byn
now seeing it may be so many wayes
without any charge vnto them, I with

Acopie of the Commis
rizing him her Maiesties
Anno 1583.

LIZABETHA Dei gratia, Ang
lic. Vniuersis & singulis presentat
Principes, Ioannes Basilus, Rex,
progradiz, Rex Cazani, & Afracan
Vgori, Permiz, Valcar, Bolharz, &

- 12 Remember what hath bene said vnto you touching the mozing of your ships, &c. toz vsing advantage against the enemye, if you shall be assailed in that place.
- 13 See that you serue God, abolish swearing and gaming, be carefull of fire and candles, &c. the better keeping of company together, and also the maner how and by what meanes, rescue, &c. helpe may be giuen by one to the other in fight, if you happen to come to it.
- Thus we pray God to send you a prosperous voyage and safe returne.

The opinion of Master William Burrough sent to a friend, requiring his iudgement for the fittest time of the departure of our ships towards S. Nicholas in Russia.

Whereas you request me to perswade the company not to send their ships from hence before the fine of May, I do not thinke the same so good a course for them to obserue: for you know that the sooner we sende them hence, the sooner we may looke for their returne: since sende them in the beginning of May, then may they be at Saint Nicholas by the time of the same moneth: and by that time the greatest parte of your lading of necessitie must be come to hand, especially the flaxe: but if it should fall out so lateward a breaking up of the river of Dvyna, that by the ende of May the goods cannot be brought to Saint Nicholas, yet this is alwayes to be accounted for certaine, that before our ships can come thither, the goods may be brought to that place: and if through ice the ships be kept backe any time, the losse and charge of that time toucheth not the companie at all, but the owners of the ships, and yet will the Owners put that in aduventure, rather then carie longer time before their going hence.

The Russian fleet best to be sent forth in the beginning of May.

Now seeing by sending our ships hence in the beginning of May, their arriual at S. Nicholas may be at the ende of the same moneth, and remaining thirte dayes there, they may be laden and come thence by the last of June, and returne home hither by the 10 of August with commodities to serue the market then, it cannot be denied but we should reape thereby great commodity.

But it may be objected, that if all our ships be sent then to returne as aforesaid, you shall not be able to send vs in so much copage, Ware and Dyles, as other wise you should doe if they remained a moneth longer, neither could you by that time perfect your accounts to be sent in them as you would doe.

For answer thereunto this is my meaning: that I with the greatest part of our shipping as aforesaid, yet would I haue one good ship or two at the most well furnished in all points that should depart al waies from hence, betwene the beginning and the 10 day of June: and the same to be conditioned withall to remaine at S. Nicholas from the first arriual there vntill the middle of August, or to be dispatched thence sooner, at the will and liking of our factors for the time: by this order these commodities following may ensue.

1 You may haue our commodities there timely to send by the river before it waxe shallow, to be dispersed in the countrey at your pleasure.

2 The greatest part of our goods may be returned hither timely to serue the first markets.

3 Our late ships remaining so long here may serue to good purpose, for returning answer of letters as may be sent ouer land, and receiued here before their departure.

4 Their remaining so late with you shall satisfie your desire for perfecting your accounts, and by hying such copage, Ware, Dyle, & other commodities, as you can prouide before that time: so they may serue vs in stead of hying home our goods that may be sent vs from Persia.

Now seeing it may be so many wayes commodious to the companie to obserue this order, without any charge vnto them, I with that you put to your helping hand to further the same.

Acopie of the Commission giuen to Sir Ierome Bowes, authorizing him her Maiesties Ambassadour vnto the Emperour of Russia, Anno 1583.

ELIZABETHA Dei gratia, Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hyberniciæ Regina, fidei defensor, &c. Vniuersis & singulis presentes literas visuris & inspecturis, salutem. Cum Serenissimus Princeps, Ioannes Bassilius, Rex, & magnus Dux Russiæ, Volodimerz, Moscouiæ, & Mogodiz, Rex Cazani, & Astracani, Dominus Plescoæ, & magnus Dux Smolenscoæ, & Vgori, Permiæ, Valcæ, Bolharæ, & aliarum ditionum: Dominus & magnus Dux No-

uogrodia in inferiori regione Chernigæ, Rezanæ, Polotscoæ, Ratfauiz, Yeraslauz, Bealozeri, Luflandiæ, Oudori, & Condensæ, & gubernator in tota prouincia Siberiæ, & partium Septentrionalium, & aliarum, frater, & Amicus charissimus, Nobilem virum, Feodor Andrewich Spisemiski, nuper ad nos ablegauerit, ad certa quadam negotia nobiscum agenda, quæ honorem vtrique nostrum quàm proximè attingunt, quæque rectè definiri concludique nequeunt, nisi Ambassiatores aliquem & oratorem ad præfatum serenissimum principem amandauerimus: Hinc est, quod nos de fidelitate, industria, prouida circumspectione, & satis magnorum vsu, prædilecti nobis famuli nostri, Hieronimi Bowes Militis, ex nobilibus domesticis nostris vnus, plurimum confidentes, præfatum Hieronimum Bowes Militem, nostrum verum & indubitatum Ambassiatores, Oratorem, & Commissarium specialem facimus, & constituimus per præsentem. Dantes, & concedentes eidem Hieronimo Bowes Militi orationi nostro tenore præsentium, auctoritatem, & mandatum, tam generale, quàm speciale, ita quod specialitas non derogat generalitati, nec è contrà generalitas specialitati, nomine nostro, & pro nobis, cum præfato serenissimo principe, eiusque consiliarijs, & deputatis quibuscumque de præfatis negotijs & eorum singulis, tractandi, cõferendi, concludendi appunctuandisque, prout præfato Oratori nostro æquum, & ex honore nostro videbitur: Nec non de, & super his, ut præfato Oratori nostro æquum, & ceterisque omnibus & singulis, præmissa quouis modo tractatis, conclusis, appunctuatisque, ceterisque omnibus & singulis, præmissa quouis modo concernentibus, literas, & instrumenta valida & efficacia, nomine nostro, & pro nobis, dendi, literasque & instrumenta consimilis vigoris & effectus, ex altera parte petendi, & conficiendi, sigillari debere procurandi, & recipiendi, & generaliter omnia, & singula præmissa quacumque concernentia, faciendi, exercendi, & expediendi, in, & eodem modo, sicut nos ipsi faceremus, & facere possemus, si essemus præsentem, etiam si talia sint, quæ de se mandatum exigunt magis speciale: promittentes bona fide, & in verbo Regiæ, omnia & singula, quæ per præfatum Ambassiatores, & oratorem nostrum appunctuata, promissa, conuenientia, concordata, & conclusa fuerint in hac parte, nos rata & grata, & firma habituras & obseruaturas, & superinde literas nostras patentes confirmatorias, & approbatorias in forma valida, & autentica, prout opus fuerit, daturas. In cuius rei testimonium, his præsentibus manu nostra signatis, magnum sigillum nostrum regni nostri Angliæ apponi fecimus. Datz è Regia nostra Grenuici quinto die mensis Iunij, Anno Domini, 1583. Regni verò nostri viceffimo quinto.

The same in English.

ELIZABETH by the grace of God, Queene of England, France and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. to al and singular, to whom these presents shall come to be seen and reueyering, Whereas the most excellent prince Iohn Basiluwich king, and great duke of all Russia, Volodomer, Moscouie, and Nouogrod, king of Cazan and Astracan, lord of Plesco, and great duke of Smolensko, of Tuer, Vgor, and Pernia, Valca, Bolhar and others, lord great duke of Nouogrod in the low country of Cherniga, Rezan, Polotsko, Rosloue, Yeraslaue, Bealozera, Liefland, Oudor, Obdor and Condensa, and gouernour of al the land of Siberia, and of the North parts and ether, our most deare brother and frised did late send vnto vs one Feodor Andrewich Spisemiski, a noble man of his, to deale with vs in certaine speciall busineses, respecting very neerely the honour of either of vs, and being such as without the speeding of some Ambassadour of ours to the foresaid most excellent prince, cannot be sufficiently determined and concluded: For this cause hauing great confidence in the fidelitie, industrie, prouident circumspection and conuenient expence of our welbeloued seruant Ierome Bowes knight, a gentleman of qualitie of our honoure, do by these presents make and constitute the foresaid Ierome Bowes knight our true & authorized Ambassadour, Orator and speciall commissioner, giuing and graunting to the same Ierome Bowes knight, our Orator, by the vertue of these presents auctoritie and commandement, as in general as special, to that the special shall not prejudice the general, nor on the other side the general the special, to treat, conferre, conclude, and appoynt in our name, and for vs with the foresaid most excellent prince and his counsellors and deputies whatsoeuer, concerning the foresaid busineses, and ech of them, according as it shall seeme good, and for our honour to our foresaid Orator, as also of and vpon such things intreated, concluded and appointed, as in all and singular other things, any manner of way concerning the premises, to deliuer in our name and for vs, sufficient and effectual letters and instruments, and to require letters & instruments of the like vertue and effect of the other part, and to procure them lawfully to be made and sealed, and to receiue them, and generally to doe, execute, and dispatch al and singular other things concerning the premises, in, and after the same manner, as we our selfes would and might do if we were present, although they be such things as may seeme of themselves to require a more speciall commandement:

mandement: promising in general and singular the things which are accorded and concluded in this shall require, will giue our letters autentical. In witness whereof we have put to these presents, our own hand at our palace of Greenwich, the first day of June, in the fifth and sixteenth year of our reigne the first and

A Letter sent from her Majesty to Sir Ierome Bowes

Serenissimo Principi ac Duci Russiæ, Volodomeræ, &c. et Cazan, &c. et Nouogrod, &c. et Gubernatori Smolensco, &c.



LIZABETH, Senatrix & gratia Regiæ uogrodia, & Smolensco, Domino & Cazan, Polotsco, & Gubernatori in tota prouincia Siberiæ, & partium Septentrionalium, & aliarum, frater & Amicus charissimus, Nobilem virum, Feodor Andrewich Spisemiski, nuper ad nos ablegauerit, ad certa quadam negotia nobiscum agenda, quæ honorem vtrique nostrum quàm proximè attingunt, quæque rectè definiri concludique nequeunt, nisi Ambassiatores aliquem & oratorem ad præfatum serenissimum principem amandauerimus: Hinc est, quod nos de fidelitate, industria, prouida circumspectione, & satis magnorum vsu, prædilecti nobis famuli nostri, Hieronimi Bowes Militis, ex nobilibus domesticis nostris vnus, plurimum confidentes, præfatum Hieronimum Bowes Militem, nostrum verum & indubitatum Ambassiatores, Oratorem, & Commissarium specialem facimus, & constituimus per præsentem. Dantes, & concedentes eidem Hieronimo Bowes Militi orationi nostro tenore præsentium, auctoritatem, & mandatum, tam generale, quàm speciale, ita quod specialitas non derogat generalitati, nec è contrà generalitas specialitati, nomine nostro, & pro nobis, cum præfato serenissimo principe, eiusque consiliarijs, & deputatis quibuscumque de præfatis negotijs & eorum singulis, tractandi, cõferendi, concludendi appunctuandisque, prout præfato Oratori nostro æquum, & ex honore nostro videbitur: Nec non de, & super his, ut præfato Oratori nostro æquum, & ceterisque omnibus & singulis, præmissa quouis modo tractatis, conclusis, appunctuatisque, ceterisque omnibus & singulis, præmissa quouis modo concernentibus, literas, & instrumenta valida & efficacia, nomine nostro, & pro nobis, dendi, literasque & instrumenta consimilis vigoris & effectus, ex altera parte petendi, & conficiendi, sigillari debere procurandi, & recipiendi, & generaliter omnia, & singula præmissa quacumque concernentia, faciendi, exercendi, & expediendi, in, & eodem modo, sicut nos ipsi faceremus, & facere possemus, si essemus præsentem, etiam si talia sint, quæ de se mandatum exigunt magis speciale: promittentes bona fide, & in verbo Regiæ, omnia & singula, quæ per præfatum Ambassiatores, & oratorem nostrum appunctuata, promissa, conuenientia, concordata, & conclusa fuerint in hac parte, nos rata & grata, & firma habituras & obseruaturas, & superinde literas nostras patentes confirmatorias, & approbatorias in forma valida, & autentica, prout opus fuerit, daturas. In cuius rei testimonium, his præsentibus manu nostra signatis, magnum sigillum nostrum regni nostri Angliæ apponi fecimus. Datz è Regia nostra Grenuici quinto die mensis Iunij, Anno Domini, 1583. Regni verò nostri viceffimo quinto.

Condensæ, & Gubernatori in tota prouincia Siberiæ, & partium Septentrionalium, & aliarum, frater & Amicus charissimus, Nobilem virum, Feodor Andrewich Spisemiski, nuper ad nos ablegauerit, ad certa quadam negotia nobiscum agenda, quæ honorem vtrique nostrum quàm proximè attingunt, quæque rectè definiri concludique nequeunt, nisi Ambassiatores aliquem & oratorem ad præfatum serenissimum principem amandauerimus: Hinc est, quod nos de fidelitate, industria, prouida circumspectione, & satis magnorum vsu, prædilecti nobis famuli nostri, Hieronimi Bowes Militis, ex nobilibus domesticis nostris vnus, plurimum confidentes, præfatum Hieronimum Bowes Militem, nostrum verum & indubitatum Ambassiatores, Oratorem, & Commissarium specialem facimus, & constituimus per præsentem. Dantes, & concedentes eidem Hieronimo Bowes Militi orationi nostro tenore præsentium, auctoritatem, & mandatum, tam generale, quàm speciale, ita quod specialitas non derogat generalitati, nec è contrà generalitas specialitati, nomine nostro, & pro nobis, cum præfato serenissimo principe, eiusque consiliarijs, & deputatis quibuscumque de præfatis negotijs & eorum singulis, tractandi, cõferendi, concludendi appunctuandisque, prout præfato Oratori nostro æquum, & ex honore nostro videbitur: Nec non de, & super his, ut præfato Oratori nostro æquum, & ceterisque omnibus & singulis, præmissa quouis modo tractatis, conclusis, appunctuatisque, ceterisque omnibus & singulis, præmissa quouis modo concernentibus, literas, & instrumenta valida & efficacia, nomine nostro, & pro nobis, dendi, literasque & instrumenta consimilis vigoris & effectus, ex altera parte petendi, & conficiendi, sigillari debere procurandi, & recipiendi, & generaliter omnia, & singula præmissa quacumque concernentia, faciendi, exercendi, & expediendi, in, & eodem modo, sicut nos ipsi faceremus, & facere possemus, si essemus præsentem, etiam si talia sint, quæ de se mandatum exigunt magis speciale: promittentes bona fide, & in verbo Regiæ, omnia & singula, quæ per præfatum Ambassiatores, & oratorem nostrum appunctuata, promissa, conuenientia, concordata, & conclusa fuerint in hac parte, nos rata & grata, & firma habituras & obseruaturas, & superinde literas nostras patentes confirmatorias, & approbatorias in forma valida, & autentica, prout opus fuerit, daturas. In cuius rei testimonium, his præsentibus manu nostra signatis, magnum sigillum nostrum regni nostri Angliæ apponi fecimus. Datz è Regia nostra Grenuici quinto die mensis Iunij, Anno Domini, 1583. Regni verò nostri viceffimo quinto.

The

Elizabeth by the grace of God, Queen of England, France and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. to the most excellent prince Iohn Basiluwich king, and great Duke of all Russia, Volodomer, Moscouie, and Astracan, lord of Plesco, and great duke of Smolensko, of Tuer, Vgor, and Pernia, Valca, Bolhar, and others, lord and great duke of Nouogrod in the low country of Cherniga, Rezan, Polotsko, Rosloue, Yeraslaue, Bealozera, Liefland, Oudor, Obdor and Condensa, and gouernour of all the land of Siberia, and of the North parts and ether, our most deare brother and frised did late send vnto vs one Feodor Andrewich Spisemiski, a noble man of his, to deale with vs in certaine speciall busineses, respecting very neerely the honour of either of vs, and being such as without the speeding of some Ambassadour of ours to the foresaid most excellent prince, cannot be sufficiently determined and concluded: For this cause hauing great confidence in the fidelitie, industrie, prouident circumspection and conuenient expence of our welbeloued seruant Ierome Bowes knight, a gentleman of qualitie of our honoure, do by these presents make and constitute the foresaid Ierome Bowes knight our true & authorized Ambassadour, Orator and speciall commissioner, giuing and graunting to the same Ierome Bowes knight, our Orator, by the vertue of these presents auctoritie and commandement, as in general as special, to that the special shall not prejudice the general, nor on the other side the general the special, to treat, conferre, conclude, and appoynt in our name, and for vs with the foresaid most excellent prince and his counsellors and deputies whatsoeuer, concerning the foresaid busineses, and ech of them, according as it shall seeme good, and for our honour to our foresaid Orator, as also of and vpon such things intreated, concluded and appointed, as in all and singular other things, any manner of way concerning the premises, to deliuer in our name and for vs, sufficient and effectual letters and instruments, and to require letters & instruments of the like vertue and effect of the other part, and to procure them lawfully to be made and sealed, and to receiue them, and generally to doe, execute, and dispatch al and singular other things concerning the premises, in, and after the same manner, as we our selfes would and might do if we were present, although they be such things as may seeme of themselves to require a more speciall commandement:

manerment: promising in good faith and to the word of a prince, that we will hold and observe all and singular the things which by our Ambassadors aforesayd shall be appointed, promised, agreed, accepted and concluded in this behalfe, as lawfull, gracefull, and firme, and thereupon as veridicall. In witness whereof, we have caused our great Seale of our kingdome of England to be put to these presents, and signed them with our owne hand.
Given at our palace of Greenwich the fourth day of June, in the yeere of our Lord 1583, and of our reigne the five and twentieth.

A Letter sent from her Highnesse to the sayd great Duke of Russia,
by sir Hierome Bowes aforesayd, her Maiesties Ambassadour.

Serenissimo Principi ac Domino, Ioanni Basilio, Dei gratia Regi & magno Duci totius Russiae, Volodomeræ. &c. R. g. Cazani, &c. Domino Plescoz, &c. Domino & magno Duci Nouogrodiz, &c. & Gubernatori in tota Prouincia Siberiz, &c. Fratri & amico nostro charissimo.



LIZABETHA, Dei gratia Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Regina, fidei defensor, &c. Serenissimo Principi ac Domino, Ioanni Basilio, eadem Dei gratia Regi & magno Duci totius Russiae, Volodomeræ, Moscouiæ, & Nouogrodiz, Regi Cazani & Astracani, Domino Plescoz, & magno Duci Smolenscoz, Iueri, Vgori, Permiz, Viatskæ, Bolharæ, & aliarum ditionum, Domino & magno Duci Nouogrodiz in inferiori regione, Chernigæ, Rezanæ, Poloticoz, Rostlouæ, Iaroslauæ, Bealozeri, Lissandiz, Oudori, & Condensæ, & Gubernatori in tota prouincia Siberiz, & partium Septentrionalium, & aliarum, fratri & amico suo charissimo, Salutem.

Serenissimi ne princeps, frater & amice charissime, ex ijs quæ nobiscum egit S. V. illustri lectione, intelleximus, quàm gratè vobis faceremus satis, si legatum aliquem cum mandatis instructum, ad S. V. ablegaremus. In quo certè quidem intuitu ad eò nobis ex animo placuit, Acque non id haberemus apud nos decretum, nobis non incommodè incurrat in mentem & oculos Hieronimus Bowes miles, ex nobilibus nostris Domesticis, plurimum nobis dilectus, quod ad Serenitatu' mutuo nostrarum dignitatem ornandam pertinere posse arbitramur, committimus. In quo munere perfungendo, quin diuinam curam & diligentiam sit collaturus, nequaquam dubitamus: à S. autem V. rogamus, velit ei eam fidem habere in ijs persequendis, quæ habet à nobis in mandatis, quàm nobis habendam putaret, si essemus præsentis. Præterea, cum nobis multum charus sit Robertus Iacobus medicus, quem superiori anno, ad S. V. plurimarum virtutum laude ornatum habendum esse, boni principes censent. Quem à nobis nequaquam ablegauissemus, nisi amicitia nostræ, & studio gratificandi S. V. plurimum tribuissimus. In qua dum voluntate manemus erga S. V. non nisi optimè de bonis vestris meritis in præfatum Iacobum nobis pollicemur. Et Deum Opt. Max. precamur, vt S. V. saluam conseruet, & incolumem. Datæ è Regia nostra Grenouici 19 die mensis Iunii, Anno Domini 1583, regni verò nostri vicelesimo quinto.

1582

S. vestra bona soror.

The same in English.

Lizabeth by the grace of God, Queene of England, France, and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. to the most excellent Prince and Lord, Iohn Basilwich, by the same grace of God, great Duke of all Russia, Volodomer, Moscouie, and Nouogrod, King of Cazan, Astracan, Lord of Plesco, and great Duke of Smolensco, of Tuer, Vgor, and Permie, Viatskæ, Bolhar, and others, Lord and great Duke of Nouogrod in the lowe countrey, of Chernig, Rezan, Polotsko, Rostloue, Iaroslauæ, Bealozera, Lissand, Oudor, Obdor, and Condensæ, and Gouernour of all the land of Siberia, and of the North partes and others, her dearest brother and friend, Salutations.

Most excellent Prince, most deare brother and friend, by those things which the worthy ambassador of your excellency declared vnto vs, we haue vnderstood how kindly it would be taken, if we

we should send to your excellency an ambassadoe from vs, with commandement and instructions. In which matter your honorable request hath so much pleased vs, that we could not any manner of way satisfie our selves, except we performed the same. And hauing purposed with our selfe so to doe, we thought of, and remembred Jerome Bowes Knight, a gentleman of qualitie of our householde, a man very much beloued of vs, whom at this present we send vnto your Maiesty, and to whose wisdome and faithfulness we haue committed all, whatsoever we take to appertine to the aduancement of your honours indifferently. In the discharge of which seruice, we doubt not but that all care and diligence shall be used on his part, so that we increat your Maiesty to him credence in the prosecuting of those things which he hath from vs in commandement, no lesse then to our selfe, if we were present. And whereas Robert Iacob doctoꝝ of physicke is a man verie deare vnto vs, whom the last yere we sent vnto your excellency, we desire that he may haue the fauor and estimation with you, which good princes thinke a most honest and vertuous man worthy of: for had we not caried great respect to our mutual friendship, and endeavour to gratifie your Maiesty, we should in no case haue parted with him. And seeing we continue still the same good will towards your excellency, we doe euen promise to our selfe your honourable kindnes towards him: and we pray the almighty God to preserve your Maiesty in good health and health. Given at our pallace of Greenwich the 19 day of June, in the yere of our Lord 1583, and of our reigne the five and thirtieth.

Worship Iacob.

Your Maiesties good sister,

A brieft discourse of the voyage of Sir Jerome Bowes knight, her Maiesties ambassadour to Iuan Vasiliuich the Emperour of Muscovie, in the yere 1583.



The Emperour of Russia that then liued, by name Iuan Vasiliuich, hauing deliberately considered how necessary it were for the strenghtening of his estate, that a sure commerce and intercourse of merchants should be againe renewed betweene him and her sacred Maiesty of England, with such further immunities and priuileges for the honor and vtility of both their dominions, and subjects of the same, as vpon mutuall creatie of persons interposed on both sides, might be assented vnto: sent ouer into this realme, in the yere of our Lord 1582, as his ambassadour for that purpose, an ancient discret gentleman of his householde called Pheodor Andreuich Philemky, accompanied with one of his secretaries, for his better assistance in that expedition: and besides his many other directions, whereof part were to be deliuered by word of mouth, and the rest set downe in a letter vnder the Emperours signature, adressed to her Maiesty: he had in speciall charge to sollicite her Maiesty to send ouer vnto him his maiester an ambassadour from her, to treat and contract of such affaires of importance as concerned both the realmes, which was the principall end of his employments thither. Whereupon her Maiesty very graciously inclining to the Emperours motion, and at the humble sute of the merchants trading those countreys being caried with the same princely respect, to satisfie demands in that behalfe, made choise of Sir Jerome Bowes, a gentleman of her Court, ordinarily attending vpon her Maiesties person, towards whom was apparently expessed her princely opinion and fauor by the credit of this negotiation.

Pheodor Andreuich Philemky the Emperours ambassadour.

After he had receiued his commission, with other speciall letters to the Emperour, with all such instructions appertaining to his charge, and that the sayd Russe ambassadour was licenced to turne home to his maiester, being honorably entertained and rewarded, the English ambassadour being attended vpon with forty persons at the least, very honourably furnished, whereof many were gentlemen, and one M. Humfrey Cole a learned preacher, took his leaue of her Maiesty at Court at Greenwich the eighteenth of June, and with the other ambassadour, with their companies, embarked themselves at Harwich the two and twentieth of the same, and after a short voyage at the Sea, they arriued both in safety in the roade of S. Nicholas the three and twentieth of July next following.

The Russe ambassadour lodged himselfe at the abbey of S. Nicholas: and the English ambassadour was lodged and well entertained by the English merchants, at their house at S. Nicholas standing in an Island called Rose Island.

The Russe ambassadour hauing reposed himselfe one whole day, took his leaue of the English ambassadour, and departed towards Mosco.

The English ambassadour abode yet at S. Nicholas foure or five dayes, when hauing provision of boats, and meanes to that purpose, he went forward vpon his iourney to Mos-

Mosco, to a towne called Col. You must here vnderstand diuers strangers, but expect trade into those countreys. As granted to the English merchants, had by chargeable manneres with assured friends, namely, Mekicello: for besides daily gifts theirs at interest at five and two pound marks yearly for the use of a friend in Court.

The ambassadour hauing notice to him then a gentleman sent from him by the riuers towards Mosco.

This gentleman being a follower into that seruice of purpose, as a man of occasions of mislike to the other two great counsellors (spoke his words directly against her Maiesties strangers from trading into the Court).

This gentleman conducted at a city called Yerslaue upon the more easie conueying of him miles.

Two miles on this side Mosco accompanied with two hundred horse, tolde him that they had to say to him to haue heard it, notwithstanding the ambassadour soone refused to doe, and was not: which afterwards agreed on first on ground.

Their message being deliuered, a messenger to his lodging at Mosco, in the next house to it, as appointed on other occasions.

The ambassadour hauing bene formerly used from the Emperour (for as is sayd) had another purpose, and was accompanied thither with a train, & in his passage from Mosco, that were of the Emperours apparelled in cloth of gold, and rich garments, and towards the Emperour, who guided him yet further towards Mosco, and late vpon benches and four men and gentlemen, all apparelled in rich garments, accompanied with many heralds, whose office is to receive the crownes standing by him, viz. of the Emperour of about twenty peres of age, and their shoulders each of them a badge of the Emperour, the scale of handle not past halfe an ell, and other low seats, about an hundred. The ambassadour being thus brought to Mos-

Mosco, to a towne called Colmogro, about foure score miles distant from S. Nicholas.

You must here vnderstand that before the English ambassadoz going into Russia, there were diuers strangers, but especially certaine Dutch merchants, who had intruded themselves to be granted to the English merchants. Notwithstanding a priuilege of the sole trade thither was long before had by chargeable means. These Dutch men had already so handled the matter, as they assured friends, namely, Mekica Romanouich, the chiefest counsellors to the Emperour to be their ally: for besides daply gifts that they bestowed vpon them all, they tooke so much money of sundry at interest at five and twenty vpon the hundred, as they paid to some one of them five thousand marks yearly for the vse of his money, and the English merchants at that time had not one friend in Court.

The Hollanders intrude into our trade.

The ambassadoz hauing now spent five weeks at S. Nicholas and at Colmogro, there came to him then a gentleman sent from the Emperour to entertaine him, and had in charge to conduct him by the rivers towards Mosco, and to deliuer him prouision of all kinde of victuals necessary. This gentleman being a follower of Shalkan the chancelloz, was by him (as it seemed) scised into that seruice of purpose, as after ward appeared by the course he tooke, to offer discourtesies, and occasions of milike to the ambassadoz: for you must vnderstand that the chancelloz and the officers directly against her Spanish ambassage, especially in that point, for the barring of all strangers from trading into the Emperours countrey.

This gentleman conducted the English ambassadoz a thousand miles by the rivers of Dwina and Soughana, to a citie called Vologda, where receiued him another gentleman sent from the Emperour, a man of better countenance then the other, who presented the ambassadoz from the Emperour with two faire geldings well furnished after their maner.

At a citie called Yersalaue vpon the river Volga there met the ambassadoz a duke well accompanied, sent from the Emperour, who presented him from the Emperour a coach and ten geldings for the more easie conueying of him to Mosco, from whence this citie was distant five hundred miles.

Two miles on this side Mosco there met the ambassadoz foure gentlemen of good account, accompanied with two hundred horse: who after a little salutation, not familiar, without imbracing to haue heard it, not withstanding themselves would still haue sit on horsebacke: which the ambassadoz some refused to doe, and so they stood long vpon termes, whether both parties should sit on ground.

Their message being deliuered, and after hauing embraced each other, they conducted the said ambassadoz to his lodging at Mosco, a house builded of purpose for him, themselves being placed in the next house to it, as appointed to furnish him of all prouisions, and to be vsed by him vpon all other occasions.

The ambassadoz hauing bene some dayes in Mosco, and hauing in all that time bene very honorably vsed from the Emperour (for such was his will) though some of his chiefest counsellors as is said) had another purpose, and did often times cunningly put it in vse: He was sent for to Court, and was accompanied thither with about forty gentlemen honorably mounted, and sumptuously arrayed, & in his passage from his lodging to the court, were set in a ward five or six thousand horse, that were of the Emperours gard. At the entry into the court there met him foure noble men apparelled in cloth of gold, and rich furrer, their caps emboidered with pearle and stone, who guided him yet further towards the Emperour, till he was met with foure others of greater degree then they, and late vpon benches and founnes in row, seven or eight hundred persons, said to be noblemen and gentlemen, all apparelled in garments of coloured satins and cloth of golde.

These foure noblemen accompanied him to the Emperours chamber doore, where met him the Emperours herald, whose office is there held great: and with him all the great officers of the Emperours chamber, who all conducted him to the place where the Emperour late in his state, hauing crownes standing by him, viz. of Moscouia, Cazan, and Astrakan, and also by him 4 pooring men of about twenty yeres of age, of each side twaine, costely appareilled in white, holding vpon their shoulders each of them a hode are, much like to a Galloglas are of Ireland, thin and very light, the scale of handle not past halfe a yarde long, and there late about the chamber vpon benches and other low seats, about an hundred noblemen richly appareilled in cloth of golde.

The ambassadoz being thus brought to the Emperour to kisse his hand, after some complement and

and inquite of her Paleties health, he willed him to goe sit downe in a place prouided for that purpose, nigh ten paces distant from him, from whence he woulde haue had him to haue sent him her Paleties letters and present, which the ambassadour thinking not reasonable stept forward towards the Emperour: in which passage the chancelloz came to meet him, and woulde haue taken his letters: to whom the ambassadour sayd, that her Paletie had directed no letters to him; and so went on, and deliuered them himselfe to the Emperours owne hands.

And after, hauing thus deliuered her Paleties letters and what he had els to say at that time, he was conducted to the Councell chamber, where hauing had conference with the Councell of matters of his ambassage, he was soone after sent for againe to the Emperour, where he dined in his presence at a side table, nere vnto him, and all his company at another boord by, where also dined at other tables in the same place, all the chiefe noble men that were about the Court, to the number of an hundred. And in the time of this dinner, the Emperour vnto many fauours to the ambassadour and about the midst of dinner (standing vp) vnto a great carouse to the health of the Queene his good sister, and sent him a great bowle full of Rhenish wine and sugar to pledge him.

The ambassadour after this, was often called to Court, where he had conference both with the Emperour and his councell of the matters in question, touching both ambassages, which diuers times raised many iarrs: and in the end, after sundry meetings, the Emperour finding himselfe not satisfied to his liking, for that the ambassadour had not power by his commission to prebide euery thing that he thought fit, as a man whose will was selborne wouted to be gainesayd, let loose his passion, and with a sterne and angry countenance tolde him that he did not reckon the Queene of England to be his fellow: for there are (quoth he) that are her betters.

The ambassadour greatly misliking these speeches, & being very vntwilling (how dangerous soeuer it might proue to his owne person) to giue way to the Emperour, to derogate ought from the honour and greatnesse of her Paletie: and finding also that to subiect himselfe to the angry humour and disposition of the Emperour was not the meanes to winne ought at his hands, with like courage and countenance to answer him, tolde him that the Queene his Pistrelle was as great a prince as any was in Christendome, equall to him that thought himselfe the greatest, well able to defend herselfe against his malice who soeuer, and wanted no meanes to offend any: whether she had, or should haue cause to be enemy vnto. *Pea* (quoth he) what sayest thou to the French king, and the king of Spaine? *Pea* (quoth the ambassadour) I holde the Queene my Pistrelle as great as any of them both. Then what sayest thou (quoth hee) to the Emperour of Germany? Such is the greatnesse of the Queene my Pistrelle (quoth the ambassadour) as the King her father had (not long since) the Emperour in his pay, in his warres against France.

This answer misliked the Emperour yet so much more, as that he tolde the ambassadour, that were he not an ambassadour, he woulde throw him out of the doores. Whereunto he answered that he might doe his will, for he was now fast within his countrey: but he had a Pistrelle who (he doubted not) woulde be reuenged of any iniury that should be done vnto him. Whereupon the Emperour in great sudden bade him get him home. And he with no more reuerence then such sage required, saluted the Emperour, and went his way.

All this notwithstanding, the ambassadour was not much sooner out of the chamber, and the Emperours cholar somewhat settled, but he deliuered to his councell that stood about him commendations in the fauour of the ambassadour, for that he woulde not indure one ill word to be spoken against his Pistrelle, and there withall willed himselfe to haue such a seruant.

The ambassadour had not bene much more then one houre in his lodging, but the Emperour (as it seemed) by the extraordinary behauior of the ambassadour (for he wanted not to iudge) that he had found what was the Emperours case, sent his principall secretary vnto him to tell him, that notwithstanding what had past, yet for the great loue that he bare to the Queene his sister, he should very shortly be called againe to Court, and haue a resolution of all the matters in question: and this secretary was now further content to impart, and sayd to the ambassadour that the Emperour was fully resolved to send a greater noble man home with him in ambassage to the Queene his sister, then euer he yet at any time sent out of his countrey: and that he desired also to send to the Queene a present worth thre thousand pounds, and to gratifie himselfe his departure with a gift that should be worth a thousand pounds: and tolde him also that the next day the Emperour woulde send a great noble man vnto him, to conferre with him of certayn affaires done him by Shaikan the chancelloz, and his ministers.

And so the day following he sent Bodan Belkoy the chiefeest counsellor that he had, a man in credit with him: this man examined all matters where with the ambassadour had found himselfe grieved, and supplied him with what hee wanted, and righted him in all things wherein hee bene wronged.

Not long after the returne of the ambassadour, a new and much larger shippe after sent the same to diet was so great, as the ambassadour would not by any means.

One bushell of fine meale for
One bushell of wheate mea
a hols.
Two liue geese for one day.
Twenty hennes for the day.
Seuen sheepe for a day.
One oxe for thre dayes.
One shee of poike for a day.
Seventie egges for a day.
Ten pound of butter.
Seventy penny white loanes of
Twelue penny loanes of bread
One becher of gallon of wine.
Two beathers of salt cabiges.
One pecke of onions.
Ten pound of salt.
Ninefine, or lixe penny woozth
dies.

3 Prouender

How he began so much to discor
up, as he sent to the ambassadour, a
physician, might serdowne the poi
soned to be done accordingly, and
for them (with much good allowan
ce) others of his nobility.

How he dyed hotly againe in qu
woulde send againe into England, to
upon his next ambassage send him
land, and carpe his treasure with him.

Here you must vnderstand that the
his ambassadour to haue had the lady
nability of body, by occasion of much
friends, or both, tooke no place.

The ambassadour was now so farre
England, as those great counsellors
cious of some publike courtlies a
with they no any more interpose th
his, the Emperour for abusing the am
the chancelier very grievously, an
his.

How whilst the ambassadour was
wille in all he might, not one ly for
also ly all the good meanes he n
so not long after wanne at the Em
to treat for by his instructions, but
the merchants.

Pruate sutes obtained o

Came for Richard Fransham an En
children, to come home into England

For long after the returne of this noble man, the Emperour caused to be set downe in his owne presence, a new and much larger allowance of diet for the ambassadoꝝ; then he had had before, and diet was so great, as the ambassadour by his principall Secretarie Sauio Frollo. This would not by any means.

The seroule of the new diet was this :

One bushell of fine meale for three dayes.	Two alnines of tallow candles.
One bushell of wheate meale for a day and a halfe.	One fourth part of a beather of cherrie mead.
Two lue geese for one day.	As much of Mallynouomead.
Twenty hennes for the day.	Halfe a beather of burnt wine.
Seuen sheepe for a day.	One beather of sodden mead called O-barni.
One oke for three dayes.	Three beathers of sweet mead.
One sbe of poike for a day.	Ten beathers of white mead.
Seventie egges for a day.	Fifteene beathers of ordinary mead.
Ten pound of butter.	Four beathers of sweet beere.
Seventy peny white loaves of bzead.	Fifteene beathers of beere.
Twelve peny loaves of bzead.	Halfe a pound of pepper.
One beather of gallon of vineger.	Three sollitins of ounces of saffron.
Two beathers of salt cabiges.	One sollitinske of mase.
One pecke of onions.	One sollitinske of nummegs.
Ten pound of salt.	Two sollitinske of cloves.
On alninske of fire peny wooꝝth of waxe candles.	Three sollitinske of Ananon.

{ Prouender, { One bushell of oats.
 { One load of hay.
 { One load of straw.

Now he began so much to discouer his purpose and affections towards her Maiesty & her counsell, as he sent to the ambassadoꝝ, intreating him that his preacher, and doctoꝝ Jacob his English physician, might set downe the points of the religion in vse in England, which the ambassadour came to be done accordingly, and sent them vnto him, who seemed so well to like them, as he caused them (with much good allowance) to be publicly read before diuers of his counsell, and many others of his nobility.

Now he dyed hotly againe in question to marry some kinswoman of her Maiesties, & that he would send againe into England, to haue some one of them: a wife, and if her Maiestie would not send, and carry his treasure with him, and marry one of them there.

Here you must vnderstand that the yeeꝝe before this ambassage, he had sent to her Maiesty by his ambassadoꝝ to haue had the lady Mary Hastings in marriage, which intreaty by meanes of her inability of body, by occasion of much sickness, or perhaps, of no great liking either of herselfe or friends, or both, tooke no place.

The ambassadoꝝ was now so farre growen into the Emperours fauor, & his affection so great to England, as those great counsellors that were the ambassadoꝝs great enemies before, were now vnto some publike courtelies at his hands for their aduantage to the Emperour: nether did they now any moꝝe interpose themselves twixt the Emperour and him: for not long before this, the Emperour for abusing the ambassadoꝝ, had (to shew his fauor towards him) beaten Shal-lotte the chancelier very grievously, and had sent him word, that he would not leaue one of his race.

Now whilst the ambassadoꝝ was thus strongly possesed of the Emperours fauor, he employed himselfe in all he might, not onely for the speedy dispatch of the negotiation he had in hand, but likewise also by all the good meanes he might, further to benefit his countrey and countrey men, as is not long after wanne at the Emperours hands not onely all those things he had in commission to treat for by his instructions, but also some other of good and great importance, for the benefit of the merchants.

Private sutes obtained of the Emperor by the ambassador.

Came for Richard Franham an English man and apothecary to the Emperour, his wife, and children, to come home into England, and to bring with him all such goods as he had gotten

We obtained like leave for Richard Elmes an Englishman one of the Emperours surgeons.
We also got leave for Iane Ricards the widow of Doctor Bonelius a Dutchman, and physician to the Emperour, who for treason practised with the king of Pole against the said Emperour, was rolled to death at the city of Mosco, in the year 1579.

These following he obtained for the behoofe of the merchants.

He procured for the merchants promise of recompense for certaine goods taken from their factories by robbery upon the Volga.

We obtained likewise the payment of five hundred marks, which was payd for ten yeeres before his going into Russia (into the Emperours receit) for a rent of a house that they had at Volga.

We also got granted for them the repayment of fiftene hundred marks, which had bene exacted of them the two last yeeres before his coming thither.

We got also for them order for the repayment of an olde and desperate debt of thre thousand marks, a debt so desperate, as foure yeeres left out of their accounts, and by the opinion of them all, not thought fit to be dealt with, for too much offending the Emperour, or impeaching his other businesse, which was thought at least otherwise sufficient, and was therefore left out of his instructions from her Maiestie.

We obtained that all strangers were forbidden to trade any more into Russia, and that the passage and trade to all the Emperours Northen coasts and countreies, from the Wardhouse to the river of Ob should be onely free to the English nation.

Lastly, of a great desire he had to do the merchants good, without motion either of themselves here, or their Agents there, or any other of them, he obtained of the Emperour the abatement of all their custome which they had long before payd, and agreed still to continue, which custome the Dutchmen and strangers being remooued, as now it was agreed, amounted to two thousand pounds yearly.

All these were granted, some already payd before his coming from Mosco, the olde privilege ratified, newly written, signed and sealed, and was to be deliuered to the ambassadour at his next coming to Court, before when the Emperour fell sicke of a surfer, and so died.

After whose death the case was woonderously altered with the ambassadour: for whereas both in his owne conceit, and in all mens opinion els, he was in great favour to haue growen a great man with the Emperour, what for the loue he bare to her Maiestie, and the particular liking he had of himselfe, he now fell into the hands of his great enemies, Mekia Romanouich and Andre Shalkan the chanceller, who, after the death of the Emperour, tooke the speciall gouernment upon themselves, and so presently caused the ambassadour to be shut vp a close prisoner in his owne house, for the space of nine weeks, and was so straightly guarded and badly vsed by those that attended him, as he daily suspected some further mischiefe to haue followed: for in this time there grew a great vyzze in Mosco of night twenty thousand persons, which remembering that his enemies reigned, somewhat amazed the ambassadour, but yet afterwards the matter fell out against that great counsellor Bodan Belskoy, whom I noted before to be a speciall man in the old Emperours fauour: who was now notwithstanding so outrageously assaulted, as that he was forced to seek the Emperours chamber for his safety, and was afterwards sent away to Cazan, a place he had in gouernment, five hundred miles from Mosco, where he hath remained euer since, and neuer yet called againe to court, at which time the ambassadour expected some such like measure, and prepared himselfe as well as he could, for his defence: yet happily after this, was sent for to court, haue his dispatch, and to take his leave of the Emperour: whicher being conducted (not after the wonted manner) and brought to the counsell chamber, came to him onely Shalkan the chanceller and a brother of his, who without more adoe, tolde him for the summe of his dispatch, that the Emperour would not treat of further amity with the Queene his mistresse, then such as was betwene his late father and her, before his coming thither: and would not beare any reply to be made by the ambassadour, but presently caused both himselfe and all his company to be disarmed of their weapons, and go to wards the Emperour. In which passage there were such outrages offered him, as had he not vsed more patience then his disposition afforded him, or the occasion required, he had not in likelihood escaped with life, but yet at length was brought to the presence of the Emperour, who sayd nothing to him, but what the chanceller had already done, but offered him letter to carry to her Maiestie, which the ambassadour (for that he knew it contained nothing that did concerne his ambassage) refused till he saw his danger grow too great: neither would the Emperour suffer the ambassadour to reply ought, nor well he could, for they had now of pur-

taken away his interpreter, (purpose) that the Emperour at there was at that time, in that denoe, brother to the Emperour, the ambassadour most honourable, but his authority was so sent off into him, not long with a gift of two faire pieces of cloth, that as he was kindnesse and beloue and brotherhood twice in no more fauour nor friendship had now sent him word that the dangers and disgraces too many coponation of the new Emperour one meane gentleman appointed some sudden reuenge to be done from the Mosco, & therefore selfe and his servants for his defence, chanced al together leaue him, pay him) that if any such thing should offer to execute it, should make his passage the safer. So length he recovered S. Nicholas and his ill usage since then at the his dispatch, contempning nothing him (in the name of the Emperour) knowing all these to be done in discharge of some part of them in his danger, in getting to his ship should be offered him, after he had him thither, by three or foure of the him of life at his lodging, his mistress (though hardly) recovered his ship, but after him, to force him to the ambassadour from S. Nicholas, the 11 of September following, and having killed her Maiesties hands, and sent her an Elke or Losh, the Red and Doe, both bearing very huge burdens upon it, after the manner of the Samoyeds, where the yeere come ouer the sea in these verres into Russia, where the ambassadour came into Kent.

The manner of the preference of our English merchants

John Basilwich, Lord, King, and gentleman of Thomas, his company, 1010, in the 7082. yeere of the two Mekinowich Borozden, took of us for his Maiestie 200. reames of paper, which bene payd which amounteth to 21600. and in the 84. yeere the dyake Stephan the summe of 1032. rubles and one shilling in the said 84. yeere the dyalethe for the use, sundry commodities, and the said goods.

taken away his interpreter, being yet unwilling (as it seemed, and suspecting the ambassadors purpose) that the Emperour and other should know how dishonourably he had been handled: for there was at that time, in that presence a noble brave gentleman, one Boris Phedorovich Genesle, who yet after the death of the Emperour did always use the ambassadour most honourably, and would very willingly have done him much more kindness, but his authority was not yet, till the coronation of the Emperour: but notwithstanding he sent often unto him, not long before his departure, and accompanied him many honorable favours: that as there was kindness and brotherhood with the Emperour and her Majesty, so there might be love and brotherhood with him and the ambassadour, saving from this man, there was now no more favour nor friendship left for the ambassadour in Moscovia: for the chancellor Shaikan had now sent him word that the English Emperour was dead: he had now nothing offered him but dangers and disgraces too many, and a hasty dispatch from the Mosco, that he might not tarry the coronation of the new Emperour: offences many in his preparation for his long journey, onely one meane gentleman appointed to accompany him in his preparation for his long journey, onely some sudden revenge to be done upon him, for so he understood it was threatened before his coming from the Mosco, & therefore with resolution provided by all the meanes he might, by himselfe and his servants for his defence (for now was his danger known such, as the English merchants did altogether leave him, although he commanded them in her Majesties name to accompany him) that if any such thing should happen to be offered him, as many of them as he could should offer to execute it, should die with him for company: which being perceived was thought length he recovered. So after ward being driven to disgest many iniuries by the way, at which his ill usage since then at the Mosco, he being forced to take a bare letter for the Emperour, (in the name of the Emperour) in respect of that that was meant him by the old Emperour, knowing all these to be done in disgrace of her Majesty and himselfe, determined now to be discharged of some part of them in such sort as he could, and so providing as he might to prevent his danger, in getting to his shippe, furnishing and placing his men to answer any assault that should be offered him, after he had bidden farewell to the uncourteous gentleman that brought him thither, by three or foure of the valiantest and discreetest men he had, he sent to be delivered him of life at his lodging, his masters make letter, and worse present, and so afterwards happily (though hardly) recovered his ship in safetie, although presently afterwards, there was great hurt done after him, to force him to receive the same againe, but failed of their purpose. So came the ambassadour from S. Nicholas the twelfth day of August, and arrived at Graucend the twelfth of September following, and attended her Majesty at the court at Orelands, where, after having kiss her Majesties hands, and delivered some part of the successe of his ambassage, he presented her an Elke of Loshe, the Red deere of the countrey, and also a brace of Raine deare, Buck and Doe, both bearing very huge horns: they in her Majesties presence drew a sled and a man upon it, after the manner of the Samocds, a people that inhabite in the North-east from Russia, and were that yeere come over the sea in the winter season upon the ice, in their sleds, drawn with sledges into Russia, where the ambassadour bought of them severenteene, whereof he brought nine alive into Kent.

The great friendship of S. Boris Phedorovich.

The manner of the preferring of sutes in Russia, by the example of our English merchants bill, exhibited to the Emperour.

John Basilwich, Lord, King, and great Duke of all Russia, the English merchants, William, Thomas, with his company sue unto, in the 7082. yeere of the worlds creation, the English merchants, William, Maknowich Borozden, took of us for thy use 12. pounds of loose sugar, pyssed at 8. rubles the pound, which sugar was sent to the Sloboda, where, the sayd Gregorie treasurer, took of us for thy use 200. reames of paper, pyssed at 20. altines the reame, for all which the money hath bene paid which amounteth to 216. rubles. And in the 84. yeere thy vikaie Stephan Lighachdo took of us for thy use copper plates, the summe of 1032. rubles and one fourth part unpaid for. Also in the said 84. yeere thy vikaie Iuan Blasghoy, and Iuan Sobakin took of us for thy use, sundry commodities, and have not paid 630. rubles, the rest of the money due for the said goods.

The Emperours house of recreation.

In the 85. yere the saides treasurers Peter Ghoulouen tooke of vs for the saides, cloth of sundry sorts, and hath not payd of the money due therfore 538. robes.

In the 88. yere, the saides Andrea Shalkan, and Ilomay Yenkoy tooke of vs lead for the saides, to the value of 267. robes and a halfe not payd.

And in the same yere the saides diak Boris Gregoriwich had for the saides 15. houndcloths of diverse sorts, prised at 210. robes, whereof 90. robes are unpaid.

Also in the said 88. yere the said Andrea Shalkan tooke from vs 1000. robes for the saides (Lond) in ready money, yet we know not whether by the saides appointment.

And also in the 89. yere (Lond) the said Andrea Shalkan tooke from vs for the saides 500. robes, we know not whether by the saides order or no, because that the saides people do percerly take away from vs, neither do they give vs right in any cause.

All the mony (Lond) which is not payd vs out of the saides treasurers for our commodities or wares, with the money taken from vs by Andrea Shalkan, is 4273. robes 25. altines.

Right noble king and Lord, shew the mercie, and cause the money to be payd vs which is owing for our goods, as also that which hath bene taken from vs: extend thy fauour, King and Lord,

A letter of M. Henrie Lane to the worshipfull M. William Sanderfon, containing a briefe discourse of that which passed in the North-east discovery for the space of three and thirtie yeeres.



After Sanderfon, as you lately requested mee, to haue I sought, and though I cannot finde things that heretofore I kept in writing, and lent out to others, yet perusing at London copies of mine old letters to content one that meaneth to pleasure many, I haue briefly and as truly as I may, bytween out as followeth: The rough hewing may be planed at your leisure, or as please him that shall take the paines.

First the honourable attempt to discover by sea North-east and North-west named for Cathay, being chiefly procured by priuledge from king Edward the first, and other his nobilitie, by and at the cost and lute of M. Sebastian Cabota, then gouernour for discoveries with sir Andrew Iudde, sir George Barnes, sir William Garrard, M. Anthony Huffle, and a companie of merchants, was in the last yere of his saides reignes 1553. The generall charge whereof was committed to one sir Hugh Willoughbie knight, a goodly Gentleman, accompanied with sufficient number of Pilots, Masters, Merchants and Mariners, hauing three shippes well furnished, to wit, The Bona Speranza, the Edward Bonadventure, and the Confidentia. The Edward Bonadventure, Richard Chancellor being Pilot, and Steven Burrough said, hauing discovered Wadhough upon the coast of Finmark, by Rojme or fogge departed from the rest, found the bay of St. Nicholas now the chiefe port for Russia, there wintered in safety, and had ayde of the people of a village called Newnow.

The other two shippes attempting further Northwards (as appeared by pamphlets found after written by sir Hugh Willoughbie) were in September encountered with such extreme colde, that they put backe to seeke a wintering place: and missing the said bay fell vpon a desolate coast in Lappia, entering into a Riuer immediately frozen by, since discovered, named Arzina Recca, distant East from a Russian Monastery of Monkes called Pechingho, from whence they neuer returned, but all to the number of 70. persons perished, which was for want of experience to haue made caues and stoues. These were found with the shippes the next Summer Anno 1554. by Russe fishermen: and in Anno 1555. the place sent vnto by English Merchants as hereafter appeareth.

Anno 1554. the said shippe Edward Bonadventure (although robbed homeward by the Russians) returned with her company to London, shewing and setting forth their entertainments and discovery of the countreys euen to the citie of Mosco, from whence they brought a printing witten in Russe with the Kings or great Dukes seale, the other two shippes looked for and known to them where they were.

An. 1555. the said company of Merchants for discoverie vpon a new supply, sent thither to gaine with two shippes, to wit, the Edward Bonadventure, and another bearing the name of the Queen and Quene, Philip and Marie, whose saides by their letters to the said Goscountie, recommended sundry their subiects then passing, wherof certaine, to wit, Richard Chancellor, George Killingworth, Henry Lane, and Arthur Edwards, after their arrival at the Bay, and passing by Dwina to Vologda, went first by to Mosco, where, vpon knowledge of the said letters, they with their traine had speciall entertainment, with houses and diet appointed, and shortly permitted

the pinnces presence, they with and palace, replenished with furnished in shew with ancient, baldekin, and violet, a fewels, and chaines. These and other their merchants of Treasure, waiting and waiting.

Then entering into the presence, and richer shew, in number came in, doing reuerence, they when our King and Queenes on, our men killing his hande brought enough, where might be seen, a. in walsh bottles, and set bare headed, his crowne at his Metropolitan, with diuers late over against him, or any, at shew with gheses set, there was wit, strangers or merchants by against the pinnce: and then began Gentlemen, in such rich attire, standing their owne furniture) e reuerently time from him by name chard, George, Henry, Arthur, fine white and clarified honie, once a cup from his hand to drinke, which reached over the cable, or p in, like in Russe, this is Gods gift yellow coloured, but in length fur they were accompanied and followed, to our lodging.

This yere the two shippes, which were sent vnto by Master Killing (peers) and much of the goods and

Anno 1556. The company sent to bring home the two shippes, which two shippes sent this yere from England in loading with passengers, to wit, a shippes with Richard Chancellor in Lappia, with all their new Masters and brought sene, after their two y and sunke, wherein were drowned a our. A third shippe the Edward a was also lost, and Master Ch and hardy escaping, with other land, from the King, Quene, a Huffle, and others: And then, as in what London.

This yere also the company furnished the barbozowes in the North coast Nicholas. There was in her Master and eight other. Their discovery was are the river of Ob, and found a for the Caroe or Gappe. In that place in August, by which extremitie, at Moscow.

Anno 1557. The company with for company with him, sent as an Agent forward anno 1558, with great fauor

Anno 1553.
M. William Burrough was then passing, and with his brother in this first voyage.

Newnow (as to the coast of St. Nicholas) distant about 35 miles.

Note.

Anno 1554.

Anno 1555.

The King and Quene's letters.

the pince's presence, they were with gentlemen brought through the cite of Mosco, to the castle and palace, replenished with numbers of people, and some gunners. They entered sundry rooms, ruffe, balckin, and violet, as our vestments and capes have bene in England, suitable with caps, jewels, and chaines. These were found to be no courtiers, but ancient goshcoltes, inhabitants, Craftsme, waiting this apparell for the time, and so to restore it.

Then entering into the presence, being a large roome floored with carpets, were men of more estate, and richer shew, in number aboute an hundred set square: who after the said English men came in, doing reverence, they all stood up, the pince onely sitting, and yet rising at any occasion; when our King and Queenes names were read or spoken. Then after speeches by interpreters, on, our men killing his hande, and bidden to dinner, were layed in another roome, and at dinner brought forth, where might be seene masse: sluer and gilt plate, some like and as bigge as killist bare headed, his crowne and rich cappe standing upon a pinnacle by. Not farre, distant late his Metropolitane, with diuers other of his kindred, and chiefe Tartarian Captaines: none late over against him, or any, at other tables, their backs towards him: which tables all furnished with strangers or merchants by ship, a table in the midst of the roome, where they were set direct against the pince: and then began the service, brought in by a number of his young Lozoes and Gentlemen, in such rich attire, as is above specified: and still from the pince's table (not withdrawing time from him by name to them, by their severall Christian names, as they late, viz. Richard, George, Henry, Arthur, Likewise bread and sundry drinckes of purified mead, made of one cup from his hand to drinke, and tooke into his hand Master George Killingworth's beere, which reached over the table, & pleasantly delivered it the Metropolitane, who seeming to blesse it, sayd in Russe, this is Gods gift. As in deede at that time it was not onely thicke, broad, and yellow coloured, but in length five foot and two inches of allize. Then taking leaue, being night, they were accompanied and followed with a number, carrying pots of drinke, and dishes of meate, pressed, to our lodging.

sp. Killingworth's beere of a marvellous length.

This were the two shippes, with the dead bodies of Sir Hugh Willoughbie, and his people, were sent unto by Master Killingworth, (which remained there in Mosco Agent almost two yeeres) and much of the goods and victuals were recovered and saved.

Anno 1556. The company sent two shippes for Russia, with extraordinary masters and sailors Anno 1556. to bring home the two shippes, which were frozen in Lappia, in the river of Arzina as before said. The two shippes sent this yeere from England sailing from Lapland to the Bay of St. Nicholas, took in loading with passengers, to wit, a Russe ambassado, named Ioseph Napea, and some of his men shipped with Richard Chancellor in the Edward. But so it fell out that the two which came from Lappia, with all their new Masters and Mariners, neuer were heard of, but in foule weather, and tempest, wherein were drowned also diuers Russe merchants, and seruants of the ambassade. A third shippe the Edward as before said, sailing on the North part of Scotland, upon a bad night hardly escaping, with other his men, mariners, & some goods saved, were sent for into Scotland, from the King, Queene, and Merchantes (the messenger being M. Doctor Laurence Hostie, and others:) And then, as in the chronicles appeareth, honorably entertained and received at London.

This yeere also the company furnished and sent out a pinnesse, named the Serchthrift, to discover the harborowes in the North coast from Norway to Wardhouse, and so to the Bay of St. Nicholas. There was in her Master and Pilot, Stephen Burrough, with his brother William, and eight other. Their discovery was beyond the Bay, towards the Samoeds, people dwelling in the river of Ob, and found a Sound or sea with an Island called Vaigats, first by them put in August, by which extreme, and lacke of time, they came backe to Russia, and wintered at Almogro.

Anno 1557. The company with foure good shippes, sent backe the said Russe ambassado, and company with him, sent as an Agent, for further discovery, Master Anthony Ienkinson, who Anno 1557. returned anno 1558, with great favour of the pince of Moscouia, and his letters passed the river Boghar bagage.

of purpose was cast among the people in great quantitie. The lord Boris Phedorowich was sumptuously, and richly attired, with his garments decked with great orient pearle, beset with all sorts of precious stones. In like rich manner were appareled all the family of the Godonowes in their degrees, with the rest of the princes, and nobilitie, whereof one named Knez Iuan Michalovich Glynsky, whose robe, horse, and furniture, was in register found worth one hundred thousand markes sterling, being of great antiquitie. The Emperesse being in her pallace, was placed in her chaire of State also before a great open window: most precious, and rich were her robes, and shining to behold, with rich stones, and orient pearle beset, her crowne was placed upon her head, accompanied with her Princesses, and Ladies of estate: then cried out the people, God preserve our noble Emperesse Irenia. After all this the Emperour came into the Parliament house which was richly decked: there he was placed in his royall seat adornoed as before: his 6. or 7. robes were set before him upon a table: the basin, and ewer royall of gold held by his knight of guard with his men standing two on each side in white apparell of cloth of silver, called Rindoy, with scepters, and battle axes of gold in their hands: the Princesses, and nobilitie were all placed according to their degrees all in their rich robes.

The Emperour after a short oration, permitted every man in order to kisse his hand: which being done, he removed to a princely seate prepared for him at the table: where he was served by his nobles in very princely order. The three out rooms being very great, and large were beset with plate of golde, and silver round, from the ground up to the vaults one upon the other: among which plate were many barrells of silver and golde: this solemnitie, and triumph lasted a whole weeke, wherein many royall pastimes were shewed and used: after which the chiefest men of the nobilitie were elected to their places of office, & dignitie, as the Prince Boris Phedorowich was made chiefe Counsellor to the Emperour, Master of the horse, had the charge of his person, Lieutenant of the Empire, and Warlike engines, Gouvernor of Lieutenant of the Empire of Cazan, and Astracan and others: to this dignitie were by Parliament, and gift of the Emperour given him many revenues, and rich lands, as there was given him, and his for ever to inherit a province called Vaga, of 300. English miles in length, and 250. in breadth, with many towns and great villages populous and wealthy, his yearly revenue out of that province, is 35. thousand markes sterling, being not the 5. part of his yearly revenue. Further, he and his house be of such authoritie, and power, that in 40. dayes warning they are able to bring into the sieles 100. thousand Souldiers well furnished.

The conclusion of the Emperours Coronation was a peale of ordinance, called a peale royall two miles without the citie, being 170. great pieces of brasse of all sorts, as faire as any can be made, these pieces were all discharged with shot against bulwarkes made of purpose: 20. thousand hargubuliers standing in 8. ranks two miles in length, appareled all in velvet, calverns like & Hamlets, discharged their shot also twice over in good order: and so the Emperour accompanied with all his princes and nobles, at the least 50. thousand horse departed through the City to his pallace. This royall coronation would aske much time, and many leaues of paper to be described particularly as it was performed: it shal suffice, to understand that the like magnificence was never seene in Russia.

The coronation, and other triumphes ended, all the nobilitie, officers, and merchants according to an accustomed order every one in his place, and degree brought rich presents unto the Emperour, wishing him long life, and joy in his kingdom.

The same time also Master Ierom Horsey aforesaid, remaining as servant in Russia for the Queenes most excellent Maestie, was called for to the Emperour, as he sat in his imperiall seat, and then also a famous Merchant of Netherland being newly come to Mosco. (who gave himselfe out to be the king of Spaines subiect) called Iohn de Wale, was in like sort called in. Some of the nobilitie would have preferred this subiect of the Spaniard before Master Horsey, because to the Queen of England, whereunto Master Horsey would in no case agree, saying he would have his legges cut off by the knees, before he would yeeld to such an indignitie offered to his Soueraigne the Queenes Maestie of England, to bring the Emperour a present, in count after the King of Spaines subiect, or any other whatsoever. The Emperour, and the Prince Boris Phedorowich perceiving the controuersie, sent the Lord Treasurer Peter Iuanowich Godouny, and Vaski Shalkan, both of the Counsell, to them, who delivered the Emperour backe, Master Horseyes speech: whereupon he was first in order (as good reason) admitted and presented to the Emperour in the behalfe of the English Merchants trading thither, a present wishing him to live long to raigne in tranquillitie, and so kisse the Emperours hand, he accepting the present with good liking, and avouching, that for his sisters sake Queene Elizabeth of England, he would be a gracious Lord to her Merchants, in as ample manner as ever his father had ben: and being dismissed

he had the same day sent of gins very bountifull with his present, whom the Queen of England receiue favour according.

All these things thus in and Emperesse very deuout Crinitie Sunday betooke she called Sergius and the e a huge armie of Noblemen accordingly.

The Emperesse of deuotness and ladies, no small counsellor or attendant, to Demetri Iuanowich Godouny to Mosco: shortly after came a power into the land of conquered in due peere and a her prisoner the Emperour of and noble men, which were brought into the citie in very

Preupon the corrupt offic kingdome were removed, and penient, under seuerer punishment the old Emperours time, and now that this might be the better calkes, customes, and duties, were now abated, and some who insufficient and due prooffe, although noble men of great houses, that were, were now set at libertie their trespasses forgiven. In summe and yet all was done quietly, civilly, and this byed great all the wisdom especially of Irenia

These things being reported a return upon Russia, they grew so fierce as called the Crimean Tartar as some countrie to the Emperour of Mosco, although to them that were so valiant: their comming was so terrible the Tartar prince having brought entertainment, and princely welcom

Not long after, 1200. Polish gentlemen their service to the Emperour, and people of other nations came and Emperour was spied over other king with himselfe and prosperitie in his Persian, the Bogharian, the Crimean also Ambassadors from the Emperour his coronation no enemy of his

It fell out not long after, that the Queen of England, for which she was one of the Queenes a bene of which message was, that the and the message of strange with Irenia, with other private affairs Master Horsey having received the Emperours land, and departed from

he had the same day sent him 70. dishes of sundry kinds of meats, with 3. carts laden with all sorts of drinks very bountifully. After him was the Cypselap subject of the Spanish king admitted with his present, whom the Emperour would be no lesse faithfull and seruicable vnto him, then the Queene of England's subjects were & had bene, and then the king of Spaines subjects should receive fauour accordingly.

All these things thus in order perfozmed, yasses were sung in all the churches. The Emperour and Emperesse very deuoutly resorted on foote to many principal Churches in the Citie, and vpon the called Sergius and the Trinitie, 60. miles distant from the Citie of Mosco, accompanied with a huge army of Noblemen, Gentlemen and others, mounted vpon goodly horses with furniture accordingly.

The Emperesse of deuotion tooke this journey on foot all the way, accompanied with her princesses and ladies, no small number: her guard and gunners were in number 20000. her chiefe counsellor or attendant, was a noble man of the blood Roial her vnckle of great authoritie called Demetri Iuanowich Godonoua. All this progresse ended, both the Emperour and Emperesse returned to Mosco: shortly after the Emperour by the direction of the prince Boris Pheodorowich, sent a power into the land of Siberia, where all the rich Sables & furs are gotten. This power conquered in one yeere and a halfe, 1000. miles. In the performance of this warre, there was taken prisoner the Emperour of the countrey called Chare Sibersky, and with him many other dukes and noble men, which were brought to Mosko with a guard of souldiers and gunners, who were received into the citie in very honorable maner, and do there remaine to this day.

Chare Sibersky
prince of Siberia
taken prisoner
and brought to
Mosco.

Whereupon the corrupt officers, Judges, Iustices, captains and lieutenants through the whole kingdom were remoued, and more honest men substituted in their places, with expresse commandement, vnder severe punishment to surcease their old vsing & extortion which they had vsed in the old Emperours time, and now to execute true iustice without respect of persons: and to the same key, customes, and duties, which were before layd vpon the people in the old Emperours time, were now abated, and some wholly remitted, and no punishments commanded to be vsed, without sufficient and due proofe, although the crime were capitall, deseruing death: many Dukes and noble men of great houses, that were vnder displeasure, and imprisoned 20. yeeres by the old Emperour, were now set at libertie and restored to their lands: all prisoners were set at libertie, and their restlesse forgotten. In summe, a great alteration vniuersally in the gouernment followed, and yet all was done quietly, chailly, peaceably, without trouble to the prince, or offence to the subjects: and this yed great assurance and honour to the kingdom, and all was accomplished by the wisdom especially of Irenia the Emperesse.

Cylichaga being reported and caried to the eares of the kings and princes that were neighbours vpon Russia, they grew so fearefull and terrible to them, that the Monarch of all the Scythians called the Crimie Tartar or great Can himselfe, named Sopher Keri Ali, came out of his home countrey to the Emperour of Russia, accompanied with a great number of his nobilitie well armed and valiant: their coming was gratefull to the Emperour, and their entertainment was honorable. The Tartar prince hauing brought with him his wines also, receiued of the Russe Emperour entertainment, and princely welcome according to their estates.

Sopher Keri Ali
king of the
Crimie Tartars
arrived at Mosco.

Not long after, 1200. iolly gentlemen, valiant souldiours, and proper men came to Mosko offering their service to the Emperour, who were all entertained: and in like sort many Chirkasses, and people of other nations came and offered service. And as soon as the report of this new created Emperour was spread ouer other kingdoms of Europe, there were sent to him sundry Ambassadors with him and prosperitie in his kingdom: thither came Ambassadors from the Turke, from the Persian, the Bogharian, the Crimie, the Georgian, and many other Tartar princes. There came also Ambassadors from the Emperour of Almaine, the Pole, the Swethen, the Dane, &c. And his conuocation no enemy of his hath frustrated in his attempts.

It fell out not long after, that the Emperour was desirous to send a message to the most excellent Queene of England, for which service he thought no man fitter then M. Jerome Horsey, supposing that was of the Queene's own men and subjects would be the more acceptable to her. The message of which message was, that the Emperour desired a continuance of that league, friendship, and intercourse of traffique which was betwene his father and the Queene's maiestie and M. Horsey hauing receiued the letters and requests of the Emperour, provided for his journey, and departed from Mosco the first day of September, thence vnto Ower, to Torhook,

The new Em-
perour Pheodor
Iuanowich his
letters and re-
quests to the
Queene.

M. Horsey's
journey to
England
by Torhook.

1586

Torshook, to great Nouogrod, to Vobsky, and thence to Nyhouse in Liuania, to Wenden, and so to Riga: (where he was better, and brought forth with before a Cardinall called Rageuil, but yet suffered to passe in the end:) From thence to Mito, to Golden, and Libou in Curland, to Memel, to Koningsburgh in Prussia, to Elbing, to Dantzke, to Sterine in Pomerland, to Rostock, to Lubeck, to Hamborough, to Breme, to Emden, and by sea to London. Being arrived at her maiesties roiall court, and having deliuered the Emperors letters with good fauour, and gracious acceptance, he was forthwith againe commaunded to repasse into Russia, with other letters from her maiestie to the Emperoz, and yprince Boris Phedorowich, and writing the Emperors letters, and withall requesting the fauour and friendship, which his father had peeld to the English merchants: and hereunto was he earnestly also solicited by the merchants of London themselves of that company, to deale in their behaile. Being thus dispatched from London by sea, he arrived in Mosco, the 20. of April 1586. and was very honorably welcommed. And soz p merchants bechoofe, obtained all his requests, being therein specially fauoured by p noble yprince Boris Phedorowich, who alwayes affected p Horsey with speciall liking. And hauing obtained priuileges for the merchants, he was recommended from the Emperoz againe, to the Queene of England his mistress, by whom the yprince Boris, in token of his honorable and good opinion of the Queens maiestie, sent her highnesse a roiall present of Sables, Luyars, cloth of gold and other rich things. So that the Companie of English merchants, next to their thankfulness to her maiestie, are to account p Horsey patnes their speciall benefite, who obtained for them these priuileges, which in twentie yeeres before would not be granted.

The manner of p Horsey his last dispatch from the Emperoz, because it was very honorable, I thought good to record. He was freely allowed post horses for him and his seruants, victuals and all other necessaries for his long iourney: at euery towne that he came vnto from Mosco to Vologda, which is by land four hundred miles, he receiued the like free and bountifull allowance, at the Emperors charge. New victuall and pouillon were giuen him vpon the river Dwina at euery towne by the kings officers, being one thousand miles in length. When he came to the new castle called Archangel, he was receiued of the Duke Knez Vasilii Andrewich Iuenogorodich by the Emperors commission into the Castle, gunners being set in ranks after their vse, where he was sumptuously feasted: from thence hee was dispatched with bountifull pouillon and allowance in the Dukes boat, with one hundred men to rowe him, and one hundred Gunners in other boats to conduct him, with a gentleman capitaine of the Gunners. Continuing to the towne where the English, Dutch, and French ships rode, the gunners discharged, and the Duke in like manner 40. pieces of their ordinance, & so hee was brought to his lodging at the English house vpon Rose Island.

And that which was the full and complete conclusion of the fauour of the Emperoz and his Phedorowich to ward p Horsey, there were the next day sent him for his further pouillon vpon the sea by a gentleman and a capitaine the things following.

16. liue oxen.
70. sheepe.
600. hens.
25. slices of Bacon.
80. bushels of meale.
600. loaves of bread.
2000. eggs.
10. geese.
2. cranes.

2. swans.
65. gallons of mead.
40. gallons of Aquauize.
60. gallons of beere.
3. pong beares.
4. hawkes.
Stoie of onlons and garlike.
10. fresh salmons.
A wild boie.

All these things were brought him downe by a Gentleman of the Emperors, and another yprince Boris Phedorowich, & were receiued in order by John Frese seruant to p Horsey, together with an honorable present and reward from the yprince Boris, sent him by p Francis Chene an Englishman: which present was a whole very rich piece of cloth of gold, & a faire paire of Sables. This Gentleman hath obserued many other rare things concerning those partes, which hereafter (God willing) at more convenient time and leisure shall come to light.

Phedor Iuanowich the new Emperors gracious letter of priuilege to the English Merchants word for word, obtained by M. Jerome Horsey. 1586.



Through the will of the almightie, and without beginning God, which was before all world, whom we glorifie in p Trinitie, one only God the father, the sonne, and the holy ghost, maker of all things, worker of all in all euery where, fulfiller of all things, which will and working, hee both loueth and giueth life to man, That our onely

which inspireth euery on
Lopo Iesus Christ, and
to keep the right Scripture
to the subuoning of the peo

The Phedor the offi
fia of Volodemia, Mo
and great yprince of Smol
and great yprince of the lan
raissa, the White lake, Li
doz, and soz of many othe
I have gratified the mer
in Aldermen, Sir George E
with their fellowes.

I have licensed them to s
kind of commodities to tra
cities of our empire of Mosc
And the english merchant
them to trade into our ki
Plesko, and into all parts of

Therefore we for our sile
has great losse and hinderanc
glish merchants Sir Rowland
cosia, and into al our dominio
plature with all kind of their
culture for their goods, noz o
place by water, noz for lanchn
his boats, noz for their head
neither for acknowledgement
note by what name soeuer.

Only they shal not bying tw
y father any other mens goods
Also our naturall people shal
y kepe any of our naturall sub
Also they shal not send any o
commodities, but into what citie
stone commodities and not ours

And when they shal come into
our dominions with their comm
dices shal suffer them to deparc
for any of their commodities, nei
yprince, noz shal take of our de

Also into what places of our de
y sell, and wher elseuer they shal
ther will sell their owne, then in
waite of them, accordingly as befo

And I haue gratified them and
of our kingdom in all cities w
and write o of custome what soeuer

And the English merchants wh
our merchants, whole wares for w
is to say, neither by small tw
they shal sel and barter their wares

shall be valued by the piece and n
weight, not to sell by the small w
shall sel wines by the piper: and by th

And they shall buy, sell and excha
they shall not make sales or excha
and they themselves conuery o: car
and which of the English merre

which inspireth every one of us his onely chyldzen with his word, to discerne God through our
 Loz Jesus Christ, and the holy quickning spirit of life now in these perilous times, Establish vs
 to keep the right Scepter, and suffer vs of our selves to raigue to the good posite of the land, and
 to the subuening of the people, together with the enemies, and to the maintenance of vertue.

The Phedor the offspring of Iohn, the great Loz, Emperoz, king and great prince of all Rus-
 sia, of Volodemeria, Moscouia and Nouogrod, king of Cazan, king of Astracan, Loz of Plesko,
 and great prince of Smolensko, of Tuer, Yougoria, Permia, Viatsko, of Bolghar and others, loz
 and great prince of the land of the lower Nouogrod, Chernigo, Rezan, Polotsko, Rostow, Ye-
 rasslaue, the White lake, Liefland, Oudor, Condensa, and Ruler of all Siberia, and all the North-
 star, and loz of many other countries.

I haue gratified the merchants of England, to wit, sir Rowland Haiward, and Richard Mar-
 tin Aldermen, sir George Barnes, Thomas Smith esquire, Jerome Horsey, Richard Salconstall,
 with their fellowes.

I haue licenced them to saile with their shippes into our dominion the land of Dwina, with all
 kind of commodities to trade freely, and vnto our kingdom and the cite of Mosco, and to all the
 cities of our empire of Moscouia.

And the english merchants sir Rowland Haiward & his Societie desired vs, that we would gra-
 nte them to trade into our kingdom of Moscouia, and into our heritage of great Nouogrod and
 Plesko, and into all parts of our kingdom, to buy and sell with their wares without custome.

Therefore we for our sisters sake Queene Elizabeth, & also because that they allege that they
 had great losse and hinderance by the venture of the sea, and otherwise, haue gratified the said En-
 glish merchants sir Rowland Haiward and his Societie, haue granted the said En-
 couia, and into all our dominions with all kind of commodities, to trade, & traffique freely, & at their
 pleasure with all kind of their commodities: also I haue commanded not to take any manner of
 custome for their goods, nor other customs whatsoever: That is to say, neither for any manner of
 place by water, nor for launching, neither for passing through any place by land, neither for the ves-
 sel of boats, nor for their heads, nor for passing ouer bridges, nor for ferrying ouer at any place,
 neither for acknowledgement at any place where they shall come, nor any manner of custome or
 rate, by what name soeuer.

Only they shal not bring with them into our dominions, neither recarie out of our dominions,
 any father any other mens goods but their owne, neither sell them nor barter them away for them.
 Also our naturall people shal not buy and sell for them, or from them, neither shal they retaine
 any kepe any of our naturall subjects goods, or pawnes by them to colour them.
 Also they shal not send any of their Russe seruants about into any cite to ingrosse, or buy up
 commodities, but into what citie they themselves shal come, they shal buy and sell, and shal sel their
 some commodities and not ours.

And when they shal come into our inheritance of great Nouogrod and Plesko, and through all
 our dominions with their commodities, then our noblemen and captains, and euery one of our of-
 ficers shal suffer them to depart according to this our letter, & shal take no custome at all of them,
 for any of their commodities, neither for passing through or passing by, nor for passage ouer any
 bridges, nor shal take of them any other dutie whatsoever name they haue.

Also into what places of our dominion, or when they shal happen to come, and to proceed to buy
 or sell, and where soeuer they shal passe through with goods not buying of any commodities, nei-
 ther will sell their owne, then in those cities and towne they shal take no manner of custome or
 rate of them, according as before.

And I haue gratified them and giuen them free leaue to traffique throughout all the domini-
 ons of our kingdom in all cities with their goods, to buy and sell all manner of commodities, with-
 out any dutie or custome whatsoever.

And the English merchants where they are desirous to buy or sell, or barter their wares with
 our merchants, whole wares for wares, they shal sell their commodities whole, and not by retails:
 That is to say, neither by small weight nor by the yarb, to sell or barter in their owne houses, and
 they shal sel and barter their wares whole, Cloch by the packe, and by the whole Cloch, and Da-
 mme and veluet by the piece and not by the yarb, and al manner of commodities that are to be sold
 by weight, not to sell by the small weights, as by the pound and ounce, but by whole sale: also they
 shal sel wines by the pipe: and by the gallon, quart or troope they shal not sell.

And they shal buy, sell and exchange their owne commodities themselves, and the Russe mer-
 chants shal not make sales or exchange for them or from them any of their commodities, neither
 shal they themselves conuey or carie through any other mans goods at no place in stead of their
 wares: and which of the English merchants will at any time sell his commodities at Colmogro or
 Vologda

Vologda of Yeraslaue, they may, and of their commodities throughout all our cities and dominions, our noblemen, captains, and euery of our officers shall take no manner of custome, according as it is written in this our gracious letter: and throughout all our dominions and cities they shall hire carriers and bettels with men to labour, at their owne charge, to transport their goods.

So likewise, whensoever the English merchants are disposed to depart out of our kingdom into any other countrey into their owne land, if our pleasure be, they shall take our goods with them from our Treasure, and shall sell them, and exchange them for such commodity as is commodious for our kingdom, and shall deliuer it into our Treasure, and with those our commodities, our Noblemen and captains, and euery of our officers shall let them passe through all our cities also without custome according to these our letters.

Also whensoever the English merchants shall haue sold their owne goods & bought themselves commodities, & will depart out of Mosco, then they shall manifest themselves to our chiefe Secretarie Andrew Sholkaloue, in the office where the Ambassadors are alwayes dispatched.

And if the English merchants coming, haue had any mischance by the sea, in so much that the ship be broken, or if that ship do come to any part of our countrey: then we will cause the goods to be sought out in true Justice, and to be giuen to the English people, which at that time shall be here resident in our countrey: and if so be that it so fall out that at that time there be no Englishmen within our realme: then will we cause these goods to be laid by in a place together, and when the people of England shall come into our realme, then we will command all those goods to be deliuered to the said English people.

Also we haue gratified all the English merchants with the house of one Vrie here in the Mosco right ouer against S. Maximes church behind the market, and they shall dwell in the same house according as before time, and they shall keepe one alwayes in the house to keepe it, either a Russe, or one of their owne people.

Also the English merchants shall possesse their houses, to wit, at Yeraslaue, Vologda, Colmogro, and the house at the haven of the sea, & they shall dwell in those houses, according as our goodnes hath bene to them heretofore: and we haue commanded, that there shall not be taken of them no yearly rent, nor no manner of custome, tare, rent, or any other dutie whatsoever for those houses, neither shall they pay any dutie or tare with any of the townsmen of those places, & in euery one of those houses, to wit, at Yeraslaue, Vologda, and Colmogro, they shall haue men to keepe their houses, two or thre of their owne countrey people, strangers or els Russes, men of the meanest sort, which shall be no merchants, that they may lay their goods in those houses, and they may sell the commodities out of those their houses to whom they please, according to this our gracious letter: and those that keepe their houses shall not sell or buy no part of their commodity, except they be here or giue order, whereby they be not deceived by them.

So likewise I haue gratified them with their house at the sea haven, at the mouth of Poczemsky, & we haue commanded that they shall not carpe their goods from thence to the new castle S. Michael the archangel, but shall arise, and doe as they haue done heretofore with their wares at that their house, and shall vnbade their commodities out of their ships, and shall lade them againe with Russe commodities, euen there at that their house without interruption: onely they shall pay our officers of Colmogro & two yn men to write by those commodities, both the commodities of England, and those of Russe land, what the merchants shall declare themselves, & no otherwise, but they shall not ouerlook their commodities, neither shall they vnbind any of their packs.

And when the English merchants are disposed to send into their owne countrey, to wit, any of their owne people on land through any other kingdom whatsoever, they shall not send their people without our kingly knowledge and commandement, and which of their people so euer they will meane to send out of our kingdom into their owne countrey, then they shall send those their people, not without our kingly maiesties knowledge, to wit, those that go of pleasure without carrying any commodities with them, and they shall haue a letter of passe giuen vnto them, out of the office where the Ambassadors haue alwayes their dispatch.

And whosoever hath any thing to doe with them in matters of controuersie, either concerning merchandise or injuries, then they are to be iudged by our treasurers and Secretaries of the Ambassadors office to do iustice between both parties, & to seek out the truth of matters in all things, and whatsoever cannot be found out by the Law, shall be tried by othe and lots: whose lot shall be taken first, him to haue right.

And in what place of all our kingdom, in what citie soeuer they or their people shall be, that there happen any matter of controuersie, either concerning merchandise, injuries or otherwise, that they haue occasion to set vpon any man by lawe, or that any seeke vpon them, concerning what matter soeuer in all our kingdom and cities, then our Lieutenants, capitaines,

our officers shall giue them 3
the truth: and what cannot
sooner be taken out, him to haue
of them no kind of dutie, for in
giuen in our princely palace
wyth, seven thousand soures.

The Ambassage of M. from her Maiestie to

In the yeere 1581
Russia, Giles Fil
Emperoz Phocas
be soe with his
cing into ozer
at the first arrivall at the Mosco,
rumors concerning the late nau
with the, as also for some while the
Pex in the end be obtained of the
and honourably dismissed by him
him by the said Emperoz, w

1 A continuation of league
Plesher Ianowich, in like manner

2 A confirmation and restit
English merchants, which were in
cessary additions to the same, for
viz, That the state of the priuile
her men, be altered in that point, ar
tion, viz. To the fellowship of Eng
3 That vpon euery surmise and
led, as before time it hath bene,

4 That iustice shall be admini
vpon such as shall offer them any de
ment, taxation or imposition whate
That the goods & commodities
time they had bene by the Emperoz
said Emperoz or of his officers, But
be taken at reasonable prices, and f

5 That the said Companie be re
made by any Englishman not b
6 That the Emperors authoriz
in that countrey, to be any factor
as the Agent shall inregister by name
places of the land where the said Co

7 That the names of such as sha
themselves reputed as factors or deale
good. Durin case the said Agent in his
name of such as haue bene imple

8 That if any Englishman withi
time, as felony, treason, &c. the same
warranted, till such time as he shall be
the whole proceeding to be sent

9 That the said priuilege with th
the Emperors dominions, where the
10 That the said Companie shall be
countries, by the river Volga into Medi

11 That the said Companie shall be
12 Whereas there was claimed of

our officers shall give them Justice, and shall minister all true iustice betweene them, seeking out the truth: and what cannot be easily sought by law, shall be sought out by othe and lot: whole lot better is taken out, him to haue right according as before, and the Judges of Iustices shall take of them no kind of outie, for matters of law no where throughout all our realmes. This letter is given in our princely palace within the citie of Mosco, in the yeere from the foundation of the towne, seven thousand fourscore and fiftene in the month of February.

The Ambassage of M. Giles Fletcher, Doctor of the Ciuil Law, sent from her Maiestie to Theodor the Emperor of Russia, Anno 1588.

In the yeere 1588, was sent Ambassadors from her highnesse into the country of Russia, Giles Fletcher Doctor of the Ciuil Lawe, as well to treat with the new Emperour Phedor Iuanowich, about league and amitie, in like maner as was before with his father Iuan Vasilowich, as also for the reestablishing and reducing into order the decayed trade of our Englishmen there. Who notwithstanding at his first arrivall at the Mosco, found some parts of our Englishmen there. Who notwithstanding rumors concerning the late nauall victorie which was there reported to haue fallen on the Spanes in the end he obtained of the Emperour many good & equall conditions, and was courteously and honourably dismissed by him. The principall points which he entreated of, and were granted him by the said Emperour, were these:

- 1 A continuation of league and amitie betweene her Highnesse and the sayd Emperour Phedor Iuanowich, in like maner as was before with his father Iuan Vasilowich.
- 2 A confirmation and reestablishment of the former priuileges of the Companie of our English merchants, which were infringed and annulled in the principal points, with diuers necessary additions to the same, for the better ordering of their trade in those countreys hereafter, viz. That the state of the priuilege granted before in the names of some priuate and particular men, be altered in that point, and the same granted by the name and stile of their incorporation, viz. To the fellowship of English merchants for the discoverie of new trades.
- 3 That vpon every surmise and light quarell, the said priuilege be not reuoked and annulled, as before time it hath bene.
- 4 That iustice shall be administered to the said Companie and their Agent without delay, vpon such as shall offer them any despite or iniurie, or shal exact or impose vpon them any payment, taxation or imposition whatsoeuer, contrary to the freedome of the said grant.
- 5 That the goods & commodities of the said Companie, be not forcibly taken as before time they had bene by the Emperors officers or people of authoritie, either for the vse of the said Emperour or of his officers, But in case they haue need of the said commodities, the same to be taken at reasonable prices, and for ready money.
- 6 That the said Companie be not charged hereafter with the answering of such debts as are made by any Englishman not being of the societie.
- 7 That the Emperors authorized people shall not hereafter repute any Englishman resident in that country, to be any factor, seruant, or dealer in the said Companies affaires, but such as the Agent shall inregister by name, within the offices where custome is entered in all such places of the land where the sayd Companie haue residencies to traffike.
- 8 That the names of such as shall to be inregistered be no longer continued in record, nor be reputed as factors or dealers for the said Companie, then the Agent shall thinke fit. But in case the said Agent in his discretion shall thinke meet to strike out of the Register any name of such as haue bene imployed in the Companies seruice, the said person to be held in fault, & whole act in bargaining or otherwise, shall not charge the said Companie.
- 9 That if any Englishman within the country of Russia be suspected for any notorious crime, as felony, treason, &c. the same be not straightwaies set vpon the "Pudkey, nor otherwise committed, till such time as he shall be convicted by plaine and euident proofes: which being done, the whole proceeding to be sent ouer to the Queene of England.
- 10 That the said priuilege with the additions, shall be published in all townes and partes of the Emperors dominions, where the said Companie haue traffike.
- 11 That the said Companie shall be permitted to vse a sole trade through the Emperours countries, by the riuer Volga into Media, Persia, Bogharia, and the other the East countries.
- 12 Whereas there was claimed of the said Companie the summe of 23553. markes of debt,

The situation of Russia. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

475

It is very unlikely that a Armarches should plant any colonies so far off in y^e North e. north-west countries. It is bounded northward by the Lappes & the North Ocean. On the South side by the Tatars called Crimmes. Eastward they haue the Nagaian Tartar, that possesseth all the country on the East side of Volga towards the Caspian sea. On the West and South-west border lieth Lithuania, Liouonia and Polonia.

The borders of Russia.

The whole Countrey being nowe reduced vnder the government of one, concerneth these chiefe Prouinces of Shires. Volodemer, (which beareth the first place in the Emperours stile, because their house came of the Dukes of that Countrey) Mosco, Nisnouogrod, Plesko, Sino-
lenko, Nouogrod velica (or Nouogrod of the low Countrey) Rostoue, Yarusslaue, Bealozeria, Rezan, Duyna, Cargapolia, Meschora, Vagha, Vltuga, Ghaletia. These are the natural shires pertaining to Russia, but farre greater and larger then the shires of England, though not so well added of late to their other dominion, are these which followe, Twerra, Youghoria, Permia, Vadska, Boulghoria, Chernigo, Oudoria, Obdoria, Condora, with a great part of Siberia, where the people though they be not naturall Russes, yet obey the Emperour of Russia, and are ruled by the Lawes of his Countrey, paying customes and cares, as his owne people doe. Besides these he hath vnder him the kingdomes of Cazan and Astracan, gotten by conquest not long since. As for all his possession in Lithuania (to the number of 30. great Townes and more,) with Narue and Dorp in Liouonia, they are quite gone, being surprised of late yeeres by the Kings of Poland and Sweden. These Shires and Prouinces are reduced all into foure Iurisdictiones, which they call Chersyds (that is) Tetrarchies, or Fourth parts.

The Shires of Russia.

The Shires of Russia got by conquest.

The whole Countrey is of great length and breadth. From the North to the South (if you measure from Cola to Astracan which bendeth somewhat Eastward) it reacheth in length about 4100. verst, or miles. Notwithstanding the Emperour of Russia hath more territoie Northward, farre beyond Cola vnto the River of Troinschua, that runneth a hundred verst, welnigh beyond Pechinga, nere to Wardhouse, but not intirely clearly limited, by reason of the kings of Sweden and Denmarke, that haue diuers Townes there, as well as the Russes, plotted together the one with the other: euery one of them clapping the whole of those North parts as some right. The breadth (if you go from that part of his territoie that lyeth farthest Westward on the Narue side, to the parts of Siberia Eastward, where the Emperour hath his garrisons) is 4400. verst or thereabouts. A verst (by their reckoning) is a 1000. paces, yet lesse by one quarter then an English mile. If the whole dominion of the Russe Emperour were all habitable, and people in all places, as it is in some, he would either hardly holde it all within one regiment, or be ouer mighty for all his neighbour Princes.

The breadth and length of the Countrey.

Pechinga.

Of the Soile and Climate.

The soyle of the Countrey for the most part is of a sleighte sandie mould, yet very much different one place from another, for the yeeld of such things as grow out of the earth. The Countrey Northward towards the parts of S. Nicholas and Cola, and North-east towards Siberia, is all very barren, and full of desert woods by reason of the Climate, and extremite of the soile in Winter time. So likewise along the River Volgha betwixt the Countreys of Cazan, and Astracan: where (notwithstanding the soile is very fruitfull) it is all vnhabited, saving that upon the river Volgha on the West side, the Emperour hath some few Castles with garrisons in them. This happeneth by means of the Crimme Tartar, that will neither himselfe plant Townes to dwell there, (liuing a wild and vagrant life) nor suffer the Russe (that is farre off with the strength of his Countrey) to people those parts. From Vologda (which lyeth almost 1700. verst from the post of S. Nicholas) downe towards Mosco, and so towards the South part that lyeth vpon the Crimme, (which containeth the like space of 1700. verst or thereabouts) is a very fruitfull and pleasant Countrey, yielding pasture, and coyne, with woods and waters in be-
sides. The like is betwixt Rezan (that lyeth Southeast from Mosco) to Nouogrod which lyeth South-west towards Lithuania) is a very fruitfull and pleasant soile. The whole Countrey differeth very much from it selfe, by reason of the yeere: so that a man may see the great alteration and difference betwixt the Winter, and the Summer.

The whole Countrey in the Winter lieth vnder snow, which falleth continually, and is sometime of a yard or two thicke, but greater towards the North. The Rivers and other waters are all frozen by a yard or more thicke, both swift or slowe to runne they bee. And this continueth commonly five moneths, viz. from the beginning of Nouember till towards the ende of March,

The situation of Russia. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

477

Volga. All these are rivers of very large streames, the least to be compared to the Thames in bignesse, and in length farre more, besides diuers other. The Pole at Mosco is 55. degrees 10. minutes. At the port of S. Nicholas towards the North 63. degrees and 50. minutes.

The native commodities of the Countrey.

For kinds of fruites, they haue Apples, peares, plummies, cherries, red and blacke, (but the blacke withe) a deene like a muske millian, but more sweete and pleasant, cucumbers and gourdes (which they call Arboufe) rasps, strawberries, and hurrilberies, with many other berries in great quantitie in euery wood and hedge. Their kinds of graine are wheat, rie, barley, oates, pease, buckwheat, rye, and rye, that in taste is somewhat like to rice. Of all these graines the Countrey yieldeth very sufficient with an ouerplus quantitie, so that wheate is solde some time for two al-

The fruites and graine of Russia.

Their rie is sowed before the Winter, all their other graine in the Spring time, and for the most part in May. The Permiens and some other that dwell farre North, and in desert places, are seruiced from the parts that lye more Southward, and are forced to make bread sometimes of a kinde of roote (called Vaghnoy) and of the middle rine of the firre tree. If there be any dearth (as they accompted this last yeere Anno 1588, wheat and rie being at 13. alreens, or 5. billings five pence sterling the Chetfird) the fault is rather in the practice of their Nobilitie than in the growthe of it, then in the Countrey it selfe.

The native commodities of the Countrey (wherewith they serue both their owne turnes, and send much abroad to the great enriching of the Emperour, and his people) are many & substantiall, furs, furs of all sorts. Wherein the prouidence of God is to be noted, that prouideth a naturall remede for them, to helpe the naturall inconuenience of their Countrey by the colde of the Climat.

The chiefe commodities of the Countrey. 1. Furs.

Their chiefe furs are these, Blacke fox, Sables, Lufernes, dun fox, Matrones, Gurnestalles or Amias, Lases or Minuer, Beuer, Wuluerins, the skin of a great water Rat that smelleth naturally like muske, Calaber or gray squirrel, red squirrel, red & white fox. Besides the great quantity spent within the Countrey (the people being clad all in furs the whole winter) there are transported out of the Countrey some peeres by the merchants of Turkie, Persia, Bougharia, Georgia, Armenia, and some other of Christendome, to the value of foure or fve hundred thousand rubles, as I haue heard of the merchants. The best Sable furre groweth in the countrey of Pechora, Mongolskoy and Obdorskoy, the worst sort in Siberia, Perm, & other places. The blacke furre and red come out of Siberia, white and dunne from Pechora, whence also come the white wolue, and white Beare skin. The best Mulerin also thence and from Perm. The best Sparke are from Siberia, Cadam, Morum, Perm, and Cazan. Lysers, Pineuer, and Armins, the best are out of Gallets, and Ouglis, many from Nouogrod and Perin. The Beauer of the best sort breedeth in Murnonskey by Cola. Other common furs, and most of these kinds grow in many, and some in all parts of the Countrey.

These Rats are in Canada.

Mongolskoy perhaps Mongozaa.

2. Ware.

3. Worp.

4. Callots.

5. Ware.

6. Crane oyle.

The second commodity is of Ware, whereof hath bene shipped into foreigne countreys (as I haue heard it reported by those that best know it) the summe of 50000. good peeres yearly, euery good peere worth 40. pound, but now about 10000. good a peere.

The third is their Honie, whereof besides an exceeding great quantitie spent in their ordinary pleasures (which is Mead of all sorts) and their other uses, some good quantitie is caried out of the Countrey. The chiefe entrease of honie is in Mordua and Cadam neere to the Cheremissen Tartary: much out of Seuerskoy, Rezan, Morum, Cazan, Dorogobole, and Vasma.

The fourth is their Callow, whereof they asooy a great waighe for transportation: not onely for that their Countrey hath very much good ground apt for pasturage of cattell, but also by reason of their many rivers and other fasset: and partly because their greater men vse much ware for their lightes, the poorer and meaner sort breedeth in their stoues, and cut into long stoues, which they call Luchados. Of callow there hath bene shipped out of the Realme a few peeres since about 100000. peeres, now not past 30000. or thereabouts. The best peece of callow is in the parts and territories of Smolenskoy, Yaruslaue, Ouglis, Nouogrod, and Vologda, Otser, and Gorodetskoy.

In other principall commodities is their Losh and Cow hide. Their Losh or Buffe hide is very large. Their bull and cowe hide (for oren they make none, neither yet weather) is of a kinde. There hath bene transported by merchants strangers some peeres 100000. hides, now increased to 30000. or thereabouts. Besides great stoe of goates skins, whereof great numbers are shipped out of the Countrey. The largest kinde of Losh or Buffe breedeth about Roubie, Wichida, Nouogrod, Morum, and Perm. The lesser sort within the kingdome of Cazan.

An other very great and principall commodity is their Trane oyle, drawn out of the Seal fish.

The manner of
hunting the
Seale fish.

fish. Where it will not be impertinent to shew the manner of their hunting the Seale, which they make this oyle of: which is in this sort. Towards the ende of Sommer (beside the frost begonne) they goe downe with their boates into the Bay of S. Nicholas, to a cape called Culconesse of Foxnose, where they leave their boats till the next spring tide. When the Sunne warreth warme toward the spring, and yet the yce not melted within the Bay, they returne thither againe. Then drawing their boates out the sea yce, they use them for houses to rest and lodge in. There are commonly about 17. or 18. skere of them, of great large boates, which binde themselves into divers companies, five or sixe boates in a consort.

They that first finde the haunt, fire a beacon, which they carry with them for the nonce. Which being espied by the other companies, by such among them as are appointed of purpose, they come aliogether and compass the Seales round about in a ring, that lie sunning themselves together upon the yce, commonly foure or fure thousand in a shoale, and so they invade them every man with his club in his hand. If they hit them on the nose, they are soone killed. If on the sides or backe they beate out the blow, and many times so catch and holde downe the clubbe with their teeth by maine force, that the partie is forced to call for helpe to his fellows.

The manner of the Seales is when they see themselves beset, to gather all close together in a throng or plunpe, to swag downe the yce, and to break it (if they can) which so bendeth the yce that many times it taketh the sea water upon it, and maketh the hunters to wade a foote or more deepe. After the slaughter when they have killed what they can, they fall to sharing every boate his part in equall portions: and so they flay e'rm, taking from the body the skin, and the leath' which all that cleaveth to the skin. This they take with them, leaving the bodies behind, and to go to shoze. Where they digge pits in the ground of a fadome and an halfe deepe, or thereabout, and so taking the fat or lard off from the skinne, they throw it into the pit, and cast in among it hot burning stones to melt it withall. The uppermost and purest is sold, and used to dye wool for cloth, the greasier (that is of a red colour) they sell to make sope.

7. Ickary.

The wife of Ickary or Cauery a great quantitie is made upon the river of Volgha out of the fish called Bellougina, the Surgeon, the Seueriga and the Sterledey. Whereof the most part is shipped by French and Netherlandish merchants for Italy and Spaine, some by English merchants.

8. Plunpe and
Ploze.

The next is of Flax and Hemp, whereof there hath bene shipped (as I have heard merchants say) at the port of Narue a great part of 100. ships small and great yere. Now, not past hie. The reason of this abating and decrease of this & other commodities, that were wont to be transported in a greater quantitie, is the shutting up of the port of Narue towards the Finland sea, which now is in the handes and possession of the Sweden. Like wise the stopping of the passage overland by the way of Smolensko, & Plozko, by reason of their warres with the Polonian, which causeth the people to be lesse proudent in mainteining and gathering these and like commodities, so that they lacke sales. For the growth of flaxe the province of Vobsko, and the countrey about is the chiefe and onely place. For Wempe Smolensko, Dorogobose and Vafma.

9. Salt.

The countrey besides maketh great store of salt. Their best salt is made at Stararouss in very great quantitie, where they have great store of salt wals, about 250. versts from the sea. At Astracan salt is made naturally by the sea water, that collecteth it up into great hills, and so it is wagg'd downe, and caried away by the merchants and other that will fetch it from thence. They pay to the Emperour for acknowledgement of custome 3. d. Russe upon every hundred weight. Besides this two, they make salt in many other places of the Realme, as in Penn, Wichida, Totma, Kenikina, Solouetsky, Ocona, Bombafey, and Nonocks, all out of salt pits, save at Solouetsky, which lieth neere to the sea.

10. Carre.

Like wise of Carre they make a great quantitie out of their fittre trees in the countrey of Duyna and Smolensko, whereof much is sent abroad. Besides these (which are all good and substantiall commodities) they have divers other of smaller accompt, that are naturall and proper to the countrey: as the fish tooth (which they call Ribazuba) which is used both among themselves, and the Persians and Bougharians that fetch it from thence for beads, knives, and swood hatts of blemen and gentlemen, and for divers other uses. Some use the powder of it against poison, and Vnicornes home. The fish that weareth it is called a Morie, and is caught about Pechora. The fish teeth some of them are almost 2. foote of length, and weigh 1. or 2. pound apiece.

11. Slude.

In the province of Corelia, and about the river Duyna towards the North sea, there groweth soft rocke which they call Slude. This they cut into pieces, and so teare it into thin flakes, which naturally it is apt for, and so use it for glasse, lanchozms and such like. It giueth both inwards and outwards a clearer light then glasse, and for this respect is better then either glasse or yvoire, that it neither breaketh like glasse, nor yet will burne like the lanchozne. Salt peter they make in many places, as at Ouglits, Yaruslaue & Vliug, and some small store of bymstome upon the

12. Salt peter
and bymstome.

Volgh

Volgha, but will fail to
in Corelia, Cargopolia;

Their beards of bran
of wood hog, the Lysern
beare towards the end
of Squirrel that hath g
into leathers with a fat
they leape from tree to
withal, and therefore they
squirrels in Sommer ar
like the white, the Squi
They have fallow deer
very swift & hard, they wa
Choke sheepe are but final
lions: first, great store of
let, the Sparrowhawk, &c. One
of other fowles their pines
the Wyke, the crane, the ted
Ostrich and partridge th
maye light to behold then
of
of fresh water fish, best
due to know very good and
rins of Sturgeon, the Seueri
out is thicke not long. These
and fished thence into the w
very great store of Icar
They have besides these
which they accompt more be
great plenty in the Rivers
were a towne called Perislaue
fishing of the saltpetre, and for
Yaruslaue, Bealozera, Novog
Emperour every yere for the
taken in the Winter time int

7
The chiefe cities of Russia
Iaruslaue, Perislaue, Nish
Sols, Columna. The city of
be knownen to the Russe. It
one of the towne. Berofus the
Empire of Saturne, sent Assyri
that Mofcus planted both in A
rather the river whereon it is
of the climate or situation, whi
The Cite was much enlarged
the into King: though that hon
into it by the Popes Legate
which was very much misliked
Since that time the name
inasmuch that not only the
name of Mofcouia the
wols, circling the one wi
buildings clofed within
Mofcou, that runneth cl
(as I have heard) through
by the Crim) was 41
in the yere 1571. there lieth
planted with buildings, specia

Volga, but was shut to againe it. Their Iron is somewhat brittle, but a great weight it is made in Corelia, Cargapolia, & Vltug Thelesia. Other mine they haue none growing within the Realme.

Their beasts of strange kinds are the Koth, the Otter, the wild boar, the beare, the wolvering, the wood dog, the Lynx, the Deauer, the Sable, the Sparrow, the black and dumme fox, the white bear towards the Sea east of Pechora, the Burntale, the Last of Spineuer. They haue a kinde of Squirrel that hath growing on the pinton of the shoulder bone a long tuft of haire much like unto feathers with a far broader taile then haue any other Squirrels, which they moue and shake as they leape from tree to tree, much like vnto a wing. They kilke a large space, & seeme soz to kilke Squirrels in Sommer are of the same colour with ours, in Winter the haire chngeth her coate into milke white, the Squirrel into gray, whereof commeth the Calaber.

They haue fallow deere, the roe bucke, & goats very great soze. Their hozses are but smal, but very swift & hard, they trauell them vnsiod both winter and Sommer, without all regard of pace. Their sheepe are but smal & beare course & barth wool. Of foules they haue diuers of the principal kindes, first, great soze of hawks, the eagle, the gersaulcon, the slightaulcon, the goz, a hawk, the tal- lard, the sparrowhawk, &c. But the principal hawke & breedeth in the country, is counted the gersaulcon, the Ossealac, and pattering they haue very great plentie. An owle there is of a very great bignesse, soz stry water fish, besides the rimon sozes, with a broad face, & eares much like vnto a man. Many kinds very good and delicate: as the Bellouga or Bellougina of 4 or 5 elnes long, the Ossealac is thicke not long. These 4 kinds of fish breed in the Volga, and are catched in great plentie, and serued thence into the whole Realme soz a great food. Of the Rees of these foure kinds they

The Ossealac
beareth a fish,
saith as the
beast in Russia

They haue besides these that breed in the Volga a fish called the Riba bela, or white salmon, which they accompe more delicate then they do the red salmon, whereof also they haue exceeding plentie in the Riuer Northward, as in Düyna, the riuer of Cola, &c. In the Ozera or lake there is a tome called Perislaue, not far frö the Mosco, they haue a smal fish which they call the fresh Yaruslaue, Bealozera, Nouogrod, Astracan, and Cazan: which all yeeld a large custome to the Emperour every yeere soz their trades of fishing, which they practise in Sommer, but sende it frozen in the Winter time into all parts of the Realme.

The chiefe Cities of Russia.

The chiefe cities of Russia are Mosco, Nouogrod, Rostoue, Volodomer, Plesko, Smolensko, Tarnulaue, Perislaue, Nisnouogrod, Voigda, Vltug, Colmogro, Cazan, Astracan, Cargapolia, Columna. The city of Mosco is supposed to be of great antiquitie, though the first founder be of the tomt. Berofus the Chaldean in his 5. booke telleth that Nimrod (who other prophane saye Mofus planted both in Asia and Europe. Which may make some probable, that the cite, rather the riuer whereon it is built, tooke the denomination frö this Mofus: the rather because of the situate or situation, which is in the very farthest part of list of Europe, bordering vpon Asia. The cite was much enlarged by one Iuan or Iohn, sonne to Daniel, that first changed his title of King: though that honoz continued not to his posterity: the rather because he was inuaded into it by the Popes Legate, who at that time was Innocentius the 4. about the yeere 1246. Since that time the name of this city hath growen more famous, & better known to the world in so much that not only the prouince, but the whole Countrey of Russia is termed by some the name of Moscouia the Metropolitane city. The forme of this City is in maner round with 3. walls, circuling the one within the other, & streets lying betwene, whereof the innermost wall, the buildings closed within it (lying latest as the heart within the body, fenced and warded with the same Moscou, that runneth close by it) is all accomped the Emperours castle. The number of houses in the City (being reckoned by the Emperour a litle before this time) was 41500. in all. Since the Tatar besieged and fired the towne (which was in the yeere 1571.) there lieth waste of it a great breadth of ground, which before was wel set planted with buildings, specially that part on the South side of Moscou, built not long before by

Mosco.

Novograd.

by Basilus the Emperoz for his garison of souldiers, to whom he gaue privilege to drinke Beere, and beere at the day of prohibited times, when other Russes may drinke nothing but water, and for that cause called this new city by the name of Naloi, that is skink of poure in. So that now the city of Mosco is not much bigger then the city of London. The next in greatness is in a manner as large, is the citie Nouograd: where was committed (as the Russe say) the memorabile warre so much spoke of in histories of the Scythians servants, that tooke armes against their masters: which they report in this sort: viz. That the Bolarens of gentlemen of Nouograd & the territory about (which only are souldiers after the discipline of those countreys) had war with the Tartars, which being wel perfojmed & ended by them, they returned home wards. Where they understood by the way that their Cholopecy of bondslaves whom they left at home, had in their absence possessed their townes, lands, houses, wines and all. At which newes being somewhat amafed, and yet disdaining the villany of their servants, they made the moze speed home: and so not far from Nouograd met them in warlike maner marching against them. Whereupon aduising what was best to be done, they agreed all to set upon them with no other shew of weapon but with their boyse whips (which as their maner is every man rideeth withal) to put them in remembrance of their seruile condition, thereby to terrifie them, & abate their courage. And so marching on & labing al together with their whips in their hands they gaue the onset. Which seemed so terrible in the eares of their villanes, and stroke such a sente into them of the sinart of the whip which they had felt before, that they fled altogether like sheepe before the byltures. In memory of this victory the Nouogradians ever since haue stamped their coine (which they call a dingoe Nouogrodskoy currant though al Russia) with the figure of a boyzman shaking a whip aloft in his hand. These cities exceed y rest in greatness, for strength their chiefe townes are Vobsko, Smolensko, Cazan & Astracan, as lying upon the boyders. But for situation Iarullauie far exceedeth the rest. For besides the commoditie that the soile yeeldeth of pasture and coyne, it lieth upon the famous riuer of Volgha, & looketh ouer it from a high banke very faire & stately to behold: whereof the towne taketh the name. For Iarullauie in that tongue signifieth as much as a faire or famous banke. In this towne (as may be guessed by the name) dwelt the Russe king Vladimir surnamed Iarullauie, that married the daughter of Harald king of England, by mediation of Sueno the Dane, as is noted in the Danish story about the yere 1067.

Iarullauie.

Sacro Grammaticus lib. 11. pag. 187.

The manner of Russe building.

The other townes haue nothing y is greatly memorabile, save many ruines within their walls. The streets of their cities and townes in stead of paving are planked with fir trees, plained & laid even close the one to the other. Their houses are of wood without any lime or stone, built very close and warme with firre trees plained and piled one upon another. They are fastned together with vents or notches at euery corner, & so clapped fast together. Betwixt the trees or timber they thrust in moss (whereof they gather plenty in their woods) to keep out the aire. Euery house hath a piece of staires that lead up into the chambers out of the yate or great after the Scottish maner. This building seemeth far better for their countrey, then that of stone or bricke; as being colder & more dampish then their wooden houses, specially of firre, that is a ypp & warme wor. Moreover the providence of God hath giuen them such hope, as that you may build a faire house for 20. or 30. rubbles or lile moze, where wood is most scant. The greatest inconvenience of their wooden building is the openesse for firing, which happeneth very oft & in very fearful sort, by reason of the drynesse and faimnes of the fir, that being once fired, burneth like a toych, & is hardly quenched till all be burnt up.

Of the maner of Crowning or Inauguration of the Russe Emperours.

The solemnities used at y Russe Emperours coronation, are on this maner. In the great church of Precheffe (or our Lady) within the Emperours castle is erected a Stage whereon standeth a scrine that beareth vpon it the Imperial cap & robe of very rich stuffe. When the day of the Inauguration is come, there resort thither, first the Patriarch to the Metropolitans, archbishops, bishops, abbots and priors, al richly clad in their pontificalibus. Then enter the Deacons with the quire of singers. Who so soone as the Emperoz setteth foot into y church, begin to sing: Many yeres may liue noble Theodore Iuanowich, &c. Whereunto the patriarch and Metropolitane with the rest of the clergy answered with a certaine hymne, in forme of a prayer, singing it altogether with a great noise. The hymne being ended, the patriarch with the Emperoz mount vp the stage, where standeth a seat ready for the Emperoz. Whereupon the patriarch willet him to sit downe, & then placing himself by him vpon another seat provided for y purpose, boweth downe his head to wards y ground and saith this prayer: Oh Lord God king of kings, Lord of lords, which by thy prophet Sauer didst chouse thy seruant David, & annoynt him for King ouer thy people Israel, heare now our prayer, & looke fro thy sanctuary vpon this thy seruant Theodore, whom thou hast chosen & exalted for king ouer these thy holy nations, annoynt him with the oile of gladnes, protect by the

power, put vpon his head him to the seat of Iustice, Let thy leare bein his wh him the situation of thy house & protect the children of thy house with a law voice, & then vpon and the holy Ghost. The perillous robe & cap: which is pronouncing aloud: Peace yourselves together with vnder thy holy protection shies forth in his dayes, that no sinewer lofly by the y the whole world, and the saul praise for euer and euer. Am now with the signe of the cross Holy ghost. The like is done yper come to the chaire, and on Then is layd by the Patriarch God be: After which a Deacon doe good, honourable, beloued Monarch of all Russia, &c. Then of the altar of table, and were it come into taken up by the Patriarch Church, and then altogether, the good, honourable, beloued Patriarch, &c. These solemnities are, Archbishops, and Bishop to the Emperour, ben

the stile wherewith he

in this maner. Theodore Iuanowich, by the g Duke of Volodomer, Mosco, and great Duke of Smolensk, Lord and great Duke of Novogorod, Iarullauie, Bealoz, of all Siberia and of the North p the stile cometh in all the C that they haue a great delight in strangers (that haue any matter in the whole forme from the beginning to the end) between them and the Emperour, and to represent the Emperour, though not a great Duke of Volodomer. The end is committed of purpose, to a larger holdme then the Duke of Volodomer (who then attended the Emperour) called him vpon time to say on very long, and could not so to say as might seem that I gave him any interpreter to say it all out.

Their forces for the wars, w souldiers of Russia are called Si all of that degree, by vertue of the German, and none are gentlemen, b

power, put upon his head a crowne of gold & precious stones, give him length of dayes, place him in the seat of Iustice, strengthen his arme, make subiect vnto him all the barbarous nations, let thy feare be in his whole heart, turne him from an euill faith, and all error, and shewe him the saluation of thy holy and vniuersal Church, that he may iudge thy people with Iustice, & protect the children of the poore, & finally attaine euertlasting life: This prayer he speaketh with a low voice, & then pronounceth aloud: Al praise and power to God the Father, the Sonne, and the holy Ghost. The prayer being ended, he commandeth certaine Abbots to reach the imperiall robe & say: which is done very decently, and with great solemnitie, the Patriarch withal yourselves together with vs, and pray to him that reigneth ouer all. Preserue him (oh Lord) vnder thy holy protection, keepe him that hee may doe good and holy things, let Iustice shine forth in his dayes, that we may liue quietly without strife and malice. This is pronouncd somewhat softly by the Patriarch, whereto hee addeth againe aloud. This is pronouncd the whole world, and the saluour of our soules, to thee the Father, Sonne and Holy ghost be al praise for ever and euer. Amen. Then putting on the robe and the cap, he blesteth the Emperour with the signe of the crosse, saying withall: In the name of the Father, the Sonne, and the Holy ghost. The Iste is done by the Metropolitans, Archbishops, and Bishops: who all in their robes come to the chaire, and one after another blesteth the Emperour with their two forefingers, & say: After which a Deacon pronounceth with a loud voice: O most holy virgin, mother of God &c. After which a Deacon pronounceth with a loud voice: Many yeres to noble Theodora, Monarch of all Russia, &c. Whereto the other Metropolitans and Deacons that stand somewhat farre off by the altar of table, answer singing: Many yeres, many yeres to the noble Theodora, &c. One note is taken up by the Metropolitans and Deacons, that are placed at the right and left side of the Church, and then altogether, they chaunt and thunder out, singing: Many yeres to the noble Theodora, good, honourable, beloued of God, great Duke of Volodomer, Mosco, Emperour, and Monarch of all Russia, &c. These solemnities being ended, first cometh the Patriarch with the Metropolitans, Archbishops, and Bishops, then the Nobility, and the whole company in their order, to the Emperour, bending downe their heads, and knocking them at his feete to the Emperour, in this manner.

The Emperour, runneth

by the grace of God great Lord and Emperour of all Russia, great Duke of Volodomer, Mosco, and Nouogrod, King of Cazan, King of Astracan, Lord of the great Duke of Smolensco, of Tverria, Iougoria, Permia, Vadska, Bulghoria, and Lord and great Duke of Nouogrod of the Low country, of Chernigo, Rezan, Polotsk, of all Siberia, and of the North parts, and Lord of many other Countiees, Commandeth all the Emperours Provinces, and letterly soothe his gratefull. Whereto they haue a great delight and pride in it, forcing not onely their owne people but strangers that haue any matter to bestir to the Emperour by speech or writing, to receive the whole forme from the beginning to the end, which breedeth much enuill, and sometimes quarrell betwixt them and the Czar, and Poland Ambassadors: who refuse to call the Emperour, though good to salute him onely with thus much v2: Emperour of Russia, great Duke of Volodomer, Mosco and Nouogrod, King of Cazan, King of Astracan, &c. of purpose, because I knew they gloied to haue their stile appeare larger thanne then the Queene of England; But this was taken in so ill part, that the Emperour (who then attended the Emperour, with the rest of the nobility) withalonde chaunced call vpon me to say out the rest. Whereto I answered, that the Emperours were very long, and could not so well be remembered by strangers, that I had repared so as might be to that I gave honour to the rest of it. But all would not serue till I rom-interpreted to say it all out.

Their forces for the wars, with the chief officers and their salaries.

The souldiers of Russia are called Sinaboyarskey, or the sons of Gentlemen: because they are all of that degree, by vertue of their military profession. For every souldier in Russia is a gentleman, and none are gentlemen, but only the souldiers, that take it by descent from their ancestors:

made of faire shining Steele, yet couered commonly with closh of golde, and edged round with min furre, his Steele helmet on his head of a very great price, his sword bow and arrows at his side, his speare in his hand, with another faire helmet, and Shelt a pera, or horsemans scutcheon carried before him. Their swords, bowes, and arrows are of the Turkish fashion. They practice like the Tartar to shoote forwarde and backward, as they lie and retire.

The footmans
furniture.

Position of
victual

The Scutley or footman hath nothing but his piece in his hand, his striking batheer at his back, & his sword by his side. The Stock of his piece is not made calieuerwise, but with a plaine strait stocke (somewhat like a fouling piece) the barrel is rudely & unartificially made, very brutish, yet shootech but a very small bullet. As for their provision of victual, the Empero alloweth none, either for Captaine or souldiour, neither provide they any for them except peradventure some coyne for their money. Every man is to bring sufficient for himselfe, to serve his turne for foure moneths, & if he need require to give order for more to be brought unto him to the Campe from his tenant that tilleth his land, or some other place. One great helpe they haue, that for lodging and diet every Russe is prepared to be a souldier beforehand. Though the chiefe Captaine or other account carp tents with them after the fashion of ours, with some better provision of victual then the rest. They bring with them commonly into the Campe for victual a kind of dyed bread, (which they call Suchary) with some store of meale, which they temper with water, and so make into a ball, or small lump of doue, called Tollockno. And this they eate rawe in stead of bread. Their meat is bacon, or some other flesch or fish dyed, after the Dutch manner. If the Russe souldier were as hardy to execute an enterpryse, as he is hard to beare out coyle and trauell, or worse either wise as apt and well trained for the warres, as he is indifferent for his lodging and diet, he would farre exceede the souldiers of our parts.

Of their marching, charging, and other Martial discipline.

Worshemens
dynammes.

The worshemens
manner of charging.

The footmans
charge.

The walking
Cattle.

The Russe trusteth rather to his number, then to the valure of his souldiers, or good ordering of his forces. Their marching or leading is without al order, save that the foure Polkey or Legions, (wherinto their armie is diuided) keepe themselves severall under their ensignes, & thrust all on together in a hurree, as they are directed by their Generall. Their Ensigne is the image of S. George. The Bulsha Dworancy or chiefe horsemen, haue every man a small wynde of brasse at his saddle bowe, which he striketh when he giueth the charge, or on set.

They haue dynammes besides of a huge bignes, which they carry with them upon a boop laped on foure horses, that are spaired together with chaines, every dynamme hauing eight strikers or dynammes, besides trumpets and shawmes, which they sound after a wilde manner, much different from ours. When they giue any charge, or make any inuasion, they make a great halloo of shoute altogether, as lowd as they can, which with the sound of their trumpets, shawmes, and dynammes, maketh a confused and horrible noise. So they set on first discharging the fire arrows, then dealing with their swords, which they vse in a brauerie to shake, and brandish over their heads, before they come to strokes.

Their footmen (because otherwise they want order in leading) are commonly placed in an ambush or place of advantage, where they may most annoy the enemy, with leaue hurt to themselves. If it be a set battell, or if any great inuasion be made upon the Russe borders by the Tartar, they are set within a running or moving Cattle (called B:za, or Gulaygorod) which is run about with them by the Voiauada gulanoy (or the walking General) whom I speake of below. This walking or moving Cattle is so framed, that it may be set vp in length (as occasion may require) the space of one, two, three, foure, fise, sixe, or seuen miles: for so long it will reach, it is nothing els but a double wall of wood to defend them on both sides behinde and before, with space of three yards or thereabouts, betwixt the two fides: so that they may stand within it, and haue room enough to charge and discharge their pieces, and to vse their other weapons. It is closed at both ends, and made with loope holes on either side, to lay out the nose of their piece, or to push forth any other weapon. It is carried with the armie wheresoeuer it goeth, being taken into pieces, and so layde on cartes spaired together, and drawn by horse that are not led by reason that they are couered with their cartage as with a shelt or pamboule. When it is brought to the place where it is to be used (which is deuised and chosen out before by the Voiauada) it is placed so much as the present vse requireth, sometime a mile long, sometime two, sometimes three or more: which is done without the helpe of any Carpenter, instrument: because the timber is so framed to claspe together one piece with in another: so easily vnderstoode by those that knowe the manner of the Russe building.

In this Cattle standeth their shot well fenced for advantage, specially against the Tartar.

lengthy no of wine
rings. They haue
pieces of the field
made with the Pol
all kind of munition
some half better than
Gallies found at
so answering great
The Russe found
by the way at a see
at the Siege of Vobse
one, which by whole
quod of many of the
over the woe of the
They beate him
perry smother him a
which they bring on
the same course, for a

Of their Co
shales by f

The Russe Empe
Their first corag
Duke of Volodome
and for the first
the building of the
about the pere 1488
and Libonits, but the ci
city, was pursued & per
in distance to the city
up building into the
in the time of Alexea
conline among these lu
gave by his son Iuan V
Stephen Barore: wherun
ration of the solle he ha
the Russe Empero, at th
Vobko, Chernigo, & Be
Allyn Basilus first co

to the inhabite
the Russe Emperors. Wh
and with them. I
and the parts of for
in a firm of them plac
of strength befor
camp with him the
they have kept in w
were many perry togeth
of Russe, the solle
the fell out at the p
and a castle
in a subsection. C
And when it wa
and his eyes, to make h
the Russe Empero
was betwixt him
in the about the see,
come from the Tartar
the about the city and of

length no ordinance, nor other weapon into the field with him, save his sword, and bow, and arrows. They have also within it divers field pieces, which they use as occasion doth require. Of pieces for the field they have no great store, when they warre against the Tartar: but when they warre with the Polonian (of whose forces they make more account) they go better furnished with all kind of munition, and other necessarie provisions. It is thought that no Prince of Christian Artillery found at Mosco; where are of all sorts of great Ordnance, all by arte pieces, very faire, so exceeding great number.

The Russe souldier is thought to be better at his defence within some castle or towne, then he is without at a set pitched field. Which is ever noted in the practice of his warres, and namely at the siege of Volsco, about eight years since: where he repulld the Polonian king Stepan Bagration of many of his best Captaines and souldiers. But in a set field the Russe is noted to have over the work of the Polonian and Sweden.

It may be said he himselfe more valiantly then the rest, or do any special piece of service, the Emperor being on their sleeves, a set in their caps. And this is accounted the greatest honour they can receive, for any service they doe.

Of their Colonies, and maintaining of their conquests, or purchases by force.

The Russe Emperors of late yeres have very much enlarged their dominions, & territories. Their first conquest after the Dukedome of Mosco (for before that time they were but a small towne) was the Dukedome of Novogrod on the West, by the winning of the rest. This was done by Iuan great grandfather to Theodor now Emperor of Russia, but the conquest only intended, & attempted by him, upon some part of those countries, was pursued & performed by his Sonne Basilus, who first won the citie & dukedom of Pleskoy, by besieging unto them, about the yere 1474. These victories against the Lettoes of Lithuania among these Russes, then by some great policie, or force of his own. But all this was lost a yere or two after, when he was forced by the advantage which the Pole had then of him, by the Russe Emperors, at this time hath left him on that side his country, the cities of Smolensco, Volsco, Chernigo, & Bealagorod in Lithuania. In Livonia, not a towne nor one foot of ground.

When Basilus first conquered those countries, he suffered then the natives to keepe their possession, and to inhabite all their townes, rarely paying him a tribute, under the government of their Captaines. But by their conspiracies & attempts not long after, he was taught to deale with them. And so continuing upon them the second time, he killed and carried away many of them, and placed there his Russes, so many as might overmatch the rest, with certain strong castles. Wherein notwithstanding this oversight was committed, for that he had kept in yowes without any danger, by other good policie, he was driven afterwards of Russia, the little lying there in the meane while wast, and built.

There he fell out at the poys of Narue in Liefland, where his Sonne Iuan Vasilovich devided to Narue, and a castle on the other side the river, (called Iuangorod) to keepe the towne and country in subjection. The castle he caused to be so built and fortified, that it was thought to be invulnerable: And when it was finished, for reward to the Architect (that was a Polonian) he put him in charge of the towne, without abating their number or strength, the towne and castle not being so much as they were before.

After this overthrow, they have got the kingdomes of Casan, and Astracan. These were won from the Tartar, by the late Emperour Iuan Vasilovich, the one about thirtie five, the other about thirtie and three yeeres agoe. Northward out of the country of Siberia, he hath

1580.

Reward for valoure.

1580.

Lithuania.

Narue.

Siberia and Ob-lays

Conquest of a
1000 miles.

Permian and
Pechora,

spreads of hol-
ding these
townes,

spreads of hol-
ding these
townes of Pecho-
ra, Permian, and
Siberia.

Siberia.

The king's bro-
ther of Siberia.
1588.

layed into his realme a great breadth and length of ground, from Wichida to the river of Obba, about a 1000 miles space: so that he is bolde to wize himselfe nobly. The great Commander of Siberia. The countries like wile of Permian and Pechora are a diuers people and language from the Russe; overcome not long since, and that rather by cheating, and taking of the Swede, then by any actual force: as being a weake and naked people, without meanes to resist.

That which the Russe hath in his present possession, he keepeth on this sort. In his four chief border townes of Vobsko, Smolensko, Astracan, and Casan, he hath certaine of his counsell (not of greatest nobility, but of greatest trust, which haue more authoritie within their pfectures, (in the countenancing and strenghtning of their government there) then the other Dukes that are set to gouerne in other places, as was noted before, in the manner of ordering their pfectures. These he changech sometime euery yere, sometime euery second or third yere, but exceedeth not that time, except vpon very speciall cause, and good liking of the party; and his seruice: lead by enlarging of their time, they might grow into some familiaritie with the enemye (as hath bene done) being so farre out of sight.

The townes besides are very strongly fenced with trenches, castles, & stope of munitioun, and haue garrisons within them, to the number of two or thre thousand apiece. They are stored with victuals if any siege should come vpon them, for the space of two or thre yeres before hand. The four castles of Smolensko, Vobsko, Casan and Astracan, he hath made very strong to beate any siege: so that it is thought that those townes are impregnable.

As for the countries of Pechora and Permian, and that part of Siberia, which he hath not yett subdued, they are kept by as easie meanes, as they were first got. v. z. after by the way, when by the king of armes. First, he hath stopt the countrie with as many Russe as there are villages, & hath there some few souldiers in garison, inough to keepe them under. Secondly, his officers & captains there are of his own Russe people, and he changech them very often, v. z. euery yere twice or thre: not withstanding there be no great feare of any innovation. Thirdly, he denieth them into many final governments, like a staffe broke in many small pieces: so that they haue no strength being seuered, which was but litle neither when they were all in one. Fourthly, he psoneth the people of the countrie haue neither armor, nor money, being cared & pilld so often as he thinketh good: withour any meanes to shake off that yoke, or to relieve themselves.

In Siberia where he goeth on in pursuing his conquest, he hath diuers castles & garrisons to the number of 6000 souldiers of Russe & Polonians, & sendeth many more to supplies either to place and to inhabite, as he winneth ground. At this time besides he hath gotten the kings brother of Siberia, allured by certaine of his captainties, to leaue his own country by offers of great enrichment, and pleasant life with the Russe Emperour, then he had in Siberia. He was brought in this last yere, and is now with the Emperour at Mosco well entertained.

Of the Tartars, and other borderers to the country of *Russia*, with whom they haue most to doe in warre, and peace.

The Polonians
called Laches by
the Russe.

The Chym
Tartar.

The king of
Mosco by the
Chym Tartar,
in the yere
1571.

Their neighbors with whom they haue greatest dealings & intercourse, both in peace & warre, are first the Tartar. Secondly the Polonian whom the Russe callith Laches, noting the author or founder of the nation, who was called Laches or Leches, wherunto is added Po, which signifyeth People, and so is made Polaches, that is the People or posterity of Laches: which the Latins after their manner of writing call Polonos. The Chym are the Swedens. The Polonians Swedens are better known to these parts of Europe then are the Tartars, that are farther from vs (as being of Asia) and diuided into many tribes, different in name, and government from another. The greatest and mightiest of them is the Chym Tartar, (whom some call Great Can) that lieth South, & Southward from Russia, and doth most annoy the Russe by often inuasions, commonly once euery yere, sometimes entering very farre within the Russe parts. In the yere 1571 he came as farre as the citie of Mosco, with an armie of 200000 men without any battell, or resistance at all, so that the Russe Emperour (then Iuan Vasiluich) was forced his armie to encounter with him, marched a wrong way. The citie he took not, but the suburbs, which by reason of the buildings (which are all of wood without any stone, with lime, saue certaine out roomes) kindled so quickly, and went on with such rage, as that it consumed the greatest part of the citie almost within the space of foure hours, being of 30 miles more of compasse. Then might you haue seene a lamentable spectacle: besides the huge flame of the citie all on light fire, the people burning in their houses and streets, but most of such as laboured to passe out of the gates farthest from the enemye, where meeting together a mighty throng, & so pressing euery man to preuene another, wedged themselves so full

the gate, and strete
hypermost treadin
by the fire & the pie

The principall ca
certaine border par
that besides Astrac
countrey from his
sile preuened to b
seuer, the rest of a
great Chym of Can
lile string on his ha
within the castle of a
safer to this man. A
white (called Iuan D
king of this homage to
the Emperours father
herupon they conde
Chym Tartar inuat
in hand. At that time
a great armie of 10000
countrey with litle rui
retiring where they see
The common p
Russe to one or two plac
fuer. Their manner of
of white) Cause that they
and a falcon two y after
as ready back ward, as
their other weapons. T
a blacke sheepe skin with
with a cap of the same. B
mon. When they are to p
eye, and taking long poi
on the poles they vzie the
countrey farre better men
continuall practise of warre
Part of the subtilty is in
they are practised to intine
they are very pregnant, an
As in their war
100000 men, and othe
Chancelor called Nielo
they dwell presently to
the place, where the si
their goods out of
danger, and not leaue the
as was the Tartar mar
he had lost his carriages
me but to recouer that los
the field. To this
their whom they to
them to do to all the year
but were not to sp
things euery yere, takin
being strypped on
about half yere they
when they bessege a towne
within a surrendry: prom
of the place, they vse al

the gate, and streetes neere unto it, as that three rankes walked one upon the others head, the uppermost treading downe those that were lower: so that there perished at that time (as was said) by the fire & the pisse, the number of 800000 people or more.

The principall cause of this continuall quarrell betwixt the Russe & the Chrim is for the right of certaine border partes claimed by the Tartar, but possessed by the Russe. The Tartar alleageth that besides Astracan and Cazan (that are the ancient possession of the East Tartar) the whole stile pertaineth to his right. Which stementh to haue bin true by the report of the Russe them selves, that tell of a certaine homage that was done by the Russe Emperour euery yeere to the great Chrim of Can, the Russe Emperour standing on foot and feeding the Chrim's horse, (himself sitting on his backe) with oates out of his owne cappe, in stead of a bowle of manger, and that within the castle of Mosko. And this homage (they say) was done till the time of Basileus grand-son (called Iuan Demetrius with Belschey) was contented with this ransome, viz. with the changing of this homage into tribute of furs: which after wards also was denied to be paid by this Emperours father.

Homage done by the Russe to the Chrim & Astracan.

Whereupon they continue a quarrell, the Russe defending his countrey, & that which he hath won, in battell. At that time if the great Can of Chrim come in his owne person, he bringeth with him a great armie of 100000, or 200000 men. Otherwise they make thozz & sudden rodes into the countrey with lesser numbers, running about the list of the border as wild geese doe, inuading and retreating where they see advantage.

Their common practise (being very populous) is to make diuers armies, and so drawing the Russe to one or two places of the frontiers, to inuade at some other place, that is left without defence. Their manner of fight, or sbering of their forces is much after the Russe maner (spoken of before) save that they are all horsemen, and carie nothing els but a bowe, a sheaf of arrowes, and a falcon sword after the Turkish fashion. They are very expert horsemen, and vse to shoote already backward, as for ward. Some will haue a horsemans staffe like to a boze speare, besides their other weapons. The common souldier hath no other armour then his ordinary apparell, viz. a short tunicke, & a cap of the same. But their Morrys or noblemen imitate the Turk both in apparell and armour, and taking long poles or pieces of wood, bind them fast to the talles of their horse: so sitting counted farre better men then the Russe people, fierce by nature, but more hardy and bloody by practise. The common souldier hath no other armour then his ordinary apparell, viz. a short tunicke, & a cap of the same. But their Morrys or noblemen imitate the Turk both in apparell and armour, and taking long poles or pieces of wood, bind them fast to the talles of their horse: so sitting counted farre better men then the Russe people, fierce by nature, but more hardy and bloody by practise.

The manner of the Tartars fight, and armour.

Per this subtiltie is more then may seeme to agree with their barbarous condition. By reason they are very peggish, and ready to robbe their neighbours that border about them, as in their warre against Bealath the fourth, king of Hungarie, whome they inuaded with 100000 men, and obtained against him a great victorie. Where, among other, hauing slaine the Emperour called Nicholas Schinick, they found about him the kings priuy seale. Whereupon they presented counterteile letters in the kings name, to the cities and to wnes next about the place, where the field was fought: with charge that in no case they should conuey the danger, and not leaue the countrey desolate to the possession of so vile and barbarous an enemy. As was the Tartar nation, turning themselves in all reprochful maner. For notwithstanding that to recover that losse, with the accele of a notable victorie, if the saueage Tartar durst bring their whom they tooke in the field, and signed them with the Kings seale, they dispatched them to all the quarters of Hungarie, that lay neere about the place. Whereupon the king's souldiers, taking comfort of these counterteile letters, staid at home. And so were they taken about before they were aware.

The subtiltie of the Tartars.

When they bessege a towne or forte, they offer much parle, and send many flattering messages to the inhabitants: promising all things that the inhabitants will require: but being once within the place, they vse all manner of hostilitie, and crueltie. This they doe upon a rule they haue,

have, viz. that it is to be practised but towards their owne. They encountre not lightly, but they haue some ambush, whereunto (hauling once they wed themselves, and made some short conflict) they retire as repulsed for lease, and so draw the enemy into it if they can. But the Russe being well acquainted with their practise in more warre of them. When they come a routing with some small number, they set on horsebacke counterfaine hopes of men, that their number may seeme greater.

When they make any onset, their manner is to make a great shout, crying all out together Olla Billa, Olla Billa, God helpe vs, God helpe vs. They conceiue death so much, as that they rather to die, then to yeeld to their enemy, and are seene when they see slain to bite the very weapon, when they are past striking or helping of themselves. Wherein appeareth how different the Tartar is in his desperate courage from the Russe and Turke. For the Russe souldier, if he begin once to retire, utterly all his safetie in his speedy flight. And if once he be taken by his enemy, he neither defendeth himselfe, nor increaseth for his life, as reckoning straight to die. The Turke commonly, when he is past hope of escaping, falleth to increate, and casteth away his weapon, severeth both his hands, and holdeth them, as it were to be tied, hoping to saue his life, by offering himselfe bondslave.

The chiefe bootie the Tartars seeke for in all their warres is to get shoie of captiues, specially young boyes, and girles, whome they sell to the Turkes, or other their neighbours. For this purpose they take with them great bakkes made like bakers panniers to carry them tenderly, and if any of them happen to tire, or to be sicke by the way, they dash him against the ground, or some tree, and so leave him dead. The Souldiers are not troubled with keeping the captiues and the other bootie, for hindering the execution of their warres, but they haue certain bandes that intend nothing else, appointed of purpose to receive and keepe the captiues and the other praye.

The Russe boyherers (being used to their insualions lightly every yeere in the Summer) keepe fewe other cattell on the boyder partes, save swine onely which the Tartar will not touch, nor driue away with him: for that he is of the Turkish religion, and will eate no swines flesh. Of Christ our Saviour they confesse as much as doeth the Turke in his Alkaron, viz. that he came of the Angel Gabriel and the Virgin Marie, that he was a great Prophet, and shall be the Judge of the world at the last day. In other matter likewise, they are much opposed after the manner and direction of the Turke: hauing felt the Turkish forces when hee came from them Azon and Cassa, with some other townes about the Euxine or blache Sea, that were before tributaries to the Crim Tartar. So that now the Emperour of the Crims for the most part is chosen one of the Nobility whom the Turke doeth commend: whereby it is brought nowe to passe, that the Crim Tartar giueth to the Turke the tenth part of the spoyle which hee getteth in his warres against the Christians.

Wherein they differ from the Turkish religion, for that they haue certaine idle puppets made of like, or like stuffe, of the fashion of a man, which they fasten to the boozes of their walking houses, to be as lanusses or keepers of their house. And these idoles are made not by all, but by certaine religious women which they haue among them for that and like uses. They haue besides the image of their King or great Can, of an huge bignesse, which they erect at euery place when the army marcheth: and this every one must bend and bowe unto as he passeth by it, like Tartar or stranger. They are much giuen to witchcraft, and ominous coniectures upon euery accident which they heare of see.

In making of marriages they haue no regards of alliance or consanguinitie. Dearly with his mother, sister, and daughter a man may not marrie, and though he take the woman into his house, and accompany with her, yet he accommeth her not for his wife till he haue a child by her. When he beginneth to take a woman of her friends of horse, sheepe, kine, &c. If she be barren after some time, he turneth her home againe.

Under the Emperour they haue certaine Dukes, whome they call Morisai, or Morisai that rule ouer a certaine number of 10000, 20000, or 40000, a piece, which they call Hosts. When the Emperour hath any use of them to serue in his warres, they are bound to come, and to bring with them their Souldiers to a certain number, euery man with his own horse and lead, the one to ride on the other to kill, when it cometh to his turne to haue his horse and lead. Their chiefe bitall is horse flesh, which they eate without bread, or any other thing with it. So that if a Tartar be taken by a Russe, he shall be sure lightly to finde a horse-legge, and some other part of him at his friends home.

This last yeere when I was at the Mosco, came in one Kiriach Morley, nephew to the Emperour of the Crims that nowe is (whose father was Emperour before) accompanied with 10000 Tartars.

The Tartar
nobilitie.

The Tartar
nobilitie.

The Tartar
diet.

1588.

Tartars, and his two wives
deep good for after the
ready for his supper and his
prefer it before other flesh
such like. And yet (which is
all of horse flesh, there are
3000 4000 Tartars
flocks of blake sheepe, rati
cattle for the use of the
horses, and other fruits. They
gather. They be sometime
make it warme, as if com
Tartars they plant none
latines call Veij, built upon
whither they goe, by
standing place, they plant
of flowers, and of a large
no other feat of Empire but
see good. As for the fire
in whole some and unpleasant
They begin to moue their
their Countrey towards the
farthest part Northward, they
continue all the Winter by
againe, to serue for their car
Asian sea, to the Russe front
southern parts, but lost for la
Money they haue no use
specially bullate, which they
either they neglect it of very pu
for their wandering kinde of life
grant them great advantage ag
Such as haue taken upon th
on Hydaspis, on the East and S
the toyes written of those tin
haue them on by flying and
some good way within their com
man (as now they must where
with multitudes. By which str
with horse) they haue we might sur
now with all speed hee could co
and carriages.

In the storie of Pachymerius
people from the beginning of the
I remember he telleth to the
the Emperour of the East Tar
taken the denomination) to
Michael Palaeologus: askin
to keepe away Greece, deca
haue euer, or long time bene
for which they serue.
for person and complexion they
and blake, fierce and cruel
chame, light and nimble bodie
men: whereto they practise the
infinitie. Their speech is de
the count, when they sing
sakes. Their greatest exercise is
in infancy, not suffering them

Tartars, and his two wives, wherof one was his brothers widow. Where being intertained in very good sort after the Russian manner, hee had sent vnto his lodging for his welcome, to bee made by first a befoze ocher flesh, because the meate is stronger (as they say) then Verke, Mutton, and such like. And yet (which is maruclle) though they serue all as horsemen in the warres, and eat 30 or 40 thousand Tartar horse, which they call Cones. They keepe also great heards of kine, & cels when for the vse of the flesh, though sometimes they eate of it. Some vse they haue of ryle, geese, and other frutes. They drinke milke or warme blood, and for the most part card them both to make it warme, as it cometh from his bodie.

The Tartars dwelling.

Townes they plant none, nor other standing buildings, but haue walking houses, which the Russians call Veij, built vpon wheeles like a shepherds cottage. These they drawe with them whithersoever they goe, drawing their cattell with them. And when they come to their stage, or standing place, they plant their carie houses verie orderly in a ranke: and so make the forme no other feat of Empire but an Agora, or towne of wood, that moueth with him whithersoever he goeth. As for the fixed and standing building vnto in other countreys, they say they are wholesome and vnplesant.

They begin to moue their houses and cattell in the Spring time from the South part of their Countrey towards the North partes. And so drawing on till they haue grazed all vp to the farthest part Northward, they returne backe againe towards their South countrey (where they continue all the Winter) by 10, or 12, miles a stages in the meane while the grasse being sprung vp againe, to serue for their cattell as they returne. From the border of the Shalcan towards the Caspian sea to the Russe frontiers, they haue a goodly Countrey, specially on the South and South-east partes, but lost for lacke of tillage.

Of money they haue no vse at all, and therefore prefer vnto alle and Steele befoze other mettals, specially bullate, which they vse for swordes, knives, and other necessaries. As for golde and silver they neglect it of very purpose, (as they doe all tillage of their ground) to bee moze free from their wandring kinde of life, and to keepe their Countrey lesse subiect to inuasions. Which such as haue taken vpon them to inuade their Countrey, euer inuading, and neuer being inuaded, as the Scythians, on the East and South-east side) haue done it with very ill successe: as wee finde by the stories written of those times. For their manner is when any will inuade them, to allure some good way within their countrey. Then when they begin to want victuall and other necessities (as needes they must where nothing is to be had) to stoppe vp the passages, and inclose them with multitudes. By which stratagem (as wee reade in Laonicus Chalcacondylas in his Turkeish history) they haue welnigh surprisid the great and huge armie of Tamerlan, but that hee returned with all speede hee couly towards the riuer Tanais or Don, not without great losse of his men, and carriages.

In the story of Pachymierus the Greeke (which hee wrote of the Emperors of Constantinople from the beginning of the reigne of Michael Palzologus to the time of Andronicus the first) I remember he collecth to the same purpose of one Nogas a Tartarian captaine vnder the Emperour of the East Tartars (of whom the title and kingdome of Cazan may seme to be taken the denomination) who refused a present of Pearle and other iewels sent vnto him by Michael Palzologus: asking withall, for what vse they serued, and whether they were to keepe away his wealth, death, or other misfortunes of this life, or no. So that it sermeth by the which they serue.

Pachymierus.

For percion and complexion they haue lioued and flatted visage, of a tanned colour into yellow and blacke, fierce and cruell lookes, thinne hatred vpon the upper lippe, and pittie of the cheekes, light and nimble bodied, with thort legges, as if they were made naturally for running: whereto they practise themselves from their chuldhoo, seldom going afoot about a house. Their speech is verie sudden and lowe, speaking as it were out of a deepe throat. When they sing you woulde thinke a howlowed, or some great handogge howling. Their greatest exercise is shooting, wherein they traine by their chulden from their infancy, not suffering them to eate, till they haue shot nere the marke within a certaine scantling.

Laonicus Calcondylas.

I

2

3

4

1400

The Nagay Tartar the gentlest. The Chircasse the cruellest Tartar.

The Cheremissen Tartar of two sorts: the Lugauoy and the Nagornay.

The Mordwit Tartar is most barbarous of the rest.

The resulting of Mskwojmes.

Chrinia a kind of Mskwojme.

A liberty to trade downe the Caspian sea.

scantling. They are the very same that sometimes were called Scythians, Nomades, or the Scythian shepherds, by the Grecians and Latines. Some thinke that the Turkes took it, at beginning from the nation of the Crim Tartars. Of which opinion is Laonicus Calcondylas the Greek Historiographer, in his first booke of his Turkish storie. Wherin hee followeth divers verie probable coniectures. The first taken from the verie name is selfe, for that the word Turk signifieth a Shepherd or one that followeth a vagarant and wilde kinde of life. By which name these Scythian Tartars haue euer bene noted, being called by the Greekes *nomades* or the Scythian shepherds. His second reason, because the Turkes (in his time) that dwell in Asia the lesse, to wit, in Lydia, Caria, Phrygia and Cappadocia, spake the very same language that these Tartars did, that dwell betwixt the river Tanais or Don, and the countrey of Sarmatia, which (as is well knownen) are these Tartars called Crims. At this time also the whole nation of the Turkes differ not much in their common speech from the Tartar language. Thirdly because the Turke and the Crim Tartar agree so well together, as well in religion, as in manner of traffique neuer invading, or inuading one another: I saue that the Turke (since Laonicus his time) hath encroched vpon some Townes vpon the Euxin Sea, that before pertained to the Crim Tartar. Fourthly, because Ortogules sonne to Oguzalpes, and father to Orman the first of name of the Turkish nation made his first roads out of those parts of Asia, vpon the west borders, till hee came towarde the countreys about the hill Taurus, where hee overcame the Greekes that inhabited there: and so enlarged the name and territorie of the Turkish nation, till hee came to Eubza and Attica, and other partes of Greece. This is the opinion of Laonicus, who liued among the Turkes in the time of Amurat the first Turkish Emperour, about the yeere 1400, when the memorie of their originall was more fresh: and therefore the likeliest hee was to hit the truth.

There are diuers other Tartars that border vpon Russia, as the Nagayes, the Cheremissen, the Mordwites, the Chircasses, and the Shalcans, which all differ in name more then in regiment, or other condition, from the Crim Tartar, except the Chircasses that border Southward, towardes Lithuania, and are farre more ciuill then the rest of the Tartars, of a comely personage, of a stately behaviour, as applying themselves to the fashion of the Polonian. Some of them haue subiected themselves to the Kings of Poland, and professe Chistianitie. The Nagayes dwell Eastward, and is reckoned for the best man of warre among all the Tartars, but very savage, and cruell about all the rest. The Cheremissen Tartar, that lieth betwixt the Rulle and the Nagay, are of two sorts, the Lugauoy (that is of the valley) and the Nagornay, or of the hill countrey. These haue much troubled the Emperours of Russia. And therefore they are comen now to buy peace of the, vnder pretence of giuing a peece of pension of Rulle commodities to their Morcys, or Diuoy Morcys, that are chiefe of their tribes. For which also they are bound to liue them in their wars, vnder certaine conditions. They are said to be iust and true in their dealing, and for that cause they hate the Rulle people, whom they account to be boiuble, and false in all their dealing. And therefore the common sort are very unwilling to keepe agreement with them, in that they are kept in by their Morcys, or Dukes for their pensions sake.

The most rude & barbarous is counted the Mordwit Tartar, that hath many selfe-fashions of strange kinds of behaviour, differing from the rest. For his religion, though he acknowledge no God, yet his manner is to worship for God, that liuing thing. He first meeteth in the morning, and sweare by it all that whole day, whether it be horse, dog, cat, or whatsoever els it be. When his friend dieth, he killeth his best horse, and hauing flayed off the skinne hee carrieth it on high vpon long pole before the coppes to the place of buriall. This hee doeth (as the Rulle saith) that his friend may haue a good horse to carrie him to heauen: but it is likelier to declare his loue toward his dead friend, in that he will haue to die with him the best thing that he hath.

Next to the kingdom of Astracan, that is the farthest part Southward of the Rulle dominion, lieth the Shalkan, and the countrey of Media: whither the Rulle merchants traffick rawe silkes, synodon, sapphon, skinnes, and other commodities. The chiefe Townes of Media where the Rulle traffick, are Derbent (built by Alexander the great, as the inhabitants say) and Zainachi where the staple is kept for rawe silkes. Their manner is in the Spring to reuine the silke-wormes (that lie dead all the Winter) by laying them in the warme sunne, and (to hasten their quickening that they may sooner goe to worke) to put them into bags, and to hang them vnder their childrens armes. As for the worme called Chrinia (as the Rulle Chryson) that maketh coloured silke it is bred not in Media, but in Affria. This time of Derbent and Samachi for rawe silkes, and other commodities of that Countrey, as also to Persia, and Bougharia downe the river of Volga, and through the Caspian sea, is permitted as well to the English as to the Rulle merchants, by the Emperours last grant at my being there.

Which he accounteth for English merchants, if it be certain rules they follow of their life. Which whosoever they come every man to be free and whole countrey to be as content themselves with the ordering of whether there be any new come, 6 To cks or the men, thus to such as will to be true in word, they doe, the same to be b as haue the Tartar B

The Permians and Sarmatians to haue taken to the fashion of their to the Chircasses. They to the Rulle. The which, that dwelleth more ciuill, in seeking himselfe: as they make more probable, by the very carion that lieth in Samois, that is of the Rulle, that neuer changes, they are subiect at this time talked with certaine of such things as they haue in the Rulle, and such like in some mappes, and be (as the Rulle saith) that being demant, and want of things in the sea side, were to the Rulle somewhat helped by a child in her armes (as the Rulle saith) she mu other sometime (as the Rulle saith) coniecturings about the Rulle.

They are clad in deale cloth, and netherstock, which beare little. And the Rulle saith that the women in the winter a loose and sauage property of house or land in the Rulle, is their Papa or Papa, which is the North side of Russia, which the Rulle calleth Swetland, which is 400 miles. From Sweetland to that countrey is 600 miles, which is a mountaines, which is a craggy rocke, but the Rulle saith, the lakes lying

Although he accounteth for a very speciall favour, and might proue indeede very beneficiall to our English merchants, if the trade were wel and orderly used.

The whole nation of the Tartars are utterly void of all learning, and without written Law: yet certain rules they haue which they hold by tradition, common to all the Hordes for the practice of their life. Which are of this sort. 1 First, To obey their Emperour and other Magistrates, whatsoever they commaund about the publike seruice. 2 Except for the publike behoofe, every man to be free and out of controlment. 3 No priuate man to possesse any lands, but the whole countrey to be as common. 4 To neglect all daintinesse and varietie of meates, and to content themselves with that which commeth next to hand, for more hardnesse, and abstinence in the carrying of their affaires. 5 To weare any base attire, and to patch their clothes whether there is any neede or not: that when there is neede, it be no shame to weare a patche. 6 To take or steale from any stranger whatsoever they can get, as beeing enemies to all men, saue to such as will subiect themselves to them. 7 Towards their owne hooorde and nation to be true in worde and deede. 8 To suffer no stranger to come within the Realme, if any doe, the same to be bondslau to him that first taketh him, except such merchants and others as haue the Tartar Bull, or passport about them.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8

No stranger
without pas-
port admitted.

Of the Permians, Samoites, and Lappes.

The Permians and Samoites that lye from Russia, North and North-east, are thought likewise to haue taken their beginning from the Tartar kinde. And it may partly bee gathered by the fashion of their countenance, as hauing all broad and flat faces as the Tartars haue, and to the Russes. The Permians are accounted for a very ancient people. They are nowise different from the Tartars, they liue by hunting, and trading with their furs, as also doeth the Samoites, that dwellth moze towards the North Sea. The Samoite hath his name (as the Russes say) meaning himselfe: as if in times past, they liued as Cannibals, eating one another. Which may make moze probable, because at this time they eat all kind of raw flesh, whatsoever it be, except the Samoite, that is, of themselves, as though they were Indigene, or people bred vpon that be- liefe, that neuer changed their seat from one place to another, as most nations haue done.

The Permians.

The Samoites.

I talked with certaine of them, and finde that they acknowledge one God: but represent him by such things as they haue most vse and good by. And therefore they worship the Sunne, the Moon, the Loof, and such like. As for the story of Sata Baba, or the Golden hagge, which I haue met in some mappes, and descriptions of these countreies, to be an idle after the foyme of an olde fable, and current of things, I found it to be a very fable. Onely in the Prouince of Obdoria, concerning the Sea, neare to the mouth of the great riuer Obba, there is a rocke, which naturally being somewhat helped by imagination) may seeme to beare the shape of a ragged woman, or a child in her armes (as the rocke by the North Cape the shape of a Frier) where the Samoites doe much to resort, by reason of the commoditie of the place for fishing: where sometimes (as their manner is) conceiue, and practise their sorceries, and other ceremonies about the good or bad sperde of their Iourneies, fishings, huntings, and such like.

The Samoites religion.

Sata Baba or the golden Hag.

A fable.

The Sea.

Fishing on Sea.

They are clad in Beale skins, with the haire side outwards downe as low as the knees, with breeches and netherstockes of the same, both men and women. They are all blacke haired, and have long beards. And therefore the men are hardly discerned from the women by their clothes: save that the women weare a locke of haire downe along both their eares. They liue as nomades, and a wilde and sauage life, routing still from one place of the countrey to another, without any stay or stay, as the Russes say, to their Papa or Priest.

The Samoites habit and habitation.

The people of men Iacognia say.

The North side of Russia next to Corelia, lieth the countrey of Lappia, which reacheth in length from the farthest point Northward, (towards the North Cape) to the farthest part Southward, which the Russes call Sweetnesse or Holy nose, the English men Cape Grace) about 345 miles. From Sweetnesse to Candelox by the way of Versiega (which measurith the length of that countrey is 90 miles or thereabouts. The whole countrey in a manner is either all mountains, which towards the Sea side are called Tondro, because they are all bare and craggy rocke, but the inland partes are well furnished with woods that growe on the hillsides, the lakes lying betwene. Their diet is very bare and simple. Bread they haue none,

The Lappia.

none, but feede onely upon fish and foule. They are subiect to the Emperour of Russia, and the kings of Sweden and Denmarke: which all exact tribute and custome of them (as was saide before) but the Emperour of Russia beareth the greatest hand ouer them, and exacteth of them more then the rest. The opinion is that they were first termed Lappes of their wyse and stow speech. The Russes claime the whole nation of the Lappes into two sortes. The one they call Novremenskoj Lapy, that is, the Noruegian Lappes because they be of the Danish religion. For the Danes and Noruegians they account for one people. The other that haue no religion at all but live as byrre and heathenish people, without God in the worlde, they call Dikoy Lapy, or the wilde Lappes.

The whole nation is verely vnlearned, hauing not so much as the vse of any Alphabet, or letter among them. For practice of witchcraft and sozerie they passe all nations in the wyse. Though for enchanting of ships that saile along their coast, (as I haue heard it reported) and driving of winds good to their serues, and contrary to other, whom they meane to hurt by tying of certayne knots vpon a rope (somewhat like to the tale of Solus his windbag) is a very subtle, denised (as may seeme) by themselves, to terrifie sailers for comming nere their coast. Their weapons are the long bow, and handgonne, wherein they excell, aswell for quicknesse to charge and discharge, as for neceressite at the marke by reason of their continual practice (whereby they are forced) of shooting at wild fowle. Their manner is in Sommer time to come downe in great companies to the sea side, to Wardhuys, Cola, Keger, and the bay of Vedagoba, and there to lay for Codde, Salmon, & Bur-fish, which they sel to the Russes, Danes, & Noruegians, and neuer late to the English men that trade thither with cloth, which they exchange with the Laps of furs for their fish, oyle, and furs, whereof also they haue some store. They holde their market at Cola on S. Peters day: what time the capitaine of Wardhuys (that is resident there for the king of Denmark) must be present, or at least send his deputy to let vnderstand vpon their stockfish, train of furs, and other commodities: as also the Russes Emperours custome, or tribute taker, to receive his custome, which is euer paid before any thing can be bought or sold. When their fishing is done, their manner is to drawe their caruelles or bontes on shore, and there to leave them to be keele turned vpwartes, till the next spring tide. Their traualle to and fro is vpon sledges drawn by the Olen Deere: which they vse to turne a grazing all the Sommer time in an Island called Kildyn, (of a verie good soyle compared with other partes of that Countrey) and towards the Winter time, when the snowe beginneth to fall, they fetch them home againe by the vse of their sledges.

The market at Cola.

Sleds drawn with Deere.

The description of the regions, people, and riuers, lying North and East from Moscouia: as the way from Moscouia to the riuer Petzora, and the Prouince Ingaria or Inbra, and from thence to the riuer Obi. Likewise the description of other countreys and regions, euen vnto the Empire of the great Can of Cathay, out of Sigismundus ab Herberstein.

The dominion of the Duke of Moscouia.

Vologda.
Verst.
Vliug.

Suchana,
Ingria called
of his swift
and pleasant
stream.

Pienega.

Nicholai.
Kuliso.



The dominion of the Prince of Moscouia, reacheth farre toward the North, vnto the places which we will now describe. As concerning which I translated a booke was presented vnto me in the Moscouite tongue, and here made a briefe rehearsal of the same. I will first therefore describe the way from Moscouia to Petzora, and so to Ingaria and Obi. From Moscouia the citie of Vologda, are numbred fure hundred verst, one verst containing almost the space of an Italian myle. From Vologda to Vliug toward the right hand, descending with the course of the riuer of Vologda and Suchana with whom it ioyneth, are counted fure hundred verst, where within two verstes of the towne called Srelze, and hard by the citie of Vliug, ioyneth vnto Ing, which runneth from the South from whose mouth vnto the springs of the sea are numbred fure hundred verst.

But Suchana and Ing, after they ioyne together, lose their first names, and make but one named Dwina, by the which the passage to the citie of Colmogro containeth fure hundred verst from whence, in the space of fure dayes iourney, Dwina encreth into the North Sea mouthes. And the greatest part of this iourney consisteth by Nauigation. For by lande from Vologda vnto Colmogro, passing ouer the riuer Vuaga, are a thousand verstes. Not farre from Colmogro, the riuer Pienega running from the East on the right hand for the space of fure hundred verstes, falleth into Dwina. From Dwina by the riuer Pienega, by the space of two hundred verstes, they come to a place called Nicholai, from whence within fure verstes they haue passage into the riuer Kuliso, which hath his originall from a lake of the same name toward the sea.

from whose spring
Spring by the
luncelcho, and
wiche, Camene
the space of fure
the which againe
from whence sayd
two wayes: where
the riuer Czircho
into Czircho: from
werches to the riue
place is two verstes
Cotme and cattle
fure mouthes. The
Capit, and were ba
from the mouth of
biage. Vliug hath his
sommer East, and sp
from the springs of
furthermore, Petzora
mouthes of Vliug, vnto
delicid this vyage
and Petzcheriema, a
and the riuers of Per
the Islands there:
by one common
an increase of foules
Diers, D. melines, &
Dares, Colues, Pare
The people of the
and society of other in
from the mouthes of
and Poissa the greater
men, is three dayes i
and from thence to t
again to the riuer Sotia.
Leaving Sotia on the
the lake Kraisiko, the wh
one way, the riuer being
well about the riuer, are
by the riuer of Oby, v
In these places are
Kaeli Iuborski, being c
kinds of beasts and furi
from the mouth of the ri
to the lake Kraisiko, by
three moneths iourney.
The by lying with the
sell to the people called
now, situate in the mon
of Lucomoria chance
rely at the next day of
at the next spring abo
with these also, the people
For when the accusa
their wares in certaine p
hauing other wares of eq
perceive to be of vne
and fighting is betw

The region
up the North
sea.

Piez.
Pescuiz.

Rubichio.

Circho.

Crilma.
Pezom.

ਮਨੀਓਲੋਗ.

100

From

Obi.
Calami.
Mitters.

Aurea Anus.
Obdora.

Coslin.

Callima.

Tachnin a great
river.
People of ind-
istrous shape.
A fish like a
man.
Pinnis wisteth
of the lake fish.

The end of the
journall.

mountaines.

The great Can
of Cathay.

Moria is the sea.
Lucomoria.

Tumen.

Petxora.
Papin.

High mount-
aines, suppo-
sed to be hips
perched, and
knippel.

From the river of Obi descending toward the left hand, are the people called Calami, which came thither from Obiowa and Pogofa. Beneath Obi, about Aurea Anus (that is, the golden old wife) are the rivers Soffa, Berezuwa, and Danadim, all which spring out of the mountaines Calmen, Bolcheha, Polassa, and the rocks lying to the same. All the nations that inhabit from these rivers to Aurea Anus, are subject to the prince of Moscouia.

Aurea Anus, called in the Moscouites tongue, Slata Baba, is an idol, at the mouth of Obi in the province of Obdora, standing on the furthest bank toward the sea. Along by the banks of Obi, & the rivers near there about, are here and there many castles and fortresses: all the lanes whereof, are subject to the prince of Moscouia, as they say. They say also, of rather fable, that the wolf called Aurea Anus, is an image like unto an old wife, having a child in her lap, and that there is now scene another infant, which they say to be her nephew: Also, that there are certaine instruments that make a continuall sound like the noise of Trumpets, the which, if it to be, I think it to be by reason of the wind, blowing continually into the hollow places of those instruments.

The river Coslin falleth out of the mountaines of Lucomoria: In the mouth of this is a castle, whither from the springs of the great river Coslin, is two monethes viage. Furthermore, from the springs of the same river, the river Callima hath his original, which running through Lucomoria, falleth into the great river Tachnin, beyond the which (as is said) dwell men of prodigious shape, of whom, some are overgrown with haire like wilde beasts, other have beards like dogges, and their faces in their heads, without necks, and with long hands also, and without feete. There is like wise in the river Tachnin a certaine fish, with head, eyes, nose, mouth, hands, feete, and other members utterly of humane shape, and yet without any voyce, and pleasant to be eaten, as are other fishes.

All that I have hitherto rehearsed, I have translated out of the saide journey which was uttered me in the Moscouites tongue: In the which, perhaps some things may seeme fabulous, and in manner incredible, as of the drombe men, and the dead reuiuing, the Aurea Anus also, and the monstrous shapes of men, with the fish of humane forme: whereof, although I have made diligent inquisition, yet could I knowe nothing certaine of any that had scene the same with their eyes: neuertheless, to giue further occasion to other to search the truth of these things, I have thought good to make mention hereof.

Noss in the Moscouites tongue signifieth a nose, and therefore they call all capes or points, that reach into the sea, by the same name.

The mountaines about the river of Petxora are called Semnoi Poyas, or Cingulus mundi, that is, the girdle of the world, or of the earth.

Kichai is a lake, of which the great Can of Cathay, whom the Moscouites call Czar Kichai, hath his name: For Can in the Tartar language signifieth, A King.

The places of Lucomoria, neare vnto the sea, are saluage, full of woods, and inhabited without any houses. And albeit, that the author of this journey, saith, that many nations of Lucomoria are subject to the prince of Moscouia, yet for as much as the kingdome of Tumen is neare thunto, whose prince is a Tartar, and named in their tongue, Tumenski Czar, that is, a king in Tumen, and hath of late done great damage to the prince of Moscouia: it is most like that these nations should rather be subject vnto him.

Neare vnto the river Petxora (whereof mention is made in this journey) is the citie now stile of Papin, or Papinowgorod, whose inhabitants are named Papini, and haue a peculiar language, differing from the Moscouites. Beyond this river are exceeding high mountaines, reaching even vnto the banks, whose ridges or tops, by reason of continuall winds, are in manner wholly barren without grasse or fruits. And although in diuers places they haue diuers names, yet they commonly called Cingulus mundi, that is, the girdle of the world. In these mountaines, Terfalscons byede, whereof I haue spoken before, There growe also Cedar trees, among the which are found the best and blackest kinde of Sables: and onely these mountaines are knowne all the dominions of the prince of Moscouia, which perhaps are the same that the old writers Rhipeos, or Hyperboreos, so named of the Greeke word, Hyper, that is, Above, and Bore, that is, the North: for by reason they are couered with continuall snow and frost, they may without great difficultie be traueled, and reach so farre into the North, that they make the known land of Engroland. The Duke of Moscouia, Basilus the sonne of Iohn, sent on this two of his Captaines, named Simeon Pheodorowich Kurbaki, & Knes Peter Vicharoi, to take the places beyond these mountaines, and to subdue the nations thereabout. Kurbaki was present at my being in Moscouia, & declared vnto me that he spent xvii. daies in ascending the mountain, & yet could not come to the top thereof, which in their tongue is called Scolp, that is, a pillar. The mountain is extended into the Ocean vnto the mouthes of the rivers of Dwina and Petxora.

But now having spoken of the other regions of Cathay. But I will first of all speak of the river of Tanais.

The province of Reza, of wood, not from the bank, now remaineth nothing left in an Island named Sir, to none other. This province is so named, because it is so much that in times more eates: whose people, or Quaples, live on the bank. The fruits also do like men.

A speciall note

pher M. Iohn Baptist, concerning the coast of vpon the Northern

D'Esmerindo poi il prede
l'Oceano rocca, dice co
Rimasti l'Oceano da le
passa finalmente la detta r
Tetari, et di quivi ad Ale
pubescenti Settentrionali a

The of the said Abilfada
The Ocean sea in his et
The Ocean sea turneth fr
toward the North, and at last
Moggi, that is, to the confin
known Countreys: and run
from thence it runneth to
By this most notable ce
all the East, North-east, and N

The Empire

The chief Officers of the
of the Boiaren Conshe
by the name, that is, ce
Boiemen. For he appointe
Do. De that beareth that offi
mple. Of Doyle for seru
more of ten thousand which
The next is the Lord Se
The third is his Treasur
Vasilowich Godonoe. The
the fifth his Chamberlaine. The
Pallernichay. The first his
Godonoe. The seventh his Pa
that do the office vnder the

Of Gentlemen, beside them
there are two hundred, all
their pieces

But now having spoken thus much of the said Iourney, I will returne to the dominions of Moscovia, with other regions lying Eastward & South from the same, toward the mighty Empire of Cathay. But I will first speake somewhat briefly of the pzoovince of Rezan, and the famous river of Tanais.

The pzoovince of Rezan, situate betweene the rivers of Occa and Tanais, hath a citie builded of wood, not from the banks of Occa: there was in it a Castle named Iaroslau, whereof there now remaineth nothing but tokens of the old ruine, Not farre from that citie, the river Occa maketh an Island named Scrub, which was sometime a great Duke dome, whose prince was subiect to no other. This pzoovince of Rezan is more fruitful then any other of the pzoovinces of Moscovia: Inasmuch that in this (as they say) every graine of wheat bringeth forth two, and sometimes more eares: whose stalkes or strawes grow so thicke that horses can scarcely go through them, or Quayles flye out of them. There is great plenty of honey, fishes, fowles, birds, and wilde beasts. The fruits also doe farre exceede the fruits of Moscovia. The people are bolde and warlike men.

The four last pzoovinces of Rezan, Iaroslau.

Yours.

A speciall note gathered by the excellent Venetian Cosmographer M. John Baptista Ramusius out of the Arabian Geographie of *Abulfada Ismael*, concerning the trending of the Ocean sea from *China* Northward, along the coast of *Tartarie* and other vnknown lands, and then running Wellwards vpon the Northerne coasts of *Russia*, and so farther to the Northwest.

Descrivendo poi il predetto Abulfada Ismael i luoghi della terra habitabile, che circundo il mar Oceano secco, dice così.

Rimolti l'Oceano da leuante verso la regione delle Cine, & va alla volta di Tramontana, et passa finalmente la detta regione, se ne giunge a Gogi & Magogi, cio è alla confini de gli ultimi paesi Settentrionali della Russia, et va alla volta di Maestro.

La regione delle Cine. Confini degli ultimi Tartari. Alcune Terre Incognite. Confini Settentrionali della Russia.

The same in English.

The aforesaid Abulfada Ismael describing afterward the habitable places of the earth, which the Ocean sea in his circuit toucheth, sayth in this manner following,

The Ocean sea turneth from the East toward the Countrey of the Chineses, and stretcheth toward the North, and at length having passed the said Countrey, it reacheth vnto the Gogi and Magogi, that is, to the confines of The vttermost Tartars, and from thence, vnto certaine vnknown Countreys: and running still Westward it passeth vpon the Northerne coasts of Russia, &c. By this most notable testimony it appeareth, that the Ocean sea compasseth and enuironeth the East, North-east, and North partes of Asia and Europe.

The Countrey of China.

The crasse of the vttermost Tartars. Certaine vnknown Countreys. The Northern coasts of Russia. The North-west.

The Emperors priuate or household Officers.

The chiefe Officers of the Emperors household are these which follow. The first is the office of the Boiaren Conesheua, or master of the Horse, which concerneth no more then is expressed by the name, that is, to be officer of the Horse, and not Magister equitum, or Master of the Horsemen. For he appointeth other for that seruice, as occasion doth require, as before was said. He that breatheth that office at this time, is Boris Phedorowich Godonoe, brother to the Emperour, of ten thousand which are kept about Mosco.

Master of the Horse.

The next is the Lord Steward of his household at this time, one Gregory Vasilowich Godonoe. The third is his Treasurer, that keepeth all his monies, iewels, plate, &c. now called Siergius Vasilowich Godonoe. The fourth his Controller, now Andreas Petrowich Clesmine. The fifth his Chamberlaine. He that attendeth that office at this time, is called Estoma Bisabrodopoe. The sixth his Castlers, now Theodon Alexandrowich, and Iuan Vasilowich. The seventh his Warbengers, which are three Noble men, and diuers other Gentlemen that do the office vnder them. These are his ordinary officers, and officers of the chiefe ad-

The Treasurer. The Controller. Chamberlaine. Castlers. Warbengers.

Of Gentlemen, beside them that waite about his chamber, and person (called Shilsey Serap) there are two hundred, all Noblemens sonnes. His ordinary Garde is two thousand Horsemen, with their pieces charged, and their match lighted, with other necessarie furniture continually

Gentlemen of the chamber. The Garde.

continually day and night: which come not within the house, but wait without in the court of yard, where the Emperour is abiding. In the night time there logeth next to his bed chamber the chiefe Chamberlaine, with one or two more of best trust about him. A second chamber off, there lodge five other of like account for their trust and faithfulness. In the third chamber lie certain young Gentlemen, of these two hundred, called Shilley Strapley, that take their turnes by foeties every night. There are Groomes besides that watch in their course, and lie at every gate and doore of the Court, called Ekstopnick.

Groomes.

The Wagbutters or Gunners, whereof there are two thousand (as was said before) watch about the Emperours lodging, or bed chamber by course 250. every night, and 250. more in the Court parde, and about the Treasure house. His Court or house at the Mosco is made Earthlike wise, walled about, with great store of faire ordinance planted upon the wall, and comprehending a great breadth of ground within it, with many dwelling houses: Which are appointed for such as are knownen to be sure, and trustie to the Emperour.

Of the priuate behaiour, or qualitie of the Russe people.

The priuate behaiour and qualitie of the Russe people, may partly be understood by that which hath beene said concerning the publique state and blage of the Countrey. As touching the naturall habite of their bodies, they are for the most part of a large size, and of very fleshy bodies: accounting it a grace to be somewhat grosse and burley, and therefore they nourish and spread their beards, to haue them long and broad. But for the most part they are very weakely and vnactive withall. Which may be thought to come partly of the climate, and the vnnecessitie which they get by the cold in winter, and partly of their diet that standeth most of rootes, onions, garlike, cabbage, and such like things that breed grosse humors, which they vse to eat alone, and with their other meates.

Constitution of their bodies.

Their diet.

Their diet is rather much then curious. At their meales they beginne commonly with a Charke of small cuppes of Aqua vitæ, (which they call Russe wine) and then drinke port till towards the end of their meales, taking it in largely, and all together, with killing one another at euery pledge. And therefore after dinner there is no talking with them, but every man goeth to his bench to take his afternoones sleepe, which is as ordinarie with them as their nights rest. When they exerce, and haue varietie of dishes, the first are their baked meates (for russe meates they vse little) and then their broaches or portage. Their common drinke is Beere, the poorer sort vse water, and a third drinke called Quasse, which is nothing else (as we say) but water curried out of his wits, with a little hyanne meathed with it.

This diet would breed in them many diseases, but that they vse bathhouses, or bote houses in a daze of all thislike, commonly twise of thislike euery weeke. All the winter time, and almost the whole Sommer, they heat their Beaches, which are made like the Germane bathhouses, and their Porclads like ovens, that so warme the house that a stranger at the first shall hardly like it. These two extremities, specially in the winter of heat within their houses, and of extreame cold without, together with their diet, make them of a darke, and slow complexion, their chins being tanned and parched both with cold and with heat: specially the women, that for the greater part are of faire worse complexions, then the men. Whereof the cause I take to be their lying within the boe houses, and busying themselves about the heating, and vling of their bodies, and beaches.

The Russe because that he is vsed to both these extremities of heat and of cold, can beare them both a great deale more patiently, then strangers can doe. You shall see them sometimes (toldson their bodies) come out of their bathhouses all on a froth, and running as hoar almost as they at a spit, and presently to leape into the riuer darke naked, or to poure cold water all ouer their bodies, and that in the coldest of all the winter time. The women to mend the bad hue of their skinned, vse to paint their faces with white and red colours, so visibly, that euery man may perceiue it. Which is made no matter, because it is common, and liked well by their husbands, who make their wives and daughters an ordinarie allowance to buy them colours to paint their faces withall, and delight themselves much to see them of fowle women to become such images. This pargeth the skinned, and belpeth to deforme them when their painting is of.

An admirable inducing of extreme heat, and cold at one and the same time.

The Noble mans attire.

They apparell themselves after the Germane manner. The Nobleman's attire is on the fashion. First a Tassia, or little night cappe on his head, that couereth little more then his eares, commonly berie rich wrought of silke and golde thereto, and set with pearle and precious stones. His head he keepeth close to the very skinned, except he be in some displeasure with the Emperour. Then hee suffereth his haire to growe and hang downe upon his shouldeers, cou-

ring his face as ugly and blacke fore (which they account standing vp like a Persian of a collar set with pearle and pishit, (which is curiously wrought, while he is within the houses, buttoned before: and Persian girdle, whereat he hangs and hangeth downe as low as like, furred and faced about with let, or like Russe called an Alkachen, and set all with pearle. Heigh, though they seeme to Alkaben, saue that it is made cloth, of Camels haire. His buckler them in stead of boot hole) pearle. His upper clothes count on horse backe, thought he be of Gentlemen.

The Boiarskey or Gentleman will haue his Cascan or breeches like the Noble woman (called Cascan like) which is commonly ruder than her cappe (made after the same some rich furre, and set with white embroidery with pearle about the inches of more compasse, like precious stone. In Sommer hie, fallen under the chinne, sticke with rich pearle. When hatters with coloured bandes, call of these of foure fingers broad, set a loose gowne called Oposhen on the ground buttressed before with a walnut. Which hath hanging furre, that hangeth downe almost of upper garment, they wear great wide sleeves, the cuffs of halfe under that a Ferris Zemskoy, which haire wicks they wear very faire stone. They goe all in buskins padded with pearle. This is the making of fashion.

As for the poorer Mousick and hisley, or loose gowne to the small of the blew cloth, with some shubbe furred cappe, and buskins. The made of Rouses haire. This wear nothing but their shirts on a red or blew gowne, when they enter it in the winter time. But when one over the other, whether of some coloured Russe, man without earrings of silver of some Russe woman, be the wife, or maid

ring his face as ugly and deformedly as he can. Over the Tassia hee weareth a wide cappe of blacke fure (which they account for the best furre) with a Tiara of long bonnet put within it, a collar set with pearle and precious stone, about his necke (which is scerue all bare) is a sizer, (which is curiously wrought, because hee strippeth himselfe into it in the Sommer time, while he is within the house) is a Shepon, of light garment of silke, made downe to the knees, buttoned before: and then a Caskan of a close coat buttoned, and girt to him with a and hangeth downe as low as his ancles. Over that hee weareth a lose garment of some rich let, of like stuffe called an Alkaben, steeued and hanging lowe, and the cape commonly byood- straight, though they seeme to be many) an other garment called an Honorakey, like to the cloth, of Camels haire. His buskins (which he weareth in stead of hose, with linnen folles vnder them in stead of boot hose) are made of a Persian leather called Saphian, embzovered with ertion horse backe, though it be but to the next dooze: which is the maner also of the Boiarskey, of Gentlemen.

The Boiarskey of Gentlemen attire is of the same fashion, but differeth in stuffe: and yet he will haue his Caskan of vndercoat sometimes of cloth of golde, the rest of cloth, of silke.

The Noble woman (called Chyna Boiarskena) weareth on her head, first a caull of some soft silke (which is commonly redde) and ouer it a frumlet called Obrosa, of white colour, with some rich furre, and set with pearle and stone. Though they haue of late begunne to dis- daine embzovering with pearle about their cappes, because the Diacks, and some Sparchans of two inches or more compasse, the matter of gold set with Rubies, of Sapphires, of some like precious stone. In Sommer they goe often with kerchieffes of fine white lawne, or cam- bricke, fastned vnder the chinne, with two long tassels pendent. The kerchiefe spotted and hanged with coloured bandes, called Stapa Zemskoy. About their neckes they weare collers of three or foure fingers broad, set with rich pearle and precious stone. Their upper garment is a close gowne called Oposhen commonly of scarlet, with wide loose sleeves, hanging downe to the ground buttoned before with great golde buttons, or at least silver and guile nigh as bigge as a walnut. Which hath hanging ouer it fastned vnder the cappe, a large broad cape of some rich furre, that hangeth downe almost to the middes of their backs. Next vnder the Opos- hen of upper garment, they weare another called a Leitnick that is made close before with great wide sleeves, the cuffs of halfe sleeue vp to the elbowes, commonly of cloth of golde: and vnder that a Ferris Zemskoy, which hangeth loose buttoned throughout to the very foote. On the hande iuxts they weare very faire chalesers, about two fingers broad of pearle and pre- cious stone. They goe all in buskins of white, yellow, blew, or some other coloured leather, embzovered with pearle. This is the attire of the Noblewoman of Russia, when she maketh the selfe use of her selfe. The Gentlewomanes apparell may differ in the stuffe, but is all one for the making of fashion.

The Gentle- womanes apparell.

The Noble womanes attire.

As for the poore Mousick and his wife they goe poorely cladde. The man with his Hon- orakey, of loose gowne to the small of the legges, eyed together with a lace before, of course of blew cloth, with some Shube of long waistcoat of furre, of of shepelskinne vnder it, with furred cappe, and buskins. The poore sort of them haue their Honorakey, of upper garment, made of Kowes haire. This is their winter habite. In the Sommer time, commonly they weare nothing but their shirts on their backs, and buskins on their legges. The woman in a red or blew gowne, when she maketh the best shewe, and with some warme Shube of furre vnder it in the winter time. But in the Sommer, nothing but her two shirts (for so they call them) one ouer the other, whether they be within doozes, or without. On their heads, they weare caps of some coloured stuffe, many of velvet, of of cloth of gold: but for the most part her- without earringes of silver or some other mettall, and her crosse about her necke, you shall see the Russie woman, be she wife, or maide.

The Mousicks of common maner attire.

The Lord Boris Pheodorowich his letter to the Right Honorable
William Burghley Lord high Treasurer of England, &c.

By the grace of God the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Theodore Iuano-
wich, great Lord, King, and great Duke of all Russia, of Volodemer, Mosco, and
Nouogorod, king of Cazan, and Astracan, Lord of Vobsko, and great Duke of
Smolensko, Tuer, Vghori, Permi, Viatsko, Bolgorie, and other places, Lord
and great Duke of Nouogrod in the Lowe Countrey, of Chernigo, Rezan, Po-
lotsky, Kostoue, Yerossau, Bealozera, and Liefland, of Oudorski, Obdorski, Condinski, and
commander of all Siberland, and the North coast, great Lord over the Countrey of Iurski,
Grifinski, Emperour of Kabardinski, and of the Countrey Charchaaki, and the Countrey of
Gorsky, and Lord of many other regions,

The Emper-
ours stile in-
creased.

The English
Spachants
complains.

English Spar-
chants in great
favour with
the Emperour.

Wishes the debt
of Antony Marsh
settled.

Ann. Dom.
1590.

From Boris Pheodorowich his Spachities brother in law, master of his horses, gouernour of
the territories of Cazan and Astracan, to William Lord Burghley, Lord high Treasurer to the
most vertuous Lable Elizabeth, Queene of England, France, and Ireland, and other domini-
ons: I receiued your Lordships letters, wherein you write that you haue receiued very ioyfully
my letters sent unto you, and aduisedly read them, and imparted the same unto her Spachities
that your Merchants finde themselves agreed, that when they approach these parts, and are re-
turned here, they are not permitted to enter into a free and liberrall course of barter, traffike, and
exchange of their commodities, as heretofore they haue done, but are compelled before they can
enter into any traffike to accept the Emperours ware, and other goods, at high rates farre above
their value, to their great losse: and that they are by reason of this restraint long holden upon these
coasts to the danger of wintering by the way. Whereafter there shall be no cause of offence giuen to
the Merchants of the Queenes Spachities Queene Elizabeth: they shall not be forced to any thing,
neither are there of shall be any demands made of custome or debts. Such things as haue bene
heretofore demanded, all such things haue bene already upon their petition and supplication
commanded to be discharged. I haue solicited his Spachities for them, that they be not troubled
hereafter for those matters, and that a favourable hand be carried over them. And according to
your request I will be a meane to the Emperour for them in all their occasions, and will my selfe
shew them my fauourable countenance. And I pray you (William Burghley) to signifie to her Spachities
Merchants that I promise to haue a care of them, and for the Queenes Spachities of Eng-
lands sake, I will take her Merchants into my protection, and will defend them as the Empe-
rours selected people vnder the Emperours commission: and by mine appointment all his Spachities
officers and authorized people shall be carefull over them. The Emperours gracious favour
towards them was neuer such as it is now. And where you write that at the port the Emperours
Officers sell their ware by commission at a set rate giuen them, farre above the value, and that
they enforce your Merchants to accept it, they deny that they take any such course, but say they
barter their ware for other wares, and also put their ware to sale for ready money to your Mer-
chants, according to the worth thereof, and as the price goeth in the custome house here. It hath
bene heretofore deare, and now is sold as good cheape as in any other place, and as they
agree: they enforce no man to buy it, but rather hepe it: therefore your Merchants haue no
cause to make any such report. I haue expressly giuen order, that there shall be no such com-
pulsion to enforce them, but to buy according to their owne willes, and to carrie at the port of their
part at their pleasure. And as touching the customes already past, and debts demanded at your
Merchants hands, wherof you write: Our Lord great Emperour and great Duke Theodore
Iuanowich of all Russia of famous memory hath shewed his Spachities especial fauour and care
for the great lone of his welbeloued sister Queene of England, and by my petition and me-
diation, wher as there was commandement giuen to take Marshes whole debt of your Merchants
and factors, it is now altered to the halfe, and for the other halfe, commandement giuen it
not be taken, and the Merchants bills to be deliuered them. And to the end hereafter that
Spachities Merchants moue no contention betwixt our Lord the Emperour and great Duke
Russia, and his welbeloued sister Queene Elizabeth, his Spachities desireth order to be giuen
your Merchants doe deale iustly in their traffike, and plainly without fraud or guile. And
will be a fauourer of them aboue all others, vnder his Spachities authority: themselves to
see it. Written in our great Lord the Emperours citie of Mosco in the moneth of

July.



Lizab-
fender
odore.
mer, M
and gre
and oth
of Cher

land, of Oudorsky, Obdol-
coasts, great Lord over the c-
countrey of Charkasky, and
most deare and louing brother
your Spachities letters brought
your port of S. Nicholas: w-
crine that your Spachities doth
dominions as our messenger
that we in our letters sent by
which appertained to your prin-
largement of your Spachities
therin more particularly exp-
to the letters which we send to
would haue bene very ioy will
and louing brother. And as tou-
ry to our expectation he is faller-
time in any his actions by which
him at such time as we sent him
our felices to your princely iudge-
ment commendation, which in pe-
sayd Ierome Horley his behauior
to his service as your messen-
by him and by none other. That
the service of the sayd Ierome
him to us as your letters
to our honours (for which)
merely reiterate our thankfulness
make those of any of our subiects
as at all times used upon you
should continue of the minde
ther (wherein some mention was
came not to our hands, and that we
were therein against the sayd Hor-
multitude as by those letters of
our sayd letters giuing onely a
in expressing no particulars, we
highly deeply extinguisht all your
million to your Spachities, or upon
against him, the offence might
multitude. And to that end we were
direction of some of our Nobility
shall to use his service once againe
high haue opportunity to cleare him
your Spachities former fauour: v-
of good of our subiect to farre loc

This noble Prince, our most louing
we were induced to use the seru

The Queenes Maiesties letter to Theodore Iuanovich
Emperour of Russia, 1591.



Lizabeth by the grate of God Queene of England, France, and Ireland, de-
fender of the faith, &c. to the right high, mighty, and right noble prince The-
odore Iuanovich great Lord, King, and great Duke of all Russia, Volode-
mer, Mosco, Nouogrod, King of Cazan, and Astracan, Lord of Vobsko,
and other places: Lord and great Duke of Nouogrod in the low countrey,
of Chernigo, Rezan, Polorsky, Rostoue, Yerasslaue, Bealozero, and Lif-

land, of Oudorsky, Obdorsky, Condinsky, and commander of all Siberland and the North
countrey of Charkasky, and of the countrey of Gorsky, and Lord of many other countreys, and of the
most deare and louing brother, greeting. Right noble and excellent prince, we haue receiued
your Maiesties letters brought ouer by our merchants in their returne of their last voyage from
crine that your Maiesty doth greatly mislike of our late imploymment of Ierome Horsey into your
your pozt of S. Nicholas; which letters we haue aduisedly read and considered, and thereby per-
dominions as our messenger with our Higbnesse letters, and also that your Maiesty doth thinke
that we in our letters sent by the sayd messenger haue not obserued that due order of respect
which appertained to your Maiesties maiesty, in the forme of the same letter, as wel touching the in-
tertainment of your Maiesties stile and titles of honor which your Maiesty expected to haue bene
therein more particularly exprested, as also in the adding of our greatest feale of signes of armes
to the letters which we sent to so great a Prince as your Maiesty is: in any of which points we
would haue bene very loth willingly to haue giuen iust cause of offence thereby to our most deare
and louing brother. And as touching the sayd messenger Ierome Horsey we are sorry that contra-
ry to our expectation he is fallen into your Maiesties displeasure, whom we minde not to main-
taine at such time as we sent him to your Maiesty to vse his seruice as our messenger, we referre
all commendation, which in your letters written vnto vs in the yeere 1585, you made of the
sayd Ierome Horsey his behauiour in your dominions: at which time your Maiesty was pleased
to take him to your seruice as your messenger to vs, requiring our answer of your letters to be returned
by him and by none other. That imploymment, with other occasions taken by your Maiesty to
him to vs, as touching your letters, and your liberrall and princely vnderstanding at our request gran-
ted to our request (for which we haue heretofore giuen thanks to your Maiesty, so doe we
heretofore reuerent our thankfulness for the same) moued vs to be of minde, that we could not
make those of any of our subiects to sit a messenger to your Maiesty as he, whom your Maiesty
had at several times vsed upon your owne occasions into this our Realme. But leaue your high-
ness should continue of the minde that the letters which you sent by our ambassadoz Giles Fle-
ther (wherein some mention was made of your conceived displeasure against the sayd Horsey)
came not to our hands, and that wee were kept ignorant of the complaint which your Maiesty
made therein against the sayd Horsey, we do not deny but that we were acquainted as well by our
ambassadoz as by those letters of some displeasure conceived against him by your Maiesty: but
our sayd letters giuing onely a short generall mention of some misdeameour committed by
him, expresting no particulars, we were of opinion that this offence was not so hatious, as that it
might worthy extinguisht all your former princely fauour towards him, but that vpon his humble
petition to your Maiesty, or vpon better examination of the matter of the displeasure concei-
ued against him, the offence might haue bene either remitted, or he therof might haue cleared
himselfe. And to that end we were not onely by his great importunity long solicited, but by the
petition of some of our Nobility giuing credit to his owne defence, we were incited on his
behalf to vse his seruice once againe into Russia as our messenger to your Maiesty, whereby he
might haue opportunity to clear himselfe, and either by his and were or by his submission reco-
uer your Maiesties former fauour: whereunto our princely nature was moued to prelo, with-
out good of our subiects so farre forth as his desert might carry him, or his innocencie cleare.

1590

1585

Thus noble Prince, our most louing and dearest brother, it may appeare vnto your Maiesty
that we were induced to vse the seruice of the sayd messenger, as well for the recovery of your
Maiesties

Paleties fauoz towards him (if he had bene found woorthy of it) as fo: experience of the manners and fashions of your countrey, where he hath bene much conuerfant. But fith by your Paleties letters it appeareth that he hath not cleared himfelfe in your Paleties fite, we meane not to vfe him in any fuch plice hereafter.

And as touching your Paleties conceit of the hzenitie which we vfe in the fetting downe of your Paleties title and titles of honour: as nothing is further from vs, then to abydge fo great and mighty a Prince of the honour due vnto him (whom we holde fo: his greatneffe to be fervice moze honour then we are able to giue him) fo shall we need no further no: furer argument to cleare vs of the fufpition of the detracting from your Palety any part of your iust and princely honor and greatneffe, then the confideration of our owne title, which is thus contracted, videlicet, Elizabeth by the grace of God Queene of England, France, and Ireland, defender of the faith &c. which kingdomes and dominions of ours are expreffed by thefe generall wordes, videlicet, England, France, and Ireland: in euery of which there are feuerall principallities, dukedomes, earldomes, prouinces and countreys: which being feuerally expreffed would enlarge much our title, and make it of great length; which by our progenitors hath not bene vfed: notwithstanding we thinke it no difhonour to vs, comprehenfiuily to abydge the fame in all our writings and letters written to what Prince, King, or Potentate foener. Whereupon we inferre, that holding your Paleties generall title, we offer your Highneffe no difhonour in not expreffing all the particular prouinces: albeit we can willingly content our felfe, upon the knowledge of your vices and cuftomes, to obferue that courfe, which your felfe shall thinke moft honourable. And fo: the fending vp of our letters which we write to all our allies, kinfemen, and friends, Kings and Princes, we haue in vfe two feuerall feales; both which we efferme alike honourable, being our princely feales. And as the volume of our letters falleth out to be great or fmall, fo accordingly is our greater or leffer feale annexed to the faid letters, without efferming either of them moze or leffe honourable then the other. So as, our moft louing and deareft brother, in the faid letters there was nothing done of purpofe to detract from your Palety any thing of the vifual regalia, which your Highneffe was wont to preft vnto your moft noble father of famous memory Iuan Bafiluich Emperoz of al Russia, or to your felfe, our deareft brother. For the refidue of the points of your Paleties letters concerning the entertainment of our ambaffadour, and proceeding in the caufe of Anthonie Marfh we holde our felfe fatisfied with your princely anfwer, and doe therein note an honourable and princely care in your Paletie to preuent the like troubles, controuerfies and futes, that Marthes caufe stirred by betwene our merchants and your fubjects, which is, that your Paletie doeth purpofe from time to time to purge your Countrey of fuch draglers of our fubjects, as doe or shall hereafter abide there, and are not of the Company of our merchants, but contemptuoufly depart out of our land without our Highneffe licence: of which foye there are prefented vnto vs from our merchants the names of thefe feuerall perfons, videlicet, Richard Cocks, Bennet lackman, Rainold Kitchin, Simon Rogers, Michael Lane, Thomas Worfenham: whom it may please your Palety by your princely order to difmiffe out of your land, that they may be fent home in the next fhippes, to auoid the miffake which their residence in thofe parts might breed to the difturbance of our brotherly league, and the impeaching of the entercourfe.

And whereas, moft louing and deareft brother, one William Turnebull a fubject of ours lately deceased in your kingdome, one with whom our merchants haue had much controuerfies, great fummies of money due vnto them by him: while he was their Agent in their affayres of merchandises: which differences by arbitrage order were reduced to the fummie of 3000 roubles: and fo much fhould haue bene payed by him as may appeare by your Paleties counsell of ftrates of iustice by very credible information and testimony: and whereas alfo the faid Turnebull was further indebted by bills of his owne hand to diuers of our fubjects, amounting in the whole to the fummie of 1326 pounds, which bills are erempfied vnder our great feale of England: to be fent ouer with this beater: of which fummies he hath often promifed payement: it may please your moft excellent Paletie in your appoyoued loue to iustice, to giue order to your fummie counsell and magiftrates, that thofe feuerall debts may be fatisfied to our merchants and creditors out of the goods, merchandise, and debts which are due to the ftate of the faid Turnebull: where your Paleties counsell fhall be informed by the Agent of our merchants.

We trust we shall not need to make any new request by motion to your Palety that fome order might be taken fo: the finding out of the reft of our merchants goods feifed to your maieftie vfe in the hands and poffeffion of Iohn Chappel their feruant, being a thing granted, and no already performed by your Paleties order. We therfore intreat your Palety, that as clemently as may be, fatisfaction or recompense be giuen to our faid merchants towards the reparation

The Emperoz
fifed our merchants
goods.

of their fums great to
And laftly, our moft de-
ferred before our entrie
from both our ancestours
meanes to holde and come
of either fide do rife, in no
countreys and kingdomes
league and amitie be no
recommend your Palety
hall the 14 of January, an



Lizab
defend
Boris
mightie
can, ou
hath app
lent vnt

in what part his Paletie too
fares into Russia: wherein
the his Highneffe miffake
our princely letters fent by hi
this bearer directed to our fap
not but his Paletie will be w
fo: the honourable courfe hold
table construction in a thing
betwene your Soueraigne
noble and graue Counfellor
in that behalfe, and doe al
time affection that your Loz
princely nature will neuer be
by our chiefe and princippall
Highneffe Realme of Engla
him, concerning the enterco
honourable offices done by your
laftly (which wee take a m
that your Lozship haue
of our fap Merchants, and
laftly, which shall concern
the fame.

And whereas we haue made m
of certaine debts due af
Turnebull a fubject of ours
And fo: as much as the fap
our acceptance of all their caufes
your honourable inclination
the fame, that we shall not need
in the faid caufe. And la
kingdome and defert hath m
great a Monarchie, whereby po
the fame, we haue giuen order
matour of our Realme of Eng
our courfe betwene thefe Cou
merchants, that he may by adu
reason of our great princely a

of their sundry great losses, as well therein as otherwise by them of late sundry wayes sustained. And lastly, our most deare and louing brother, as nothing in all these our occasions is to be preferred before our entire league and amitie, descending vpon vs as an inheritance, in succession from both our ancestours and noble progenitours: so let vs be carefull on both sides by all good meanes to holde and continue the same to our posterity for euer. And if any mistaking or error of either side do rise, in not accomplishing of circumstances agreeable to the fashion of either of our countreys and kingdomes, let the same vpon our interchangeable letters be reconciled, that our league and amitie be no way impeached for any particular occasion whatsoever. And thus we recommend your Paesie to the tuition of the most High. From our royall Palace of White-hall the 14 of January, anno Domini 1591.

The Queenes Maiesties letters to the Lord Boris
Pheodorowich.

1591



Lizabeth by the grace of God Queene of England, France, and Ireland, defendour of the faith, &c. to the right honourable and noble Prince Lord Boris Pheodorowich Godonoua, Master of the hofes to the great and mightie Emperour of Russia, his Highnesse lieutenant of Cazan and Astrachan, our most deare and louing cousin, greeting. Right honourable, it hath appeared vnto vs vpon the reading and perusing of the Letters lately sent vnto our Highnesse from our deare and louing brother the Emperour, in what part his Paesie tooke the late imployment of our messenger Jerome Horsey in our affaires into Russia: wherein we doe also finde the honourable endeavour used by your Lordship to our princely letters sent by him: both of which points we haue answered in our letters sent by us but his Paesie will be well satisfied touching our sayd messenger and former letters. And for the honourable course holden by your Lordship in the interposing of your opinion and fauourable construction in a thing which might grow to the offence of the league and amitie standing betwene your Soueraigne Lord and vs (wherein your Lordship performed the office of an honourable and graue Counsellour) we take our selfe beholding to your Lordship for your ready and affection that your Lordship hath euer borne and continued towards vs, whereof our princely nature will neuer be vnmindfull. We haue bene also from time to time made acquainted by our chiefe and principall Counsellour William Lord Burghley, Lord high Treasurour of our Highnesse Realme of England, of your letters which haue passed betwene your Lordship and him, concerning the intercourse of our Merchants traffike in your Countreys, and of the honourable offices done by your Lordship with the Emperour in fauour of our sayd Merchants, and lastly (which wee take a most assured argument of your vndoubted lone and affection towards vs) that your Lordship hath vouchsafed, and of purpose taken into your hands the protection of our sayd Merchants, and the hearing and determining of all their causes and occasions which shall concerne them of their trade. All which wee conceiue to be done for the same.

And whereas we haue made mention in our sayd letters written to our louing brother the Emperour of certaine debts due as well to our merchants, as to other of our subjects by one Willem Turnebull a Subiect of ours late deceased in Russia, wee pray you to be referred to the sayd Emperour for acceptance of all their causes into your patronage and protection: we are so well assured of your honourable inclination to iustice, and your good affection towards our merchants in the sayd cause. And lastly considering that your noble lineage together with your great wisdom and desert hath made you a principall Counsellour and directour of the state of our Realme of England, that as any occasion shall arise to the hinderance of our Merchants, that he may by aduertisement treat with your Lordship thereupon: which for reason of our great princely affaires can not so conveniently at all times doe with such expedition

reputation as the cause may require. And thus with our princely commendations we bidde you farewell. From our royall Pallace of Whitehall the foureteenth day of Ianuarie, Anno Domini 1591.

To the right honourable my very good Lord, the Lord Boris
Phedorovich, Master of the horses to the great and mighty Emperour of
Russia, his Highnesse Lieutenant of *Cazan* and *Astracan*, *William Cecil* Lord *Barrington*, Knight of the noble Order of the Garter, and Lord high Treasurer of *England*,
fendeth greeting.



Right honourable my very good Lord, vpon the last returne of our merchants
shippes out of *Russia*, there was brought vnto my hands, by one *Francis*
Cherrie an English merchant, a letter directed to the Queenes Maiestie,
from the great and mighty Emperour of *Russia*, and another letter from
your Lordship directed to me: which sayd letter written from the Emperour
to her Maiestie hath bene considerably and aduisedly by her Highnesse read
and perused, and the matter of complaint against *Ierome Horsey* therein comprised the whole
examined: which hath turned the same Horsey to some great displeasure. I did also acquaint
our Maiestie with the contents of your Lordships letters written to mee, and enquired of her
your Lordships honourable fauour shewed to her Highnesse merchants from time to time: who
tooke the same in most gracious part, and confessed her selfe infinitely bespoiling vnto your Lordship
for many honourable offices done for her sake, the which she meant to acknowledge by her
letters to be written to your Lordship vnder her princely hand and seale. And forasmuch as
she hath pleased your good Lordshippe to take into your hands the protection of her Maiesties mer-
chants, and to redresse of such iniuries as are, or shall be offered vnto them contrary to the mean-
ing of the priuiledges and the free liberty of the entercourse, wherein in some points your
Lordship hath already shewed a reformation, as appeareth by your sayd letters: yet the continu-
ance of traffique moouing new occasions and other accidents tending to the losse of the sayd mer-
chants, whereof some particulars haue bene offered vnto me to treat with your Lordship
on: I thought it good to relecte them to your honourable consideration, that order might be
taken in the same, for that they are apparantly repugnant to the Emperours letters written
to her Maiestie, and doe much restrain the liberty of the trade: one is, that at the last comming
of our merchants to the port of *Saint Michael* the Archangel, where the mart is holden, the sayd
goods were taken by the Emperours officers for his Highnesse seruice of such rates, as the sayd
officers were disposed to set vpon them, so farre vnder their value, that the merchants could
not assent to accept of those prices: which being denied, the sayd officers restrained them of all
further traffique for the space of thre weekes, by which means they were compelled to sell
vnto their demaund how unwillingly soeuer. Another is, that our sayd merchants are bound
to pay the Emperours officers custome for all such Russe money as they bring downe from the
Mosco to the *Sea* to employ there at the Part within the Emperours owne land; which
seemeth strange vnto me, considering the same money is brought from one place of the Coun-
treie to another, and there employed without any transpore ouer of the sayd money. These
interruptions and impositions seeme not to stand with the liberties of the Emperours priuiledges
and freedom of the entercourse, which should be restrained neither to times or conditions, but
to be free and absolute: whereof it may please your Lordship to be aduised, and to continue
honourable course holden betweene the Emperour and her Maiestie, to reconcile such differences
as any occasion may offer to their league or traffique. Thus not doubting of your Lordships
cherance herein, I humbly take my leaue of your good Lordship. From her Maiesties
palace of Whitehall this 15 of Ianuary, 1591.

This is a new
yoit.

The English
merchants 3
weekes restrain-
ed from their
part.

1591

A Letter from the Emperour of *Russia*, *Theodore Iuanovich* to the Queenes Maiestie.



Through the tender mercie of our God, whereby the day-spring from on high
hath visited vs, thereby to guide our feet into the way of peace. When
our God by mercie made glorie in *Trinitie*.

We the great Lord, King and great Duke *Theodore Iuanovich*,
gouernour of all *Russia*, of *Volodimer*, *Mosco*, and *Novogrod*, King of *Cazan*
and *Astracan*, Lord of *Yobsko*, and great Duke of *Smolensko*, Our
Vgho

1592

Vghori, *Perme*, *Viatsky*
in the low countrey, of *C*
Zufland, of *Vdorsky*, Ob
of all the *Mozh* parts, an
countrey of *Kabardinsky*,
more &c. To our louing
ving sister, your letters sen
haue written in the same to
also sent by your seruants
most graciously.

And whereas your *Pat*
Turnebull late deceased in a
haue debes growing vnto the
not onely order to be taken, b
to be sought out and deliuer
suffe, bookes, billes and w
Christopher Holmes and *Fra*
sayd *Turnebulls* kinsman *R*
chants Agent,

And further, where you w
wishes *Realme* severely witho
ning such your subjects for wh
search to be made, and such as
with to be deliuered vnto
their people as haue giuen them
to grant to let them passe.

And further, where you haue
haue written heretofore the wh
is not needfull to write any more
sayd Chappell, the money ther
is folloves. Your Maiesties ser
whereby he came into our kingd
kingdome, was for the comming
and royal seat in the city of
the month of Ianuary.

To the Queenes m Boris



In the grace of G
nour of *Russia*, *V*
Astracan, Lord of
Perme, *Viatsky*, E
groed in the low co
slau, *Bealozera*, a
countrey of *Sibery*, and comman
sky, and King of *Gruinsky*, and
sky, Lord and ruler of many coun-
most resplendent Queene *Elizabeth*
her seruant, Lord and Master of bi
territories of *Cazan* and *Astracan*
our Maiestie, great Ladie Queene *Eliz*
our Maiestie to write vnto me your gr
my letter I receiued with all humbl
Lind here in the *Mosco*, it ple
Ga, and holy Saints, by the prap
our *Russia* gouernour, the right be
our Lady *Irene* a young Princess, O
ecodocine. Wherefore we giue all

Vghori, Perme, Viatsky, Bulgary, and other regions, Lord and great Duke also of Nouogrod in the low countrey, of Chernigo, of Rezan, Polotsko, Rostoue, Yeroflaue, Bealozera, and of Lifland, of Vdorsky, Obdorsky, Condinsky, and all the countrey of Siberia, and commander of all the Rosh parts, and Lord over the countrey of Iuersky, and King of Grufinsky, and of the countrey of Kabardinsky, Cherchasky, and Duke of Igorsky, Lord and ruler of many countreys moze &c. To our loving sister Elizabeth Queene of England, France, and Ireland, &c. Loving sister, your letters sent by your seruant Thomas Lind, we haue receiued, and read what you haue writen in the same touching our title, and touching your order holden in your letters heretofore sent vs by your seruant Ierome Horley : wherein you haue answered vs sufficiently and most graciously.

The Emper
from this land
is enlarged.

And whereas your Maestie hath writen in your letter concerning the goods of William Turnebull late deceased in our kingdome, that your subjects, for whom he was factour, should haue debes growing unto them from him by account ; we at your Maesties request haue caused to be sought out and deliuered to your merchants Agent and his company, together with his stuffe, bookes, billes and writings, as also money to the value of fiftie hundred rubbles, which Christopher Holmes and Francis Cherry are to pay for Ipcarie : and we haue set at libertie the said Turnebulls kinsman Raynold Kirchin and his fellows, and deliuered them to your merchants Agent.

This is a
dampment
made of the
toin of Stur.
Gons.

And further, where you write vnto vs for such your subjects as haue departed out of your maiesties Realme secretly without licence, that we should giue order to send them home : concerning such your subjects for which you haue writen vnto our Maestie by letters, we will cause search to be made, and such as are willing to goe home into your kingdome, we will cause them to be deliuered vnto your merchants Agent, and so to passe. And such of your Maesties people as haue giuen themselves vnder our government as subjects, we thinke it not requisite to grant to let them passe.

And further, where you haue writen vnto vs concerning the goods of Iohn Chappell, we haue writen heretofore the whole discourse thereof not once, but sundry times, and therefore it is not needfull to write any moze thereof. And such goods as were found out of the goods of the said Chappell, the money thereof was restored to your Maesties people William Turnebull and his fellows. Your Maesties seruant Thomas Lind we haue sent with our letters the same way whereby he came into our kingdome. The long abiding here of your Maesties seruant in our kingdome, was for the continuing of your people from the Sea port. Written in our princely court and copail sent in the city of Moico in the yeere from the beginning of the world 7101, in the month of January,

Sp. Thomas
Lind,

1592

To the Queenes most excellent Maestie from the Lord
Boris Pheodorovich Godonova.

By the grace of God great Lord and great Duke Theodore Iuanovich gouernour of Russia, Volodimer, Mosco, and Nouogrod, King of Cazan and Astracan, Lord of Vobsko, and great Duke of Smolensco, Otuer, Vghori, Perme, Viatsky, Bulgary, and other regions, Lord and great Duke of Nouoflaue, Bealozera, and of Lifland, of Vdorsky, Obdorsky, Condinsky, and all the countrey of Siberia, and commander of all the Rosh parts, and Lord over the countrey of Iuersky, and King of Grufinsky, and of the countrey of Kabardinsky, Cherchasky, and Duke of the countrey of Igorsky, Lord and ruler of many countreys moze, &c.

Most resplendent Queene Elizabeth of England, France, and Ireland, &c. his princely Maesties seruant, Lord and Master of his houses, and high Steward of his house, and President of the territories of Cazan and Astracan, Boris Pheodorovich Godonova, vnto your most excellent Maestie, great Ladie Queene Elizabeth, send my humble commendations. It hath pleased your Maestie to write vnto me your gracious and princely letter by your seruant Thomas Lind; which letter I receiued with all humblenesse. During the time of the abode of your Messenger Thomas Lind here in the Mosco, it pleased God of his mercifulnesse, and our Lady the mother of God, and holy Saints, by the prayers of our lord and king his Maestie Theodore Iuanovich gouernour, the right beleuer and loue of Christ, to send our Queene and great Ladie Irene a young Princesse, to the great ioy and comfort of our kingdome, named Godocine. Wherefore we giue all honour and gloire to the almighty God unspeakable, whose

The Emperess
Irene deliuered
of a daughter.

whose giften had bene manifolde with mercie vnto vs; for which all wee Christians laud and praise God.

After all this your seruante was occasioned to stay vntill the conning of your merchants from the sea port.

Touching the letters which you haue receiued from your louing brother our Lord and Master by your ambassadour, therein you perceiue sufficiently my good meaning, in trauailing for the continuance of amitie and friendship betwixt you mighty great princes, in the which I will continue mine endeavour. Also your merchants I haue taken into my protection for to defend them for the loue I beare to your Maiestie. As heerefoze I haue done it willingly, and with great care of their good, so I meane to continue so farre as God will giue me leaue; to the end that brotherly loue be holde n betwene you Princes without disturbance.

As I haue bene to your merchants in times past, so now by the permission and commandement of our Lord and Master, I will be their defendour in all causes: and will cause all our authorised people to fauour them and to defend them, and to giue them free liberty to buy and sell at their pleasure. The merchants doe not certifie your princely Maiestie of all our friendship and fauour shewed vnto them from time to time. And whereas your Maiestie hath now written to our Lord and Master for the debtes which your merchants ought to haue of William Turnebull lately deceased, I hauing perused your Maiesties letter, whereby I am requested to be a meane for the recouerie and obtaining of their sayd debtes, I haue moued it to our Lord and King his Maiestie, that order may be giuen therein: and that his kinsman Rainold Kirchem with thre persons moze may be sent ouer together with the sayd Turnebulles Cusse and other things, as billes, books and writings. All which shall be deliuered to your merchants Agent and his fellows, and in money 600 rubbles of the sayd Turnebulles.

And touching your merchants, I will haue a great care ouer them, and protect them, whereby they shall suffer no damages in their trade: and all kinde of trafficke in merchantise shall be at their libertie.

Wherewith our Lord and Kings Maiesties royall citie of Mosco, in the yeere from the beginning of the world 7101, in the moneth of Januarie.

A letter from the Lord Boris Phedorowich to the right honourable Lord William Burghley, Lord high Treasurer of England.



By the grace of God great Lord, King, and great Duke Theodor Ioanowich, gouernour of Russia, Volodimer, Mosco, and Nouogrod, King of Cazan and Astracan, Lord of Vobsko, and great Duke of Smolensko, Otuer, Vghory, Perme, Viatsky, Bulgary, and other regions, Lord and great Duke of all Nouogrod in the low countreys, of Chernigo, of Lifland, of Vdorsky, Obdorsky, Condinsky, and all the countrey of Sibery, and commaunder of all the North parts, and Lord ouer the countrey of Iuersky, and King of Grufinsky, and of the countreys of Kabardinsky, Cherschasky, and Duke of Igorsky, Lord and ruler of many Countreys moze yet. His princely Maiesties seruante, Lord and Master of his houses, and high Steward of his house, President of the territories of Cazan and Astracan, Boris Phedorowich Godonoua, to the most honourable Counsellor of the most resplendent mightie great Lady Elizabeth Queene of England, France, and Ireland, William Burghley, Lord, and Knight of the Garter, high Treasurer of England, sendeth greeting.

I perceiue by your letter that your merchants last shippes came home in safte, and that you haue receiued the letters sent by them, by the hands of Francis Cherie, one from our Lord and great King of all Russia his Maiestie, vnto your Quenes most excellent Maiestie, and one from me to her Highnesse, and one from my selfe to you; and the contents thereof you haue caused to be read and well vnderstood at large. And whatsoever is therein written concerning Ierome the sef, you haue sought out the ground thereof, and that he is in great displeasure. And her Highnesse hath written in her letter concerning her Maiesties merchants, that whereas I haue taken them into protection, she taketh it very louingly and kindly, that for her sake they haue receiued so great kindnesse.

And touching the damages and hinderances which your merchants haue sustained meanes of the Emperours authorised people and officers, and that they were not permitted to trafficke at libertie at the sea port in the yeere 1589, for the space of thre weekes, hath bene against the Emperours Maiesties will and pleasure, as also against mine.

99. Francis Cherie.

your desire and wish that I should be good vnto the your honours louing letter to I will still continue to be the Quene her highnesse willingly, as God knoweth her will. Mine onely desire for the ayding, helping and meane of our Lord and King. And do that ende, I haue and to defende them in all cases and pleasures. It may be that some knowen vnto your Commissions are sent to all according to the tenor of my order.

All your honour wiceth ordered libertie of merchandise and inspection hath bene made as the Seafoe, and in some hereafter, but that they Mosco, the Treasurehouse, of a free libertie at their owne will and defendour in all causes, by it shall be known and certified by Wherewith our Kings Maiesties yeere, in the moneth of I.

A most gracious Letter
Hert and his companion
duke of all Russia, the one.



He onely God the Father, the maker of a creature for which Our onely God

wozd to discern spirit of life now in these perilous times of our selues to the good purpose, and to the maintenance of the great Lord, King, and great Duke of all Russia, Volodimer, Mosco, and Nouogrod, King of Cazan and Astracan, Lord of Vobsko, and great Duke of Smolensko, Otuer, Vghory, Perme, Viatsky, Bulgary, and other regions, Lord and great Duke of all Nouogrod in the low countreys, of Chernigo, of Lifland, of Vdorsky, Obdorsky, Condinsky, and all the countrey of Sibery, and commaunder of all the North parts, and Lord ouer the countrey of Iuersky, and King of Grufinsky, and of the countreys of Kabardinsky, Cherschasky, and Duke of Igorsky, Lord and ruler of many Countreys moze yet. His princely Maiesties seruante, Lord and Master of his houses, and high Steward of his house, President of the territories of Cazan and Astracan, Boris Phedorowich Godonoua, to the most honourable Counsellor of the most resplendent mightie great Lady Elizabeth Queene of England, France, and Ireland, William Burghley, Lord, and Knight of the Garter, high Treasurer of England, sendeth greeting.

Our princely Maiestie at the request of our seruante, and Master of our household, and Kingdome of Castile, knight, Sir William Webbe knight, Robert Doue, Wil. Garrowood, Woodworth, Francis Cherry, Iolaine, and go with their ships into the sea port at their pleasures to trafficke in our countreys and territories of our

you desire and wish that betwene our Emperours Paletie, and your Queenes Paletie, there should be good vnto the English merchants, and to defend them from all such damages hereafter: so I will still continue to be a meane betwixt our Lozbe and kings Paletie, and your great Lady willingly, as God knoweth, alwey hereafter as I haue bene heretofore: for the maineteyning of brotherly loue and amitie, most loyfully and like also. Whene onely desire is for your most excellent Princesse sake, to do all that lyeth in me for the ayding, helping and protecting of her Paleties merchants, by the order and commaundement of our Lord and king his Paletie.

And to that ende, I haue giuen order to all our authoized people to bee carefull ouer them, and to defende them in all causes, and to giue them free libertie to trafficke at their owne willes and pleasures. It may bee that your merchants doe not certifie you the truerth of all things, nor make knowne vnto your honour my readinesse to protecte them: And howe my Letters and Commissions are sent to all authoized people for them, that they shoulde ayde and assist them according to the tenour of my Letters, to all others that bee in authoize vnder the said Officers as aforesaid.

Also your honour witerth of the debarring of your merchants at the Sea poze from their accustomed libertie of merchandiseable trafficke and bartar. Touching which complaine searche is taken at the Sea side, and in all places where the trade is, doe not sustaine any damage or hindrance hereafter, but that they shalbe at libertie without any hindering or letting, either in the Sea or in the land at their owne will and pleasure. And also I will continue to be their protectour and benefactor in all causes, by our Lozbe and kings Paleties order and commaundement: as I haue knowne and certified you by your people resident here in the Mosco.

Written in our Kings Paleties royall cite of Mosco from the beginning of the month 7101, Anno Domini 1592.

Amost gracious Letter giuen to the English Merchants Sir John Harr and his company, by Theodore Iuanowich, the King, Lord, and great duke of all Russia, the onely vpholder thereof.



De onely God omnipotent befoze all eternitie, his will be done without endes the Father, Sonne, and holy Ghost we glorifie in Trinitie. Our onely God create: for which cause he hath giuen life to man to loue him, and to trust in him: Our onely God which inspireth euery one of vs his holy children with his word to disferne good though our Lord Iesus Christ, and the holy quickning spirit of life now in these perilous times establish vs to keepe the right scepter, and suffer vs to be rulers, and to the maintenance of vertue.

Alle the great Lord, king, and great duke Theodore Iuanowich, of all Russia the onely vpholder, of Volodimer, Mosco, and Nouogrod, King of Casan, and king of Astracan, Lord of Vobla, and great duke of Smolensko, of Ouer, Vghoric, Permia, Viarski, Bulgari, and other regions, great duke also of Nouogrod in the lotue Countrey, of Chernigo, of Rezan, Polorski, Rostou, Yaroslau, Bealozero, and of Liefland, of Vdorski, Obdorski, Condenski, and commannding all the Countrey of Siberi and of the North parts, and Lord ouer the Countrey of Iuerski, and King ouer the Countrey of Igorski, and ruler ouer many other kingdomes and shippes moze.

Our princely Paletie at the request of our brother in lawe Boris Feodorowich Godenonour seruante, and Master of our houses, generall Comptroller of our house, and gouernour of the Lordships and kingdomes of Casan and Astracan; vnto the English merchants Sir John Harr knight, Sir William Webbe knight, Richard Saikenstow Alderman, Nicholas Moseley alderman, Robert Doue, Wil. Garrowe, John Harbey, Robert Chamberlaine, Henry Anderson, and Woodworth, Francis Cherry, John Merrick, & Christopher Holmes; hath graciously giuen licence to go with their ships into our kingdom & territories of Duina with all kind of commodities at their pleasures to trafficke frō the sea side to our roial city of Mosco, & in al other cities, towns, countreys and territories of our whole kingdom of Mosco: vpon the humble petition and suite

sume of the saide English merchants Sir Iohn Hare and his company, wee haue giuen them leaue to passe and trafficke into all parts of our dominions and territories of Mosco, and to our inheritance of Nouogrod and Pleco with their wares and commodities without paying any custome or duties.

Also the great Lord, king, and great duke Theodore Iuanowich of all Russia haue strictly giuen and granted unto the aforesaid English merchants Sir Iohn Hare and his company, for the loue we beare to our deare sister Queene Elizabeth, we say of our gracious goodnes haue giuen leaue to traueil and passe to our royal seat of Mosco, and to all the parts of our kingdome with all kinde of commodities, and to trafficke with all kinde of wares at their owne pleasure, without paying any custome of their said wares.

To you our Customers we will and command not to take any manner of custome of the said merchants and their company, neither for entering, weying, nor passing by, nor through any place of our territories, nor for custome, of lugging in by Land, or for their person or persons; nor any duties ouer byldges, or for certificates or processes, or for conducting ouer any streames or waters, or for any other customes or duties that may be named; we will and straitly command you not to take any of them in any wise.

Provided alwayes, that the saide merchants shall not colour any strangers wares, nor bring them into our country, nor fauour them colourably, nor sell for any stranger. To you our Subiects also we command, not to meddle or deale with any wares of strangers colourably, nor to haue them by you in keeping, nor to offer to sell their commodities; but themselves to sell their owne commodities in change or otherwise as they may or can. And in all towne, cities, countreys, or any part of our dominions and territories it shall be lawful for the aforesaid merchants and their company to sell or barter away their owne commodities in change or otherwise, for or at their pleasure as they will. And whensoever the said merchants or any of them come into our territories of great Nouogrod, or Pleco, or to any other parts of our kingdome with their wares, by vertue of these our speciall letters we straitly charge and command you our Captaines, generals, and all other that be authorized or in office, to suffer the aforesaid merchants to passe and repasse, and to take no kinde of custome or duty of them, or any of their goods, howsoever it may haue name: nor in no place else where they shall come in all our kingdome. Likewise if they sell nor buy no wares, you shall take no custome, but suffer them quietly to passe where they will with their goods. Of our gracious goodnes and meere goodwill we haue giuen the said merchants leaue to trafficke throughout all our kingdomes, and in all towne and cities with all manner of wares and commodities without paying any custome or duty. Wheresoever they shall happen to sell or barter away any of their commodities to our Subiects, they are to barter or sell by whole sale, and not by retaille, as by the yard or by the ounce in their houses or elsewhere: but by the poche or whole clothe, belure, by masses, rattasies by the piece, and not by the part; and all other wares that are to be sold by weight, they are to be sold not by the ounce, but by great sale. Your wines shall be sold by hoggs heads, pints or buttes, but not by quartes nor pintes.

The said English merchants are to sell or barter away their owne commodities themselves, and not to suffer any Russes to buy or sell for them: nor to carry or transport any wares of strangers in stead of their owne in no wise. And if the saide English merchants shall be desirous to sell any of their commodities at Colmogro, or upon the Riuer of Diuna, or at Vologhda or at Yenissei, when as the saide merchants haue solde in any of the saide Townes, Cities or territories, then you our officers and authorized people by vertue of this our gracious letter we will and straitly command not to take any custome of the aforesaid merchants, howsoever it may be named.

Also whensoever the saide English merchants or any of their factours shall be desirous to hire carriers to carry their wares to any place of our dominions or Cities, it shall be at their choice and pleasure to hire them the best they can, and where they will, either water men to rowe or vessels.

Also when any of the said merchants themselves, or any of theirs are desirous to traueil into any part of our dominions, or into any other kingdome, or into their owne kingdome, if any of our treasure be deliuered to them, they to take it with them, and to sell it in barter or otherwise for the wares as are most requisite and necessary to be brought into our kingdome and to be deliuered to our treasury. You, our nobilitie, generals & al others in authority suffer them to passe through our cities, townes & countreys without taking any custome of them. And when the said merchants haue done their traffick in any place & come to the Mosco, they shall make it knowne at their abode at the house of Chancery and secretarship to Vasil Shalkan. And further when these our English merchants with their ships or vessels by sea, that by mishap shall be cast away upon any of our shoars or coles, we will and command you to ayde & helpe them, and to seeke for their goods

perished by any casualty, or lost without any prolonging found in any part of our coast taken and lapped up in sacrifice their factours under penaltie of their bodies we the King, the English merchants and Church of S. Marke behind their old accustomed use, to save people, & may keepe in places, as at Ierusalem, Vologhda shall keepe and use at their own charge, rent, or custome of them or theirs for any duties.

The said English merchants shall suffer any other strangers Russia to lay their wares and commodities please without let or hindrance. Their housekeeper bring a note of their themselves be present. Also it shall be lawful for the said merchants to sell their commodities in change or otherwise as they will. And whensoever the said merchants or any of them come into our territories of great Nouogrod, or Pleco, or to any other parts of our kingdome with their wares, by vertue of these our speciall letters we straitly charge and command you our Captaines, generals, and all other that be authorized or in office, to suffer the aforesaid merchants to passe and repasse, and to take no kinde of custome or duty of them, or any of their goods, howsoever it may haue name: nor in no place else where they shall come in all our kingdome.

Likewise if they sell nor buy no wares, you shall take no custome, but suffer them quietly to passe where they will with their goods. Of our gracious goodnes and meere goodwill we haue giuen the said merchants leaue to trafficke throughout all our kingdomes, and in all towne and cities with all manner of wares and commodities without paying any custome or duty. Wheresoever they shall happen to sell or barter away any of their commodities to our Subiects, they are to barter or sell by whole sale, and not by retaille, as by the yard or by the ounce in their houses or elsewhere: but by the poche or whole clothe, belure, by masses, rattasies by the piece, and not by the part; and all other wares that are to be sold by weight, they are to be sold not by the ounce, but by great sale. Your wines shall be sold by hoggs heads, pints or buttes, but not by quartes nor pintes.

The said English merchants are to sell or barter away their owne commodities themselves, and not to suffer any Russes to buy or sell for them: nor to carry or transport any wares of strangers in stead of their owne in no wise. And if the saide English merchants shall be desirous to sell any of their commodities at Colmogro, or upon the Riuer of Diuna, or at Vologhda or at Yenissei, when as the saide merchants haue solde in any of the saide Townes, Cities or territories, then you our officers and authorized people by vertue of this our gracious letter we will and straitly command not to take any custome of the aforesaid merchants, howsoever it may be named.

Also whensoever the saide English merchants or any of their factours shall be desirous to hire carriers to carry their wares to any place of our dominions or Cities, it shall be at their choice and pleasure to hire them the best they can, and where they will, either water men to rowe or vessels.

Also when any of the said merchants themselves, or any of theirs are desirous to traueil into any part of our dominions, or into any other kingdome, or into their owne kingdome, if any of our treasure be deliuered to them, they to take it with them, and to sell it in barter or otherwise for the wares as are most requisite and necessary to be brought into our kingdome and to be deliuered to our treasury. You, our nobilitie, generals & al others in authority suffer them to passe through our cities, townes & countreys without taking any custome of them. And when the said merchants haue done their traffick in any place & come to the Mosco, they shall make it knowne at their abode at the house of Chancery and secretarship to Vasil Shalkan. And further when these our English merchants with their ships or vessels by sea, that by mishap shall be cast away upon any of our shoars or coles, we will and command you to ayde & helpe them, and to seeke for their goods

perishes by any casualty, and to be redressed againe to the said English merchants: or their assigns without any prolonging or detaining. As also if any of the aforesaid merchants goods be taken and lapt up in custody in some place or other, and be deliuered to the aforesaid merchants or further more we King, Lord, and great duke of all Russia, of our gracious goodnesse glue vnto the English merchants and their company, their house in the Citie of Mosco lying hard by the Church of S. Marke behinde the market place: which they shall keepe and remaine therein after their old accustomed vse. Whould alwayes that they shall keepe one Russe porter or one of their owne people, & may keepe any other Russe seruant at their discretion. Also their houses in sundry places, as at Ierusalem, Vologhda, Colmogro, and at S. Michael Archangel, all these houses they shall keepe and vse at their owne pleasure, according to our former letters patents without paying any dutie, rent, or custome. Also you the communalitie of the said towne that take anything of them or theirs for any dutie that should belong to you, especially of the houses aforesaid: but the said English merchants that enjoy them peaceably for themselves and their families: but the to lay their wares and commodities in their warehouses, and so sell their commodities to whom they please without let or hindrance, by vertue of this our gracious letter.

Their housekeeper bring a Russe shall not undertake to meddle, or sell any of their wares with our subjects: but be present, nor to buy any thing for them. Also it shall be lawfull for the said merchants when they shall arrive at their port, to lade and unlash their merchandises as in times past they haue done at their pleasure. And when they lade their goods to shippe them for the present time, and for them to carry their goods to and fro with their ships with Russe commodities or unlade them, it shall be lawfull for them to hire any of our subjects vessels to S. Michael Archangel, or else where.

Also we command you our authorized people at the sea side as well Customers as others to take of the aforesaid merchants a note, or remembrance, what goods they bring in and ship out: whereby it may be known what goods come in and go out. But in no wise shall you open or unpacke any of their wares or merchandises.

In like manner when as they ship or sende away any of their countrey commodities from S. Michael Archangel to any other place, or to our royall Citie of Mosco ye shall not hinder nor let them any manner of wise for the shipping of their merchandises in or out, by vertue of these our gracious letters of privilege given them.

And whensoever any of the said English merchants haue any occasion to sende over land out of our dominions into their own countrey any of their seruantes or factors, by vertue of this our gracious letter we command you to giue them their passeport out of the office of our Secretariship. And whensoever any of our subjects hath any thing to do with any of the aforesaid merchants by way of contentions: or that they be dammified or hindered by any of our subjects: then we appoint our Chanceller and Secretary Vassili Shalcun to heare their causes, and finally to decide and determine on both sides according to equitie and iustice: and that he shall search the truth betwene both parties.

And when the truth cannot be proued or found out, then to call lots: the order of the aforesaid Judge, and he to whom the lot shall fall to take his othe.

Furthermore whensoever any of the English merchants or their factors shall come into any parts of our dominions or Cities, and shall be wronged any kinde of wayes in trading, or otherwise by any abused, or haue any occasion of contention with any by way of trade in merchandise or other wayes: we straitly charge and commaund you our gouernours, and authorized subjects within our Realme and territories of the same, to minister iustice vnto the aforesaid merchants, or to search the truth of the contention: And for want of sufficient prooffe or due of the aforesaid English merchants for the more ready trial of the cause: And in no wise to take any ill will and commaund all this to be obserued and kept in all parts of our dominions by all our subjects and authorized people, by vertue of these our royal letters patents: And the said letters not to be diminished in any part or part thereof, by any persons howsoever they be named, nor whosoever shall withstand and not regard these our gracious letters shall be in our high displeasure, and shall incur the losse of his life. This our gracious letter was given in our kingdom and Citie of Mosco, in the yere from the beginning of the world 7104. in the moneth of May.

Subscribed by the Emperours Chanceller
and Secretary Vassili Shalcun.

After our account 1596.

The Emp death. Traffiques, & Discoueries.

509

A branch of a letter from *M. Iohn Merick*, Agent vnto the *Moscouie* company in *Russia*, closed vp in the *Mosco* the 14. of March, Anno 1597. touching the death of *Phedor Ivanowich* late Emperour of all *Russia*, &c.



Thus thus farre proceeded with this my answer vnto the chiefest point of your worships letters receiued, my desire was to haue sent one vnto you long since, as you may perceiue by the first date: but by reason I could not get leaue, I haue deferred it of till this instant, so that there was none suffered to passe out of the land. The cause may be iudged, so that it pleased God to call out of this world, the Emperour his Paletie, who departed about the 7. of January: and euer since hath bene a mourning time, & no suites for any matter could be heard. But it hath bene a very deaw season. Per (thanks be to God) through the wise government of *Loyd Boris Pheodorowich* the *Loyd Poteeco* vnto the saide late Emperour, since his death all things haue bene very quiet without any dissention; as the like in such a great kingdome I haue not heard of. And now through the prouidence of Almighty God, and by surrender of the late Emperesse *Irenia Feodorima*, and the common content of the Patriarch, Bishops, and the whole Clergie, with the whole Commons besides, choise is made of none other but of the said *Loyd Poteeco*, *L. Boris Pheodorowich* to be Emperour, and great Prince of all *Russia*, who was most unwilling to receiue the kingdome, but the people would make it selfe to take vpon him the kingdome, and he is absolute Emperour to him and his heires. And God hath done much for this Countrey, and hath made the people greatly happy, in that he hath prouided and appointed so famous and worthy a Prince: whose excellent government and experience these foureteene yeeres hath bene manifest to all *Russia*. God graunt his highnesse a most prosperous and long raigne, with his Lady the Emperesse, the Prince his sonne, and the Prince his daughter. All men do reioyce both *Russians* and strangers for this most famous Emperour. The Coronation is thought shalbe on the Assension day next, at which time I cannot depart from *Mosco*: which is a lile before the time: but ordinarily I doe take my journey from hence. And touching his Paleties fauour towards me on your behalfe, especially for her Paleties sake, as in her time it was extraordinary, and so specially shewed to mee, as to none the like: so hath his highnesse promised the continuance thereof, with further fauour as shalbe desired. Whereof I haue no doubt: for daily I do finde the same.

10. Feb. 1597.

Since Boris Pheodorowich by general consent chosen Emperour of Russia.

A learned Epistle written 1581. vnto the famous Cosmographer

M. Gerardus Mercator concerning the river *Pechora*, *Naramsay*, *Cara reca*, the mighty river of *Ob*, the place of *Taks Olysh* in *Siberia*, the great river *Ardob*, the lake of *Kris*, as called of the borderers *Paraha*, the Countrey of *Carab Colmah*, giuing good light to the discouery of the Northeast passage to *Cathay*, *China* and the *Moluccas*.

Incipit & celebri Gerardo Mercatori, domino & amico singulari in manus propriae Duisburgi in Clinia.



Vm meminisse, amice optime, quanta, cum vnà ageremus, delectatione afficeretur in legendis Geographicis scriptis Homeri, Strabonis, Aristotelis, Plinij, Dionis & reliquorum, lætatur sum eo quod incidissem in hunc nunc, qui tibi has literas tradit, quem tibi commendatum esse valde cupio, perientia, vt mihi quidem videtur, multum te adiuuerit in re vna, eaque differunt Cosmographi recentiores; patefactione nimirum ingentis illius Promontorii, celeberrique illius & opulente regionis sub Cathayorum rege per Oceanum ad Orientem. Aferius est natio Belgæ, qui capitiuus aliquot annos vixit in Moscouitarum imperio, apud viros illic celeberrimos Yacouium & Vnekiu; à quibus Antuerpiam missus est, qui Sueuo artifice duus ad eam patefactionem naues edificauit in Duina fluuio. Velle proponit, quamquam sine arte, appositè tamen, & vt satis intelligas, quod queso diligenter adijce ipsi fluuii Obam tum terra per Samoedoru & Sibericoru regionem, tum mari per Pechora fluminis ad Orientem. Hac experientia confirmatus certo apud se statuit nauim aduoluisti, cuius carinâ non niniû profundè demissam esse vult, in Sinu S. Nicolai conduci regione Moscouitaru, instructam illâ quidem rebus omnibus ad eam patefactionem necessarijs,

Deus noster assistens in Duina fluuio ad patefactionem Orientem.

To the famous and singular friend

Dolgoia Insula.

Insula Vaigats.

Sinus inter Vaigats & Obam vergens per meridiem. Vel Naramicy & Cara recta.

Litus Obæ incolitur ab Offijs trium dierum itinere.

Yaks Olgush locus super Obam fluuium duodecim dierum itinere à mari.

Ardoh flumen influens in lacum Kithaym: de quo in itinere ad Bingham scribit Antonius Tschinkovus.

Carrah Colmak est Cathaya.

cellarijs, atque illic redintegreato comineatu, Moscoviticæ nationis notissimos iusta mercede asilicere: qui & Samoedicam linguam pulchre teneant, & fluuium Ob exploratum habeant, & qui quotannis ea loca ventitant. Vnde Maio exeunte constituit pergere ad Orientem per continentem Vgoriæ ad Orientales partes Pechoræ, Insulamque cui nomen est Dolgoia. Hic latitudines obferuare, terram describere, bolidem demittere, locorumque ac punctorum distantias annotare, vbi & quoties libebit. Et quoniam Pechoræ Sinus vel euntibus vel redeuntibus commodissimus est tum subsidij tum diuersorij locus propter glaciem & tempestates, diem impendere decreuit cognoscendis vadis, facillimoque nauium aditu inueniendo: quo loco antehac aquarum altitudinem duntaxat ad quinque pedes inuenit, sed profundiores naturales esse non dubitat: deinde per eos fines pergere ad tria quatuorve miliaria nautica, reliqua Insula quam Vaigats vocant, media ferè via inter Vgoriam & Novam Zembiam: tum Sinum quandam præterire inter Vaigats atque Obam, qui per Meridiem vergens pertingit ad terram Vgoriæ, in quem conflunt exigui duo amnes || Marmesia atque Carah, ad quos amnes gens alia Samoedorum accolit immanis & effrata. Multa in eo tractu loca vadosa, multas cataractas inuenit; sed tamen per quas possit Nauigare. Vbi ad fluuium Obam peruentum fuerit, qui quidem fluuius (vt referunt Samoedi) septuaginta habet ostia, quæ propter ingentem latitudinem multas magnasque concludentem Insulas, quas varij uiculi nomen puli, vix quisquam animaduertat, ne temporis nimium impendat, constituit ad summum tria quatuorve tentare ora, ea præferim quæ ex consilio Incolarum, quos in itinere aliquot habiturus est, commodissima videbuntur, tria quæ quatuorve eius regionis nauigiola tentandis Offijs adhibere, quàm fieri potest ad litus proximè, (quod quidem sub itinere trium dierum incolitur) vt quo loco tutissime nauigari possit, intelligat.

Quod si nauim per fluuium Obam aduerso amne possit impellere, prima si poterit cataracta, eaque, vt verisimile est, commodissima, ad eumque locum appellere, quem aliquando ipse cum suis aliquot per Sibericorum regionem terra adijt, qui duodecim iuxta diem itinere distat à Mari, quæ influat in mare flumen Ob, qui locus est in continente, prope fluuium Ob cui nomen est Yaks Olgush, nomine mutato ab illo magno Profluente flumini Ob illabente; tum certè speraret maximas se difficultates superasse. Referunt enim illic populi, qui trium duntaxat dierum navigatione ab eo loco abfuerunt (quod illic rarum est, eo quod multi ad vnum duntaxat diem cymbas pelliceas à littore propellentes oborta tempestas perierunt, cum neque à sole neque à syderibus rectionem scirent petere) per transversum fluminis Ob, vnde spaciosum esse illius latitudinem constat, grandes se carinas preciosis onustas mercibus magno fluuij delatas vidisse per Nigros, pura Ethiopeas. Eum fluuium Ardoh illi vocant, qui influit in lacum Kithayum, quem Paraha illi nominant, cui concernens est gens illa latissimè fusa, quàm Carrah Colmak appellant, non alia certè quàm Cathaya. Illic, si necessitas postulat, opportunum erit hybernare, se suosque reficere, relique omnes necessarias conquirere. Quod si acciderit, non dubitat interim plurimum se adiutum in, plura illic quarentem atque ediscentem. Veruntamen sperat æstate eadem ad Cathayorum fines se peruenturum, nisi ingenti glaciæ mole ad os fluuij Obæ impediatur, quæ maior interdum, interdum minor est. Tum per Pechoram redire statuit, atque illic hybernare: vel si id non poterit, in flumen Duinz, quo mature satis pertinet, atque ita proximo in itinere progredi. Vnum est quoddam suo loco oblitus sum. Qui locum illum Yaks Olgush incolunt, maioribus suis olim prædicatum asserunt, se in lacu Kithayo dulcissimam campanarum harmoniam audivisse, atque ampla ædificia conspexisse. Et cum gentis Carrah Colmak mentem faciunt (Cathaya illa est) ab imò peccore suspiria repetunt, manibusque proiecitis fulgunt in cælum, velut insignem illius splendorem innuentes atque admirantes. Vtinam Alarius hic Cosmographiam melius asperet, multum ad illius usum adiungeret, qui sanè plurimum est. Multa præterea, vir amicissime, ipsumque hominem te audire cupio, qui mihi spopondit se in itinere Duisburgi te visurum. Auet enim tecum conferre sermones, & procul dubio minem multum adiueris. Satis instructus videtur pecunia & gratia, in quibus alijque officijs amicitia feci illi, si vellet, mei copiam. Deus Optimus maximus hominis votis atque precibus critat fauere, iniuria secundet, successus fortunet, exitum felicissimum concedat. Vale ac Domine singularis.

Arusburgi ad Offellam fluuium 20. Februarij 1581.

Tuus quantus quantus sum

Ioannes Balakus.

Calling to remembrance (being together, in reading) Dion, and the rest, I rejoyced in these presents, (whom I do bring upon the river of Offella) you to the knowledge of a certain rich countrey subject unto the man is called * Alferius being by the donations of Russia under the Answer to procure his full Will to the two famous personages as build two ships for the same discovery the Prospekt (as he declareth the perelure, which I request you will very man himselfe hath trauelled of Samoeds, and of Siber, and also encouraged by this his experience with merchandize (the keele by Tale of Saint Nicholas in Russia) and with a new supply of wine certain Russes well known by gauge, and are acquainted with the port.

Whereupon about the ende of July last, by the maine of Ioughon which is called Dolgoia. And here within the countrey, to found the discovery in oft as occasion shall be offered in place both for harbour and victuals in regard of Ice and tempest, he is wishing out the best enterance for ships to proceed on along those coasts for the Vaigats almost in the middle way betweene Baie betweene Vaigats and the fall two small rivers called * Marmesia barbarous and savage nation of many cataracts or ouerfalls of water to the river of Ob, which river is the reason of the huge breadth thereof and many forces of people, no man can come, he purpoeth to search the which shall be thought most commodious to come certaine with him in his voyage Countrey in search of these mountaine hopes journey of the Sea is inhabitable. It is so fall out that he may sayle by the countrey of Siberia which is about the which he heretofore accompanied with his ship, by showing his name from that ridge he would conceiue full hope that he would there about report, which were

To the famous and renowned *Gerardus Mercator*, his Reuerend
and singular friend at *Duisburgh* in *Cleineland*, these be deliuered.

Calling to remembrance (most deare Friend) what exceeding delight you tooke at our be-
ding together, in reading the Geographicaall writings of Homer, Strabo, Aristotle, Plinie,
of these presents, (whom I do especially recommend vnto you) who arrived lately here at Arus-
burg vpon the river of *Ossella*. This mans experience (as I am of opinion) will greatly auail
you to the knowledge of a certaine matter which hath bene by you so vehemently desired, and so
curiously laboured for, and concerning the which the late Cosmographers do hold such varietie of
opinions: namely, of the discouerie of the huge promontorie of *Tabin*, and of the famous and
rich countreys subiect vnto the Emperoz of *Cathay*, and that by the *Northeast Ocean sea*. The
nations of *Russia* vnder two famous men *Yacouius* and *Vnekius*, by whom he was sent to
Amwerp to procure skillfull Pilots and Mariners, (by propounding liberall rewards) to go vnto
the two famous personages aforesayd, which two had set a *Sweden* ship waight on worke to
build two ships for the same discouerie vpon the river of *Dwina*. The passage vnto *Cathay* by
the *Northeast* (as he declareth the matter, albeit without arte, yet very aptly, as you may well
perceiue, which I request you diligently to consider) is without doubt very short and easie. This
very man himselfe hath trauelled to the river of *Ob*, both by land, through the countreys of the
Samoeeds, and of *Siberia*, and also by Sea, along the coast of the river *Pechora* Eastward. Be-
ing encouraged by this his experience he is fully resolu'd with himselfe to conduct a *Barke* la-
dred with merchandize (the keele whereof hee will not haue to draine ouer much water) to the
Bale of S. Nicholas in *Russia*, being furnished with all things expedient for such a disco-
uery, and with a new supply of victuals at his arrivall there, and also to hire into his compa-
ny certain *Russes* best known vnto himselfe, who can perfectly speake the *Samoeeds* lan-
guage, and are acquainted with the river of *Ob*, as hauing frequented those places yere by
yere.

**Oliver.*

Two ships
built vpon the
river of *Dwina*
for the *Northeast*
discouery.

Whereupon about the ende of *May* hee is determined to saile from the *Bale of S. Nicholas*
Eastward, by the maine of *Loughoria*, and so to the Easterly parts of *Pechora*, to the Island
which is called *Dolgoia*. And here also hee is purposed to obserue the latitudes, to suruey and
describe the countrey, to sound the depth of the Sea, and to note the distantes of places, where,
and so oft as occasion shall be offered. And soasmuch as the *Bale of Pechora* is a most conue-
nient place both for harbour and victuall, as well in their going forth as in their returne home
in regard of Ice and tempest, he is determined to bestow a day in sounding the *Flats*, and in scar-
ping out the best entrance for ships: in which place heretofore he found the water to be but shal-
lowe, but hee doubteth not but that there are deeper channells: and then hee intendeth
to proceed on along those coasts to the space of thre or foure leagues, leauing the Island called
Vaigars almost in the middle way betwene *Vgoria* and *Noua Zembla*: then also to passe by a
certaine Baie betwene *Vaigars* and *Ob*, trending Southerly into the land of *Vgoria*, where
he shall see two small rivers called * *Marmesia* and *Carah*, vpon the which rivers doe inhabite an
other barbarous and Savage nation of the *Samoeeds*. He found many *Flats* in that tract of land,
and many catenets of ouersals of water, yet such as hee was able to saile by. When hee shall
come to the river of *Ob*, which river (as the *Samoeeds* report) hath seuerall mouthes, which
reason of the huge breadth thereof containing many and great Islands, which are inhabited
with many sortes of people, no man scarcely can well discouer, because he will not spend too
much time, he purposeth to search thre or foure at the most of the mouthes thereof, those chief-
ly which shall be thought most commodious by the abuisse of the inhabitants, of whom hee mea-
neth to haue certaine with him in his voyage, and meane to employ thre or foure boates of
the countrey in search of these mouthes, as neere as possibly he can to the shore, which wish
eth to haue certaine with him in his voyage, that he may learne where the river is best naviga-
ble. If it fall out that he may saile by the river *Ob* against the streame, and moue by to that
countrey of *Siberia* which is about twelue dayes journey from the Sea, where the river *Ob*
falleth into the Sea, which place is in the Continent neere the river *Ob*, and is called *Yaks* Ol-
d, by knowing his name from that mightie river which falleth into the river *Ob*, then doubt-
les hee would conceiue full hope that hee had passed the greatest difficultes: for the people
telling thereabout report, which were thre dayes sayling onely from that place beyond the
river

The Island of
Dolgoia.

The Island of
Vaigars.
The Baie be-
twene *Vai-
gars* and *Ob*
trending South-
therly.
**Narumky*
and *Cara* Reon.

The place vpon
the river
Ob, where he
was but 12
dayes journey
to the mouthes
thereof, and is
called *Yaks*
Olgu.

river Ob, whereby the byschtherof may be gathered (which is a rare matter there, because that many rowing with their boates of leather one dayes journey onely from the shore have bene cast away in tempest, having no skill to guide themselues neither by Sunne nor Starre) that they haue seene great vessels laden with rich and precious merchandize brought downe the lake great river by blacke or swart people. They call that river "Ardoh, which falleth into the lake of Kitchay, which they call Paraha, whereupon bordereth that mightie and large nation which they call Carrah Colmak, which is none other then the nation of Cathay. There, if neede require, he may staye Winter and refresh himselfe and his, and seeke all things which he shall stand in need of: which if it so fall out, he doubteth not but in the meane while he shall be much furthered in searching and learning out many things in that place. Howbeit, he hopeth that he shall reach to Cathaya that very Summer, unlesse he be hindered by great abundance of Ice at the mouth of the river of Ob, which is sometimes more, and sometimes lesse. If it so fall out, he then purposeth to returne to Pechora, and there to Winter: or if he cannot doe so neither, then hee meaneth to returne to the river of Owina, whither he will reach in good time enough, and so the next Spring following to proceed on his voyage. One thing in due place I saye before.

The people which dwell at that place called Yaks Olgush, affirme that they haue heard their forefathers say, that they haue heard most sweete harmonie of bells in the lake of Kitchay, and that they haue seene therein stately and large buildings: and when they make mention of the people named Carrah Colmak (this country is Cathay) they fetch deepe sighes, and holding up their hands, they looke up to heauen, signifying as it were, and declaring the notable glory and magnificence of that nation. I would this Oliuer were better seen in Cosmographie, I would greatly further his experience, which doubtlesse is very great. Most deare friend, I come many things, and I wish you should heare the man himselfe which promised me faithfully that he would visite you in his way at Duisburg, for he desireth to conferre with you, and doubtlesse you shall very much further the man. He seemeth sufficiently furnished with money and friends, wherein and in other offices of curtesie I offered him a my furtherance if it had pleased him to have used me. The Lord prosper the mans desires and forwardnesse, blesse his good beginnings, further his proceedings, and grant unto him most happy issue. Fare you well good sir and my longe friend. From Arnsburg upon the 11. of February, 1581.

Yours wholly at commandement,

John Balck,

After Antonie Ienkinson in a disputation before her Maestie with Sir Humphrey Gilbert for prooffe of a passage by the North-east in Cathaya, among other things allegeth this: videlicet, that there came a continuall streame or current through Mare glaciale, of such violence as a Colmak told him, that if you cast any thing therein, it would presently be carried out of sight towards the West, &c.

A testimonie of the Northeasterne Discouerie made by the English, and of the profite that may arise by pursuing the same: taken out of the second volume of Navigations and Voyages, fol. 17. of the notable Cosmographer, M. Iohn Baptista Ramusius, Secretarie to the State of Venice: Written in Italian in the yeere, 1557.



Alla parte poi di sotto la nostra Tramontana, che chiamano scittoria & Cosmographo di questi & de passati tempi si ha uero vi ha messo & mette mare copiato, & che la terra corra continuamente fino a 90. gradi verso il Polo: per questo mappa-mondo all'incontro si uede che la terra va solamente un po' verso la Noruega & Suetia, & voltando corre poi Grece & Levante nel paese di Mosconia & Rossia, & va diritto al Cataio. Et che cio sia la uerita per le ragioni che hanno fatto gl' Inglesi con le loro navi, volendo andare a scoprire il Cataio al tempo del Re Odoardo Sesto d' Inghilterra, questi anni passati, ne possono far uera testimonianza: perche nel mezzo del loro viaggio, capitato per fortuna a i liti di Mosconia, dove regnaua allora Giousoni Vasiluich Imperatore della Rossia & gran Duca di Mosca, il qual non molto piacere & meraviglia vedutogli, fece grandissimo carezze, & non traua il mare esser nauigabile, & non agghiacciato. La qual nauigatione (ancor che con l'istio fin non sia stata bene intesa) se col spesso frequentarla & col lungo uso & cognitione de que

si continuerà, e per fare gra-
te del mondo.

Mouuer (having before
Venerus) on that part
of the land of former times
which continually to 90. degree
the land extendeth onely a
trembleth after wards towards
Russia, and stretcheth directly
English men haue of late made,
of England, are very sufficient
upon the coast of Moscouie (whi-
ch is, and great duke of Moscouie,
English men, entertained them
and not frozen.

Which nauigation to Cathay,
frequencing the same, and by long
make a wonderfull change and re-

The testimonie of Gera-
rope, touching the north
by the Northeatt.

M Agnam occasio
lit celeberrima A
centrionalia Finl
gesta habet. Ex
teriorum Region
scripsit: Quibus
hanc castigatorem non reddere.

The most famous nauigation of
a great occasion, and certaine dis-
covery in this the North-eastern parts
of the land elevation and the quarters of
the city of Mosco, made by the fore-
mentioned of the situation of the inland
thought it my due to exhibit to the
publick view.

Another testimonie of Io-
same Nauigation and Discou-
ry by gestu Emannelis Regis Por-

A T ne omnis, vnus
Britanni Septem
vincti plus nund
Naruzque Liunia
giz, Finnarchia,
litora prateruelli
sibi patefaciunt. Qu
idem Britannis velitatione, sunt se
proprietates, omnisque generis r

si continuerà, e per fare grandissima mutazione & rivolgimento nelle cose di questa nostra parte del mondo.

The same in English.

MDequer (having before spoken of diuers particularities, in an excellent Map of Paulus of these and of former times hitherto, haue, and doe place the frozen Sea, and that the land stretch continually to 90. degrees, towards the pole: contrarywise, in this mappe is to bee scene, that the land extendeth onely a litle about Norway and Sweithland, and then turning it selfe stretcheth after wards towards the Southeast and by East, unto the countrey of Moscouie and Russia, and stretcheth directly vnto Cathay. And that this is true, the navigations which the English men haue of late made, intending to discouer Cathay, in the time of Edward the six, king of England, are very sufficient witnesses. For in the midst of their voyage, lighting by chance upon the coast of Moscouie (where they found then reigning John Vasiluich Czar of Russia, and great duke of Moscouie, who after he had, to his great delight and admiration, scene the English men, entertained them with exceeding great curtesies) found this sea to be nauigable,

Which nauigation to Cathay, although it be not as yet thoroughly knowne, yet if with often frequenting the same, and by long use and knowledge of those seas it bee continued, it is like to make a wonderfull change and reuolution in the state of this our part of the world.

The great hope of the Moscovite discouerie.

The testimonie of Gerardus Mercator in his last large Mappe of Europe, touching the notable discoueries of the English, made of Moscouie by the Northeatt.

MAgnam occasionem certamque rationem emendandæ Europæ nobis attulit celeberrima Anglorum per Cronium mare nauigatio: quæ littora Septentrionalia Finlappiæ Moscouiæque iuxta cæli situm, mundi que plagas diueriorum Regionum emendatius describendarum infallibilem legem præscripsit: Quibus oblati adminiculis pulcherrimis, iniquum putauit tabulam accuratiorẽ non reddere.

The same in English.

The most famous nauigation of the English men by the Northeatt sea hath offered vnto me a great occasion, and certaine direction for the reformation of the mappe of Europe: which discouerie hath the Northeerne parts of Finmarke, Lapland, and Moscouie, laid out according to the true eleuation and the quarters of the world. And further, the true obseruation of the latitude of the city of Mosco, made by the foresaid Englishmen, hath yeelded me an infallible rule, for the rectifying of the situation of the inland countreies: which notable helps being ministered vnto me, although it importeth to expatiate to the world this Mappe, more exact and perfect then hitherto hath bene published.

Another testimonie of Ioannes Metellus Sequanus concerning the same Nauigation and Discouerie in his Preface prefixed before Olorius de vrbis gestis Emanuelis Regis Portugallie, written about the yeere, 1574.

Ane omnis, vnus Hispanis, Oceani maris gloria totaque concederetur, Britanni Septentriones noua in Moscouiam nauigatione, ab hinc annis viginti plus minus illustrarunt. Nam bellis Sueticis à Moscouitarum, Naruzque Liunionis exclusi commercio, iter ad illos Oceano, hinc Noruegiæ, Finmarchiæ, Lappiæ, Scricinnæ, Biarmæque: illinc Groenlandiæ littora præterueniunt, vbi Septuagesimum latitudinis Aquilonis gradum sibi patefaciunt. Quam nauigationem Belgæ postea, non sine tamen cum ipsorum Britannis velitatione, sunt secuti. Eo vehunt argenti veteris fragmenta, lineasque propè detritas, omnique generis minutiones merces, ad vsum, cultumque corporis hominum.

minum vtriusque sexus, veluti liateæ & byssea cingula, periscelides, crumenas, cultros, & id genus sexcenta. A Moschis autem pelles omnis generis pretiosas adferunt, & salmones sal-
tos, fumôque duratos.

The same in English.

BUt least all and the whole glory of discovering the Ocean Sea should be ascribed to the Spaniards, the Englishmen about twentie yeeres past, by a new navigation into Moscouie, discovered the Northeast partes. For they by reason of the warres of Sweethland being hindered from the traffique of the Moscouites and of the Narue in Liefland, opened a passage for themselves by the Ocean Sea, beyond the Northerne latitude of 70. degrees: haunting in their course the one side the coastes of Norway, Finmark, Lapland, Scrickfin and Biarmia: On the other side the coast of Groeland. Which voyage the Hollanders afterwarde entered into, but not without some conflict with the English. They carry thither old plate and course linen cloth, and all kind of small Percerie wares, serving for the apparelling of men and women, as linnen, and silke girdles, garters, purses, knives, and many such like things. And they bring away from the Moscouites, all kinde of precious furs, and Salmons, salted and dyed in the smoke.

COMM
DE IS
SCRIP

Insula er

rum q

q

ARNO

SERENISSIM

Domino CHRIS

lorum, Garbar

maria C

den



Raclar
ceps,
& in pu
ingente
die hom
ab sorber
paser ac
res eo pr

Se anima pretiosius, sese vinum
animo cum feruore, et nequ
lactymis: ab isto proposito se re
Nec inferior em multo consecus
pretendam potentissimâ Regie Per
tratus, solium em ad Regem profes
teritur, erectis & constantibus a
Que vero res, Sereniss. Princeps, i
nulli pro ea periculum: nullas in
que impulsu, non quidem, ut quer
quidem illud offerrem, sed tamen,
est, ut scriptorum de ea errores
profecto periculosa, & multorum
proposito me etiam Cn. Pom
Romanos procuratorem, cum in
offici frumentum collegisset, ma
nim Romam versu properares,
pudare, nec se ventorum aut m
primus ingressus, anchoras tolli
molitias: ut viuamus, non vr
periculis ausis maiorem habenda
Hunc ego sic imitor,

B R É V I S

COMMENTARIVS DE ISLANDIA: QVO SCRIPTORVM DE HAC

Insula errores deteguntur, & extraneo-

rum quorundam conuictijs, ac calumnijs

quibus Islandis liberis insultare

solent, occurritur:

per
ARNORIMVM IONAM ISLANDVM

SERENISSIMO PRINCIPI AC DOMINO,

Domino CHRISTIANO IIII. DANIAE, Noruegia, Vanda-

lorum, Gothorunq; Regi electo: Slesuici, Holsatia, Stor-

maria & Dithmaria Duci & Comiti in Ol-

danburg & Delmenborst: Domino

suo clementissimo.



Raclaram sanè apud Historicos meretur laudem, Sereniss. Prin-
ceps, Anchuri illius Mida regis filij ausus plusquam humanus,
& in patriam pietas, ferè exemplo carens, quod ad occidendum
ingentem circa Celanam Phrygia oppidum, serræ hiatus, quoti-
die homines haud exiguo numero, & quicquid in propinquo erat,
absorbentem, sese vltro obtulerit. Cum enim ab oraculo Mida
pater accepisset, non prius conclusum iri istam voraginem, quam
res eo preciosissima immitterentur: Anchurus existimans, nihil
se viam in siluâ profundissimum chasma præcipitem dedit: idq;
luctum ab isto proposito se retrahi passus sit.

Nec inferiori multo consecuti sunt gloriam Sperthius & Bulis, Lacedæmonij, qui ad
uerendam potentissimæ Regis Persarum Xerxis, ob occisos à Lacedæmonijs Darij patriæ
seruati, vltionem ad Regem profecti sunt, & ut legatorum necem in se, non in patria ul-
teretur, trepidi & constanter animi sese obtulerunt.

Quæ vero res, Sereniss. Princeps, illos ac alios complures mouit, ut patria flagrantis amo-
niti, nulla pro ea periculum, nullas molestias, imò ne mortè ipsam recusarint, ea profectò me-
tus impulsi, non quidem, ut quemadmodum illi, mortem sponte oppeterem, aut me ma-
iorem vltro offerrem, sed tamen, ut id quod solum possem, in gratiam patriæ tenerem:
id est, ut scriptorum de ea errores colligerem & rumusculos vanos refellerem: sic ita
profectò periculosam, & multorum forsân sinistro obnoxiâ iudicio, aggrededer.

Quæ propositio me etiam Cn. Pompeij exemplum confirmat: Quem rei frumentaria
ad Romanos procuratorem, cum in summa Urbis annonæ charitate, in Sicilia, Sardinia
frumentum collegisset, maiorem patriæ, quàm sui, tradunt rationem habuisse.
Quidam, nec se vltionem aut maris antia committere velle animaduertens, ipse
primus ingressus, anchoras tolli iussit, in hæc verba exclamans: Vt nauigemus vt
incertitas: vt viuamus, non vrget. Quibus vir prudensissimus innuisse videtur,
ne prius antiâ maiorem habendam rationem, quàm priuata incolumitas.

(Si parua licet componere magnis, & muscam Elephanto conferre) ut collectis ac compositis ijs, quibus ad succurrendum gentis nostra nomini ac fama, apud extraneos, ex mulenolorum quorundam invidia iam diu laboranti uterer; paucula hac in lucem emittere, meque pelago huius quantumvis turbulento committere, linstea ventis tradere, sumque illi exclamare non dubitem: Vt scribamus, vrget necessitas: Vt verò Scriptum nostrum, cuiusvis delicato palato, ubiq; satisfaciatur, aut omnem Momi proteritiam effugiat, non vrget. Institutum meum complures probaturos spero, successum forsitan non itidem omnes probabunt. Nihilominus tamen maiorem habendam rationem patrie, multorum hactenus opprobria & contumelias sustinentis, quam siue laudis siue vituperationis, ad me ipsum hinc forsitan reditura, existimabam. Quid enim causa esse potest, cur nonnullorū odiū & inuidetiam, cum hoc patrie beneficiendi seu gratificandi studio foris continuētia recuserem?

Quod si scriptorum errores liberius notare, si quorundam calumnias durius perstringere videbor, eos tamen aequi me habiturum censores confido; qui paulo diligentius animadvertere volent, quam parum tolerabiles sint scriptorum de nostra gente errores: quot etiam & quam graues quorundam in nos calumniae, quibus nationem nostram varijs modis lacepsuerunt, & etiam nunc laceessere non desistunt. Dandum etiam aliquid omnibus cogens, nisi soli natalis amoris est; Dandum iusto, ob hanc patriam illam in iustitiam, dandi. Et ego quidem, quantum fieri potuit, ubiq; mihi temporari, ac de consensu desinere volui: quod si quid videatur mollius dicendum fuisse, id praedicta ratione veniam spero, merebitur.

Cum igitur hac mihi subeunda sit alea, quod omnibus scriptum aliquid edituri in more possum animaduertio, ad mihi hoc tempore sollicitè curandum est: Nempe ut patronos & mecēnates aliquem huius meo commentariolo quaram, sub cuius nomine & nomine, tutus in vulgi manus exeat.

Eam igitur ad rem nihil poteris contingere optatius, vestra clementissime Princeps, vestris Maiestatibus: Etenim nos ei, qui vitam & fortunam nostram in suisu potestatem & inuoluntatem accepit, inquam, nomen quoque gentis nostrae inuoluntatem contaminatum, cura vestra, suppliciter rogamus.

Insuper, Rex clementissimè, non solum ad hanc rem, S. Maiestatibus V. clementer implorare auxilium mecessarium habemus; Sed ad multa quoque alia, quae in nostra patria desiderantur, aut quae aliqui ad huius utilitatem & salutem communem spectant: quae, non per me, sed per summorum nostrae gentis virorum libellos suppliciter hoc tempore exponuntur, aut certe breui exponuntur. Nihil enim dubitamus quin S. V. Maiestatibus, Christianissimorum maiorum exemplo, etiam nostram patriam, inter reliquas imperij sui Insulas, sua cura & protectione regia dignari velis. Nam quia nostra est ad S. Maiestatem V. confugiendi necessitas, ea est S. Maiestatibus V. in nobis subleuandis curandis & protegendis gloria: Et ob meritam extremi ferè orbis Aethiops ecclesiam in remotissima M. K. imperij finibus, quae tranquillitatem & iusta singulari Dei beneficio hactenus habet, praemium, ac reposita in immarcescibili vitæ aeterna corona.

Ceterum cum illa huius loci non sint, ad quod meum est propositi subiūgo: Quod ad S. Maiestatibus V. ea, quae par est, animi submissione peto, ut huius meae opellae studio in patriam collatū, uere, & patroni benigni esse loco, clementer dignetur. Quod superest Serenissimae Principis Dom. clementissime, Maiestatem V. sapientia & prudentia, omniumq; adeo virtutum roicarum indes incrementa fumentem, ad summum imperij fastigium, summus ille rerum omnium, adeo rerum humanarum dispensator, Deum opt. max. euehat: Faciatque omni rerum felicissimo successu continuè beas: Beatamque hoc modo, ut summum huius regnorum ornamentum, columnam praesidium, Ecclesiae clypeum & munimen, quam diu simul conseruet: Ac tandem in altera vita in solido regni caelestis gaudio, cum praequisitis ecclesiae Dei meritis, syderis instar, illustrem fulgere faciat. Faciat: idem Pater clementissimè, ut hac vota, quanto sapius in amplissimorum Maiestatibus V. regnorum & Insularum pacis angulo quotidiè repetantur ac ingeminantur, tanto rata magis & certiora maneant. Hauffius 1593. Mensis Martii.

S. M. V. humiliter subiectus:

Arngrius Iouis Island.

Brig.



N lucem eximis, patre omnium qui landicam. N semel emissis magis innocer

summam & nunquam delendam pographi huius odiū fuit, & ex re nos commercia sua magno suorum nomen illi est; dignus certè qui L

Reperuntur, praeterea multi la credunt esse plurima, & gen

re ipsa & vetitate prorsus aberrat

os vanillimas secuti. Hi Scripte didisse Rhythmistae: multa tam

ne prius liberare, quo minus in

ment. Hac animaduertens, legens

firmationem lederent, scriptoribus

nam non desinunt gentem nostram

enumeratione & deferiptio

errata Historicorum, & aliorum

innocentem gentem à tot con

quidlos Lectores defenderet. Qu

lens F. ut reuolutis scriptoru

re & mendacia solidis rationibus

nam admonitio, amorque commun

conferberet, non ex vanis vulgi fab

quaprobatonibus sumptis,

ille verò, qui hanc rem meo esta

que, ut in has pagellas, vel tribus

Author

Letto suavis arte Palladis,

brigitte, humane, multum candide

causa scilicet colli sacri mysteria:

causa si forte quando paginae

lectione siq; deus habere,

notum candori ut haec committimus

fronte sic non teretica,

ut quae nec ulla quando sar bido:

ut quoniam forte haec si immemor,

ut quoniam nostra nobis contulit,

ut quoniam non quis est mortaliū

ut quoniam namque semper plurimū?



N lucem exiit, circa annum Christi 1562. Hamburgi fortis valde defor-
 mis, patre quidam Germanico propola: Rhythmi videlicet Germanici,
 omnium qui vnquam leguntur spurcissimi & mendacissimi in gentem Is-
 landicam. Nec suffigebat sordido Typographo sordidum illam scetum
 semel emisisse, nisi tertium etiam aut quartum publicasset; quo videlicet
 magis innocenti genti apud Germanos & Danos, aliosque vicinos populos
 summam & nunquam delendam ignominiam, quantum in ipso fuit, inureret. Tantum Ty-
 pographi huius odiū fuit, & ex re illicita lueri auiditas. Et hoc in illa ciuitate, quę plurimos an-
 noenem illi est; dignus certe qui Leones pascat.

Reperiuntur præterea multi alij scriptores, qui cum miracula naturę, quę in hac Insu-
 la creduntur esse plurima, & gentis Islandicę mores ac instituta describere se velle putant, à
 re ipsa & veritate prorsus aberrarunt, nautarum fabulas plusquam aniles, & vulgi opinio-
 nes vanissimas secuti. Hi Scriptores etsi non tam spurca & probrota reliquerunt, quàm for-
 mator prius liberare, & quo minus innocentem gentem suis scriptis deridendam alijs exposu-
 erint. Hęc animaduertens, legens, expendens, subinde nouis, qui Islandorum alijs exposu-
 tionem lederent, scriptoribus ortis, alienorum laborum suffragatoribus impudicis, qui
 enumeratione & descriptionibus fictis deludere, sæpe optabam esse aliquem, qui
 innocentem gentem à tot conuicijs si non liberaret, certe aliquo modo apud pios &
 doctos Lectores defenderet. Quare hoc tempore Author eram honesto studio, *Ar-
 nica* & mendacia solidis rationibus detegeret. Ille etsi primò reluctabatur, vicit tamen de-
 siderio, non ex vanis vulgi fabulis, sed & ex sua & multorum fide dignorum experien-
 tiis.

Ille verò, qui hanc rem meo est aggressus instinctu, vicissim à me suo quasi iure flagi-
 tur, vt in has pagellas, vel tribus saltem verbis præfaret: existimans aliquid fidei vel au-
 thenticæ opusculo inde conciliatum iri. Quare vt mentem breuiter exponam: Ego qui
 & honestam & necessariam quoque operam nauasse cum iudico, qui non modò scrip-
 tas varias sententias de rebus ignotis perpendere, & inuicem conferre, nec non ad verita-
 tem moribus vindicare conatus sit. Equum est igitur, Lector optime, vt quicquid hoc est
 & munendum excipias. Vale.

*Gudbrandus Thorhaeus Episcopus
 Holensis in Islandia.*

Anno 1592. Jul. 29.

¶ *Authoris ad Lectorem.*

*Lector suavis arte Palladis,
 benignè humane, multum candide,
 scilicet scis colles sacri mysteria:
 videris si forte quando paginas
 illasque sig. designabere,
 quanto candore ut hæc committimus
 tibi, fronte sic non teretica,
 nec ista quando turbido:
 vnquam seris hanc se immemor,
 quam vobis nobis contuli,
 nam vobis quis est mortalium
 vobis namque semper plurimis?*

*Quod si diu multumque cogitaueris,
 Nostris eris conatibus paulo æquior,
 Tuis & isto rite pacto consulens:
 Candore nam quoniam nostra tractans opere,
 Ete legentes rursus utemur pari:
 Sic ipse semper alteri quę feceris,
 Aequalitatis lege & hæc sient tibi.
 De gente multæ prædicta Islandica
 Authoribus quauis probata maximis,
 Nostris periculo hucusq; vulgò credita,
 Licere nobis credimus resistere,
 Non ut notam scriptorum inuicem nominis,
 Xx
 Nostrum*

*Nostrum sed à nota probro ja vindicemus:
Hoc institutum inq; suisq; comprobant:
Hoc nostra consuetudo lexq; comprobant:
Hoc digna totius exempla denique comprobant.
Ergo sane: nostris sane conatibus,*

*Sis mitis, indulgens & a quoque arbor,
O Lector arte imbuta suavis Palladis,
Lector benigne, amice, multum candide,
Quae cuncta scis collis sacra mysteria.*

COMMENTARII DE ISLANDIA
INITIVM.



Vemadmodum in militia castrensi, alios nulla æqua ratione adducit, sed ambitio, inuidia & auaritia motos, Martis castra sequi animaduertimus: Alios verò iullis de causis arma fumere, vt qui vel doctrinæ celestis propagandæ aut seruandæ ergò bella mouent, vel aliquo modo læcessit paratam vim ac iniuriarum repellunt, vel saltem non læcessit, propter obidentem hostem metu in armis esse coguntur: Non feruæ Apollini militantes: alij animo nequaquam bono, Philosophico seu verius Christiano, ad scribendum feruntur: puta qui gloriæ cupiditate, qui luore ac odio, qui infestata ignorantia alios fugillant, vt ipsi potiores habeantur, nunc in personam, nomen aut maiorem alicuius, nunc in gentem totam stylum acuentes, atque impudentes quasi nescientes, insontem nationem & populos commaculantes: Alij verò contrâ, animo ingenuo multum cubrando inuestigant & in lucem emittunt; vt qui scientiam Theologicam & Philosophicam scriptis mandantur, quique suis vigilijs veterum monumenta nobis explicuerunt: qui quæquid in illis obscurum, imperfectum, inordinatum animaduertuerunt, vsu & experientia ducti illustrarunt, explerunt, ordinarunt: qui mundi historias, bona fide, æternæ memoriæ conseruauerunt: qui linguarum cognitionem suis indefessis laboribus iuuerunt: denique qui a foris in se suamque gentem vel patriam, licentia fœu petulantiam reprimere, calumnias refellere, & quædam quasi vim iniustam propulsare annixi sunt.

Et quidem ego, cui literas vis, ac ne vix quidem videre contigit, omnium qui diuine Pulli di nonas dederunt, longè infimus (vt id ingenuè de meate nenuitate confitear) facere censeam. Non possum, quin me in illorum aciem conferam, qui genis suz maculam abluere, veritatem ipsius asserere, & conuictantium iugum detrectare studuerunt: Maiora ingenio fora denegauit: In quoquo modo tentare compellit ipsius veritatis dignitas, & innatus amor patriæ, quæ ex meo nonnullis falsis rumoribus deformare, varijs conuictijs, magna cum voluptate proficere, alijsq; nationibus deridendam propinare compertimus. Quorum petulantiz occurrere, criminationes falsas, detectis simul scriptorum de hac Insula erroribus, apud bonos & conatos viros, (Nam vulgus soli semper simile, falsi & vani tenacissimum, non est quòd sperem me hac inueterata opinione abducere posse) diluere hoc commentario decreui.

Esti autem Ilandia multos habet, vt ztate, ita ingenio & eruditione me longe superant
ideoque ad hanc causam patriæ suscipiendam multo magis idoneos: Ego tamen optimi &
rissimi viri, Dom. *Gudbrandi Thoracy*, Episcopi Holensis, apud Ilandos, sollicitationibus
tus communi causæ, pro viribus, nequaquam deesse volui, tum ut æquissimæ postulationis
us parerem, atque amorem & studium debitum erga patriam declararem, tum ut reliquos
patriotæ meos, in bonarum literarum scientiæ felicius versatos, atque in rerum plurimam
cognitione ulterius progressos, ad hoc gentis nostræ patrocinium iuuarer: Tantum
iis qui idem conabuntur, obitaculo esse vulerim.

Ceterum ut ad rem redeamus, quoniam illi quicunque sunt nostræ gentis oblectum
stimonium scripto se uti ac niti iactant: videndum omnino est, quidnam de Islandia, &
vera scriptores prodiderint, ut si forte isti, alijs in nos dicendi aliquam occasionem
patefactis ipsorum erroribus (nolo enim quid durius dicere) quam meritis nos calumniis
liquis planum fiat. Porro, quamvis vestriusorum quorundam scripta de hac Insula, ad ve-
& experientiz normam exigere non verear: Tamen nobis eorundem aliqui facti di-
gna, reuerenda dignitas, suspicienda eruditio, laudanda voluntas & in Rempublica
dium: Nouitij verò, si qui sunt id genus scriptores, aue verius paucissimi, cum ijs longè
quam scriperant, audire & nosse de Islandia liceret, sua leuitate & ingenio malè can-
didi nisi inuidia & calumniæ maculam lucri esse videbuntur.

Atque ut Commentarius hic nostris aliquid ordinis habeat, duo erunt propoziti-
onis capita, unum de Insula, de incolis alterum : quantum quidem de his duobus capi-
tulis Scriptores qui in nostris manibus versantur, annotatum reliquerunt : Quoniam vbi

The true state of I

metas vagari, vel plura quàm
enim ex professo Historicum v
missa longiore præfatione par
dam adiunctis Insulæ, aggredia

*Insula Islandiæ, quæ per immensum
agnoscitur, &c.*

Etiā hęc tractare, quę ipsan
gentem vel incolas à calur
quaquam omittendum videtur
dum est, vt perspecto, quā v
didus Lector, in ijs quę de Inc
prodenubus, acceperunt, vnde si
dei mereantur, iudicet.

Primum igitur distantiam In-
quanta vulgò putatur, si quis in-
uberet, facile demonstrari possi-
existimari, cum nulli dubium
us abefferet. Quare varias autho-
ritates colligat, quod maxime
experientia, meam quoque senten-

<i>Juniferus Islandicus collocat Long.</i>	
<i>sub gradibus fere</i>	20
<i>gradus Mercator</i>	352
<i>Frigus.</i>	

Medum Islandia:	7.	0
Herfer:	7.	4
Thirter:	5.	5
Nader:	6.	

Jacobi Ziegleri:

flandia Occident. 20.
promontorium: 22, 4
orientale extenditur cō-
Septentrionem: & finis
extensio habet 30.
septentrionale contra oc-
identem extenditur, & fi-
extensio habet 28.
Occidentalis descrip-

qui fani prætereā, qui vel in n
plures sententias refert nihil
Ego quamvis verisimiles conie
cturæ, quæ potius diuerfum quip
quere malo, quàm quicquam n
coniecturam, sed obſeruation
iam ab offio Albiſ ad portum
400. milliarium : Vnde ſi long
us, nullam modò poſitarum le
genſium nauigationibus doc
et. Prætereā etiam, Infulæ qua
nt, bidui nauigatione, vt & lit
Grondiam habiebatem, &
inter opida Nidroſam & Be
ſtiſ codicibus repetimus.

metas vagari, vel plura quàm hæc ipsa, & quæ huc pertinere videbuntur attingere nolo. Non enim ex professo Historicum vel Geographum sed disputatorem tantum agimus. Itaque omnia longiore præfatione partem primam, quæ est de situ, nomine, miraculis, & alijs quibusdam adiunctis Insulæ, aggregdiamur.

Prima pars tractatio.

SECTIO PRIM A.

Insula Islandiæ, quæ per immensum à cæteris secreta longè sita est in Oceano, vixq; à navigantibus agnoscitur, &c.

Et hæc tractare, quæ ipsam terram vel illius adiuncta seu proprietates concernunt, ad quamquam omiteodum videtur. Sed de his primum, & quidem prolixius aliquantò agendum est, ut perspecto, quàm vera de hac re tradant illi Islandiæ scriptores, facili inde canprodentibus, acceperunt, quæque ab illis alij, tanquam Dijs dei mereantur, iudicet.

Munst. lib. 4. Colnograph.

Primum igitur distantiam Islandiæ à reliquis terris non immensam esse, nec tantam, quanta vulgò putatur, si quis Insulæ longitudinem & latitudinem aliquo modo cognitam haberet, faciliè demonstrari posset. Non enim id alio, quàm illo cognosci exactè posse modo existimari, cum nulli dubium sit, quàm semper nautarum vel rectissimus, ut illis videtur, distantia id colligat, quod maximè verisimile videbitur, donec fortè aliquando propria edoculus experientia, meam quoque sententiam si non interponam, tamen adiungam,

Munsterus Islandiam collocat	Longit.	Latitud.	Heckelsel promontorium	25.	67.
sub gradibus feri	20	68.	Madher promontorium	21.20	65.10
Secundus Mercator	353	68.	Cinicates in ea mediterranea sunt		
Tertius Frisius:			Holen Episcopalis	28.	67. 50
Medium Islandia:	7. 0	65. 30	Schalholsten Episcopalis	22	63. 30
Horfer:	7. 40	60. 43	Reinholdus.		
Thoruz:	5. 50	64. 44	Per Holen Islandia.		68.
Nador:	6. 40	57. 20	Ioh. Myritius,		
Iacobi Ziegleri:			Per Med. Islandia.		69. :
Insula Occident.	20.	63.	Neander.		
promontorium:	32. 46	63.	Islandia tribus gradibus in circumlosum usque Arcticum ab æquinoctiali excurrit, adeò ferè, ut mediam circumlosum illo fecerit, &c.		
Insula orientalis extenditur contra Septentrionem: & finis extensio habet	30.	68.			
Insula septentrionalis contra occidentem extenditur, & finis extensio habet	28.	69.			
Insula Occidentalis descriptio.					

Et si qui sunt præterea, qui vel in mappis, vel alioqui suis scriptis Insulæ situm notarunt, non plures sententias referre nihil attinet, cum quò plures habeas, eò magis diffidentes erunt. Ego quamvis verisimiles coniecturas habeo, cur nullæ citatæ de Islandiæ situ sententia, quin potius diuersum quippiam ab ijs omnibus statuam, tamen id ipsum in dubio non coniecturam, sed obseruationem & experientiam propriam asserere liceat. Distantiam ab ostio Albis ad portum Islandiæ meridionalis Batzendæ, quidam scripserat esse 400. miliarium: Vnde si longitudinis differentiam ad meridianaum Hamburgensem spectemus, nullam modò positam longitudinum habebit illo in loco Islandia. Ego tamen Hamburgensem nauigationibus docere possum, septimo die Hamburgum ex Islandia peruenisse. Præterea etiam, Insulæ quæ ab ouium multitudine Faereyjar, seu rectius Faereyjar sunt, bidui nauigatione, ut & littora Noruagiæ deserta distant. Quatridui verò natiuitas in Gronlandiam habitabilem, & pari ferè temporis intervallo, ad prouinciam Noruagiæ inter opida Nidrosiam & Bergas sitam peruenitur, quemadmodum in harum nationum vetustis codicibus reperimus.

Insula nauigio ab Islandia ad Noruagiæ deserta.

SECTIO SECVNDA

Monsternus, Olaus
magnus & reli-
qui.

In hac, astitio solstitio, sole signum Cancrī transiente, pox nulla, brumali solstitio proinde nullus di-
es. Item Vadianus. In ea autem Insula qua longe supra Arcticum circulum in amplissimo O-
ceano sita est, Islandia hodie dicta, & terris congelatis maris proxima, quas Entgeundland vocant
mensis sunt plures sine nobilibus.

Nillum esse hyemali solstitio diem, id est, tempus quo sol supra horizontem conspicitur
in illo tantum Islandiz angulo, si modò quis est, fateamur, ubi polus ad integros 67 gra-
dus attollitur. Holis autem, quæ est sedes Episcopalis Borealis Islandiz, sita etiam in angu-
stissima & profundissima conualle, latitudo est circiter grad. 65. 44. min. ut à Domino Gul-
brando eiusdem loci Episcopo accepimus, & illic diem brevissimum habemus ad minimum
duarum horarum, in meridionali autem Islandia longiorem, ut ex artificio tabulis videre est.
Vnde constat nec Islandiam ultra Arcticum circulum positam esse, nec menses plures nobilibus
in æstivo, vel diebus in brumali solstitio carete.

SECTIO TERTIA.

Monsternus.
Saxo.

Nomen habet à glacie qua illi perpetuo ad Boream adheret. Item, à laterē Occidentali Nor-
gia Insula, qua Glacialis dicitur, magno circumfusa Oceano reperitur, obsoleta admodum habi-
tationis tellus, &c. Item, Hac est Thyle, nulli veterum non celebrata.

Svealandia.

Nomen habet à glacie) Tria nomina consequenter sortita est Islandia. Nam qui omnia
primus eius inuentor fuisse creditur Naddocus genere Noruagus, cū versus insulas Faren-
ses nauigaret reposita valida, ad litora Islandiz Orientalis fortè appulit: ubi cum fuisset ab-
sque septimanis cum socijs commoratus, animaduertit inmodicam niuium copiam, mon-
tium quorundam cacumina obtegentem, atque ideò à niue nomen Insulæ Svealandia inidi-
dit. Hunc secutus alter, Gardarnus, fama quam de Islandia Naddocus attulerat impulsus, Insulas
quæsitum abiit, reperit, & nomen de suo nomine Gardarsholme id est, Gardars Insula impos-
sui. Quin & plures nouam terram visendi cupido inaccessi: nam & post illos duos aduocatus
quidam Noruagus (Floki nomen habuit) contulit se in Islandiam, illiq; à glacie qua viderat ip-
sam cingi nomen fecit.

Obsoleta admodum) Ego ex istis verbis Saxonis hanc sententiam nequaquam uenio, ut qui-
dam, quod inde ab initio habitam esse Islandiam, seu ut verbo dicam, Islandos autothoas
dicat, cum constet vix ante annos 718. incolitæptam.

874

Hac est Thyle) Grammatici certant & adhuc sub iudice lis est. Quam tamen faciliè diuina
posse crediderim, si quis animaduertat, circa annum Domini 874 primum fuisse inhabitatam.
Nisi quis dicere velit Thulen illum Aegypti Regem, quem hoc ipsi nomen dedisse putant,
Insulam iam tum in cultam & inhabitatam penetrasse. Illud verò minus si quis neget, per se
sanè licebit, ut illud sit quoddam quasi spectaculum, dum ita in contrarias se in duntaxat senten-
as. Vnus affirmat esse Islandiam. Alter quandam insulam, ubi arbores bis in anno fructifican-
Tertius vnam ex Orcadibus, siue vltimam in ditione Scoti, ut Ioannes Myrtini & alij, qui
men illius referunt Thylensy, quod etiam Virgili per suam vltimam Thylen sensisse videtur.
Siquidem ultra Britannos, quo nomine Angli hodie dicti & Scoti veniunt, nullos populos ha-
tucret. Quod vel ex illo Virgili Eclog. 1. apparet.

Et penitus tota diuisa, orbe Britannos. Quartus vnam ex Farenfibus. Quintus Telemarchiam
Noruagia. Sextus Schrichfinniam.

Perpetuo ad Boream adheret.) Illud verò, Glaciem Insula perpetuo, vel ut paulò post alij
Monsternus. Olo conuimus mensibus adherere: neutrum verum est. Nam ut plurimum in mensibus
Aprilij aut Maio soluitur, & Occidentem versus propellitur, necante Ianuariam aut Febru-
rium sæpius etiam tardius redit. Quid? quòd plurimos annos numerare licet, quibus
ciem illam huius nationis imminet flagellum, ne viderit quidem Islandia: Quod etiam
anno 1592. compertum est. Vnde constat quàm verè à Frisio scriptum sit, navigantes
hanc insulam tantum quadrimestrem pateri, propter glaciem & frigora, quibus intercluduntur.
Cum Anglicæ naues quotannis nunc in Martio, nunc in Aprilij, quædam in Maio, Germani-
rum & Danorum in Maio & Iunio, plerumque ad nos redeant, & harum quædam non
Augulum iterum hinc soluant. Superiore autem anno 1591. quædam naus Germanica,
pro onusta, portum Islandiæ vopord 14. dies circiter in Nouembri occupauit, quibus
sis inde feliciter soluit. Quæ cum glaciem Islandiz, nec perpetuò, neque octo mensibus au-
reat, Alusternus & Frisius manifestè falluntur.

Glaciem Aprilij
aut Maio soluitur

Tam grandis Insula, ut populus
strum & boream ducentora

Gardis.) Willstenius quæ
ad auunculum meum i
scriptorum rapsodij de Islandia
&c. Sicilia autem secundum
strum verò Insulæ ambitus etiam
& apud nostrates recepta 144
die insigniora, quæ singula
dictam lummam ostendunt.

Populus multus) Gysler na qui
Islandia, omnes Insulæ colonos
soluere tenerentur (reliquis pa-
ruis, reperitque in parte Insulæ
nati 1300. Summa 4000, colo-
sulam plus dimidio fuisse inhabi-

Insula multa sui parte montosa est
tam late, ut pecus depellatur à

Id suffocationis periculum nullum
longè retrò numeratis, memori-

Sunt in hac Insula montes elati in
pierno igne astant, Primus C
Hells. Item Zieglerus. Ruper
In hac videm Insula mons est, qui
da semper na iuge flammam ardet

Insula Islandiz & Munsterna
commodo impingunt, Nam
speciem, tamen quod idem
unt, manifestè erroneum est. Illi eni
ptorum errori occasionem deder
no 1581. ex monte quodam au-
quod memorabilis sumi ac flamma
erunt: ne mons longè est ab his tri-
bus de montibus ignitis maximè
constituendam autem, quæ mox in
opinionem autem, quæ mox in
ab absurda asserenda abiit, vel ha-
Quasi verò non concurrant in h
horum montium radicibus mater
per poros ac cauernas in terra
stante vna cum nitro, qua exfuss
in flamma. Habet siquidem igni
curia, materiam scilicet, motum
ignem & humidam ideòque flami
nas admittit aër: Penetrandi faci-
nis, & incredibili conatu viole-
ntissime seu tormentis bellicis, g
sulphure & nitro, è quibus pyr
ma voragine ignita, seu quodam
copia, expientis & ciaculantis, id
funditatem terræ fiat, succussio à

SECTIO QUARTA.

Tem grandis Insula, ut populos multos contineat. Item, Zieglerus, Sicut Insula extenditur inter austrum & boream ducentorum prope Schenorum longitudine.

Kranz.
Munsterus.

Grandis.) Willenius quidam, rector Scholæ OLDENBURGENSIS Anno 1591. scriptorum rapidi dijs de Islandia collegerat. Vbi sic reperimus: Islandia duplo maior Sicilia, sive verò Insulæ ambitus est nobis non est exæquatus cognitus, tamen vetus & constans opinio, de insigniora, quæ singula 12. inter semilliaribus distent, aut circiter, quæ collecta prædictam summam ostendunt.

Magnitudo
Islandiæ.

Populus multus) *Cyfferus* quidam, circa annum Domini 1090. Episcopus Schallbeltenfis in Islandia, omnes Insulæ colonos seu rusticos qui tantas facultates possiderent, ut regi tributum solvere tenerentur (reliquis pauperibus cum fœminis & promiscuo vulgo omissis) lustrari curari 1300. Summa 4000. colonorum tributa soluentium, iam si quis experiatur, inueniet Insulam plus dimidio fuisse inhabitatam.

SECTIO QUINTA.

Insula multa sui parte montosa est & inculta. Quæ parte autem plana est præstat plurimum pabulo, tam lato, ut pecus depellatur à pascuis, ne ab arina suffocetur.

Munf. Frisus,
Ziegler.

Id suffocationis periculum nullo testimonio, nec nostra nec patrum nostrorum, vel quàm longè retrò nunciaris, memoria confirmari potest.

SECTIO SEXTA.

Sunt in hac Insula montes elati in celum, quorum vertices perpetuis nix candent, radices semper igne æstuant. Primus Occidentem versus est, qui vocatur Hecla, alter Crucis, tertius Helja. Item Zieglerus. Rupes sine promontorium Hecla æstans perpetuis ignibus. Item Saxo. In hac insula mons est, qui rupem sideream perpetua flagrationis æstibus imitatur, incensa sempiterna iugi flammæ eruptione continuat.

Munf.
Frisus.

Micula Islandiæ Munsterus & Frisus narratur, mox in vestibulo, magno suo cum ignis speciem, tamen quod idem de duobus alijs montibus perpetuo igne æstuantibus disceptum, manifeste erroneum est. Illi enim in Islandia non extant, nec quicquam, quod huic tanto erroris occasiorem dederit, imaginari possumus. Facta tamen est, sed nunc demum hæc memorabilis sumi ac flammæ eruptio, magna saxorum ac cineris copia erecta. Cæterum de montibus igneis maxime vera narrarent, annon naturaliter ista contingerent? An opinionem aliam faciunt? Ego sanè nefas esse duco, his vel similibus naturæ miraculis absurda asserenda abire, vel hæc tanquam impossibilia cum quadam impietate miraculorum montium radicibus materia vti aptissima, neque ad hanc rem satis valida. Est enim per poros ac cauernas in terræ viscera ingressus, ac illum maximi incendij fomitem accendens vna cum nitro, quæ exsufflatione tanquam foliis quibusdam, & tenuissima exarsit, materiam scilicet, motum, & tandem penetrandi facultatem: Materiam quidem admittit aër: Penetrandi facultatem facit ignis vis inuisa, sine respiraculo esse nefas, & incredibili conatu violenter erumpentis, atque ita (non secus ac in cuniculis fulmine seu tormentis bellicis, globi de ferro maximi, magno cum fragore ac strepitu, sulphure & nitro, de quibus pyrus pulvis conficitur, excitato, eijciuntur) lapides & Saxa, & vora ignita, seu quodam camino, colliquefacta cum immodica arenæ & cineris copia, expuentis & ciaculantis, idque ut plurimum, non sine terræ motu: qui si secundum naturam terræ fiat, succussio à Possidoneo appellatur, vel hiatus erit, vel pulsus.

Lib. 1. cap. 10.

Hiatu terra dehiscit: pulsu eleuatur inuicelens, & nonnunquam, vt inquit *Plinius*, moles magnas egerit: Cuiusmodi terræ motus iam mentionem fecimus, maritima Islandiæ Australi Anno 1581 infestantis, quicquæ à Pontano his verbis scitissimè describitur,

*Ergo incerta ferens raptim vestigia, anhelus
Spiritus incursat, nunc hoc, nunc percussus illic,
Explorâtque abissi in insilens, & singula tentat,
Si quæ sorte queas vixit erumpere claustris.
Interea tremis ingentem saltura ruinam
Terra, suis quatiens latas cum manibus urbes:
Disiliunt anversa ingis immania saxa, &c.*

Hæc addere libuit, non quod cuiquam hæc ignota esse existimemus; Sed ne nos alij ignorare credant, atque ideo ad suas fabulas, quas hinc exstruunt, confugere velle.

Cæterum video quid etiamnum admirationem non exiguum scriptoribus moueat, in his quos ignoranter fingunt, tribus Islandiæ montibus, videlicet cum eorum basin semper ardere dicant, summities tamen nunquā niue careant. Porro id admirari, est præter autoritatem ætiorum virorum, quibus Ænæ incendium optimè notum erat, quæ, cum secundum *Plinium* Hybernici temporibus nivalis sit, noctibus tamen, eodem teste, semper ardet. Quare etiam secum illos, ille mons, cum adhuc niuium copia obducitur, & tamen ardeat, sordidarum animarum quoque erit receptaculum: id quod Heclæ propter niues in summo vertice & basin æstuantem, adscribere non dubitarunt. Vix autem mirum esse potest, quod ignis montis radicibus latens, de nunquā, vixit raptim erumpens, excelsa montis cacumina, quæ niuibz obducuntur, non collesques faciat. Nam & in *Caira*, altissima montis cacumina niuibz semper cædentiæ esse perhibentur, & in *Beraga* quidem similiter, sed 3000 passuum in cælum elata, quæ niuibz nunquam liberentur, cum tamen partibus tantum decem ab æquatore distent. Vtriusque hanc provinciam iuxta Pariam esse sitam accepimus. Quid? quod illa *Teneriffæ* (quæ una est ex insulis Canarij, quæ & Fortunatæ) pyramis, secundum *Munsterum*, 8 aut 9 miliarium Germanicorum altitudine in aëra assurgens, atque instar Aetnæ iugiter conflagens, niues, quibus media cingitur, telle *Benzoni* Italico, Indiæ occidentalis Historico, non resoluit. Quod ipsum in nostra Heclæ quæ est, quod magis miremur? Atque hæc ita breuiter de incendiis montanis.

Nunc illud quoque castigandum arbitramur, quod hos montes in cælum vsque attolli scribunt. Habent enim nullā præ cæteris Islandiæ montibus notabilem altitudinem: Præcipue tertius ille Helgæ à *Munstero* appellatus, nobis Helgafel, 1. Sacer mons, apud monasterium eiusdem nominis, nulla sui parte tempore æstiuo niuibz obductus, nec montis excelsi, sed potius collis humilis nomen meretur, nunquā, vt initio huius sectionis dixi, de incendio suspectus. Nec vero perpetuè niues Heclæ, vel paucis alijs adscribi debebant: Per multos enim habet eiusmodi montes innotos Islandiæ, quos omnes vel toto anno, non facile collegerit aut connumerari, horum prædictorum & admirator Cosinographus. Quin etiam id non negligendum, quod mons Hecla non occidentem versus, vt à *Munstero* & *Zieglero* annotatum est, sed inter meridiem & orientem positus sit. Nec promontorium est: sed mons ferè mediterraneus.

Incendia perpetua ingi, &c. Quicunque perpetuam flammam eruptionem Heclæ adscripserunt, toto cælo errarunt, adeo, vt quoties flammæ eructant, nostrates in annales retulerint, vt anno Christi 1104. 1157. 1222. 1300. 1341. 1362. & 1389. Neque enim ab illo de montis incendio audire licuit, vsque ad annum 1558. quæ vltima fuit in illo monte eruptio. Interea negotio fieri posse, quin mons infernè latentes intus flammæ & incendia alar, quæ videlicet interualis, vt hactenus annotatum est, eruperint, aut etiam forte posthæc erumpant.

SECTIO SEPTIMA.

Filius, Munst.

Montis Heclæ flamma nec stupam lucernarum luminibus apertissimam adurit, neque aquas singunt: Etque impetu, quo apud nos machinis bellicis, globi eijciuntur, illic lapides magni in aëra emittuntur, ex frigoris & ignis & sulphuris commixtione. Is locus à quibusdam vocatur carcer sordidarum animarum, Item Zieglerus. Is locus est carcer sordidarum animarum.

Nec stupam adurit.) Vnde habeant Scriptores, non satis conijcitur. Hæc enim nostris minibus prorsus ignota, nec hic vnquam, nisi prodidissent illi, audita fuissent. Nemo enim est apud nos tam temerariæ curiositatis, vt huius rei periculum, ardente monte, facere auit, quod scire licuit, vnquā ausus fuerit. Quod tamen *Munsterus* asserit. *Qui inquit, naturam incendij contemplari cupimus, & ad id ad montem propius accedimus, eos vno aliquo vento vel impetu forbet, &c.* Quæ res, vt dixi, nostræ genti est ignota prorsus. Exstat tamen liber veteri Norvagorum lingua scriptus, in quo terrarum, aquarum, ignis, aëris, &c. miracula aliquot

fusa reperias, pauca vera, præcipue placet, in Papatu olim vanissima mendacia, quibus difficillius est fucum agnosce hoc speculo figmenta quæ dissimilia, habentur, nullo ex

Cæterum ne audaculus videretur, hic quæ minus credibilis, me mereri existimari.

1 De quadam Insula Hybernici non inhumantur: sed sunt perpetuò: Nec vlli corrumpere & conspiciere possit.

2 De altera Hybernici Insule serpentes & alia venenata, videntur.

3 De tertia Hybernici Insule diuino propter templum ibi sita incolis) & sacris perpetuò.

4 De quarta Hybernici Insule bulis morbis præsentissimum remedium, idque vt plurimum, diebus, ingreditur: id quod tamen ipso quoque anno ripæ adnata, mox succedere alteram, priori, non desinit: idque cum quodam quædam.

5 De venatoribus Norvegiæ præcipue cum ligno vt non vita, ita neque plantis pedum eorumdem alligantur, vt non modo canum venaticorum nequeant: atque vnicui cursu, vnicuique similia, de Hybernici, Norvegiæ, &c. illi magister, in suum speculum, nobis tamen risum concitauit.

Sed Primum audiamus. *Flammæ* adurit, nec aquæ extinguuntur: quibus hoc Paradoxon confirmamus. Flammis nubibus vt sicis extinguantur, non excitare solent. Cuius enim, alium

stratum, aqua inest. Item, *Ad* quod exhalat pinguis redditur, quæ, præ parior inde factus, ac simul exhalat aqua minimè extinguitur, Item, quorum flamma aqua minimè extinguitur. 3. de anim. Et Plin. lib. 2. Nat. Hist. flamma, quæ aqua accenditur. Idem

repentinos ignes in aquis existere, quæ autor est. Ex anno 1216, & 1233 ex ipso mari erupit. Etiam in corpore dormienti, è capite flammam erigit, concionem seu orationem ad militem.

Valerius Antias narrat. Meminit quædam terra aut feno extinguitur. Item non adurat. Quæ cum ita sint, non cum non sit tamen, quod à quibus seu locis, tam montanis, quàm

impetu quo apud nos globi. Sic enim infans, proijcit ingentia Saxa, suble-

fusa reperias, pauca vera, plurima vana & falsa. Vnde facile apparet, a Soplis quibudam, ti-
dis placet, in Papatu olim esse conscriptum: *Speculum Regale* nomen dederunt, propter
difficilius est fucum agnoscere) scater *Speculum* minime regale, sed *Anile & Irregulare*. In
hoc speculo figmenta quædam de Hecle incendio, sed *Anile & Irregulare*. In
dissimilia, habentur, nullo experimento magis quam his quæ nunc tractamus non multum
Ceterum ne audaculus videar, qui *Speculum* illud Regale mendacij accusem; nullum ve-
rò ex his quæ minus credibilia assert, recenseam; Accipe horum pauca Lector, quæ fidem mini-

1 De quadam Insula Hyberniz; quæ templum & Parochiam habet: Cuius incolæ de-
centes non inhumantur: sed ad aggerem seu parietem cæmeterij, viuorum instar erecti, consi-
quarere & conspiciere possit.

2 De altera Hyberniz Insula, vbi homines emori nequeant.

3 De omni terrâ & omnibus arboribus Hyberniz, quæ omnibus omnino venenis resistent,
serpentes & alia venenata, vbiuis terrarum, solâ virtute & præsentia, etiam sine contactu,

4 Detertia Hyberniz Insula: Quod hæc dimidia Diabolorum colonia facta sit. In diuini-
dian vero propter templum ibidem exstructum, iuris habeant nihil, licet & pastore (vt tota In-
sula incolis) & sacris perpetuò careat: idque per naturam ita esse.

5 De quarta Hyberniz Insula, quæ in lacu quodam satis vasto fluitet: cuius gramina, & a-
bulis morbis prælentissimum remedium existant: Insula verò ripam lacus statim tem-
poribus, id quod tamen pluribus simul, per fatum licere negat, Hanc vero Insulam
septimo quoque anno ripæ adnasci tradit, vt à continente non discernas: In eius autem locum
nos succedere alteram, priori, naturâ, magnitudine & virtute consimilem: quæ vnde veniat,
nasci: idque cum quodam quasi tonitru contingere.

6 De venatoribus Noruegiæ, qui lignum domare (sic enim loquitur, quantumvis impro-
pid: cum ligno vt non vicia, ita nec domitura competat) adeò docti sint, vt assertes 8. vlnas lon-
gi, plantis pedum eorundem alligati, tanta eos celeritate, vel in excelsis montibus, promoue-
re, vt non modò canum venaticorum, aut caprearum cursu, sed etiam auium volatu superari
possint, & similia, de Hybernia, Norvegia, Islandia, Gronlandia, de aquæ & æris etiam miraculis, cen-
tem, nobis tamen rîsum concitauit.

Sed Primum audiamus. *Flamma*, inquit, *Montis Hecle nec stupam, Incernarû luminibus ap-
pansam, adurit, nec aqua extinguitur*. Atqui, inquam, ex Schola vestrâ Philosophica petitis ra-
tionibus hoc Paradoxon confirmari poterit. Docent enim Physici, commune esse validioribus
flammi omnibus vt sicis extinguantur, alantur verò humidis: Vnde etiam fabri, aqua inperfa, ig-
nem excitare solent. Cum enim, alunt, ardentior fuerit ignis, à frigido incitatur, & ab humido alitur,
item quod exhalat pinguius redditur, nec à circumfuso fumo absumitur, sed totum ignis ipse depas-
cit, qui pariter inde factus, ac simul collectus, à frigido alacrior inde redditur. Vnde etiam ignes ar-
dentes, aqua minime extinguuntur, Item: Sunt sulphure & bitumine loca abundantia, quæ sponte ar-
dent, quorum flamma aqua minime extinguuntur. Prodidit etiam Philosophus, *Aqua alti ignem*,
item, quæ aqua accenditur. Idem, *Vires æternæ contextens fontem ignem fraxinus*. Quin
etiam autor est, Ex anno 1216, & 1236, non procul à promontorio Islandiz Reykianæ, flam-
ma dormienti, è capite flammam exsiluisse: Et L. Martium in Hispania, interfectus Scipioni-
æ, Valerius Antias narrat, Meminit etiam Plinius flammæ montanæ, quæ vt aqua accen-
dit, ita terra aut fœco extinguitur. Item, Alterius campestris, quæ vt aqua accen-
dit, cum non sic tamen, quod à quoquam scire poterim quod multis aliarum terrarum
eius seu loci, tam montanis, quam campestribus, cum ea commune esset.

Chronica Islandie

Impetu quo apud nos globi. Sic enim Munsterus. *Mons ipse cum furit, inquit, horribilitati toni-*
tritus infans, prociit ingentia Saxa, sulphur enomis, cineribus ægestis, tam tange terram circummeica
operis,

quas flammam quendam ignes, modo flammam, nunc vero sumum tantum enominant. Sin per temporum intervalla increpant, interius meatibus obstruatis, eius viscera nihilominus ardent. Superioris autem partu incendia, propter fomitis inopiam, non nihil remittunt ad tempus. Ast ubi spiritus vehementior, res, massas, quæ habent speciem ferri, saxa, alijsq. materijs foras projicit, plerumq. non sine detrimentis regionis adjacentis. Hæc Munsterus. Vbi videas quæso Lector, quomodo luose lugulet glamen lib. 4. eiusdem, admodum est dispar, ut illic ad causas infernales confugiat.

Habet profecto Indiæ occidentalis mons quidam flammivomus æquiores multo, quàm hic brevis est, & non illepidus, subijciam, ab Hieronimo Benzone Italo in Histonar. novi orbis, lib. 2.

Triginta quinq. inquit, miliarium intervallo abest Legione mons flammivomus, qui per ingentem craterem tantos spe flammarum globos eructat, ut noctu latissime vltra 10000. passuum incendia remittant quidam monachus, cum eius rei periculum facere vellet, abentum & catenam ferream. Itaq. Docentur quadraginta vltus in caminum demittit. Ibi ignis ferore, abentum cum parte catena liquefactum est. Monachus non levis iratus Legionem recurrit, subrum incusat, quod catenam tenuiorem repetit. Catenam & lebetem demittit. Res priori incipio similem exitum habuit. Nec tantum refocuit alij. Omnes quidem adeo percussi in urbem reuerfi sunt, ut de incipio exequendo nunc.

O quam centura dispar? In montano Indiæ occidentalis camino auzum: Islandiæ verò, inferat, quoniam in Hecla Islandiæ animarum carceri, in Chimæra, Lyciæ monte, cuius noctu diuq. flammæ lûmante tactos, tantu ignis cõcipere accepimus, ut lapides quoq. & arenæ in ipsis aquis ardeat, & ex quibus accenso baculo, si quis sulcû traxerit, riuos ignis sequi narratur à Plinio? Cur medio mari ardente? Cur non in Aeolia, similiter in ipso mari olim dies aliquot aliquot accensurum modo, noctu semper nitentibus? Cur non in Aethiopum campis, Stelæ bianæ, teste Aristotele, ad quæ non turò noctu accedatur: ex quo Cymbalorû sonitus, crogro ad Puteolæ? Cur non in illa superius cõmemorata Teneriffæ pyramide montana, instar Aethiopum iugo, quod Plinius testatur, horum omnium maximo aduri incendio? Cur non in illo Aethiæ in Veluio monte, non sine insigni vicinij clade, & C. Plinij exitiali detrimẽto, dum insue incendij causas perscrutaturus venit, nubium tenuis flammam cum saxis euomẽte, pumicum & cinis ineffabili copiâ aëra replente, & solem meridianum per toram viciniam densissimè testu inferni esse incendia finxissent, minimè adhiberi præuidebant: Heclæ verò æstum, cuius ruar tardius ad eorum aures peruenit, huic commento vanissimo stabiliendo, magis inferre irenem cuiquam velle persuadere. Docuit enim & nos, & alios, vobis inuitis, consimilibus inidijs, operationes suas Natura, non Infernus. Sed videamus iam plura eiusdem fatinæ vulgi mendacia, quæ Historicis & Cosmographis nostris adeo malè imposituerunt.

SECTIO OCTAVA,

Montes (tres prædictos Heclam, &c.) sunt tres hiatus immanes, quorum altitudinem aul montem Heclam possimmo, ne Lynceus quidem perspicere quæat: Sed apparent ipsum in quibus, homines primum submersi, adhuc spiritum exhalantes, qui amicus sunt, ut ad propria fugiant, hortantibus, magnis suspirijs se ad montem Heclam proficisci debere testantur: Sicque

Frissus Zieglerus,
Clausus Blage.

Confirmandum superius mendacium de Inferno terrestri ac visibili, commentum hoc, non minus calumniosum (est) faciliè largiar, Frissum non tam calumniandi, quàm noua & inaudita

inaudita prædicandi animo ista scripsisse) quàm falsum ac gerris Siculis longè varius ac de-
testabilis, excogitavit homines ignavi, nec cæcū nec infernū scientes. Quos scriptores illi, vi-
alioqui præclarissimi & optimè de Republicæ meriti, nimium præproprio iudicio secuti sunt.

Cæterum optandum esset, nullis tanto nouitatis studio Historias scribere, vt non veterant
aniles qualis nugis his inferere, atq; ita aurum purū ceno aspergere. Qui verò demū sunt ho-
mines illi submersi, in lacu infernali natantes, & nihilominus cum notis & amicis confabu-
lantes? Anne nobis veterem Orpheam, cum sua Euridice, in Stygias relabente vndas, colloquen-
tem, & in his extremi orbis partibus, tanquam ad Tanaim Hebrumque nualeni, cantus exer-
centem lyricos, rediuium dabitis? Certe, etsi nolint alij futili huiusmodi ineptiarum leuita-
tem ac mendacium agnoscere, agnouit tamen rerum omnium haud negligens ælimator Cu-
danus, lib. 18. subtil. culus hæc sunt verba,

*Est Hecla mons in Islandia ardētq; non aliter ac Ætna in Sicilia per interualla, idcoq; persuasio-
ne longa (vulgi) concepta, quod ibi expientur anime. Alij, ne vani sint, assignunt inanis fabulæ, ut
consona videantur. Que sunt autem illa inanitas? Quod spectra comminiscuntur, se ad montem He-
clam ire respondentia, aut idem. Et addit. Nec in Islandia solum, sed vbiq; licet rarò, talia com-
mune: Subditq; de latrū homicida Historiam, quæ sic habet. Efferebatur, inquit, anno præterito,
funus viri plebei Mediolani, orientali in porta iuxta templum maioris foro venali, quod à consensu
frequentia nomen cantus nostro lingua sonat. Occurrit mihi notus: Peto, ut medicorum moris est,
quo morbo excesserit? Respondit ille: confuisse hunc virum horæ noctis tertia à labore redire domum:
Vidi leuitem nocte quadam insequentem: Quam cum effugere conaretur, oculus citato pede abiit:
Sed à spectro captus atq; in terram proiectus videbatur. Exclamare nitentur: Non poterat. Tan-
dem, cum diu in terra cum larua volutus esset, inuentus à prateruentibus quibzdam, semivivum
domum relatus, cum respicisset, interrogatus, hæc quæ minus expectabantur, retulit. Obid autem
despondens, cum nec ab amicis nec mihi dicu, nec sacerdotibus persuaderi potuisset, mania esse hæc, illa
inde diebus perijt. Audini postmodum & ab alijs, qui vicini essent illi, neminem ab amicis voluerat.
tam tam constanter de illo testatum, ut hic, quod à mortuo fuisse in terram prociatum. Cum quidam
quererent, quid ille postquam in terram volutaretur ageret? Constatum inquit mortuum adhuc vixisse
manibus, ut enim strangularet: Nec obstitisse quicquam, nisi quòd se ipsum inuenerit manibus. Cum
alij dubitarent, ne forte hæc à vino passus esset, interrogarentq; in quo mortuum à vivo scerneret, pa-
uisset. Causam reddidit satis probabilem, dicens se tanquam cœtum attulisse, nec pondus habuisse, ni-
si vi premebatur. Et paulò post addit. Eadem verò ratione, qua in Islandia, in arena solitudinis
Ægypti & Æthiopiæ, Indiarq; ubi Sol ardet ædem imagines, eadem scilicet viatoris hallucinatio
Hæcenus Cardanus. Inde tamen nemo concludit, sicut de Islandia scriptores nostri
faciunt, in illis Ægypti & Æthiopiæ, Indiarq; locis, carcerem existere damnatorum.*

Hæc ex Cardano adhibere luit, vt etiam extraneorum testimonio pro nobis, contra fig-
menta tanta afferamus. Coniuncti aut præsens Cardani locus hæc duo, scilicet: nec esse illu-
diz proprias spectrorū apparitiones: quod etiā omnes norunt, nisi eius rei ignorantia nimis af-
fectent, nec illud mortuorū cū viuīs, in hiatu Heclensi, colloquium, nisi euentus hominum fu-
bulis, quavis ampulla vanioribus, niti, quibus beluæ vulgares, ad confirmandā de animarū con-
ciatibus opinione, vsq; fuerant. Et quisquā est, qui illis scriptorū hiatibus, mortuorū miracula
summum vsque refertis, adduci potest vt credat? Quisquam, qui vanitatem tantam non cœcū
Certe, Nam & hinc conuicia in gentem nostram rectè sumi aiunt: Nihil scilicet hæc proiectus
ac deterius esse vsquā, quæ intra limites Orcum habeat. Scilicet hæc cōmōdi nobis peperit H-
storiorum ad res nouas diuulgandas auditas. Verum illa è vulgi dementia nata opinio
stulta ac inanis, & in opprobrium nostræ gentis conficta, hæcenus, vt spero, satis satisfactum est.
Quare iam perge Lector, vltius hæc de secretis infernalibus Philosophiam cognoscere.

SECTIO NONA.

*Frissas & Munst. Circum verò Insulam, per septem aut octo menses fluunt glacies, miserabilem quendam gemitum
& ab humana voce non alienum, ex collisione edens. Putant mole, & in monte Hecla, Em-
cio loca esse, in quibus anime suorum cruciuntur.*

EGregium scilicet Historiæ augmentum, de Orco Islandico in vnus montis bsin, haud
vassam, coactō: Et interdum (statim forsan temporibus) loca commutante. Vbi scilicet
oni in foco motano delitescere piget, & extre, pelagusq; sed sine rare, tentare iuuat, seleg, in
ciet frustella colligere. Audite porò, huius secreti admiratores: Ex porrigā Historiis aliud
foris ætætarum nequaquam concitandum, Sciant igitur, quotquot huius scriptorū cō-
tis adherent, Islandos non solum infernum intra limites habere, sed & scientes volentes in-
di, atq; intractos eodē die egredi, Quid ita? Quia peruetus est Insulæ cōsuetudo, vt mariti

hanc glaciem, ab Historicis
ant, ac vesperi incolentes re-
damnatorum asseruari, vt p-

Sed maturè prævidendū
tionibus præcipiant: Quippe
line & possint, illaq; sine vilo
sum ex iam dictis efficitur: E-
longiusculè à litore digressi
pestis violentia profligati, &
datis, sique (id enim, in quan-
crucis barathi glacialis ex-
ribus ventis, ad littora, cum ho-
nerunt: Quorum aliqui etiam
placet, iustum volumen confici
illa commenta aliter, quàm ei-
rum, ioco seposito, vnde digre-

Primum igitur ex sectione
bus circa ipsam Insulam fluitat
des fontis & fragores edit, inu-
quicquam tamen humanæ voc-

Quod autem dicunt, nos &
cruciantur, id verò senio perneg-
inferno eripuit, & regni cœlesti
loco, in quem animæ nostrorum
c, inhiuerit, Scimus & tenebra-
pos Elysijs, sed ha sinuū Abrahæ
hilo transferri. Scimus & tene-
res, vel glaciem nostris oculis ex-
est illius & stridor dentium, vbi et
& subtilen disputationem positi-
uiles, cruciantur. Huic extren-
nos, Danos, Gallos, Italos, aut qu-
ius carceris loco siuue quicquā
sum ferorem & reliqua tormēta,
sanguine redempti sumus, nunqu-
pationis colophon esto.

*Quid si quis ex hac glacie magnam
issum afferat, illa tempore gla-
cie cuius particula vel guttula a-*

In profecto necessariò addendum
Historicos, representarem, &
in vastissima hac vniuersitate omni-
corpus esse videatur, corpus tamen
en corpora dura & solida perump-
elementaria naturæ, vt vel spiritali
lugiantur, infernalem, Infernalem
signis infernale longè esse intradacta
posita, nec quicquā suo contactu, v-
esse debimus; acceperimus enim à Phy-
quocumq; decedere posse: Quæ ra-
mandum illos, hyperphysicam, cad-
ilem calore solis resolutam, ac in-
scit ac riuos terrestres, inferuire
paulo, vt nec infernalis. Iam ve-
inde aliquis suspicetur, glaciem
nostris: Vel id cœlo, quippe eluf-
sorum cum Paradiso cœlesti loca

hanc glaciem, ab Historicis infernalem factam, manē phocas, seu vitulos marinos captum edamnatorem afferuari, vt paulo post ex Frisio audiemus.

Sed maturè prouidentum erit vobis, ne Ilandi fortitudinis & constantiæ laudem vestris nationibus præcipiant: Quippe qui tormenta (vt historicis vestris placeat) barathri sustinuisse & vesum ex iam dictis efficiunt: Et multos nostratum enumerare possum, qui in ipso venationis actupellatis violentia profligati, & aliquot dies ac noctes continuas crudelissimi pelagi fluctibus iactati, sicque (id enim, inquam, ex præfenti Historicorum problemate consequitur) tormenta & cruciatus barathri glacialis experti sunt: Qui tandem murata tempestate, atque à Borea spirante venis, ad littora, cum hoc glaciali nauigio rursus adacti, incolumes domum perueniunt: Quorum aliqui etiam hodie viuunt. Quare hoc nouitaris auidi arripiant, indeque, si illa commenta aliter, quàm eiusmodi iocularibus excipienda & confundenda videntur. Cætere, ioco seposito, vnde digressi sumus, reuertamur.

Primum igitur ex sectione secunda satis constat, glaciem, neque septem, neque octo mensibus circa ipsam Insulam fluitare: Deinde etiam, glaciem hanc, et si interdum ex collisione granquicquam tamen humanæ voci simile telonare aut ciulare minime fatemur.

Quod autem dicunt, nos & in glacie, & in monte Ilecta loca statueret, in quibus anima nostrorum creaturæ, id verò senio pernegamus, Deo quæ ac Domino nostro Iesu Christo, qui nos à morte & inferno eripuit, & regni celestis ianuam nobis reuerauit, gratias ex animo agimus, quod nos de loco, in quem anime nostrorum defunctorum conuigrent, rectius, quàm dicunt illi Historiopoëtycos, sed in sinum Abraham, in manum Dei, in Paradisum celestem, Pontificiorum, aur camphalo transferri. Scimus & teneamus animas piorum non in Purgatorium Pontificiorum, aur camphalo transferri. Scimus & teneamus de impiorum animabus, non in montanos foros & cineceli fletus & stridor dentiū, vbi est frigus, vbi est ignis ille, non vulgaris, sed extra nostrā scientiā & subtilitē disputationem positus. Vbi non modò corpora, sed animæ etiam, substantiæ spirituales, cruciantur. Huc extremo & tenebricofo carceri non Ilandos viciniore, quàm Germaniæ carceris loco siuue quicquā disputare attinet: Sufficit nobis abundè, quòd illius tenebricofo sanguine redempti sumus, nunquam sumus visuri aut sensuri. Atque hic de oreo Ilandico disputationis colophon esto.

SECTIO DECIMA.

Quid si quis ex hac glacie magnam partem ceperit, eamque vasi aut scrinio inclusam, quàm diligenter assidue afferuarit, illa tempore glaciæ, qua circum insulam est, degelantis, euanesceat, vs neque minus eius particula vel guttula aqua reperiat.

Frifius, Zieglerus
Saxo testifi-
cat.

Id profecto necessariò addendum fuit: Hanc scilicet glaciem, voces humanas, secundum Historicos, representantem, & damnatorum receptaculum existentem, non esse, vt reliqua in vastissima hac vniuersitate omnia, ex Elementi alicuius materia constent. Siquidem cum corpus esse videatur, corpus tamen non sit, (quod ex Frisij paradoxo rectè deducitur) cum etiam elementaris naturæ, vt vel spiritualem habeat materiam, vel celestem, vel quod ipsi forsantur giuntur, infernalem. Infernalem tamen esse non assentiuntur, quia ad aures nostras peruenit ligus infernale longè esse intractabilius, quàm est hæc glacies, humanis manibus in scrinio reposita, nec quicquā suo contactu, vel nudatam carnem lædere valens. Nec profectò spirituales esse debemus: acceperimus enim à Phisicis, substantias spirituales nec cerni, nec tangi, nec ipsis quoque in decedere posse: Quæ tamen omnia in hanc historicorum glaciem, quantumuis, secundum illos, hyperphysicam, cadere certum & manifestum est. Præterea & hoc verissimum est, tam calore solis resolutam, ac in superficie sua stagnantem, sicut piscatorum reslinguendæ, sic frigus ac riuos terrestres, inferuire: Id quod substantiæ spirituali denegari est. Non est igitur ignealis, vt nec infernalis. Tam verò celestem habere materiam, nemo audebit dicere: Neque inde aliquis suspicetur, glaciem hanc barathrum, quod illi Historici assignat, secum è ex-feruisse: Vel id coelo, quippe eiusdem materiæ cum glacie, commune esse, atque ita carcer damnatorum cum Paradiso celestis loca commutasse, Historicorum culpa putetur.

Quare cum glacies hæc Histonica, nec in elementaris, vt ex præfenti loco hinc optime sequi iam toties monuimus: nec spiritualis, nec infernalis, quod vtrumq; breuibus, solidis tamen rationibus demonsttrauimus; nec celestis materiz, quod opinari religio vetat: relinquimus omnino, vt secundum eisdem Historicis nulla sit, quam tamē illi tam cum stupenda admiratione prædicant, & quos videri ac tangi putamus. Est igitur, & non est: Quod axioma vbiſi conditum idem, & ad idem, & eodem tempore, verum esse poterit, nos demum miraculis istis glacialibus credemus. Itaq; iam vides Lector, ad hæc refellenda nullo alio esse opus, quam monstrare quomodo tecum dissideant. Sed haud mirum, eum qui semel vbi fabulosos rumoribus se permisit, sæpius errare. Cuiusmodi etiam prodidit quidam de glaciē huius Sympathiā, quod videlicet molis, cuius pars esset, discessum insequeretur, vt omnem obseruationis diligentiam ineuitabili fugæ necessitate deciperet. Atqui sæpe vidimus eiusmodi solitariam inuolam post abactam reliquam glaciem, nullis vctibus, nullis machinis detentam, ad litus multis septimanis consistere. Palam est igitur, illud de glacie miraculum fundamento niti, quam est ipsa glacies, magis lubrico.

SECTIO VNDECIMA.

Fissus.

Non procul ab his montibus, (tribus prædictis) ad maritimas oras vergentibus, sunt quatuor fontes diuersissime nature. Vnus suo perpetuo ardore omne corpus sibi immixtum rapit, & conuertit in saxum, minime tamen priore formæ. Alter est algoris intolerabilis. Tertius vel melle dulcor, & resingendo sitis incundissimus. Quartus plane exitialis, pestilens, & virulentus.

Etiam hæc fontium topographia satis apertè monstrat, quàm ex impuro fonte has sunt narrationes omnes miraculosas hauserit Geographus. Id enim dicere videtur: Monstra hos tres prædictos serē cōtinguos esse: Si quidē tribus montibus quatuor fontes indidit, & describit. Alioquin si non vicinos statuisset, vni alicui horum duos fontes adscripisset. Sed neque hi montes contigui sunt (quippe multis miliaribus inuicem distiti) neque iuxta hos fontes illi quatuor repeririunt: quod, qui credere noluit, experiatur. Cæterum ad hæc confundenda sufficiunt, ex do, ipsorum historicorū contrarietas. Nam de duobus fontibus quidam Fritio his verbis contradicit. *Exiunt ex eodem monte (Heclā) fontes duo, quorum alter aqua nunc frigida, alter ferore intolerabili exedit omnem elementarem vim.* Hi duo sunt primi illi Fritio fontes, nisi quod hic miraculum indurandi corpora, alteri fontium attributum, omisum sit. Atqui non simul possunt ex ipso monte, & iuxta montem erumpere.

Hic vero libenter quaerierit, quā ratione quisquam ex Peripateticis dicat, aliquid ipso elemento aquæ frigidius, aut igne calidius? Vnde demum, scriptiores, ista frigiditas? Vnde iste feror? Nonne & Schola vetusta ac cepimus aquam esse elementum frigidissimum & humidum, atque aëre frigidissimum, vt ad constituendas qualitates secundas, remitti sit necesse, nec simplicem vbius humanis inferuire? (Hæc ego nunc Physicorum oracula fundo, vera an falsa, nescio.) Tellis est vnus omnium, & pro omnibus, Iohannes Fernelius lib. 2. Physiologicæ, cap. 4. Sic inquit, qualitates hæc (quatuor rerum naturis summe obigerunt, & quædam modum puro igne nihil calidius, nihilque lenius: Sic terra nihil siccius, nihil grauius: Aquam iucundam, nullius medicamenti vis gelida enitit, vt nec aerem, vllius humor. Summa præterea sic illa insunt, vt ne minimum quidem possint auferre, remitti vero possint. Nolo hæc rationes seu argumenta Physicorum aggregare. Vnum profecto hic cauendum est, ne dum fontium miracula prædicant scriptores, vt glaciem Islandorū, ita etiam fontes creatorum numero eximant. Non fontium adiuncta, quæ huc scriptores pertraxerunt, ordine persequemur. *Primi suo perpetuo calore.* Plurimæ sunt in Islandia thermæ seu fontes calidi: Pauciores ardentes: quos nequeis quam miraculo esse debere existimamus, cum huiusmodi, vt a scriptoribus didici, passim abundet Germania, præcipue in ijs locis, quæ non sunt procul ab Alpium radicibus. Nota est fons thermarum Badensium, Gebardus illiense, Calbensium, in ducatu Wirtembergensi, & multarum aliarum quarum meminit Buchsius in lib. de arte medendi. Et non solum Germania, sed etiam Gallia, & longè magis omnium bonorum parens Italia, inquit Cardanus. Et Aristoteles narrat, circa Epyrum calidas aquas seaurire, vnde locus Pyniphlegeton appellatur. Atq; inquit, hæc idea minus miranda, quod vt incendij montani, ita feruoris aquei causas indagare Naturæ speculatores: Aquam scilicet per terræ venas sulphureas, aut aluminosas labi, inde non calorem solum, sed saporem etiam & virtutes alienas concipere. De cuit hoc Aristoteles libro de mundo. *Continet, inquit, terra in se multos fontes, vt aquæ, ita & spiritus & ignis: Quodam amminum viro fluit, & vel ignis scori eieciunt ferrum: Nunc tepide aque erumpunt, nunc feruentissima, nunc temperata.* Et Seneca i. *Empedocles existimabat ignibus, quos multis locis operit terra, aquam calefcere, si subiectis sint solo, per quod aqua transiit est.* Ex fect de thermis Badius Pontanus.

Lib. 1. Nat. quest.

1671 528

*Baiano sed no fun
Mirro, aut lique
Valeant fora sulph
Isa mouent, laie
De bacchari ignem
Inde fluit, calidum
Vnde fugax, setis fu*

Hoc loco attingendum dux
floncus, Islandia fontes quosdam
vix fontes aqueas. Qui etsi rar
libi à natura productos, ne quis
la Tenedo Insula vnum, qui sem
agro Piniate, trans Apenninum
brumal tempore siccur. Refe
cat & residat. Nec id magis neg
Asia, Erasinus in Argolica, Tigr
uia: Et quæ in Æsculapij fonte
esse flumina, quæ in specum aliq
que cōsumi paulatim & intercid
nomen & cursum priorem, Et ite
la passum exire. Quæ omnia, i
debere ostendunt.

Omne corpus immixtum continet
ardore vehementissimo, & virtute
fama quidem accepi, ipse non sum
Episcopi Schalholt, apud villan
lim est, qui ligna in lapides conuer
Et addit eiusmodi fontes in quibus
tribus i. 5. Metamorph.

*Flumen habent Cic
Viscera, quod talis*

Et Cardanus: *Georgius Agricola*
nata in integras cum corpore abis
Pyridem lapidem continere. Et: *Do*
agro verbi Præfinitorum olim, nunc
sile abitur, sed propria, vt qui in
ueri aut lapidi, eorum numero ostend
lapidescunt. Et in Vngaria, Cepusij
Ciconum flumine, & in Piceno lacu

Secundus algoris intolerabilis. Qu
quicquid sciat, algoris intolerabilis, se
centibus, non sine voluptate ex fr
torē abbi: Nam & Cardanus in
morat, nunc frigidiorē: Et intra per
tante videatur, sit tamen longè frig
Tertius vel melle dulcor. Neq; id
ita ex parte cum mellis dulcedine
sunt) in Islandia dicit inueniri: Qu
solum, sed diuersi etiam color
sed autem tradunt Physici æquam
vt superius attingimus, verisimile
mterre, in qua generatur, & per c
tum e diores, colores, sapores, alios
quorum alij sanem excellent, ali
um, alij vini saporem & virtutem i
mplo Liberi, qui Nonis Jan. vici
qui oīem præbeat, & quodam
um in Peneum, olei infus. Sæpi
, ita Brunonis oppidum, Sæpi

Palan

*Balneo sed ne fumare in littore ihermas
Mirra, aut liquidis fluitare incendia venis
Vulcani fora sulphureis incensa caminis
Ipsa movent, laetis multum tellure sub ima
De bacchari ignem, camposq; exuvies opertos.
Inde fluit, calidum referens ex igne vaporem,
Vnda fugax, rectus feruens & balnea flammis.*

Hoc loco attingendum duxi quod tradit Saxo Grammaticus, Danonim celebratissimus historicus, Islandia fontes quosdam nunc ad summum excrevere, & exudare: Nunc adeo subsidere, ut ibi à natura productos, ne quis hic monstri quippiam imaginetur. Hos autem recitat Plinius, agro Pitinate, trans Apeninum montem, fluvium esse, qui omnibus Solstitijs æstivo exundet, In brumali tempore siccetur. Refert etiam de fonte quodà satis largo, qui singulis horis in urum effusa, Erasinus in Argolica, Tigris in Mesopotamia, quibus Cardanus addit Tansim in Moscovia, quæ in specum aliquem subterraneum demissa, ex hominum oculis subducunt, nomen & cursum priorem, Et iterum Plinius, fluvium in Atinate campo mersum, post 20 milia passuum exire. Quæ omnia, & his similia, Islandiæ fontes, miraculo nullo, præ cæteris esse

Omne corpus innoxissimum continuo convertit in saxum. His duobus adiunctis, fervore nempe, seu ardore vehementissimo, & virtute indurandi corpora, primum suum fontem describit Frisius. Et Episcopi Scholb, ipse non sum expertus, existere similem fontem in Islandia, non procul à sede sua esse, qui ligna in lapides convertat, hominumq; viscera indurescere, qui aquam cum biberint: Et addit eiusmodi fontes in quibusdam Italiæ locis inveniri: quod Ovidius Ciconum flumini tribuit 15. Metamorph.

*Flumen habens Cicones, quod potum saxa reddit
Viscera, quod tactu inducit marmora rebus.*

Et Cardanus: Georgius Agricola, inquit, in Elbano traſſiniana oppidum à fulconibus cognominatum, integras cum corpore abietes in lapidem conversus esse, atq; quod magis est, in rimis etiam prædum lapidem continere. Et Domitius Brusonus in Sylaro amne, qui radices montis eius, qui est in agro urbis Viterbionum olim, nunc Contrisy, lambit, folia & arborum ramos in lapides transire, non folia arborum, sed propria, ut qui incola sit regionis, (cum rei etiam Plinius aspiculatur) narrat, cor lapideſcunt. Et in Vngaria, Cepusij aqua, in vireos infusa, lapideſcit, Plinius refert etiam, ut in Ciconum flumine, & in Piceno lacu velino, lignum deiectum, lapideo cortice obduci,

Secundum aliorum intolerabili. Quantum ad secundum fontem attinet, nullus hic est quod quis sciat, a quo intolerabilis, sed plurimi bene frigidi, ita ut vulgaribus rivis æstivo sole tepidius, non sine voluptate ex frigidioribus illis aquam hauriamus. Sunt & longè frigidior fontē alibi: Nam & Cardanus in agro Corinthio è montis vertice fluentem rivum commemorat, niue frigidior: Et intra primum à Culma lapidem, Insanam vocatum: quæ aqua cū

Tertius vel melle dulcor. Neq; id proſus verum est. Non enim est vilius apud nos, qui vel minima ex parte cum mellis dulcedine conferri possit. Rectius igitur Saxo, qui fontes (quoniam non solum, sed diversi etiam coloris fontes & flumina reperiuntur,

Et autem tradunt Physici æquam naturaliter ex se neq; saporem neq; odorem habere, tantum ut superius attigitur, verisimile est, quod alij per accidenti vocant, eam sæpe referre qualiter in terra, in qua generatur, & per cuius venas transitum atq; excursum habet: Atq; hinc aquarum odores, colores, sapores, alios atq; alios existere. Cuiusmodi sunt, de quibus narrat Seneca, alij famem excitent, alij bibentes inebrient, alij memoriz officiant, alij iuventum, alij vini saporem & virtutem præsentent: Ut ille apud Plinium in Andro Insula fons, qui oleum præbeat, & quosdam Cæditi odore representet. Item, Orcus fluvius Thessaliæ, qui in Peneum, olei instar præsentat: Cuiusmodi etiam narrat Cardanus in Saxonia, iuxta Brunonis oppidum, Saxem oleo pertusum: Et in Suecia, iuxta Cænobium,

L. de mirab. naturæ.

L. de Elementis.

cui Tergensche nomen est. Itē, in valle montis Parasi. Causam huius rei putat esse bitumen valde pingue, quod oleum sine dubio contineat. Idem, samam esse ait, in Cardia, iuxta locū Dyachyli, in campo albo aquam esse lacte dulciorem. Alii quoque iuxta pontem, quia Valbeburgum itur, iam aquatū vini saporem referentium meminit his verbis Propertius, 3. lib. Elegiar.

En tibi per mediam bene olentia flumina Naxon,

Vnde tuum pota Naxia turba merum.

Est autem Naxus Insula una ex Cycladibus, in mari Ægeō. Causam huius assignat Cardanus, quod hydromel vestiret transiret in vinum. Aristoteles commemorat Siciliæ fontem, quo incolæ loco acetī utantur. Idem saporis aquæ causam in calorem retulit, quod terra excoletur, mutet & præbeat saporis aquæ.

Iam de aquæ coloribus ita Cardanus. *Eadem est ratio colorum aquæ, ait, quæ & saporum: videlicet à terra originem trahere. Nam candida est aqua, ad secundum lapidem à Glauca, Misenæ oppido: Rubra, ut in Radera Misena flumini, iuxta Radeburgum: Et olim in Indaa iuxta Ioppa: Viridis, in Carpatum, iuxta Neufolam: Carulea aut blanda, inter Felitrum & Tarum, & in Thermoplii etiam talem fuisse referunt: Nigerrima in Allera flumini Saxonia, ubi visurgim se exonerat. Causæ sunt argilla colores, sed tenuiores. Item Aristoteles: circa lapygium promontoriū, esse fontem, qui sanguinem fundat, addens, eam maris partem suo fetore nauigantes procul arcere. Aiunt præterea in Idumæa fontem esse, qui quater in anno colorem mutat, cum sit colore nunc viridi, nunc albo, nunc sanguineo, nunc lurido.*

Et de aquarum odore sic Cardanus. *Simili ratio differentia est in odoribus. Plerumque, item aquarum odores inieciuntur sunt, quod raro terra bene olet. Pessimi olim satabat in Ælide, Amphi fluminis aqua, vsq; ad perniciem, non solum piscium, sed etiam hominum. Iuxta Metonem in Mysia, in puteo quodam optimi olens aqua hauriebatur. Hæc ideo recito, ut nullus magis in Islandia quam alibi, aquarum, coloris odores, saporis, miretur.*

Quartus plane existat. Autor est Isidorus, esse fontem quandam, cuius aqua pota vitam eringat: Et Plinius: Iuxta Nomarim, inquit, Arcadiæ, Syxæ (iuxta Cyllenem montem, juxta Cardanum. Sola equi vngula cominebatur: referunt ea (sublatum Alexandrum magnū) nec odore deferens, nec colore, epota illico necat. Idem, in Berofo Taurorum colle sunt tres fontes, sine remedio, sua dolore mortiferi: Et quod longè maximum est, quod Seneca itagnum esse dicat, in quod prospicientes statim moriantur. Nos verò Islandi etiam hunc quartum Frisij fontē, cuius etiam Saxo meminit, ut antehac semper, itidem etiam nobis hodie penitus ignotum testamur: Hoc igitur nomine, Deo immortales gratias agimus, quod ab eiusmodi fontibus & serpibus infectis venenatis, ac alijs pestiferis & contagiosis, esse nos immunes voluerit.

Præterea est apud prædictos fontes tanta sulphuris copia. Montes tres à Munster & Frisio igni uoni dicti, omnes longissimo intervallo à nostris fodinis distant. Quare cum iuxta hos montes, fontibus quatuor, quos tantopere miraculis celebrant, locum & situm faciant, necesse est eos fontes pari ferè intervallo à fodinis sulphureis remotos esse. Nec verò apud montem Heclum, ut Munsterus, nec apud hos Frisij fontes (quorum rumor quàm verus sit, hæcenus ostendimus) sulphur effoditur: Nec patrum nostrorum memoria effossum esse arbitramur. Neque verum est, quod de sulphuris copia tradit Munsterus, esse videlicet penè vnicum Insulæ mercimonium & vectigal. Nam cum insula in quatuor partes diuisa sit, quarta pars, nempe borealis, tantum & media, hoc vitur mercimonio, nec sulphuris mica in vectigal Insulæ penditur.

SECTIO DVODECIMA.

Munster.

Piscium tanta est copia in hac Insula, ut ad altitudinem domorū sub aperto cælo vendēdi exponantur.

Sub aperto cælo. Id quidem facere vidimus mercatores extraneos, donec naues mercibus stratis exonerarint, incipiātque easdem rursus piscibus & reliquis nostratium mercibus onerare. An verò nostri homines id aliquando fecerint, non satis liquet. Certè copiosa illa & vetus piscium abundantia iam desijt, Islandiæ & illius boni, & aliorum penuria laborare incipientibus, Domino Deo meritum impietatis nostræ flagellum, quod vtiā ritè agnoscimus, immitteat.

SECTIO DECIMATERTIA.

Frisia.

Egros habens velocissimos, qui suo internitissimum 30. miliaria continuo cursu conficiunt.

Quidam in sua mappa Islandiæ, 30. miliaria continuo cursu assequi tradidit cuiusdam patris eius equis. Sed verumque impossibile ducimus. Nam maxima celeritate & robore belthas (Rangiferos appellant) scribit Munsterus non nisi 30. miliaria 24. horarum spacio conficere.

SECTIO

Cetera grandia inflat montium proclia, sono absterreantur, ad discuntur. Fuit aliquando, ut periclitantur, vocantur autem

Infer montium: En tibi iter infomnium. Deformat, melius magis quantò minus est, est iter veræ narratio? Quorsum quo petrabere Lectorem, siquid

Pisioribus arguere. Quodlibet autem

Non itidem

Dusa ceterum, que Insulas patiantur, ut antiquo, ita ridiculo & vili. Missos fuisse olim Legatos cum fratribus Noruagis, Kraarzio, ni falli Christiano putabatur, in Septentrionem iter Septentrionem versus in ibique iacta anchora descensum in eis in ipso mari glaciali frigore non iter expedivisse. At ubi bene ignoscere, nautas autem per periculum, Lector, sed quàm in qui in mari procelloso videntes generem, non vident potius omni studium tuto quiescere tentent? Sed nautis iam imminenti funes, vti aliorum, respondet Munsterus. Opoc balenarum carnem, à terræ celsitudine, quæm, à terrestri superficie in nauderis transferebat. Equidem agens, è Tantali, ut aiunt, hortio fructus, nec vquam sunt, dum mirantur, nec vquam sunt, dum mirantur, nec vquam sunt, dum mirantur.

Vocantur autem linguæ eorum Troglodytes, linguæ nostræ cognitionem adeptus os velle docere: Est enim eiusmodi quo exemplo docebinus. Dum enim repellentur, detracta, per insectia, quod minimè verum est, offers: detractionem significat, à verbo, Eg vel ibi rocat: Vade tu Troglodytes, sed Gigantes quosdam non propter, quod haud tamen mirum, tantum voce: quoniam plures, huiusmodi alij etiam vti venit: Non incipientem, ab Islandiæ acceptam, sinuum, montium, fontium, depraue (quod nostræ linguæ) arque corrupte, quàm prius Academia Hassienli vixerunt, quod hic natuorum nominum & appellat ingentes, paucissima nostra agnoscere elegantiam retinentem, non leuiter Ceterum iam plurima Islandiæ miramina. Sed camen præsequi ali

SECTIO DECIMA QVARTA.

*Cetera grandia instar montium prope Islandiam aliquando conspiciuntur, quæ naves emergunt, nisi in-
barum sono obstruantur, aut missi in mare rotundi & vacui vassi, quorum insu delectantur, in-
discuntur. Fit autem, ut naves in dorso cetorum, quæ insulas esse putant, anchoras figentes, se-
po periclitentur, vocantur autem eorum lingua Trollwal, Tusselwalen. i. Diabolica cete.*

Insomnium. En tibi iterum, Lector, Munsteri Telenicia Echo, & cæcum, ut dici solet, tamò magis quantò minus est necessaria. Nam quorsum attinet mentiri Historicum, si historia est rei veræ narratio? Quorsum tropicas hyperboles assumet? Quid conabitur persuadere, aut quo petrahere Lectorem, siquidem nihil nisi simplicem rerum expositionem sibi proponit?

Pistoribus atq. Poëtis,

Quodlibet audendi semper fuit aquapoteslas:
Non itidem Historicis.

Dusæcetorum, quæ insulas putant. Nota est hæc fabula, ut & reliquæ, ex mendacio quodam, ut ataq. ita ridiculo & vano, cuius ego fidem ticiuitio non emam. Est autem tale: Missos fuisse olim Legatos cum sodalio monastico, ab Episcopo Bremensi (Brandanus veteribus Noruagia, Kraatzio, ni fallor, Alebrandus appellatur) ad fidem Papisticam, quæ tum sum iter Septentrionem versus nauigando consumpsissent, ad insulam quandam peruenisse: ita in ipso mari glaciali frigore non parum esse vexatos & commeatum naualem ad reliquum rōruauisse, nautas autem per præsentem scapham vix seruatos fuisse, Insulam hanc submersam eidementum, Lector, sed quam incredibile, ipse vides, Quid verò tandem est animi nautis, qui in mari procelloso videntes scopulum, vel, ut Munsterus, Insulam perexiguam emer- gere, non vident potius omni studio, allisionem & naufragium metuentes, quàm ut in portu tanti tam immani funes, utin altissimo æquore anchoram demittant: Igitur in dorso ce- bulenarum cornem, à terre celsitibus, inter fodiendum, non dignoscetes, nec lubricam ce- nauderis transfretaret. Equidem hoc loco, ut & superius, de miraculis Islandiæ terrestribus agens, è Tantali, ut aiunt, hortu fructus colligit, id est, ea consecratur, quæ nunquam repe- ritur, nec rīquam sunt, dum miracula hinc inde conquirere, terram & pelagus verrere, ad Historiæ suæ supplementum studet: Vbi tamen nihil nisi commentitia tantum venari potest.

Vocantur autem linguis eorum Trollwal. Ne ultra peram, Munstere: Nullam siquidem es linguae nostræ cognitionem adeptus: Quare meritò puderet tantum virum, rem ignorari ali- os velle docere: Est enim eiusmodi inceptum erroribus obnoxium complurimis, ut vel hoc quo exemplo docebinus. Dum enim vis alijs autor esse, quomodo nostra lingua balenæ vel ce- re appellentur, detracta, per inscitiam, aspiratione, quæ pend sola vocis significationem fa- cit, quod minime verum est, affers: Non enim val nostra lingua balenam, sed electionem siue delectum significat, à verbo, *Eg* vel *i.* eligo, vel deligo: vnde *val*, &c. At balena quæ nō vocatur: Vnde tu *Trollhualur* scribere debebas. Nec vero *Troll* Diabolum, ut tu inter- pretaris, sed Gigantes quosdam montanos significat. Vides igitur, quomodo in toto vocabu- lo, quod haud tamen mirum, erres. Levis quidem illa in linguam nostram iniuria, in v- lora tantum voce: quoniam plures, haud dubiè, non noras, idem alijs etiam vsu venit: Non enim probandum est, quòd quidam, dum Islandiæ *ce* quædam, ab Islandis acceptam, ederet, maluerit omnia, aut cerè plurima promon- torum, sinuum, montium, fontium, fluminum, tesquorum, vallium, collium, pagorum omnia deprauare (quòd nostræ linguae ignarus, non sciret à nostratibus accepta satis exactè) atque corrumpere, quàm prius ab ipsis Islandis, qui tum temporis, id est, Anno 1585, 1585. Academia Hassienſis vixerunt, quomodo singula legi ac scribi deberent, edicere. Ipsius *hæc* nationum nomen & appellationum voluntaria deprauatione, (qua factum est, ut *in* legentes, paucissima nostra agnoscamus) in linguam nostram, alioqui puram & auitam *et* elegantiam retinentem, non leuiter peccasse reputamus. Ceterum iam plurima Islandiæ miracula, quæ quidē scriptores nostri attigerunt, sic utcumq. examinauimus. Sed tamen priusquàm alio diuertamus, in hac parte attingendum videtur, quod

idem ille in mappa Islandiæ, quam sub suo nomine, prædicto anno edi fecerat, de duobus præter supra dictos, fontibus Islandiæ prodidit: quorum alter lanas albas colore nigro, alter nigras albo, inficiat. Quod quidem vbi acceperit, aut vnde habeat, scire equidem non possumus: alio, inficiat. Nec enim apud nostros, nec apud extraneos scriptores, reperire licuit. Sed vnde cumque est, fabula est, nec veritatis micam habet. Quamvis autem sit incredibile, *Lanas nigras albo inficere colore*, cum traditum sit a Plinio, Lanarum nigras nullum imbire colorem: Tamen simile quiddam narratur à Theophrasto: Flumen esse in Macedonia, quod oves nigras, albas reddat. Et illa, cuius etiam superius memini, rapsodia Noruagica, speculum scilicet illud Regale, per ipsos fontes Islandiæ, quæ hodie Hybernia, non Islandiæ esse affirmat. Quod forsitan Lectori impossibile, in lingua peregrina, pro R, S, legenti.

Non maiorem fidem meretur, quod Historicus quidam habet: *Esse in Islandia saxum, quod montium prærupta non extrinseca agitatione, sed propria nativitate, motione percolit*: Id qui credere vult, quid incredibile ducet? Est enim commentum tam inauditum, ut nullum eius simile, fabulosum fuisse Epicurorum (qui tamen multa incredibilia ex cogitasse Luciano vixi sunt) cõfiteri: Nisi forte hominem, qui Islandis proprio nomine Stein dicitur, sentit Historicus ruper quasdam circuisse, vel circumreptasse. Quod, etsi ridiculum est in Historiâ miraculorum referre, hominem scilicet moveri vel ambulare, tamen ad salvandam Historici fidem, simulandum: ne figmentum illud, per se satis absurdum, nec dignum quod legatur, durius perstringamus.

Eodem crimine tenentur, quicunque Islandiæ, coruos albos, picas, lepores, & vultures adscripserunt: Perrari enim vultures, cum glacie marina, sicut etiam viles (sed hos sæpius quàm vultures) & cornicem quoddam genus, Islandis Insularum, advenire observatum est. Picas vero & lepores, ut & corvos albos, nunquam Islandia habuit.

Atque hæc ferè sunt, quæ de prima commentarii nostri parte per quotidianas occupationes, in præsentia, afferre licuit. Quæ in hunc finem à me scripta sunt: (quod etiâ prius testatum est) ut scriptorum de terra ignota errores, & quorundam etiam affectatâ vanitas, pateficerent: Neque enim eorum famæ quicquam detractum cupio: Sed quòd veritati & paræ, operam meam consecraram, illa, quæ hætenus dicta sunt à multis, de Insula, fidem valde exiguum meriti, nec esse habui ostendere: ac ita mihi viam ad sequentia de incolis sternere.

Commentary primæ partis Finis.

Commentarij de Islandia pars secunda: quæ est de incolis.

Absolutis hætenus miraculis Islandiæ (cum nonnullis alijs, primæ parti annexis) quæ dum scriptores, velut Agamemnonios quosdam fontes, undè, ut quiddam præter & contra omnem naturam, mirantur, nec non variè deprædicant, minus veritatis, & auctoritatis suæ consulunt: monet propositæ orationis series, ut ad alteram commentarii partem nos conferamus, quæ est de incolis: Vbi quid primum dicam, aut vnde incipiam, non satis teneo. Tanta enim sunt in nos ultimos Islandos, & tot quorundam ludibria, & opprobria, tot scœmmata, tot dictæta. (Atque inter hæc etiam nonnulla eorum, qui simplicissimam veritatem proficere volunt, nempe historicorum) ut si singula recensere velim, non aliam quam

Isariæ numerum dicere coner aqua. Sed, ut dixi initio, non cum omnibus æquè studio iure & gemus. Nam licet Kranzium, Munsterum, Frisium, & alij, nimis audacter multa de gente nostra scripserint: Tamen suis monumentis de studijs liberalibus alioqui benè meriti, etiam apud nos eo erunt in precio, quo merentur. Verum interea, etsi quis velit eos à calumniandi nota liberare, tamen non leue est, eos res quasdam tam absurdas, impossibiles & ridiculas propositisse: cuiusmodi illa fuerunt, quæ hætenus exposuimus, tum implas, & atrocitate mendaciarum horrendas, cuiusmodi iam sequentur aliquot, in historias retulisse. At alijs, quicunque sunt, quotidianis convicijs nationem Islandorum incesant, resposio, quam merentur, parata esse debet. Ex quorum numero, scurrâ ille fuit, qui rhythmis aliquot, in genis nostris contumeliam, Germanica lingua edidit, nomen suum immortalî dedecori consecrauit.

Quapropter, ut institui nostri ratio exigat, dum scriptorum de hac re monumenta persequimur, etsi quædam in eis occurrant, quæ contumelie parum habent, nos tamen plerique excusamus, & errores, ut hætenus, annotabimus: tum si quid veri in creâtaulerint, id ne quæquam simulabimus. Ac eo modo, primum Munsterum, Kranzium, Frisium, & si qui sunt alij, audemus, Graculo illo, cum suis rhythmis Germanicis, dira calumniam infectâ in potimum, ut dignus est, reiecto locum. In hunc igitur modum, primum de fide rei Religio: ne Islandorum Deinde de ipsorum moribus, institutis seu vivendi ratione, auctores isti scribunt.

Secundæ partis distibutio.

1. Capitis huius partis distinctio.

Adulterum Metropolitani Islandos: licet ante suscepisse: discrepantes: itaque, petemur mine Ipsi.

Kranzium his verbis, & Islandis videntur adscribere admerere. Nam (ut de Kranzium circa Inferni locum si scribatur arcana, quæ Deus sibi num repetitur de hac re quicquid abolo & Angelis ipsius, adeoque describatur: Nullum inquam, tem seu localem situm illi damneretur, & terram novam & mat: Apoc. 2. 3. Petri 3. Esa. 65. benè præterit: tum dogmata velut certa & vera recipere, aut Timoth. 3.

Deinde etiam pugnat acriter dos ornant, encomium: Eos vici infia, section. 7. Sic igitur secum tot alias facit: Item, Kranzium & omni pietatis & honestatis sensu calidos diligi.

Sed ut ad rem: De Religione incipit, nihil magnificè dicere, cuius vi exilimo, de suis fidei initij, ad illam nunquâ facit prædicationem Evangelij doctrinam attulit: quibus Septemtionis Ecclesijs, & in vicina Noruegia (nam nolo videri: primum Idololatriæ Ethnica Christianam viguisse: quippe venerat sedis fermentum pestiferum, & unum diffudit: Nam ut postea apparuerit Reges, quibus ut commune professio, nihil nisi fidem in Deum illum Olam Thyggonis F. qui Angliæ adeptus est, & primus, ut accepimus, f. Et huic cognominem, Olamum circiter, imperij habenas arctius inceder tradidit, Anno Christi 1030. & Ethelric Stobum, pro Christi habuit etiam nostra patria inter nomen erat, qui circa annum Christi Islandiæ, Lawenmun: Quique rerum sagacitate & consilio, habebatur in statuaret, incolis à nullo ferè superstitum tantum animi virtute ac incipit: ut eundem in vita diem excipit: ut eundem cupientes optime inueniret inquam vili: nec quisquam eundem: ab eo cruciatum petebatur, & tam certa cõiectura & cõspicius cauta, providens & consilij plenior: quasi dicas, Nihil consilium habere: & admirando cum consilio g

S E C T I O

SECTIO PRIMA.

Adulterius Metropolitanus Hamburgensis.

*Islandos: licet ante susceptam Christi fidem, lege Naturali videntes, non multum à lege nostra
diferpantes: itaque, potentibus illis, ordinamus quandam virum sanctum, primum Episcopum, no-
mine Iseif.*

Krantzius his verbis, & Munsterus alibi, fidei seu Religionis Christianæ dignitatem
admirantur. Nam (vt de Krantzio infra) Munsterus, quæ supra prodidit, de fide nostra, seu o-
pinione circa Inferni locum situmque, omnino est à Chrilliana pietate alienum: Velle scilicet
curari arcana, quæ Deus sibi soli reseruauit, quæque voluit nostrum captum excedere: Non e-
abolo & Angelis ipsius, adeoque damnatis omnibus animabus destinati, determinetur, aut cir-
cumferatur: Nullum inquam, in ea terram, seu in ea, aut vlla alia huius mundi parte, corpora-
reituram, & terram nouam & celos nouos, iustorum & sanctorum habitacula, creanda affir-
mar: Apoc. 2. 2. Petri 3. Esai. 65. Quare Christianus rerum adeo abstrusarum inquisitione in li-
velut certa & vera recipere, aut alijs tradere, nefas esse ducit. Deut. 4. & 12. Esai. 8. Match. 17. 2.
Timoth. 3.

Deinde etiam pugnat acriter cum Religione Christiana, quo Munsterus & Krantzius *Islandos*
ornant, encomium: Eos videlicet, cæculos ac pueros suos æquo habere in precio. De quo
nos alius facit: Item, Krantzius & Munsterus, dū quos Christianos assent, inferni archieco-
nomi pietatis & honestatis sensu exuunt: quod scribant filios ab his, non maiore cura, quam
cæculos diligi.

Sed vt ad rem: De Religione equidē nostra, quæ qualisue fuerit, eū Ethnicismus primum su-
gicere, nihil magnificē dicere possumus: quemadmodum nec alia Septentrionis Regna vi-
cino, vi existimo, de suis fidei initijs. Fatendū enim est, & cum terijs gentibus deplorandum
vixit, ad illam nunquā satis predicatam diem, quæ nobis velut immortalitatis initiū illuxit & re-
liquis Septentrionis Ecclesijs, offusis fuisse. Illud tamen piē nobis sentire liceat, apud nos, vt
& in vicina Noruegia (nam nolo vltra septa vagari, & de populis ignotis quicquā pronuntiare)
eccē: primum Idololatriæ Ethnica, sinceriores longē & simpliciores fides seu religionem
Christianam viguisse; quippe veneno Papistico minus infectā, quā postea, vbi auctum Roma-
næ sedis fermentum pestiferum, & malum contagiosum maturuit, & per totum orbem virus su-
uies & incrementum cepit, *Islandia* Christum amplexa est: & vt laudatissimi duo illi Norue-
gici Reges, quibus vt commune nomen, ita commune nominis Christi propagandi studium &
professio, nihil nisi fidem in Deum Patrem, Filium, & spiritum Sanctum, sonabat. Dico autem
illum Olauum Thyggonis F. qui Anno Christi 968, natus, Anno ætatis 27. Imperium Norue-
giæ adeptus est, & prius, vt accepimus, Noruegis Christum obtrudit: quibus imperabat an-
te circiter, imperij habenas arctius in primis obtinuit: Per annos fere 17. Christi doctrinam au-
thentice tradidit, Anno Christi 1030, ab improbis patricidis nefarie interfectus, in pago Norue-
gici *Stordum*, pro Christi nomine cruorem sudit.

Habuit etiam nostra patria inter multos alios quendam insignem pietate virum; cui Nialus
nomen erat, qui circa annum Christi 1000 vixit in prædio seu villa *Berthops buot*, sua in *Par-
cia Islandiæ*. Landennum: Quiq; rerum humanarum experientia, circumspēcta animi pruden-
tia, sagacitate & consilio, habebatur insignis. Cum enim, eius seculo, indomitis *Islandia* poti-
us fluctuaret, incolis à nullo fere superiore magistratu repressis, nullis se factionibus immiscen-
tis: Plurimas cuncta animi virtute ac industria composuit: Nunquam vim fecit, nec passus est,
vitijs cum tantum in vita diem excipias. Ad eodē studiose seditiones & turbas vitauit: alioq; vi-
tiosum quod exuperantes optinēdi iuuic: Nec quisquam eius consilio, nisi maximo suo con-
silio est vnquam vsus: nec quisquam ab eo, nisi eum vitæ & fortunarum periculo deflexit.
Nec enim, & tam certa cōiectura & consilium esse potuerit, quanta in ipso deprehensa est. Vn-
de rati: quasi dicas, Nialus consilium: vel, Nialus consiliores gerit, aut succedit: cum quid
adhibere & admirando cum consilio gestum est.

Hic cum domitux, a 100. viris conuictis ob eadem a filio ipsius, pio tamen initio petram cingeretur, & inimicis domus indiq; igni succendentibus, sibi videret supremum fatum inflare, ait tandem. Hæc quidem fato, hoc est, voluntate diuina accidunt. Cæteri spei & fiduciam in Christo sitam habeo, nos (de se & vxore loquens) licet corpus hoc nostrum caducum, inimicorum flammis, mortalitatis corruptionem subeat, ab æternis tamen flammis liberatum in. Sicq; inter has voces, & flammarum traxitiam, vitam, An. Christo 1010. cum vxore & filio hominem finiuit. Vox profecto filij Dei non indigna, animæ, cum mortis acerbitate iudantis lumen solatium arguens.

Hæc ideo addidi, vt ostendam, quâ coniectura adducar ad existimandam mox initio Christianismi (vt sic loquar) apud nos recepti, non fuisse tam deceptas & errorum tenebris immeritas hominum mentes, quàm nunc, paulo ante hæc nostra tempora fuerunt.

Ast verò iam postquam Dominus Deus per Lutherum, & Lutheri in vinea Domini collegæ, & pios successores, salutis doctrinam illustriorem reddidit, mentiumq; nostrarum grauiter & densa caligine excussis, dextræ suæ digito, hoc est, spiritu Sancto, (Matth. 12. vers. 28, & c.) cordi nostri auriculas velle ait, ac oculos, quibus saluificam ipsius veritatem cerneremus, nobis aperuit: Nos omnes & singuli credimus & confitemur Deum esse Spiritum, (Iohan. 4. vers. 24. & c.) æternum (Esaï 40. vers. 28.) Infinitum (Ieremi. 23. vers. 24. Psalm. 136. vers. 7. 8. 9.) & ætatum (Matth. 19. 17.) omnipotentem (Gene. 17. 1. Apocal. 1. 8.) Vnum essentia & natura: Vnum providentia: vnum essentia rerum & administratione (Deut. 6. 5. Ephes. 4. 5.) At personæ diuinitatis, proprietatibusque distinctum, Patrem, Filium & spiritum Sanctum (Matth. 28. 19. & 3. 17.) Deum Patrem quidem, primam diuinitatis personam, cæli terræ & omnium rerum creatorem (Gene. 1. vers. 1. & sequent.) Sustentatorem & gubernatorem (Psalm. 135. 3. Hebr. 1. 3.) Patrem Domini nostri Iesu Christi (Psalm. 2. 7. & sequent.) & nostrum per eundem Patrem (Rom. 8. 15.) Animæ & corporis curatorem (Luc. 12. 12.) Tum Iesum Christum, secundam diuinitatis personam, filium Dei patris (Iohan. 1. 18. & c.) Vnigenitum (Iohan. 1. 29. Hebr. 1. 2.) æqualem patri (1. Paral. 17. 13. Iohan. 1. 1.) Deum verum (Iohan. 1. 2. & c.) ante omnia ætæta præordinatū (1. Pet. 1. 20. Apocal. 13. 8. & c.) & statim post lapsum, promissum Messiam (Gen. 3. 15.) Sanctis Patriarchis identem promulgatum, vt Abraham (Gen. 12. 3. & c.) Isaac, Gen. 26. 4.) Iacob, (Gen. 28. 14.) & promissionibus confirmatum (Genes. 49. 9. Esa. 11. 10.) Sacrificij Mosaicis (Leuit. 1. 2. & c.) Et alijs typis prefiguratum: immolatione Isaac (Gen. 22.) Exaltatione æneæ serpentis, (Num. 21.) Iona (Ion. 2. & c.) Prophetarum testimonio proclamatum (Esaï 7. 14. & c.) ac tandem in plenitudine temporis verè exhibitum: hominem verum (Iohan. 1. 14. & c.) Paul. Galat. 4.) mortuum pro peccatis nostris: resuscitatum propter iustificationem nostram (Rom. 4. 25. & c.) Ascendentem in cælum (Act. 1. 9. & c.) ac pro nobis ad dexteram patris sine intermissione interpellantem (1. Iohan. 2. 1. & c.) per spiritum Sanctum suum: qui tenet diuinitatis personam patri & filio compar & consubstantialis, (Act. 5. 4.) Ecclesiam libi verbo & Sacramentis colligentem (Matth. 16. 18. Roman. 10. 14. & c.) Et ad vitam æternam sanctificatorem, (Act. 9. 31. & c.) Ac tandem consummatis seculis cælo venturum (Act. 1. 11.) Sub eadem vniuersa & mortuos (1. Thess. 4. 15.) redditurum impijs secundum opera sua, eosq; poenitentiam ad iudicaturū (Mat. 13. 42. & 25. 41.) credentes verò in nomine ipsius æterna vita donaturū, (Mat. 25. 34. & c.) Hunc, inquam, Iesum Christum redemptorem, (Mat. 1. 21.) Caput, (1. Corin. 12. 27.) & Dominum nostrum (Ephes. 4. 5.) agnoscimus: Nosq; illi nomen in sacro baptismo dare ac dedisse (Act. 2. 38.) Et per baptismū illi inferos esse (1. Cor. 12. 13.) aperte, ingenue, libere ac libenter fateamur ac contestamur: omnesque alios, quicquid: aliud nomen sub cælo datum esse hominibus, per quod salui fiant, comminiscuntur, serio detestamur, exequimur & damnamus. (Act. 4. 12.) Verbum ipsius sanctissimum vnicuique salutis normam statuimus, illudque tantummodò, omnibus humanis commentis abiectis & spretis, insublimem dei nostræ regulam & amulum nobis proponimus: (Galat. 1. 8. Esa. 29. 13. Ezech. 30.) Quod duplici Testamento, veteris & noui appellatione complectimur, (Hebr. 8.) traditum per Prophetas & Apostolos (Ephes. 3. 30.) singulari & immensa Dei bonitate in hunc vsque diem per in Ecclesia conseruatum & conseruandum in posterum. (Matth. 28. ult. Psalm. 71. ult. Cor. 11. 26.)

Deo igitur optimo maximo gratias ex animo & toto pectore agimus, quod etiam in diuinitatis intervallo a reliquo Ecclesie corpore diuulsos & vltimas mundi partes habitantem hoc suum, concessum ad reuelationem gentium, & paratum ante faciem omnium populorum, olim pio Simeoni benigne ostensum (Nomen in Christo omnes thesauri sapientiæ reconditi) quod nunc totam nostram gentem radijs suis saluificis illuminat ac fouet, pertingente luce. Hæc ita breuiter, ipsam summam perstringendo, fides nostra est, & nostra religio, quæ mōstrante spiritu Sæcto, & ipsius in vinea Christi ministris, hausimus: idq; ex fontibus illis

Anno Domini
D^{omi}ni 1070. ad Christum
sed eo premum anno iū *Adul*
in hoc loco suspicam reddi
trorum testantur: quibus
fraz insulae limites gellis crede
ris peregrino, sit penes tuum,
fraz potius assentiar. Nostræ
ignora, Hi suas Chronologias
reserunt tantummodò, vt rebus
re & veritate pugnantia in cont
Nostræ apparebit: hi omnium ep
bunt velle vnius tantum mentio
ciam, pauca, quæ in vetustissimis
coporum in nostris Ecclesijs succ
est, cum extraneis communicab
bantur, scribenda tamen omnino
alios asserendam: Sic igitur habet
Anno Christi 874. prius quidem
Norwici (quorum principes sunt I
orientis Anguliffa hosti appellati
agnatis & agnatis & præterea num
necellorum tantum numerus deser
singuli occupauerint & incoluerint
Illam, porthmis, promontorijs, ru
laminibus, rijs, ac deniq; narrat
uentis & in vsu sunt, aperte villis seu
cijs, aut circiter, habitabiles partes su
Eriaci manserunt, si paucissimos, q
Anno autem vix centum à primo ing
nempe circa annum Domini 974. qu
re à multis tentata est, Commeinor
nemenda ad fidem Christi insula, dilig
981. ad Islandos venit, atque doce
facile ad Islandis in vsu fuerint.

Alter verò ille extraneus Episcopus
997. in Islandiam primum venit.
Hinc post 26. annorum discipation
ali omnium incolarum decretum est, v
rebu depositis, religionem seclarentur C
Rursum in solenni incolarum conuen
quarum constitutiones allatas ex A
tæra) ybique cederent iuri Canonico
Anno 1056. abire peregrè ex Islandia
Redd ordinatus in Islandiam, & Cath
74. 4. Kalendas Iulias.
Videbuntur forsitan hæc minuta, con
sequuntur: Sed nec historiam Roman
æ & aliorum errores conuincendo
id fidem nostrarum Chronologiarum
ille: Cuius, in præfatione suæ *Dania*,
appellat) *indulstra* silentio obliuand
muer, officia continua sobrietatis exerce
ferre soleant, inopiam ingenio pensam
mōstrante spiritu Sæcto, & ipsius in vinea Christi ministris, hausimus: idq; ex fontibus illis
recepti, non fuisse tam deceptas & errorum tenebris immeritas hominum mentes, quàm nunc, paulo ante hæc nostra tempora fuerunt.

The true state of *Ffland.* Traffiques & Discoveries.

335

Anno Domini 1070. *Ad Christum conuersos ffland.*

Divum nobis est, virum his verbis dicere voluerit *Krantzius*, *fllandos* primum Anno Domini 1070. ad Christum esse conuersos: an verò, prius quidem esse conuersos non neget, sed eo primum anno ià *Adalbertus* motuisse dicat. Vtutis autem asserit, tamen fidem ipsi stræ insulæ limites gestis credere, an verò *Krantzius*, aut cuius alieni in nostratium rerum historia peregrino, sit penes tuum, candide Lector, arbitrium. Ego profecto multis adducor ut novererunt tantummodò, ut rebus g. his suum verum tempus seu æram assignarent; ille peregrina & re & veritate pugnantia in contumeliâ gentis nostræ ignotissimæ, historiz suæ admiscuit, ut pauciam, paucæ, quæ in vetustissimis nostris annalibus de *fllandia* ad Christum conuersa, & de Episcoporum in nostris Ecclesijs successione reperi, quorum etiam fides apud nos publicè recepta est, cum extraneis communicabo. Quæ tamen si leuiuscula, nec omnia prorsus publica recepta aliorum asserendam: Sic igitur habent.

Chronologia
fflandicæ gentis
antiquissima.

Vetustissimi an-
nates.

Anno Christi 874. prius quidem, ut ante commemorauimus, inuenta, sed tunc primum à *Norwegis* (quorum princeps fuit *Ingulphus* quidam, de cuius nomine promontorium *fllandicæ* orientalis *Ingulphus* hofstii appellationem traxit) occupata est. Hi plures quam 400. cum cognatis & agnatis & præterea numerosa familia nominatim, hi plures quam 400. cum nec illorum tantum numerus describitur, sed quas oras, quæque loca nostris recententur: *Ingulphus* occupauerint & incoluerint, & quomodo primi inhabitatores, sicut, sinibus, portibus, fluminibus, rivis, ac denique villis seu domicilijs suis nomina dederint, quorum hodie præterea: *re- cingis* circiter, habitabiles partes sua multitudine implent: Centum verò propemodum annis Antis autem vix centum à primo ingressu elapsis, mox de religione *Christianiana* agi ceptum est, præ multis tenetis est. Commemorantur autem duo Episcopi extranei, qui cum alijs, in con- Anno 974. facit edes *fllandis* in vfu fuerint.

874
fllandia primum
inhabuit.

974

Fredericus Saxo.

Alter verò ille extraneus Episcopus siue concionator, quem *Thangbrandt* nuncupauere, anno 997. in *fllandiam* primum venit.

Hinc post 26. annorum disceptionem de religione, tandem Anno 1000. in conuentu generali omnium incolarum decretum est, vniuersi eorundem consensu, ut Ethnicorum natiuitatem cultu sepelito, religionem sedarentur *Christianam*.

Anno domi,
1000,

Rursum in solenni incolarum conuentu Anno 1050. sancitum est, ut leges seculares seu politicae ubique cederent iuri Canonico seu diuino.

Anno 1056. abit peregrinè ex *fllandia* *Istefus* quidam, in Episcopum *fllandicæ* ordinandus.

Rede ordinatus in *fllandiam*, & Cathedram *Scalholtem* adit Anno 1057. Moritur 1080.

Idem 74. Kalendas Iulias, Videbantur forsitan hæc minuta, concisa, vilia, nec narratione satis digna, cum multis forte sequuntur: Sed nec historiam Romanam contexamus, nec tam minuta erunt, quin contra præterea & aliorum errores conuincendos, prout nostrum est institutum, valeant. Et certe, quæ ad fidem nostrarum Chronologiarum, constat Saxonem Grammaticum non parum illis auxiliis: Cuius, in præfatione suæ *Dania*, hæc sunt verba. Nec *Thylenium* inquit, (sic enim *fllandos* appellat) *industria* silentio obliuenda: qui cum ob nativam solè floriditatem, luxuria nutriti, officia continua sobrietatis exerceant, omniq. vita momenta ad alienorum operum novitatem transferre solent, inopia ingenio pensant. Cum *fllandis* quippe nationum res gestas cognosse, propriis exhibere. Quorum *ibefaus* *Historiarum* rerum pignori bus refertos curiosius contemplant, quos tanta *variatio* peritiam callere noni. Hæc Saxo. Quare lubet Episcoporum *fllandicæ* Catalogum



Catalogum persequi, ut ex annalibus nostris continuata diligenter, quoad eius fieri potest, omnium series, his quæ de primo Isleifo contra *Krantzinum* attulimus, fidem faciat.

ANNO Christi.	EPISCOPI <i>Schalholtenfes.</i>	EPISCOPI <i>Holenses.</i>	ANNO Christi.
	II Gyfferus.	I Ionas Augmundi F. Isleifi discipulus.	
1082	<i>Ordinatur peregrè.</i>		
1083	<i>Redit in Islandiam cum Episcopatu.</i>	<i>Ordinatur peregrè: anno atq. 64. cognomen illi, sanctus: cuius memorie</i>	1106
1118	<i>Moritur 5. Kalend. Maias qui fuit dies Martis.</i>	<i>dies 3. Martij, apud Islandos est antiquitus dicatus.</i>	
	III Thorlacus Runolphi. F.	<i>Moritur 11. Kalend. Maias.</i>	
Anno ætatis 32:	<i>Ordinatur eodẽ anno, quo prædecessor Gyfferus vita excessit, sed tamen ante illius obitum 30. die.</i>	II. Ketillus sine Catullus.	
1133	<i>Moritur.</i>	<i>Ordinatur.</i>	
	IIII Magnus.	<i>Moritur.</i>	
1134	<i>Ordinatur.</i>	III Bjomo.	
1148	<i>Postridie festi omnium Sanctorum in villa sacerdotali Hitarðal cõminans, canaculo fulmine percussus, cum viris 70. flammis absumptus est.</i>	<i>Ordinatus venit in Islandiam.</i>	
	V Klaingus.	<i>Moritur.</i>	
1151	<i>Eligitur.</i>	IIII Brandus.	
1152	<i>Cathedram adit.</i>	<i>Ordinatur.</i>	
1176	<i>Moritur.</i>	<i>Cathedram adit.</i>	
	VI Thorlacus.	<i>Moritur.</i>	
	<i>Eligitur biennio ante obit. prædecessoris</i>	V Gudmundus, cognomento Bonus.	
1178	<i>Ordinatur.</i>	<i>Eligitur & ordinatur.</i>	
1193	<i>Moritur.</i>	<i>Moritur.</i>	
	VII Paulus.	VI Botolphus.	
1195	<i>Ordinatur.</i>	<i>Redit ordinatus.</i>	
1211.	<i>Moritur.</i>	<i>Moritur.</i>	
	VIII Magnus.	VII. Henricus.	
1216	<i>Ordinatur.</i>	<i>Cathedram adit.</i>	
	IX Siguardus.	<i>Moritur.</i>	
1239	<i>Cathedram adit.</i>	VIII Brandus.	
1268	<i>Moritur.</i>	<i>Abbas peregrè abis.</i>	
	X Arnerus.	<i>Cathedram adit.</i>	
1269	<i>Cathedram adit.</i>	<i>Moritur.</i>	
1298	<i>Moritur.</i>	IX. Iorundus.	
	XI Arnerus Helgonis F.	<i>Cathedram adit.</i>	
1304	<i>Ordinatur.</i>	<i>Moritur.</i>	
1305	<i>Cathedram adit.</i>	X Audunnus.	
1309	<i>In Norragiã abis ligna à rege Norragie petiurus, quibus templum Schalboltense reedificaretur, quod eodem anno fulmine tacitum confugravit.</i>	<i>Cathedram adit.</i>	
1310	<i>Redit ex itinere.</i>	XI Laurentius.	
1320	<i>Moritur.</i>	<i>Eligitur & ordinatur.</i>	
		<i>Moritur 1dib. April.</i>	
		XII Egillus.	
		<i>Cathedram adit.</i>	
		<i>Moritur.</i>	
		XIII	

Ionas

XIII

ANNO Christi.	Episcopi
	Ionas
1331	<i>Eligitur.</i>
1332	<i>Ordinatur Kal. Apr.</i>
1333	<i>Cathedram adit.</i>
1338	<i>Moritur.</i>
	X
	Ionas Indridi
1339	<i>Cathedram adit.</i>
1341	<i>Moritur.</i>
	XII
	Ionas Sig
1343	<i>Cathedram adit.</i>
1348	<i>Moritur pridie Dini.</i>
	XV
	Gyrth
1349	<i>Ordinatur & Albia N.</i>
	<i>copo Asloen Salomon.</i>
1356	<i>Abiens peregrè fuit.</i>
	XVI
	Thorarinn
1361	<i>Cathedram adit.</i>
1364	<i>Moritur.</i>
	XVII
	Oddgeir
1366	<i>Cathedram adit.</i>
1381	<i>Moritur in Assumpt. be.</i>
	<i>tu Norragie Bergenfi, &</i>
	<i>immatura delapsus. Sepu</i>
	<i>Saluatoris.</i>
	XVIII
	Michael Dar
1385	<i>Cathedram adit.</i>
1388	<i>Resignat profectus in D.</i>
	XIX.
	Wilhelmus Da
1394	<i>Cathedram adit.</i>
	XX
	Amerus.
	<i>Hic cognomento fuit 99m</i>
	<i>Gesser. na prefecturam Island</i>
	<i>pari Schalholtenf. & vice Epif</i>
	<i>Obijt.</i>
	XXI
	Ionas Gerickson
	<i>Suecus sine cognomento suo</i>
	<i>Ecclesie Schalholtenfi: ac post</i>
	<i>mis audacter tentata, à quodam</i>
	<i>Modrunollum (vs summa est) cap</i>
	<i>ad collis saxo in anno Schalholte</i>
	<i>nomẽ habet, vinus submersus & p</i>
	XXII
	Gostuinus.
	<i>Praef Ecclesie Schalholtenfi.</i>
	XXIII
	Sueno.
	<i>Dicitur sapiens praef.</i>

The true state of Ffland. Traffiques & Dilcoueries.

337

ANNO Christi.	Episcopi Schalholt.	Episcopi Holfes.	ANNO Christi.
	XII Jonas Haldorus, Eligitur. Ordinatur Kal. Augusti. Cathedram adit. Moritur.	XIII Ormus, Cathedram adit. Moritur in festo omnium Sanctorum.	1343 1355
1339 1341	XIII Jonas Indridi F. Noruagus. Cathedram adit. Moritur.	XIIII Jonas Erici F. cognomento Skalle. Cathedram Holfensem aditum. venit in Islandiam. Hic Jonas, olim in Episcopum Gronlandie ordinatus, a Pontifice Romano imperavit, ut liceret sibi Episcopatum Holfensem adire, qui tunc temporis vacabat. Unde cum confirmatio nem huius dignitatis acceperis, a Pontifice acceptam, veniens non proferret, apud Presbyteros diocesum Holfensem, suspecta fidei esse cepit. Quare ab ipsa in Noruagiam relegatus est, ut ea res arbitrio Regis componeretur. Rege igitur ipsius partibus fauente Cathedram Holfensem obtinuit. Moritur.	1358 Gronlandie Episcopus. 1356
1343 1348	XIII Jonas Siguardi F. Cathedram adit. Moritur pridie Dini Magri.	XV Petrus. Ordinatur, quo anno predecessores mortuorum exemptus est. Cathedram adit Holfensem. Moritur.	1391 1392
1349 1356	XV Gyrthus, Ordinatus a Aloia Noruagorum, ab Episcopo Alesensis Salomone. Abiens peregrinatus vitam suam.	XVI Jonas Wilhelmus, Anglus, sine cognomine, presens Ecclesie Holfensi. XVII Godschalcus. Moritur.	1432 1457
1362 1364	XVI Thorarinnus. Cathedram adit. Moritur.	XVIII Olaus Rogwaldi F. pradii Godschalchi ex sorore nepos, vterq. Noruagus, eligitur. Moritur.	1458 1497
1366 1381	XVII Oddgeirus. Cathedram adit. Moritur in Assumpt. beate virginis in portu Noruagie Bergenis, e mercium acerno in immensum delapsus. Sepultus Bergenis ad Saluatoris.	XIX Godschalcus. Demorini Olai nepos ex fratre, & ille Noruagus, eligitur eodem anno quo patruus decessit. Cathedram adit, ac per totos 20. annos multos ex subditis duriter exercuisse ferunt.	1500
1385 1388	XVIII Michael Danus. Cathedram adit. Resignat profectus in D. niam.		
1394	XIX. Wilhelmus Danus, Cathedram adit. Moritur.		
1410	XX Arnerus. Hic cognomento fuit Pillour .i. liberalis. Gessit, na presens Islandia totius Episcopatus Schalholtensis, & vice Episcopatus Holfensis. Obijt.		
1412	XXI Jonas Gerickson, Suecus sine cognomento sine natione presens Ecclesie Schalholtensis: ac postea ob quadamvis audacter tentata, a quodam Thormaldo de Modrunollum (ut fama est) captus, & alligato ad collum saxo in amne Schalholtensi, qui a ponte nomen habet, vivus submersus & stragulatus est.		
1415	XXII Gosvinius. Presens Ecclesie Schalholtensi.		
1418	XXIII Sueno. Dilectus sapient presens.		
	XXIIII		

ANNO Christi.	Episcopi Schalholt.	Episcopi Holenses.	ANNO Christi.
	XXIII Magnus Eiophi F.	iudicatos usus est, cum cum misericordi- la morte commutavit.	
1489	Praef. XXV. Stephanus.	XX Jonas Araxionius.	
1494	Cathedram adit. Deinde Godtschalco episcopo Holensi, qui crudelia nomen meritis esse videtur. Synchro- nos similem cum illo clementia & inflicta lau- dem reportavit.	Cathedram adit, etiam hic Papi- sticarum superstitionum ultimus & acer- rimus assertor. Qui, cum Gyslerio & Martino episcopis Schalholtiae ac- tervesseret, a pientiss. Rege Chri- stiano tertio iubetur sub pena eviti- protinus in Daniam advenire. Sea- hoc neglecto, capitis Martinum Schalholtiz Episcopum custodia mandavit. Tandem & ipse a viro quodam magni nominis, quem prius vi ferunt, laqueis, capitis, ac Schalholtiam adductus, ibidem cu filijs duobus, auctoritate regis praef- ecti, capitis supplicio affectus est. In cuius ultionem, non multo post praef- ectus ille regis, cum socijs aliquot, a quibusdam sicarijs, decollatorum o- lim famulis, nefarie occisus est.	1519
1519	Moritur: aut circiter. XXVI Augmundus.	XXI Olaus Hialterus.	1548
1522	Eligitur anno obitus Stephani. Cathedram adit. Hoc episcopo, praefectus regis cum comitibus aliquot Schalholtiam innotatus in ipso conuicio a contrariis quibusdam interfectus est, eo quod impie passim in incolae & bona ipsorum grassa- tus esset, Augmundus vero tanquam istius ca- dis auctor, quanquam se iuramento purgaret, in Daniam transfectus. Obijt.	XXI Abijt patria. Cathedram adit. Hic primus sincerius doctrinae ad Holenios amorem in multam animie, etiam adhuc praedecessoris sui collega, accendi: Deinde ean- dem doctrinam Episcopus apertius docuit & propugnauit.	1550
	XXVII Gyslerus.	XXI Olaus Hialterus.	
1540	Eligitur vivente Augmundo.		
1541	Cathedram adit, Papiasticarum traditio- num abrogator circa coniugium sacerdotum: Eius nuptia Schalholtiae celebrata.	Abijt patria. Cathedram adit. Hic primus sincerius doctrinae ad Holenios amorem in multam animie, etiam adhuc praedecessoris sui collega, accendi: Deinde ean- dem doctrinam Episcopus apertius docuit & propugnauit.	1552
1544	XXVIII. Martinus.		1553
1547	Praef. & sequentibus. XXIX Gisslaus Jonas.		
	Hic statim Augmundo episcopo, capiti inue- nit vera pietatis & purioris doctrinae Evangeli- ca studio, & amore flagrare, eandemq. pastor ecclesiae Selardalefis diligenter propagare, qua- ratione Pontificiorum odium adeo in se deriva- nit, ut illorum insidijs ac rabiei cedere coactus, Hamburgum se contulerit, unde Hassniam Danorum profectus, in capto vera Theologiae studio strenue pergens, in multorum, praecipue vero in summa D.D. Petri Palladii in tempo- ris Episcopi, familiaritate & gratia vivebat. Postea, inde in patriam reverso, Martinus sponte cessit. Moritur & hic 31. annos pla- nimus Evangelium Iesu Christi professus: nec tantum viva voce, sed & quocumq. denum po- tuit modo, docendo, ducendo, scribendo, re & consilio Ecclesiam Dei inuis & promouit.	XXII Gudbrandus Thorlacius. Ille non modo sua aetate, sed & po- steritatis ornamentum. Qui prae- terquam quod inchoavit opus a praede- cessore Olao sibi relictum ducens S. Scriptum ad eam, quam dedit Deus perfectum, deduxit: (Dico) abo- res & iam in asserenda vi- tate Evangelica, & papistico super- stitionibus, & rogandis etiam in hac patria sua officinam Typographicam primus Islandorum aperuit. Cui id- circo patria inter libros complures in linguam vernaculam translati, etiam sacrosancta Biblia, eleganti- simis typis Islandica lingua in offi- na ipsius excusa, in aeternum debetis. Hic inquam Episcopus praesens, of- ficium suscepit.	1558
	XXX Otto Enerus, vir gravis, pini & eruditus.		
1588	Electus abijt patria.		
1589	Ordinatur. Redit & cathedram adit, susceptis, mun- tis labores aggreditur.	Abijt. Redit & Cathedram Holen- sem ingreditur.	1570

Circa

Circa

Circa haec igitur tempo-
per sinceritorem doctri-
traque sede Episcopali, laud-
anum: 1553. fundata est: a
Dio Friderico secundo reg-
aveta & proinde: quae etiam
& nunc viget: florētque: in
rudimentis imbuta, ad scie-
tum perantur.

Peruenimus tandem ad ho-
diti viri clarissimi Dom. Gual-
terii Ecclesiarum sunt antistites
superstitem, propter gloriam
dentibus votis flagitamus.

S E

Specie habitant plerumq. aut ad-
mula & domos ex: offibus pisci-
gris asperitatem in canernis l.
Manserunt, Multi in Islandia h

Hic membrum secundum ini-
mulum, quibus vtantur edific-
m, & Specubus & montium can-
mundani ornatus pretiosis rebu-
men nec hic veritatem tacere poi-
more etiam hic vrsari. Etenim,
in paucis locis, cum magalia,
tempore quo piscaturae oper-
comus, seu ipsa hominum domici-
maret fert conditio, ligno, cef-
quod illis cum Noruagis, qui l-
fip, quae inde paciatim collabij-
m maris beneficio iam vt olim
tratores extranei inopiae nostrae
ergitate multum declinarunt, &
sonius multa sunt praedia, multae
illam excellentiam imitantur, &
que bene altz. Vt exempli gratia
longa, 10. lata, alta 20. Tum reli-
sua proportionem respondentes.
sem deformia, nec ob artis struct-
tum aliquot delubris, siue sacris &
ne constructis commemorare: Cui-
columnae vtrique quinque, vlna-
culmen, huic substructioni pro-
1. & 84. horrenda tempestate coll-
sacratissima est memoria. Anno
omni quantitate manifeste ei-
tempus medietullo, & atrio magni
accepti Schalholtenje, quod iam
est. Praeterea aliquot alia templa
liet non a quantia. Sed hic neq.
tionem euaget. Vt enim Domus
pudet, quod contenti pauperes
piscium & balnearum officij
que id genus ornamenti.

quaquam hic cum iumentis communis est. Illa enim pilis & villis natura (quod *Munitionum* & *Krantium* nouisse iurari) uestiuit: homines, alioqui nudi, pannis corpus induere ne-
cessè habent. Hæc indumenta, quæ quidem *Islandia* suppeditat, ex lanis ouium conficiuntur.
Sed non cogitaram idcò rectè dici, amictum esse nobis cum ouibus communem, siue eundem.
Vtuntur etiam extranei pannis ex ouilla lana confectis, licet artificio subtiliore. Sed de indu-
turiæ nostræ infirmitatem arguit.

Status. Restat ille status, quem cum brutis habere communem dicimus. Qui qualis aut cuius-
modi sit, aut eum esse velint nostri scriptores, certè non facilè asequor. Status, inquit *Doleius*,
est vel corporis, vel causarum, vel ordinis & conditionis. Certè alium esse statum nostrum corporis,
quàm iumentorum (nam præter duos pedes etiam manus habemus, & corpore ac vultu sursum
erecto lacedæmus) alium item ordinem & conditionem nostram ducimus. Illi boni viri, si id de
se aut alijs cognitum habent, fateantur. Nos hæc tam vana & in Deum creatorem nostrum tam
conemptibilia irridemus, nec prolixiore tractatu dignamur.

Ceterum quia nostrum est, nec a minori patriæ, nec vili re tantum tribuere, quin plus semper
& ubique veritati largiamur: Dicam quid sit, quod huic infami scriptorum conuicio occasi-
onem fortè dederit.

Occasio harum
fabularum.

Sunt in vicinia *Schalholste*, ad lictus *Islandiæ* australe, paræchiolæ tres, inter duos rapidissimos
amnes *Chlopfæ* & *Disfuis* aâ interceptæ; quæ & syluis & cespitibus, consuetio gentis ad
focos alendos fomite, ferè destituuntur. In istis paræchijs habitantes, & si qui sint vicini, quam-
uis plures eorum, vt de omnibus rebus, ad rem familiarem pertinentibus, ita etiam de his,
quæ ad focos & balnea opus habent, sibi opportunè prospiciunt: Tamen sunt inter eos qui-
dam, sed infimæ tantum fortis coloni, qui quoniam istis rebus domi destituuntur, nec aliun-
de petere eas valeant, in culinis fœno ad coquendos cibos vtuntur: Ast vbi hyemis niuosa & seui-
tate horrida ingruit, coloni isti miseri ad suum bouile refugiunt, illic scilicet extructis tabulatis
operas domesticas exercentes, à bobus, cum focos habere nequeant, calorem mutuam-
tur, quemadmodum mihi ab alijs narratum est. Sicq; illi tantum, qui sanè paucissimi sunt, com-
munè longè alium habent, de qua re hæcenus. Hæc est in istis Paræchiolis quorundam fors & in-
dustria, quo iure toti genti tribuatur, quod vix ac ne vix quidem de istis paucis colonis verum est, li-
berenter quæserim? Tædet de his pluribus agere: Tantum quia mihi cum Theologis res est, illud
salomonis ijs reponam, Qui calumniatur egenum, deridet factorem eius,
Equidem quia gens hæc nostra pauper & egena est & fuit, ac veluti quidam mendicus in-
ter diuites, tot extraneorum probra & scommata tulit. Sed videant cui exprobrent. Certè, si a-
dem omnium Pater, Deus.

Proverb. 14.

SECTIO QVARTA.

Simplicitate sancta vitam agunt, cum nihil amplius querant, quàm natura concedit. Beata gens,
cuius paupertas nullas inuidet. Sed mercatores Anglici & Dani quiescere gentem non sinunt,
qui ob piscaturam euehendam terram illam frequentantes cum mercibus omnigenis vitæ quocq; no-
stra inuenerunt. Nam & fuge aquæ miscere in potum didicerunt, & simplicis aquæ haustu odo-
rem. Nunc aurum & argentum cum nostris admittuntur.

Krantius,
Mundler.

Simplicitate. Equidem sanctæ simplicitatis laudem nobis attribui, meritò gaudemus: Sed id
dolemus, quòd reperiatur etiam apud nos iustitiæ ac legum ingens deprauatio, ac magna
nequicia, quam multorum scelerum myriades consequuntur; quod pij & boni omnes quotidiè
plorant. Id mali autè nequaquam supremi Magistratus, hoc est, Regis nostri clementissimi,
vireus nostræpe culpa accidit: qui hæc quæ clàm ipso præposterè geruntur & quæ in infe-
licitatem magistratu desiderantur, ad maiestatem ipsius non deferimus,
Interatores. Mercatores porro, non solum Angli & Dani, sed maximè Germani, vt nunc, ita
in terram nostram, non ob piscaturam sed pisces auendos frequentantes, nequaquam ar-
tillam, miscendarum frugum aquæ, *Islandos* docuerunt. Quippe ipsi Noruagi primi,
nobis confiter, terræ nostræ incolæ, à quibus oriundi sunt *Islandi*, artem illam, sicut etiam
Noruagensesq; nummos, secum ex Noruegia attulerunt, vt initio non fuerit minor argen-
ti visus apud nos, quàm est hodiè.

Equidem ante Danorum, Germanorum, Anglorum uè frequentes ad nos nauigationes, ter-
ra multò, quàm nunc, senescentis mundi incommoda, celo solòq; persentiens, fertilior,
Z z in

in delectissimis quibusque locis, Cereis munera produxit,

SECTIO QUINTA.

Rex Dania qui & Noruagia quorundam præsulum inuicem genti.

Monstus.
Krantzius.

858

Anno Domini 846. natus est *Haraldus* Varsagte (quod auricomum vel pulchricomem dixeris) Qui deinde Anno 858. Rex *Noruegiae* designatus, ubi ætas virilique iustum incrementum acceperunt, formam imperij *Noruegiae* mutauit. Nam antea in minutas provincias diuisum (quas *Fylkis* vocabant, & qui his præerant regulos, *Fylkis Konga*) ad Monarchiam armis potentibus redegit. Id cum & genere & potentia valentes aliquot regni incolæ ægè ferrent, patria exulare, quam ipsius Tytannidis iugum non detestare maluerunt. Vnde hi insulam, antea quidem à quibusdam visam & inuentam, at desertam tamen, colonias, dicto superius Anno 874. transfulerunt: Atque sic genti nostræ originem præbentes, se *Islandos* nuncuparunt, quod nomen hodiè posteri retinent. Vixerunt itaque *Islandi* diu, nullius imperij agnoscens, annis scilicet 386, plus minus. Et quamvis Rex *Noruegiae* *Haquinus* ille conatus, qui omnium regum *Noruegiae* diutissimè, nempe plusquam 66. annos imperium gerebat, sæpè per legatos tentat tributarios sibi facere *Islandos*, constanter tamen semper rebarunt, donec tandem circa annum Domini 1260, homagium ipsi præstarent. Atque postea semper in data fide persistentes, & regibus *Noruegiae* parentes, translati per *Margariam*, *Daniam*, *Sueciam*, & *Noruegiae* reginam, *Noruegorum* imperio, ad Danos, vna cum reliquis imperij *Noruegiae* insulis, Serenissimum *Daniæ* regem; Dominum & Regem suum hodiè saluant,

1260

Margaria.

SECTIO SEXTA.

Omnia inter eos communia sunt, præter uxores.

Krantzius.
Blundellus.

Hoc loco præmittit *Krantzius* talem Ironiam.

Multa insignia in moribus illorum, &c. Porro etiam hic fidem vestram eleuat ingenium, ad asserendum res incompetas nimis proclue, cupidinem nouitatis, & nominis ætæ, imò veritatis curam præposteram arguit, omnium & rerum personarumque, & temporum experientia: O scriptores suspiciendi.

Testes sunt leges politicæ, quibus inde ab initio cum *Noruegia* visi sunt eisdem *Islandi*: De Rege & subditis: De foro, & his quæ in forensi disceptationem cadere possunt: De hæreditatibus: adoptionibus, nuptijs, furto, rapinis, mutuo, contractibus & cæteris: Quæ omnia, quorsum illis, quibus res omnes sunt communes? Testes sunt, tot de bonis mobilibus & immobilibus contentiones, turbæ & certamina, in foris ac iudicijs *Islandorum*: Testes sunt Reges nunc *Daniæ* & olim *Noruegiae*, qui tot libellis supplicibus *Islandorum*, ad componendas istas de possessionibus controuersias, olim & nunc interpellati sæpè fuerant. Testis contra seipsum *Krantzius*, cuius verba distinctio. i. huius, hæc fuerunt. *Ante susceptam Christi fidem* (*Islandi*) *lege naturali viuientes parum à lege nostra discrepabant, &c.* Si lege naturæ, certè lege illa iustitiæ, quæ tribuit unicuique suum: Si lege iustitiæ, certè proprietatum & dominiorum distinctiones in nostra gente locum habuisse oportet: Quanquam autem in hanc ipsam gentem etiam in Ecclesia, & quidem satis atrociter, sæpè delinquitur: tamen & Ecclesia & Ecclesiæ iustissimam & optimam esse semper fassi sunt.

SECTIO SEPTIMA.

Catulos suos & pueros aquo habent in precio: Nisi quod à pauperioribus facilius impetrabitur quam cutilum, &c.

Quamuis principio huius commentarioli censuerim, *Monisternum* & alios magni nominis viros, in ijs, quæ de *Islandia* scripta reliquerunt, esse à calumniæ nota liberandos: tamen id hic, etiam à candidissimo & maxime sincero quocunque fieri possit, non fati deo. Quid enim mouit tantos viros, vt *Nautarum* maleuolas nugæ & mendacia secuti, atroci & contumelioso opprobrio gentem nostram diffamarent, commacularentque? Non profectò, nisi secuta ridendi & contemnendi gentem pauperem & ignotam, licentia, & si sunt huic vicia confinia.

Cæterum nōrunt omnes non tam *Islandis*, quam ipsi *Authoribus*, incommodare hoc mendacium. Cum enim illud, & plurima etiam alia in historiam suam accumulant, efficiunt ut alibi quoque suspectæ fidei habeantur. Illudque quod ait *Aristoteles*, lucrantur, vt cum viderentur illis sine suspitione non credatur.

Sed age Lector, subsiste paulisper, mecūque grauitatem & sapientiam tantorum viro-
exp

expende: Ne tantum *Islandi* æmuli & *Monisterni* *Islandos* valuisse, item: *Islandos* valuisse eos in sancta simplicitate Germanorum, sanctæ simplicitate depingant, perpende. Vna si voragine & radicibus circumterea nota, quod, cum *Anabæ* Sect. præced. Tertia eaque lator, cura, & animus tam picij sint apud illos canes & filij *Christi*, nature, *Germanorum* cellentem, quamuis nō profectum: O scientiam plusquam

Nos verò *Islandi*, quamuis notas requirimus. Nam & primum nemo est, puto, qui seipsum esse debet proximi cuiuslibet ro? Quorum arctissimum arctissimum, etiam Lex diuina curat, ut scilicet sint in sancto coniugercitia: Prout vates ille pulcherrime

Uult Ecclesiam quæ
Iter

Coniugium humanæ q

Viam satis constet, apud C

Ex, si qui non aliter curent, Ch

Sed & hic in proleui dulcissim

ur: vt si quos hoc penitus exue

Carthagenenses, cum tertio be

terentur, quos illæ fletu & lami

orum complexibus ægè diuul

lore stimulant, in subiectos fl

ship *Thesi*, cum velis atri color

proximis vndis finitui, *Sabellæ*,

familiter, ob rumores de morte

idem *Islandi* *Creontis* filia, *An*

& alij numero in numero: De q

descendit, &c. Ad eod, vt videas no

summo amore prosequi, quam

Christianos scriptores nostri fa

uiti & repugnantes, adscribant:

hanc, sed etiam infra bruta & qu

arctissimo amore tenentur, depr

Non addam contra hoc impu

erbo leges nostras plagiarias ip

stant in codice legum nostrarum

is, per dum filium) extraneis ven

lam verò si quis eod fortunæ d

profecti, vel fame vel extrema

icum inedia deficientem aspiceret

stendens est filium æquo aut inf

traneis quilibet.

Offenderant fortè Germanor

ina, quorū hic maximus est num

mi aut vende hoc vel illud: C

indici. Habeo liberos 10, vel 12

colluuiis istiusmodi scurriles dial

us vir, miseris soliditatis & in

expende: Ne tantum Islandiæ Elogium intractum prætereamus. Docuerunt hactenus *Krantzium & Munsternum*: Islandos esse Christianos. Item: Islandos ante susceptam Christi fidem lege naturalivixisse. Item: Islandos vixisse lege quadam non multum à lege Germanorum discrepant. Item: Vixisse eos in sancta simplicitate. Adeidum igitur Lector, & quas Christianissimi, Legis naturalis Legis Germanorum, sanctæ simplicitatis notas Authores illi requirant, & in Islandis monstrare ac depingant, perpende. Vna fuit supra, quòd infernum siue carcerem damnatorum montis Hecla tera nota, quòd, cum Anabaptistis, proprietatum & dominio, um distinctiones tollant: de quo Secta, præced. Tertia eaque longè excellentissima hæc est: illi præclari affectus naturales, amor, cura, & animus tam pius & paternus Islandorum in liberos, quòd videlicet eiusdem præcipiunt illos canes & filij, aut hi etiam vilioris. Siccine nobis *Munster & Krantz Legem Christi, naturæ, Germanorum, & sanctam simplicitatem* depingitis? O picturam præclaram & exciticam: O scientiam plusquam humanam, etsi non prorsus diuinam.

Nos verò Islandi, quamvis vltimi & gelidam conclusi ad Arcton, longè alias Christianissimi notas requirimus. Nam & præceptum Dei habemus, vt quilibet proximū diligat velut seipsum. Iam nemo est, puto, qui seipsum non plus diligit, aut pluri faciat, quàm canem. Quod si tantum esse debet proximi cuiuslibet fauor, tanta æstimatio, tantus amor, quantus quæso erit in liberos? Quorum arctissimum amorem, præterquam quòd ipsa parens natura nobis firmissimè cõcillauit, etiam Lex diuina curam summam in enutriendo habere iussit. (Exo. 12. 24. Ephe. 6. 4.) vt scilicet sint in sancto coniugio, Ecclesiæ quædam seminaria, omnis pietatis & honestatis exercitia: Prout vates ille pulcherrimè cecinit.

Vult Ecclesiam quamlibet esse domum.

Item:

Coniugium humana quædam est Academia vite.

Viam satis coniter, apud Christianos longè pluri faciendos & curandos filios, quàm canes: Etsi qui non aliter curent, Christianos non esse.

Sed & hic in prolem dulcissimam affectus naturalis in Ethnicis etiam satis apertè conspicitur: vt si quos hoc penitus exueris, eosdem etiam homines esse negaueris. Monstrant id matres Carthagenenses, cum tertio bello Punico adulescentes quique lectissimi obsides in Siciliam mitterentur, quos illæ fletu & lamentatione miserabili ad naues comitatur, & ex his quædam à filiorum complexibus ægrè diuulsæ, cum ventis pandi vela cernerent, nauèsq; & portu egredi, dolore stimulante, in subiectos fluctus dissilire; *Sabellico auctore*. Monstrat *Ægeus*, qui nauem proximis vndis finiuit. *Sabellus*, lib. 3. cap. 4. Monstrat *Gordianus* senior, Africæ proconsul, qui similiter, ob rumores de morte filij, vitam suspendio clausit. *Campofulgos* lib. 5. cap. 7. Monstrant idem *localia Creontis filia*, *Aucolia Simonis F. Anius* Tuscorum Rex, *Orodes* Rex Parthorum, & alij numero in numero: De quibus vide stat. lib. 2. *Plutarchum*, & alios, &c. Huc illud, *Amor descendit, &c.* Adeò, vt videas non minus esse homini proprium, sobolem intimè diligere, & summo amore prosequi, quàm aui volare; vt si iam aliquando homines esse Islandos, nedum Christianos scriptores nostri fassi sint, hunc anioem & affectum in filios ipsos, quantumuis inuiti & repugnantes, adscribant: sin minus, non modò hominis titulum & dignitatem illis detrahant, sed etiam infirmitatē brutā & quasuis bestias, quæ ipsæ, stimulante natura, maximo prolis suæ & arctissimo amore tenentur, deprimant.

Non addam contra hoc impudens mendacium exempla etiam nostratium satis illustria: Tacebo leges nostras plagiaras ipsis Islandis antiquiores, quippe à Noruagis acceptas, quæ exstant in codice legum nostrarum, titulo *Spannjelge*: cap. 5. Si quis hominem liberum (quædam, nedum filium) extraneis vendat, &c.

Iam verò si quis eò fortunæ deueniat, vt proprium filium, siue incolæ, siue extranei alicuius potestati, vel fame vel extrema quacumq; urgente necessitate, aut periculo, permittat, ne famelicam inedia deficientem aspicere cogatur, canem verò in proprias dapes referuet. Is minime dicendus est filium æquo aut inferiore loco habere quàm canem, siue id faciant Islandi, siue extranei quilibet.

Offenderant fortè Germanorū vel Danorum nauē apud nos mendicos quosdā, liberis onibus, quorū hic maximus est numerus, qui iocando, vt sunt nugis scurrilibus addicti, dixerint: Dabit aut vende hoc vel illud: Cūmq; rogarint extranei: Quid tu mihi vicissim? Responderint mendici. Habeo liberos 10. vel 14. dabo ex eis vnū vel plures, &c. Solet enim ista mendicorum colluuiis istiusmodi scurriles dialogismos cum extraneis instituere. Quod si tum quispiam bonus vir, misertus soliditatis & inopiæ mendicorum, vno illos filio leuauerit, eique propter

Denm in alijs terris, aliquo tandem modo bene prospexit, num mendicus, qui aliquo cum filio, fame & paupertate moriturus, filium miserenti permittit & committit, filium illum suum minoris facit quam canem? Prestitum est à multis tam Islandis quam extraneis huiusmodi beneuolentia & commiserationis opus: ex quibus fuit vir nobilissimus *Accilim Insula* à serenissimo rege *Dania* olim missus ad Islandos, Anno Domini 1552. Qui ut audiui, 15 pueros pauperulos assumpsit & secum in *Daniam* auxit: Vbi postea ipsius beneficio singulos suo vitæ generi addictos, in viros bonos & frugi euasisse, mihi narratum est.

Quid si quis in extrema constitutus angustia, filium non inodò vendat; sed si emptorem non habet, ipse macet & comedit? Nota sunt huius rei exempla: Parentum videlicet inuitæ crudelitatis in filios, stimulantem non odio vel astorgia, sed inuitabili necessitate compellente. Num quis inde vniuersale gentis alicuius cõuicium extruxerit? Legimus, in obsidione Samariae matres duas filios suos macasse, & coctos comedisse: 4. Reg. C. 6. Legimus in obsidione Ierolymitana, quam flebilis fuerit vox miserimæ matris, filium misellum iam macaturæ. *Infans*, ait, (referam enim *Ensebi* verba de hac re, ceteri notissima, ut miseræ matris affectus appareat, miselle & infelix, cuiam in hoc bella famis, & seditionis tumultu, se commodè referem? Si Romanorum subiiciamur imperio, illic seruimus ingopressi, vitam infeliciter exigemus. Sed seruitutem credamus antemeret. Accedit fustorum prædonum turba, his virisq; miseris toleratum multo asperior. Atque igitur mi gnat, sis matri cibis, si prædonibus furia, sis communi hominum vitæ fabula, que res tua ad Iudeorum calamitates deesse videtur. Que cum dixisset, natum trucidat, assatumq; dimidium comedit, dimidium reuertat. &c. Eusebius libro 3. capite 6. Iam quis est, qui non credat miserimam hanc matrem filium hunc suum, domini alicuius, si se obtulisset, apud quem credidisset seruatum iri, aut emptoris possessioni fuisse permissuram? Nota est famas, Calaguni, Hispania urbem, olim à *Cneo Pompeio* obfessam opprimens (Val. libro septimo cap. 7.) cuius ciuib; vxores & liberi in vsum extremæ dapis conuersi sunt, quos profectò, pro cibarijs & alijs dapibus haud inuicui vendidissent. Nota est quoque famas, quæ Anno Domini 847. (*Vincen*, libro 25. cap. 36.) Germaniam attriuit, ut etiam pater filium suum deuorare voluerit. Notum etiam est, post mortem *Henrici* septimi Imperat. faine per triennium continuata, quomodo parentes liberos, vel liberi parentes deuorant, & præcipuè quidem in *Polonia* & *Bohemia*. Et ne exempla tantum antiqua petamus, accepimus tantam annonæ scuriam, Anno 1586, & 1587. in *Hungaria* grassatam fuisse, ut quidam alimentorum inopia adacti inhumanissimo Christianorum hosti proprios liberos vendiderint, & in perpetuum seruitus iugum manciparint: quidam paruulos suos, quos vterius tolerare non sustinebant, crudeli misericordia in Danubium proiecisse, & suffocasse dicantur. Sed, num hæc & similia exempla queptiam eò infanæ adigent, ut dicat hanc vel illam nationem, liberos in escam propriam macrare consueuisse, Turcis libenter vendere, aut aquis submergere & suffocare solita esse? Non opinor. Sic neq; quod mendici apud Islandos, extrema vrgente necessitate, cuius durissimi sunt morsus, filios suos libenter amittant, toti genti, & quidem probri loco, communiter adscribendū est à quoquam, nisi apud eundē omnis pudor, candor, humanitas, veritas exularet. Ceterum optarim ego, parcius Islandis canum curam exprobrare illos populos, quorum matronæ, & præcipuè nobiles, canes in maximis delicijs habent, ut eos vel in plateis, ne & cam in sacris concionibus, sinu gestent, quem morem in peregrinis quibusdam, quos Romanos catulos sinuamur & canum in gremio circumferre *Cesar* conspexit, hac quæstione reprehendit, dum cõteret: Numquid apud ipsos mulieres liberos non parent? Monens errare eos, qui à natura inditos sibi affectus, quibus in amorem hominum ac præcipuè sobolis incitantur, in bestias transferunt, quarum deliciarum voluptas, Islandorum gentem, nunquam cessat habuit. Quare iam *Munsteri* & *Krantzi*, alias nobis Christianitatis, (ut sic dicam) legislaturæ, legis item Germanorum, & sanctæ simplicitatis notas querite,

SECTIO OCTAVA.

Episcopum suum colunt pro Rege: ad cuius nummum respiciit totius populus. Quicquid ex lege scriptum, & ex consuetudine aliarum gentium consuevit, quomodo sanctè obseruati.

FVite quidem initio ferè ad repurgatam Euangelij doctrinam maxima Episcopi obseruati; sed nunquam tanta ut exteris legibus aut consuetudini cederent nostræ leges politice ex nutu Episcopi. Nec tempore *Alberti Krantzi*, multò minùs *Munsteri* (quorum ibi 1517. hic 1552. post partum salutiferum decessit) Episcopi Islandorum regiam obtinuerunt auctoritatem, cum scilicet multi ex ijs, qui diuitijs paulò plus valebant, aduersus ipsos consurgere non dubitarint; quæ res apud nostros liquod constat. Interim tamen Episcopi, animæ matris fulmine terribiles, alios in suam potestatem redegerunt, alios furibunda scruia id temporis persecuti sunt,

Krantzius.
Munsterus.

Potè et si cum fuit magni
Papisticis, alia ratione homin
fractasia contumacia, adue

Ille visitans plerumq; piscibus
ratibus inferret: & qui ind
dum alia videretur loco panis q

Vide Lector, quàm *Mun*
nihil scribere possit, que
potere, sic que cramben eandem
venerit. Verba ipsius superius et
rum pasta & nunc capinra piscin
dam notari poterat; Illud sanc
am illi cum Germania commu
te in *Munsteri* agro, vbi etiam
ria, scilicet, salua erunt. Ad con
cus respondetur, Sect. 15.

S I
Incola rei maiorum & sui tempore
nalla, nisi cum natura inuentia, in
Cybaræ di, & qui testitudine inu
& volucres & pisces irratiati &

Q Vm veterum gesta aliquor
pud nos conferuentur, non
scopulis vel promontorijs insculp
dorum, aues aut pisces demulcent
veracis, ut crimina falsa refellere, i
bus agnoscere,

SEC

Ed cum scriptoribus iam dictis,
Quem hæc ita inconsideratè scrip

Etiā magna meipar
Sed restat tamen scetus ille vipere
mter edi voluit, ut venenatis aculei

Ponò licet aduersus hanc best
constare volo, quoniam hoc animo
cijs aut maledicentia certem (Nar

Hoc scio pro certo, quom
Vincio, seu vincor, temp

Sed ut bonis & cordatis omnibus
ermanicam lecturi vel audituri fun

in sustinere credant: Tum etiam v
lre opprobrium vtuntur, & inde d
andos petunt, ab illa mordendi lic

Ergo, ne longis ambagibus Lector
maledicus ille Germanus in suum

maledicentia recitantem in his p
um, tot & tam varijs maledictis tu

ne ab ijs legendis abstertere.
lesteram igitur præcipua, (ijs scilicet

alua sunt) sed, quàm ille, longè mi
ark eruditæ ostenduntur: Qui ipso
nam, non est in animo putida ipsius

Primum igitur obijcit Germanicus
Islandia toto biennio sacra concio

Porte

Porro etsi cum suis magna, immo maxima Episcopi obseruantia, tamē nunc dispulsi tenebris
Papisticis, alia ratione homines Saran aggreditur, eorumq; mentes contemptus libertate & re-
fractata contumacia, aduersus *Denm* & sacrum ministerium, etiam hic armare non negligit.

SECTIONONA.

Illic villitant plerumq; piscibus, propter magnam penuriam frumenti, quod aliunde à maritimis ciui- Munster.
ratibus inferitur: & qui inde cum magno lucro pisces exportant. Item Munsterus, Illic piscibus in-
duratis viuunt loco panis qui illic non crescit,

Vide Lector, quā Munsterum iuuat, eadem oberrare chorda: vt cum de gente ignota
nihil scribere possit, quod coloris aliquid habeat, vel falsā asserre, vel eadem sepius re-
petere, sicque cramben eandem recoquere sustineat: Dixerat enim pauldante, *Islandos piscibus*
non passu & nunc capitur a piscium villitantibus, hæc sunt. Islandia populos continet multos, solo pecc-
odum notari poterat; Illud sanē, panem in Islandia non crescere, perquam verum est. Quod eti-
am illi cum Germania commune esse crediderim, quod videlicet nec illic panis crescat, nisi for-
etia, scilicet, salua erunt. Ad conuicia autem, quæ ex victu Islandorum petunt extranei, infra pau-
cus respondebitur, Sect. 15,

SECTION DECIMA.

Incola res maiorum & sui temporis celebrant cantibus & insculpunt scopulis, atque promontorijs, vt Munster.
ulla, nisi cum natura inuaria, intercedant apud posteritatem. Ktanzus,
Citharadi, & qui testitudine iudant, apud eos reperuntur quā plurimi, qui prædulci modulamine
& polacti & pisces irretians & capiunt. Fisius.

Quin veterum gesta aliquot cantibus & poematibus nostratium, vt & soluta oratione, a-
pud nos conferuntur, non negamus. Quod verò à nobis aut maioribus nostris eadem
scopulis vel promontorijs insculpta sunt, eam non licet nobis, vt neque illam tantam Citharæ-
dorū, aues aut pisces demulcentium, laudem accipere. Statuimus enim animi esse generosi ac
vtracis, vt crimina falsa refellere, ita laudem inmeritam sibi haud vendicare, nec, etsi quistri-
bus, agnoscere,

SECTION V NDECIMA.

Sed cum scriptoribus iam dictis, viris aliqui spectatæ eruditionis & præclari nominis, quita-
men hæc ita inconsideratè scriptis suis interseruerunt, actionis finis esto.

Etiā magna mei pars est ex hantia laboris:

Sed restat tamen fetus ille vipereus Germanicus, quem idcirco anonymum secundo partu
mater edi voluit, vt venenatis aculeis nomen Islandorum tantò liberius pungeret.

Porro licet aduersus hanc bestiam in arenam descendere non dubitem, omnibus tamen
constare volo, quoniam hoc animo faciam, videlicet, non vt cum illius pestifera virulentia, con-
sistat aut maledicentia certem. (Nam vt est in triuali paroemia,

Hoc scio pro certo, quod si cum stercore certo,
Vinco, sem vincor, semper ego maculor.)

Sed vt bonis & cordatis omnibus, etiam extraneis, satisfaciam, qui maledicentiam istam
Germanicam lecturi vel audituri sunt, aut olim audierint, ne & hi nos meritò calumniam tan-
tam sustinere credant: Tum etiam vt alios qui istis virulentis rhythmis Germanicis, in gentis
indos petunt, ab illa mordendi licentia in posterum, si fieri possit, abducamus.

Ergo, ne longis ambagibus Lectori fastidium occasio nostra pariat, ad ea narranda accedam,
et maledicus ille Germanus in suum pasquillum congescit: Quem etiam sua de Islandis car-
mina Encomiastica recitantem in his pagellis introducerem, nisi præviderem fortum illum pro-
prie ab ijs legendis abstertere.

Referam igitur præcipua, (ijs scilicet omnis quæ cum alijs communia habet, atque hæcenus
sunt) sed, quā ille, longè mitius; ne, vt dixi, linguae ipsius obscena petulantia, aures
et eruditæ offendantur: Qui ipsum videre aut audire volet, quærat apud propolas, Nobis
non est in animo putida ipsius calumnia & conuiciorum sententia, has chartas inquin-
Primū igitur obijcit Germanicus hic noster, si Dijs placet, Historicus: *Multos ex pasto-*

Islandia toto biennio sacram concionem ad populum nullam habere: Vt in priore editione,
Zz 3
huius

1. Obiecio tra
conuicium,

huius paucissimi leguntur, quod tamen posterior editio eiusdem refutat: Dicens, eosdem pastores in integro anno tantum quinquies concionari solitos: quæ duo quàm ritè sibi concionantur, videntur bone Lector, cum constet Authorem mox à prima editione vix vidisse Islandiam. Ita scilicet plerumque mendacium mendacio proditur, iuxta illud: *Verum vero consenti: Falsum nec vera, nec falso.*

Sed cum nostrum non sit veritatem vsquam dissimulare, nos haud negandum ducimus conciones sacras circa id tempus, quo iste Sycophanta in Islandia vixit, nempe anno 1554, aut citius multò fuisse maiores, quàm sunt hodiè, tum scilicet tenebris Papisticis vix dum discessu. Quod etiam de Psalmis Davidicis à vulgo latine denummuratis, vt idè nostratibus exprobat, intelligere est: Papistæ enim totam spem salutis in sua Missa collocantes, de concione aut doctrina parùm fuere solliciti. Postquam verò caligine illa exempti sumus, aliter se res habere, Deo inprimis gratias agimus: Licet quorundam pastorum nostrorum tardam stupiditatem, legentium & curam præposteram non possimus omni modo excusare. Quod vitum in nullis suorum popularium etiam competat, aliæ quoque nationes viderint.

SECTIO DVODECIMA.

2. Coniucium.

Secundo calumniatur vitiligator: Adulteria & fornicationes non modo publica esse & frequenta scelera inter Islandos: sed ab ijs pro scelere ne haberi quidem.

ET si autem fecidissimæ istæ turpitudines etiam in nostra repub. non prorsus inusitate sunt: tamen cum omnibus constet in alijs quoque nationibus longè etiam frequentiores esse, cum ibi quoque populi frequentia maior: immeritò & malignè hoc nomine magis Islandos, quàm populos & gentes reliquas, quarum, vt dixi, nomen etiam plus nostratibus hoc crimine inale audit, notauit.

Et licet ex animo optarim longè minus ad scelera, & turpitudines in nostra patria committeri, quàm passim hic fieri videmus: tamen etiam innata illa mordendi libidine, hoc veteretor in presenti conuitio attenuet: videlicet, quòd scelera ista ab Islandis pro scelere non habeantur. Nam in quâ demum repub. id impudens ille asserere audeat? Illanc, quæ in legem codicis illi, titulo Spanhelge: cap. 28. iurauit, quæ statuit, vt iterum adulterium qui coniuge alterius commiserit, confiscatis suis bonis, capite etiam plectatur? Illanc, quæ pro adulterio, à famulo cum vxore domini commisso, non ita dudum 80. thalerorum multam irrogauit? Illanc, quæ eundem, si ad statutum tempus non soluerit vel vades dederit, in exilium proscribendum decreuit? Illanc: cuius leges politice, quemuis in adulterio cum vxore, à viro legitime deprehensum, si euaserit, homicidij multam expendere iubent? Illanc, cuius itidem leges politice, in complexu matris, filie aut sororis, à filio, patre, vel fratre deprehensum, vitam suam dimidio eius, quod quis sit eundem in fontem interfecisset, expendere teneretur, redimere iubent? Illanc, cuius leges politice adulterium sceleris infandi nomine notantur & damnantur? Et in eo tertio deprehensum, capite plectendum seuerè mandant?

Cernis igitur, Lector benigne, quàm iniurius habeamus notarium, dicentem: Adulterium & fornicationes in Islandia peccati aut sceleris nomen non mereri. Nam licet politici quidam hoc vel illud scelus impunitum omittant, non debet tota gens, non leges, non boni & pij omnes, nomine in ius vocari, aut malè audire.

SECTIO DECIMATERTIA.

3. Coniucium.

TERTIUM coniucium est, quo fraudis & perfidie erga Germanos Islandis notam iniuritur. Fuit autem proculdubio famosus huius libelli author, cerdo & propola circumforaneus, multosq; Islandia angulos, fordide mercaturæ gratia, ostiatim adierat: quod ipse de se in præclaris illis rhythmis testatur, maximâ Islandia partem sibi peragratam esse. Vnde cum ipse mala fide cum multis egerit (plerumque enim fraus & mendacia coniunguntur, & mendacem se fuisse, hanc sui experientia satis probauit) etiam fortè à se deceptorum fraudem esse expertus. Hinc illa in tantam gentem criminatio exstitit: Distrulato interea, qua fide quidam Germanorum, quibus nua est nauigatio ad Islandos, cum nostris hominibus agant. Ea autem querela, cum non illi conuiuiari, sed aliorum in gentem nostram immerita conuiicia monstrare instituerim, consilium supersedeo.

SECTIO DECIMAQVARTA.

4, 5, 6, & 7. Coniucium.

QUARTO: negas in conuiuijs quæquam discumbentium à mensa surgere: sed matres familias singulis conuiuijs quoties opus fuerit matillas porrigere. Præterea varam conuiuiorum edendi bibendique licentiam notat.

5

Conuulsio & prandendi ritus obijci: quod decem plus minus in eodem lecto promiscuè viri cum

munis pernolens, inque exercant.

Sexto. Calumniatur eosde
Septimo. Nuptiarum, spor
renat.

HÆC & huiusmodi plurimus calumniator euocatus dedigneuitur. Nam & de sordidos, & ex ipsa vulgi conuersatione, animaduertisse p mi tellantur, diuini culculi in locatur annuatim confluit, & inhonestè mores & vitam in vnius nebulonis & desperatendo, quàm vt refutatione vrum veritati, locupletissimi tes

Possem multas eius farina prehenfas colligere. Sed odi nec tam tener esse volo, vt ver animi pessima quæq; ab vno a terius nationes vrbes & pagos paticidia, fornicationes, adulterates in vnum coactas, omnibus asserat, atq; hæc omnia in signis

Sed quid mirum, licet verberat, vt nram & ingenium suum

Notum est enim porcos, eū qui pulcherrimos & suauissimos ceni volutare, vertere & inuenter erant, vbi demum solida volupe

Ad istum igitur modum hic p esse possunt, sicco pede præterit, nra, hoc est, suæ naturæ, & ingen de posthac porci nomen ex mor

SECTIO

Nonum coniucium hic recens. Naledicus ille porcus, non vi quid ebu vnam vtustis, & insulsi meis piscium genera illa sunt esui, & a us hic paucissimi diserta contumel Cæterum et si illum prolixiore re vno tempore partim mirantur, partim h

Primum igitur totam hanc gente malis etiam mendicos alunt. M Quia recensere aut examinare hau cogit necessestas, relique genti cificatis quidem non comedendis l

Deinde etiam tempora distinguere ad explendam famem adhibe armæ de Parisiensibus accepimus, & famem Saguntinam, vt P. sed morticinam quoque carnem vno aut altero misto, consecram, in qui simili virgente inopia, etiam r aliquando vsu venit (quoniam à

minis pernolens, inque lecto cibum capiant: atq; interea se non nisi alea aut luctu mulo, sive ludo

Sexto. Calumniatur eosdem faciem & ex urina proludere.

Septimo. Nuptiarum, sponfalium, natalitiorum celebritatem & funerum ritus contemptiose ex-

6

7

Hæc & huiusmodi plurima in gentem insontem, imò de se & suis optimè meritam, impius dedignemur. Nam & demus (quod tamen non damus) aliquid huiusmodi apud homines uerfabatur, animaduertisse præclarum hunc notarium Germanicū (vixerat enim, ut eius rhyth-
taturæ annuacium confluit, & tam extraneorū nautarum, quàm sua nequitia corruptum, sapius
inhonestè mores & vitam instituit) Tamen manifestiorem etiam hoc loco iniuriam nobis facit,
genda, quàm ut resutatione villa indigeat. Cuius rei etiam ipsi extranei in nostra Insula non pa-
possem multas eius farinae fecunditates, rusticitates & obscenitates, etiam in ipsius natione de-
necramtener esse volo, ut verbulis transuerberet. Id tantum viderint boni & pij omnes, cuius sit
animum pessima quæq; ab vno aut altero designata, toti genti obijcere. Si quis Germaniæ aut al-
terius nationes vrbes & pagos omnes peragret, & scelera ac mores pessimos, furta, homicidia,
parricidia, scortationes, adulteria, incestus, luxuriam, rapinas & reliquas impietates & obsceni-
tates in vnum coactas, omnibus Germanis, aut alioqui alteri cuius toti nationi comuneres esse
Sed quid mirum, licet verbero, & ut proprie notem, porcus impudens rei studiosus habebitur?
Sua naturam & ingenium suum eiusmodi loidoria prodiderit?

Notum est enim porcos, eū hortos amantissimos intrarint, nec hiliū nec rosas aut stotes alio-
qui pulcherrimos & suauissimos decerpere: Sed rostro in cænum prono, quicquid est luti & ster-
coris volutare, vertere & inuertere, donec impurissima, hoc est, suo genio apprime congruentia
Ad istum igitur modum hic porcus Rhythmistæ, optima, & quæ in nostra Repub. laudibilia
esse possunt, siccò pede præterit, pessima quæq; atq; ea, vel à nullo, vel admodum paucis desig-
nata, hoc est, suæ naturæ, & ingenio aptissima, ut se esse, qui dicitur, se ipsa probaret, corrasit: vn-
de posthac porci nomen ex moribus & ingenio ipsius factum, sortitor.

SECTIO DECIMA QUINTA.

Nonum conuiuium hic recensebimus, quod à victu, ac præcipue cibo ac potu Islandorum
quid cibi videntur vetustis, & insulis id, sine panis usu: Tum etiam quod varia & incognita extra-
neis piscium genera illis sint esui, & aquam ac serum lactis in potum misceant. Quæ omnia venena-
tus hic paucissimis diserta contumelia, & ingeniosa calumnia, pulchrè amplexauit.

Ceterum et si illum prolixiore responsione non dignemur: tamen propter alios, qui hodie
hanc partem mirantur, partim haud leuiter nostræ genti obijciunt, pauca hoc loco addenda

Primum igitur totam hanc gentem bipartitò secabimus: In mendicos, & hos qui & se &
alii etiam mendicos alunt. Mendicorum, & eorum qui ad hos proximè accedunt, omnia
recensere aut examinare haud facile est, nec quòd illos edere, aut edisse, extrema aliqua
cogit necessitas, relique genti cibariorū genera aut numerū præscribere fas est. Nam & de
antiquis quidem non comedendis legem habemus inter canones, quorum seruantissima vi-

Deinde etiam tempora distinguemus, ut nihil mirum sit, grassante annonæ scæuitia, multa à
alijs ad explendam famem adhiberi aut adhibita fuisse, quæ aliàs vix canes pascant. Vt nu-
merè de Parisiensibus accepimus, Anno 1590. arctissima Henrici 4. Nauarri obidione
& famem Saguntinam, ut P. Lindebergius loquitur, perpeffis; eos non modò equi-
vos aut altero misto, confectam, in suas dapes conuertisse: & de alijs quoque populis notum
est, qui simili vrgente inopia, etiam murium, felium & canum esu victarint. Sic etiam Islandi
quandoquæ vfu venit (quanquam à canina, murium & felium, ut & humana carne hætenus,
nobis

nobis quantum constat, abstinuerint) licet non ab hoste obfessis: Nam cum ad victum necessaria ex terra marique petant, & ab extraneis nihil commeat, aut parum admodum accipiant, quoties terræ marisque munera DEVS præcluserit, horrendam annonæ caritatem ingruere & ingruisse, & diu fame vexari incolas, necesse est. Vnde fit, ut illos qui in diem vivere soliti fuerint, nec præcedentium annorum superantes commearas habeant, extrema tentasse, quoties egestas vserit, credibile. Cæterum, utrum hæc res publico & perpetuo opprobrio magis apud Ilandos, quam alia nationes, occasionem merito præbere debeat, candidis & bonis animis iudicandum relinquo.

Porro quod de gentis nostræ proprijs & consuetis alimentis multi obijcere solent, potissimum de carne, piscibus, butyro, absque sale inueteratis, Item de lactiicinijs, fumentis incopia, potu aquæ, &c. & reliquis : id nos in plurimis Islandiæ locis (nam sunt multi quoque nostrati-
um, qui Danorum & Germanorum more, quantum quidem castis & temperatis animis ad
mediocritatem sufficere debet, licet magna condimentorum varietate, vt & ipsi Pharmaco-
polijs, delituiumur, mensam instruere & frugaliter viuere sustineant) ita se habere liad multis
refragabimur, videlicet prædicta victus genera, passim sine sale condimentis vscata es-
se. Et insuper addemus, hæc ipsa cibaria, quæ extranei quidam vel necminare horrent, ipsos
tamen extraneos apud nos, non sine voluptate, manducare solitos. Nam etsi frumenti aut
faris penè nihil vulgò habeamus, nec sal, gulæ irritamentum, ad cibaria condienda, omni-
bus suppetit: docuit vitam Deus, opt. max. etiam nostros homines rationem tractandi &
conseruandi, quæ ad vitam sustentandam spectant, vt appareat, Deum in alendis Islandi-
non esse ad panem vel salem alligatum. Quod verò sua omnia extranei iucundiora & salu-
briora clamant; negamus tamen satis causæ esse, cur nostra nobis exprobrant: Nec nos
DEVM gulæ nostræ debitorem reputamus; quin potius torpescere gratias agimus, quod
sine opiparis illis delicijs & lautitijs, quæ tam iucunda & salubres putantur, etiam nostræ
gentis hominibus, annos & ætatem bonam, tum valetudinem etiam firmissimâ, robur ac vires
validas (quæ omnia statuimus boni & conuenientis alimentis, *et sic inuicem* esse indicia) conce-
dere dignetur, cum ingenio etiam non prorsus tam crasso ac sterili, quam huc nostro ætæ
& alimentis assignare Philosophi videtur, quod re libentius, quam verbis multi fortasse nostra-
tum comprobare poterant,

Ni nos (vt inquit ille) paupertas inuida deprimeret.

Sed hic vulgi iudicium, vt in alijs sæpe, etiam eos qui sapere volunt (iam omnes bonos & cordatos excipio) nimis apertè decipit: Videlicet hoc ipso, quòd omnia, quæ illorum viis non admittit, aut quæ non viderunt, aut experti sunt antea, continuò damnet. Veluti si quis, qui mare nunquam vidit, mare mediterraneum esse aliquod, non possit adducere credit: Sic illi sensu suæ experientiæ omnia temerarij, vt nihil sit bonum, nihil conducibile, nisi quòd illi soli viuunt: At profectò nos, eò dementiæ non processimus, vt eos qui locustis velantur, quòd tum de alijs, tum Æthiopij quibuldam populis, ideo (autore Diodoro) Acridophagi appellati, & Indiæ gente, cui Mandrorum nomen Clytharcus & Magestanes de derunt, telle Aguarichide, didicimus; aut ranis, aut cancriis marinis, aut squillis gibbis, quæ res hodie nota est, quæ propterea ludibrijs exponere præsumamus, à quibus tamen edulj, in totum nostra consuetudo abhorret.

SECTIO DECIMASEXTA.

86. Conuicium.

Decimo. Hospitalitatem nostris hominibus inhumanissimus porcus obijcit, *Mas supponit* inquit, *non circumferunt, nec hospitari aut conuiuari gratis pndor est. Nam si quis aliquid haberet, quod cum alijs communicaret, id faceret (vnde in primis ac libenter. His quoque; annectamus, quod templa, seu sacras adiculas domi propriae a multis Islandorum extruere velut pendunt quidam commemorat: quodq; eas primum omnium de more orari petant, nec a quoquam prius interpellari* *patiantur.* Hæc ille velut insigne quoddam dedecus in Islandis notauit.

Scilicet, quia nihil cum Amaricino, fui:

Nec porci diuina vnquam amarunt: quod sanè metuo ne nimis verè de hoc conuiciatore
catur, id quod vel ex his vltimis duabus obiectionibus constare poterit.

Verum enimvero, cum ipse suarum virtutum listi testis locupletissimus, nos Lectorem eius in
cupidum ad ipsius hoc opus Poeticum remittimus, quod is de Islandia composuit, & nos
aliquot proximis distinctionibus examinavimus; cuius maledicentiz & seditatis nos hic po-
ipso puduit ita, ut quæ is *Satyrice*, at quid *Satyrice*? *Sathanica*, inquam, mordacitate & male-
centia in nostram gentem scribere non erubuit, nos tamen referre pigeat: Tanta eius est & ma-
abominanda petulantia, tam atrox calumnia. **DEVS BONE**: Hoc coniciuntur plautum
(paucissima namq; attigimus; Nolui enim laterem laurare, & stulto, ut inquit ille sapientissimus

secundum stultitiam
cio careat) qui viderit
faciem hominum, cum

Sed hic merito dicitur
vero Typographus ille
non vrbis lue nomen p
nulgat. Hocce imp
grauam debere Islandia
quibuslibet commo, p
immodica, quædam q
diz olim & Angli vrb
diz commercia diu fueru
qualis hec et Nationar
ciuitas: quæ alias greges
pat, ad huius gentis opp
iam, iam 30. annos, & pl
ceps sunt: Neq; enim d
datur, diligenter cauca
mod vrbis facim non velis
libellos componunt, fci
nt.

Ceterum iam tandem
paupertas, nec frigora, nec
benire exhibere non desisti-
mus, nempè serium & a-
patis facta, totis viribus hor-
te flagres : Sacrum minister-
quae : sed reueraris, fouea-
et pietatis & honestatis præ-
Ecclesiastici & Politici, in vi-
seu norma æqui & boni depen-
ueris, quos æquum est pro-
fidemus. In primis verò nulla
reliquis hac pertinentes con-
dis tunc occurrunt. Res ista e-
ex bonis omnibus optimi qui
subditorum conditio, longè e-
pietas & honestas tantò erunt
perit, vel vita vel doctrina non r-
tur, quicquid: eò propria leuita-
crimini aut improbitatis, vel
ex tortos, vel iisdem Illicite indu-
quæ conditio? Certe longè om-
tum tuum appropinquabis, qu-
ipsum ex tuis, iugulum tuum, pro-
pendunt. Quamobrem (ne ista
aria, intelligis,

Sed dum hæc tuis auribus à m
Apollotrophic latent, Serenissim
ploro damna publica, quæ ea
conspicuo, tantò intervallo sit
& impunitatem securus pro
ne aspicit, committenda ducim
Reliquum est, ò patriæ studi
cipias : quod quauis minimè
AR OMNIVM, nolui idci
pugnare me facis strenuè di
& quantumcumque tandem,
quaquam supprimendum putav

The true state of Fjland. Traffiques, & Discoveries.

549

secundum stultitiam suam respondere, cum in ipsius Rhythmis verbum non sit quod conui-
cio careat) qui viderit, nonne iudicabit pacquilli iustius autorem hominem fuisse pessimum, inò
faciem hominum, tum virtutis ac veritatis contemptorem, sine pietate, sine humanitate?

Sed hic merito dubitauerim, peiusne horum conuictorum autor de Islandis meritis sit, an
verò Typographus ille Ioachimus Leo (& quicumque sunt alij, qui in suis editionibus, nec suum
nec vrbis suæ nomen profiteri ausi sunt) qui illa iam bis, si non sæpius, typis suis Hamburgi e-
ulgauit. Hocine impune fieri sinis, ò senatus populusq; Hamburgensis? Hancine statuitis
gratiam debere Islandiæ, quæ vrbis vestræ iam plurimos annos, exportatis affatim nostratium
quibusuis commodis, pecudum, pecorumq; carnibus, butyro & piscium copia quotannis, pend-
it olim & Angliæ vrbes aliquot: Præterea Danis, Bremensibus, & Lubecensibus cum Islandi-
dis commercia diu fuerunt. Sed a nullis inquam tale encomium, talem gratiam reportarunt,
qualis hæc est Gregoriana calumnia: In vestra, vestra inquam vrbe, nata, edita, iterata, si non ter-
tata: quæ alias nationes, quibus Islandia vix, ac ne vix quidem, nomine tenus, alioqui innotue-
rat, ad huius gentis opprobrium & contemptum armauit: quam à ciue vestro acceptam iniu-
riam, iam 30. annos, & plus eò, Islandia sustinet. Sed etiam, in scio magistratu, eiusmodi multa
edantur, diligenter caueant: cum tales editiones pugnent cum iure naturali: Ne alteri facias,
quod tibi factum non velis: Et Casareo, de libellis famosis: in quo irrogatur pœna gravissima ijs, qui
tale libellos componunt, scribunt, proferunt, emi vendunt curant, aut non statim repertos discer-
pant.

Vrbes Angliæ
commercia olim
in Islandia exer-
centes.

Cæterum iam tandem receptui canamus: Nôsq; ad te, Islandia parens carissima, quam nec
paupertas, nec frigora, nec id genus incommoda alia, quamdiu Christo hospitium cupide & li-
benter exhibere non desitis, inuisam facient, conuertamus: Vbi te primum ad id quod modò
paterfæctæ, totis viribus hortamur: vt vni huic cuncta posthabeas, doctrinæ & verbi cupidita-
te flagres: Sacrum ministerium & ministros, non parum cures, non contemnas aut odio profe-
das: sed reuerentiaris, foueas, ames. Contra facientes, pro impijs & profanis habeas: vt omnia
ad pietatis & honestatis præscriptum geras, in vita priuata & communi, vt huic status & ordines
Ecclesiastici & Politici, in vniuersum obtemperent: In vtroque vitæ genere, ab illa amissi
seu dæmonia æqui & boni pendereas, & cæteros qui per inopia ac impietate ab ea deflectunt, a-
uerferis, quos æquum est pœnis condignis affici, id quod magistratui curæ futurum non dis-
sidemus. In primis verò nullos nisi spectatæ fidei & probitatis viros, qui quæ ad istas virtutes,
reliquis huc pertinentes coniungant, ad gubernacula admittas, quæ ratione reliquis incommo-
dia tunc occurrunt. Res ista enim, si probe curetur, vt videlicet, qui munus publicum gerunt,
ex bonis omnibus optimi quique deligantur, improbi & huic rei inepti, procul inde arceantur;
subditorum conditio, longè erit optatissima: vita & mores tantò magis laudabiles sequentur;
pietas & honestas tantò erunt illustriores. At verò si secus fiat, si Pastores Ecclesiarum suo mu-
nere, vel vita vel doctrina non respòdeant, si ad administrationem politicam promiscuè admittan-
tur, quicumque eò propria leuitate, ambitione vel auaritia & contentione honoris, ruunt: si iidem
gratissimum aut improbitatis, vel suspecti vel conuicti sint, aut suspectorum & conuictorum pro-
prie conditio? Certè longè omnium miserrima. Nec enim alio pacto citius ad ruinam & inre-
grum tuum appropinquabis, quàm si istis te regendam commiseris, qui quod in ijs est, licet sint
ipsi ex tuis, iugulum tuum, propter emolumenta priuata, & odia latentia, quotidie petere cō-
tendant. Quam obrem (ne ista pluribus agam) quanti intersit, vt hæc probe curentur, faciliè, ò
patria, intelligis.

Sed dum hæc tuis auribus à me occinuntur, utinam gemitus meos altissimos, qui sub hac ad
Apostrophe latent, Serenissimæ Regiæ Maiestatis aures exaudiant, apud quam ego pro te ita
exploro damna publica, quæ ea de causa exoriuntur maximè, quod patria nostra à regia sede,
conspicua, tantò intervallo sit remota, vt multi propterea tantò sibi maiorem sumant licenti-
am, & impunitatem securius promittant. Cæterum ista numini iustissimo, quod æquis omnia o-

Reliquum est, ò patria, vt studium in te nostrum, eo quo speramus animo. i. comi & benigno,
scilicet: quod quamuis minimè tale est, quale optaremus, tamen cum VELLE SIT IN-
AR OMNIVM, nolui idcirco desistere, quod pro tuo nomine, tua dignitate, tua inno-
centia pugnare me satis strenuè didicerem. Quin potius, quicquid id est (si modò quicquam
est) & quantum cumque tandem, quod ad tui patrocinium, pro mea tenui parte afferre possem,
quaquam supprimendum putavi, nec enim illos laudare soleo,

Qui

This man doe I thus imitate, { If small with great as equals may agree :
And Flie with Elephant compared bee.

Noteth that gathering together and laying up in store those things which might be applied to succour the same and credits of our nation, having now this long time bene oppressed with strangers, through the ennie of certaine malicious persons, I boldly adventure to present these few meditations of mine unto the viewe of the world, and so boyning up sailes to commit my selfe unto a trouble some sea, that my writings in all places should satisfie euery delicate taste, or escape all peeuishnes of carpers it vtgeth not. I doubt not but many will allow this my enterprise: the successe perhaps all men steining so many mens mocks and reproches, then of mine owne praise or dispraise, redounding perhaps vnto me upon this occasion. For what cause should moue me to shunne the ennie and hate of some men, being ioynd with an indenour to benefite and gratifie my countrey?

But if I shall seeme somewhat too bold in censuring the errors of writers, or too severe in reprehending the slanders of some men: yet I hope all they will indge indifferently of me, who shall seriously consider how intolerable the errors of writers are, concerning our nation: how many also and how grieuous be the reproches of some, against vs, wherewith they haue sundry wayes provoked our nation, and as yet rooted in the hearts of all men, towards their native soile, and to pardon my iust griefe for these iniuries offered vnto my countrey. And I in very deed, so much as lay in me, haue in all places moderated my selfe, and haue bene desirous to abstaine from reproches: but if any man thinke, we should haue used more temperance in our stile, I trust, the former reason will content him.

The errors of the writers of Island intolerable.

Wherefore therefore, I am to vndergoe the same hazard, which I see is commonly incident to all men, that publish any writings: I must now haue especiall regarde of this one thing: namely, of seeking out some patron, and Meccenas for this my brieue commentary, vnder whose name and protection it may more safely passe through the hands of all men.

But for this purpose I could not finde out, nor wish for any man more fit then your royal Maiestie, most gracious prince. For vnto him, who hath receined vnder his power & tuition our liues and goods, we haue iuriously disgraced.

Teaerly (most gracious King) we are constrained to craue your Maiesties mercifull aide, not onely in this matter, but in many other things also which are wanting in our countrey, or which otherwise belong to the publike commoditie and welfare thereof: which not by me, but by the letters supplicatory of the chiefe men of our nation, are at this time declared, or will shortly be declared. For we doubt not but that your sacred Maiestie, after the example of your Christian predecessors, will vouchsafe vnto our countrey also, amongst other Islands of your Maiesties dominion, your kingly care and protection. For as the necessitie of seeing for redresse vnto your sacred Maiestie, is ours: so the glory of relieuing, regarding and protecting vs, shal wholly redound vnto your sacred Maiestie: as also, there is layd vpon you, in respect of your fostering and preseruing of Gods church, vpon the extreme northerly parts almost of the whole earth, and in the uttermost bounds of your Maiesties dominion (which by the singulargoodnes of God, enioyeth at this present tranquillitie and quiet safetie) a reward and crowne of immortall life in the heauens.

But considering these things are not proper to this place, I will leaue them, and returne to my purpose which I haue in hand: most humbly beseeching your S. M. that you would of your clemencie vouchsafe to become a fauourer and patron vnto these my labours and studies, for the behalfe of my countrey.

It vndermaineth (most gracious and mercifull soveraigne) for vs to make our humble prayers vnto almighty God, that king of kings, and disposer of all humane affaires, that it would please him of his infinite goodnes, to aduance your Maiestie (yearly growing up in wisdom & experience, and all other heroicall vertues) to the highest pitch of soveraigntie: and being aduanced, continually to bless it with most prosperous success in all your affaires: and being blessed, long to preserve you, as the chiefe element, defence and safegarde of these kingdomes, and as the shield and fortresse of his church: and after in the life to come, so make you shine glorious like a starre, amongst the principall nursing fathers of Gods Church, in the perfect ioy of his beauenly kingdome. The same most mercifull father will grant, that these prayers, the oftener they be dayly repeated and multiplied in euery corner of your Maiesties most ample territories & Islands, so much the more sure and certain they may remaine.

At Haffnia, or Copen Hagen 1593. in the moneth of March.

T. S. M.

most humble subject,

Arngrimus Ionas, Islander.

To

To the courteous and Christian reader *Gudbrandus Thorlacius*,
Bishop of Hohen in Island, wisheth health.

Here came to light about the yeare of Christ 1561, a very deformed imps, begotten by a certain Pedlar of *Germany*: namely a booke of German rimes, of all that neuer were read the most filthy and most slanderous against the nation of *Island*. Neither did it suffice the base printer once to send abroad that base brat, but he must publish it also thrise or foure times ouer: that he might thereby, what lay in him, more deeply disgrace our innocent nation among the Germans, & Danes, and other neighbour countreys, with shamefull, and euertlasting ignominie. So great was the malice of this printer, & his desire so greedy to get lucre, by a thing vnlawfull. And this he did without controulment, euen in that cite, which these many yerres hath trafficked with *Island* to the great gain, and commodity of the citizens. His name is *Ioachimus Leo*, a man worthy to become lions foode.

Great errors grow
 upon mariners
 fabulous reports,

Moreover, there are many other writers found, who when they would seeme to describe the miracles of nature, which are thought to be very many in this *Island*, & the maners, & customs of the *Islanders*, haue altogether swarued from the matter and truth it selfe, following mariners fables more trifling then old wiues tales, & the most vain opinions of the common sort. These writers, although they haue not left behind them such filthy & reprochfull stuffe as that base writer: yet there are many things in their writings that wil not suffer them to be excused, & altogether acquitted from causing an innocent nation to be had in derision by others. Wherefore marking, reading, & weighing these things with my selfe, & considering that there dayly spring vp new writers, which offer iniury to the fame & reputatio of the *Islanders*, being such men also as do shamelessly filch out of other mens labours, deluding their readers wth feined descriptions, & a new rehearsal of monsters, I often wished that some one man would come forth, to make answer to the errors of historiographers & other vniust censurers: and by some writings, if not to free our innocent nation from so many reproches, yet at leastwise, in some sort to defend it, among christian & friendly readers. And for this cause I haue now procured an honest and learned young man one *Arngimus Fitz-Ionas*, to peruse the works of authors, that haue written any thing concerning *Island*, and by sound reasons to detect their errors, & falsehoods. And albeit at the first he was very loth, yet at length my friendly admonition, & the common loue of his countrey preuailed with him so farre, that he compiled this briefe commentary, taking his proofes, not out of the vaine fables of the people, but from his owne experience, and many other mens also of sufficient credit.

Now, he that vnderooke this matter at my procurement, did againe as it were by his owne authority challenge at my hands, that I should in two or three words at least, make a preface vnto his booke; thinking it might gaine some credit, and authority thereby. Wherefore to speake my minde in a word: for my part, I iudge him to haue taken both honest & necessary paines, who hath done his indeuour not onely to weigh the diuers opinions of writers concerning things vnknown, and to examine them by the censure of trueth, and experience, but also to defend his countrey from the venomous bitings of certaine sycophants. It is thy part therefore (gentle reader) to accept this small treatise of his, being as it were guarded with the sacred loue of truth, and of his countrey, against the peruerfines of carpers. Farewel, *Am* 1592. *Iulij 29.*

Here beginneth the Commentary of *Island*.

When as in war, dayly experience teacheth vs, that some vpon no iust & lawfull ground (being egged on by ambition, enuie, and couetise) are induced to follow the armie, and on the contrary side, that others arme themselves vpon iust and necessary causes, namely such as go to battell for the defence and propagation of the Gospel, or as being any way prouoked thereunto, doe withstand present violence and wrong, or at least (being prouoked) by reason of the enemy appoaching are constrained to be vp in armes: right they that fight vnder Apollos banner. Amongst whom, a great part, not vpon any honest, philosophical, or inuolue Christian intention, addresse themselves to wright: especially such as desire of glory, for enuy and spight, or vpon malicious and affected ignorance, carpe at others, and that they may be accounted superiours, sometimes wherre their stiles against the person and fame of this or that particular man, sometimes inuicibly against a whole countrey and by shamelesse vntrueths distorting innocent nations and people. Again, other of an ingenuous minde, doe by great industry, search and bying to light things profitable

namely, they that write of
 use and experience for the
 things maimed to perfect
 uen to euertlasting posteritie
 auanced the knowledge
 lencie, confute the slander
 nation of their Countrey.

And I for my part, hauing
 the followers of *Minerva* (as
 become one of their number
 to amouch the trueth, and to
 to wright; whobeu the excell
 for each me to do the best I ca
 face, and by manifold reppoi
 ing-focke to all other nation
 detect the errors of certein
 (so) the common people will
 false and foolish, neither can
 haue penned the treatise follo

And albeit *Island* is not be
 are by many degrees my Super
 their hands: not withstanding
Gudbrandus Thorlacius Bish
 to be no whit wanting vnto
 request, and also that I might
 by in good learning, and indu
 fence of this our nation: so farre

But to returne to the matt
 our nation, make their doubt
 what things, and how true, wright
 (so) and occasion to others of
 (so) more sharply) all the w
 about to examine some ancient
 (therwise) the memory is p
 in honour, and their zeale and aff
 ly to be commended: but as for
 they shall heare and know truer
 they shall seeme by their incons
 marks of enuy and reproch.

And that this commentary of
 parts: the first of the *Island*, the
 those writers which are come to
 number out of these listes, or to ha
 them. For I professe not my sel
 therefore omitting a longer
 name, miracles, and certaine othe

The Isle of *Island* being seuered fr
 the Ocean, and is scarce know

Albeit a discourse of those thi
 thereof be of little moment to
 themeth it in no case to be omitt
 concerning how truely those w
 ally iudge what credit is to be g
 turning the inhabitants, and w
 they say) they haue bene w
 Iust therefore, that the distanc

namely, they that write of Divinity, Philosophy, and such like: and they who (taking wit and experience for their guides) in the said Sciences have brought things obscure to light, and to everlasting posterity, and things confused to order: and they that have faithfully commended the knowledge of tongues: to be short, that endeavour themselves to repress the information of their Countrey.

And for my part, having scarce attained the sight of good letters, and being the meanest of all the followers of Minerva (that I may freely acknowledge mine owne wants) can do no lesse then to touch the truth, and to shake off the yoke of rascals & reuilers. My estate enabled me onely to say what I can: suchens it hath pleased some strangers by false rumours to be- lieve, and by manifold reproches to iniurie my sayd Countrey, making it a by-word, and a laugh- ing-stock to all other nations. To meet with whole insolencie and false accusations, as also to (for the common people will be alwayes like themselves, stubbornly maintaining that which is false and foolish, neither can I hope to remooue them from this accustomed and stale opinion) I have penned the treatise following.

And albeit Island is not destitute of many excellent men, who, both in age, wit, and learning, are by many degrees my superiours, and therefore more fit to take the defence of the Countrey into their hands: notwithstanding, being earnestly perswaded thereunto, by that godly & famous man Godbrandus Thorlacius Bishop of Hols in Island, I thought good (to the vermouth of mine abili- ty) to be no whit wanting unto the common cause: both that I might obey his most reasonable request, and also that I might encourage other of my countreymen, who have bene better trained up in good learning, and imbued with a greater measure of knowledge then I my selfe, to the be- nefit of this our nation: so farre am I from hindering any man to undertake the like enterprize.

But to returne to the matter, because they (whatsoever they be) that reproch and maligne our nation, make their boast that they vse the testimonies of writers: we are seriously to consider, what things, and how true, writers have reported of Island, to the end that if they have given (per- haps) any occasion to others of inuening against vs, their errorres being layd open (for I will not wish to examine some ancient writers of this Island, by the rule of truth and experience: per- haps) their memory is precious in our eyes, their bignity reuerend, their learning to be had by to be commended: but as for nouices (if there be any such writers or rather pastilles) when they shall heare and know truer matters concerning Island, then they themselves have written, make of rump and reproch.

And that this commentarie of mine may have some order, it shall be diuided into two generall parts: the first of the Island, the second of the inhabitants: and of these two but so far forth as shalbe written which are come to our hands have left recorded: because I am not determined to handle more then these things, and some other which pertaine vnto them. For I professe not my selfe an Historiographer, or Geographer, but onely a Disputer. Therefore omitting a longer Preface, let vs come to the first part concerning the situation, the name, miracles, and certaine other aduantages of this Island.

The first section.

The Isle of Island being seuered from other countreys an infinite distance, standeth face into the Ocean, and is scarce known vnto Sailors.

Munsterus lib. 4. cosmographie.

Albeit a discourse of those things which concerne the land, and the adiuncts of properties thereof be of little moment to the nation of inhabitants from the biting of slanderers, yet in some it is no case to be omitted, but to be intreated of in the first place, that the friendly re- proching how cruelly those writers of Island have reported in this respect, may thereby al- lowly iudge what credit is to be given vnto them in other matters which they have left written concerning the inhabitants, and which others have received from them as oracles, from whence they say they have borrowed scoffes and taunts against our nation.

First therefore, that the distance of Island from other countreys is not infinite, nor indeed so great

great as men commonly imagine, it might easily be proved, if one did but in some sort know the true longitude & latitude of the said Island. For I am of opinion that it cannot exactly be known any other way than this, whereas it is manifest how the Mariners course (be it never so direct, as they suppose, both at all times sweet) in y^e meane while the force I will set downe divers opinions of authors, concerning y^e situation of Island, that from hence every man may gather that of the distance which seemeth most probable; until perhaps my selfe being one day taught by mine owne experience, may if not intrude, yet at least advise, what I shal thinke true as touching this matter.

	Longit.	Latitud.		Longit.	Latitud.
	deg. min.	deg. min.		deg. min.	deg. min.
Munster placeth Island at	20	68	The promontorie of Hec-	25	67
most in			kell		
Gerardus Mercator	325	68	The promontorie of Mad-		
Gemina Frisius placeth the			her	21	20
most of Island	7	65	The inland cities of Island		69
Hersee	7	40	Holen the seat of a bishop	28	67
Thirtes	5	50	Schalholken the seat of a bi-		69
Nadar	6	40	shop	22	63
			Reinholdus.		
Jacobus Zieglerus.			By Holen in Island		68
The West Hoze of Island	20	63	Johannes Miritius.		
The promontorie of Chos	22	46	By Mid-Island		69
The East Hoze is extenden			Neander.		
Northward, and hath			Island stretcheth it selfe 3		
bounds of extension in	30	68	degrees within the circle		
The North Hoze is exten-			arctic from the equinoct-		
den Westward, and hath	28	69	ial, inasmuch that y ^e said		
bounds of extension in			circle arctic doeth almost		
The description of y ^e West			divide it in the midst &c.		
side.					

There be others also, who either in their maps, or writings have noted the situation of Island: notwithstanding it is to no purpose to set downe any more of their opinions, because the more you have, the more contrary shall you finde them. For my part, albeit I have probable conjectures perswading me not to believe any of the former opinions, concerning the situation of Island, but to dissent from them all: yet had I rather leave the matter in suspense then affirme an uncertainty, untill (as I have said) I may be able perhaps one day not to gesse at the matter, but to bring forth mine owne observation, and experience.

A certaine writer hath put downe the distance betweene the mouth of Elbe & Bazeende in the South part of Island to be 400 leagues: from whence if you shall account the difference of longitude to the meridian of Hamburg, Island must have none of the forenamed longitudes in this place. I am able to prove by three sundry voyages of certaine Hamburgers, that it is but seven dayes sailing from Island to Hamburg. Besides all those Islands, which by reason of the abundance of sheepe, are called Fareyar, or more rightly Faareyar, as likewise the desert Island of Norway, are distant from us but two dayes sailing. We have foure dayes sailing into habitable Gronland: and almost in the same quantitie of time we passe over to the province of Norway, called Stad, lying betweene the towncs of Nidrosia or Trondon, and Bergen, as we finde in the ancient records of these nations.

The second section.

In this Island, at the Summer solstium, the Sun passing thorow the signe of Cancer, there is no night, and therefore at the Winter solstium there is no day. Also Vadianus. But in this Island, which farre within the arctic circle is seated in the maine Ocean, at this day called Island, and next vnto the lands of the frozen sea, which they call Engronland, there be many moneths in the yere without nights.

At the solstium of winter, that there is no day, that is to say, no time, wherein the Sunne is seen above the horizon, we confesse to be true onely in that angle of Island (if there be any such angle) where the pole is eleuated full 67 degrees. But at Holen (which is the bishopps see for the North part of Island, and lieth in almost deepe valley) the latitude is about 65 degrees and 44 minutes, as I am informed by the reverend father, Gudbrood, bishop of that place: and yet there, the shortest day in all the yere is at least two houres long, and in South-Island longer, as appeareth by the tables of Mathematicians. Wherebye it is manifest, first that Island is not

situate beyond the arctic circle many nightes, no; is

It is named of the ice which: From the West passed with an huge sea, Thyle, whereof most of

It is named of ice, &c. Naddocus a Mozagrian being sailing towards the Faar-Island; where staying with covering the tops of the mountain. After him one Gardarus concerning Island, went to the same name Gardarsholme, &c. this new land. For after the first Island, and named it of the ice, Of ancient habitation, &c. men do) that Island hath bene inhabited by people of Island were autochthonous and herbs; whereas it is estimated about 718 yeres since.

This is Thyle, &c. Chymmarus writes, which notwithstanding verily that this Island was first called by that Thule King of Aegyptus, farre into an Island, which was a man will denie this, he may for a distance into so many contrary opinions. Island, where trees beare fruit. The last Island of the Scottish dominions of Thylesey, which Virgil also testifies (by which name the English) is a description to inhabit. Which is

And Britans whole from the fourth writeth, that it is onely: the first, that it is Schirchinn. Which continually cleaveth to the cleaveth &c. or as Munster affirmeth, months, are neither of them both the 17 of April or May, and is divided into 17 of equiare, nay often times it comes in ice (the sharpe scourge of this) is found to be true this present yere. It is then that navigation to this Island is impossible, by reason of the ice and cold. In yere, sometimes in March, sometimes in May and June, doe usually continue till August. But the last yere with Copper within the haven of the month of November, which time of the year, neither continually, no; yet much decreued.

Island is so great that it containeth the Island is extended betweene the Sea, &c. One Wilstenius schoole-master in West-Island, a short tract

seven dayes sailing from Island to Hamburg. Island but two dayes sailing distant from Faar-Islands, & from the desert Hoze of Norway.

Munsterus, Olavus Magnus and others.

The true state of Fjland. Traffiques, & Discoueries.

555

lieuate beyond the arctic circle : secondly, that in Island there are not wanting in Summer sol-
stium many nightes, no; in Winter solstium many dayes.

Island is 1102
within the ar-
ctic circle.

The third section.

It is named of the ice which continually cleaueth vnto the North part thereof. Another writeth: From the West part of Norway there lieth an Island which is named of the ice, enui-
roned with an huge sea, and being a cuntry of ancient habitation, &c. *Zieglerus*. This is
Thyle, whereof most of the ancient writers haue made mention,

Munsterus.
Saxo.

It is named of ice, &c. Island hath bene called by three names, one after another. For one
sailing towards the Faar-Ilands, though a violent tempest by chance arrive at the East shore
of Island; where staying with his whole company certaine weekes, he beheld abundance of snow
covering the tops of the mountaines, and thereupon, in regard of the snow, called this Island Sne-
land. After him one Gardarus, being mooued thereunto by the report which Naddocus gaue out
concerning Island, went to seeke the sayd Island; who, when he had found it, called it after his
owne name Gardarsholme, that is to say, Gardars Isle. There were moze also desirous to visit
this new land. For after the two former, a certaine third Nozuagian, called Flok, went into
Island first dis-
covered by
Naddocus in a
tempest.
Island.
Gardarsholme.

Of ancient habitation, &c. I gather not this opinion out of these wordes of Saxo (as some
men do) that Island hath bene inhabited from the beginning, or (to speake in one word) that the
people of Island were autochthones, that is, earth-bred, or bred out of their owne soile like vnto
trees and herbs; *Atheni* it is euident, that this Island scarce began to be inhabited no longer agoe
then about 718 yeres since.

This is Thyle, &c. *Gymnarians* wangle about this name, and as yet the controuersie is not
settled. Which notwithstanding, I thinke might easily grow to composition, if men would un-
derstand that this Island was first inhabited about the yere of our Lord 874. Unless some man
will say that Thule King of Aegypt (who, as it is thought, gaue this name thereunto) passed so
farre vnto an Island, which was at that time vntilled, and destitute of inhabitants. Again, if any
man will denie this, he may for all me, that it may seeme to be but a dreame, while they are di-
tracted into so many contrary opinions. One affirmes that it is Island: another, that it is a cer-
tain Island, where trees beare fruit twise in a yere: the third, that it is one of the Orades, or
the last Island of the Scottish dominion, as Iohannes Myricus and others, calling it by the name
of Thulesey, which Virgil also seemeth to haue meant by his vltima Thyle. If beyond the Vi-
sage (by which name the English men and Scots onely at this day are called) he imagined none
of them to inhabite. Which is euident out of that verse of Virgil in his sixth Eclogue:

And Britans whole from all the world diuided.

The fourth witteth, that it is one of the Faar-Ilands: the first, that it is Telemark in Nor-
way; the first, that it is Schrichinnia.

Which continually cleaueth to the North part of the Island, That clause that ice continually
cleaueth &c. or as Munster affirmeth a little after, that it cleaueth for the space of eight whole
moeths, are neither of them both true, when as for the most part the ice is thawed in the mo-
nth of April or May, and is driven to wards the West: neither doth it returne before Ianuarie
if equarie, nay oftentimes it cometh later. What if a man should reckon by many yeres,
whether ice (the sharpe scourge of this our nation) hath not at all bene seene about Island? which
is found to be true this present yere 1592. Whereupon it is manifest how truly Frisus hath
written that navigation to this Island lieth open onely for foure moneths in a yere, and no
longer, by reason of the ice and colde, whereby the passage is shut vp, when as English ships
goe, by reason of the ice and colde, sometimes in March, sometimes in April, and some of them in May; the Germans
sometimes till August. But the last yere, bring 1591, there lay a certaine shippe of Germanie
with Copper within the haven of Vopnashord in the coast of Island about foureene dayes
in the month of Nouember, which time being expired, she fortunately set saile. Therefore, see-
ing that, neither continually, nor yet eight moneths cleaueth vnto Island, Munster and Frisus
much deceived.

The ice of Is-
land set alwayes
to the West.

No ice at all
four yeres in
Island.

Navigation
open to Island
from March
till the midst
of Nouember.

The fourth section.

Island is so great that it conteineth many people. Item *Zieglerus* sayth: The situation of
Island is extended betwene the South and the North almost 200 leagues in length.
Great, &c. One *Wilstenius* schoolmaster of Oldenburg, in the yere 1591, sent vnto mine
in West-Island, a boate treasurie which he had gathered out of the fragments of sundrie
writers,

Kranzius.
Munsterus.

Island 143. Ger-
maine miles in
compass.

writers, concerning Island. Where we found thus written: Island is twice as great as Sicilie, &c. But Sicilie, according to Munster, hath 150 Germane miles in compass. As for the circuit of our Island, although it be not exactly known unto us, yet the ancient, constant, and received opinion of the inhabitants accounteth it 144 leagues; namely by the 12 promontories of Island, which are commonly known, being distant one from another 12 leagues or thereabout, which two numbers being multiplied, produce the whole summe.

Many people, &c. One Gyslerus about the yere of our Lord 1090, being bishop of Scholholten in Island, caused all the husbandmen, or countrey men of the Island, who in regard of their possessions were bound to pay tribute to the king, to be numbred (omitting the poorer sort with women, and the meaner sort of the commonalty) and he found in the East part of Island 700, in the South part 1000, in the West part 1100, in the North part 1200, to the number of 4000 inhabitants paying tribute. Now if any man will trie, he shall finde that more then halfe the Island was at that time unpeopled.

The fifth section.

Munster,
Frisius,
Zieglerus,

The Island, most part thereof, is mountainous and vntilled. But that part which is plaine doth greatly abound with fodder, which is so ranke, that they are faine to driue their cattell from the pasture, lest they surfeit or be choaked.

That danger of surfetting or choaking was neuer heard tell of, in our fathers, grandfathers, great-grandfathers or any of our predecessors vapes, be they neuer so ancient.

The sixth section.

Munsterus,
Frisius,

There be in this Island mountaines lift vp to the skies, whose tops being white with perpetuall snowe, their roots boile with euerlasting fire. The first is towards the West, called *Hecla*: the other the mountaine of the crosse: and the third *Helga*. Item: *Zieglerus*. The rocks or promontorie of *Hecla* boileth with continuall fire. Item: *Saxo*. There is in this Island also a mountaine, which resembling the starrie firmament, with perpetuall flashings of fire, continueth alwayes burning, by vncessant belching out of flames.

Munster and Frisius being about to report the wondrous of Island doe presently stumble, as it were, upon the perplexitie, to the great inconuenience of them both. For they which they here affirme of mount *Hecla*, although it hath some shew of truth: notwithstanding concerning the other two mountaines, that they should burne with perpetuall fire, it is a manifest errour. For there are no such mountaines to be found in Island, nor yet any thing els (so farre forth as wee can imagine) which might minister occasion of so great an errour unto writers. Howbeit there was scene (yet very lately) in the yere 1581 out of a certaine mountaine of South Island lying neere the Sea, and covered ouer with continuall snow and frost, a marvellous eruption of smoake and fire, casting vp abundance of stones and ashes. But this mountaine is farre from the other three, which the sayd authors doe mention. Howbeit, suppose that the things be true which they report of fire mountaines: is it possible therefore that they should seeme strange, or monstrous, whenas they proceed from naturall causes? What? Doe they not whie pretaile to establish that opinion concerning the hell of Island, which followeth verie in Munster, Ziegler, and Frisius? For my part, I thinke it no way tollerable, that men should abuse these, and the like miracles of nature, to aouch absurdities, or, that they should be kind of impetie wonder at them, as at matters impossible. As though in these kindes of inflammations, there did not concur causes of sufficient force for the same purpose. There in the rootes of these mountaines a matter most apt to be set on fire, continuing so neere to the nature of brimstone and pitch. There is aye also, which inflaming it selfe by passages, and holes, into the very bowels of the earth, doeth puffe vp the nourishment of so be a fire, together with Salt-peter, by which puffing (as it were with certaine bellows) a more ardent flame is kindled. For, all these thus concurring, fire hath those three things, which necessarily make it burne, that is to say, matter, motion, and force of making passage: matter which is fatie and moyst, and therefore nourisheth lasting flames: motion which aye doeth perforce, being admitted into the causes of the earth: force of making passage and that the invincible might of fire it selfe (which can not be without inspiration of aye, can not but beate forth with an incredible strength) doeth bying to passe: and so (as we see in undermining trenches, and engines of great warrelke ordinance, huge pyron bullets cast forth with monstrous roaring, and cracking, by the force of kindled brimstone, Salt-peter, whereof Gunne-powder is compounded) chingle and great stones being the

These naturall
causes of fire
mountaines.

in that fiery gulf, as it were, by and discharged, with from the depth of opening of a quaking. Quaking the earth is heaped: such a quaking doth so terrible the Sonnescriber by Pontanus in the

The stirring
vrged now
For freedom
to ride it
Then qual
The earth yqu
Strong quarries

I thought good to adde the least other men should thinke fables, which they do from heathen mountaines of Island, where as they say that their foundation consisteth of snowe. Howbeit to maruile at this, who can thinke) bringing full of snowe all hopes burne. Wherefore, it is covered with snowe, and we have not doubted to ascribe vnto it is no maruile that fire lurketh in it is very strange, though the top mountaine. For in Can continually to be white with snowe never without snowe, being small. We have heard that either in Teneriffa (which is one of the ayre, according to Munster, eighth: yet (as Benzo an Italian) able to melt the globe of snowe e we may to admire in the mountaines.

Now that also is to be amended into the skies. For they have no especially that third mountaine of mount, standing tuff by a mountain thereof in Summer time, neie humble hills, neuer yet (as) of burning. Neither yet ought to be; for Island hath very many hills so rolled and adorned these. And that also is not to be omitted. Munster and Ziegler have noted, but rather a mid-land hill. Continueth alwayes burning &c. belching out of flames, they are the flames, our countrey men have in the peeres of Christ 1104. yere we neuer heard of the burning breaking forth of fire in that, but that the bottome of the hill in (as) hath bene heretofore obser-

in that fiery gulf, as it were in a furnace, together with abundance of sande and ashes, are vomited up and discharged, and that for the most part not without an earthquake: which, if it cometh from the depth of the earth, (being called by Possidonius, *Succulio*) it must either be an opening or a quaking. Opening causeth the earth in some places to gape, and fall a funder. By quaking the earth is heaved up and swelleth, and sometimes (as Plinie saith) casteth out huge heaps of fire. Earth-quake was the same which I euen now mentioned, which in the pere 1581 did so fire the whole South shore of Island. And this kinde of earth-quake is most clearkely described by Pontanus in these verses:

The stirring breath runnes on with stealing steppes,
Vrged now vp, and now enforced downe:
For freedome eke tries all, it skips, it leaps,
to ridde it selfe from vncouth dungeon.
Then quakes the earth as it would burst anon,
The earth yquakes, and walled cities quier,
Strong quarries cracke, and stones from hilles doe shiuer,

I thought good to adde these things, not that I suppose any man to be ignorant thereof: but least other men should thinke that we are ignorant, and therefore that we will runne after their fables, which they do from hence establish. But yet there is somewhat more in these three famous mountaines of Island, which causeth the sayd writers not a little to wonder, namely where as they say that their foundations are alwayes burning, and yet for all that, their toppes be neuer destitute of snowe. Howbeit, it seemeth not the authour and learning of such great clearkes to marvell at this, who can not but well know the flames of mount Aetna, which (according to Plinie) being full of snowe all winter, notwithstanding (as the same man witnesseth) it doth alwayes burne. Therefore, if we will giue credit vnto them, euen this mountaine also, sitthens it is covered with snowe, and yet burneth, must be a prison of vncleane soules: which thing they haue not doubted to ascribe vnto Hecla, in regard of the frozen top, and the fire bottome. And it is no maruile that fire lurking so deepe in the roots of a mountaine, and neuer breaking forth except it be very colde, should not be able continually to melt the snowe covering the toppe of the sayd mountaine. For in Caira (or Capira) also, the highest toppes of the mountaine are sayd continually to be white with snowe: and those in Veragua likewise, which are five miles high, and neuer without snowe, being distant not withstanding but onely 10 degrees from the equinoctiall. We haue heard that either of the sayd Provinces standeth neere vnto Paria. What, sayd Benzo an Italian, and Pi^o geographer of the West Indies witnesseth) is it not possible to melt the girdle of snowe embracing the middell thereof. Which thing, what reason haue we to aduine in the mountaine of Hecla? And thus much by the way concerning fire mountaines.

Now that also is to be amended, whereas they write that these mountaines are lifted by euen unto the skies. For they haue no extraordinarie height beyond the other mountaines of Island, but especially that third mountaine, called by Munster Helga, and by vs Helgafel, that is the highest thereof in Summer time, neither deserveth it the name of an high mountaine, but rather of a humble hillocke, neuer yet (as I sayd in the beginning of this section) so much as once suspended by burning. Neither yet ought perpetuall snowe to be ascribed to Hecla onely, or to a few others; for Island hath very many such snowy mountaines, all which the Cosmographer (who so well so enrolled and admired these thre) should not easily finde out, and reckon vp in a whole booke. And that also is not to be omitted, that mount Hecla standeth not towards the West, as Munster and Ziegler haue noted, but betweene the South and the East: neither is it an headland, but rather a mid-land hill.

Continueth alwayes burning &c. whosoever they be that haue ascribed vnto Hecla perpetually belching out of flames, they are farre besides the marke: inasmuch that as often as it hath beene kindled, our countrey men haue recorded it in their perely Chronicles for a rare accident: The chronicles of Island.
For the neuer heard of the burning of this mountaine vntill the yeere 1558, which was the first breaking forth of fire in that mountaine. In the meane time I say not that is impossible, but that the bottome of the hill may inwardly breed and nourish flames, which at certaine times (as hath bene here tofore obserued) haue burst out, and perhaps may do the like hereafter.

The seventh section.

The flame of mount *Hecla* will not burne tow (which is most apt for the wicke of a candle) neither is it quenched with water: and by the same force that bullets are discharged out of warlike engines with vs, from thence are great stones cast forth into the aire, by reason of the mixture of colde, and fire, and brimstone. This place is thought of some to be the prison of vncleane soules. Item: *Zieglerus*. This place is the prison of vncleane soules.

Frifus.
Muniterus.

Will not burne tow. Where these writers should finde such matters, it is not easie to coniecture. For our people are altogether ignorant of them, neither had they euer bene heard of heere among vs, if they had not brought them to light. For there is no man with vs so rashly and fondly curious, that dareth for his life, the bill being on fire, trie any such conclusions, or (to our knowledge) that euer durst: which notwithstanding Muniter affirmeth, saying: They that are desirous to contemplate the nature of so huge a fire, & for the same purpose approach vnto the mountaine, are by some gulfe swallowed vp aliue, &c. which thing (as I sayd) is altogether unknowne vnto our nation. Yet there is a booke extant, written in the ancient language of the *Magians*, wherein you may finde some miracles of earth, water, fire, and aire, &c. confusedly written, few of them true, and the most part baine and false. Whereupon it easily appeareth that it was written long since by some that were imagined to be great wise men in the time of Popery. They called it a royall looking glasse: howbeit, in regard of the fable, whereunto (but for the most part) vnder the shew of religion and piety, where by it is moze difficult: to finde out the couling, and olde wises looking glasse. In this glasse there are found certaine figments of the burning of *Hecla*, not much unlike these which we now entreas of, nay any whit moze grounded vpon experience, and for that cause to be reiected.

Speculum regale
written in the
Magian
tongue.

Whence the
fabrics of Island
grew.

But that I may not seeme somewhat too harshly, for accusing this royall looking glasse of falshood (not to mention any of those things which it reporteth as lesse credible) let here a few things (friendly reader) which I suppose deserue no credit at all.

1 Of a certaine Isle in Ireland, hauing a church and a parish in it, the inhabitants whereof decaying are not buried in the earth, but like liuing men, do continually, against some banke of wall in the Churchyard, stand bolt-typpright: neither are they subject to any corruption, nor wane fall: inasmuch that any of the posteritie may there seeke for, and beholde their ancestors,

2 Of another Isle of Ireland, where men are not mortall.

3 Of all the earth and trees of Ireland, being of force to resist all poisons, and to kill serpents, and other venomous things, in any countrey whatseuer, by the onely vertue and presence thereof, yea euen without touching.

4 Of a third Isle of Ireland, that the one halfe thereof became an habitation of devils, but that the sayd devils haue no iurisdiction ouer the other halfe, by reason of a Church there built, although, as the whole Isle is without inhabitants, so this part is continually destitute of a pastor, and of diuine seruice: and that it is so by nature.

5 Of a fourth Isle of Ireland floating by and downe in an huge lake, the grasse whereof is most present remedy for all kinde of diseases, and that the Island, at certaine seasons, especially on Sundayes, commeth to the banke of the lake, so that any man may then easily enter into it, as if he were into a shippe: which notwithstanding (sayth he) destiny will not suffer any more then once to enter at a time. Furthermoze, he reporteth that this Island euery seuenth yere groweth fast to the banke, so that you cannot discerne it from firme land: but that into the place thereof the succedeth another, altogether like the former, in nature, quantitie, and vertue: which, from what place it commeth, no man can tell: and that all this happeneth with a kinde of thundering.

6 Of the hunters of Norway who are so expert to tame wood (so to be speake they very improperly, whereas unto wood neither life nor taming can be ascribed) that wooden patterns of the elnes long being bound to the soles of their feet do cary them with so great celeritie euen vpon mountaines, that they cannot be outrun, either by the swiftnesse of hounds and deere, or yet by the flying of birds. And that they will kill nine does or moze at one course & with one stroke of a bow.

These and such like, concerning Ireland, Norway, Island, Gronland, of the miracles of water, and aire, this master of fragments hath gathered together into his looking glasse: where although he hath made his owne followers wonder, and the common people to be astonished, hath he ministred vnto vs nothing but occasion of laughter.

But let vs heare *Frifus*. The flame of mount *Hecla* (sayth he) will not burne tow (which is most apt matter for the wicke of a candle) neither is it quenched with water. But I sayd that this strange opinion may be confirmed by many reasons borrowed out of your schoole of

sooty. For the natural be quenched with drye sprinkling on of water more vehement, it is this concur in water. Item which ariseth, doth promising, but the fire is leu puer, and gathering round. And therefore also wilding with briar stone and be quenched with water. Arist. 3. de anim. Strabo in his 7. booke. In led with water. The same fontaine. And mozeouer it is that the lake of Thrasus. And in the yeares Reykians, a flame of fire by glutted: as namely, there also Lucius Martius in Spaners, and exhorting them to the lake make mention of so it quenched with earth of trees that growe directly out of a wonder in *Hecla* onely is no such matter so farre from other parts or places in the world.

And by the same force that nether, it foundeth like dread with the cinders that are blown man can inhabit within 20. Aena, of which other stierie mountains to be found in them, not onely a be the difference, that flames by same kinde. For it hath now the year 1588. as we haue in *Hecla*, but the same or greater and by appeare.

But that by brimstone should be tion, by any experiment.

This place is the prison of v cruce pardon of the Reader, because great of the land, and of the inhabi handle certaine matters in this stry passeth through the fault of these upon concerning the opinion of hel land. Wherefore that we may cor women to this point, not onely to me people: For the common fox them of better iudgement of a in imbyzed and natura blockish for but because they see no wood nor a demps at home. And by this per sity (as they are too much accusd the fire copments of this mountaine. mine mens soules being spiritu in due wonder, why they should Aena, being no lesse famous for the regie fained it so to be. Wheref

lophy. For the naturall Philosophers doe teach, That it is common to all forcible flames to be quenched with dry things, and nourished with moiste: whereupon, even blacksmithes, by sprinkling on of water, vie to quicken and strengthen their fire. For (say they) when fire is more vehement, it is stirred vp by colde, and nourished by moisture, both which qualities doe concur in water. Item, water is wont to kindle skorching fires: because the moisture it selfe, which ariseth, doth proue more fattie and grosse, neither is it consumed by the smoke encompurer, and gathering round together, it becometh then more vehement by reason of colde. And therefore also wild-fires cannot be quenched with water. Item, There be places abouted with briar stone and pitch, which burne of their owne accord, the flame wherof cannot be quenched with water. The graund Philosopher also hath affirmed, that fire is nourished by water. Arist. 3. de anim. And Plinie, in the second booke of his naturall historie cap. 110. And Strabo in his 7. booke. In Nymphaem there proceedeth a flame out of a rocke, which is kindled with water. The same author sayth: The ashe continually flourisheth, covering a burning field that the lake of Thrasumenus in the field of Perugi, was all on fire, as the same Strabo witnesseth. And in the yeares 1226, and 1236, not farre from the promontorie of Islande called Keykians, a flame of fire brake forth out of the sea. Yea even upon mens bodies sudden fires haue glistered: as namely, there spang a flame from the head of Seruius Tullius lying a sleepe: and also Lucius Martius in Spaine after the death of the Scipions, making an oration to his soulies, and exhorting them to reuenge, was all in a flame, as Valerius Antias doth report. Plinie in like sort maketh mention of a flame in a certaine mountaine, which, as it is kindled with water, is quenched with earth: also of another field which burneth not the leaues of thadie that growe directly ouer it. These things bring thus, it is strange that men should accompt it a wonder in Hecla onely (for I will graunt it to be, for disputation sake, when indeede there is no such matter so farre forth as euery I could learne of any man) which is common to manie other parts of places in the world, both hilly and plaine, as well as to this.

And by the same force that bullets, &c. Munster saith the like also. This mountaine when it rageth, it is rounde like dreadfull thunder, casteth forth huge stones, disgorgeth brimstone, and with the cinders that are blown abroad, it couereth so much ground round about it, that no man can inhabite within 20. miles thereof, &c. Howbeit, they ought to haue compared it with Aena, of which other fierie mountaines, whereof I will presently make mention, seeing there is to be found in them, not onely a like accident, but in a manner the very same. Unless perhaps this be the difference, that flames brake seldom out of Hecla, then out of other mountaines of the same kinde. For it hath now rested these 34. yeares full out, the last fierie brake being made in the yeare 1558. as we haue before noted. And there can no such wonders be affirmed of our Hecla, but the same of greater are to be ascribed vnto other burning mountaines, as it shall by and by appeare.

But that brimstone should be sent forth it is a meere fable, and neuer known vnto our nation, by any experiment.

This place is the prison of vncleane soules. Here I am constrained to vse a preface, and to crave pardon of the Reader, because, whereas in the beginning I propounded vnto my selfe to treat of the land, and of the inhabitants distinctly by themselves, I must of necessitie confusedly handle certaine matters in this first part, which do properly belong vnto the second. This is come to passe through the fault of these writers, who haue confounded this part of the inhabitants religion concerning the opinion of hell, or of the infernall prison, with the situation & miracles of the island. Wherefore that we may come to this matter, who can but wonder, that wise men should be taken to this point, not onely to listen after, but euen to follow and embrace the dotings of the people: For the common sort of strangers, and the off-shooting of mariners (here I do excuse them of better iudgement as well mariners as others) hearing of this rare miracle of nature, because they see no wood nor any such fewell laped vpon this fire as they haue in their owne country (as they are too much accustomed to banning and cursing), the report grew strong, especially the coynents of this mountaine. As though elementarie, materiall, and visible fire could consume mens soules being spirituall, bodilesse, and inuisible substances. And to be short, who can but wonder, why they should not faime the same prison of damned soules, as well in mount Etna, being no lesse famous for fires and inflamations then this? But you will say, that Pope regonie faimed it so to be. Wherefore it is purgatorie. I am content it should be so: then there is

is the same cruelty of this pylon that there is of purgatorie. But before I proceed any further I thinke it not amiss to tell a merie tale, which was the originall and ground of this belhiv opinion: namely that a ship of certaine strangers departing from Island, under full saile, a most swift pace, going directly on her course, met with another ship sailing against wind & weather, and the force of the tempest as swiftly as themselves, who halting them of whence they were, answer was given by their gouverneur, *De Bischop van Bremen*: being the second time asked whether they were bound: he answered, *Thom Heckfeldt ibo, Thom Heckfeldt ibo*. I am asle to tell the matter at the sight of these things should call for a balon: for it is such an abominable lie, that it should make a man cast his gorge to heare it. Away with it therefore to scanny frogs, for we receive no more of it, then of their croaking coar coar. Nay, it is so palpable that it is not worthy to be said, much lesse to be refuted. But I will not trifle any longer with the fond Papadas: let us rather come unto our owne wondrous.

And first of all I cannot here omit a saying of that most worthy man Doctor Caspar Peucer. There is in Island (quoth he) mount Hecla, being of as dreadfull a depth as any vale gulfe, or as hell it selfe, which resoundeth with lamentable, & miserable yellings, that the noise of the cryers may be heard for the space of a great league round about. Great swarms of vgly blacke Ravens and Vultures lie hovering about this place which are thought of the inhabitants to nestle there. The common people of that countrey are verily perswaded, that there is a descent downe into hell by this gulfe: and therefore when any battailes are fought, or where, in whatsoeuer part of the whole world, or any bloudie slaughters are committed, they have learned by long experience, what horrible tumults and out-cries, what monstrous skritchies are heard round about this mountaine. Who durst be so bold (most learned Sir) to bring such an incredible report to your eares? Neither hath Island any Vultures, but the second kinde of Eagles, which Plinie noted by their white talles, and called them Pygais: neither are there any with vs, that can beare witness of the foresaid spectacle: nor yet is it likely that Ravens and Eagles would nestle in that place, when as they should rather be driven from there by fire and smoke, being things most contrarie to their nature. And yet notwithstanding for proofe of this matter, as also of a strange tumult heard within the hollow of the mountaine, they allege the experience of the inhabitants, which indeede testifies all things to the contrary. But whereabout should that hole or window of the mountaine be, by the which we may heare outcries, noise and tumults done among them, who inhabit the most contrarie, distant, and remote places of the earth from vs? Concerning which thing I would aske the author of this fable many questions, if I might but come to the knowledge of him: in the meane time I could wish that from henceforth he would learne to tell troth, & not presume with so impudent a face to enquire excellent Peucer, or others, of such unknown and incredible matters.

But to returne to Munster, who endeavouring to search out the causes of the great and strange fire of that famous hill Aetna, is it not monstrous that the very same thing which he there maketh natural, he should here imagine to be supernaturall, yea infernall? But why do I speake of Aetna? Let us rather consider what Munster in another place thinketh of the burning of Hecla.

It is without doubt (saith he) that some mountaines and fields burned in old time throughout the whole world: and in this our age do burne. As for example: mount Hecla in Island at certaine seasons casteth abroad great stones, spitteth out brimstone, and dispereth ashes for such a distance round about, that the land cannot be inhabited within 20. miles thereof. But where mountaines do continually burne we vnderstand that there is no stopping of the passages, whereby they poure forth abundance of fire sometime flaming, & sometime smoking and were a streaming flood. But if betwene times the fire encrease, all secret passages being stopped vp, the inner parts of the mountaine are notwithstanding enflamed. The fire in the vpper part, for want of matter, some what abateth for the time. But when a more vehement spirit (the same, or other passages being set open again) doth with great violence breake prison, it casteth forth ashes, sand, brimstone, pumistones, lumps resembling iron, great stones, & much other matter, not without the damage of the whole region adioyning. To the same Munster I shall consider (good Reader) how he cutteth his throat with his owne sword, & consider (I say) that in this place there is the very same opinion of the burning of Hecla, & the burning of Aetna, which notwithstanding in his 4. booke to very diuerse, for there he is faine to run to infernall causes, certaine fire mountaine of West India hath farre moze friendly censurers, & historiographers then our Hecla, who make not an infernall gulfe therof. The Histori of which mountaine (written by a Swede) I will set downe, being written by Hieronimus Benzo an Italian, in his new world, lib. 2. These be the words. About 35. miles distant from Leon there is a mountain which at a great hole belcheth out such mightie balles of flames, that in the night

they shine farre and neare gold minifring continuall fire, determining to make afterward ascending to the & the kettle 140. elnes in of the chaine melted. This made the chaine far more ther of more substance & let downe the chaine & did the caldron only vanish a flame of fire, which had so astonished, that they had feared it there betwene the but in mount Hecla of Island too new, & altogether unknowne the same prison of soules to burne day and night) that is in mount the mountaines of Ephesus, is so much fire, that the very stone (a stasse being burne upon the of fire, as Plinie testifies) that the night: why not in the Island like wise burning for certain burning in the day season: why not in the night: why not in the hill of Aetna (whereunto it is said) and the noise of rattles, to the hills of Naples, neare unto Punt Aetna continually burning and why not in that Aethiopian hills to conclude, why not in the mountain, & to the better destruction of flames as high as the e the, & with palpable darkness it I will speake, & yet speake no more yea no credite to those things as become the flames of hell: but more slowly to their eares) to be stopp (and is found out: leave off to in mount Hecla. For nature hath other operations in these fire mountaines, & of comon people, which haue

neare unto the mountaines (the 3. whereof, especially at mount Hecla) fought: but there appeare to the & as yet drawing their breath, will to returne home) that they must with away.

To confirme the former lie, of an in writing these things did not en matters) certaine idle companions of these reprochfull then false, and moze writers (being other wise men of the follo wed with an our hasty iudg But it were to be wished, that men with nouelties & strange things, that the of the, & so to defile pure gold with the swimming in the infernall lake, & y

they shine farre and neare, about 100. miles. Some were of opinion that within it was molten gold miniftring continuall matter & nourishment for the fire. Hereupon a certain Dominican Frier, determining to make trial of the matter, caused a brasle kettle, & an irō chain to be made; & the kettle 140. lynes into the fornace: there, by extreame heate of the fire, the kettle, & part of the chaine melted. The monke in a rage ran back to Leon, & chid the frier, because he had made the chaine far more slender then himselfe had cōmanded. The frier with hammers out ano- ther of more substance & strength then the former. The Monke returned to the mountains, and let downe the chaine & the cauldron: but with the like successe that he had before. Neither did the caldrō only vanish & melt away: but also, vpon the sudden there came out of the depth a flame of fire, which had almost consumed the Frier, & his companions. Then they all returned so astonished, that they had small list afterward to prosecute that attempt, &c. What great dif- ference is there betwene these two censures? In a fiery hill of *West India* they search for gold: too new, & altogether unknown to ancient writers. Why therefore haue not writers imagined the same pylon of soules to be in *Chinzera* an hill in *Lycia* (which, by report, flameth continually day and night) that is in mount *Hecla* of *Jf*land? Why haue they not imagined the same to be in the mountaines of *Ephesus*, which being touched with a burning toych, are reported to conceale so much fire, that the very stones & sand lying in the water are caused to burne, & from the which (a flasse being burnt vpon them, & trailed after a man on the ground) there proceede whole rivers of fire, as *Plinie* testifieth: Why not in *Cophanerus* a mountaine of *Bactria*, alwayes burning in the night: Why not in the *Isle of Hiera*, flaming in the midst of the sea: Why not in *Aecolia* in old *Greece*, burning in the day season: Why not in the fields of *Aethiopia* glittering alwayes like stars in the night: Why not in the hill of *Lipara* opening with a wide and bottomlesse gulfe (as *Aristotle* saith) whereunto it is dangerous to approach in the night: frō whence the sound of *Sym- phonia* is heard, with untuned and uncouth laughter: Why not in the field of *Naples*, neare vnto *Puicoli*: Why not in the Pike of *Teneriffa* betwixt mentioned, like *Aetna* continually burning and casting by stones into the aier, as *Munster* himselfe witnesseth: Why not in that *Aethiopian* hill, which *Plinie* affirmeth to burne more then all the former: And to conclude, why not in the mountaine of *Vesuuus*, which (to the great damage of al the countrey) smokes out flames as high as the clouds, filling the aier with great abundance of pinnistones, and ashes, & with palpable darkness: intercepting the light of the sunne from al the region therabout: I will speake, & yet speake no more then the truth: because in deede they so resemble, that men would peraduenture beleeue the flames of hell: but they thought the burning of *Hecla* (the rumour whereof came from mount *Hecla*) to be fierer for the establishing of this fond fable. But get ye packing, your stum is found out: leaue off for shame here after to perswade any simple man, y there is a hel- ler operation in the fire workes, not the fury of hell. But now let vs examine a few more such fables of *Jf*land people, which haue so unhappily misledd our historiographers & cosmographers.

The eight fiction.

Near vnto the mountaines (the 3. so named *Hecla* &c.) there be three vaste holes, the depth whereof, especially at mount *Hecla*, cannot be discerned by any man, be he neuer so sharpe sighted: but there appeare to the beholders thereof certaine men at that instant plunged in, & as yet drawing their breath, who answer to their friends (exhorting them with deepe sighs to returne home) that they must depart to mount *Hecla*: and wiche that, they suddenly van- ish away.

*Frisius.
Zieglerus.
Olaus magnus.*

To confirme the former lie, of an earthy & visible hell (albeit I will easily graunt that *Frisius* in writing these things did not intend to repproch any, but only to blaze abroad new & incredi- ble matters) certaine idle companions knowing neither hell nor heauen haue inuented this fable, like repprochfull then false, and more vaine & detestable then *Sicilian* scoffes. Which fellows we follow with an ouer haste iudgement.

But it were to be wished, that none would write Histories with so great a desire of setting forth newelities & strange things, that they feare not, in that regard to vouch any fabulous & old- fashioned tales, & so to defile pure gold with filchy mize. But I pray you, how might those drowned be swimming in the infernal lake, & yet for al that, parling with their acquaintances & friends? What:

What? Will you coniure, & raise vp vnto vs from death to life old Orpheus conferring with his wife Euridice (y^e fallen backe againe downe to the Scythian flood) & in these parts of the world, as it were by the banks of snowey Tanais, & Hebrus besanting vpon his harpe? But in very deede although others will not acknowledge the fallshood, & vanitie of these trifles, yet Cardane being a diligent considerer of all things in his 18. booke de subtilitate, doth acknowledge & find them out. Whose words be these. There is *Hecla* a mountaine in Island, which burneth like vnto *Ainar* certain seasons, & hereupon the cōmon people haue conceived an opinion this long time, that soules are there purged: some, least they should seeme liars, heape vp more vanities to this fable, that it may appeare to be probable, & agreeable to reaso. But what be those vanities? namely, they feine certaine ghosts answering the, that they are going to mount *Hecla*: as the same Cardane saith. And further he addeth. Neither in Island only, but euery where (albeit seldeome) such things come to passe. And then he tels this storie following of a man-killing spright. There was (saith he) solemnized this last yeare the funerall of a cōmon citizen, in the gaie neare vnto the great Church, by that markerplace, which in regard of the abundance of herbs, in our tooing hath the name of the herbmarket. There meets with me one of mine acquaintance: (according to the custome of Phisitians) presently aske of what disease the man died? he giueth me answer that this man vsed to come home from his labour 3. houres within night: one night-mōg the rest he espied an hobgoblin pursuing him: which to auoid, he ran away with all speed: but being caught by the spright, he was throwne down vpon the ground. He would faine haue made a shour, & was not able. At length (when the spright & he had struggled together vpon the ground a good while) he was found by certain passengers, & carried home halfe dead. And when he was come to himselfe againe, being asked what was the matter, he vp and tolde this strange relation. Hereupon (being vtterly daunted, & discouraged, when neither by his friends, nor by Phisitians, nor by Priests, he could be perswaded, that these things were but his owne conceits, & that there was no such matter) 8. daies after he died. I heard also afterward of others which were his neighbors, that no man could more cōstantly affirme himselfe to be wounded of his enemy, then this man did, that he was cast vpon the ground by a ghost. And when some demanded what he did, after he was tumbled on the earth? The dead man (quoth he) laying his hands to my throat, went about to stragle me: neither was there any remedy, but by defending my selfe with mine own hands. When others doubted least he might suffer these things of a liuing man, they asked him how he could discern a dead man frō a liuing? To this, he rendered a very probable reason, saying that he seemed in handling to be like Corium, & that he had no weight, but held him down by maine force. And presently after he addeth. In like manner as in Island, so in the desert sands of *Egypt*, *Ethiopia*, and *India*, where the sunne is hot, the very same apparitions, the same sprights are wont to delude wayfaring men. Thus much Cardane. Yet from hence (I trow) no man will conclude as our writers of Island do, that in the places of *Egypt*, *Ethiopia*, and *India*, there is a prison of damned soules.

I thought good to write these things out of Cardane, that I may bzing euen the testimony of strangers on our sides, against such monstrous fables. This place of Cardane implicitly these two things, namely y^e apparitions of sprights are not proper to Island alone (which thing of mē know, if they do not maliciously feigne theselsures to be ignorant) And secondly that that conference of the dead with the liuing in y^e gulfe of *Hecla* is not grounded vpon any certaintie, but onlly vpon fables coined by some idle persons, being moze vaine then any bubble, which the busilly cōmon sort haue vsed, to confirme their opinion of the tormenting of soules. And is there any man so fantasticall, that wilbe induced to beleue these gulfes, mentioned by writers, to be any where extant, although they be neuer so ful of dead mens miracles? yea doubtlesse. If so frō hence also they say, y^e reproaches are iustly vsed against our nation: namely, y^e there is nothing in all the world moze base, & wofuller lesse then it, which containeth hell within the bounds therof. This verely is the good that we haue gotten by those historiographers, who haue bin so greedy to publish nouelties. But this opinion, hyped by the foolishnes of the cōmon people hath hitherto (as I hope) bene sufficiently ouerthrowne as a thing foolish & vaine, and as being deuised for the vbyapping of our nation. Therefore proceede (friendly Reader) and be farther instructed in this philosophy of infernall secrets.

The ninth session.

But round about the Iland, for the space of 7. or 8. moneths in a yere there floateth ife, making a miserable kind of mone, and not vnlike to mans voice, by reason of the clashing together. The inhabitants are of opinion that in mount *Hecla* and in the ife, there are places where the soules of their countrey men are tormented.

N^O doubt, a wofull augmentation of the history, concerning the hel of Island, but by twiſh the borome of one mountaine, & that no great one: yea, at some times (by firs and sea-son

Prifus and
Mundter.

changing places: namely
it delighteth to be ranging
into morsels of yce. On
historiographers another
dors haue not only hel to
come forth againe vnto
of the Iland that they w
catch Seales, euen vpon
ning retorne home safe an
kept in store by the Ilanders

But you had need wisel
tion of courage & condūcy
& will endure the torment
farther hurt: which thing is
And I am able to reckon by
bying some what farre from
of many leagues resting vpon
bates & nights being toller'd
consequence out of this prob
paines of this hell of ice, & 11
Month, being transported ag
some of which number are al
by this, & (if they please) let
in their vaine phantasies dese
e sportings. But to lay afte
fist of all therfore it is euide
lomb, neither 8. nor 7. moneths
gether it maketh monstrous so
the water, it sendeth forth an
like two mans voice, we may in
in mount *Hecla* we appoint ce
ced, we vtterly stand to the denie
borome of our hearts (who hath
kingdome of heauen) because he
soules of our deceased countreym
maintain that the soules of y^e good
to the purgatory, nor into
God, & into the heauenly paradiſe
that they wander not into the fire
carried away into vnto the fire
also, & are not cōmon, but far beyon
dies, but soules also, y^e is spirituell
we no wile nearer vnto this erre
hermans, Danes, & Frenchmen, it
the purpose, at all to disspite of the
by the grace and assistance of our I
we shall neuer see that vnto de
to here but by the disputation ce

any man shall take a great quant
either or vessel, it wil at that time w
that not the least part thereof, n
tally, this was of necessity to be a
appearely mans voice, & is the p
consist of y^e matter of some elem
ment (which may wisely be gath
hard & solide bodies, no other
of an elementary nature, & it must
it should be infernall, we can not

farre more vnassufferable then this ise, which vseth to be put into a bore with mens hands, & is not of force any whit to hurt euen naked flesh, by couching therof. Now yet will we grant it to be spiritual: for we haue learned in naturall philosophy, that spiritual substances can neither be seene nor felt, & cannot haue any thing taken from them: all which things do not withstanding most willingly agree to this ise of the Hydrographers, howsoeuer according to them it be supernatural. Besides also, it is most true, that the very same yst being melted with the heat of the sunne, & resolved into water, vpon the vpper part therof, standeth fishermen in as good stead to quench their thirst, as any land-river would do, which thing can no way be ascribed to a spiritual substance. It is not therefore spiritual, nor yet infernall. Now none will be so bold to affirme, that it hath respectuall matter, least some man perhaps might hereupon imagine, y this ise hath brought hell (which the Hydrographers annere vs to it) downe from heauen, together with it selfe: or that the same thing should be common vnto beauen, being of one & the same matter with ise, & so that the pylor of the damned may be thought to haue changed places with the beautifull paradise, & all by the oversight of these Hydrographers. Wherefore seeing the matter of this hydroicall ise is neither elementarie (as we haue so often proued by this place of Frisus) neither spiritual, nor infernall, which we haue concluded evidently, in short, yet sound and substantiall reasons: nor yet celestiall matter, which, religion forbiddeth a man once to imagine: it is altogether manifest, & according to the said Hydrographers, there is no such thing at all, which notwithstanding they blazie vnto us with such astonishing admiration, & which we thinke to be an oxbinary matter commonly seene and felt. Therefore it is, and it is not: which proposition when it shall fall out true, in the same respect, in the same part, and at the same time, then will we giue credite to these frozen miracles. Now therefore the Reader may easily iudge, that we need none other helpe to refute these things, but onely to shew how they disagree one with another. But it is no maruell that he, which hath once enclined himselfe to the fabulous reports of the common people, should oftentimes fall into error. There was a like strange thing inuented by another concerning the sympathy or continuing of this ise: namely, that it followeth the departure of that huge lump, whereof it is a part, so narrowly, & so swiftly, that a man by no diligence can obserue it, by reason of the vnbchangeable necessity of following. But we haue oftentimes seene such a solitarie lampe of ise remaining after the other parts thereof were vlyen away) and lying vpon the shore for many weekes together, without any possib. engines at all to stay it. Therefore it is plaine that these miracles of ise are grounded vpon a no slippery foundation then ise it selfe.

The elementall section.

Frissus.

Not farre from these mountaines (the three forenamed) declining to the sea shore, there be foure fountaines of a most contrary nature betwene themselves. The first, by reason of his continuall heat converteth into a stone any body cast into it, the former shape only still remaining. The second is extremely cold. The third is sweeter then hony, and most pleasant to quench thirst. The fourth is altogether deadly, pestilent, and full of ranke poison.

Then this description of fountaines doth sufficiently declare how impure that fountain was, out of which the geographer drew all these miraculous stories. For he seemeth to affirme, that the three foresaid mountaines doe almost touch one another: for he seemeth to affirme, that they are differently vnto them all. Other wise, if he had not made them stand neare together, he would haue placed next vnto some one of these, two of the foresaid fountaines. But neither doe the fountaines touch, being distant so many leagues a sunner) neither are there any such fountaines neare vnto them, which he that wil not beleue, let him go try. But to confute these things, the very contrariety of wnters is sufficient. For another concerning two fountaines gainstly situate in these woods. There do burst out of the same hill Hecla two fountaines, the one whereof, by reason of the cold streames, the other with intollerable heat exceedeth al the force of elementall. These be Frissus his two first fountaines, saying that here is omitted the miracle of hardening bodies, being by him attributed to one of the said fountaines. But they cannot at one time burst forth, both out of the mountaine it selfe, and neare vnto the mountaine.

But here I would willingly demand, by what reason any of the Peripateticks can affirme that there is some thing in nature colder then the element of water, y hotter then the element of fire. From whence (I pray you, learned writers) proceedeth this colosselle? From what source cometh this heat? Have we not learned out of your schole that water is an element most cold, somewhat moist: and in such sort most cold, that for the making of secundarie qualities, it is necessarily be remitted, & being simple, that it cannot be applyed to the vices of mankind? I will deliuer these Oracles of the naturall philosophers, not knowing whether they be true or no. John Fernellius, lib. 2. Phys. cap. 4. may stand for one witnesse among al the rest, & in the end all, So excessive (say he) be these foure first qualities in the foure elements, that as no

is hotter the pure fire, & no is for pure water, there is none of, nor the moisture of aire, they cannot be any whiter then snow, or arguments of the nature of it while they too much magnify the things created, as well as parties of these fountaines see heat. There be very many Baths, we thinke ought not to make want every where about, but Baths of Baden, Gebars, mous: all which Fuchsius doeth also France, & beyond all Rhode reporteth, that about E calls Priplegethon. And A ofers of nature haue as well foundly, that water runneth from thence taketh not onely be Mando hath taught this. The e but also of spirit & fire: some whence also doeth flow, somit temperate. And Seneca, Empedocles secretly containeth in many places water passeth. And Pontanus w

No marvell though h
hote Baths, or ve
For / means forge inc
doeth teach vs pla
And bowels burne, ar
From hence the fl
And Baths doe boi

I thought good in this place to re
of the Danes reporteth. Th
to be brinke: sometimes again
fountaines. Which kind of fountaine
of some like vnto them, pro
counting strange. Plinie maketh a
enedor, which at the Salitium of
the fire. In the field of Pitinas bey
of summer alwaies encreaseth,
fountaine, which every houre do
runneth vnder the ground, and after
in Argolica, Tigris in Mesopota
the things which were thowen into
valencie. And Seneca writeth that
er ground, are withdrawen ou
their course. And againe Plinie re
teach vs that the fountaines of I
forth with conuert into a stone
of most vehement heat, & a ver
And I haue heard reported (thoug
fountain in Island not far fro the be
reporteth of the like, saying: That e
hardening the bowels of those m

is hotter the pure fire, & nothing lighter: so nothing is drier then earth, & nothing heavier and
as for pure water, there is no qualitie of any medicine whatsoeuer exceedeth the coldnes there-
of, nor the moisture of aire. Moreover, the said qualities be so extreme & surpassing in the, that
they cannot be any whit encreased, but remitted they may be. I wil not heare heape up the rea-
sons of arguments of the natural Philosophers. These writers had need be warie of one thing,
lest while they too much magnifie the miracles of the fountains, they exempt them out of the num-
ber of things created, aswell as they did the ice of the Islanders. We wil prosecute in order the pro-
perties of these fountains set downe by the foresaid writers. The first by reason of his continuall
heat. There be very many Baths of hote fountains in *Iceland*, but fewer vehemently hote, which
we thinke ought not to make any man wonder, when as I haue learned out of authors, that Ger-
manie every where aboundeth with such hote Baths, especially neere the foot of the Alpes. *Spann hote
Baths in
Iceland.*
The most famous of these is at *Wittenberg* and many other be very fa-
mous: all which *Fuchsius* doeth mention in his booke *de Arte medendi*. And not onely Germanie,
but also France, & beyond all the rest Italy that mother of all commodities, saith *Cardan*. And *A-
ristotle* reporteth, that about *Epyrus* these hote waters doe much abound, whereupon the place is
called *Pyriplegethon*. And *I say* these things should therefore be y^e lesse admited, because the place is
riches of nature haue as wel found out causes of the heat in waters, as of the fire in mountaines:
namely, that water runneth within the earth through certaine veins of *Pyrimstone* & *Alum*, and
from thence taketh not onely heat, but taste also, & other strange qualities. *Aristotle* in his booke *de
Meteoris* hath taught this. The earth (saith he) containeth within it fountains not only of water,
but also of spirite & fire: some of them flowing like rivers, doe cast forth red hote iron: from
whence also doeth flow, sometimes luke-warme water, sometimes skalding hote, and sometimes
temperate. And *Seneca*, *Empedocles* thought that Baths were made hote by fire, which the earth
secretly containeth in many places, especially if the said fire bee vnder that ground where the
water passeth. And *Pontanus* writeth very learnedly concerning the *Baian Baths*.
Lib. 3. met. quest.

No maruell though from banke of *Baian* shore
hote Baths, or veins of skalding licour flow:
For *Vulcans* forge incensed euermore
doeth teach vs plaine, that heart of earth below
And bowels burne, and fire enraged glow,
From hence the flitting flood sends smokie streames,
And Baths doe boile with secret burning gleames,

I thought good in this place to touch that which *Saxo Grammaticus* the most famous histo-
riographer of the Danes reporteth. That certaine fountains of *Iceland* do sometime encrease & flow
up to the brinke: sometimes againe they fall so lowe that you can scarce discern them to be
fountains. Which kind of fountains, albeit they bee very selborne found with vs, yet I will make
mention of some like vnto them, produced by nature in other countries, lest any man should thinke
them strange. *Plinie* maketh a great recitall of these. There is one (saith he) in the Isle of
Sentob, which at the *Solstitium* of summer both alwaies flow from the third houre of the night,
till the first, in the field of *Picinas* beyond the *Apennine* mountaine, there is a river which in the
winter season alwaies encreaseth, and in winter is dried vp. We maketh mention also of a very
great fountain, which euery houre doeth encrease and fall. Whether it is to be omitted, that some
times run vnder the ground, and after that fall againe into an open chanel: as *Lycus* in Asia, *Era-
clides* in Argolica, *Tigris* in Mesopotamia, vnto which *Cardan* addeth *Tanais* in Moscouia: and
other things which were throwen into *Aesculapius* fountaine at Athens, were cast by againe in
the same ground, and were taken out of sight, seeming for the time to be utterly perished and ta-
ken away, and that after some distance the very same rivers returne, enjoying their former name
and course. And againe *Plinie* reporteth that there is a river receiued vnder ground in the
Isle of *Atinas* that issueth out twentie miles from that place. All which examples and the like,
doth teach vs that the fountains of *Iceland* are not to be made greater wonders then the rest.
Which most vehement heat, & a vertue of hardening bodies, both *Frisius* describe his first foun-
tain in *Iceland* and not far fro the bishops seat of *Schalholt*, in a village called *Haukadall*. *Se-
neca* reporteth of the like, saying: That there is a certain fountain which conuerteth wood into
stone, hardening the bowels of those men which drinke thereof. And addeth further, that such
fountains
B b b

fountains are to bee found in certaine places of Italy: which thing Ouid in the 15. booke of his Metamor. ascribeth vnto the riuer of the Cicones;

Water drunke out of Ciconian flood.

fleshy bowels to flintie stone doeth change:

Ought else therewith besprinkled, as earth or wood

becomnieth marble straight a thing most strange,

And Cardane, *Georgius Agricola* affirmeth, that in the territorie of *Elbogan*, about the town which is named of Falcons, that the whole bodies of Pine trees are conuerted into stone, and which is more wonderfull, that they containe, within certaine rifts, the stone called *Pyrites*, or the Flint. And *Domitius Brusonius* reporteth, that in the riuer of *Silar* (running by the foote of that mountain which standeth in the field of the citie in old time called *Vrsence*, but now *Contrafisa*) leaues and boughs of trees change into stones, & that, not vpon other mens credite, but vpon his own experience, being borne & brought vpin that country: which thing *Plinie* also auoucheth, saying, that the said stones doe shew the number of their yeeres, by the number of their Barks, or stony husks. So (if we may giue credite to author) drops of the *Goethes* fountain being dispersed abroad, become stones. And in Hungary, the water of *Cepusius* being poured into pichers, is conuerted to stone. And *Plinie* reporteth, that wood being cast into the riuer of the *Cicones*, and into the *Velin* lake in the field of *Pice*, is enclosed in a barke of stone growing ouer it.

The second is extremely cold. As for the second fountain, here is none to any mens knowledge so extremely cold: In deed there be very many that bee indifferently coole, in former times (our common riuers in the Sommer time being like warme) wee take delight to fetch water from those coole springes. It may be that there are some farre colder in other countreys: for *Cardane* maketh mention of a riuer (streaming from the top of an hill in the field of *Corinth*) colder then snow: and within a mile of *Culma*, the riuer called *Infana* seeming to be very hote is most extremely cold, &c.

The third is sweeter then hony. Neither is this altogether true. For there is not any fountain with vs, which may in the least respect be compared with the sweetnesse of hony. And *Pyro Saxo* wrote more truly, saying, that certaine fountains (for there be very many) yeelding taste as good as beere: and also in the same place there are fountains & riuers not onely of diuers taste, but of diuers colours.

And albeit naturall Philosophers teach, that water naturally of it selfe hath neither taste nor smell, yet it is likely (as we haue touched before, which other call *per accidens*) that oftentimes it representeth the qualities of that earth wherein it is engendred, and through the veins whereof it hath passage and issue: and from hence proceed the diuers & sundry smells, colours and saours of all waters. Of such waters both *Seneca* make mention, whereof some prouoke hunger, others make men drunken, some hurt the memory, & some helpe it, & some resemble the very qualitie of wine, as that fountain which *Plinie* speaketh of in the Ile of *Andros*, within the temple of *Bachus*, which in the *Mones* of *January* vsed to flow ouer with wine. And *Aristotle* reporteth, that in the field of *Carthage* there is a fountain which yeeldeth oile, & certaine drops smelling like Cedar. Also *Orcus* a riuer of *Thessalie* flowing into *Peneus*, swimmeth aloft like oile. *Cardane* reporteth, that there is in *Saxonia*, neere vnto the town of *Brunswic*, a fountain mixed with wine, and another in *Sueuia* neere vnto the Abbey called *Tergensich*. Also in the valley of the mountain *Iurassus*. We suppose the cause of this thing to be very fittie pitch, which cannot but commingle oile in it. The same author saith: It is reported that in *Cardia* neere to the place of *Dalchibis* in the white field, there is water sweeter then milke. Another also neere vnto the bylde which we passe ouer going to the towne of *Valdeburg*. *Propertius* likewise in the third booke of his legies mentioneth certaine waters representing the saour of wine in these words.

Amidst the Ile of *Naxos* loe, with fragrant smells and fine

A feshet runs; ye *Naxians* goe fill cups, carouse, there's wine.

This *Naxus* is one of the Islands called *Cyclades* lying in the *Aegagan* sea; *Cardane* giueth reason hereof, namely, because *Pyromel* or water-hony, in long continuance will become like *Aristotle* nameth a fountain in *Sicilia*, which the inhabitants vse in stead of vinegar. The same author maketh the cause of saours in water to be heate, because the earth being hote changes and giueth saour vnto the water.

Now concerning the colours of water so saith *Cardane*. There is the same reason (saith he) of the colours of water, that there is of the saours thereof, for both haue their originall from the earth. For there is white water within two miles of *Glaucia* a town in *Misena*: red water in the *dera* a riuer of *Misena* not farre from *Radeburg*: & in old time neere vnto *Ioppa* in *India*: green water in the mountaine of *Carpathus*: by *Newjola*: skie-coloured or blue water betwene the

Kiars of
Island in some
time season
like warme.

In lib. de mirab.
auct.

mountains of *Feltrius* & *myphi*: cole-blacke water into the *Weser*. The causes about the promontorie of *I* that *Mariners* are driuen furthermoze, they say that peere: for sometimes it is gr.

Concerning the smells of Insects. But for the most peldome times smell well. Tonly of fishes, but also of bene drawn most sweet smel that no man should make in Island, then at those wif

The fourth is altogether water being drunke, extinguiet of *Syr* (neere the mountain but an horse-hoofe: and it is differing from other water, nee as an hill of the people called our remedy, & yet without e hark mention of a poole, into w lake of *Ennius*, which *Saxo* doe at this day do testify that it is y new God immortall thanks, t tains from serpents and vener

Furthermore about the soie mountains called by *Munster* a from our *Spines*. Wherefore, b fountains, which they doe so mighines also, standing a like villai hies, as *Munster* would haue it hichone hitherto declared) is t the remembrance of our fathers, dence of *Bymstone*: namely, c f of whereas the Island is deuide (say, but even the halfe thereof) d *Bymstone* paid for tribute of the

There are so great store of fish in the open aire, as high as the tops of

In the open aire, In deed we haue their ships of our landish wares, & amaze. But whether our men haue plentiful and ancient abundance of fish, the want of these and other goods, which I pray God we may dr

They haue most swift horses, which goe leagues,

A Certaine Cosmographer in his writeth, that they will run 20. leagues in a day. For *Munster* writeth, that they, called *Rangiferi*, cannot run

There be seen sometimes neere vnto some ships, yncleffe they be terrified a

The true state of *Iceland*. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

567

mountains of *Feltrius* & *Tarvisius*; & it is reported that there was water of that colour in *Thermopoli*: cole-black water in *Altera* a tiuer of *Saxonia*, at that place where it disc' hargeth it self into the *Wefer*. The causes of these colours are the colours of the soile. Also Aristotle saith, that about the promontorie of *Iapigia*, there is a fountaine which streameth blood: adding moreouer, furthermore, they say that in *Idumæa* there is a fountaine which changeith color foure times in a yeere: for sometimes it is greene, sometime white, sometime bloodie, & sometimes muddy coloured.

Concerning the kindes of waters, thus writeth *Cardane*. There is the like reason of difference in smells. But for the most part the steames of waters bee vnpleasant, because the earth doeth onely of fishes, but also of men. About *Meton* in *Messania*, out of a certaine pond there hath end that no man should make a greater wonder at the colours, smells, and sauiours of waters than be in *Iceland*, then at those which are in other countreys.

The fourth is altogether deadly. *Isidore* affirmeth, that there is a certaine fountaine whose water being drunke, extinguisheth life. And *Plinie* saith, that about *Nonaris* in *Arcadia*, the ribut an horse-hoofe: and it is reported that *Alexander* the great was poisoned therewithal, not su an hull of the people called *Tauri*, there are three fountains, every one of them deadly without remedy, & yet without griefe. And (which is the strangest thing of all the rest) *Seneca* maketh mention of a poole, into which whosoever looke, do presently die. But, as for this fourth fountain of *Frisius*, which *Saxo* doeth like wise mention, we *Icelanders*, as alwayes heretofore, so euen now God immortal thanks, because he hath vouchsafed to preserve our nation from such foules, from serpents and venomous wormes, & from al other pestiferous & contagious creatures.

Furthermore about the fore said mountains there is such abundance of brimstone. The three mountains called by *Munster* and *Frisius*, & *Ieric* mountains, do all of them stand an huge distance from our *Spines*. Wherefore, when as weere vnto these hills they haue found out a place for foure fountains, which they doe so mightily extoll for wonders, they must needs haue some *Brimstone* Hells, as *Munster* would haue it, nor by *Frisius* his fountains (the report whereof how true it is, hath bene hitherto declared) is *Brimstone* digged by at this day: nor I thinke euer was within the remembrance of our fathers. Neither is it true that *Munster* reporteth concerning the abundance of *Brimstone*: namely, that it is almost the onely merchandize and tribute of the *Iceland*. For whereas the *Iceland* is divided into foure partes, the fourth part onely towards the North (not, but euen the halfe thereof) doeth vse it for merchandize, and there is not one crumme of *Brimstone* paid for tribute of the *Iceland*.

The same Mountaines
doe saue.

Iceland free
from snakes
and other ven-
omous beasts

Brimstone
spines onely
in the North
part of *Iceland*.

There is so great store of fishes in this *Iceland*, that they are laid forth on piles to be sold in the open aire, as high as the tops of houses.

The open aire. In deed we haue seen other country merchants doe so, until they had unladed their ships of outlandish wares, & filled the againe with fishes & with other of our country merchandize. But whether our men haue done the like at any time, it is not manifest. Certainly, that with the want of these and other good things, the *Icelanders* now begin to be pinched, which I pray God we may duly acknowledge.

They haue most swift horses, which wil run without ceasing a continual course for the space of 30. leagues. Certaine Cosmographer in his Map of *Iceland* reporteth concerning the heftles of one particular fish, that they will run 20. leagues at once in a continued race. But we account both to be possible. For *Munster* writeth that those beasts which excell all other in swiftnesse & strength, called *Rangiferi*, cannot run about 30. leagues in 24. houres.

The thirteenth Section.

There be seen sometimes weere vnto *Iceland* huge Whales like vnto mountains, which ouercome ships, vnlesse they be terrified away with the sound of trumpets, or beguiled with round

Many beere.

Munster.

and emptie vessels, which they delight to tosse vp and downe. It sometimes falleth out that Mariners thinking these Whales to be Ilands, and casting out ankers vpon their backs, are often in danger of drowning. They are called in their tongue *Trollwal* Tuffelwalen, that is to say, the deuillish Whale.

Like vnto mountains. Loe here once againe (gentle Reader) Munsters falsifying echo, and (as the proverbe saith) his blind dreame. Such a false and senselesse over-reaching doeth exceedingly disgrace an historie, and that by so much the more, by how much the lesse necessary it is. For to what purpose should an Historiographer make leadings, if history be a report of plaine truth? Why should he vse such strange surmountings? What is it that he would perfwade, or whither would he rauish the Reader, if he propoundeth vnto himselfe nothing but the simple declaration of things?

Poets and Painters had leaue of old,
To feigne, to blaze, in all things to be bold.

But not Historiographers.

The backs of Whales which they thinke to be Ilands. This fable, like all the rest, was hyed of an old, ridiculous and vaine tale, the credite and truth whereof is not woorth a strawe. And it is this that foloweth, namely, that the bishop of Brene (called by the ancient *Wales* Brandan, and by *Kranzius*, if he be not deceiued, Alebrandus) in old time sent certaine Legates with a Cennet of Friers to preach and publish in the North the popish faith, which was then thought to be Christian: and when they had spent a long journey in sailing towards the North, they came vnto an Island, and there casting their anker they went a shoze, and kindled fires, (for it is very likely that the Mariners were not a little vexed with the nipping cold which they felt at sea) and so provided victuals for the rest of their journey. But when their fires grew very hote, this Island smelt, and suddenly vanished away, and the Mariners escaped by swimming very narrowly with the boate that was present. This is the foundation of the matter, but how incredible it is, I appeale to the Reader. But what ailed these Mariners, or what meant they to doe, who in a tempestuous sea, seeing a rocke before their eyes, or (as Munster saith) a little Island, would not rather with all diligence haue auoided it for feare of running a shoze and shipwacke, then to rest in such a dangerous harbour? But in what ground should the anker be fastened? for Mariners for the most part are destitute of such long cables, where by they may let downe an anker to the bottom of the maine sea, therefore vpon the backs of Whales, saith Munster. But then they had need first to haue a hole for the flouke to take hold in. Silly Mariners, that in digging cannot discerne Whales flesh full lumps of earth, nor know the slippery skin of a Whale from the upper part of the ground: without doubt they are woorthy to haue Munster for a Pilot. Verily in this place (as like wise before creating of the land-miracles of Island) he gathereth fruits as they say, out of Cantalus his garden, and foloweth hard after those things which will neuer and no where be found, while he endeavourerth to poule here and there for miracles, perusing sea and land to stufte vp his history: where notwithstanding he cannot hunt out ought but feigned things.

But they are called in their language *Trollwal*. So not farther then your skill, Munster, say I take it you cannot skill of our tongue: and therefore it may be a shame for a learned man to teach others that which he knoweth not himselfe: for such an attempt is subiect to manifold errors, as we will shew by this your example. For while you take in hand to schoole others, & to teach them by what name a Whale-fish is to be called in our tongue, leauing out though ignorance the letter H, which almost alone maketh by the signification of the worde, you deliuer that which is untrue: for *val* in our language signifieth not a Whale, but chusing or choise of the verbe *Eg val* that is to say, I chuse, or I make choise, from whence *val* is deriued, &c. But a Whale is called *Hvalur* with vs, & therefore you ought to haue writtten *Trollhvalur*. Neither doeth *Troll* signifie the deuil, as you interpret it, but certaine Giants that lue in mountaines. You see therefore (and no marue) how you erre in the whole worde. It is no great iniurie to our language being in one word onely: because (doubtlesse) you knew not more then one.

Others also do offend in the same fault, for it is not to be allowed that a certaine man being about to publish a Map of Island received from Islanders themselves, had rather marre the names of all, or in very deed of the most names of Capes, Baies, mountaines, springes, riuers, homocks, vallies, hills & townes (because that being ignorant of our language, he was not able to read things aright, which he receiued from our countrey men) he had rather (if I say) depaue & corrupt them all, then learne of the Islanders themselves, which at that time, namely in the yeere 1584, used in the vniuersitie of Hafnia, or Copen Hagen, how euery thing ought to be read and writtten. And we esteeme him for this his wilfull marring of our native names and wordes, (whereupon

Certain letters sent by Brandan, Bishop of Brene, to preach Christian faith in the North.

came to passe that we read no slight offender against

But now we haue after
have mentioned. For with
this section to touch that
put forth in a foyle said peer
besides the Countrey where
Which thing where he recei
to be found in our own w
but a tale, & hath not one
be died of a white colour,
crime no colour: nor with
that there is a riuier in Spac
pieler called the Roiall looki
to Ireland, which is also cal
Reader, reading in a strange

That like wise deserueth
caine great stone in Island
no outward force, but by th
what will be not beleue: if
med to Lucian to haue fained
perhaps the sayd Authoz doth
name of Stein) should compa
to put into a story of won
supposed to saue the credite
which is so senselesse of it selfe

They are guiltie of the same
all white in Island: for it is
of the sea, vnto vs, as beares
called by the Islanders *Iakrak*

And these in a manner be the
present to aske, as touching
purpose (as in the beginning
Island, and the affected banitie
with any mans good name: but
ere, I could not chuse but spee
concerning our Island deserue
belong concerning the Inhabitants

Here end

Of Island

Being hitherto finished
ging to the first part, ch
were the fountaine of
haue bene very carelesse
the pleasant speech doeth
the Inhabitants: wherein wh
of the men: For there be such mon
and vs poor Islanders
with some things of theirs who take
perhaps) in so much that to reckon
the certain sea. But as I said in the
though Kranzius, Munsterius, & P
not having of herwise deserued wel of
mention to vs that they are woorth
of the marke of Islanders, yet is i

Wann herbe
Zuflucht wilst
tess?

Speculum regale.

Waltures,
bears and
crows come
upon the drift
ice into
Island.

Here endeth the first part of the Commentarie.

 Auring hitherto finished the miracles of Island with certaine other particulars belong-
 ing to the first part, the which while writers doe wonder at, and diuersly extoll as it
 were the fountains of Agamemnon, yea, as things besides and against all nature, they
 haue bene very carelesse both of truerh it selfe, & of their owne credite. Now the courte
 of the present speech doeth aduonish mee to make haste vnto the other part of the treitile con-
 cerning the Inhabitants: wherein what I should first say, or where I should begin, I am altogether
 vnacquainted: and vs poore Islanders dwelling in the remotest parts of the world (and amongst these
 some things of theirs who take vpon them to pposell most simple truerh, namely Plinio-
 phers) in summe, that to reckon vp the particulars were nothing els but to tell the drops of
 the Ocean sea. But as I said in the beginning, we will not deale alike feuerely with all. For al-
 though otherwise deferred wel of learning by their monuments, they haue still in þ same re-
 uenion to vs that they are worthy of. Howbeit in the meane time, although a man would fere the
 in the marke of landers, yet is it no small matter that they should haue certaine senselesse,

 B b 3

unpossible & ridiculous things, such as those are which we have hitherto laid downe: as also that they should recorde in histories prophane and horrible vntruthes, some of which kind shal now immediately be discussed. As for others, whatsoever they be, who vpheld the nation of Islanders weekly daily reproches, they are to haue that answere in a reuoluelle which such men deserve. In the number of whom, that scroffer is to be accounted, who by a company of rimes published in the German tongue, to the disgrace of our countrey, hath brought his name into euermlasting ignominy.

Wherefore as our present businessle requieth, while we are in hand with the writings of Authors concerning this matter, although we meet with some things containing litle reproch, notwithstanding we will examine most of them, noting the errors as hitherto wee haue done: in the meane time also when they shall alleage any trueth, we will in no case dissemble it. And after this manner, first we will heare Munster, Krantzius and Frisius, and others also, if there be any more, what they haue to say, reiecting that Parot and his Dutch rimes infected with fell slander, as he is tooothy, vnto the last place. First therefore the sayd Authors write concerning the faith & religion of the Islanders: and secondly, of their Spaners, Customs, and course of life in manner following.

The first Section.

Adalbert Metropolitan of Hamburg in the yeere of Christ 1070. saw the Islanders converted vnto Christianitie: albeit, before the receiuing of Christian faith, they liued according to the lawe of nature, and did not much differ from our lawe: therefore at their humble request, he appointed a certaine holy man named *Iuse* to be their first Bishop.

Krantzius in
prefatione
fuz
Norwegia.

Krantzius in these wordes, and Munster other where, doe seeme to attribute vnto the Islanders the prerogative of Christian faith: and they should deale both becoming themselves and the trueth, if they did not in other places depprue vs of the same. * 02 (to speake of Krantzius againe) that which Munster before reported concerning our faith or opinion about the place and situation of hell, is very farre from Christian pietie: namely, to be desirous to pry into those secrets which God hath kept close vnto himselfe alone, and which his pleasure is, should exceed our capacitie: for there is not any thing found in the holy Scriptures of this matter, where the place and situation of hell, or of eternall fire prepared for the deuill and his angels, and so for all damned soules, is bounded or compassed about. The holy Bible (I say) assigneth no local or bodily situation beneath the earth, or vpon the earth, or in any other place of this world, to that prison of the damned: but it affirmeth that this earth shall perish, and that a new earth, and new heauens shall be created for the habitation of iust and holy men. Reuel. 2. 1. Pet. 3. and Eia 65. wherefore a Christian man willingly giueth ouer to search into such hidden secrets: and he accounteth it vnauseful to receiue or deliuer vnto others, opinions (grounded vpon no plaine and manifest places of Scripture) for certainties and trueths, Deut. 4. and 12. Eia 8. Matth. 27. 2. Tim. 3.

Further also that commendation wherewith Munster and Krantzius doe grace the Islanders, is meere contrary to Christian religion: namely, that they make al one reckoning of their whyles and of their children. But more of this matter anon in the 7. section. So therefore Munster disagreeeth with himselfe, whereas those whom he affirmeth to be Christians, after ward he maketh to be master-builders of hell. Also Krantzius and Munster both together, when as these whom they affirme to be engrafted by faith into Christ, they exempt from all sense of pietie and honesty, in the they write that their soules are not dearer vnto them then their whelpes.

But to returne to the matter: In very deed we haue no great thing to say concerning our religion, what, or of what sort it was when Gentilisme was first put to flight. No more (I thinke) haue other Northern nations neere vnto vs to say concerning the beginning of their faith. For as we must needs confesse & bewaile with deepe sighes, that vntill that day which shined vnto vs like the beginning of immortallitie, & brought vnto vs the pure doctrine of the gospel, our countrey as likewise other churches of the North, were ouer-spread with more then Christian darkness. But we may iustly and religiously thinke thus much, that among vs and our neighbours Norway (for I wil not range out of my bounds, nor affirme any thing of vnkownen people) when heathenish idolatry was rooted out, Christian faith & religion did flourish far more sincere and simple, as being lesse infected with the poison of poperie at that time, then after ward, when as the stiferous leauen of the see of Rome being augmented, & the contagious mistiefe growing, the poison thereof was dispersed through the whole world: for, as it shal afterward appeare, many embraced Christ many yeeres before the new idolatry of the popish began to preuaile, and we found someth but faith in God the Father, the Sonne & the holy Ghost, like vnto those most renowned kings of Norway, who as they had one common name, so had they one common

care and profession to was borne in the yeere age, and was the first, reigned four yeeres: in the yeere of Christ 1011 he boldly deliuer the his murderers, he shed

Our countrey also his, who about the yeere Island called Landehum and sage counsell was a many fierce murdres, the did not in any quarrels, to composition a great in his life. So carefully were desirous also to auer self, but it turned to his his life and possessions. That it was wonderful from of things to come, as was ioynd with counsell betw of Nialus: 02, the thing is d uerly pudently, and with ad some without his knowled his death, and when his ene at length he brake into the God. Nowbeit, I put my h although this our tralle bo that it shal be deliuered from the flames, he with his wife I hope vndoubtedly full woule amidst the very pang

Therefore adde those the beginning of Christianitie re ned in the darkenes of error

But after the Lord God by and by his goodly successeours, heauie clothe, and thicke miste rit Matth. 1. 2. v. 28.) did pluck his lasting health: We all, and 24. Ietmal (Eia 40. v. 28.) i

17. Ialmighty (Gen. 17. 1. Reu king and governing of all thing

Godhead and their properties, God the Father the first person

(Gen. 1. v. 1. and in those that fo of our Lord Iesus Christ (Psal. 2

15.) keeper of our soules and bo Godhead is the Sonne of God the

equal to his Father (1. Chro. 17 creation of all things (1. Pet. 1. 3

the Messias (Gen. 3. 15. &c.) pu (Gen. 1. 2. 3. &c.) vnto Isaac (Ge

Gen. 49. 9. Eia. 11. 1. 10.) pessi

namely by the offering of Isaac

Jonas 2. &c.) proclaimed by

innocence of time truly exhibited:

was raised againe for our iustifica

and making intercession for vs ac

The true state of *Iceland*. Traffiques, and Discoveries.

571

The first chape
marking of
Nojwag.

Nialus the first
known pio-
fessour of Chri-
stian faith in
Iceland.

care and profession to advance the gospel of Christ. I meane Olaus the sonne of I hrygo, who was borne in the yere of Christ 968, attaining to the kingdom: of Norway in the 27. yere of his age, and was the first, as we haue heard, that offered Christ vnto the Norwegians, ouer whom he reigned fūe yeres: and another of that name called Olaus Sanctus the sonne of Harald, who in the yere of Christ 1013. or thereabout, gouerned with moze frueritie, & for the space of 17. yeres, did boldly deliuer the doctrine of Christ. In the yere of Christ 1030. being vniuſly ſlaine by tolt:

Our countrey alſo had, among many other, one man of excellent pietie in a town of Norway called *Sticla Stodum*. his, who about the yere of Christ 1000. liued in the village of *Bertorshol* whose name was *Nialus*. and sage counsell was accompted famous. For whereas in his time Iceland was turmoiled with many fierce mutinies, the inhabitants being in ſubjection to no ſuperiour magiſtrate, he intermeddled not in any quarrels, ſauing that by his diſcreet verue & diligence, he ſet through and brought his liſe. So carefully auoyded he all ſeditious and ſtrifes: and gaue good aſſiſtance to others, who were deſtrous alſo to auoyd and eſcape them: neither did any man euer put in practice his counſel, but it turned to his eſpecial good: no euer any did ſuerue therefrom, but with the danger of his liſe and poſſeſſions. The wiues of rather the oracles that came from him were ſo certaine, of things to come, as was found to be in him. Whereupon his diſcreet and prouident wiſedome ioyned with counſell became a prouerbe amongſt vs *Nialus bytaraden*: That is to ſay, the counſell and prouidentie, and with admirable diſcretion. This man, when, for a ſlaughter committed by his ſonne without his knowledge, he was in his owne houſe beſet with a 100. men, who had conſpired his death, and when his enemies began on all ſides to ſet his houſe on fire, ſeeing his ende approach at length he brake into theſe words. Doubleſſe theſe things happen by fate, that is, by the will of God, howbeit, I put my hope and confidence in Chriſt, that he (meaning his wiſe, and himſelfe) althoough this our fraille body ſhall vndergoe the corruption of death, in the fire of our enemies, yet, that it ſhall be deliuered from eternal flames. And ſo in the midſt of theſe voyces, and in the fury of the flames, he with his wife and the maſlayer his ſonne, in the yere of Chriſt 1010. ended his liſe, ſo ſoone as he ſaw the very pang of death.

I therefore added theſe things to the w by what reaſon I was moued to thinke, that in the very beginning of Chriſtianitie receiued amongſt vs, mens minds were not ſo beguiled and ouerwhelmed in the darkeneſſe of errors, as of late, a liſe: before theſe our times, they haue bene.

But after the Lord God by Luther, and Luthers fellow-labourers in the vineyard of the Lord, and by his godly ſucceſſours, did make the doctrine of ſaluation moze maniſeſt, and ſhaking off the heauie ſhoe, and thicke miſſe of our minds by the ſinger of his right hand, that is by his holy Spirit Math. 12. v. 28. did plucke the eares of our hearts, and opened our eyes, that we might behold his ſhining health: We all, and euery of vs do beleue and confeſſe, that God is a ſpirit (Iohn 4. v. 24.) eternal (Eſay 40. v. 28.) infinite (Ierc. 23. v. 24. Pſal. 139. v. 7. 8. 9.) moſt good (Matth. 19. v. 17.) almighty (Gen. 17. 1. Reuel. 1. 8.) one in being, and nature: one in prouidence: one in the ma- king and gouerning of all things (Deut. 6. 5. Ephe. 4. 5.) But diſtinguiſhed by the perſons of the God the Father the firſt perſon of the Godhead creator of heauen and earth, and all other things (Gen. 1. v. 1. and in thoſe that ſollow) the vpholder & gouernor of all (Pſa. 115. 3. Heb. 1. 3.) Father of our Lord Ieſus Chriſt (Pſal. 2. 7. and verſes following) and our Father through him (Rom. 8. 15.) keeper of our ſoules and bodies (Luke 12. 12.) And that Ieſus Chriſt the ſecond perſon of the Godhead is the ſonne of God the Father (Iohn 1. 18. &c.) onely begotten (Iohn 1. 29. Heb. 1. 2.) equal to his Father (1. Chro. 17. 13. Ioh. 1. 1.) true God (Iohn 1. 2. &c.) ſo appointed before the creation of all things (1. Pet. 1. 20. Reuel. 1. 3. &c.) and preſently after mans fall promiſed to be the Meſſias (Gene. 3. 15. &c.) publiſhed eſt ſoones vnto the holy Patriarches, as vnto Abraham (Gen. 12. 3. &c.) vnto Iſaac (Gen. 26. 4.) vnto Iacob (Gene. 28. 14.) and confirmed by promiſes (Gen. 49. 9. Eſa. 11. 1. 10.) prefigured by ſacrifices of Moſes (Leu. 1. 2. &c.) and by other types, namely by the offering of Iſaac (Gen. 22.) by the liſting vp of the braſen ſerpent (Num. 21.) by Jonas (Jonas 2. &c.) proclaimed by the teſtimony of the Prophets (Eſa. 7. 14.) and at length in theſe times truly eſpited: true man (Iohn 1. 14. &c. Gal. 4.) that died for our ſinnes, and was raiſed againe for our iuſtification (Rom. 4. 25. &c.) Aſcending into heauen (Acts 1. 9. &c.) and making interceſſion for vs at the right hand of his Father without ceaſing (1. Iohn 2. 1. &c.) by

is ſumme of
the Iſlanders
Religion.

by his holy Spirit (which is the third person of the Godhead, coequal, and consubstantial to the Father and the Sonne, Acts. 5. 4.) gathering the Church to himselfe by the Word, and Sacraments (Math. 16. 18. Rom. 10. 14. &c. and sanctifying it to eternal life, Acts. 9. 3. 1. &c. And the one day at the end of the world he will come from heauen (Acts. 1. 11.) to iudge the quicke and the dead (1. Thes. 4. 15.) that he will render vnto the wicked according to their works, and that he will iudge them to eternal paines (Math. 13. 42. & 25. 4.) but that he will reward them with eternal life, who beleene in his Name (Math. 25. 34.) This Iesus Christ (I say) wee acknowledge to be our redeemer (Math. 1. 21.) our head (1. Corin. 12. 27.) and our Lord (Eph. 4. 5.) And that wee in our holy baptisme doe giue, and haue giuen our names vnto him (Acts. 2. 38.) and that we are engrafted into him by baptisme (1. Corin. 12. 13.) And this we do plainely, ingenuously freely, and willingly confesse, and witness: And as for all others who inuent any other name in heauen giuen vnto men by which they may be saued, we doe earnestly detest, curse, and condemne them (Acts. 4. 12.) We holde his most holy Word to be the onely rule of our saluation: And that alone (all mannes beleeues being cast away and condemned) we propound vnto our selues as an infallible rule, and deuil of our faith (Galat. 1. 8. Eisa. 29. 13. Ezech. 20.) which we containe vnder the name of the olde and newe Testament (Hebr. 8.) deliuered by the Prophets and Apostles (Eph. 2. 20.) by the singular and infinite goodnesse of God, preserved euer vnto this day and to be preserved hereafter allwayes in the Church (Math. 28. last verse, Psal. 71. 18. 1. Cor. 11. 26.)

Therefore we render thanks vnto our most gracious and Almighty God from our soule, and from our whole heart, be cause that euen vnto vs being separated an huge distance from the rest of the body of his Church, and inhabiting the farthest parts of the world, he would that this light graunted for the reuelation of the Scriptures, and prepared before the face of all people, and olde time fauourably shewed to holy Simeon (for in Christ are all the treasures of wisdome hidden) which now doth enlighten and cheris with the sauing beames thereof our whole nation, that he would (I say) this light should come vnto vs. This in these things running ouer the very sunne, his true faith, and our Religion, which by the direction of the holy Spirit, and of his Ministers in the word of Christ, we haue obtained and that out of the fountaines of Israel.

In the yeere of our Lord 1070. saw the Islanders conuerted vnto Christ, &c.

It is doubtful vnto vs whether in these words Kranzius would haue said, that y^e Islanders were first conuerted vnto Christ in the yeere of our Lord 1070: or whether he doth not deny that they were indeed before conuerted, but saith that it was knowne first vnto Adalbert that yeere. But whether forer of these he affirmeth: notwithstanding the prely records, and most ancient Chyonicles of our nation testifying the contrary do make his credite to be suspected in this place, vnto which records and Chyonicles, whether you had rather giue assent concerning our owne proper and domestical affaires, done within the bounds of our Island, or to Kranzius or any other being ignorant in the story of our country, I appeale (friendly reader) vnto your owne discretion. For my part I am enforced by many reasons to agree rather vnto our owne writers. For our countrey affirmeth those things onely that be knowne, and in a manner domestical: he writeth matters foraine and unknowne: they haue compiled their histories without the diffaming, disgracing or reprehending of any other nations, onely that they might assigne vnto their owne acts and exploits the true time or age thereof: he hath intermedled in his historie certaine things contrary to the truth, and that to the blynding of our nation being most unknowne vnto him, as it shall immediately appeare: they describe the names, yeeres, order, succession of all the Bishops of Island: he mentioneth onely one, & that farre other wise then the truth. Furthermore, that I may make good the credite of our Countrey men, I will impart with strangers a fewe things which I found in our most ancient records of the conuersion of Island vnto Christ, and of the succession of Bishops in our Churches. Which although they be of little moment, and not altogether worthy to be written, yet must they of necessity be set downe for the defence of the truth of our affaires against Kranzius and others: Thus therefore standeth the certaintie thereof.

In the yeere of Christ 874. Island (being indeed discovered before that time, as is aboue mentioned) was then first of all inhabited by certaine Norwegians. Their chieftaine was one Ingolfus from whose name the East cape of Island is called, *Ingolfus fossid*. These planters are reckoned by by name in our records more then to the number of 400. together with those of their blood and kindred, and great families besides: neither onely is their number described, but it is also plainly set downe, what coasts, what shoyes, and what in-land places eche of them did occupy and inhabit, and what names the first inhabitants did giue vnto Streights, bays, harbours, necklands, reches, capes, rocks, craggies, mountaines, hills, valleys, homocks, springs, fouds, riuers, And to be short, what names they gaue vnto their graunges or houses, whereof many at this day are retained and vied. Therefore the Norweges with their company peopled all the

habitable parts of Island remained Ethnicks a while since a 100. yeeres but be considered vpon, together, was diuersly accented into two our Islands to Christian faith: the first to Island, and beleeued him in the yeere 984. Church.

But the other our Islands had in the yeere 997.

And then after 106. yeeres in a generall assembly the Smith Booles being abant.

Again, in the yeere 1097. all of politique lawes (the nixed vnto the Islanders the Canon of diuine Lawe.

In the yeere 1056. one of the came home consecrated

1057. he died 1080. in the y

These things perhaps w^o not together with many other things, neither yet shall these cause the errors of Kranzius in ching the truth of our historie: them: whose words in his preface (so he calleth Islanders barrennes of their soile, want of sobriety, and v^o to bestow a they supply their want by the memory the famous acts of other mens vertues, then to prement of historical matters, I present worke by following o

And therefore I thinke it not a proper and descent of them all, be prely records, may make good the first Bishop of Island.

In the yeere of Christ,

The Bishops

	I.	Isleif.
1056.	Consecrated beyond	
1057.	Returneth beyond	
	sea of Schallhol.	
1080.	Died: in the yeere of his	
	office Kalends of Iuly.	
	II.	
	Gylferus.	
1082.	Consecrated beyond t	
1083.	Returneth into Island	
118.	Chyoniche. Died: the	
	of May being twelue day.	
	III.	
	Thorlacius sonne of R	
	Consecrated the same ye	

Kranzius.

The most ancient Chyonicles of Island.

Island first inhabited.

In the yeere of our age

habitable

The true state of Island. Traffiques, and Discover

573

habitable parts of Island now occupied by them for the space of 60. yeeres or thereabout: but then remained Ethnickes almost a 100. yeeres, except a very few which were baptised in Norwaie. But scarce a 100. yeeres from their first eutance being past, presently Christian Religion began to be considered upon, namely about the yeere of our Lord 974. Which thing about 20. yeeres to come mentioned two outlandish Bishops, who with others diligently laboured in converting the Island to Christian faith: the former was one Fridericus a Saxon boyne, who in the yeere 981. came in to Island, and behaued himselfe courageously in the office of preaching, and preuailed so much, that in the yeere 984. Churches were used in Island.

Fridericus Saxo
the first pre-
cher of the
Christian faith
in Island. Anno
Domini 981.

But the other outlandish Bishop or preacher whom they called *Thangbrandt* came first into Island in the yeere 997.

And then after 26. yeeres consulting about Religion, at length in the yeere 1000. it was decreed in a generall assembly of all the inhabitants by their whole consent, that the worship of heathenish Idoles being abandoned, they should embrace Christian Religion.

Anno Domini
1000.

Again, in the yeere 1050. it was decreed in a solemne assembly of the inhabitants, that temporall or politique lawes (the constitutions whereof being brought out of Norwaie were communicated unto the Islanders by one *Ulfhor* in the yeere 926.) should euery where giue place to the Canon of diuine Lawe.

In the yeere 1056. one *Islef* went beyond the seas out of Island to be consecrated bishop of Island. He came home consecrated into Island, and entered into the bishopricke of *Schalholt* in the yeere 1077. He died 1080. in the yeere of his age 74. The 4. of the Kalends of July.

These things perhaps will seeme trifling, thow and base, not sufficiently worthy to be mentioned, neither yet shall these things be so trifling, but that they may be of sufficient force to convince the errors of *Kranzius* and others, according to our purpose. And undoubtedly as touching those whose works in his preface of *Denmarke* he therselfe Neither is the diligence of the *Thylen* barrenness of their soile, wanting nourishments of riot, they do exercise the duties of continuall laborie, and vse to bestow all the time of their life in the knowledge of other mens exploits, memory the famous acts of other nations, reckoning it no lesse praiseworthy to discourse of o-mens virtues, then to practise their owne. Whose treasures replenished with the monuments of historical matters, I more curiously searching into, haue compiled no smal part of this present worke by following of their relation: neither despised I to haue those men for my iudges, whom I knew to be skillfull in so great knowledge of antiquitie. Thus farre Saxo.

Wherefore I thinke it not amisse to proceede in the recitall of the Bishops of Island, that the better record, may make good that which we haue alledged against *Kranzius* concerning *Islef* the first Bishop of Island.

A notable
testimonie of
Saxo concern-
ing the Island-
ers.

In the yeere
of CHRIST.

The Bishops of Schalholt.

The Bishops of Holen.

In the yeere
of CHRIST.

I. Islef.		I. Ionas sonne of Augmundus.	
1056.	Consecrated beyond the seas.	Islef his disciple.	
1057.	Returneth and entereth the Bishops	Consecrated beyond the seas in the	1106.
	sea of Schalholt.	yeere of his age 64. his surname was	
1080.	Dieth in the yeere of his age 74. the 4.	Sanctus, unto whose memorie the 3.	
	of the Kalends of July.	of March was by the inhabitants in old	
	II.	time dedicated.	
	Gyslerus.	Dieth the 11. of the Kalends of May.	1121.
1082.	Consecrated beyond the seas.	II.	
1083.	Returneth into Island with his Bi-	Ketillus or Carullus.	
1118.	shopricke. Dieth the 5. of the Kal.	Consecrated.	1122.
	of May being Tuesday.	Dieth.	1145.
	III.	III.	
	Thorlacus sonne of Runulphus.	Biozno.	
	Consecrated the same yeere, wherein	Being consecrated came into Island.	1147.
	his	Dieth	

In the year of CHRIST.	The Bishops of Schalholt.	The Bishops of Holen.	In the year of CHRIST.
	his predecessor Gyslerus deceased, but yet 30. dayes before his death. Dieth. IIII. Magnus.	Dieth. IIII. Brandus.	1163.
1133.		Consecrated.	1163.
1134.	Consecrated.	Entreth in Episcopall see.	1165.
1148.	On the morrow after the feast of all Saints, in his parish towne of <i>Hiltar- dal</i> , the house being stricken with light- ning, hee, and 70. men with him were consumed with fire. V. Klaingus.	Dieth. V. Gudmundus surnamed Bonus, Elected and consecrated. Dieth.	1201. 1202. 1237.
1151.	Chosen.	VI. Botolphus.	
1152.	Entreth the see.	Returneth consecrated.	1239.
1176.	Dieth.	Dieth.	1246.
	VI. Thorlacus.	VII. Henicus.	
	Chosen two yeres before the death of his predecessor.	Entreth the see.	1247.
1178.	Consecrated.	Dieth.	1260.
1193.	Dieth.	VIII. Brandus an Abbat, Goeth beyond the sea.	1262.
	VII. Paulus.	Entreth the Bishoppicke.	1263.
1195.	Consecrated.	Dieth.	1264.
1211.	Dieth.	IX. Ierundus.	
	VIII. Magnus.	Entreth his see.	1267.
1216.	Consecrated.	Dieth.	1313.
	IX. Sigwardus.	X. Audunnus.	
1239.	Entreth his see.	Entreth his see.	1314.
1268.	Dieth.	Dieth.	1322.
	X. Arnerus.	XI. Laurentius.	
1269.	Entreth his see.	Elected and consecrated.	1324.
1298.	Dieth.	Dieth in the Ides of April.	1331.
	XI. Arnerus sonne of Helgo.	XII. Egillus.	
1304.	Consecrated.	Entreth his see.	1332.
1305.	Entreth the see.	Dieth.	1341.
1309.	Shallth into Norwaie, to craue tim- ber of the king of Norway, wherewith the Church of Schalholt might be ree- dified, which the same yere being toucht with lightning, was burnt downe.	XIII. Ormus.	
1310.	Returneth home.	Entreth his see.	1343.
1320.	Dieth.	Dieth upon the feast of all Saints.	1355.
	XII. Ionas Haldorus.	XIIII. Ionas sonne of Ericus, surnamed <i>Skalle</i> .	
1321.	Elected.	Bring to enter his sea of Holen came into Island. This Ionas being before time consecrated bishop of Gronland, obtained licence of the bishop of Rome to enter the see of Holen, which was at that time vacant. Whereupon com- mitting and not hyingling with him the confirmation of this dignitie and func- tion, received from the Pope, hee be- gan to be suspected among the priests of the diocese of Holen. Wherefore he	1358. 1359.
1322.	Consecrated the first of August.		
1323.	Entreth his see.		
1338.	Dieth.		
	XIII. Ionas sonne of Indrid a Noruagian boyne. Entreth his see.		
1339.			
1341.	Dieth.		

XIIII.

In the year of CHRIST.	The Bishops of Holen.
	Ionas surnamed <i>Skalle</i> .
1343.	Entreth his see.
1348.	Dieth on St. Michael's day.
	Consecrated a lomon bishop of Göteborg.
1349.	Consecrated a lomon bishop of Göteborg.
1356.	Consecrated a lomon bishop of Göteborg.
1362.	Entreth his see.
1364.	Dieth.
	XV. Michael.
1385.	Entreth his see.
1386.	Religeth, and falls ill.
	XI. William.
1394.	Entreth the Bishoppicke.
	XX. Arnerus surnamed <i>Arnerus</i> . Liberal. He was at the death of all Island, bish- op of the diocese of Holen.
1410.	XX. Ionas Gerickson. named of boyne, is m- Church of Schalholt. tertain. bolde attem- one Thorwaldus de Mo- reposed) and a great his necke, hee was cast of Schalholt, (which of age) and was there XXII. Goswinus bishop of XXIII. Sueno called wife, bish- XXIII. Magnus sonne of Eiolf. XXV. Stephen. Entreth the see. The time with Godichalchus who seemed worthy to be he had the same commenda- and iustice, that Godichalchus

In the years
of Christ.

The Bishops of Schalholt.

The Bishops of Hølen.

In the years
of Christ.

- | | | | |
|-------|--|--|---|
| | XIIII. | | |
| 1343. | Jonas sonne of Sigwardus. | | was sent backe by th. in into Nor- |
| 1348. | Entreth his see. | | way, that the matter might bee see |
| | Dieth on S. Magnus euen. | | through by the iudgement of the |
| | XV. | | king. The king therefore favouring |
| 1349. | Cyrtus, | | his part, he obtained the bishopricke |
| | Consecrated at Abo in Norway by Sa- | | of Hølen. |
| 1356. | lomon bishop of Abo. | | He dieth, |
| | Going beyond the seas he was drowned. | | XV. |
| | XVI. | | Peter. |
| 1362. | Thorarinnus. | | Consecrated the same yere where |
| 1364. | Entreth his see. | | in his predecessour departed out of |
| | Dieth. | | this present life. |
| | XVII. | | Entreth the see of Hølen. |
| | Oddgeirus. | | Dieth. |
| 1366. | Entreth his see. | | XVI. |
| 1381. | Dieth upon the Assumption of the blessed | | Jonas Wilhelmus English, |
| | Virgin, in the port of Bergen in Norway | | Elther boyne of sir-named. |
| | falling downe from a packe of wares into | | Entred the see. |
| | the botome of the ship. He was buried at | | XVII. |
| | Bergen in the Church of our Saviour. | | Godschalcus. |
| | XVIII. | | Died. |
| | Michael a Dane. | | XVIII. |
| 1385. | Entreth his see. | | Olaus son of Rogwaldus nephew |
| 1386. | Religgeth, and sailleth into Denmarke. | | to the forenamed Godschalcus by |
| | XIX. | | the sisters side, both of them being |
| | William a Dane. | | Norwayes. |
| 1394. | Entreth the Bishopricke. | | He was established. |
| | Dieth. | | He died. |
| | XX. | | XIX. |
| | Arnerus surnamed <i>Mildur</i> , that is to say, | | Godschalcus |
| | Liberal. He was at one time Lord Presi- | | The nephew of Olaus deceased, by |
| | dent of all Island, bishop of Schalholt, and | | the brothers side: also hee being a |
| 1420. | vicebishop of Hølen. He died. | | Norwegian was elected the same |
| | XXI. | | yeere wherein his uncle deceased. |
| | Jonas Gerickson. Sweden, elther sir- | | He entreth the see. And for the |
| 1432. | named of boyne, is made Bishop over the | | space of 20. whole yeres is reported, |
| | Church of Schalholt: and afterward for | | cruelly to haue entreated many of |
| | certaine. bolde attempts being taken by | | the subjects. In the yeere 1520. |
| | one Thorualdus de Modruuolium (as it is | | whē he was in the midst of his cups, |
| | reported) and a great stone being bound to | | and banqueting dishes, he heard that |
| | his necke, hee was cast alive into the riuer | | Jonas Sigismundus was departed |
| | of Schalholt, (which taketh name of the | | out of this life (whom with his wife |
| | bylge) and was there strangled. | | and children, he had for many yeres |
| | XXII. | | most cruelly oppressed, he presently |
| 1445. | Goswinus bishop of Schalholt. | | fell into a sudden disease, and so not |
| | XXIII. | | long after changed that violence for |
| 1472. | Sueno called y wife, bishop of Schalholt. | | miserable death, which in his whole |
| | X XIIIII. | | life he had used against his distressed |
| 1489. | Magnus sonne of Eiolphus, Bishop, &c. | | subjects. |
| | XXV. | | XX. |
| | Stephen. | | Jonas Arzsonius. |
| 1494. | Entreth the see. Then (living at one | | Entreth the see. |
| | time with Godschalcus bishop of Hølen, | | This man was the last a most ear- |
| | who seemed moxty to be surnamed cruel) | | nest maintainer of Popish supersti- |
| | he had the same commendations for mercy | | tions. Who stoutely withstanding |
| | and iustice, that Godschalcus had. | | Gyslerus and Martinus bishops of |
| | He | | Schalholt, was commanded by the |
| | | | most |

Wm Eng.
lish man
Bishop in
Island.

1525.

In the yeere
of CHRIST.

The Bishops of Schalholt.

1519.

He died: or thereabout.

XXVI.

Augmundus.

1522.

Chosen in the yeere wherein Stephen de-
ceased. Entred the see.

While he was Bishop, the kings Lieu-
tenant with some of his followers being in-
vited to Schalholt, in the time of the ban-
quet, was slaine by certaine conspirators:
because hee had in all places wickedly wa-
sted the inhabitants and their goods. But
Augmundus as the authour of that mur-
der (although he purged himselfe with an
othe) being transported into Denmarke,
there ended his life.

XXVII.

Gylserus.

1540.

Elected, Augmundus yet living.

1541.

Entred the see.

He was the abolisher of Popish traditions
about Priests marriages: his owne mari-
age being solemnized at Schalholt.

1544.

XXVIII.

Martinus.

1547.

Bishop, &c. And the yeeres folowing.

XXIX.

Gillaus Ionas.

This man presently, in the time of bishop
Augmund began in his youth to be enla-
med with y^e love of true pietie, & of the pure
doctrine of the Gospel, & being pastour of
the Church of Selardal, diligently to ad-
vance the same, by which meanes he did so
procure unto himselfe y^e hatred of Papists,
as being constrained to give place unto their
craft & crueltie, he departed ouer to Ham-
burg, from whence coming to Copen Ha-
gen in Denmarke, & painefully proceeding
in his former study of divinitie, he lived in
the familiaritie, and favour of many, but
specially of D.D. Peter Palladius: who was
at that time bishop there. Afterward re-
turning into his countrey, Martine gaue
place unto him of his owne accord. This
man died also, having for the space of 31.
yeeres or thereabouts, professed the Gospel
of Iesus Christ: neither did he helpe & fur-
ther the Church of God by the sound of his
voice onely, but by all other meanes to the
utmost of his abilitie, by teaching, prea-
ching, writing, by his wealth & his counsell.

XXX.

1588.

Otto Enerus, a graue, godly, and lea-
ned man. Being chosen he departed his

1589.

countrey. Hee is consecrated, returneth,
and entred the sea, endeavouring himselfe
in the labours of his function.

The Bishops of Holen.

In the yeere
of CHRIST.

most religious hug Christian the 3.
vnder paine of banishment to come
with all speed into Denmarke. But
neglecting the kings commande-
ment, hee tooke Martine bishop of
Schalholt, and committed him to
ward. At length he himselfe also be-
ing taken by a man of great name
(whom before that time, it is saide,
he had prouoked) and being brought
to Schalholt, was, together with
his two sonnes, by the aulthoritie of
the kings Lieutenant beheaded. In
revenge whereof not long after, the
saide Lieu-tenant with some of his
company, was villanously slaine by
certaine rapiers, which were once
servants to the parties beheaded.

XXI.

Olaus Hialcerus.

Departed his countrey.

Entred the see.

This man (being as yet in the life
time of his predecessor fellow-la-
bourer with him) was the first that
kindled the loue of sincere doctrine
at Holen in the hearts of many: and
then being bishop did openly teach
and defend the said doctrine.

He died.

XXII.

Gudbrandus Thorlacius.

The ornament, not onely of his age,
but of posteritie also: who belides
that, by the direction of the holy spi-
rit, he hath most notably brought the
worke begonne, and left vnto him
by his predecessor Olaus to that
perfectio which it hath pleased God
to vouchsafe: (namely his labours
and diligence in maintayning the
truth of the Gospel, and in abolishing
of Popish superstitions) euen in
this his countrey hee is the first that
hath established a Printing house.
For which cause his countrey (be-
sides, for many other books transla-
ted into our mother tongue) shall be
eternally bounden vnto him, that the
sacred Bible also, by his meanes, is
fairly printed in the language of
Island. Hee (I say) being at this
present, Bishop, when he was about
to take his charge:

Departed his countrey.

Returned and entred the see of
Holen.

1551.

1552.

1553.

1568.

1570.

1574.

In

In these times therefoze
home of heauen is opene
of the Bishops seats ther
nounced King of Denmar
steps of his most Christian
religious King, being calle
sen and furthered: which at
the most gracious King and
being instructed in the rubri
ledge and true godlinesse, the
We are come at length to
where in the forenamed eccle
Holen, and the other at Sch
mon, that it would please God
of his most holy name, we all

They inhabit for the most p
And againe, They haue
and Whales. Againc, Ma
themselues close in their ca
lunne. Alfo Munster sayth:
bones of Whales,

Here the second member t
nars of the inhabitants.
partyping to Munster, Kran:
in gigious buildings, and si
company of a life cruelly happie
and: and we plainly affirma
For such habitacions as
true places, and are richer
wherem at that time of the peer
march their flocke. But for th
by flanders h:ue had them build
ing to the condicion of the Coun
the and exchange of wares begar
out to supply them with timber
neither we haue woods conuen
were in the time, trees cast vpon
wee vs: neither doe our landish
neane of countrey villages are mu
then to the ground, and others i
villages which I cannot easily
excellencie, the houses being be
right also. As for example: fa
firre cubites in length, tenne
er, a house, a buterie, &c. and
of our countrie buildings & bot
inde of their workmanship and
villages houses built of timber e
as the Cathedral Church of
more elies high, and about five e
of the rooffe proportionally answ
derick, whose memo: is most sac
for the redifying of this body bein
Church is selfe doth manifestly ex
Church, which is commonly called
arch, and also then the bodie.
The Church of Schalholt was fa

In these times therefore light is restor'd unto our soules from heauen, and the gate of the kingdom of heauen is opened vnto vs by the sincere preaching of Christian doctrine. For in either of the Bishops seats there is a free schoole founded by the liberality and pietie of that most renowned King of Denmarke Christian the third: and afterward the same following the godly religious King, being called vnto his heauenly countrey in the yeare 1588, haue bene euer since and furthermore which at this day also doe prosper and flourish by the fauour and authoritie of the most gracious King and our Prince, Christian the fourth, wherein the youth of our *Fflande* being instructed in the rudiments of liberall artes, and sacred diuinitie, are trained vp to knowledge and true godlinesse, that from hence ministers of Churches may proceede.

We are come at length in the register of the Bishops of *Fflande* downe to this present day, wherein the sozenamed excellent men Gudbrandus Thorlacius, and Otto Enerus, the one at Hølen, and the other at Schalholk are Bishops of our Cathedrall Churches: both of which men, that it would please God long to preserve vnto his Church in health and life, for the glorie of his most holy name, we all doe earnestly and with seruent prayers beseech him.

The second section.

They inhabit for the most part in caues, or hollowe places within the sides of mountaines, and againe, They haue many houses and Churches built with the bones of fishes, and Wuals. Again, Many of them also to auoide the extremitie of colde, doe keepe themselves close in their caues, euen as the people of *Africa* doe to auoide the heate of the sunne. Also *Munster* sayth: Many in *Fflande* at this day build their houses with the ribbes and bones of Whales.

Munsterus, Krantzius, Frisius,

Here the second member taketh his beginning concerning the course of life, and the manner of the inhabitants. And first of all what buildings or houses they doe vse: namely in populous buildings, and such other worldly vaueries there is very little helpe to the attainment of a life eternally happy: notwithstanding, wee can not in this place conceale the truth: and we plainly affirme that Cosmographers and Historiographers also doe erre in this point. For such habitations as they write to be common vnto the whole nation, are but in few places, and are either sheepe-cotes for Shepheards, or cottages and receptacles for fishermen at that time of the yeere onely when they goe a fishing, and the others stande in neede of Chambers: haue had them built from auncient time statelie and sumptuously enough, according to the condition of the Countrey, with timber, stones, and turfes, vntill such time as traffike and exchange of wares beganne to cease betwene them and the *Roziagiens*, who were wont to supply them with timber, and for that cause now our houses beginne to decay: when neither we haue woods conuenient for building, nor yet there are now a dayes, as there were in olde time, trees cast vpon our shores by the benefite of the sea, which may in any sort re-ueale vs: neither doe outlandish Merchants succour our necessities: whereupon many of our beauntifull countrey villages are much decayed from their auncient integritie, some whereof be fallen to the ground, and others bee very ruinous. Notwithstanding there be many farmes and villages which I cannot easily reckon vp, the buildings whereof doe resemble that auncient excellencie, the houses being very large, both in breadth and length, and for the most part built in cubites in length, tenne in breadth, and twentie in height. And so other roomes, as a kitchen, a house, a butcherie, &c. answering in proportion vnto the former. I could here name many of their workmanship and costly firmenesse or strength, with certaine Churches also, as the Cathedrall Church of Hølen hauing a bodie the like pillars whereof on both sides of the roofe proportionally answering to this lower building. Our most gracious King *Lozd Frederick*, whose memory is most sacred vnto vs, in the yeere 1588, did most liberally bestow timber for the reedifying of this body being cast downe in the yeere 1584. by an horrible tempest. But this Church, which is commonly called the quier is somewhat lesse, both then the middle part of the Church, and also then the bodie.

Traffike with the people of the way can be.

Wilt wood not so plentiful now, as in times past.

The Church of Schalholk was farre greater as I haue heard in olde time, then this our
C c
Cathedrall

Cathedrall, which hating now bene twice burnt, is brought to a lesser scantling. Likewise there be some other Churches of our Island, although not matching, yet resembling the ancient magnificence of these. But here the matter seemeth not to require that I should runne into a long description of these things. For as wee doe not greatly extoll our houses and buildings, so are we nothing ashamed of them: because being content with our poverrie, we render unto Christ immortal prayse who despiseth not to be received of us vnder a base roofe, and condemneth not our temples and houses, (which Munster, Krantzius and Frisius doe not truly affirme to be built of fishes and Whales bones) more then the marble vaults, the painted walles, the square pavements, and such like ornaments of Churches and houses in other countries.

The third section.

Krantzius.
Munsterus.

They and their cattell vse all one house, all one foode or victuals, all one state (here Krantzius hath it lodging.) Also. They liue onely by feeding of cattell, and sometimes by taking of fishes.

These be the things together with those that followe, which Krantzius hath champ'd, and put into Munsters mouth, so that Munster shall not neede so much as once to chewe them, which may appeare by comparing them both together. For Munster, as hee swallowed these reproches, taking them out of Krantzius his preface vpon Norway, so he casteth vp the very same moxels undigested and rawe against our nation, in his fourth booke of Cosmographie cap. 8. Those things which haue bene hitherto, although they haue sufficiently griev'd vs, yet will we let them seeme more tollerable: but this most malicious deuise, and those which followe we cannot easily brooke. It is our part therefore in this place also to auncy the truth, and to turne the leasing vpon the authoys owne head.

House, &c. First, that which they say concerning the same common house (as also living, and state) with our cattell, we plainly affirme to be false and erroneous, not onely the truth it selfe being our witness, if any man would make triall, but also the experience of many strangers, that haue liued some yeeres amongst vs, and haue more minde to speake the truth then to reule our nation: who haue seene our houses and habitations with their owne eyes, and knowe that in euery particular farme or graunge there were many seuerall roomes: namely, in those that were most simple and base, seuen or eight: In others which were greater, sometimes tenne, and sometimes twentie. In the greatest sometimes fortye, and sometimes fiftie. Which for the most part being seuered, both by roofes and walles, doe serue for the daily and household affaires of one owner or master, selborne of two or thre, but almost reuert of many whereupon the Reader may easily iudge, howe true it is that the Islanders and their cattell haue all one house to lie in, when euery husbandman in this varietie of roomes hath seuerall ore-stalles, sheepe-cotes, stables, lambes-cots separated in indifferent spaces one from another, which the seruants goe vnto so oft as neede requireth, and from thence returne backe to the dwelling houses.

But whereas one noted in his Mappe of Island, concerning the prouince of Skagfjord that vnder the same roofe, men, dogges, swine and sheepe liue all together, it is partly false and partly no maruell: for sheepe, as it hath bene sayde, and specially for swine (when as the prouince hath no swine at all) it is bitterly false: for dogges it is no maruell, when as not many courts were euer, or at this day are destitute of them, as it is well knowen to all men. But touching dogges afterward in the seventh section.

Victuals, &c. Whither beasts meate may fitly be termed by the name of Victus, a man may easily doubt: when Doletus interpreting a peece of Tullie, saith: As for Victus (sayth he) we will to expound it with the Cillians, namely that we comprehend vnder the word of Victus things necessary for the life of man, as meate, drinke, attire of the bodie, &c. And Vlpianus verborum significacione definit Victus in the very same word. But in this place the Latins call beasts meate by the name of Victus.

But let vs see what truth and plaine dealing is to be found in these men. We haue no beuring cattell besides horses and oren: these haue grasse and hay (except where haye is wanting) for their fodder, and water to drinke. Now, the very same writers confesse, that the Islanders liue by fish, butter, flesh both beefe, and mutton, and coze also, though it be scarce, and brought out of other countries. Therefore they haue not the same foode with beasts, which notwithstanding the sayde writers affirme in these wordes:

The true state

They and their cattell be himselfe a little before Island (saith he) coimes by raking of fishes: letus: Unless perhaps of men: whom, as I thinke, as men doe eate, so beasts cattell. But may I thinke, does liue vpon grasse and the poke of Gods benediction will not perhaps refuse, if the said beasts be loanes: they will drinke and that greedily. And do you man therefore say that Now, whatsoeuer thing is in his hope for the governing other nations, than mule, rats, although perhaps bene constrained so to doe.

But that the same drinke gainesay: namely most surely also in some respect: say our fauour Christ despoil. As touching apparell (so common to vs with beasts, as Krantzius cannot be so to reuer their bodies. But I thinke and we haue all one apparell: it be more finely woven, more softly to seeke for praise of our nature.

Sate, &c. Now, it remaines common with beasts: but of it I cannot easily discern. State condition. Doubtlesse, that the best, we haue hands also, and goodly order and condition from they know any such matter by: because this, being so vaine thing, we create, neither do we bough.

But because it is our duty in this thing whatsoever, but that of excellence: I will say in a word, our infamous reproch of writers.

There be nere vnto Schallholme two most swift riuers, and curse, which is the accusacion of these parishes, and some necessary for household, so standing there be certaine amiable things at home, and are not a word for the dwelling of their men: people be take them to be themselves in the day time, when they have bene reposed to more by willingly enioye, but are content their timely mode and state it is: I haue entreated before. This

The true state of Island. Traffiques, & Discoueries.

579

They and their cattell vse all one victuals or food, What Munsters meaning is in this clause, he himselfe a litle before hath plainly taught.

Island (saith he) containeth many people living onely with the food of cattell, and some-
times by taking of fishes. But what else is the food of cattell, but the meat of cattell, saith Do-
letus? Unlesse perhaps Munster calleth the food of cattell, cattell themselves slaine for the foode
of men: whom, as I thinke, the vse of the latine tongue doth gaine say, which hath taught us that
as men doe eat, so beasts do feede, and hath termed the victuals of men, and the food of fodder of
cattell. But may I thinke that Munster and Krantzius were so mad as to imagine that the Illan-
ders live vpon grasse and hay? To this passe of miserie was Nabuchodonoz or brought vndergo-
ing the poke of Gods vengeance: Daniel 4. vers. 30. He will easily graunt that beasts, and cat-
tles, if the saide beasts be destitute of their vsuall food: as horses are fedde with coyne and barley
and that greedily. And dogges in like manner will deuour any deinty dishes whatsoeuer. Nay a-
ny man therefore say that men vse the same common victuals with dogges and horses?

Now, whatsoeuer things haue happened in the time of greivous famine ought not to be reco-
rded in history for the generall custome of any countrey. As it is not lawfull for vs to write con-
cerning other nations, that the people of this or that countrey, doe usually liue by eating of dogs,
cats, although perhaps in the time of famine or seige or dearth of coyne, they haue often
bene constrained so to doe.

But that the same drinke is some times common to many men with beasts, we will not greatly
gaine say: namely most pure water, that naturall drinke created by God for all liuing creatures:
which also in some respect Philosophers doe commend, yea, neither the Patriarkes themselves,
nor our saviour Christ despised it.

As touching apparell (for we comprehend apparell also vnder the name of Victus) it is no wise
common to vs with beasts. For nature hath clad them with haire & hyssles (as I dare say Mun-
ster and Krantzius cannot be ignorant) men, being otherwise naked, stande in neede of clothes
to couer their bodies. But I had not thought it might therefore haue properly bene sayde, that
they and we haue all one apparell. Men of other countreies also weare cloth of sheeps wooll, that
though it be more finely wrought. But no more concerning the attire of the bodie. For it is a
more folly to seeke for praise, and ambitious reputation by that, which argueth the infirmitie
of our nature.

Sare, &c. Now, it remaineth that we should speake of that state, which we are sayd to haue
in common with beasts: but of what kinde or maner it should be, or our writers would haue it to be,
I cannot easily discern. State (saith Doletus) is either of the body, or of causes, or of order and
condition. Doubtesse, that there is another state of our bodies then of beasts (for besides our two
eyes, we haue hands also, and go with our bodies, and countenances lift vpright) and that we be of
another order and condition from them, we are verily perswaded. As for these good fellows, if
they know any such matter by themselves or others, let them disclose it. We doe altogether
neglect these, being so vaine things, and heeding so great contempt against the Prouidence of God
our Creator, neither do we vouchsafe them any larger discourse.

But because it is our duty not so highly to regard either the loue of our countrey, or of any o-
ther thing whatsoever, but that we may be ready at all times, and in all places, to giue truely the
preference: I will say in a word what that was which perhaps might minister occasion to
our infamous reproch of writers.

There be nere vnto Schallhol, vpon the South shore of Island, thre small parishes standing
betwene two most swift riuers Thiorlaa, and Olfwis Aa, being in a maner destitute both of
wood and curst, which is the accustomed felwell of the countrey. And although most of the inha-
bitants of these parishes, and some of their neighbours, as they doe in time of peere prouide all
things necessary for householde, so especially those things which belong to fires and bathes: not
withstanding there be certaine among them of the basest sort of people, who, because they want
things at home, and are not able to prouide them from other places, are constrained to vse
the people people betake them to their ore shales, & there setting vp sheds, & doing their necessary
business in the day time, when they are not able to make fires, they buy row heat from their oren,
which hath bene reported to mee by others: And so they onely, being verie fewe in number, doe
willingly enioye, but are constrained to vse the same common house with their oren. But
the liuelly robe and state it is farre otherwise with them then with their oren, of which
I haue entreated before. This is the lot, & pouertie of certaine men in those pettie parishes,
C c c 2
the

the condition whereof is theretoe made a common by worde of the people amongst vs, though somewhat iniuriously. Where I would willingly demanda with what honestie men can impute that vnto the whole nation; which is hard and scantely true of these fewe poore men: I am wearie to stay any longer in this matter: onely, because I haue to doe with Diuines, let that of Salomon suffice, Prouerbs 17. verse 5. Hee that mocketh the poore, reprocheth him that made him.

And in very verbe, because this our nation is so we, and heretofore hath bene poore and needie, and as it were a begger amongst many rich men, it hath sustained so many taunts and scoffes of Strangers. But let them take heede whom they vpbraide. Therely if there were nothing else common vnto vs with them, yet we both consist of the same elements, and haue all one father and God.

The fourth section.

Krantzius.
Munsterus.

They leade their liues in holy simplicitie, not seeking any more then nature doeth afforde.

A happie Nation, whose pouertie no man doth enuie. But the English and Danish merchants suffer not the nation to be at rest, who frequenting that countrey to transport fishing, haue conueighed thither our vices, together with their manifold wares. For now, they haue learned to brew their water with corne, and beginne to despise, and loath the drinking of faire water. Now they couet golde and siluer like vnto our men,

Simplicitie, &c. I am exceedingly glad, that the commendation of holy simplicitie is given vnto vs. But it grieueth vs that there is found so great a decay of iustice, and good lawes, and so great want of gouernement amongst vs, which is the cause of many thousande heinous offences: which all honest and goodly men doe continually bewaile. This inconuenience doth not happen through the negligence of the highest Magistrate, that is, of our most gracious King, but rather by our owne fault: who doe not present these things vnto his Maiestie, which are disorderly committed without his knowledge, and which are wanting in the interior Magistrate.

Merchants, Pozeouer, Merchants, not onely of England and Denmarke, but especially of Germanie, as at this time, so heretofore frequenting our countrey, not to transport fishing, but fishes, caught not Islanders the arte of brewing corne with water. For y^e Indians themselves, the first, to our knowledge, that inhabited this Island, fro whom y^e Islanders are lineally descended, brought with them out of Norway that arte, as also golde and siluer coine, so that in old time there was no lesse vse of siluer and golde with vs, then there is at this day.

And it is certaine that before the often nauigations of Danes, Germans, and English men vnto vs, our land was much more fertile then nowe it is (feeling the inconueniences of the aged and decayed worlde, both from heauen and earth) and brought forth, in certaine choyle places, corne in abundance.

The fifth section.

Corne of old
time growing
in Island.

Munsterus.
Krantzius.

The King of Denmarke and Norway sendeth euery yeere a Lieutenant into the Countrey.

In the peere of our Lord eight hundred fortye and sixe Harald Harsage (which is to say, golden haire of faire clockes) was borne. Who afterward in the peere eight hundred fiftie and eight, being chosen king of Norway, when he was growen to age, and full strength, changinge the forme of the Norwagian gouernment. For whereas before it was deuised into pettie Princedoms (which they called *Fylki*, and the pettie kings that gouerned them, *Fylki konga*) he reduced it by force of armes into a Monarchie. But when some inhabitants of the countrey, being mightie, and descended of good parentages, could not well brooke this hard dealing, they rather to be banished their countrey, then not to shake off the yoke of tyranny. Whereupon they in the peere about named eight hundred seuentie and foure, transported colonies into Island being before discovered by some men and found out, but vnpeopled as yet: And so being first founders of our nation, they called themselves Islanders, which name their posteritie retaineth vnto this day. And theretoe the Islanders liued a long time, namely, three hundred eighty and sixe peeres, more or lesse, acknowledging no submission to any other Nation. Although Haquinus that crowned King of Norway, who reigned longest of any Norwagian King, namely, about fiftie sixe yeares, did oftentimes attempt by Ambassadors to make the Islanders become tributaries vnto him, notwithstanding at all times they constantly withstood him till at length about the peere of our Lord 1260. they performed homiage vnto him. And after

The occasion
of the first
habiting of
Island by the
people of Nor-
way.

Haquinus coro-
natus.

ward continued alw
now at this day, in
Denmarke, Suedel
and King the most gr

All

Here Krantzius
in their manner
with here also demini
times proueth your o
great negligence in m

But whither the al
winelle, which the I
the King and his subie
there: of inheritance
rest: all which, to wha
common: We call co
iudgement in Island co
kings, now of Denmark
Island in old time, and
writtes concerning pos
whole worlde in the first
living according to the l
of nature, then doubtles
the state of iustice, then c
then place in our Nation
crown in the Church: not
to be most iust and good,

They make all one recko
ter sort you shall easie

Although in the beginn
name in those things
charged with slander, per
the neuer so fauourable, an
some such great men, foll
name our nation with so b
barefesse humilitie to d
like vices,

But, he it known to all
that authoys themselves, fo
they cause their credite
and (as Aristotle sayth) the
man.

But attend a while (Reade
that we may not lee
in haue hitherto taught, cha
milian faith they liued acc
a law not much differing
politicie,

Attend I say (good Reader
the Germanes law, of holy
scribe in the Islanders. The
place till v^y the prison of
cerning which, reade the fir
made marke is, that with

The true state of *Ifland*. Traffiques & Discoueries. 381

ward continued alwayes in their promised loyaltye, being subiects to the king of Norway. But now at this day, since the Empire of the *Mozuagians* was translated by Margarete Queene of Denmarke, Suedeland, and Norway vnto the Danes, they doe honour as their soueraigne King the most gracious king of Denmarke.

The sixth section.

All things are common among them except their wiues.

Here *Krantzius* in the first place beginneth with such a gyfte. There be many notable things both here also deminish your credite. The experience as well of all things as of persons and great negligence in maintaining the truth, & worthy wylters.

Krantzius.
Munsterus.

But whether the aforesayde things bee true or no, wee call the lawes of our Countrey to witnesse, which the *Iflanders* from the beginning haue vfed all one with the *Mozuagians*: of the King and his subiects: of the state of iustice, and of law-cases which come to be deuided there: of inheritances: of adoptions, marriages, theft, extortions, lending, bargaines, and the rest: all which, to what purpose should they be enioyned vnto them with whom all things are common: Wee call to witnesse so many broyles and contentions in our courts, and places of iudgement in *Ifland* concerning goods moouable, and immouable: we call to witnesse our Kings, now of Denmarke, aforesayde of Norway, who by so many billes of supplication out of *Ifland* in old time, and of late haue bene often interrupted, for the setting throughe of controversies concerning possessions. Wee call *Krantzius* himselfe to witnesse against himselfe, liuing according to the lawe of nature did not much differ from our lawe, &c. If by the lawe of nature, then doubtlesse by that lawe of iustice, which giueth to euery man his owne: If by the lawe of iustice, then certainly distinctions of properties and possessions must needs haue taken place in our Nation: and although this very lawe is often transgressed, and that hapnously in the Church: notwithstanding both the Church, and also heathen men doe acknowledge it to be most iust and good.

The seventh section.

They make all one reckoning of their whelpes, and of their children: except that of the poorer sort you shall easier obtaine their sonne then their shalke,

Although in the beginning of this Treatise I thought that *Munster* and other men of great name in those things which they haue left written concerning *Ifland*, were not so be charged with flander, yet whether that fauour may here be shewed by any man whatsoeuer (be neuer so fauourable, and neuer so sincere) I doe not sufficiently conceiue. For what should moue such great men, following the despightfull lyes, and fables of mariners, to disgrace and shame our nation with so horrible and so shamefull a reproch? Surely nothing else but a carelessnesse to verifie and continue a poore and unknowen Nation, and such other like vices.

But, be it knowen to all men that this vttereth both not so much hurt to the *Iflanders*, as to the authors themselves. For in heaping up this, and a great number of others vnto their *Hillo-mund* (as *Aristotle* sayth) that when they speake truely no man will beleue them without suspicion.

But attend a while (Reader) and consider with me the grauitie and wisdom of these great wittes: that we may not let passe such a notable commendation of *Ifland*. *Krantzius* and *Munster* haue hitherto taughte, that the *Iflanders* are Christians. Also: that before the receiuing of Christian faith they liued according to the lawe of nature. Also: that the *Iflanders* liued after a lawe not much differing from the lawe of the Germanes. Also, that they liued in holy simplicitie.

And I say (good Reader) and consider, what markes of Christianity, of the law of nature, of the Germanes law, of holy simplicitie, these authors require, and what markes they shew and shew in the *Iflanders*. There was one of the sayd markes before: namely, that the *Iflanders* were placed hill v2 the pylon of the damned, within the gulfe and bottome of mount *Hecla*: concerning which, read the first section of this part, and the seventh section of the former. The second marke is, that with the *Anabaptists* they take away distinctions of properties

and possessions: in the section next going before. The third and most excellent is this: that singular & naturall affection, that loue and tender care, and that fatherly and goodly minde of the Islanders towards their children, namely that they make the same accompt of them, or lesse then they doe of their dogges. What? Will Munster and Kranzius after this fashious picture out vnto vs the law of Christ, the lawe of nature, the lawe of the Germanes, and holy simplicitie? Rare and excellent picture, though not altogether matching the skill of Apelles: Whatpe and wonderfull inuention, if authenticall: I knowledg moze then humane, though not at all diuine.

But wee Islanders (albeit the farthest of all nations and inhabiting a frozen climate) require farre other notes of Chyrtianitie. For we haue the commandment of God, that euery man should loue his neighbour as himselfe. Nowe there is none (I suppose) that doeth not loue or esteeme moze of himselfe then of his dogge. And if there ought to bee so great fauour, so great estimation, so great loue vnto our neighbour, then how great affection doe we owe vnto our children? The most neare and inseparable loue of whom, tellus that nature hath most friendly sited in our mindes, the loue of God also commandeth vs to haue speciall regard in trayning them by (Exod. 12. 24. Ephel. 6. 4.) namely, that there may be in holy marriage certaine seminaries of Gods Church, and exercises of all pietie and honestie: according to the excellent saying of the Poet.

God will haue each family,
a litle Church to be.

Also Of humane life or mans societie,
a Schole or College is holy matrimonie.

That it may be manifest, that among Chyrtians their sonnes are moze to be accompted of and regarded, then their dogges: and if any doe no otherwise esteeme of them, that they are no Chyrtians.

But this naturall affection towardes our most deare of-spring is plainly seene in the brethren themselves: that whomsoever you totally depprue of this, you denie them also to be men. The mothers of Carthage testifie this to be true, when as in the third Punic warre the most choyle and gallant young men in all the Citle were sent as pledges into Sicilia, whom they followed vnto the shippes with most miserable weeping and lamentation, and some of them being with griefe separated from their deare sonnes, when they sawe the sayles topke, and the shippes departing out of the haven, for very anguish cast themselves headlong into the water: as Sabellicus witnesseth. Egzus doth testifie this, who when hee sawe the shippe of his sonne Theseus, returning out of Creete with blacke sayles, thinking that his sonne had perished, ended his life in the next waters: Sabel. lib. 3. cap. 4. Gordianus the elder, Proconsul of Africa, doth testifie this, who likewise, vpon rumors of the death of his sonne, hanged himselfe. Campoful. lib. 5. cap. 7. Also Iocasta the daughter of Creon, Auctolia daughter of Simon, Anius King of the Thulcans, Orodes King of the Parthians, and an infinite number of others. Concerning whom reade Plutarch lib. 2. and other authoys &c. To this may be added that sentence, Loue descendeth, &c. So that you see, it is no lesse proper to a man entirely to loue his children, then for a bird to flie: that if our writers at any time haue confessed the Islanders to be men (much lesse to be Chyrtians) they must, will they will they, ascribe vnto them this loue and affection towardes their children: If not, they doe not only take from them the title and dignitie of men, but also they debase them vnder euery brutish which euen by the instinct of nature are bound with exceeding great loue, and tender affection towards their young ones.

I will not adde against this shamelesse vnturth most notable examples of our owne countrymen: I will omit our lawes of man-stealing, moze ancient then the Islanders themselves, being receiued from the Mozmagians, and are extant in our booke of lawes vnder the title Man helpe cap. 5. Whosoever leileth a freeman (any man much moze a sonne) vnto strangers &c.

Now if any man be vnto that hard fortune, that he must needs commit his owne sonne to the hands of some inhabitant or stranger, being vnto by famine, or any other extreame necessity, that he may not be constrained to see him hungered for want of sustenance but keepeth his dogge still for his owne eating, this man is not to be sayd, that he esteemeth quailly of moze basely of his sonne then of his dogge: whether Islanders or any other countrey men do the same.

The occasion
of this Number.

The Germanes or the Danish mariners might perhaps find amongst vs certaine beggars with children (for we haue here a great number of them) who in lesling maner for they are

giuen to crissing talke, n
aske, What will you gi
uen, I will giue you for
ly to place with strangers
ly of these beggars, relea
for him in another count
by to die for hunger and p
man) make lesse account
here preformed by many,
that honourable man Acc
Island in the yere of our Lo
marke fiftene poore boyes
every one of them being bo

What if some man be by
a chapman, his owne selfe k
the unwilling and forced cr
hate, or want of naturall aff
ny man hereupon ground a g
of Samaria, two mothers sle
the siege of Ierusalem, how la
her tender child: My sweet
this matter, though very com
and mishap, for whom shou
and sedition? If we be subdu
happy dayes vnder the yoke
there is a rout of seditious rel
Come on therefore, my sonne
word in the common life of m
ties of the lewes. These sayin
hale, and reseruing the other,
this unhappy mother woul
maller of chapman, if he coul
haue bene preferred? That
Spaine, when in olde time Cae
spains whereof conuerterd the
hunger, whom doubtlesse they
same also is well knowne whic
Germany, inso much that the far
the death of the Emperour H
the parents would deuoure their
Polonia and Bohemia. And that
there was such a grievous dearth
some being compelled for wa
the barbarous enemy of Chyrtians
warre: and some are sayd to haue
with cruell mercy to haue cat
the like make any man so mad
alym for their owne food, and to
then willingly in the water? I
enforced through extreame and
generally to be impudently
be such an one who hath tak
with.

But I could wish that the loue of
those people, whose matrons, and
they carry them in their bosom
which fashious Caesar blamed in certai
and whelpes in their armes, at k
might soothe children or no? Signifi

giuen to triffing calke, might fay : Giue me this, or sell me that : and when the stranger should
afke, *What will you giue me for it?* the begger might anfwere ; I haue ten or foureteen chil-
dren, I will giue you some one or more of them, &c. For this rabble of beggers vseth thus fond-
ly to pae with strangers. Now if there be any well disposed man, who pitying the need and fol-
ly of these beggers, releaseth them of one sonne, and doth for Gods sake by some meanes prouide
for him in another countrey : both the begger therefore (who together with his sonne being reas-
onably) make lesse account of his sonne then of his dogge : Such workes of loue and mercie haue
bene performed by many, aswell *Iflanders* themselves as strangers : one of which number was
that honourable man *Accilius Iulius*, being sent by the most gracious King of Denmarke into
Ifland in the yere of our Lord 1552, who, as I haue heard, tooke, and carried with him into Den-
marke fiftene poore boyes : where after ward it was reported vnto me, that by his good meanes
every one of them being bound to a seuerall trade, prouided good and chrestian men.

What if some man be vnto that passe, that he doth not onely sell his sonne, but not finding
a chapman, his owne selfe killeth and eateth him : Examples of this kinde be common, namely of
the vntoiling and forced cruelty of parents towards their children, not being picked en through
hate, or want of naturall affection, but being compelled therunto by vrgent necessity. Shall a-
ny man herupon ground a generall reproch against a whole nation ? We reade that in the siege
of Samaria, two mothers slew their sonnes, and eat them sodden : 4. King. chap. 6. We reade in
the siege of Ierusalem, how lamentable the voice of that distressed mother was, being about to kill
her tender child : My sweet babe, for she (so) I will report Eusebius owne words, concerning
this matter, though very common, that the affection of a mother may appeare borne to miserie
and mishap, for whom should I conueniently referue thee in this tumult of famine, of warre,
and sedition ? If we be subdued to the gouernment of the Romans, we shall weare out our vn-
happy dayes vnder the yoke of slavery. But I thinke famine will preuent captiuitie. Besides,
there is a rout of seditious rebels much more intollerable then either of the former miseries.
Come on therefore, my sonne, be thou meat vnto thy mother, a fury to these rebels, and a by-
word in the common life of men, which one thing onely is wanting to make vp the calamity
of the Iewes. These sayings being ended, she killeth her sonne, roasting and eating one
half, and reseruing the other, &c. *Eusebius lib. 3. cap. 6.* Now, what man will not beleue that
this unhappy mother would full gladly haue passed ouer this her sonne into the possession of some
matter of chapman, if she could haue happened vpon any such, with whom she thought he might
haue bene preserued ? That famine is well known which oppressed *Calagurium*, a city of
Spain, when in olde time *Cacius Pompeius* layed siege thereunto (*Valerius lib. 7. cap. 7.*) the ci-
tizens wherof conuerted their wiues and children into meat for the satisfiing of their extreme
hunger, whom doubtlesse they would with all their hearts haue solde for other victuals. That
famine also is well known which in the yere of our Lord 851 (*Vincens lib. 25. cap. 26.*) afflicted
Germany, inso much that the father was glad to deuoure his owne sonne. It is well known af-
ter the death of the Emperour Henry the seuenth, in a famine continuing thre whole yeres, how
the parents would deuoure their children, and the children their parents, and that especially in
Polonia and Bohemia. And that we may not onely allege ancient examples : it is reported that
there was such a greivous dearth of corne in the yeres 1586, and 1587, throughout Hungary,
that some being compelled for want of food were faine to sell their children vnto the most bloudy
and barbarous enemy of Christians, and so to enchain them to the perpetuall yoke of Turkish
slavery : and some are sayd to haue taken their children, whom they could no longer sustaine, and
with cruell mercy to haue cast them into Danubius, and drowned them. But should these stories
make any man so mad as to affirme that this or that nation accustometh to kill their
children for their owne food, and to sell them willingly vnto the Turks, or to dwome and stran-
gle them through extreme and biting necessities, do willingly part with their sonnes) is this
more generally to be imputed vnto the whole nation, and that by way of disgrace, by any man,
except he be such an one who hath taken his leaue of all modesty, plaine dealing, humanity, and
honour.

But I could wish that the loue of dogges in *Iflanders* might be more sparingly reprehended
those people, whose matrons, and specially their noble women, take so great delight in dogs,
that they carry them in their bosomes through the open streets : I will not say in Churches :
which fashion *Caesar* blamed in certaine strangers, whom he saw at Rome carrying about young
dogges and whelpes in their armes, asking them this question : Whether women in their countrey
ought to carry children or no : Signifying hereby, that they do greatly offend, who bestow vpon
beasts

beasts these naturall affections, where with they should be inuited to the loue of mankind, and specially of their owne offspring: which strange pleasure neuer ouertooke, nor possesse the nation of the Islanders. Wherefore also (Munster and Krantzius) you will finde vs out other marks of Christianity, of the law of nature, of the Germans law, and of holy simplicitie.

The eighth section.

Krantzius.
Munsterus.

They honour their Bishop as their King: vnto whose command all the whole people haue respect. Whatsoeuer he prescribeth out of the law, the scriptures, or the customes of other nations, they do full holily obserue.

There was indeed at the beginning, about the time of the reformation of religion, great reuerence had vnto the bishop: but neuer so great, that our politique lawes at the bishops command should giue place to outlandish lawes & customes. Neither in the time of Albertus Krantzius, much lesse of Munster (of which two the first deceased in the yere of our Lord 1517, and the second 1552) the bishops of Island had the authority of kings, when as many of the country which were of the richer sort, would not doubt to reuell against them; which thing is too well known in our country. Yet in the meane time, the bishops being terrible with their authority of communication, reduced some vnder their subiection, and others at that time they cruelly persecuted.

Whereouer, albeit at that time the bishop was had in great, yea, in exceeding great reuerence, yet now adayes, the darkenesse of popery being dispelled, the deuill assaulteth men after another sort, and euen here amongst vs, he is not slacke to arme their minds with contempt, and peruerse stubbornnesse against God, and his holy ministry.

The ninth section.

Munsterus,

They liue there for the most part vpon fishes, because of their great want of corne, which is brought in from the port townes of other countreys: who cary home fishes from thence with great gaine. Also Munster sayth, they do there vse stockefish in stead of bread, which groweth not in that country.

Consider (friendly reader) how Munster is delighted to harpe vpon one string, that to witte he can write nothing of an unknown nation which may carpe any thing with it, he is faine either to lye in falsehood, or often to repeat the same things, so to become tedious vnto his reader: for he sayd a little before, that the Islanders liue vpon fish. His words aboue recited were that the Island containeth many people liuing onely with the food of cattell, and sometimes by taking of fishes. And that I may omit the rest in which some trifle might be noted: whereas he saith that bread groweth not in Island: it is most true: which I thinke is common therewith to Germany also, because bread groweth not there neither, except it be in Munsters field where our rurrall vineger also doth marueilously encrease. But these toyes, by the liberty of writing the first sooth, shall be out of danger. Howbeit, vnto these reproches, which strangers do gather from the meats and drincks of the Islanders, we will hereafter briefly answer, Sect. 15.

The tenth section.

Munsterus,
Krantzius,

The inhabitants do celebrate the actes of their ancestors, and of their times, with songs, and they graue them in rocks and promontories, that they may not decay with posterity, but onely by the defect of nature.

Erasmus.

There be diuers found amongst them that be minstrels, and can play vpon the lute, who with their delectable musicke do enuaine and take both fowles and fishes.

The Islanders
do pfectue
in writing the
actes of their
ancestors.

We denie not but that some woorthy actes of our forefathers be referred in the songs and poems of our countrey men, as also in prose: but that the same things haue bene engrauen by vs, or by our ancestors, in rocks or promontories, we may in no case acknowledge: that praise to be due vnto vs, nor yet the other of minstrels, and taking of birds and fishes, if we holde it to be the part of an honest and ingenuous mind, as to refuse false crimes, so not to challenge vnderfetched praise vnto himselfe, nor to accept it being offered.

The eleventh section.

But now, let this be the end of our controuerse with the authours aforesayd, being other wise men of excellent learning, and of great renoume, who notwithstanding so inconsiderately haue entrembled these things in their writings. And now the better part of my labour is finished.

But yet there cometh
to light, as it were at a
the same of the Islanders
Whereouer, although I
know with what minde I
his pestiferous rancour, b

but that I may sacrifice all
hereafter read or heare, I
thinke that we may rightly
if it be possible, toaine our
our nation, and from hence
landers) from that libertie

Wherefore, that I may
the repeating of those thing
whom also I could bying in,
of this my booke, but that I
my and diuers reproches, nye
with the filchinesse thereof.

I will therefore repeat th
with others, or, that heretofore
(sayd) I cause good and learn
are delicious to see or heare his
(I say) to defile these papers

first therefore, this our g
flows in Island, which preac
dition of this paquill, which
pallours vnto preach but fin
ther, let the reader be iudge, I
first edition, had scarce scene I
saying: Trueth agreeth vnto r

But sith it is our part not re
mons, about the time where re
damer in vnto then they are at th
dispelled. Which also is to be
common people in Latine, as b
their saluation in the spasse, d
from that mist, it hath bene (G
gether erre the dulnesse, flou
whether it agreeth to any of the

Secondly, the trifler shamefully
lique, and common vices an
vices.

Although indeed these most
Ather vniuall: not withstand
other nations, where be greater mu
Islanders rather with this reproch
this crime then our countrey men.
And albeit I wish with all mi
in our countrey, then we see they
inclination to backbitting, hath add
landers are not accounted for vice
affirme this to be true: What: it
contained in our Nature booke vnde
who soeuer committeth aduilty w

But yet there remaines that viperous German vizard, the mother whereof would haue it come to light, as it were at a second birth, without name, that it might so much the more freely wound the fame of the Islanders with venenous sting.

Howeouer, although I be not afraid to encounter with this beast, yet would I haue all men to know with what minde I vndertake this enterprize, namely, not that I meane to contend with his pestiferous rancour, by repproches, and railing speeches (for as it is in the common prouerbe: I know, that if I strive with dung most vile, How ere it be, my selfe I shall defile)

but that I may sacrifice all honest and well affected men, euen strangers themselves, who shall hereafter read: or heare, or haue heretofore heard that Germane pasquill, least they also should thinke that we in this Ile sustaine so monstrous a disgrace: and also that I may from henceforth, restrain others (who vse those venenous Germane rimes to the vpholding of our nation, and from hence borrow their scoffes, or repprochfull tauntes to the debasing of vs Islanders) from that liberie of backbiting.

Therefore, that I may not be tedious to the reader with long circumstances, I will come to the rehearsing of those things which that railing Germane hath heaped vp in his lewd pasquill: of this my booke, but that I doe foresee that the sayd slanderous libell being stuffed with so many and diuers repproches, might breed offence to all honest men, and deterre them from reading it,

I will therefore repeat the principall matters (committing those things which he hath common with others, or that heretofore haue bene examined) but farre more modestly then he, least (as I sayd) I cause good and learned mens eares to tingle at his lewd and vnseemely rimes: they that (I say) to defile these papers with his stinking slanders, or with the filthy linke of his repproches, first therefore, this our goodly Germane Historiographer obiecteth that there be many Pa-

The first objection of repproch.

stours in Island, which preach not to their people once in two yeres, as it is read in the former pasours vse to preach but fene times in an whole yere: saying that the sayd cher, let the reader be iudge, seeing it is manifest that the authour himselfe, presently after the saying: Truth agreeth vnto truth; but falshood agreeth neither to truth nor to falshood.

But sith it is our part not to dissemble the trueth in any place, we will not denie that holy sermons, about the time wherein this sycophant liued in Island, namely in the yere 1554, were sel- domer in vse then they are at this day, namely, the darkenesse of popery being scarcely at that time dispelled. Which also is to be vnderstood concerning the Psalmes of David mumbled by the common people in Latine, as he casteth vs in the teeth: for the Papists grombing all the hope of their saluation in the Masse, do little regard the sermon, or doctrine. But after we were freed from that mist, it hath bene (God be thanked) farre otherwise with vs: although we cannot altogether excuse the dulnesse, slouth, and preposterous care of certaine of our Pastours, Which, whether it agreeth to any of thier countrey men or no, let other nations iudge.

The twelfth section.

Secondly, the trifler shamefully repprogeth, that adulteries and whoredomes are not onely pub- lique, and common vices amongst Islanders: but that they are not accounted by them for vices.

The second repproch.

Although indeed these most filthy abominations, euen in our common wealch, be not altogether vnusall: notwithstanding, since all men know that they are farre more common in o- ther nations, where be greater multitudes of people, he did vnseruedly, and maliciously note the crime then our countrey men.

And albeit I with all mine heart that vices and enymities were much lesse wincked at in our countrey, then we see they are, yet notwithstanding this iugler, by reason of his naturall inclination to backbiting, hath added this in his last repproch: namely, that these vices by the Islanders are not accounted for vice. For, in what common wealch dare the impudent companion affirme this to be true: What: in that common wealch which hath sworn to obserue the law contained in our Statute booke vnder the title of Manhclge chap. 28, whereby it is enacted, that whosoever committeth adultery with another mans wife the second time, his goods being con- fiscate,

place, he shall be punished with death: And in that common wealth, which not long since hath inflicted the penalty of 80 dalters upon a seruane committing adultery with his masters wife: And in that common wealth which hath decreed, that if he doth not pay, nor lay in sureties at the day appointed, he shall be banished the countrey: And in that common wealth the politike lawes whereof doe straightly command that whosoever be according to law found in adultery with another mans wife, by her husband, if he escape, he shall vndergoe the punishment of manslaughter: And in that common wealth, the politike lawes whereof do also enioyne a man that is taken in carnall copulation with the mother, daughter, or sister, by the sonne, father, or brother, to redeme his life with the one halfe of that which he ought to haue payed, if he had shed the innocent blood of the sayd party: And in that common wealth the politike lawes whereof haue noted and condemned adultery vnder the name of a most heinous offence: and do straightly command that he whiche is taken the first time in that heauily act shall be punished with death.

You see therefore (friendly readers) what an iniurious Notary we haue, affirming that adultery and whozoborne in Island deserueth not the name of sinne and wickednesse: for although some officers let slip this or that vice unpunished, yet ought not the whole nation, nor the lawes, nor all good and goodly men, in that regard, to be accused or euill spoken of.

The thirteenth section.

The third re-
proch.

The third reproch is, whereby he doth brand the Islanders with the marke of deceit and treachery toward the Germans.

Doubtles the authoz of this libell was some bagabond buckler of pedler, and had gone particularly into many corners of Island to venter his trumpery wares, which he also testified of himselfe in his woorthy times, that he had traualled thorow the greatest part of Island, wherupon when he had played the cousting mate with others (so often times deceit and lying are to be together), and he hath sufficiently proued himselfe to be a liar, by this triall of his wit: peradventure himselfe was beguiled by them whom he before time had defrauded.

From hence proceedeth this slander against our whole Nation: dissembling in the meane time with what honestie certaine Germans, making yerely voyages into Island, deale with our men. But seeing by this complaint I haue not determined to reprocch others, but to lay open the vndeferred reproches of others against our nation, I do here of purpose surcease.

The fourteenth section.

The 4, 5, 6, 7
reproches.

Fourthly, he sayth that in bankets none of the ghests vfe to rise from the table: but that the good wife of the house reacheth to euery one a chamber-pot, so oft as need requireth. Moreover, he noteth much vnmanerlinesse of eating and drinking at bankets.

Fifthly, he obiectioneth customes of lying in bed, and of dining: namely that ten persons, more or lesse, men and women lie altogether in the same bed, and that they eat their meat lying in bed: and that in the meane time they do nothing but play at dice or at tables.

Sixtly, he reporteth that they wash their hands and their faces in piss.

Seuenthly, he despitfully abaseth our solemnizings of marriages, spousals, birth-dayes, and our customes at burials.

These, and a number of such like reproches hath this impure slanderer spent soothly against an innocent nation, yea and that nation which hath deserued righe well of him and his crimes. Which are of the same kind with these, in so much that we altogether disdaine to make answer vnto them, for, that we may graunte (which notwithstanding we will in no case preiudice vnto) that this woorthy Germane notate obserued some such matter among base companions, and the very of-scouring of the common people, with whom he was much more conuersant than with good and honest persons (for he had liued, as his times testifie, some what long vpon the coast of Island, whither a confused rout of the meanest common people, in sipping time do yerely resorte, who being taught as well through their owne lewdnesse, as by the wicked behaviour of our lawlesse mariners, often times doe leade a badde and dishonest life) notwithstanding we are in this place more manifestly wronged through the knauey of this one varlet, and desperate sycophant by his defaming of the whole nation (as others also vsually do) then that it should neede any refutation at all. Of which thing strangers themselves, who are not a litle conuersant in our Island, may be most sufficient witnesses.

I could also gather together many such filthy, vnmannerly, and baudie fashions noted by others euen in his own countrey. But I detest this dogged eloquence, neither take I any pleasure

to be wiced in the disguise, he daunted with lighte argueth, for one to obiect of other particular mannie or any other nacties, manslaughter, murther, and filthy acts, in other whole nation, and to see one that spends his time I may giue him his disposition in such like rep pleasant gardens, do not but thrusting their snouts and dung they can finde, best agreeable to their nigh winter lightly pastell but as for the woorth, and such things as best fit his name which we haue termed heretofore by my consent, fe

We will heere relate from the manner of that not in one or a few woorthy meates, and that, which are vnknown to strange, all which this venomous pail full.

And albeit we doe scarce be there, who at this day partly good to adde some few things.

First therefore we will describe both themselves, and, as with beggers and other poore

meate them: neither, because of that, therefore is it meet to pteion. For we haue all a law and

glee: in the obseruing of which

spoynter, we will make a v the time of famine, though man

their hunger, which at ope 1590 we heard concerning the

the fourth, King of Nau aguntum; in somuch that they

meale, esteeming it dainties. necessities haue liued by eat

Islanders constrained to doe, no from mans flesh, yea, and

some things necessary for food by strangers: so often as a headfull fearfull of vidual

famine. And therefore it is much, and had not some prouision, so often as need hath cr

ship to minister occasion to a publi nations, I referre it to the iudg

to be werry in the disgrating of others: and yet I will not thew my selfe such a milke-soppe as to be daunted with light wordes. Oncely, let all honest and good men consider, what disposition it argueth, for one to object against a whole nation certaine misfemeanours committed by some one or other particular man. If any man should crauell thozowout all the cities and townes of Germany, manslaughterers, murderers, whoopedomes, adulteries, incests, riots, extortions, and other prophane, and filthy acts, should affirme them to be common to all Germans, or otherwise to any other whole nation, and should exaggerate all these things with noxious lies, is he to be accounted one that spends his time in a good argument? But what maneruaile is it, though a varlet, and, disposition in such like reproches? For it is well knowen that swine, when they enter into most pleasant gardens, do not plucke lillies, or roses, or any other most beautifull and sweet flowers; but churlling their snouts into the ground, doe tumble and cosse vp and downe whatsoeuer dureth best agreeable to their nature, wherewith they greedily glut themselves: Euen so this hogge, such things as best fit his humour and disposition (that he might indeed thew himselfe to be the best of his kinde, for his maners and disposition let him enjoy the name of a swine.

The fifteenth section.

We will heere rehearse the ninth reproch, which that slanderous hogge hath bzawen from the maner of liuing, and specially from the meat and drinke of the *Jflanders*, and charact in one or a few wordes, but in a large inuective: namely, that they eate olde and vnswallow meates, and that, without the vse of bread. Also, that they eate diuers kinds of fishes which are vnknown to strangers: and that they mingle water and whey together for drinke. All which this venomous palquill, with eloquent railing and wittie flauour hath set out at the full.

The ninth reproch.

And albeit we doe scarce vouchsafe to stand longer about answering of him, yet in regard of others, who at this day partly wonder at the matter, and partly object it to our nation, we thought good to adde some few things in this place.

First therefore we will diuide this our nation into two partes: into beggers, and those that susteine both themselves, and, amongst others, beggers also. As touching all kinds of meats wherewith beggers and other poore men satisfie their hunger, it is no easie matter to rehearse and examine them: neither, because extream necessity hath at some times compelled them to eate this or that, therefore is it meet to prescribe certaine kindes and number of meats to the rest of the nation. For we haue alwaies a law among the canons apostolicall, which forbiddeth to eat things straggled: in the obseruing of which canons, antiquity hath seemed to be very deuout.

Howeouer, we will make a distinction of times also, that it may seeme no strange accident in the time of famine, though many things are, and haue bene used by a great number of men to satisfie their hunger, which at other times are scarce meat for dogges. As very lately in the yeere 1550 we heard concerning the citizens of Paris, being environed with the most streight siege of Aguntum; in somuch that they did not onely eate their horses, but also taking the flesh of dead men, and beating their bones to powder in a moyter, they mingled therewith a handfull or two of meale, eleeving it daimeies. And it is well known also of other nations, who in the like vntoward necessities haue liued by eating of mice, cats and dogs. In like maner sometimes are we constrained to doe, not being besieged by our enemies (although hitherto we haue abounded from mans flesh, yea, and to our knowledge, from dogs, mice, and cats) for whereas we haue things necessary for food out of the land and sea, & no sustenance, or very little, is brought to us by strangers: so often as God withholdeth his gifts of land and sea, then must follow and ensue a deadly full scarcitie of victuals, wherupon the inhabitants are sometimes vered with grievous famine. And therefore it is likely that they amongst vs which used to liue from hand to mouth, and had not some provision of former yeeres remaining, haue bene driven to great extremities, so often as need hath enforced them thereto. But whether this thing ought woorthily to minister occasion to a publique and perpetuall reproch against the *Jflanders*, more then other nations, I referre it to the iudgement of indifferent and honest mindes.

Howeouer,

fare of our country,
ending white meads,
for there be many of
the foorth an ought in
varieties of fauce, be-
to live moderately
in most places with
which ceraine stran-
mong vs do use to eat
not yett the proper
notwithstanding
should handle, and
it may appeare, thus
e.

and wholefome: per
of ours: neither do
him thanks with our
is esteemed to be a
eres, and a good age
count to be signes of
es, our wit are not
is our aier, and these
beritie in deede than

doeth too plainly be-
seeme to be better:
not had triall of be-
a will not be persua-
dome: experience and
here with they maine
we haue heard of
Diodorus, Aristo-
s haue named Man-
o, or round stomps,
ye presume to make
to such sustenance,

to hospitalitie. They
is any shame to be
ee colt. For if they
ly. For your, he
which many of the
they haue receiued
haue done their do-
me notable diligence

manifest out of this

nes, we will reform
this Island, which
we haue bene at-
ent: may satisfie
to repeat: so great
uer shall vnto do
was loth to lose
elle, whereas in
rums

The true state of Island. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

589

times there is not one word without a reproch) will be not iudge the author of this patquill to
hau: bene: a most lewde man, yea the very diuile of mankind, without pietie, without humanitie:
But here I haue iust occasion to doubt whether the author of these reuilings hath bene the
more iudicious to Islanders, or the printer thereof Iachimus Leo (and whatsoever else they
be) who in their editions dare neither professe their owne name, nor the name of their Title) which
Leo hath now twice, if not oftner, published the saide pamphlet at Hamburg. Doe you suffer
new to gratifie Island in this sort, which these many yeeres, by reason of your abundant traffique
with vs, and your transporting home of all our commodities, of our beeces and muttons, and of
an incredible deale of butter and fishes, hath bene vnto your Title in deed of a storehouse? In
times past also, ceraine Cities of England and of Holland haue reaped the commodities of this
Title: Forouer, there hath bene ancient traffique of Denmarke, Breime, and Lubeck with the
Islanders. But they neuer gained by any of their chapmen such commendations, and such thanks,
as are contained in this libell: It hath in your, in your Title (I say) bene hzen, brought forth,
iterated, if not the thirde time published: which hath armed other people, vnto whom the name of
Island was other wise scarce knowne, to the disdain and contempt of this our Nation: and this
murder offered by a Citizen of yours, hath Island sustained these 30. yeeres and more, and doeth as
yet susteine. But many such accidents often come to passe without the knowledge of the magi-
strate, neither do we doubt but that good men are grieved at such infamous libels, and do take
higent heed that they be not published: for such editions are contrary to the lawe of nature: Doe
not that to another which thou wouldst not haue done vnto thy selfe: and to the lawes Em-
perial of infamous libels: wherein is enioyned a most grievous penaltie vnto those, who in-
uent, write, vter, or cause such libels to be bought or sold, or do not presently vpon the finding
thereof cease them in pieces.

The common
dishes of Island.

The ancient
traffique of
England with
Island.

Islanders against
libels.

But now time bids vs to found a retreat: and to returne home vnto thee Island, our most deare
mother, whom neither pouertie, nor colde, nor any other such inconueniences shall make irk-
some vnto vs, so long as thou ceasest not to glie heartie and willing entertainment vnto Christ:
where, first we doe earnestly exhort thee to the serious and ardent affection, and loue of God, and
of the heauenly knowledge reueiled vnto vs in Christ: that thou wouldst preferre this before all
things, being contained wile desire of doctrine, and of the woyle: that thou wouldst not lightly
esteem, contemne, or hate the holy ministerie and ministers, but reuerence, cherish, and loue
them. Accompanying those that practise the contrary as wicked and prophane: and managing all
thyne affaires both priuate and publique, according to the prescript rule of pietie and honestie,
and so in either kinde of life relying thy selfe vpon that leuell and line of equitie and iustice, and a-
voiding others, who vpon stubbornesse and impietie swerue therefrom. That thou wouldst also
admitte such punishments vpon offenders: All which we doubt not but the Magistrate will haue re-
spect vnto. But especially that thou admitted none to be Magistrates, but men of approued sibe-
neanes inconueniences may sily be prevented. For if this matter be well handled, namely that
they which are the best of all good men be chosen to beare publique authoritie, wicked and vnde-
uen being altogether reiectted: the condition of the subiects shalbe most prosperous: the liues and
honours of all men shal proue by so much the more commendable: godlinesse also and honestie shal
become the more glorious. But on the contrary, if pastours of Churches be not answerable to
their function, either in life or doctrine: if all men without respect or difference be admitted to the
gouernment of the common wealth, who aspire thereunto by their owne rashnesse, ambition, or a-
uice, and desire of honour, yea though they be suspected or conuicted of crimes and dishonestie,
the pastours or vniu: fauourers of such persons as are suspected and conuicted: then what
will thy state, oh Island? What wil be thy outward shew or condition? Doubtesse most mis-
erous, when if thou committed thy selfe to the gouernment of such men, who to the vttermost of their
ruine, although they be of thine owne blood, daily seeke thine ouerthrow for their owne priuate
amage and secret malice. Therefore (to be short) let these be to aduertise my deare Country,
and beware if it is that the matters aforesaid be put in practise.

But whilst I am speaking these things vnto thee (my Countrey) oh that my deepe and
full sighes, which lie hid in the former speech, might pierce the eares of our Kinges most ex-
cellent Maiestie, beside whom, on thy behalfe I doe bewaile the publique miseries, which in this
Island especially doe arise, because wee are so farre distant from the seate and royall presence
of King, that many therefore take more libertie, and promise more securitie of offending vnto
themselves.

D d d

themselves. But we will commit all these matters to the most iust Judge of heauen and earth who beholdeth all things in equitie.

Nowe it remaineth (my beloued Countrey) that thou wouldest take in good part these my labours employed in thy seruice, and accept them with that fauourable and courteous minde which I haue expected. And although they be not of such worth as I could wish, yet such a willing minde is worth all, I would not therefore giue ouer because I mistrusted my selfe as one insufficient to contend for thine innocencie, for thy reputation, and thine honour, my deare Countrey. But rather whatsoeuer it be (if it be ought) and how mickle-soeuer which for my slender abilitie I was able to offord in thy defence, I thought good not to suppress it: for I esteeme not those men worthy of commendation, who despairing

To ouergrow the limmes of *Lycos* floure,
Neglect to cure their bodies of the gout.

And in very deed, it doeth not whie repent me of my labour, if this little treatise shall tend either to thine, nor to mine owne disgrace. But if it shall any thing auale to thine honour or defence, I will thinke my trauaile right well bestowed. Yea, if by this my slender attempt I may but onely excite other of thy childezen, and my natieue Countreymen, being farre my superiours both in learning and industrie to take thy cause in hand, either nowe or hereafter, what reason is there why any man should say that it is not worth my labour? Nowe, if they aduise themselves to write, howsoeuer my fame shall be obscured, yet will I comfort my selfe with their excellencie, who are like to impaire my credit: for albeit a man ought to haue speciall regard of his name and fame, yet is he to haue moze of his Countrey, whose dignitie being safe and sound, we also must needs esteeme our selues to be in safetie.

Written at *Holen Hialdale* in *Island*, the yeere of our
Lord 1592, the 7. of the Kalends of May.

A letter written by the graue and learned *Gudbrandus Thorlacius*
Bishop of *Holen* in *Island*, concerning the ancient state of *Island* and *Gronland*, &c.

Reuerendissimo viro, eruditione & virtute conspicuo, *D. Hugoni*
Branham, Ecclesie *Hareuicensis* in *Anglia* pastori vigilantissimo, fratri & symmylitarum obseruando.



Mirabar equidem (vt conjicis, reuerende domine pastor) primo literarum tuarum incuitu, ignotum me, ab ignoto, scriptis salutari. Ceterum, cum vlcus progredier, comperi me, si non aliter, certe nomine tenus, tibi (quæ tua est humanitas) innotuisse: Simulq; quod te nominis Islandorum studium ceperir, ex animo gauisus sum. Vnde etiam faciam, vt tua pietas, tuumque nomen, de Euangelio Iesu Christi nobis congratulantis, deque gente nostra tam benigne tamque honorifice sentientis & scribentis, apud nos ignotum esse debeat.

Quod verò ad antiquitatis monimēta attinet, quæ hic extare creduntur, nihil sanè est (prope illa, quorum in Commentario isto de Islandia, quem vidisse te scribis, sit mentio) de hac nostra insula lectu scriptuū dignum, quod cum humanitate tua communicem. De vicinis itidem terris pauca, præter historiam Regum Noruegiæ, seu veriũs eiusdem historię fragmenta; quæ aliter describere sunt: sunt tamen talia, quæ Krantzius non attigerit, aut eorum: certè pauca. In vicinia quoque Gronlandia, id veterum opinione habemus, eam magno circuitu ab exoriente Noruegiæ, vbiß *Biarmlandia* nuncupatur, & à qua haud vasto intervallo sita sit, circum quæ Islandiam exporrigi. Illic nostrates aliquando commercia exercuisse, & eam terram tempore *Pasciorum* suos Episcopos habuisse annales nostri testantur. Cætera nobis incognita. Ac hodie illa est, vestris Britannis (quos ego propè maris dominos appellarim) quotannis esse in Gronlandia negotiationes: de qua re, si me certiores feceris, non erit iniucundum. Etiam velim quicunque noua erunt de rebus vestrarum aut vicinorum regnorum, ea non omittas.

Vale feliciter (reuerende Dom. pastor) Deo, musis, & commisso gregi quam diutissime perites, Amen. Ex Islandia in festo visitationis D. Mariæ Anno 1595.

Human. tuę studiosus *Gudbrandus Thorlacius* Episcopus
Holensis in Islandia.

Commentarius brevis de Islandia: per Arngimundum Iohannem Islandum auctus, 1593.

Biarmlandia.

Gronlandia olim tuos habuit Episcopos.

To the reuerend, le
Church of *Hareu*

I pur maruelled (even
of your letters, that be
known unto mee. How
name at least (which proce
you desirous of the credit a
my selfe will be a meane, tha
the Gospel of Christ here pul
nation) may cease hereafter

As touching the monimen
ry bee, nothing (except thy
Island, which you write into
communicate with you. And
does the history of the Kings
others haue otherwise describ
mentioned: vntill it be some
from the opinion of our aunce
Biarmlandia, and from whe
Shoghen coast of Island with a
wise doe testifie that our ow
also that the very same count
Spe then this we cannot auou
almost call the lordes of the
which matter if you please to giu
Shoghen, what soeuer netes y
traps thereabout, I pray you mak
long life, for the seruice of God, t
in your charge. I bid you fare
Vierge Mary, Anno Dom. 1592

The miraculous vic

vnder the discreet and l
dent, and valiant lord, the
the Spanish huge *A. made*
ther with the wofull and n
coasts of Norway, of the *Sea*
England, &c. Recorded in
history of the low Countre



Quing in
righte e
ties; we
pile of al
as it was
formed in
and destru
uing a lon
sulted the

England and the low Countreys. T
ence it unto his catholique Religio
disgrace, contempe and dishonou
the Popes obedience) had endured o
taken deepe impression in his th
reade and direct course, where
the Countreys, hauing restrained of

The same in English.

The same in English.
To the reuerend, learned, and vertuous, Master Hugh Branham minister of the
Church of Haverich in England, his brother and fellow-pastour, &c.
your humble selfe, reuerend sir,

I Such marvellous (even as your letter, reverend sir, conjectured that I would) at the first sight
 known unto mee. Howbeit, reading a little further, I found my selfe, if not other wise, yet by
 you desirous of the credit and honest report of vs Islanders, I greatly rejoiced. Wherefore I
 my selfe will be a means, that your vertue and good name (because you congratulate with vs for
 the Gospel of Christ here published, and doe thinke and wiske so lovingly and honourably of our
 nation) may cease hereafter to be unknown amongst vs.
 As touching the monuments of antiquitie which vs

As touching the monuments of antiquitie which are here thought to be extant, there is, in be-
lieve, nothing (except those particulars, whereof mention is made in the Commentaries of
Iland, which you write unto me that you have seen) worthy to be read or written, which I may
communicate with you. And as concerning our neighbour Countreys we have little to shew, be-
sides the history of the Kings of Norway, (or rather some fragments of the same history) which
others have otherwise described: howbeit they are all in a manner such things as Cranzius neuer
mentions: wile it be some few relations. Moreover, as touching Gronland, we holde this
from the opinion of our auncellours; that, from the extreme part of Norway, which is called
Biarmlandia, and from whence the saide Gronland is not farre distant, it fetcheth about the
Norwegian coast of Iland with an huge circuit in manner of an halfe spoone. It fetcheth about the
wile doo testifie that our owne countreyemen in times past resorted thither for traffique, and
also that the very same countrey of Gronland had certaine Bishops in the dayes of Poperie.
I say then this we cannot auaich. But now it is reported that your Englishmen (whom I may
durst call the lordes of the Ocean sea) make secretly voyages unto Gronland: concerning
which matter if you please to giue me further auertisement you shall doe me an especial fauour,
I pray you make vs heare concerning the affaires of England or of other Coun-
tries, for the seruice of God, for the increase of learning, and the benefit of the people commit-
ted to your charge, I bid you farewell. From Iland vpon the feast of the visitation of the blessed
Virgine Mary, Anno Dom. 1595.

**This is the
bylest Coma
mentarie of Io-
nas Arngimus
immediatly
going before.**

**Gronland in old
time had Chit-
nian 25th yov.**

Yours Gudbrandus Thorlacius Bishop of
Holar Island.

The miraculous victory atchieued by the *English* Fleet,

nder the discreet and happy conduct of the right honourable, right prudent, and valiant lord, the L. Charles Howard, L. high Admirall of England, &c. Vpon the Spanish huge Armada sent in the yeere 1588, for the inuasion of England, together with the wofull and miserable successe of the said Armada afterward, vpon the coasts of Norway, of the Scottish Westerne Isles, of Ireland, of Spaine, of France, and of England, &c. Recorded in Latine by Emanuel van Meteran in the 15. booke of his history of the low Countries.



King in part declared the strange and wonderfull euents of the yere
 righte right, which hath bene so long time forgotten by ancient prophe-
 ties; we will now make relation of the most notable and great enter-
 prise of all others which were in the foresaid yeres achieved, in order
 as it was done. Which exploit (although in very deed it was not per-
 formed in any part of the low Countreys) was intended for their ruine
 and destruction. And it was the expedition which the Spanish king, ha-
 ving a long time determined the same in his minde, and having con-
 sulted thereabout with the Pope, let forth and undertooke against
 the Religion, and by that means might be sufficiently reuenged for
 dishonour, which hee (having 34. yeeres before enforced them
 endured of the English nation, and for diuers other injuries which
 in his thoughts. And also for that hee deemed this to bee the
 best, whereby hee might recouer his heretierarie possession of the
 straites the inhabitants from sailing upon the coast of England.

D D D

Doc 2

Welch

The prepara-
tion of the Spa-
nish King to
subdue England
and the lowe
Countreys.

Which verily, upon most weighty arguments and euident reasons, was thought would vndoubt-
ly haue come to passe, considering the great aboundance and store of all things necessary where-
with those men were furnished, which had the managing of that action committed vnto them.
But now let vs describe the matter more particularly.

The Spanish King hauing with small fruite and commoditie, for aboute twentie yeeres toge-
ther, waged warre against the Netherlanders, after deliberation with his counsellors there-
about, thought it most conuenient to assault them once againe by Sea, which had bene attempt-
ed sundry times heretofore, but not with forces sufficient. Vnto the which expedition it adde-
him now in hand to ioyne great puillance, as hauing the English people his professed enemies;
whose Island is so situate, that it may either greatly helpe or hinder all such as saile into those
parts. For which cause he thought good first of all to inuade England, being perswaded by his
Secretary Escouedo, and by diuers other well experienced Spaniards and Dutchmen, and
by many English fugitives, that the conquest of that Island was lesse difficult then the conquest
of Holland and Zeland. Forouer the Spaniards were of opinion, that it would bee farre more
behouefull for their King to conquere England and the lowe Countreys all at once, then to be com-
strained continually to maintaine a warlike flauie to defend his East and West Indie fleets,
from the English Drake, and from such like valiant enemies.

And for the same purpose the king Catholique had giuen commandement long before in Italy
and Spaine, that a great quantitie of timber should be felled for the building of shippes; and also
besides made great preparation of things and furniture requisite for such an expedition; as name-
ly in founding of brassen Ordnance, in storing vp of corne and victuals, in rayning of men to the
warlike weapons, in leauping and mustering of souldiers: in somuch that about the beginning
of the yeere 1588, he had finished such a mighty flauie, and brought it into Lisbon haue, as neere
the like had before that time sailed vpon the Ocean sea.

A very large and particular description of this flauie was put in print and published by the
Spaniards; wherein were set downe the number, names, and brethens of the shippes, the num-
ber of Mariners and souldiers throughout the whole fleet; likewise the quantitie of their Or-
dnance, of their armour, of bullets, of march, of gun-powder, of victuals, and of all their small
furniture was in the saide description particularized. Vnto all these were added the names of
the Gouernours, Captaines, Noblemen and gentlemen voluntaries, of whom there was so great
a multitude, that scarce was there any family of account, or any one principall man throughout
all Spaine, that had not a brother, sonne or kinsman in that fleet: who all of them were in good
hope to purchase vnto the ascenders in that flauie (as they termed it) inuincible, endless glory and
renowme, and to possesse themselves of great Seigniories and riches in England, and in the lowe
Countreys. But because the saide description was translated and published out of Spanish into
diuers other languages, we will here onely make an abridgement of byefie rehearsal thereof.

Portugal furnished and set forth vnder the conduct of the duke of Medina Sidonia generall
of the fleet, ten Galeons, two Zabazas, 1300. Mariners, 3300. souldiers, 300. great pi-
eces, with all requisite furniture.

Biscay, vnder the conduct of Iohn Martinnes de Ricalde Admiral of the whole fleet, set forth
tenne Galeons, 4. Bataches, 700. mariners, 2000. souldiers, 250. great pieces, &c.

Guipulco, vnder the conduct of Michael de Oquendo, tenne Galeons, 4. Bataches, 700. ma-
riners, 2000. souldiers, 310. great pieces, &c.

Italy with the Leuant Islands, vnder Marine de Vertendona, 10. Galeons, 800. mariners,
2000. souldiers, 310. great pieces, &c.

Castile, vnder Diego Flores de Valdez, 14. Galeons, two Bataches, 1700. mariners, 2400.
souldiers, and 380. great pieces, &c.

Andaluzia, vnder the conduct of Pedro de Valdez, 10. Galeons, one Batache, 800. mariners,
2400. souldiers, 280. great pieces, &c.

Item, vnder the conduct of Iohn Lopez de Medina, 23. great Flemish hulkes, with 700. ma-
riners, 3200. souldiers, and 400. great pieces.

Item, vnder Hugo de Moncada, foure Gallies containing 1200. gally-flaues, 450. ma-
riners, 870. souldiers, 300. great pieces, &c.

Item, vnder Diego de Mandrana, foure Gallies of Portugal, with 888. gally-flaues, 360.
mariners, 20. great pieces, and other requisite furniture.

Item, vnder Anthonie de Mendoza, 22. Bataches and Zabazas, with 574. mariners, 480.
souldiers, and 193. great pieces,

Besides the ships aforesaid there were 20. carauels rowed with oares, being appointed
to performe necessary seruices vnto the greater ships: in somuch that all the ships appertaining

The number
and quantitie of
the ships in
the Spanish
Fleet, with
the souldiers,
mariners, and
pieces of Ordi-
nance.

to this flauie amounted v
and victuals.

The number of Mariner
20000. besides noblemen
ships were of an huge an
pouly to containe the bur

The Galeons were 64.
marvellous force also, and
and to withstand any assault
English and Dutch ships, w
sapes. The upper two of the
muskets shot. The lower w
mid of planks and ribs fou
them, but such as were disch
ber of bullets were founde
Great and well pitched Table
against the battery of shot.

The Gallies were of such
rets, pulleys, and other comm
aces, there being in eche one
seruice with the force of their
furnished and beautified with
like ornaments.

Their pieces of brasse ordn
The bullets thereto belongi
Item of gun-powder 5600.
Of muskets and halciuers 7
Forouer they had great floz
seruices.

Likewise they were prouided
with furniture from place to plac
mats and balckes to set p
holes, and what else was n
for the space of halfe a yeere,
fall every mone. 3. whereof the w
Likewise of wine they had 14
of becom 6500. quintals. Of che
whe, wine, &c.

Forouer they had 12000. pipe
candles, lanternes, lampes, sailes
with the battery of gunshot. To be
for an armie by land.

This flauie (as Diego Pimente
maintaine 32000. persons, and to col
There were in the saide flauie si
gements) vnder the command
and amongst the rest there we
Scilie, Naples, and Terçera, C
Francisco de Toledo, Don Alonso
had eche of them 12. companie
many bands also of Castilians an
captaines, officers, colours and
It was not lawfull for any man, br
for which cause the women h
of the which being written by tem
The generall of this mighty flauie
Lopez of S. Lucar, and knight o
appointed for the same dignitie,
Iohn Martinnes de Ricalde was com

The Spanish Armada. Traffiques, and Discoueries.

593

to this Raue amounted unto the summe of 150. the one being sufficiently provided of furniture and victuals.

The number of Mariners in the saide Fleet were about 8000. of slaves 2088. of souldiers 10000. (besides noblemen and gentlemen voluntaries) of great cast pieces 2650. The foresaid ships were of an huge and incredible capacite and receiv. For the whole Fleet was large enough to containe the burthen of 60. thousand tunnes.

The Galeons were 64. in number, being of an huge bignesse, and very stately built, being of marvelous force also, and so high, that they resembled great castles, most fit to defend themselves and to withstand any assault, but in giuing any other ships the encounter farre inferior unto the English and Dutch ships, which ran with great verticall weild and turne themselves at all angles. The upper worke of the said Galeons was of thicke nasse and strength sufficient to beare off musket-shot. The lower worke was of thicke nasse and strength sufficient to beare off shot of planks and ribs foure or five foote in thicke nasse, insonmuch that no bullets could pierce them, but such as were discharged hard at hand: which afterward proved true, for a great number of bullets were found to sticke fast within the massie substance of those thicke planks. Great and well pitched Cables were twined about the masts of their shippes, to strengthen them against the battery of shot.

The Gallies were of such bignesse, that they contained within them chambers, chapels, curtes, pulpits, and other commodities of great houses. The Gallies were rowed with great force, there being in each one of them 300. slaves for the same purpose, and were able to do great service with the force of their Dymance. All these together with the residue aforesaid were furnished and beautified with trumpets, streamers, banners, warlike ensignes, and other such like ornaments.

Their pieces of brasse ordnance were 1600. and of yron 1000.

The bullets thereto belonging were 120. thousand.

Item of gun-powder 5600. quintals, Of matche 1200. quintals,

Of muskets and calceivers 7000. Of halberds and partisans 10000.

Moreover they had great store of canons, double-canons, culverings and field-pieces for land

armies.

Likewise they were provided of all instruments necessary on land to conueigh and transport their furniture from place to place, as namely of cates, wheeles, wagons, &c. Also they had spades, mattocks and baskets to set pioneers on worke. They had in like sort great store of mules and hies, and whatsoever else was requisite for a land-armie. They were so well stored of biscuit, that for the space of halfe a yeere, they might allowe each person in the whole Fleet halfe a quintall every mone.

Moreover of the whole summe amounteth unto an hundred thousand quintals.

Likewise of wine they had 147. thousand pipes, sufficient also for halfe a yeeres expedition.

Of becom 6500. quintals. Of cheere thre thousand quintals. Besides fish, rise, beanes, pease,

of bacon 6500. quintals. Of cheere thre thousand quintals. Besides fish, rise, beanes, pease,

of becom 6500. quintals. Of cheere thre thousand quintals. Besides fish, rise, beanes, pease,

of becom 6500. quintals. Of cheere thre thousand quintals. Besides fish, rise, beanes, pease,

of becom 6500. quintals. Of cheere thre thousand quintals. Besides fish, rise, beanes, pease,

of becom 6500. quintals. Of cheere thre thousand quintals. Besides fish, rise, beanes, pease,

of becom 6500. quintals. Of cheere thre thousand quintals. Besides fish, rise, beanes, pease,

of becom 6500. quintals. Of cheere thre thousand quintals. Besides fish, rise, beanes, pease,

of becom 6500. quintals. Of cheere thre thousand quintals. Besides fish, rise, beanes, pease,

of becom 6500. quintals. Of cheere thre thousand quintals. Besides fish, rise, beanes, pease,

of becom 6500. quintals. Of cheere thre thousand quintals. Besides fish, rise, beanes, pease,

of becom 6500. quintals. Of cheere thre thousand quintals. Besides fish, rise, beanes, pease,

of becom 6500. quintals. Of cheere thre thousand quintals. Besides fish, rise, beanes, pease,

A description of the Galeons.

A description of the Gallies.

The great Dymance, viz. lere, gun-powder, and other furniture.

These provisions of victuals and other things necessary.

A Spanish term consisting of 3200. pounds.

Francis Bouadilla was chiefe Marshall: who all of them had their officers sit and requisite for the guiding and managing of such a multitude. Likewise Martin Alorcon was appointed the ear general of the Inquisition, being accompanied with more then a hundred monks, to wit, Iesuites, Capuchines, and friers mendicant. Besides whom also there were Physicians, Chirurgians, Apothecaries, and whatsoeuer else pertained unto the hospitall.

Quere and besides the soynamed gouernours and officers being men of chiefe note, there were 124. very noble and worthy Gentlemen, which went voluntarily of their owne costs and charges, to the ende they might see fashions, learne experience, and attaine unto glory. Amongst whom was the prince of Acoli, Alonso de Leiva, the marques de Pennafiel, the marques de Ganes, the marques de Barlango, count de Paredes, count de Yeluas, and diuers other marqueses and earles of the honourable families of Mendoza, of Toledo, of Pacheco, of Cordoua, of Guzman, of Manrique, and a great number of others.

The preparation of the duke of Parma to aide the Spaniards.

While the Spaniards were furnishing this their Maie, the duke of Parma, at the direction of king Philip, made great preparation in the low Countreys, to giue ayde & assistance vnto the Spaniards; building ships for the same purpose, and sending for Pilots and ship-wrights out of Italy.

In Flanders hee caused certaine deepe channells to be made, and among the rest the channell of Yper: commonly called Yper-lee, employing some thousands of workemen about that seruice: to the ende that by the said channell he might transport ships from Antwerp and Ghent to Bruges, where hee had assembled aboue a hundred small ships called hoyes being well flozed with victuals, which hoyes hee was determined to haue brought into the sea by the way of Sluys, as often haue conveyed them by the saide Yper-lee being now of greater depth, into any port of Flanders whatsoeuer.

In the river of Waren hee caused 70. ships with flat bottomes to be built, euery one of which should serue to carry 30. hoyes, hauing eche of them brydges like wise for the hoyes to come in board, as to goe forth on land. Of the same fashion hee had provided 200. other vessels at Neuport, but not so great. And at Dunkirk hee procured 28. ships of warre, such as were there to be had, and caused a sufficient number of Spaniards to be leuied at Hamburg, Bremen, Emden, and at other places. Hee put in the ballast of the said ships, great store of beames of thicke planks, bring hollow and befest with yron pikes beneath, but on eche side full of claspes and hooks, to toyne them together.

Hee had likewise at Greueling provided 20. thousand of calke, which in a short space might be compact and ioyned together with nailes and cords, and reduced into the forme of a brydge. To be short, whatsoeuer things were requisite for the making of brydges, and for the barring and stopping vp of hauens mouths with stakes, posts, and other meanes, hee commanded to be made ready. Forsoeuer not farre from Neuport haue, hee had caused a great pile of wooden fagots to be layd, and other furniture to be brought for the rearing vp of a mount. The most part of his ships receiued two owens a peece to bake bread in, with a great number of sables, byzoles, and such other like apparell for hoyes. They had hoyes likewise, which after their landing should serue to carry, and draw engines, field-pieces, and other warlike provisions.

Neere vnto Neuport hee had assembled an armie, ouer the which hee had ordained Camillo de Monte to be Camp-master. This army consisted of 30. bands of ensignes of Italians, of some bands of Wallons, eight of Scots, and eight of Burgundians, all which together amount vnto 64. bands, euery band containing a hundred persons. Neere vnto Dixmud there were mustered 60. bands of Dutch men, fiftie of Spaniards, sixe of high Germans, and seuen bands of English companies, vnder the conduct of sir William Stanlie an English knight.

In the suburbs of Correight there were 4000. horsemen together with their hoyes in readiness: and at Waren 900. hoyes, with the troupe of the Marques del Gualto Capitaine general of the horsemen.

Vnto this famous expedition and presupposed victorie, many potentates, princes, and honorable personages hied themselves: out of Spaine the prince of Melito called the duke of Pallama and taken to be the sonne of one Ruygomes de Silua, but in very deed accounted among the number of king Philips base sonnes. Also the Marques of Burgrave, one of the sonnes of Archduke Ferdinand and Philippa Welfera. Vespasian Gonsaga of the family of Mantua, being for the ualry a man of great renowne, and heretofore Vice-roy in Spaine. Item Iohn Mediceus had some vnto the duke of Florence. And Amadas of Sauoy, the duke of Sauoy his base sonne, and many others of inferiour degrees.

The Popes furtherance to the conquest of England, and of the low Countreys.

Likewise Pope Sixtus quintus for the setting forth of the foresaid expedition, as they be to against Turkes & infidels, published a Cruzado, with most ample indulgences which were pined in great numbers. These baine buls the English and Dutchmen deriding, saye that the deuils

all passages lay in and there be which affirm for fidei, vpon the should enioy the conquest. To this purpose the sie money, and the other. And for the great hih man (whom hee ha vnto whom he committeth. This Allen being a stand into English, me land. By which Bull the Queenes most sacred quities, her subiects being Popes Legate.

But that all matters might seeme rather to be English people might be would come to effect, their of peace betwene her Against which creatie to wit, alleging that they might be repelled by brydges and prosecuted to the realme, as well in reg to maintaine the warres, a noble conditions be obtained that way, as to keepe backe tempest. Howsoeuer it was many English & Dutch me land and the united prouinc on and huge Armada, but be the constant report of the before. Howbeit they gaue e ned to conduct and wait oue Spaniards were deemed not stous ships vpon the shallow

At length when as the French termes that she should stand where was so dangerous an in land and sea-forces would be carefully to gather her forces of her subiects with souldiers ships of the whole navy the Charles Howard, lord high Admiral Francis Drake was appointed. The lesser ships being 30. 40. commanded to lie between Do

On land likewise throughout places, and were committed vnto commonly giuen out that the Spaniards to invade by the river of Chamie might be army encamped, and o the prescription of Frederike G brought to make a brydge, thoug from the Queenes most roiall Mai rather diuine Pallas her selfe. All The principall catholique Re (Spanish inuasion) were sent to re

all passages lay in ambush like a chiefe, no whit regarding such letters of safe conduct. Some there be which affirme that the Pope had bestowed the realme of England with the title of *Defensor fidei*, upon the king of Spaine, giting him charge to inuade it upon this condition, that he should enioy the conquered realme, as a vassal and tributarie, in that regard, unto the sea of Rome. To this purpose the said Pope proffered a million of gold, the one halfe thereof to be paid in ready money, and the other halfe when the realme of England or any famous port thereof were subdued. And for the greater furtherance of the whole buisnesse, he dispatched one D. Allen an English man (whom hee had made Cardinall for the same ende and purpose) into the Low countries, unto whom he committed the administration of all matters ecclesiasticall throughout England. This Allen being enraged against his owne native countrey, caused the Popes hull to be translated into English, meaning upon the arrival of the Spanish fleet, to haue it so published in Englands. By which Bull the excommunications of the two former Popes were confirmed, and the Queenes most sacred Maestie was by them most vniuersally deputed of all princely titles and dignities, her subiects being enioined to performe obedience unto the duke of Parma, and unto the Popes Legate.

But that all matters might be performed with greater secretie, and that the whole expedition might seeme rather to be intended against the Low countries, then against England, and that the English people might be perswaded that all was but bare words & threatnings, and that nought would come to effect, there was a solemn meeting appointed at Borborch in Flanders for a treaty of peace betwene her maiestie and the Spanish king.

Against this treatie the united prouinces making open protestation, bled all meanes possible to prevent it, alleging that it was moze requisite to consult how the enemye now pressing upon them might be repelled from off their frontiers. Howbeit some there were in England that greatly liked and prosecuted this league, saying, that it would be very commodious unto the state of the realme, as well in regard of traffique and nauigation, as for the auoiding of great expences to maintaine the warres, affirming also, that at the same time peace might easily and upon reasonable conditions be obtained of the Spaniard. Others thought by this meanes to diuert some of their way, or to keepe backe the nauy now coming upon them, and so to escape the danger of that tempest. Howsoeuer it was, the duke of Parma by these wiles enchanted and dazzled the eyes of many English & Dutch men that were desirous of peace: whereupon it came to passe, that England and the united prouinces prepared in deed some defence to withstand that dreadfull expedition and huge Armada, but nothing in comparison of the great danger which was to be feared, albeit the constant report of the whole expedition had continued rise among them for a long time before. Howbeit they gaue eare vnto the relation of certaine that sayd, that this nauie was prouided to conduct and waite ouer the Indian fleets: which seemed the moze probable because the Spaniards were deemed not to be men of so small discretion as to aduenture those huge and monstrous ships upon the shallow and dangerous chanel of England.

At length when as the French king about the end of May signified vnto her Maestie in plaine termes that she should stand upon her guard, because he was now most certainly enformed, that there was so dangerous an inuasion imminent upon her realme, that he feared much least all her land and sea-forces would be sufficient to withstand it, &c. then began the Queenes Maestie moze carefully to gather her forces together, & to furnish her own ships of warre, & the principall ships of her subiects with soldiers, weapons, and other necessary prouision. The greatest and strongest ships of the whole nauy she sent vnto Pimmouth under the conduct of the right honorable Lord Charles Howard, lord high Admirall of England, &c. Under whom the renowned Knight Sir Francis Drake was appointed Vice-admirall. The number of these ships was about an hundredth. The lesser ships being 30. or 40. in number, and under the conduct of the lord Henry Seimer were commanded to lie betwixt Dover and Calais.

On land likewise throughout the whole realme, soldiers were mustered and trained in all places, and were committed vnto the most resolute and faithfull captaines. And whereas it was commonly giuen out that the Spaniard having once united himselfe vnto the duke of Parma, meant to inuade by the riuer of Thames, there was at Tilburie in Essex ouer-against Grauesend, a mightie army encamped, and on both sides of the riuer fortifications were erected, according to the prescription of Frederike Genebelli an Italian enginier. Likewise there were certaine ships brought to make a bridge, though it were very late first. Unto the said army came in proper manner the Queenes most roiall Maestie, representing Tomyris that Sceptian warlike princeesse, or rather diuine Pallas her selfe. Also there were other such armies leuied in England, & the principall catholique recusants (least they should stirre up any tumult in the time of the Spanish inuasion) were sent to remaine at certaine convenient places, as namely in the Isle of Ely

A treatie of peace, to the end that England and the united prouinces might be secure of invasion.

Her maiesties warlike preparation by sea.

Her Maesties land-forces.

The preparation of the United Provinces.

Ely and at Wisbich. And some of them were sent unto other places, to wit, unto sunbry bishops and noblemen, where they were kept from endangering the state of the common wealth, and of her sacred Majestie, who of her most gracious clemencie gaue expresse commandement, that they should be increased with all humanitie and friendship.

The provinces of Holland and Zeland, &c. giving credite unto their intelligence out of Spain, made preparation to defend themselves: but because the Spanish ships were described unto them to be so huge, they relied partly upon the shallow and dangerous seas all along their coasts. Wherefore they stood most in doubt of the duke of Parma his small and flat-bottomed ships. For which they had all their ships of warre to the number of 90. and above, in a readinesse for all assays: the greater part whereof were of a small burthen, as being more meete to saile upon their rivers and shallow seas: and with these ships they besieged all the hauens in Flanders, beginning at the mouth of Scheld, from the towne of Lillo, and holding on to Greueling and almost unto Cales, & fortified all their sea-towens with strong garrisons.

Against the Spanish fleets arrivall, they had provided 25. or 30. good ships, committing the government of them unto Admirall Jonck, whom they commanded to joine himselfe unto the lord Henry Seymer, lying betwene Dover and Cales. And when as the foresaid ships, (whereof the greater part besieged the haven of Dunkerke) were driven by tempest into Zeland, Iustice of Nassau the Admirall of Zeland supplied that Squadron with 35. ships bring of no great burthen, but excellently furnished with gunnes, mariners and souldiers in great abundance, and especially with 1200. brave Musquetiers, having bene accustomed unto sea-fights, and being chosen out of all their companies for the same purpose: and so the said Iustice of Nassau kept such diligent ward in that Station that the duke of Parma could not issue forth with his navy into the sea cut of any part of Flanders.

The Spanish fleet set sail upon the 19. of May.

In the meane while the Spanish Armada set saile out of the haven of Lisbon upon the 19. of May, *An. Dom.* 1588. under the conduct of the duke of Medina Sidonia, directing their course for the Baye of Corunna, alias the Groine in Galicia, where they tooke in souldiers: and waike provision, this port being in Spaine the nearest unto England. As they were sailing along, there arose such a mighty tempest, that the whole fleet was dispersed, so that when the duke was returned unto his company, he could not espye above 80. ships in all, whereunto the residue by little and little toyged themselves, except eight which had their masts blown over-board. One of the foure galleies of Porringal escaped very hardly, retiring her selfe into the haven. The other three were upon the coast of Baion in France, by the assistance and courage of one David Gwin an English captiue (whom the French and Turkish slaues aided in the same enterpryse) utterly disabled and banquished: one of the three being first overcome, which conquered the two other, with the slaughter of their governours and souldiers, and among the rest of Don Diego de Mandiana with sundry others: and so those slaues arriving in France with the three Gallies, let themselves at libertie.

They set sail from the Groine upon the 11. of July.
The Spanish ships come within hearing of England.
Captaine Fleming.

The navy having refreshed themselves at the Groine, & receiving daily commandement from the king to hasten their journey, hoised up sailes the 11. day of July, and so holding on their course till the 19. of the same month, they came then unto the mouth of the narrow seas of English channel. From whence (striking their sailes in the meane season) they dispatched certaine of their small ships unto the duke of Parma. At the same time the Spanish fleet was escried by an English pinnasse, captaine whereof was M. Thomas Fleming, after they had bene advertised of the Spaniards entry: driven by their scouts and espials, which having ranged along the coast of Spaine, were lately returned home into Plimmouth for a new supply of victuals and other necessaries, who considering the foresaid tempest, were of opinion that the navy being late dispersed and tossed by and downe the maine Ocean, was by no means able to performe their intended voyage.

Forpouer, the L. Charles Howard L. high admirall of England had received letters from the court, signifying unto him that her Majestie was advertised that the Spanish fleet would not come forth, nor was to be any longer expected for, and therefore, that upon her Majesties commandement he must send backe foure of her tallest and strongest ships unto Chatham.

The L. Admirall's ship was sunk upon the 19. of July.

The lord high Admirall of England being thus on the sudden, namely upon the 19. of July, about foure of the clocke in the afternoon, informed by the pinasse of captaine Fleming of the Spaniards approach, with all speed and diligence possible he warped his ships, and caused his mariners and souldiers (the greater part of whom was absent for the cause aforesaid) to come on board, and that with great trouble and difficultie, inasmuch that the lord Admirall himselfe was faine to lie without in the road with five ships onely all that night, after the which many others came forth of the haven. The very next day being the 20. of July about high noone, was the Spanish fleet escried by the English, which with a South-west wind came sailing along, and

The 20. of July.

passed by Plimmouth: they greatly overthrew the themselves there, consisting their owne forces, and convenient port of all occasions, and how many, so that bitter the man might more easily have. But this they were commanded to unite themselves their purpose to effect. They imagined that the English would each man of them and transporting the armie into England.

It is reported that the English in navigation, to wit, John found fault that they were to cast many particular accidents that is to say, the opportunitye saile from Flanders to England, the depths and shoals in the vicinity of the winde, and w. But it seemeth that they were to, whether the duke of Parma while the English and Spaniards his souldiers upon the 20. The Spanish captiues rep. Thames, and thereupon to have easily to winne that rich and floridians not accustomed to the moreover to finde many rebels the Scottish queene (which was of fiction.

Thus often advertised the Plimmouth, which the English and the encounter, and so forth. The day following which was shot of the Spanish: at what time he his Ordinance upon the Spanish the mindlesse of the English soldiers close into the boyme of an army of their companie. And why Gallies was so furiously battered together for the safeguard there will (wherein Don Pedro de Valmen were imbarqued) falling for many was not able to keepe way to succour it, but left the distance to this ship of Valdez, & thought as many ships as he could, by that night. For Sir Francis Drake came that night) was gluing of the Spanish fleet: but finding all that night following the Spanish out of the great danger. The day following, which was the 21. of July, whereunto hee sent

The Spanish Armada. Traffiques, & Discoveries.

597

passed by Plimmouth: in which regard (according to the iudgement of many skilful nauigatoz) they greatly ouerthor themselves, whereas it had bene moze commodious for them to haue staied themselves there, considering that the Englishmen being as perbypounded, greatly relied vpon their owne forces, and knew not the estate of the Spanish naup. Moreover, this was the most conuenient port of all others, where they might with greater securitie haue bene aduertised of the English forces, and how the commons of the land stood affected, and might haue stirred vp some mutinie, so that hither they should haue bent all their puissance, and from hence the duke of Parma might moze easily haue conuicted his ships.

But this they were prohibited to doe by the king and his counsell, and were expressly commanded to enter themselves vnto the souldiers and ships of the said duke of Parma, and so to vsing their purpose to effect. Which was thought to be the most easie and direct course, for that they would each man of them retire vnto his owne Iouince and Port for the defence thereof, and transporting the armie of the duke vnder the protection of their huge naup, they might inuade England.

It is reported that the chiefe commanders in the naup, and those which were moze skilfull in nauigation, to wit, John Martines de Ricaldo, Diego Flores de Valdez, and diuers others found fault that they were bound vnto so strict directions and instructions, because that in such a case many particular accidents ought to concurre and to be respected at one and the same instant, that is to say, the opportunity of the wind, weather, time, tide, and ebbe, wherein they might fall from Flanders to England. Oftentimes also the darkenesse and light, the situation of places, the depths and shoals were to be considered: all which especially depended vpon the conuenience of the windes, and were by so much the moze dangerous.

But it seemeth that they were enticed by their commission to ancre nere vnto, or about Calles, whither the duke of Parma with his ships and all his warrelke prouision was to retire, and while the English and Spanish great ships were in the midst of their conflict, to passe by, and to land his souldiers vpon the Downes.

The Spanish captiues reported that they were determined first to haue entered the riuer of Thames, and thereupon to haue passed with small ships vnto London, supposing that they might easily winne that rich and flourishing Citie being but meanely fortified and inhabited with citizens not accustomed to the warres, who durst not withstand their first encounter, hoping moreover to finde many rebels against her Paeticke and popish catholiques, or some fauourers of the Scottish queene (which was not long before most iustly beheaded) who might be instruments of sedition.

Thes often aduertising the duke of Parma of their approach, the 20. of July they passed by Plimmouth, which the English ships pursuing and getting the wind of them, gaue them the chase and the encounter, and so both flectes exchanged their bullets.

The day following which was the 21. of July, the English ships approached within musquet shot of the Spanish: at what time the lord Charles Howard most hotly and valiantly discharged his Ordnance vpon the Spanish Vice-admirall. The Spaniards then well perceiving the numberlesse of the English ships in discharging vpon the enimie on all sides, gathered themselves close into the forme of an halfe moone, and slackened their sailes, least they should outgoe any of their companie. And while they were proceeding on in this manner, one of their great Gallies was so furiously battered with shot, that the whole naup was faine to come by rounder together for the safeguard thereof: whereby it came to passe that the principall Gallie of Sir William Don Pedro de Valdez, Valques de Silua, Alonzo de Sayas, and other noble men were imbarqued) falling foule of another shippe, had her fore-mast broken, and by that means was not able to keepe way with the Spanish flecte, neither would the sayde flecte sto to succour it, but left the distressed Gallie behind. The lord Admirall of England when he saw this ship of Valdez, thought he had bene voyd of Hariners and souldiers, taking with him as many shippes as he could, passed by it, that he might not loose sight of the Spanish flecte the night. For Sir Francis Drake (who was not withstanding appointed to beare out his lance with the Spanish flecte: but finding them to be Casterlings, he dismissed them. The lord Admirall all that night following the Spanish lanterns in the ad of the English, found himselfe in the danger to be in the midst of his enimies flecte, but when he perceived it, hee cleanly conueyed himselfe out of that great danger.

The day following, which was the two and twentieth of July, Sir Francis Drake espied Valdez's shippe, whereunto hee sent forth his pinnasse, and being aduertised that Valdez himselfe

The 21. of July.

The 22. of July.

selfe was there, and 450. persons with him, he sent him word that he should peeble himselfe. Valdez for his honours sake caused certaine conditions to be propounded vnto Drake: who answered Valdez that he was not now at lasure to make any long parle, but if he would peeble himselfe, he should find him friendly and tractable: howbeit if he had resolved to die in fight, he should proue Drake to be no bastard.

Upon which answer Valdez and his company vnderstanding that they were fallen into the hands of fortunate Drake, being moued with the renoune and celebritie of his name, with one consent peebled themselves, and found him very fauourable vnto them. Then Valdez with 40. or 50. noblemen and gentlemen pertaining vnto him, came on board Sir Francis Drakes ship. The residue of his company were caried vnto Plimmouth, where they were detained a yere & an halfe for their ransom.

Don Pedro de Valdez with his ship & company taken.

Valdez coming vnto Drake and humbly kissing his hand protested vnto him, that he and his had resolved to die in battell, had they not by good fortune fallen into his power, whom they knew to be right courteous and gentle, and whom they had heard by generall report to be most fauourable vnto his vanquished foe: insomuch that he sayd it was to bee doubted whether his enemies had more cause to admire and loue him for his great, valiant, and prosperous exploits, or to dread him for his singular felicitie and wisdom, which euer attended vpon him in the warres, and by the which hee had attained vnto so great honour. With that Drake embraced him and gaue him very honourable entertainment, feeding him at his owne table, and lodging him in his rabbitt.

Here Valdez began to recount vnto Drake the forces of all the Spanish Fleet, and how foure mighty Gallies were separated by tempest from them: and also how they were determined first to haue put into Plimmouth haue, not expecting to bee repelled thence by the English ships which they thought could by no meanes withstand their impregnable forces, perswading themselves that by means of their huge fleets, they were become lords and commanders of the maine Ocean. For which cause they marvelled much how the English men in their small ships durst approach within musket shot of the Spaniards mighty wooden castles, gathering the woad of them with many other such like attempts.

Immediately after, Valdez and his company, being a man of principl authoritie in the Spanish Fleet, and being defended of one and the same familie with that Valdez, which in the yere 1574. besieged Leiden in Holland, were sent captiues into England. There were in the said ship 55. thousand ducates in ready money of the Spanish kings gold, which the soldiers merly shared among themselves.

The same day was set on fire one of their greatest shippes, being Admirall of the squadron of Guipusco, and being the shippe of Michael de Oquendo Vice-admirall of the whole fleet, which contained great store of gunpowder and other warrelike prouision. The upper part onely of this shippe was burnt, and all the persons therein contained (except a very few) were consumed with fire. And thereupon it was taken by the English, and brought into England with a number of miserable burnt and skozched Spaniards. Howbeit the gunpowder (to the great admiration of all men) remained whole and unconsumed.

In the meane season the lord Admirall of England in his ship called the Arke-royall, all the night pursued the Spaniards so neere, that in the morning hee was almost left alone in the enemies fleet, and it was foure of the clocke at afternoone before the residue of the English fleet could ouertake him.

At the same time Hugo de Moncada gouernour of the foure Gallies, made humble suit vnto the Duke of Medina that he might be licenced to encounter the Admirall of England: which libertie the duke thought not good to permit vnto him, because hee was loth to exceed the limits of his commission and charge.

Upon Tuesday which was the thre and twentie of Iuly, the navy being come ouer against Portland, the wind began to turne Northerly, insomuch that the Spaniards had a favourable and fit gale to invade the English. But the Englishmen hauing lesser and nimble ships, recovered againe the vantage of the wind from the Spaniards, whereat the Spaniards seemed to bee more incensed to fight then before. But when the English fleet had continually and without intermission from morning to night, beaten and battered them with all their shot both great and small: the Spaniards vniuing themselves, gathered their whole fleet close together into a roundell, so that it was apparant that they ment not as yet to invade others, but onely to defend themselves and to make halt vnto the place prescribed vnto them, which was neere vnto Dunkerk, that they might loose forces with the duke of Parma, who was determined to haue proceeded secretly with his small shippes vnder the shadow

A great Spanish maine ship taken by the English.

The 23. of July.

and protection of the petition.

This was the most land continued fighting, hee spake vnto his frustrate my hope and woides hee being enst of a most valiant Captaine many Sea-fighes.

In this conflict there taken by the English.

The English nauie Realme restored ships a field, where immortal fa vnto their piuce and cor

In which number of Oxford, of Northum to wit, Sir Thomas Cecil, Sir Horatio Pal Blunt, Master Ambrosio, Master Henry Dudley, Woodhouse, Master Wlish shippes amounted vnto creased to an hundred and counter with the Spaniards which onely, by reason of the the power of the English f thousand.

The foure and twentie was onely betwene the fo with Dares, had great baun that would not bee forced e bies and Tordage of the Ga constrained to send their m were in great scarcitie, b mer conflicts.

The same day, a Counse bee deuised into foure squa call: the second, to Sir Fra time Frobisher.

The Spaniards in their foure, and sometimes more ship ger and greater ships protectin

The five and twentie of Wight, the lord Admirall of E Capaine whereof was the lord ment of Sir Robert Southw lord Sheffield nephew vnto the Galeon Leicester vnder the fo full thundering of shot, encount Which when the Spaniard per entered a terrible combate wit and mutually discharged all theie parts one of another.

At length the Spaniards bo into the forme of a roundel. In a most dangerous conflict. Altho hee was valiantly and discreetly b

and protection of the great ones, and so had intended circumspectly to perforce the whole expedition.

This was the most furious and bloodie skirmish of all, in which the lord Admirall of England continued fighting amidst his enemies Fleet, and seeing one of his Captaines alarum off, hee spake unto him in these wordes: Oh George what doest thou? While thou now frustrate my hope and opinion conceived of thee? While thou forsake mee now? With which of a most valiant Captaine. His name was George Fenner, a man that had bene conuersant in many Sea-fights.

In this conflict there was a certaine great Venetian ship with other small ships surprised and taken by the English.

The English naue in the meane while increased, whereunto out of all Hauens of the Reame resorted ships and men: for they all with one accord came flocking thither as vnto a set field, where inmostall fame and glory was to be attained, and faithfull seruice to bee performed vnto their prince and countrey.

In which number there were many great and honourable personages, as namely, the Earles of Oxford, of Northumberland, of Cumberland, &c. with many Knights and Gentlemen: as wit, Sir Thomas Cecill, Sir Robert Cecil, Sir Walter Raleigh, Sir William Harbottle, Sir Horatio Palauicini, Sir Henry Brooke, Sir Robert Carew, Sir Charles Blunt, Master Ambrose Willoughbie, Master Henry Nowell, Master Thomas Gerard, Master Henry Dudley, Master Edward Darcie, Master Arthur Gorge, Master Thomas Woodhouse, Master William Harwicke, &c. And so it came to passe that the number of the English ships amounted vnto an hundred and thirtie: which when they were come before Douer, were increased to an hundred and thirtie, bring notwithstanding of no proportionable bignesse to encounter with the Spaniards, excepte two or three and twentie of the Quenes greater ships, which onely, by reason of their presence, byed an opinion in the Spaniards mindes concerning the power of the English Fleet: the mariners and souldiers whereof were esteemed to be twelue thousand.

The foure and twentie of July when as the sea was calme, and no winde stirring, the fight was onely betwene the foure great Gallies and the English ships, which being rowed with Oares, had great vantage of the sayde English ships, which notwithstanding for all this would not bee forced to yeeld, but discharged their chaine-shot to cut asunder their Cables and Cordage of the Gallies, with many other such Stratagemes. They were now constrained to send their men on land for a newe supplie of Gunne-powder, whereof they were in great scarcitie, by reason they had so frankly spent the greater part in the former conflicts.

The same day, a Counsell being assembled, it was decreed that the English Fleet should be deuised into foure squadrons: the principall whereof was committed vnto the lord Admirall: the second, to Sir Francis Drake: the third, to Captaine Hawkins: the fourth, to Captaine Frobisher.

The Spaniards in their sailing obserued very diligent and good order, sayling three and foure, and sometimes more ships in a ranke, and following close by one after another, and the greater and greater ships protecting the lesser.

The five and twentie of July when the Spaniards were come over-against the Ile of Wight, the lord Admirall of England being accompanied with his best ships, (namely the Lion, Captaine whereof was the lord Thomas Howard: The Elizabeth Ionas vnder the commandement of Sir Robert Southwel some in lawe vnto the lord Admirall: the Beare vnder the lord Sheffield nephew vnto the lord Admirall: the Victorie vnder Captaine Barker: and the Galeon Leicester vnder the forenamed Captaine George Fenner) with great valour and dead-lie thundering of shot, encountered the Spanish Admirall being in the very midst of all his Fleet. Which when the Spaniard perceived, being assisted with his strongest ships, he came forth and entered a terrible combat with the English: for they bestowed each on other the broad sides, and mutually discharged all their Ordnance, being within one hundred, or an hundred and twentie paces one of another.

At length the Spaniards hoisted by their sayles, and againe gathered themselves by close into the forme of a roundel. In the meane while Captaine Frobisher had engaged himselfe into a most dangerous conflict. Whereupon the lord Admirall comming to succour him, found that hee had valiantly and discretely behaved himselfe, and that hee had wisely and in good time giuen

A great Venetian ship and other small ships taken by the English.

The 24. of July.

The 25. of July.

The 26.th of
July.

over the fight, because that after so great a batterie he had sustained no damage.

For which cause the day following, being the five and twentieth of July, the lord Admirall rewarded him with the order of knighthood, together with the lord Thomas Howard, the lord Sheffield, Sir John Hawkins and others.

The same day the lord Admirall received intelligence from Newhaven in France, by certaine of his Pinnasses, that all things were quiet in France, and that there was no preparation of sending aide unto the Spaniards, which was greatly feared from the Guisian faction, and from the Leaguers: but there was a false rumour spread all about, that the Spaniards had conquered England.

The 27.th of
July.
The Spaniards
arrived at the
foze of Calais.

The seven and twentieth of July, the Spaniards about the sunne-setting were come over-against Dover, and rode at anchor within the sight of Calais, intending to hold on for Dunkirk, expecting there to join with the duke of Parma his forces, without which they were able to doe little or nothing.

Likewise the English Fleet following up hard upon them, anchored lust by them within curtaining-shot. And here the lord Henry Seymer united himselfe unto the lord Admirall with his fleet of 30. ships which rode before the mouth of Thames.

As the Spanish naue therefoze lay at anchor, the duke of Medina sent certaine messengers unto the duke of Parma, with whom upon that occasion many Noblemen and Gentlemen went to refresh themselves on land: and amongst the rest the prince of Ascoli, being accourted the kings base sonne, and a very proper and cowardly yong gentleman, to his great good, went on shoze, who was by so much the more fortunate, in that hee had not opportunity to returne on boord the same ship, out of which he was departed, because that in returning home it was cast away upon the Irish coast, with all the persons contained therein.

The duke of Parma being advertised of the Spanish Fleets arrivall upon the coast of England, made all the haste hee could to bee present himselfe in this expedition for the performance of his charge: vainely persuading himselfe that now by the means of Cardinall Allen, he should be crowned king of England, and for that cause hee had resigned the government of the Lowe countries unto Count Mansfeld the elder. And having made his bowes unto St. Mary of Hall in Henault (whom he went to visite for his blind deuotions sake) hee returned toward Bruges the 28. of July.

The 28.th of
July.
The 29.th of
July.

The next day trauellling to Dunkirk hee heard the thundering ordinance of either fleet: and the same evening being come to Dixmud, hee was giuen to vnderstand the hard successe of the Spanish Fleet.

Upon Tuesday which was the thirtieth of July, about high noone, hee came to Dunkirk, when as all the Spanish Fleet was now passed by: neither durst any of his ships in the meane space come forth to assaile the sayd Spanish Fleet for feare of fire and thirtie warrelike ships of Holland and Zeland; which there kept watch and warde vnder the conduct of the Admirall Iulian of Nassau.

The forty sayd fire and thirtie shippes were furnished with most cunning mariners and able expert souldiers, amongst the which were twelue hundred Musketers, whom the Seaers had chosen out of all their garisons, and whom they knew to haue bene heretofore experienced in sea-fights.

This naue was giuen especially in charge not to suffer any shippe to come out of the Haven, nor to permit any Zabines, Pataches or other small vessels of the Spanish Fleet (which were more likely to aide the Dunkerkes) to enter threins, for the greater ships were not to be feared by reason of the shallow sea in that place. Howbeit the prince of Parma his forces being as yet vnraceable, were not come on boord his shippes, onely the English fugitiues being seven hundred in number vnder the conduct of Sir William Stanley, came in fit time to haue bene imbarked, because they hoped to giue the first assault against England. The rest shewed themselves unwilling and loath to depart, because they sawe but a few mariners, who were by constraint dravne into this expedition, and also because they had very bare provision of bread, drinke, and other necessary victuals.

Howeuer, the shippes of Holland and Zeland stood continually in their sight, threatening shot and powder, and many inconueniences unto them: for feare of which shippes, the Spaniards and Sea-men secretly withdrew themselves both day and night, least that the duke of Parma his souldiers should compell them by maine force to goe on boord, and break through the Hollanders Fleet, which all of them iudged to bee impossible by reason of the straightness of the Haven.

But it seemeth that the sumptuous expectation, the sight of the Spanish and Dutch, and endeavouring of shippes, should as it were his troups, armour, and w land: or while the English part of the coast, which he it ward confessed) the Duke on the bankes whereof haue gall souldiers, he supposed cause his small shippes should be it- selfe was but meanely and discontinuance from the shod, if they peered not at some rebels against her Pinnas, and others. Likewise who was not long before put and factions.

Whence therefore the Spanish fleet with the Duke of Parma and the piers estate of their a on the second of August being settled in practice: the L. Anne de Courte, thought it most expedient to giue them the encounter toke forthwith eight of his war of all things which seemed to be with other combustible and fire and dunes, he sent the sayd shippe termidnight, with the winds at a good space, being forsaken of of Spaines Naute: which fire it and joyous (for they feared lest three yeares before, at the siege of full engines, for the dissolution of that cutting their cables wherecoo took themselves very confusedly.

In this sudden confusion, the ship lost her rudder: for which force of the tide cast into a certain fault by diuers English pinnas.

And as they lay battering of he all sent either his long boat with Amias Preston. Upon whose app the gallant: against whom the go de Moncada, stoutly opposed hope presently to be succoured he had returned the conflict a good way, and a great number of Spanish the residue leaping over-boord into drowned. Howbeit there escaped a few in the Spanish fleet (called by the Spaniards: which Anthonio was the first into Spaine.

This huge and monstrous gallies, and four hundred souldiers, there were found amongst diuers of

But

The Spaniards
arbo vaine as
vaine counte-
ing their own
flie.

It seemeth that the Duke of Parma and the Spaniards grounded upon a vaine and presumptuous expectation, that all the ships of England and of the Low countreys would at the first sight of the Spanish and Dunkirk flottes haue betaken themselves to flight, yeeleing them sea room, and endeavouring onely to defend themselves, their hauens, and sea coasts from inuasion. Therefore their meene and purpose was, that the Duke of Parma in his small and flat-bottomed shippes, should as it were vnder the shadow and wings of the Spanish fleet, conuey ouer all land; or while the English fleet were buſied in fight against the Spaniſh, should inuade Eng-land; or while the English fleet were buſied in fight against the Spaniſh, should enter vpon any part of the coast, which he thought to be most conuenient. Which inuasion (as the captiues after-ward confessed) the Duke of Parma thought first to haue attempted by the river of Thames; by-which he supposed that he might easily haue woonne the Citie of London; both be-cause his small shippes should haue followed and assisted his land-forces, and also for that the Ci-tie is situate in a narrow strait, and is so easily to be overcome, by reason of the Citizens delicacie and want of discipline, who with continuall and constant labour might be vanquished by some rebels against her Maiestie, and such as were discontented with the present state, as Pa-rida, and others. Likewise they looked for ayde from the fauourers of the Scottish Queene, who was not long before put to death; all which they thought would haue stirred by seditions and factions.

Whenas therefore the Spaniſh fleet rode at anchor before Caleis, to the end they might con-sult with the Duke of Parma what was best to be done according to the Kings commandement, and the present estate of their affaires, and had now (as we will afterwards declare) purposed by the second of August being Friday, with one power and consent to haue put their intended bu-sinesse in practice; the L. Admirall of England being admonished by her Maiesties letters from the Court, thought it most expedient either to drive the Spaniſh fleet from that place, or at least to give them the encounter: and for that cause (according to her Maiesties prescription) he tooke forthwith eight of his woofst & best ships which came next to hand, & disburthening them of all things which seemed to be of any value, filled them with gun-powder, pitch, brimstone, and sulphur, and charging all their ordnance with powder, bullets, and stones, he sent the said ships vpon the 28 of July being Sunday, about two of the clocke af-ternoon, with the winde and tide against the Spaniſh fleet: which when they had proceeded a good space, being forsaken of the Pilots, and set on fire, were directly carried vpon the King of Spaines flutte; which fire in the dead of the night put the Spaniards into such a perplexity and confusion (for they feared lest they were like vnto those terrible ships, which Frederic Ienebelli had furnished with gun-powder, stones, and dead-men, for the dissolution of the Duke of Parma his bridge, built vpon the river of Scheld) that cutting their cables whereon their anchors were fastened, and hoisting vp their sailes, they be- took themselves very confusedly vnto the maine sea.

The 28 of
July.

The gallies
of Hugo de
Moncada cast
vpon the
shoale be-
fore Caleis.

Amias Pre-
ston valiantly
boordeth the
gallies.

In this sudden confusion, the principall and greatest of the foure gallies falling fowle of an- other, she lost her rudder: for which cause when she could not be guided any longer, she was by the force of the tide cast into a certaine shoale vpon the shore of Caleis, where she was immediatly as- sailed by diuers English pinnasses, hoes, and drumblers, and as they lay battering of her with their ordnance, and durst not boord her, the L. Admi- rall sent thither his long boat with an hundred choise souldiers vnder the command of Captaine Amias Preston. vpon whose approach their fellows being more emboldened, did offer to boord the gallie: against whom the gouernour thereof and Captaine of all the foure gallies, Hu- go de Moncada, stoutly opposed himselfe, fighting by so much the more valiantly, in that he had endured the conflict a good while, being hitte on the head with a bullet, fell downe sharke- wise, and a great number of Spaniards also were slaine in his company. The greater part of the residue leaping ouer-board into the sea, to saue themselves by swimming, were most of them taken in the Spaniſh fleet (called by them their Veador generall) together with a few Spaniards first into Spaine.

This huge and monstrous gallie, wherein were contained three hundred slaues to tug at the oars, and four hundred souldiers, was in the space of three houres rifled in the same place; and there were found amongst diuers other commodities, 50000 ducats of the Spaniſh kings treasure.

at length when the flames were released out of their letters, the English men would have set the said ship on fire, which Monsieur Courdon the governor of Caleis, for feare of the damage which might thereupon ensue to the Towne and Haven, would not permit them to do, but drove them from thence with his great ordinance.

Upon the 29 of July in the morning, the Spanish Fleet after the foresayd tumult, having arranged themselves againe into order, were, within sight of Greueling, most haucily and furiously encountered by the English; where they once againe got the winde of the Spaniards: who suffered themselves to be deprived of the commoditie of the place in Caleis rode, and of the advantage of the winde nere unto Dunkerk, rather then they would change their array or separate their forces now consoynd and united together, standing onely upon their defence.

And albeit there were many excellent and warlike ships in the English fleet, yet scarce were there 22 or 23 among them all which matched 90 of the Spanish ships in bignesse, or could conveniently assault them. Wherefore the English shippes using their prerogative of nimble steege, whereby they could turne and wheel themselves with the winde which way they pleased, came often times very nere upon the Spaniards, and charged them so close, that now and then they were but a pikes length asunder: so continually giuing them one broad side after another, they discharged all their shot both great and small upon them, spending one whole day from morning till night in that violent kinde of conflict, untill such time as powder and bullets failed them. In regard of which want they thought it convenient not to pursue the Spaniards any longer, because they had many great bantages of the English, namely for the extraordinary bignesse of their ships, and also for that they were so nereley consoynd, and kept together in so good array, that they could by no means be fought withall one to one. The English thought therefore, that they had right well acquitted themselves, in chasing the Spaniards first from Caleis, and then from Dunkerk, and by that meanes to have hindered them from loyning with the Duke of Parma his forces, and getting the winde of them, to have driven them from their owne coasts.

The Spaniards that day sustained great losse and damage having many of their ships shot thorow and thorow, and they discharged likewise great store of ordinance against the English; who indeed sustained some hinderance, but not comparable to the Spaniards losse: for they lost not any one shippe or person of account. For very diligent inquisition being made, the English men all that time wherein the Spanish flauay sailed upon their seas, are not found to have wanted about one hundredth of their people: albeit Sir Francis Drakes shippe was pierced with shot about forty times, and his very cabben was twice shot thorow, and about the conclusion of the fight, the bodie of a certaine gentleman lying weare thereupon, was taken quite from under him with the force of a bullet. Likewise, as the Earle of Northumberland and Sir Charles Blunt were at dinner upon a time, the bullet of a demi-culvering brake thorow the middle of their cabin, touched their feet, and strooke betwixt two of the standers by, with many such accidents befalling the English shippes, which it were tedious to rehearse. Whereupon it is most apparent, that God miraculously preserved the English nation. For the L. Admirall wrote unto her Spacieitie that in all humane reason, and according to the iudgement of all men (every circumstance being duly considered) the English men were not of any such force, where by they might, without a miracle, dare once to approach within sight of the Spanish Fleet: insomuch that they freely ascribed all the honour of their victorie vnto God, who had confounded the enemy, and had brought his counsels to none effect.

The same day the Spanish ships were so battered with English shot, that that very night and the day following, two or thre of them suncke right downe: and among the rest a certaine great ship of Bitcay, which Captaine Crosse assaulted, which perished even in the time of the conflict, so that very few therein escaped drowning; who reported that the gouernours of the same shippe slew one another upon the occasion following: one of them which would haue perished the shippe was suddenly slaine; the brother of the slaine party in reuenge of his death slew the murderer, and in the meane while the ship suncke.

The same night two Portugall galeons of the burthen of seven or eight hundred tunnes a piece, to w^t the Saint Philip and the Saint Marthew, were forsaken of the Spanish fleet, for they were so toyne with shot, that the water entered into them on all sides. In the galeon of Saint Philip was Francis de Toledo, brother vnto the Count de Orgas, being Colonel over two and thirty bands: besides other gentlemen; who seeing their mast broken with shot, they shaped their course, as well as they could, for the coast of Flanders: whither when they could not attaine, the principall men in the ship committing themselves to their skiffe, arrived at the next towne, which was Ostend; and the ship it selfe being left behinde with the residue of their company, was taken by the Englishers.

The great
fight before
Greueling the
29 of July.

Three Span-
nish shippes
suncke in the
fight.

Two galeons
taken and car-
ried into Ze-
land.

In the other galeon,
camp-master and colonel
other gentlemen and a
great number of bulles
of butt: set upper woth
tho shot and pierced in
not be stopped: where
that he might save himse
courage, refused to do
night following he could
his ship on all sides; for
continually to labor at
taken & separated from
ders: where, being espied
same coast, he was admoni
ly assaulted by them altoget
farr worse case then befo
sored at length to yeeld hi
and his ship into Zeland;
merely after the greater
of the memory of this
these shippes to be set up in
that being fastened to the
About the same time ano
bout Blankenberg, was call
God would haue the Spani
but also of the Zelanders; e
they had beene to resist such
ence, and fortitude, pea, and
The 29 of July the Spar
ing close together under the
English ships till following
sea-rouine, they cut their mai
ger to fight but to flee. For
Seymer with his Squadron of
Dutch ships, he might stop th
soph with his army. And he
cond of August, because he
very nere, perdid he not assa
fourth of August, the winde ar
themselves wholly to flight, a
(whereby they sufficiently decl
tempting for that purpose, wit
of the Northzen seas) the Eng
degrees, and being unwilling
selves, and because they want
for England; leaving behinde
Spaniards aloofe, and to obser
with great danger and indus
downe with a mighty tempest
great hurt vnto the Spanish fleet
with no going on shore, prouid
things expedient, that they mig
ed any more to returne. But
coule, they thought it best to lea
ne there to hunt after them.

The Spaniards seeing now th
maintained and sicke persons,
consulted among themselves, wha

In the other galeon, called the *S. Matthew*, was embarked Don Diego Pimentelli another
camp-master and colonell of 3 bands, being together vnto the marques of Tannares, with many
other gentlemen and captains. Their ship was not very great, but exceeding strong, for of a
great number of bullets which had battered her, there were scarce 20 wherewith she was pierced
of hurt: her upper works was of force sufficient to beate off a musket shot: this it type was shot
throught and pierced in the flighe befoze Greueling; inasmuch that the leakage of the water could
not be stopped: whereupon the duke of Medina sent his great skiffe vnto the gouernour thereof,
courage, refused to do: wherefoze the Duke charged him to saile next vnto himselfe: which the
night following he could not performe, by reason of the great abundance of water which entered
his ship on all sides; for the avoiding whereof, and to saue his ship from sinking, he caused 50 men
continually to labour at the punne, though it were to small purpose. And seeing himselfe thus for-
saken & separated from his admirall, he endeouored what he could to attaine vnto the coast of Flan-
ders: where, being espied by 405 men of warre, which had their station assigned them vpon the
same coast, he was admonished to pee to himselfe vnto them, which he refusing to do, was strong-
ly assaulted by them altogether, and his ship being pierced with many bullets, was brought into
safety at length to yeeld himselfe vnto Peter Banderduels & other capitaines, which brought him
and his ship into Zealand; and that other ship also last befoze mentioned: which both of them, im-
mediatly after the greater and better part of their goods were unladen, suncke right downe.

For the memozy of this exploit, the foresayd capitaine Banderduels caused the banner of one of
these shippes to be set vp in the great Church of Leiden in Holland, which is of so great a length,
that being fastened to the very rooffe, it reached downe to the ground.

About the same time another small ship being by necessity driuen vpon the coast of Flanders, a-
bout Blankenberg, was cast away vpon the sands, the people therein being saued. Thus almighty
God would haue the Spaniards huge ships to be presented, not onely to the view of the English,
but also of the Zealanders; that at the sight of them they might acknowledge of what small abilitie
they had beene to resist such impregnable forces, haue God endued them with courage, prou-
der, and fortitude, yea, and fought for their many places with his owne arme.

A small shippe
cast away a-
bout Blanken-
berg.

The 29 of Iuly the Spanish fleet being encountered by the English (as is also sayd) and ly-
ing close together vnder their fighting sailes, with a Southwest winde sailed past Dunkerke, the
English ships still following the chase. Of which day following when the Spaniards had got
the searoune, they cut their maine sailes; whereby they sufficiently declared that they meant no lon-
ger to fight but to flee. For which cause the L. Admirall of England dispatched the L. Henrie
Seymer with his squadron of small ships vnto the coast of Flanders, where, with the helpe of the
Dutch ships, he might stop the pynce of Parma his passage, if perhaps he should attempt to issue
forth with his army. And he himselfe in the meane space pursued the Spanish fleet vntill the se-
cond of August, because he thought they had set saile for Scotland. And albeit he followed them
very nere, yet did he not assault them any more, for want of powder and bullets. But vpon the
fourth of August, the winde arisling, when as the Spaniards had spread all their sailes, betaking
themselves wholly to flight, and leauing Scotland on the left hand, tended toward Norway,
(whereby they sufficiently declared that their whole intent was to saue themselves by flight, at-
tempting for that purpose, with their battered and crazed ships, the most dangerous navigation
of the Northen seas) the English seeing that they were now proceeded vnto the latitude of 57
degrees, and being unwilling to participate that danger whereinto the Spaniards plunged them-
selves, and because they wanted things necessary, and especially powder & shot, returned backe
to England; leauing behinde them certaine pinasses onely, which they enioyned to follow the
Spaniards aloofe, and to obserue their course. And so it came to passe that the fourth of August,
with great danger and industry, the English arriued at Harwich: for they had bene tossed by and
wonne with a mighty tempest for the space of two or three dayes together, which it is likely did
great hurt vnto the Spanish fleet, being (as I sayd befoze) so maimed and battered. The Eng-
lish now going on shore, provided themselves forthwith of victuals, gunne-powder, and other
things expedient, that they might be ready at all assays to entertaine the Spanish fleet, if it chan-
ced any more to returne. But being afterward more certainly informed of the Spaniards
course, they thought it best to leaue them vnto those boisterous and uncouth Northen seas, and
not there to hunt after them.

The dishonora-
ble flight of
the Spanish
fleet: and the
prudent aduice
of the L. Ad-
mirall.

The English
returne home
from the pur-
sue of the Spa-
niards the 4
of August.

The Spaniards seeing now that they wanted foure or five thousand of their people and hauing
many maimed and sicke persons, and like wise hauing lost 10072 of their principall ships, they
consulted among themselves, what they were best to doe, being now escaped out of the hands of
the

The Spaniards
also conside-
re to sail round
about Scotland
and Ireland, and
so to returne
home.

the English, because their victuals failed them in like sort, and they began also to want cables, cordage, anchors, masts, sails, and other naval furniture, and utterly despairing of the Duke of Parina his assistance (who verily hoping and undoubtedly expecting the returne of the Spanish Fleet, was continually occupied about his great preparation, commanding abundance of anchors to be made, & other necessary furniture for a Fleet to be provided) they thought it good at length, so soone as the winde should serue them, to fetch a compass about Scotland and Ireland, and so to returne for Spaine.

For they well understood, that commandement was giuen throughout all Scotland, that they should not haue any succour or assistance there. Neither yet could they in Norway supply their wants. Wherefore, hauing taken certaine Scottish and other fisherboats, they brought the men on board their owne ships, to the end they might be their guides and Pilots. Fearing also lest their fresh water should faile them, they cast all their horses and mules ouer-board: and so touching no where vpon the coast of Scotland, but being carried with a fresh gale betwene the Orkades and Faar-Iles, they proceeded farre North, euen vnto 61 degrees of latitude, being distant from any land at the least 40 leagues. Where the Duke of Medina generall of the Fleet commanded all his followers to haue their course for Bilcay: and he himselfe with twenty of five and twenty of his ships which were best provided of fresh water and other necessaries, holding on his course ouer the maine Ocean, returned safely home. The residue of his ships being about forty in number, and committed vnto his Vice-admirall, fell neerer with the coast of Ireland, intending their course for Cape Clare, because they hoped there to get fresh water, and to refresh themselves on land. But after they were vniuen with many contrary windes, at length, vpon the second of September, they were cast by a tempest arising from the Southwest vpon diuers parts of Ireland, where many of their ships perished. And amongst others, the shippe of Michael de Oquendo, which was one of the great Gallies: and two great ships of Venice also, namely, la Rarra and Belanzara, with other 36 or 38 ships more, which perished in sundry tempests, together with most of the persons contained in them.

Likewise some of the Spanish ships were the second time carried with a strong West winde into the chanell of England, whereof some were taken by the English vpon their coast, and others by the men of Rochel vpon the coast of France.

Howeuer, these arrived at New-hauen in Normandy, being by tempest increased so to doe, one of the four great Gallies, where they found the ships with the Spanish women which followed the Fleet at their setting forth. Two ships also were cast away vpon the coast of Norway, one of them being of a great burthen; howbeit all the persons in the sayd great ship were saved: insomuch that of 134 ships, which set saile out of Portugall, there returned home 53 onely small and great: namely of the four gallies but one, and but one of the four gallies. Of the 91 great galleons and hulks there were missing 58, and 33 returned: of the pataches and xabazas 17 were missing, and 18 returned home. In briefe, there were missing 84 ships, in which number were gallies, gallies, galeons, and other vessels both great and small. And amongst the 53 ships remaining, those also are reckoned which returned home before they came into the English chanell. Two galeons of those which were returned, were by misfortune burnt as they rode in the hauen; and such like mishaps did many others vndergo. Of 30000 persons which went in this expedition, there perished (according to the number and proportion of the ships) the greater and better part; and many of them which came home, by reason of the colles and unconuenient which they sustained in this voyage, died not long after their arrival. The Duke of Medina immediately vpon his returne was deposed from his authority, commanded to his private house, and forbidden to reapeire vnto the Court; where he could hardly faile to see a reason vnto his malicious enemies and backbiters. Many honourable personages and men of great renowne were ceased soone after their returne; as namely John Martinez de Ricalde, with diuers others. A great part also of the Spanish Nobility and Gentry employed in this expedition perished either by fight, disease, or drowning, before their arrival; & among the rest Thomas Perenot of Granduall a Dutchman, being earle of Cancebroi, and some vnto Cardinall Granduell his brother.

Vpon the coast of Zeland Don Diego de Pimentell, brother vnto the Marques de Tannares, and kinsman vnto the earle of Beneuentum & Calia, and Colonell ouer 32 bands with many other in the same ship was taken and detained as prisoner in Zeland.

Into England (as we sayd before) Don Pedro de Valdez, a man of singular experience, and greatly honoured in his countrey, was led captiue, being accompanied with Don Valquez de Silua, Don Alonzo de Sayas, and others.

Likewise vpon the Scottish Westerne Isles of Lewis, and Ila, and about Cape Cantyre vpon the maine land, there were cast away certaine Spanish shippers, out of which were saved

uers Captaines and Gentlemen, who were taken, were there clothed secretly shipped for Spaine vpon the coast of North known; who in regard of their passage.

Vpon the Irish coast maintained by the barbarous and Don Alonzo de Liçon, Col together with Rodorigo de la Noie (who being of Turney) might be raunsoned: many a woorthy family in a kinsman.

For the perpetuall memory of this calamity: which of GLORY TO GOD ships, with these words: THUS IT CAME, WE were sent, went, and was banished. Likewise they coined another ship fleeing, and a ship sinking vnto God vpon their knees; with the lasting memory of the same according to the custome of the

While this wonderfull and men did now plainly see and his shipwrecke England prostrated but especially the outlandish name, the Spaniards had thence all failings and supplications, vpon them for their sinnes: for enemies, calamities, and necessity being visited with affliction and served throughout the united

Also a while after the Spaniards of her Majesty, and in a festival day publicly appointed and there to render thanks and pray for the people thereunto. The feast day was wholly spent in fasting.

Likewise, the Queenes Majesty in triumph, in regard of her own very solemnly by all the people in her City of London in a Church of the Church of St. Dunstons Spaniards hung display on either side the street, by their streets were hanged on both sides perished a very stateily and gallant ship with her Clergie and Nobles preached before her at Pauls cross honour, and glory might be remembered. And with her owne name: whereupon the people to the confusion of her foes.

The shippers
watches of the
Spaniards
vpon the Irish
coast.

Of 134 ships
of the Spanish
fleet, there re-
turned home
but 53.

vers Captaines and Gentlemen; and almost foure hundred souldiers, who for the most part, after this shipwreck, were brought vnto Edenborough in Scotland, and being miserably neglected, were there clothed at the liberality of the King and the Merchants, and afterward moun on the coast of Norfolk, were there stayed for a time vntill the Councels pleasure was their passage.

Vpon the Irish coast many of their Noblemen and Gentlemen were drowned; and diuers slain by the barbarous and wilde Irish. Howbeit there was brought prisoner out of Ireland, together with Rodorigo de Lasso, and two others of the family of Cordoua, who were committed vnto the custodie of Sir Horatio Palauicini, that Monsieur de Taligny the sonne of Monsieur de la Noie (who being taken in fight neere Antwerpe, was detained prisoner in the Castle mous neer woortsh family in all Spaine, which in this expedition lost not a sonne, a brother, or a kinsman.

For the perpetuall memorie of this matter, the Zealanders caused newe coine of Silver and brass to be stamped: which on the one side contained the armes of Zealand, with this inscription: **GLORY TO GOD ONELY**: and on the other side, the pictures of certaine great ships: **IT CAME, WENT, AND WAS**. Anno 1588. That is to say, the Spanish fleet came, went, and was vanquished this yere; for which, glory be giuen to God onely.

These coines stamped for the memorie of the Spaniards overthrow.

Likewise they coined another kinde of money; vpon the one side whereof was represented a ship fleeing, and a ship sticking: on the other side foure men making prayers and giuing thanks for the lasting memorie of the same matter, they haue stamped in Holland diuers such like coines, according to the custome of the ancient Romans.

While this wonderfull and puissant Raute was sayling along the English coastes, and all men did now plainly see and heare that which before they would not be perswaded of, all people throughout England prostrated themselves with humble prayers and supplications vnto God: but especially the ourlandish Churches (who had greatest cause to feare, and against whom by name, the Spaniards had threatened most grievous comments) enioyned to their people continuall fasting and supplications, that they might turne away Gods wrath and fury now imminent vpon them for their sinnes: knowing right well, that prayer was the onely refuge against all enemies, calamities, and necessities, and that it was the onely solace and reliefe for mankind, being visited with affliction and misery. Likewise such solenne dayes of supplication were obserued throughout the vniued Provinces.

The people of England and of the vniued Provinces, pray, fast, and giue thanks vnto God.

Also a while after the Spanish Fleet was departed, there was in England, by the commandement of her Maiestie, and in the vniued Provinces, by the direction of the States, a solenne festival day publickly appointed, wherein all persons were enioyned to resort vnto the Church, and there to render thanks and praises vnto God: and the Preachers were commanded to exhort the people thereunto. The forsayd solennitie was obserued vpon the 29 of Nouember; which day was wholly spent in fasting, prayer, and giuing of thanks.

Likewise, the Queenes Maiestie herselfe, imitating the ancient Romans, rode into London in triumph, in regard of her owne and her subiects glorious deliuerance. For being attended vpon very sollemnely by all the principall estates and officers of her Realme, she was carried thow vnto her sayd City of London in a triumphante chariot, and in robes of triumph, from her Palace into the Cathedrall Church of Saint Paul, out of the which the ensignes and colours of the vanquished Spaniards hung displayed. And all the Citizens of London in their Liueries stood on either side the street, by their severall Companies, with their ensignes and banners: and the streets were hangen on both sides with blew cloth, which, together with the forsayd banners, shewd a very stately and gallant prospect. Her Maiestie being entered into the Church, together with her Clergie and Nobles gaue thanks vnto God, and caused a publicke Sermon to be preached before her at Pauls crosse; wherein none other argument was handled, but that praise, honour, and glory might be rendered vnto God, and that Gods name might be extolled by thanksgiving. And with her owne princely voice she most Christianly exhorted the people to doe the same: whereupon the people with a loud acclamation wished her a most long and happy life, to the confusion of her foes.

Thus the magnificent, huge, and mighty fleet of the Spaniards (which themselves termed in all places invincible) such as sailed not upon the Ocean sea many hundred yeeres before, in the yeere 1588 vanished into smoke; to the great confusion and discouragement of the neighbours thereof. In regard of which her Majesty's happy success all her neighbours and friends congratulated with her, and many verses were penned to the honour of her Majesty by learned men, whereof some which came to our hands we will here annexe.

AD SERENISSIMAM ELIZABETHAM ANGLIÆ REGINAM
THEODOR. BEZA.

(* *)

S Trauerat innuatus Hispanus nauibus æquor,
Regnis iuncturus sceptræ Brianna suis.
Tanti huius, rogitas, quæ motus causa? superbos
Impulit Ambitio, vexat Aueritia.
Quàm bene te ambitio meritis vanissima ventus?
Et tumidos tumida, vos superastis aquez!
Quàm bene totius raptores orbis avaros,
Hauit inexhausti iusta vorago maris!
Ac tu, cui ventis, cui totum militat æquor,
Regina, ô mundi totius vna, decus,
Sic regnare Deo perge, ambitione remota,
Prodiga sic opibus perge iuuare pios,
Vt te Angli longum, longum Angli ipsa fruaris,
Quàm dilecta bonis, tam metuenda malis.

The same in English.

The Spanish fleet did flee in narrow seas,
And bend her ships against the English fleets,
With so great rage as nothing could appeale,
And with such strength as neuer seen before:
And all to toyne the kingdome of that land
Unto the kingdome that he had in hand.
Now if you as he what set this king on fire,
To partise warre when he of peace did treat.
It was his Pride, and neuer quenched desire,
To spoile that Islands wealth, by peace made great:
His Pride which farre above the heavens did swell,
And his desire as vnsuffic'd as hell.
But well haue winnow his proud blisfe overblown,
And swelling waues alayd his swelling heart,
Well hath the sea with greivous gulfes harknowen,
Devoured the devourer to his smart:
And made his ships a pray unto the sand,
That meant to pray upon anothers land.
And now, O Queene, above all others blest,
For whom both winds and waues are prest to fight,
Do rule your owne, so succour friends oppressed,
(As farre from pride, as ready to do right)
That England you, you England long enjoy,
As isle your friends delight, then too our joy.

A brief

honour. voyage to Cadiz
riefe and true report
1596. of the overthrow
sacking, and burning of
mooren

After that the two
Robert Carle of
England, were com
May last, 1596.) b
as the Carle of St
Warden Sir Wa
L. Burk, Don Ch
of Kallaw, and the Admirall
the most worthy knights and Gen
tion: It pleased them, there to
furnishing and reequipping of sh
other ships, which were to come t
making that place as it should seem
full number of all such companies
they thought meete and agreed by
the time of this their abode there,
of God, deeply and reuerently
militia discipline to be observed
of the godly and well disposed.
that it might the better appear
them. If they did at any time nee
their orders, laws, and by
which there were two offenders ex
called the Ho: the one for do
from his Colours.
at the same time in the Dutch
about a quarrell betwene them
of partiall law, presently
into the sea.
about the 28. of the same mo
re found of Dymure published
and called: in bearing any farther
of certaine ypest soldiers
maye will for service, and of lesse
the very said daye so deepe
all occasion of the like disorder to
before their departure for Plym
known to all the world, especiall
French, Dutch, English and Span
at this time provoked her Majesty
Ranie, amerizing thereunto a full
done and performed of all them
of else were willing to auoyde be
now, at the same instant, their
for the honest cariage of euery
men to all men, and published in
appointed for the wilfull offender
then, all things being in very good
God bring most religiously
being diuers times most re
honours, with all their honorable
captains, Leaders, and very willing
ay 150. good sayle of shippers of the

riefe and true report of the Honorable voyage vnto
1596. of the ouerthrow of the kings Fleet, and of the winning,
sacking, and burning of the Citie, with all other accidents of
moment, thereunto appertaining.

After that the two most Noble and Renowned Lords Generals: The L. Robert Earle of Essex, and the L. Charles Howard L. High Admirall of England, were come vnto Plymouth (which was about the beginning of May last, 1596.) being there accompanied with diuers other noble Persons, as the Earle of Suffex, the L. Thomas Howard, the L. Harbert, the L. Warden Sir Walter Raleigh: the L. Marshall Sir Francis Vere: the L. Burk, Don Christopher young Prince of Portugall; young Countess of Nassaw, and the Admirall of the Hollanders, Sir Iohn Vanderkood: besides many most worthy Knights and Gentlemen of great worth attending vpon this most honorable: It pleased them, there to make their abode for the time of that moneth, as well for furnishing and reuertualing of his Spacities Hopall Manie: as also for the expecting of other ships, which were to come from diuers places of the Realme, and were as yet wanting at that place as it should seeme the Rendezvous for all the whole Fleet, thereto com- full number of all such companies both for sea and land: as was in their noble and deepe thought meeete and agreed vpon.

At the time of this their abode there, there was a most zealous and diligent care had for the service of God, dayly and reuerently to be frequented: and also for other good and ciuill obseruance: discipline to be obserued, to the exceeding greene comfort and reioycing of all the of the godly and well disposed.

That it might the better appeare, that there was small hope of pardon to be expected here, if they did at any time neglect their duties, about one obseruation of matters of honor. Their orders, lawes, and decrees being vnto published: about the 8. or 9. of the moneth, there were two offenders executed a litle without the towne, in a very sayre place, called the Ho: the one for beginning of a mutiny in his company, the other for run- ning from his Colours.

At the same time in the Dutch Regiment, an order for murdering of one of his com-rades, down a quarrell betwene themselves, vnto as it was supposed, vpon their vnto, of partiall law, presently vnto the parrie for murdering, and forthwith both of them into the sea.

About the 28. of the same moneth, a certaine Lieutenant (whose name I will for- sake for feare of blame) published in all the decrees disgraced, or rather after a sort dis- and cashiered: by bearing any farther Office at that time, for the taking of money by way of extortion, of certaine yfell soldiers in the Countrey, and for placing of others in their more ready for seruice, and of lesse sufficiency and abilitie. This severe executing of ius- tice vnto the very death, such a deepe terror in the hearts of the whole armie, that it seemed at occasion of the like offender for ever afterwards to be attempted.

Before their departure from Plymouth, it pleased their Lordships to publish in print, known to all the world, especially to such as whom it concerned, and that both in the French, Dutch, English and Spanish tongue, what were the true, iust, and vrgent cau- ses at this time provoked her Spacities, to vnto undertake the preparing and setting forth of this Manie, arming thereunto a full declaration, what was their good will and pleasure done and performed of all them that ment not to incurre their owne yfence present or else were willing to auoyde her Spacities future indignation and displeasure.

Now, at the same instant, their owne most proud and godly decrees, which they for the honest cariage of euery particular person in their degrees and vocation, were vnto to all men, and published in sundry writings, with diuers great punishments, set appointed for the wilfull offenders and breakers of the same.

Then, all things being in very good order and well appointed, the most holy name of our Lord God being most religiously and deuotely called vpon, and his blessed and sacred name being diuers times most reuerently and publicly celebrated: these two most honorable, with all their honorable Officers, and most famous worthy Knights, Gentle- men, Leaders, and very willing and expert Soldiers, and Spacities, being sur- rounded by 150. good sort of ships or thereabout: In the name of the most High and glorious God,

God, and with all true and faithful obedience, to her sacred Majesty, to the infinite good and quillitie of our Countrey, and to the perpetuall glory, and triumphant renowne of the memory of their honorable names to all posterity, the first day of June embarked and weighed Anchor, and hoysed up sayle, and put to sea onward their journey from the Plymouth.

The winde, at the first setting forth, seemed very favourable: but yet in the eveninging very scant, and all that night falling moze and moze against vs, and we hauing Captened her then to a certaine place called Dodman head: we were constrained the next day, to returne to the roade of Plymouth againe, and there in the Soundes to lie at anchor for three dayes.

About this time, and in this very place, by good fortune: there came to my handes a p[re]sent English, touching this present Action, and made by her Majesty, as it was voyced: which seemed to me to be most excellent, as well for the matter, as also for the manner, and for certain diuers good motives which then presently came to my minde, and wherof in his moze conuenient time and place, I will make farther mention, I presumed at that instant to translate it into Latine.

The Prayer is thus.

Most Omnipotent maker and guide of all our wofull masse, that onely searcher of the bottome of all our hearts conceits, and in them seek the true originals of our actions intended: thou that by thy foresight doest truly discern, how no malice or malice of inuery, nor desire of bloodshed, nor greedynesse of lucre hath byed the minde of our now set out Army, but a heedfull care, & wary watch, that no neglect of foes, nor multitude of harme might byed either daunger to vs, or glory to them: these being the grounds with thou doest inspire the mind, we humbly beseech thee with bended knees, prosper the same, and with best foreswindes guide the iourney, speed the victorie, and make the returne the more ment of thy glory, the triumph of their fame, and surety to the Realme, with the least of the English blood. To these deuout petitions Lord giue thou thy blessed grant,

My homely translation is thus.

Summè præpotens Deus, immensæ huius totius nostri mundi molis fabricator & Reus Solus perscrutaris intimos cordis nostri sensus, & ad fundum vsq; nostrorum cogitationum explorando penetras, ac in eis, quid verè, & ex animo cogitemus, & quæ sint actionum rationes, ac fundamenta, cognoscis: Tu, qui ea, quæ in te est, ab omni æternitatis ætate, vides, quod nec aliqua vicienda malitiosa cupiditas, nec iniuriarum referendū desiderium, nec sanguinis effundendi sitis, nec alicuius lucri, quæstusue audias ad classem præparandam, & emittendam nos commoueret: sed potius, quod provida cura, solersque vigilantia huc nos impulerit: ne vel inimicorum nostrorum neglectus, & periculum pariat: Cum, inquam, hæc sint nostri, quicquid attentatur, negotiū huiusmodi cumque tu hunc nobis animum, mentemq; inieceris, ut istud aggredieremur: curamus a te humillimè petimus, ut velis hoc nostrum inceptum secundissimè fortunari, iter prosperis flatibus dirigere, celerem & expeditā victoriam nobis concedere, præcætem nostris militibus elargiri, qualis & nomini tuo incrementum gloriæ, & illis hæc disque triumphum, & Regno nostro firmam tranquillitatem possit apportare: idque nimo Anglorum sanguinis dispendio. His nostris religiosi petitionibus concede, Deo factos sanctam & annuentem voluntatem tuam.

After that we had anchored at Plymouth that night, as I haue said, the third of June early in the morning, hauing a reasonable fresh gale of winde, we set sayle, and kept our course againe, and the ninth of the same month comming something neerer to the North, in manner in the same altitude, or not much differing, which was about 44. degrees, and in the moze, yet bearing so, as it was impossible to bee rescued from the land: There in the Lordes to call a select Councell, which was alwayes done by hanging out of a flagges of armes of England, and shooting off of a great warning peece. At this select or priuie were no more then these: The two Lordes Generall, the Lord Thomas Howard, the Warden Sir Walter Raleigh, the Lord Martin, Sir Francis Vere, Sir George Courtenay, Sir Coniers Clifford, and Sir Anthony Ashley, Clerks of the

And when it pleased the Lords Generall to call a common Counsell (as often times upon weightie matters best known to their honours) then they would cause an other flagge to be hanged out, which was the Redrosse of S. George, and was very ealie to be known from the other that appertained onely to the select Counsell, and so often as this Redrosse of S. George was hanged out, then came all the Masters and Captaines of all the ships whose opinions were to be demanded, in such matters as appertained unto this sayd select Counsell: It was presently concluded, that our course in sayling should forthwith be altered, and that we should beare more into the West, for some purposes to them best known, and very instant many letters of instructions were adressed and sent to every particular Master and Captaine of the Ships: That the contents of those letters of instructions were as yet knowne unto any, neither was it held meet to be enquired or known of any of the titles and superscriptions of every mans particular letter these words were Open not these letters on pain of your lives, unless we chance to be scattered by tempest, then in any case cast them into the sea, sealed as they are. It should seeme that these words contained in them the principall place and meaning of this entered action, which was by their deepe foresights kept so secret, as no man to my knowledge either in, or out of the country of great moment in the world, to effect any matter of importance. I meane, to have those two vertues, Fidem, & Taciturnitatem: so much commended by the old writers. It is ever a great besigment, in this our age, and memorie, discretely, faithfully, to keep such statefull secretie, it deserves immortall praise.

In this while, our ships, God be thanked, kept in a most excellent good order, being divided into squadrons: that is to say, The Earle of Essex, the Lord Admirall, the Lord Thomas Howard, the Lord Warben Sir Walter Raleigh, and the Admirall of the Hollanders. All the ships, albeit they did every day separate themselves of purpose, by the distance of the leagues, as well to looke out for such shippes as were happily under sayle, as also for the pursuing of sea-robbers: yet alwayes commonly eyther that day, or the next day, they came all together, with friendly salutations and gratulations one to another, which they terme by the name of Dayling: a ceremonie done solemnly, and in vertie of musick, with sound of Trumpets and noise of cheerefull voyces: and in such sort perceived was no small encouragement one to the other, beside a true repose of all such actions.

As I sayde, our journey was most prosperous, and all our shippes in very good order: then that the Mary Rose, by some mischance, either sprang or spent her force, was two dayes after Sir Robert Crosse had in a manner the like mischance.

After this being thus betwene the North cape, and cape S. Vincent, and yet keeping such a look, that by no means, those from the shoare might be able to descrye us: The Earle of Essex, a French Barke, and a Fleming coming from the coast of Barbarie were taken by some of our companie: but they were both of them very honourably and well treated by the Lord Generall: and so after a few dayes tarrying, were peaceably sent home, where they had conferred with them about such matters, as was thought good in their wisdomes.

At the end of the same moneth, Sir Richard Leulson Knight, assisted with Sir Christopher Blunt, fought with three Danbursers, and in that fight slew two of them, and took the third, and in the end brought them all three in: and this was the very first battell or combat (as it were) of any matter of importance, or exploit worthy observation: none in the way outward of this honorable voyage, and was so well performed of our worthy Gentlemen, as every man highly commended them for their great valour, and courage, and no lesse respect to their fortune successe. The next day after, Sir Richard Weston meeting with a Fleming, who refused to take any pay, with the like good courage and resolution, attempted to bring him in. The fight was very hot betwene them, for a good space: in the end the Swallow, where in the Capt Sir Richard was, had her forebeake broken off: and having spent before in fight the one side of her Ordnance, while she prepared to take about, and to bestow on him the other side: in the end the Fleming taking this opportunity, did see almost halfe a league from him: and made his escape. And yet the next day after, the ship of Terminus being in a narrow bay, in the very mouth of the River up to Lisbon, was taken, and brought in by Sir Dorrell, being

being Captaine of the Iohn and Francis of London. Thus by beuiling their senses
spreading the whole sea ouer a mighty way, there could not so much as the lead plank
she was espied and brought in.

The 13, 14, and 15. dayes, certaine little stragling Caravels were taken by certaine
 fleets, and in one of them a young heggish Fryer utterly unlearned, with a great
 letters for Lisbon: the pooze wrycten were marvellously well used by the Lope
 rall, and that Caravel, and the like still as they were taken were commaunded to give
 sendence, and their Donozs did understand what they might of these pooze men, of the
 Spaine for that purpose.

About this time and in this place it was, that first in all my life time I did see the
thes, who when they are haroly pinched and chased by the Bonitoses and other great
then to avoide the daunger, they presently mount vp, and forsake the water, and becom
selves to the benefite of their wings and make their flight, which commonly is not
of fire leaze, of there about, and then they are constrained to fall downe into the water
and it is the Mariners opinion that they can fly no longer then their wings be wet.
seife is about the bignesse of a Packrell of a great white bearing, and much of the
and making, with two large wings shaped of nature very cunningly, and making
behold, in all the two much like to our Gentlewomenes dress of ans, that are great
fold, of parchment, of silke, of other stuffe, which will long retainie pleight, and
fold themselves together. One of these flying fishes was presented to my Lord
man, and newly taken in his L. returne from Cadiz, and then I had good leasure
etc to view it.

The 18. day early in the morning we took an Irish man, and he came directly to the ship, having been there but the day before at twelve of the clock at high noon. When he was examined, told us that there was not great store of Whipping at Cadix, nor much fruit, or str. gallees in a readinesse, and that among those there were divers of the best; and namely, that the Philip of Spaine was among them, but what their names he could not tell. This man was commanded also to give his attendance.

The 20. of June being Sunday, we came before Cadix very early in the morning, this time as yet, the whole Fleet had not lost either by sickness or by any other manner of accident, so my knowledge is as for the Dutch company, I am not able precisely to say how many there, for that they were no part of our charge to be looked unto, but were amongst themselves, and by themselves to be provided for, either for their diet, or for the want of their health by physicians.

Thus then I say, being all in good plight and strong, the 20. of June we came to
and there very early in the morning presented our selves before the Towne, trying at
league of something lesse, from it. The sea at that instant went marvellous high, and the
was exceeding large. Notwithstanding, a Councell being called, our Lords Generall
with attempted with all expedition to land some certaine companies of their men at the
side of the Towne, by certaine long boats, light horsemen, pyrrates, and barges made
purpose, but could not compass it, and in the attempting thereof, they chanced to sink
their Barges, with some foure score good soldiers well appointed in' 'er, and yet by
and great care, the men were all saved erep'ing dill. And therefore they were conu'ed
off their landing till an other more convenient time.

That morning the air was more comfortable. The morning being very timely, there lighted a very faire breeze upon the maine part of the animals ship, and there the face very quickly for the space of 3 or 4 howrs, being much more all that while, every man gayed and looked much upon her, and spake of their minds and hearts all concluding by no means to disquiet her: It so my part, took e it for a very good omen, as in truth (God be thanked) there fell out nothing in the end to the contrary, at our very first coming to Cadiz this chance, so like unto the very last day of our voyage from the same towne, another Dove presented her selfe in the selfe same sport into the bay, and presently grew wonderfull tame and familiar to vs all, and did so still keepe by us even till our arrivall here in England.

We no sooner presented our letters, but presently a goodly sort of tall Spaniards met
at the mouth of the Bay of Cadix, the Gallies accompanying them in such good order, and
as all of them might well succore each other, and therewithall kepe themselves very
their towne, the castle, and the foies, so) their better guard and defence, abiding their dis-
putting our farther determination. *All these dayes passed* they were very rough and boisterous
of nothing could be done, more then that about the eue *they* were called some friendly and

aiding their Equips
as the least p
ere taken by certai
ed, with a great
vses by the L
maunded to g
pooze men, of the
ime I did see the
nes and other gra
water, and betw
ommonly is not
one into the wat
tings be wet. The
and much of the
and which great
that are most re
pleighs easily
up L. Howard
od leasure and
came directly
gh noone. The
as Cadiz, and
was a view of the
that their intent
in the morning,
any other man of
peculiarly to say
but were a regim
diet, as for the
me wee came to
Cotowne, tying
us high, and the
Lords Generall
cheir men at the
nd barges more
hanced to sink
er, and per by
wece condempn
aine part of the
eting nothing
ir minds and
a very good
the contrary.
the day of our
over into the
all keepe by
panish ships
good order, and
mselfes very
ing there did
to say from
the solemnly
Calicut

Instructions sent one from the other in warlike maner, by discharging certain great peeces, but to know ledge no hurt done at all, or else very little. A careful and diligent watch was had all that night thorough out the whole armie, and on every morning being the 21. day, the winde and weather being become moderate and favorable, betwene flue and fire of the clocke in the morning, our ships in the name of almighty God, and in defence of the honour of England, without any farther delay, with all speed, courage, and alacritie, did set upon the Spanisb ships, being then under sayle, and making out of the Bay of Cadiz, up toward Puente de Suazo on Granada side, being in number of the ships, with xix. or xx. Gallies attending upon them, sorted in such good order, and reasonable manner as they might kill annoy us, and alwayes relieue themselves interchangably: hauing firste the Castle, Fortes, and Towne, continually to assist them and theirs, and alwayes ready to play upon us and ours.

For most mens opinions it seemed that the enemy had a wonderful auantage of vs, all circumstances being well weighed, but especially the straitnesse of the place, and the naturall forme and exceeding beautifull, so that from Cadiz to Poze S. Mary, is some vi. or vii. English miles over of there abouts, yet be there many rocks, shels, sands and shallows in it, so that very chanel & place for sea room, is not about 2. or 3. miles, yea and in some places, not so much as to be constrained to run for wise one on another. All this notwithstanding, with great and inuincible courage, the Lords generall presently set upon them, and sorting out some such conuenient as to their honorable wisdomes seemed fittest for that times seruire, they were diuised to take some other course then before had beene by them intended. Wherefore vpon a graue consultation had by a select Councell, what great dangers might ensue vpon so mightie a disadvantage appeared in all probability, if it were not by good and sound iudgement prevented, & therewithall in their singular wisdomes foreseeing that some great stratageme might be practised by the Spanisb ships of honor in so narrow a place, thus with al expedition they concluded that the Vice Admirall, the L. Thomas Howard, that most noble L. Howard (whose exceeding great magnanimity, as is not able by me & my weakenes to be exprested, hath wonne him all the faithfull loyalty of as many as euer haue had any manner of dealing with him) This L. Thomas, I say, in his regard, for many his exceeding singular great vertues, right fortitude & great resolution in all matters of importance) in the Earl fight associated with diuers most famous voyagers, namely, Sir Francis Vere the L. Partall in the Rainbow, Sir George Cary of the Lyon, gentlemen for all laudable vertues, and for perfect courage & discretion in all military actions, of as great praise & good fame as any gentlemen of cheir degree who soeuer, hauing with them some of ships of London, and some of the Dutch Squadron of reasonable burthen, should leade the dance, & giue the onser, and the two most noble Lords generall with some others of cheir companies, should in cheir present time & order, second the maine battell. The fight being begunne and growen very hot, the L. Generall the Earle of Essex, (whose infinite princely vertues, which triumphant fame, and to be immortalized) being on Poze S. Mary side, vpon a sudden & unlooked for of others, put himselfe among the foremost into the maine battell. The other most honorable L. Generall himselfe among the foremost in all respects are of such an excellencie & perfection, as neither can my pen nor most noble Earle to be in fight among them, & perceiving by the sight of his ship, the Arke that for lacke of water, it was not possible, that he might put any neerer, without farther delay presently for his Pynnesse, and in the same Pynnesse put himselfe, and his honorable William Howard that now is, aboord the Honor de la mer, & there remained in the fight till the battell was ended. The fight was very terrible, and most hideous to the beholder by the discharge of those roaring thundering great peeces, in all sides, and so continued till about one or two of the clocke in the afternoone: about which time the Philip, whom they had all most fancie vnto, began to reele and giue ouer, her men that remained fighting for the selfes as they were able, and swimming and running a shoare with all the rest of the ship, as they could possibly, & that without, at the very same instant themselves fired their ship, in like manner. Immediately hereupon the residue of the ships, ran themselves on ground,

as farre from vs as they could, and the they pur chased their owne safety, or rather by reaching for the time. Of them all two faire ships only were boozed and taken by our men with most of their furniture in them, the one called *S. Marthy*, a ship by estimation of some rii tunne, and the other *S. Andrew*, being a ship of not much lesser burthen. The Gallies, this suddaine great victorious ouerthrow, made all the hast they could toward the *Puente de Suazo*, and there shewed themselves in such sort as our shippes could not by means possible come nigh them for lacke of water.

The Spanish ships in all were six, & as is sayd, all tall ships & very richly furnished and appointed, whereof some of them were bound for the Indies, and other straighter and further for Lisbon, as themselves affirme: and had we not come that very time that we did, (which my part, I do not attribute so much unto meere chance, as to some secret deepe insight and knowledge of the two most worthy Lozds generall, who no doubt spared for no cost of labour true intelligence) we had certainly mist of them all.

Of what great wealth and riches these ships were, that I leave to other mens iudgements to report, but sure I am, that themselves offered two millions and a halfe of ducats for the redemption of the goods and riches that were in them: which offer of theirs, albeit it was accepted of the Lozds Generall, and should haue bene received, yet we were defeated of it, as hereafter shall be more at large declared.

What manner of fight this was, & with what courage performed, and with what terror to the holder continued, where so many thundering tearing peeces were for so long a time discharged, I leave it to the Reader to thinke & imagine. Yet such was the great mercy & goodness of our God, that in all this cruell terrible fight, in the end, there were not either slaine or hurt by manner of meanes (excepting one mischance that happened, where of I will by & by make mention) many above the number of 100. of our men: notwithstanding diuers of our shippes were sometimes shot thorow and thorow: yea and some of them no lesse then two and ewentie times, was enforced by credible report of the Captaines and Spallers themselves. It had bene any other hurt done, saving onely that Sir Robert Southwell, who alwayes shew himself most valiant resolute knight in all this action, making a litle too much haste with his horse boozed the Philip, had there his said Minnelle burnt with the Philip at the same instant, and by good care and diligence his men were saved.

One other mischance (as I said) there happened, and it was thus: One of the *Spanish* boats, who had, in all the conflict before, carried himselfe very well and valiantly, about ten o'clocke while the fight continued sharpest, chanced by great negligence and misfortune, to be red and blowen up by his owne powder, who could not haue any feiner in him, then one hundred fighting men by all supposal, and so in the very twinkling of an eye, both shippe and men all cast away, excepting vii. or viii. which by very good fortune, and great care and diligence some of the other ships were saved.

Immediately upon this notable victorie without any farther stay in all the world, the Lozds generall the Earle of Essex put to shore, and landed about 3000. foot, & pikemen: of the which the one halfe was presently dispatched to the bridge *Puente de Suazo*, under the command of three most famous worthy knights, Sir Christopher Blunt, Sir Coniers Clifford, & Sir Thomas Gerard: with the other halfe, being about fifteen hundred, the most noble Earle himselfe, being accompanied with diuers other honorable Lozds, namely the Earle of the Lord Harbert, the Lord Burck, Count Lodowick of Nassaw, the Lord Partiall Sir Vere, with many other worthy knights, and men of great regard, who all in that day did most valiantly behaue themselves, with all expedition possible marched on foot into the towne of Cadiz, which was about three English miles march. That time of the day was very hot and faint, and the way was all of dry deepe stying sand in a manner, and was very vneuen, and by that meanes so tiresome and painefull as might be. The most reasonable companie both of horse and footemen, stood in a readinesse some good while without the towne to welcome vs, and to encounter the Lozds Generall. But the most famous Earle with his valiant Troopes, rather running in deede in good order, than hastened on them with such unspeakable courage and celeritie, as within one houre or lesse, the horsemen were all discomfited and put to flight, their leader being strooken at the very first encounter, whereat the footemen being wonderfully dismayed and mist at the unexpected manner of the Englishmens kinde of such ferre and swift fight, reaped themselves with all the speed possible that they could, to recover them into the towne againe, which being done by them, with farre swifter legges then we rage, our men were enforced to shale the walles: which thing in very deepe, although it

The honor. voyage to Cadiz. Traffiques, & Discoueries. 613

without great danger and difficulty to be performed: Yet such was the invincible resolution, and the wonderfull bravery of the English, that in one halfe houre of the assault, the towne was repulst, and the towne wall possessed, by the noble Earle himselfe, the enemye slayd the very first man of els in a manner ioined with the first.

The towne walles being then possessed, and the English Ensigne being there displayed upon them, with all speed possible they proceeded on to march through the towne, making still these waies with sword and shot so well as they could, being still fought withall at every turne.

Immediately upon this most famous entrie, the noble Earle, (according to their resolutions, as I take it, put downe before) was seconded by the noble L. Admirall in person, who was accompanied, with the noble L. Thomas Howard, the most worthy gentleman his sonne, Sir L. Howard, Sir Robert Southwell, Sir Richard Levison, and with divers other gentlemen, his L. followers of good account: his colours being advanced by that valiant resolute gentleman, ward Hobby Knight. And thus he like wise marching with all possible speed on foot, notwithstanding his L. many peres, the insupportable heate for the time, and the overruling tedious deepe snows, with other many impediments: Yet in good time, topped himselfe with the Earle and thus then the two Lordes Generall with their companies being topped together, and proceeding so farre as the market place, there they were hotly encountered, where and at what time, that worthy famous knight Sir John Winkfield, being sore wounded before on the thigh, at the very entrie of the towne, and yet for all that no whit respecting himselfe, being carried away with the care he had to encourage and direct his company, was with the shot of a musket in the head most unfortunately slaine.

And thus before eight of the clocke that night were these two most noble Lordes Generall, Spawnt, from time to time as they could, still annoying them with seuen battering pieces. By this time to whom the Lordes Generall had signified: that unless before the next day in the morning they would absolutely render themselves, they should looke for no mercy, but should every one be put to the sword: upon which message they took deliberation that night: but in the morning before the first of day they hanged out their flag of truce, and so without any further composition they put themselves absolutely to their mercy, and delivered up the Castle.

And yet notwithstanding all this, in the night time while they had this respite to pause, and deliberate about the peacemaking, there were divers great and suddaine alarms given: which did some great outrages and disorder in the towne. At every which alarme, the two Lordes Generall showed themselves marvellous ready & forward, insonmuch that at the very first alarme, that wel furnished with any more defence then their shirts, hose, and dublets, & those too altogether in a manner untied, they were abroad in the streets themselves, to see the uttermost of it. But that it is not as yet very well known (or at the least not well known unto me) either whether by whom these alarmes were attempted: I am therefore to intreat, that a bare report, such as thing was done, may suffice.

These things being done, and this surrender being made, present proclamation was published, that the surry now being past, all men should surcease from all manner of blood and cruell dealing, and that there should no kind of violence or hard blage be offered to any, either man, woman, child, upon paine of death: And so permitting the spoyle of so much of the towne as was by them thought meete, to the common souldiers for some certaine dayes, they were continually counselling about other grave directions, best known to their honorable wisdomes.

This honorable and mercifull Edict I am sure was strictly and religiously observed of the English: But how well it was kept by the Dutch, I will neither affirme, nor yet deny. For sometime as the Dutch Squadron was espied in the sight, immediately thereupon both they of Spawnt and D. Lucar and also some of some other places did not onely arrest all such Dutch ships, but with them friendly by the way of traffick & Sparrhandise, and so confiscated their goods, they also imprisoned the Sparrhandes and Owners of the same, and as the report goeth, did increase many of them with extreme cruelty thereupon.

And the next day being the two and twenty day of June, all the Spanish ships which were left on ground in the Bay of Cadiz, where the great overthrow had bene at the day before, were by the Spaniards themselves there set on fire, and so from that time forward they never left burning of them, till every one of them, goods and all, as farre as wee know

diz.

The honor. voyage to Cadiz. Traffiques, & Discoveries. 615

for their dishonorable and blutchy practices, against her Sacred Majestie, and the Realme, (as I know not, but be it spoken to their perpetuall shame and infamie, there was neuer thing more resolutely performed of the courageous English, nor more shamefully lost of the bragging Spaniards.

Of what wealth this towne should be, I am not able to resolve the asker: for I confesse that by mine owne part, I had not so much good lucke, as to be partaker so much as of one pennie, or peny worth. Howbeit my ill fortune maketh that towne neuer a whit the poorer. But as it should appere by the great pillage by the common soldiers, and some mariners too, and by the great spoyle of the carping away, and by the over great plenty of Wine, Oyle, Almonds, Dates, Raisins, Spices, and other rich grocery wares, that by the intemperate disorder of the rather sort were knockt out, and lay trampled under feete, in every common highway, it should appere that it was of some very mighty great wealth to the first owners, though yet was most rypously and intemperately spent and consumed. A disorder in mine opinion, were a most honourable device.

The Eleventh day, Thursday, and Friday following, the Lords Generall spent in counsell, about the disposing of all matters, as well touching the towne and prisoners, as also concerning all other matters, thought meete of them in their honourable wisdomes, and in all that meane to shew such honourable bounty and mercy, as is not able to be exprest. For not onely the soldiers of every one were spared, but also there was an especial care had, that all the Religious, and some of other molestation, they caused to be safely transported over to Port Saint Marie, in a manner as saye as Cadiz: but at that time, as the case did stand, certainly knowne to be no wealth in the world, and it was some five or seven miles distant over against Cadiz, as Paules is against Southwarke, on the other side of the Bay, in a part of Andalusia, wher to the territory of the Duke de Medina Sidonia.

Moreover, at the same instant they did appoint that worthy knight Sir Amias Preston, and some others in some convenient Barkes, to transport over to the sayd Towne safely and in order, a hundred or more of the better sort of ancient gentlewomen, and marchants wives, and some convenient quantity of many Jewels, Chains, and other ornaments belonging to their estate and degree. Such was the heroicall liberality, and exceeding great clemencie, of that most honourable Lords Generall, thereby, as it should seeme unto mee, bearing downe the most sumptuous opinion, which hath bene hitherto commonly spread abroad, and settled among the English, which is, That the English doe trouble them and their countries, more for their riches and pearle &c. then for any other iust occasion. Whereas by these their honorable actions it is manifest to all the world, that it is onely in respect of a iust reuenge for the most dishonourable practices that have bene from time to time attempted by them against vs and our nation, and also in the defence of the true honour of England: which they have sought, and daylie doe seeke, by so many sinistred and reprochfull devices, so much to their dishonour, as to deface.

Upon Saturday being the 26. Sir John Winkfield knight was buried, in honourable and stately manner, so farre forth as the circumstances of that time and place could permit. At the funerals the Masse discharged a great part of their Ordinance, in such order, as was thought meete and convenient by the Lords Generalls commandement. The next seuench day being Sunday, in the Abbey the diuine service was had, and a sermon was made there by one Walter Hopkins, the right honourable Earle of Essex Preacher, a man of good learning and sweete veneration, and euen there the same day, some before the sermon was made, these worthy Gentlemen following were knighted by the Lords Generall. And here I am to signifye by the way that two of these were knighted thre or four days before, and some thre or foure more were knighted after that time, vpon certaine occasions: but per I holde it best (and I trust without offence) to recite these names in this place

¶ Ill

The

The names of such noble men and gentlemen, as were knighted at Cadiz in June 1596 by the two most honorable Lordes Generall.

Item 21.22.

27.

Sir Samuel Bagnol.
Sir Arthur Sauvage.
The Earle of Suffex.
The Lord Harbert.
The Lord Burck.
Count Lodowick.
Sir William Howard.
Sir George D'Eureux.
Sir Henry Neuel.
Sir Edmund Rich.
Sir Richard Leuen.
Sir Peter Egomort.
Sir Anthonie Ashley.
Sir Henry Leonard.
Sir Richard Leuison.
Sir Horatio Vere.
Sir Arthur Throckmorton.
Sir Miles Corber.
Sir Edward Conway.
Sir Oliuer Lambert.
Sir Anthony Cooke.
Sir John Townesend.
Sir Christopher Heydon.
Sir Francis Popham.
Sir Philip Woodhouse.
Sir Alexander Clifford.
Sir Maurice Barkley.
Sir Charles Blunt.
Sir George Gifford.
Sir Robert Crosse.
Sir James Elcudamor.
Sir Vrias Leigh.

Sir John Leigh, alias Lee.
Sir Richard Weston.
Sir Richard Wainman.
Sir James Wootton.
Sir Richard Ruddal.
Sir Robert Mansfield.
Sir William Mounson.
Sir John Bowles.
Sir Edward Bowes.
Sir Humfrey Druel.
Sir Amias Preston.
Sir Robert Remington.
Sir John Buck.
Sir John Morgan.
Sir John Aldridg.
Sir John Ashindon.
Sir Matthew Browne.
Sir John Acton.
Sir Thomas Gates.
Sir Gilly Mericke.
Sir Thomas Smith.
Sir William Pooley.
Sir Thomas Palmer.
Sir John Stafford.
Sir Robert Louel.
Sir John Gylbert.
Sir William Haruie.
Sir John Gray.
Don Christ. prince of Portingal.
Sir John Vanderfoord, Admirall
of the Hollanders.
Sir Robert Dudley. 8. August.

I am not curious in placing these gentlemen, but put them downe at a venture. Only I observed, as neere as I could, the iust day and time when they were created. And I trust the place of it selfe is so worthy and equall, there the bare naming and placing of the parties byee no offence, or make a disparity. The two gentlemen that were last knighted were their knighthood in the way of our returne from Cadiz: the one of them vpon the sea, not from the Bay of the Groyne, at what time our ships stood vpon their staies for a space, whyle certaine Pinnasses were sent to descrite what shipping was at the Groine: The other at Pimmar in the open streete, when the Lordes Generall came from the Sermon. The one a man of service, and good desert among the Dutch: the other of so many good parts of a worthy gentleman, as the like are seildome seene to concur in any.

I spake in the beginning of her Spaieties prayer, which I presumed (though in worthy place into Latine: and now at this very time, there was some opportunity offered, for some use of that translation. For now being in Cadiz, attending vpon my most honorable good Lord, I talked with certaine of the Religious men, such as I found leaues, where desired there were some, though not very many. I talked also with the Bishop of Culco, a gentle aged comely man, and being of late chosen to that Bishopricke, he was as then gone to the Indies, but not we then taken him prisoner, and so stayed his journey for some while these men euer as occasion did serue, I did seeke now and then to spende some time and to entertaine time withall, I would breake with them of this our victorie, and of the riches and bad dealings of their Prince and Countrey offered to her Spaietie, whereby they prouoked, and in a manner drawn to this conclusion: though ogetherwise of her own most ex-

principly good nature
of our conference
times of purpose
ly and vpon how g
action: and there
ing. They seemed
inclination and e

It pleased the
for it was their go
to let him to unde
men of peace, we a
age for gold, siluer,
meet with their dis
valour, for the dese
net the peace impre
spidelle, that is sho

In this meane ty
page we reached Tur
the very time of the
make their escape, an
Lords. It pleased
all other necessaries,
was into Barbary, to
and there by 2

Europe, all Africa, and
and cause to adm
as he hath bin mi
moueridly, that sh
in brist. And there
qually hereafter,
the: and for that e
qually frustrate and

The 2. day being a
ment for a space, as
for that his L.
certain letters to
were remaining in
volume in person w
thereout. His L. di
Latic by another: a

A copie of th

Illustris

whilome Princes, e
nunc esse apud por
signarum erat a ser
proco tempore Gen
quoddam, & h
loci populum arg: ir
eos omnes trahi
quam multa
omnibus esse testa
venire potest
capivus finis repe
legiz nostris sereniss
dubitamus, quine

The honor. voyage to Cadiz. Traffiques, & Discoueries. 617

principely good nature, he was altogether given to peace, and quietnes. And alwayes in some part
of our conferences, I would shew them a copie of her Maiesties prayer in Latine, which I had al-
wayes by me, and told how great & urgent occasions her Maiesty was, as it were enforced to undertake this
action: and therewithall I did use now and then to bestow upon them a copie of the same in Eng-
lish. They seemed in all outward shew to allow of my speeches, and to praise her Maiesties good
inclination, and earnestly to wish that there might be a firme concord and peace againe.

It pleased the Lords general to deale exceeding fauourably with this said Bishop of Cusco:
for it was their good pleasure to giue him his free passage without any ranome, and therewithal
to let him to vnderstand, that they came not to deale with Church-men, or vnarmed men, or with
men of peace, weahtings & children, neither was it any part of their meaning to make such a voy-
age for gold, silver, or any other their wealth and riches, &c. But that their only coming was to
meet with their dishonorable practises, and manifold iniuries, & to deale with men of warre and
valour, for the defence of the true honour of England: and to let them to vnderstand, that when so-
uer they attempted any base-conceited & dishonorable practise to their soueraigne Queene, their
offence, that it should be reuenged to the vttermost, &c.

In this meane space, while the Lords general continued at Cadiz, there came to them certain
poore wretched Turkes, the number of 38, that had bin a long time gally-slaves, and either at
the very time of the fight by sea, or els immediately thereupon, taking the opportunity, did then
make their escape, and did swim to land: perceiving themselves to the mercy of their most honorable
Lords. It pleased them with all speed to apparel them, and to furnish them with money, and
all other necessaries, and to bestow on them a barke, and a Pilot, to see them freely and safely con-
veyed into Barbary, willing them to let the countrey vnderstand what was done, and what they
had done. Whereby I doubt not, but as her Maiesty is a most admirable Prince already ouer all
Europe, all Africk, and Asia, and throughout Christendome: so the whole worlde hereafter shall
cause to admire her infinite Princely vertues, and thereby be prouoked to confesse,
that as she hath bin mightily protected from time to time, by the powerful hand of the almighty,
so she shall bin mightily protected from time to time, by the powerful hand of the almighty,
and therfore, what soeuer wicked designement shall be conspired and plotted against
her: and for that cause, as I trust, shall be by the infinite goodness and mercy of that almighty,
fully frustrate and ouerthrowen.

The 28. day being Sunday, the L. Admiral came aboard the Arke againe, minding there to
stay for a space, as indeed he did, and vpon the aduise of his Phisition, to deale something in
physicke, for that his L. found his body something out of frame. At that time it pleased his L. to
write certain letters to the Duke of Medina Sidonia, for the deliuerance of English captiues,
who were remaining in the gallies. For by this time, it was reposed, that the said Duke was
come home in person with some power, and that he was either at Port S. Mary, or els at Rotta,
thereabout. His L. did endite the letters himselfe, but his pleasure was, they should be turned
into Latine by another: and so to be sent (as indeed they were) in the latine tongue vnto the Duke.

A copie of the Lord Admirals letters to the Duke of Me-
dina Sidonia.

Illustrissimo Principi Duci de Medina Sidonia.

Illustrissime Princeps, ex nonnullis quibusdam Hispanis intelligimus, Excellentiam vestram
nunc esse apud portum S. Marie, Et quoniam in anno Domini 1588. id nobis tunc mu-
signatum erat a sereniss. nostra Regina domina mea, vt contra vos, vestrasq; copias, Ego
pro eo tempore Generalis essem constitutus: Idcirco non opinamur vobis ignotum esse,
quoddam, & humanum bellandi genus, tum hic iam in hoc ipso tempore, aduersus
loci populum atq; incolas vsurpauerimus: cum etiam sapientis antehac quam humaniter,
neq; eos omnes tractauerimus, quos ex vestra iure belli captiuos exceperimus. Ex quo
omnibus esse testatur, quam vt a quoq; denegetur. Quocirca, neq; vili modo no-
mentem venire potest, vt dubitemus, quin parem etiam in vobis humanitatem aduersus
captiuos finis reperturi. Cum igitur nobis compertum iam sit, habere vos in vestris gale-
is nostris serenissimae Dominae meae subditis vnum & quinquaginta captiuos: non
dubitamus, quin eos omnes suis relaxaturi, & ad nos missuri: ea lege, ac condicione,
Fff 3

vt eisdem ex vestris hic captiuis eiusdem loci seq; ordinis, melioris etiam fortassis notæ, ac conditionis, homuncios, ad vos vicissim remittamus. Id quod nos facturos data fide spondemus, quam primum nostros captiuis ex vestris manibus acceperimus. Hac in re si nostro desiderio ac voluntati parum satisfactum erit, aliud profectò tunc posthac belli genus ingrediemur, aliudq; bellandi morem cogemur, etiam inuiti, & contra voluntatem prosequi. Ex Regia Anglicana classe apud Cadiz, vltimo Junij, Anno antiquo. 1556. *Carolus Howard.*

These letters were sent by a Spaniard, and an answer was brought from the Duke with all convenient speed, and as it should seeme by the L. Admirals next answer resurue to him in writing, which immediately hereafter foloweth, the Duke de Medina Sidonia his letters were honorable, and with good regard.

A copie of my L. Admirals second letter to the Duke of Medina Sidonia,
Illustrissimo Principi Duci de Medina Sidonia.

Illustrissime Princeps, literas ab excellentia vestra hodiè accepimus: quæ verò nostras illas responsio, nobiles illi viri, qui vestras literas ad nos pestulerunt, plenius declarauit. Hoc interim cupimus esse penitus persuasum Excellentie vestre, nos sedulo operam daturos, in omni honorifice benignitatis humanitatisq; genere, expectationi vestræ omni ex parte spondeamus. Quod ad Anglicos nostros captiuos attinet, quos ab Excellentia vestra huc nobis crastino die missum iri expectamus, in eare pollicemur Excellentie vestræ, quod plenius nobis vestræ voluntati satisfactum erit: & quod pro illis captiuis tales nos captiuos vobis mittemus, quales tū ab ipso Dom. Mendoza, tum ab alijs illustribus viris, qui à Dom. Peralta in illorum ad nos suore mittebantur, communium consensu erant ab ipsis approbati. Sin quo alius iam captiuus est vel posthac futurus erit in nostra potestate, pro cuius redemptione nondum plenè conuentum est & stipularum de certo pretio persoluendo: concedimus Excellentie vestræ, vt in hoc etiā casu vos, vestro pro arbitrio, de illis quicquid velitis, imperpetuum Regia classe Anglicana, apud Cadiz, 3. die Iulij Anno antiquo. 1596. *Carolus Howard.*

The next day after, being the 4. of July, the L. general caused the town of Cadiz to be set fire, and raised & defaced so much as they could, the faire cathedral Church, and the religious houses only being spared, and left battlemisken. And with the town all such provision for shipping, & other things, as were seruicable for the use, & yet were not either so convenient for us to be taken away, or else such as we stood in need of, were likewise at the same instant consumed with fire. And presently thereupon, their Lordships, with as convenient speed as they could, whole army in such good order and leisure, as they thought best, came aboard.

The next day being the 7. of July, the L. general with all the armie being vnder sail, making for England, & but as yet passing the 10. of month of the bay of Cadiz, a galley full of hisp. prisoners, with a flag of truce, met vs. sent by the Dof Medina Sidonia, & it should seeme, one day later then his promise: but yet their flag being either not big enough, or not well placed in the galley, or not well discerned of our men, or by what other mischance it was: but thus it was: by one of our smallest ships it sailed so most, altho as the said galley with his gunshot, there was a great peece discharged vpon her, & at that instant there was slain outright, and 3. other grievously hurt. The error being espied and perceiued, our ship ouer immediately from any farther shooting. Altho as the galley came neere vs, my Lord caused a gracious salutation to be sounded with his trumpets, & wished the captiues soon to come aboard his ship: which they did, and then he feasted them with a very fine and banquet, as the time and place might serue. And then by their vnderstanding of what vnto mischance that had hapned by the shot of the said ship, he was very sorry for the same, and was the mercifull providence of almighty God, that euen in this mischance also, he shewd by howe ouer the English. And at the harme that was done vs light only upon the poyse of the Spaniard himselfe. When this Lord had well banqueted them, hee presently with his bergs, and did accompany the said galley to the Lord general the Carle of Essex, who did ride with his ship a good distance off: and there they being in like maner most banqueted, and entertained, the Spanish gentlemen deliuered by their prisoners the English of whome some had there 6. pers, some 8. or ten pers, and some 23. pers, and upwards, and them but lately taken in S. Francis Draken last voyage to the Indies. The number of the deliuered were but 39. and no mo, and were brought in, and deliuered by Don Antonio Vella and his brother, and by Don Pedro de Cordus, and certayne others. If you would knowe of some and little Captiues, there were no more deliuered then that, I pray you, to come to that at that time the residue were farther off in some remote places of the Kingdom, and so by that means, not able at this time to bee in a readinesse, but

enough that there in some good to England.

If any man presume here to say that long at Cadiz, and went no farther, was for boyne: and why this of that was done? And why the English proverbe, as I might haue seen ten difference men can w

But that graue ancient wri

Nemo teneat inquirere in

Doorum credere, quam scire

and so much the rather, for

where those said pillars of f

not there off to be seen. But

which in a ppep kind of mystical

as too inquisitive after the

into their secrets, but e

and their doings: and thereon

remain ready alwaies to arme

as put in execution that which

and the care of the which

and much lesse so, might suffi

to be a little farther satisfi

upon my knowledge, the cl

was this: For that it was

of such a royal companie, in

door houses of stone, and stam

house entrapped, then as a

so such an army as this, co

payne and charges, yea, and w

very little of nothing haue p

left, as felt, untouched.

much for our journey to Cad

ing, and burning of the said

by matters that happen

also at the very last house of

returne home, and our entr

the burning of the towne of Para

iminde to leave it to some othe

me, and shall be of more suffici

The end of



The honor.voyage to Cadix. Traffiques,& Discoueries. 619

though that there is some good order taken for them hereafter, to be redeemed, and sent ouer into England.

If any man presume here so farre, as to enquire how it chanced, that the Lord generall rested in them, was so boznie? and why Sheres alias Xeres? And why Rotta and the like? And why some English prouerbe, as I might, which is: That one foole may aske more questions in one day, then ten discrete men can wel answere in five dayes.

But that graue auncient wryter, Cornelius Tacitus, hath a wise, bylefe, pithy saying, and it is: Nemo teneuit inquirere in columnas Herculis, sanctiusq; ac reuerentius habitum est de Deorum credere, quam scire. Which saying, in my fancy, stretch marvellous well for this purpose: so much the rather, for that this Cadiz is that very place, (at least by the common opinion) where those sayd pillars of Hercules were thought to be placed: and, as some say, remaine yet not farre off to be seene. But to let that passe, the saying beareth this discrete meaning in it, which is in a ptep kind of mystical manner uttered: That it belongeth not inferiour persons to be wise into their secrets, but rather alwayes to haue a right zeuerend conceite and opinion of them, and their doings: and therein to resting our inward thoughts, to seek to go no further, but to remaine ready alwayes to arme our selues with doubtful minds, and willing obedience, to performe, and the care of the common wealch determine vpon.

And much lesse so, might suffice to satisfie any honest minded man. But yet if any will aske me to be a little farther satisfied, albe it it neede not, yet then, thus much I dare say and aske upon my knowledge, the chiefest cause why Port Saine Mary, and the rest were left vpon such a royal companie, in which there was no maner of wealth in the world left, but bare houses of stone, and standing wallen, and might well haue serued rather as a stile, to haue entrapped, then as a meane to haue enriched. And it had bin moze then a suspition, for such an army as this, to haue sought to fight with the aire, and to haue labour in paine and charges, yea, and with some euident danger too, to haue our rishonien tyne, and very little of nothing haue profited, being destroyed: and yet no we, can doe so little.

And much for our journey to Cadix: for the accidents that happened by the way, for the burning, and burning of the said towne, for the ouerrunning of the Spanish Fleet there, and the by-matters that happened, as apperances to the time, both in the time of our a- rriue, as also at the very last houre of our coming from thence.

And our returne home, and our entrance into a part of Portugal by the way, with the taking, and burning of the towne of Faro there, and their going into the Spanish conuies there, and my minde to leave it to some other, whose chance it may be present at the action, as my minde, and shalbe of moze sufficient ability to performe it.

The end of the first volume.



